

THE BOOK  
OF MORMON

סֵפֶר מוֹרְמוֹן



# THE BOOK OF MORMON

סֵפֶר מוֹרְמוֹן



Institute of Ancient Studies

מִכּוֹן מַחְקֵר הָעֵת הָעַתִּיקָה

ספר מורמון

הספר ראה אור בישראל על ידי מכון  
מחקר העת העתיקה

© 2025 כל הזכויות שמורות למכון  
מחקר העת העתיקה

[www.InstituteofAncientStudies.co.il](http://www.InstituteofAncientStudies.co.il)

The Book of Mormon

Published in Israel by the Institute of Ancient Studies

© Copyright 2025 Institute of Ancient Studies

All rights reserved

[www.InstituteofAncientStudies.co.il](http://www.InstituteofAncientStudies.co.il)

מכון מחקר העת העתיקה פועל ללא תלות בכל  
כנסייה, דת או כת ואינו מבקש להמיר את הדת  
של שום אדם ושום עם. מטרתו היא הפצת כתב  
הקודש של ספר מורמון לעם ולארץ שבהם נולד.

התרגום העברי של ספר מורמון הושלם בשנים  
2018–2024 בידי צוות של ארבעה לשונאים  
ישראלים מקצועיים. מרביתו של החומר  
לספר מבוסס בעיקר על מהדורת ספר מורמון  
באנגלית מ-1830, תוך הסתמכות מסוימת על  
מהדורת 1920.

The Institute of Ancient Studies operates independent of any church,  
religion, or sect and does not seek to persuade any person or people to  
another religion. Rather, it seeks to disseminate the sacred scripture  
of the Book of Mormon to the people and land of its inception.

The Hebrew translation of the Book of Mormon was completed in the  
years 2018–2024 by a team of four professional Israeli linguists. The  
work's core material is based primarily on the 1830 English edition  
of the Book of Mormon with some reliance on the 1920 edition.

## תִּכְוֵן הָעִנְיָנִים

## CONTENTS

|                    |     |                     |
|--------------------|-----|---------------------|
| מבוא               | vii | FOREWORD            |
| הקדמה              | 1   | PREFACE             |
| ספר נְפִי א        | 3   | THE BOOK OF 1 NEPHI |
| ספר נְפִי ב        | 65  | THE BOOK OF 2 NEPHI |
| ספר יַעֲקֹב        | 141 | THE BOOK OF JACOB   |
| ספר אֶנוֹשׁ        | 164 | THE BOOK OF ENOS    |
| ספר יָרוֹם         | 167 | THE BOOK OF JAROM   |
| ספר אוֹמְנִי       | 169 | THE BOOK OF OMNI    |
| דְּבָרֵי מוֹרְמוֹן | 172 | WORDS OF MORMON     |
| ספר מוֹשִׁיעַ      | 175 | THE BOOK OF MOSIAH  |
| ספר אֶלְמָא        | 256 | THE BOOK OF ALMA    |
| ספר הֵלְמָן        | 472 | THE BOOK OF HELAMAN |
| ספר נְפִי ג        | 525 | THE BOOK OF 3 NEPHI |
| ספר נְפִי ד        | 601 | THE BOOK OF 4 NEPHI |
| ספר מוֹרְמוֹן      | 607 | THE BOOK OF MORMON  |
| ספר אֶתֶר          | 631 | THE BOOK OF ETHER   |
| ספר מוֹרוֹנִי      | 673 | THE BOOK OF MORONI  |



## מבוא

ספר מורמון הוא תעוד של נביאים יהודים שנודדו ליבשת אמריקה בסביבות שנת 600 לפנה"ס. הספירה והוא היסטוריה מקצרת של צאצאיהם עד לנפילת הציוניליזציה שלהם בשנת 421 לספירה. הספר מכיל גם היסטוריה מקצרת של עם שנודד ליבשת אמריקה ממגדל בבל.

ספר מורמון תרגם לאנגלית במשך חדשים בידי יוסף סמית, כאשר היה בן עשרים וארבע. הספר תרגם באמצעות אורים ותמים או אבן חוזה ממצרית מתקנת שהייתה חרוטה על גבי לוחות זהב, וראה אור בפעם הראשונה בשנת 1830 בפלמירה, ניו יורק.

נביאי ספר מורמון ראו את הסוף למן ההתחלה ונבאו את בואו של המשיח שנגלה אליהם לאחר תחייתו מן המתים. נאמנותו של ספר מורמון לכתבי הקודש של היהודים בצאה לידי בטוי בהגשמת אלוהים את בריתותיו להשבת בית ישראל.

## FOREWORD

The Book of Mormon is a record of Jewish prophets who migrated to the Americas about 600 B.C. and an abridged history of their descendants until their civilization ended in A.D. 421. It also contains an abridged history of a people who migrated to the Americas from the Tower of Babel.

The Book of Mormon was translated into English during a two-month period by Joseph Smith at age twenty-four years. Translated by means of Urim and Thummim or seer stone from Reformed Egyptian writings inscribed on gold plates, it was first published in 1830 in Palmyra, New York.

Book of Mormon prophets saw the end from the beginning and foretold the coming of Messiah, who appeared to them after his resurrection from the dead. The Book of Mormon's fidelity to sacred Jewish scriptures is seen in God's fulfilling his covenants to restore the house of Israel.





## הַקְדָּמָה

תֵּאָדָר אֲשֶׁר נִכְתַּב בְּיַד מוֹרְמוֹן עַל גְּבֵי לוחות  
הַלְקוּחִים מִלּוּחֹת נָפִי. לְפִיכָּה, זֶהוּ קְצוֹר  
קוֹרוֹת עִם נָפִי וְכֵן שֶׁל הַלְמָנִים. נִכְתַּב בְּעֵבֶר  
הַלְמָנִים אֲשֶׁר הֵם שְׂרִיד מִבֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל; וְכֵן  
לְיְהוּדִים וְלַגּוֹיִים. נִכְתַּב בְּדֶרֶךְ שֶׁל צוּי וּבְרוּחַ  
הַנְּבוּאָה וְהַהֲתַגְלוֹת. נִכְתַּב וְנִחְתָּם וְהִטְמֵן  
לְשֵׁם יְהוָה כְּדֵי שֶׁלֹּא יֵאבֹד. יֵצֵא לְאוֹר עַל יְדֵי  
מִתְּנַת אֱלֹהִים וּבְכַחוֹ לְמַעַן בְּאוּרוֹ. נִחְתָּם בְּיַד  
מוֹרְמוֹנִי וְהִטְמֵן לְשֵׁם יְהוָה כְּדֵי שֶׁיִּרְאֶה אוֹר  
בְּעֵת אֲשֶׁר תִּישֶׁר בְּעֵינָיו מֵאֵת הַגּוֹיִים. בְּאוֹר  
תֵּאָדָר זֶה עַל יְדֵי מִתְּנַת אֱלֹהִים.

נוֹסֵף עַל כֵּן, קְצוֹר הַלְקוּחַ מִסֵּפֶר אֶתֶר, שֶׁהוּא  
תַּעֲדוֹר שֶׁל אֲנָשֵׁי יָרֵד אֲשֶׁר הָיוּ מִפְּזָרִים בְּזִמְנָן  
שֶׁיְהוָה בִּלְבָל אֶת שְׂפַת בְּנֵי הָאָדָם, כְּאֲשֶׁר הֵם  
בְּנוֹ מַגְדֵּל כְּדֵי לְהַגִּיעַ לַשָּׁמַיִם. אָכֵן זֶה נֹעֵד  
לְהִרְאוֹת לְשִׂאֲרֵית בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל כְּמָה גְדוּלִים  
הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר עָשָׂה יְהוָה לְאַבּוֹתֵיהֶם; וְכְדֵי  
שֶׁיִּדְעוּ אֶת בְּרִיתוֹת יְהוָה, וְכִי הֵם לֹא מִגְרָשִׁים  
מִפְּנֵי לְעוֹלָם, וְכֵן כְּדֵי לְשַׁכְנֶעַ אֶת הַיְּהוּדִים  
וְאֶת הַגּוֹיִים כִּי יִשׁוּעַ הוּא הַמְּשִׁיחַ, הָאֵל  
הַנִּצָּחִי, הַמִּתְגַּלֵּה לִפְנֵי כָּל הָעַמִּים. וְעַתָּה, אִם  
יֵשׁ פְּגָמִים, מְקוֹרָם בְּטָעוֹת אָנוּשׁ; לְפִיכָּה אֵל  
תִּרְשִׁיעוּ אֶת דְּבָרֵי אֱלֹהִים כְּדֵי שֶׁתִּמָּצְאוּ לֹלֵא  
רַבֵּב בְּכֵס מִשְׁפַּט הַמְּשִׁיחַ.

## PREFACE

An account written by the hand of Mormon upon plates taken from the plates of Nephi. Wherefore, it is an abridgment of the record of the people of Nephi, and also of the Lamanites. Written to the Lamanites, who are a remnant of the house of Israel; and also to Jew and Gentile. Written by way of commandment, and also by the spirit of prophecy and of revelation. Written and sealed up, and hid up unto the Lord, that they might not be destroyed. To come forth by the gift and power of God unto the interpretation thereof. Sealed up by the hand of Moroni, and hid up unto the Lord, to come forth in due time by way of the Gentile. The interpretation thereof by the gift of God.

An abridgment taken from the Book of Ether also, which is a record of the people of Jared, who were scattered at the time the Lord confounded the language of the people, when they were building a tower to get to heaven. Which is to show unto the remnant of the house of Israel how great things the Lord hath done for their fathers; and that they may know the covenants of the Lord, that they are not cast off forever. And also to the convincing of the Jew and Gentile that Jesus is the Christ, the eternal God, manifesting himself unto all nations. And now, if there are faults, they are the mistakes of men; wherefore, condemn not the things of God, that ye may be found spotless at the judgment seat of Christ.



## סֵפֶר נְפִי א

תאור קורות לחי ואשתו שריה, וארבעת בָּנָיו, הַנִּי קְרָאִים, הַחֵל בְּכֹר, לָמֹן, לְמוּאֵל, שָׁם וְנָפִי. יְהוָה מְזַהֵר אֶת לְחֵי לְצֵאת מֵאֶרֶץ יְרוּשָׁלַם, כִּי הוּא מִתְנַבֵּא לָעַם עַל עֲוֹנָם וְהֵם מְבַקְשִׁים לְאַבֵּד אֶת חַיָּיו. הוּא יוֹצֵא לְמִסְעָ שֶׁל שְׁלֹשָׁה יָמִים בְּמִדְבָּר עִם מִשְׁפָּחָתוֹ. נְפִי לֹקַח אֶת אָחָיו וְחוּזָר לְאֶרֶץ יְרוּשָׁלַם בְּעֶבֶר כְּתָב הַזְכָּרוֹן אֲשֶׁר לַיהוּדִים. תֹּאזֵר סְבָלָם. הֵם לֹקְחִים אֶת בָּנוֹת יִשְׁמָעֵאל לָהֶם לְנָשִׁים. הֵם לֹקְחִים אֶת מִשְׁפָּחוֹתֵיהֶם וְיוֹצֵאִים לְמִדְבָּר. תִּלְאֻתֵיהֶם וְסִבְלוֹתֵיהֶם בְּמִדְבָּר. מִהֲלֹךְ מִסְעֵיהֶם. הֵם מְגִיעִים לְמִים הַגְּדֹלִים. אָחָיו שֶׁל נְפִי מוֹרְדִים בּוֹ. הוּא מְבַלְבֵּל אוֹתָם, וּבֹנֶה סְפִינָה. הֵם קוֹרְאִים אֶת שֵׁם הַמָּקוֹם רֶב־שֹׁפֵעַ. הֵם חוֹצִים אֶת הַמִּים הַגְּדֹלִים אֶל הָאֶרֶץ הַיְעֻדָּה, וְשָׂאֵר הַקּוֹרוֹת אוֹתָם. זֹאת לְפִי תֹאזֵר נְפִי; אוּ בְּמַלְאִים אַחֲרוֹת, אֲנִי, נְפִי, כְּתִבְתִּי אֶת כְּתָב הַזְכָּרוֹן הַזֶּה. (בְּעֶרְךָ 588–600 לְפָנֵי הַסְפִּירָה.)

## א

אֲנִי, נְפִי, נִוְלַדְתִּי לְהוֹרִים נְכֻבָּדִים, לָכֵן יִסְדּוּ לְמוֹדִי עַל חֶלֶק מִכָּל חֻכְמַת אָבִי. וְאֵף אֲשֶׁר רָעוֹת רַבּוֹת רָאִיתִי בְיָמַי, חָנַן אוֹתִי יְהוָה בְּרַב טוֹבוֹ כָּל יָמַי. אָכֵן, קִנִּיתִי רַב דַּעַת עַל טוֹב אֱלֹהִים וְסִתְּרִיו; עַל כֵּן אֶכְתֹּב אֶת כְּתָב זְכָרוֹנֹתִי בְיָמַי.

אָכֵן, אֶכְתֹּב כְּתָב זְכָרוֹן בְּשֵׁפֶת אָבִי, אֲשֶׁר חִבְרוּ בָּהּ חֻכְמַת הַיְּהוּדִים וְשִׁפְתַּת הַמִּצְרִים.

יָדַעְתִּי אֲנִי כִּי כְּתָב הַזְכָּרוֹן אֲשֶׁר אֲנִי רוֹשֵׁם אֶמֶת הוּא; וּבִמְדִי יָדִי כְּתִבְתִּיו וְהוּא עַל פִּי יִדְעָתִי.

וְהָיָה בְּרֵאשִׁית שְׁנַת אַחַת לְמַלְכוּת צִדְקִיָּהוּ מֶלֶךְ יְהוּדָה, וְאָבִי, לְחִי, גָּר בִּירוּשָׁלַם כָּל יָמָיו; וּבְעֶצֶם הַשָּׁנָה הַהִיא בָּאוּ נְבִיאִים רַבִּים, וְהֵם הִתְנַבְּאוּ בָּעַם כִּי יִשׁוּבוּ מִדְּרָכָם כִּן תִּחְרַב הָעִיר הַגְּדוֹלָה יְרוּשָׁלַם.

וּבְצֵאת אָבִי, לְחִי, הִתְפַּלֵּל הוּא אֶל יְהוָה, אָכֵן בְּכָל לְבֹ הָעֵתִיר בְּעַד עַמּוֹ;

וְהָיָה בְּהֵעֲתִירוֹ אֶל יְהוָה, בָּא עַמּוּד אֵשׁ וְשָׁחַן עַל צוּר לְפָנָיו; וְהוּא רָאָה וְשָׁמַע רַבּוֹת.

## THE BOOK OF 1 NEPHI

*An account of Lehi and his wife Sariah, and his four sons, being called, beginning at the eldest, Laman, Lemuel, Sam, and Nephi. The Lord warns Lehi to depart out of the land of Jerusalem, because he prophesies to the people concerning their iniquity and they seek to destroy his life. He takes three days' journey into the wilderness with his family. Nephi takes his brethren and returns to the land of Jerusalem after the record of the Jews. The account of their sufferings. They take the daughters of Ishmael to wife. They take their families and depart into the wilderness. Their sufferings and afflictions in the wilderness. The course of their travels. They come to the large waters. Nephi's brethren rebel against him. He confounds them, and builds a ship. They call the name of the place Bountiful. They cross the large waters into the promised land, and so forth. This is according to the account of Nephi; or in other words, I, Nephi, wrote this record. (About 600–588 B.C.)*

## 1

1 I Nephi, having been born of goodly parents, therefore I was taught somewhat in all the learning of my father; and having seen many afflictions in the course of my days, nevertheless, having been highly favored of the Lord in all my days; yea, having had a great knowledge of the goodness and the mysteries of God, therefore I make a record of my proceedings in my days.

2 Yea, I make a record in the language of my father, which consists of the learning of the Jews and the language of the Egyptians.

3 And I know that the record which I make is true; and I make it with mine own hand; and I make it according to my knowledge.

4 For it came to pass in the commencement of the first year of the reign of Zedekiah, king of Judah, (my father, Lehi, having dwelt at Jerusalem in all his days); and in that same year there came many prophets, prophesying unto the people that they must repent, or the great city Jerusalem must be destroyed.

5 Wherefore it came to pass that my father, Lehi, as he went forth prayed unto the Lord, yea, even with all his heart, in behalf of his people.

6 And it came to pass as he prayed unto the Lord, there came a pillar of fire and dwelt upon a rock before him; and he saw and heard much;

וּבְחִזּוֹנָהּ חִיל וְרַעְדָּה עָזָה מִפְּנֵי הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר  
רָאָה וְאֵף שָׁמַע.

and because of the things which he saw and heard he did quake and tremble exceedingly.

וְהָיָה בְּשׁוּבוֹ אֶל בֵּיתוֹ אֲשֶׁר בִּירוּשָׁלַם,  
הוּא נָפַל עַל מִטָּתוֹ, יַעַן כִּי גָבְרוּ עָלָיו רוּחַ  
יְהוָה וְהַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר רָאָה.

7 And it came to pass that he returned to his own house at Jerusalem; and he cast himself upon his bed, being overcome with the Spirit and the things which he had seen.

וּבְגִבּוֹר עָלָיו הָרוּחַ, הוּא נִשָּׂא הֶרְחָק בְּחִזּוֹן,  
וְרָאָה אֶת הַשָּׁמַיִם נִפְתָּחִים וְדָמָה כִּי רָאָה אֶת  
אֱלֹהִים, וְהוּא יוֹשֵׁב עַל כִּסֵּאוֹ, וְסָבִיבוֹ מִקְהָלֵי  
מַלְאָכִים אֵין מִסְפָּר מְרֻנְנִים וּמְשַׁבְּחִים  
לְאֱלֹהֵיהֶם.

8 And being thus overcome with the Spirit, he was carried away in a vision, even that he saw the heavens open, and he thought he saw God sitting upon his throne, surrounded with numberless concourses of angels in the attitude of singing and praising their God.

וְהָיָה כִּי רָאָה בְּרִדָּת אֶחָד מִקִּרְבַּת הַשָּׁמַיִם,  
וְהִנֵּה זֵיו גָּדוֹל מִזֵּהַר הַשֶּׁמֶשׁ בְּצַהֲרֵי הַיּוֹם.

9 And it came to pass that he saw one descending out of the midst of heaven, and he beheld that his luster was above that of the sun at noon-day.

וְהוּא רָאָה שְׁנַיִם עֶשְׂרִי נֹסְפִים בָּאִים אַחֲרָיו,  
וְזִיוָם עַז מִזֵּהַר כּוֹכְבֵי הָרָקִיעַ.

10 And he also saw twelve others following him, and their brightness did exceed that of the stars in the firmament.

וְהֵם יָרְדוּ וַיֵּצְאוּ עַל פְּנֵי הָאָרֶץ. וְבָא הָרָאשׁוֹן  
וַעֲמַד לִפְנֵי אָבִי וְנָתַן לוֹ סֵפֶר וַצִּוְהוּ לִקְרֹא.

11 And they came down and went forth upon the face of the earth; and the first came and stood before my father, and gave unto him a book, and bade him that he should read.

וְהָיָה כְּקִרְאוֹ הוּא נִמְלָא רוּחַ יְהוָה.

12 And it came to pass that as he read, he was filled with the Spirit of the Lord.

וְהוּא קָרָא בְּסֵפֶר וְאָמַר: אוֹי אוֹי לִירוּשָׁלַם,  
כִּי רָאִיתִי אֶת תּוֹעֲבוֹתֶיךָ! וְכֵן עוֹד רַבִּים  
הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר קָרָא אָבִי בְּסֵפֶר עַל אוֹדוֹת  
יְרוּשָׁלַם, אֲשֶׁר הָיָה תַּחֲרֵב עַל יוֹשְׁבֵיהָ, וְאֲשֶׁר  
רַבִּים יָפְלוּ בַּחֲרֵב וְרַבִּים יָגְלוּ בַּבִּלָּה.

13 And he read, saying: Woe, woe, unto Jerusalem, for I have seen thine abominations! Yea, and many things did my father read concerning Jerusalem—that it should be destroyed, and the inhabitants thereof; many should perish by the sword, and many should be carried away captive into Babylon.

וְהָיָה בְּקִרְאָה אָבִי בְּסֵפֶר, וּבִרְאוֹתוֹ דְּבָרִים רַבִּים  
גְּדוֹלִים וְנִפְלְאִים, הוּא צָעַק אֶל יְהוָה דְּבָרִים  
רַבִּים, כְּמוֹ אֵלֶּה: גְּדוֹלִים וְנִפְלְאִים מַעֲשֵׂיךָ,  
יְהוָה אֵל שֶׁדִּי! כֹּס מַלְכוּתְךָ בְּגִבּוֹתֵי מְרוֹמִים  
וּגְבוּרָתְךָ וְטוֹבָךָ וְרַחֲמֶיךָ עַל כָּל יוֹשְׁבֵי הָאָרֶץ;  
וַיַּעַן אֲשֶׁר רַחוּם אַתָּה, לֹא תִסָּבֵל כִּי יֵאבְדוּ  
הַבָּאִים אֵלֶיךָ!

14 And it came to pass that when my father had read and seen many great and marvelous things, he did exclaim many things unto the Lord; such as: Great and marvelous are thy works, O Lord God Almighty! Thy throne is high in the heavens, and thy power, and goodness, and mercy are over all the inhabitants of the earth, and, because thou art merciful, thou wilt not suffer those who come unto thee that they shall perish!

כָּלשׁוֹן הַזֹּאת דִּבֶּר אָבִי בְּשִׁבְחוֹ אֶת אֱלֹהָיו,  
כִּי עֲלָצָה נַפְשׁוֹ, וְכָל לְבוֹ נִמְלָא מִפְּנֵי הַדְּבָרִים  
אֲשֶׁר רָאָה, אָכֵן, אֲשֶׁר הִרְאֶהוּ יְהוָה.

15 And after this manner was the language of my father in the praising of his God; for his soul did rejoice, and his whole heart was filled, because of the things which he had seen, yea, which the Lord had shown unto him.

וְהִנֵּה, אֲנִי, נְפִי, לֹא אֶסְפֵּר אֶת כָּל הַדְּבָרִים  
אֲשֶׁר כָּתַב אָבִי, כִּי הוּא כָּתַב דְּבָרִים רַבִּים  
אֲשֶׁר רָאָה בְּחִזּוֹנוֹת וּבַחֲלוֹמוֹת; וְהוּא אֵף

16 And now I, Nephi, do not make a full account of the things which my father hath written, for he hath written many things which he saw in visions and in dreams; and he also hath written many things which he

## נְפִי א א:יז-ב:ד

- כתב דְּבָרִים רַבִּים אֲשֶׁר הוּא נָבֵא אוֹתָם  
וְהִגִּידָם לְבָנָיו וְאֵינִי לֹא אֶסְפָּרם כְּתָמָם.
- אךְ אֲנִי אֶסְפָּר אֶת קוֹרֹתַי בְּיָמַי. הִנְנִי חוֹרֵט  
אֶת קְצוֹר כְּתָב הַזִּכְרוֹן אֲשֶׁר לְאָבִי עַל גְּבִי לוחות  
אֲשֶׁר עָשִׂיתִי בְּמִי יָדִי. וְאַחֵר קָצְרִי אֶת כְּתָב  
הַזִּכְרוֹן אֲשֶׁר לְאָבִי, אֶכְתֹּב אֶת קוֹרֹת חַיִּי.
- עַל כֵּן חָפֵץ אֲנִי אֲשֶׁר תִּדְעוּ, כִּי אַחֵר הָרְאוֹת  
יְהוָה נִפְלְאוֹת כֹּה רַבּוֹת לְאָבִי, לְחִי, עַל אוֹדוֹת  
חֲרָבֹן יְרוּשָׁלַם, יֵצֵא אָבִי אֶל הָעָם וְהַחֵל לְהַנְבִּיא  
בְּקִרְבָּם וּלְהוֹדִיעָם אֶת הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר רָאָה  
וְאֵף שָׁמַע.
- וְהָיָה כִּי לָעֵגוּ לוֹ אֲנָשֵׁי יְהוּדָה מִפְּנֵי הַדְּבָרִים  
אֲשֶׁר הֵעִיד בָּם, כִּי הוּא אָכֵן הוֹכִיחָם עַל  
רְשָׁעָתָם וְעַל תּוֹעֲבוֹתֵיהֶם. וְהוּא הֵעִיד כִּי  
הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר רָאָה וְשָׁמַע, וְכֵן הַדְּבָרִים  
אֲשֶׁר קָרָא בַסֵּפֶר, מְדַבְּרִים מִפְּרִשּׁוֹת עַל  
בּוֹא הַמָּשִׁיחַ וְאֵף עַל גְּאֻלַּת הָעוֹלָם.
- וְהָיָה כְּשָׁמַע אֲנָשֵׁי יְהוּדָה אֶת הַדְּבָרִים  
הָאֵלֶּה, הֵם רָגְזוּ עָלָיו; אָכֵן, כְּמַעֲשֵׂם בְּנֵי־אִדָם  
אֲשֶׁר מָקְדָם, אֲשֶׁר גִּרְשׁוּם וּרְגָמוּם וְהָרְגוּם;  
וְהֵם גַּם בִּקְשׁוּ אֶת נַפְשׁוֹ לְקַחְתָּהּ. וְאֲנִי, נָפִי,  
אֶרְאֶה אֹתְכֶם כִּי רַחֲמֵי יְהוָה הֵם עַל כָּל אֲשֶׁר  
בְּחָרָם, מִפְּנֵי אֱמוּנָתָם, לְחַזְקָם עַד הַיּוֹם  
לָהֶם הַכֹּחַ לְהוֹשִׁיעַ.

## ב

## 2

- וְיִהְיֶה דְּבַר אֶל אָבִי בַחֲלוֹם וְאָמַר אֵלָיו: בְּרוּךְ  
אַתָּה, לְחִי, עַל הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר עָשִׂיתָ וְעַל כִּי  
הָיִיתָ נֶאֱמָן וְתוֹדִיעָה אֶת הָעָם הַזֶּה אֶת הַדְּבָרִים  
אֲשֶׁר צִוִּיתִיךָ. הִנֵּה הֵם מְבַקְשִׁים אֶת נַפְשְׁךָ.
- וְיִהְיֶה צִוְּיָהּ אֶת אָבִי בַחֲלוֹם כִּי יִקַּח אֶת  
מִשְׁפַּחְתּוֹ וַיֵּצֵא מִמְדְּבָרָהּ.
- וְאָבִי שָׁמַע לְדְבַר יְהוָה וַעֲשָׂה כַּאֲשֶׁר צִוְּיָהּ.
- וְהָיָה כִּי הוּא יֵצֵא מִמְדְּבָרָהּ, וְעֹזֵב אֶת בֵּיתוֹ  
וְאֶת נַחֲלָתוֹ וְאֶת זְהָבוֹ וְאֶת כֶּסֶפוֹ, וְאֶת
- 1 For behold, it came to pass that the Lord spake unto my father, yea, even in a dream, and said unto him: Blessed art thou Lehi, because of the things which thou hast done; and because thou hast been faithful and declared unto this people the things which I commanded thee, behold, they seek to take away thy life.
- 2 And it came to pass that the Lord commanded my father, even in a dream, that he should take his family and depart into the wilderness.
- 3 And it came to pass that he was obedient unto the word of the Lord, wherefore he did as the Lord commanded him.
- 4 And it came to pass that he departed into the wilderness. And he left his house, and the land of his inheritance, and his gold, and his silver,

## נְפִי א ב:ה-י

יְקָרָתָיו; וְלֹא לָקַח עִמּוֹ דָּבָר, וְזוֹת מִשְׁפָּחָתוֹ  
וְצִידָה וְאַהֲלִים, וְהוּא יָצָא הַמִּדְבָּרָה.

וְהוּא יָרַד אֶל קְרֵבַת הַחוֹף אֲשֶׁר לִים סוּף.  
וְהוּא נָסַע בַּמִּדְבָּר בְּפָאֲתֵי יַם סוּף עַם  
מִשְׁפָּחָתוֹ, אֲשֶׁר הָיוּ בָּהּ אֲמִי שָׂרִיָּה וְאַחֵי  
הַגְּדוֹלִים, לָמֹן וּלְמוֹאֵל וְשָׁם.

וְהָיָה אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר נָסַע שְׁלֹשֶׁת יָמִים בַּמִּדְבָּר,  
הוּא נָטָה אֶת אָהְלוֹ בְּעֵמֶק לְיַד נְהַר מַיִם.

וְהוּא בָּנָה מִזְבֵּחַ אֲבָנִים וְהִקְרִיב קֶרֶבֶן לַיהוָה  
וְנָתַן תּוֹדוֹת לַיהוָה אֱלֹהֵינוּ.

וְהוּא קָרָא אֶת שֵׁם הַנְּהַר לָמֹן, וְהוּא נִשְׁפָּף  
אֶל יַם סוּף. וְהִעֲמֵק הָיָה בְּגִדוֹת הַנְּהַר, אֲצֵל  
תּוֹצְאוֹתָיו.

וְכִרְאוֹת אָבִי כִי מִיָּמֵי הַנְּהַר נִשְׁפָּכִים  
אֶל אֲגֹן יַם סוּף, הוּא דִּבֶּר אֶל לָמֹן לֵאמֹר:  
מִי יִתֵּן וְתִהְיֶה כְּנְהַר הַזֶּה, שׁוֹאֵף תָּמִיד  
אֶל אֲגֹן כָּל הַצִּדְקָה!

וְהוּא אָף דִּבֶּר אֶל לְמוֹאֵל: מִי יִתֵּן  
וְהִיִּיתָ כְּעֵמֶק הַזֶּה, אֵיתָן וְיָצִיב וּבִלְתִּי סָר  
מִמְצֻוֹת יְהוָה!

כֵּן דִּבֶּר אָבִי מִפְּנֵי קָשִׁי עֲרֹף לָמֹן וּלְמוֹאֵל,  
כִּי הִתְלוֹנְנוּ רַבּוֹת עַל אֲבִיהֶם, עַל אֲשֶׁר הָיָה  
אִישׁ חֲזוֹנוֹת וְעַל אֲשֶׁר הוֹבִילָם מֵאֶרֶץ  
יְרוּשָׁלַם, לְנִטֵּשׁ אֶת נַחֲלָתָם וְאֶת זָהָבָם  
וְאֶת כֶּסֶףָם וְאֶת יְקָרֹתֵיהֶם, לָמוֹת בַּמִּדְבָּר.  
וְהֵם אָמְרוּ כִּי זֹאת עֲשָׂה מִפְּנֵי דְמִיוֹנוֹת  
לְבֹ הָאֲיוּלִים.

כֹּה הִתְלוֹנְנוּ לָמֹן וּלְמוֹאֵל, הַגְּדוֹלִים אֲשֶׁר  
בְּאַחֵים, עַל אֲבִיהֶם, וְהֵם הִתְלוֹנְנוּ כִּי לֹא  
הִבִּינוּ אֶת מַפְעָלוֹת הָאֱלֹהִים אֲשֶׁר יַצְרָם.

אֵף הֵם לֹא הֶאֱמִינוּ כִּי תִחָרַב הָעִיר הַגְּדוֹלָה  
יְרוּשָׁלַם, כְּדִבְרֵי הַנְּבִיאִים. וְהָיוּ הֵם כְּאִנְשֵׁי  
יְהוּדָה אֲשֶׁר בִּירוּשָׁלַם, אֲשֶׁר בִּקְשׁוּ אֶת  
נַפְשׁ אָבִי.

וְאָבִי דִּבֶּר אֲלֵיהֶם תְּקִיפוֹת בְּעֵמֶק לְמוֹאֵל,  
וְהוּא מָלֵא רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ, עַד אֲשֶׁר רָעַד גּוֹפָם

and his precious things, and took nothing with him, save it were his family, and provisions, and tents, and departed into the wilderness.

5 And he came down by the borders near the shore of the Red Sea; and he traveled in the wilderness in the borders which are nearer the Red Sea; and he did travel in the wilderness with his family, which consisted of my mother, Sariah, and my elder brothers, who were Laman, Lemuel, and Sam.

6 And it came to pass that when he had traveled three days in the wilderness, he pitched his tent in a valley by the side of a river of water.

7 And it came to pass that he built an altar of stones, and made an offering unto the Lord, and gave thanks unto the Lord our God.

8 And it came to pass that he called the name of the river, Laman, and it emptied into the Red Sea; and the valley was in the borders near the mouth thereof.

9 And when my father saw that the waters of the river emptied into the fountain of the Red Sea, he spake unto Laman, saying: O that thou mightest be like unto this river, continually running into the fountain of all righteousness!

10 And he also spake unto Lemuel: O that thou mightest be like unto this valley, firm and steadfast, and immovable in keeping the commandments of the Lord!

11 Now this he spake because of the stiffneckedness of Laman and Lemuel; for behold they did murmur in many things against their father, because he was a visionary man, and had led them out of the land of Jerusalem, to leave the land of their inheritance, and their gold, and their silver, and their precious things, to perish in the wilderness. And this they said he had done because of the foolish imaginations of his heart.

12 And thus Laman and Lemuel, being the eldest, did murmur against their father. And they did murmur because they knew not the dealings of that God who had created them.

13 Neither did they believe that Jerusalem, that great city, could be destroyed according to the words of the prophets. And they were like unto the Jews who were at Jerusalem, who sought to take away the life of my father.

14 And it came to pass that my father did speak unto them in the valley of Lemuel, with power, being filled with the Spirit, until their frames did

## נְפִי א ב:טו-ג:א

מִפְּנֵי וְהוּא הִכְלִימָם לְבָל יִהְיוּ לְדָבָר בּוֹ סָרָה;  
וְהֵם עָשׂוּ כְּאֲשֶׁר צִוָּם.

shake before him. And he did confound them, that they durst not utter against him; wherefore, they did as he commanded them.

15 וְאָבִי שָׁכַן בְּאֹהֶל.

15 And my father dwelt in a tent.

וְאֲנִי, נְפִי, אֲף אֲשֶׁר הָיִיתִי צָעִיר מְאֹד,  
הָיִיתִי בָּעַל מְדָה, וְאִף הָיָה חֲפָצִי רַב לְדַעַת  
עַל אוֹדוֹת מִסְתָּרֵי אֱלֹהִים, עַל כֵּן זָעַקְתִּי  
אֶל יְהוָה, וְאָכֵן הוּא פָקַדְנִי וְנָטָה אֶת לִבִּי  
לְהֶאֱמִין בְּכָל אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר אָבִי, וְלֹא מָרַדְתִּי  
בּוֹ כְּאֶחָי.

16 And it came to pass that I, Nephi, being exceedingly young, nevertheless being large in stature, and also having great desires to know of the mysteries of God, wherefore, I did cry unto the Lord; and behold he did visit me, and did soften my heart that I did believe all the words which had been spoken by my father; wherefore, I did not rebel against him like unto my brothers.

וְדִבַּרְתִּי אֶל שָׁם וְהוֹדַעְתִּיהוּ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים  
אֲשֶׁר גָּלָה לִי יְהוָה בְּרוּחַ קֹדֶשׁ, וְהוּא  
הֶאֱמִין לְדִבְרֵי.

17 And I spake unto Sam, making known unto him the things which the Lord had manifested unto me by his Holy Spirit. And it came to pass that he believed in my words.

אֲף לָמֹן וּלְמוֹאֵל לֹא שָׁמְעוּ לְדִבְרֵי.  
וּבְהִיּוֹתִי נִעְצָב עַל קִשִּׁי לִבָּם, קָרָאתִי אֶל  
יְהוָה לְמַעַנָם.

18 But, behold, Laman and Lemuel would not hearken unto my words; and being grieved because of the hardness of their hearts I cried unto the Lord for them.

וְהָיָה דְּבַר יְהוָה אֵלַי לֵאמֹר: בְּרוּךְ אַתָּה,  
נְפִי, עַל אֱמוּנָתְךָ, כִּי שָׁקַדְתָּ לְשִׁחְרָנִי  
בְּלִב עֲנָן.

19 And it came to pass that the Lord spake unto me, saying: Blessed art thou, Nephi, because of thy faith, for thou hast sought me diligently, with lowliness of heart.

וְהָיָה אִם תִּשְׁמְרוּ אֶת מִצְוֹתַי, וְהִצַּלְתֶּם,  
וְתוֹבְלוּ אֶל אֶרֶץ יְעוּדָה, אֶל אֶרֶץ אֲשֶׁר  
הִכִּינוֹתִי לָכֶם, אֶרֶץ נִבְחָרָה מִכָּל הָאֲרָצוֹת.

20 And inasmuch as ye shall keep my commandments, ye shall prosper, and shall be led to a land of promise; yea, even a land which I have prepared for you; yea, a land which is choice above all other lands.

וְהָיָה אִם יִמְרְדוּ בְךָ אֶחָיו, כְּרוֹת יָכִרְתוּ  
מִלִּפְנֵי יְהוָה.

21 And inasmuch as thy brethren shall rebel against thee, they shall be cut off from the presence of the Lord.

וְהָיָה אִם תִּשְׁמֹר אֶת מִצְוֹתַי, וְהָיִיתָ מוֹשֵׁל  
עַל אֶחָיו וּמוֹרָה לָהֶם.

22 And inasmuch as thou shalt keep my commandments, thou shalt be made a ruler and a teacher over thy brethren.

כִּי הִנֵּה בְיוֹם אֲשֶׁר יִמְרְדוּ בִּי, אֲשַׁלַּח בָּהֶם  
מְאָרָה קָשָׁה, וְלֹא יִעֲצְרוּ כַח לְגִבּוֹר עַל זֶרַעַךְ,  
מִלִּבְד אֲשֶׁר יִמְרְדוּ בִּי אֲף הֵם.

23 For behold, in that day that they shall rebel against me, I will curse them even with a sore curse, and they shall have no power over thy seed except they shall rebel against me also.

וְהָיָה אִם יִמְרְדוּ בִּי זֶרַעַךְ, וְנָתַתִּי אֶת זֶרַע אֶחָיו  
שׁוֹט לְהַכּוֹתָם, לְעוֹרָרָם לְזָכֹר אֶת דְּרָכֵי.

24 And if it so be that they rebel against me, they shall be a scourge unto thy seed, to stir them up in the ways of remembrance.

## ג

## 3

וְאֲנִי, נְפִי, אַחֵר דִּבַּרְתִּי עִם יְהוָה, שִׁבְתִּי אֶל  
אֹהֶל אָבִי.

1 And it came to pass that I, Nephi, returned from speaking with the Lord, to the tent of my father.



- 2 And it came to pass that he spake unto me, saying: Behold I have dreamed a dream, in the which the Lord hath commanded me that thou and thy brethren shall return to Jerusalem.
- 3 For behold, Laban hath the record of the Jews and also a genealogy of my forefathers, and they are engraven upon plates of brass.
- 4 Wherefore, the Lord hath commanded me that thou and thy brothers should go unto the house of Laban, and seek the records, and bring them down hither into the wilderness.
- 5 And now, behold thy brothers murmur, saying it is a hard thing which I have required of them; but behold I have not required it of them, but it is a commandment of the Lord.
- 6 Therefore go, my son, and thou shalt be favored of the Lord, because thou hast not murmured.
- 7 And it came to pass that I, Nephi, said unto my father: I will go and do the things which the Lord hath commanded, for I know that the Lord giveth no commandments unto the children of men, save he shall prepare a way for them that they may accomplish the thing which he commandeth them.
- 8 And it came to pass that when my father had heard these words he was exceedingly glad, for he knew that I had been blessed of the Lord.
- 9 And I, Nephi, and my brethren took our journey in the wilderness, with our tents, to go up to the land of Jerusalem.
- 10 And it came to pass that when we had come up to the land of Jerusalem, I and my brethren did consult one with another.
- 11 And we cast lots—who of us should go in unto the house of Laban. And it came to pass that the lot fell upon Laman; and Laman went in unto the house of Laban, and he talked with him as he sat in his house.
- 12 And he desired of Laban the records which were engraven upon the plates of brass, which contained the genealogy of my father.
- 13 And behold, it came to pass that Laban was angry, and thrust him out from his presence; and he would not that he should have the records. Wherefore, he said unto him: Behold thou art a robber, and I will slay thee.
- וְאָבִי דִּבֶּר אֵלַי לֵאמֹר: הִנֵּה חֲלֹמְתִי חִלּוּם, וְבוֹ צִוִּי יְהוָה כִּי תָשׁוּבוּ, אֶתְּךָ וְאֶחָיְךָ, אֶל יְרוּשָׁלַם.
- כִּי הִנֵּה בְיַד לָבָן כְּתָב הַזְכָּרוֹן אֲשֶׁר לַיהוּדִים וְכֵן תּוֹלְדוֹת אֲבוֹתַי, וְהֵם חָרוּטִים עַל גְּבֵי לוחות נְחֹשֶׁת קָלִל.
- עַל כֵּן צִוִּי יְהוָה כִּי תֵלְכוּ, אֶתְּךָ וְאֶחָיְךָ, אֶל בֵּית לָבָן, וּתְבַקְשׁוּ אֶת כְּתָבֵי הַזְכָּרוֹנוֹת וּתְבִיאֻם הֵנָּה, הַמִּדְבָּרָה.
- וְעַתָּה, הִנֵּה אֶחָיְךָ מְתַלּוֹנְנִים בְּאַמְרָם כִּי קָשָׁה הַדְּבָר אֲשֶׁר דִּרְשָׁתִי מֵהֵם; אֲךָ רָאִיתִי כִּי לֹא אָנֹכִי דִרְשָׁתִי זֹאת מֵיָדָם, כִּי אִם מִצִּוּת יְהוָה הִיא.
- עַל כֵּן, לָכֵן, בְּנִי, וְיְהוָה יִחְנֶנִּי, כִּי לֹא הִתְלֹנְנִיתָ.
- וְאָנֹכִי, נְפִי, אָמַרְתִּי אֶל אָבִי: אֵלַי וְעֲשִׂיתִי אֶת הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר צִוָּה יְהוָה, יַעַן אֲשֶׁר יָדַעְתִּי כִּי לֹא יִצְוֶה יְהוָה אֶת בְּנֵי הָאָדָם, בְּלֹא אִם פָּנָה לָהֶם דֶּרֶךְ לַמַּעַן יִקְיִמוּ אֶת הַדְּבָר אֲשֶׁר צִוָּם.
- וְהָיָה בְּשִׁמְעִי אֲבִי אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, הוּא שָׂמַח מְאֹד, יַעַן אֲשֶׁר יָדַע כִּי בִרְכֵנִי יְהוָה.
- וְאָנֹכִי, נְפִי, וְאֶחָי יִצְאָנוּ לְמַסְעָנוּ בַּמִּדְבָּר וְאֶהְלִינוּ עִמָּנוּ, לַעֲלוֹת לְאֶרֶץ יְרוּשָׁלַם.
- וְהָיָה בְּעֲלוֹתָנוּ אֶל אֶרֶץ יְרוּשָׁלַם, נִוְעָצְנוּ אִישׁ בְּאָחִיו.
- וְהִפְלָנוּ גּוֹרְלוֹת, לְדַעַת מִי מִמֶּנּוּ יִלֶּךְ אֶל בֵּית לָבָן. וְהִגּוּרַל עַל לָמָן. וְלָמָן הָלַךְ אֶל בֵּית לָבָן וַדְּבַר עִמּוֹ, וְלָבָן יוֹשֵׁב בְּבֵיתוֹ.
- וְהוּא בִקֵּשׁ מִלָּבָן אֶת כְּתָבֵי הַזְכָּרוֹנוֹת הַחָרוּטִים עַל לוחות נְחֹשֶׁת קָלִל, אֲשֶׁר הָיוּ בָהֶם תּוֹלְדוֹת בֵּית אָבִי.
- וְלָבָן רָגַז וְגִרְשׁוּ מִפָּנָיו וְלֹא אָבָה לְתִתּוֹ אֶת הַכְּתָבִים, וְאָמַר אֵלָיו לָבָן: שׂוֹדֵד אַתָּה, הֲנִנִי קָם לְהָרְגֵךָ.



- 14 אך לָמֶן בָּרַח מִפָּנָיו וְסִפֵּר לָנוּ אֵת אֲשֶׁר עָשָׂה לוֹ לָבוֹן. וְאַנְחָנוּ הִתְעַצְבָנוּ מְאֹד, וְאָחִי הָיוּ נִכְוָנִים לָשׁוּב אֶל אָבִי הַמִּדְבָּרָה.
- 15 וְאָמַרְתִּי לָהֶם: חַי יְהוָה וְחַי נַפְשֵׁנוּ כִּי לֹא נֵרֵד אֶל אָבִינוּ הַמִּדְבָּרָה, עַד אֲשֶׁר נָקִים אֵת אֲשֶׁר צִוָּנוּ יְהוָה.
- 16 עַל כֵּן, הִבָּה נִשְׁמֹר אֲמוּנִים לְנֹצֵר אֵת מִצְוֹת יְהוָה; לָכֵן נֵרְדָה נָא אֶל נַחֲלַת אָבִינוּ, כִּי הִנֵּה הַשָּׂאִיר זָהָב וְכֶסֶף וְכָל עֶשֶׂר וְכָל זֶאת עָשָׂה מִפָּנֵי מִצְוֹת יְהוָה,
- 17 יַעַן אֲשֶׁר יָדַע כִּי יְרוּשָׁלַם תִּהְרָב מִפָּנֵי רָשָׁעִת אֲנָשִׁיָּהּ.
- 18 כִּי הִנֵּה מָאֲסוּ אֵת דְּבָרֵי הַנְּבִיאִים, וְאֵלוּ יֹשֵׁב אָבִי בְּאַרְץ אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר צִוָּה לְבָרֹחַ מִמֶּנָּה, הֵן אֲבָד אִף הוּא. עַל כֵּן שׁוּמָה הָיָה עָלָיו לָנוֹס מִן הָאֶרֶץ.
- 19 וְהִנֵּה, מִחֻכְמַת אֱלֹהִים זֹאת אֲשֶׁר נִקְבַּל אֵת כְּתָבֵי הַזְכָּרוֹנוֹת, לְמַעַן נִשְׁמֹר לְבָנֵינוּ אֵת שִׁפְתֵי אֲבוֹתֵינוּ;
- 20 וְאִף לְמַעַן נִשְׁמֹר בְּעֵבוֹרָם אֵת הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר יֵצְאוּ מִפִּי כָּל הַנְּבִיאִים הַקְּדוֹשִׁים, אֲשֶׁר רוּחַ אֱלֹהִים וּגְבוּרָתוֹ שָׁמָּה בְּפִיהֶם, מִימֵי רֵאשִׁית הָעוֹלָם וְעַד הַיּוֹם הַזֶּה.
- 21 בַּדְּבָרִים כָּאֵלֶּה מִשְׁכַּתִּי אֵת לֵב אָחִי אֲשֶׁר יִשְׁמְרוּ בְּאֲמוּנָה אֵת מִצְוֹת אֱלֹהִים.
- 22 וַיֵּרְדּוּ אֶל אֶרֶץ נַחֲלָתָנוּ וְאֶסְפָנוּ אֵת זָהָבֵנוּ וְאֵת כֶּסֶפֵּנוּ וְאֵת יְקָרוֹתֵינוּ.
- 23 וְאַחֵר אֲשֶׁר אֶסְפָנוּ אֵת כָּל אֵלֶּה, עָלִינוּ שֵׁנִית אֶל בֵּית לָבוֹן.
- 24 וּבָאנוּ אֶל לָבוֹן וּבִקְשָׁנוּ מִמֶּנּוּ כִּי יִתֵּן לָנוּ אֵת הַכְּתָבִים הַחֲרוּטִים עַל לוחוֹת נְחֹשֶׁת הַקָּלֵל אֲשֶׁר בְּעֵבוֹרָם נָתַן לוֹ אֵת זָהָבֵנוּ וְאֵת כֶּסֶפֵּנוּ וְכָל יְקָרוֹתֵינוּ.

## נְפִי א ג:כה-ד:ב

- 25 And it came to pass that when Laban saw our property, and that it was exceedingly great, he did lust after it, insomuch that he thrust us out, and sent his servants to slay us, that he might obtain our property.
- וְהָיָה כִּכְרָאוֹת לָבָן אֶת רְכוּשֵׁנוּ כִּי הָיָה רַב וְעֶצּוֹם הוּא חָמַד אוֹתוֹ, עַד אֲשֶׁר גָּרְשָׁנוּ מִבֵּיתוֹ וְאָף שָׁלַח אֶת עֲבָדָיו לְהָרִיגוֹ, לְמַעַן יִנָּחַל אֶת רְכוּשֵׁנוּ.
- 26 And it came to pass that we did flee before the servants of Laban, and we were obliged to leave behind our property, and it fell into the hands of Laban.
- וּבְרַחְנוּ מִפְּנֵי עֲבָדֵי לָבָן, וְהָיָה עָלֵינוּ לְהִשָּׁאִיר מֵאֲחֹרָאֵת רְכוּשֵׁנוּ, וְהוּא נָפַל בְּיַד לָבָן.
- 27 And it came to pass that we fled into the wilderness, and the servants of Laban did not overtake us, and we hid ourselves in the cavity of a rock.
- וּבְרַחְנוּ הַמִּדְבָּרָה, וְעֲבָדֵי לָבָן לֹא הִשִּׁיגוּנוּ. וְהִתְחַבְּאוּנוּ בְּמַעֲרַת סִלַּע.
- 28 And it came to pass that Laman was angry with me, and also with my father; and also was Lemuel, for he hearkened unto the words of Laman. Wherefore Laman and Lemuel did speak many hard words unto us, their younger brothers, and they did smite us even with a rod.
- וְלָמָן רָגַז עָלַי וְכֵן עַל אָבִי; וְלִמְוֵאל, אַחֵר שָׁמְעוּ לְדִבְרֵי לָמָן, כַּעֵס אָף הוּא. עַל כֵּן דִּבְּרוּ לָמָן וְלִמְוֵאל דְּבָרִים קָשִׁים רַבִּים אֵלֵינוּ, אַחֵיהֶם הַצְעִירִים, וְאָף הִכּוּנוּ בִּשְׁבָט.
- 29 And it came to pass as they smote us with a rod, behold, an angel of the Lord came and stood before them, and he spake unto them, saying: Why do ye smite your younger brother with a rod? Know ye not that the Lord hath chosen him to be a ruler over you, and this because of your iniquities? Behold ye shall go up to Jerusalem again, and the Lord will deliver Laban into your hands.
- וְהָיָה בְּהִכּוֹתָם אוֹתָנוּ בִּשְׁבָט, וְהִנֵּה בָּא מַלְאָךְ יְהוָה וְעָמַד לִפְנֵיהֶם וְדִבֵּר אֲלֵיהֶם לֵאמֹר: לָמָּה תִּכּוּ אֶת אַחֵיכֶם הַקָּטָן בִּשְׁבָט? הֲלֹא תִדְּעוּ כִּי בָחַר יְהוָה לְהִיּוֹת מוֹשֵׁל עָלֵיכֶם, וְזֹאת מִפְּנֵי עֲוֹנוֹתֵיכֶם? הִנֵּה, עֲלֶה תַעֲלֶה שְׁנֵית יְרוּשָׁלַיִם וְנִתֵּן יְהוָה אֶת לָבָן בְּיָדֵיכֶם.
- 30 And after the angel had spoken unto us, he departed.
- וְהָיָה כְּכֹלּוֹת הַמַּלְאָךְ לְדַבֵּר אֵלֵינוּ הוּא הִלָּךְ מִמֶּנּוּ.
- 31 And after the angel had departed, Laman and Lemuel again began to murmur, saying: How is it possible that the Lord will deliver Laban into our hands? Behold, he is a mighty man, and he can command fifty, yea, even he can slay fifty; then why not us?
- וְהָיָה אַחֵר צֵאתוֹ, הִחֲלוּ לָמָן וְלִמְוֵאל לְהִתְלַוֵּן שְׁנֵית לֵאמֹר: הֲכִיצֵד יִתֵּן יְהוָה אֶת לָבָן בְּיָדֵינוּ? הִנֵּה אִישׁ חֲזָק הוּא וְשֵׁר חֲמֻשִּׁים הֵנוּ וְיֵשׁ לֹא יָדוּ לְהָרֵג חֲמֻשִּׁים וּמִדּוּעַ אָף כִּי לֹא אוֹתָנוּ?

## ד

## 4

- 1 And it came to pass that I spake unto my brethren, saying: Let us go up again unto Jerusalem, and let us be faithful in keeping the commandments of the Lord; for behold he is mightier than all the earth, then why not mightier than Laban and his fifty, yea, or even than his tens of thousands?
- וְדִבַּרְתִּי אֶל אֶחָי לֵאמֹר: הִבֵּה נַעֲלֶה שְׁנֵית יְרוּשָׁלַיִם וְנִצְרְנוּ בְּאִמּוּנָה אֶת מִצְוֹת יְהוָה, כִּי הִנֵּה אֲדִיר הוּא מְכַל הָאָרֶץ, וּמִדּוּעַ אָף לֹא מְלָכָן וְחֲמֻשָּׁיו, וְאָף מִרְבָּבוֹתָיו?
- 2 Therefore let us go up; let us be strong like unto Moses; for he truly spake unto the waters of the Red Sea and they divided hither and thither, and our fathers came through, out of captivity, on dry ground, and the armies of Pharaoh did follow and were drowned in the waters of the Red Sea.
- עַל כֵּן הִבֵּה נַעֲלֶה, וְחִזְקֵנוּ כַּמֹּשֶׁה, כִּי הוּא אָבָן דִּבֵּר אֶל מֵי יָם סוּף וְחָצּוּ הַיָּם וְהִנֵּה, וְאֲבוֹתֵינוּ עָבְרוּ בּוֹ בַּיַּבֵּשָׁה מִן הַשָּׁבִי, וְצִבְאוֹת פָּרַעַה רָדְפוּ אַחֲרֵיהֶם וְטָבְעוּ בְּמֵי יָם סוּף.

- הִנֵּה תִדְעוּ כִּי אִמֶּת הִיא; וְאַף יוֹדְעִים אַתֶּם  
כִּי מִלֵּאף דִּבֶּר אֵלֵיכֶם, אִיכָּה תִּהְיֶהסֶסוּ? הִבֵּה  
נַעֲלָה; בְּיַד יְהוָה לְהַצִּילֵנוּ, כַּאֲשֶׁר עָשָׂה עִם  
אֲבוֹתֵינוּ, וּבִידּוֹ לְהַשְׁמִיד אֶת לָבָן, כַּאֲשֶׁר  
עָשָׂה לְמִצְרַיִם.
- וּכְדַבְּרִי אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, עוֹד אֲחִי רוּגְזִים  
וְאַף יוֹסִיפוּ לְהִתְלוֹנֵן; אֲךָ הֵם הִלְכוּ אַחֲרֵי עַד  
בּוֹאֵנוּ אֶל קִרְבַּת חוֹמוֹת יְרוּשָׁלַם.
- וְהָיָה בַּלַּיְלָה, וְאִמַּרְתִּי אֲלֵיהֶם לְהִסְתַּר מִחוּץ  
לְחוֹמוֹת. וְאַחֲרֵי הִסְתַּרְם, הִתְנַנַּבְתִּי, אֲנִי, נְפִי, אֶל  
תוֹךְ הָעִיר, וְהִלַּכְתִּי וּפְנֵי מוֹעֲדוֹת אֶל בֵּית לָבָן.
- הוּבְלַתִּי עַל יְדֵי הָרוּחַ מִבְּלִי דַעַת אֶת  
אֲשֶׁר אֶעֱשֶׂה.
- וְאֲכֹן, הִלַּכְתִּי קְדִימָה; וּבִהְתַּקְרְבִי אֶל בֵּית  
לָבָן וְהִנֵּה רָאִיתִי אִישׁ נוֹפֵל לְפָנַי עַל הָאָרֶץ,  
כִּי הָיָה שָׁכּוֹר מְיִין.
- וּבִקְרָבִי אֵלָיו רָאִיתִיו, וְהִנֵּה הוּא לָבָן.
- וְרָאִיתִי אֶת חֶרְבוֹ וּשְׁלֶפֶתָיָה מִתְעַרָּה.  
וְנֹצֵב הַחֶרֶב הָיָה זָהָב טָהוֹר, מַעֲשֵׂה אֲמָנוֹת,  
וְלַהֲבָה פִלָּדָה יְקָרָה מְאֹד.
- וְהָרוּחַ דָּחַק בִּי כִּי אֶהְרֹג אֶת לָבָן, אֲךָ אֲנִי  
אִמַּרְתִּי בְּלִבִּי: הֵן מֵעוֹלָם לֹא שְׁפַכְתִּי דָם אָדָם.  
וְנִסְגוּתִי לְאַחֹר כִּי לֹא חִפַּצְתִּי לְהָרְגוֹ.
- וְאָמַר אֵלַי הָרוּחַ שְׁנִית: הִנֵּה נִתְּנוּ יְהוָה בְּיָדְךָ.  
וְאֲכֹן גַּם יָדַעְתִּי כִּי בִקֵּשׁ לָבָן אֶת נַפְשִׁי וְלֹא  
שָׁמַע לְמִצְוֹת יְהוָה וְאַף גָּזַל הוּא אֶת רְכוּשֵׁנוּ.
- וְהָרוּחַ הוֹסִיף לֵאמֹר אֵלַי: הִרְגָהוּ, כִּי נִתְּנוּ  
יְהוָה בְּיָדְךָ.
- הִנֵּה הוֹרֵג יְהוָה אֶת הָרָשָׁעִים, לְהַקִּים אֶת  
צְדָקַת דְּרָכּוֹ. כִּי טוֹב אֶבְדֹּן אִישׁ אֶחָד מִהַשְׁחָת  
עִם שָׁלֹם בְּחֶסֶר אֲמוּנָה.
- וְאַנִּי, נְפִי, בְּשָׁמַעִי אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה,  
זָכַרְתִּי אֶת דְּבָרֵי יְהוָה אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר אֵלַי בַּמִּדְבָּר
- 3 Now behold ye know that this is true; and ye also know that an angel hath spoken unto you; wherefore can ye doubt? Let us go up; the Lord is able to deliver us, even as our fathers, and to destroy Laban, even as the Egyptians.
- 4 Now when I had spoken these words, they were yet wroth, and did still continue to murmur; nevertheless they did follow me up until we came without the walls of Jerusalem.
- 5 And it was by night; and I caused that they should hide themselves without the walls. And after they had hid themselves, I, Nephi, crept into the city and went forth towards the house of Laban.
- 6 And I was led by the Spirit, not knowing beforehand the things which I should do.
- 7 Nevertheless I went forth, and as I came near unto the house of Laban I beheld a man, and he had fallen to the earth before me, for he was drunken with wine.
- 8 And when I came to him I found that it was Laban.
- 9 And I beheld his sword, and I drew it forth from the sheath thereof; and the hilt thereof was of pure gold, and the workmanship thereof was exceedingly fine, and I saw that the blade thereof was of the most precious steel.
- 10 And it came to pass that I was constrained by the Spirit that I should kill Laban; but I said in my heart: Never at any time have I shed the blood of man. And I shrunk and would that I might not slay him.
- 11 And the Spirit said unto me again: Behold the Lord hath delivered him into thy hands. Yea, and I also knew that he had sought to take away mine own life; yea, and he would not hearken unto the commandments of the Lord; and he also had taken away our property.
- 12 And it came to pass that the Spirit said unto me again: Slay him, for the Lord hath delivered him into thy hands;
- 13 Behold the Lord slayeth the wicked to bring forth his righteous purposes. It is better that one man should perish than that a nation should dwindle and perish in unbelief.
- 14 And now, when I, Nephi, had heard these words, I remembered the words of the Lord which he spake unto me in the wilderness, saying

- לֵאמֹר: אִם יִשְׁמֹר זֶרְעֶךָ אֶת מִצְוֹתַי יִצְלִיחוּ  
בְּאֶרֶץ הַיְעוּדָה. that: Inasmuch as thy seed shall keep my commandments, they shall prosper in the land of promise.
- 15 אַף סָבַרְתִּי כִּי לֹא יוֹכְלוּ לְשָׁמֹר אֶת מִצְוֹת  
יְהוָה כְּכַתּוּב בְּתוֹרַת מֹשֶׁה, בְּלֹתִי אִם תְּהִיָּה  
הַתּוֹרָה בְּיָדָם. Yea, and I also thought that they could not keep the commandments of the Lord according to the law of Moses, save they should have the law.
- 16 וְאִף יָדַעְתִּי כִּי נִחְרְטָה הַתּוֹרָה עַל גְּבֵי לוחות  
נְחֹשֶׁת הַקָּלָל. And I also knew that the law was engraven upon the plates of brass.
- 17 וְיָדַעְתִּי עוֹד כִּי נָתַן יְהוָה אֶת לָבָן בְּיָדִי לְמַעַן  
הַתְּכַלִּית הַזֹּאת, לְמַעַן אֶקַּבֵּל אֶת כְּתָבִי  
הַזֵּכְרוֹן עַל פִּי מִצְוֹתָיו. And again, I knew that the Lord had delivered Laban into my hands for this cause—that I might obtain the records according to his commandments.
- 18 עַל כֵּן שָׁמַעְתִּי לְקוֹל הָרוּחַ וְתַפְשִׁיתִי אֶת לָבָן  
בְּשַׁעַר רֹאשׁוֹ, וְכָרַתִּי אֶת רֹאשׁוֹ בְּמוֹ חֶרֶב. Therefore I did obey the voice of the Spirit, and took Laban by the hair of the head, and I smote off his head with his own sword.
- 19 וְאַחֵר אֲשֶׁר כָּרַתִּי אֶת רֹאשׁוֹ בְּחֶרֶב, לְקַחְתִּי  
אֶת בְּגָדֵי לָבָן וּלְבָשָׁתִּים; לֹא הִחֲסֵרְתִּי דִבָּר.  
וְחִגַּרְתִּי אֶת שְׂרִיוֹנוֹ עַל מְתָנִי. And after I had smitten off his head with his own sword, I took the garments of Laban and put them upon mine own body; yea, even every whit; and I did gird on his armor about my loins.
- 20 וְכַעֲשׂוֹתִי זֹאת, הִלַּכְתִּי אֶל בֵּית הָאוֹצָר אֲשֶׁר  
לְלָבָן. וּבִלְכַתִּי אֶל בֵּית הָאוֹצָר רָאִיתִי אֶת עַבְדּוֹ  
לָבָן אֲשֶׁר בְּיָדוֹ מַפְתָּחוֹת הָאוֹצָר וְצִוִּיתִיָּהוּ,  
וְקוֹלִי קוֹל לָבָן. אֲשֶׁר יָלַף עָמִי אֶל הָאוֹצָר. And after I had done this, I went forth unto the treasury of Laban. And as I went forth towards the treasury of Laban, behold, I saw the servant of Laban who had the keys of the treasury. And I commanded him in the voice of Laban, that he should go with me into the treasury.
- 21 וְהוּא דָּמָה בְּלָבוֹ כִּי אֲדוֹנָיו לָבָן אֲנִי, כִּי רָאָה אֶת  
הַמַּלְבוּשִׁים וְכֵן אֶת הַחֶרֶב הַחֲגוּרָה עַל מְתָנִי. And he supposed me to be his master, Laban, for he beheld the garments and also the sword girded about my loins.
- 22 וְהוּא דִּבֶּר עָמִי עַל אֲדוֹת וְקָנִי אֲנָשֵׁי יְהוּדָה,  
בִּידְעוֹ כִּי אֲדוֹנָיו לָבָן נוֹעֵד עִמָּהֶם בַּלַּיְלָה. And he spake unto me concerning the elders of the Jews, he knowing that his master, Laban, had been out by night among them.
- 23 וְאֲנִי דִּבַּרְתִּי אֵלָיו כְּמוֹ הָיִיתִי לָבָן. And I spake unto him as if it had been Laban.
- 24 וְאֲמַרְתִּי אֵלָיו כִּי עָלִי לְשֵׂאת אֶת הַכְּתוּבִים  
הַחֲרוּטִים עַל לוחות נְחֹשֶׁת הַקָּלָל אֶל אַחֵי  
הַגְּדוֹלִים, אֲשֶׁר הֵם מֵחוּץ לַחוֹמוֹת. And I also spake unto him that I should carry the engravings, which were upon the plates of brass, to my elder brethren, who were without the walls.
- 25 וְאִף צִוִּיתִיו לָלֶכֶת אַחֵרִי. And I also bade him that he should follow me.
- 26 וְהוּא, בְּדַמּוֹתוֹ בִּנְפִשׁוֹ כִּי דִּבַּרְתִּי עַל אֲדוֹת בְּנֵי  
הַקְּהֵלָה, וְכִי אָמַנְסָה הָיִיתִי לָבָן. אֲשֶׁר הִרְגֵּיתִי,  
הַלֵּךְ אַחֵרִי. And he, supposing that I spake of the brethren of the church, and that I was truly that Laban whom I had slain, wherefore he did follow me.
- 27 וּבִלְכַתִּי אֶל אַחֵי אֲשֶׁר הָיוּ מֵחוּץ לַחוֹמוֹת,  
הוּא דִּבֶּר אֵלַי פְּעָמִים רַבּוֹת עַל אֲדוֹת וְקָנִי  
אֲנָשֵׁי יְהוּדָה. And he spake unto me many times concerning the elders of the Jews, as I went forth unto my brethren, who were without the walls.

- 28 והיה כאשר ראני לָמֹן, הוא נִחָרד חָרָדָה גְדוֹלָה, וְכֵן לְמוֹאֵל וְשָׁם, וְהֵם נָסוּ מִפָּנַי, כִּי דָמוּ בְנִפְשָׁם אֲשֶׁר לָבָן הוּא, וְכִי הוֹרִגְנִי, וּמִבְקֵשׁ הוּא אֶף אֶת נַפְשָׁם.
- 29 וְקִרְאתִי אַחֲרֵיהֶם, וְהֵם שָׁמְעוּנִי וַעֲמְדוּ מִנּוּס מִפָּנַי.
- 30 והיה בְּרֹאוֹת עֶבֶד לָבָן אֶת אֶחָי, אַחְזָתָהוּ רָעָדָה וְהוּא בָקֵשׁ לָנוֹס מִפָּנַי וּלְשׁוּב הָעִירָה, אֶל יְרוּשָׁלַם.
- 31 וְאַנִּי, נְפִי, בְּהִיּוֹתִי אִישׁ בַּעַל מְדָה, וּבִאֲשֶׁר חָנַן אוֹתִי יְהוָה בְּכֹחַ רַב, תַּפְשֵׁתִי אֶת עֶבֶד לָבָן וְהִחֲזַקְתִּי בּוֹ לִבָּל יָנוּס.
- 32 And it came to pass that I spake with him, that if he would hearken unto my words, as the Lord liveth, and as I live, even so that if he would hearken unto our words, we would spare his life.
- 33 וְדִבַּרְתִּי אֵלָיו בְּשִׁבּוּעָה כִּי לֹא יִירָא, כִּי חָפְשִׁי יִהְיֶה כְמוֹנוֹ, אִם יֵרֵד עִמָּנוּ הַמִּדְבָּרָה.
- 34 And I also spake unto him, saying: Surely the Lord hath commanded us to do this thing; and shall we not be diligent in keeping the commandments of the Lord? Therefore, if thou wilt go down into the wilderness to my father thou shalt have place with us.
- 35 וּבִשְׁמֻעוֹ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר דִּבַּרְתִּי הִתְאַזָּר זֹרָם עַז. וְזֹרָם הוּא שֵׁם עֶבֶד לָבָן. וְהוּא אָמַר כִּי יֵרֵד הַמִּדְבָּרָה, אֶל אֲבִינוּ. וְאַף נִשְׁבַּע הוּא לָנוּ כִּי יֵשֵׁב עִמָּנוּ מִן הַיּוֹם הַהוּא וְהַלָּאָה.
- 36 And it came to pass that Zoram did take courage at the words which I spake. Now Zoram was the name of the servant; and he promised that he would go down into the wilderness unto our father. Yea, and he also made an oath unto us that he would tarry with us from that time forth.
- 37 וְאַנְחֵנוּ חָפְצֵנוּ כִּי יֵשֵׁב עִמָּנוּ לִבָּל יֵדְעוּ אֲנָשֵׁי יְהוּדָה כִּי בָרַחְנוּ הַמִּדְבָּרָה פֶּן יִרְדּוּ אַחֲרֵינוּ וַיִּמָּיתוּנוּ.
- 38 And it came to pass that when Zoram had made an oath unto us, our fears did cease concerning him.
- 39 וְכַאֲשֶׁר נִשְׁבַּע לָנוּ זֹרָם אֲמוּנִים סָר פָּחַדְנוּ מִפָּנָיו.
- 40 וְלִקְחָנוּ אֶת לִוְחוֹת נְחֹשֶׁת הַקָּלֵל וְאֶת עֶבֶד לָבָן וַיֵּצְאוּנוּ הַמִּדְבָּרָה, וְנִסְעָנוּ אֶל אֹהֶל אֲבִינוּ.
- 41 And it came to pass that we took the plates of brass and the servant of Laban, and departed into the wilderness, and journeyed unto the tent of our father.

## ה

## 5

- וְהָיָה בְּבֹאֵנוּ הַמִּדְבָּרָה אֶל אָבִינוּ, מְלָאָה  
נִפְשׁוֹ גִילָה; וְאָף שִׂמְחַת אִמִּי, שָׂרִיָּה, גְּדֹלָה  
מְאֹד, כִּי אָבִן הִתְאַבְּלָה עָלֵינוּ.
- 1 And it came to pass that after we had come down into the wilderness unto our father, behold, he was filled with joy, and also my mother, Sariah, was exceedingly glad, for she truly had mourned because of us.
- וְעַן אֲשֶׁר סָבְרָה הִיא כִּי מָתְנוּ בַּמִּדְבָּר. וְהִיא  
אָף הִתְלוֹנְנָה עַל אָבִי בְּאִמְרָה אֵלָיו כִּי בַעַל  
חַזֹּנוֹת הוּא. וְהִיא אָמְרָה: הִנֵּה הוֹלֵכְתֵּנוּ מֵאֶרֶץ  
נַחֲלָתֵנוּ, וּבְנֵי אִיָּנָם עוֹד, וְאֵנּוּ אֲבָדְנוּ בַּמִּדְבָּר.
- 2 For she had supposed that we had perished in the wilderness; and she also had complained against my father, telling him that he was a visionary man; saying: Behold thou hast led us forth from the land of our inheritance, and my sons are no more, and we perish in the wilderness.
- כְּדִבְרֵים הָאֵלֶּה הִתְלוֹנְנָה אִמִּי עַל אָבִי.
- 3 And after this manner of language had my mother complained against my father.
- וְאָבִי דִּבֶּר אֵלֶיהָ לֵאמֹר: יָדַעְתִּי אֲשֶׁר בַּעַל  
חַזֹּנוֹת אָנֹכִי, כִּי לִילִי רָאִיתִי דְּבָרֵי אֱלֹהִים  
בְּחֻזּוֹן, לֹא יָדַעְתִּי אֶת טוֹב אֱלֹהִים, אִף  
נִשְׁאַרְתִּי לְשָׁכֵן בִּירוּשָׁלַם לְגֹעַ עִם אָחִי.
- 4 And it had come to pass that my father spake unto her, saying: I know that I am a visionary man; for if I had not seen the things of God in a vision I should not have known the goodness of God, but had tarried at Jerusalem, and had perished with my brethren.
- אֲךָ הִנֵּה נַחֲלָתִי אֶרֶץ יְעוֹזָה, וּבִזְאוֹת יָגֵל לָבִי.  
אָבִן יָדַעְתִּי כִּי יֵצֵא יְהוָה אֶת בְּנֵי מִיַּד לָבִן  
וַיִּשְׁבִּיָם מִשָּׁה אֵלֵינוּ הַמִּדְבָּרָה.
- 5 But behold, I have obtained a land of promise, in the which things I do rejoice; yea, and I know that the Lord will deliver my sons out of the hands of Laban, and bring them down again unto us in the wilderness.
- כְּדִבְרֵים כֵּאלֶּה עַל אוֹדוֹתֵינוּ נָחַם אָבִי,  
לְחִי, אֶת אִמִּי שָׂרִיָּה בַּעַת מִסְעָנֵנוּ בַּמִּדְבָּר  
וַעֲלוֹתֵנוּ אֶל אֶרֶץ יְרוּשָׁלַם לְקַחַת אֶת כְּתָב  
הַזְכָּרוֹת אֲשֶׁר לִיהוּדִים.
- 6 And after this manner of language did my father, Lehi, comfort my mother, Sariah, concerning us, while we journeyed in the wilderness up to the land of Jerusalem, to obtain the record of the Jews.
- וּכְאֲשֶׁר שָׁבְנוּ אֶל אֹהֶל אָבִי, הָיְתָה שִׂמְחָתָם  
שְׁלֵמָה וְאִמִּי נִחְמָה.
- 7 And when we had returned to the tent of my father, behold their joy was full, and my mother was comforted.
- וְאִמִּי דִּבְרָה לֵאמֹר: עַתָּה יָדַעְתִּי אֶל נָכוֹן כִּי  
צָוָה יְהוָה אֶת אִישִׁי לִבְרוֹחַ הַמִּדְבָּרָה. אִף  
יָדַעְתִּי אֶל נָכוֹן כִּי הִגָּן יְהוָה עַל בְּנֵי וְהִצִּילָם  
מִיַּד לָבִן וְנָתַן לָהֶם כֹּחַ לְהַקִּים אֶת אֲשֶׁר צָוָה.  
כְּדִבְרֵים הָאֵלֶּה דִּבְרָה אִמִּי.
- 8 And she spake, saying: Now I know of a surety that the Lord hath commanded my husband to flee into the wilderness; yea, and I also know of a surety that the Lord hath protected my sons, and delivered them out of the hands of Laban, and given them power whereby they could accomplish the thing which the Lord hath commanded them. And after this manner of language did she speak.
- וְהֵם עָלְצוּ מְאֹד וְהִעֲלוּ זֶבֶח וְעוֹלָה לַיהוָה  
וְהוּדוּ לֵאלֹהֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל.
- 9 And it came to pass that they did rejoice exceedingly, and did offer sacrifice and burnt offerings unto the Lord; and they gave thanks unto the God of Israel.
- וְהָיָה אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר הוּדוּ לֵאלֹהֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל, לָקַח אָבִי,  
לְחִי, אֶת כְּתָבֵי הַזְכָּרוֹת אֲשֶׁר נִחְרְטוּ עַל  
לוּחוֹת נְחֹשֶׁת הַקְּקָל וְחָקַר בָּהֶם מֵרֵאשִׁיתָם.
- 10 And after they had given thanks unto the God of Israel, my father, Lehi, took the records which were engraven upon the plates of brass, and he did search them from the beginning.



## נפִי א ה:יא-כב

- 11 והוא רָאָה כִּי יֵשׁ בָּהֶם חֲמִשָּׁת הַסְּפָרִים אֲשֶׁר לְמֹשֶׁה, הַמְּסַפְּרִים עַל בְּרִיאַת הָעוֹלָם וְעַל אָדָם וְחוּהָ אֲשֶׁר הֵם הוֹרִינוּ הָרִאשׁוֹנִים.
- 12 וְאִף כֶּתֶב הַזְּכוֹנוֹת אֲשֶׁר לַיהוּדִים, מֵרִאשִׁיתָם וְעַד תַּחֲלַת שְׁלֹטוֹן צִדְקִיָּהוּ מֶלֶךְ יְהוּדָה.
- 13 וְאִף נְבוּאוֹת הַנְּבִיאִים הַקְּדוֹשִׁים, מֵרִאשִׁיתָן וְעַד תַּחֲלַת שְׁלֹטוֹן צִדְקִיָּהוּ; וְכֵן נְבוּאוֹת רַבּוֹת, אֲשֶׁר יֵצְאוּ מִפִּי יִרְמְיָהוּ.
- 14 וְאֲבִי, לְחִי, מָצָא עַל לוּחוֹת נְחֹשֶׁת הַקָּלֵל גַּם אֶת תּוֹלְדוֹת אֲבוֹתָיו. כִּךְ יָדַע כִּי יוֹצֵא חֲלָצִי יוֹסֵף הוּא; הוּא יוֹסֵף בֶּן יַעֲקֹב אֲשֶׁר נִמְכַּר לְמִצְרַיִם, אֲשֶׁר הִצִּילָהוּ יְד יְהוָה לִמְעַן יִצִּיל אֶת אָבִיו יַעֲקֹב וְאֶת כָּל בְּנֵי בֵיתוֹ מִמוֹת בָּרָעַב.
- 15 וְהֵם אִף הוּצְאוּ מִן הַשְּׁבִיָּה וּמֵאֶרֶץ מִצְרַיִם בְּיַד אֱלֹהִים, אֲכֵן הוּא אֲשֶׁר שָׁמְרָם.
- 16 כֹּה גָּלָה אֲבִי, לְחִי, אֶת תּוֹלְדוֹת אֲבוֹתָיו. וְלָכֵן, אִף הוּא הָיָה יוֹצֵא חֲלָצִי יוֹסֵף; לָכֵן שָׁמַר אֶת כְּתָבֵי הַזְּכוֹנוֹת, הוּא וְאֲבוֹתָיו.
- 17 וְהָיָה בְּרֹאוֹת אָבִי אֶת כָּל אֵלֶּה, הוּא נִמְלָא רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ וַהֲתִנַּבֵּא עַל זֶרְעוֹ;
- 18 כִּי לוּחוֹת נְחֹשֶׁת הַקָּלֵל הָאֵלֶּה אֲכֵן יִפּוּצוּ בְּכָל הָאֲמּוֹת וְהַמְּשַׁפּוֹת וְהַלְשׁוֹנוֹת וְהָעַמִּים אֲשֶׁר יִהְיוּ מִזֶּרְעוֹ.
- 19 עַל כֵּן אָמַר כִּי לוּחוֹת נְחֹשֶׁת הַקָּלֵל הָאֵלֶּה לֹא יִאבְדּוּ לְעוֹלָם וְאִף לֹא יִכָּהוּ בְּרִבּוֹת הַיָּמִים. וְהוּא נָבֵא דְבָרִים רַבִּים עַל אֹדוֹת זֶרְעוֹ.
- 20 וְהָיָה עַד הַעַת הַהִיא, אֲנִי וְאָבִי שָׁמְרָנוּ אֶת הַמִּצְוֹת אֲשֶׁר צִוָּנוּ יְהוָה.
- 21 וְלִקְחָנוּ אֶת כְּתָבֵי הַזְּכוֹנוֹת אֲשֶׁר צִוָּנוּ יְהוָה וְחִקְרָנוּ אוֹתָם וְרָאִינוּ כִּי נִחְמָדִים הֵם וְכִי רַב עֶרְכָּם בְּעֵינֵינוּ, וּבָהֶם יִכְלָנוּ לְשַׁמֵּר אֶת מִצְוֹת יְהוָה בְּמִסְרָנוּ אוֹתָם לְבָנֵינוּ.
- 22 עַל כֵּן מִחֻמַּת יְהוָה הָיְתָה זֹאת אֲשֶׁר נִקְחָם עִמָּנוּ בְּמִסְעָנוּ בַּמִּדְבָּר אֶל הָאָרֶץ הַיְעוּדָה.

## 1

וְאֲנִי, נְפִי, לֹא אֶכְתֹּב אֶת תּוֹלְדוֹת אֲבוֹתַי בְּזֶה  
אֲשֶׁר רָשַׁמְתִּי, וְלֹא אֶעֱשֶׂה כֵן אַחֵר כִּד בְּלוּחוֹת  
אֲשֶׁר לִי, כִּי כְתוּבִים הֵם בְּסֵפֶר הַזִּכְרוֹן אֲשֶׁר  
שָׁמַר אָבִי. עַל כֵּן לֹא אֶכְתֹּבֶם בְּסֵפֶר הַזֶּה.

דִּי לִי לֹמַר כִּי מִצְאָצְאֵי יוֹסֵף אֲנִינִי.

וְאִין בְּלִבִּי עַל אֲשֶׁר אֵינִי מְרַבֵּה לְסַפֵּר  
אֶת כָּל דְּבָרֵי אָבִי, כִּי אֵין נָתַן לְכַתְּבָם עַל  
גְּבִי הַלּוּחוֹת הָאֵלֶּה כִּי רָצוֹנִי לְמַלֵּא אֶת פְּנֵיהֶם  
לְכַתִּיבָה עַל אוֹדוֹת דְּבָרֵי אֱלֹהִים.

כִּי מְלֵא כְּוִנָּתִי הִיא לְמַשׁוֹךְ אֶת לֵב בְּנֵי הָאָדָם  
לְבוֹא אֶל אֱלֹהֵי אֲבֹרָהֶם, אֱלֹהֵי יִצְחָק וְאֱלֹהֵי  
יַעֲקֹב וְלִהְיוֹשֵׁעַ.

עַל כֵּן לֹא אֶכְתֹּב אֶת הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר יֵשׁ בָּהֶם  
חִפְץ לְבְנֵי הָעוֹלָם הַזֶּה, כִּי אִם אֶת אֲשֶׁר חִפְץ  
בָּהֶם אֱלֹהִים וְאֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר אֵינָם מִבְּנֵי הָעוֹלָם הַזֶּה.

עַל כֵּן אֶצְוֶה אֶת זֶרְעִי לְבַל יִמְלְאוּ אֶת הַלּוּחוֹת  
הָאֵלֶּה בַּדְּבָרִים מִחֲסְרֵי עֲרֹךְ  
לְבְנֵי הָאָדָם.

## 2

וְעַתָּה רָצוֹנִי כִּי תִדְעוּ כִּי בְּחַתְמוֹ אָבִי, לְחִי,  
לְהַתְנַבֵּא עַל זֶרְעוֹ, הָיָה אֵלָיו דְּבַר יְהוָה שְׁנִית,  
וְאָמַר כִּי לֹא טוֹב לָכֶתוּ עִם מִשְׁפַּחְתּוֹ לְבָדֶם  
הַמִּדְבָּרָה, כִּי שׁוּמָה עַל בְּנָיו לְקַחַת לָהֶם  
בָּנוֹת לְנָשִׁים, לְמַעַן יִקְיִמוּ זֶרַע לִיהוָה  
בְּאֶרֶץ הַיְעוּדָה.

וַיְהוֶה צִוָּה אֶת אָבִי כִּי נָשׁוּב, אֲנִי, נְפִי, וְאֲחִי,  
אֶל אֶרֶץ יְרוּשָׁלַם וְנָבִיא עִמָּנוּ אֶת יִשְׁמַעְאֵל  
וּבֵיתוֹ הַמִּדְבָּרָה.

עַל כֵּן נִסְעָנוּ שְׁנֵית הַמִּדְבָּרָה, אֲנִי, נְפִי,  
עִם אֲחִי, לְעֵלּוֹת יְרוּשָׁלַם.

וְעָלִינוּ אֶל בֵּית יִשְׁמַעְאֵל וּמִצָּאנוּ חֵן בְּעֵינָיו,  
עַד כִּי דִבְרָנוּ אֵלָיו אֶת דְּבָרֵי יְהוָה.

## 6

1 And now I, Nephi, do not give the genealogy of my fathers in this part of my record; neither at any time shall I give it after upon these plates which I am writing; for it is given in the record which has been kept by my father; wherefore, I do not write it in this work.

2 For it sufficeth me to say that we are descendants of Joseph.

3 And it mattereth not to me that I am particular to give a full account of all the things of my father, for they cannot be written upon these plates, for I desire the room that I may write of the things of God.

4 For the fulness of mine intent is that I may persuade men to come unto the God of Abraham, and the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, and be saved.

5 Wherefore, the things which are pleasing unto the world I do not write, but the things which are pleasing unto God and unto those who are not of the world.

6 Wherefore, I shall give commandment unto my seed, that they shall not occupy these plates with things which are not of worth unto the children of men.

## 7

1 And now I would that ye might know, that after my father, Lehi, had made an end of prophesying concerning his seed, it came to pass that the Lord spake unto him again, saying that it was not meet for him, Lehi, that he should take his family into the wilderness alone; but that his sons should take daughters to wife, that they might raise up seed unto the Lord in the land of promise.

2 And it came to pass that the Lord commanded him that I, Nephi, and my brethren, should again return unto the land of Jerusalem, and bring down Ishmael and his family into the wilderness.

3 And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did again, with my brethren, go forth into the wilderness to go up to Jerusalem.

4 And it came to pass that we went up unto the house of Ishmael, and we did gain favor in the sight of Ishmael, insomuch that we did speak unto him the words of the Lord.



- ויהוה הרף את לב ישמעאל וכן את לב בני ביתו, עד כי ירדו עמנו המדברה אל אהל אבינו.
- 5 And it came to pass that the Lord did soften the heart of Ishmael, and also his household, insomuch that they took their journey with us down into the wilderness to the tent of our father.
- והיה בנסענו במדבר, והנה למן ולמואל ושתי בנות ישמעאל ושני הבנים אשר לישמעאל ובני משפחתם מרדו בנו, אכן, הם מרדו בי, נפי, ובשם ובאביהם. ישמעאל, ובאשתו ושלוש בנותיו הנוספות.
- 6 And it came to pass that as we journeyed in the wilderness, behold Laman and Lemuel, and two of the daughters of Ishmael, and the two sons of Ishmael and their families, did rebel against us; yea, against me, Nephi, and Sam, and their father, Ishmael, and his wife, and his three other daughters.
- והיה במרדם בנו הם בקשו לשוב אל ארץ ירושלם.
- 7 And it came to pass in the which rebellion, they were desirous to return unto the land of Jerusalem.
- ואני, נפי, נעצבתי על קשי לבם; על כן דברתי אליהם, אל למן ואל למואל, לאמרו: ראו נא, הנכם אחי הבכירים ואיכה זה תקשו לבבכם ועיניכם טחו מראות, עד אשר חייב אני, אחיכם הצעיר, לדבר אליכם ולהיות לכם למופת.
- 8 And now I, Nephi, being grieved for the hardness of their hearts, therefore I spake unto them, saying, yea, even unto Laman and unto Lemuel: Behold ye are mine elder brethren, and how is it that ye are so hard in your hearts, and so blind in your minds, that ye have need that I, your younger brother, should speak unto you, yea, and set an example for you?
- איכה לא שמעתם לדברי יהוה.
- 9 How is it that ye have not hearkened unto the word of the Lord?
- איכה שכחתם כי ראיתם מלאך יהוה.
- 10 How is it that ye have forgotten that ye have seen an angel of the Lord?
- איכה שכחתם כמה גדולים מעשי יהוה אשר עשה למעננו בהצילו אותנו מידי לבן וכן בקבלנו את כתב הזכרון.
- 11 Yea, and how is it that ye have forgotten how great things the Lord hath done for us, in delivering us out of the hands of Laban, and also that we should obtain the record?
- איכה שכחתם כי ביד יהוה לעשות את כל חפצו למען בני האדם, אם אף מחזיקים הם באמונה בו, על כן הבה נהיה לו שומרי אמונים.
- 12 Yea, and how is it that ye have forgotten that the Lord is able to do all things according to his will, for the children of men, if it so be that they exercise faith in him? Wherefore, let us be faithful to him.
- והיה אם נשמר לו אמונים, הרי נקבל את הארץ היעודה; ואתם תדעו בימים אשר יבואו כי יקום דבר יהוה על חרבן ירושלם, כי כל אשר דבר יהוה על אודות חרבנה קום יקום.
- 13 And if it so be that we are faithful to him, we shall obtain the land of promise; and ye shall know at some future period that the word of the Lord shall be fulfilled concerning the destruction of Jerusalem; for all things which the Lord hath spoken concerning the destruction of Jerusalem must be fulfilled.
- הן עד מהרה יחדל רוח יהוה להתאמץ עמם, כי מאסו את הנביאים והשליכו את ירמיהו אל בית הכלא. והם בקשו את נפש אבי, עד כי גרשוהו מן הארץ.
- 14 For behold, the Spirit of the Lord ceaseth soon to strive with them; for behold, they have rejected the prophets, and Jeremiah have they cast into prison. And they have sought to take away the life of my father, insomuch that they have driven him out of the land.
- ועתה הנני אומר לכם: אם תשובו ירושלימה, תאבדו אף אתם עמהם. ואם נבחר בעיניכם, עלו אל הארץ וזכרתם את אשר אנכי אומר
- 15 Now behold, I say unto you that if ye will return unto Jerusalem ye shall also perish with them. And now, if ye have choice, go up to the land, and remember the words which I speak unto you, that if ye go ye

- לָכֶם: אִם תִּלְכוּ, תֵּאבְדוּ אִף אַתֶּם; הֵן כִּךְ  
הִצִּיקֵנִי רוּחַ יְהוָה לְדַבֵּר.
- 16 And it came to pass that when I, Nephi, had spoken these words unto my brethren, they were angry with me. And it came to pass that they did lay their hands upon me, for behold, they were exceedingly wroth, and they did bind me with cords, for they sought to take away my life, that they might leave me in the wilderness to be devoured by wild beasts.
- 17 But it came to pass that I prayed unto the Lord, saying: O Lord, according to my faith which is in thee, wilt thou deliver me from the hands of my brethren; yea, even give me strength that I may burst these bands with which I am bound.
- 18 And it came to pass that when I had said these words, behold, the bands were loosed from off my hands and feet, and I stood before my brethren, and I spake unto them again.
- 19 And it came to pass that they were angry with me again, and sought to lay hands upon me; but behold, one of the daughters of Ishmael, yea, and also her mother, and one of the sons of Ishmael, did plead with my brethren, insomuch that they did soften their hearts; and they did cease striving to take away my life.
- 20 And it came to pass that they were sorrowful, because of their wickedness, insomuch that they did bow down before me, and did plead with me that I would forgive them of the thing that they had done against me.
- 21 And it came to pass that I did frankly forgive them all that they had done, and I did exhort them that they would pray unto the Lord their God for forgiveness. And it came to pass that they did so. And after they had done praying unto the Lord we did again travel on our journey towards the tent of our father.
- 22 And it came to pass that we did come down unto the tent of our father. And after I and my brethren and all the house of Ishmael had come down unto the tent of my father, they did give thanks unto the Lord their God; and they did offer sacrifice and burnt offerings unto him.
- וְהָיָה בְּדַבְּרִי, אֲנִי, נְפִי, אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה  
אֶל אַחֵי, הֵם כָּעָסוּ עָלַי וְשָׁלְחוּ יָדֵיהֶם אֵלַי,  
כִּי רָגְזוּ מְאֹד; וְהֵם אָסְרוּנִי בַּחֲבָלִים,  
כִּי בָקְשׁוּ אֶת נַפְשִׁי וּלְנַשְׁטֵשְׁנִי בַּמִּדְבָּר,  
טָרֶף לְחַיּוֹת פְּרָא.
- וְהָיָה כְּאֶמְרִי אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, וְהָיָה נִפְּלוּ  
הַחֲבָלִים אֲשֶׁר עַל יָדַי וְעַל רַגְלִי, וְאֲנִי עֹמְדָתִי  
לִפְנֵי אַחֵי וְדַבַּרְתִּי אֲלֵיהֶם שֵׁנִית.
- וְהֵם רָגְזוּ עָלַי כְּבָרָאשׁוֹנָה וּבָקְשׁוּ לְשַׁלַּח  
אֶת יְדֵיהֶם בִּי, וְהָנָה, אַחַת מִבְּנוֹת יִשְׁמָעֵאל,  
וְכֵן אִמָּהּ וְאֶחָד מִבְּנֵי יִשְׁמָעֵאל, הִתְחַנְּנוּ אֵלַי  
אֲחֵי עַד אֲשֶׁר רָךְ לִבָּבָם וְהֵם חָדְלוּ לְבָקֵשׁ  
אֶת נַפְשִׁי.
- וְהֵם נִעְצְבוּ עַל רִשְׁעָתָם, וְהִשְׁתַּחֲווּ לִפְנֵי  
וּבָקְשׁוּ אֶת סְלִיחָתִי עַל הָרָעָה אֲשֶׁר עָשׂוּ לִי.
- וְאֲנִי סָלַחְתִּי לָהֶם כְּתָם לִבָּבִי עַל כָּל אֲשֶׁר עָשׂוּ  
וְעִוְרָתִים לְהַתְפַּלֵּל אֵל יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵיהֶם לְמַעַן  
יִסָּלַח לָהֶם; וְכֵן עָשׂוּ. וְהָיָה אַחֵר הִתְפַּלֵּלְם אֵל  
יְהוָה הוֹסַפְנוּ לְנִסֵּעַ אֶל אָהֶל אַבְיֵנוּ.
- אָכֵן, יָרַדְנוּ אֶל אָהֶל אַבְיֵנוּ. וְאַחֵר רִדְתִּי עִם  
אַחֵי וְכָל בֵּית יִשְׁמָעֵאל אֶל אָהֶל אָבִי, הֵם נָתְנוּ  
תּוֹדוֹת לַיהוָה אֱלֹהֵיהֶם וְהִעָּלוּ לוֹ זֶבַח וְעֹלָה.

## ח

## 8

- 1 And it came to pass that we had gathered together all manner of seeds of every kind, both of grain of every kind, and also of the seeds of fruit of every kind.
- וְאֶסְפְּנוּ כָּל מִינֵי זֵרַעִים, מִמִּינֵי כָּל הַדָּגָנִים  
וְעוֹד כָּל מִינֵי זֵרַעֵי פְּרוֹת.

- וְהָיָה בָּעֵת שֶׁבַת אָבִי בַּמִּדְבָּר הוּא דִּבֶּר  
אֵלַינוּ לֵאמֹר: הִנֵּה חֲלֹמְתִי חֲלוּם; אוֹ בְּמַלְיָם  
אַחֲרוֹת: חֲזִיתִי חֲזוֹן.
- וְהִנֵּה עָלַץ לְבִי בִיהוּה בְּרֹאוֹתַי אֶת אֲשֶׁר עָשָׂה  
מִפְּנֵי נְפִי וְשָׁם; אָכֵן, מִזֶּה אֲשֶׁר רָאִיתִי יֵשׁ לִי עַל  
מֶה לְהַנִּיחַ כִּי הֵמָּה, וְכֹן רַבִּים מִזֶּרְעָם, יִנָּשְׁעוּ.
- אֲדָּה הִנֵּה, לָמֹן וּלְמוֹאֵל, יִרְאֵתִי מֵאֹד מִפְּנֵיכֶם,  
כִּי הִנֵּה נִדְמָה לִי אֲשֶׁר בְּחֹלֹמִי רָאִיתִי מִדְּבַר  
שְׂמָמָה וְחֹשֶׁכָה.
- וְהִנֵּה רָאִיתִי אִישׁ לְבוּשׁ שְׂמָלָה לְבָנָה, וְהוּא  
בָּא וַעֲמַד לִפְנֵי.
- וְהוּא דִּבֶּר אֵלַי וּבִקֵּשׁ מִמֶּנִּי לָלֶכֶת אַחֲרָיו.
- וְהָיָה כְּאֲשֶׁר הִלַּכְתִּי אַחֲרָיו, וְרָאִיתִי כִּי אֲנִי  
בְּתוֹךְ שְׂמָמָה וְחֹשֶׁכָה וְקוֹדֶרֶת.
- וְאַחֵר לָכֵתִי שָׁעוֹת רַבּוֹת בְּחֹשֶׁכָה, הִתְפַּלֵּלְתִּי  
אֶל יְהוָה אֲשֶׁר יַחֲמַל עָלַי כְּרַב רַחֲמָיו.
- וְהָיָה אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר הִתְפַּלֵּלְתִּי אֶל יְהוָה רָאִיתִי  
שָׂדֶה גָדוֹל וְרַחֲב יָדַיִם.
- וְרָאִיתִי עֵץ אֲשֶׁר פְּרִיו נִחְמַד לְשֹׂמֵחַ לֵבָב  
אָנוּשׁ.
- וְנִגְשָׁתִי וְטַעַמְתִּי מִן הַפְּרִי הַזֶּה וְהִנֵּה מִתּוֹק  
הוּא מְכַל אֲשֶׁר טַעַמְתִּי מֵעוֹדִי. וְרָאִיתִי כִּי לֵבָן  
הַפְּרִי הַזֶּה מְכַל לֵבָן אֲשֶׁר רָאִיתִי מֵעוֹדִי.
- וְכַאֲשֶׁר טַעַמְתִּי מִמֶּנּוּ, מָלֵא הַפְּרִי אֶת נַפְשִׁי  
שְׂמִיחָה רַבָּה עַד מְאֹד; לֵבָן חִפְצָתִי כִּי אֵף בְּנִי  
מִשְׂפָּחָתִי יִטְעֲמוּ מִמֶּנּוּ, בִּידְעִי כִּי נִחְמַד הוּא  
מִכָּל פְּרִי.
- וְהָיָה בְּנִשְׂאֵי עֵינַי כֹּה וְכֹה לְמַצָּא אֶת  
מִשְׂפָּחָתִי, וְהִנֵּה רָאִיתִי נָהָר מִיַּם זֹרֵם לִיד  
הָעֵץ אֲשֶׁר מִפְּרִיו טַעַמְתִּי.
- וּפָנִיתִי לְרֹאוֹת מֵאֵין יָבוֹא, וְרָאִיתִי אֶת מְקוֹר  
הַמַּיִם בְּמִרְחָק מֶה וּלְיָד עוֹמְדִים שְׂרָיָה
- 2 And it came to pass that while my father tarried in the wilderness he spake unto us, saying: Behold, I have dreamed a dream; or, in other words, I have seen a vision.
- 3 And behold, because of the thing which I have seen, I have reason to rejoice in the Lord because of Nephi and also of Sam; for I have reason to suppose that they, and also many of their seed, will be saved.
- 4 But behold, Laman and Lemuel, I fear exceedingly because of you; for behold, methought I saw in my dream, a dark and dreary wilderness.
- 5 And it came to pass that I saw a man, and he was dressed in a white robe; and he came and stood before me.
- 6 And it came to pass that he spake unto me, and bade me follow him.
- 7 And it came to pass that as I followed him I beheld myself that I was in a dark and dreary waste.
- 8 And after I had traveled for the space of many hours in darkness, I began to pray unto the Lord that he would have mercy on me, according to the multitude of his tender mercies.
- 9 And it came to pass after I had prayed unto the Lord I beheld a large and spacious field.
- 10 And it came to pass that I beheld a tree, whose fruit was desirable to make one happy.
- 11 And it came to pass that I did go forth and partake of the fruit thereof; and I beheld that it was most sweet, above all that I ever before tasted. Yea, and I beheld that the fruit thereof was white, to exceed all the whiteness that I had ever seen.
- 12 And as I partook of the fruit thereof it filled my soul with exceedingly great joy; wherefore, I began to be desirous that my family should partake of it also; for I knew that it was desirable above all other fruit.
- 13 And as I cast my eyes round about, that perhaps I might discover my family also, I beheld a river of water; and it ran along, and it was near the tree of which I was partaking the fruit.
- 14 And I looked to behold from whence it came; and I saw the head thereof a little way off; and at the head thereof I beheld your mother Sariah,

## נְפִי א ח:טו-כה

- אִמְכֶם, וְשָׁם וְנָפִי, וְכִמּוֹ לֹא יָדְעוּ אָנֹה יֵלְכוּ. and Sam, and Nephi; and they stood as if they knew not whither they should go.
- 15 וְקָרָאתִי לָהֶם וְאִף אֶמְרֹתִי לָהֶם בְּקוֹל גָּדוֹל כִּי יָבוֹאוּ אֵלַי וְיִטְעְמוּ מִן הַפֵּרִי, אֲשֶׁר הִיָּה נְחָמֵד מִכָּל פֵּרִי. And it came to pass that I beckoned unto them; and I also did say unto them with a loud voice that they should come unto me, and partake of the fruit, which was desirable above all other fruit.
- 16 וְהֵם בָּאוּ אֵלַי וְיִטְעְמוּ אִף הֵם מִן הַפֵּרִי. And it came to pass that they did come unto me and partake of the fruit also.
- 17 וְאֲנִי חִפְצָתִי כִּי אִף לָמֹן וְלִמְוֹאֵל יָבוֹאוּ וְיִטְעְמוּ מִן הַפֵּרִי. עַל כֵּן נִשְׁאַתִּי עֵינַי אֶל מְקוֹר הַנְּהָר, אוֹלֵי אֶרְאֶם. And it came to pass that I was desirous that Laman and Lemuel should come and partake of the fruit also; wherefore, I cast mine eyes towards the head of the river, that perhaps I might see them.
- 18 וְאִמְנֶם רָאִיתִי אוֹתָם, אִף הֵם לֹא אָבוּ לָבוֹא אֵלַי וְלִטְעֹם מִן הַפֵּרִי. And it came to pass that I saw them, but they would not come unto me and partake of the fruit.
- 19 וְרָאִיתִי מַעֲקָה בְּרֹזֶל וְהִוא נִמְשָׁף לְאַרְבֵּי גִדְתַּי הַנְּהָר, מוֹבִיל אֶל הָעֵץ אֲשֶׁר עַל יְדוֹ עֲמֻדָתִי. And I beheld a rod of iron, and it extended along the bank of the river, and led to the tree by which I stood.
- 20 וְכִן רָאִיתִי שְׁבִיל יָשָׁר וְצָר, לְאַרְבֵּי מַעֲקָה הַבְּרֹזֶל וְעַד הָעֵץ אֲשֶׁר עַל יְדוֹ עֲמֻדָתִי. וְהִנֵּה הַשְּׁבִיל נִמְשָׁף מִמְּקוֹר הַנְּהָר וְעַד שְׂדֵה גָדוֹל וְרָחֵב יָדִים, כְּמוֹ הִיָּה זֶה עוֹלָם. And I also beheld a straight and narrow path, which came along by the rod of iron, even to the tree by which I stood; and it also led by the head of the fountain, unto a large and spacious field, as if it had been a world.
- 21 וְרָאִיתִי הַמוֹנִי אָדָם עַד אֵין מִסְפָּר, אֲשֶׁר רַבִּים מֵהֶם נִדְחָפוּ קְדִימָה, לַעֲלוֹת עַל הַשְּׁבִיל הַמוֹבִיל אֶל הָעֵץ אֲשֶׁר עַל יְדוֹ עֲמֻדָתִי. And I saw numberless concourses of people, many of whom were pressing forward, that they might obtain the path which led unto the tree by which I stood.
- 22 וְהֵם בָּאוּ וְהִחֲלוּ לָלֶכֶת בַּשְּׁבִיל הַמוֹבִיל אֶל הָעֵץ. And it came to pass that they did come forth, and commence in the path which led to the tree.
- 23 וְעָלָה שָׁם עֲרַפֵּל חֲשֹׁכָה; אָכֵן, עֲרַפֵּל חֲשֹׁכָה כָּבֵד מְאֹד עַד כִּי אָלָה אֲשֶׁר נִכְנסוּ לַשְּׁבִיל נִדְחוּ מִדֶּרֶכָם, תָּעוּ וְאָבְדוּ. And it came to pass that there arose a mist of darkness; yea, even an exceedingly great mist of darkness, insomuch that they who had commenced in the path did lose their way, that they wandered off and were lost.
- 24 וְרָאִיתִי אֲחֵרִים נִדְחָפִים קְדִימָה, וְהֵם בָּאוּ וְהִחֲזִיקוּ בְּקֶצֶה מַעֲקָה הַבְּרֹזֶל; וְנִדְחָפוּ קְדִימָה דֶּרֶךְ עֲרַפֵּל הַחֲשֹׁכָה בְּהֶצְמָדָם אֶל מַעֲקָה הַבְּרֹזֶל, עַד אֲשֶׁר הִגִּיעוּ אֶל הָעֵץ וְיִטְעְמוּ מִפְּרִיו. And it came to pass that I beheld others pressing forward, and they came forth and caught hold of the end of the rod of iron; and they did press forward through the mist of darkness, clinging to the rod of iron, even until they did come forth and partake of the fruit of the tree.
- 25 וְהִיָּה אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר טִעְמוּ מִפְּרִי הָעֵץ, וְהֵם הִפְנוּ אֶת מַבְטָם כְּנִכְלָמִים. And after they had partaken of the fruit of the tree they did cast their eyes about as if they were ashamed.

- 26 And I also cast my eyes round about, and beheld, on the other side of the river of water, a great and spacious building; and it stood as it were in the air, high above the earth.
- 27 And it was filled with people, both old and young, both male and female; and their manner of dress was exceedingly fine; and they were in the attitude of mocking and pointing their fingers towards those who had come at and were partaking of the fruit.
- 28 And after they had tasted of the fruit they were ashamed, because of those that were scoffing at them; and they fell away into forbidden paths and were lost.
- 29 And now I, Nephi, do not speak all the words of my father.
- 30 But, to be short in writing, behold, he saw other multitudes pressing forward; and they came and caught hold of the end of the rod of iron; and they did press their way forward, continually holding fast to the rod of iron, until they came forth and fell down and partook of the fruit of the tree.
- 31 And he also saw other multitudes pressing their way towards that great and spacious building.
- 32 And it came to pass that many were drowned in the depths of the fountain; and many were lost from his view, wandering in strange roads.
- 33 And great was the multitude that did enter into that strange building. And after they did enter into that building they did point the finger of scorn at me and those that were partaking of the fruit also; but we heeded them not.
- 34 These are the words of my father: For as many as heeded them, had fallen away.
- 35 And Laman and Lemuel partook not of the fruit, said my father.
- 36 And it came to pass after my father had spoken all the words of his dream or vision, which were many, he said unto us, because of these things which he saw in a vision, he exceedingly feared for Laman and Lemuel; yea, he feared lest they should be cast off from the presence of the Lord.
- 37 And he did exhort them then with all the feeling of a tender parent, that they would hearken to his words, that perhaps the Lord would
- וְהִפְנִיתִי עוֹד אֶת מִבְטֵי סְבִיב. וְרָאִיתִי מִעֵבֶר לְנֹהַר הַמַּיִם בַּיִת גָּדוֹל וְרוֹחֵב מְדוּת וְהוּא כְּנֹצֵב בְּאֵוִיר, רָם וְנֹשָׂא מֵעַל פְּנֵי הָאֲדָמָה.
- וְהַבַּיִת מְלֵא אָדָם, זָקֵן וְצָעִיר, זָכָר וְנִקְבָּה, וּלְבוּשָׁם הַדּוֹר מְאֹד; וְהֵם כְּמַלְעִיגִים בְּשׁוֹלְחָם אֶצְבָּע אֶל עֵבֶר הַבָּאִים וְהַטּוֹעֵמִים מִן הַפֶּרִי.
- וְהָיָה אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר טָעְמוּ מִן הַפֶּרִי הֵם נִכְלְמוּ, מִפְּנֵי הַלּוֹעֲגִים לָהֶם, וְהֵם נָפְלוּ אֵלֵי נְתִיבִים אֲסוּרִים וְאֶבְדּוּ.
- וְאַנִּי, נְפִי, אֵינֶנִּי מְסַפֵּר אֶת כָּל דְּבָרֵי אָבִי.
- וְלִמְעַן קָצֵר בְּכַתְּבָהּ אֶסְפֵּר כִּי הוּא רָאָה וְהִנֵּה הַמּוֹנִי אָדָם נוֹסְפִים נִדְחָפִים קְדִימָה וְהֵם בָּאוּ וַתִּפְשׁוּ בְקֶצֶה מַעֲקֶה הַבְּרֹזֶל וַיִּנְדְּחֻהוּ לַעֲשׂוֹת דֶּרֶךְ קְדִימָה, נֶאֱחָזִים בְּחֻזְקָה בְּמַעֲקֶה הַבְּרֹזֶל עַד אֲשֶׁר הִגִּיעוּ, וַיִּנְפְּלוּ עַל פְּנֵיהֶם וַיִּטְעְמוּ מִפְּרֵי הָעֵץ.
- וְהוּא אַף רָאָה הַמּוֹנִים אֲחֵרִים מִתְאַמְצִים בְּדֶרֶכָם אֶל עֵבֶר הַבַּיִת הַגָּדוֹל וְרוֹחֵב הַמְדוּת הַהוּא.
- וְהָיָה כִּי רַבִּים הַטּוֹבְעִים בְּמַצְוִלוֹת הַמַּיִם וְרַבִּים נִעְלְמוּ מֵעֵינָיו בְּנִדְחָם בְּשִׁבְלִים זָרִים.
- רַב הָיָה הַקְּהוֹן אֲשֶׁר נָכַס אֶל הַבַּיִת הַזֶּה וְאַחֵר אֲשֶׁר נָכַסוּ אֵלָיו, שָׁלְחוּ לַעֲמָתִי וּלְעַמַּת טוֹעֲמֵי הַפֶּרִי אֶת אֶצְבָּע הַלֶּעֱגָה, אֲךָ אֲנַחְנוּ לֹא שָׁתַנּוּ לִבֵּנוּ לָהֶם.
- אֵלֶּה דְּבָרֵי אָבִי: כָּל אֲשֶׁר שָׁת לִבּוֹ לָהֶם קָשָׁל וְאֶבְדּוּ.
- וְאָבִי אָמַר כִּי לָמֵן וּלְמוֹאֵל לֹא טָעְמוּ מִן הַפֶּרִי.
- וְהָיָה אַחֵר דִּבֵּר אָבִי אֶת כָּל דְּבָרֵי חֲלוֹמוֹ אוֹ חֲזוֹנוֹ, וְהֵם רַבִּים, הוּא אָמַר אֵלֵינוּ כִּי מִפְּנֵי הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר רָאָה בְּחֻזֵּן, הוּא יָרָא עַד מְאֹד לָלֵמֵן וּלְמוֹאֵל, מִפְּנֵי דִאֲגָתוֹ כִּי יִדְחוּ מִלִּפְנֵי יְהוָה.
- וְהוּא עוֹרֵרָם בְּכָל רִגְשֵׁי אָב אוֹהֵב, וְאָמַר אֵלֵיהֶם כִּי יִשְׁמְעוּ לְדִבְרוֹ, אוֹלֵי יִרְחַמֵּם יְהוָה,

וְלֹא יִשְׁלִיכֶם. אָכֵן, הִטָּף הִטָּף לָהֶם אָבִי.

be merciful to them, and not cast them off; yea, my father did preach unto them.

וְאַחֵר אֲשֶׁר הִטָּף אֲלֵיהֶם וְאִי נִבֵּא לָהֶם  
דְּבָרִים רַבִּים, צִוָּם לִשְׁמֹר אֶת מִצְוֹת יְהוָה,  
וְחָדַל מִדְּבַר אֲלֵיהֶם.

38 And after he had preached unto them, and also prophesied unto them of many things, he bade them to keep the commandments of the Lord; and he did cease speaking unto them.

## ט

## 9

אֶת כָּל הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, רָאָה אָבִי, וּשְׁמָעָם  
וְדִבְרָם בְּשִׁבְתּוֹ בְּאֵהֶל בְּעֵמֶק לְמוּאֵל, וְכֵן עוֹד  
דְּבָרִים רַבִּים וְגִדּוּלִים, אֲשֶׁר אֵין לְכַתֵּבָם עַל  
גְּבֵי הַלּוּחוֹת הָאֵלֶּה.

1 And all these things did my father see, and hear, and speak, as he dwelt in a tent, in the valley of Lemuel, and also a great many more things, which cannot be written upon these plates.

וְעַתָּה, כְּדִבְרֵי עַל אֹדוֹת הַלּוּחוֹת הָאֵלֶּה, הִנֵּה  
הֵם אֵינֶם הַלּוּחוֹת אֲשֶׁר אֶסְפֵּר בָּהֶם אֶת מְלֵא  
דְּבָרֵי יָמֵי עַמִּי, כִּי לַלּוּחוֹת אֲשֶׁר בָּהֶם אֶסְפֵּר  
אֶת דְּבָרֵי יָמֵי עַמִּי בְּמִלְאָם קִרְאֵתִי בִשְׁם נְפִי.  
עַל כֵּן הֵם נִקְרָאִים לּוּחוֹת נְפִי עַל שְׁמִי.  
וְהַלּוּחוֹת הָאֵלֶּה אֵף הֵם נִקְרָאִים לּוּחוֹת נְפִי.

2 And now, as I have spoken concerning these plates, behold they are not the plates upon which I make a full account of the history of my people; for the plates upon which I make a full account of my people I have given the name of Nephi; wherefore, they are called the plates of Nephi, after mine own name; and these plates also are called the plates of Nephi.

אֲנִי צִוֵּנִי יְהוָה לַעֲשׂוֹת אֶת הַלּוּחוֹת הָאֵלֶּה  
לְתַכְלִית הַמִּיחָדָת, לְמַעַן יִחַרֵּט כָּתֹב וְזָרוֹן עַל  
אֹדוֹת שְׁרוֹת עַמִּי.

3 Nevertheless, I have received a commandment of the Lord that I should make these plates, for the special purpose that there should be an account engraven of the ministry of my people.

עַל הַלּוּחוֹת הָרִאשׁוֹנִים יִחַרְטוּ דְּבָרֵי יָמֵי  
שְׁלֹטוֹן הַמְּלָכִים וּמִלְחָמוֹת עַמִּי וּמְרִיבוֹתֵיהֶם.  
אָכֵן, הַלּוּחוֹת הָאֵלֶּה הֵם לְדִבְרֵי שְׁרוֹת עַמִּי,  
וְהַלּוּחוֹת הָרִאשׁוֹנִים הֵם לְדִבְרֵי יָמֵי שְׁלֹטוֹן  
הַמְּלָכִים וּמִלְחָמוֹת בְּנֵי עַמִּי וּמְרִיבוֹתֵיהֶם.

4 Upon the other plates should be engraven an account of the reign of the kings, and the wars and contentions of my people; wherefore these plates are for the more part of the ministry; and the other plates are for the more part of the reign of the kings and the wars and contentions of my people.

עַל כֵּן צִוֵּנִי יְהוָה לַעֲשׂוֹת אֶת הַלּוּחוֹת הָאֵלֶּה  
לְקִיָּם תַּכְלִית בְּחֻקְמָתוֹ, אֲשֶׁר אוֹתָהּ לֹא אֵדַע.

5 Wherefore, the Lord hath commanded me to make these plates for a wise purpose in him, which purpose I know not.

אוּלָּם יוֹדֵעַ יְהוָה אֶת כָּל הַדְּבָרִים מִרִּאשִׁיתָם;  
עַל כֵּן יִכְיֶן דְּרָף לְמַעַן הָקִים אֶת כָּל מַעֲשָׂיו  
בְּקִרְבֵּי בְנֵי אָדָם, כִּי הִנֵּה לוֹ הַכֹּחַ לְהָקִים אֶת  
כָּל דְּבָרָיו, וְכֵן הַדְּבָר. אָמֵן.

6 But the Lord knoweth all things from the beginning; wherefore, he prepareth a way to accomplish all his works among the children of men; for behold, he hath all power unto the fulfilling of all his words.

1 And thus it is. Amen.

## י

## 10

וְאַנִּי, נְפִי, אוֹסִיף עַתָּה לְסַפֵּר עַל גְּבֵי הַלּוּחוֹת  
הָאֵלֶּה אֶת קוּרוֹתֵי וְאֶת שְׁלֹטוֹנֵי וְאֶת שְׁרוֹתֵי.  
וּבְהוֹסִיפִי לְסַפֵּר אֶת קוּרוֹתֵי עָלִי לְסַפֵּר מַעֲשֵׂי  
מִדְּבָרֵי אָבִי וְגַם אֲחֵי.

And now I, Nephi, proceed to give an account upon these plates of my proceedings, and my reign and ministry; wherefore, to proceed with mine account, I must speak somewhat of the things of my father, and also of my brethren.



- 2 For behold, it came to pass after my father had made an end of speaking the words of his dream, and also of exhorting them to all diligence, he spake unto them concerning the Jews—
- 3 That after they should be destroyed, even that great city Jerusalem, and many be carried away captive into Babylon, according to the own due time of the Lord, they should return again, yea, even be brought back out of captivity; and after they should be brought back out of captivity they should possess again the land of their inheritance.
- 4 Yea, even six hundred years from the time that my father left Jerusalem, a prophet would the Lord God raise up among the Jews—even a Messiah, or, in other words, a Savior of the world.
- 5 And he also spake concerning the prophets, how great a number had testified of these things, concerning this Messiah, of whom he had spoken, or this Redeemer of the world.
- 6 Wherefore, all mankind were in a lost and in a fallen state, and ever would be save they should rely on this Redeemer.
- 7 And he spake also concerning a prophet who should come before the Messiah, to prepare the way of the Lord—
- 8 Yea, even he should go forth and cry in the wilderness: Prepare ye the way of the Lord, and make his paths straight; for there standeth one among you whom ye know not; and he is mightier than I, whose shoe's latchet I am not worthy to unloose. And much spake my father concerning this thing.
- 9 And my father said he should baptize in Bethabara, beyond Jordan; and he also said he should baptize with water; even that he should baptize the Messiah with water.
- 10 And after he had baptized the Messiah with water, he should behold and bear record that he had baptized the Lamb of God, who should take away the sins of the world.
- 11 And it came to pass after my father had spoken these words he spake unto my brethren concerning the gospel which should be preached among the Jews, and also concerning the dwindling of the Jews in unbelief. And after they had slain the Messiah, who should come, and after he had been slain he should rise from the dead, and should make himself manifest, by the Holy Ghost, unto the Gentiles.
- וּבְכָלוֹת אָבִי לְהַגִּיד אֶת דְּבָרֵי חֲלוֹמוֹ וְכֵן לְעוֹרָרָם לְשִׁקְיָדָה רַבָּה, הוּא דִּבֶּר אֲלֵיהֶם עַל אֹדוֹת הַיְּהוּדִים,
- אֲשֶׁר אַחֲרֵי חֲרָבָנָם, אִף חֲרָבֹן הָעִיר הַגְּדוֹלָה יְרוּשָׁלַם וְנָלוּת רַבִּים מֵהֶם בָּבֶלָה, יָשׁוּבוּ לָעֵת אֲשֶׁר תִּישָׁר בְּעֵינֵי יְהוָה; אָכֵן יָשׁוּבוּ מִן הַשְׁבִּיָּה, וְאַחֲרֵי שׁוּבָם יִנְחֲלוּ שְׁנִית אֶת אֶרֶץ יִרְשָׁתָם.
- וְכַעֲבֹר שֵׁשׁ מֵאוֹת שָׁנָה מֵעַתָּה אֲשֶׁר עָזַב אָבִי אֶת יְרוּשָׁלַם, יָקִים יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים נְבִיא מִקֶּרֶב הַיְּהוּדִים, אֲשֶׁר הוּא מָשִׁיחַ, אוֹ בְּלִשׁוֹן אַחֵר: מוֹשִׁיעַ הָעוֹלָם.
- וְהוּא אִף דִּבֶּר עַל הַנְּבִיאִים, אֲשֶׁר רַבִּים מֵהֶם הֶעִידוּ עַל הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, עַל אֹדוֹת הַמָּשִׁיחַ הַזֶּה, אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר עָלָיו וְהוּא גּוֹאֵל הָעוֹלָם.
- אָכֵן יִהְיוּ כָּל בְּנֵי הָאָדָם בְּנֵי כָלִיִּן וְכַשְׁלוֹן, וְכֵן יִשְׁאַרוּ לְעוֹלָם, בְּלֹתִי אִם סָמְכוּ עַל הַגּוֹאֵל הַזֶּה.
- וְהוּא אִף דִּבֶּר עַל נְבִיא אֲשֶׁר יָבֹא לִפְנֵי הַמָּשִׁיחַ, לְהַכִּין אֶת דֶּרֶךְ יְהוָה.
- וְהוּא יֵלֶךְ וַיִּקְרָא בַּמִּדְבָּר: פָּנֹה דֶּרֶךְ לַיהוָה, יִשְׁרוּ מַסְלֹוֹתָיו, כִּי בְקֶרְבָּכֶם עוֹמֵד אֶחָד אֲשֶׁר לֹא יָדַעְתֶּם וְהוּא אֲדִיר מִמֶּנִּי, אֲשֶׁר אֵינֶנִּי שׂוֹה לְהַתִּיר אֶת שַׁרְוֹף נִעְלוֹ. וְאָבִי הִרְבֵּה לְדַבֵּר עַל הַדְּבָר הַזֶּה.
- וְאָבִי אָמַר כִּי יִטְבִּיל בְּבֵית עֲבָרָא, אֲשֶׁר מֵעֵבֶר לִירְדֵן; וְכֵן אָמַר כִּי יִטְבִּיל בְּמִים; אִף אֶת הַמָּשִׁיחַ הוּא יִטְבִּיל בְּמִים.
- וְאַחֲרֵי אֲשֶׁר יִטְבִּיל אֶת הַמָּשִׁיחַ בְּמִים, יִחְזֶה וַיַּעֲיֵד כִּי הִטְבִּיל אֶת שֵׁה אֱלֹהִים, זֶה אֲשֶׁר יִכְפֹּר עַל חַטָּאֵי הָעוֹלָם.
- וְאַחֲרֵי דִבְרֵי אָבִי אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, הוּא דִּבֶּר אֶל אָחִי עַל הַבְּשׂוּרָה אֲשֶׁר יִשְׁפּוּהָ בְּקֶרֶב הַיְּהוּדִים וְאִף עַל שִׁקְיָעַת הַיְּהוּדִים בַּחֲסֹר אֱמוּנָה. וְאַחֲרֵי אֲשֶׁר יִהְרֹגוּ אֶת הַמָּשִׁיחַ אֲשֶׁר יָבֹא, וְאַחֲרֵי אֲשֶׁר יִהְרֹג, יָקוּם מִן הַמֵּתִים וַיִּגְלֶה עֲצָמוֹ לְגוֹיִים עַל יְדֵי רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ.

- 12 Yea, even my father spake much concerning the Gentiles, and also concerning the house of Israel, that they should be compared like unto an olive-tree, whose branches should be broken off and should be scattered upon all the face of the earth.
- 13 Wherefore, he said it must needs be that we should be led with one accord into the land of promise, unto the fulfilling of the word of the Lord, that we should be scattered upon all the face of the earth.
- 14 And after the house of Israel should be scattered they should be gathered together again; or, in fine, after the Gentiles had received the fulness of the Gospel, the natural branches of the olive-tree, or the remnants of the house of Israel, should be grafted in, or come to the knowledge of the true Messiah, their Lord and their Redeemer.
- 15 And after this manner of language did my father prophesy and speak unto my brethren, and also many more things which I do not write in this book; for I have written as many of them as were expedient for me in mine other book.
- 16 And all these things, of which I have spoken, were done as my father dwelt in a tent, in the valley of Lemuel.
- 17 And it came to pass after I, Nephi, having heard all the words of my father, concerning the things which he saw in a vision, and also the things which he spake by the power of the Holy Ghost, which power he received by faith on the Son of God—and the Son of God was the Messiah who should come—I, Nephi, was desirous also that I might see, and hear, and know of these things, by the power of the Holy Ghost, which is the gift of God unto all those who diligently seek him, as well in times of old as in the time that he should manifest himself unto the children of men.
- 18 For he is the same yesterday, to-day, and forever; and the way is prepared for all men from the foundation of the world, if it so be that they repent and come unto him.
- 19 For he that diligently seeketh shall find; and the mysteries of God shall be unfolded unto them, by the power of the Holy Ghost, as well in these times as in times of old, and as well in times of old as in times to come; wherefore, the course of the Lord is one eternal round.
- 20 Therefore remember, O man, for all thy doings thou shalt be brought into judgment.
- 21 Wherefore, if ye have sought to do wickedly in the days of your probation, then ye are found unclean before the judgment-seat of God;
- רבות דבר אבי על אודות הגוים וכן על בית ישראל, כי נמשל לעץ הזית, אשר יכרתו את ענפיו ויפזרום על כל פני הארץ.
- על כן, אמר כי נהג כאיש אחד אל הארץ היעודה, להקים את דבר יהוה כי נתפזר על כל פני הארץ.
- ואחר אשר יפזרו בית ישראל, יקבצו שנית, או בקצרה, אחר קבל הגוים את מלא הבשורה, ירכבו ענפיו הטבעיים של עץ הזית והם שארית בית ישראל, אכן, הם ידעו את משיח האמת אשר הוא אדונייהם וגואלם.
- כדברים האלה נבא אבי בדבריו אל אחי, וכן דברים נוספים רבים אשר אינני כותב בספר הזה, כי כתבתי מהם ככל אשר נראה לי מתאים בספרי הנוסף.
- כל הדברים האלה, אשר דברתי, נעשו בשבת אבי באהל בעמק למואל.
- והיה אחר אשר שמעתי, אני, נפי, את כל אמרות אבי על אודות הדברים אשר ראה בחזון ואת אשר דבר בלח רוח הקדש, הוא הכח אשר קבל על ידי האמונה בן אלהים, ובן אלהים הוא המשיח אשר יבוא, חפצתי אף אני, נפי, לראות ולשמע ואף לדעת את הדברים האלה, בלח רוח הקדש, אשר הוא מתת אלהים לכל אשר ישקדו לבקשו, בימי קדם כבימים אשר יתגלה לבני האנוש.
- כי אחד הוא אתמול והיום ועד עולם; ומוכנה הדרך לכל בני האדם מיסוד העולם, אם ינחמו על חטאייהם ויבואו אליו.
- המתאמץ לבקש ימצא; וסתרי אלהים יגלו לו, בלח רוח הקדש, בימים האלה כבימי קדם, ובימי קדם כבימים אשר יבוא. כי מהלך יהוה הוא מעגל נצח אחד.
- על כן זכר נא, בן אדם, כי על כל מעשיו תובא למשפט.
- לכן, אם את הרע בקשיתם לעשות בימי מבחנכם, טמאים תמצאו לפני פס המשפט



## נְפִי א י:כב-יא:ט

אֲשֶׁר לֹא־לֵהִים. וְכָל דְּבַר טָמֵא לֹא יִשְׁכֵּן עִם  
אֱלֹהִים; עַל כֵּן מִנְּדִים תִּהְיוּ לְעוֹלָם.

and no unclean thing can dwell with God; wherefore, ye must be cast off forever.

וְרוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ יִסְמְכֵנִי לְדַבֵּר אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה  
וְלֹא לְהַכְחִישָׁם.

22 And the Holy Ghost giveth authority that I should speak these things, and deny them not.

## י

## 11

וְהָיָה בְּחַפְצִי לָדַעַת אֶת הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר רָאָם  
אָבִי, וְאֲנִי הֶאֱמַנְתִּי כִּי יוּכַל יְהוָה לְהוֹדִיעֵנִי  
אוֹתָם; אָכֵן, כִּפְּאֲשֶׁר יִשְׁבַּתִּי וְהִגִּיתִי בְּלִבִּי  
וְהִנֵּה נִשְׁאַנִּי רוּחַ יְהוָה אֶל הַר רֶם וְנִשְׂאָ,  
אֲשֶׁר לֹא רָאִיתִיו מֵעוֹלָם וְלֹא הִצַּגְתִּי עָלָיו  
מֵעוֹדִי אֶת כַּף רַגְלִי.

1 For it came to pass after I had desired to know the things that my father had seen, and believing that the Lord was able to make them known unto me, as I sat pondering in mine heart I was caught away in the Spirit of the Lord, yea, into an exceedingly high mountain, which I never had before seen, and upon which I never had before set my foot.

וְאָמַר אֵלַי הָרוּחַ: הִנֵּה, מָה חֲפָצְךָ?

2 And the Spirit said unto me: Behold, what desirest thou?

וְאָמַרְתִּי: חֲפָצִי לִרְאוֹת אֶת אֲשֶׁר רָאָה אָבִי.

3 And I said: I desire to behold the things which my father saw.

וְאָמַר אֵלַי הָרוּחַ: הֲתֵאֱמִין כִּי אָבִיךָ רָאָה אֶת  
הָעֵץ אֲשֶׁר עַל אוֹדוֹתָיו דְּבַר?

4 And the Spirit said unto me: Believest thou that thy father saw the tree of which he hath spoken?

וְאָמַרְתִּי: אָכֵן, אֵתָּה יָדַעְתָּ כִּי אֲאֱמִין לְכָל  
דְּבָרֵי אָבִי.

5 And I said: Yea, thou knowest that I believe all the words of my father.

וּכְדִבְרֵי אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, קָרָא הָרוּחַ בְּקוֹל  
גָּדוֹל לֵאמֹר: הוֹשַׁעְנָא, יְהוָה אֵל עֲלִינוּ! אֵל עַל  
כָּל הָאָרֶץ, אָכֵן, מֵעַל הַכֹּל. וּבְרוּךְ אַתָּה נְפִי כִּי  
תֵאֱמִין בְּבֶן אֵל עֲלִינוּ; עַל כֵּן תִּרְאֶה אֶת  
הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר חֲפָצְתָּ לִרְאוֹתָם.

6 And when I had spoken these words, the Spirit cried with a loud voice, saying: Hosanna to the Lord, the most high God; for he is God over all the earth, yea, even above all. And blessed art thou, Nephi, because thou believest in the Son of the most high God; wherefore, thou shalt behold the things which thou hast desired.

וְזֶה לְךָ הָאוֹת: אַחֲרֵי רְאוֹתְךָ אֶת הָעֵץ אֲשֶׁר  
אֶת פְּרִיו טָעַם אָבִיךָ, תִּרְאֶה גַם אִישׁ יוֹרֵד מִן  
הַשָּׁמַיִם וְתִהְיֶה לוֹ עַד רִאִיָּה; וְאַחֲרֵי רְאוֹתְךָ  
אוֹתוֹ הָעֵד תַּעֲדִיד כִּי בֶן אֱלֹהִים הוּא.

7 And behold this thing shall be given unto thee for a sign, that after thou hast beheld the tree which bore the fruit which thy father tasted, thou shalt also behold a man descending out of heaven, and him shall ye witness; and after ye have witnessed him ye shall bear record that it is the Son of God.

וְאָמַר אֵלַי הָרוּחַ: הִבֵּט נָא! וְהִבַּטְתִּי וְרָאִיתִי  
עֵץ; וְהוּא דְּמָה לָעֵץ אֲשֶׁר רָאָה אָבִי, וְיָפִי  
תִּצְאָרוּ אָכֵן עֲלָה עַל כָּל יָפִי; וְלִבְנָתוֹ הִיְתָה  
צַחְרָה כְּשִׁלְגַּת נוֹשֵׁב.

8 And it came to pass that the Spirit said unto me: Look! And I looked and beheld a tree; and it was like unto the tree which my father had seen; and the beauty thereof was far beyond, yea, exceeding of all beauty; and the whiteness thereof did exceed the whiteness of the driven snow.

וּבִרְאוֹתִי אֶת הָעֵץ אָמַרְתִּי אֵל הָרוּחַ:  
אָכֵן רָאִיתִי אֶת אֲשֶׁר הִרְאִיתָנִי, זֶה הָעֵץ  
הַיָּקָר מִכָּל.

9 And it came to pass after I had seen the tree, I said unto the Spirit: I behold thou hast shown unto me the tree which is most precious above all.

- 10 And he said unto me: What desirest thou?  
וְהוּא אָמַר אֵלַי: מַה חֲפָצְךָ?
- 11 And I said unto him: To know the interpretation thereof—for I spake unto him as a man speaketh; for I beheld that he was in the form of a man; yet nevertheless, I knew that it was the Spirit of the Lord; and he spake unto me as a man speaketh with another.  
וְאָמַרְתִּי אֵלָיו: לָדַעַת אֶת פִּשְׁרוֹ; כִּי דִבַּרְתִּי עִמּוֹ כְּדִבֵּר אֶחָד הָאָדָם כִּי רָאִיתִי אִשָּׁר דְּמוּת אָדָם לוֹ, וְאוֹלָם יָדַעְתִּי כִּי רוּחַ יְהוָה הוּא. וְהוּא דִּבֶּר עִמִּי כְּדִבֵּר אִישׁ אֶל רֵעֵהוּ.
- 12 And it came to pass that he said unto me: Look! And I looked as if to look upon him, and I saw him not; for he had gone from before my presence.  
וְהוּא אָמַר אֵלַי: הִבֵּט נָא! וְנִשְׁאַתִּי אֶת עֵינֵי לְהִבִּיט אֵלָיו וְלֹא רָאִיתִיו כִּי נִעְלַם מִפְּנֵי.
- 13 And it came to pass that I looked and beheld the great city of Jerusalem, and also other cities. And I beheld the city of Nazareth; and in the city of Nazareth I beheld a virgin, and she was exceedingly fair and white.  
וְנִשְׁאַתִּי אֶת עֵינֵי וְרָאִיתִי אֶת הָעִיר הַגְּדוֹלָה יְרוּשָׁלַם וְאַף עָרִים אֲחֵרוֹת. וְרָאִיתִי אֶת הָעִיר נָצְרֶת וּבָהּ רָאִיתִי בְּתוּלָה וְהִיא יָפֶת תֹּאֵר מְאֹד וְצַחְרָה.
- 14 And it came to pass that I saw the heavens open; and an angel came down and stood before me; and he said unto me: Nephi, what beholdest thou?  
וְרָאִיתִי אֶת הַשָּׁמַיִם נִפְתָּחִים, וַיֵּרֵד מַלְאָךְ וַעֲמַד לִפְנֵי וְאָמַר אֵלַי: מַה רֹאֶה אַתָּה, נְפִי?
- 15 And I said unto him: A virgin, most beautiful and fair above all other virgins.  
וְאָמַרְתִּי אֵלָיו: בְּתוּלָה יָפֶת תֹּאֵר מְאֹד וַיִּפֶּת מְרָאָה מְכֹל יְתֵר הַבְּתוּלוֹת.
- 16 And he said unto me: Knowest thou the condescension of God?  
וְהוּא אָמַר אֵלַי: הֵיכְדַּעְתָּ אֶת מַחִילַת הַקְּבוֹד אֲשֶׁר לָאֱלֹהִים?
- 17 And I said unto him: I know that he loveth his children; nevertheless, I do not know the meaning of all things.  
וְאָמַרְתִּי: יָדַעְתִּי כִּי יֹאֲהֵב אֶת בְּנָיו, וְאוֹלָם אֵינֶנִּי יוֹדֵעַ אֶת פִּשְׁרֵן כָּל הַדְּבָרִים.
- 18 And he said unto me: Behold, the virgin whom thou seest is the mother of the Son of God, after the manner of the flesh.  
וְהוּא אָמַר אֵלַי: הִנֵּה אִשָּׁר הִנֵּה רֹאֶה הִיא אִם בֶּן אֱלֹהִים כְּדֶרֶךְ הַבָּשָׂר.
- 19 And it came to pass that I beheld that she was carried away in the Spirit; and after she had been carried away in the Spirit for the space of a time the angel spake unto me, saying: Look!  
וְרָאִיתִי אוֹתָהּ נִשְׂאָתָה בְּרוּחַ; וְאַחֵר הִנֵּשְׂאָה בְּרוּחַ לְמִשְׁךָ זְמַן, וְדִבֶּר הַמַּלְאָךְ אֵלַי לֵאמֹר: הִבֵּט נָא!
- 20 And I looked and beheld the virgin again, bearing a child in her arms.  
וְהִבֵּטְתִּי וְרָאִיתִי שֵׁנִית אֶת הַנִּשְׂעָרָה, וְהִיא נוֹשֵׂאת יֶלֶד בְּזְרוּעוֹתֶיהָ.
- 21 And the angel said unto me: Behold the Lamb of God, yea, even the Son of the Eternal Father! Knowest thou the meaning of the tree which thy father saw?  
וְאָמַר אֵלַי הַמַּלְאָךְ: רֹאֶה אֶת שֶׁה אֱלֹהִים! הוּא בֶן אָב הָעוֹלָמִים! הֵתְדַע אֶת פִּשְׁרֵן הָעֵץ אֲשֶׁר רָאָה אָבִיךָ?
- 22 And I answered him, saying: Yea, it is the love of God, which sheddeth itself abroad in the hearts of the children of men; wherefore, it is the most desirable above all things.  
וַעֲנִיתִי לוֹ וְאָמַרְתִּי: אָכֵן, זֹאת הִיא אֲהֶבַת אֱלֹהִים, הַקּוֹרֶנֶת אֵלַי לֵב בְּנֵי הָאָדָם. עַל כֵּן הִיא נְחֻמָּה מְכֹל.

- 23 And he spake unto me, saying: Yea, and the most joyous to the soul.  
וְהוּא דִּבֶּר אֵלַי לֵאמֹר: אָכֵן; וְהִיא הַמְשֻׁמַּחַת נַפְשׁ יוֹתֵר מִכָּל.
- 24 And after he had said these words, he said unto me: Look! And I looked, and I beheld the Son of God going forth among the children of men; and I saw many fall down at his feet and worship him.  
וְהָיָה אַחֵר אַחֲרֵי שֶׁדִּבֶּר אֵת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה הוּא אָמַר אֵלַי: הִבֵּט נָא! וְהִבֵּטְתִּי וַראִיתִי אֶת בֶּן אֱלֹהִים מֵהֵלֶךְ בֵּין בְּנֵי הָאָנוּשׁ. וַראִיתִי רַבִּים נוֹפְלִים לְרַגְלָיו וּמִשְׁתַּחֲוִים לוֹ.
- 25 And it came to pass that I beheld that the rod of iron, which my father had seen, was the word of God, which led to the fountain of living waters, or to the tree of life; which waters are a representation of the love of God; and I also beheld that the tree of life was a representation of the love of God.  
וַראִיתִי כִּי מַעֲקֶה הַבְּרָזֶל אֲשֶׁר רָאָה אָבִי הוּא דִּבְרַת אֱלֹהִים הַמּוֹבִיל אֶל מַעְיַן הַמַּיִם הַחַיִּים אוֹ אֶל עֵץ הַחַיִּים; וְהַמַּיִם הֵם נִמְשָׁלוּ לְאַהֲבַת אֱלֹהִים; וַראִיתִי גַם כִּי עֵץ הַחַיִּים נִמְשָׁל לְאַהֲבַת אֱלֹהִים.
- 26 And the angel said unto me again: Look and behold the condescension of God!  
וְעוֹד אָמַר אֵלַי הַמַּלְאָךְ: הִבֵּט נָא וַראֵה אֶת מִחִילַת הַכְּבוֹד אֲשֶׁר לְאֱלֹהִים.
- 27 And I looked and beheld the Redeemer of the world, of whom my father had spoken; and I also beheld the prophet who should prepare the way before him. And the Lamb of God went forth and was baptized of him; and after he was baptized, I beheld the heavens open, and the Holy Ghost come down out of heaven and abide upon him in the form of a dove.  
וַנִּשְׁאֲתִי אֶת עֵינַי וַראִיתִי אֶת גּוֹאֵל הָעוֹלָם, אֲשֶׁר עָלָיו דִּבֶּר אָבִי, וְאֶף רָאִיתִי אֶת הַנְּבִיא אֲשֶׁר יָכִין אֶת הַדֶּרֶךְ לִפְנָיו. וְשֶׁה אֱלֹהִים הָלַךְ וְנִטְבַּל עַל יָדָיו. וְהָיָה אַחֵר הַטְּבִילוֹ, רָאִיתִי אֶת הַשְּׁמַיִם נִפְתָּחִים וְרוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ יוֹרֵדֶת מִן הַשְּׁמַיִם וְנוֹחָה עָלָיו בְּדְמוּת יוֹנָה.
- 28 And I beheld that he went forth ministering unto the people, in power and great glory; and the multitudes were gathered together to hear him; and I beheld that they cast him out from among them.  
וַראִיתִי אוֹתוֹ הוֹלֵךְ וּמִשְׁמֵשׁ אֶת הָעָם בְּגִבּוֹרָה וּבְרַב תַּפְאָרָה; וְהָרַבּוּתִּים נֶאֱסָפוּ לְשִׁמְעוֹ. וַראִיתִי כִּי הִדְיָחוּהוּ מִתּוֹכָם.
- 29 And I also beheld twelve others following him. And it came to pass that they were carried away in the Spirit from before my face, and I saw them not.  
וְכֵן רָאִיתִי שְׁנַיִם עָשָׂר אַחֵרִים הוֹלְכִים בְּעִקְבוֹתָיו. וְהֵם נִשְׂאוּ בְרוּחַ הָאֵלֶּה מִפְּנֵי, עַד כִּי לֹא רָאִיתִים.
- 30 And it came to pass that the angel spake unto me again, saying: Look! And I looked, and I beheld the heavens open again, and I saw angels descending upon the children of men; and they did minister unto them.  
וְעוֹד דִּבֶּר אֵלַי הַמַּלְאָךְ לֵאמֹר: הִבֵּט נָא! וְהִבֵּטְתִּי וַראִיתִי אֶת הַשְּׁמַיִם נִפְתָּחִים שֵׁנִית וַראִיתִי מַלְאָכִים יוֹרְדִים עַל בְּנֵי הָאָדָם וּמִשְׁרָתִים אוֹתָם.
- 31 And he spake unto me again, saying: Look! And I looked, and I beheld the Lamb of God going forth among the children of men. And I beheld multitudes of people who were sick, and who were afflicted with all manner of diseases, and with devils and unclean spirits; and the angel spake and showed all these things unto me. And they were healed by the power of the Lamb of God; and the devils and the unclean spirits were cast out.  
וְעוֹד הוּא דִּבֶּר אֵלַי לֵאמֹר: הִבֵּט נָא! וְהִבֵּטְתִּי וַראִיתִי אֶת שֶׁה אֱלֹהִים מֵהֵלֶךְ בְּקֶרֶב בְּנֵי הָאָנוּשׁ. וַראִיתִי הַמּוֹנִי אָדָם מִכִּי חֹלִי, הַנְּגוּעִים בְּכָל מִינֵי נֹגַע וְשָׂדִים וְרוּחוֹת טְמֵאִים. וְהַמַּלְאָךְ דִּבֶּר אֵלַי וַהֲרָאֵנִי אֶת כָּל הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה. וְהֵם נִרְפְּאוּ בְכַח שֶׁה אֱלֹהִים, וְהַשְּׂדִים וְהַרוּחוֹת הַטְּמֵאִים נִדְּחוּ מֵהֶם.
- 32 And it came to pass that the angel spake unto me again, saying: Look! And I looked and beheld the Lamb of God, that he was taken by the

נִלְקַח עַל יְדֵי הָעָם. אָכֵן, בֶּן אֵל הָעוֹלָמִים  
נִשְׁפָּט עַל יְדֵי בְנֵי תַבָּל; וְרֵאִיתִי וְאָעִיד עַל כָּן.

people; yea, the Son of the everlasting God was judged of the world;  
and I saw and bear record.

וְאֲנִי, נְפִי, רֵאִיתִי כִּי הוּרָם עַל הַצֵּלֶב וְנִהְרַג עַל  
חַטָּאתֵי הָעוֹלָם.

33 And I, Nephi, saw that he was lifted up upon the cross and slain for the  
sins of the world.

וְאַחֵר אֲשֶׁר הָרַג, רֵאִיתִי אֶת הַמוֹנֵי הָאָרֶץ  
נֹאֲסָפִים לְהִלָּחֵם בְּשְׁלִיחֵי הָשָׂה, כִּי כֹן נִקְרְאוּ  
שְׁנַיִם הָעֶשְׂרִי בְּפִי מַלְאָךְ יְהוָה.

34 And after he was slain I saw the multitudes of the earth, that they were  
gathered together to fight against the apostles of the Lamb; for thus  
were the twelve called by the angel of the Lord.

וְהַמוֹנֵי הָאָרֶץ נֹאֲסָפוּ יַחְדָּו. כִּי הָיוּ בְּתוֹךְ  
בֵּית גָּדוֹל וְרוּחַב מְדוֹת כְּבֵית אֲשֶׁר רָאָה אָבִי.  
וְעוֹד דִּבֶּר אֵלַי מַלְאָךְ יְהוָה לֵאמֹר: רָאָה אֶת  
הָעוֹלָם וְאֶת חֻכְמָתוֹ; אָכֵן, רָאָה כִּי בֵית  
יִשְׂרָאֵל נֹאֲסָפוּ יַחְדָּו לְהִלָּחֵם כְּנֶגֶד שְׁנַיִם  
עֶשְׂרֵי שְׁלִיחֵי הָשָׂה.

35 And the multitude of the earth was gathered together; and I beheld that  
they were in a large and spacious building, like unto the building which  
my father saw. And the angel of the Lord spake unto me again, saying:  
Behold the world and the wisdom thereof; yea, behold the house of  
Israel hath gathered together to fight against the twelve apostles of  
the Lamb.

וְרֵאִיתִי וְאָעִיד אֲשֶׁר הַבֵּית הַגָּדוֹל וְרוּחַב  
הַמְדוֹת הָיָה נִצָּנוֹת הָעוֹלָם; וְהוּא נָפַל וְגִדּוּלָהּ  
מְאֹד הָיְתָה מִפִּלְתּוֹ. וְעוֹד דִּבֶּר אֵלַי מַלְאָךְ  
יְהוָה לֵאמֹר: כֹּה יִהְיֶה חֲרָבֹן כָּל הָאֲמוֹת,  
וְהַמְשַׁפְּחוֹת וְהַלְשׁוֹנוֹת וְהָעַמִּים אֲשֶׁר  
יִלָּחֲמוּ עַל שְׁנַיִם עֶשְׂרֵי שְׁלִיחֵי הָשָׂה.

36 And it came to pass that I saw and bear record, that the great and  
spacious building was the pride of the world; and it fell, and the fall  
thereof was exceedingly great. And the angel of the Lord spake unto  
me again, saying: Thus shall be the destruction of all nations, kindreds,  
tongues, and people, that shall fight against the twelve apostles of  
the Lamb.

## יב

## 12

וְאָמַר אֵלַי הַמַּלְאָךְ: הִבֵּט וְרֵאָה אֶת זֶרַעְךָ  
וְאֶת זֶרַע אֲחִיךָ. וְהִבֵּטִי וְרֵאִיתִי אֶת הָאָרֶץ  
הַיְעוּדָה; וְרֵאִיתִי הַמוֹנֵי אֲנָשִׁים אֲשֶׁר מִסְפָּרָם  
כְּחוֹל הַיָּם.

1 And it came to pass that the angel said unto me: Look, and behold thy  
seed, and also the seed of thy brethren. And I looked and beheld the  
land of promise; and I beheld multitudes of people, yea, even as it were  
in number as many as the sand of the sea.

וְרֵאִיתִי הַמוֹנִים נֹאֲסָפִים לְהִלָּחֵם אִישׁ בְּאֲחִיו;  
וְרֵאִיתִי מִלְחָמוֹת וְשִׁמוּעוֹת מִלְחָמָה, וְהִרְג רַב  
בְּחֶרֶב בְּקֶרֶב עַמִּי.

2 And it came to pass that I beheld multitudes gathered together to  
battle, one against the other; and I beheld wars, and rumors of wars,  
and great slaughters with the sword among my people.

וְרֵאִיתִי דוֹרוֹת רַבִּים חוֹלְפִים עוֹבְרִים, כְּדֶרֶךְ  
מִלְחָמוֹת וּמְרִיבוֹת בָּאָרֶץ; וְרֵאִיתִי עָרִים רַבּוֹת  
עַד כִּי לֹא מִנֵּיתִי אוֹתָן.

3 And it came to pass that I beheld many generations pass away, after the  
manner of wars and contentions in the land; and I beheld many cities,  
yea, even that I did not number them.

וְרֵאִיתִי עֶרְפֶּל חֹשֶׁכָה עַל פְּנֵי הָאָרֶץ הַיְעוּדָה  
וְרֵאִיתִי בְּרָקִים וְשִׁמְעֵי רָעָמִים וְרַעְשֵׁי אֲדָמָה  
וְכָל מִינֵי קוֹלוֹת הַמְּלָה; וְרֵאִיתִי אֶת הָאֲדָמָה  
וְאֶת הַסֵּלָעִים נִבְקָעִים; וְרֵאִיתִי הָרִים  
מִתְמוֹטְטִים וְנִבְקָעִים, וְרֵאִיתִי אֶת בְּקָעוֹת  
הָאָרֶץ נִשְׁבָּרוֹת; וְרֵאִיתִי עָרִים רַבּוֹת נִבְלָעוֹת;

4 And it came to pass that I saw a mist of darkness on the face of the  
land of promise; and I saw lightnings, and I heard thunderings, and  
earthquakes, and all manner of tumultuous noises; and I saw the earth  
and the rocks, that they rent; and I saw mountains tumbling into pieces;  
and I saw the plains of the earth, that they were broken up; and I saw  
many cities that they were sunk; and I saw many that they were burned

- וְרָאִיתִי רַבִּים שְׂרוּפֵי אֵשׁ; וְרָאִיתִי רַבִּים אֲשֶׁר  
נָפְלוּ אֶרְצָה מִפְּנֵי רָעַשׁ הָאָרֶץ.
- וְהָיָה אַחֵר רְאוּתִי אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה,  
רָאִיתִי כִּי סָרוּ עֲרַפְלֵי הַחֹשֶׁכָה מֵעַל פְּנֵי  
הָאָרֶץ. וְרָאִיתִי הַמּוֹנִים אֲשֶׁר לֹא נָפְלוּ מִפְּנֵי  
מִשְׁפָּטֵי יְהוָה הַגְּדוֹלִים וְהַנּוֹרָאִים.
- וְרָאִיתִי אֶת הַשָּׁמַיִם נִפְתָּחִים וְשֶׁה אֱלֹהִים יוֹרֵד  
מִן הַשָּׁמַיִם, וְהוּא בָּא מִטָּה וְהִתְגַּלָּה אֵלֵיהֶם.
- וְרָאִיתִי עוֹד, וְהִגֵּנִי מַעִיד, כִּי רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ נָחָה  
עַל שְׁנַיִם עֶשֶׂר נֹסֶפִים וְהֵם הִסְמְכוּ מֵאֵת  
אֱלֹהִים וְנִבְחָרוּ.
- וְהַמְּלָאךְ דִּבֶּר אֵלַי לֵאמֹר: רְאֵה אֶת שְׁנַיִם עֶשֶׂר  
תַּלְמִידֵי הַשָּׂה אֲשֶׁר נִבְחָרוּ לְשִׁמּוֹשׁ לִפְנֵי זֶרַעַךְ.
- וְהוּא אָמַר אֵלַי: הִתְזַכֵּר אֶת שְׁנַיִם עֶשֶׂר  
שְׁלִיחֵי הַשָּׂה? הֲנֵה כִּי הֵם אֲשֶׁר יִשְׁפְּטוּ אֶת  
שְׁנַיִם עֶשֶׂר שְׂבָטֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל; עַל כֵּן יִשְׁפְּטוּ הֵם  
אֶת שְׁנַיִם עֶשֶׂר הַשְּׂרָתִים אֲשֶׁר מִזֶּרַעַךְ,  
כִּי מִבֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל אַתֶּם.
- וְשְׁנַיִם עֶשֶׂר הַשְּׂרָתִים אֲשֶׁר הִנֵּה רוֹאֶה,  
יִשְׁפְּטוּ אֶת זֶרַעַךְ, הֲנֵה הֵם צַדִּיקִים לְעוֹלָם;  
כִּי בַעֲבוּר אֱמוּנָתָם בְּשֶׁה אֱלֹהִים, הִלְבִּינוּ  
בְּגִדֵיהֶם בְּדָמוֹ.
- וְאָמַר אֵלַי הַמְּלָאךְ: הִבֵּט נָא! וְהִבֵּטִיתִי וְרָאִיתִי  
שְׁלֹשָׁה דּוֹרוֹת עוֹבְרִים בְּצִדְקָה. וְהָיוּ בְּגִדֵיהֶם  
לְבָנִים כְּלָבָן שֶׁה אֱלֹהִים. וְאָמַר אֵלַי הַמְּלָאךְ:  
אֵלֶּה הִלְבִּינוּ בְּדָם הַשָּׁה, בַּעֲבוּר אֱמוּנָתָם בּוֹ.
- וְאַנִּי, נְפִי, רָאִיתִי גַם רַבִּים מִפְּנֵי הַדּוֹר הָרַבִּיעִי  
אֲשֶׁר עָבְרוּ בְּצִדְקָה.
- וְרָאִיתִי אֶת הַמּוֹנֵי הָאָרֶץ נֹאֲסָפִים יַחַד.
- וְאָמַר אֵלַי הַמְּלָאךְ: רְאֵה אֶת זֶרַעַךְ וְאֶת  
זֶרַע אַחִיךָ.
- וְנִשְׁאֲתִי אֶת עֵינִי וְרָאִיתִי אֶת עַם זֶרַעִי  
נֹאֲסָפִים בְּהַמּוֹנֵיהֶם עַל זֶרַע אַחִי; וְהֵם  
נֹאֲסָפוּ לְמִלְחָמָה.
- with fire; and I saw many that did tumble to the earth, because of the  
quaking thereof.
- 5 And it came to pass after I saw these things, I saw the vapor of  
darkness, that it passed from off the face of the earth; and behold, I  
saw multitudes who had not fallen because of the great and terrible  
judgments of the Lord.
- 6 And I saw the heavens open, and the Lamb of God descending out of  
heaven; and he came down and showed himself unto them.
- 7 And I also saw and bear record that the Holy Ghost fell upon twelve  
others; and they were ordained of God, and chosen.
- 8 And the angel spake unto me, saying: Behold the twelve disciples of the  
Lamb, who are chosen to minister unto thy seed.
- 9 And he said unto me: Thou rememberest the twelve apostles of the  
Lamb? Behold they are they who shall judge the twelve tribes of Israel;  
wherefore, the twelve ministers of thy seed shall be judged of them; for  
ye are of the house of Israel.
- 10 And these twelve ministers whom thou beholdest shall judge thy seed.  
And, behold, they are righteous forever; for because of their faith in the  
Lamb of God their garments are made white in his blood.
- 11 And the angel said unto me: Look! And I looked, and beheld three  
generations pass away in righteousness; and their garments were white  
even like unto the Lamb of God. And the angel said unto me: These  
are made white in the blood of the Lamb, because of their faith in him.
- 12 And I, Nephi, also saw many of the fourth generation who passed away  
in righteousness.
- 13 And it came to pass that I saw the multitudes of the earth gathered  
together.
- 14 And the angel said unto me: Behold thy seed, and also the seed of  
thy brethren.
- 15 And it came to pass that I looked and beheld the people of my seed  
gathered together in multitudes against the seed of my brethren; and  
they were gathered together to battle.

- 16 And the angel spake unto me, saying: Behold the fountain of filthy water which thy father saw; yea, even the river of which he spake; and the depths thereof are the depths of hell.
- וַדְּבַר הַמַּלְאָךְ אֵלַי לֵאמֹר: רְאֵה אֶת מַעְיֵן הַמַּיִם הַמְטַנְפִּים אֲשֶׁר רָאָה אָבִיךָ, וְהוּא הַנָּהָר אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר עָלָיו, וּמַצּוּלוֹתָיו הֵן תַּחְתִּיּוֹת שָׂאוֹל.
- 17 And the mists of darkness are the temptations of the devil, which blindeth the eyes, and hardeneth the hearts of the children of men, and leadeth them away into broad roads, that they perish and are lost.
- וְעַרְפְּלֵי הַחֹשֶׁכָה הֵם מְדוּחֵי הַשָּׁטָן הַמְטַנְנִים עֵינַיִם וּמְקַשִּׁים אֶת לֵב בְּנֵי הָאָדָם וּמְנַהִיגִים אוֹתָם אֶל מַסְלֹת רְחֵבֹת אֲשֶׁר אָבוֹד יֵאבְדוּ בָּהֶן.
- 18 And the large and spacious building, which thy father saw, is vain imaginations and the pride of the children of men. And a great and a terrible gulf divideth them; yea, even the word of the justice of the Eternal God, and the Messiah who is the Lamb of God, of whom the Holy Ghost beareth record, from the beginning of the world until this time, and from this time henceforth and forever.
- וְהַבֵּית הַגָּדוֹל וְרָחֵב הַמְדוּת אֲשֶׁר רָאָה אָבִיךָ הוּא דְּמִיוֹנוֹת שָׂוָא וְגָאוֹת בְּנֵי הָאָדָם, וְתַהוֹם גְּדוֹלָה וְנוֹרָאָה מַפְרִידָה אוֹתָם; וְהִיא דִּבְרַת הַצֶּדֶק אֲשֶׁר לֹאֵל הַנִּצְחִי וְלַמְּשִׁיחַ אֲשֶׁר הוּא שֶׁהָאֱלֹהִים, אֲשֶׁר רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ מַעֲיִדָה עָלָיו מִיָּמֵי רֵאשִׁית הָעוֹלָם וְעַד הָעֵת הַזֹּאת, וּמַעֲתָה וְעַד עוֹלָם.
- 19 And while the angel spake these words, I beheld and saw that the seed of my brethren did contend against my seed, according to the word of the angel; and because of the pride of my seed, and the temptations of the devil, I beheld that the seed of my brethren did overpower the people of my seed.
- וְהָיָה בְּדִבְרֵי הַמַּלְאָךְ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, הִבְטַתִּי וָרָאִיתִי כִּי זָרַע אַחִי אֶכֶן נִלָּחֵם בְּזַרְעִי, כְּאֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר הַמַּלְאָךְ; וָרָאִיתִי כִּי מִפְּנֵי גָאוֹת זָרָעִי וּמְדוּחֵי הַשָּׁטָן גָּבַר זָרַע אַחִי עַל עַם זָרָעִי.
- 20 And it came to pass that I beheld, and saw the people of the seed of my brethren that they had overcome my seed; and they went forth in multitudes upon the face of the land.
- וְהִבְטַתִּי וָרָאִיתִי אֶת עַם זָרַע אַחִי גּוֹבְרִים עַל זָרָעִי; וְהֵם פָּשְׁטוּ בַּהֲמוֹנִים עַל פְּנֵי הָאָרֶץ.
- 21 And I saw them gathered together in multitudes; and I saw wars and rumors of wars among them; and in wars and rumors of wars I saw many generations pass away.
- וָרָאִיתִי אוֹתָם נֶאֱסָפִים בַּהֲמוֹנֵיהֶם; וָרָאִיתִי מִלְחָמוֹת וּשְׁמוּעוֹת מִלְחָמָה אֲשֶׁר בֵּינֵיהֶם. וּבְמִלְחָמוֹת וּבְשְׁמוּעוֹת מִלְחָמָה רָאִיתִי דוֹרוֹת רַבִּים חוֹלְפִים עוֹבְרִים.
- 22 And the angel said unto me: Behold these shall dwindle in unbelief.
- וַאֲמַר אֵלַי הַמַּלְאָךְ: הִנֵּה, אֵלֶּה יִשְׁקָעוּ בַּחֲסָר אֱמוּנָה.
- 23 And it came to pass that I beheld, after they had dwindled in unbelief they became a dark, and loathsome, and a filthy people, full of idleness and all manner of abominations.
- וָרָאִיתִי כִּי אַחֵר שְׁקִיעֻתָם בַּחֲסָר אֱמוּנָה, הָיוּ לְעָם כָּהָה גָּנוֹן, מְאֹס וּמְטַנָּף, שְׁקוּעַ בַּעֲצָלוֹת וּבְכָל מִינֵי תוֹעֵבוֹת.

## יג

## 13

- 1 And it came to pass that the angel spake unto me, saying: Look! And I looked and beheld many nations and kingdoms.
- וַדְּבַר הַמַּלְאָךְ אֵלַי לֵאמֹר: הִבֵּט נָא! וְהִבְטַתִּי וָרָאִיתִי עַמִּים וּמַמְלָכוֹת לָרֹב.
- 2 And the angel said unto me: What beholdest thou? And I said: I behold many nations and kingdoms.
- וַאֲמַר אֵלַי הַמַּלְאָךְ: מָה אַתָּה רוֹאֶה? וָאָמַרְתִּי: אֲנִי רוֹאֶה עַמִּים וּמַמְלָכוֹת לָרֹב.



- 3 And he said unto me: These are the nations and kingdoms of the Gentiles.  
וְהוּא אָמַר אֵלַי: אֵלֶּה עַמֵּי הַגּוֹיִּים וּמַמְלָכוֹתֵיהֶם.
- 4 And it came to pass that I saw among the nations of the Gentiles the foundation of a great church.  
וְרָאִיתִי בֵּין עַמֵּי הַגּוֹיִּים יְסוֹד כְּנִסְיָה גְדוֹלָה.
- 5 And the angel said unto me: Behold the foundation of a church which is most abominable above all other churches, which slayeth the saints of God, yea, and tortureth them and bindeth them down, and yoketh them with a yoke of iron, and bringeth them down into captivity.  
וְאָמַר אֵלַי הַמַּלְאָךְ: רְאֵה יְסוֹד כְּנִסְיָה אֲשֶׁר הִיא נְתַעֲבֶת יוֹתֵר מִכָּל שְׂאָר הַכְּנִסְיּוֹת, אֲשֶׁר הוֹרֶגֶת אֶת קְדוּשֵׁי אֱלֹהִים; אַכּוֹ, מַעֲנָה אוֹתָם וְאוֹסֶרֶת אוֹתָם, וְאֵף נוֹתֶנֶת עֲלֵיהֶם עַל בְּרוֹץ וּמוֹלִיכָה אוֹתָם בַּשָּׁבִי.
- 6 And it came to pass that I beheld this great and abominable church; and I saw the devil that he was the founder of it.  
וְרָאִיתִי אֶת הַכְּנִסְיָה הַגְּדוֹלָה וְהַנְּתַעֲבֶתֶת הַזֹּאת; וְרָאִיתִי אֶת הַשָּׂטָן, אֲשֶׁר הוּא מְיַסְדָּהּ.
- 7 And I also saw gold, and silver, and silks, and scarlets, and fine-twined linen, and all manner of precious clothing; and I saw many harlots.  
וְרָאִיתִי זָהָב וְכֶסֶף וּמָשִׁי וְשָׁנִי וְשֵׁשׁ מְשֻׁזָּר, וְכָל מִינֵי בִגְדֵי יְקָרוֹת; וְרָאִיתִי זֹנוֹת לָרֹב.
- 8 And the angel spake unto me, saying: Behold the gold, and the silver, and the silks, and the scarlets, and the fine-twined linen, and the precious clothing, and the harlots, are the desires of this great and abominable church.  
וַדָּבַר הַמַּלְאָךְ אֵלַי לֵאמֹר: רְאֵה אֶת הַזָּהָב וְהַכֶּסֶף, הַמָּשִׁי וְהַשָּׁנִי וְהַשֵּׁשׁ הַמְשֻׁזָּר וּבִגְדֵי הַיְקָרוֹת וְהַזֹּנוֹת! הֵם מִשְׁאַת לֵב הַכְּנִסְיָה הַגְּדוֹלָה וְהַנְּתַעֲבֶתֶת הַזֹּאת.
- 9 And also for the praise of the world do they destroy the saints of God, and bring them down into captivity.  
וּבַעֲבוּר שִׁבַּח הָעוֹלָם הֵם מְשַׁמְדִּים אֶת קְדוּשֵׁי אֱלֹהִים וּמוֹלִיכִים אוֹתָם בַּשָּׁבִי.
- 10 And it came to pass that I looked and beheld many waters; and they divided the Gentiles from the seed of my brethren.  
וְנִשְׁאַתִּי אֶת עֵינֵי וְרָאִיתִי מַיִם רַבִּים הַמְבַדִּילִים אֶת הַגּוֹיִּים מִזֶּרַע אַחִי.
- 11 And it came to pass that the angel said unto me: Behold the wrath of God is upon the seed of thy brethren.  
וְאָמַר אֵלַי הַמַּלְאָךְ: רְאֵה אֶת חֲמַת אֱלֹהִים עַל זֶרַע אַחִיד!
- 12 And I looked and beheld a man among the Gentiles, who were separated from the seed of my brethren by the many waters; and I beheld the Spirit of God, that it came down and wrought upon the man; and he went forth upon the many waters, even unto the seed of my brethren, who were in the promised land.  
וְנִשְׁאַתִּי אֶת עֵינֵי וְרָאִיתִי אִישׁ בֵּין הַגּוֹיִּים, אֲשֶׁר הַמַּיִם הָרַבִּים הִבְדִּילוּהוּ מִזֶּרַע אַחִי; וְרָאִיתִי כִּי רוּחַ אֱלֹהִים יֵרְדָה וּפָעָלָה בְּאִישׁ, וְהוּא יֵצֵא וְנָסַע עַל פְּנֵי הַמַּיִם הָרַבִּים, עַד הַגִּיעוֹ אֶל זֶרַע אַחִי אֲשֶׁר בְּאֶרֶץ הַיְעוּדָה.
- 13 And it came to pass that I beheld the Spirit of God, that it wrought upon other Gentiles; and they went forth out of captivity, upon the many waters.  
וְרָאִיתִי אֶת רוּחַ אֱלֹהִים אֲשֶׁר פָּעָלָה בְּקֶרֶב גּוֹיִּים אַחֲרִים, וְהֵם יֵצְאוּ מִן הַשְׁבִּיָּה וְהֵלְכוּ עַל הַמַּיִם הָרַבִּים.
- 14 And it came to pass that I beheld many multitudes of the Gentiles upon the land of promise; and I beheld the wrath of God, that it was upon the seed of my brethren; and they were scattered before the Gentiles and were smitten.  
וְרָאִיתִי הַמוֹנֵי גּוֹיִּים רַבִּים בְּאֶרֶץ הַיְעוּדָה, וְרָאִיתִי אֶת חֲמַת אֱלֹהִים אֲשֶׁר עַל זֶרַע אַחִי, וְהֵם הוּפְצוּ מִלִּפְנֵי הַגּוֹיִּים וְנִגְפוּ.



- 15 And I beheld the Spirit of the Lord, that it was upon the Gentiles, and they did prosper and obtain the land for their inheritance; and I beheld that they were white, and exceedingly fair and beautiful, like unto my people before they were slain.
- וְרָאִיתִי אֶת רוּחַ אֱלֹהִים אֲשֶׁר נָחָה עַל הַגּוֹיִם וְהִנֵּה הֵם הִצְלִיחוּ וְקִבְּלוּ אֶת הָאָרֶץ לְנַחֲלָה; וְרָאִיתִי כִּי הָיוּ לְבָנִים וְנָאִים לְמִרְאָה וַיְפִי תֹאֵר, כְּדַמּוֹת עַמִּי לִפְנֵי הַשָּׁמַיִם.
- 16 And it came to pass that I, Nephi, beheld that the Gentiles who had gone forth out of captivity did humble themselves before the Lord; and the power of the Lord was with them.
- וְאַנִּי, נְפִי, רָאִיתִי כִּי הַגּוֹיִים אֲשֶׁר יָצְאוּ מִן הַשְׁבִּיָּה נִכְנָעוּ לִפְנֵי יְהוָה; וְהָיָה כֹחַ יְהוָה עִמָּהֶם.
- 17 And I beheld that their mother Gentiles were gathered together upon the waters, and upon the land also, to battle against them.
- וְרָאִיתִי כִּי גוֹי אֲרָצוֹת מוֹלֶדֶתָם נֶאֱסְפוּ עַל פְּנֵי הַמַּיִם וְעַל הָאָרֶץ לְהִלָּחֵם בָּם.
- 18 And I beheld that the power of God was with them, and also that the wrath of God was upon all those that were gathered together against them to battle.
- וְרָאִיתִי כִּי כֹחַ אֱלֹהִים הָיָה עִמָּם, וְאַף כִּי חֲמַת אֱלֹהִים הָיְתָה עַל כָּל אֲשֶׁר נִקְבְּצוּ לְאַסֹּר מִלְחָמָה עֲלֵיהֶם.
- 19 And I, Nephi, beheld that the Gentiles that had gone out of captivity were delivered by the power of God out of the hands of all other nations.
- וְאַנִּי, נְפִי, רָאִיתִי כִּי הַגּוֹיִים אֲשֶׁר יָצְאוּ מִן הַשְׁבִּיָּה נִצְּלוּ בְכֹחַ אֱלֹהִים מִיַּד כָּל שְׂאֵר הָעַמִּים.
- 20 And it came to pass that I, Nephi, beheld that they did prosper in the land; and I beheld a book, and it was carried forth among them.
- וְרָאִיתִי, אֲנִי, נְפִי, כִּי הֵם הִצְלִיחוּ בָּאָרֶץ. וְרָאִיתִי סֵפֶר אֲשֶׁר הִחֲזִיקוּהוּ בֵּינֵיהֶם.
- 21 And the angel said unto me: Knowest thou the meaning of the book?
- וְאָמַר אֱלִי הַמַּלְאָךְ: הֲתֵדַע אַתָּה פֶּשֶׁר הַסֵּפֶר?
- 22 And I said unto him: I know not.
- וְאָמַרְתִּי אֵלָיו: לֹא יָדַעְתִּי.
- 23 And he said: Behold it proceedeth out of the mouth of a Jew. And I, Nephi, beheld it; and he said unto me: The book that thou beholdest is a record of the Jews, which contains the covenants of the Lord, which he hath made unto the house of Israel; and it also containeth many of the prophecies of the holy prophets; and it is a record like unto the engravings which are upon the plates of brass, save there are not so many; nevertheless, they contain the covenants of the Lord, which he hath made unto the house of Israel; wherefore, they are of great worth unto the Gentiles.
- וְהוּא אָמַר אֵלָי: הִנֵּה, הוּא יוֹצֵא מִפִּי יְהוּדִי. וְאַנִּי, נְפִי, רָאִיתִי אֶת הַסֵּפֶר. וְהוּא אָמַר אֵלָי: הַסֵּפֶר אֲשֶׁר אַתָּה רֹאֶה הוּא כְּתָב זִכְרוֹן אֲשֶׁר לַיהוּדִים וְבוֹ בְרִיתוֹת יְהוָה, אֲשֶׁר כָּרַת עִם בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל וְבוֹ אֵף רַבּוֹת מִנְּבוּאוֹת הַנְּבִיאִים הַקְּדוּשִׁים. וְהוּא כְּתָב זִכְרוֹן כְּפִי הַחֲרִיטוֹת אֲשֶׁר עַל לוחוֹת נְחֹשֶׁת הַקֶּלֶל, אֲךֹּ אֵין הֵן כַּה רַבּוֹת; וְאוּלַּם יֵשׁ בָּהֶן דְּבָרֵי בְרִיתוֹת יְהוָה אֲשֶׁר כָּרַת עִם בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל; עַל כֵּן רַב עֶרְכָּן לְגוֹיִים.
- 24 And the angel of the Lord said unto me: Thou hast beheld that the book proceeded forth from the mouth of a Jew; and when it proceeded forth from the mouth of a Jew it contained the fulness of the gospel of the Lord, of whom the twelve apostles bear record; and they bear record according to the truth which is in the Lamb of God.
- וְאָמַר אֱלִי מַלְאָךְ יְהוָה: הִנֵּה רָאִיתָ כִּי הַסֵּפֶר יוֹצֵא מִפִּי יְהוּדִי; וּבְצֵאתוֹ מִפִּי יְהוּדִי הָיְתָה בּוֹ בְּשׁוּרֵת יְהוָה בְּמִלְאָה, אֲשֶׁר שְׁנַיִם עָשָׂר הַשְּׁלִיחִים מְעִידִים עָלָיו. וְהֵם מְעִידִים עַל פִּי הָאֱמֶת אֲשֶׁר בָּשָׂה אֱלֹהִים.
- 25 Wherefore, these things go forth from the Jews in purity unto the Gentiles, according to the truth which is in God.
- עַל כֵּן, דְּבָרִים אֵלֶּה יוֹצְאִים בְּטָהֳרָתָם מִן הַיְּהוּדִים אֶל הַגּוֹיִים, עַל פִּי הָאֱמֶת אֲשֶׁר בְּאֱלֹהִים.

- ואחר צאתם ביד שנים עשר שליחי השה מן היהודים אל הגוים, הנך רואה את יסוד הכנסייה הגדולה והנתעבת ההיא אשר היא נתעבת מכל שאר הכנסיות. כי הנה הם עקרו מן הבשורה אשר לשה חלקים רבים אשר הם ברויים ויקרים מאד, וכן עקרו דברי בריתות יהוה רבים.
- 26 And after they go forth by the hand of the twelve apostles of the Lamb, from the Jews unto the Gentiles, thou seest the formation of a great and abominable church, which is most abominable above all other churches; for behold, they have taken away from the gospel of the Lamb many parts which are plain and most precious; and also many covenants of the Lord have they taken away.
- ואכל זאת עשו למען עות את דרכי הישר אשר ליהוה ולמען סנור עיני בני אדם והקשות לבם.
- 27 And all this have they done that they might pervert the right ways of the Lord, that they might blind the eyes and harden the hearts of the children of men.
- הנה ראית כי אחר צאת הספר מעם הכנסייה הגדולה והנתעבת, נעקרו דברים ברויים ויקרים רבים מן הספר, אשר הוא ספר שיהוה אלהים.
- 28 Wherefore, thou seest that after the book hath gone forth through the hands of the great and abominable church, that there are many plain and precious things taken away from the book, which is the book of the Lamb of God.
- ואחר עקירת דברים ברויים ויקרים אלה נפוצ הספר אל כל עמי הגוים. ואחר הפצת הספר בין כל עמי הגוים, אף מעבר למים הרבים אשר ראית אותם עם הגוים אשר יצאו מן השביה, הנך רואה, כי מפני עקירת דברים ברויים ויקרים רבים מן הספר, אשר היו פשוטים להבנת בני אדם כפי הפשטות אשר בשה אלהים, אכן מפני הדברים האלה אשר נעקרו מספר בשורת שיהוה אלהים, רבים עד מאד הכושלים, עד אשר גדול כח השטן לגבר עליהם.
- 29 And after these plain and precious things were taken away it goeth forth unto all the nations of the Gentiles; and after it goeth forth unto all the nations of the Gentiles, yea, even across the many waters which thou hast seen with the Gentiles which have gone forth out of captivity, thou seest—because of the many plain and precious things which have been taken out of the book, which were plain unto the understanding of the children of men, according to the plainness which is in the Lamb of God—because of these things which are taken away out of the gospel of the Lamb, an exceedingly great many do stumble, yea, insomuch that Satan hath great power over them.
- ועל אף זאת, הנך רואה כי הגוים אשר יצאו מן השביה ואשר נשאו בכח אלהים מעל שאר העמים על פני הארץ, אשר היא נבחרת על כל שאר הארצות, היא הארץ אשר יעדה יהוה אלהים בברית עם אביה, להיות ארץ נחלת זרעו; אכן, הנך רואה כי לא יניח יהוה אלהים לגוים להכחיד את תערבת זרעו אשר בקרב עם אחיה.
- 30 Nevertheless, thou beholdest that the Gentiles who have gone forth out of captivity, and have been lifted up by the power of God above all other nations, upon the face of the land which is choice above all other lands, which is the land that the Lord God hath covenanted with thy father that his seed should have for the land of their inheritance; wherefore, thou seest that the Lord God will not suffer that the Gentiles will utterly destroy the mixture of thy seed, which are among thy brethren.
- גם לא יניח הוא לגוים להכחיד את זרע אחיה.
- 31 Neither will he suffer that the Gentiles shall destroy the seed of thy brethren.
- ואף לא יניח יהוה אלהים כי לעולם ישארו הגוים בעורונו הנורא אשר ראית אותם מצויים בו, מפני חלקי בשורת השה הברורים והיקרים אשר הסתרו בידי הכנסייה הנתעבת ההיא, אשר חזית את יסודה.
- 32 Neither will the Lord God suffer that the Gentiles shall forever remain in that awful state of blindness, which thou beholdest they are in, because of the plain and most precious parts of the gospel of the Lamb which have been kept back by that abominable church, whose formation thou hast seen.

- 33 על כן כה יאמר שה אלהים: ארחם את הגוים כאשר אפקד את שארית בית ישראל במשפט גדול.
- 34 And it came to pass that the angel of the Lord spake unto me, saying: Behold, saith the Lamb of God, after I have visited the remnant of the house of Israel—and this remnant of whom I speak is the seed of thy father—wherefore, after I have visited them in judgment, and smitten them by the hand of the Gentiles, and after the Gentiles do stumble exceedingly, because of the most plain and precious parts of the gospel of the Lamb which have been kept back by that abominable church, which is the mother of harlots, saith the Lamb—I will be merciful unto the Gentiles in that day, insomuch that I will bring forth unto them, in mine own power, much of my gospel, which shall be plain and precious, saith the Lamb.
- 35 For, behold, saith the Lamb: I will manifest myself unto thy seed, that they shall write many things which I shall minister unto them, which shall be plain and precious; and after thy seed shall be destroyed, and dwindle in unbelief, and also the seed of thy brethren, behold, these things shall be hid up, to come forth unto the Gentiles, by the gift and power of the Lamb.
- 36 And in them shall be written my gospel, saith the Lamb, and my rock and my salvation.
- 37 And blessed are they who shall seek to bring forth my Zion at that day, for they shall have the gift and the power of the Holy Ghost; and if they endure unto the end they shall be lifted up at the last day, and shall be saved in the everlasting kingdom of the Lamb; and whoso shall publish peace, yea, tidings of great joy, how beautiful upon the mountains shall they be.
- 38 And it came to pass that I beheld the remnant of the seed of my brethren, and also the book of the Lamb of God, which had proceeded forth from the mouth of the Jew, that it came forth from the Gentiles unto the remnant of the seed of my brethren.
- 39 And after it had come forth unto them I beheld other books, which came forth by the power of the Lamb, from the Gentiles unto them, unto the convincing of the Gentiles and the remnant of the seed of my brethren, and also the Jews who were scattered upon all the face of the earth, that the records of the prophets and of the twelve apostles of the Lamb are true.
- 40 And the angel spake unto me, saying: These last records, which thou hast seen among the Gentiles, shall establish the truth of the first,
- וְדָבַר מִלְאָךְ יְהוָה אֵלַי לֵאמֹר: כֹּה אָמַר שֶׁה אֱלֹהִים: אַחֲרֵי פָקַדְתִּי אֶת שְׂאִרֵּית בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל, וְהַשְׂאִירִית אֲשֶׁר בָּהּ אֲדַבֵּר הִיא זֶרַע אֲבִיךָ; הִנֵּה אַחֲרֵי פָקַדְתִּי אוֹתָם בְּמִשְׁפָּט וְהִכּוֹתִי אוֹתָם בְּיַד הַגּוֹיִּים, וְאַחֲרֵי אֲשֶׁר רַב יִהְיֶה כְּשִׁלּוֹן הַגּוֹיִּים מִפְּנֵי חִלְקִי בְּשׁוֹרֶת הַשָּׂה הַבְּרוּרִים וְהַיְקָרִים אֲשֶׁר נִעְקְרוּ בְּיַד הַכְּנָסִיָּה הַנִּתְעַבֶּת הַהִיא, אֲשֶׁר הִיא אִם הַזֹּנוֹת, בְּיוֹם הַהוּא אֲרַחֵם אֶת הַגּוֹיִּים, נְאוּם הַשָּׂה, עַד כִּי בְּעֵצָם גְּבוּרָתִי אֲבִיא אֲלֵיהֶם רַב בְּשׁוֹרָתִי, אֲשֶׁר תִּהְיֶה בְּרוּרָה וְיִקָּרָה, נְאוּם הַשָּׂה.
- כִּי כֹה אָמַר הַשָּׂה: הִנְנִי מַתְּגִלָּה לְזֶרְעֶךָ לְמַעַן יִכְתְּבוּ דְבָרִים רַבִּים אֲשֶׁר אֲשַׁלֵּחַם אֲלֵיהֶם, אֲשֶׁר הֵם בְּרוּרִים וְיִקָּרִים. וְאַחֲרֵי אֲשֶׁר יִשְׁמַד זֶרְעֶךָ וְיִשְׁקַע בְּחֹסֶר אֱמוּנָה, וְכֹן זֶרַע אַחֲיֶיךָ, הִנֵּה יִסְתַּמְּנוּ הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה וְיֵצְאוּ לְאוֹר אֶל הַגּוֹיִּים, בְּמַתַּת הַשָּׂה וּמִכְחוֹ.
- וּבֵהֶם תִּכְתֹּב בְּשׁוֹרָתִי, נְאוּם הַשָּׂה, וְצוּרִי וְיִשׁוּעָתִי.
- וּבְרוּכִים הֵם הַמְּבַקְשִׁים בְּיוֹם הַהוּא לְיִסֵּד אֶת צִיּוֹן אֲשֶׁר לִי, כִּי לָהֶם תִּהְיֶה מַתַּת רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ וְכִחָהּ. וְהִיא אִם יִתְמִידוֹ עַד הַקֵּץ, יִנְשְׂאוּ בְּיוֹם הָאַחֲרוֹן, וְנוֹשְׁעוּ בְּמַלְכוּת עוֹלָם אֲשֶׁר לַשָּׂה; וְאֲשֶׁר יִשְׁמִיעוּ שְׁלוֹם וּבִשְׁשׁוֹן רַב, מֵה נְאוּמִים יִהְיוּ עָלֵי הָהָרִים.
- וְרָאִיתִי אֶת שְׂאִרֵּית זֶרַע אַחִי וְאֶף אֶת סֵפֶר שֶׁה אֱלֹהִים, אֲשֶׁר יֵצֵא מִפִּי יְהוּדִי, וְהוּא בָּא מִן הַגּוֹיִּים אֶל שְׂאִרֵּית זֶרַע אַחִי.
- וְהִיא אַחֲרֵי בּוֹאוֹ אֲלֵיהֶם, רָאִיתִי סִפְרִים נוֹסְפִים אֲשֶׁר יֵצְאוּ בְכַח הַשָּׂה, מֵאֵת הַגּוֹיִּים אֲלֵיהֶם, לְמַעַן נִתְּנוּ בְּלֵב הַגּוֹיִּים וּבְלֵב שְׂאִרֵּית זֶרַע אַחִי וּבְלֵב הַיְּהוּדִים אֲשֶׁר נִפְּצוּ עַל פְּנֵי כָּל הָאָרֶץ, כִּי כִתְבֵי הַנְּבִיאִים וּשְׁנֵים עָשָׂר שְׁלִיחֵי הַשָּׂה אֵמֶת הֵם.
- וְדָבַר הַמִּלְאָךְ אֵלַי לֵאמֹר: כִּתְבֵי הַזְכָּרוֹן הָאֲחֵרוֹנִים הָאֵלֶּה, אֲשֶׁר רָאִיתִי בְקֶרֶב הַגּוֹיִּים,

יֵאָשְׁרוּ אֶת אֲמִתּוֹת הַכְּתָבִים הָרָאשׁוֹנִים,  
אֲשֶׁר מֵאֵת שְׁנַיִם עָשָׂר שְׁלִיחֵי הַשָּׁה, יוֹדִיעוּ  
אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הַבְּרוּרִים וְהַיְקָרִים אֲשֶׁר נִעְקְרוּ  
מֵהֶם; יוֹדִיעוּ לְכָל הַמְּשַׁפְּחוֹת וְהַלְשׁוֹנוֹת  
וְהָעַמִּים כִּי שֶׁה אֱלֹהִים הוּא בֶן אָב הָעוֹלָמִים  
וּמוֹשִׁיעַ הָעוֹלָם וְכִי שׁוֹמֵה עַל כָּל הָאָדָם לְבֹא  
אֵלָיו, כֹּן לֹא יוֹשְׁעוּ.

וְהֵם יָבֹאוּ עַל פִּי הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר יִכְוֹנֵנוּ  
עַל פִּי הַשָּׁה; וְדַבְּרֵי הַשָּׁה יוֹדְעוּ בְּכַתְבֵי זִרְעוֹ  
וּבְכַתְבֵי שְׁנַיִם עָשָׂר שְׁלִיחֵי הַשָּׁה, עַל כֵּן יִכְוֹנֵנוּ  
שְׁנֵיהֶם בְּאַחַד; כִּי אֵל אֶחָד וְרוּשָׁה אֶחָד יֵשׁ  
עַל כָּל הָאָרֶץ.

וְהֵנָּה יָמִים בָּאִים וְהוּא יִתְגַּלֶּה לְכָל הָעַמִּים,  
לְיִהוּדִים וְאֶף לְגוֹיִם; וְאַחֵר הַתְּגַלּוּתוֹ לְיִהוּדִים  
וְלְגוֹיִם, יִתְגַּלֶּה הוּא לְגוֹיִם וְאֶף לְיִהוּדִים,  
וְהָאַחֲרוֹנִים יִהְיוּ רָאשׁוֹנִים, וְהָרָאשׁוֹנִים  
יִהְיוּ אַחֲרוֹנִים.

## י

וְהִיָּה אִם יִשְׁמְעוּ הַגּוֹיִם אֶל שֶׁה אֱלֹהִים  
בַּיּוֹם הַהוּא, הוּא יוֹדַע אֱלֹהִים בְּדַבּוֹר וְאֶף  
בְּכַח, אֲכֹן בְּמַעֲשֵׂהוּ, לְגַלֵּל אֶת אֲבְנֵי הַנִּגָּף  
אֲשֶׁר לָהֶם.

וְאִם לֹא יִקְשׁוּ אֶת לִבָּם עַל שֶׁה אֱלֹהִים,  
וְנִמְנֵנוּ עִם זֶרַע אֲבִיד; אֲכֹן, הֵם יִמְנוּ עִם בֵּית  
יִשְׂרָאֵל, וְהִיוּ עִם בְּרוּךְ בְּאֶרֶץ הַיְעוּדָה עַד  
עוֹלָם; לֹא יוֹרְדוּ עוֹד אֵלֵי שְׁבִיָּה וּבֵית  
יִשְׂרָאֵל לֹא יִכְלָם עוֹד.

וְהַבּוֹר הַגָּדוֹל אֲשֶׁר חָפְרָה לָהֶם הַכְּנִסְיָה  
הַגָּדוֹלָה וְהַנִּתְעַבָּת, אֲשֶׁר נִסְדָּה בְּיַד הַשָּׁטָן  
וּבְנֵיו לְמַעַן הוֹרִיד אֶת נַפְשׁוֹת בְּנֵי הָאָדָם  
שְׂאוּלָה, אֲכֹן, אָמַר שֶׁה אֱלֹהִים, הַבּוֹר הַגָּדוֹל  
אֲשֶׁר חָפְרָה לְמַחֹת אֶת בְּנֵי הָאָדָם, הִסְתֵּם  
יִסְתֵּם בְּיַד חוֹפְרֶיהָ, עַד הַשְׁמָדָם; אוּלָם  
נַפְשָׁם לֹא תִשְׁמַד, כִּי אִם בְּהִשְׁלָכָתָהּ אֶל  
שְׂאוּל אֲשֶׁר לֹא קֵץ.

כִּי הִנֵּה, זֹאת עַל פִּי שְׁבִיָּת הַשָּׁטָן, וְאֶף עַל  
פִּי צִדְקַת אֱלֹהִים, עַל כָּל אֲשֶׁר יַרְשִׁיעוּ  
וְיִתְעִיבוּ לַפְּנִי.

which are of the twelve apostles of the Lamb, and shall make known the plain and precious things which have been taken away from them; and shall make known to all kindreds, tongues, and people, that the Lamb of God is the Son of the Eternal Father, and the Savior of the world; and that all men must come unto him, or they cannot be saved.

41 And they must come according to the words which shall be established by the mouth of the Lamb; and the words of the Lamb shall be made known in the records of thy seed, as well as in the records of the twelve apostles of the Lamb; wherefore they both shall be established in one; for there is one God and one Shepherd over all the earth.

42 And the time cometh that he shall manifest himself unto all nations, both unto the Jews and also unto the Gentiles; and after he has manifested himself unto the Jews and also unto the Gentiles, then he shall manifest himself unto the Gentiles and also unto the Jews, and the last shall be first, and the first shall be last.

## 14

1 And it shall come to pass, that if the Gentiles shall hearken unto the Lamb of God in that day that he shall manifest himself unto them in word, and also in power, in very deed, unto the taking away of their stumbling blocks—

2 And harden not their hearts against the Lamb of God, they shall be numbered among the seed of thy father; yea, they shall be numbered among the house of Israel; and they shall be a blessed people upon the promised land forever; they shall be no more brought down into captivity; and the house of Israel shall no more be confounded.

3 And that great pit, which hath been digged for them by that great and abominable church, which was founded by the devil and his children, that he might lead away the souls of men down to hell—yea, that great pit which hath been digged for the destruction of men shall be filled by those who digged it, unto their utter destruction, saith the Lamb of God; not the destruction of the soul, save it be the casting of it into that hell which hath no end.

4 For behold, this is according to the captivity of the devil, and also according to the justice of God, upon all those who will work wickedness and abomination before him.

- 5 And it came to pass that the angel spake unto me, Nephi, saying: Thou hast beheld that if the Gentiles repent it shall be well with them; and thou also knowest concerning the covenants of the Lord unto the house of Israel; and thou also hast heard that whoso repenteth not must perish.
- 6 Therefore, wo be unto the Gentiles if it so be that they harden their hearts against the Lamb of God.
- 7 For the time cometh, saith the Lamb of God, that I will work a great and a marvelous work among the children of men; a work which shall be everlasting, either on the one hand or on the other—either to the convincing of them unto peace and life eternal, or unto the deliverance of them to the hardness of their hearts and the blindness of their minds unto their being brought down into captivity, and also into destruction, both temporally and spiritually, according to the captivity of the devil, of which I have spoken.
- 8 And it came to pass that when the angel had spoken these words, he said unto me: Rememberest thou the covenants of the Father unto the house of Israel? I said unto him, Yea.
- 9 And it came to pass that he said unto me: Look, and behold that great and abominable church, which is the mother of abominations, whose founder is the devil.
- 10 And he said unto me: Behold there are save two churches only; the one is the church of the Lamb of God, and the other is the church of the devil; wherefore, whoso belongeth not to the church of the Lamb of God belongeth to that great church, which is the mother of abominations; and she is the whore of all the earth.
- 11 And it came to pass that I looked and beheld the whore of all the earth, and she sat upon many waters; and she had dominion over all the earth, among all nations, kindreds, tongues, and people.
- 12 And it came to pass that I beheld the church of the Lamb of God, and its numbers were few, because of the wickedness and abominations of the whore who sat upon many waters; nevertheless, I beheld that the church of the Lamb, who were the saints of God, were also upon all the face of the earth; and their dominions upon the face of the earth were small, because of the wickedness of the great whore whom I saw.
- 13 And it came to pass that I beheld that the great mother of abominations did gather together multitudes upon the face of all the earth, among all the nations of the Gentiles, to fight against the Lamb of God.
- וַדְּבַר הַמִּלְאָךְ אֵלַי, נְפִי, לֵאמֹר: אֶתָּה רָאִיתָ כִּי בְּהִנָּחֵם הַגּוֹיִים עַל רְעֵתָם יִיטֵב לָהֶם; גַּם יִדְעָתָּ עַל אוֹדוֹת בְּרִיתוֹת יְהוָה לְבֵית יִשְׂרָאֵל, וְאַף שָׁמַעְתָּ כִּי אֲשֶׁר לֹא יִנָּחֵם מִרְעָתוֹ, אֲבֹד יֵאָבֵד.
- וְהָיָה אִם יִקְשׂוּ הַגּוֹיִים אֶת לִבָּם כְּנִגְדֵּךְ שׁוֹה אֱלֹהִים, אוֹי לָהֶם.
- כִּי הִנֵּה בָּאָה הָעֵת, אֲמַר שׁוֹה אֱלֹהִים, וְעָשִׂיתִי מַעֲשֶׂה גָדוֹל וְנִפְלֵא בְּקֶרֶב בְּנֵי הָאָדָם; מַעֲשֶׂה אֲשֶׁר יִקּוּם עָדֵי עַד, בְּאַפִּן הָאֶחָד אוֹ הָאֲחֵר, אִם לְמִשָּׁף לִבָּם לְשָׁלוֹם וְלַחַיִּי עוֹלָם וְאִם לְשִׁלְחָם אֶל קִשִּׁי לִבָּם וְעוֹרוֹן דַּעְתָּם, אֲשֶׁר יוֹבִילוּם אֵלַי שְׂבִיָּה וְאַף כְּלִיוֹן, בְּהִמָּר וּבְרוּחַ, עַל פִּי שְׂבִיַת הַשָּׁטָן, אֲשֶׁר עַל אוֹדוֹתָיו דְּבַרְתִּי.
- וְהָיָה בְּדְבַר הַמִּלְאָךְ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה הוּא אֲמַר אֵלַי: הֲתִזְכֹּר אֶת בְּרִיתוֹת אֲב הַמְּרוֹמִים אֲשֶׁר כָּרַת עִם בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל? וְאָמַרְתִּי: אָכֵן.
- וְהוּא אֲמַר אֵלַי: רְאֵה אֶת הַכְּנָסְיָה הַגְּדוֹלָה וְהַנִּחְשָׁבָת, אֲשֶׁר הִיא אִם הַתּוֹעֵבוֹת, אֲשֶׁר הַשָּׁטָן מִיְסְּדָהּ.
- וְהוּא אֲמַר: רַק שְׁתֵּי כְּנָסְיֹת לְבָדוֹן יֵשׁ, הָאֶחָת הִיא כְּנָסְיַת שׁוֹה אֱלֹהִים וְהָאֲחֶרֶת כְּנָסְיַת הַשָּׁטָן. עַל כֵּן, כָּל אֲשֶׁר אֵינוֹ שִׁיף לְכְנָסְיַת שׁוֹה אֱלֹהִים שִׁיף לְכְנָסְיָהּ הַגְּדוֹלָה הַזֹּאת, אֲשֶׁר הִיא אִם הַתּוֹעֵבוֹת, וְזוֹנֶת כָּל הָאָרֶץ.
- וְהִבְטַחְתִּי וְרָאִיתִי אֶת זוֹנֶת כָּל הָאָרֶץ, וְהִיא יֹשֶׁבֶת עַל מַיִם רַבִּים; וְהִיא מְשָׁלָה עַל כָּל הָאָרֶץ, בֵּין כָּל הָאֻמּוֹת וְהַמְּשָׁפְחוֹת וְהַלְשׁוֹנוֹת וְהָעַמִּים.
- וְרָאִיתִי אֶת כְּנָסְיַת שׁוֹה אֱלֹהִים, וּמִתִּי מַעַט אֲנָשִׁיָּהּ, מִפְּנֵי רָשָׁעַת וְתוֹעֵבוֹת הַזּוֹנָה הַיּוֹשֶׁבֶת עַל מַיִם רַבִּים; וְאוֹלָם רָאִיתִי כִּי אֲנָשִׁי כְּנָסְיַת הַשָּׁה, וְהֵם קְדוּשֵׁי אֱלֹהִים, אֵף הֵם הָיוּ עַל פְּנֵי כָל הָאָרֶץ; וְהִיָּתָה מְמַשְׁלָתָם עַל פְּנֵי הָאָרֶץ מַעֲטָה, מִפְּנֵי רָשָׁעַת הַזּוֹנָה הַגְּדוֹלָה אֲשֶׁר רָאִיתִי.
- וְרָאִיתִי כִּי אִם הַתּוֹעֵבוֹת הַגְּדוֹלָה קִבְּצָה הַמוֹנִי אָדָם עַל פְּנֵי כָל הָאָרֶץ מִבֵּין כָּל עַמֵּי הַגּוֹיִים, לְהִלָּחֵם בְּשׂוֹה אֱלֹהִים.



- 14 And it came to pass that I, Nephi, beheld the power of the Lamb of God, that it descended upon the saints of the church of the Lamb, and upon the covenant people of the Lord, who were scattered upon all the face of the earth; and they were armed with righteousness and with the power of God in great glory.
- וְאֲנִי, נְפִי, רָאִיתִי אֶת גְּבוּרַת שֵׁה אֱלֹהִים נָחָה עַל קְדוּשֵׁי כְּנָסִית הַשֵּׁה וְעַל עַם בְּרִית יְהוָה, הַפְּזוּרִים עַל פְּנֵי כָּל הָאָרֶץ וַיְהִיו חֲמוּשִׁים בַּצִּדְקָה וּבְגְבוּרַת אֱלֹהִים בְּרַב תַּפְאָרָה.
- 15 And it came to pass that I beheld that the wrath of God was poured out upon that great and abominable church, insomuch that there were wars and rumors of wars among all the nations and kindreds of the earth.
- וְרָאִיתִי כִּי חֲמַת אֱלֹהִים נִתְּכָה עַל הַכְּנָסִיָּה הַגְּדוֹלָה וְהַנִּתְעַבֶּת הַהִיא עַד אֲשֶׁר הָיוּ מִלְחָמוֹת וְשִׁמוּעוֹת מִלְחָמָה בְּקֶרֶב כָּל הָעַמִּים וּמִשְׁפָּחוֹת הָאָדָמָה.
- 16 And as there began to be wars and rumors of wars among all the nations which belonged to the mother of abominations, the angel spake unto me, saying: Behold, the wrath of God is upon the mother of harlots; and behold, thou seest all these things—
- וּבִהְחֹל הַמִּלְחָמוֹת וְשִׁמוּעוֹת מִלְחָמָה בֵּין כָּל עַמֵּי אֵם הַתּוֹעֵבוֹת, דִּבֶּר הַמַּלְאָךְ אֵלַי לֵאמֹר: הִנֵּה חֲמַת אֱלֹהִים עַל אֵם הַזְנוֹת, וְהִנֵּה רוֹאֶה אֶת כָּל הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה.
- 17 And when the day cometh that the wrath of God is poured out upon the mother of harlots, which is the great and abominable church of all the earth, whose founder is the devil, then, at that day, the work of the Father shall commence, in preparing the way for the fulfilling of his covenants, which he hath made to his people who are of the house of Israel.
- וּבְבוֹא יוֹם הַשִּׁפּוֹף חֲמַת אֱלֹהִים עַל אֵם הַזְנוֹת, הַכְּנָסִיָּה הַגְּדוֹלָה וְהַנִּתְעַבֶּת בְּכָל הָאָרֶץ, אֲשֶׁר הִשְׁטָן מִיְסָדָהּ, אָכֵן, בְּיוֹם הַהוּא תִּחַל פְּעֻלַּת הָאֵב לַפְּנוֹת אֶת הַדֶּרֶךְ בַּעֲבוּר תְּקוּמַת הַבְּרִיתוֹת אֲשֶׁר כָּרַת עִם עַמּוֹ, בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל.
- 18 And it came to pass that the angel spake unto me, saying: Look!
- וַדִּבֶּר הַמַּלְאָךְ אֵלַי וְאָמַר: הִבֵּט נָא!
- 19 And I looked and beheld a man, and he was dressed in a white robe.
- וְהִבֵּטִיתִי וְרָאִיתִי אִישׁ וְהוּא לוּבָשׁ שְׁלֵמָה לְבָנָה.
- 20 And the angel said unto me: Behold one of the twelve apostles of the Lamb.
- וְאָמַר אֵלַי הַמַּלְאָךְ: הִנֵּה אֶחָד מִשְׁנֵים עָשָׂר שְׁלִיחֵי הַשֵּׁה.
- 21 Behold, he shall see and write the remainder of these things; yea, and also many things which have been.
- הִנֵּה יַחֲזֶה וְיִכְתֹּב אֶת שְׁאֵר הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה וְדְבָרִים רַבִּים אֲשֶׁר הָיוּ.
- 22 And he shall also write concerning the end of the world.
- וְאֵף יִכְתֹּב הוּא עַל אוֹדוֹת קֵץ הָעוֹלָם.
- 23 Wherefore, the things which he shall write are just and true; and behold they are written in the book which thou beheld proceeding out of the mouth of the Jew; and at the time they proceeded out of the mouth of the Jew, or, at the time the book proceeded out of the mouth of the Jew, the things which were written were plain and pure, and most precious and easy to the understanding of all men.
- אָכֵן, הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר יִכְתֹּב יִשְׂרָאֵל וּנְכוּחִים; וְהִנֵּה הֵם נִכְתָּבִים בְּסֵפֶר אֲשֶׁר רָאִיתָ אֶת דְּבָרָיו בְּצֵאתָם מִפִּי הַיְּהוּדִי. וּבְעֵת אֲשֶׁר יֵצְאוּ מִפִּי הַיְּהוּדִי, אוֹ בְעֵת צֵאת הַסֵּפֶר מִפִּי הַיְּהוּדִי, הָיוּ הַדְּבָרִים הַנִּכְתָּבִים בְּרוּרִים וְטְהוּרִים, וְיִקְרִים מְאֹד, וְקִלִּי הַבְּנֵה לְכָל אָדָם.
- 24 And behold, the things which this apostle of the Lamb shall write are many things which thou hast seen; and behold, the remainder shalt thou see.
- וְהַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר יִכְתֹּב שְׁלִיחַ הַשֵּׁה הַזֶּה הֵנָּה דְּבָרִים רַבִּים אֲשֶׁר רָאִיתָ; וְהִנֵּה, אֶת שְׁאֵרֶם רְאֵה תִרְאֶה.

- 25 But the things which thou shalt see hereafter thou shalt not write; for the Lord God hath ordained the apostle of the Lamb of God that he should write them.
- אֲךָ אֶת אֲשֶׁר תִּרְאֶה אַחֲרַי כֵּן, לֹא תִכְתֹּב, כִּי מִנָּה יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים אֶת שְׁלִיחַ שֶׁה אֱלֹהִים לְכַתְּבָם.
- 26 And also others who have been, to them hath he shown all things, and they have written them; and they are sealed up to come forth in their purity, according to the truth which is in the Lamb, in the own due time of the Lord, unto the house of Israel.
- וְכֵן לְאַחֲרִים אֲשֶׁר הָיוּ הִרְאָה יְהוָה אֶת כָּל הַדְּבָרִים; וְהֵם כָּתְבוּם; אֲמָנָם חֲתוּמִים הֵם לְמַעַן יֵצְאוּ לְאוֹר בְּטֶהְרָם אֶל בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל, עַל פִּי הָאֱמֻת אֲשֶׁר בְּשָׂה, בְּעֵת אֲשֶׁר תִּישָׁר בְּעֵינֵי יְהוָה.
- 27 And I, Nephi, heard and bear record, that the name of the apostle of the Lamb was John, according to the word of the angel.
- וְאֲנִי, נְפִי, שָׁמַעְתִּי וְהִנֵּנִי מַעֲיֵד כִּי שֵׁם שְׁלִיחַ הַשָּׂה הוּא יוֹחָנָן, כְּדִבְרַר הַמַּלְאָךְ.
- 28 And behold, I, Nephi, am forbidden that I should write the remainder of the things which I saw and heard; wherefore the things which I have written sufficeth me; and I have written but a small part of the things which I saw.
- וְאֲנִי, נְפִי, בְּהִיּוֹתִי מִצְוָה שְׁלֹא לְכַתֵּב אֶת שְׂאֵר הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר רָאִיתִי וְשָׁמַעְתִּי, מוֹצֵא סִפְקִי בַּדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר כָּתְבֹתִים; וְאֶכְתֹּב אֶךְ מִקְצַת מִן הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר רָאִיתִי.
- 29 And I bear record that I saw the things which my father saw, and the angel of the Lord did make them known unto me.
- וְהִנֵּנִי מַעֲיֵד כִּי רָאִיתִי אֶת הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר רָאָה אָבִי, וּמַלְאָךְ יְהוָה אֵכֵן הוֹדִיעָם אוֹתִי.
- 30 And now I make an end of speaking concerning the things which I saw while I was carried away in the spirit; and if all the things which I saw are not written, the things which I have written are true. And thus it is. Amen.
- וְעַתָּה הַשְׁלַמְתִּי דְבַר עַל אֲשֶׁר רָאִיתִי בְּעֵת הַנִּשְׁאָי בְּרוּחַ; וְאִם אֵכֵן לֹא נִכְתְּבוּ כָּל הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר רָאִיתִי, אֲלֵה אֲשֶׁר כָּתְבֹתִים, אֱמֻת וְנִכּוֹן הֵם. אָמֵן.

## טו

## 15

- 1 And it came to pass that after I, Nephi, had been carried away in the spirit, and seen all these things, I returned to the tent of my father.
- וְאֲנִי, נְפִי, אַחֲרֵ הַנִּשְׁאָי בְּרוּחַ וְאַחֲרֵ רְאוּתִי אֶת כָּל הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, שָׁבְתִי אֶל אֹהֶל אָבִי.
- 2 And it came to pass that I beheld my brethren, and they were disputing one with another concerning the things my father had spoken unto them.
- וְרָאִיתִי אֶת אֲחֵי וְהֵם מְרִיבִים זֶה עִם זֶה עַל אוֹדוֹת דְּבָרֵי אָבִי אֱלֵיָהם.
- 3 For he truly spake many great things unto them, which were hard to be understood, save a man should inquire of the Lord; and they being hard in their hearts, therefore they did not look unto the Lord as they ought.
- אֵכֵן, הוּא דִּבְרַר אֲלֵיהֶם גְּדוּלוֹת וְרִבּוֹת, אֲשֶׁר קָשׁוֹת הָיוּ מִהֶבֶן, בְּלֹתִי אִם יִדְרֹשׁ אִישׁ אֶת יְהוָה, וּמִפְּנֵי קָשִׁי לִבָּם לֹא פָּנּוּ אֶל יְהוָה כְּאֲשֶׁר הָיָה עֲלֵיהֶם לַעֲשׂוֹת.
- 4 And now I, Nephi, was grieved because of the hardness of their hearts, and also, because of the things which I had seen, and knew they must unavoidably come to pass because of the great wickedness of the children of men.
- וְאֲנִי, נְפִי, נִעֲצַבְתִּי מִפְּנֵי קָשִׁי לִבָּם וּמִפְּנֵי הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר רָאִיתִי; כִּי יָדַעְתִּי אֲשֶׁר קוֹם יְקוֹמוּ, מִפְּנֵי רָשָׁעַת בְּנֵי הָאָדָם הַגְּדוֹלָה.



- 5 And it came to pass that I was overcome because of my afflictions, for I considered that mine afflictions were great above all, because of the destruction of my people, for I had beheld their fall.
- 6 And it came to pass that after I had received strength I spake unto my brethren, desiring to know of them the cause of their disputations.
- 7 And they said: Behold, we cannot understand the words which our father hath spoken concerning the natural branches of the olive-tree, and also concerning the Gentiles.
- 8 And I said unto them: Have ye inquired of the Lord?
- 9 And they said unto me: We have not; for the Lord maketh no such thing known unto us.
- 10 Behold, I said unto them: How is it that ye do not keep the commandments of the Lord? How is it that ye will perish, because of the hardness of your hearts?
- 11 Do ye not remember the things which the Lord hath said?—If ye will not harden your hearts, and ask me in faith, believing that ye shall receive, with diligence in keeping my commandments, surely these things shall be made known unto you.
- 12 Behold, I say unto you, that the house of Israel was compared unto an olive-tree, by the Spirit of the Lord which was in our father; and behold are we not broken off from the house of Israel, and are we not a branch of the house of Israel?
- 13 And now, the thing which our father meaneth concerning the grafting in of the natural branches through the fulness of the Gentiles, is, that in the latter days, when our seed shall have dwindled in unbelief, yea, for the space of many years, and many generations after the Messiah shall be manifested in body unto the children of men, then shall the fulness of the gospel of the Messiah come unto the Gentiles, and from the Gentiles unto the remnant of our seed—
- 14 And at that day shall the remnant of our seed know that they are of the house of Israel, and that they are the covenant people of the Lord; and then shall they know and come to the knowledge of their forefathers, and also to the knowledge of the gospel of their Redeemer, which was ministered unto their fathers by him; wherefore, they shall come to the knowledge of their Redeemer and the very points of his doctrine, that they may know how to come unto him and be saved.
- וְהִכְרַעְתִּי מִפְּנֵי יְסוּרֵי, כִּי חֲשַׁבְתִּים לְגְדוּלִים  
מִכָּל הַיְסוּרִים, מִפְּנֵי חֲרַבְנָם עִמִּי, אֲשֶׁר אֶת  
מִפְּלֹתָם רָאִיתִי.
- וְהָיָה כְּאֲשֶׁר קִבַּלְתִּי כֹחַ, וְדִבַּרְתִּי אֶל אַחֵי,  
וּבִקְשָׁתִי לָדַעַת מֵהֶם אֶת שְׂרָשׁ מִרִּיבוֹתֵיהֶם.
- וְהֵם אָמְרוּ: הִנֵּה, לֹא נוֹכַל לְהַבִּין אֶת דְּבָרֵי  
אֲבִינוֹ אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר עַל אוֹדוֹת הָעֵנָפִים הַטְּבָעִיִּים  
אֲשֶׁר לַעֵץ הַזֶּה וְכֵן עַל הַגּוֹיִּים.
- וְאָמַרְתִּי אֲלֵיהֶם: הֲדִרְשַׁתֶּם אֶת יְהוָה?
- וְהֵם אָמְרוּ אֵלַי: לֹא דִרְשָׁנוּ, כִּי לֹא הוֹדִיעָנוּ  
יְהוָה בְּדִבְרֵי הַזֶּה.
- וְאָמַרְתִּי אֲלֵיהֶם: אֵיכָה לֹא שְׁמַרְתֶּם אֶת מִצְוֹת  
יְהוָה? אֵיכָה תֵּאבְדוּ מִפְּנֵי קִשֵּׁי לִבְבְּכֶם?
- הֲאֵינְכֶם זֹכְרִים אֶת אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר יְהוָה?  
אִם לֹא תִקְשׁוּ אֶת לִבְבְּכֶם, וּתְבַקְשׁוּ מִמֶּנִּי  
בְּאֵמוּנָה, בְּהֶאֱמִינְכֶם כִּי יִנָּתֵן לָכֶם, כְּאֲשֶׁר  
תִּשְׁמְרוּ בְּשִׁקְיָה אֶת מִצְוֹתַי, אָכֵן יִדְּעוּ  
לָכֶם הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה.
- הֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, כִּי בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל נִמְשַׁל לַעֵץ  
הַזֶּה עַל יְדֵי רוּחַ יְהוָה אֲשֶׁר הָיָה בְּאֲבִינוֹ;  
וְהִנֵּה, הֲלֹא מִבֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל נִקְטָפְנוּ? הֲאֵין  
אֲנַחְנוּ עֵנָף מִבֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל?
- אָכֵן, הַדְּבָר אֲשֶׁר מֵתְכַנֵּן אֵלָיו אֲבִינוֹ, עַל  
אוֹדוֹת הַרְקֶבֶת הָעֵנָפִים הַטְּבָעִיִּים עַל יְדֵי  
מִלֵּא הַגּוֹיִּים הוּא, כִּי בְּאַחֲרִית הַיָּמִים, כְּאֲשֶׁר  
יִשְׁקַע זִרְעֵנוּ בְּחֹסֶר אֵמוּנָה, אָכֵן, בְּמִשְׁךְ שָׁנִים  
וְדוֹרוֹת רַבִּים אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר יִגָּלֶה הַמָּשִׁיחַ לְבָנֵי  
הָאָדָם בְּגוֹף, תֵּבוֹא מִלֵּא בְּשׁוֹרֵת הַמָּשִׁיחַ  
אֶל הַגּוֹיִּים וּמִן הַגּוֹיִּים אֶל שְׂאֲרֵית זִרְעֵנוּ.
- וּבַיּוֹם הַהוּא יִדְּעוּ שְׂאֲרֵית זִרְעֵנוּ כִּי מִבֵּית  
יִשְׂרָאֵל הֵם, וְכִי הֵנָּה עִם בְּרִית יְהוָה; וְיִדְּעוּ  
וְיִכִּירוּ עַל אוֹדוֹת אֲבוֹת אֲבוֹתֵיהֶם, וְכֵן יִדְּעוּ  
אֶת בְּשׁוֹרֵת גּוֹאֲלָם אֲשֶׁר בָּהּ הוּא שֹׂרֵת אֶת  
אֲבוֹתֵיהֶם; עַל כֵּן יִתְוַדְּעוּ אֶל גּוֹאֲלָם וְאֶל עֲקָרֵי  
תּוֹרָתוֹ לְמַעַן יִדְּעוּ אֵיךְ לָבוֹא אֵלָיו וּלְהוֹשִׁיעַ.

- 15 And then at that day will they not rejoice and give praise unto their everlasting God, their rock and their salvation? Yea, at that day, will they not receive the strength and nourishment from the true vine? Yea, will they not come unto the true fold of God?
- הֲלֹא יַעֲלֻצוּ בַּיּוֹם הַהוּא וְיִשְׂבַּחוּ לְאֱלֹהֵי הָעוֹלָמִים, צוּרָם וְיִשׁוּעָתָם? הֲלֹא יִקְבְּלוּ בַּיּוֹם הַהוּא כֹּחַ וּמְחִיָּה מִגֶּפֶן הָאֱמֶת? הֲלֹא יָבוֹאוּ אֶל צֶאֱן הָאֱמֶת אֲשֶׁר לְאֱלֹהִים?
- 16 Behold, I say unto you, Yea; they shall be remembered again among the house of Israel; they shall be grafted in, being a natural branch of the olive-tree, into the true olive-tree.
- הִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם: הִמָּה עוֹד יִזְכְּרוּ בְּתוֹךְ בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל; וְיִרְכָּבוּ אֶל עֵץ הַזֵּית הַנֶּאֱמָן בְּהִיּוֹתָם עֵנֶף טִבְעִי.
- 17 And this is what our father meaneth; and he meaneth that it will not come to pass until after they are scattered by the Gentiles; and he meaneth that it shall come by way of the Gentiles, that the Lord may show his power unto the Gentiles, for the very cause that he shall be rejected of the Jews, or of the house of Israel.
- זֶהוּ דַּעַת אָבִינוּ; וְדַעַתוֹ הִיא כִּי לֹא יָקוּם הַדְּבָר עַד אֲשֶׁר יִפּוּצוּ בְּיַד הַגּוֹיִים; וְכִי יָקוּם הַדְּבָר עַל יַד הַגּוֹיִים, לְמַעַן יֵרָאֶה יְהוָה אֶת גְּבוּרָתוֹ לַגּוֹיִים, עַל כִּי מֵאֲסוּרוֹ הַיְּהוּדִים, אֲשֶׁר הֵם בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל.
- 18 Wherefore, our father hath not spoken of our seed alone, but also of all the house of Israel, pointing to the covenant which should be fulfilled in the latter days; which covenant the Lord made to our father Abraham, saying: In thy seed shall all the kindreds of the earth be blessed.
- עַל כֵּן לֹא דִבֶּר אָבִינוּ עַל אוֹדוֹת זֶרְעֵנוּ לְבָד, כִּי אֲכֹן עַל אוֹדוֹת בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל כָּלּוּ, מוֹרָה עַל הַבְּרִית אֲשֶׁר תָּקוּם בְּאַחֲרִית הַיָּמִים, הַבְּרִית אֲשֶׁר פָּרַת יְהוָה לְאַבְרָהָם אָבִינוּ, לֵאמֹר: בְּזֶרְעֶךָ יִבְרָכוּ כָּל מִשְׁפָּחוֹת הָאָדָמָה.
- 19 And it came to pass that I, Nephi, spake much unto them concerning these things; yea, I spake unto them concerning the restoration of the Jews in the latter days.
- וְאֲנִי, נְפִי, הִרְבֵּיתִי דִּבֵּר אֵלֵיהֶם עַל הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה. אֲכֹן, דִּבַּרְתִּי אֵלֵיהֶם עַל אוֹדוֹת הַשְּׁבִת הַיְּהוּדִים בְּאַחֲרִית הַיָּמִים.
- 20 And I did rehearse unto them the words of Isaiah, who spake concerning the restoration of the Jews, or of the house of Israel; and after they were restored they should no more be confounded, neither should they be scattered again. And it came to pass that I did speak many words unto my brethren, that they were pacified and did humble themselves before the Lord.
- וַשְּׁנַנְתִּי בְּאָזְנֵיהֶם אֶת דְּבָרֵי יִשְׁעִיָּהוּ, אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר עַל הַשְּׁבִת הַיְּהוּדִים, אוֹ שִׁיבַת בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל, אֲשֶׁר אַחֲרֵי הַשְּׁבִתָם לֹא יִכְלְמוּ עוֹד וְיִשׁוּבוּ לֹא יִפּוּצוּ. וְהִרְבֵּיתִי לְדַבֵּר אֶל אֶחָי, עַד אֲשֶׁר רָגְעוּ וַנִּכְנָעוּ לִפְנֵי יְהוָה.
- 21 And it came to pass that they did speak unto me again, saying: What meaneth this thing which our father saw in a dream? What meaneth the tree which he saw?
- וְהֵם דִּבְּרוּ אֵלַי שֵׁנִית לֵאמֹר: מַה פֶּשֶׁר הַדְּבָר אֲשֶׁר רָאָה אָבִינוּ בַּחֲלוֹם? מַה פֶּשֶׁר הָעֵץ אֲשֶׁר רָאָה?
- 22 And I said unto them: It was a representation of the tree of life.
- וְאֶמַּרְתִּי אֵלֵיהֶם: הוּא דְמוּת עֵץ הַחַיִּים.
- 23 And they said unto me: What meaneth the rod of iron which our father saw, that led to the tree?
- וְהֵם אָמְרוּ אֵלַי: מַה פֶּשֶׁר מַעֲקֵה הַבְּרֹזֶל, אֲשֶׁר רָאָה אָבִינוּ, הַמוֹלִיךְ אֶל הָעֵץ?
- 24 And I said unto them that it was the word of God, and whoso would hearken unto the word of God, and would hold fast unto it, they would never perish; neither could the temptations and the fiery darts of the adversary overpower them unto blindness, to lead them away to destruction.
- וְאֶמַּרְתִּי אֵלֵיהֶם כִּי פֶשֶׁרוֹ הוּא דְבָר אֱלֹהִים; וְכָל אֲשֶׁר יִקְשִׁיב לְדַבֵּר אֱלֹהִים וַיֹּאחֲזוּ בּוֹ בְּחֻזָּקָה לֹא יֵאבֵד לְעוֹלָם; אֲף לֹא יוֹכְלוּ מְדוּחֵי הַשֶּׁטֶן וְחֻצֵּי אִשׁוּ לְגִבּוֹר עָלֵינוּ, לְסַנּוֹר וּלְהוֹבִילוֹ לְאַבְדוֹן.

- 25 ואֲנִי, נְפִי, הִזְכַּחְתִּים כִּי יִטּוּ אָזְנֵם אֶל דְּבַר יְהוָה, אֲכֹן, הִפְצַרְתִּי בָהֶם בְּכָל תַּעֲצוּמוֹת נַפְשִׁי, וּבְכָל מְאֹדִי, לְמַעַן יִשְׁמְעוּ לְדְבַר אֱלֹהִים וְיִזְכְּרוּ לְשֹׁמֵר אֶת מִצְוֹתָיו תָּמִיד בְּכָל דְּבַר.
- 26 וְהֵם אָמְרוּ אֵלַי: מָה פֶּשֶׁר נָהַר הַמַּיִם אֲשֶׁר רָאָה אָבִינוּ?
- 27 וְאִמַּרְתִּי לָהֶם כִּי הַמַּיִם אֲשֶׁר רָאָה אָבִי, טִנְפָּת הֵם; וְכֹה עִסְקָה דַּעַת אָבִי בְּדְבָרִים אֲחֵרִים, עַד אֲשֶׁר לֹא רָאָה אֶת טִנְפַּת הַמַּיִם.
- 28 וְאִמַּרְתִּי אֲלֵיהֶם כִּי הִיְתָה זֹאת תְּהוֹם נוֹרָאָה אֲשֶׁר הִפְרִידָה בֵּין הָרָשָׁעִים וּבֵין עֵץ הַחַיִּים וּקְדוּשֵׁי אֱלֹהִים.
- 29 וְאִמַּרְתִּי אֲלֵיהֶם כִּי זֹאת דְּמוּת שְׂאוֹל הָאֵימָה אֲשֶׁר הִכְנָה לְרָשָׁעִים, כְּדִבַּר הַמַּלְאָךְ אֵלַי.
- 30 וְאִמַּרְתִּי אֲלֵיהֶם כִּי אָבִינוּ אֲכֹן רָאָה כִּי מִשְׁפַּט אֱלֹהִים הִבְדִּיל אֶת הָרָשָׁעִים מִן הַצַּדִּיקִים; וְהִנֵּה אֲשֶׁר שָׁם הָיָה כְּנֶגֶה שְׁלֵהֲבַת בּוֹעֶרֶת הָעוֹלָה אֶל אֱלֹהִים לְעוֹלָם וָעַד.
- 31 וְהֵם אָמְרוּ אֵלַי: הָאֵם פֶּשֶׁר הַדְּבַר לִיסוּרֵי הַגּוֹף בְּיָמֵי מִבְחָן, אוֹ הָאֵם לְמַצֵּב הַנֶּפֶשׁ הַסּוֹפִי אַחֵר מוֹת הַגּוֹף הַזְּמָנִי, אוֹ הָאֵם מוֹרָה לְדְבָרִים זְמָנִיִּים?
- 32 וְאִמַּרְתִּי אֲלֵיהֶם כִּי אֵלֶּה דְמוּת גַּם הַדְּבָרִים הַזְּמָנִיִּים וְגַם הָרוּחַ, כִּי בּוֹא יָבוֹא הַיּוֹם אֲשֶׁר יִשְׁפָּטוּ עַל מַעֲשֵׂיהֶם, אֲכֹן, עַל מַעֲשֵׂי גּוֹפֶם הַזְּמָנִי בְּיָמֵי מִבְחָן.
- 33 לָכֵן, אִם יָמוּתוּ בְּרָשָׁעֵתָם הֵם אֲכֹן יִדְחוּ בְּאֲשֶׁר לְדְבָרֵי הָרוּחַ, אֲשֶׁר הֵם דְּבָרֵי צֶדֶק. עַל כֵּן יָבוֹאוּ לַעֲמֹד לִפְנֵי אֱלֹהִים לְהִשְׁפָּט עַל מַעֲשֵׂיהֶם; וְאִם מַעֲשֵׂיהֶם טִנְפָּת, אִף הֵם מְטֻנְפִּים יְהִיוּ, וְאִם הֵם מְטֻנְפִּים אֵין הֵם יְכוּלִים לְשִׁבֵּת בְּמַלְכוּת אֱלֹהִים; אִם לֹא כֵן, תִּהְיֶה מַלְכוּת אֱלֹהִים מְטֻנְפָּת.
- 34 וְאֲנִי אוֹמֵר אֲלֵיכֶם כִּי מַלְכוּת אֱלֹהִים אֵינָה מְטֻנְפָּת וְלֹא יוּכַל לָבוֹא שָׁם כָּל דְּבַר טָמֵא. לָכֵן חַיָּב כִּי יוֹכֵן מְקוֹם טִנְפָּת לְאֲשֶׁר הוּא מְטֻנָּף.
- Wherefore, I, Nephi, did exhort them to give heed unto the word of the Lord; yea, I did exhort them with all the energies of my soul, and with all the faculty which I possessed, that they would give heed to the word of God and remember to keep his commandments always in all things.
- And they said unto me: What meaneth the river of water which our father saw?
- And I said unto them that the water which my father saw was filthiness; and so much was his mind swallowed up in other things that he beheld not the filthiness of the water.
- And I said unto them that it was an awful gulf, which separated the wicked from the tree of life, and also from the saints of God.
- And I said unto them that it was a representation of that awful hell, which the angel said unto me was prepared for the wicked.
- And I said unto them that our father also saw that the justice of God did also divide the wicked from the righteous; and the brightness thereof was like unto the brightness of a flaming fire, which ascendeth up unto God forever and ever, and hath no end.
- And they said unto me: Doth this thing mean the torment of the body in the days of probation, or doth it mean the final state of the soul after the death of the temporal body, or doth it speak of the things which are temporal?
- And it came to pass that I said unto them that it was a representation of things both temporal and spiritual; for the day should come that they must be judged of their works, yea, even the works which were done by the temporal body in their days of probation.
- Wherefore, if they should die in their wickedness they must be cast off also, as to the things which are spiritual, which are pertaining to righteousness; wherefore, they must be brought to stand before God, to be judged of their works; and if their works have been filthiness they must needs be filthy; and if they be filthy it must needs be that they cannot dwell in the kingdom of God; if so, the kingdom of God must be filthy also.
- But behold, I say unto you, the kingdom of God is not filthy, and there cannot any unclean thing enter into the kingdom of God; wherefore there must needs be a place of filthiness prepared for that which is filthy.

- 35 And there is a place prepared, yea, even that awful hell of which I have spoken, and the devil is the preparator of it; wherefore the final state of the souls of men is to dwell in the kingdom of God, or to be cast out because of that justice of which I have spoken.
- וְאֵכֹן יֵשׁ מְקוֹם מוּכָן, שְׂאוֹל הָאִימָה אֲשֶׁר עָלֶיהָ דִּבַּרְתִּי, וְהַשָּׂטָן הַכִּינָהּ. לָכֵן הַמַּצֵּב הַסּוֹפִי אֲשֶׁר לְנַפְשׁ בְּנֵי אָדָם הֵנוּ יְשִׁיבָה בְּמַלְכוּת אֱלֹהִים, אוֹ נִדּוּי מִפְּנֵי הַמִּשְׁפָּט אֲשֶׁר עָלָיו דִּבַּרְתִּי.
- 36 Wherefore, the wicked are rejected from the righteous, and also from that tree of life, whose fruit is most precious and most desirable above all other fruits; yea, and it is the greatest of all the gifts of God. And thus I spake unto my brethren. Amen.
- לָכֵן דְּחוּיִים הָרָשָׁעִים מִן הַצְדִּיקִים וְכֵן מֵעֵץ הַחַיִּים, אֲשֶׁר פְּרִיו יָקָר וְנֹחֵמֵד מִכָּל שֵׁאֵר הַפְּרוֹת וְהוּא אֵכֹן הַגְּדוֹל בְּיוֹתֵר בְּמִתְּנוּת אֱלֹהִים. כֹּה דִבַּרְתִּי אֶל אַחֵי. אָמֵן.

## טז

## 16

- 1 And now it came to pass that after I, Nephi, had made an end of speaking to my brethren, behold they said unto me: Thou hast declared unto us hard things, more than we are able to bear.
- וְהָיָה בְּכַלּוֹתִי, נְפִי, לְדַבֵּר אֶל אַחֵי, הֵם אָמְרוּ אֵלַי: הִנֵּה קָרָאתָ אֵלֵינוּ דְּבָרִים קָשִׁים, יוֹתֵר מֵאֲשֶׁר נוֹכַל לְשֹׂאת.
- 2 And it came to pass that I said unto them that I knew that I had spoken hard things against the wicked, according to the truth; and the righteous have I justified, and testified that they should be lifted up at the last day; wherefore, the guilty taketh the truth to be hard, for it cutteth them to the very center.
- וְאִמַּרְתִּי אֵלֵיהֶם: אֵכֹן יָדַעְתִּי אֲשֶׁר דִּבַּרְתִּי קִשּׁוֹת עַל הָרָשָׁעִים, כַּפִּי הָאֱמֶת; וְאֵת הַצְדִּיקִים הִצַּדֵּקְתִּי, וְאֵף הַעֲדוּתִי כִּי בְיוֹם הָאַחֲרוֹן יִנָּשְׂאוּ; אֵף קִשָּׁה הָאֱמֶת בְּאֲזְנֵי הָאֲשָׁמִים, כִּי תִגְזֹרם בְּתוֹךְ.
- 3 And now my brethren, if ye were righteous and were willing to hearken to the truth, and give heed unto it, that ye might walk uprightly before God, then ye would not murmur because of the truth, and say: Thou speakest hard things against us.
- וְלוֹ צְדִיקִים הֵייתֶם, אַחֵי, הִחַפְצִים לְשִׁמְעַת אֶל הָאֱמֶת וְלִשְׁתִּית לֵב אֵלֶיהָ, לְמַעַן תִּהְלְכוּ זְקוּפִים לִפְנֵי אֱלֹהִים, אֲזִי לֹא הִתְלוֹנְנֶתֶם עַל הָאֱמֶת וְלֹא אִמַּרְתֶּם: דִּבַּרְתָּ עָלֵינוּ קִשּׁוֹת.
- 4 And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did exhort my brethren, with all diligence, to keep the commandments of the Lord.
- וְאֲנִי, נְפִי, הִפְצַרְתִּי בְּאַחֵי בְּרַב שְׂקִידָה לְשַׁמֵּר אֶת מִצְוֹת יְהוָה.
- 5 And it came to pass that they did humble themselves before the Lord; insomuch that I had joy and great hopes of them, that they would walk in the paths of righteousness.
- וְאַחֵי נִכְנָעוּ לִפְנֵי יְהוָה, וְאֲנִי שִׂמְחָתִי וְצַפִּיתִי כִּי יֵלְכוּ בְּנִתְיבוֹת צֶדֶק.
- 6 Now, all these things were said and done as my father dwelt in a tent in the valley which he called Lemuel.
- כָּל הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה נֶאֱמְרוּ וְנַעֲשׂוּ בְּשֶׁבֶת אָבִי בְּאֵהֶל בַּעֲמֶק אֲשֶׁר קָרָא שְׁמוֹ לְמוּאֵל.
- 7 And it came to pass that I, Nephi, took one of the daughters of Ishmael to wife; and also, my brethren took of the daughters of Ishmael to wife; and also Zoram took the eldest daughter of Ishmael to wife.
- וְאֲנִי, נְפִי, לָקַחְתִּי אֶחַת מִבָּנוֹת יִשְׁמַעֵאל לִי לְאִשָּׁה, וְגַם אַחֵי לָקָחוּ מִבָּנוֹת יִשְׁמַעֵאל לָהֶם לְנָשִׁים; וְזוֹרָם לָקַח אֶת בִּתּוֹ יִשְׁמַעֵאל הַבְּכִירָה לוֹ לְאִשָּׁה.
- 8 And thus my father had fulfilled all the commandments of the Lord which had been given unto him. And also, I, Nephi, had been blessed of the Lord exceedingly.
- וְכָךְ מָלֵא אָבִי אֶת כָּל מִצְוֹת יְהוָה אֲשֶׁר צִוָּה לוֹ; וְאֲנִי, נְפִי, הִתְבָּרַכְתִּי עַד מְאֹד מֵאֵת יְהוָה.

- 9 And it came to pass that the voice of the Lord spake unto my father by night, and commanded him that on the morrow he should take his journey into the wilderness.
- 10 And it came to pass that as my father arose in the morning, and went forth to the tent door, to his great astonishment he beheld upon the ground a round ball of curious workmanship; and it was of fine brass. And within the ball were two spindles; and the one pointed the way whither we should go into the wilderness.
- 11 And it came to pass that we did gather together whatsoever things we should carry into the wilderness, and all the remainder of our provisions which the Lord had given unto us; and we did take seed of every kind that we might carry into the wilderness.
- 12 And it came to pass that we did take our tents and depart into the wilderness, across the river Laman.
- 13 And it came to pass that we traveled for the space of four days, nearly a south-southeast direction, and we did pitch our tents again; and we did call the name of the place Shazer.
- 14 And it came to pass that we did take our bows and our arrows, and go forth into the wilderness to slay food for our families; and after we had slain food for our families we did return again to our families in the wilderness, to the place of Shazer. And we did go forth again in the wilderness, following the same direction, keeping in the most fertile parts of the wilderness, which were in the borders near the Red Sea.
- 15 And it came to pass that we did travel for the space of many days, slaying food by the way, with our bows and our arrows and our stones and our slings.
- 16 And we did follow the directions of the ball, which led us in the more fertile parts of the wilderness.
- 17 And after we had traveled for the space of many days, we did pitch our tents for the space of a time, that we might again rest ourselves and obtain food for our families.
- 18 And it came to pass that as I, Nephi, went forth to slay food, behold, I did break my bow, which was made of fine steel; and after I did break my bow, behold, my brethren were angry with me because of the loss of my bow, for we did obtain no food.
- וְהָיָה בְּקוֹם אָבִי בַּבֶּקֶר וּבִקְרָבוֹ אֶל פֶּתַח הָאֹהֶל, הוּא רָאָה, לְרֹב הַשְׁתּוֹמְמוֹתוֹ, כַּדּוֹר עָגֹל עַל הָאֲדָמָה וְהוּא מְלֹאכֶת מְחֻשֶּׁבֶת, נְחֹשֶׁת קָלִל טוֹבָה. וּבְתוֹךְ הַכַּדּוֹר שְׁתֵּי מְחוּגּוֹת, וְהָאֶחָת מוֹרָה אֶת הַדֶּרֶךְ אֲשֶׁר בָּהּ עָלִינוּ לְנִסְעָה בַּמִּדְבָּר.
- וְאֶסְפְּנוּ אֶת כָּל הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר צָרִיכִים הָיִינוּ לְשִׂאת אֶל הַמִּדְבָּר, וְכָל שְׂאֵר צִדְתָּנוּ אֲשֶׁר נָתַן לָנוּ יְהוָה, וְלָקַחְנוּ כָּל מִינֵי זֶרַע לְשִׂאת הַמִּדְבָּרָה.
- וְנִשְׂאָנוּ אֶת אֹהֲלֵינוּ וְנִסְעָנוּ הַמִּדְבָּרָה, מֵעֵבֶר נָהַר לָמָן.
- וְנִסְעָנוּ מִהַלֵּךְ אַרְבָּעָה יָמִים לְפָאֲתֵי דְרוֹם, דְרוֹם-מִזְרָח, וְנָטִינוּ אֶת אֹהֲלֵינוּ שְׁנִית וְקָרָאנוּ אֶת שֵׁם הַמָּקוֹם שָׁזֶר.
- וְלָקַחְנוּ אֶת קִשְׁתֹּתֵינוּ וְחֻצֵּינוּ וְהִלְכָנוּ אֶל הַמִּדְבָּר לְצוֹד צִידָה לְמִשְׁפַּחֹתֵינוּ; וְאַחֲרֵי כֵן, שָׁבְנוּ אֵלֵינוּ אֶל שָׁזֶר בַּמִּדְבָּר. וְנִסְעָנוּ שְׁנִית בַּמִּדְבָּר בְּכוּוֹן הַהוּא, נִשְׁמָרִים אֶל הַפּוֹרִים אֲשֶׁר לְאַזְוָרֵי הַמִּדְבָּר הַגּוֹבְלִים בְּיָם סוּף.
- וְהָיָה מִסְעָנוּ מִהַלֵּךְ יָמִים רַבִּים וְצִדְנוּ בַּדֶּרֶךְ צִיד בְּקִשְׁתוֹת וּבְחֻצִּים וּבְאֲבָנִים וּבְקִלְעִים אֲשֶׁר לָנוּ.
- וְנִסְעָנוּ בְּכוּוֹן אֲשֶׁר הוֹרָה הַכַּדּוֹר, וְהוּא הוֹבִילָנוּ אֶל הַפּוֹרִים בְּאַזְוָרֵי הַמִּדְבָּר.
- וְאַחֵר נִסְעָנוּ מִהַלֵּךְ יָמִים רַבִּים, נָטִינוּ אֶת אֹהֲלֵינוּ לַעֲת קֶצֶרָה, לָנוּחַ לָנוּ שְׁנִית וּלְהִבִּיא צִיד לְמִשְׁפַּחֹתֵינוּ.
- וְהָיָה בְּיָצְאִי, נְפִי, לְצוֹד צִיד, וְהִנֵּה שִׁבְרָתִי אֶת קִשְׁתִּי, אֲשֶׁר הָיְתָה עֲשׂוּיָה מִפְּלָדָה טוֹבָה. וְאַחֵר שִׁבְרִי אֶת קִשְׁתִּי וְהִנֵּה רָגָזוּ עָלַי אֲחֵי עַל אֲשֶׁר אֲבָדָה קִשְׁתִּי, כִּי לֹא הִבֵּאנוּ צִיד.



- 19 And it came to pass that we did return without food to our families, and being much fatigued, because of their journeying, they did suffer much for the want of food.
- וְשָׁבוּ אֶל מִשְׁפְּחוֹתֵינוּ רֵיקָם, וְהָנָה אֲנִשְׁנוּ יָגָעִים מְאֹד מִן הַמַּסָּע וְרַב סָבָלָם מִחֶסֶר הַמָּזוֹן.
- 20 And it came to pass that Laman and Lemuel and the sons of Ishmael did begin to murmur exceedingly, because of their sufferings and afflictions in the wilderness; and also my father began to murmur against the Lord his God; yea, and they were all exceedingly sorrowful, even that they did murmur against the Lord.
- וְלָמֶן וְלִמְאוּאֵל וּבְנֵי יִשְׁמָעֵאל הִתְלוֹנְנוּ רַבּוֹת עַל תְּלֹאוֹתֵיהֶם וְסִבְלוֹתֵיהֶם בַּמִּדְבָּר, וְאִי אָבִי הֵחֵל לְהִתְלוֹנֵן עַל יְהוָה אֱלֹהָיו. אָכֵן, הִכֵּל נַעֲצָבוּ מְאֹד עַד כִּי הִתְלוֹנְנוּ עַל יְהוָה.
- 21 Now it came to pass that I, Nephi, having been afflicted with my brethren because of the loss of my bow, and their bows having lost their springs, it began to be exceedingly difficult, yea, insomuch that we could obtain no food.
- וּבְסִבְלִי עִם אֲחֵי עַל הִשָּׁחַת קִשְׁתִּי, וּבִרְפוּת קִשְׁתוֹתֵיהֶם, רַבּוּ תְּלֹאוֹתֵינוּ, עַד כִּי לֹא יָכֻלְנוּ לְהֵבִיא צִיד.
- 22 And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did speak much unto my brethren, because they had hardened their hearts again, even unto complaining against the Lord their God.
- וְאֲנִי, נְפִי, הִרְבֵּיתִי לְדַבֵּר אֶל אֲחֵי, כִּי הִקְשׁוּ שֵׁנִית אֶת לִבָּם, עַד כִּי הִתְלוֹנְנוּ עַל יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵיהֶם.
- 23 And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did make out of wood a bow, and out of a straight stick, an arrow; wherefore, I did arm myself with a bow and an arrow, with a sling and with stones. And I said unto my father: Whither shall I go to obtain food?
- וְאֲנִי, נְפִי, עָשִׂיתִי קִשֶׁת מֵעֵץ, וְחֵץ מִמִּקְל יָשָׁר; וְחִמְשִׁיתִי אֶת עַצְמִי בְּקִשֶׁת וְחֵץ, קִלַּע וְאַבְנִים. וְאָמַרְתִּי אֶל אָבִי: אָנָּה אֵלֶּךְ לְהֵבִיא צִיד?
- 24 And it came to pass that he did inquire of the Lord, for they had humbled themselves because of my words; for I did say many things unto them in the energy of my soul.
- וְאָבִי שָׁאַל אֶת יְהוָה, כִּי הֵם נִכְנְעוּ מִפָּנָי דְּבָרִי, יַעַן אֲשֶׁר דִּבַּרְתִּי רַבִּים אֲמַרְתִּי אֵלֵיהֶם בְּחַעֲצוֹמוֹת נַפְשִׁי.
- 25 And it came to pass that the voice of the Lord came unto my father; and he was truly chastened because of his murmuring against the Lord, insomuch that he was brought down into the depths of sorrow.
- וְהָיָה קוֹל יְהוָה אֶל אָבִי; וְהוּא הִתְיַסֵּר עַד מְאֹד עַל תְּלֹנְתוֹ עַל יְהוָה, עַד כִּי שָׁקַע בְּמַעֲמָקֵי דְאָבָה.
- 26 And it came to pass that the voice of the Lord said unto him: Look upon the ball, and behold the things which are written.
- וְאָמַר אֵלָיו קוֹל יְהוָה: הִבֵּט אֶל הַכְּדֹוֹר וּרְאֵה אֶת אֲשֶׁר כְּתוּב.
- 27 And it came to pass that when my father beheld the things which were written upon the ball, he did fear and tremble exceedingly, and also my brethren and the sons of Ishmael and our wives.
- וְהָיָה כִּרְאוֹת אָבִי אֶת הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר כְּתוּבִים עַל פָּנֵי הַכְּדֹוֹר הוּא יָרָא וַיִּתְּרַד מְאֹד, וְכֵן אֲחֵי וּבְנֵי יִשְׁמָעֵאל וְנִשְׁוֹתֵינוּ.
- 28 And it came to pass that I, Nephi, beheld the pointers which were in the ball, that they did work according to the faith and diligence and heed which we did give unto them.
- וְאֲנִי, נְפִי, רָאִיתִי אֶת הַמַּחְוִים אֲשֶׁר בְּתוֹךְ הַכְּדֹוֹר וְהָיְתָה פְּעֻלָּתָם עַל פִּי הָאֱמוּנָה וְהִחְרִיצוֹת וְשִׁמַּת הַלֵּב אֲשֶׁר נָתַנוּ בָּהֶם.
- 29 And there was also written upon them a new writing, which was plain to be read, which did give us understanding concerning the ways of the Lord; and it was written and changed from time to time, according to
- וְאִי כְּתִיבָה חֲדָשָׁה נִכְתָּבָה עֲלֵיהֶם, קִלָּה לְקוֹרָא, אֲשֶׁר הוֹדִיעַתָּנוּ עַל אוֹדוֹת דְּרָכֵי יְהוָה; וְהִכְתָּב הִתְחַלֵּף פַּעַם בְּפַעַם, עַל פִּי הָאֱמוּנָה וְהִחְרִיצוֹת אֲשֶׁר נָתַנוּ בּוֹ.

- וְכִפּוּס נִזְכָּרִים אֲנַחְנוּ לְדַעַת כִּי בְּקִטְנוֹת עֹשֶׂה  
יְהוָה גְּדוּלוֹת.
- וְאֲנִי, נְפִי, עָלִיתִי עַל פִּסְגַּת הָהָר, עַל פִּי  
הַהוֹרָאוֹת אֲשֶׁר נָתַנוּ עַל פְּנֵי הַכְּדוּר.
- וְצִדְתִּי חַיּוֹת שָׂדֶה, מֵאֶכֶל לְמִשְׁפְּחוֹתֵינוּ.
- וְשָׁבְתִי אֶל אֶהְלֵינוּ וּבְיָדֵי הַחַיּוֹת אֲשֶׁר  
צִדְתִּי; וַיִּמָּה גְּדוּלָּה הָיְתָה שֶׁמִּחְתָּם בְּרֹאוֹתָם  
כִּי הִבְאִיתִי צִיד, וְהֵם נִכְנְעוּ לִפְנֵי יְהוָה וְנָתַנוּ  
לוֹ תוֹדוֹת.
- וְשָׁבְנוּ לְנִסְעַ בְּדֶרֶךְ קְרוֹבָה לְאֲשֶׁר הָלַכְנוּ  
בְּרֵאשׁוֹנָה; וְאַחֵר נָסַעְנוּ יָמִים רַבִּים נָטִינוּ  
אֶת אֶהְלֵינוּ שֵׁנִית לְנוֹחַ יָמִים אַחָדִים.
- וַיִּשְׁמָעֵאל מָת וְנִקְבֵּר בַּמָּקוֹם אֲשֶׁר נִקְרָא  
שְׁמוֹ נַחוֹם.
- וּבָנוֹת יִשְׁמָעֵאל הָרְבוּ לְקוֹנוֹ עַל מוֹת אָבִיהֶן  
וְעַל תִּלְאֻתֵיהֶן בַּמִּדְבָּר. וְהֵן הִתְלוֹנְנוּ עַל אָבִי  
כִּי הוֹצִיאָן מֵאֶרֶץ יְרוּשָׁלַם לֵאמֹר: אָבִינוּ מָת,  
וְאֲנַחְנוּ הָרְבִינוּ לְנֶגֶד בַּמִּדְבָּר וְאִף סָבְלָנוּ סָבֵל  
רַב, רָעָב, צָמָא וּיְגִיעָה; וְאַחֵר הִתְלָאוֹת הָאֵלֶּה  
הֵן נִגְוָע בְּרָעָב בַּמִּדְבָּר.
- כֹּה הִתְלוֹנְנוּ עַל אָבִי וְעָלַי; וְהֵן בִּקְשׁוּ לָשׁוּב  
אֶל יְרוּשָׁלַם.
- וְאָמַר לָמֶן אֶל לְמוֹאֵל וְאֶל בְּנֵי יִשְׁמָעֵאל:  
הִבֵּה נִהְרֵג אֶת אָבִינוּ וְאֶת אֶחָיו נְפִי, אֲשֶׁר  
שָׁת עֲצָמוֹ לְהִיּוֹת לָנוּ, אֶחָיו הַבְּכִירִים,  
מוֹשֵׁל וּמוֹרָה.
- הִנֵּה, הוּא אוֹמֵר כִּי דִבֵּר אֱלֹהֵי יְהוָה, וְאִף כִּי  
מַלְאָכִים שָׁרְתוּהוּ. אִף יוֹדְעִים אֲנַחְנוּ כִּי מִכְּזָב  
הוּא; הוּא אוֹמֵר לָנוּ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה  
וּמְרַבֵּה לַעֲשׂוֹת אֶת תַּחְבּוּלוֹתָיו לְמַעַן שָׁקֵר  
אֶת עֵינֵינוּ, בְּחָשְׁבוֹ, אוֹלִי, כִּי יוֹכֵל לְהוֹבִילָנוּ  
אֶל מִדְבָּר נֶכָר; וְאַחֵר אֲשֶׁר הוֹבִילָנוּ הָרְחֵק,  
חָשַׁב הוּא לַעֲשׂוֹת עֲצָמוֹ מֶלֶךְ וְשֹׁלֵט עָלֵינוּ,  
לְמַעַן יַעֲשֶׂה בָנוּ כְּחָפְצוֹ וְכִרְצוֹנוֹ. כֹּה הָעִיר  
אֶחָי לָמֶן אֶת לִבָּם לְכַעַס.
- the faith and diligence which we gave unto it. And thus we see that by  
small means the Lord can bring about great things.
- 30 And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did go forth up into the top of the  
mountain, according to the directions which were given upon the ball.
- 31 And it came to pass that I did slay wild beasts, insomuch that I did  
obtain food for our families.
- 32 And it came to pass that I did return to our tents, bearing the beasts  
which I had slain; and now when they beheld that I had obtained food,  
how great was their joy! And it came to pass that they did humble  
themselves before the Lord, and did give thanks unto him.
- 33 And it came to pass that we did again take our journey, traveling nearly  
the same course as in the beginning; and after we had traveled for the  
space of many days we did pitch our tents again, that we might tarry  
for the space of a time.
- 34 And it came to pass that Ishmael died, and was buried in the place  
which was called Nahom.
- 35 And it came to pass that the daughters of Ishmael did mourn exceed-  
ingly, because of the loss of their father, and because of their afflictions  
in the wilderness; and they did murmur against my father, because he  
had brought them out of the land of Jerusalem, saying: Our father is  
dead; yea, and we have wandered much in the wilderness, and we have  
suffered much affliction, hunger, thirst, and fatigue; and after all these  
sufferings we must perish in the wilderness with hunger.
- 36 And thus they did murmur against my father, and also against me; and  
they were desirous to return again to Jerusalem.
- 37 And Laman said unto Lemuel and also unto the sons of Ishmael:  
Behold, let us slay our father, and also our brother Nephi, who has  
taken it upon him to be our ruler and our teacher, who are his elder  
brethren.
- 38 Now, he says that the Lord has talked with him, and also that angels  
have ministered unto him. But behold, we know that he lies unto us;  
and he tells us these things, and he worketh many things by his cunning  
arts, that he may deceive our eyes, thinking, perhaps, that he may lead  
us away into some strange wilderness; and after he has led us away, he  
has thought to make himself a king and a ruler over us, that he may do  
with us according to his will and pleasure. And after this manner did  
my brother Laman stir up their hearts to anger.



וְהָיָה יְהוָה עִמָּנוּ, אִף קוֹלוֹ הִרְבֵּה עָלֵיהֶם  
דְּבָרִים, וְהוֹכִיחָם מְאֹד; וְאַחֵר הוֹכִיחָם קוֹל  
יְהוָה, הִסִּירוּ כַּעֲסָם וְנִחְמוּ עַל חַטָּאֵיהֶם, עַד  
כִּי שָׁב יְהוָה לְבָרְכֵנוּ בְּמִזֹּן, וְלֹא אָבִדְנוּ.

39 And it came to pass that the Lord was with us, yea, even the voice of the Lord came and did speak many words unto them, and did chasten them exceedingly; and after they were chastened by the voice of the Lord they did turn away their anger, and did repent of their sins, insomuch that the Lord did bless us again with food, that we did not perish.

## יז

## 17

וְנִסְעָנוּ שֵׁנִית בְּמִדְבָּר; וּמִן הָעַת הָהִיא נִסְעָנוּ  
לְפָאֲתֵי מִזְרָח. וְנִסְעָנוּ וְהִלְכְנוּ בְּמִדְבָּר בְּתַלְאָה  
רַבָּה; וְנִשְׁיֵנוּ הוֹלִידוּ יְלָדִים בְּמִדְבָּר.

1 And it came to pass that we did again take our journey in the wilderness; and we did travel nearly eastward from that time forth. And we did travel and wade through much affliction in the wilderness; and our women did bear children in the wilderness.

וּבְרַכַּת יְהוָה רַבְתָּה עָלֵינוּ, עַד כִּי בָאָכְלָנוּ  
בָּשָׂר נָא בְּמִדְבָּר, שֶׁפַע חֵלֶב נִשְׁיֵנוּ לְמַעַן  
יִלְדִּיהֶן, וְהֵן הָיוּ חֲזָקוֹת אַף כְּגִבָּרִים וְהֵן סָבְלוּ  
אֶת מִסְעֵיהֶן בְּלִי תִלְנָה.

2 And so great were the blessings of the Lord upon us, that while we did live upon raw meat in the wilderness, our women did give plenty of suck for their children, and were strong, yea, even like unto the men; and they began to bear their journeyings without murmurings.

וְכַךְ רֹאִים אֲנִיחֵנוּ כִּי יֵשׁ לְשֹׁמֵר אֶת מִצְוֹת  
אֱלֹהִים. וְאִם יִשְׁמְרוּ בְּנֵי הָאָדָם אֶת מִצְוֹתָיו,  
יִכְלְכֻם אֱלֹהִים וְיִאֲזֹרם חֵיל וְיִכִּין צָרְכָם  
לְהַקִּים אֶת הַדְּבָר אֲשֶׁר צִוָּם; עַל כֵּן, הֵכִין  
צָרְכָנוּ בִּימֵי מְגוּרֵינוּ בְּמִדְבָּר.

3 And thus we see that the commandments of God must be fulfilled. And if it so be that the children of men keep the commandments of God he doth nourish them, and strengthen them, and provide means whereby they can accomplish the thing which he has commanded them; wherefore, he did provide means for us while we did sojourn in the wilderness.

וְשָׁכְנוּ שָׁם שָׁנִים רַבּוֹת, אָכֵן, שְׁמוֹנֶה  
שָׁנִים בְּמִדְבָּר.

4 And we did sojourn for the space of many years, yea, even eight years in the wilderness.

וּבָאנוּ אֶל הָאָרֶץ אֲשֶׁר קָרָאנוּ אֶת שְׁמָהּ  
רַב־שֶׁפַע מִפְּנֵי פְרוֹתֶיהָ הָרְבִים וְדִבְשָׁה; וְכָל  
זֹאת הֵכִין יְהוָה לְמַעַן לֹא נָאִבֵּד. וְרָאִינוּ אֶת  
הַיָּם, אֲשֶׁר אֶת שְׁמוֹ קָרָאנוּ אִירִיאָנְטוּם  
וּפִשְׁרוֹ מִים רַבִּים.

5 And we did come to the land which we called Bountiful, because of its much fruit and also wild honey; and all these things were prepared of the Lord that we might not perish. And we beheld the sea, which we called Irreantum, which, being interpreted, is many waters.

וְנִשְׁיֵנוּ אֶת אֹהֲלֵינוּ בְּקִרְבַּת חוּף הַיָּם; וְאַף כִּי  
סָבְלָנוּ תַּלְאוֹת גְּדוֹלוֹת וּקְשָׁיִים רַבִּים עַד אֲשֶׁר  
לֹא נוּכַל לְכַתֵּב אֶת כָּלם, עַל־צָנוּ מְאֹד בְּבוֹאֵנוּ  
אֶל חוּף הַיָּם; וְקָרָאנוּ אֶת שֵׁם הַמָּקוֹם  
רַב־שֶׁפַע, מִפְּנֵי פְרוֹתֶיהָ הָרְבִים.

6 And it came to pass that we did pitch our tents by the seashore; and notwithstanding we had suffered many afflictions and much difficulty, yea, even so much that we cannot write them all, we were exceedingly rejoiced when we came to the seashore; and we called the place Bountiful, because of its much fruit.

וְאַחֵר הַיּוֹתִי, נְפִי, בְּאָרֶץ רַב־שֶׁפַע יָמִים רַבִּים,  
הָיָה אֵלַי קוֹל יְהוָה לֵאמֹר: קוּם, לֵךְ אֶל הָהָר.  
וְקָמְתִי וְעָלִיתִי עַל הָהָר וְקָרָאתִי אֶל יְהוָה.

7 And it came to pass that after I, Nephi, had been in the land of Bountiful for the space of many days, the voice of the Lord came unto me, saying: Arise, and get thee into the mountain. And it came to pass that I arose and went up into the mountain, and cried unto the Lord.

- 8 And it came to pass that the Lord spake unto me, saying: Thou shalt construct a ship, after the manner which I shall show thee, that I may carry thy people across these waters.
- 9 And I said: Lord, whither shall I go that I may find ore to molten, that I may make tools to construct the ship after the manner which thou hast shown unto me?
- 10 And it came to pass that the Lord told me whither I should go to find ore, that I might make tools.
- 11 And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did make a bellows wherewith to blow the fire, of the skins of beasts; and after I had made a bellows, that I might have wherewith to blow the fire, I did smite two stones together that I might make fire.
- 12 For the Lord had not hitherto suffered that we should make much fire, as we journeyed in the wilderness; for he said: I will make thy food become sweet, that ye cook it not;
- 13 And I will also be your light in the wilderness; and I will prepare the way before you, if it so be that ye shall keep my commandments; wherefore, inasmuch as ye shall keep my commandments ye shall be led towards the promised land; and ye shall know that it is by me that ye are led.
- 14 Yea, and the Lord said also that: After ye have arrived in the promised land, ye shall know that I, the Lord, am God; and that I, the Lord, did deliver you from destruction; yea, that I did bring you out of the land of Jerusalem.
- 15 Wherefore, I, Nephi, did strive to keep the commandments of the Lord, and I did exhort my brethren to faithfulness and diligence.
- 16 And it came to pass that I did make tools of the ore which I did molten out of the rock.
- 17 And when my brethren saw that I was about to build a ship, they began to murmur against me, saying: Our brother is a fool, for he thinketh that he can build a ship; yea, and he also thinketh that he can cross these great waters.
- 18 And thus my brethren did complain against me, and were desirous that they might not labor, for they did not believe that I could build a ship; neither would they believe that I was instructed of the Lord.
- וַדָּבַר יְהוָה אֵלַי לֵאמֹר: בְּנֵה סְפִינָה עַל פִּי הַתְּבִנִית אֲשֶׁר אֶרְאֶךָ, לְמַעַן אוֹלִיךָ אֶת עַמִּי אֶל מַעְבַּר הַמַּיִם הָאֵלֶּה.
- וָאָמַרְתִּי: יְהוָה, אָנֹכָה אֵלֶךְ לְמִצָּא עֲפֻרֹת בְּרֹזֶל לְמַלְאֶכֶת הַתֵּכָה בְּעִבּוֹר כָּלִים לְבִנּוֹת סְפִינָה עַל פִּי הַתְּבִנִית אֲשֶׁר הִרְאִיתָנִי.
- וַיְהוֶה הוֹרֵנִי אָנֹכָה אֵלֶךְ לְמִצָּא עֲפֻרֹת בְּרֹזֶל לַעֲשׂוֹת כָּלִים.
- וָאֲנִי, נְפִי, עָשִׂיתִי מִפּוֹחַ מַעֲוֹרוֹת חַיִּית לְפַחַת בּוֹ אֵשׁ; וּכְכֹלֹתִי לַעֲשׂוֹת אֶת הַמִּפּוֹחַ אֲשֶׁר בּוֹ אָפִיחַ אֵשׁ, הִכִּיתִי אֶבֶן בְּאַבֵּן לְהַבְעִיר אֵשׁ.
- כִּי עַד הָעַתָּה הָיָא לֹא נִתְּנָנוּ יְהוָה לְהַרְבּוֹת בְּעֶרְתָּ אֵשׁ בְּמִסְעָנֵנוּ בַּמִּדְבָּר, כִּי אָמַר: אֲמַתִּיךָ אֶת מֵאֲכַלְכֶּם לְמַעַן לֹא תִבְשְׁלוּהוּ.
- וָאֲנִי אֲפִי אֶהְיֶה מְאוֹרְכֶם בַּמִּדְבָּר; וְאִם תִּשְׁמְרוּ אֶת מִצְוֹתַי אֲבֹן אֶפְנֶה אֶת דְּרָכְכֶם לְפָנֵיכֶם. וְהָיָה אִם תִּשְׁמְרוּ אֶת מִצְוֹתַי, אוֹלִיכְכֶם אֶל הָאָרֶץ הַיְעוּדָה, וַיִּדְעַתֶּם כִּי אֲנִי הוּא אֲשֶׁר מוֹלִיכְכֶם.
- וַיְהוֶה הוֹסִיף לֵאמֹר: אַחֵר בּוֹאֲכֶם אֶל הָאָרֶץ הַיְעוּדָה, יָדוּעַ תִּדְעוּ כִּי אֲנִי יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים, וְכִי אֲנִי יְהוָה, הַצֹּלֶתִיכֶם מֵאֲבִדּוֹן בְּאֲשֶׁר הוֹצֵאתִי אֶתְכֶם מֵאֶרֶץ יְרוּשָׁלַם.
- עַל כֵּן אֲנִי, נְפִי, הִתְאֲמַצְתִּי לִשְׁמֹר אֶת מִצְוֹת יְהוָה, וְהִפְצַרְתִּי בְּאַחֵי לִשְׁמִירַת אֱמוּנִים וְלִשְׁקִידָה.
- וְעָשִׂיתִי כָלִים מִעֲפֻרֹת הַבְּרֹזֶל אֲשֶׁר הִתְכַּתִּי מִן הַסֵּלֶע.
- וּבְרֵאוֹת אַחֵי כִּי בָאתִי לְבִנּוֹת סְפִינָה, יָחֳלוּ לְהִתְלוֹנֵן עָלַי לֵאמֹר: אַחִינוּ סָכָל; מִדְּמָה הוּא בְּנִפְשׁוֹ כִּי יַעֲלֶה בִידּוֹ לְבִנּוֹת סְפִינָה; אֲכֹן, מִדְּמָה הוּא כִּי יוּכַל לַחְצוֹת אֶת הַמַּיִם הָאֲדִירִים הָאֵלֶּה.
- כֹּה הִתְאוּנְנוּ עָלַי אַחֵי, וְחָפְצוּ לְחַדֵּל מִעֲבֹדָה, כִּי לֹא הֶאֱמִינוּ כִּי אוּכַל לְבִנּוֹת סְפִינָה, וְאִף לֹא הֶאֱמִינוּ כִּי יְהוָה הוֹרָה לִי זֹאת.

- 19 ואֲנִי, נְפִי, דָּאֲבִיתִי מְאֹד עַל קִשִּׁי לָבָם; וּבְרָאוּתָם אֶת דָּאֲבֹן לְבִי הֵם עָלְצוּ בְלָבָם, עַד כִּי שָׁשׂוּ עָלַי לֵאמֹר: יִדְעֻנוּ אֲשֶׁר לֹא תוּכַל לְבָנוֹת סְפִינָה, כִּי יִדְעֻנוּ אֲשֶׁר אֵין לָךְ שְׁקוֹל הַדַּעַת; וְלָכֵן, אֵין בְּיָדְךָ לַבְצֵעַ עֲבֹדָה כֹּה גְדוֹלָה.
- 20 And now it came to pass that I, Nephi, was exceedingly sorrowful because of the hardness of their hearts; and now when they saw that I began to be sorrowful they were glad in their hearts, insomuch that they did rejoice over me, saying: We knew that ye could not construct a ship, for we knew that ye were lacking in judgment; wherefore, thou canst not accomplish so great a work.
- 20 וְהִנֵּךְ כְּאָבִינוּ, הוֹלֵךְ אַחֵר מִחֻשְׁבוֹת סְכָלוֹת לָבוֹ; הוּא הוֹבִילָנוּ מֵאֶרֶץ יְרוּשָׁלַם, וְאֲנַחְנוּ נִדְדֻנוּ בַּמִּדְבָּר בִּשְׁנֵים הָרְבוֹת הָאֵלֶּה; וְנָשִׁינוּ עִמָּלוּ בְּהָרִיוֹנוֹ, וְיָלְדוּ יְלָדִים בַּמִּדְבָּר, וְסָבְלוּ כָּל רָע, זֹלַת הַמָּוֶת; וְטוֹב הָיָה מוֹתוֹן טָרָם צֵאתָן מִירוּשָׁלַם מִסָּבֵל הַתִּלְאוֹת הָאֵלֶּה.
- 20 And thou art like unto our father, led away by the foolish imaginations of his heart; yea, he hath led us out of the land of Jerusalem, and we have wandered in the wilderness for these many years; and our women have toiled, being big with child; and they have borne children in the wilderness and suffered all things, save it were death; and it would have been better that they had died before they came out of Jerusalem than to have suffered these afflictions.
- 21 הִנֵּה, סָבְלָנוּ בַּמִּדְבָּר בִּשְׁנֵים הָרְבוֹת הָאֵלֶּה תַּחַת אֲשֶׁר יָכְלָנוּ לִהְיוֹת מְרוֹכְשֵׁינוּ וְאֶרֶץ נַחֲלָתָנוּ, וְאֵף לִהְיוֹת מְאֻשְׁרִים.
- 21 Behold, these many years we have suffered in the wilderness, which time we might have enjoyed our possessions and the land of our inheritance; yea, and we might have been happy.
- 22 יִדְעֻנוּ כִּי הָעָם אֲשֶׁר בְּאֶרֶץ יְרוּשָׁלַם צְדִיק הָיָה; כִּי שָׁמְרוּ אֶת חֻקֵּי יְהוָה וּמִשְׁפָּטָיו, וְאֶת כָּל מִצְוֹתָיו, עַל פִּי תוֹרַת מֹשֶׁה; וּבִזְהָרָה יִדְעֻנוּ כִּי עִם צְדִיק הוּא. וְאָבִינוּ שָׁפֵט אוֹתָם וְהוֹבִילָנוּ מִשָּׁם כִּי שָׁמַעְנוּ לְדִבְרָיו; וְהִנֵּה אַחֵינוּ כְּמוֹהוּ. כִּזְזֵאת הִתְלוֹנְנוּ אַחֵי וְרָגְנוּ עָלֵינוּ.
- 22 And we know that the people who were in the land of Jerusalem were a righteous people; for they kept the statutes and judgments of the Lord, and all his commandments, according to the law of Moses; wherefore, we know that they are a righteous people; and our father hath judged them, and hath led us away because we would hearken unto his words; yea, and our brother is like unto him. And after this manner of language did my brethren murmur and complain against us.
- 23 ואֲנִי, נְפִי, דִּבַּרְתִּי אֲלֵיהֶם לֵאמֹר: הֲתֵאֱמִינוּ כִּי אֲבוֹתֵינוּ, בְּנֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל, הָיוּ יוֹצְאִים מִיַּד הַמִּצְרִים לוֹלֵא שָׁמַעוּ לְדִבְרֵי יְהוָה?
- 23 And it came to pass that I, Nephi, spake unto them, saying: Do ye believe that our fathers, who were the children of Israel, would have been led away out of the hands of the Egyptians if they had not hearkened unto the words of the Lord?
- 24 הֲאֵמֶנּוּ תִחְשְׁבוּ כִּי הֵם הָיוּ מוֹצְאִים מֵעֲבָדוֹת, אִלּוּ לֹא צִוָּה יְהוָה אֶת מֹשֶׁה לְנַהֲגֵם מִבֵּית עֲבָדִים?
- 24 Yea, do ye suppose that they would have been led out of bondage, if the Lord had not commanded Moses that he should lead them out of bondage?
- 25 הֵן יִדְעֻתֶם כִּי בְנֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל הָיוּ בְּבֵית עֲבָדִים; אֲף יִדְעֻתֶם כִּי מִשָּׂאֵם הָיָה כְּבֹד מְנֻשָּׂא; עַל כֵּן יִדְעֻתֶם כִּי צֵאתָם מֵעֲבָדוֹת הָיְתָה לְטוֹבָתָם.
- 25 Now ye know that the children of Israel were in bondage; and ye know that they were laden with tasks, which were grievous to be borne; wherefore, ye know that it must needs be a good thing for them, that they should be brought out of bondage.
- 26 הֵן יִדְעֻתֶם כִּי יְהוָה צִוָּה אֶת מֹשֶׁה לַעֲשׂוֹת אֶת הַמַּעֲשֶׂה הַגָּדוֹל הַזֶּה; אֲף יִדְעֻתֶם כִּי בְּדָבְרוֹ נִבְקְעוּ מִי יָם סוּף הַיָּה וְהִנֵּה, וּבְנֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל הָלְכוּ בִּיבֶשֶׁת.
- 26 Now ye know that Moses was commanded of the Lord to do that great work; and ye know that by his word the waters of the Red Sea were divided hither and thither, and they passed through on dry ground.

- 27 ואולם ידעתם כי המצרים, אשר היו צבאות פרעה, טבעו בים סוף. But ye know that the Egyptians were drowned in the Red Sea, who were the armies of Pharaoh.
- 28 וידעתם גם כי המן היה מאכלם במדבר. And ye also know that they were fed with manna in the wilderness.
- 29 ואף ידעתם כי משה בדברו, כפי גבורת אלהים אשר היתה בו, הכה בסלע ויצאו מים למען ישברו בני ישראל את צמאם. Yea, and ye also know that Moses, by his word according to the power of God which was in him, smote the rock, and there came forth water, that the children of Israel might quench their thirst.
- 30 ועל אף כי הוליכם יהוה אלהיהם, גואלם, ההולך לפנייהם ונהגם יומם והאיר להם לילה ועשה להם את הכל לספק את המועיל לאדם, הם הקשו את לבם ועורו את עיניהם, וחרפו את משה ואת אלהי האמת, אל חי. And notwithstanding they being led, the Lord their God, their Redeemer, going before them, leading them by day and giving light unto them by night, and doing all things for them which were expedient for man to receive, they hardened their hearts and blinded their minds, and reviled against Moses and against the true and living God.
- 31 וכפי דברו הוא השמידם, וכפי דברו הוא נהגם, וכפי דברו עשה הכל למענם; לא נעשה דבר כי אם בדברו. And it came to pass that according to his word he did destroy them; and according to his word he did lead them; and according to his word he did do all things for them; and there was not anything done save it were by his word.
- 32 ואחר חצותם את נהר הירדן הוא חזקם למען יגרשו את בני הארץ ופיצו אותם עדי השמדם. And after they had crossed the river Jordan he did make them mighty unto the driving out of the children of the land, yea, unto the scattering them to destruction.
- 33 והנה, התחשבו כי בני הארץ הזאת, אשר היו בארץ היעודה ואשר אבותינו גרשום ממנה, היו צדיקים? הנני אומר לכם: לא! And now, do ye suppose that the children of this land, who were in the land of promise, who were driven out by our fathers, do ye suppose that they were righteous? Behold, I say unto you, Nay.
- 34 התחשבו כי אבותינו היו מבחרים מהם, אלו היו הם עם צדיק? אומר לכם: לא! Do ye suppose that our fathers would have been more choice than they if they had been righteous? I say unto you, Nay.
- 35 כל הבשר אחד בעיני יהוה; הישר ימצא חן בעיני אלהים. אף הנה העם הזה מאס בכל דבר אלהים ועוונם שלם; חמת אלהים היתה עליהם במלואה; יהוה ארר את הארץ עליהם וברכה למען אבותינו; אכן, הוא אררה עליהם עד השמדם, וברכה למען אבותינו, בעבור יתגברו עליה. Behold, the Lord esteemeth all flesh in one; he that is righteous is favored of God. But behold, this people had rejected every word of God, and they were ripe in iniquity; and the fulness of the wrath of God was upon them; and the Lord did curse the land against them, and bless it unto our fathers; yea, he did curse it against them unto their destruction, and he did bless it unto our fathers unto their obtaining power over it.
- 36 הנה, יהוה ברא את הארץ לשבת בה, ואת בניו ברא להתנחל בה. Behold, the Lord hath created the earth that it should be inhabited; and he hath created his children that they should possess it.
- 37 והוא מקים עם צדיק, ומשמיד את עמי הרשעים. And he raiseth up a righteous nation, and destroyeth the nations of the wicked.

- 38 And he leadeth away the righteous into precious lands, and the wicked he destroyeth, and curseth the land unto them for their sakes.  
וְהוּא מוֹלִיךְ אֶת הַצְדִּיקִים אֶל אֲרָצוֹת חֲמֻדָּה, וְאֶת הָרָשָׁעִים הוּא מְשַׁמֵּד, וְאֶת אֲרָצָם הוּא מְאַרֵר עֲלֵיהֶם לְמַעַנָם.
- 39 He ruleth high in the heavens, for it is his throne, and this earth is his footstool.  
הוּא מוֹשֵׁל בְּגִבְהֵי מְרוֹמִים, כִּי הֵם כִּסְאוֹ וְהָאָרֶץ הָדוֹם רִגְלָיו.
- 40 And he loveth those who will have him to be their God. Behold, he loved our fathers, and he covenanted with them, yea, even Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob; and he remembered the covenants which he had made; wherefore, he did bring them out of the land of Egypt.  
וְהוּא אוֹהֵב אֶת אֲשֶׁר יִקְבְּלוּהוּ לֵהוּיֹת אֱלֹהֵיהֶם. הִנֵּה, הוּא אָהַב אֶת אֲבוֹתֵינוּ וְכָרַת עִמָּם בְּרִית, אַבְרָהָם, יִצְחָק וְיַעֲקֹב; וְהוּא זָכַר אֶת הַבְּרִיתוֹת אֲשֶׁר כָּרַת, וְהוֹצִיאָם מֵאֶרֶץ מִצְרַיִם.
- 41 And he did straiten them in the wilderness with his rod; for they hardened their hearts, even as ye have; and the Lord straitened them because of their iniquity. He sent fiery flying serpents among them; and after they were bitten he prepared a way that they might be healed; and the labor which they had to perform was to look; and because of the simpleness of the way, or the easiness of it, there were many who perished.  
וְהוּא יִשְׁרֹם בַּמִּדְבָּר בְּשִׁבְטוֹ, כִּי הִקְשׁוּ אֶת לִבָּם, כְּמוֹכֶם, וַיְהִי וַיִּשְׁרֹם עַל עַוְוֹנָם. וְהוּא שָׁלַח בָּהֶם נָחָשׁ שָׂרִף מְעוֹפֹפִים; וְאַחֵר אֲשֶׁר נִשְׁכּוּם, הוּא הֵכִין דֶּרֶךְ לְרִפְאָם; וְאֲשֶׁר הָיָה לָהֶם לַעֲשׂוֹת הָיָה לְהִבְטִי; אֹךְ מִפְּנֵי פְשָׁטוֹת הַדֶּרֶךְ, אוֹ קְלוּתָהּ, רַבּוּ הַמֵּתִים.
- 42 And they did harden their hearts from time to time, and they did revile against Moses, and also against God; nevertheless, ye know that they were led forth by his matchless power into the land of promise.  
וְהֵם הִקְשׁוּ אֶת לִבָּם כְּפַעַם בְּפַעַם, וַחֲרָפוּ אֶת מֹשֶׁה וְאֶף אֶת אֱלֹהִים; וְאוּלַם יַדְעֲתֶם כִּי הוּא הוֹבִילָם בְּכֹחוֹ, אֲשֶׁר אֵין שֹׁוֹה לוֹ, אֶל הָאָרֶץ הַיְעֻדָּה.
- 43 And now, after all these things, the time has come that they have become wicked, yea, nearly unto ripeness; and I know not but they are at this day about to be destroyed; for I know that the day must surely come that they must be destroyed, save a few only, who shall be led away into captivity.  
וְהִנֵּה, אַחֵר כָּל הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, הִגִּיעַ הַיּוֹם אֲשֶׁר הֵם הִרְשִׁיעוּ כְּמַעַס בְּמַלְאָם, וְלֹא אֲדַע אֶת הַדְּבָר אֵלֶּה כִּי כַּעַת הַזֹּאת הֵם עַל סֵף הַכְּלִיוֹן; כִּי יַדְעֲתִי אֲשֶׁר בּוֹא יוֹם כְּלִיוֹנָם, זֵוֹלַת מַעֲשִׂים, אֲשֶׁר יִלְכוּ לְשִׁבְיָהּ.
- 44 Wherefore, the Lord commanded my father that he should depart into the wilderness; and the Jews also sought to take away his life; yea, and ye also have sought to take away his life; wherefore, ye are murderers in your hearts and ye are like unto them.  
עַל כֵּן צִוָּה יְהוָה אֶת אָבִי לְצֵאת הַמִּדְבָּרָה; וְאֲנִשִּׁי יְהוּדָה בָּקְשׁוּ אֶת נַפְשׁוֹ, וְאֶף אַתֶּם אֲמַרְתֶּם לְהָרְגוֹ. לָכֵן, רוֹצְחִים אַתֶּם בְּלִבְבְּכֶם, וְהִנֵּכֶם כְּמוֹהֶם.
- 45 Ye are swift to do iniquity but slow to remember the Lord your God. Ye have seen an angel, and he spake unto you; yea, ye have heard his voice from time to time; and he hath spoken unto you in a still small voice, but ye were past feeling, that ye could not feel his words; wherefore, he has spoken unto you like unto the voice of thunder, which did cause the earth to shake as if it were to divide asunder.  
מְהִירִים אַתֶּם לַעֲוֹל, וְאִטִּיִּים לִזְכֹּר אֶת יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵיכֶם. רָאִיתֶם מַלְאָךְ, וְהוּא דִּבֶּר אֵלֵיכֶם; אֹף שָׁמַעְתֶּם אֶת קוֹלוֹ כְּפַעַם בְּפַעַם; וְהוּא דִּבֶּר אֵלֵיכֶם בְּקוֹל דְּמָמָה דְּקָה, אֹף הִיִּיתֶם אִטוּמֵי רִגֵּשׁ וְלֹא יָכַלְתֶּם לְהִרְגִּישׁ אֶת דְּבָרָיו; עַל כֵּן דִּבֶּר אֵלֵיכֶם כְּדִבְרֵי קוֹל הָרָעַם, אֲשֶׁר הִתְרִיד אֶת הָאֲדָמָה כְּמוֹ עֵמֶד לְבִקְעָהּ.
- 46 And ye also know that by the power of his almighty word he can cause the earth that it shall pass away; yea, and ye know that by his word he



- את העקב והמישור ישבר. על כן, איכה תקשו לבבכם כל כך?
- 47 Behold, my soul is rent with anguish because of you, and my heart is pained; I fear lest ye shall be cast off forever. Behold, I am full of the Spirit of God, insomuch that my frame has no strength.
- 48 And now it came to pass that when I had spoken these words, they were angry with me, and were desirous to throw me into the depths of the sea; and as they came forth to lay their hands upon me I spake unto them, saying: In the name of the Almighty God, I command you that ye touch me not, for I am filled with the power of God, even unto the consuming of my flesh; and whoso shall lay his hands upon me shall wither even as a dried reed; and he shall be as naught before the power of God, for God shall smite him.
- 49 And it came to pass that I, Nephi, said unto them that they should murmur no more against their father; neither should they withhold their labor from me, for God had commanded me that I should build a ship.
- 50 And I said unto them: If God had commanded me to do all things I could do them. If he should command me that I should say unto this water, be thou earth, it should be earth; and if I should say it, it would be done.
- 51 And now, if the Lord has such great power, and has wrought so many miracles among the children of men, how is it that he cannot instruct me, that I should build a ship?
- 52 And it came to pass that I, Nephi, said many things unto my brethren, insomuch that they were confounded and could not contend against me; neither durst they lay their hands upon me nor touch me with their fingers, even for the space of many days. Now they durst not do this lest they should wither before me, so powerful was the Spirit of God; and thus it had wrought upon them.
- 53 And it came to pass that the Lord said unto me: Stretch forth thine hand again unto thy brethren, and they shall not wither before thee, but I will shock them, saith the Lord, and this will I do, that they may know that I am the Lord their God.
- 54 And it came to pass that I stretched forth my hand unto my brethren, and they did not wither before me; but the Lord did shake them, even according to the word which he had spoken.
- וְכַדְבְּרִי אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, הֵם רָגְזוּ עָלַי וְחָפְצוּ לְהַשְׁלִיכֵנִי אֶל מַצּוֹלוֹת הַיָּם; וּבְבוֹאֵם לִשְׁלַח בִּי אֶת יָדָם דְּבַרְתִּי אֲלֵיהֶם לֵאמֹר: בְּשֵׁם אֱלֹהֵי שָׁמַי, הִנְנִי אוֹסֵר עֲלֵיכֶם לִגְעַת בִּי, כִּי מִלְּאֲתִי גְבוּרַת אֱלֹהִים, עַד כָּלוֹת בְּשָׁרִי, וְאֲשֶׁר יִשְׁלַח יָדוֹ אֵלַי כִּכְנָה יִבֹּשׁ: בַּל וְהָיָה כְּאִין לִפְנֵי גְבוּרַת אֱלֹהִים, כִּי הוּא יַכֶּה.
- וְאֲנִי, נְפִי, אִמַּרְתִּי אֲלֵיהֶם כִּי יַחְדָּלוּ לְהִתְלוֹנֵן עַל אֲבִיהֶם, וְכִי לֹא יִמְנְעוּ מֵעֲבֹד עִמִּי, כִּי אֱלֹהִים צֻוֵּי לְבָנוֹת סְפִינָה.
- וְאִמַּרְתִּי אֲלֵיהֶם: אִלוֹ צֻוֵּי אֱלֹהִים לַעֲשׂוֹת אֶת כָּל הַדְּבָרִים, יִכְלְתִּי לַעֲשׂוֹתָם. אִם יִצְוֶנִי לוֹמַר לַמַּיִם הָאֵלֶּה, הִיֵּי עֶפְרָא, אָכֵן יִהְיֶה עֶפְרָא; וְאִם אִמַּר אֶת הַדְּבָר, הֵן יִקּוּם.
- וְאָכֵן, אִם לִיהוָה כַּח כֹּה רַב הוּא עֹשֶׂה נִפְלְאוֹת כֹּה רַבּוֹת בֵּין בְּנֵי הָאָדָם, כִּיצַד אֵין בִּידֹו לְהוֹרוֹתֵנִי לְבָנוֹת סְפִינָה?
- וְאֲנִי, נְפִי, הִרְבֵּיתִי לְדַבֵּר אֶל אַחֵי, עַד אֲשֶׁר בּוֹשׁוּ וְלֹא יָכְלוּ לְהִתְוַכַּח עִמִּי; אֶף לֹא הִעֲזּוּ לִשְׁלַח יָדָם בִּי, וְלֹא לִגְעַת בִּי בְּאַצְבָּעֵם יָמִים רַבִּים. וְזֹאת לֹא הִעֲזּוּ פֶן יִבְּלוּ לִפְנֵי, כֹּה אֲדִירָה הִיְתָה רוּחַ אֱלֹהִים, וְכֵן גְּבֻרָה עֲלֵיהֶם.
- וְאִמַּר אֵלַי יְהוָה: נִטֵּה יָדְךָ שֵׁנִית אֶל אַחֶיךָ וְלֹא יִבְּלוּ לִפְנֶיךָ אֶף אֲנִי אֶהְמָם נְאוּם יְהוָה, וְזֹאת אֶעֱשֶׂה לְמַעַן יָדְעוּ כִּי אֲנִי יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵיהֶם.
- וְאֲנִי נִטִּיתִי אֶת יָדִי אֶל אַחֵי וְלֹא בָּלוּ לִפְנֵי, אֶף טִלְטְלָם יְהוָה כְּאֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר.



וְהֵם אָמְרוּ: עֵתָה יִדְעֻנוּ אֵל נָכוֹן כִּי יְהוָה עִמָּךְ  
כִּי יִדְעֻנוּ כִּי כָח יְהוָה הוּא אֲשֶׁר טָלַטְלָנוּ. וְהֵם  
נָפְלוּ לִפְנֵי וְאָמְרוּ לְעַבְדִּי, אַךְ אֲנִי לֹא הִנְחֵתִים  
זֹאת, וְאָמַרְתִּי: אַחִיכֶם אֲנִי, אַחִיכֶם הִקְטָן;  
לָכֵן עֲבְדוּ אֶת יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵיכֶם, וְכַבְּדוּ אֶת  
אֲבִיכֶם וְאֶת אִמְכֶם לְמַעַן יֵאָרִיכוּ יְמֵיכֶם  
בְּאֶרֶץ אֲשֶׁר יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵיכֶם נוֹתֵן לָכֶם.

55 And now, they said: We know of a surety that the Lord is with thee, for we know that it is the power of the Lord that has shaken us. And they fell down before me, and were about to worship me, but I would not suffer them, saying: I am thy brother, yea, even thy younger brother; wherefore, worship the Lord thy God, and honor thy father and thy mother, that thy days may be long in the land which the Lord thy God shall give thee.

## יח

## 18

וְאֲחִי עֲבָדוּ אֶת יְהוָה וְהִלְכוּ עִמִּי, וְעָשִׂינוּ  
קִרְשִׁים מִלֵּאכֶת מְחֻשֶׁבֶת. וַיְהוֶה הָרָאנִי  
כִּפְעַם בְּפַעַם אֶת הָאֶפֶס אֲשֶׁר אָכִין אֶת  
קִרְשֵׁי הַסְּפִינָה.

1 And it came to pass that they did worship the Lord, and did go forth with me; and we did work timbers of curious workmanship. And the Lord did show me from time to time after what manner I should work the timbers of the ship.

וְאֲנִי, נְפִי, לֹא עָשִׂיתִי אֶת הַקִּרְשִׁים כְּדֶרֶךְ  
חֻקְמַת בְּנֵי הָאָדָם, וְאֶף אֶת הַסְּפִינָה לֹא בְּנִיתִי  
כְּדֶרֶךְ אֲנָשִׁים, כִּי בְּנִיתִי אוֹתָהּ בְּאֶפֶס אֲשֶׁר  
הָרָאנִי יְהוָה; עַל כֵּן לֹא הִיְתָה זֹאת מִלֵּאכֶת  
כְּדֶרֶךְ הָאֲנָשִׁים.

2 Now I, Nephi, did not work the timbers after the manner which was learned by men, neither did I build the ship after the manner of men; but I did build it after the manner which the Lord had shown unto me; wherefore, it was not after the manner of men.

וְאֲנִי, נְפִי, הִלְכֵתִי לַעֲתִים קְרוֹבוֹת אֶל הָהָר,  
וְהִתְפַּלֵּלְתִּי אֶל יְהוָה פְּעָמִים רַבּוֹת; עַל כֵּן  
הָרָאנִי יְהוָה גְּדוּלוֹת.

3 And I, Nephi, did go into the mount oft, and I did pray oft unto the Lord; wherefore the Lord showed unto me great things.

וְהָיָה כְּכֹלֹתִי לַעֲשׂוֹת אֶת הַסְּפִינָה, כְּדַבֵּר  
יְהוָה, רָאוּ אֲחֵי כִי טוֹבָה הִיא, מִעֲשֵׂה אֲמָנוֹת  
טוֹב מְאֹד; עַל כֵּן נִכְנְעוּ שְׁנֵית לִפְנֵי יְהוָה.

4 And it came to pass that after I had finished the ship, according to the word of the Lord, my brethren beheld that it was good, and that the workmanship thereof was exceedingly fine; wherefore, they did humble themselves again before the Lord.

וְהָיָה קוֹל יְהוָה אֶל אָבִי לֵאמֹר כִּי נָקוּם וְנֵרֵד  
אֶל הַסְּפִינָה.

5 And it came to pass that the voice of the Lord came unto my father, that we should arise and go down into the ship.

וְלִמְחֻרָתָהּ, אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר הִכְיֵנוּ אֶת כָּל הַדְּבָרִים,  
פְּרוֹת וּבָשָׂר לָרֹב מִן הַמִּדְבָּר, וְדָבַשׁ בְּשֹׁפֶעַ  
וְצִידָה כְּאֲשֶׁר צִוָּנוּ יְהוָה, יֵרְדוּ אֶל הַסְּפִינָה,  
וְכָל מִשְׁאֲנֵנוּ עִמָּנוּ וְכֹן זֵרְעֵנוּ וְכָל חֶפֶץ אֲשֶׁר  
הִבֵּאנוּ עִמָּנוּ, כָּל אֶחָד כְּכִי שְׁנוֹתָיו; אָכֹן יֵרְדוּ  
כָּלֵנוּ אֶל הַסְּפִינָה עִם נְשֹׁתֵינוּ וְיִלְדֵינוּ.

6 And it came to pass that on the morrow, after we had prepared all things, much fruits and meat from the wilderness, and honey in abundance, and provisions according to that which the Lord had commanded us, we did go down into the ship, with all our loading and our seeds, and whatsoever thing we had brought with us, every one according to his age; wherefore, we did all go down into the ship, with our wives and our children.

וְאָבִי הוֹלִיד שְׁנֵי בָנִים בַּמִּדְבָּר;  
שֵׁם הָרֵאשׁוֹן יַעֲקֹב וְהַצֶּעִיר יוֹסֵף.

7 And now, my father had begat two sons in the wilderness; the elder was called Jacob and the younger Joseph.

וְאַחֵר רָדַת כָּלֵנוּ אֶל הַסְּפִינָה,  
וְעִמָּנוּ צִידָתֵנוּ וְחֻפְצֵינוּ, כְּאֲשֶׁר צִוָּנוּ,

8 And it came to pass after we had all gone down into the ship, and had taken with us our provisions and things which had been commanded

יֵצְאוּנוּ לַיָּם וְנִשְׁאַנוּ הָרוּחַ אֶל  
הָאָרֶץ הַיְעֵדָה.

us, we did put forth into the sea and were driven forth before the wind towards the promised land.

וְאַחַר אֲשֶׁר נִשְׁאַנוּ הָרוּחַ יָמִים רַבִּים, וְהִנֵּה  
אֶחָי וּבְנֵי יִשְׁמָעֵאל וְכֹן נְשֹׁתֵיהֶם הֵחִלוּ לַעֲלוֹ,  
עַד כִּי פָּרְצוּ בְּמַחֲלוּת וּבְשִׁירִים וּבְדַבְרֵי  
נִבְלֹת וְשִׁכְחוּ בְּכֹחַ מִי הוּבְאוּ שָׁמָּה; אַכֵּן, הֵם  
הִתְנַשְּׂאוּ בְּנִבְלֹת רַבָּה.

9 And after we had been driven forth before the wind for the space of many days, behold, my brethren and the sons of Ishmael and also their wives began to make themselves merry, insomuch that they began to dance, and to sing, and to speak with much rudeness, yea, even that they did forget by what power they had been brought thither; yea, they were lifted up unto exceeding rudeness.

וְאֲנִי, נְפִי, יִרְאֵתִי מְאֹד פֶּן יִחַרָה בְּנֹו אִי  
יְהוָה וַיַּכֵּנוּ עַל עֲוֹנוֹנֵנוּ, וְנִבְלַע בְּמַצּוֹלוֹת הַיָּם;  
עַל כֵּן, אֲנִי, נְפִי, הֵחִלֹּתִי לְדַבֵּר עִמָּם בְּדַבְרֵי  
נְכוּחִים; אֲדָּהֵם רְגִזוּ עָלַי לֵאמֹר: לֹא נִחְפֹּץ  
אֲשֶׁר אֶחֱיוֹנוּ הַצָּעִיר יִשְׁלֹט בָּנוּ.

10 And I, Nephi, began to fear exceedingly lest the Lord should be angry with us, and smite us because of our iniquity, that we should be swallowed up in the depths of the sea; wherefore, I, Nephi, began to speak to them with much soberness; but behold they were angry with me, saying: We will not that our younger brother shall be a ruler over us.

וְלָמֶן וּלְמוֹאֵל תְּפִשׁוּנִי וְאֶסְרוּנִי בְּחִבְלִים  
וְנִהְגוּ בִּי קָשׁוֹת מְאֹד; וַיְהוֶה נִשְׂאָה זֹאת לְמַעַן  
יִרְאֶה אֶת כֹּחוֹ, לְמַלֵּא אֶת דְּבָרוֹ אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר  
עַל הָרָשָׁעִים.

11 And it came to pass that Laman and Lemuel did take me and bind me with cords, and they did treat me with much harshness; nevertheless, the Lord did suffer it that he might show forth his power, unto the fulfilling of his word which he had spoken concerning the wicked.

וּבְאַסְרָם אוֹתִי עַד אֲשֶׁר לֹא יָכֹלְתִּי לָנוּעַ,  
וְהִנֵּה הַמָּכוֹן אֲשֶׁר הָכִין יְהוָה חָדַל לַפְעֹל.

12 And it came to pass that after they had bound me insomuch that I could not move, the compass, which had been prepared of the Lord, did cease to work.

עַל כֵּן, הֵם לֹא יָדְעוּ לָאֵן יִנְהֲגוּ אֶת הַסְפִּינָה,  
עַד אֲשֶׁר קָמָה סַעְרָה גְּדוֹלָה, אַכֵּן, סוּפָה עָזָה  
וְאַיָּמָה, וְאַנְחֵנוּ נִשְׁאַנוּ לְאַחֹר עַל פְּנֵי הַמַּיִם  
בְּמִשְׁךְ שְׁלֹשָׁה יָמִים; וְהֵם יָרְאוּ מְאֹד פֶּן יִטְבְּעוּ  
בָּיָם, וְאוֹלָם הֵם לֹא הִתִּירוּנִי.

13 Wherefore, they knew not whither they should steer the ship, insomuch that there arose a great storm, yea, a great and terrible tempest, and we were driven back upon the waters for the space of three days; and they began to be frightened exceedingly lest they should be drowned in the sea; nevertheless they did not loose me.

וּבַיּוֹם הָרְבִיעִי לְהִנְשָׂאנוּ לְאַחֹר הַתַּחֲזָקָה  
הַסּוּפָה עַד מְאֹד.

14 And on the fourth day, which we had been driven back, the tempest began to be exceedingly sore.

וְהָיָה כִּי כְּמַעַס נִבְלַעְנוּ בְּמַצּוֹלוֹת הַיָּם.  
אַכֵּן, אַחֲרָיו נִשְׁאַנוּ לְאַחֹר עַל פְּנֵי הַמַּיִם  
בְּמִשְׁךְ אַרְבַּעָה יָמִים, הִבִּינוּ אֶחָי כִּי מִשְׁפָּטִי  
יְהוָה עָלֵיהֶם וְכִי יֵאבְדוּ אִם לֹא יִשׁוּבוּ מֵעֲוֹנוֹם.  
וְהֵם בָּאוּ אֵלַי וְהִתִּירוּ אֶת הַחִבְלִים אֲשֶׁר עַל  
יָדִי, וְהִנֵּה הֵן צָבוּ עַד מְאֹד, וְכֵן צָבוּ מְאֹד  
קָרְסָלִי וְרַב הָיָה הַכָּאֵב.

15 And it came to pass that we were about to be swallowed up in the depths of the sea. And after we had been driven back upon the waters for the space of four days, my brethren began to see that the judgments of God were upon them, and that they must perish save that they should repent of their iniquities; wherefore, they came unto me, and loosed the bands which were upon my wrist, and behold they had swollen exceedingly; and also mine ankles were much swollen, and great was the soreness thereof.

וְאוֹלָם פָּנִיתִי אֶל אֱלֹהֵי וְהִלֵּלְתִּיו כָּל הַיּוֹם,  
וְלֹא הִתְלוֹנְנֵתִי עַל יְהוָה מִפְּנֵי תִלְאוֹתַי.

16 Nevertheless, I did look unto my God, and I did praise him all the day long; and I did not murmur against the Lord because of mine afflictions.

17 ואֲבִי, לְחִי, דִּבֶּר אֲלֵיהֶם דְּבָרִים רַבִּים וְכֵן אֶל בְּנֵי יִשְׁמָעֵאל, אֲךָ הֵם נָשְׁפוּ אִיוִּמִּים רַבִּים עַל כָּל אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר בְּעַבּוּרִי; וְהוֹרִי הָיוּ אֲזַי בָּאִים בִּיָּמַי, וְנָפְלוּ לְמִשְׁכַּב חֲלָיִם מִפְּנֵי צָעַר לִבָּם אֲשֶׁר הִשְׁבִּיעוּם בְּנִיָּהֶם.

Now my father, Lehi, had said many things unto them, and also unto the sons of Ishmael; but, behold, they did breathe out much threatenings against anyone that should speak for me; and my parents being stricken in years, and having suffered much grief because of their children, they were brought down, yea, even upon their sick-beds.

18 וּמִפְּנֵי יְגוֹנָם וְצָעָרָם הָרַב, וְעוֹזֹן אַחִי, הֵם כָּמַעַט נִשְׁאוּ מִן הָעוֹלָם הַזֶּה, לְהוֹעֵד לְאֱלֹהֵיהֶם; אָכֵן, כָּמַעַט יֵרְדָּה שִׁבְתָּם לְשֹׁכֵן עָפָר; אֲךָ כָּמַעַט הִשְׁלָכוּ בִּיגּוֹנָם אֶל תּוֹךְ קֶבֶר מִיָּם.

Because of their grief and much sorrow, and the iniquity of my brethren, they were brought near even to be carried out of this time to meet their God; yea, their grey hairs were about to be brought down to lie low in the dust; yea, even they were near to be cast with sorrow into a watery grave.

19 וַיַּעֲקֹב וַיּוֹסֵף, אֲשֶׁר הָיוּ קְטָנִים וְנִצְרָכִים לְטָפוֹל רַב, סָבְלוּ מִפְּנֵי תַלְאוֹת אִמָּם; וְאִשְׁתִּי, בְּדַמְעָה וּבִתְפִלָּתָהּ, וְאֲךָ יְלָדִי, לֹא רָפְכוּ אֶת לֵב אַחִי לְהִתִּירוֹנִי.

And Jacob and Joseph also, being young, having need of much nourishment, were grieved because of the afflictions of their mother; and also my wife with her tears and prayers, and also my children, did not soften the hearts of my brethren that they would loose me.

20 וְלֹא הָרַד דְּבַר אֶת לִבָּם, אֲלֹא גְבוּרַת יְהוָה הַמְּאַיֶּמֶת עֲלֵיהֶם לְהַכְחִידָם; עַל כֵּן, בְּרֹאוֹתָם כִּי עָמְדוּ לְהִבָּלַע בְּמַצּוּלוֹת הַיָּם, נִחְמוּ הֵם עַל אֲשֶׁר עָשׂוּ וְהִתִּירוֹנִי.

And there was nothing save it were the power of God, which threatened them with destruction, could soften their hearts; wherefore, when they saw that they were about to be swallowed up in the depths of the sea they repented of the thing which they had done, insomuch that they loosed me.

21 וְאַחֵר אֲשֶׁר הִתִּירוֹנִי, לְקַחְתִּי אֶת הַמָּכּוֹן, וְהִנֵּה הוּא פָּעַל כַּאֲשֶׁר חָפְצָתִי. וְאַנִּי הִתְפַּלֵּלְתִּי אֶל יְהוָה; וּכְכֹלֹתִי לְהִתְפַּלֵּל שָׁכְכוּ הָרוּחוֹת, וְהִסְעָרָה חֲדָלָה, וְהִיָּתָה שְׁלוֹה רַבָּה.

And it came to pass after they had loosed me, behold, I took the compass, and it did work whither I desired it. And it came to pass that I prayed unto the Lord; and after I had prayed the winds did cease, and the storm did cease, and there was a great calm.

22 וְאַנִּי, נְפִי, נְהַגְתִּי אֶת הַסְפִּינָה, וְנָסַעְנוּ שְׁנֵית אֶל הָאָרֶץ הַיְעוּדָה.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did guide the ship, that we sailed again towards the promised land.

23 וְהָיָה אַחֵר נָסַעְנוּ יָמִים רַבִּים, הִגַּעְנוּ אֶל הָאָרֶץ הַיְעוּדָה, וּבַעֲלוֹתָנוּ עַל הַיַּבְשָׁה נָטִינוּ אֶת אֹהֲלֵינוּ וְקָרָאנוּ אֶת שְׁמָהּ הָאָרֶץ הַיְעוּדָה.

And it came to pass that after we had sailed for the space of many days we did arrive at the promised land; and we went forth upon the land, and did pitch our tents; and we did call it the promised land.

24 וְהַחֲלוֹנוּ לַעֲבֹד אֶת הָאֲדָמָה וְלִזְרֹעַ זֵרַע; וְזָרַעְנוּ אֶת כָּל זֵרַעֵינוּ אֲשֶׁר הִבְאֵנוּ מֵאֶרֶץ יְרוּשָׁלַם. וְהֵם צִמְחוּ מְאֹד, וְהָיוּ מְבָרָכִים בְּשָׁפַע.

And it came to pass that we did begin to till the earth, and we began to plant seeds; yea, we did put all our seeds into the earth, which we had brought from the land of Jerusalem. And it came to pass that they did grow exceedingly; wherefore, we were blessed in abundance.

25 וְהָיָה בְּנָסַעְנוּ בְּיַעְרֹת הָאָרֶץ הַיְעוּדָה, מִצָּאֵנוּ כָּל מִין בְּהֵמָה, פָּרָה וְשׁוֹר חֲמֹר וְסוֹס, עֶז וְיַעֵל, וְכָל חַיַּת בָּר לְמִינָהּ אֲשֶׁר לְתוֹשֵׁלֹת הָאָדָם. וּמִצָּאֵנוּ עֲפָרוֹת מָכֶל מִין, זָהָב וְכֶסֶף וְנַחֲשֶׁת.

And it came to pass that we did find upon the land of promise, as we journeyed in the wilderness, that there were beasts in the forests of every kind, both the cow and the ox, and the ass and the horse, and the goat and the wild goat, and all manner of wild animals, which were for the use of men. And we did find all manner of ore, both of gold, and of silver, and of copper.

## יט

## 19

וְצוֹנִי יְהוָה, וְעָשִׂיתִי לִיחוֹת מֵעוֹפֶרֶת זָהָב לְחַרֵּט עַל גְּבִיָּהֶם אֶת כְּתָבִי וְזִכְרוֹנוֹת עַמִּי. וְחָרַטְתִּי עַל הַלִּיחוֹת אֲשֶׁר עָשִׂיתִי אֶת דְּבָרֵי זִכְרוֹנוֹת אָבִי וְאֶת דְּבָרֵי מִסְעֵנוּ בַּמִּדְבָּר וְאֶת נְבוּאוֹת אָבִי; וְאֵף רַבּוֹת מִנְּבוּאוֹתַי חָרַטְתִּי עַל גְּבִיָּהֶם.

וְכַעֲשׂוֹתִי אוֹתָם לֹא יָדַעְתִּי כִּי יִצְוֶנִי יְהוָה לַעֲשׂוֹת אֵף אֶת הַלִּיחוֹת הָאֵלֶּה; עַל כֵּן חָרוּטִים דְּבָרֵי זִכְרוֹנוֹת אָבִי וְתוֹלְדוֹת אֲבוֹתָיו וְרַב דְּבָרֵי כָּל מִסְעֵנוּ בַּמִּדְבָּר עַל הַלִּיחוֹת הָרִאשׁוֹנִים אֲשֶׁר עָלִיהֶם דִּבַּרְתִּי. עַל כֵּן, הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר הָיוּ לִפְנֵי עֲשׂוֹתִי אֶת הַלִּיחוֹת הָאֵלֶּה הִזְכַּרְתִּי, לְמַעֲשֶׂה, בְּתֵאוּר רַב יוֹתֵר עַל הַלִּיחוֹת הָרִאשׁוֹנִים.

וְאַחֵר עֲשׂוֹתִי אֶת הַלִּיחוֹת הָאֵלֶּה כְּמִצְוָה, אֲנִי, נְפִי, צִוִּיתִי לְכַתֵּב עַל גְּבִי הַלִּיחוֹת הָאֵלֶּה אֶת הַחֲלָקִים הַבְּרוּרִים וְהַיְקָרִים יוֹתֵר אֲשֶׁר לְשֵׁרוֹת עַמִּי וּלְדְבָרֵי נְבוּאָה; וְאֵף כִּי אֲשֶׁמַּר אֶת הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר נִכְתְּבוּ בַּעֲבוּר יְלָמְדִם עַמִּי אֲשֶׁר יִנְחַל אֶת הָאָרֶץ וְכֵן בַּעֲבוּר תְּכָלִיזוֹת אַחֵרוֹת אֲשֶׁר תְּכָלִיזוֹן יְדוּעָה לִיהוָה.

עַל כֵּן, אֲנִי, נְפִי, רָשַׁמְתִּי עַל גְּבִי הַלִּיחוֹת הָאֲחֵרִים כְּתָב זִכְרוֹן הַמִּסְפָּר אוֹ מִסְפָּר בְּתֵאוּר רַב יוֹתֵר, עַל מְלַחְמוֹת עַמִּי, מְרִיבוֹתֵיהֶם וְהַשְׁחָתָתָם. זֹאת עָשִׂיתִי וְצִוִּיתִי עַל עַמִּי אֶת אֲשֶׁר יַעֲשׂוּ אַחֵר לְכַתֵּב: וְכִי יַעֲבִירוּ אֶת הַלִּיחוֹת הָאֵלֶּה מִדּוֹר לְדּוֹר, אוֹ מִנְּבִיא אֶל נְבִיא, עַד אֲשֶׁר יִצְוֶם יְהוָה שְׁנִית.

וְדְבָרֵי מְלֶאכֶת הַלִּיחוֹת הָאֵלֶּה עוֹד יִסְפְּרוּ; וְהִנֵּה אוֹסִיף לְסַפֵּר כְּפִי אֲשֶׁר דִּבַּרְתִּי; וְזֹאת אֶעֱשֶׂה לְמַעַן יִשְׁמְרוּ לִידִיעַת עַמִּי הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר לָהֶם קִדְשֵׁת יוֹתֵר.

אוֹלָם, לֹא אֶכְתֵּב דְּבַר עַל לִיחוֹת בְּלִתי אִם חֲשַׁבְתִּיו קְדוֹשׁ. וְאִם אֶטְעֶה, הֲלֹא גַם אֲנִשִּׁי קֶדֶם טְעוּ? אֵף לֹא אֶצְטַדֵּק בְּתֵתִי דְּכִי בְּזוּלָתִי, כִּי אִם מִפְּנֵי חֲלָשְׁתִּי, אֲשֶׁר הִיא מֵאֵת רַפְיוֹן הַבָּשָׂר.

1 And it came to pass that the Lord commanded me, wherefore I did make plates of ore that I might engraven upon them the record of my people. And upon the plates which I made I did engraven the record of my father, and also our journeyings in the wilderness, and the prophecies of my father; and also many of mine own prophecies have I engraven upon them.

2 And I knew not at the time when I made them that I should be commanded of the Lord to make these plates; wherefore, the record of my father, and the genealogy of his fathers, and the more part of all our proceedings in the wilderness are engraven upon those first plates of which I have spoken; wherefore, the things which transpired before I made these plates are, of a truth, more particularly made mention upon the first plates.

3 And after I had made these plates by way of commandment, I, Nephi, received a commandment that the ministry and the prophecies, the more plain and precious parts of them, should be written upon these plates; and that the things which were written should be kept for the instruction of my people, who should possess the land, and also for other wise purposes, which purposes are known unto the Lord.

4 Wherefore, I, Nephi, did make a record upon the other plates, which gives an account, or which gives a greater account of the wars and contentions and destructions of my people. And this have I done, and commanded my people what they should do after I was gone; and that these plates should be handed down from one generation to another, or from one prophet to another, until further commandments of the Lord.

5 And an account of my making these plates shall be given hereafter; and then, behold, I proceed according to that which I have spoken; and this I do that the more sacred things may be kept for the knowledge of my people.

6 Nevertheless, I do not write anything upon plates save it be that I think it be sacred. And now, if I do err, even did they err of old; not that I would excuse myself because of other men, but because of the weakness which is in me, according to the flesh, I would excuse myself.

- 7 For the things which some men esteem to be of great worth, both to the body and soul, others set at naught and trample under their feet. Yea, even the very God of Israel do men trample under their feet; I say, trample under their feet but I would speak in other words—they set him at naught, and hearken not to the voice of his counsels.
- 8 And behold he cometh, according to the words of the angel, in six hundred years from the time my father left Jerusalem.
- 9 And the world, because of their iniquity, shall judge him to be a thing of naught; wherefore they scourge him, and he suffereth it; and they smite him, and he suffereth it. Yea, they spit upon him, and he suffereth it, because of his loving kindness and his long-suffering towards the children of men.
- 10 And the God of our fathers, who were led out of Egypt, out of bondage, and also were preserved in the wilderness by him, yea, the God of Abraham, and of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, yieldeth himself, according to the words of the angel, as a man, into the hands of wicked men, to be lifted up, according to the words of Zenock, and to be crucified, according to the words of Neum, and to be buried in a sepulchre, according to the words of Zenos, which he spake concerning the three days of darkness, which should be a sign given of his death unto those who should inhabit the isles of the sea, more especially given unto those who are of the house of Israel.
- 11 For thus spake the prophet: The Lord God surely shall visit all the house of Israel at that day, some with his voice, because of their righteousness, unto their great joy and salvation, and others with the thunderings and the lightnings of his power, by tempest, by fire, and by smoke, and vapor of darkness, and by the opening of the earth, and by mountains which shall be carried up.
- 12 And all these things must surely come, saith the prophet Zenos. And the rocks of the earth must rend; and because of the groanings of the earth, many of the kings of the isles of the sea shall be wrought upon by the Spirit of God, to exclaim: The God of nature suffers.
- 13 And as for those who are at Jerusalem, saith the prophet, they shall be scourged by all people, because they crucify the God of Israel, and turn their hearts aside, rejecting signs and wonders, and the power and glory of the God of Israel.
- 14 And because they turn their hearts aside, saith the prophet, and have despised the Holy One of Israel, they shall wander in the flesh, and perish, and become a hiss and a byword, and be hated among all nations.
- כִּי אֵת אֲשֶׁר נִחְשָׁב בְּעֵינֵי מִקְצֵת הָאֲנָשִׁים יָקָר, בְּאֲשֶׁר לְגוֹף וְלָנֶפֶשׁ לְנַפְשׁ, אֲחֵרִים חוֹשְׁבִים לְרִיק וְרוֹמְסִים אוֹתוֹ תַּחַת רַגְלֵיהֶם; אָכֵן, אֲנִי אֶת אֱלֹהֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל עֲצָמוּ רוֹמְסִים הֵם תַּחַת רַגְלֵיהֶם. אֲנִי אֲדַבֵּר בְּלִשׁוֹן אֲחֵר: הֵם חוֹשְׁבִים אוֹתוֹ לְרִיק וְאֵינָם שׁוֹמְעִים בְּקוֹל עֲצָתוֹ.
- הִנֵּה הוּא בָּא, כְּדִבְרֵי הַמַּלְאָךְ, שֵׁשׁ מֵאוֹת שָׁנָה מִיּוֹם צֵאת אָבִי מִירוּשָׁלַם.
- וּבְנֵי תֵבֵל, מִפְּנֵי עֲוֹנוֹם וְשִׁפְטוּהוּ כְּדָבָר רִיק. עַל כֵּן יִצְלִיפוּ בּוֹ וְהוּא יִסְבֵּל זֹאת; יִכּוּהוּ וְהוּא יִסְבֵּל זֹאת; אָכֵן, יִירְקוּ עָלָיו וְהוּא יִסְבֵּל זֹאת, מִפְּנֵי חֶסֶדוֹ וְאַרְוֶה אֶפְיוֹ לְבְנֵי הָאָנוּשׁ.
- וְאֱלֹהֵי אֲבוֹתֵינוּ, אֲשֶׁר הוֹצִיאָם מִמִּצְרַיִם, מִבֵּית עֲבָדִים, וְאֲשֶׁר שָׁמְרָם בַּמִּדְבָּר, אֱלֹהֵי אַבְרָהָם וְיִצְחָק, וְאֱלֹהֵי יַעֲקֹב, יִסְמוּ עֲצָמוֹ, כְּדִבְרֵי הַמַּלְאָךְ, כִּבְּן אָדָם לְיַד אֲנָשֵׁי רָשָׁע, בְּעֵבּוֹר יִתְנַשֵּׂא, כְּדִבְרֵי זֵנוֹק, וּבְעֵבּוֹר יִצְלָב, כְּדִבְרֵי נְאוּם, וּבְעֵבּוֹר יִקְבֵּר בְּקִבְרֵי חָצוֹב, כְּדִבְרֵי זֵנוֹס אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר עַל אוֹדוֹת שְׁלֹשֶׁת יָמֵי הַחֹשֶׁכָה, אֲשֶׁר יִהְיוּ לְאוֹת כִּי מָת, הִנָּתַן לְיוֹשְׁבֵי אֵי הַיָּם, וּבִיּוֹתֵר לְאֲשֶׁר מִבֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל הֵמָּה.
- כִּי כֹה אָמַר הַנְּבִיא: בַּיּוֹם הַהוּא פָּקוּד יִפְקֹד יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים אֵת כָּל בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל: לְקַצֹּתָם בְּקוֹלוֹ, מִפְּנֵי צִדְקָתָם, לְשִׁמְחָתָם הַרְבֵּה וּלְשִׁוְעָתָם, וּלְאַחֲרִים בְּקוֹלוֹת רָעַם וּבִרְקָק גְּבוּרָתוֹ, בְּסַעֲרָה וּבְאֵשׁ, בְּעָשָׁן וּבְרַפָּל חֹשֶׁכָה, וּבִפְתִּיחַת פִּי הָאֲדָמָה וּבְעִקְרַת הָרִים.
- כָּל אֵלֶּה בּוֹא יְבוֹאוּ, נְאוּם הַנְּבִיא זֵנוֹס. וְסֻלְעֵי הָאָרֶץ בְּקוֹעַ יִבְקְעוּ; וּמִפְּנֵי נֶאֱקַת הָאֲדָמָה, רַבִּים מִמְּלָכֵי אֵי הַיָּם יַעֲלֻ בְּרוּחַ אֱלֹהִים וְיִקְרְאוּ: אֱלֹהֵי הַטֶּבַע סוֹבֵל.
- וְאֲשֶׁר לְאֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר בִּירוּשָׁלַם, כֹּה אָמַר הַנְּבִיא: יַעֲנוּם כָּל הָעַמִּים עַל אֲשֶׁר יַצְלִבוּ אֵת אֱלֹהֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל, וְיִטּוּ אֵת לִבָּם, וְיִמָּאֲסוּ בְּאוֹתוֹת וּבְמוֹפְתִים, וּבִגְבוּרַת אֱלֹהֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל וּתִפְאַרְתּוֹ.
- וְעַן אֲשֶׁר יִטּוּ אֵת לִבָּם וְיִבּוּ אֵת קֹדֶשׁ יִשְׂרָאֵל, נְאוּם הַנְּבִיא, יִתְעוּ בְּבֶשֶׁר וְיִאֲבָדוּ, וְהֵיוּ לְשִׁרְיָקָה וּלְשִׁנְיָנָה, וּלְשִׁנְאוּיָם בְּקֶרֶב כָּל הָעַמִּים.



- 15 Nevertheless, when that day cometh, saith the prophet, that they no more turn aside their hearts against the Holy One of Israel, then will he remember the covenants which he made to their fathers.
- 16 Yea, then will he remember the isles of the sea; yea, and all the people who are of the house of Israel, will I gather in, saith the Lord, according to the words of the prophet Zenos, from the four quarters of the earth.
- 17 Yea, and all the earth shall see the salvation of the Lord, saith the prophet; every nation, kindred, tongue and people shall be blessed.
- 18 And I, Nephi, have written these things unto my people, that perhaps I might persuade them that they would remember the Lord their Redeemer.
- 19 Wherefore, I speak unto all the house of Israel, if it so be that they should obtain these things.
- 20 For behold, I have workings in the spirit, which doth weary me even that all my joints are weak, for those who are at Jerusalem; for had not the Lord been merciful, to show unto me concerning them, even as he had prophets of old, I should have perished also.
- 21 And he surely did show unto the prophets of old all things concerning them; and also he did show unto many concerning us; wherefore, it must needs be that we know concerning them for they are written upon the plates of brass.
- 22 Now it came to pass that I, Nephi, did teach my brethren these things; and it came to pass that I did read many things to them, which were engraven upon the plates of brass, that they might know concerning the doings of the Lord in other lands, among people of old.
- 23 And I did read many things unto them which were written in the books of Moses; but that I might more fully persuade them to believe in the Lord their Redeemer I did read unto them that which was written by the prophet Isaiah; for I did liken all scriptures unto us, that it might be for our profit and learning.
- 24 Wherefore I spake unto them, saying: Hear ye the words of the prophet, ye who are a remnant of the house of Israel, a branch who have been broken off; hear ye the words of the prophet, which were written unto all the house of Israel, and liken them unto yourselves, that ye may have
- וְכֵן אָמַר הַנְּבִיא: וְאוֹלָם, בְּבוֹא הַיּוֹם אֲשֶׁר יִחַדְלוּ לִפְנוֹת עֶרְףָּ לַקְדוֹשׁ יִשְׂרָאֵל, יִזְכֹּר הוּא אֶת הַבְּרִיתוֹת אֲשֶׁר כָּרַת עִם אֲבוֹתֵיהֶם.
- אִזּוֹ יִזְכֹּר אֶת אֵי הַיָּם; וְיִקְבֹּץ אֶת כָּל עַם בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל, נְאֻם יְהוָה, מֵאַרְבַּע כְּנָפוֹת הָאָרֶץ, כַּדְּבַר הַנְּבִיא זֵנוֹס.
- וְכָל הָאָרֶץ תִּרְאֶה אֶת יְשׁוּעַת יְהוָה, אָמַר הַנְּבִיא; וְכָל אֲמָהּ וּמִשְׁפָּחָהּ, לְשׁוֹן וְעַם וְבָרְכוֹ.
- וְאֲנִי, נְפִי, כְּתִבְתִּי אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה לְעַמִּי, בְּעִבּוֹר אֲמִשׁוֹ לָבֶס לִזְכֹּר אֶת יְהוָה גּוֹאֲלָם.
- עַל כֵּן אֲדַבֵּר אֶל כָּל בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל, אִם יִקְבְּלוּ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה.
- כִּי הִנֵּה פּוֹעֲלֹת בִּי הָרוּחַ עַד חֲלִי, בְּעִבּוֹר הַיּוֹשְׁבִים בִּירוּשָׁלַם, עַד כִּי כָל מִפְרָקִי אֵיבָרִי רַפִּים; כִּי לוֹלֵא הָיָה יְהוָה רַחוּם לְהִרְאוֹתֵנִי עַל אוֹדוֹתֵיהֶם, כְּפִי אֲשֶׁר הִרְאָה לְנְבִיאִים אֲשֶׁר לִפְנֵים, אֲבִדְתִּי אִף אֲנִי.
- הֵן הִרְאָה יְהוָה לְנְבִיאִים אֲשֶׁר לִפְנֵים אֶת כָּל הַדְּבָרִים עַל אוֹדוֹתֵיהֶם; וְכֵן הִרְאָה לְרַבִּים עַל אוֹדוֹתֵינוּ; עַל כֵּן, חָיֵב כִּי יוֹדְעִים אֲנִיחֵנוּ עַל אוֹדוֹתֵיהֶם כִּי כְּתוּבִים הֵם עַל לוחות נְחֹשֶׁת הַקֶּלֶל.
- וְאֲנִי, נְפִי, לְמַדְתִּי אֶת אַחֵי אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה; אֲכֹן קָרָאתִי בְּאָזְנוֹיהֶם דְּבָרִים רַבִּים הַחְרוּטִים עַל לוחות נְחֹשֶׁת הַקֶּלֶל, לְמַעַן יָדְעוּ עַל מַעֲשֵׂי יְהוָה בְּאַרְצוֹת אַחֵרוֹת, בֵּין הָעַמִּים אֲשֶׁר מִקֶּדֶם.
- וְקָרָאתִי בְּאָזְנוֹיהֶם דְּבָרִים רַבִּים אֲשֶׁר כְּתוּבִים בְּסִפְרֵי תוֹרַת מֹשֶׁה; אִף לְמַעַן אֲמִשׁוֹ לָבֶס הֵיטֵב לְהֶאֱמִין בִּיהוָה גּוֹאֲלָם, קָרָאתִי בְּאָזְנוֹיהֶם אֶת אֲשֶׁר כָּתַב הַנְּבִיא יִשְׁעִיָּהוּ; כִּי אֶת כָּל הַכְּתוּבִים הַמְּשֻׁלָּתִי לָנוּ בְּעִבּוֹר יוֹעִילוֹנוּ וְיִלְמְדוֹנוּ.
- לְכֵן דִּבַּרְתִּי אֲלֵיהֶם לֵאמֹר: שְׁמְעוּ אֶת דְּבָרֵי הַנְּבִיא, אַתֶּם אֲשֶׁר שְׁאֲרִית בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל הַמְּהָ, עֲנֵף כְּרוֹת; שְׁמְעוּ אֶת דְּבָרֵי הַנְּבִיא אֲשֶׁר נִכְתְּבוּ אֶל כָּל בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל, וַעֲשׂוּ אוֹתָם מִשְׁלַל



## נְפִי א כ:א-יא

לְכֶם, לְמַעַן תִּהְיֶה לְכֶם תִּקְוָה כְּלֹאֲחִיכֶם אֲשֶׁר  
מֵהֶם נִגְדַּעְתֶּם; כִּי בְדֶרֶךְ זֶה כָּתַב הַנְּבִיא:

hope as well as your brethren from whom ye have been broken off; for  
after this manner has the prophet written.

## כ

## 20

- 1 Hear ye this, O house of Jacob, which are called by the name of Israel, and are come forth out of the waters of Judah, which swear by the name of the Lord, and make mention of the God of Israel, but not in truth, nor in righteousness.
  - 2 For they call themselves of the holy city, and stay themselves upon the God of Israel; the Lord of hosts is his name.
  - 3 I have declared the former things from the beginning; and they went forth out of my mouth, and I shewed them; I did them suddenly, and they came to pass.
  - 4 Because I knew that thou art obstinate, and thy neck is an iron sinew, and thy brow brass;
  - 5 I have even from the beginning declared it to thee; before it came to pass I shewed it thee: lest thou shouldest say, Mine idol hath done them, and my graven image, and my molten image, hath commanded them.
  - 6 Thou hast heard, see all this; and will not ye declare it? I have shewed thee new things from this time, even hidden things, and thou didst not know them.
  - 7 They are created now, and not from the beginning; even before the day when thou heardest them not; lest thou shouldest say, Behold, I knew them.
  - 8 Yea, thou heardest not; yea, thou knewest not; yea, from that time that thine ear was not opened: for I knew that thou wouldest deal very treacherously, and wast called a transgressor from the womb.
  - 9 For my name's sake will I defer mine anger, and for my praise will I refrain for thee, that I cut thee not off.
  - 10 Behold, I have refined thee, but not with silver; I have chosen thee in the furnace of affliction.
  - 11 For mine own sake, even for mine own sake, will I do it: for how should my name be polluted? and I will not give my glory unto another.
- שָׁמְעוּ זֹאת, בֵּית יַעֲקֹב, הַנִּקְרָאִים בְּשֵׁם  
יִשְׂרָאֵל וּמִמֵּי יְהוּדָה יֵצְאוּ; הַנִּשְׁבָּעִים בְּשֵׁם  
יְהוָה וּבֵאלֹהֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל יִזְכִּירוּ, לֹא בֶאֱמֶת  
וְלֹא בִצְדָקָה.
- כִּי מַעִיר הַקֹּדֶשׁ נִקְרְאוּ וְעַל אֱלֹהֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל  
נִסְמְכוּ: יְהוָה צְבָאוֹת שְׁמוֹ.
- הָרַשְׁנוֹת מֵאֶזְ הַגְדַּתִּי וּמִפִּי יֵצְאוּ וְאֲשַׁמִּיעֶם;  
פִּתְאֻם עָשִׂיתִי וַתְּבֹאנָה.
- מִדַּעְתִּי כִּי קָשָׁה אַתָּה; וְגִיד בְּרֹזֶל עֲרֻפְךָ  
וּמִצְחֶךָ נְחוֹשֶׁה.
- וְאֶגִּיד לְךָ מֵאֶז, בְּטָרֶם תִּבּוֹא הַשְׁמַעְתִּיךָ,  
כֹּן תֹּאמַר: עֲצָבִי עָשָׂם וּפִסְלִי וְנִסְכִּי צָוָם.
- שָׁמַעְתָּ חֲזֶה כָּלֵה; וְאַתָּם הֲלוֹא תִגִּדּוּ?  
הַשְׁמַעְתִּיךָ חֲדָשׁוֹת מֵעַתָּה, וְנִצְרוֹת,  
וְלֹא יָדַעְתֶּם.
- עַתָּה נִבְרָאוּ, וְלֹא מֵאֶז וּלְפָנֵי יוֹם, וְלֹא  
שָׁמַעְתֶּם כֹּן תֹּאמַר: הִנֵּה יָדַעְתִּין.
- גַּם לֹא שָׁמַעְתָּ, גַּם לֹא יָדַעְתָּ, גַּם מֵאֶז לֹא  
פִתְחָה אָזְנוֹךָ, כִּי יָדַעְתִּי בְּגוֹד תִּבְגְּדוּ וּפִשַׁע  
מִבְטָן קָרָא לְךָ.
- לְמַעַן שְׁמִי אֲאָרִיד אִפִּי, וְתִהְלֶתִי אֲחֻטָּם לְךָ  
לְבִלְתִּי הִכְרִיתֶךָ.
- הִנֵּה צִרְפָּתִיךָ, בְּחִרְתִּיךָ בְּכוֹר עָנִי וְלֹא בְכֹרֶךָ.
- לְמַעְנִי, לְמַעְנִי אֶעֱשֶׂה, כִּי אֵיךְ יִחַל וּכְבוֹדִי  
לֹאֲחֹר לֹא אֶתֵּן.

## נְפִי א כ:יב–כא:א

- 12 Hearken unto me, O Jacob and Israel, my called; I am he; I am the first, I also am the last.  
שָׁמַע אֵלַי, יַעֲקֹב, וְיִשְׂרָאֵל מִקְרָאִי:  
אֲנִי הוּא, אֲנִי רִאשׁוֹן, אֲנִי אַחֲרוֹן.
- 13 Mine hand also hath laid the foundation of the earth, and my right hand hath spanned the heavens: when I call unto them, they stand up together.  
אֲפִי יָדִי יִסְדָּה אֶרֶץ וְיָמִינִי טָפְחָה שָׁמַיִם;  
קָרָא אֲנִי אֲלֵיהֶם, יַעֲמָדוּ יַחְדָּו.
- 14 All ye, assemble yourselves, and hear; which among them hath declared these things? The Lord hath loved him: he will do his pleasure on Babylon, and his arm shall be on the Chaldeans.  
הַקָּבְצוּ כָלְכֶם וּשְׁמָעוּ; מִי בֵּהֶם הִגִּיד אֵת  
אֵלֶּה? יְהוָה אֲהָבָו; אֲכֹן, יַעֲשֶׂה חֲפָצוֹ בְּבָבֶל  
וְזָרְעוֹ בְּשָׁדִים.
- 15 I, even I, have spoken; yea, I have called him: I have brought him, and he shall make his way prosperous.  
אֲנִי, אֲנִי דִבַּרְתִּי, אֲנִי קָרָאתִיו; הִבֵּאתִיו  
וְהַצְלִיחַ דְּרָכּוֹ.
- 16 Come ye near unto me, hear ye this; I have not spoken in secret from the beginning; from the time that it was, there am I: and now the Lord God, and his Spirit, hath sent me.  
קָרְבוּ אֵלַי, שְׁמָעוּ זֹאת, לֹא בִסְתֵר דִּבַּרְתִּי;  
מֵרֵאשִׁית, מֵעֵת הָיְתָה שֵׁם אֲנִי; וְעַתָּה, אֲדַנִּי  
יְהוָה שָׁלְחָנִי וְרוּחוֹ.
- 17 Thus saith the Lord, thy Redeemer, the Holy One of Israel; I am the Lord thy God which teacheth thee to profit, which leadeth thee by the way that thou shouldest go.  
כֹּה אָמַר יְהוָה גְּאֻלְךָ, קְדוֹשׁ יִשְׂרָאֵל:  
אֲנִי, יְהוָה אֱלֹהֶיךָ, מְלַמֵּדְךָ לְהוֹשִׁיעַ,  
מְדַרְיֶכְךָ בְּדֶרֶךְ תִּלְוָה.
- 18 O that thou hadst hearkened to my commandments! Then had thy peace been as a river, and thy righteousness as the waves of the sea:  
לֹא הָיְתָה הַקְּשִׁיבָה לְמִצְוֹתַי, וְהָיָה כְּנָהָר שְׁלוֹמְךָ  
וְצִדְקָתְךָ כְּגַלֵּי הַיָּם.
- 19 Thy seed also had been as the sand, and the offspring of thy bowels like the gravel thereof; his name should not have been cut off nor destroyed from before me.  
וְהָיָה כְּחוֹל יִרְעָה, וְצֶאֱצָאִי מֵעֵד כְּמַעֲתָיו;  
לֹא יִכָּרֵת וְלֹא יִשָּׁמַד שְׁמוֹ מִלִּפְנֵי.
- 20 Go ye forth of Babylon, flee ye from the Chaldeans, with a voice of singing declare ye, tell this, utter it even to the end of the earth; say ye, The Lord hath redeemed his servant Jacob.  
צֵאוּ מִבָּבֶל, בְּרָחוּ מִכַּשְׂדִּים, בְּקוֹל רִנָּה  
הִגִּידוּ הַשְׁמִיעוּ זֹאת, הוֹצִיאָהוּ עַד קֶצֶה  
הָאָרֶץ; אָמְרוּ: גְּאֹל יְהוָה עַבְדּוֹ יַעֲקֹב.
- 21 And they thirsted not when he led them through the deserts: he caused the waters to flow out of the rock for them: he clave the rock also, and the waters gushed out.  
וְלֹא צָמְאוּ; בַּחֲרָבוֹת הוֹלִיכֶם. מִיַּם מִצּוֹר  
הֵזִיל לָמוֹ; וַיִּבְקַע צוּר וַיִּזְבּוּ מִיָּם.
- 22 There is no peace, saith the Lord, unto the wicked.  
אֵין שְׁלוֹם, אָמַר יְהוָה לְרָשָׁעִים.

## כא

## 21

- 1 And again: Hearken, O ye house of Israel, all ye that are broken off and are driven out because of the wickedness of the pastors of my people; yea, all ye that are broken off, that are scattered abroad, who are of my people, O house of Israel. Listen, O isles, unto me; and hearken, ye people, from far! The Lord hath called me from the womb; from the bowels of my mother hath he made mention of my name.  
וְעוֹב: הִשְׁמָעוּ, הַבַּיִת יִשְׂרָאֵל כָּל הַנִּגְדָּעִים  
וְהַנִּדְחִים עַל רָשָׁעַת רוּעֵי עַמִּי; כָּלְכֶם הַנִּגְדָּעִים  
וְהַמְפֹּזְרִים בְּנֶכַר אֲשֶׁר מִבֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל אַתֶּם;  
שְׁמָעוּ אֵינִים אֵלַי וְהַקְשִׁיבוּ לְאָמִים מִרְחוֹק;  
יְהוָה מִבֶּטֶן קָרָאֲנִי, מִמְעֵי אִמִּי הִזְכִּיר שְׁמִי.

- וַיֵּשֶׁם פִּי כְחֶרֶב חֲדָה, בְּצֶל יְדוֹ הִחְבֵּיאֲנִי;  
וַיִּשְׁמֶנִי לַחֵץ בְּרוּר; בְּאַשְׁפֹּתוֹ הִסְתִּירָנִי.
- וַיֹּאמֶר לִי, עַבְדִּי אַתָּה, יִשְׂרָאֵל אֲשֶׁר  
בָּךְ אֶתְפָּאֵר.
- וָאֲנִי אָמַרְתִּי: לָרִיק יִנְעַמְתִּי, לְתַהוֹ וְהֶבֶל  
כַּחֲסִי כְלִיתִי; אֲכֹן מִשְׁפָּטִי אֶת יְהוָה וּפְעֻלָּתִי  
אֶת אֱלֹהֵי.
- וַעֲתָה אָמַר יְהוָה, יוֹצְרִי מִבֶּטֶן לְעַבְדָּ לּוֹ,  
לְשׁוֹבֵב יַעֲקֹב אֱלֹהֵי וְיִשְׂרָאֵל לֹא יֵאָסֶף; וְאֶכְבֹּד  
בְּעֵינֵי יְהוָה, וְאֱלֹהֵי הָיָה עִזִּי.
- וַיֹּאמֶר: נָקַל מִהְיוֹתָ לִי עַבְדָּ, לְהַקִּים אֶת  
שְׁבִטֵי יַעֲקֹב, וּנְצוּרֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל לְהַשִּׁיב; וּנְתַתִּיךָ  
לְאוֹר גּוֹיִם לְהָיוֹת יְשׁוּעָתִי עַד קֵצֵה הָאָרֶץ.
- כֹּה אָמַר יְהוָה: גֹּאֲלֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל קְדוֹשׁוֹ, לְבָזָה  
נָפַשׁ, לְמַתְעֵב גּוֹי, לְעַבְדֵּי מַשְׁלִיִּם: מַלְכִּים יִרְאוּ  
וְקָמוּ, שָׂרִים וַיִּשְׁתַּחֲווּ לְמַעַן יְהוָה אֲשֶׁר נֶאֱמָן,  
קֹדֶשׁ יִשְׂרָאֵל וַיִּבְחָרֶךְ.
- כֹּה אָמַר יְהוָה: בְּעֵת רְצוֹן עֲנִיתִיךָ וּבְיוֹם  
יְשׁוּעָה עֲזַרְתִּיךָ; וְאַצְרָךְ, וְאַתְּנֶךָ לְבְרִית עִם  
לְהַקִּים אֶרֶץ, לְהַנְחִיל נַחֲלוֹת שְׁמֹמוֹת.
- לֵאמֹר לְאַסּוּרִים: צֵאוּ; לְאֲשֶׁר בַּחֹשֶׁךְ: הִגְלוּ;  
עַל דְּרָכִים יִרְעוּ וּבְכָל שְׁפִיִּים מְרִיעֵתָם.
- לֹא יִרְעָבוּ וְלֹא יִצְמָאוּ וְלֹא יִכֶּם שָׁרֵב וְשִׁמְשׁ;  
כִּי מִרְחָמָם יִנְהָגָם וְעַל מִבּוּעֵי מַיִם יִנְהַלְם.
- וְשִׁמְתִּי כָּל הָרִי לְדֶרֶךְ, וּמִסְלָתִי יִרְמוּן.
- הִנֵּה אֵלֶּה, מִרְחוֹק יָבוֹאוּ: וְהִנֵּה אֵלֶּה מִצָּפוֹן  
וּמִמְּקוֹם, וְאֵלֶּה מֵאַרְצֵי סִינִים.
- 2 And he hath made my mouth like a sharp sword; in the shadow of his hand hath he hid me, and made me a polished shaft; in his quiver hath he hid me;
- 3 And said unto me, Thou art my servant, O Israel, in whom I will be glorified.
- 4 Then I said, I have laboured in vain, I have spent my strength for nought, and in vain: yet surely my judgment is with the Lord, and my work with my God.
- 5 And now, saith the Lord that formed me from the womb to be his servant, to bring Jacob again to him, Israel being gathered to him, yet shall I be glorious in the eyes of the Lord, and my God shall be my strength.
- 6 And he said, It is a light thing that thou shouldest be my servant to raise up the tribes of Jacob, and to restore the preserved of Israel: I will also give thee for a light to the Gentiles, that thou mayest be my salvation unto the end of the earth.
- 7 Thus saith the Lord, the Redeemer of Israel, and his Holy One, to him whom man despiseth, to him whom the nation abhorreth, to a servant of rulers, Kings shall see and arise, princes also shall worship, because of the Lord that is faithful, and the Holy One of Israel, and he shall choose thee.
- 8 Thus saith the Lord, In an acceptable time have I heard thee, and in a day of salvation have I helped thee: and I will preserve thee, and give thee for a covenant of the people, to establish the earth, to cause to inherit the desolate heritages;
- 9 That thou mayest say to the prisoners, Go forth; to them that are in darkness, Shew yourselves. They shall feed in the ways, and their pastures shall be in all high places.
- 10 They shall not hunger nor thirst; neither shall the heat nor sun smite them: for he that hath mercy on them shall lead them, even by the springs of water shall he guide them.
- 11 And I will make all my mountains a way, and my highways shall be exalted.
- 12 Behold, these shall come from far: and, lo, these from the north and from the west; and these from the land of Sinim.

- 13 רְנוּ שָׁמַיִם וְגִלִּי אֶרֶץ, וּפְצְחוּ הָרִים רִנָּה; כִּי נַחֵם יְהוָה עַמּוֹ וְעֲנִיּוֹ יִרְחָם.  
Sing, O heavens; and be joyful, O earth; and break forth into singing, O mountains: for the Lord hath comforted his people, and will have mercy upon his afflicted.
- 14 וַתֹּאמֶר צִיּוֹן עֲזָבֵנִי יְהוָה, וְאֲדֹנָי שָׁכַחֵנִי.  
But Zion said, The Lord hath forsaken me, and my Lord hath forgotten me.
- 15 הֲתִשְׁכַּח אִשָּׁה עוֹלָה מִרְחֶם בֶּן בֶּטֶן? גַּם אֵלֶּה תִשְׁכַּחֲנָה, וְאַנֹכִי לֹא אֶשְׁכַּח.  
Can a woman forget her sucking child, that she should not have compassion on the son of her womb? Yea, they may forget, yet will I not forget thee.
- 16 הֵן עַל כַּפַּיִם חֲקַתִּיךָ; חוֹמֹתֶיךָ נִגְדִי תָמִיד.  
Behold, I have graven thee upon the palms of my hands; thy walls are continually before me.
- 17 מְהֵרָה בָּנֶיךָ; מְהֵרָסֶיךָ וּמְחַרְבֵיךָ מִמֶּנּוּ יֵצְאוּ.  
Thy children shall make haste; thy destroyers and they that made thee waste shall go forth of thee.
- 18 שִׂאֵי סְבִיב עֵינֶיךָ וּרְאֵי: כָּלֵם נִקְבְּצוּ בְּאוֹ לָךְ; חֵי אֲנִי, נֹאֵם יְהוָה, כִּי כָּלֵם כָּעֲדֵי תִלְבָּשִׁי וּתִקְשְׁרִים כְּכֹלָה.  
Lift up thine eyes round about, and behold: all these gather themselves together, and come to thee. As I live, saith the Lord, thou shalt surely clothe thee with them all, as with an ornament, and bind them on thee, as a bride doeth.
- 19 כִּי חֲרַבְתִּיךָ וְשִׁמְמַתִּיךָ וְאֶרֶץ הָרָסָתָה, כִּי עֲתָה תִצָּרִי מִיּוֹשֵׁב וְרִחְקוּ מִבְּלָעֶיךָ.  
For thy waste and thy desolate places, and the land of thy destruction, shall even now be too narrow by reason of the inhabitants, and they that swallowed thee up shall be far away.
- 20 עוֹד יֹאמְרוּ בְּאָזְנוֹיךָ בְּנֵי שִׁכְלֶיךָ: צַר לִי הַמָּקוֹם, וְנָשָׂה לִי וְאַשְׁבָּה.  
The children which thou shalt have, after thou hast lost the other, shall say again in thine ears, The place is too strait for me: give place to me that I may dwell.
- 21 וְאָמַרְתָּ בְּלִבְבְּךָ: מִי יֵלֵד לִי אֶת אֵלֶּה וְאֲנִי שְׂכוּלָה וְנִלְמוּדָה, גֵּלָה וְסוּרָה? וְאֵלֶּה מִי גִדְּלָה? הֵן אֲנִי נִשְׁאַרְתִּי לְבַדִּי; אֵלֶּה אֵיפֹה הֵם?  
Then shalt thou say in thine heart, Who hath begotten me these, seeing I have lost my children, and am desolate, a captive, and removing to and fro? And who hath brought up these? Behold, I was left alone; these, where had they been?
- 22 כֹּה אָמַר אֲדֹנָי יְהוָה: הִנֵּה אֶשָּׂא אֶל גּוֹיִם יָדַי וְאֶל עַמִּים אֲרִים נְסִי; וְהִבִּיאוּ בָנֶיךָ בְּחוּצָן וּבְנִתֶיךָ עַל כַּתְּף תִּנְשָׂאנָה.  
Thus saith the Lord God, Behold, I will lift up mine hand to the Gentiles, and set up my standard to the people: and they shall bring thy sons in their arms, and thy daughters shall be carried upon their shoulders.
- 23 וְהָיוּ מְלָכִים אֲמִנֶיךָ וּשְׂרוּתֵיהֶם מִיְּנִיקֶיךָ; אֲפִים אֶרֶץ יִשְׁתַּחֲווּ לָךְ וְעֹפֶר רַגְלֶיךָ יִלְחֲכוּ; וְיָדַעְתָּ כִּי אֲנִי יְהוָה אֲשֶׁר לֹא יִבְשׁוּ קוֹנִי.  
And kings shall be thy nursing fathers, and their queens thy nursing mothers: they shall bow down to thee with their face toward the earth, and lick up the dust of thy feet; and thou shalt know that I am the Lord: for they shall not be ashamed that wait for me.
- 24 הֲיִקָּח מִגְבוּר מִלְּקוֹחַ, וְאִם שְׂבִי צָדִיק יִמְלֹט?  
Shall the prey be taken from the mighty, or the lawful captive delivered?

## נְפִי א כֹא:כֶה-כֶב:ו

כִּי כֹה אָמַר יְהוָה: גַּם שְׁבִי גְבוּר יִקָּח, וּמִלְקוֹחַ  
עֲרִיץ יִמְלֹט; וְאֵת יְרִיבֶךָ אֲנֹכִי אֶרְיֶה, וְאֵת בְּנֶיךָ  
אֲנֹכִי אוֹשִׁיעַ.

25 But thus saith the Lord, Even the captives of the mighty shall be taken away, and the prey of the terrible shall be delivered: for I will contend with him that contendeth with thee, and I will save thy children.

וְהָאֲכַלְתִּי אֶת מוֹנִיךָ אֶת בְּשָׂרִם, וְכַעֲסִיס דָּמָם  
יִשְׁכְּרוּן; וְיָדְעוּ כָּל בָּשָׂר כִּי אֲנִי יְהוָה מוֹשִׁיעֶךָ  
וְגֹאֲלֶךָ, אֲבִיר יַעֲקֹב.

26 And I will feed them that oppress thee with their own flesh; and they shall be drunken with their own blood, as with sweet wine: and all flesh shall know that I the Lord am thy Saviour and thy Redeemer, the mighty One of Jacob.

## כב

## 22

וְאַחַר אֲשֶׁר קָרָאתִי, אֲנִי, אֵת הַדְּבָרִים  
הָאֵלֶּה הַחֲרוּטִים עַל גְּבִי לוחות נחשת הקלל,  
בָּאוּ אֵלַי אַחֵי וְאָמְרוּ: מֶה פִּנְתָּ הַדְּבָרִים  
הָאֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר קָרָאתָ? הֲאֵם נְבִינִם כְּדַבְּרֵי רוּחַ,  
אֲשֶׁר יָקוּמוּ עַל פִּי הָרוּחַ, וְלֹא עַל פִּי הַבָּשָׂר?

1 And now it came to pass that after I, Nephi, had read these things which were engraven upon the plates of brass, my brethren came unto me and said unto me: What meaneth these things which ye have read? Behold, are they to be understood according to things which are spiritual, which shall come to pass according to the spirit and not the flesh?

וְאֲנִי, נְפִי, אָמַרְתִּי אֲלֵיהֶם: אֵלֶּה הַתְּגָלוֹת  
לְנִבְיָא בְּקוֹל הָרוּחַ, כִּי עַל יְדֵי הָרוּחַ נִוְדְּעִים  
לְנִבְיָאִים כָּל הַדְּבָרִים הַבָּאִים עַל בְּנֵי הָאָדָם  
עַל פִּי הַבָּשָׂר.

2 And I, Nephi, said unto them: Behold they were manifest unto the prophet by the voice of the Spirit; for by the Spirit are all things made known unto the prophets, which shall come upon the children of men according to the flesh.

לָכֵן הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר קָרָאתִי עֲלֵיהֶם נוֹגְעִים הֵן  
לְדְּבָרִים זְמַנִּיִּים וְהֵן לְדְּבָרֵי הָרוּחַ; וְנִרְאָה כִּי  
יָבוֹא יוֹם, וְנִפְּוֹץ יִהְיֶה בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל עַל פְּנֵי כָּל  
הָאָרֶץ וּבֵין כָּל הָעַמִּים.

3 Wherefore, the things of which I have read are things pertaining to things both temporal and spiritual; for it appears that the house of Israel, sooner or later, will be scattered upon all the face of the earth, and also among all nations.

וְהִנֵּה, רַבִּים הֵם אֲשֶׁר כָּבַד נִמְחָה וְזָכַר  
מִקְרָב אֲנָשֵׁי יְרוּשָׁלַם; אָכֵן, רַב בְּנֵי הַשְּׂבָטִים  
גָּלוּ מִן הָאָרֶץ, וְהֵם פְּזוּרִים פֹּה וָשָׁם עַל פְּנֵי  
אֵי הַיָּם; וְהִיכֵן הֵם אִישׁ מִקְרָבָנוּ לֹא יָדַע,  
זוֹלַת כִּי גָלוּ.

4 And behold, there are many who are already lost from the knowledge of those who are at Jerusalem. Yea, the more part of all the tribes have been led away; and they are scattered to and fro upon the isles of the sea; and whither they are none of us knoweth, save that we know that they have been led away.

וּמֵאֵז גָּלוּ, הַגָּדוֹ הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה בְּנִבְאוֹת  
עֲלֵיהֶם, וְכֵן עַל כָּל אֲשֶׁר יַמְעִתָּה יַפּוּצוּ  
וְיִכְלְמוּ מִפְּנֵי קְדוּשַׁת יִשְׂרָאֵל; כִּי עָלֵינוּ יִקְשׁוּ  
אֵת לִבָּם; עַל כֵּן יִפְּזְרוּ בֵּין כָּל הָעַמִּים,  
וְכָל הָאָדָם יִשְׁנְאוֹם.

5 And since they have been led away, these things have been prophesied concerning them, and also concerning all those who shall hereafter be scattered and be confounded, because of the Holy One of Israel; for against him will they harden their hearts; wherefore, they shall be scattered among all nations and shall be hated of all men.

אֲףִי אַחֵר הָיְתָה הַגּוֹיִם אֲמִנִּיהֶם, בְּנִשְׂא יְהוָה  
יָדוֹ עַל הַגּוֹיִם, וּבְהָרִימָם לְנֶס, וְאַחַר נִשְׂאָם  
אֶת בְּנֵיהֶם בְּחֶצֶן וּבְנוֹתֵיהֶם עַל כְּתֶף, הִנֵּה,  
הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר מְדַבֵּר בָּהֶם דְּבָרִים זְמַנִּיִּים הֵם,  
כִּי כִּךָ הֵן בְּרִיתוֹת יְהוָה עִם אֲבוֹתֵינוּ; וְכִנְיָתָן  
אֵלֵינוּ בְּיָמִים לְבֹא, וְכֵן אֵל כָּל אַחֵינוּ אֲשֶׁר  
מִבֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל הֵמָּה.

6 Nevertheless, after they shall be nursed by the Gentiles, and the Lord has lifted up his hand upon the Gentiles and set them up for a standard, and their children have been carried in their arms, and their daughters have been carried upon their shoulders, behold these things of which are spoken are temporal; for thus are the covenants of the Lord with our fathers; and it meaneth us in the days to come, and also all our brethren who are of the house of Israel.

- 7 And it meaneth that the time cometh that after all the house of Israel have been scattered and confounded, that the Lord God will raise up a mighty nation among the Gentiles, yea, even upon the face of this land; and by them shall our seed be scattered.
- 8 And after our seed is scattered the Lord God will proceed to do a marvelous work among the Gentiles, which shall be of great worth unto our seed; wherefore, it is likened unto their being nourished by the Gentiles and being carried in their arms and upon their shoulders.
- 9 And it shall also be of worth unto the Gentiles; and not only unto the Gentiles but unto all the house of Israel, unto the making known of the covenants of the Father of heaven unto Abraham, saying: In thy seed shall all the kindreds of the earth be blessed.
- 10 And I would, my brethren, that ye should know that all the kindreds of the earth cannot be blessed unless he shall make bare his arm in the eyes of the nations.
- 11 Wherefore, the Lord God will proceed to make bare his arm in the eyes of all the nations, in bringing about his covenants and his gospel unto those who are of the house of Israel.
- 12 Wherefore, he will bring them again out of captivity, and they shall be gathered together to the lands of their inheritance; and they shall be brought out of obscurity and out of darkness; and they shall know that the Lord is their Savior and their Redeemer, the Mighty One of Israel.
- 13 And the blood of that great and abominable church, which is the whore of all the earth, shall turn upon their own heads; for they shall war among themselves, and the sword of their own hands shall fall upon their own heads, and they shall be drunken with their own blood.
- 14 And every nation which shall war against thee, O house of Israel, shall be turned one against another, and they shall fall into the pit which they digged to ensnare the people of the Lord. And all that fight against Zion shall be destroyed, and that great whore, who hath perverted the right ways of the Lord, yea, that great and abominable church, shall tumble to the dust and great shall be the fall of it.
- 15 For behold, saith the prophet, the time cometh speedily that Satan shall have no more power over the hearts of the children of men; for the day soon cometh that all the proud and they who do wickedly shall be as stubble; and the day cometh that they must be burned.
- וְכֹנֶנֶת הַדְּבָרִים הַזֵּה כִּי בָּאִים יָמִים וְאַחֵר  
אֲשֶׁר כָּל בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל יִגָּלָה וְיִכָּלֵם, יָקִים יְהוָה  
אֱלֹהִים עִם גְּדוֹל בֵּין הַגּוֹיִּים; אַכֵּן, עַל פָּנֵי  
הָאָרֶץ הַזֹּאת, וְעַל יְדֵיהֶם יִפּוּץ זֶרְעֵנוּ.
- וְאַחֵר אֲשֶׁר יִפּוּץ זֶרְעֵנוּ, יוֹסִיף יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים  
לַעֲשׂוֹת מַעֲשֵׂה נִפְלָא בֵּין הַגּוֹיִּים, אֲשֶׁר רַב  
יְהִי עֲרֻכּוֹ לְזִרְעֵנוּ; לָכֵן, נִמְשָׁל הַדְּבָר  
לְכָל־כֹּלֵת בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל בְּיַד־יְהוָה וְהַנְּשָׂאָם  
בְּיָדֵיהֶם וְעַל כַּתְפֵיהֶם.
- וְאִף רַב יְהִי עֲרֻכּוֹ לְגוֹיִּים; וְלֹא רַק לְגוֹיִּים,  
כִּי אִם לְכָל בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל, לְהוֹדֵעַ דְּבָרֵי בְרִיתוֹת  
אֲבִי הַמְרוֹמִים אֲשֶׁר כָּרַת עִם אַבְרָהָם לֵאמֹר:  
בְּזֶרְעֶךָ תִּתְּבָרְכֶנָּה כָּל מִשְׁפָּחוֹת הָאָדָמָה.
- וְרִצּוֹנִי, אַחֵי, אֲשֶׁר תִּדְעוּ כִּי לֹא תִבְרַכֶּנָּה כָּל  
מִשְׁפָּחוֹת הָאָדָמָה, בְּלֹתִי אִם חֹשֶׁף יְהוָה אֶת  
זְרֻעוֹ לְעֵינֵי הָעַמִּים.
- לָכֵן יוֹסִיף יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים לְחֹשֶׁף אֶת זְרֻעוֹ  
לְעֵינֵי כָּל הָעַמִּים, לְמַעַן הָקִים אֶת בְּרִיתוֹתָיו  
בַּהֲבִיאוֹ אֶת בְּשׂוֹרְתוֹ אֶל אֲשֶׁר מִבְּנֵי  
יִשְׂרָאֵל הֵמָּה.
- עַל כֵּן הוּא יְשִׁיבֵם מִגְלוּתָם, וְיִקְבְּצֵם  
לְאַרְצוֹת נַחֲלָתָם, וְיֹצִיאֵם מִחֹשֶׁךְ וּמִגְלוּתָם;  
וְיִדְעוּ כִּי יְהוָה הוּא מוֹשִׁיעַם וְגוֹאֲלָם,  
אֲבִיר יִשְׂרָאֵל.
- וְדַם הַכְּנִסְיָה הַגְּדוֹלָה וְהַנִּתְעַבֶּת הַזֵּה, הַזֵּה,  
אֲשֶׁר הִיא זוֹנֶת כָּל הָאָרֶץ, יָשׁוּב עַל רִאשָׁם;  
כִּי יִלָּחֲמוּ אִישׁ בְּרֵעֵהוּ, וְתִפֹּל הַחֶרֶב אֲשֶׁר  
בְּיָדֵיהֶם עַל רִאשֵׁיהֶם, וְשִׁכְרוּ מִדָּמָם.
- אַכֵּן, כָּל עִם אֲשֶׁר יָקוּם לְהִלָּחֵם בָּכֶם, בֵּית  
יִשְׂרָאֵל, יִסָּב וְיִלָּחֵם אִישׁ בְּרֵעֵהוּ; וְנִפְּלוּ בְּבוֹר  
אֲשֶׁר כָּרוּ לְלַכּוֹד אֶת עַם יְהוָה. וְכָל הַצּוֹבָאִים  
עַל צִיּוֹן וְשִׁמְדוֹ; וְנִפְּלָה לְעַפְרָה הַזֹּנוֹת הַגְּדוֹלָה,  
הִיא הַכְּנִסְיָה הַגְּדוֹלָה וְהַנִּתְעַבֶּת אֲשֶׁר הִטְּתָה  
אֶת דְּרָכֵי יְהוָה הַיְשָׁרוֹת, וְגְדוֹלָה תִּהְיֶה מִפְּלִיתָהּ.
- כִּי כֹה אָמַר הַנְּבִיא: בְּמַהֲרָה בָּאָה הַעֵת  
אֲשֶׁר יֵאבֹד כַּחַּ הַשָּׁטָן לְשֹׁלֵט בְּלֵב בְּנֵי הָאָדָם;  
כִּי קָרוֹב הַיּוֹם אֲשֶׁר כָּל גָּאֹה וּמְרִשִׁיעַ כִּקֵּשׁ  
יְהִי, וּבָא יוֹמָם לְהַשְׂרֹף.



- 16 For the time soon cometh that the fulness of the wrath of God shall be poured out upon all the children of men; for he will not suffer that the wicked shall destroy the righteous.
- כִּי קִרְבָּה עֵת הַשְּׁפָף מְלֵא חֲמַת אֱלֹהִים עַל בְּנֵי הָאָדָם; כִּי לֹא יִתִּיר אֱלֹהִים הַשְּׁמֵדֵת הַצַּדִּיקִים בְּיַד הָרָשָׁעִים.
- 17 Wherefore, he will preserve the righteous by his power, even if it so be that the fulness of his wrath must come, and the righteous be preserved, even unto the destruction of their enemies by fire. Wherefore, the righteous need not fear; for thus saith the prophet, they shall be saved, even if it so be as by fire.
- עַל כֵּן בְּכַחוֹ יִחְיֶה אֶת הַצַּדִּיק, גַּם אִם נִחְרָצָה שְׂפִיכַת מְלֵא חֲמָתוֹ; הִנֵּה יִנָּצְרוּ אַנְשֵׁי צֶדֶק, וְאוֹיְבֵיהֶם יִעָלוּ בָּאֵשׁ; לָכֵן אֵל לַצַּדִּיק לִירֵא; כִּי כֹה אָמַר הַנָּבִיא: אֵף אִם בָּאֵשׁ תִּהְיֶה זֹאת, הִמָּה יִנָּצֵלוּ.
- 18 Behold, my brethren, I say unto you, that these things must shortly come; yea, even blood, and fire, and vapor of smoke must come; and it must needs be upon the face of this earth; and it cometh unto men according to the flesh if it so be that they will harden their hearts against the Holy One of Israel.
- אֲכֹן, אַחֵי, אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם כִּי עַד מִהֲרָה יְבוֹאוּ הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה; אֵף יְבוֹאוּ דָם וְאֵשׁ וְתִימְרוֹת עָשָׁן; וְנִחְרָץ בּוֹאֵם עַל פְּנֵי הָאָרֶץ הַזֹּאת; וְיִהְיֶה זֹאת עַל בְּנֵי הָאָדָם עַל פִּי הַבָּשָׂר אִם יִקְשׂוּ אֶת לִבָּם עַל קֹדֶשׁ יִשְׂרָאֵל.
- 19 For behold, the righteous shall not perish; for the time surely must come that all they who fight against Zion shall be cut off.
- הִנֵּה, לֹא יֵאבֵד הַצַּדִּיק; כִּי בּוֹא תְּבוֹא הָעֵת אֲשֶׁר כָּל הַצּוֹבֵא עַל צִיּוֹן יִכָּרֵת.
- 20 And the Lord will surely prepare a way for his people, unto the fulfilling of the words of Moses, which he spake, saying: A prophet shall the Lord your God raise up unto you, like unto me; him shall ye hear in all things whatsoever he shall say unto you. And it shall come to pass that all those who will not hear that prophet shall be cut off from among the people.
- וְהִכֵּן יִכְיֶן יְהוָה אֶת הַדֶּרֶךְ לְעַמּוֹ, לְמַלְא אֶת דְּבָרֵי מֹשֶׁה אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר לֵאמֹר: נָבִיא כְּמוֹנִי יָקִים לָךְ יְהוָה אֱלֹהֶיךָ; אֵלָיו תִּשְׁמָעוּן כָּכָל הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר יִדְבֹּר אֵלֵיכֶם. וְהִיא כָּל אֲשֶׁר לֹא יִשְׁמַע אֶל הַנָּבִיא הַהוּא, וְנִכָּרֵת מֵעַמּוֹ.
- 21 And now I, Nephi, declare unto you, that this prophet of whom Moses spake was the Holy One of Israel; wherefore, he shall execute judgment in righteousness.
- וְהִנֵּה אֲנִי, נְפִי, מְדַבֵּר עִיכֶם כִּי הַנָּבִיא אֲשֶׁר עָלָיו דִּבֶּר מֹשֶׁה, קֹדֶשׁ יִשְׂרָאֵל הוּא, וְלָכֵן יוֹצִיא מִשְׁפָּט בְּצֶדֶקָה.
- 22 And the righteous need not fear, for they are those who shall not be confounded. But it is the kingdom of the devil, which shall be built up among the children of men, which kingdom is established among them which are in the flesh—
- אֲכֹן, אֵל לַצַּדִּיקִים לִירֵא, כִּי הֵם אֲשֶׁר לֹא יִכְלָמוּ. אֵף לֹא כֵן מַלְכוּת הַשָּׂטָן, הִיא אֲשֶׁר תִּבְנֶה בְּקִרְבֵּי בְנֵי הָאָדָם, וְתִוָּסַד בְּקִרְבֵּי אֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר בַּבָּשָׂר.
- 23 For the time speedily shall come that all churches which are built up to get gain, and all those who are built up to get power over the flesh, and those who are built up to become popular in the eyes of the world, and those who seek the lusts of the flesh and the things of the world, and to do all manner of iniquity; yea, in fine, all those who belong to the kingdom of the devil are they who need fear, and tremble, and quake; they are those who must be brought low in the dust; they are those who must be consumed as stubble; and this is according to the words of the prophet.
- כִּי בְּמִהֲרָה תְּבוֹא הָעֵת אֲשֶׁר כָּל הַכְּנִסִּיּוֹת הַנִּבְנוֹת לְמַעַן בָּצֵעַ, וְכָל אֲשֶׁר נִבְנוֹת לְהִשְׁיֵג שְׁלֹטוֹן עַל הַבָּשָׂר, וְהַנִּבְנוֹת לְמַעַן מְצֹא חֵן בְּעֵינֵי בְנֵי הָעוֹלָם, וְכָל אֲשֶׁר תִּשׁוּקָתָם תַּאֲוַת הַבָּשָׂר וְחִפְצֵי הָעוֹלָם וְעִשְׂוֹת כָּל מִינֵי עֲוֹן; וּבִקְצָרָה: כָּל הַשִּׁיכִים לְמַלְכוּת הַשָּׂטָן, עֲלֵיהֶם לִירֵא וְלָרָעַד וְלִחְרָד; הֵם אֲשֶׁר יוֹרְדוּ עַד עָפָר וְיִכָּלוּ כְּקֶשֶׁ; וְזֹאת כְּדִבְרֵי הַנָּבִיא.
- 24 And the time cometh speedily that the righteous must be led up as calves of the stall, and the Holy One of Israel must reign in dominion, and might, and power, and great glory.
- וּמִהֲרָה תְּבוֹא הָעֵת אֲשֶׁר יוֹבְלוּ הַצַּדִּיקִים כְּעִגְלֵי מִרְבָּק, וְקֹדֶשׁ יִשְׂרָאֵל יִמְלֹךְ בְּשִׁרְרָה וּבְעֹז, וּבְגִבּוּרָה וּבְרֵב תִּפְאָרָה.

## נְפִי א כב:כה – נְפִי ב א:א

- וְהוּא יִקְבֹּץ אֶת בְּנָיו מֵאַרְבַּע כְּנָפוֹת הָאָרֶץ; וְהוּא יִמְנֶה אֶת צֹאנוֹ וְהֵם יוֹדְעִים אוֹתוֹ; וְהָיָה עֹדֶר אֶחָד וְרוֹעֶה אֶחָד; וְהוּא יִרְעֶה אֶת צֹאנוֹ, וְבוֹ יִמְצְאוּ מִרְעָה.
- 25 And he gathereth his children from the four quarters of the earth; and he numbereth his sheep, and they know him; and there shall be one fold and one shepherd; and he shall feed his sheep, and in him they shall find pasture.
- וּמִפְּנֵי צְדָקַת עַמּוֹ לֹא יִהְיֶה לְשָׁטָן שְׁלֹטוֹן; עַל כֵּן לֹא יֵצֵא חֲפָשִׁי הוּא בְּמִשְׁךְ שָׁנִים רַבּוֹת; כִּי אֵין הוּא שׁוֹלֵט עַל לֵב הָאֲנָשִׁים הַשׁוֹכְנִים בְּצִדְקָה, וּמוֹלֵךְ קְדוֹשׁ יִשְׂרָאֵל.
- 26 And because of the righteousness of his people, Satan has no power; wherefore, he cannot be loosed for the space of many years; for he hath no power over the hearts of the people, for they dwell in righteousness, and the Holy One of Israel reigneth.
- וְאַנִּי, נְפִי, אוֹמֵר לָכֶם כִּי כָּל הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, אֲכֹן, בְּבֶשֶׁר יָבוֹאוּ.
- 27 And now behold, I, Nephi, say unto you that all these things must come according to the flesh.
- וְהָיָה אִם יִנְחֲמוּ עַל חַטָּאֵם, יִשְׁכְּנוּ כָּל הָאֲמוֹת, הַמְשֻׁפָּחוֹת, הַלְשׁוֹנוֹת וְהָעַמִּים לְבִטָּחָה, עִם קְדוֹשׁ יִשְׂרָאֵל.
- 28 But, behold, all nations, kindreds, tongues, and people shall dwell safely in the Holy One of Israel if it so be that they will repent.
- וְעַתָּה, אֲנִי, נְפִי, כְּלִיתִי דְּבָרִי, וְאֵין אֶת נִפְשִׁי לְדַבֵּר עוֹד עֲלֵיהֶם.
- 29 And now I, Nephi, make an end; for I durst not speak further as yet concerning these things.
- הִנֵּה, אֲחִי, רְצוֹנִי כִּי תִחְשְׁבוּ אֲשֶׁר הַדְּבָרִים הַכְּתוּבִים עַל לוחות נְחֹשֶׁת הַקָּלִל אֱמַת הֵם; וַיַּעֲדוּ כִּי עַל הָאָדָם לְשִׁמְעַ אֶל מִצְוֹת אֱלֹהִים.
- 30 Wherefore, my brethren, I would that ye should consider that the things which have been written upon the plates of brass are true; and they testify that a man must be obedient to the commandments of God.
- עַל כֵּן, אֵל נָא תִחְשְׁבוּ כִּי אֲנִי וְאָבִי הַעֲדוּנוּ עֲלֵיהֶם וְלִמְדָנוּם. הִנֵּה, אִם תִּשְׁמְעוּ לְמִצְוֹתָיו וְתִתְמַמְדוּ עַד הַקֵּץ, תִּשְׁעוּ בְּיוֹם הָאַחֲרוֹן. כֵּן הַדְּבָר. אָמֵן.
- 31 Wherefore, ye need not suppose that I and my father are the only ones that have testified, and also taught them. Wherefore, if ye shall be obedient to the commandments, and endure to the end, ye shall be saved at the last day. And thus it is. Amen.

## סֵפֶר נְפִי ב

## THE BOOK OF 2 NEPHI

סֵפֶר קוֹרוֹת מוֹת לְחִי. אֲחִי נְפִי מוֹרְדִים בּוֹ. יְהוָה מוֹהִיר אֶת נְפִי כִּי עָלָיו לְצֵאת לַיַּעֲרוֹת. מִסְעָיו בְּיַעֲרוֹת וַיִּתֵּר קוֹרוֹתָיו. (בְּעֶרְךָ 588–545 לִפְנֵי הַסְפִּירָה.)

*The account of the death of Lehi. Nephi's brethren rebel against him. The Lord warns Nephi to depart into the wilderness. His journeyings in the wilderness; and so forth. (About 588–545 B.C.)*

## א

## 1

- וְהָיָה בְּכִלּוּתִי אֲנִי, נְפִי, לְלַמֵּד אֶת אֲחִי דְּבַר אֲבִינוּ, לְחִי, דְּבָרִים רַבִּים אֵלֵיהֶם, וְהָיָה בְּאֲזִיָּהֶם מֵהַגְדֻלָּה מִעֲשֵׂי יְהוָה אֲשֶׁר עָשָׂה לָמַעַנָם בְּהוֹצִיאָם מֵאֶרֶץ יְרוּשָׁלַם.
- 1 And now it came to pass that after I, Nephi, had made an end of teaching my brethren, our father, Lehi, also spake many things unto them, and rehearsed unto them, how great things the Lord had done for them in bringing them out of the land of Jerusalem.

וְהוּא דִּבֶּר אֲלֵיהֶם עַל מַרְדָּם עַל פְּנֵי הַמַּיִם,  
וְעַל רַחֲמֵי אֱלֹהִים בְּאַשֶּׁר חָס עַל חַיֵּיהֶם וְלֹא  
בִּלְעָם הָיָם.

וְהוּא דִּבֶּר אֲלֵיהֶם עַל הָאָרֶץ הַיְעוּדָה,  
אֲשֶׁר נָחֻלָּהָ, כְּמָה רַחוּם הָיָה יְהוָה בְּהַזְהִירוֹ  
אוֹתָנוּ לָנוּס מֵאֶרֶץ יְרוּשָׁלַם.

וְהוּא אָמַר: חֲזִיתִי חֲזוֹן וּמִמֶּנּוּ יָדַעְתִּי כִּי  
יְרוּשָׁלַם נִחְרָבָה; וְאִלּוּ נִשְׁאַרְנוּ בִּירוּשָׁלַם,  
אֲבִדְנוּ אִף אֲנַחְנוּ.

וְהוּא אָמַר: אִף כִּי סָבִלְנוּ תְּלָאָה, נָחֻלְנוּ אֶרֶץ  
יְעוּדָה, אֶרֶץ נִבְחָרָה מִכָּל הָאֲרָצוֹת; אֶרֶץ  
אֲשֶׁר פָּרַת יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים בְּרִית עִמִּי לְהִיטָתָהּ  
אֶרֶץ נָחֻלָּה זֶרְעִי. אֲכֹן, יְהוָה פָּרַת עִמִּי בְּרִית  
לְתַת אֶת הָאָרֶץ הַזֹּאת לִי וּלְיֻצְאָי חֲלָצִי עַד  
עוֹלָם, וְכֹן לְכָל אֲשֶׁר תּוֹצִיאֵם יַד יְהוָה  
מֵאֲרָצוֹת נֹסֶפּוֹת.

וְהִנֵּה אֲנִי, לְחִי, מִנְבֵּא כְּפִי פִּעֲלַת הָרוּחַ אֲשֶׁר  
בִּי, כִּי לֹא יָבֹא אִישׁ אֶל הָאָרֶץ הַזֹּאת, בְּלִתִּי  
הַבִּיאָתוֹ יַד יְהוָה.

לְכֹן הָאָרֶץ הַזֹּאת קֹדֶשׁ לְאֲשֶׁר יָבִיאֵם. וְהִנֵּה  
אִם יַעֲבֹדוּהוּ עַל פִּי מִצְוֹתָיו אֲשֶׁר צִוָּה, תִּהְיֶה  
זֹאת אֶרֶץ חֲרוּת לָהֶם; לְכֹן לֹא יֵרְדוּ לְשָׁבִי  
לְעוֹלָם; וְאִם כֵּן, מִפְּנֵי עֲוֹנָם תִּבּוֹא; כִּי אִם  
יִרְבֶּה עֲוֹנָם, אֲרוּרָה תִּהְיֶה הָאָרֶץ בְּעֵבֹרָם,  
אֶף לְצַדִּיקִים תִּהְיֶה בְּרוּכָה עַד עוֹלָם.

וְהִנֵּה, מִחֻכְמָה נִשְׁמְרָה עֲדִין הָאָרֶץ הַזֹּאת  
מִיַּד יַעַת עַמִּים אֲחֵרִים, כִּי הִנֵּה עַמִּים רַבִּים  
הֵיוּ עוֹלִים עַל הָאָרֶץ עַד כִּי לֹא הָיָה בָּהּ מָקוֹם  
לְנַחֲלָהּ.

וְהִנֵּה דִּבֶּר יְהוָה הָיָה אֵלַי, לְחִי, וְאָמַר כִּי אִם  
יִשְׁמְרוּ אֶלֶּה אֲשֶׁר יוֹצִיא יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים מֵאֶרֶץ  
יְרוּשָׁלַם אֶת מִצְוֹתָיו, תִּצְלַח דְּרָכָם עַל פְּנֵי  
הָאָרֶץ הַזֹּאת, וְיִשְׁמְרוּ מִפְּגִיעַת כָּל שָׂאָר  
הָעַמִּים, לְמַעַן יִירָשׁוּ אֶת הָאָרֶץ הַזֹּאת  
לְנַחֲלָתָם. וְהִנֵּה אִם יִשְׁמְרוּ אֶת מִצְוֹתָיו,  
מְבָרְכִים יִהְיוּ עַל פְּנֵי הָאָרֶץ הַזֹּאת, וְאִישׁ  
לֹא יִפְרִיעַם וְלֹא יִקַּח מִיָּדָם אֶת אֶרֶץ נַחֲלָתָם;  
וְהֵם יִשְׁכְּנוּ לְבֶטַח עַד עוֹלָם.

2 And he spake unto them concerning their rebellions upon the waters,  
and the mercies of God in sparing their lives, that they were not  
swallowed up in the sea.

3 And he also spake unto them concerning the land of promise, which  
they had obtained—how merciful the Lord had been in warning us  
that we should flee out of the land of Jerusalem.

4 For, behold, said he, I have seen a vision, in which I know that Jeru-  
salem is destroyed; and had we remained in Jerusalem we should also  
have perished.

5 But, said he, notwithstanding our afflictions, we have obtained a land  
of promise, a land which is choice above all other lands; a land which  
the Lord God hath covenanted with me should be a land for the  
inheritance of my seed. Yea, the Lord hath covenanted this land unto  
me, and to my children forever, and also all those who should be led  
out of other countries by the hand of the Lord.

6 Wherefore, I, Lehi, prophesy according to the workings of the Spirit  
which is in me, that there shall none come into this land save they shall  
be brought by the hand of the Lord.

7 Wherefore, this land is consecrated unto him whom he shall bring. And  
if it so be that they shall serve him according to the commandments  
which he hath given, it shall be a land of liberty unto them; wherefore,  
they shall never be brought down into captivity; if so, it shall be because  
of iniquity; for if iniquity shall abound cursed shall be the land for their  
sakes, but unto the righteous it shall be blessed forever.

8 And behold, it is wisdom that this land should be kept as yet from the  
knowledge of other nations; for behold, many nations would overrun  
the land, that there would be no place for an inheritance.

9 Wherefore, I, Lehi, have obtained a promise, that inasmuch as those  
whom the Lord God shall bring out of the land of Jerusalem shall keep  
his commandments, they shall prosper upon the face of this land; and  
they shall be kept from all other nations, that they may possess this land  
unto themselves. And if it so be that they shall keep his commandments  
they shall be blessed upon the face of this land, and there shall be none  
to molest them, nor to take away the land of their inheritance; and they  
shall dwell safely forever.

- אֲדָה הִנֵּה, יָבוֹא יוֹם וְהֵם יִשְׁקָעוּ בַּחֲסָר אֲמוֹנָה, אַחֲרֵי אֲשֶׁר בֵּרַכְהָ אוֹתָם יְיָ הוּא בֵּרַכְהָ כֹה רַבָּה, אַחֲרֵי יָדָעַם עַל בְּרִיאַת הָאָרֶץ וְעַל כָּל הָאֲדָם וְעַל מַעֲשֵׂי יְיָ הוּא הַגְּדוֹלִים וְהַנִּפְלְאִים מִיָּמֵי רֵאשִׁית הָעוֹלָם; אַחֲרֵי אֲשֶׁר נָתַן בְּיָדֵיהֶם לַעֲשׂוֹת הַכֹּל בְּכַח אֲמוֹנָה; אַחֲרֵי אֲשֶׁר בְּיָדֵיהֶם כָּל הַמְצָאוֹת מֵרֵאשִׁיתָם, וְאַחֲרֵי אֲשֶׁר הוֹבֵאוּ בְּטוֹבוֹ אֵין קֶץ אֶל הָאָרֶץ הַיְעוּדָה הַיְקָרָה הַזֹּאת, הִנֵּה, אֲנִי אוֹמֵר, אִם יָבוֹא הַיּוֹם אֲשֶׁר בּוֹ יִמָּאֲסוּ בַּקְדוּשׁ יִשְׂרָאֵל, מְשִׁיחַ הָאֲמֶת, הוּא גּוֹאֲלָם וְאֱלֹהֵיהֶם, מִשְׁפַּט הַשּׁוֹפֵט בְּצֶדֶק יַחֲוֹל עֲלֵיהֶם.
- אָכֵן, הוּא יָבִיא עֲלֵיהֶם עַמִּים אֲחֵרִים וְיִתֵּן לָהֶם כַּח וְיִקַּח מֵהֶם אֶת אֲדָמוֹת נַחֲלוֹתֵיהֶם, לְהַפִּיצָם וּלְנַגֵּפָם.
- וְהִנֵּה, בַּחֲלֹף דּוֹר אַחֵר דּוֹר, תִּהְיֶה בָהֶם שְׁפִיכַת דָּמִים, וְגִדּוּלוֹת יַפְקָדוּם. עַל כֵּן, בְּנֵי, חַפֵּץ אֲנִי כִּי תִזְכְּרוּ, אָכֵן, רְצוֹנִי כִּי תִשְׁמָעוּ לְדִבְרִי.
- מִי יִתֵּן וְתִתְעוֹרְרוּ; עוֹרֵי מִתְרַדְּמָה עֲמָקָה, אָכֵן מִתְרַדְּמַת שְׂאוֹל, וְהַתְנַעֲרוּ מִן הָאֲזִקִּים הַנּוֹרָאִים אֲשֶׁר בָּהֶם נֶאֱסָרְתָם, הָאֲזִקִּים הָאוֹסְרִים אֶת בְּנֵי הָאָדָם, עַד אֲשֶׁר יוֹרְדוּ שָׁבִי אֶל תְּהוֹם הַסֶּבֶל וְעֲנֹת הַתַּמִּיד.
- עוֹרוּ! קוּמוּ מִעַפְרָן וְשִׁמְעוּ דִּבְרֵי אָב רֹעֵד, אֲשֶׁר עַד מִהֲרָה תִּנְיֹחוּ אֶת אֵיבְרֵי בְּקֶבֶר קָר וְדוֹמָם, אֲשֶׁר כָּל בָּאִיו לֹא יִשׁוּבוּ; בְּעוֹד יָמִים אֲחֵדִים אֵלֶּךְ בְּדֶרֶךְ כָּל הָאָרֶץ.
- אֲדָה הִנֵּה נָצַל יְיָ אוֹת נַפְשִׁי מִשְׂאוֹל; חֲזִיתִי בַּתְּפָאֲרָתוֹ וְהִנֵּנִי חֲבוּק לְעַד בְּזוֹרוֹעוֹת אֲהַבְתּוֹ.
- וְחַפְצִי כִּי תִזְכְּרוּ לְשֹׁמֵר אֶת חֻקֵּי יְיָ וּמִשְׁפָּטָיו; הֵן זֹאת הִיְתָה עֲרֹגַת נַפְשִׁי מִקֶּדֶם.
- לְעֵתִים דָּאֵב לִבִּי, כִּי יִרְאֵתִי פֶן יָקוּם יְיָ וְאֱלֹהֵיכֶם בְּמִלֵּא חֲמָתוֹ עֲלֵיכֶם עַל קִשְׁי לְבַבְכֶם, לְהַכְרִית וּלְהַשְׁמִיד אֶתְכֶם לְעַד.
- אוֹ, כִּי תִבּוֹא עֲלֵיכֶם קָלְלָה לְדוֹרוֹת רַבִּים; וְיִפְקְדְכֶם חֶרֶב וָרָעָב, וְתִהְיוּ שְׂנוּאִים וּמוֹדְלִים כְּרָצוֹן הַשָּׁטָן וְכִשְׁבִּי.
- 10 But behold, when the time cometh that they shall dwindle in unbelief, after they have received so great blessings from the hand of the Lord—having a knowledge of the creation of the earth, and all men, knowing the great and marvelous works of the Lord from the creation of the world; having power given them to do all things by faith; having all the commandments from the beginning, and having been brought by his infinite goodness into this precious land of promise—behold, I say, if the day shall come that they will reject the Holy One of Israel, the true Messiah, their Redeemer and their God, behold, the judgments of him that is just shall rest upon them.
- 11 Yea, he will bring other nations unto them, and he will give unto them power, and he will take away from them the lands of their possessions, and he will cause them to be scattered and smitten.
- 12 Yea, as one generation passeth to another there shall be bloodsheds, and great visitations among them; wherefore, my sons, I would that ye would remember; yea, I would that ye would hearken unto my words.
- 13 O that ye would awake; awake from a deep sleep, yea, even from the sleep of hell, and shake off the awful chains by which ye are bound, which are the chains which bind the children of men, that they are carried away captive down to the eternal gulf of misery and woe.
- 14 Awake! and arise from the dust, and hear the words of a trembling parent, whose limbs ye must soon lay down in the cold and silent grave, from whence no traveler can return; a few more days and I go the way of all the earth.
- 15 But behold, the Lord hath redeemed my soul from hell; I have beheld his glory, and I am encircled about eternally in the arms of his love.
- 16 And I desire that ye should remember to observe the statutes and the judgments of the Lord; behold, this hath been the anxiety of my soul from the beginning.
- 17 My heart hath been weighed down with sorrow from time to time, for I have feared, lest for the hardness of your hearts the Lord your God should come out in the fulness of his wrath upon you, that ye be cut off and destroyed forever;
- 18 Or, that a cursing should come upon you for the space of many generations; and ye are visited by sword, and by famine, and are hated, and are led according to the will and captivity of the devil.

19 O my sons, that these things might not come upon you, but that ye might be a choice and a favored people of the Lord. But behold, his will be done; for his ways are righteousness forever.

אָנָא, בְּנֵי, אֵל נָא יְבוֹאוּכֶם הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה;  
כִּי אִם תִּהְיוּ עִם סִגְלָה נְבָחָר לַיהוָה. אַךְ הִנֵּה,  
רְצוֹנוֹ יַעֲשֶׂה, כִּי דִרְכּוֹ צֶדֶק לְעוֹלָם.

20 And he hath said that: Inasmuch as ye shall keep my commandments ye shall prosper in the land; but inasmuch as ye will not keep my commandments ye shall be cut off from my presence.

אָכֵן הוּא אָמַר: אִם תִּשְׁמְרוּ אֶת מִצְוֹתַי,  
תִּצְלִיחוּ בָאָרֶץ; אֲךָ אִם לֹא תִשְׁמְרוּ אֶת  
מִצְוֹתַי, תִּכָּרְתוּ מִלִּפְנֵי.

21 And now that my soul might have joy in you, and that my heart might leave this world with gladness because of you, that I might not be brought down with grief and sorrow to the grave, arise from the dust, my sons, and be men, and be determined in one mind and in one heart, united in all things, that ye may not come down into captivity;

וְעַתָּה, לְמַעַן תִּגַּל נַפְשִׁי בָכֶם, וּלְמַעַן יִפְרֹד  
לְבִי מִן הָעוֹלָם הַזֶּה בְּשִׂמְחָה עֲלֵיכֶם, לְבַל  
אֲרֹד לְקִבְרִי בְּצַעַר וּבְיָגוֹן, קוּמוּ מֵעַפָּר, בְּנֵי,  
וְהִיוּ לְגִבּוֹרִים, וְהִיוּ לְבָכֶם וּנְפִשְׁכֶם נְכוֹנִים  
כָּאֶחָד, מֵאֶחָדִים בְּכָל, לְבַל תִּרְדּוּ לַשָּׁבִי;

22 That ye may not be cursed with a sore cursing; and also, that ye may not incur the displeasure of a just God upon you, unto the destruction, yea, the eternal destruction of both soul and body.

לְבַל תִּאָּרְרוּ בְּמִאֲרָה מִמֵּאִירָה, וּלְבַל תִּבְיֵאוּ  
עַלְיֵכֶם חֲמַת אֱלֹהֵי צֶדֶק, עַד אֲבִדְנֶכֶם, אָכֵן,  
אֲבִדְן נַפְשׁ וְגוּף לְעַד.

23 Awake, my sons; put on the armor of righteousness. Shake off the chains with which ye are bound, and come forth out of obscurity, and arise from the dust.

עוֹרוּ, בְּנֵי, חַגְרוּ נֶשֶׁק צֶדֶקָה; הִתְנַעְרוּ מִן  
הָאֲזָקִים אֲשֶׁר בָּהֶם נֶאֱסַרְתֶּם; צֵאוּ מִן  
הָאֲפֵלָה, קוּמוּ מֵעַפָּר.

24 Rebel no more against your brother, whose views have been glorious, and who hath kept the commandments from the time that we left Jerusalem; and who hath been an instrument in the hands of God, in bringing us forth into the land of promise; for were it not for him, we must have perished with hunger in the wilderness; nevertheless, ye sought to take away his life; yea, and he hath suffered much sorrow because of you.

אַל תִּמְרְדוּ עוֹד בְּאָחִיכֶם, אֲשֶׁר חֲזוֹנוֹתָיו  
מִפְאָרִים הָיוּ, וְאֲשֶׁר שָׁמַר אֶת הַמִּצְוֹת מִיּוֹם  
עֲזַבְנוּ אֶת יְרוּשָׁלַם, וְהָיָה כְּלִי בְיַד אֱלֹהִים  
לְהִבְיֵאֵנוּ אֶל הָאָרֶץ הַיְעוֹדָה; כִּי לוֹלָא הוּא,  
בְּרָעַב גּוֹעֵנוּ בַּמִּדְבָּר. עַל אֵף זֹאת, בִּקְשָׁתֶם אֶת  
נַפְשׁוֹ לְקַחְתָּהּ; אָכֵן, מִפְּנֵיכֶם נִשָּׂא יָגוֹן רַב.

25 And I exceedingly fear and tremble because of you, lest he shall suffer again; for behold, ye have accused him that he sought power and authority over you; but I know that he hath not sought for power nor authority over you, but he hath sought the glory of God, and your own eternal welfare.

הִנְנִי יָרָא עַד מְאֹד מִפְּנֵיכֶם, אֲשֶׁר יוֹסִיף הוּא  
לְסַבֵּל. הִנֵּה אֲשַׁמְתֶּם בּוֹ כִּי מִבְּקֵשׁ הוּא תִקְוָה  
וּשְׂרָרָה עֲלֵיכֶם; וְאֲנִי יָדַעְתִּי כִּי לֹא עָשָׂה כֵן,  
כִּי אִם בִּקֵּשׁ אֶת תִּפְאָרַת אֱלֹהִים וְאֶת  
שְׁלוֹמְכֶם וְטוֹבְתְכֶם לְעַד.

26 And ye have murmured because he hath been plain unto you. Ye say that he hath used sharpness; ye say that he hath been angry with you; but behold, his sharpness was the sharpness of the power of the word of God, which was in him; and that which ye call anger was the truth, according to that which is in God, which he could not restrain, manifesting boldly concerning your iniquities.

וְהִתְלַוְנַתֶּם עַל כִּי נִהַג בָּכֶם נְכוּחוֹת;  
אָמַרְתֶּם כִּי פָעַל בְּתִקְיפוֹת וְאֵף רָגַז עֲלֵיכֶם.  
אֲךָ רְאוּ כִּי תִקְיפוֹת הָיְתָה תִקְיפוֹת כַּח דְּבַר  
אֱלֹהִים אֲשֶׁר הָיָה בּוֹ; וְאֲשֶׁר אָמַרְתֶּם עַל רָגִזוֹ,  
הָאֲמַת הָיְתָה זֹאת, עַל פִּי אָמַת אֱלֹהִים,  
וְלֹא יָכוֹל הָיָה אָחִיכֶם לְעַצֹּר מִהִשְׁמִיעְכֶם  
בְּאִמְץ עַל אֲדוּת עוֹנוֹתֵיכֶם.

27 And it must needs be that the power of God must be with him, even unto his commanding you that ye must obey. But behold, it was not he,

אֵף שׁוּמָה הָיָא כִּי כַח אֱלֹהִים עִמּוֹ וּבְצוּתוֹ  
אֲתַכֶּם עֲלֵיכֶם לְהִשְׁמַע. כִּי, הִנֵּה, לֹא הָיָה זֶה



## נְפִי ב א:כח-ב:ד

הוא, כי אם רוח יהוה אשר בו, והוא אשר פתח את פיו לדבר ולא יכול היה הוא לעצור.

but it was the Spirit of the Lord which was in him, which opened his mouth to utterance that he could not shut it.

ועתה, בני לֵמֹן, וְכֵן לְמוֹאֵל וְשָׁם, וְאִי בְנֵי אֲשֶׁר אַתֶּם בְּנֵי יִשְׁמָעֵאל, הִנֵּה כִּי אִם תִּשְׁמָעוּ בְּקוֹל נָפִי, לֹא תִאבְדּוּ. וְאִם תִּשְׁמָעוּ לוֹ אֲנִיחָ לָכֶם בְּרָכָה, וְהִיא רִאשׁוֹנָה בְּרָכָתִי.

28 And now my son, Laman, and also Lemuel and Sam, and also my sons who are the sons of Ishmael, behold, if ye will hearken unto the voice of Nephi ye shall not perish. And if ye will hearken unto him I leave unto you a blessing, yea, even my first blessing.

אֲףֹּ אִם לֹא תִשְׁמָעוּ לוֹ, אֶסְרִי אֶת בְּרָכָתִי הָרִאשׁוֹנָה, אֶת עֶצֶם בְּרָכָתִי, וְעָלִיו הִיא תִּנּוּחַ.

29 But if ye will not hearken unto him I take away my first blessing, yea, even my blessing, and it shall rest upon him.

ועתה, זֹרָם, אֵלֶיךָ דְּבָרִי: הִנֵּה עֶבֶד לָבָן אַתָּה, וְעַל אִף זֹאת יֵצְאָתָּ מֵאֶרֶץ יְרוּשָׁלַם; וְיֹדַע אֲנִי כִּי יָדִיד נָאֻמָּן אַתָּה לְבְנֵי נָפִי עַד עוֹלָם.

30 And now Zoram, I speak unto you: Behold, thou art the servant of Laban; nevertheless, thou hast been brought out of the land of Jerusalem, and I know that thou art a true friend unto my son, Nephi, forever.

עַל כֵּן, מִפְּנֵי הַיֹּתֵד נָאֻמָּן, יִבְרַךְ זֶרַעְךָ עִם זֶרַעוֹ, וְיִשְׁכְּנוּ בְּהַצְלָחָה לְאֶרֶץ יָמִים עַל פְּנֵי הָאָרֶץ הַזֹּאת. וְדָבָר, זֹלַת עוֹנָם, לֹא יַצִּיקָם וְיַפְרִיעַם מִלְּהַצְלִיחַ עַל פְּנֵי הָאָרֶץ הַזֹּאת עַד עוֹלָם.

31 Wherefore, because thou hast been faithful thy seed shall be blessed with his seed, that they dwell in prosperity long upon the face of this land; and nothing, save it shall be iniquity among them, shall harm or disturb their prosperity upon the face of this land forever.

אָכֵן, אִם תִּשְׁמֹר אֶת מִצְוֹת יְהוָה יִקְדִּישׁ הוּא אֶת הָאָרֶץ הַזֹּאת לְבִטְחוֹן זֶרַעְךָ עִם זֶרַע בְּנֵי.

32 Wherefore, if ye shall keep the commandments of the Lord, the Lord hath consecrated this land for the security of thy seed with the seed of my son.

## ב

## 2

ועתה, יַעֲקֹב, אֵלֶיךָ אֲדַבֵּר: בְּכוֹר אַתָּה לְבְנֵי הַנּוֹלָדִים בְּיָמַי מִצְוֹקָתִי בְּמִדְבָּר. הִנֵּה סְבָלָתָּ יְסוּרִים וְרַב צָעַר בְּיָלְדוּתְךָ, מִפְּנֵי גִסּוּת אַחִיךָ.

1 And now, Jacob, I speak unto you: Thou art my first-born in the days of my tribulation in the wilderness. And behold, in thy childhood thou hast suffered afflictions and much sorrow, because of the rudeness of thy brethren.

וְאוֹלָם, יַעֲקֹב, בְּכוֹר הַנּוֹלָדִים לִי בְּמִדְבָּר, אַתָּה יָדַעְתָּ אֶת גְּדֻלַּת אֱלֹהִים; וְהוּא יִקְדִּישׁ אֶת סְבָלוֹתֶיךָ לְמַעַן רוּחְךָ.

2 Nevertheless, Jacob, my first-born in the wilderness, thou knowest the greatness of God; and he shall consecrate thine afflictions for thy gain.

עַל כֵּן תִּתְבָּרַךְ נַפְשְׁךָ וְתִשְׁכֹּן לְבִטָּח עִם אַחִיךָ נָפִי; יָמֶיךָ יַעֲבֹרוּ עָלֶיךָ בְּעִבְדוּת אֱלֹהֶיךָ. וְיִדַּעְתִּי כִּי נִגְאָלָתָּ, מִפְּנֵי צָדֻקַת גּוֹאֲלְךָ; עַל אֲשֶׁר רָאִיתָ כִּי יָבוֹא בְּמִלְּאֵת הַיָּמִים לְהַבִּיא יְשׁוּעָה לְבְנֵי הָאָדָם.

3 Wherefore, thy soul shall be blessed, and thou shalt dwell safely with thy brother, Nephi; and thy days shall be spent in the service of thy God. Wherefore, I know that thou art redeemed, because of the righteousness of thy Redeemer; for thou hast beheld that in the fulness of time he cometh to bring salvation unto men.

וְאַתָּה רָאִיתָ אֶת תְּפָאֲרָתוֹ בְּנְעוּרֶיךָ; לָכֵן בְּרוּךְ אַתָּה כָּפִי אֵלּוּ אֲשֶׁר יִשְׁרְתָם בְּגוֹפּוֹ. כִּי הָרוּחַ אֶחָד הוּא, אֶתְמוּל הַיּוֹם וְעַד עוֹלָם, וּמוֹכֶנָה הַדֶּרֶךְ מֵאֵז נְפִילַת הָאָדָם, וְהַיְשׁוּעָה חֲנֹם הִיא.

4 And thou hast beheld in thy youth his glory; wherefore, thou art blessed even as they unto whom he shall minister in the flesh; for the Spirit is the same, yesterday, today, and forever. And the way is prepared from the fall of man, and salvation is free.



## נְפִי ב ב:ה-יב

- וּבְנֵי הָאָדָם מְקַבְּלִים תּוֹרָה דִּיָּהּ, לְדַעַת טוֹב וְרָע. וְחָק נָתַן לָהֶם; אִךְ בְּחָק לֹא יִצְדָּק אָנוּשׁ; לֹא־מֹר, עַל פִּי הַחֹק נִכְרְתִים בְּנֵי הָאָדָם. אַכֵּן, עַל פִּי חָק הַחֹמֶר דִּינָם לְהַכְרִית, וְעַל פִּי חָק הָרוּחַ דִּינָם לֹא־בֹד מִן הַטּוֹב וּלְהַתְאֲמִלָּל לְעוֹלָם.
- עַל כֵּן בָּאָה הַגְּאֻלָּה מֵאֵת מְשִׁיחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ וְעַל יָדָיו; כִּי מָלֵא חֶסֶד וְאֱמֶת הוּא.
- הִנֵּה הוּא מִקְרִיב עֲצָמוֹ קָרְבָּן עַל חַטָּא, לְמַלֵּא אֶת תְּכֵלִית הַחֹק וְזֹאת בְּעֶבֶר כָּל אֲשֶׁר לָהֶם לֵב שָׁבוּר וְרוּחַ נִכְאָה; וְזוֹלַת אֵלֶּה, לֹא יִכּוֹלָה תְּכֵלִית הַחֹק לְהִמָּלֵא.
- לָכֵן, מִה רַב עֶרְךָ הוֹדַעַת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה לְיוֹשְׁבֵי תִבְלִי; לְמַעַן יָדְעוּ כִּי לֹא יִשְׁכֹּן כָּל בָּשָׂר לִפְנֵי אֱלֹהִים, בְּלִתי עַל יְדֵי הַסְּגֻלוֹת וְהַרְחָמִים וְהַחֶסֶד אֲשֶׁר לְמְשִׁיחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ, הַמִּקְרִיב אֶת נַפְשׁוֹ בְּבָשָׂר וְלֹקַח אוֹתָהּ שְׁנִית בְּכַח הָרוּחַ, לְהַבִּיא אֶת תְּחִיַּת הַמֵּתִים, וְהוּא רֹאשׁוֹן הַקָּמִים לְתַחִיָּה.
- עַל כֵּן רֹאשִׁית תְּבוּאָה הוּא לְאֱלֹהִים, בְּהִיּוֹתוֹ מִלִּיץ יֵשֶׁר לְכָל בְּנֵי הָאָדָם; וְהַמֵּאֲמִינִים בּוֹ יִשְׁעוּ.
- וְעַתָּה אֲשֶׁר הוּא מִלִּיץ יֵשֶׁר לְכָל, יְבוֹאוּ כָּלֵל הָאָדָם אֶל אֱלֹהִים; אַכֵּן, יַעֲמְדוּ הַכָּל לִפְנֵי הַשֹּׁפֵט עַל יְדֵיו כְּפִי הָאֱמֶת וְהַקֹּדֶשׁ אֲשֶׁר בּוֹ. לָכֵן תְּכֵלִית הַחֹק אֲשֶׁר נָתַן הָאֵל הַקֹּדֶשׁ, וְהִיא הַפְּגִיעָה עַל פִּי הַעֲנֹשׁ אֲשֶׁר נִקְבַּע, הוּא הַהֶפֶךְ מִן הָאֲשֶׁר אֲשֶׁר נִקְבַּע לְמַלֵּא אֶת תְּכֵלִית הַכִּפָּרָה,
- כִּי הֵכָרַח אֲשֶׁר יֵשׁ נֶגֶד בְּכָל הַדְּבָרִים; אֲשֶׁר אִם לֹא כֵן, בְּכוֹר הַנּוֹלָדִים לִי בַּמִּדְבָּר, לֹא הָיוּ מִתְבַּצְּעִים לֹא צֶדֶק וְלֹא רֶשַׁע, גַּם לֹא קִדְשָׁה וְלֹא יָגוֹן, אִף לֹא טוֹב וְלֹא רָע; אִם כֵּן, הָיוּ כָּל הַדְּבָרִים חִיבִים לְהִיּוֹת תְּרַפְּכַת אַחַת; לָכֵן, אֵלֶּי הָיָה גּוֹף אֶחָד, הֵכָרַח הָיָה לוֹ לְהוֹתוֹ כְּמֵת, בְּלֹא חַיִּים וּבְלֹא מוֹת, בְּלֹא הַשְׁחָתָה וּבְלֹא חֶסֶר הַשְׁחָתָה, אִף בְּלִי אֲשֶׁר וּבְלִי יָגוֹן, וּבְלִי תַחוּשָׁה וּבְלִי קִהּוֹת חוּשִׁים;
- עַל כֵּן, הֵכָרַח הָיָה כִּי נִבְרָא לְדָבָר רִיק, לְלֹא כּוֹנֵן בְּבִרְיָאָתוֹ; וְהֵכָרַח אֲשֶׁר דָּבָר זֶה יִשְׁחִית אֶת חֻכְמַת אֱלֹהִים וְאֶת תְּכֵלִיתוֹתָיו
- 5 And men are instructed sufficiently that they know good from evil. And the law is given unto men. And by the law no flesh is justified; or, by the law men are cut off. Yea, by the temporal law they were cut off; and also, by the spiritual law they perish from that which is good, and become miserable forever.
- 6 Wherefore, redemption cometh in and through the Holy Messiah; for he is full of grace and truth.
- 7 Behold, he offereth himself a sacrifice for sin, to answer the ends of the law, unto all those who have a broken heart and a contrite spirit; and unto none else can the ends of the law be answered.
- 8 Wherefore, how great the importance to make these things known unto the inhabitants of the earth, that they may know that there is no flesh that can dwell in the presence of God, save it be through the merits, and mercy, and grace of the Holy Messiah, who layeth down his life according to the flesh, and taketh it again by the power of the Spirit, that he may bring to pass the resurrection of the dead, being the first that should rise.
- 9 Wherefore, he is the first-fruits unto God, inasmuch as he shall make intercession for all the children of men; and they that believe in him shall be saved.
- 10 And because of the intercession for all, all men come unto God; wherefore, they stand in the presence of him to be judged of him according to the truth and holiness which is in him. Wherefore, the ends of the law which the Holy One hath given, unto the inflicting of the punishment which is affixed, which punishment that is affixed is in opposition to that of the happiness which is affixed, to answer the ends of the atonement—
- 11 For it must needs be, that there is an opposition in all things. If not so, my first-born in the wilderness, righteousness could not be brought to pass, neither wickedness, neither holiness nor misery, neither good nor bad. Wherefore, all things must needs be a compound in one; wherefore, if it should be one body it must needs remain as dead, having no life neither death, nor corruption nor incorruption, happiness nor misery, neither sense nor insensibility.
- 12 Wherefore, it must needs have been created for a thing of naught; wherefore there would have been no purpose in the end of its creation. Wherefore, this thing must needs destroy the wisdom of God and his

הנצחיות ואת גבורת אלהים ואת  
רחמי וצדקו.

eternal purposes, and also the power, and the mercy, and the justice  
of God.

ואם תאמר כי אין חק, אף תאמר כי אין  
חטא. ואם תאמר כי אין חטא, אף תאמר  
כי אין צדק. ואם אין צדק אין אשׁר ואם אין  
צדק ואשׁר, אין עונש ויגון. ואם אלה אינם,  
אין אלהים. ואם אין אלהים, אנהנו איננו  
וכן אין ארץ; וען אשׁר לא יכולה היתה  
להיות בריאת דברים, ולא פעלה ולא  
הפעלות והכרח היה אשׁר הכל נעדר.

13 And if ye shall say there is no law, ye shall also say there is no sin. If ye shall say there is no sin, ye shall also say there is no righteousness. And if there be no righteousness there be no happiness. And if there be no righteousness nor happiness there be no punishment nor misery. And if these things are not there is no God. And if there is no God we are not, neither the earth; for there could have been no creation of things, neither to act nor to be acted upon; wherefore, all things must have vanished away.

והנה, בני, מדבר אני אליכם למען הועילכם  
ולמדכם; אכן יש אלהים והוא ברא הכל, את  
השמים ואת הארץ ואת כל אשׁר בם, דברים  
לפעלה ולהפעלות.

14 And now, my sons, I speak unto you these things for your profit and learning; for there is a God, and he hath created all things, both the heavens and the earth, and all things that in them are, both things to act and things to be acted upon.

ולמען בצע את תכליותיו הנצחיות באחרית  
האדם, אחר אשׁר ברא את הורינו הראשונים,  
את חית השדה ואת עוף השמים, ובקצרה  
את כל אשׁר נברא, הכרח אשׁר היה נגד;  
אף הפרי האסור כנגד עץ החיים; האחד  
מתוק והאחר מר.

15 And to bring about his eternal purposes in the end of man, after he had created our first parents, and the beasts of the field and the fowls of the air, and in fine, all things which are created, it must needs be that there was an opposition; even the forbidden fruit in opposition to the tree of life; the one being sweet and the other bitter.

לכן נתן יהוה אלהים לאדם לפעל ברשות  
עצמו; אך לא יכול האדם לפעל ברשות  
עצמו, בלתי אם פתהו זה, או אחר.

16 Wherefore, the Lord God gave unto man that he should act for himself. Wherefore, man could not act for himself save it should be that he was enticed by the one or the other.

ואני, לחי, כפי אשׁר קראתי בכתובים,  
חיב לשער כי מלאך אלהים, ככתוב,  
נפל משמים ונהפך שטן, כי בקש את  
הרע בעיני אלהים.

17 And I, Lehi, according to the things which I have read, must needs suppose that an angel of God, according to that which is written, had fallen from heaven; wherefore, he became a devil, having sought that which was evil before God.

וען אשׁר נפל משמים והיה אמלל לעד, בקש  
אף לאמלל את כלל האדם. לכן דבר אל חוה,  
והוא הנחש הזקן אשׁר הוא השטן, אבי כל  
קזב, וכה אמר: טעמי מן הפרי האסור ולא  
מות תמתון, והייתם כאלהים, ידעי טוב ורע.

18 And because he had fallen from heaven, and had become miserable forever, he sought also the misery of all mankind. Wherefore, he said unto Eve, yea, even that old serpent, who is the devil, who is the father of all lies, wherefore he said: Partake of the forbidden fruit, and ye shall not die, but ye shall be as God, knowing good and evil.

ואחר אשׁר טעמו אדם וחוה מן הפרי האסור  
גרשו מגן עדן לעבד את האדמה.

19 And after Adam and Eve had partaken of the forbidden fruit they were driven out of the garden of Eden, to till the earth.

והם הולידו צאצאים; את משפחת  
כל האדמה.

20 And they have brought forth children; yea, even the family of all the earth.

ואלהים האריך כחפצו את ימי בני האדם,  
למען ינחמו מחסא בעודם בבשר; על כן

21 And the days of the children of men were prolonged, according to the will of God, that they might repent while in the flesh; wherefore,

הפכו ימיהם לַעַת מִבְּחֹן וְהָאָרְכוּ עַל פִּי  
מִצְוֹת יְהוָה לְבְנֵי הָאָדָם. כִּי הוּא צִוָּה עַל כָּלם  
לְהִנָּחם מִחֲטָא, וְהִרְאָה לָהֶם כִּי אֲבָדוּ מִפְּנֵי  
עֲבֵרַת הוֹרִיָּהֶם.

their state became a state of probation, and their time was lengthened, according to the commandments which the Lord God gave unto the children of men. For he gave commandment that all men must repent; for he showed unto all men that they were lost, because of the transgression of their parents.

וְהִנֵּה, לֹא־לֹא פָשַׁע אָדָם, לֹא נָפַל, כִּי נִשְׁאָר  
הָיָה בְּגֵן עֵדֶן. וְכָל הַבְּרִיאָה הָיְתָה נֹתֶרֶת  
כַּאֲשֶׁר נִבְרָאָה; וְכֵן הָיוּ לְעוֹלָם, עַד אֵין קֵץ.

22 And now, behold, if Adam had not transgressed he would not have fallen, but he would have remained in the garden of Eden. And all things which were created must have remained in the same state in which they were after they were created; and they must have remained forever, and had no end.

וְלֹא הָיוּ נוֹלָדִים יְלָדִים; וְכֵן הָיוּ נִשְׁאָרִים  
זָכִים, בְּלֹא שְׂמֻחָה, כִּי לֹא הָיוּ יוֹדְעִים יְגוֹן;  
וְלֹא עוֹשִׂים טוֹב, כִּי לֹא הָיוּ יוֹדְעִים מִהוּ חֲטָא.

23 And they would have had no children; wherefore they would have remained in a state of innocence, having no joy, for they knew no misery; doing no good, for they knew no sin.

אֲךָ הִנֵּה, הַכֹּל נַעֲשֶׂה בְּחָכְמַת הַיּוֹדֵעַ כֹּל.

24 But behold, all things have been done in the wisdom of him who knoweth all things.

אָדָם נָפַל לְמַעַן הָיִית בְּנֵי הָאָדָם; וּבְנֵי הָאָדָם  
הֵם לְמַעַן תִּהְיֶה לָהֶם שְׂמֻחָה.

25 Adam fell that men might be; and men are, that they might have joy.

וְהַמָּשִׁיחַ יָבוֹא בְּמִלְאֵת הַיָּמִים, לְגַאֲלָא אֶת בְּנֵי  
הָאָדָם מִן הַנִּפְיִלָה. וַיַּעַן אֲשֶׁר גְּאוּלִּים הֵם מִן  
הַנִּפְיִלָה, הֵם נַעֲשׂוּ חֲפְשִׁיִּים עַד עוֹלָם, בְּדַעְתָּם  
טוֹב וְרָע; לְפַעַל בְּרִשּׁוֹת עֲצָמָם וְלֹא לְהִיּוֹת  
נִפְעָלִים, זֹלָתָה עַל יְדֵי עֲנֹשׁ הַחֹק בְּיוֹם הַגְּדוֹל  
וְהָאֲחֵרוֹן עַל פִּי מִצְוֹת אֱלֹהִים.

26 And the Messiah cometh in the fulness of time, that he may redeem the children of men from the fall. And because that they are redeemed from the fall they have become free forever, knowing good from evil; to act for themselves and not to be acted upon, save it be by the punishment of the law at the great and last day, according to the commandments which God hath given.

עַל כֵּן בְּנֵי הָאָדָם חֲפְשִׁיִּים בְּבָשָׂר; וְכָל אֲשֶׁר  
צָרִיד לָאָדָם, נִתֵּן לוֹ. וְהֵם חֲפְשִׁיִּים לְבָחֹר  
בְּחֻפְשׁ וְחַיֵּי עוֹלָם עַל יְדֵי הַמְּתוֹךְ הַגְּדוֹל אֲשֶׁר  
לְכָלֵל הָאָדָם, אוֹ לְבָחֹר שְׂבִיָּה וּמָוֶת כְּפִי שְׂבִיָּה  
הַשָּׁטָן וְכֹחֹ; כִּי מִבְּקֹשׁ הוּא לַעֲשׂוֹת אֶת כָּלֵל  
הָאָדָם אֲמֻלִּים כְּמוֹתוֹ.

27 Wherefore, men are free according to the flesh; and all things are given them which are expedient unto man. And they are free to choose liberty and eternal life, through the great Mediator of all men, or to choose captivity and death, according to the captivity and power of the devil; for he seeketh that all men might be miserable like unto himself.

וְעַתָּה, בְּנֵי, רְצוּנִי כִּי תִבְטִיּוּ אֶל הַמְּתוֹךְ הַגְּדוֹל  
וְתִקְשִׁיבוּ לְמִצְוֹתָיו הַגְּדוֹלוֹת; וְתִהְיוּ נֶאֱמָנִים  
לְדִבְרֵי, וְתִבְחָרוּ בְּחַיֵּי עוֹלָם, כַּחֲפִצַּי רוּחַ קֹדֶשׁ.

28 And now, my sons, I would that ye should look to the great Mediator, and hearken unto his great commandments; and be faithful unto his words, and choose eternal life, according to the will of his Holy Spirit;

וְאַל תִּבְחָרוּ בְּמוֹת נֶפֶשׁ, כְּפִי יֵצֵר הַבָּשָׂר  
וְהָרַע אֲשֶׁר בּוֹ. הַמְּחַזֵּק אֶת רוּחַ הַשָּׁטָן  
לְקַחַת שְׂבִי, לְהוֹרִידְכֶם שְׂאוּלָה, לְמַעַן  
יִשְׁלַט בְּכֶם בְּמַלְכוּתוֹ.

29 And not choose eternal death, according to the will of the flesh and the evil which is therein, which giveth the spirit of the devil power to captivate, to bring you down to hell, that he may reign over you in his own kingdom.

הִנֵּה דִבַּרְתִּי דְּבָרִים מְעַטִּים אֵלֶּה, בְּנֵי, אֶל  
כָּלְכֶם, בְּאַחֲרִית יְמֵי מִבְּחָנִי; בְּחָרְתִּי בַּחֲלֶק

30 I have spoken these few words unto you all, my sons, in the last days of my probation; and I have chosen the good part, according to the words

הטוב, כְּדָבַר הַנְּבִיא. וְכָל תְּכַלִּיתִי הִיא שְׁלוֹם  
נַפְשׁוֹתֵיכֶם לָעַד. אָמֵן.

of the prophet. And I have none other object save it be the everlasting  
welfare of your souls. Amen.

## ג

## 3

וְעַתָּה, יוֹסֵף, בֶּן זְקוּנִי, אֵלֶיךָ אֲדַבֵּר. נוֹלַדְתָּ  
בְּמִדְבָּר תְּלָאוֹתִי; אָכֵן בַּעַת מְלָאָה סָאת יְגוֹנִי  
לִלְדָה אוֹתְךָ אִמִּי.

1 And now I speak unto you, Joseph, my last-born. Thou wast born  
in the wilderness of mine afflictions; yea, in the days of my greatest  
sorrow did thy mother bear thee.

יִקְדֹּשׁ נָא יְהוָה אֶת הָאָרֶץ הַזֹּאת אִף לָךְ;  
מִיֵּטֶב הָאָרֶץ הִיא לְנַחֲלָתְךָ וּלְנַחֲלַת זֶרְעֶךָ עִם  
אֲחִיךָ, לְבִטְחָה עַד עוֹלָם, אִם אַף תִּשְׁמְרוּ אֶת  
מִצְוֹת קְדוֹשׁ יִשְׂרָאֵל.

2 And may the Lord consecrate also unto thee this land, which is a most  
precious land, for thine inheritance and the inheritance of thy seed  
with thy brethren, for thy security forever, if it so be that ye shall keep  
the commandments of the Holy One of Israel.

אָכֵן, יוֹסֵף, בֶּן זְקוּנִי, אֲשֶׁר הוֹצֵאתִיךָ מִמִּדְבָּר  
תְּלָאוֹתִי, יִבְרַכְךָ יְהוָה לְעוֹלָם, כִּי לֹא יֵאבֹד  
זֶרְעֶךָ עַד כָּלֹתָם.

3 And now, Joseph, my last-born, whom I have brought out of the  
wilderness of mine afflictions, may the Lord bless thee forever, for thy  
seed shall not utterly be destroyed.

כִּי יוֹצֵא חֲלָצִי אֶתְּךָ, וְאֲנִי צָאֲצָא יוֹסֵף, אֲשֶׁר  
הוֹבָא לְמִצְרַיִם בְּשִׁבְי. וְגִדּוּלִים דְּבָרֵי הַבְּרִיתוֹת  
אֲשֶׁר כָּרַת יְהוָה לְיוֹסֵף.

4 For behold, thou art the fruit of my loins; and I am a descendant  
of Joseph who was carried captive into Egypt. And great were the  
covenants of the Lord which he made unto Joseph.

וְיוֹסֵף אָכֵן חָזָה אֶת יוֹמָנוּ. וְיְהוָה אָמַר לוֹ  
כִּי מִחֲלָצִיו יָקִים צֶמַח צְדִיק לְבֵית יִשְׂרָאֵל;  
לֹא הַמָּשִׁיחַ, כִּי אִם עֵנָף אֲשֶׁר יִגְדֵּעַ; אַךְ  
הוּא יִזְכָּר בְּדִבְרֵי בְרִיתוֹת יְהוָה, כִּי הַמָּשִׁיחַ  
יִתְגַּלֶּה לָהֶם בְּאַחֲרִית הַיָּמִים, בְּרוּחַ גְּבוּרָה,  
לְהוֹצִיאֵם מִחֹשֶׁךְ לְאוֹר; אָכֵן, מֵאַפְלַת  
סִתְרִים וּמִשְׁכְּבָה לְחֵרוֹת.

5 Wherefore, Joseph truly saw our day. And he obtained a promise of  
the Lord, that out of the fruit of his loins the Lord God would raise  
up a righteous branch unto the house of Israel; not the Messiah, but a  
branch which was to be broken off, nevertheless, to be remembered in  
the covenants of the Lord that the Messiah should be made manifest  
unto them in the latter days, in the spirit of power, unto the bringing of  
them out of darkness unto light—yea, out of hidden darkness and out  
of captivity unto freedom.

כִּי אָמַת הַעִיד יוֹסֵף בְּאָמְרוֹ: חוֹזֶה יָקִים יְהוָה  
אֱלֹהֵי, וְהוּא יִהְיֶה חוֹזֶה נִבְחָר לְיוֹצֵאִי חֲלָצִי.

6 For Joseph truly testified, saying: A seer shall the Lord my God raise  
up, who shall be a choice seer unto the fruit of my loins.

אָכֵן אָמַר יוֹסֵף: כֹּה אָמַר לִי יְהוָה: חוֹזֶה  
נִבְחָר אָקִים מִיוֹצְאֵי חֲלָצִיךָ, וְגִדּוּל יִהְיֶה  
כְּבוֹדוֹ בֵּין צָאֲצָאֶיךָ. וְאַצְוָהוּ לַעֲשׂוֹת מַעֲשֶׂה  
לְמַעַן יוֹצְאֵי חֲלָצִיךָ, אֲחִיךָ, אֲשֶׁר רַב יִהְיֶה  
עִרְכּוֹ לָהֶם, וְהוּא לְהוֹדִיעֵם אֶת דְּבָרֵי  
הַבְּרִיתוֹת אֲשֶׁר כָּרַתִּי עִם אֲבוֹתֶיךָ.

7 Yea, Joseph truly said: Thus saith the Lord unto me: A choice seer will  
I raise up out of the fruit of thy loins; and he shall be esteemed highly  
among the fruit of thy loins. And unto him will I give commandment  
that he shall do a work for the fruit of thy loins, his brethren, which  
shall be of great worth unto them, even to the bringing of them to the  
knowledge of the covenants which I have made with thy fathers.

וְאַצְוָהוּ לְחַדֵּל מִכָּל מַעֲשֶׂה, זֹלַת אֲשֶׁר אֲצִוְהוּ.  
וְאֶגְדִּילְהוּ בְּעֵינַי, כִּי אֶת מְלָאכְתִּי יַעֲשֶׂה.

8 And I will give unto him a commandment that he shall do none other  
work, save the work which I shall command him. And I will make him  
great in mine eyes; for he shall do my work.

- 9 And he shall be great like unto Moses, whom I have said I would raise up unto you, to deliver my people, O house of Israel.
- 10 And Moses will I raise up, to deliver thy people out of the land of Egypt.
- 11 But a seer will I raise up out of the fruit of thy loins; and unto him will I give power to bring forth my word unto the seed of thy loins—and not to the bringing forth my word only, saith the Lord, but to the convincing them of my word, which shall have already gone forth among them.
- 12 Wherefore, the fruit of thy loins shall write; and the fruit of the loins of Judah shall write; and that which shall be written by the fruit of thy loins, and also that which shall be written by the fruit of the loins of Judah, shall grow together, unto the confounding of false doctrines and laying down of contentions, and establishing peace among the fruit of thy loins, and bringing them to the knowledge of their fathers in the latter days, and also to the knowledge of my covenants, saith the Lord.
- 13 And out of weakness he shall be made strong, in that day when my work shall commence among all my people, unto the restoring thee, O house of Israel, saith the Lord.
- 14 And thus prophesied Joseph, saying: Behold, that seer will the Lord bless; and they that seek to destroy him shall be confounded; for this promise, which I have obtained of the Lord, of the fruit of my loins, shall be fulfilled. Behold, I am sure of the fulfilling of this promise;
- 15 And his name shall be called after me; and it shall be after the name of his father. And he shall be like unto me; for the thing, which the Lord shall bring forth by his hand, by the power of the Lord shall bring my people unto salvation.
- 16 Yea, thus prophesied Joseph: I am sure of this thing, even as I am sure of the promise of Moses; for the Lord hath said unto me, I will preserve thy seed forever.
- 17 And the Lord hath said: I will raise up a Moses; and I will give power unto him in a rod; and I will give judgment unto him in writing. Yet I will not loose his tongue, that he shall speak much, for I will not make him mighty in speaking. But I will write unto him my law, by the finger of mine own hand; and I will make a spokesman for him.
- 18 And the Lord said unto me also: I will raise up unto the fruit of thy loins; and I will make for him a spokesman. And I, behold, I will give
- גְּדוֹל יִהְיֶה כַּמֹּשֶׁה, אֲשֶׁר אָמַרְתִּי כִּי אֶקְיְמָהוּ  
לָכֶם, לְהַצִּיל אֶת עַמִּי, בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל.
- וְאֵת מֹשֶׁה אֶקְיֵם לְהַצִּיל אֶת עַמְּךָ  
מֵאֶרֶץ מִצְרַיִם.
- אֲךָ חוּזָה אֶקְיֵם מִחֲלָצֶיךָ; וְאֵתָּן לוֹ כֹּחַ לְהַבִּיא  
אֶת דְּבָרֵי לְזַרַע חֲלָצֶיךָ, וְלֹא לְמַעַן הַבִּיא אֶת  
דְּבָרֵי בְלָבָד, כִּי אִם לְהוֹכִיחֵם אֲשֶׁר דְּבָרֵי אָמַת  
הוּא, אֲשֶׁר כָּבַר יָצָא בֵּינֵיהֶם, נְאוּם יְהוָה.
- עַל כֵּן, יוֹצֵא חֲלָצֶיךָ יִכְתֹּב, וְיוֹצֵא חֲלָצֵי יְהוּדָה  
יִכְתֹּב; וְהַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר יִכְתְּבוּ יִצְמָחוּ יַחְדָּו  
לְכָל־תּוֹרוֹת כָּזָב וּלְשִׁכָּף מְרִיבוֹת, וּלְשִׁים  
שָׁלוֹם בֵּין יוֹצְאֵי חֲלָצֶיךָ, וּלְהוֹדִיעֵם בְּאַחֲרִית  
הַיָּמִים עַל אוֹדוֹת אֲבוֹתֵיהֶם וְעַל דְּבָרֵי  
בְּרִיתוֹתֵי אֲשֶׁר כָּרַתִּי, נְאוּם יְהוָה.
- וּמִרְפוּיֹן הוּא יִתְחַזַּק בְּיוֹם הַהוּא, נְאוּם יְהוָה,  
אֲשֶׁר תַּחֲל מְלֹאכְתִּי בְּכָל עַמִּי, לְמַעַן תָּשׁוּב  
לְאַיְתְּךָ, בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל!
- וְזֶה דְּבַר נְבוּאָת יוֹסֵף לֵאמֹר: אֲכֹן, יִבְרָךְ  
יְהוָה אֶת הַחוּזָה הַהוּא, וְהַמְבַקְשִׁים לְהַשְׁמִידוֹ  
יִכָּלְמוּ; כִּי הֵקֵם יָקוֹם דְּבַר יְהוָה אֵלַי עַל אוֹדוֹת  
יוֹצֵא חֲלָצֵי. הִנֵּה בְּטַחְתִּי כִּי יָקוֹם הַדְּבָר הַזֶּה.
- וְשֵׁם הַחוּזָה יִקְרָא בְּשִׁמִּי, וְיִהְיֶה כְּשֵׁם אָבִיו;  
וְהוּא יִדְמָה לִּי, כִּי אֶת אֲשֶׁר יוֹצִיא יְהוָה בְּיָדוֹ  
וּבְכַחוֹ יָבִיא אֶת עַמִּי אֶל יְשׁוּעָתָם.
- אֲכֹן, זֹאת נְבוּאָת יוֹסֵף לֵאמֹר: בְּטוֹחַ אֲנִי  
בְּדְבָר הַזֶּה, כִּבְטַחְתִּי בְּדְבַר יְהוָה עַל מֹשֶׁה; כִּי  
כֵּן אָמַר יְהוָה אֵלַי: אֲנַצֵּר אֶת זֶרְעֶךָ עַד עוֹלָם.
- וְאָמַר יְהוָה: אֲנֹכִי אֶקְיֵם אֶת מֹשֶׁה; וְאֵתָּן לוֹ  
עֹז בַּמֹּשֶׁה, וְאֵתָּן לוֹ בִּנְיָה לְכַתֵּב. אֲךָ לֹא אֶתִּיר  
אֶת לְשׁוֹנוֹ לְהַרְבוֹת דְּבוּר, כִּי לֹא אֶעֱשֶׂנוּ גְבוּר  
לְשׁוֹן. אֲךָ אֶת תּוֹרָתִי אֶכְתֹּב לוֹ בְּמוֹ אֶצְבְּעִי,  
וְדוֹבַר אֵתָּן לְמַעַנּוֹ.
- וְיְהוָה הוֹסִיף לֵאמֹר אֵלַי: וְאֲנֹכִי אֶקְיֵם בְּעֶבֶר  
יוֹצְאֵי חֲלָצֶיךָ, וְאֵתָּן לוֹ דּוֹבַר; וְאֶשְׁמִי לְכַתֵּב



את כתבי יוצא חלציה, בעבור יוצאי חלציה;  
והשמיע הדובר, יוצא חלציה, את הכתוב.

unto him that he shall write the writing of the fruit of thy loins, unto  
the fruit of thy loins; and the spokesman of thy loins shall declare it.

והדברים אשר יכתב הם המועילים  
בחכמתי אשר יצאו אל יוצאי חלציה.  
ודמה כי קראו יוצאי חלציה אליהם מן  
העפר, כי ידעתי את אמונתם.

19 And the words which he shall write shall be the words which are  
expedient in my wisdom should go forth unto the fruit of thy loins.  
And it shall be as if the fruit of thy loins had cried unto them from the  
dust; for I know their faith.

אכן, קראו הם מן העפר אל אחיהם להנחם  
מחטא, אף פעבר דורות רבים עליהם;  
ויעקתם תצא על פי פשטות דבריהם.

20 And they shall cry from the dust; yea, even repentance unto their  
brethren, even after many generations have gone by them. And it shall  
come to pass that their cry shall go, even according to the simpleness  
of their words.

ומפני אמונתם יצאו דבריהם מפי אל  
אחיהם, יוצאי חלציה; ובאמונתם הפכתי את  
רפיון דבריהם לחזק, למען זכרי את בריתי  
אשר כרתי לאבותי.

21 Because of their faith their words shall proceed forth out of my mouth  
unto their brethren who are the fruit of thy loins; and the weakness of  
their words will I make strong in their faith, unto the remembering of  
my covenant which I made unto thy fathers.

והנה, בני יוסף, בדברים האלה  
נבא אבי מקדם.

22 And now, behold, my son Joseph, after this manner did my father of  
old prophesy.

לכן, ברוך אתה מפני הברית הזאת; ולא  
יאבדו צאצאיה, כי ישמעו לדברי הספר.

23 Wherefore, because of this covenant thou art blessed; for thy seed shall  
not be destroyed, for they shall hearken unto the words of the book.

ויקום איש חיל ביניהם, אשר ירבה לעשות  
טוב, בדבר שפתיים ובמעשה; כלי ביד אלהים,  
באמונה יתרה, לעשות פלאים כבירים ואת  
המעשה הגדול בעיני אלהים, לכונו השבה  
גדולה לבית ישראל ולזרע אחיה.

24 And there shall rise up one mighty among them, who shall do much  
good, both in word and in deed, being an instrument in the hands of  
God, with exceeding faith, to work mighty wonders, and do that thing  
which is great in the sight of God, unto the bringing to pass much  
restoration unto the house of Israel, and unto the seed of thy brethren.

ברוך אתה, יוסף. קטן אתה, לכן שמע בקול  
אחיה נפי, ויעשה לך כאשר דברתי. זכר את  
דברי אבי הגווע. אמן.

25 And now, blessed art thou, Joseph. Behold, thou art little; wherefore  
hearken unto the words of thy brother, Nephi, and it shall be done unto  
thee even according to the words which I have spoken. Remember the  
words of thy dying father. Amen.

## ד

## 4

ועתה, אני, נפי, אדבר על אודות  
הנבואות אשר עליהן דבר אבי, בדבר  
יוסף אשר נלקח מצרימה.

1 And now, I, Nephi, speak concerning the prophecies of which my  
father hath spoken, concerning Joseph, who was carried into Egypt.

כי יוסף אכן נבא על כל זרעו; והנבואות אשר  
כתב, אין רבות אשר גדולות מהן. והוא נבא  
עלינו, ועל דורותינו אשר לבוא, וכתובים  
המה על גבי לוחות נחשת הקלל.

2 For behold, he truly prophesied concerning all his seed. And the  
prophecies which he wrote, there are not many greater. And he  
prophesied concerning us, and our future generations; and they are  
written upon the plates of brass.



- וְהָיָה כְּכֹלֹת אָבִי לְדַבֵּר עַל נְבוֹאוֹת יוֹסֵף, הוּא קָרָא לְבָנָי לְמֹן וּלְבָנוֹתָיו וְאָמַר לָהֶם: בְּנֵי וּבָנוֹתִי, אֲשֶׁר בְּנֵי בְכוּרִי וּבָנוֹתָיו אַתֶּם, אֲחַפֵּץ כִּי תִאֲזִינוּ לְדִבְרִי.
- כִּי כֹה אָמַר יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים: אִם תִּשְׁמְרוּ אֶת מִצְוֹתַי, תַּעֲשׂוּ חֵיל בְּאֶרֶץ, וְאִם לֹא תִשְׁמְרוּ אֶת מִצְוֹתַי, תִּכָּרְתוּ מִלִּפְנֵי.
- אָכֵן, בְּנֵי וּבָנוֹתִי, לֹא תוּכַל נַפְשִׁי לָרֶדֶת אֶל קִבְרִי בְּלִי תַת לָכֶם בְּרָכָה; יָדַעְתִּי כִּי אִם תִּגְדְּלוּ בַדֶּרֶךְ הַנִּכְבָּה, לֹא תִסּוּרוּ מִמֶּנָּה.
- וְהָיָה אִם תִּבּוֹא עֲלֵיכֶם קָלָלָה, הִנֵּה בְרָכְתִּי נְתוּנָה לָכֶם, וְקָלָלְתֶּם תוֹסֵר מִכֶּם וְתִבּוֹא עַל רֹאשׁ הוֹרֵיכֶם.
- לָכֵן, מִפְּנֵי בְרָכְתִּי לֹא יִתְנַכֵּם יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים כִּי תֵאבְדוּ; אֲךָ הוּא יִרְחַם אֶתְכֶם וְאֶת זֶרְעְכֶם עַד עוֹלָם.
- וְהָיָה כְּכֹלֹת אָבִי לְדַבֵּר אֶל בְּנֵי לְמֹן וְאֶל בָּנוֹתָיו, הוּא צִוָּה לְהֵבִיא לִפְנֵיו אֶת בְּנֵי לְמוּאֵל וְאֶת בָּנוֹתָיו.
- וְהוּא דִּבֶּר אֲלֵיהֶם לֵאמֹר: בְּנֵי וּבָנוֹתִי, אֲשֶׁר בְּנֵי וּבָנוֹת בְּנֵי הַשֵּׁנִי, הִנֵּה אֲבָרְכְכֶם בְּבָרָכָה אֲשֶׁר בְּרָכְתִּי אֶת בְּנֵי לְמֹן וּבָנוֹתָיו; עַל כֵּן לֹא תִשְׁמְדוּ עַד כְּלֹוֹתְכֶם, כִּי בְרוּךְ יְהִי זֶרְעְכֶם בְּאַחֲרִית הַיָּמִים.
- וְהָיָה כְּכֹלֹת אָבִי לְדַבֵּר אֲלֵיהֶם, הוּא דִּבֶּר אֶל בְּנֵי יִשְׁמַעֵאל, אָכֵן, לְכָל בְּנֵי בֵיתוֹ.
- וּכְכֹלֹתוֹ לְדַבֵּר אֲלֵיהֶם, הוּא דִּבֶּר אֶל שָׁם לֵאמֹר: בְּרוּךְ אַתָּה וּבְרוּךְ זֶרְעֲךָ, כִּי תִירַשׁ אֶת הָאָרֶץ כְּאַחִיד נָפִי; וְזֶרְעֲךָ יִמְנָה עִם זֶרְעוֹ, וְהָיִיתָ כְּאַחִיד, וְזֶרְעֲךָ כְּזֶרְעוֹ; וּבְרוּךְ תִּהְיֶה כָּל יְמֶיךָ.
- וְהָיָה אַחֵר דִּבֶּר אָבִי, לְחִי, אֶל כָּל בְּנֵי בֵיתוֹ, עַל פִּי רִגְשִׁי לִבּוֹ וּקְרוֹחַ יְהוָה אֲשֶׁר בּוֹ, הוּא בָּא בַיָּמִים. וְהוּא מָת וְנִקְבֹּר.
- 3 Wherefore, after my father had made an end of speaking concerning the prophecies of Joseph, he called the children of Laman, his sons, and his daughters, and said unto them: Behold, my sons, and my daughters, who are the sons and the daughters of my first-born, I would that ye should give ear unto my words.
- 4 For the Lord God hath said that: Inasmuch as ye shall keep my commandments ye shall prosper in the land; and inasmuch as ye will not keep my commandments ye shall be cut off from my presence.
- 5 But behold, my sons and my daughters, I cannot go down to my grave save I should leave a blessing upon you; for behold, I know that if ye are brought up in the way ye should go ye will not depart from it.
- 6 Wherefore, if ye are cursed, behold, I leave my blessing upon you, that the cursing may be taken from you and be answered upon the heads of your parents.
- 7 Wherefore, because of my blessing the Lord God will not suffer that ye shall perish; wherefore, he will be merciful unto you and unto your seed forever.
- 8 And it came to pass that after my father had made an end of speaking to the sons and daughters of Laman, he caused the sons and daughters of Lemuel to be brought before him.
- 9 And he spake unto them, saying: Behold, my sons and my daughters, who are the sons and the daughters of my second son; behold I leave unto you the same blessing which I left unto the sons and daughters of Laman; wherefore, thou shalt not utterly be destroyed; but in the end thy seed shall be blessed.
- 10 And it came to pass that when my father had made an end of speaking unto them, behold, he spake unto the sons of Ishmael, yea, and even all his household.
- 11 And after he had made an end of speaking unto them, he spake unto Sam, saying: Blessed art thou, and thy seed; for thou shall inherit the land like unto thy brother Nephi. And thy seed shall be numbered with his seed; and thou shalt be even like unto thy brother, and thy seed like unto his seed; and thou shalt be blessed in all thy days.
- 12 And it came to pass after my father, Lehi, had spoken unto all his household, according to the feelings of his heart and the Spirit of the Lord which was in him, he waxed old. And it came to pass that he died, and was buried.

- 13 And it came to pass that not many days after his death, Laman and Lemuel and the sons of Ishmael were angry with me because of the admonitions of the Lord.
- 14 For I, Nephi, was constrained to speak unto them, according to his word; for I had spoken many things unto them, and also my father, before his death; many of which sayings are written upon mine other plates; for a more history part are written upon mine other plates.
- 15 And upon these I write the things of my soul, and many of the scriptures which are engraven upon the plates of brass. For my soul delighteth in the scriptures, and my heart pondereth them, and writeth them for the learning and the profit of my children.
- 16 Behold, my soul delighteth in the things of the Lord; and my heart pondereth continually upon the things which I have seen and heard.
- 17 Nevertheless, notwithstanding the great goodness of the Lord, in showing me his great and marvelous works, my heart exclaimeth: O wretched man that I am! Yea, my heart sorroweth because of my flesh; my soul grieveth because of mine iniquities.
- 18 I am encompassed about, because of the temptations and the sins which do so easily beset me.
- 19 And when I desire to rejoice, my heart groaneth because of my sins; nevertheless, I know in whom I have trusted.
- 20 My God hath been my support; he hath led me through mine afflictions in the wilderness; and he hath preserved me upon the waters of the great deep.
- 21 He hath filled me with his love, even unto the consuming of my flesh.
- 22 He hath confounded mine enemies, unto the causing of them to quake before me.
- 23 Behold, he hath heard my cry by day, and he hath given me knowledge by visions in the nighttime.
- 24 And by day have I waxed bold in mighty prayer before him; yea, my voice have I sent up on high; and angels came down and ministered unto me.
- וְהָיָה אַךְ יָמִים אֲחֵדִים מִיּוֹם מוֹת אָבִי, רָגְזוּ עָלַי לָמֶן וְלִמְוֹאֵל וּבְנֵי יִשְׁמָעֵאל מִפְּנֵי תוֹכְחוֹת יְהוָה.
- כִּי אֲנִי, נְפִי, אֶלְצָתִי לְדַבֵּר אֲלֵיהֶם עַל פִּי דְבָרֵי יְהוָה; וְהִרְבֵּיתִי דְבַר אֲלֵיהֶם כַּאֲשֶׁר עָשָׂה אָבִי לִפְנֵי מוֹתוֹ; רַבִּים מִן הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה כְּתוּבִים עַל לוחותֵי הַנוֹסְפִים; כִּי עַל גְּבִיָּהֶם רְשׁוּמִים רַב דְּבָרֵי יָמִינוּ.
- וְעַל גְּבִי הַלּוּחוֹת הָאֵלֶּה אֶכְתֹּב אֶת דְּבָרֵי נַפְשִׁי, וְכֵן כְּתָבִי מִקְרָא רַבִּים אֲשֶׁר חֲרוּטִים עַל לוחות נְחֹשֶׁת הַקָּלֵל; כִּי כְתָבִי הַמִּקְרָא הֵם עֲנֵג נַפְשִׁי וּבְהֵם הוֹגָה לִבִּי, וְאֲנִי אֶכְתֹּבָם לְלִמּוּד אֶת בְּנֵי וְלַהֲוֵעֵלָם.
- הִנֵּה מִתְעַנֶּגֶת נַפְשִׁי בְּדְבָרֵי יְהוָה, וְלִבִּי הוֹגָה תָּמִיד בְּדְבָרִים אֲשֶׁר רָאִיתִי וְשָׁמַעְתִּי.
- אוּלָּם, אַךְ כִּי הֶעֱתִיר עָלַי יְהוָה אֶת רַב טוֹבוֹ, בְּהִרְאוֹתָו לִי אֶת מַעֲשָׂיו הַגְּדוֹלִים וְהַנִּפְלְאִים, יִקְרָא לִבִּי בְּקוֹל: הוֹי, אִמְלֵל אֲשֶׁר כְּמוֹנִי! לִבִּי דוֹאֵב מִפְּנֵי בְשָׁרִי; נַפְשִׁי עֲצוּבָה מִפְּנֵי עֲוֹנוֹתַי.
- הֲנִי מְכֻתָּר מִפְּנֵי הַפְּתוּיִים וְהַחֲטָאִים הַצָּרִים עָלַי עַל נִקְלָה.
- בְּרָצוֹתִי לְשִׂמְחָה נֶאֱנַק לִבִּי מִפְּנֵי חֲטָאִי, אוּלָּם יִדְעָתִי מִי הוּא מִבְּטָחִי.
- אֱלֹהִים מִשְׁעֲנָתִי. הוּא נִהְלֵנִי בְּתַלְאֻתַי בְּמִדְבָּר, וְהוּא שָׁמְרָנִי עַל פְּנֵי מִיָּמִי תְהוֹם הַגְּדוֹלָה.
- הוּא מִלְּאָנִי בְּאַהֲבָתוֹ עַד כְּלוֹת בְּשָׁרִי.
- הוּא הִכְלִים אֶת אוֹיְבֵי, עַד אֲשֶׁר רָעְדוּ מִפְּנֵי.
- הוּא שָׁמַע צַעֲקָתִי יוֹמָם, וְהוֹדִיעָנִי בַּחֲזוֹנוֹת לַיְלָה.
- יוֹמָם הִתְאַמְצָתִי לְהַעֲתִיר לִפְנֵי תַפְלָה עֲזָה; קוֹלִי בְּמָרוֹם הִשְׁמַעְתִּי, וּמַלְאָכִים יָרְדוּ וְשִׁרְתוּנִי.

- 25 ועל כנפי רוחו נשא גופי על הרים רמים  
מאד, ועיני ראו גדולות, אף גדולות מהשגת  
אדם; על כן צויתי כי לא אכתבן.
- 26 ואם גדולות כאלה אכן ראיתי, אם יהוה,  
במחילת כבודו לבני האדם יפקדם ברחמי  
כה רבים, מדוע יבך לבי ונפשי תתמהמה  
בעמק הבכא, ובשרי יכלה וכחי ירפה  
מפני תלאותי?
- 27 ומדוע אכנע לחטא, מפני בשרי? מדוע אתן  
יד לפתויים לתת מקום בלבי למרשע ההוא  
לאבד את שלומי ולצרר את נפשי? מדוע  
אכעס מפני אויבי?
- 28 עורי נפשי! אל תוסיפי שקע בחטא. גילה,  
לבי, ואל תוסף תת מקום לאויב נפשי.
- 29 אל תרגז עוד מפני אויבי. אל נא תרפה כחי  
מפני תלאותי.
- 30 עלי, לבי, וקרא אל יהוה לאמר:  
אהללה, יהוה, לעולם; נפשי תגל בך,  
אלהי וצור ישועתי.
- 31 אנא, יהוה, גאל את נפשי! פדני מיד אויבי!  
שלח בי חיל בבוא עלי מראה חסא!
- 32 לו ינעלו תמיד שערי שאול לפני, כי לבי  
נשבר ורוחי נכאה! יהוה, אל נא תנעל שערי  
צדקתך בפני, למען אלה בעמק שפלה ולא  
אסור מדרך מישרים!
- 33 אנא, יהוה, עטפני במעיל צדקתך! שימה לי,  
יהוה, דרך להמלט מאויבי! הישירה נתיבי  
לפני! אל נא תתן אבן נגף על דרכי. פנה נא  
את דרכי לפני ואל תגדרנה, אף חסם את  
דרכי אויבי.
- 34 יהוה, בך בטחתי ובה אבטח לעולם. לא  
אשים מבטחי בזרוע בשר, כי ידעתי אשר  
ארור הבוטח בזרוע בשר. אכן ארור הוא  
אשר יבטח באדם ושם את הבשר ורועו.
- And upon the wings of his Spirit hath my body been carried away upon exceedingly high mountains. And mine eyes have beheld great things, yea, even too great for man; therefore I was bidden that I should not write them.
- O then, if I have seen so great things, if the Lord in his condescension unto the children of men hath visited men in so much mercy, why should my heart weep and my soul linger in the valley of sorrow, and my flesh waste away, and my strength slacken, because of mine afflictions?
- And why should I yield to sin, because of my flesh? Yea, why should I give way to temptations, that the evil one have place in my heart to destroy my peace and afflict my soul? Why am I angry because of mine enemy?
- Awake, my soul! No longer droop in sin. Rejoice, O my heart, and give place no more for the enemy of my soul.
- Do not anger again because of mine enemies. Do not slacken my strength because of mine afflictions.
- Rejoice, O my heart, and cry unto the Lord, and say: O Lord, I will praise thee forever; yea, my soul will rejoice in thee, my God, and the rock of my salvation.
- O Lord, wilt thou redeem my soul? Wilt thou deliver me out of the hands of mine enemies? Wilt thou make me that I may shake at the appearance of sin?
- May the gates of hell be shut continually before me, because that my heart is broken and my spirit is contrite! O Lord, wilt thou not shut the gates of thy righteousness before me, that I may walk in the path of the low valley, that I may be strict in the plain road!
- O Lord, wilt thou encircle me around in the robe of thy righteousness! O Lord, wilt thou make a way for mine escape before mine enemies! Wilt thou make my path straight before me! Wilt thou not place a stumbling block in my way—but that thou wouldst clear my way before me, and hedge not up my way, but the ways of mine enemy.
- O Lord, I have trusted in thee, and I will trust in thee forever. I will not put my trust in the arm of flesh; for I know that cursed is he that putteth his trust in the arm of flesh. Yea, cursed is he that putteth his trust in man or maketh flesh his arm.

אֲכֹן, יָדַעְתִּי כִּי הָעֵנֶק יַעֲנִיק אֱלֹהִים לְאִשְׁרִי  
יִבְקֶשׁ. אֲכֹן, יִתֵּן לִי אֱלֹהִי, אִם לֹא בְעוֹלָה  
אֲבַקֶּשׁ; עַל כֵּן אֶשָּׂא קוֹלִי אֵלֶיךָ, אֶקְרָא אֵלֶיךָ,  
אֱלֹהִי, צוּר צִדְקָתִי. קוֹלִי יַעֲלֶה אֵלֶיךָ תָּמִיד,  
צוּרִי וְאֱלֹהִי, אֱלֹהִי עַד. אָמֵן.

35 Yea, I know that God will give liberally to him that asketh. Yea, my God will give me, if I ask not amiss; therefore I will lift up my voice unto thee; yea, I will cry unto thee, my God, the rock of my righteousness. Behold, my voice shall forever ascend up unto thee, my rock and mine everlasting God. Amen.

## ה

## 5

וְאֲנִי, נְפִי, הִרְבֵּיתִי לְקַרְא אֶל יְהוָה אֱלֹהִי מִפְּנֵי  
כַּעַס אַחִי.

1 Behold, it came to pass that I, Nephi, did cry much unto the Lord my God, because of the anger of my brethren.

אֲךָ כַּעַס גָּבַר עָלַי, עַד אֲשֶׁר בִּקְשׁוּ אֶת נַפְשִׁי.

2 But behold, their anger did increase against me, insomuch that they did seek to take away my life.

וְהֵם הִתְלוֹנְנוּ עָלַי לֵאמֹר: אַחֵינוּ הַצָּעִיר יִחְשָׁב  
לְמַשָּׁל בָּנוּ, וְנִסְיוֹנוֹת רַבִּים הָיוּ לָנוּ מִפְּנֵיו; לָכֵן  
הִבָּה נִהַרְגֶהוּ וְלֹא נוֹסִיף לְהִתְעַנּוֹת מִפְּנֵי דְבָרָיו.  
הֵן אֵין חֲפָצָנוּ לְהִתֵּן שְׁלִיט עָלֵינוּ; כִּי לָנוּ, הָאֲחִים  
הַבְּכִירִים, הַשְּׁלִטוֹן עַל הָעָם הַזֶּה.

3 Yea, they did murmur against me, saying: Our younger brother thinks to rule over us; and we have had much trial because of him; wherefore, now let us slay him, that we may not be afflicted more because of his words. For behold, we will not have him to be our ruler; for it belongs unto us, who are the elder brethren, to rule over this people.

וְאֲנִי לֹא כָתַבְתִּי עַל גְּבֵי הַלּוּחוֹת הָאֵלֶּה  
אֶת כָּל דְּבָרֵי תִלְוֹנָתָם עָלַי. דִּי בְּאַמְרֵי כִי  
בִקְשׁוּ אֶת נַפְשִׁי.

4 Now I do not write upon these plates all the words which they murmured against me. But it sufficeth me to say, that they did seek to take away my life.

וַיְהוֶה הַזֶּהֲיִרְנִי כִּי אֶפְרָד מֵהֶם וְאֶבְרַח אֶל  
הַיַּעְרוֹת עִם כָּל אֲשֶׁר יִחְפָּצוּ לָבוֹא עִמִּי.

5 And it came to pass that the Lord did warn me, that I, Nephi, should depart from them and flee into the wilderness, and all those who would go with me.

וְלִקְחָתִי, אֲנִי, נְפִי, אֶת מִשְׁפַּחְתִּי וְאֶת זֹרָם  
וּמִשְׁפַּחְתּוֹ וְאֶת שָׁם, אַחִי הַגָּדוֹל וּמִשְׁפַּחְתּוֹ,  
וְאֶת יַעֲקֹב וְיוֹסֵף, אַחֵי הַצָּעִירִים, וְאֶת אֲחֵיוֹתִי,  
וְכָל אֲשֶׁר חָפֵץ לָלֶכֶת עִמִּי. וְכָל הַהוֹלְכִים עִמִּי  
הָאֲמִינִים לְאִזְהָרוֹת אֱלֹהִים וְהַתְּגִלּוֹתָיו; עַל כֵּן  
שָׁמַעוּ לְדְבָרִי.

6 Wherefore, it came to pass that I, Nephi, did take my family, and also Zoram and his family, and Sam, mine elder brother and his family, and Jacob and Joseph, my younger brethren, and also my sisters, and all those who would go with me. And all those who would go with me were those who believed in the warnings and the revelations of God; wherefore, they did hearken unto my words.

וְלִקְחָנוּ אֶת אֹהֲלֵינוּ וְאֶת כָּל אֲשֶׁר יָכֻלְנוּ  
לְשֵׂאת, וְנִסְעָנוּ בַּיַּעַר יָמִים רַבִּים; וְאַחֵר נִסְעָנוּ  
יָמִים רַבִּים נָטִינוּ אֶת אֹהֲלֵינוּ.

7 And we did take our tents and whatsoever things were possible for us, and did journey in the wilderness for the space of many days. And after we had journeyed for the space of many days we did pitch our tents.

וּבְנֵי עַמִּי חָפְצוּ כִּי נִקְרָא אֶת שֵׁם הַמָּקוֹם  
הַהוּא נְפִי, וְלָכֵן קִרְאָנוּ אֶת שְׁמוֹ נְפִי.

8 And my people would that we should call the name of the place Nephi; wherefore, we did call it Nephi.

וְכָל אֲשֶׁר הָיוּ עִמִּי קָבְלוּ עָלֵיהֶם לְהִקְרָא בְּשֵׁם  
עִם נְפִי.

9 And all those who were with me did take upon them to call themselves the people of Nephi.

- 10 And we did observe to keep the judgments, and the statutes, and the commandments of the Lord in all things according to the law of Moses.
- וְשָׁמְרָנוּ אֶת מִשְׁפָּטֵי יְהוָה וְחֻקֵּיו וּמִצְוֹתָיו  
בְּכָל דְּבָר, עַל פִּי תוֹרַת מֹשֶׁה.
- 11 And the Lord was with us; and we did prosper exceedingly; for we did sow seed, and we did reap again in abundance. And we began to raise flocks, and herds, and animals of every kind.
- וַיְהוֹה הָיָה עִמָּנוּ, וְרִבְתָּהּ הַצִּלְחָתָנוּ עַד מְאֹד;  
כִּי זָרַעְנוּ זֶרַע, וְקָצְרָנוּ שֹׁפַע, וְגִדְלָנוּ עֲדָרֵי צֹאן  
וּבָקָר וְכָל מִינֵי בְהֵמָה.
- 12 And I, Nephi, had also brought the records which were engraven upon the plates of brass; and also the ball, or compass, which was prepared for my father by the hand of the Lord, according to that which is written.
- וְאֲנִי, נְפִי, הֵבֵאתִי עִמִּי אֶת הַכְּתָבִים הַחֲרוּטִים  
עַל לוחֹת נְחֹשֶׁת הַקָּלֵל וְכֵן אֶת הַכְּדֹר, אוֹ  
הַמְכֹּן, אֲשֶׁר הִכִּינָה יְד יְהוָה בְּעֶבְרֹר אָבִי, כְּכַתּוּב.
- 13 And it came to pass that we began to prosper exceedingly, and to multiply in the land.
- וַהֲחִלּוּנוּ לְהַצְלִיחַ מְאֹד וּלְרַבּוֹת בָּאָרֶץ.
- 14 And I, Nephi, did take the sword of Laban, and after the manner of it did make many swords, lest by any means the people who were now called Lamanites should come upon us and destroy us; for I knew their hatred towards me and my children and those who were called my people.
- וְאֲנִי, נְפִי, לָקַחְתִּי אֶת חֶרֶב לָבָן וְעָשִׂיתִי  
חֲרָבוֹת רַבּוֹת כְּמוֹהָ, פֶּן יַעֲלוּ עָלֵינוּ לְהַשְׁמִידֵנוּ  
הָאֲנָשִׁים אֲשֶׁר נִקְרְאוּ עִתָּה בְּשֵׁם לָמָנִים; כִּי  
יָדַעְתִּי אֶת שִׂנְאָתָם אֵלַי וְאֶל צְאִצְאִי, וְאֶל  
אֲשֶׁר נִקְרְאוּ עִמִּי.
- 15 And I did teach my people to build buildings, and to work in all manner of wood, and of iron, and of copper, and of brass, and of steel, and of gold, and of silver, and of precious ores, which were in great abundance.
- וְאֲנִי לִמַּדְתִּי אֶת עַמִּי לִבְנוֹת בָּתִּים וְלַעֲשׂוֹת  
כָּל מְלָאכָה עֵץ וּבְרָזָל, נְחֹשֶׁת וְנְחָשֶׁת קָלֵל,  
וּפְלָדָה וְזָהָב וְכֶסֶף וְעַפְרוֹת יָקָרוֹת, אֲשֶׁר הָיוּ  
בְּשֹׁפַע רַב.
- 16 And I, Nephi, did build a temple; and I did construct it after the manner of the temple of Solomon save it were not built of so many precious things; for they were not to be found upon the land, wherefore, it could not be built like unto Solomon's temple. But the manner of the construction was like unto the temple of Solomon; and the workmanship thereof was exceedingly fine.
- וְאֲנִי, נְפִי, בִּנִיתִי מִקְדָּשׁ וְתִבְנִיתוֹ כְּתִבְנִית  
הַהֵיכָל אֲשֶׁר לְשִׁלְמוֹה, זֹלַת בְּנִיתוֹ בְּחֻפְצֵי  
יָקָרוֹת רַבִּים, כִּי אֵלֶּה לֹא נִמְצְאוּ בָּאָרֶץ  
הַהִיא. לְכֵן לֹא נִתֵּן לִבְנוֹתוֹ כְּהֵיכָל אֲשֶׁר  
לְשִׁלְמוֹה, אֲךָ תִּבְנִית בְּנִיתוֹ כְּמוֹתוֹ  
וּמְלָאכָתוֹ מְלָאכָה מְחֻשָּׁבֶת.
- 17 And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did cause my people to be industrious, and to labor with their hands.
- וְאֲנִי, נְפִי, סִבּוֹתִי בְּעַמִּי, אֲשֶׁר יִהְיוּ שׁוֹקְדִים עַל  
עֲבוֹדָתָם וְעֹמְלֵי בְּמְלָאכָת כַּפַּיִם.
- 18 And it came to pass that they would that I should be their king. But I, Nephi, was desirous that they should have no king; nevertheless, I did for them according to that which was in my power.
- וְהָיָה חֲפָצָם כִּי אֶהְיֶה מֶלֶכָם; אֲךָ אֲנִי, נְפִי,  
רָצִיתִי כִּי לֹא יִהְיֶה לָהֶם מֶלֶךְ; אוּלָם עָשִׂיתִי  
לְמַעַנָם כְּפִי כֹחִי.
- 19 And behold, the words of the Lord had been fulfilled unto my brethren, which he spake concerning them, that I should be their ruler and their teacher. Wherefore, I had been their ruler and their teacher, according to the commandments of the Lord, until the time they sought to take away my life.
- וְהִנֵּה קָם דְּבַר יְהוָה אֶל אֲחֵי, אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר  
עַל אוֹדוּתֵיהֶם, כִּי אֶהְיֶה מוֹשֵׁלָם וּמוֹרָם.  
עַל כֵּן הָיִיתִי לָהֶם מוֹשֵׁל וּמוֹרָה, עַל פִּי  
מִצְוֹת יְהוָה, עַד אֲשֶׁר בִּקְשׁוּ אֶת נַפְשִׁי.
- 20 Wherefore, the word of the Lord was fulfilled which he spake unto me, saying that: Inasmuch as they will not hearken unto thy words they
- וְהִנֵּה קָם דְּבַר יְהוָה אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר  
אֵלַי לֵאמֹר: אִם לֹא יִשְׁמְעוּ לְדִבְרִיךָ,



- יִכְרְתוּ מִלִּפְנֵי יְהוָה. וְאַכֹּן הֵם  
נִכְרְתוּ מִלִּפְנֵי.
- 21 And he had caused the cursing to come upon them, yea, even a sore cursing, because of their iniquity. For behold, they had hardened their hearts against him, that they had become like unto a flint; wherefore, as they were white, and exceedingly fair and delightsome, that they might not be enticing unto my people the Lord God did cause a skin of blackness to come upon them.
- 22 And thus saith the Lord God: I will cause that they shall be loathsome unto thy people, save they shall repent of their iniquities.
- 23 And cursed shall be the seed of him that mixeth with their seed; for they shall be cursed even with the same cursing. And the Lord spake it, and it was done.
- 24 And because of their cursing which was upon them they did become an idle people, full of mischief and subtlety, and did seek in the wilderness for beasts of prey.
- 25 And the Lord God said unto me: They shall be a scourge unto thy seed, to stir them up in remembrance of me; and inasmuch as they will not remember me, and hearken unto my words, they shall scourge them even unto destruction.
- 26 And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did consecrate Jacob and Joseph, that they should be priests and teachers over the land of my people.
- 27 And it came to pass that we lived after the manner of happiness.
- 28 And thirty years had passed away from the time we left Jerusalem.
- 29 And I, Nephi, had kept the records upon my plates, which I had made, of my people thus far.
- 30 And it came to pass that the Lord God said unto me: Make other plates; and thou shalt engraven many things upon them which are good in my sight, for the profit of thy people.
- 31 Wherefore, I, Nephi, to be obedient to the commandments of the Lord, went and made these plates upon which I have engraven these things.
- 32 And I engraved that which is pleasing unto God. And if my people are pleased with the things of God they will be pleased with mine engravings which are upon these plates.
- וַיְהוֹה הִסָּב עֲלֵיהֶם אֶת הַקְּלָלָה; אַכֹּן, מֵאַרְהָ קֶשֶׁה, מִפְּנֵי עֲוֹנָם, כִּי הִקְשׁוּ עָלָיו אֶת לִבָּם עַד אֲשֶׁר דָּמָה לְחִלְמִישׁ. וּבְהִיוֹתָם לְבָנִים וּמִרְאָם נְאֻנָּה וְעִגְגָּה עַד מְאֹד, וְלִמְעַן לֹא יִפְתּוּ אֶת עַמִּי, הִעֲטָה יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים עֲלֵיהֶם עוֹר כְּהָה.
- וְכֹה אָמַר יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים: הִנְנִי שֹׂם אוֹתָם מְאוֹסִים לְעַמִּי בְלֹתִי אִם יִנְחָמוּ וְיָשׁוּבוּ מִעֲוֹנוֹתֵיהֶם.
- וְאָרֹר יִהְיֶה זֶרַע הָאִישׁ הַמִּתְעַרֵּב בְּזֶרְעָם; מִקְּלָל יִהְיֶה בְּעֶצֶם הַקְּלָלָה הַזֹּאת. כֹּה דִבֶּר יְהוָה וְכֵן יַעֲשֶׂה.
- וּמִפְּנֵי קְלָלָתָם, אֲשֶׁר עֲלֵיהֶם, הָיוּ לְעַם עֲצֵל, מְלֵא תַחְבּוּלוֹת וְעָרְמָה; מִבְּקָשִׁים בִּיעֵר חַיּוֹת טָרֶף.
- וְאָמַר יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים אֵלַי: הֵם יִהְיוּ שׁוֹט לְזֶרְעִי לְעוֹרְרָם לְזָכַר אוֹתִי, וְהִיא אִם לֹא יִזְכְּרוּנִי וְלֹא יִשְׁמְעוּ לְדִבְרִי, יִצְלִיפוּ בָהֶם עַד כְּלוּתָם.
- וְאַנִּי, נְפִי, קִדְשֵׁתִי אֶת יַעֲקֹב וְאֶת יוֹסֵף לְהִיְוֹת כֹּהֲנִים וּמוֹרִים בְּאַרְצִי עַמִּי.
- וְהָיָה כִּי חִיֵּינוּ חַיֵּי אִשָּׁר.
- וּשְׁלֹשִׁים שָׁנָה חָלְפוּ מִיּוֹם צֵאתָנוּ מִירוּשָׁלַם.
- וְשִׁמְרֵתִי, אֲנִי, נְפִי, עַד הַזְּמַן הַזֶּה, אֶת זְכֵרֹנוֹת עַמִּי אֲשֶׁר כָּתַבְתִּי עַל הַלּוּחוֹת אֲשֶׁר עָשִׂיתִי.
- וְאָמַר יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים אֵלַי: עֲשֵׂה לָּךְ לּוּחוֹת נֹסְפִים; וְעֲלֵיהֶם תַּחְרֹט דְּבָרִים רַבִּים אֲשֶׁר הֵם טוֹבִים בְּעֵינִי, לְמַעַן הוֹעִילוּ לְעַמִּי.
- וְאַנִּי, נְפִי, בְּשִׁמְעִי לְמִצְוֹת יְהוָה, עָשִׂיתִי אֶת הַלּוּחוֹת הָאֵלֶּה, וְחָרַטִּי עֲלֵיהֶם אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה.
- וְאַנִּי חָרַטִּי דְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר נְעִימִים הֵם לְאֱלֹהִים. וְאִם יִנְעֲמוּ לְעַמִּי דְּבָרֵי אֱלֹהִים, יִנְעֲמוּ לָהֶם אֵף כְּתַבִּי הַחֲרוּטִים עַל גִּבִּי



33 And if my people desire to know the more particular part of the history of my people they must search mine other plates.  
 הַלּוּחוֹת הָאֵלֶּה. וְהִיא אִם יַחְפְּצוּ בְּנֵי עַמִּי לְדַעַת אֶת תּוֹלְדוֹתָם בְּתֵאוּר רַב יוֹתֵר, יִבְקְשׁוּן הַמָּה בְּלוּחוֹתֵי הָאַחֵרִים.

34 And it sufficeth me to say that forty years had passed away, and we had already had wars and contentions with our brethren.  
 דִּי בְּאַמְרֵי כִי אַרְבַּעִים שָׁנָה חָלְפוּ, וּכְבָּר הָיוּ לָנוּ מִלְחָמוֹת וּמְרִיבוֹת עִם אֶחָיו.

## 1

דְּבָרֵי יַעֲקֹב, אָחִי נְפִי, אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר אֶל עַם נְפִי:

אָחִי הָאֱהוּבִים, אָנִי, יַעֲקֹב, אֲשֶׁר נִקְרָאתִי מֵעַם אֱלֹהִים וְהִסְמַכְתִּי עַל פִּי סֹדֶר קִדְשׁוֹ, וְאֲשֶׁר קִדְשְׁתִּי בְּיַד אָחִי נְפִי, אֵלָיו תִּבְטְאוּ כְּמֶלֶךְ אוֹ כְּמִגֹּן, וְעָלִיו תִּשָּׁעֲנוּ לְבִטָּחָה; הִנֵּה יָדַעְתֶּם כִּי דְבַרְתִּי אֵלֵיכֶם דְּבָרִים רַבִּים מְאֹד.

וְאִלְמָּה אֲדַבֵּר אֵלֵיכֶם עוֹד, כִּי רְצוֹנִי בְּשָׁלוֹם נַפְשְׁכֶם; אָכֵן גְּדוֹלָה דְּאֲנִי לָכֶם, וְאַתֶּם יָדַעְתֶּם כִּי כֵן תָּמִיד. הֲלֹא הִפְצַרְתִּי בְּכֶם בְּרַב שְׂקִידָה, וְאֵף לְמַדְתִּיכֶם אֶת דְּבָרֵי אָבִי, וְדְבַרְתִּי אֵלֵיכֶם עַל אוֹדוֹת כָּל הַדְּבָרִים הַכְּתוּבִים מִיָּמֵי בְרִיאַת הָעוֹלָם.

וְהִנֵּי מְדַבֵּר אֵלֵיכֶם עַל דְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר קִיַּמִּים עָתִיד וְעַל אֲשֶׁר יָבוֹאוּ; לָכֵן אֶקְרָא לְפָנֵיכֶם אֶת דְּבָרֵי יִשְׁעִיהוּ, וְהֵם הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר חָפֵץ אָחִי כִי אֲדַבֵּר בְּאַזְנוֹיְכֶם. וּמְדַבֵּר אָנִי אֵלֵיכֶם לְמַעַנְכֶם, בְּעֵבוֹר תִּלְמְדוּ וּתְפַאֲרוּ אֶת שֵׁם אֱלֹהֵיכֶם.

וְהַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר אֶקְרָא, הֵם דְּבָרֵי יִשְׁעִיהוּ עַל כָּל בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל; לָכֵן, נִתְּנִים הֵם לְהִיּוֹת נִמְשָׁלִים אֵלֵיכֶם, כִּי מִבֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל אַתֶּם. אָכֵן, דְּבָרִים רַבִּים אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר יִשְׁעִיהוּ נִתְּנִים לְהִתְמַשָּׁל אֵלֵיכֶם אֲשֶׁר מִבֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל אַתֶּם.

וְאֵלֶּה הַדְּבָרִים: כֹּה אָמַר אֲדֹנֵי יְהוָה: הִנֵּה אֲשָׂא אֶל גּוֹיִם יָדִי, וְאֶל עַמִּים אָרִים נְסִי; וְהִבִּיאוּ בְּנֵיהֶם בְּחֻצְוִן, וּבָנִתָיו עַל כַּתֵּף תִּנְשָׂאנָה.

וְהָיוּ מְלָכִים אֲמֻנִיהֶם וְשָׂרֵיהֶם מִיְּנִיקָתָיו; אֲפִים אֶרְץ יִשְׁתַּחֲוּוּ לָהּ, וְעֵפֶר רַגְלָיו יִלְחָקוּ; וְיָדַעְתָּ כִּי אֲנִי יְהוָה אֲשֶׁר לֹא יִבְשׁוּ קִנִּי.

## 6

1 The words of Jacob, the brother of Nephi, which he spake unto the people of Nephi:

2 Behold, my beloved brethren, I, Jacob, having been called of God, and ordained after the manner of his holy order, and having been consecrated by my brother Nephi, unto whom ye look as a king or a protector, and on whom ye depend for safety, behold ye know that I have spoken unto you exceedingly many things.

3 Nevertheless, I speak unto you again; for I am desirous for the welfare of your souls. Yea, mine anxiety is great for you; and ye yourselves know that it ever has been. For I have exhorted you with all diligence; and I have taught you the words of my father; and I have spoken unto you concerning all things which are written, from the creation of the world.

4 And now, behold, I would speak unto you concerning things which are, and which are to come; wherefore, I will read you the words of Isaiah. And they are the words which my brother has desired that I should speak unto you. And I speak unto you for your sakes, that ye may learn and glorify the name of your God.

5 And now, the words which I shall read are they which Isaiah spake concerning all the house of Israel; wherefore, they may be likened unto you, for ye are of the house of Israel. And there are many things which have been spoken by Isaiah which may be likened unto you, because ye are of the house of Israel.

6 And now these are the words: Thus saith the Lord God: Behold, I will lift up mine hand to the Gentiles, and set up my standard to the people; and they shall bring thy sons in their arms, and thy daughters shall be carried upon their shoulders.

7 And kings shall be thy nursing fathers, and their queens thy nursing mothers; they shall bow down to thee with their faces towards the earth, and lick up the dust of thy feet; and thou shalt know that I am the Lord; for they shall not be ashamed that wait for me.

- 8 And now I, Jacob, would speak somewhat concerning these words. For behold, the Lord has shown me that those who were at Jerusalem, from whence we came, have been slain and carried away captive.
- 9 Nevertheless, the Lord has shown unto me that they should return again. And he also has shown unto me that the Lord God, the Holy One of Israel, should manifest himself unto them in the flesh; and after he should manifest himself they should scourge him and crucify him, according to the words of the angel who spake it unto me.
- 10 And after they have hardened their hearts and stiffened their necks against the Holy One of Israel, behold the judgments of the Holy One of Israel shall come upon them. And the day cometh that they shall be smitten and afflicted.
- 11 Wherefore, after they are driven to and fro, for thus saith the angel, many shall be afflicted in the flesh, and shall not be suffered to perish, because of the prayers of the faithful; they shall be scattered, and smitten, and hated; nevertheless, the Lord will be merciful unto them, that when they shall come to the knowledge of their Redeemer, they shall be gathered together again to the lands of their inheritance.
- 12 And blessed are the Gentiles, they of whom the prophet has written; for behold, if it so be that they shall repent and fight not against Zion, and do not unite themselves to that great and abominable church, they shall be saved; for the Lord God will fulfil his covenants which he has made unto his children; and for this cause the prophet has written these things.
- 13 Wherefore, they that fight against Zion and the covenant people of the Lord shall lick up the dust of their feet; and the people of the Lord shall not be ashamed. For the people of the Lord are they who wait for him; for they still wait for the coming of the Messiah.
- 14 And behold, according to the words of the prophet, the Messiah will set himself again the second time to recover them; wherefore, he will manifest himself unto them in power and great glory, unto the destruction of their enemies, when that day cometh when they shall believe in him; and none will he destroy that believe in him.
- 15 And they that believe not in him shall be destroyed, both by fire, and by tempest, and by earthquakes, and by bloodsheds, and by pestilence, and by famine. And they shall know that the Lord is God, the Holy One of Israel.
- וְעַתָּה, אֲנִי, יַעֲקֹב, אֲדַבֵּר מְעַט עַל הַדְּבָרִים  
הָאֵלֶּה. כִּי הִנֵּה הִרְאֵנִי יְהוָה כִּי הִיוּ שָׁבִים  
בִּירוּשָׁלַם, אֲשֶׁר בָּאנוּ מִמֶּנָּה, הוּמָתוּ וְהִגְלוּ.
- אֲוֹלָם הִרְאֵנִי יְהוָה כִּי עוֹד יָשׁוּבוּ שָׁמָּה וְכֵן  
הִרְאֵנִי כִּי יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים, קָדוֹשׁ יִשְׂרָאֵל, יִתְגַּלֵּה  
אֵלֵיהֶם בְּבָשָׂר; וְאַחֵר הַתְּגִלּוֹתָיו, הֵם יַצְלִיפוּ  
בּוֹ וְיַצְלְבוּ אוֹתוֹ, וְזֹאת עַל פִּי דְבָרֵי הַמַּלְאָךְ  
אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר עִמִּי.
- וְאַחֵר אֲשֶׁר יַכְבִּידוּ אֶת לְבָבָם וְיִקְשׁוּ אֶת  
עַרְפָּם עַל קָדוֹשׁ יִשְׂרָאֵל, יָבוֹאוּ עֲלֵיהֶם  
מִשְׁפָּטֵי קָדוֹשׁ יִשְׂרָאֵל; וְיָבוֹא הַיּוֹם בּוֹ  
יִכּוּ וְיִנְגְּעוּ.
- וְאַחֵר אֲשֶׁר יִצְצוּ הֵנָּה וְהֵנָּה, כִּי כֹה אָמַר  
הַמַּלְאָךְ, וְרַבִּים יִנְגְּעוּ בְּבָשָׂר, אֲךָ מִפְּנֵי תַפְלוּת  
שׁוֹמְרֵי הָאֲמוּנִים לֹא יֵאָבְדוּ; וְאֵף כִּי יִהְיוּ  
פְּזוּרִים, וּמְכֻזָּבִים, וְשׁוֹנְאִים יִרְחָמָם יְהוָה;  
וְכִאֲשֶׁר יָבוֹאוּ אֵל דַּעַת גּוֹאֲלָם, יִקְבְּצוּ  
שְׁנֵית אֵל אֲרָצוֹת נַחֲלָתָם.
- וּבְרוּכִים יִהְיוּ הַגּוֹיִים, אֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר עֲלֵיהֶם כָּתוּב  
הַנְּבִיא; כִּי אִם יִנְחָמוּ עַל חַטְאֵיהֶם וְלֹא יִלָּחְמוּ  
בְּצִיּוֹן וְלֹא יִתְחַבְּרוּ עִם הַכְּנָסִיָּה הַגְּדוֹלָה  
וְהַנִּתְעַבֶּתֶת הַזֶּה, הֵם יִשָּׁעוּ; כִּי יָקִים יְהוָה  
אֱלֹהִים אֶת בְּרִיתוֹתָיו אֲשֶׁר כָּתוּב עִם בְּנָיו;  
הֵן לְתַכְלִית הַזֹּאת כָּתוּב הַנְּבִיא אֶת  
הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה.
- עַל כֵּן, יִלָּחְכוּ הַלּוֹחָמִים בְּצִיּוֹן וּבְעַם בְּרִית  
יְהוָה אֶת עַפְרָר רַגְלֵיהֶם, וְעַם יְהוָה לֹא יִבּוֹשׁוּ.  
כִּי עַם יְהוָה הֵם אֵלֶּה הַמְּקוּיִם לוֹ; כִּי עוֹד  
מְקוּיִם הֵמָּה לְבוֹא הַמָּשִׁיחַ.
- וְהִנֵּה, כְּפִי דְבָרֵי הַנְּבִיא, יוֹסִיף הַמָּשִׁיחַ שְׁנֵית  
לְקִנּוּתָם וְלִהְשִׁיבָם; עַל כֵּן יִוָּדַע הוּא לַפְּנִיָּה  
בְּגִבּוֹרָה וּבְרַב תִּפְאָרָה, לְהַשְׁמִיד אֶת  
אוֹיְבֵיהֶם, בַּיּוֹם אֲשֶׁר הֵם יֵאֱמִינוּ בּוֹ; וְלֹא  
יִשְׁמִיד הוּא אֶף אֶחָד אֲשֶׁר יֵאֱמִין בּוֹ.
- וְאֲשֶׁר אֵינָם מֵאֱמִינִים בּוֹ, יִשְׁמָדוּ, בָּאֵשׁ  
וּבִסּוּפָה, בְּרַעְשֵׁי אֲדָמָה וּבִשְׂפִיכַת דָּמִים,  
בְּדָבָר וּבָרָעָב. וְיָדְעוּ כִּי יְהוָה הוּא הָאֱלֹהִים,  
קָדוֹשׁ יִשְׂרָאֵל.

- 16 For shall the prey be taken from the mighty, or the lawful captive delivered?  
כִּי הִיָּקַח מִגְבוֹר מִלְּקוֹחַ; וְאִם שְׁבִי צָדִיק יִמְלֹט?
- 17 But thus saith the Lord: Even the captives of the mighty shall be taken away, and the prey of the terrible shall be delivered; for the Mighty God shall deliver his covenant people. For thus saith the Lord: I will contend with them that contendeth with thee—  
כִּי כֹה אָמַר יְהוָה: גַּם שְׁבֵי גְבוֹר יִקָּח וּמִלְּקוֹחַ עָרִיץ יִמְלֹט; אֶת יְרִיבֹךְ אֲנֹכִי אָרִיב וְאֶת בְּנִיךְ אֲנֹכִי אוֹשִׁיעַ.
- 18 And I will feed them that oppress thee, with their own flesh; and they shall be drunken with their own blood as with sweet wine; and all flesh shall know that I the Lord am thy Savior and thy Redeemer, the Mighty One of Jacob.  
וְהֶאֱכַלְתִּי אֶת מוֹנִיךְ אֶת בְּשָׂרָם, וְכָעָסִים דָּמָם יִשְׁכְּרוּן; וְיָדְעוּ כָּל בָּשָׂר כִּי אֲנִי יְהוָה מוֹשִׁיעֶךָ וְגֹאֲלֶךָ, אֲבִיר יַעֲקֹב.

## ז

## 7

- 1 Thus saith the Lord, Where is the bill of your mother's divorcement, whom I have put away? or which of my creditors is it to whom I have sold you? Behold, for your iniquities have ye sold yourselves, and for your transgressions is your mother put away.  
כֹּה אָמַר יְהוָה: אֵי זֶה סֵפֶר כְּרִיתוֹת אֲמַכֶּם אֲשֶׁר שָׁלַחְתִּיהָ, אוֹ מִי מִנּוּשֵׁי אֲשֶׁר מְכַרְתִּי אֶתְכֶם לוֹ? הֵן בַּעֲוֹנוֹתֵיכֶם נִמְכַּרְתֶּם וּבַפְשָׁעֵיכֶם שָׁלַחְהָ אֲמַכֶּם.
- 2 Wherefore, when I came, was there no man? When I called, was there none to answer? Is my hand shortened at all, that it cannot redeem? Or have I no power to deliver? Behold, at my rebuke I dry up the sea, I make the rivers a wilderness: their fish stinketh, because there is no water, and dieth for thirst.  
מַדּוּעַ בָּאתִי וְאִין אִישׁ, קָרָאתִי וְאִין עֹנֶה? הֲקִצּוֹר קִצְרָה יָדִי מִפְּדוּת, וְאִם אִין בִּי כֹחַ לְהַצִּיל? הֵן בְּגַעַרְתִּי אֶחְרִיב יָם, אֲשִׁים נְהָרוֹת מִדְּבָר, תִּבְאֵשׁ דְּגָתָם מֵאִין מַיִם וְתָמוּת בַּצָּמָא.
- 3 I clothe the heavens with blackness, and I make sackcloth their covering.  
אֶלְבִּישׁ שָׁמַיִם קִדְרוֹת; וְשָׁךְ אֲשִׁים בְּסוּתָם.
- 4 The Lord God hath given me the tongue of the learned, that I should know how to speak a word in season to him that is weary: he wakeneth morning by morning, he wakeneth mine ear to hear as the learned.  
אֲדַנִּי יְהוָה נָתַן לִי לְשׁוֹן לְמוּדִים, לְיָדַעַת לְעוֹת אֶת יָעוֹר, דָּבָר יָעִיר בְּבֹקֶר בְּבֹקֶר, יָעִיר לִי אָזְנוֹ לְשִׁמְעַת כָּל־מוּדִים.
- 5 The Lord God hath opened mine ear, and I was not rebellious, neither turned away back.  
אֲדַנִּי יְהוָה פָּתַח לִי אָזְנוֹ, וְאֲנֹכִי לֹא מָרִיתִי: אַחֲזֹר לֹא נִסּוּגְתִּי.
- 6 I gave my back to the smiters, and my cheeks to them that plucked off the hair: I hid not my face from shame and spitting.  
גָּוִי נָתַתִּי לְמַכִּים וְלִחְיִי לְמוֹרְטִים; פָּנַי לֹא הִסְתַּרְתִּי מִכְּלָמוֹת וְרָק.
- 7 For the Lord God will help me; therefore shall I not be confounded: therefore have I set my face like a flint, and I know that I shall not be ashamed.  
וְאֲדַנִּי יְהוָה יִעֲזָר לִי, עַל כֵּן לֹא נִכְלָמְתִּי; עַל כֵּן שָׁמַתִּי פָנַי כַּחֲלָמִישׁ, וְאָדַע כִּי לֹא אֲבוֹשׁ.
- 8 He is near that justifieth me; who will contend with me? Let us stand together: who is mine adversary? Let him come near to me.  
קָרוֹב מִצְדִּיקִי. מִי יָרִיב אֵתִי? נַעֲמֻדָה יַחַד; מִי בָעַל מִשְׁפָּטִי? יָגֵשׁ אֵלַי.

- 9 Behold, the Lord God will help me; who is he that shall condemn me? Lo, they all shall wax old as a garment; the moth shall eat them up.
- 10 Who is among you that feareth the Lord, that obeyeth the voice of his servant, that walketh in darkness, and hath no light? Let him trust in the name of the Lord, and stay upon his God.
- 11 Behold, all ye that kindle a fire, that compass yourselves about with sparks: walk in the light of your fire, and in the sparks that ye have kindled. This shall ye have of mine hand; ye shall lie down in sorrow.
- הֵן אֲדֹנִי יְהוָה יֵעֶזֶר לִי. מִי הוּא יִרְשָׁעֵנִי? הֵן כָּלֶם כְּבָגֵד יִבְלֶה, עֵשׂ יֹאכְלֵם.
- מִי בְכֶם יִירָא יְהוָה, שְׁמַע בְּקוֹל עַבְדּוֹ אֲשֶׁר הֵלֵךְ חֲשָׁכִים וְאֵין נֹגֵה לוֹ? יִבְטַח בְּשֵׁם יְהוָה, וְיִשָּׁעַן בְּאֱלֹהָיו.
- הֵן כָּלְכֶם קִדְחִי אֵשׁ, מֵאֲזִירֵי זִיקוֹת; לָכֵן בָּאוּר אֲשֶׁכֶם, וּבְזִיקוֹת בַּעֲרַתֶּם. מִיַּד הֵיטָה זֹאת לָכֶם, לְמַעַצְבָּה תִשְׁכַּבּוּן.

## ח

## 8

- 1 Hearken to me, ye that follow after righteousness, ye that seek the Lord: look unto the rock whence ye are hewn, and to the hole of the pit whence ye are digged.
- 2 Look unto Abraham your father, and unto Sarah that bare you: for I called him alone, and blessed him, and increased him.
- 3 For the Lord shall comfort Zion: he will comfort all her waste places; and he will make her wilderness like Eden, and her desert like the garden of the Lord; joy and gladness shall be found therein, thanksgiving, and the voice of melody.
- 4 Hearken unto me, my people; and give ear unto me, O my nation: for a law shall proceed from me, and I will make my judgment to rest for a light of the people.
- 5 My righteousness is near; my salvation is gone forth, and mine arms shall judge the people; the isles shall wait upon me, and on mine arm shall they trust.
- 6 Lift up your eyes to the heavens, and look upon the earth beneath: for the heavens shall vanish away like smoke, and the earth shall wax old like a garment, and they that dwell therein shall die in like manner: but my salvation shall be forever, and my righteousness shall not be abolished.
- 7 Hearken unto me, ye that know righteousness, the people in whose heart is my law; fear ye not the reproach of men, neither be ye afraid of their revilings.
- 8 For the moth shall eat them up like a garment, and the worm shall eat them like wool: but my righteousness shall be forever, and my salvation from generation to generation.
- שְׁמָעוּ אֵלַי רְדִפֵּי צֶדֶק, מְבַקְשֵׁי יְהוָה; הִבִּיטוּ אֶל צוּר חֲצֵבְתֶּם, וְאֶל מְקַבֵּת בּוֹר נִקְרָתֶם.
- הִבִּיטוּ אֶל אֲבִרְהָם אֲבִיכֶם, וְאֶל שָׂרָה תְּחוּלְלֵכֶם: כִּי אֶחָד קָרָאתִיו, וְאַבְרָכָהוּ וְאַרְבָּהוּ.
- כִּי נַחֵם יְהוָה צִיּוֹן, נַחֵם כָּל חֲרֻבְתֶּיהָ; וְיִשָּׂם מִדְּבָרָה כְּעֵדֶן, וְעִרְבָתָהּ כֶּגֶן יְהוָה; שִׂשׂוֹן וְשִׁמְחָה יִמְצָא בָּהּ, תוֹדָה וְקוֹל זִמְרָה.
- הִקְשִׁיבוּ אֵלַי עַמִּי, וְלֵאמוּמִי אֵלַי הִאֲזִינוּ: כִּי תוֹרָה מֵאִתִּי תֵצֵא, וּמִשְׁפָּטִי לְאוֹר עַמִּים אֲרִגִּיעַ.
- קְרוֹב צֶדֶקִי יֵצֵא וְשָׁעִי, וְזִרְעִי עַמִּים יִשְׁפֹּטוּ; אֵלַי אֵיִים יָקוּ, וְאֶל יִרְעִי יִיחַלּוּן.
- שִׂאוּ לְשִׁמִּים עֵינֵיכֶם, וְהִבִּיטוּ אֶל הָאָרֶץ מִתַּחַת; כִּי שָׁמַיִם כְּעָשָׁן נִמְלָחוּ, וְהָאָרֶץ כְּבָגֵד תִּבְלָה, וְיֹשְׁבֶיהָ כָּמוֹ כֵּן יָמוּתוּן. וְיִשׁוּעָתִי לְעוֹלָם תִּהְיֶה, וְצִדְקָתִי לֹא תִחָת.
- שְׁמָעוּ אֵלַי יְדַעֵי צֶדֶק, עַם תּוֹרָתִי בְלָבָם: אֶל תִּירָאוּ חֲרַפַּת אָנוּשׁ, וּמִגְדַּףתֶּם אֶל תִּחָתוּ.
- כִּי כְּבָגֵד יֹאכְלֵם עֵשׂ וְכֶצֶמֶר יֹאכְלֵם סֵס; וְצִדְקָתִי לְעוֹלָם תִּהְיֶה, וְיִשׁוּעָתִי לְדוֹר דּוֹרִים.

- 9 Awake, awake, put on strength, O arm of the Lord; awake, as in the ancient days, in the generations of old. Art thou not it that hath cut Rahab, and wounded the dragon?  
עוֹרֵי עוֹרֵי לְבָשִׁי עֹז, זְרוּעַ יְהוָה, עוֹרֵי כִימִי  
קָדָם דְּרוֹת עוֹלָמִים; הֲלוֹא אַתָּה הִיא הַמְחַצֶּבֶת  
רַהַב, מַחֲלֶלֶת תַּנִּין?
- 10 Art thou not it which hath dried the sea, the waters of the great deep; that hath made the depths of the sea a way for the ransomed to pass over?  
הֲלוֹא אַתָּה הִיא הַמְחַרְבֶּת יָם, מִי תְהוֹם רַבָּה;  
הַשְׁמָה מַעַמְקֵי יָם, דֶּרֶךְ לַעֲבֹר גְּאוּלִּים?
- 11 Therefore the redeemed of the Lord shall return, and come with singing unto Zion; and everlasting joy shall be upon their head: they shall obtain gladness and joy; and sorrow and mourning shall flee away.  
וּפְדוּיֵי יְהוָה יָשׁוּבוּ, וּבָאוּ צִיּוֹן בְּרִנָּה, וְשִׂמְחַת  
עוֹלָם עַל רֹאשָׁם; שִׂשׂוֹן וְשִׂמְחָה יִשְׁיִגּוּ, נֶסֶו  
יִגּוּ וְאֲנָחָה.
- 12 I, even I, am he that comforteth you: who art thou, that thou shouldest be afraid of a man that shall die, and of the son of man which shall be made as grass;  
אֲנֹכִי, אֲנֹכִי הוּא מְנַחֵמְכֶם, מִי אַתָּה וְתִירָאִי;  
מֵאֲנוֹשׁ יָמוּת, וּמִבֶּן אָדָם חָצִיר יָנֵת;
- 13 And forgettest the Lord thy maker, that hath stretched forth the heavens, and laid the foundations of the earth; and hast feared continually every day because of the fury of the oppressor, as if he were ready to destroy, and where is the fury of the oppressor?  
וְתִשְׁכַּח יְהוָה עֹשֶׂה, נוֹטֶה שָׁמַיִם וְיֹסֵד אֶרֶץ;  
וְתִפְחַד תָּמִיד כָּל הַיּוֹם מִפְּנֵי חֲמַת הַמַּצִּיק,  
כַּאֲשֶׁר כּוֹנֵן לְהִשָּׁחִית? וְאַיָּה חֲמַת הַמַּצִּיק?
- 14 The captive exile hasteneth that he may be loosed, and that he should not die in the pit, nor that his bread should fail.  
מִהָרַע צֹעֵה לְהַפְתֵּחַ; וְלֹא יָמוּת לְשַׁחַת, וְלֹא  
יִחָסֵר לֶחֱמוֹ.
- 15 But I am the Lord thy God, that divided the sea, whose waves roared: The Lord of hosts is his name.  
וְאֲנֹכִי יְהוָה אֱלֹהֶיךָ רֹעֵה הַיָּם, וַיַּהֲמוּ גִלְוֵי; יְהוָה  
צְבָאוֹת שְׁמוֹ.
- 16 And I have put my words in thy mouth, and I have covered thee in the shadow of mine hand, that I may plant the heavens, and lay the foundations of the earth, and say unto Zion, Thou art my people.  
וְאָשֵׁם דְּבָרֵי בְּפִיךָ, וּבִצֵּל יָדִי כְּסִיתִיךָ; לִנְטֹעַ  
שָׁמַיִם וְלִיִּסֵּד אֶרֶץ, וְלֵאמֹר לְצִיּוֹן: עַמִּי אַתָּה.
- 17 Awake, awake, stand up, O Jerusalem, which hast drunk at the hand of the Lord the cup of his fury; thou hast drunken the dregs of the cup of trembling, and wrung them out.  
הִתְעוֹרְרִי הִתְעוֹרְרִי, קוּמִי יְרוּשָׁלַם אֲשֶׁר  
שָׁתִית מִיַּד יְהוָה אֶת כּוֹס חֲמָתוֹ; אֶת קְבַעַת  
כּוֹס הַתְּרַעֲלָה שָׁתִית מִצִּית.
- 18 There is none to guide her among all the sons whom she hath brought forth; neither is there any that taketh her by the hand of all the sons that she hath brought up.  
אֵין מְנַהֵל לָהּ, מִכָּל בָּנִים יְלָדָהּ; וְאֵין מַחֲזִיק  
בְּיָדָהּ, מִכָּל בָּנִים גִּידָלָהּ.
- 19 These two things are come unto thee; who shall be sorry for thee? Desolation, and destruction, and the famine, and the sword: by whom shall I comfort thee?  
שְׁתֵּי הַנָּה קָרְאִיתִיךָ, מִי יִנּוּד לָךְ? הַשָּׁד  
וְהַשָּׁבָר וְהָרָעָב וְהַחֶרֶב, מִי אֲנַחֲמֶיךָ?
- 20 Thy sons have fainted, they lie at the head of all the streets, as a wild bull in a net: they are full of the fury of the Lord, the rebuke of thy God.  
בָּנֶיךָ עָלְפוּ שָׁכְבוּ, בְּרֹאשׁ כָּל חוֹצוֹת כְּתוּר  
מִקְמָר; הַמְּלֵאִים חֲמַת יְהוָה, גְּעֵרַת אֱלֹהֶיךָ.
- 21 Therefore hear now this, thou afflicted, and drunken, but not with wine:  
לְכֵן שְׁמָעִי נָא זֹאת, עֲנִיָּה; וְשִׁכְרַת וְלֹא מֵיין.

- 22 Thus saith thy Lord the Lord, and thy God that pleadeth the cause of his people, Behold, I have taken out of thine hand the cup of trembling, even the dregs of the cup of my fury; thou shalt no more drink it again:
- 23 But I will put it into the hand of them that afflict thee; which have said to thy soul, Bow down, that we may go over: and thou hast laid thy body as the ground, and as the street, to them that went over.
- 24 Awake, awake; put on thy strength, O Zion; put on thy beautiful garments, O Jerusalem, the holy city: for henceforth there shall no more come into thee the uncircumcised and the unclean.
- 25 Shake thyself from the dust; arise, and sit down, O Jerusalem: loose thyself from the bands of thy neck, O captive daughter of Zion.
- כה אמר אֲדֹנָיִךְ יְהוָה: וְאַלֶּהֱיִךְ יְרִיב עִמּוֹ. הִנֵּה לָקַחְתִּי מִיָּדְךָ אֶת כּוֹס הַתְּרַעֲלָה, אֶת קִבְעַת כּוֹס חֲמָתִי לֹא תוֹסִיפִי לְשִׁתּוֹתָהּ עוֹד.
- וְשִׁמַּתִּיהָ בְּיַד מוֹגִיָּךְ אֲשֶׁר אָמְרוּ לְנַפְשְׁךָ שְׁחִי וְנַעֲבֶרְהָ; וְתַשִּׁימִי כְּאַרְץ גִּוּף, וְכַחוּץ לַעֲבָרִים.
- עוֹרִי עוֹרִי, לְבָשִׂי עֹז, צִיּוֹן: לְבָשִׂי בְּגָדֵי תִפְאָרְתְּךָ, יְרוּשָׁלַם עִיר הַקֹּדֶשׁ, כִּי לֹא יוֹסִיף יָבֹא בָּךְ עוֹד עָרֹל וְטָמֵא.
- הִתְנַעְרִי מֵעָפָר, קוּמִי שְׁבִי, יְרוּשָׁלַם; הִתְפַּתְחִי מִזִּמְרֵי צַוְאָרְךָ, שְׁבִיָּה בַת צִיּוֹן.

## ט

## 9

- 1 And now, my beloved brethren, I have read these things that ye might know concerning the covenants of the Lord that he has covenanted with all the house of Israel—
- 2 That he has spoken unto the Jews, by the mouth of his holy prophets, even from the beginning down, from generation to generation, until the time comes that they shall be restored to the true church and fold of God; when they shall be gathered home to the lands of their inheritance, and shall be established in all their lands of promise.
- 3 Behold, my beloved brethren, I speak unto you these things that ye may rejoice, and lift up your heads forever, because of the blessings which the Lord God shall bestow upon your children.
- 4 For I know that ye have searched much, many of you, to know of things to come; wherefore I know that ye know that our flesh must waste away and die; nevertheless, in our bodies we shall see God.
- 5 Yea, I know that ye know that in the body he shall show himself unto those at Jerusalem, from whence we came; for it is expedient that it should be among them; for it behooveth the great Creator that he suffereth himself to become subject unto man in the flesh, and die for all men, that all men might become subject unto him.
- 6 For as death hath passed upon all men, to fulfil the merciful plan of the great Creator, there must needs be a power of resurrection, and the resurrection must needs come unto man by reason of the fall; and the
- וְעַתָּה, אֲחֵי הָאֱהוּיָבִים, קָרָאתִי אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה לְמַעַן תֵּדְעוּ עַל אוֹדוֹת דְּבָרֵי בְרִיתוֹת יְהוָה, אֲשֶׁר כָּרַת עִם כָּל בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל,
- אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר אֶל הַיְּהוּדִים, בְּפִי נְבִיאָיו הַקְּדוֹשִׁים, מִרְאשִׁית וְעַד עַתָּה, וּמִדּוֹר לְדוֹר עַד עַתָּה שׁוֹבֶם אֶל כְּנִסְיַת הָאֱמֶת וְצֶאֱנָן אֱלֹהִים; אֲנִי יִקְבְּצוּ אֶל אֶרְצוֹת נַחֲלָתָם, אִף יִכּוֹנְנוּ בְּכָל אֶרְצוֹת יְעוּדָם.
- הִנֵּה, אֲחֵי הָאֱהוּיָבִים, אֲדַבֵּר אֶת דְּבָרֵי אֵלֶּה אֵלֵיכֶם לְמַעַן תִּגְלוּ וְתִרְמִימוּ אֶת רֹאשְׁכֶם לְעוֹלָם עַל הַבְּרָכוֹת אֲשֶׁר יַעֲנִיק יְהוָה לְבָנֵיכֶם.
- בְּאֲשֶׁר יִדְעִיתִי כִּי רַבִּים מִכֶּם הִרְבוּ בִקֵּשׁ דַּעַת אֶת אֲשֶׁר לְבֹא, וְיִדְעִיתִי כִּי יוֹדְעִים אַתֶּם אֲשֶׁר יִבְלֶה בְּשָׂרְנוּ וְיָמוֹת; וְאוֹלָם בְּגוֹפָנוּ נִרְאָה אֶת אֱלֹהִים.
- יִדְעִיתִי כִּי יוֹדְעִים אַתֶּם אֲשֶׁר הוּא יִתְגַּלֵּה בְּגוֹף לַיּוֹשְׁבִים בִּירוּשָׁלַם אֲשֶׁר מִמֶּנָּה בָּאנוּ; כִּי יִהְיֶה הַיּוֹתוֹ בְּתוֹכָם לְהוֹעִיל; כִּי רָאוּ לְבֹרֵא הַגָּדוֹל לְהַתִּיר עֲצָמוֹ לְהִיּוֹת נִכְנַע לָאָדָם בְּבֶשֶׁר, וְלָמוֹת בְּעָבוּר כָּל בְּנֵי הָאָנוּשׁ לְמַעַן יִכְנָעוּ לוֹ כָּלָם.
- וַיַּעַן אֲשֶׁר נִגְזַר הַמּוֹת עַל כָּל הָאָנוּשׁ, לְמִיָּם אֶת תְּכִנְתּוֹ רַבַּת הַחֲמִלָה אֲשֶׁר לְבֹרֵא הַגָּדוֹל, הַכֶּרֶם כִּי יִהְיֶה כַּחַ תַּחֲיָה; וְהַתְּחִיָּה תִּבּוֹא אֶל



הָאָדָם עָקַב נְפִילָתוֹ; וְהַנְפִּילָהּ בָּאָה עָקַב עֲבָרָתוֹ;  
וּמִפְּנֵי נְפִילָתוֹ, נִכְרַת הָאָדָם מִלִּפְנֵי יְהוָה.

fall came by reason of transgression; and because man became fallen they were cut off from the presence of the Lord.

לָכֵן הִכְרַח כִּי תִהְיֶה כְּפָרָה מִחֻלָּטָה, כִּי בְּלֹא  
כְּפָרָה מִחֻלָּטָה, לֹא תוּכַל הִשְׁחָתָה הַזֹּאת  
לְהַפִּד לְבִלְתִּי הִשְׁחָתָה. עַל כֵּן חֵיב הָיָה הַדִּין  
הָרִאשׁוֹן, אֲשֶׁר נִחְרַץ עַל הָאָדָם, לְהַמְשִׁיךְ  
עַד אֵין קֵץ. וְאֵלּוּ הָיָה כֵּן, הָיָה הַבֶּשֶׂר שׁוֹכֵב  
לְהִרְקֵב וּלְהִתְפֹּרֵר אֶל אִמָּא אֲדָמָה, וְלֹא  
הָיָה קֵם עוֹד.

7 Wherefore, it must needs be an infinite atonement—save it should be an infinite atonement this corruption could not put on incorruption. Wherefore, the first judgment which came upon man must needs have remained to an endless duration. And if so, this flesh must have laid down to rot and to crumble to its mother earth, to rise no more.

הֵנָּה חֲכָמַת אֱלֹהִים וְרַחֲמָיו וְחֶסֶדּוֹ! כִּי  
לִוְלֵי קֵם הַבֶּשֶׂר שְׁנִית הָיוּ נִשְׁמוֹתֵינוּ נִכְנָעוֹת  
לְמַלְאָךְ אֲשֶׁר נָפַל מִלִּפְנֵי הָאֵל הַנִּצְחִי וְנַעֲשָׂה  
שָׂטָן, וְלֹא הָיוּ קָמוֹת עוֹד.

8 O the wisdom of God, his mercy and grace! For behold, if the flesh should rise no more our spirits must become subject to that angel who fell from before the presence of the Eternal God, and became the devil, to rise no more.

וְהָיוּ אֵז נִשְׁמוֹתֵינוּ נַעֲשׂוֹת כְּמוֹהוּ; וְהָיוּ  
נַעֲשִׂים שְׂדִים, מְלֹאכֵי שָׂטָן, לְהַרְחִיקֵנוּ מִלִּפְנֵי  
אֱלֹהֵינוּ, לְהִשָּׂאֵר עִם אָבִי הַכֹּזֵב, בְּמִצּוּקָה  
כְּמוֹהוּ; אֲכֹן, הוּא הַיָּצוֹר אֲשֶׁר הָעָרִים עַל  
הוֹרִינוּ הָרִאשׁוֹנִים, הַלּוֹבֵשׁ דְּמוּת מְלֹאךְ אֹר  
וּמַעֲוֹרֵר בְּכֵי אָדָם אֲגָדוֹת סֵתֵר לְרַצָּח,  
וְלַעֲשׂוֹת כָּל מַעֲשֵׂי סֵתֵר אֲפִלִּים.

9 And our spirits must have become like unto him, and we become devils, angels to a devil, to be shut out from the presence of our God, and to remain with the father of lies, in misery, like unto himself; yea, to that being who beguiled our first parents, who transformeth himself nigh unto an angel of light, and stirreth up the children of men unto secret combinations of murder and all manner of secret works of darkness.

מֵה רַב טוֹב אֱלֹהֵינוּ, הַמְכִּין לָנוּ דֶּרֶךְ לְהַמְלִיט  
מֵאֲחִיזַת יָד הַמְּפַלֶּצֶת הָאִמָּה הַזֹּאת אֲשֶׁר  
הִיא מָוֶת וְשָׂאוֹל, אֲשֶׁר קְרָאִים מוֹת הַגּוֹף  
וּמוֹת הַנֶּשְׁמָה.

10 O how great the goodness of our God, who prepareth a way for our escape from the grasp of this awful monster; yea, that monster, death and hell, which I call the death of the body, and also the death of the spirit.

וּמִפְּנֵי דֶּרֶךְ הַנֶּאֱלָה אֲשֶׁר לֹאֲלֵהֵנוּ,  
קְדוֹשׁ יִשְׂרָאֵל, הַמָּוֶת הַזֶּה אֲשֶׁר דִּבַּרְתִּי עָלָיו,  
אֲשֶׁר הוּא חֲמָרִי, יִפְטֹר אֶת מִתִּי; וְהַמָּוֶת הַזֶּה  
הוּא הַקֶּבֶר.

11 And because of the way of deliverance of our God, the Holy One of Israel, this death, of which I have spoken, which is the temporal, shall deliver up its dead; which death is the grave.

וְהַמָּוֶת אֲשֶׁר דִּבַּרְתִּי עָלָיו, אֲשֶׁר הוּא הַמָּוֶת  
הָרוּחָנִי, אֵף הוּא יִפְטֹר אֶת מִתִּי; וְהַמָּוֶת הָרוּחָנִי  
הַזֶּה הוּא שָׂאוֹל; לָכֵן הַמָּוֶת וְשָׂאוֹל יִפְטֹרוּ אֶת  
מִתִּיהֶם, וְשָׂאוֹל תִּפְטֹר אֶת נִשְׁמוֹתֶיהָ הַשְּׁבוּיֹת,  
וְהַקֶּבֶר יִפְטֹר אֶת גּוֹיֹתָיו הַשְּׁבוּיֹת, וְגוֹפֵי בְנֵי  
הָאָדָם וְנִשְׁמוֹתֵיהֶם יָשׁוּבוּ גּוֹף אֶל נֶשְׁמָה;  
וְזֹאת בְּכַח הַתְּחִיָּה אֲשֶׁר לְקְדוֹשׁ יִשְׂרָאֵל.

12 And this death of which I have spoken, which is the spiritual death, shall deliver up its dead; which spiritual death is hell; wherefore, death and hell must deliver up their dead, and hell must deliver up its captive spirits, and the grave must deliver up its captive bodies, and the bodies and the spirits of men will be restored one to the other; and it is by the power of the resurrection of the Holy One of Israel.

מֵה גְדוֹלָה תְּכִנִּית אֱלֹהֵינוּ! כִּי זֹאת וְעוֹד,  
גֵּן עֵדֶן אֲשֶׁר לֹאֲלֵהִים יִפְטֹר אֶת נִשְׁמוֹת  
הַצַּדִּיקִים, וְהַקֶּבֶר יִפְטֹר אֶת גּוֹיֹת הַצַּדִּיקִים;  
וְהַנֶּשְׁמָה וְהַגּוֹף יָשׁוּבוּ זֶה אֶל זֶה, וְכָל הָאָדָם

13 O how great the plan of our God! For on the other hand, the paradise of God must deliver up the spirits of the righteous, and the grave deliver up the body of the righteous; and the spirit and the body is restored to itself again, and all men become incorruptible, and immortal, and they

יַעֲשׂוּ בְּלִתֵּי נִשְׁחָתִים וּבְנֵי אֲלֻמּוֹת; וְנִהְיוּ  
נִפְשׁוֹת חַיּוֹת בְּעֵלּוֹת יְדִיעָה שְׁלֵמָה הַדּוֹמָה  
לִידְעָתָנוּ בַּעֲת הַיּוֹתָנוּ בַּבָּשָׂר, אֲלֵא כִּי תִהְיֶה  
אִזּוּ יְדִיעָתָנוּ שְׁלֵמָה.

are living souls, having a perfect knowledge like unto us in the flesh,  
save it be that our knowledge shall be perfect.

עַל כֵּן נִדְעַה יְדִיעָה שְׁלֵמָה אֶת כָּל אֲשַׁמְתָּנוּ  
וְטִמְאַתָּנוּ וְעִרְוָתָנוּ; וְהַצְדִּיקִים יִדְעוּ יְדִיעָה  
שְׁלֵמָה אֶת תַּעֲנוּגָם וְאֶת צִדְקָתָם בְּהִיּוֹתָם  
לִזְבָּשִׁים טָהֳרָה, מְעִיל צִדְקָה.

14 Wherefore, we shall have a perfect knowledge of all our guilt, and our  
uncleanness, and our nakedness; and the righteous shall have a perfect  
knowledge of their enjoyment, and their righteousness, being clothed  
with purity, yea, even with the robe of righteousness.

וּבַעֲת עֲבָר כָּל הָאָדָם מִן הַמִּיתָה הָרִאשׁוֹנָה  
הַזֹּאת אֶל הַחַיִּים, וּבְהַעֲשׂוֹתָם כֹּךְ בְּנֵי אֲלֻמּוֹת,  
הֵם יִפְּעוּ לִפְנֵי כֹס הַמִּשְׁפָּט אֲשֶׁר לְקֹדֶשׁ  
יִשְׂרָאֵל; אִזּוּ יַעֲשֶׂה הַמִּשְׁפָּט, וְאִזּוּ יִהְיֶה עֲלֵיהֶם  
לְהַשְׁפֵּט עַל פִּי מִשְׁפָּט הַקֹּדֶשׁ אֲשֶׁר לְאֱלֹהִים.

15 And it shall come to pass that when all men shall have passed from  
this first death unto life, insomuch as they have become immortal, they  
must appear before the judgment-seat of the Holy One of Israel; and  
then cometh the judgment, and then must they be judged according to  
the holy judgment of God.

וְאִמְנָם, חַי יְהוָה, כִּי כֵן דְּבַר יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים,  
וְזֹאת מִלְּתוֹ הַנֶּצְחִית, אֲשֶׁר לֹא תִחַלֵּף; כִּי  
אֲשֶׁר הֵם צְדִיקִים, יַעֲמְדוּ בְּצִדְקָתָם; וְאֲשֶׁר  
הֵם טִמְאִים, יַעֲמְדוּ בְּטִמְאַתָּם; כִּי הֵטֵמְאִים  
הֵם הַשָּׁטָן וּמַלְאָכָיו; וְהֵם יַעֲבְרוּ אֶל אֵשׁ  
תְּמִיד הָעֲרוּכָה לָהֶם; וְיִסְרִיָּהֶם יִהְיוּ כְּמִקְנֵה  
אֵשׁ וְנִפְרִית, אֲשֶׁר לְהַבְתּוֹ עוֹלָה לְעַדִּי עַד  
בְּלֹא קֵץ.

16 And assuredly, as the Lord liveth, for the Lord God hath spoken it,  
and it is his eternal word, which cannot pass away, that they who are  
righteous shall be righteous still, and they who are filthy shall be filthy  
still; wherefore, they who are filthy are the devil and his angels; and  
they shall go away into everlasting fire; prepared for them; and their  
torment is as a lake of fire and brimstone, whose flame ascendeth up  
forever and ever and has no end.

מִה גְּדוֹל אֱלֹהֵינוּ, וּמִה גְּדוֹל מִשְׁפָּטוֹ! כִּי הוּא  
מִקִּים אֶת כָּל דְּבָרָיו אֲשֶׁר יֵצֵאוּ מִפִּיו, וְחֻקָּיו  
קוֹם יִקְוּמוּ.

17 O the greatness and the justice of our God! For he executeth all his  
words, and they have gone forth out of his mouth, and his law must  
be fulfilled.

אֲנִי הַצְדִּיקִים, קֹדֶשׁ יִשְׂרָאֵל, אֲשֶׁר  
הָאִמְנָנוּ בְּקֹדֶשׁ יִשְׂרָאֵל, אֲשֶׁר נִשְׁאוּ אֶת צִלְבֵי  
הָעוֹלָם וּבָזוּ לְחִרְפָּתָם, הֵמָּה יִירָשׁוּ אֶת מַלְכוּת  
אֱלֹהִים הָעֲרוּכָה לָהֶם מִיְסוּד הָעוֹלָם, וְתִהְיֶה  
שִׂמְחָתָם שְׁלֵמָה עַד עוֹלָם.

18 But, behold, the righteous, the saints of the Holy One of Israel, they  
who have believed in the Holy One of Israel, they who have endured the  
crosses of the world, and despised the shame of it, they shall inherit the  
kingdom of God, which was prepared for them from the foundation of  
the world, and their joy shall be full forever.

מִה גְּדוֹלִים רַחֲמֵי אֱלֹהֵינוּ, קֹדֶשׁ יִשְׂרָאֵל!  
כִּי הוּא מַצִּיל אֶת קֹדֶשָׁיו מִן הַמַּפְלָצָה  
הָאִימָה: הַשָּׁטָן, וּמּוֹת וּשְׂאוֹל, וּמִקְנֵה הָאֵשׁ  
הַהוּא וְנִפְרִית, אֲשֶׁר הֵיא יְסוּרֵי אֵין קֵץ.

19 O the greatness of the mercy of our God, the Holy One of Israel! For  
he delivereth his saints from that awful monster the devil, and death,  
and hell, and that lake of fire and brimstone, which is endless torment.

מִה רַבָּה קִדְּשַׁת אֱלֹהֵינוּ! כִּי הוּא יוֹדֵעַ כָּל  
הַדְּבָרִים, וְאֵין דְּבַר נִגְעָל מִיְדַעְתּוֹ.

20 O how great the holiness of our God! For he knoweth all things, and  
there is not anything save he knows it.

וְהוּא בָּא אֶל הָעוֹלָם לְהַצִּיל אֶת כָּל הָאָדָם,  
אִם יִשְׁמְעוּ בְּקוֹלוֹ; וְהוּא יִסְבֵּל אֶת מַכְאוֹבֵי כָּל  
הָאָדָם, אֲכֹן מַכְאוֹבֵי כָּל חַי: אִישׁ, אִשָּׁה, וְיֶלֶד,  
אֲשֶׁר לְמִשְׁפַּחַת אָדָם.

21 And he cometh into the world that he may save all men if they will  
hearken unto his voice; for behold, he suffereth the pains of all men,  
yea, the pains of every living creature, both men, women, and children,  
who belong to the family of Adam.

- 22 And he suffereth this that the resurrection might pass upon all men, that all might stand before him at the great and judgment day.  
וְיִסְבֵּל הוּא זֹאת בְּעֵבוֹר תַּחֲוִל הַתְּחִיָּה עַל כָּל הָאָדָם, לְמַעַן יִכְלּוּ הַכֹּל לְעִמּוֹד לִפְנֵי בְיוֹם הַמִּשְׁפָּט הַגָּדוֹל.
- 23 And he commandeth all men that they must repent, and be baptized in his name, having perfect faith in the Holy One of Israel, or they cannot be saved in the kingdom of God.  
וְהוּא מְצַוֶּה אֶת כָּל הָאָדָם לְהִנָּחַם מִחַטָּא, וּלְהִטְבֵּל בְּשִׁמוֹ, בְּאַמוּנָה שְׁלֵמָה בְּקִדּוֹשׁ יִשְׂרָאֵל, וְלֹא, לֹא יוֹשְׁעוּ בְּמַלְכוּת אֱלֹהִים.
- 24 And if they will not repent and believe in his name, and be baptized in his name, and endure to the end, they must be damned; for the Lord God, the Holy One of Israel, has spoken it.  
וְאִם לֹא יִנָּחְמוּ מִחַטָּא, וְלֹא יֵאֱמִינוּ וְיִטְבְּלוּ בְּשִׁמוֹ, וְלֹא יִתְמִידוּ עַד הַקֵּץ, אֲרוּרִים יִהְיוּ; כִּי כֹה דִבֶּר יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים, קִדּוֹשׁ יִשְׂרָאֵל.
- 25 Wherefore, he has given a law; and where there is no law given there is no punishment; and where there is no punishment there is no condemnation; and where there is no condemnation the mercies of the Holy One of Israel have claim upon them, because of the atonement; for they are delivered by the power of him.  
עַל כֵּן נָתַן יְהוָה חֹק; וּבְאֲשֶׁר אֵין חֹק, אֵין עֲנִיֶּשָׁה; וּבְאֲשֶׁר אֵין עֲנִיֶּשָׁה, אֵין הַרְשָׁעָה; וּבְאֲשֶׁר אֵין הַרְשָׁעָה, יֵשׁ לְרַחֲמֵי קִדּוֹשׁ יִשְׂרָאֵל תְּבִיעֵת זְכוּת עָלֵיהֶם מִפְּנֵי הַכִּפּוּרָה; כִּי בְכֹחוֹ הֵם נוֹשָׁעִים.
- 26 For the atonement satisfieth the demands of his justice upon all those who have not the law given to them, that they are delivered from that awful monster, death and hell, and the devil, and the lake of fire and brimstone, which is endless torment; and they are restored to that God who gave them breath, which is the Holy One of Israel.  
כִּי הַכִּפּוּרָה מְמַלֵּאת אֶת תְּבִיעוֹת מִשְׁפָּטוֹ אֶל כָּל אֲשֶׁר לֹא נָתַן לָהֶם חֹק, לְהַצִּילֵם מִיַּד הַמַּפְלָצֶת הָאִיָּמָה הַהִיא: מוֹת וּשְׂאוֹל, הַשָּׁטָן וּמִקְוֵה הָאֵשׁ וְהַגִּפְרִית, אֲשֶׁר הִיא יְסוּרֵי אֵין קֵץ; וְהֵם מוֹשָׁבִים אֶל הָאֱלֹהִים, קִדּוֹשׁ יִשְׂרָאֵל, אֲשֶׁר נָתַן בָּהֶם רוּחַ חַיִּים.
- 27 But wo unto him that has the law given, yea, that has all the commandments of God, like unto us, and that transgresseth them, and that wasteth the days of his probation, for awful is his state!  
אֲדָּהוּי לְאֲשֶׁר נָתַן לוֹ חֹק, וְאֲשֶׁר לוֹ כָּל מִצְוֹת אֱלֹהִים כְּפִי אֲשֶׁר לָנוּ, וְהוּא עוֹבֵר עָלֵיהֶן וּמַכְלֶה לְרִיק אֶת יְמֵי מִבְּחָנוֹ, כִּי נוֹרָא מַצְבּוֹ!
- 28 O that cunning plan of the evil one! O the vainness, and the frailties, and the foolishness of men! When they are learned they think they are wise, and they hearken not unto the counsel of God, for they set it aside, supposing they know of themselves, wherefore, their wisdom is foolishness and it profiteth them not. And they shall perish.  
אָהָה, תַּחְבּוּלוֹת הַמְרָשָׁע הַהוּא! אָהָה, הַכֹּל וְחִלְשוֹת הָאָדָם וְאוֹלָתוֹ! בְּקִנּוּתָם דַּעַת מְדַמִּים כִּי חֲכָמִים הֵם, בְּעוֹד אֵינֶם שׁוֹמְעִים לְעִצְת אֱלֹהִים, כִּי אִם מִשְׁלִיכִים אוֹתָהּ, בְּחִשְׁבָּם אֲשֶׁר מִעֲצָמָם יוֹדְעִים הֵם; עַל כֵּן חֲכָמָתָם הִיא אוֹלָת וְאֵין בָּהּ לְהוֹעִילָם; הֵם יֵאָבְדוּ.
- 29 But to be learned is good if they hearken unto the counsels of God.  
אֲדָּהוּ טוֹב לְאָדָם אֲשֶׁר יִלְמַד, אִם אֲדָּהוּ יִשְׁמַע לְעִצְת אֱלֹהִים.
- 30 But wo unto the rich, who are rich as to the things of the world. For because they are rich they despise the poor, and they persecute the meek, and their hearts are upon their treasures; wherefore, their treasure is their God. And behold, their treasure shall perish with them also.  
הוּי לְעֵשִׁירִים, אֲשֶׁר הֵם עֲשִׁירִים בְּאֲשֶׁר לְדִבְרֵי הָעוֹלָם הַזֶּה. כִּי מִפְּנֵי עֲשָׁרָם יְבוֹזוּ לְעֲנִיִּים וְיַרְדְּפוּ אֶת הָעֲנִיִּים וְלִבָּם לְאוֹצְרוֹתֵיהֶם; עַל כֵּן אוֹצָרָם הוּא אֱלֹהֵיהֶם; וְהִנֵּה יֵאָבֵד אֲף אוֹצָרָם עִמָּהֶם.
- 31 And wo unto the deaf that will not hear; for they shall perish.  
הוּי לְחֹרְשִׁים אֲשֶׁר לֹא יִשְׁמְעוּ, כִּי הֵם יֵאָבְדוּ.

- 32 **הוּי לְעִוְרִים אֲשֶׁר לֹא יֵרְאוּ, כִּי הֵם יֵאָבְדוּ.** Wo unto the blind that will not see; for they shall perish also.
- 33 **הוּי לְעִרְלֵי לֵב, כִּי תִכְסֶּינָה יְדִיעַת עֲוֹנוֹתֵיהֶם בַּיּוֹם הָאֲחֵרוֹן.** Wo unto the uncircumcised of heart, for a knowledge of their iniquities shall smite them at the last day.
- 34 **הוּי לְשֹׁקֵר, כִּי יִשְׁלַךְ שְׂאוֹלָה.** Wo unto the liar, for he shall be thrust down to hell.
- 35 **הוּי לְרוֹצֵחַ, הַהוֹרֵג בְּדָוֶן, כִּי מוֹת יָמוּת.** Wo unto the murderer who deliberately killeth, for he shall die.
- 36 **הוּי לְזֹנִים, כִּי הֵם יִוָּרְדוּ שְׂאוֹלָה.** Wo unto them who commit whoredoms, for they shall be thrust down to hell.
- 37 **הוּי לְעוֹבְדֵי אֱלִילִים, כִּי שֵׁטֶן כָּל הַשְּׂטָנִים חָפֵץ בָּהֶם.** Yea, wo unto those that worship idols, for the devil of all devils delighteth in them.
- 38 **וּבִקְצֶרָה: הוּי לְכָל הַמֵּתִים בַּחַטָּאֵיהֶם; כִּי יָשׁוּבוּ אֶל אֱלֹהִים, וְיֵרְאוּ אֶת פָּנָיו, וְיִעֲמְדוּ בַּחַטָּאֵיהֶם.** And, in fine, wo unto all those who die in their sins; for they shall return to God, and behold his face, and remain in their sins.
- 39 **אֲחֵי הָאֱהוּבִים, זְכְרוּ אֶת אֵימַת הָעֲבָרָה עַל הָאֵל הַקָּדוֹשׁ, וְאֶת אֵימַת הַכְּנִיעָה לְמַשִּׁיכַת הָעָרוֹם הַהוּא. זְכְרוּ כִּי הַתְּמַסְרוֹת לְבָשָׁר הֵיא מָוֶת וְהַתְּמַסְרוֹת לְרוּחַ הֵיא חַיִּי עוֹלָם.** O, my beloved brethren, remember the awfulness in transgressing against that Holy God, and also the awfulness of yielding to the enticings of that cunning one. Remember, to be carnally-minded is death, and to be spiritually-minded is life eternal.
- 40 **אֲחֵי הָאֱהוּבִים, הִשְׁוּ אָזְנוֹ לְדִבְרֵי. זְכְרוּ אֶת גְּדֻלַּת קְדוֹשׁ יִשְׂרָאֵל. אַל נָא תֹאמְרוּ כִּי דִבַּרְתִּי עֲלֵיכֶם קְשׁוֹת; כִּי אִם כֹּה תֹאמְרוּ, מִגִּדְפִים אַתֶּם אֶת הָאֱמֶת, כִּי אֶת דִּבְרֵי יוֹצְרְכֶם דִּבַּרְתִּי. יִדְעַתִּי אֲשֶׁר דִּבְרֵי אֱמֶת קִשִּׁים הֵם עַל כָּל טְמָאָה; אֲךָ הַצִּדִּיקִים לֹא יֵירְאוּ מֵהֶם, כִּי אֶת הָאֱמֶת אוֹהֲבִים הֵם וְלֹא יִרְעְדוּ.** O, my beloved brethren, give ear to my words. Remember the greatness of the Holy One of Israel. Do not say that I have spoken hard things against you; for if ye do, ye will revile against the truth; for I have spoken the words of your Maker. I know that the words of truth are hard against all uncleanness; but the righteous fear them not, for they love the truth and are not shaken.
- 41 **אֲחֵי הָאֱהוּבִים, בּוֹאוּ אֶל יְהוָה הַקָּדוֹשׁ. זְכְרוּ כִּי אֶרְחוּתִּיו צָדֵק. אֲכֹן, הַדְרֹךְ לְאָדָם צָרָה, אֲךָ מִשְׁתַּרְעַת הִיא בְּמִסְלָה יְשָׁרָה לְפָנָיו, וְשׁוֹמֵר הַשַּׁעַר הוּא קְדוֹשׁ יִשְׂרָאֵל; וְאִין הוּא מַעֲבִיד שָׁם מִשְׁרָת; וְאִין כָּל דְּרֹךְ לְבֹא שָׁמָּה, כִּי אִם בַּשַּׁעַר; וְאִין לְרִמּוֹתוֹ, כִּי יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים שְׁמוֹ.** O then, my beloved brethren, come unto the Lord, the Holy One. Remember that his paths are righteous. Behold, the way for man is narrow, but it lieth in a straight course before him, and the keeper of the gate is the Holy One of Israel; and he employeth no servant there; and there is none other way save it be by the gate; for he cannot be deceived, for the Lord God is his name.
- 42 **וְלְכָל הַדּוֹפֵק עַל הַשַּׁעַר הוּא יִפְתָּח; וְהַחֲכָמִים וְהַמְּלִמְדִים וְהַעֲשִׂירִים, אֲשֶׁר הֵם נִפְּחוּסִים בְּגִאָוָה מִפְּנֵי לְמוּדָם וְחֻכְמָתָם וְעִשְׂרָם אוֹתָם הוּא יִבְּהַ, וּבִלְתִּי אִם יִשְׁלִיכוּ אֶת אֱלֹהֵם, וְיִכְיִירוּ כִּי נֹאֲלִים הֵם לְפָנָיו אֱלֹהִים, וְיִשְׁפִּילוּ לְמַעַמְקֵי עֲנָוָה, לָהֶם לֹא יִפְתָּח.** And whoso knocketh, to him will he open; and the wise, and the learned, and they that are rich, who are puffed up because of their learning, and their wisdom, and their riches—yea, they are they whom he despiseth; and save they shall cast these things away, and consider themselves fools before God, and come down in the depths of humility, he will not open unto them.

- 43 But the things of the wise and the prudent shall be hid from them forever—yea, that happiness which is prepared for the saints.
- אך דְּבָרֵי הַפְּקָחִים וְהַנְּבוֹנִים יִסְתָּרוּ מֵהֶם לְעוֹלָם, אַכֵּן, הַשְׂמֻחָה הַמוֹכֶנֶה לְקְדוּשָׁה.
- 44 O, my beloved brethren, remember my words. Behold, I take off my garments, and I shake them before you; I pray the God of my salvation that he view me with his all-searching eye; wherefore, ye shall know at the last day, when all men shall be judged of their works, that the God of Israel did witness that I shook your iniquities from my soul, and that I stand with brightness before him, and am rid of your blood.
- אֲחֵי הָאֱהוּבִים, זְכְרוּ אֶת דְּבָרַי. הִנְנִי פוֹשֵׁט אֶת שְׂמֹלְתִי וּמְנַעֵר אוֹתָהּ לִפְנֵיכֶם; אֲנִי מִבְקֵשׁ מֵאֵל יְשׁוּעָתִי כִּי יִבִּיט עָלַי בְּעֵינָיו הַבּוֹחֶנֶת; וְיִתְּדְעוּ בַּיּוֹם הַהוּא, כִּי הָאֱלֹהִים, הַבֹּהֶשֶׁפֶט כָּל הָאָדָם עַל מַעֲשֵׂיהֶם, אֲשֶׁר אֱלֹהֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל הִיָּה עֵד כִּי נִעַרְתִּי מִנִּפְשִׁי אֶת עֲוֹנוֹתֵיכֶם, וְכִי הִנְנִי עוֹמֵד לִפְנֵי בִּיפְעָה, נָקִי מִדְּמָכֶם.
- 45 O, my beloved brethren, turn away from your sins; shake off the chains of him that would bind you fast; come unto that God who is the rock of your salvation.
- אֲחֵי הָאֱהוּבִים, סוּרוּ מִחַטָּאֵיכֶם; נַעֲרוּ אֶת זְנִי הַחֶפֶץ לִכְבֹּל אֶתְכֶם בְּחִזָּקָה; בּוֹאוּ אֶל הָאֵל אֲשֶׁר הוּא צוּר יְשׁוּעַתְכֶם.
- 46 Prepare your souls for that glorious day when justice shall be administered unto the righteous, even the day of judgment, that ye may not shrink with awful fear; that ye may not remember your awful guilt in perfectness, and be constrained to exclaim: Holy, holy are thy judgments, O Lord God Almighty—but I know my guilt; I transgressed thy law, and my transgressions are mine; and the devil hath obtained me, that I am a prey to his awful misery.
- הַכִּינוּ אֶת נַפְשְׁכֶם לַיּוֹם הַנּוֹכָח, יוֹם הַדִּין אֲשֶׁר בּוֹ יִשְׁפֹּט הַצַּדִּיק בְּצִדֵּק, לְכָל תִּרְתַּעוּ בַּפֶּחַד אִים, וְלֹבֵל תִּזְכְּרוּ אֶת אֲשַׁמְתְּכֶם הַנוֹרָאָה בְּשִׁלְמוּתָהּ, וְתִאָּלְצוּ לִקְרֹא: קְדוֹשׁ, קְדוֹשׁ מִשְׁפָּטְךָ, יְהוָה, אֵל שֶׁדִּי. יָדַעְתִּי אֲשֶׁמְתִּי; עֲבַרְתִּי אֶת חֻקְךָ, וּפִשְׁעִי, מִמֶּנִּי הֵם; וְהִשְׁטָן נִחְלָנִי וְאֲנִי טָרֶף לְמִצִּיקְתּוֹ הַנוֹרָאָה.
- 47 But behold, my brethren, is it expedient that I should awake you to an awful reality of these things? Would I harrow up your souls if your minds were pure? Would I be plain unto you according to the plainness of the truth if ye were freed from sin?
- רְאוּ, אֲחֵי, הֲאֵם הַכֶּרֶחַ כִּי אֶעֱרִיכֶם לְאִמְתָּהּ הַנוֹרָאָה אֲשֶׁר לְדִבְרֵים הָאֵלֶּה? הֲאֶעֱנֶה אֶת נַפְשְׁכֶם אִם טְהוֹר לְבַבְכֶם? הֲהִיִּיתִי יָשָׁר עִמָּכֶם, עַל פִּי יָשָׁר הָאֱמֶת, אֱלֹו נְקִיִּים מִחַטָּא הִיִּיתֶם?
- 48 Behold, if ye were holy I would speak unto you of holiness; but as ye are not holy, and ye look upon me as a teacher, it must needs be expedient that I teach you the consequences of sin.
- אֱלֹו קְדוּשִׁים אִתֶּם, הִיָּה דְּבָרִי אֵלֵיכֶם בְּדִבְרֵי קִדְּשׁ; אֲנִי יֵעַן אֲשֶׁר אֵינְכֶם קְדוּשִׁים, וְהִנֵּנְכֶם רוֹאִים אוֹתִי כְּרֹאֵת מוֹרֶה, הַכֶּרֶחַ הוּא אֲשֶׁר אֶלְמִדְכֶם אֶת תּוֹצְאֹת הַחַטָּא.
- 49 Behold, my soul abhorreth sin, and my heart delighteth in righteousness; and I will praise the holy name of my God.
- נִפְשִׁי תִתְּעַב חַטָּא וּבִצְדָקָה יִתְעַנֵּג לְבִי; אֶהְלֵל אֶת שֵׁם אֱלֹהֵי קִדְּשִׁי.
- 50 Come, my brethren, every one that thirsteth, come ye to the waters; and he that hath no money, come buy and eat; yea, come buy wine and milk without money and without price.
- בּוֹאוּ, אֲחֵי, כָּל צָמָא לָכוּ לַמַּיִם; וְאֲשֶׁר אֵין לוֹ כֶּסֶף, לָכוּ שִׁבְרוּ וְאָכְלוּ; וְלָכוּ שִׁבְרוּ בְּלוֹא כֶּסֶף וּבְלֹא מַחִיר יַיִן וְחֶלֶב.
- 51 Wherefore, do not spend money for that which is of no worth, nor your labor for that which cannot satisfy. Hearken diligently unto me, and remember the words which I have spoken; and come unto the Holy One of Israel, and feast upon that which perisheth not, neither can be corrupted, and let your soul delight in fatness.
- לָמָּה תִשְׁקְלוּ כֶּסֶף בְּלוֹא לֶחֶם וְיִגִּיעְכֶם בְּלֹא לִשְׂבֻעָה. שְׁמַעוּ שְׂמוּעָה אֵלַי וְזָכְרוּ אֶת דְּבָרִי אֲשֶׁר דִּבַּרְתִּי; בּוֹאוּ אֶל קְדוֹשׁ יִשְׂרָאֵל, וְאָכְלוּ לִשְׂבֻעָה בְּאֲשֶׁר לֹא יִכָּלֶה וְלֹא יִשְׁחַת, וְתִתְעַנֵּג בְּדִשּׁוֹן נַפְשְׁכֶם.



- 52 Behold, my beloved brethren, remember the words of your God; pray unto him continually by day, and give thanks unto his holy name by night. Let your hearts rejoice.
- ראו, אחי האהובים, זכרו את דברי אלהיכם; התפללו תמיד אליו יומם, ובלילה הודו לשם קדשו; שמחו את לבבכם.
- 53 And behold how great the covenants of the Lord, and how great his condescensions unto the children of men; and because of his greatness, and his grace and mercy, he has promised unto us that our seed shall not utterly be destroyed, according to the flesh, but that he would preserve them; and in future generations they shall become a righteous branch unto the house of Israel.
- ראו מה גדולים דברי בריתות יהוה ומה גדולים מעשי מחילת כבודו לבני האנוש; ומפני גדלותו, וחסדו ורחמיו, אמר לנו כי לא יכלה זרענו כלו, בדרך הבשר, כי אם הוא ינצרים; ובדורות אשר יבואו יהיו הם צמח צדקה לבית ישראל.
- 54 And now, my brethren, I would speak unto you more; but on the morrow I will declare unto you the remainder of my words. Amen.
- ועתה, אחי, חפצי כי אוסיף דבר אליכם; אך למחרת אנידכם את יתר דברי. אמן.

## י

## 10

- 1 And now I, Jacob, speak unto you again, my beloved brethren, concerning this righteous branch of which I have spoken.
- ועתה, אני יעקב, אוסיף לדבר אליכם, אחי האהובים, על אודות צמח הצדקה אשר הזכרתי.
- 2 For behold, the promises which we have obtained are promises unto us according to the flesh; wherefore, as it has been shown unto me that many of our children shall perish in the flesh because of unbelief, nevertheless, God will be merciful unto many; and our children shall be restored, that they may come to that which will give them the true knowledge of their Redeemer.
- כי דברי ברית יהוה אשר נתנו לנו, יבואו עלינו בעודנו בבשר; והראה לי כי רבים מבנינו יאבדו, בדרך הבשר, מפני חסר אמונתם; ואולם, יכמרו רחמי אלהים על רבים; ובנינו ישובו למען הענק להם ידיעת אמת על גואלם.
- 3 Wherefore, as I said unto you, it must needs be expedient that Christ—for in the last night the angel spake unto me that this should be his name—should come among the Jews, among those who are the more wicked part of the world; and they shall crucify him—for thus it behooveth our God, and there is none other nation on earth that would crucify their God.
- על כן, כפי אשר אמרתי לכם, הכרח כי יבוא משיח, כי כך יקרא שמו, כדבר המלאך אלי לילה, אכן, יבוא בקרב היהודים, בקרב גדולי הרשעים אשר בעולם; והם יצלבוהו, כי כך ראוי לאלהינו, ואין עוד אמה על פני הארץ אשר תצלב את אלהיה.
- 4 For should the mighty miracles be wrought among other nations they would repent, and know that he be their God.
- כי לו נעשו הפלאים האדירים בקרב עמים אחרים, כי אז נחמו אנשיהם על מעשיהם והכירו כי הוא אלהיהם.
- 5 But because of priestcrafts and iniquities, they at Jerusalem will stiffen their necks against him, that he be crucified.
- אך מפני תחבולות כמרים ועוונות יקשו אלה אשר בירושלם את ערפם עליו, למען יצלב.
- 6 Wherefore, because of their iniquities, destructions, famines, pestilences, and bloodshed shall come upon them; and they who shall not be destroyed shall be scattered among all nations.
- לכן, מפני עוונם, יבוא עליהם הרס ורעב ודבר ודמים; ואשר לא יאבדו, יפוצו בקרב כל העמים.



- 7 But behold, thus saith the Lord God: When the day cometh that they shall believe in me, that I am Christ, then have I covenanted with their fathers that they shall be restored in the flesh, upon the earth, unto the lands of their inheritance.
- 8 And it shall come to pass that they shall be gathered in from their long dispersion, from the isles of the sea, and from the four parts of the earth; and the nations of the Gentiles shall be great in the eyes of me, saith God, in carrying them forth to the lands of their inheritance.
- 9 Yea, the kings of the Gentiles shall be nursing fathers unto them, and their queens shall become nursing mothers; wherefore, the promises of the Lord are great unto the Gentiles, for he hath spoken it, and who can dispute?
- 10 But behold, this land, said God, shall be a land of thine inheritance, and the Gentiles shall be blessed upon the land.
- 11 And this land shall be a land of liberty unto the Gentiles, and there shall be no kings upon the land, who shall raise up unto the Gentiles.
- 12 And I will fortify this land against all other nations.
- 13 And he that fighteth against Zion shall perish, saith God.
- 14 For he that raiseth up a king against me shall perish, for I, the Lord, the king of heaven, will be their king, and I will be a light unto them forever, that hear my words.
- 15 Wherefore, for this cause, that my covenants may be fulfilled which I have made unto the children of men, that I will do unto them while they are in the flesh, I must needs destroy the secret works of darkness, and of murders, and of abominations.
- 16 Wherefore, he that fighteth against Zion, both Jew and Gentile, both bond and free, both male and female, shall perish; for they are they who are the whore of all the earth; for they who are not for me are against me, saith our God.
- 17 For I will fulfil my promises which I have made unto the children of men, that I will do unto them while they are in the flesh—
- 18 Wherefore, my beloved brethren, thus saith our God: I will afflict thy seed by the hand of the Gentiles; nevertheless, I will soften the hearts of the Gentiles, that they shall be like unto a father to them; wherefore, the Gentiles shall be blessed and numbered among the house of Israel.
- כִּי כֹה אָמַר יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים: בְּבוֹא הַיּוֹם אֲשֶׁר יֵאֱמִינוּ בִּי, כִּי אֲנִי הַמְּשִׁיחַ, אֲזִי אֶקִּים בְּרִיתִי עִם אֲבוֹתֵיהֶם לְהַשְׁיבָם בְּעוֹדָם בְּבָשָׂר עַל פְּנֵי הָאֲדָמָה, אֶל אֲרָצוֹת נַחֲלָתָם.
- וְנִקְבְּצוּ מִרְחֹבֵי פְזוּרָתָם, מֵאֵי הַיָּם וּמֵאֲרָבֶּעַ כְּנַפּוֹת הָאָרֶץ; וְהַגּוֹיִים יִגְדְּלוּ בְּעֵינֵי, נְאוֹם אֱלֹהִים, בְּאֲשֶׁר יִשְׁאוּם אֶל אֲרָצוֹת נַחֲלָתָם.
- וְהָיוּ מְלָכֵי הַגּוֹיִים אֲמִנִּיהֶם, וְשָׂרוֹתֵיהֶם מִיְּנִיקוֹתֵיהֶם; עַל כֵּן, גְּדוֹלִים דְּבָרֵי יְהוָה לְגוֹיִים, כִּי הוּא דִּבֶּר וּמִי יִתְוַכַּח?
- וְכֹה אָמַר אֱלֹהִים: הָאָרֶץ הַזֹּאת אָרֶץ "נַחֲלָתְכֶם תִּהְיֶה וְהַגּוֹיִים יִתְבָּרְכוּ בָּאָרֶץ."
- וְתִהְיֶה הָאָרֶץ הַזֹּאת אָרֶץ דְּרוֹר לְגוֹיִים; וְלֹא יִהְיוּ בָּהּ מְלָכִים, אֲשֶׁר יִקְוֶמוּ עַל הַגּוֹיִים.
- וְאֲנִי אֲבַצֵּר אֶת הָאָרֶץ הַזֹּאת עַל כָּל שְׂאֵר הָאֻמּוֹת.
- וְכָל הַנִּלְחָם בְּצִיּוֹן יֵאָבֵד, נְאוֹם אֱלֹהִים.
- כִּי הַמְּקִים עָלַי מֶלֶךְ יֵאָבֵד, כִּי אֲנִכִּי, יְהוָה, מֶלֶךְ הַשָּׁמַיִם, אֶהְיֶה מֶלֶכָם; וְלִשְׁמוֹעִים בְּקוֹלִי אֶהְיֶה קָאוֹר עַד עוֹלָם.
- הֵן בְּעָבוּר הָקַם אֶת בְּרִיתוֹתַי אֲשֶׁר כָּרַתִּי לְבָנֵי הָאָדָם, לְהַקִּים לָהֶם בְּעוֹדָם בָּשָׂר, הַשְׁחַת אֲשַׁחִית אֶת מַעֲשֵׂי הָאֶפֶל וְהַרְצַח וְהַתּוֹעֵבוֹת אֲשֶׁר בַּמִּסְתָּרִים.
- עַל כֵּן הַנִּלְחָם עָלַי צִיּוֹן, יְהוּדִי וְגוֹי, עֶבֶד וְחֹפֶשֶׁי, אִישׁ וְאִשָּׁה אֲבוּד יֵאָבֵד; כִּי הֵם אֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר זוֹנֶת כָּל הָאָרֶץ, כִּי כָּל אֲשֶׁר אֵינּוּ לִמְעַנִּי, נִגְדִי הוּא, נְאוֹם אֱלֹהֵינוּ.
- כִּי אֶקִּים אֶת דְּבָרֵי אֲשֶׁר דִּבַּרְתִּי לְבָנֵי הָאָדָם, אֲשֶׁר אַעֲשֶׂה לָהֶם בְּעוֹדָם בְּבָשָׂר.
- לְכֵן, אַחֵי הָאֱהוּבִים, כֹּה אָמַר אֱלֹהֵינוּ: אֲנִי אַעֲנֶה אֶת יְרֵעָה בְּיַד הַגּוֹיִים; אוֹלָם אֲרַכֶּה אֶת לִבֵּב הַגּוֹיִים, לְמַעַן יִהְיוּ לָהֶם כְּאָב; וְיִהְיוּ הַגּוֹיִים מְבָרָכִים וְיִמְנוּ בַתּוֹךְ בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל.

- וְאֶנְכִי אֶקְדִּישׁ אֶת הָאָרֶץ הַזֹּאת לְזֶרְעְכֶם  
וְלְאִשְׁרֵי יִמִּנּוּ בְּתוֹךְ זֶרְעְךָ לְאָרֶץ נַחֲלָתָם.  
עַד עוֹלָם; כִּי אֶרֶץ נִבְחָרָת הִיא מִכָּל הָאֲרָצוֹת,  
אָמַר אֵלַי אֱלֹהִים, עַל כֵּן חֲפָצִי כִּי יַעֲבֹדוּנִי כָּל  
יֹשְׁבֵיהָ, נְאוּם אֱלֹהִים.
- וְעַתָּה, אַחֵי הָאֱהוּבִים, יֵעָן אֲשֶׁר נָתַן לָנוּ אֱלֹהֵינוּ  
הַרְחוּם יְדִיעָה כֹּה רַבָּה עַל אוֹדוֹת הַדְּבָרִים  
הָאֵלֶּה, הִבֵּה נִזְכְּרָהוּ וְנִסִּיר חֲטָאֵינוּ, וְאַל נֶאֱ  
נֹרִיד רָאשֵׁינוּ, כִּי אֵין אֲנַחְנוּ מִנְּדִים; אָמֵנָם  
גָּלִינוּ מֵאֶרֶץ נַחֲלָתָנוּ; אַף הוּבְלָנוּ אֶל אֶרֶץ טוֹבָה  
יֹתֵר, כִּי יִהְיֶה עֲשָׂה אֶת הַיָּם לְאֶרֶץ לָנוּ, וְעַל  
אֶחָד מֵאֵי הַיָּם אֲנַחְנוּ יֹשְׁבִים.
- וְגִדּוּלִים דְּבָרֵי יִהוּה עַל יֹשְׁבֵי אֵי הַיָּם; עַל  
כֵּן, וְכִי עַל אֵיִם מְדַבֵּר, הִכָּרַח אֲשֶׁר יֵשׁ אֵיִם  
נוֹסְפִים עַל זֶה, וְאֵף בָּהֶם יֹשְׁבִים אַחֲנֵנוּ.
- כִּי הִגֵּלָה יִהוּה אֱלֹהִים מִבֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל כָּפְעָם  
בְּפַעַם, כְּחֲפָצוֹ וְכִרְצוֹנוֹ. וְהִנֵּה יִהוּה פּוֹקֵד אֶת  
כָּל אֲשֶׁר נִקְטְפוּ, עַל כֵּן פּוֹקֵד הוּא אֶף אוֹתָנוּ.
- לָכֵן, שִׁמְחוּ אֶת לְבָבְכֶם וְזָכְרוּ כִּי חֲפָשִׁיִּים אַתֶּם  
לַפְעַל בְּרִשּׁוֹת עֲצָמְכֶם, לִבְחֹר בְּדֶרֶךְ מָוֶת  
נֶצְחִי אוֹ בְּדֶרֶךְ חַיֵּי עוֹלָם.
- עַל כֵּן, אַחֵי הָאֱהוּבִים, הִטּוּ רְצוֹנְכֶם לְאֲשֶׁר  
חֲפֵץ אֱלֹהִים וְאַל תִּטּוּ לְאֲשֶׁר חֲפֵץ הַשָּׁטָן  
וְלַתְּאֻת הַבָּשָׂר; וְזָכְרוּ, אַחֵר הַתְּרַצוֹתְכֶם לִפְנֵי  
אֱלֹהִים, כִּי רַק בְּחִסְדּוֹ אַתֶּם נוֹשָׁעִים.
- לָכֵן, יְהִי רְצוֹן מִלִּפְנֵי אֱלֹהִים לְהַקִּימְכֶם מִן  
הַמָּוֶת בְּכַח הַתְּחִיָּה, אֵף לְהַקִּימְכֶם מִמָּוֶת נֶצְחִי  
בְּכַח הַכִּפּוּרָה, לִמְעַן תִּתְקַבְּלוּ בְּמַלְכוּת אֱלֹהִים  
הַנִּצְחִית, בְּעִבּוֹר תְּהִלָּתוֹ בְּחִסְדֵּי קֹדֶשׁ. אָמֵן.
- 19 Wherefore, I will consecrate this land unto thy seed, and them who shall be numbered among thy seed, forever, for the land of their inheritance; for it is a choice land, saith God unto me, above all other lands, wherefore I will have all men that dwell thereon that they shall worship me, saith God.
- 20 And now, my beloved brethren, seeing that our merciful God has given us so great knowledge concerning these things, let us remember him, and lay aside our sins, and not hang down our heads, for we are not cast off; nevertheless, we have been driven out of the land of our inheritance; but we have been led to a better land, for the Lord has made the sea our path, and we are upon an isle of the sea.
- 21 But great are the promises of the Lord unto them who are upon the isles of the sea; wherefore as it says isles, there must needs be more than this, and they are inhabited also by our brethren.
- 22 For behold, the Lord God has led away from time to time from the house of Israel, according to his will and pleasure. And now behold, the Lord remembereth all them who have been broken off, wherefore he remembereth us also.
- 23 Therefore, cheer up your hearts, and remember that ye are free to act for yourselves—to choose the way of everlasting death or the way of eternal life.
- 24 Wherefore, my beloved brethren, reconcile yourselves to the will of God, and not to the will of the devil and the flesh; and remember, after ye are reconciled unto God, that it is only in and through the grace of God that ye are saved.
- 25 Wherefore, may God raise you from death by the power of the resurrection, and also from everlasting death by the power of the atonement, that ye may be received into the eternal kingdom of God, that ye may praise him through grace divine. Amen.

## יָא

## 11

- דְּבָרִים רַבִּים נֹסְפִים דִּבֶּר יַעֲקֹב אֶל עַמִּי בְּעֵת  
הַהִיא, אַף אֲנִי הִבַּאתִי אֶל הַכְּתָב רַק אֶת  
הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, כִּי דִי לִי בְּאֲשֶׁר כָּתַבְתִּי.
- וְעַתָּה, אָנִי, נְפִי, אֶכְתֹּב עוֹד מִדְּבָרֵי יִישׁוּעָהוּ;  
כִּי חֲפָצָה נִפְשִׁי בְּדְבָרָיו. וְאֲנִי אֲמַשִּׁיל אֶת
- 1 And now, Jacob spake many more things to my people at that time; nevertheless only these things have I caused to be written, for the things which I have written sufficeth me.
- 2 And now I, Nephi, write more of the words of Isaiah, for my soul delighteth in his words. For I will liken his words unto my people,

## נְפִי ב יא:ג-יב:ג

דְּבָרָיו לְעַמִּי וְאֶשְׁלַח אֵל כָּל בְּנֵי, כִּי הוּא אָבִן  
רָאָה אֶת גּוֹאֲלִי, כִּפִּי אֲשֶׁר רָאִיתִי אֹנְכִי.

and I will send them forth unto all my children, for he verily saw my Redeemer, even as I have seen him.

וְאָחִי יַעֲקֹב רָאָהוּ אִפִּי הוּא, כִּפִּי אֲשֶׁר רָאִיתִי  
אֲנִי; לָכֵן אֶשְׁלַח אֶת דְּבָרֵיהֶם אֵל בְּנֵי לְמַעַן  
הוֹכִיחַ לָהֶם כִּי דְבָרֵי אֱמֶת הֵם. וְעַל פִּי דְבַר  
שְׁלֹשָׁה, אֶמְרָ אֱלֹהִים, אֲכַוֵּן אֶת דְּבָרִי. וְאוֹלָם  
שׁוֹלַח אֱלֹהִים עֲדִים נֹסְפִים וְאֵת אֱמֶת כָּל  
דְּבָרָיו הוּא מוֹכִיחַ.

3 And my brother, Jacob, also has seen him as I have seen him; wherefore, I will send their words forth unto my children to prove unto them that my words are true. Wherefore, by the words of three, God hath said, I will establish my word. Nevertheless, God sendeth more witnesses, and he proveth all his words.

הִנֵּה נַפְשִׁי מִתְעַנֶּגֶת לְהוֹכִיחַ לְעַמִּי אֶת אֱמֶת  
בּוֹא הַמָּשִׁיחַ; כִּי לְתַכְלִית הַזֹּאת נִתְּנָה תּוֹרַת  
מֹשֶׁה; וְכָל הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר נִתְּנוּ מֵאֱלֹהִים  
לְאָדָם מֵעַתָּה רִאשִׁית הָעוֹלָם הֵמָּה כְּדִגְמָתוֹ.

4 Behold, my soul delighteth in proving unto my people the truth of the coming of Christ; for, for this end hath the law of Moses been given; and all things which have been given of God from the beginning of the world, unto man, are the typifying of him.

וְהִנֵּה הִתְעַנֶּגָה נַפְשִׁי בְּבְרִיתוֹת יְהוָה אֲשֶׁר  
כָּרַת עִם אֲבוֹתֵינוּ; אֲכֹן, נַפְשִׁי מִתְעַנֶּגֶת  
בְּחֶסֶד וּבְצִדְקָה, וּבְגִבּוֹרָתוֹ וּבְרַחֲמָיו, בְּתַכְנִיתוֹ  
הַגְּדוֹלָה וְהַנִּצְחִית אֲשֶׁר בִּישׁוּעָה מִמָּוֶת.

5 And also my soul delighteth in the covenants of the Lord which he hath made to our fathers; yea, my soul delighteth in his grace, and in his justice, and power, and mercy in the great and eternal plan of deliverance from death.

וְנַפְשִׁי מִתְעַנֶּגֶת לְהוֹכִיחַ לְעַמִּי כִּי בְּלֹא בִיאַת  
הַמָּשִׁיחַ סוֹף כָּל הָאָדָם אֲבָדוֹן.

6 And my soul delighteth in proving unto my people that save Christ should come all men must perish.

כִּי אִם אֵין מָשִׁיחַ, אֵין אֱלֹהִים; וְאִם אֵין  
אֱלֹהִים, אֵין אֲנַחְנוּ קְיָמִים, כִּי לֹא יוֹכֵלָה הָיִתָּה  
לְהִיּוֹת בְּרִיאָה. אֲךָ יֵשׁ אֱלֹהִים וְהוּא הַמָּשִׁיחַ,  
וְהוּא בָּא בְּמִלְאֵת עֵתוֹ.

7 For if there be no Christ there be no God; and if there be no God we are not, for there could have been no creation. But there is a God, and he is Christ, and he cometh in the fulness of his own time.

וְעַתָּה אֶכְתֹּב מִדְּבָרֵי יִשְׁעִיָּהוּ, לְמַעַן יְרוֹמְמוּ  
אֶת לִבָּם אֵלֶּה מַעֲמֵי אֲשֶׁר יִרְאוּם וְיִשְׂמְחוּ  
בְּעִבּוֹר כָּל הָאָדָם. הִנֵּה הַדְּבָרִים, וְיִכּוֹלִים  
אַתֶּם לְהַמְשִׁילָם לָכֵם וּלְכָל בְּנֵי הָאָדָם.

8 And now I write some of the words of Isaiah, that whoso of my people shall see these words may lift up their hearts and rejoice for all men. Now these are the words, and ye may liken them unto you and unto all men.

## יב

## 12

הַדְּבַר אֲשֶׁר חָזָה יִשְׁעִיָּהוּ בֶן אֲמוֹץ עַל  
יְהוּדָה וִירוּשָׁלַם.

1 The word that Isaiah the son of Amoz saw concerning Judah and Jerusalem.

וְהָיָה בְּאַחֲרִית הַיָּמִים, נִכּוֹן יְהִיָּה הַר בֵּית  
יְהוָה בְּרֹאשׁ הַהָרִים וְנִשְׂא מִגְבָּעוֹת; וְנִהְרֹו  
אֵלָיו כָּל הַגּוֹיִם.

2 And it shall come to pass in the last days, that the mountain of the Lord's house shall be established in the top of the mountains, and shall be exalted above the hills; and all nations shall flow unto it.

וְהָלְכוּ עַמִּים רַבִּים וְאָמְרוּ: לָכוּ וְנַעֲלֶה אֶל הַר  
יְהוָה אֵל בֵּית אֱלֹהֵי יַעֲקֹב, וְיִרְנוּ מִדְּרָכָיו,  
וְנִלְכֶה בְּאַחֲרֵיתוֹ; כִּי מִצִּיּוֹן תֵּצֵא תּוֹרָה וְדָבַר  
יְהוָה מִירוּשָׁלַם.

3 And many people shall go and say, Come ye, and let us go up to the mountain of the Lord, to the house of the God of Jacob; and he will teach us of his ways, and we will walk in his paths: for out of Zion shall go forth the law, and the word of the Lord from Jerusalem.

- 4 And he shall judge among the nations, and shall rebuke many people: and they shall beat their swords into plowshares, and their spears into pruning hooks: nation shall not lift up sword against nation, neither shall they learn war any more.
- וְשֹׁפֵט בֵּין הַגּוֹיִם וְהוֹכִיחַ לְעַמִּים רַבִּים;  
וְכַתְּתוּ חֶרְבוֹתָם לְאַתִּים וְחֲנִיתוֹתֵיהֶם  
לְמִזְמֵרוֹת, לֹא יִשָּׂא גּוֹי אֶל גּוֹי חֶרֶב וְלֹא  
יִלְמְדוּ עוֹד מִלְחָמָה.
- 5 O house of Jacob, come ye, and let us walk in the light of the Lord.
- בֵּית יַעֲקֹב לָכוּ וְנִלְכֶּה בְּאוֹר יְהוָה.
- 6 Therefore thou hast forsaken thy people the house of Jacob, because they be replenished from the east, and are soothsayers like the Philistines, and they please themselves in the children of strangers.
- כִּי נִטְשָׁתָה עַמְּךָ בֵּית יַעֲקֹב כִּי מָלְאוּ מִקֶּדֶם,  
וְעֲנִיִּים כְּפִלְשְׁתִּים; וּבְיַלְדֵי נְכָרִים יִשְׁפִּיקוּ.
- 7 Their land also is full of silver and gold, neither is there any end of their treasures; their land is also full of horses, neither is there any end of their chariots:
- וְתִמְלֵא אֶרְצוֹ כֶּסֶף וְזָהָב, וְאֵין קֶצֶה לְאַצְרוֹתָיו;  
וְתִמְלֵא אֶרְצוֹ סוּסִים, וְאֵין קֶצֶה לְמִרְכָּבוֹתָיו.
- 8 Their land also is full of idols; they worship the work of their own hands, that which their own fingers have made:
- וְתִמְלֵא אֶרְצוֹ אֱלִילִים; לְמַעֲשֵׂה יָדָיו יִשְׁתַּחֲוּוּ,  
לְאֲשֶׁר עָשׂוּ אֶצְבָּעֹתָיו.
- 9 And the mean man boweth down, and the great man humbleth himself: therefore forgive them not.
- וְיִשָּׁח אָדָם וְיִשְׁפָּל אִישׁ; וְאֵל תִּשָּׂא לָהֶם.
- 10 Enter into the rock, and hide thee in the dust, for fear of the Lord, and for the glory of his majesty.
- בּוֹא בַצּוּר וְהִסְתֵּמוּ בְּעָפָר מִפְּנֵי פַחַד יְהוָה;  
וּמִהֲדָר גָּאֹנֹו.
- 11 The lofty looks of man shall be humbled, and the haughtiness of men shall be bowed down, and the Lord alone shall be exalted in that day.
- עֵינֵי גְבוּהוֹת אָדָם שִׁפְּלִי, וְשַׁח רוּם אֲנָשִׁים;  
וְנִשְׁגָּב יְהוָה לְבַדּוֹ בַּיּוֹם הַהוּא.
- 12 For the day of the Lord of hosts shall be upon every one that is proud and lofty, and upon every one that is lifted up; and he shall be brought low:
- כִּי יוֹם לַיהוָה צְבָאוֹת עַל כָּל גָּאֹה וָרוֹם;  
וְעַל כָּל נִשְׂא וְשִׁפְּלִי.
- 13 And upon all the cedars of Lebanon, that are high and lifted up, and upon all the oaks of Bashan,
- וְעַל כָּל אֲרֻזֵּי הַלְבָּנוֹן הָרָמִים וְהַנִּשְׂאִים;  
וְעַל כָּל אֱלוֹנֵי הַבָּשָׁן.
- 14 And upon all the high mountains, and upon all the hills that are lifted up,
- וְעַל כָּל הַהָרִים הָרָמִים; וְעַל כָּל  
הַגְּבָעוֹת הַנִּשְׂאוֹת.
- 15 And upon every high tower, and upon every fenced wall,
- וְעַל כָּל מִגְדָּל גְּבוּהָ; וְעַל כָּל חוֹמָה בְּצוּרָה.
- 16 And upon all the ships of Tarshish, and upon all pleasant pictures.
- וְעַל כָּל אֲנִיּוֹת תַּרְשִׁישׁ; וְעַל כָּל שְׂכִיּוֹת הַחֶמְדָּה.
- 17 And the loftiness of man shall be bowed down, and the haughtiness of men shall be made low: and the Lord alone shall be exalted in that day.
- וְשַׁח גְבוּהוֹת הָאָדָם, וְשִׁפְּלִי רוּם אֲנָשִׁים; וְנִשְׁגָּב  
יְהוָה לְבַדּוֹ בַּיּוֹם הַהוּא.
- 18 And the idols he shall utterly abolish.
- וְהָאֱלִילִים כָּלִיל יִחְלֹף.

- 19 And they shall go into the holes of the rocks, and into the caves of the earth, for fear of the Lord, and for the glory of his majesty, when he ariseth to shake terribly the earth.
- 20 In that day a man shall cast his idols of silver, and his idols of gold, which they made each one for himself to worship, to the moles and to the bats;
- 21 To go into the clefts of the rocks, and into the tops of the ragged rocks, for fear of the Lord, and for the glory of his majesty, when he ariseth to shake terribly the earth.
- 22 Cease ye from man, whose breath is in his nostrils: for wherein is he to be accounted of?
- ובָּאוּ בַּמְעֵרוֹת צְרִים, וּבַמְחֹלוֹת עֶפְר, מִפְּנֵי פַחַד יְהוָה וּמִהֲדָר גָּאוֹנוֹ, בְּקוֹמוֹ לַעֲרֹץ הָאָרֶץ.
- בַּיּוֹם הַהוּא יִשְׁלִיךְ הָאָדָם אֶת אֱלִילֵי כֶסֶף וְאֶת אֱלִילֵי זָהָב וְהָבּוּ אֲשֶׁר עָשׂוּ לוֹ; לְהִשְׁתַּחֲוֹת, לַחֲפָר פְּרוֹת וְלַעֲטִלְפִים,
- לָבוֹא בְּנִקְרוֹת הַצְּרִים וּבְסַעֲפֵי הַסְּלָעִים, מִפְּנֵי פַחַד יְהוָה, וּמִהֲדָר גָּאוֹנוֹ, בְּקוֹמוֹ לַעֲרֹץ הָאָרֶץ.
- חֲדְלוּ לָכֶם מִן הָאָדָם, אֲשֶׁר נְשָׁמָה בְּאָפוֹ, כִּי בִמָּה נִחְשָׁב הוּא?

## יג

## 13

- 1 For, behold, the Lord, the Lord of hosts, doth take away from Jerusalem and from Judah the stay and the staff, the whole stay of bread, and the whole stay of water,
- 2 The mighty man, and the man of war, the judge, and the prophet, and the prudent, and the ancient,
- 3 The captain of fifty, and the honourable man, and the counsellor, and the cunning artificer, and the eloquent orator.
- 4 And I will give children to be their princes, and babes shall rule over them.
- 5 And the people shall be oppressed, everyone by another, and every one by his neighbour: the child shall behave himself proudly against the ancient, and the base against the honourable.
- 6 When a man shall take hold of his brother of the house of his father, saying, Thou hast clothing, be thou our ruler, and let this ruin be under thy hand:
- 7 In that day shall he swear, saying, I will not be an healer; for in my house is neither bread nor clothing: make me not a ruler of the people.
- 8 For Jerusalem is ruined, and Judah is fallen: because their tongue and their doings are against the Lord, to provoke the eyes of his glory.
- כִּי הִנֵּה הָאֲדֹנָן יְהוָה צְבָאוֹת, מְסִיר מִירוּשָׁלַם וּמִיְהוּדָה מִשְׁעַן וּמִשְׁעִנָּה; כָּל מִשְׁעַן לֶחֶם וְכָל מִשְׁעַן מַיִם.
- גִּבּוֹר וְאִישׁ מִלְחָמָה; שׁוֹפֵט וְנָבִיא, וְקָסֵם וְזָקֵן.
- שָׂר חֲמִשִּׁים וְנִשְׂוֹא פָנִים; יוֹעֵץ וְחָכֵם חֲרָשִׁים, וְנָבוֹן לַחֵשׁ.
- וְנָתַתִּי נְעָרִים שָׂרֵיהֶם; וְתַעֲלֹלִים יִמְשְׁלוּ בָם.
- וְנִגַּשׁ הָעָם, אִישׁ בְּאִישׁ וְאִישׁ בְּרֵעֵהוּ; יִרְהָבוּ הַנְּעָר בְּזָקֵן וְהַנְּקֵלָה בְּנִכְבֵּד.
- כִּי יִתְפָּשׂ אִישׁ בְּאָחִיו; בֵּית אָבִיו שְׂמָלָה לָכֶה, קָצִין תִּהְיֶה לָנוּ; וְהַמְקַשְׁלָה הַזֹּאת תַּחַת יָדָךְ.
- יִשָּׂא בַּיּוֹם הַהוּא לֵאמֹר: לֹא אֶהְיֶה חַבֵּשׁ, וּבִבִּיתִי אֵין לֶחֶם וְאֵין שְׂמָלָה; לֹא תִשְׁיַמְנִי קָצִין עִם.
- כִּי פִשְׁלָה יְרוּשָׁלַם וַיהוּדָה נָפְלָה: כִּי לְשׁוֹנָם וּמַעֲלֵייהֶם אֶל יְהוָה לְמַרּוֹת עֵינֵי כְבוֹדוֹ.

- 9 The shew of their countenance doth witness against them; and they declare their sin as Sodom, they hide it not. Woe unto their soul! For they have rewarded evil unto themselves.
- הַכָּרַת פְּנֵיהֶם עֲנָתָה בָּם וַחֲטֹאתָם כְּסֹדֶם, הַגִּידוּ לֹא כְחָדוּ; הוּי לְנַפְשָׁם כִּי גָמְלוּ לָהֶם רָעָה.
- 10 Say ye to the righteous, that it shall be well with him: for they shall eat the fruit of their doings.
- אָמְרוּ צְדִיק כִּי טוֹב; כִּי פְרִי מַעֲלָלֵיהֶם יֹאכְלוּ.
- 11 Woe unto the wicked! It shall be ill with him: for the reward of his hands shall be given him.
- הוּי לְרָשָׁע רָע; כִּי גְמוֹל יָדָיו יַעֲשֶׂה לוֹ.
- 12 As for my people, children are their oppressors, and women rule over them. O my people, they which lead thee cause thee to err, and destroy the way of thy paths.
- עַמִּי נַגְשָׁיו מְעוֹלִל וְנָשִׁים מְשָׁלוּ בוֹ; עַמִּי מְאַשְׁרִיךְ מִתַּעֲרִים וְדָרָךְ אֶרְחֻתֶיךָ בִּלְעָז.
- 13 The Lord standeth up to plead, and standeth to judge the people.
- נִצָּב לָרִיב יְהוָה, וְעֹמֵד לְדִין עַמִּים.
- 14 The Lord will enter into judgment with the ancients of his people, and the princes thereof: for ye have eaten up the vineyard; the spoil of the poor is in your houses.
- יְהוָה בְּמִשְׁפָּט יָבֹא עִם זְקֵנֵי עַמּוֹ וְשָׂרָיו; וְאַתֶּם בְּעֶרְתֶּם הַכֶּרֶם, גִּזְלַת הָעֲנִי בְּבֵתֵיכֶם.
- 15 What mean ye that ye beat my people to pieces, and grind the faces of the poor? saith the Lord God of hosts.
- מָה לָּכֶם תִּדְכְּאוּ עַמִּי וּפְגִי עֲנִיִּים תִּטְחֲנוּ, נָאִם אֲדֹנֵי יְהוָה צְבָאוֹת?
- 16 Moreover the Lord saith, Because the daughters of Zion are haughty, and walk with stretched forth necks and wanton eyes, walking and mincing as they go, and making a tinkling with their feet:
- וַיֹּאמֶר יְהוָה: יַעַן כִּי גָבְהוּ בָנוֹת צִיּוֹן, וַתִּלְכְּנָה נְטוּיֹת גָּרוֹן וּמִשְׁקְרוֹת עֵינַיִם; הֵלוֹךְ וְטֹפֵף תִּלְכְּנָה וּבִרְגְלֵיהֶם תַּעֲכֹסְנָה.
- 17 Therefore the Lord will smite with a scab the crown of the head of the daughters of Zion, and the Lord will discover their secret parts.
- וַיִּשַׁח אֲדָנִי קֶדְקֵד בָּנוֹת צִיּוֹן; וַיְהוֶה פְתָהֵן יַעֲרָה.
- 18 In that day the Lord will take away the bravery of their tinkling ornaments about their feet, and their cauls, and their round tires like the moon,
- בַּיּוֹם הַהוּא יִסֹּר אֲדֹנִי אֶת תַּפְאֶרֶת הַעֲכָסִים וְהַשְׁבִּיסִים וְהַשְׁהֲרָנִים.
- 19 The chains, and the bracelets, and the mufflers,
- הַנְּטָפוֹת וְהַשִּׁירֹת וְהָרַעְלוֹת.
- 20 The bonnets, and the ornaments of the legs, and the headbands, and the tablets, and the ear-rings,
- הַפָּאָרִים וְהַעֲצֻדוֹת וְהַקְּשָׁרִים, וּבִתֵּי הַנֶּפֶשׁ וְהַלְחָשִׁים.
- 21 The rings, and nose jewels,
- הַטְּבָעוֹת וְנִזְמֵי הָאָז.
- 22 The changeable suits of apparel, and the mantles, and the wimples, and the crisping pins,
- הַמַּחְלָצוֹת וְהַמַּעֲטָפוֹת וְהַמְטָפְחוֹת וְהַחֲרִיטִים.
- 23 The glasses, and the fine linen, and the hoods, and the veils.
- וְהַגְּלִינִים וְהַסְּדִינִים וְהַצְּנִיפוֹת וְהַרְדִּידִים.



- 24 And it shall come to pass, that instead of sweet smell there shall be stink; and instead of a girdle a rent; and instead of well-set hair baldness; and instead of a stomacher a girding of sackcloth; and burning instead of beauty.
- וְהָיָה תַחַת בִּשְׁמֵי מִן יְהִיָּה, וְתַחַת חֲגוּרָה נִקְפָּה, וְתַחַת מַעֲשֵׂה מִקְשָׁה קִרְחָה, וְתַחַת פְּתִיגִיל מִחֲגֹרֶת שָׂק כִּי תַחַת יִפִּי.
- 25 Thy men shall fall by the sword, and thy mighty in the war.
- מִתֵּיךְ בַּחֶרֶב יִפְּלוּ; וּגְבוּרֶיךָ בַּמִּלְחָמָה.
- 26 And her gates shall lament and mourn; and she being desolate shall sit upon the ground.
- וְאָנּוּ וְאָבְלוּ פִתְחֶיהָ; וְנִקְתָּה לְאָרֶץ תֵּשֵׁב.

## 14

## יד

- 1 And in that day seven women shall take hold of one man, saying, We will eat our own bread, and wear our own apparel: only let us be called by thy name, to take away our reproach.
- וְהִחֲזִיקוּ שִׁבְעַת נָשִׁים בְּאִישׁ אֶחָד, בַּיּוֹם הַהוּא לֵאמֹר: לֶחֶמֵנוּ נֹאכַל וְשִׂמְלֹתֵנוּ נִלְבָּשׁ; רַק יִקְרָא שְׁמֶךָ עָלֵינוּ; אֲסֹף חֲרָפָתֵנוּ.
- 2 In that day shall the branch of the Lord be beautiful and glorious, and the fruit of the earth shall be excellent and comely for them that are escaped of Israel.
- בַּיּוֹם הַהוּא יִהְיֶה צֶמַח יְהוָה לְיָפִי וּלְקַבֹּד; וּפְרֵי הָאָרֶץ לְגִאֹן וּלְתַפְאֶרֶת לְפָלִיטֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל.
- 3 And it shall come to pass, that he that is left in Zion, and he that remaineth in Jerusalem, shall be called holy, even every one that is written among the living in Jerusalem:
- וְהָיָה הַנִּשְׁאָר בְּצִיּוֹן, וְהַנּוֹתָר בִּירוּשָׁלַם קְדוֹשׁ יֵאָמֶר לוֹ: כָּל הַכְּתוּב לַחַיִּים בִּירוּשָׁלַם.
- 4 When the Lord shall have washed away the filth of the daughters of Zion, and shall have purged the blood of Jerusalem from the midst thereof by the spirit of judgment, and by the spirit of burning.
- אִם רָחַץ אֲדֹנִי אֶת צֹאת בְּנוֹת צִיּוֹן; וְאֶת דְּמֵי יְרוּשָׁלַם יְדִיחַ מִקֶּרְבָּהּ, בְּרוּחַ מִשְׁפָּט וּבְרוּחַ בָּעֵר.
- 5 And the Lord will create upon every dwelling place of mount Zion, and upon her assemblies, a cloud and smoke by day, and the shining of a flaming fire by night: for upon all the glory shall be a defence.
- וּבְרָא יְהוָה עַל כָּל מְכוֹן הַר צִיּוֹן וְעַל מִקְרָאָהּ, עָנָן וַיּוֹמֶם וְעָשָׁן וְנֹגֶה אֵשׁ לְהִבָּה לַיְלָה; כִּי עַל כָּל כְּבוֹד חָפָה.
- 6 And there shall be a tabernacle for a shadow in the daytime from the heat, and for a place of refuge, and for a covert from storm and from rain.
- וְסִכָּה תִּהְיֶה לְצֶל יוֹמָם מִחֶרֶב; וּלְמִחְסָה וּלְמִסְתוֹר, מִזֶּרֶם וּמִמָּטָר.

## 15

## טו

- 1 Now will I sing to my well beloved a song of my beloved touching his vineyard. My well beloved hath a vineyard in a very fruitful hill:
- אֲשִׁירָה נָא לַיְדִידִי, שִׁירַת דּוּדִי לְכַרְמּוֹ: כָּרֶם הִיא לַיְדִידִי בְּקֶרֶן בֶּן שָׁמֶן.
- 2 And he fenced it, and gathered out the stones thereof, and planted it with the choicest vine, and built a tower in the midst of it, and also made a winepress therein: and he looked that it should bring forth grapes, and it brought forth wild grapes.
- וַיַּעֲזָקוּהוּ וַיִּסְקָלֵהוּ, וַיִּשְׁעֵהוּ שָׂרֵק, וַיִּבֶן מִגְדָּל בְּתוֹכּוֹ וְגַם יָקַב חֲצֵב בוֹ; וַיִּקֹּוּ לַעֲשׂוֹת עֲנָבִים וַיַּעַשׂ בְּאֲשִׁים.

- 3 And now, O inhabitants of Jerusalem, and men of Judah, judge, I pray you, betwixt me and my vineyard.
- 4 What could have been done more to my vineyard, that I have not done in it? Wherefore, when I looked that it should bring forth grapes, brought it forth wild grapes?
- 5 And now go to; I will tell you what I will do to my vineyard: I will take away the hedge thereof, and it shall be eaten up; and break down the wall thereof, and it shall be trodden down:
- 6 And I will lay it waste: it shall not be pruned, nor digged; but there shall come up briers and thorns: I will also command the clouds that they rain no rain upon it.
- 7 For the vineyard of the Lord of hosts is the house of Israel, and the men of Judah his pleasant plant: and he looked for judgment, but behold oppression; for righteousness, but behold a cry.
- 8 Woe unto them that join house to house, that lay field to field, till there be no place, that they may be placed alone in the midst of the earth!
- 9 In mine ears said the Lord of hosts, Of a truth many houses shall be desolate, even great and fair, without inhabitant.
- 10 Yea, ten acres of vineyard shall yield one bath, and the seed of an homer shall yield an ephah.
- 11 Woe unto them that rise up early in the morning, that they may follow strong drink; that continue until night, till wine inflame them!
- 12 And the harp, and the viol, the tabret, and pipe, and wine, are in their feasts: but they regard not the work of the Lord, neither consider the operation of his hands.
- 13 Therefore my people are gone into captivity, because they have no knowledge: and their honourable men are famished, and their multitude dried up with thirst.
- 14 Therefore hell hath enlarged herself, and opened her mouth without measure: and their glory, and their multitude, and their pomp, and he that rejoiceth, shall descend into it.
- 15 And the mean man shall be brought down, and the mighty man shall be humbled, and the eyes of the lofty shall be humbled:
- וְעַתָּה, יוֹשְׁבֵי יְרוּשָׁלַם וְאִישׁ יְהוּדָה שְׁפֹטוּ נָא, בֵּינִי וּבֵין כַּרְמִי.
- מָה לַעֲשׂוֹת עוֹד לְכַרְמִי וְלֹא עָשִׂיתִי בּוֹ? מַדּוּעַ קִוִּיתִי לַעֲשׂוֹת עֲנָבִים וַיַּעַשׂ בְּאֲשִׁים?
- וְעַתָּה אֹדִיעָהּ נָא אֶתְכֶם אֶת אֲשֶׁר אֲנִי עֹשֶׂה לְכַרְמִי: הִסֵּר מְשׁוֹכָתוֹ וְהָיָה לְבָעֵר, פָּרַץ גְּדָרוֹ וְהָיָה לְמֶרְמֶס.
- וְאֶשְׁתִּיהוּ בָתָּה; לֹא יִזְמַר וְלֹא יַעֲדָר, וְעֵלָה שְׁמִיר וְשִׁית; וְעַל הָעֵבִים אֲצַוָּה מִהַמְטִיר עָלָיו מָטָר.
- כִּי כָרֶם יְהוָה צִבְאוֹת בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל, וְאִישׁ יְהוּדָה נָטַע שְׁעִשׂוּעִי; וַיִּקְוֶה לְמִשְׁפָּט וְהִנֵּה מִשְׁפָּח, לְצַדִּיקָהּ וְהִנֵּה צָעָקָה.
- הוּא, מִגִּיעֵי בֵּית בְּבֵית, שָׂדֶה בְּשָׂדֶה יִקְרִיבוּ עַד אֶפֶס מְקוֹם; וְהוֹשַׁבְתֶּם לְבִדְדָכֶם בְּקֶרֶב הָאָרֶץ.
- בְּאָזְנִי יְהוָה צִבְאוֹת, אִם לֹא בְתִים רַבִּים, לְשָׁמָּה יִהְיוּ גְדָלִים וְטוֹבִים מֵאֵין יוֹשֵׁב.
- כִּי עֶשְׂרֵת צִמְדֵי כָרֶם יַעֲשׂוּ בֵּת אֶחָת; וְזֶרַע חֹמֶר יַעֲשֶׂה אֵיפָה.
- הוּא, מְשַׁכְּמִים בְּבֹקֶר, שֹׁכֵר יִרְדְּפוּ; מֵאֲחֲרֵי בִנְשָׁף יוֹ יִדְּלִיקֶם.
- וְהָיָה כְנֹר וְנֶבֶל, תֶּף וְחָלִיל וְיִין מִשְׁתֵּיהֶם; וְאֵת פֶּעַל יְהוָה לֹא יִבִּיטוּ, וּמַעֲשֵׂה יָדָיו לֹא רָאוּ.
- לָכֵן גָּלָה עַמִּי מִבְּלִי דַעַת; וּכְבוֹדוֹ מִתֵּי רָעַב, וְהִמּוֹנוֹ צָחָה צָמָא.
- לָכֵן הִרְחִיבָהּ שָׂאוֹל נִפְשָׁהּ וּפָעָרָה פִּיהָ לְבִלִּי חֶק; וַיִּרֶד הַדְּרָה, וְהִמּוֹנָהּ וּשְׂאוֹנָהּ וְעֵלְזָהּ בָּהּ.
- וַיִּשַׁח אָדָם וַיִּשְׁפֹּל אִישׁ, וַעֲיָנִי גְבוּהִים תִּשְׁפֹּלְנָה.

- 16 But the Lord of hosts shall be exalted in judgment, and God that is holy shall be sanctified in righteousness.  
וַיִּגְבֹּהַּ יְהוָה צְבָאוֹת בַּמִּשְׁפָּט, וְהָאֵל הַקֹּדֶשׁ נִקְדָּשׁ בַּצְדִּיקָה.
- 17 Then shall the lambs feed after their manner, and the waste places of the fat ones shall strangers eat.  
וְרָעוּ כְבָשִׁים כְּדִבְרָם, וְחֲרֻבוֹת מַחִים גָּרִים יֹאכְלוּ.
- 18 Woe unto them that draw iniquity with cords of vanity, and sin as it were with a cart rope:  
הוֹי, מִלִּשְׂכֵי הָעוֹן בַּחֲבִלֵי הַשְׁוֹא, וְכַעֲבוֹת הָעֲגָלָה חֲטָאָה.
- 19 That say, Let him make speed, and hasten his work, that we may see it: and let the counsel of the Holy One of Israel draw nigh and come, that we may know it!  
הָאֹמְרִים יַמְהַר יַחֲיִישָׁה מַעֲשָׂהוּ לְמַעַן נִרְאָה; וְתִקְרַב וְתִבְּרָאָה עֲצַת קֹדֶשׁ יִשְׂרָאֵל וְיִגְדָּעָה.
- 20 Woe unto them that call evil good, and good evil; that put darkness for light, and light for darkness; that put bitter for sweet, and sweet for bitter!  
הוֹי הָאֹמְרִים לָרַע טוֹב וְלְטוֹב רָע: שְׂמִים חֹשֶׁךְ לְאוֹר וְאוֹר לְחֹשֶׁךְ, שְׂמִים מֶר לְמֵתוּק וּמֵתוּק לְרָע.
- 21 Woe unto them that are wise in their own eyes, and prudent in their own sight!  
הוֹי, חֲכָמִים בְּעֵינֵיהֶם; וְנָגְדֵי פְנֵיהֶם נִבְנִים.
- 22 Woe unto them that are mighty to drink wine, and men of strength to mingle strong drink:  
הוֹי, גִּבּוֹרִים לְשִׁתוֹת יַיִן; וְאֲנָשֵׁי חֵיל לְמִסֵּךְ שִׁכָּר.
- 23 Which justify the wicked for reward, and take away the righteousness of the righteous from him!  
מִצְדִּיקֵי רָשָׁע עֵקֶב שְׂחָד; וְצֹדֶקֶת צְדִיקִים יִסִּירוּ מִמֶּנּוּ.
- 24 Therefore as the fire devoureth the stubble, and the flame consumeth the chaff, so their root shall be as rottenness, and their blossom shall go up as dust: because they have cast away the law of the Lord of hosts, and despised the word of the Holy One of Israel.  
לְכֹן כַּאֲכַל קֶשׁ לִשׁוֹן אֵשׁ וַחֲשַׁשׁ לְהִבָּה יִרְפָּה, שְׂרָשָׁם כַּמֶּקַּח יִהְיֶה וּפְרִחָם כַּאֲבָק יַעֲלֶה; כִּי מָאֲסוּ אֶת תּוֹרַת יְהוָה צְבָאוֹת וְאֶת אִמְרַת קֹדֶשׁ יִשְׂרָאֵל נֶאֱצָו.
- 25 Therefore is the anger of the Lord kindled against his people, and he hath stretched forth his hand against them, and hath smitten them: and the hills did tremble, and their carcases were torn in the midst of the streets. For all this his anger is not turned away, but his hand is stretched out still.  
עַל כֵּן חָרָה אַף יְהוָה בְּעַמּוֹ וַיִּטּ יָדוֹ עֲלֵיו וַיַּכֵּהוּ, וַיִּרְגְּזוּ הָהָרִים, וַתִּהְיֶינָה נִבְלָתָם כְּסוּפָה בְּקֶרֶב חוּצוֹת; בְּכָל זֹאת לֹא שָׁב אָפוֹ, וְעוֹד יָדוֹ נִטְוִיהָ.
- 26 And he will lift up an ensign to the nations from far, and will hiss unto them from the end of the earth: and, behold, they shall come with speed swiftly:  
וְנִשָּׂא נֵס לְגוֹיִם מִרְחֹק, וְשִׁירָק לוֹ מִקְצֵה הָאָרֶץ; וְהִנֵּה מִהֵרָה קָל יָבוֹא.
- 27 None shall be weary nor stumble among them; none shall slumber nor sleep; neither shall the girdle of their loins be loosed, nor the latchet of their shoes be broken:  
אִין עֵיף וְאִין כּוֹשֵׁל בּוֹ, לֹא יָגוּם וְלֹא יִישָׁן; וְלֹא נִפְתָּח אֲזוֹר חֲלָצָיו, וְלֹא נִתַּק שְׂרוּף נַעֲלָיו.
- 28 Whose arrows are sharp, and all their bows bent, their horses' hoofs shall be counted like flint, and their wheels like a whirlwind:  
אֲשֶׁר חֲצָיו שְׁנוּנִים וְכָל קִשְׁתֵּיהֶם דְּרָכוֹת; פָּרָסוֹת סוּסָיו כֶּצֶר נִחְשָׁבוּ, וְגִלְגָּלֵיו כְּסוּפָה.

- 29 Their roaring shall be like a lion, they shall roar like young lions: yea, they shall roar, and lay hold of the prey, and shall carry it away safe, and none shall deliver it.
- 30 And in that day they shall roar against them like the roaring of the sea: and if one look unto the land, behold darkness and sorrow, and the light is darkened in the heavens thereof.
- וְיִנְהָם עָלֵיוּ בַּיּוֹם הַהוּא כְּנִהְמַת יָם; וְנִבֵּט לְאָרְצָן, וְהָנָה חֹשֶׁךְ צָר וְאוֹר חֹשֶׁךְ בְּעֵרִיפָהּ.
- וְיִנְהָם לֹו כְּלִבְיָא; וְשָׂאֵג כְּכַפְּרִים וְיִנְהָם וַיֵּאָחֵז טָרֶף, וַיִּפְלִיט וַיֵּאֵין מְצִיל.

## 16

## טז

- 1 In the year that king Uzziah died I saw also the Lord sitting upon a throne, high and lifted up, and his train filled the temple.
- 2 Above it stood the seraphim: each one had six wings; with twain he covered his face, and with twain he covered his feet, and with twain he did fly.
- 3 And one cried unto another, and said, Holy, holy, holy, is the Lord of hosts: the whole earth is full of his glory.
- 4 And the posts of the door moved at the voice of him that cried, and the house was filled with smoke.
- 5 Then said I, Woe is me! For I am undone; because I am a man of unclean lips, and I dwell in the midst of a people of unclean lips: for mine eyes have seen the King, the Lord of hosts.
- 6 Then flew one of the seraphim unto me, having a live coal in his hand, which he had taken with the tongs from off the altar:
- 7 And he laid it upon my mouth, and said, Lo, this hath touched thy lips; and thine iniquity is taken away, and thy sin purged.
- 8 Also I heard the voice of the Lord, saying, Whom shall I send, and who will go for us? Then said I, Here am I; send me.
- 9 And he said, Go, and tell this people, Hear ye indeed, but understand not; and see ye indeed, but perceive not.
- 10 Make the heart of this people fat, and make their ears heavy, and shut their eyes; lest they see with their eyes, and hear with their ears, and understand with their heart, and convert, and be healed.
- בְּשָׁנַת מוֹת הַמֶּלֶךְ עֻזִּיָּהוּ, וָאֵרָאָה אֶת אֲדֹנָי יֹשֵׁב עַל כִּסֵּא רָם וְנִשָּׂא, וְשׁוּלָיו מְלֵאִים אֶת הַהֵיכָל.
- שְׂרָפִים עֹמְדִים מִמַּעַל לוֹ, שֵׁשׁ כְּנָפִים שֵׁשׁ כְּנָפִים לְאֶחָד; בְּשָׁתַיִם יִכְסֶּה פָּנָיו, וּבְשָׁתַיִם יִכְסֶּה רַגְלָיו, וּבְשָׁתַיִם יַעֲוֹפֶה.
- וְאֶחָד זָה אֶל זֶה וַאֲמַר: קְדוֹשׁ קְדוֹשׁ קְדוֹשׁ יְהוָה צְבָאוֹת, מְלֵא כָל הָאָרֶץ כְּבוֹדוֹ.
- וַיָּנֻעוּ אַמּוֹת הַסָּפִים מִקּוֹל הַקּוֹרָא; וְהַבַּיִת יִמְלֵא עָשָׁן.
- וַאֲמַר: אוֹי לִי כִּי נִדְמִיתִי, כִּי אִישׁ טָמֵא שֹׁפְתִים אֲנִי וּבְתוֹךְ עַם טָמֵא שֹׁפְתִים אֲנִי יוֹשֵׁב; כִּי אֶת הַמֶּלֶךְ יְהוָה צְבָאוֹת רָאוּ עֵינַי.
- וַיַּעֲף אֶלַי אֶחָד מִן הַשְּׂרָפִים וּבִידּוֹ רֹצֶפֶה; בְּמַלְקָחִים לָקַח מֵעַל הַמִּזְבֵּחַ.
- וַיַּגַּע עַל פִּי וַיֹּאמֶר: הִנֵּה נִגַּע זֶה עַל שֹׁפְתֶיךָ; וְסֵר עֲוֹנְךָ, וְחַטְאֲתְךָ תִּכָּפֵר.
- וְאִשְׁמַע אֶת קוֹל אֲדֹנָי אָמַר: אֶת מִי אֶשְׁלַח וּמִי יֵלֶךְ לָנוּ? וַאֲמַר: הִנְנִי שְׁלָחֲנִי.
- וַיֹּאמֶר: לֵךְ וְאִמַּרְתָּ לָעָם הַזֶּה; שְׁמָעוּ שְׁמוֹעַ וְאַל תִּבְיִנוּ, וְרָאוּ רָאוּ וְאַל תִּדְעוּ.
- הַשְׁמֵן לֵב הָעָם הַזֶּה, וְאָזְנוֹי הַכִּבְדִּי; וְעִיְנֵי הִשְׁעֵם פֶּן יִרְאֶה בְּעֵינָיו וּבְאָזְנוֹ יִשְׁמָע; וּלְבָבוֹ יִבִּין וְשֹׁב וְרֹפֵא לוֹ.

- 11 ואמר: עד מתי, אֲדֹנִי? ויאמר: עד אשר אם  
שאו ערים מאין יושב, ובתים מאין אדם,  
והאדמה תשאה שוממה.
- 12 ורחק יהיה את האדם, ורבה העזובה בקרב  
הארץ.
- 13 ועוד בה עשריה, ושבה והיתה לבער; כאלה  
וכאלון אשר בשלכת מצבת בם, זרע קדש  
מצבתה.

## 17

## יז

- 1 And it came to pass in the days of Ahaz the son of Jotham, the son of  
Uzziah, king of Judah, that Rezin the king of Syria, and Pekah the son  
of Remaliah, king of Israel, went up toward Jerusalem to war against it,  
but could not prevail against it.
- 2 And it was told the house of David, saying, Syria is confederate with  
Ephraim. And his heart was moved, and the heart of his people, as the  
trees of the wood are moved with the wind.
- 3 Then said the Lord unto Isaiah, Go forth now to meet Ahaz, thou, and  
Shear-Jashub thy son, at the end of the conduit of the upper pool in the  
highway of the fuller's field;
- 4 And say unto him, Take heed, and be quiet; fear not, neither be  
fainthearted for the two tails of these smoking firebrands, for the fierce  
anger of Rezin with Syria, and of the son of Remaliah.
- 5 Because Syria, Ephraim, and the son of Remaliah, have taken evil  
counsel against thee, saying,
- 6 Let us go up against Judah, and vex it, and let us make a breach therein  
for us, and set a king in the midst of it, even the son of Tabeal:
- 7 Thus saith the Lord God, It shall not stand, neither shall it come to pass.
- 8 For the head of Syria is Damascus, and the head of Damascus is Rezin;  
and within threescore and five years shall Ephraim be broken, that it  
be not a people.
- 9 And the head of Ephraim is Samaria, and the head of Samaria is  
Remaliah's son. If ye will not believe, surely ye shall not be established.
- 10 Moreover the Lord spake again unto Ahaz, saying,
- ויהי בימי אחז בן יותם בן עזיהו מלך יהודה,  
עלה רצין מלך ארם ופקח בן רמליהו מלך  
ישראל ירושלם, למלחמה עליה, ולא יכל  
להלחם עליה.
- ויגד לבית דוד לאמר: נחה ארם על אפרים;  
וינע לבבו ולבב עמו, כנוע עצי יער מפני רוח.
- ויאמר יהוה אל ישעיהו: צא נא לקראת אחז,  
אתה ושאר ישוב בנך, אל קצה תעלת  
הברכה העליונה, אל מסלת שדה כובס.
- ואמרת אליו: השמר והשקט, אל תירא,  
ולבבך אל ירד, משני זנבות האוידים העשנים  
האלה, בחרי אף רצין וארם, ובן רמליהו.
- יען כי יעץ עליך ארם רעה, אפרים ובן  
רמליהו לאמר:
- נעלה ביהודה ונקיצנה, ונבקענה אלינו;  
ונמליך מלך בתוכה, את בן טבאל.
- כה אמר אֲדֹנִי יהוה: לא תקום ולא תהיה.
- כי ראש ארם דמשק, וראש דמשק רצין;  
ובעוד ששים וחמש שנה יחת אפרים מעם.
- וראש אפרים שמרון, וראש שמרון בן  
רמליהו; אם לא תאמינו כי לא תאמנו.
- ויוסף יהוה דבר אל אחז לאמר:

- 11 שְׁאַל לְךָ אוֹת מֵעַם יְהוָה אֱלֹהֶיךָ; הֲעֵמֶמְךָ שְׁאַלָה אוֹ הַגִּבְהָ לְמַעְלָה.
- 12 וַיֹּאמֶר אַחָז: לֹא אֶשְׁאַל וְלֹא אֶנְסֶה אֶת יְהוָה.
- 13 וַיֹּאמֶר: שְׁמָעוּ נָא, בֵּית דָּוִד; הֲמַעַט מִכֶּם הִלָּאוֹת אֲנָשִׁים כִּי תִלְאוּ גַם אֶת אֱלֹהֶיךָ?
- 14 לָכֵן יִתֵּן אֲדֹנִי הוּא לָכֶם אוֹת; הִנֵּה הָעַלְמָה הָרָה וְיִלְדֶת בֶּן; וְקָרָאת שְׁמוֹ עִמָּנוּ אֵל.
- 15 חֲמָאָה וּדְבֹשׁ יֹאכֵל לְדַעְתּוֹ מָאוֹס בָּרָע, וּבָחֹר בְּטוֹב.
- 16 כִּי בְּטָרֶם יָדַע הַנַּעַר מָאוֹס בָּרָע וּבָחֹר בְּטוֹב, תַּעֲזֹב הָאֲדָמָה אֲשֶׁר אֶתָּה קִץ, מִפְּנֵי שְׁנֵי מַלְכֶיהָ.
- 17 יָבִיא יְהוָה עָלֶיךָ וְעַל עַמּוֹךְ וְעַל בֵּית אָבִיךָ יָמִים אֲשֶׁר לֹא בָאוּ, לְיָמִים סוּר אֶפְרַיִם מֵעַל יְהוּדָה, אֶת מֶלֶךְ אַשּׁוּר.
- 18 וְהָיָה בַּיּוֹם הַהוּא יִשְׂרָק יְהוָה לְזָבוּב אֲשֶׁר בְּקֶצֶה יְאֵרֵי מִצְרַיִם, וְלִדְבוּרָה אֲשֶׁר בְּאַרְץ אַשּׁוּר.
- 19 וּבָאוּ וְנָחוּ כָּלֶם בְּנִחְלֵי הַבְּתוֹת וּבְנִקְיֵי הַסְּלָעִים, וּבְכָל הַנְּעֻצּוּצִים, וּבְכָל הַנְּהַלְלִים.
- 20 בַּיּוֹם הַהוּא יִגְלַח אֲדֹנִי בַתֶּעַר הַשְׂכִּירָה בְּעֶבְרֵי נָהָר בְּמֶלֶךְ אַשּׁוּר אֶת הָרֹאשׁ וְשֵׁעַר הָרַגְלִים, וְגַם אֶת הַזָּקֵן תִּסְפֹּה.
- 21 וְהָיָה בַּיּוֹם הַהוּא יִחְיֶה אִישׁ עֹגֶלֶת בָּקָר וּשְׁתֵּי צֹאן.
- 22 וְהָיָה מְרֹב עֲשׂוֹת חֶלֶב יֹאכֵל חֲמָאָה; כִּי חֲמָאָה וּדְבֹשׁ יֹאכֵל, כָּל הַנּוֹתֵר בְּקֶרֶב הָאָרֶץ.
- 23 וְהָיָה בַּיּוֹם הַהוּא יִהְיֶה כָּל מְקוֹם אֲשֶׁר יִהְיֶה שֵׁם אֵלָּי גִּפּוֹן בְּאַלְפֵי כֶּסֶף, לְשִׁמִּיר וּלְשִׁית יִהְיֶה.
- 24 בַּחֲצִים וּבִקְשָׁת יָבֹא שָׁמָּה, כִּי שִׁמִּיר וְשִׁית תִּהְיֶה כָּל הָאָרֶץ.
- Ask thee a sign of the Lord thy God; ask it either in the depth, or in the height above.
- But Ahaz said, I will not ask, neither will I tempt the Lord.
- And he said, Hear ye now, O house of David; Is it a small thing for you to weary men, but will ye weary my God also?
- Therefore the Lord himself shall give you a sign; Behold, a virgin shall conceive, and bear a son, and shall call his name Immanuel.
- Butter and honey shall he eat, that he may know to refuse the evil, and choose the good.
- For before the child shall know to refuse the evil, and choose the good, the land that thou abhorrest shall be forsaken of both her kings.
- The Lord shall bring upon thee, and upon thy people, and upon thy father's house, days that have not come, from the day that Ephraim departed from Judah; even the king of Assyria.
- And it shall come to pass in that day, that the Lord shall hiss for the fly that is in the uttermost part of the rivers of Egypt, and for the bee that is in the land of Assyria.
- And they shall come, and shall rest all of them in the desolate valleys, and in the holes of the rocks, and upon all thorns, and upon all bushes.
- In the same day shall the Lord shave with a razor that is hired, namely, by them beyond the river, by the king of Assyria, the head, and the hair of the feet: and it shall also consume the beard.
- And it shall come to pass in that day, that a man shall nourish a young cow, and two sheep;
- And it shall come to pass, for the abundance of milk that they shall give he shall eat butter: for butter and honey shall every one eat that is left in the land.
- And it shall come to pass in that day, that every place shall be, where there were a thousand vines at a thousand silverlings, it shall even be for briers and thorns.
- With arrows and with bows shall men come thither; because all the land shall become briers and thorns.



- 25 And on all hills that shall be digged with the mattock, there shall not come thither the fear of briers and thorns: but it shall be for the sending forth of oxen, and for the treading of lesser cattle.
- וְכָל הַהָרִים אֲשֶׁר בִּמְעַד יִעָדְרוּ לֹא תָבוֹא שְׁמָה, יִרְאֵת שְׁמִיר וְשִׁית; וְהִיא לְמִשְׁלַח שׁוֹר וּלְמִרְמַס שֶׁה.

## 18

## יח

- 1 Moreover the Lord said unto me, Take thee a great roll, and write in it with a man's pen concerning Maher-Shalal-Hash-Baz.
- וַיֹּאמֶר יְהוָה אֵלַי: קַח לְךָ גָּלִיוֹן גָּדוֹל וְכָתַב עָלָיו בְּחֶרֶט אָנוּשׁ, לְמַהֵר שָׁלַל חֵשׁ בָּז.
- 2 And I took unto me faithful witnesses to record, Uriah the priest, and Zechariah the son of Jeberechiah.
- וָאֶעֱיִדָה לִּי עֲדִים נֹאמָנִים, אֶת אוּרִיָּה הַכֹּהֵן, וְאֶת זְכַרְיָהוּ בֶן יֵבֶרֶכְיָהוּ.
- 3 And I went unto the prophetess; and she conceived, and bare a son. Then said the Lord to me, Call his name Maher-Shalal-Hash-Baz.
- וָאֶקְרַב אֶל הַנְּבִיאָה, וַתַּהַר, וַתֵּלֶד בֶּן; וַיֹּאמֶר יְהוָה אֵלַי: קְרָא שְׁמוֹ מַהֵר שָׁלַל חֵשׁ בָּז.
- 4 For before the child shall have knowledge to cry, My father, and my mother, the riches of Damascus and the spoil of Samaria shall be taken away before the king of Assyria.
- כִּי בְּטָרֵם יָדַע הַנַּעַר קְרָא אָבִי וְאִמִּי, יִשָּׂא אֶת חֵיל דְּמִשְׁק וְאֶת שָׁלַל שְׁמָרוֹן לִפְנֵי מֶלֶךְ אַשּׁוּר.
- 5 The Lord spake also unto me again, saying,
- וַיֹּסֶף יְהוָה דְּבַר אֵלַי עוֹד לֵאמֹר:
- 6 Forasmuch as this people refuseth the waters of Shiloah that go softly, and rejoice in Rezin and Remaliah's son;
- יֵעַן כִּי מֵאֵס הָעָם הַזֶּה אֶת מִי הַשִּׁלּוֹחַ הַהֲלֹכִים לָאֵט, וּמִשׁוּשׁ אֶת רִצְיוֹ וּבֶן רִמְלִיָּהוּ;
- 7 Now therefore, behold, the Lord bringeth up upon them the waters of the river, strong and many, even the king of Assyria, and all his glory: and he shall come up over all his channels, and go over all his banks:
- וְלָכֵן הִנֵּה אֲדֹנִי מַעֲלָה עֲלֵיהֶם אֶת מִי הַנָּהָר הַעֲצוּמִים וְהַרְבִּים, אֶת מֶלֶךְ אַשּׁוּר, וְאֶת כָּל כְּבוֹדוֹ; וְעָלָה עַל כָּל אַפִּיקָיו וְהִלָּךְ עַל כָּל גְּדוּתָיו.
- 8 And he shall pass through Judah; he shall overflow and go over, he shall reach even to the neck; and the stretching out of his wings shall fill the breadth of thy land, O Immanuel.
- וְחָלַף בִּיהוּדָה שְׁטָף וַעֲבַר, עַד צַנְאָר יָגִיעַ; וְהָיָה מְשׁוֹת כְּנָפָיו מְלֵא רֹחַב אֶרֶץ עַמְּנוּ אֵל.
- 9 Associate yourselves, O ye people, and ye shall be broken in pieces; and give ear, all ye of far countries: gird yourselves, and ye shall be broken in pieces; gird yourselves, and ye shall be broken in pieces.
- רַעו עַמִּים וְחַתּוּ, וְהִאָּזְנוּ כָּל מְרַחְקֵי אֶרֶץ; הִתְאַזְּרוּ וְחַתּוּ, הִתְאַזְּרוּ וְחַתּוּ.
- 10 Take counsel together, and it shall come to nought; speak the word, and it shall not stand: for God is with us.
- עֲצוּ עֵצָה וְתִפֹּר; דְּבַרוּ דְּבַר וְלֹא יָקוּם כִּי עַמְּנוּ אֵל.
- 11 For the Lord spake thus to me with a strong hand, and instructed me that I should not walk in the way of this people, saying,
- כִּי כֹה אָמַר יְהוָה אֵלַי: כְּחֻזְקַת הַיָּד; וַיִּסְרֵנִי מִלֶּכֶת בְּדֶרֶךְ הָעָם הַזֶּה לֵאמֹר:
- 12 Say ye not, A confederacy, to all them to whom this people shall say, A confederacy; neither fear ye their fear, nor be afraid.
- לֹא תֹאמְרוּן קֶשֶׁר לְכָל אֲשֶׁר יֹאמַר הָעָם הַזֶּה קֶשֶׁר; וְאֶת מוֹרְאוֹ לֹא תִירְאוּ וְלֹא תַעֲרִיצוּ.

- 13 Sanctify the Lord of hosts himself; and let him be your fear, and let him be your dread.  
אֶת יְהוָה צְבָאוֹת אֹתוֹ תִּקְדִּישׁוּ, וְהוּא מוֹרְאֲכֶם וְהוּא מִעֲרָצְכֶם.
- 14 And he shall be for a sanctuary; but for a stone of stumbling and for a rock of offence to both the houses of Israel, for a gin and for a snare to the inhabitants of Jerusalem.  
וְהָיָה לְמִקְדָּשׁ וּלְאַבֵּן נִגָּף, וּלְצוּר מִכְשׁוֹל לְשֹׁנֵי בְּתֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל, לִפְח וּלְמוֹקֵשׁ לְיוֹשְׁבֵי יְרוּשָׁלַם.
- 15 And many among them shall stumble, and fall, and be broken, and be snared, and be taken.  
וְכָשְׁלוּ בָם רַבִּים; וְנָפְלוּ וְנִשְׁבְּרוּ, וְנִקְשְׁוּ וְנִלְכְּדוּ.
- 16 Bind up the testimony, seal the law among my disciples.  
צוּר תְּעוּדָה, חֲתוּם תּוֹרָה בְּלִמְדֵי.
- 17 And I will wait upon the Lord, that hideth his face from the house of Jacob, and I will look for him.  
וְחִכִּיתִי לַיהוָה הַמְסַתִּיר פָּנָיו מִבֵּית יַעֲקֹב; וְקִוִּיתִי לוֹ.
- 18 Behold, I and the children whom the Lord hath given me are for signs and for wonders in Israel from the Lord of hosts, which dwelleth in mount Zion.  
הִנֵּה אֲנִי וְהַיְלָדִים אֲשֶׁר נָתַן לִי יְהוָה לְאֹתוֹת וּלְמוֹפְתִים בְּיִשְׂרָאֵל מֵעַם יְהוָה צְבָאוֹת, הַשֹּׁכֵן בְּהַר צִיּוֹן.
- 19 And when they shall say unto you, Seek unto them that have familiar spirits, and unto wizards that peep, and that mutter: should not a people seek unto their God? For the living to the dead?  
וְכִי יֹאמְרוּ אֲלֵיכֶם: דִּרְשׁוּ אֶל הָאֲבוֹת וְאֶל הַיִּדְעָנִים, הַמְצַפְצָפִים וְהַמְהַגִּים: הֲלֹא עִם אֵל אֱלֹהֵינוּ יִדְרֹשׁ בְּעַד הַחַיִּים אֶל הַמֵּתִים?
- 20 To the law and to the testimony: if they speak not according to this word, it is because there is no light in them.  
לְתוֹרָה וּלְתְּעוּדָה; אִם לֹא יֹאמְרוּ כַּדָּבָר הַזֶּה, אֲשֶׁר אֵין לוֹ שָׁחַר.
- 21 And they shall pass through it, hardly bestead and hungry: and it shall come to pass, that when they shall be hungry, they shall fret themselves, and curse their king and their God, and look upward.  
וְעָבְרוּ בָּהּ נִקְשָׁה וָרָעֵב; וְהָיָה כִּי יָרֵעַב וְהִתְקַצֵּף, וְקָלַל בְּמִלְכוֹ וּבֵאלֹהֵיו וּפָנָה לְמַעְלָה.
- 22 And they shall look unto the earth; and behold trouble and darkness, dimness of anguish; and they shall be driven to darkness.  
וְאֵל אֶרֶץ יִבִּיט; וְהִנֵּה צָרָה וַחֲשָׁכָה מְעוֹף צוּקָה, וְאַפְלָה מְנַדָּח.

## יט

## 19

- 1 Nevertheless the dimness shall not be such as was in her vexation, when at the first he lightly afflicted the land of Zebulun and the land of Naphtali, and afterward did more grievously afflict her by the way of the sea, beyond Jordan, in Galilee of the nations.  
כִּי לֹא מוֹעָף לְאֲשֶׁר מוֹצַק לָהּ; כְּעַת הָרָאשׁוֹן הִקַּל אֶרְצָה זְבֻלוֹן וְאֶרְצָה נַפְתָּלִי, וְהֵאחֲרָיון הִכְבִּיד דֶּרֶךְ הַיָּם עָבַר הִירְדּוֹן גָּלִיל הַגּוֹיִם.
- 2 The people that walked in darkness have seen a great light: they that dwell in the land of the shadow of death, upon them hath the light shined.  
הָעָם הַהֹלְכִים בַּחֹשֶׁךְ רָאוּ אֹר גָּדוֹל; יִשְׁבִּי בְּאֶרֶץ צִלְמוֹת, אֹר נָגַה עֲלֵיהֶם.
- 3 Thou hast multiplied the nation, and not increased the joy: they joy before thee according to the joy in harvest, and as men rejoice when they divide the spoil.  
הִרְבִּיתָ הַגּוֹי, לוֹ הִגְדַּלְתָּ הַשְׂמֵחָה; שָׂמְחוּ לִפְנֶיךָ כְּשִׂמְחַת בִּקְצִיר כַּאֲשֶׁר יִגְּלוּ בַּחֲלָקֵם שָׁלָל.

- 4 For thou hast broken the yoke of his burden, and the staff of his shoulder, the rod of his oppressor, as in the day of Midian.
- כי אַתָּה עַל סִבְלוֹ וְאֵת מַטֵּה שְׁכָמוֹ שָׁבַט; הִנֵּגְשׁ בּוֹ הַחֲתָתָה כְּיוֹם מִדְיָן.
- 5 For every battle of the warrior is with confused noise, and garments rolled in blood; but this shall be with burning and fuel of fire.
- כִּי כָּל סָאוֹן סָאוֹן בְּרַעַשׁ, וְשִׁמְלָה מְגוֹלָלָה בְּדָמִים; וְהָיְתָה לְשָׂרְפָה מֵאֲכֹלֶת אֵשׁ.
- 6 For unto us a child is born, unto us a son is given: and the government shall be upon his shoulder: and his name shall be called Wonderful, Counsellor, the mighty God, the everlasting Father, The Prince of Peace.
- כִּי יֵלֵד יֵלֵד לָנוּ; בֶּן נָתַן לָנוּ וְהָיָה הַמִּשְׁרָה עַל שְׁכָמוֹ; וְיִקְרָא שְׁמוֹ פֶּלֶא יוֹעֵץ, אֵל גִּבּוֹר, אָבִי עַד, שֵׁר שְׁלוֹם.
- 7 Of the increase of his government and peace there shall be no end, upon the throne of David, and upon his kingdom, to order it, and to establish it with judgment and with justice from henceforth even forever. The zeal of the Lord of hosts will perform this.
- לְמִרְבֵּה הַמִּשְׁרָה וּלְשְׁלוֹם אֵין קֵץ; עַל כִּסֵּא דָוִד וְעַל מַמְלַכְתּוֹ לְהָכִין אֹתָהּ וּלְסַעְדָּהּ בְּמִשְׁפָּט וּבִצְדָקָה, מִעַתָּה וְעַד עוֹלָם. קִנְיַת יְהוָה צְבָאוֹת תַּעֲשֶׂה זֹאת.
- 8 The Lord sent a word into Jacob, and it hath lighted upon Israel.
- דָּבָר שָׁלַח אֲדֹנָי בְּיַעֲקֹב וְנִפְלָב בְּיִשְׂרָאֵל.
- 9 And all the people shall know, even Ephraim and the inhabitant of Samaria, that say in the pride and stoutness of heart,
- וְיָדְעוּ הָעָם כֻּלּוֹ, אֶפְרַיִם וְיוֹשֵׁב שְׁמֶרֶון, בְּגָאוֹה וּבְגִדְלֵי לֵבָב לֵאמֹר:
- 10 The bricks are fallen down, but we will build with hewn stones: the sycamores are cut down, but we will change them into cedars.
- לְבָנִים נָפְלוּ וְגִזִּית נִבְנָה; שְׁקָמִים גִּדְעוּ וְאַרְזִים נִחְלִיף.
- 11 Therefore the Lord shall set up the adversaries of Rezin against him, and join his enemies together;
- יְהוָה אֶת צָרֵי רִצִּין עֲלֵיו, וְאֶת אֹיְבָיו יִסְכְּסֶף.
- 12 The Syrians before, and the Philistines behind; and they shall devour Israel with open mouth. For all this his anger is not turned away, but his hand is stretched out still.
- אַרְם מִקֶּדֶם וּפְלִשְׁתִּים מֵאַחֲרֵי; וַיֹּאכְלוּ אֶת יִשְׂרָאֵל בְּכָל פֶּה. בְּכָל זֹאת לֹא שָׁב אַפּוֹ, וְעוֹד יָדוֹ נְטוּיָה.
- 13 For the people turneth not unto him that smiteth them, neither do they seek the Lord of hosts.
- וְהָעָם לֹא שָׁב עַד הַמִּכֶּה; וְאֵת יְהוָה צְבָאוֹת לֹא דָרְשׁוּ.
- 14 Therefore the Lord will cut off from Israel head and tail, branch and rush, in one day.
- וַיִּכְרֹת יְהוָה מִיִּשְׂרָאֵל, רֹאשׁ וְזָנָב וְפָנֶה וְאֶגְמוֹן יוֹם אֶחָד.
- 15 The ancient and honourable, he is the head; and the prophet that teacheth lies, he is the tail.
- זָקֵן וְנִשְׁוֹא פָנִים הוּא הָרֹאשׁ; וְנָבִיא מוֹרֶה שֶׁקֶר הוּא הַזָּנָב.
- 16 For the leaders of this people cause them to err; and they that are led of them are destroyed.
- וַיְהִיו מְאַשְׁרֵי הָעָם הַזֶּה מִתְעִים, וּמְאַשְׁרֵיו מִבְלָעִים.
- 17 Therefore the Lord shall have no joy in their young men, neither shall have mercy on their fatherless and widows: for everyone is an hypocrite and an evildoer, and every mouth speaketh folly. For all this his anger is not turned away, but his hand is stretched out still.
- עַל כֵּן עַל בָּחוּרָיו לֹא יִשְׂמַח אֲדֹנָי, וְאֵת יְתָמָיו וְאֶת אֲלֻמְנוֹתָיו לֹא יִרְחַם כִּי כֻלּוֹ חֲנֹף וּמִרְעָה, וְכָל פֶּה דֹבֵר נִבְלָה; בְּכָל זֹאת לֹא שָׁב אַפּוֹ, וְעוֹד יָדוֹ נְטוּיָה.

- 18 כי בַּעֲרָה כָּאֵשׁ רִשְׁעָהּ, שְׁמִיר וְשִׁית תֹּאכֵל; וְתִצַּת בְּסִבְכֵי הַיַּעַר, וַיִּתְאַבְּכוּ גֵאוֹת עָשָׂן.  
For wickedness burneth as the fire: it shall devour the briers and thorns, and shall kindle in the thickets of the forest, and they shall mount up like the lifting up of smoke.
- 19 בַּעֲבֶרְתַּת יְהוָה צָבָאוֹת נִעְתָּם אֶרֶץ; וַיְהִי הָעָם כְּמֹאכֵלֶת אֵשׁ; אִישׁ אֶל אָחִיו לֹא יִחְמַל.  
Through the wrath of the Lord of hosts is the land darkened, and the people shall be as the fuel of the fire: no man shall spare his brother.
- 20 וַיִּגְזֹר עַל יְמִין וָרֵעֵב; וַיֹּאכַל עַל שְׁמֹאוֹל וְלֹא שָׂבַעוּ; אִישׁ בָּשָׂר זָרְעוֹ יֹאכֵל.  
And he shall snatch on the right hand, and be hungry; and he shall eat on the left hand, and they shall not be satisfied: they shall eat every man the flesh of his own arm:
- 21 מְנַשֶּׁה אֶת אֶפְרַיִם וְאֶפְרַיִם אֶת מְנַשֶּׁה, יַחְדָּו הָמָּה עַל יְהוּדָה; בְּכָל זֹאת לֹא שָׁב אָפוֹ, וְעוֹד יָדוֹ נְטוּיָה.  
Manasseh, Ephraim; and Ephraim, Manasseh: and they together shall be against Judah. For all this his anger is not turned away, but his hand is stretched out still.

## כ

## 20

- 1 הוּי הַחֻקִּים חֻקֵּי אָנוֹן, וּמִכְתָּבִים עָמַל כְּתָבוּ.  
Woe unto them that decree unrighteous decrees, and that write grievousness which they have prescribed;
- 2 לְהִטּוֹת מִדִּין דָּלִים, וּלְגַזֹּל מִשְׁפַּט עֲנִי עַמִּי; לְהִיּוֹת אֱלֻמְנוֹת שָׁלָלָם, וְאֵת יְתוּמִים יִבְזּוּ.  
To turn aside the needy from judgment, and to take away the right from the poor of my people, that widows may be their prey, and that they may rob the fatherless!
- 3 וּמָה תַּעֲשׂוּ לְיוֹם פְּקֻדָּהּ, וּלְשׂוֹאָה מִמָּרְחָק תָּבוֹא; עַל מִי תִּנּוּסוּ לְעֶזְרָה? וְאֵנָּה תַּעֲזֹבוּ כְּבוֹדְכֶם?  
And what will ye do in the day of visitation, and in the desolation which shall come from far? to whom will ye flee for help? and where will ye leave your glory?
- 4 בְּלִתִּי כָרַע תַּחַת אֲסִיר, וְתַחַת הַרוּגִים יִפְלוּ; בְּכָל זֹאת לֹא שָׁב אָפוֹ, וְעוֹד יָדוֹ נְטוּיָה.  
Without me they shall bow down under the prisoners, and they shall fall under the slain. For all this his anger is not turned away, but his hand is stretched out still.
- 5 הוּי אַשּׁוּר, שִׁבְט אַפִּי; וּמִסָּה הוּא בִּידָם זַעֲמִי.  
O Assyrian, the rod of mine anger, and the staff in their hand is mine indignation.
- 6 בְּגוֹי חָנָף אֲשַׁלְּחֶנּוּ, וְעַל עַם עֲבָרְתִּי אֲצַנְנֵהוּ לְשַׁלֵּל שָׁלָל וּלְבַז בֹּז, וּלְשׁוּמוֹ מִרְמָס כַּחֲמֹר חוּצוֹת.  
I will send him against an hypocritical nation, and against the people of my wrath will I give him a charge, to take the spoil, and to take the prey, and to tread them down like the mire of the streets.
- 7 וְהוּא לֹא בִן יִדְמָה, וּלְבָבוֹ לֹא בִן יִחְשָׁב; כִּי לְהַשְׁמִיד בִּלְבָבוֹ וּלְהַכְרִית גּוֹיִם לֹא מַעֲט.  
Howbeit he meaneth not so, neither doth his heart think so; but it is in his heart to destroy and cut off nations not a few.
- 8 כִּי יֹאמֶר: הֲלֹא שָׂרֵי יַחְדָּו מְלָכִים?  
For he saith, Are not my princes altogether kings?
- 9 הֲלֹא כַּכְרֶמִּישׁ כָּלְנוּ? אִם לֹא כַּאַרְפַּד חֻמַּת, אִם לֹא כַּדַּמֶּשֶׁק שְׁמֵרוֹן?  
Is not Calno as Carchemish? Is not Hamath as Arpad? Is not Samaria as Damascus?

- 10 כַּאֲשֶׁר מָצָאָה יָדִי לְמַמְלַכַת הָאֱלִילִים, וּפְסִילֵיהֶם מִירוּשָׁלַם וּמִשָּׁמָרוֹן.  
As my hand hath found the kingdoms of the idols, and whose graven images did excel them of Jerusalem and of Samaria;
- 11 הֲלֹא כַּאֲשֶׁר עָשִׂיתִי לְשָׁמָרוֹן וּלְאֶלְלִיָּהּ, כֵּן אֶעֱשֶׂה לִירוּשָׁלַם וְלַעֲצָבֶיהָ?  
Shall I not, as I have done unto Samaria and her idols, so do to Jerusalem and her idols?
- 12 וְהָיָה כִּי יַבְצֵעַ אֲדָנִי אֶת כָּל מַעֲשָׂהוּ בְּהָר צִיּוֹן, וּבִירוּשָׁלַם אֶפְקֹד עַל פְּרִי גֹדֶל לִבָּב מֶלֶךְ אַשּׁוּר, וְעַל תַּפְאֶרֶת רוּם עֵינָיו.  
Wherefore it shall come to pass, that when the Lord hath performed his whole work upon mount Zion and on Jerusalem, I will punish the fruit of the stout heart of the king of Assyria, and the glory of his high looks.
- 13 כִּי אָמַר: בְּכֹחַ יָדִי עָשִׂיתִי וּבְחִכְמָתִי כִּי נִבְּנֹתִי; וְאֶסִּיר גְּבוּלֹת עַמִּים וְעִתּוֹדֵיהֶם שׁוֹשִׁיתִי, וְאוֹרִיד כְּאִבִּיר יוֹשְׁבֵיהֶם.  
For he saith, By the strength of my hand I have done it, and by my wisdom; for I am prudent: and I have removed the bounds of the people, and have robbed their treasures, and I have put down the inhabitants like a valiant man:
- 14 וְתִמְצָא כְּקֹן יָדִי לְחֵיל הָעַמִּים; וְכֶאֱסֹף בִּיעִים עֲזֻבוֹת כָּל הָאָרֶץ אֲנִי אֶסְפֹּתִי; וְלֹא הָיָה נִדָּד כָּנָף, וּפִצָּה פֶה וּמִצְפָּצָף.  
And my hand hath found as a nest the riches of the people: and as one gathereth eggs that are left, have I gathered all the earth; and there was none that moved the wing, or opened the mouth, or peeped.
- 15 הֲיִתְפָּאֵר הַגִּרְזֹן עַל הַחֹצֵב בּוֹ? אִם יִתְגַּדֵּל הַמַּשְׁוֹר עַל מְנִיפוֹ? כִּהְנִיף שִׁבְט וְאֵת מְרִימֹו, כִּהְרִים מִטָּה לֹא עָץ?  
Shall the axe boast itself against him that heweth therewith? Or shall the saw magnify itself against him that shaketh it? As if the rod should shake itself against them that lift it up, or as if the staff should lift up itself, as if it were no wood.
- 16 לָכֵן יִשְׁלַח הָאֲדֹנָי יְהוִה צְבָאוֹת בְּמִשְׁמָנֵי רוּחוֹ, וְתַחַת כְּבֹדוֹ יִקְדַּח יִקְדַּח בִּיקּוֹד אֵשׁ.  
Therefore shall the Lord, the Lord of hosts, send among his fat ones leanness; and under his glory he shall kindle a burning like the burning of a fire.
- 17 וְהָיָה אֹרֶךְ יִשְׂרָאֵל לְאֵשׁ, וְקִדּוּשׁוֹ לִלְהָבָה; וּבְעֶרְהָ וְאֶכְלָה שִׁתּוֹ וְשִׁמְרֹו בְיוֹם אֶחָד.  
And the light of Israel shall be for a fire, and his Holy One for a flame: and it shall burn and devour his thorns and his briers in one day;
- 18 וּכְבוֹד יַעֲרֹו וְכִרְמֻלוֹ מִנְפֶּשׁ וְעַד בָּשָׂר יִכְלָה, וְהָיָה כְּמַסַּס נֶסֶס.  
And shall consume the glory of his forest, and of his fruitful field, both soul and body: and they shall be as when a standard bearer fainteth.
- 19 וְשָׂאֵר עֵץ יַעֲרֹו מִסְפָּר יְהִי, וְנִעַר יִכְתְּבֵם.  
And the rest of the trees of his forest shall be few, that a child may write them.
- 20 וְהָיָה בְיוֹם הַהוּא לֹא יוֹסִיף עוֹד שְׂאֵר יִשְׂרָאֵל וּפְלִיטַת בֵּית יַעֲקֹב לְהִשָּׁעַן עַל מַכְהוֹ; וְנִשְׁעַן עַל יְהוִה קְדוֹשׁ יִשְׂרָאֵל בְּאֱמֶת.  
And it shall come to pass in that day, that the remnant of Israel, and such as are escaped of the house of Jacob, shall no more again stay upon him that smote them; but shall stay upon the Lord, the Holy One of Israel, in truth.
- 21 שְׂאֵר יָשׁוּב; שְׂאֵר יַעֲקֹב אֵל אֵל גְּבוּר.  
The remnant shall return, even the remnant of Jacob, unto the mighty God.

- 22 For though thy people Israel be as the sand of the sea, yet a remnant of them shall return: the consumption decreed shall overflow with righteousness.
- כִּי אִם יִהְיֶה עַמּוֹ יִשְׂרָאֵל כְּחוֹל הַיָּם שְׂאֵר יָשׁוּב בּוֹ; כָּלִיוֹן חֲרוֹץ, שׁוֹטֵף צִדְקָה.
- 23 For the Lord God of hosts shall make a consumption, even determined, in the midst of all the land.
- כִּי כָלָה וְנִחְרְצָה אֲדֹנֵי יְהוָה צָבָאוֹת, עֲשֵׂה בִקְרֹב כָּל הָאָרֶץ.
- 24 Therefore thus saith the Lord God of hosts, O my people that dwellest in Zion, be not afraid of the Assyrian: he shall smite thee with a rod, and shall lift up his staff against thee, after the manner of Egypt.
- לָכֵן, כֹּה אָמַר אֲדֹנֵי יְהוָה צָבָאוֹת: אַל תִּירָא עַמִּי יֹשֵׁב צִיּוֹן מֵאַשּׁוּר; בְּשֶׁבֶט יַכְכָּה, וּמִטְהוֹ יִשָּׂא עָלָיו בְּדֶרֶךְ מִצְרַיִם.
- 25 For yet a very little while, and the indignation shall cease, and mine anger in their destruction.
- כִּי עוֹד מְעַט מִזְעָר וְכָלָה זַעַם, וְאַפִּי עַל תִּבְלִיתָם.
- 26 And the Lord of hosts shall stir up a scourge for him according to the slaughter of Midian at the rock of Oreb: and as his rod was upon the sea, so shall he lift it up after the manner of Egypt.
- וְעוֹרָר עָלָיו יְהוָה צָבָאוֹת שׁוֹט כְּמַכַּת מִדְיָן בְּצוּר עוֹרֵב, וּמִטְהוֹ עַל הַיָּם; וְנִשָּׂאוֹ בְּדֶרֶךְ מִצְרַיִם.
- 27 And it shall come to pass in that day, that his burden shall be taken away from off thy shoulder, and his yoke from off thy neck, and the yoke shall be destroyed because of the anointing.
- וְהָיָה בַּיּוֹם הַהוּא יָסוּר סִבְלוֹ מֵעַל שִׁכְמְךָ, וְעָלוֹ מֵעַל צִוְּאָרְךָ; וְחָבַל עַל מִפְּנֵי שֶׁמֶן.
- 28 He is come to Aiath, he is passed to Migron; at Michmash he hath laid up his carriages:
- בָּא עַל עֵיִת עֵבֶר בְּמִגְרוֹן; לְמִכְמָשׁ יִפְקִיד כָּלָיו.
- 29 They are gone over the passage: they have taken up their lodging at Geba; Ramah is afraid; Gibeah of Saul is fled.
- עָבְרוּ מֵעֲבָרָה גִבְעָה; מְלוֹן לָנוּ; חֲרָדָה הָרָמָה, גִּבְעַת שְׁאוּל נָסָה.
- 30 Lift up thy voice, O daughter of Gallim: cause it to be heard unto Laish, O poor Anathoth.
- צַהֲלִי קוֹלְךָ, בֵּת גָּלִים, הַקְשִׁיבִי לַיִּשָּׁה, עֲנִיָּה עֲנָתוֹת.
- 31 Madmenah is removed; the inhabitants of Gebim gather themselves to flee.
- נִדְּדָה מִדְּמָנָה; יֹשְׁבֵי הַגְּבִים הִעִיזוּ.
- 32 As yet shall he remain at Nob that day: he shall shake his hand against the mount of the daughter of Zion, the hill of Jerusalem.
- עוֹד הָיִים בְּנוֹב לַעֲמֹד; וְנִפֵּף יָדוֹ הַר בֵּת צִיּוֹן, גִּבְעַת יְרוּשָׁלַם.
- 33 Behold, the Lord, the Lord of hosts, shall lop the bough with terror: and the high ones of stature shall be hewn down, and the haughty shall be humbled.
- הִנֵּה הָאֲדוֹן יְהוָה צָבָאוֹת, מִסְּעָף פֶּאֶרָה בְּמַעְרָצָה; וְרַמֵּי הַקוֹמָה גְּדוּעִים, וְהַגְּבוּהִים יִשְׁפְּלוּ.
- 34 And he shall cut down the thickets of the forest with iron, and Lebanon shall fall by a mighty one.
- וְנִקַּף סִבְכֵי הַיַּעַר בַּבְּרִזֵּל, וְהַלְבָּנוֹן בְּאֲדִיר יָפוֹל.



## כֹא

## 21

- 1 And there shall come forth a rod out of the stem of Jesse, and a Branch shall grow out of his roots:
- וַיֵּצֵא חֹטֶר מִגִּזְעַי יֵשׁוּ, וְנֹצֵר מִשְׁרָשָׁיו יִפְרֶה.
- 2 And the spirit of the Lord shall rest upon him, the spirit of wisdom and understanding, the spirit of counsel and might, the spirit of knowledge and of the fear of the Lord;
- וְנָחָה עָלָיו רוּחַ יְהוָה, רוּחַ חֲכָמָה וּבִינָה, רוּחַ עֲצָה וּגְבוּרָה, רוּחַ דַּעַת וְיִרְאַת יְהוָה.
- 3 And shall make him of quick understanding in the fear of the Lord: and he shall not judge after sight of his eyes, neither reprove after the hearing of his ears:
- וְהָרִיחוּ בִּירְאַת יְהוָה; וְלֹא לְמַרְאֵה עֵינָיו יִשְׁפֹּט, וְלֹא לְמִשְׁמַע אָזְנוֹ יוֹכִיחַ.
- 4 But with righteousness shall he judge the poor, and reprove with equity for the meek of the earth: and he shall smite the earth with the rod of his mouth, and with the breath of his lips shall he slay the wicked.
- וְשִׁפֹּט בְּצֶדֶק דְּלִים, וְהוֹכִיחַ בְּמִישׁוֹר לְעֲנִי אֶרֶץ; וְהִכָּה אֶרֶץ בְּשֹׁבֵט פִּי, וּבְרוּחַ שְׁפָתָיו יִמִּית רָשָׁע.
- 5 And righteousness shall be the girdle of his loins, and faithfulness the girdle of his reins.
- וְהָיָה צֶדֶק אֲזוֹר מִתְּנִי, וְהֶאֱמוּנָה אֲזוֹר חֻלְצִי.
- 6 The wolf also shall dwell with the lamb, and the leopard shall lie down with the kid; and the calf and the young lion and the fatling together; and a little child shall lead them.
- וְגֵר זֶאֵב עִם כֶּבֶשׂ, וְנֹמֵר עִם גְּדִי יִרְבֹּץ; וְעֹגֵל וּכְפִיר וּמְרִיא יַחְדָּו, וְנֹעַר קֹטֵן נֹהֵג בָּם.
- 7 And the cow and the bear shall feed; their young ones shall lie down together: and the lion shall eat straw like the ox.
- וּפָרָה וְדֹב תִרְעִינָה, יַחְדָּו יִרְבְּצוּ יְלָדֵיהֶן; וְאַרְיֵה כְּבָקָר יֹאכֵל תֶּבֶן.
- 8 And the sucking child shall play on the hole of the asp, and the weaned child shall put his hand on the cockatrice' den.
- וְשֹׁשׁוֹעַ יוֹנֵק עַל חֹר פִּתָּן, וְעַל מְאוֹרֵת צִפְעוֹנִי גְמוּל יָדוֹ הָדָה.
- 9 They shall not hurt nor destroy in all my holy mountain: for the earth shall be full of the knowledge of the Lord, as the waters cover the sea.
- לֹא יָרְעוּ וְלֹא יִשְׁחִיתוּ בְּכָל הָר קִדְשִׁי, כִּי מְלֵאָה הָאֶרֶץ דַּעַת אֶת יְהוָה, כַּמַּיִם לַיָּם מְכַסִּים.
- 10 And in that day there shall be a root of Jesse, which shall stand for an ensign of the people; to it shall the Gentiles seek: and his rest shall be glorious.
- וְהָיָה בַּיּוֹם הַהוּא שֹׁרֵשׁ יֵשׁוּ אֲשֶׁר עֵמִיד לְנֶס עַמִּים, אֵלָיו גּוֹיִם יִדְרֹשׁוּ, וְהָיְתָה מְנוַחָתוֹ כְּבוֹד.
- 11 And it shall come to pass in that day, that the Lord shall set his hand again the second time to recover the remnant of his people, which shall be left, from Assyria, and from Egypt, and from Pathros, and from Cush, and from Elam, and from Shinar, and from Hamath, and from the islands of the sea.
- וְהָיָה בַּיּוֹם הַהוּא יוֹסִיף אֲדֹנֵי שְׁנִית יְדוֹ, לְקַנּוֹת אֶת שְׂאֵר עַמּוֹ אֲשֶׁר יִשְׁאַר מֵאַשּׁוּר וּמִמִּצְרַיִם וּמִפַּתְרוֹס וּמִכּוּשׁ וּמִעִילָם וּמִשִּׁנְעָר וּמִחֻמַּת וּמֵאֲיִי הַיָּם.
- 12 And he shall set up an ensign for the nations, and shall assemble the outcasts of Israel, and gather together the dispersed of Judah from the four corners of the earth.
- וְנִשָּׂא נֶס לְגוֹיִם, וְאַסַּף נִדְחֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל; וְנִפְצוֹת יְהוּדָה יִקְבֹּץ מֵאַרְבַּע כְּנֻפּוֹת הָאֶרֶץ.

- 13 The envy also of Ephraim shall depart, and the adversaries of Judah shall be cut off: Ephraim shall not envy Judah, and Judah shall not vex Ephraim.
- 14 But they shall fly upon the shoulders of the Philistines toward the west; they shall spoil them of the east together: they shall lay their hand upon Edom and Moab; and the children of Ammon shall obey them.
- 15 And the Lord shall utterly destroy the tongue of the Egyptian sea; and with his mighty wind shall he shake his hand over the river, and shall smite it in the seven streams, and make men go over dry shod.
- 16 And there shall be an highway for the remnant of his people, which shall be left, from Assyria; like as it was to Israel in the day that he came up out of the land of Egypt.
- וְסִרְהָ קִנְיַת אֶפְרַיִם, וְצָרֵי יְהוּדָה יִכָּרְתוּ;  
אֶפְרַיִם לֹא יִקְנֹא אֶת יְהוּדָה, וְיְהוּדָה לֹא יִצַּר  
אֶת אֶפְרַיִם.
- וְעָפוּ בְּכַתְּף פְּלִשְׁתִּים יָמָה; וַיַּחֲדוּ יָבִזוּ אֶת בְּנֵי  
קֶדֶם; אֲדוֹם וּמוֹאָב מִשְׁלֹחַ יָדָם, וּבְנֵי עַמּוֹן  
מִשְׁמָעֵתָם.
- וְהָחֵרֵם יְהוָה אֶת לְשׁוֹן יָם מִצְרַיִם; וְהִנִּיף יָדוֹ  
עַל הַנָּהָר בְּעֵס רֹחוֹ, וְהִכָּהוּ לְשִׁבְעָה נְחָלִים,  
וְהִדְרִיךְ בְּנָעָלִים.
- וְהָיְתָה מְסֻלָּה לְשָׂאֵר עַמּוֹ אֲשֶׁר יִשְׁאַר  
מֵאֲשׁוּר, כְּאֲשֶׁר הָיְתָה לְיִשְׂרָאֵל בְּיוֹם עָלְתוֹ  
מֵאֶרֶץ מִצְרַיִם.

## כב

## 22

- 1 And in that day thou shalt say, O Lord, I will praise thee: though thou wast angry with me, thine anger is turned away, and thou comfortedst me.
- 2 Behold, God is my salvation; I will trust, and not be afraid: for the Lord Jehovah is my strength and my song; he also is become my salvation.
- 3 Therefore with joy shall ye draw water out of the wells of salvation.
- 4 And in that day shall ye say, Praise the Lord, call upon his name, declare his doings among the people, make mention that his name is exalted.
- 5 Sing unto the Lord; for he hath done excellent things: this is known in all the earth.
- 6 Cry out and shout, thou inhabitant of Zion: for great is the Holy One of Israel in the midst of thee.
- וְאָמַרְתָּ בְּיוֹם הַהוּא: אֲדֹכָה יְהוָה כִּי אָנַפְתָּ בִּי,  
יָשׁוּב אַפְּךָ וַתִּנְחַמְנִי.
- הִנֵּה, אֵל יְשׁוּעָתִי אֶבְטַח וְלֹא אֶפְחָד; כִּי עֲזָי  
וְזִמְרַת יְהוָה, וַיְהִי לִי לְיִשׁוּעָה.
- וּשְׂאֲבַתֶּם מֵיִם בְּשִׂשׁוֹן מִמַּעַיְנֵי הַיְשׁוּעָה.
- וְאָמַרְתֶּם בְּיוֹם הַהוּא: הוֹדוּ לַיהוָה, קְרָאוּ בְשִׁמּוֹ,  
הוֹדִיעוּ בְּעַמִּים עֲלִילָתוֹ, הִזְכִּירוּ כִּי נִשְׁגַּב שְׁמוֹ.
- זָמְרוּ לַיהוָה כִּי גָאוֹת עָשָׂה; מוֹדַעַת זֹאת  
בְּכָל הָאָרֶץ.
- צִהֲלִי וְרַנִּי, יוֹשֶׁבֶת צִיּוֹן, כִּי גָדוֹל בְּקִרְבְּךָ  
קְדוֹשׁ יִשְׂרָאֵל.

## כג

## 23

- 1 The burden of Babylon, which Isaiah the son of Amoz did see.
- 2 Lift ye up a banner upon the high mountain, exalt the voice unto them, shake the hand, that they may go into the gates of the nobles.
- 3 I have commanded my sanctified ones, I have also called my mighty ones for mine anger, even them that rejoice in my highness.
- מִשָּׂא בָּבֶל אֲשֶׁר חָזָה יִשְׁעִיָּהוּ בֶן אֲמוֹץ.
- עַל הַר נִשְׁפָּה שָׂאוּ נֶס, הָרִימוּ קוֹל לָהֶם,  
הִנִּיפוּ יָד, וַיָּבֹאוּ פִתְחֵי נְדִיבִים.
- אֲנִי צִוִּיתִי לְמִקְדָּשִׁי; גַּם קָרָאתִי גִבּוֹרֵי לְאַפִּי,  
עֲלִיזֵי גְאוּתִי.

- 4 The noise of a multitude in the mountains, like as of a great people; a tumultuous noise of the kingdoms of nations gathered together: the Lord of hosts mustereth the host of the battle.
- קול הַמִּזְמֹר בְּהָרִים, דְּמוּת עַם רַב; קוֹל שְׂאוֹן מִמְּלָכוֹת גּוֹיִם, נִאָּסְפִים יְהוָה צְבָאוֹת, מִפְּקֹד צָבָא מְלֻחָמָה.
- 5 They come from a far country, from the end of heaven, even the Lord, and the weapons of his indignation, to destroy the whole land.
- בָּאִים מֵאֶרֶץ מְרֻחָק, מִקְצֵה הַשָּׁמַיִם; יְהוָה וְכָלֵי זַעְמוֹ לְחַבֵּל כָּל הָאָרֶץ.
- 6 Howl ye; for the day of the Lord is at hand; it shall come as a destruction from the Almighty.
- הִילֵלוּ, כִּי קָרוֹב יוֹם יְהוָה; כְּשֹׁד מִשְׁדֵּי יְבוּא.
- 7 Therefore shall all hands be faint, and every man's heart shall melt:
- עַל כֵּן כָּל יָדִים תִּרְפִּינָה; וְכָל לֵבב אֲנוּשׁ יִמָּס.
- 8 And they shall be afraid: pangs and sorrows shall take hold of them; they shall be in pain as a woman that travaileth: they shall be amazed one at another; their faces shall be as flames.
- וְנִבְהָלוּ, צִרִים וְחִבְלִים יֵאָחֲזוּן; כִּי־לֵדָה יִחִילוּ, אִישׁ אֶל רֵעֵהוּ יִתְמַהוּ, פָּנֵי לְהִבִּים פָּנִיָּהֶם.
- 9 Behold, the day of the Lord cometh, cruel both with wrath and fierce anger, to lay the land desolate: and he shall destroy the sinners thereof out of it.
- הִנֵּה יוֹם יְהוָה בָּא, אֲכַזְרִי וְעִבְרָה וְחֲרוֹן אָף לְשׁוֹם הָאָרֶץ לְשִׁמָּה, וְחִסְאִיהָ יִשְׁמִיד מִמֶּנָּה.
- 10 For the stars of heaven and the constellations thereof shall not give their light: the sun shall be darkened in his going forth, and the moon shall not cause her light to shine.
- כִּי כּוֹכְבֵי הַשָּׁמַיִם וְכִסְיָלֵיהֶם, לֹא יִהְיוּ אוֹרִם; חֹשֶׁךְ הַשֶּׁמֶשׁ בְּצֵאתוֹ, וְיָרֵחַ לֹא יִגִּיה אוֹרָה.
- 11 And I will punish the world for their evil, and the wicked for their iniquity; and I will cause the arrogancy of the proud to cease, and will lay low the haughtiness of the terrible.
- וּפְקַדְתִּי עַל תִּבְל רָעָה, וְעַל רָשָׁעִים עֲוֹנֵם; וְהִשְׁבַּתִּי גָאוֹן זָדִים, וְגִאֲוֹת עֲרִיצִים אֲשַׁפִּיל.
- 12 I will make a man more precious than fine gold; even a man than the golden wedge of Ophir.
- אֲוִקִיר אֲנוּשׁ מִפָּז; וְאָדָם מִכֶּתֶם אוֹפִיר.
- 13 Therefore I will shake the heavens, and the earth shall remove out of her place, in the wrath of the Lord of hosts, and in the day of his fierce anger.
- עַל כֵּן שָׁמַיִם אֲרִגִּז, וְתִרְעַשׂ הָאָרֶץ מִמְּקוֹמָהּ בְּעִבְרַת יְהוָה צְבָאוֹת, וּבְיוֹם חֲרוֹן אָפוֹ.
- 14 And it shall be as the chased roe, and as a sheep that no man taketh up: they shall every man turn to his own people, and flee every one into his own land.
- וְהָיָה כְּצִבִּי מְדָח, וְכַצֶּאֱן וְאִין מִקְבִּץ; אִישׁ אֶל עַמּוֹ יָפְנוּ, וְאִישׁ אֶל אֶרְצוֹ יָנוּסוּ.
- 15 Every one that is found shall be thrust through; and every one that is joined unto them shall fall by the sword.
- כָּל הַנִּמְצָא יִדְקָר; וְכָל הַנִּסְפָּה יִפּוֹל בַּחֶרֶב.
- 16 Their children also shall be dashed to pieces before their eyes; their houses shall be spoiled, and their wives ravished.
- וְעַלְלֵיהֶם יִרְטָשׁוּ לְעֵינֵיהֶם; יִשָּׁסוּ בְּתֵיהֶם, וְנָשֵׁיהֶם תִּשְׁכַּבְנָה.
- 17 Behold, I will stir up the Medes against them, which shall not regard silver; and as for gold, they shall not delight in it.
- הִנֵּנִי מַעִיר עֲלֵיהֶם אֶת מְדֵי אֲשֶׁר כֶּסֶף לֹא יַחְשְׁבוּ, וְזָהָב לֹא יַחְפְּצוּ בוֹ.

- כד

## 24

- 115

- 9 Hell from beneath is moved for thee to meet thee at thy coming: it stirreth up the dead for thee, even all the chief ones of the earth; it hath raised up from their thrones all the kings of the nations.
- שָׂאוֹל מִתַּחַת רִנְזָה לְךָ לִקְרֹאת בּוֹאֶךָ; עוֹרֵר לְךָ רִפְאִים כָּל עֲתוּדֵי אֶרֶץ, הַקִּים מִכְסְּאוֹתָם כָּל מְלָכֵי גוֹיִם.
- 10 All they shall speak and say unto thee, Art thou also become weak as we? Art thou become like unto us?
- כָּל־ם יַעֲנוּ וַיֹּאמְרוּ אֵלֶיךָ: גַּם אַתָּה חֲלִיתָ כְּמוֹנוּ; אֵלֵינוּ נִמְשַׁלְתָּ.
- 11 Thy pomp is brought down to the grave, and the noise of thy viols: the worm is spread under thee, and the worms cover thee.
- הוֹרֵד שָׂאוֹל וְגֹאֲנָה, הַמִּית נְבֻלֶיךָ; תַּחֲתֶיךָ יֵצֵעַ רֶמָּה, וּמִכְסֶיךָ תוֹלְעָה.
- 12 How art thou fallen from heaven, O Lucifer, son of the morning! how art thou cut down to the ground, which didst weaken the nations!
- אֵיךְ נָפַלְתָּ מִשָּׁמַיִם, הֵילֵל בֶּן שָׁחַר! נִגְדַעְתָּ לְאֶרֶץ, חוֹלָשׁ עַל גּוֹיִם!
- 13 For thou hast said in thine heart, I will ascend into heaven, I will exalt my throne above the stars of God: I will sit also upon the mount of the congregation, in the sides of the north:
- וְאַתָּה אָמַרְתָּ בְּלִבְבְּךָ: הַשָּׁמַיִם אֶעֱלֶה, מִמַּעַל לְכוֹכְבֵי אֱל, אָרִים כְּסִאִי, וְאֵשֵׁב בְּהַר מוֹעֵד, בִּירְכְתִי צָפוֹן.
- 14 I will ascend above the heights of the clouds; I will be like the Most High.
- אֶעֱלֶה עַל בְּמִתֵּי עָב; אֲדַמָּה לְעֵלְיוֹן.
- 15 Yet thou shalt be brought down to hell, to the sides of the pit.
- אָךְ אַל שָׂאוֹל תּוֹרֵד, אֶל יִרְכְתִי בּוֹר.
- 16 They that see thee shall narrowly look upon thee, and consider thee, saying, Is this the man that made the earth to tremble, that did shake kingdoms;
- רְאִיךָ אֵלֶיךָ יִשְׁגִּיחוּ, אֵלֶיךָ יִתְבּוֹנְנוּ; הֲזֶה הָאִישׁ מְרַגֵּז הָאֶרֶץ, מְרַעֵשׁ מַמְלָכוֹת?
- 17 That made the world as a wilderness, and destroyed the cities thereof; that opened not the house of his prisoners;
- שֶׁם תִּבַּל כַּמִּדְבָּר, וְעָרָיו הָרָס; אֲסִירָיו לֹא פָתַח בְּיָתָהּ.
- 18 All the kings of the nations, even all of them, lie in glory, everyone in his own house.
- כָּל מְלָכֵי גוֹיִם, כָּל־ם, שָׁכְבוּ בְּכְבוֹד, אִישׁ בְּבֵיתוֹ.
- 19 But thou art cast out of thy grave like an abominable branch, and as the raiment of those that are slain, thrust through with a sword, that go down to the stones of the pit; as a carcass trodden under feet.
- וְאַתָּה הִשְׁלַכְתָּ מִקְבְּרֶךָ, כְּנִצָּץ נִחְעָב, לְבָשׁ הָרָגִים, מְטֻעֵי חֶרֶב; יוֹרְדֵי אֶל אֲבְנֵי בּוֹר, כְּפֶגֶר מוּבָס.
- 20 Thou shalt not be joined with them in burial, because thou hast destroyed thy land, and slain thy people: the seed of evildoers shall never be renowned.
- לֹא תִחַד אִתָּם בְּקְבוּרָה כִּי אֲרֻצְךָ שִׁחַתָּ, עַמְּךָ הָרַגְתָּ; לֹא יִקְרָא לְעוֹלָם זֶרַע מְרַעִים.
- 21 Prepare slaughter for his children for the iniquity of their fathers; that they do not rise, nor possess the land, nor fill the face of the world with cities.
- הַכִּינוּ לְבָנָיו מִטְבַּח בְּעוֹן אֲבוֹתָם, כֹּל יִקְמוּ וַיִּרְשׁוּ אֶרֶץ, וּמָלְאוּ פְנֵי תִבַּל עָרִים.
- 22 For I will rise up against them, saith the Lord of hosts, and cut off from Babylon the name, and remnant, and son, and nephew, saith the Lord.
- וְקָמְתִי עֲלֵיהֶם, נֹאם יְהוָה צְבָאוֹת; וְהִכְרַתִּי לְבָבֶל שֵׁם וְשָׂרָא, וְנִין וְנֶכֶד, נֹאם יְהוָה.

## נְפִי ב כד:כג-כה:ב

- 23 I will also make it a possession for the bittern, and pools of water: and I will sweep it with the besom of destruction, saith the Lord of hosts.
- 24 The Lord of hosts hath sworn, saying, Surely as I have thought, so shall it come to pass; and as I have purposed, so shall it stand:
- 25 That I will break the Assyrian in my land, and upon my mountains tread him under foot: then shall his yoke depart from off them, and his burden depart from off their shoulders.
- 26 This is the purpose that is purposed upon the whole earth: and this is the hand that is stretched out upon all the nations.
- 27 For the Lord of hosts hath purposed, and who shall disannul it? And his hand is stretched out, and who shall turn it back?
- 28 In the year that king Ahaz died was this burden.
- 29 Rejoice not thou, whole Palestina, because the rod of him that smote thee is broken: for out of the serpent's root shall come forth a cockatrice, and his fruit shall be a fiery flying serpent.
- 30 And the firstborn of the poor shall feed, and the needy shall lie down in safety: and I will kill thy root with famine, and he shall slay thy remnant.
- 31 Howl, O gate; cry, O city; thou, whole Palestina, art dissolved: for there shall come from the north a smoke, and none shall be alone in his appointed times.
- 32 What shall one then answer the messengers of the nation? That the Lord hath founded Zion, and the poor of his people shall trust in it.

## כה

## 25

- 1 Now I, Nephi, do speak somewhat concerning the words which I have written, which have been spoken by the mouth of Isaiah. For behold, Isaiah spake many things which were hard for many of my people to understand; for they know not concerning the manner of prophesying among the Jews.
- 2 For I, Nephi, have not taught them many things concerning the manner of the Jews; for their works were works of darkness, and their doings were doings of abominations.



- על כן כותב אני לעמי, לכל אשר יקבלו  
בעתיד לבוא את כתבי אלה, למען ידעו את  
משפטי אלהים, אשר יבואו על כל העמים,  
על פי דברו אשר דבר.
- לכן, שמעו, עמי, אשר מבית ישראל אתם,  
והאזינו לדברי; ועו אשר דברי ישעיהו אינם  
ברורים לכם, אך הנם ברורים לכל אשר מלא  
רוח נבואה. ואני אנבא לכם נבואה על פי  
הרוח אשר בי; אכן, אנבא על פי הפשטות  
אשר עמי מעת יצאתי מירושלם עם אבי;  
כי הנה נפשי חפצה להגיד דברים ברורים  
אל עמי, למען ילמדו.
- אכן, מתענגת נפשי בדברי ישעיהו, כי יצאתי  
מירושלם ועיני ראו את דברי היהודים, וידע  
אני כי היהודים מבינים את דברי הנביאים,  
ואין עם אחר המבין את הדברים אשר  
נאמרו אל היהודים, כמוהם עצמם, וזולת  
אם למדו על פי ארח היהודים.
- ואולם, אני, נפי, לא למדתי את בני על  
פי ארח היהודים; אך אנכי גרתי בירושלם  
והנני יודע את חבלי הארץ אשר סביבה; אך  
הזכרתי לבני על אודות משפטי אלהים אשר  
חלו בקרב היהודים, ככל אשר דבר ישעיהו,  
ואני לא אכתבם.
- והנני מוסיף בנבואתי, כפי פשטות דברי,  
אשר ידעתי כי אין אדם יכול לטעות בה;  
אך בעת אשר יתקמו דברי נבואת ישעיהו,  
ידעו האנשים ידיעה שלמה אשר נבואותיו  
מתקיימות בעת ההיא.
- על כן יש להן ערך לבני האדם; ואשר יחשבו  
אשר אין להן ערך, אליהם מכון אני את דברי,  
ואיחד אותם לעמי, בידי כי רב יהיה להם  
ערך נבואותיו באחרית הימים, כי בעת ההיא  
יבינו; על כן לטובתם כתבתי אותן.
- ובאשר אבד דור אחד בקרב היהודים מפני  
עוון, כן הם אבדו מדור לדור כפי עוונותיהם;  
ומעולם לא אבד אף אחד מהם, מבלי אשר  
הודיעו על כך נביאי יהוה.
- על כן הודיעו על החרבן אשר בוא יבוא  
עליהם מיד אחר צאת אבי מירושלם, אך הם
- 3 Wherefore, I write unto my people, unto all those that shall receive hereafter these things which I write, that they may know the judgments of God, that they come upon all nations, according to the word which he hath spoken.
- 4 Wherefore, hearken, O my people, which are of the house of Israel, and give ear unto my words; for because the words of Isaiah are not plain unto you, nevertheless they are plain unto all those that are filled with the spirit of prophecy. But I give unto you a prophecy, according to the spirit which is in me; wherefore I shall prophesy according to the plainness which hath been with me from the time that I came out from Jerusalem with my father; for behold, my soul delighteth in plainness unto my people, that they may learn.
- 5 Yea, and my soul delighteth in the words of Isaiah, for I came out from Jerusalem, and mine eyes hath beheld the things of the Jews, and I know that the Jews do understand the things of the prophets, and there is none other people that understand the things which were spoken unto the Jews like unto them, save it be that they are taught after the manner of the things of the Jews.
- 6 But behold, I, Nephi, have not taught my children after the manner of the Jews; but behold, I, of myself, have dwelt at Jerusalem, wherefore I know concerning the regions round about; and I have made mention unto my children concerning the judgments of God, which hath come to pass among the Jews, unto my children, according to all that which Isaiah hath spoken, and I do not write them.
- 7 But behold, I proceed with mine own prophecy, according to my plainness; in the which I know that no man can err; nevertheless, in the days that the prophecies of Isaiah shall be fulfilled men shall know of a surety, at the times when they shall come to pass.
- 8 Wherefore, they are of worth unto the children of men, and he that supposeth that they are not, unto them will I speak particularly, and confine the words unto mine own people; for I know that they shall be of great worth unto them in the last days; for in that day shall they understand them; wherefore, for their good have I written them.
- 9 And as one generation hath been destroyed among the Jews because of iniquity, even so have they been destroyed from generation to generation according to their iniquities; and never hath any of them been destroyed save it were foretold them by the prophets of the Lord.
- 10 Wherefore, it hath been told them concerning the destruction which should come upon them, immediately after my father left Jerusalem;

- הקשו את לבם; וכדבר נבואתי הם נשמדו,  
זולת המגלים בבבלה.
- ועתה הנני מדבר זאת מפני הרוח אשר בי.  
ואף כי הגלו, הם ישובו שנית וינחלו את ארץ  
ירושלם; אכן, הם יושבו אל ארץ נחלתם.
- ואולם תהייה להם מלחמות ושמועות  
מלחמה; ובבוא היום אשר יתגלה להם  
בבשר הבן הילוד היחיד אשר לאב, והוא  
אבי שמים וארץ, הנה אז ימאסו בו, מפני  
עוונותיהם וקשי לבם וערפם.
- והם אכן יצלבוהו; ואחר אשר יניחוהו בקבר  
במשך שלשה ימים הוא יקום מן המתים,  
ומרפא בכנפיו; וכל המאמינים בשמו  
במלכות אלהים יושעו. על כן מתענגת נפשי  
לנבא על אודותיו, כי חזיתי את יומו, ולפי  
ירומם את שם קדשו.
- והנה, אחר עלות המשיח מן המתים ואחר  
התגלותו לעמו, לכל אלה אשר יאמינו  
בשמו, תחרב ירושלם שנית, כי הוי לנלחמים  
באלהים ובאנשי כנסתו.
- על כן יפוצו היהודים בכל העמים; אכן,  
אף בכל תחרב, ולכן עמים אחרים יפיצו  
את היהודים.
- אכן אחר תפוצתם ואחר אשר יצליף בהם  
יהוה אלהים ביד עמים אחרים במשך דורות  
רבים, אכן, מדור לדור, עד אשר ישתכנעו  
להאמין במשיח בן אלהים, ובפפרה, אשר  
היא מחלסת, לכל בני האדם; וביום אשר  
יאמינו בו ויעבדו את האב בשמו, בלב טהור  
ובנקיון כפים, ולא יצפו עוד לבוא משיח  
אחר, אזי תבוא העת אשר יהיו נכונים  
להאמין בדברים האלה.
- ויסוף יהוה שנית את ידו להשיב את עמו  
ממפלתם וכשלונם, אף יסוף להפליא את  
בני אדם הפלא ופלא.
- לכן יביא יהוה את דבריו אליהם, ודבריו  
ישפטום ביום האחרון, כי יתנום בעבור
- 11 And now this I speak because of the spirit which is in me. And notwithstanding they have been carried away they shall return again, and possess the land of Jerusalem; wherefore, they shall be restored again to the land of their inheritance.
- 12 But, behold, they shall have wars, and rumors of wars; and when the day cometh that the Only Begotten of the Father, yea, even the Father of heaven and of earth, shall manifest himself unto them in the flesh, behold, they will reject him, because of their iniquities, and the hardness of their hearts, and the stiffness of their necks.
- 13 Behold, they will crucify him; and after he is laid in a sepulchre for the space of three days he shall rise from the dead, with healing in his wings; and all those who shall believe on his name shall be saved in the kingdom of God. Wherefore, my soul delighteth to prophesy concerning him, for I have seen his day, and my heart doth magnify his holy name.
- 14 And behold it shall come to pass that after the Messiah hath risen from the dead, and hath manifested himself unto his people, unto as many as will believe on his name, behold, Jerusalem shall be destroyed again; for wo unto them that fight against God and the people of his church.
- 15 Wherefore, the Jews shall be scattered among all nations; yea, and also Babylon shall be destroyed; wherefore, the Jews shall be scattered by other nations.
- 16 And after they have been scattered, and the Lord God hath scourged them by other nations for the space of many generations, yea, even down from generation to generation until they shall be persuaded to believe in Christ, the Son of God, and the atonement, which is infinite for all mankind—and when that day shall come that they shall believe in Christ, and worship the Father in his name, with pure hearts and clean hands, and look not forward any more for another Messiah, then, at that time, the day will come that it must needs be expedient that they should believe these things.
- 17 And the Lord will set his hand again the second time to restore his people from their lost and fallen state. Wherefore, he will proceed to do a marvelous work and a wonder among the children of men.
- 18 Wherefore, he shall bring forth his words unto them, which words shall judge them at the last day, for they shall be given them for the purpose

יִמְשֹׁךְ לָבָם בְּדַבֵּר מְשִׁיחַ הָאֱמֶת, אֲשֶׁר  
מֵאֲסוּהוּ; וְלִמְעַן מִשֹּׁךְ לָבָם לְחַדֵּל מִצְפּוֹת עוֹד  
לָבוֹא מְשִׁיחַ, כִּי אֵין צָפּוּי לָבוֹא אַף אֶחָד, זֹלַת  
מְשִׁיחַ שֶׁקֶר אֲשֶׁר יִרְמָה אֶת הָאֲנָשִׁים; כִּי עַל  
מְשִׁיחַ אֶחָד בְּלִבָּד דִּבְרוּ הַנְּבִיאִים, וְזֶה  
הַמְשִׁיחַ אֲשֶׁר יִמְאָסוּ בוֹ הַיְּהוּדִים.

of convincing them of the true Messiah, who was rejected by them; and unto the convincing of them that they need not look forward any more for a Messiah to come, for there should not any come, save it should be a false Messiah which should deceive the people; for there is save one Messiah spoken of by the prophets, and that Messiah is he who should be rejected of the Jews.

כִּי עַל פִּי דִבְרֵי הַנְּבִיאִים, יָבוֹא הַמְשִׁיחַ לְאַחֵר  
שֵׁשׁ מֵאוֹת שָׁנָה מִיּוֹם צֵאת אָבִי מִירוּשָׁלַם,  
וְעַל פִּי דִבְרֵי הַנְּבִיאִים, וְכֵן עַל פִּי דִבְרֵי מַלְאָךְ  
אֱלֹהִים, יִקְרָא שְׁמוֹ יֵשׁוּעַ הַמְשִׁיחַ, בֶּן אֱלֹהִים.

19 For according to the words of the prophets, the Messiah cometh in six hundred years from the time that my father left Jerusalem; and according to the words of the prophets, and also the word of the angel of God, his name shall be Jesus Christ, the Son of God.

וְהִנֵּה, אֲחִי, דִּבְרַתִּי בְרוּרוֹת לְמַעַן לֹא תִטְעוּ. חַי  
יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים אֲשֶׁר הֶעֱלָה אֶת יִשְׂרָאֵל מֵאֶרֶץ  
מִצְרָיִם, וְנָתַן לְמֹשֶׁה כֹּחַ לְרַפֵּא אֶת הָעַמִּים אַחֵר  
אֲשֶׁר נִשְׁכָּמוּ בְּחֹשֶׁי הָאָרֶס, אִם אִף יִשְׁאוּ עֵינֵיהֶם  
אֶל הַנָּחֹשׁ אֲשֶׁר הֶעֱלָה לִפְנֵיהֶם, וְאֲשֶׁר נָתַן  
לְמֹשֶׁה כֹּחַ לְהַכּוֹת בַּסֵּלַע וְיֵצְאוּ מִים, הִנֵּה אֲנִי  
אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, כִּי כֹאֲשֶׁר הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה נִכְוִנִים,  
חַי יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים, לֹא נָתַן שֵׁם אַחֵר תַּחַת  
הַשְּׁמִים, כִּי אִם שֵׁם יֵשׁוּעַ הַמְשִׁיחַ, אֲשֶׁר עָלָיו  
דִּבְרַתִּי, אֲשֶׁר עַל יָדָיו יוּכַל הָאָדָם לְהוֹשֵׁעַ.

20 And now, my brethren, I have spoken plainly that ye cannot err. And as the Lord God liveth that brought Israel up out of the land of Egypt, and gave unto Moses power that he should heal the nations after they had been bitten by the poisonous serpents, if they would cast their eyes unto the serpent which he did raise up before them, and also gave him power that he should smite the rock and the water should come forth; yea, behold I say unto you, that as these things are true, and as the Lord God liveth, there is none other name given under heaven save it be this Jesus Christ, of which I have spoken, whereby man can be saved.

לָכֵן אֶמַר יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים אֵלַי כִּי הַדְּבָרִים  
אֲשֶׁר אֶכְתֹּב יִשְׁמְרוּ וְיִנָּצְרוּ, וְיִמָּסְרוּ לְזֶרַעִי,  
מִדּוֹר לְדוֹר, לְקִיָּם אֶת דִּבְרֵי הַבְּרִית לְיוֹסֵף,  
אֲשֶׁר זָרְעוּ לֹא יֵאבֹד לְעוֹלָם, כָּכֵל אֲשֶׁר  
תַּעֲמֹד הָאָרֶץ.

21 Wherefore, for this cause hath the Lord God promised unto me that these things which I write shall be kept and preserved, and handed down unto my seed, from generation to generation, that the promise may be fulfilled unto Joseph, that his seed should never perish as long as the earth should stand.

עַל כֵּן יֵצְאוּ הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה מִדּוֹר לְדוֹר, כָּכֵל  
אֲשֶׁר תַּעֲמֹד הָאָרֶץ; וְהֵם יִמָּסְרוּ כְּחַפְצֵי אֱלֹהִים  
וְכִרְצוֹנוֹ; וְהַעַמִּים אֲשֶׁר יִחְזִיקוּ בָהֶם, יִשְׁפָּטוּ  
בָּהֶם עַל פִּי הַדְּבָרִים הַכְּתוּבִים.

22 Wherefore, these things shall go from generation to generation as long as the earth shall stand; and they shall go according to the will and pleasure of God; and the nations who shall possess them shall be judged of them according to the words which are written.

כִּי שׁוֹקְדִים אֲנַחְנוּ לְכַתֵּב, לְמִשֹּׁךְ אֶת לֵב בְּנֵינוּ  
וְאֶת אַחֵינוּ לְהֶאֱמִין בְּמְשִׁיחַ וּלְהַתְרַצוֹת לִפְנֵי  
אֱלֹהִים; כִּי יוֹדְעִים אֲנַחְנוּ כִּי בְּחֶסֶד אֲנַחְנוּ  
נוֹשְׁעִים, אַחֵר כָּל אֲשֶׁר בְּיָדֵינוּ לַעֲשׂוֹת.

23 For we labor diligently to write, to persuade our children, and also our brethren, to believe in Christ, and to be reconciled to God; for we know that it is by grace that we are saved, after all we can do.

וְאִף כִּי מֵאֲמִינִים אֲנַחְנוּ בְּמְשִׁיחַ, אֲנַחְנוּ  
שׁוֹמְרִים אֶת תּוֹרַת מֹשֶׁה וּמִצְוִים בְּדִבְקוֹת  
לְמְשִׁיחַ, עַד אֲשֶׁר יִתְקַיְּמוּ דִבְרֵי הַתּוֹרָה.

24 And, notwithstanding we believe in Christ, we keep the law of Moses, and look forward with steadfastness unto Christ, until the law shall be fulfilled.

כִּי לְתַכְלִית הַזֹּאת נִתְּנָה הַתּוֹרָה; עַל כֵּן מִתָּה  
הַתּוֹרָה בְּעֵינֵינוּ, וְאֲנַחְנוּ הַתְּחִינּוּ בְּמְשִׁיחַ  
מִפְּנֵי אֱמוּנָתָנוּ; אִף שׁוֹמְרִים אֲנַחְנוּ אֶת  
הַתּוֹרָה בְּעִבּוֹר הַמִּצְוֹת.

25 For, for this end was the law given; wherefore the law hath become dead unto us, and we are made alive in Christ because of our faith; yet we keep the law because of the commandments.

- אֲכֹן, אֲנַחְנוּ מְדַבְּרִים בְּמִשִּׁיחַ, שְׁשִׁים בְּמִשִּׁיחַ, מְסִיפִים עַל אֲדוּת הַמִּשִּׁיחַ, מִנְּבִאִים עַל הַמִּשִּׁיחַ וְכֹתְבִים עַל פִּי נְבוֹאוֹתֵינוּ, לְמַעַן יִדְעוּ בְּנֵינוּ לְהִיכֵן יִבְקֹשׁוּ לְמַחֵל עַל חַטָּאתֵיהֶם.
- עַל כֵּן אֲנַחְנוּ מְדַבְּרִים עַל אֲדוּת הַתּוֹרָה, לְמַעַן יִכִּירוּ בְּנֵינוּ אֵת הַיְּהוּת הַתּוֹרָה מֵתָּה; וְהֵם, בִּידְעָם כִּי הַתּוֹרָה מֵתָּה, יֵצְפוּ אֶל הַחַיִּים אֲשֶׁר בְּמִשִּׁיחַ, וְיִדְעוּ מִדּוּעַ נִתְּנָה הַתּוֹרָה; וְאַחֵר אֲשֶׁר הִתְקַיְּמָה הַתּוֹרָה בְּמִשִּׁיחַ, אֵל לֵהֵם לְהַקְשׁוֹת אֵת לִבָּם עָלָיו בְּעֵת אֲשֶׁר צָרִיכָה הַתּוֹרָה לְחַלּוֹ.
- וְעַתָּה, בְּנֵי עַמִּי, הִנֵּכֶם עִם קֶשֶׁה עֲרֹף; עַל כֵּן דִּבַּרְתִּי אֲלֵיכֶם בְּרוּרוֹת, לְמַעַן לֹא תִפְשְׁלוּ בַּהֲבִנָּה. וְהַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר דִּבַּרְתִּי יַעֲמְדוּ כְּעֵדוֹת עֲלֵיכֶם; כִּי הֵנָּה מִסְפִּיקִים לְלַמֵּד כָּל אָדָם אֵת הַדֶּרֶךְ הַיֶּשֶׁרָה וְהִיא לְהֶאֱמִין בְּמִשִּׁיחַ וְלֹא לִכְחֹשׁ בּוֹ; כִּי אִם תִּכְחֹשׁוּ בּוֹ, תִּכְחֹשׁוּ אֶף אֶת הַנְּבִיאִים וְהַתּוֹרָה.
- וְהִנֵּה אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם כִּי הַדֶּרֶךְ הַיֶּשֶׁרָה הִיא לְהֶאֱמִין בְּמִשִּׁיחַ וְלֹא לִכְחֹשׁ בּוֹ. וְהַמִּשִּׁיחַ הוּא קְדוֹשׁ יִשְׂרָאֵל; עַל כֵּן עֲלֵיכֶם לְהִשְׁתַּחֲוֹת לִפְנָיו וּלְעַבְדּוֹ בְּכָל מְאֹדְכֶם, וּבְכָל לִבְבְּכֶם וּבְכָל כֹּחְכֶם, אֲכֹן לְעַבְדּוֹ בְּכָל נַפְשְׁכֶם; וְאִם כֵּן תַּעֲשׂוּ, הִשְׁלֹךְ לֹא תִשְׁלַכּוּ.
- וְכָל עוֹד יִזְעִיל הַדֶּבֶר, עֲלֵיכֶם לָקִים אֶת פְּקֻדוֹת אֱלֹהִים וְאֶת חֻקֹּתָיו עַד אֲשֶׁר תִּתְקַיֵּם הַתּוֹרָה אֲשֶׁר נִתְּנָה לְמֹשֶׁה.
- 26 And we talk of Christ, we rejoice in Christ, we preach of Christ, we prophesy of Christ, and we write according to our prophecies, that our children may know to what source they may look for a remission of their sins.
- 27 Wherefore, we speak concerning the law that our children may know the deadness of the law; and they, by knowing the deadness of the law, may look forward unto that life which is in Christ, and know for what end the law was given. And after the law is fulfilled in Christ, that they need not harden their hearts against him when the law ought to be done away.
- 28 And now behold, my people, ye are a stiffnecked people; wherefore, I have spoken plainly unto you, that ye cannot misunderstand. And the words which I have spoken shall stand as a testimony against you; for they are sufficient to teach any man the right way; for the right way is to believe in Christ and deny him not; for by denying him ye also deny the prophets and the law.
- 29 And now behold, I say unto you that the right way is to believe in Christ, and deny him not; and Christ is the Holy One of Israel; wherefore ye must bow down before him, and worship him with all your might, mind, and strength, and your whole soul; and if ye do this ye shall in nowise be cast out.
- 30 And, inasmuch as it shall be expedient, ye must keep the performances and ordinances of God until the law shall be fulfilled which was given unto Moses.

## כו

## 26

- וְאַחֵר תִּקְוַמַּת הַמִּשִּׁיחַ מִן הַמֵּתִים, הוּא יִתְגַּלֶּה לְפָנֵיכֶם, בְּנֵי וְאֶחָי הָאֱהוּבִים; וְהַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר יִדְבֹר אֲלֵיכֶם יִהְיוּ הַתּוֹרָה אֲשֶׁר תִּשְׁמְרוּ לַעֲשׂוֹת.
- וְהִנֵּנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם כִּי רִאִיתִי דּוֹרוֹת רַבִּים חוֹלְפִים וְעוֹבְרִים, וּמִלְחָמוֹת גְּדוֹלוֹת וּמְרִיבוֹת תִּהְיֶינָה בְּקֶרֶב בְּנֵי עַמִּי.
- וּבְבוֹא הַמִּשִּׁיחַ, יִנָּתְנוּ אוֹתוֹת לְעַמִּי עַל לִדְתּוֹ וְעַל מוֹתוֹ וְעַל תְּחִיָּתוֹ; אֵף גְּדוֹל וְנוֹרָא יִהְיֶה הַיּוֹם הַהוּא לְרָשָׁעִים, כִּי אֲבוֹד יֵאָבְדוּ; וְכָלִינוֹם יָבוֹא עַל אֲשֶׁר גָּרְשׁוּ אֶת הַנְּבִיאִים
- 1 And after Christ shall have risen from the dead he shall show himself unto you, my children, and my beloved brethren; and the words which he shall speak unto you shall be the law which ye shall do.
- 2 For behold, I say unto you that I have beheld that many generations shall pass away, and there shall be great wars and contentions among my people.
- 3 And after the Messiah shall come there shall be signs given unto my people of his birth, and also of his death and resurrection; and great and terrible shall that day be unto the wicked, for they shall perish; and they perish because they cast out the prophets, and the saints, and

וְאֵת הַקְּדוּשִׁים וְעַל אֲשֶׁר רָגְמוּם וְהָרְגוּם;  
אֲכֹן תַּעֲלֶה זַעֲקַת דָּם הַקְּדוּשִׁים אֶל אֱלֹהִים מִן  
הָאֲדָמָה וְתַעֲרִיד עֲלֵיהֶם.

stone them, and slay them; wherefore the cry of the blood of the saints shall ascend up to God from the ground against them.

עַל כֵּן, כָּל גָּאָה וְעוֹשֶׂה רָשָׁעָה, יִשְׂרָפֶם כָּלִיל  
הַיּוֹם הַבָּא, כִּי כַּקֵּשׁ יִהְיוּ, נֹאֲמִים יִהְיוּ צִבְאוֹת.

4 Wherefore, all those who are proud, and that do wickedly, the day that cometh shall burn them up, saith the Lord of Hosts, for they shall be as stubble.

וּבְלָעוּ מֵעַמְמֵי הָאֲדָמָה אֶת הוֹרְגֵי הַנְּבִיאִים  
וְהַקְּדוּשִׁים, נֹאֲמִים יִהְיוּ צִבְאוֹת; וְכַסּוּם הַהָרִים,  
וּנְשָׂאוֹם סוּפוֹת, וְהַתְמוּטְטוּ עֲלֵיהֶם בָּתִּים,  
וְכָתְתוּ אוֹתָם לַפְתִּיתִים, וְשָׁחֲנוּם לְאֶבֶק.

5 And they that kill the prophets, and the saints, the depths of the earth shall swallow them up, saith the Lord of Hosts; and mountains shall cover them, and whirlwinds shall carry them away, and buildings shall fall upon them and crush them to pieces and grind them to powder.

וּפְקָדוֹם קוֹלוֹת רַעַם וּבִרְקִים וְרַעְשֵׁי אֲדָמָה  
וְכָל מִינֵי הָרָס, כִּי אֵשׁ חֲרוֹן אַף יִהְיוּ דֹלְקָה  
בָּהֶם, וְהָיוּ כַּקֵּשׁ, וְכָלָה אוֹתָם הַיּוֹם הַבָּא,  
נֹאֲמִים יִהְיוּ צִבְאוֹת.

6 And they shall be visited with thunderings, and lightnings, and earthquakes, and all manner of destructions, for the fire of the anger of the Lord shall be kindled against them, and they shall be as stubble, and the day that cometh shall consume them, saith the Lord of Hosts.

הוֹי, מְכַאוֹבֵי וּמַצּוֹקֶת נַפְשִׁי עַל אֲבֹדוֹן בְּנֵי עַמִּי  
וְעַל הָרָגָם! כִּי אֲנִי, נְפִי, בְּעֵינֵי רְאִיתִי זֹאת,  
וּמִרְאָה כְּמַעַט כָּלָה אוֹתִי מִלִּפְנֵי יְהוָה, אֲךָ  
עָלִי לִזְעַק לְאֱלֹהֵי: דְּרָכֶיךָ דְּרָכֵי צֶדֶק.

7 O the pain, and the anguish of my soul for the loss of the slain of my people! For I, Nephi, have seen it, and it well nigh consumeth me before the presence of the Lord; but I must cry unto my God: Thy ways are just.

אֲךָ הַצַּדִּיקִים הַשּׁוֹמְעִים לְדִבְרֵי הַנְּבִיאִים,  
וְאֵינָם מְכַחֲדִים אוֹתָם, כִּי אִם מְצַפִּים  
בְּדַבְּקוֹת לְבָא הַמְּשִׁיחַ וְלְאוֹתוֹת הַנִּתְּנִים, עַל  
אֵף כָּל הָרְדִיפוֹת, הִמָּה לֹא יֵאבְדוּ.

8 But behold, the righteous that hearken unto the words of the prophets, and destroy them not, but look forward unto Christ with steadfastness for the signs which are given, notwithstanding all persecution—behold, they are they which shall not perish.

כִּי בֶן הַצֶּדֶק יוֹפִיעַ לָהֶם; הוּא יִרְפָּאֵם וְשָׁלוֹם  
יִהְיֶה לָהֶם עַמּוֹ, עַד חֲלָף שְׁלֹשָׁה דּוֹרוֹת וְכֹן  
רַבִּים מִבְּנֵי הַדּוֹר הָרַבִּיעִי עָבְרוּ בְּצֶדֶקָה.

9 But the Son of righteousness shall appear unto them; and he shall heal them, and they shall have peace with him, until three generations shall have passed away, and many of the fourth generation shall have passed away in righteousness.

וְכַעֲבַר הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, יָבֹא כָלִיוֹן מְהִיר  
עַל עַמִּי; כִּי עַל אֵף מְכַאוֹבֵי נַפְשִׁי, חֲזִיתִי  
בְּזֹאת; עַל כֵּן יָדַעְתִּי אֲשֶׁר בּוֹא יָבֹא כָלִיוֹן;  
וְכִי חֲנִים יִמְכְּרוּ עֶצְמָם, כִּי בִמְחִיר גָּאוֹתָם  
וְאוֹלָתָם יִקְצְרוּ כָלִיוֹן; כִּי מִפְּנֵי כְּנִיעָתָם לְשָׂטָן  
וּבְחִירָתָם מַעֲשֵׂי חֹשֶׁךְ עַל פְּנֵי אוֹר, יִרְדּוּ  
אֶלִּי שְׁחַת.

10 And when these things have passed away a speedy destruction cometh unto my people; for, notwithstanding the pains of my soul, I have seen it; wherefore, I know that it shall come to pass; and they sell themselves for naught; for, for the reward of their pride and their foolishness they shall reap destruction; for because they yield unto the devil and choose works of darkness rather than light, therefore they must go down to hell.

כִּי לֹא לְעוֹלָם יִדּוֹן רוּחַ יְהוָה עִם הָאָדָם.  
וּבְחִדְלָה רוּחוֹ לְהִתְאַמֵּץ עִם הָאָדָם, חֵישׁ יָבֹא  
אֶזְכָּרֶנּוּ; עַל זֹאת תִּמְרָה נַפְשִׁי.

11 For the Spirit of the Lord will not always strive with man. And when the Spirit ceaseth to strive with man then cometh speedy destruction, and this grieveth my soul.



- 12 And as I spake concerning the convincing of the Jews, that Jesus is the very Christ, it must needs be that the Gentiles be convinced also that Jesus is the Christ, the Eternal God;
- וּבְאֶשֶׁר דִּבַּרְתִּי עַל מְשִׁיכַת לֵב הַיְּהוּדִים אֲשֶׁר יִשְׁוֶעַ הוּא אֶכֶן הַמְּשִׁיחַ, שׁוֹמֵה הִיא כִּי אֵף לֵב הַגּוֹיִים נִמְשָׁךְ לְדַעַת כִּי יִשְׁוֶעַ הוּא הַמְּשִׁיחַ, אֱלֹהֵי הָעוֹלָמִים.
- 13 And that he manifesteth himself unto all those who believe in him, by the power of the Holy Ghost; yea, unto every nation, kindred, tongue, and people, working mighty miracles, signs, and wonders, among the children of men according to their faith.
- וְכִי הוּא יִנָּדַע לְכָל הַמֵּאֲמִינִים בּוֹ, בְּכַח רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ, לְכָל אֲמָה וּמִשְׁפָּחָה, לְשׁוֹן וְעַם, בְּעִשְׂוֹתוֹ פְּלָאוֹת גְּדוֹלוֹת, אוֹתוֹת וּנְפִלְאוֹת בְּקֶרֶב בְּנֵי הָאָדָם, כְּפִי אֲמוֹנָתָם.
- 14 But behold, I prophesy unto you concerning the last days; concerning the days when the Lord God shall bring these things forth unto the children of men.
- וְהִנֵּה אֲנִיבֵא לָכֶם עַל אַחֲרִית הַיָּמִים, עַל אוֹדוֹת הָעֵת אֲשֶׁר יָבִיא אֱלֹהִים אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה עַל בְּנֵי הָאָדָם.
- 15 After my seed and the seed of my brethren shall have dwindled in unbelief, and shall have been smitten by the Gentiles; yea, after the Lord God shall have camped against them round about, and shall have laid siege against them with a mount, and raised forts against them; and after they shall have been brought down low in the dust, even that they are not, yet the words of the righteous shall be written, and the prayers of the faithful shall be heard, and all those who have dwindled in unbelief shall not be forgotten.
- וְאַחֵר אֲשֶׁר יִשְׁקְעוּ זְרַעִי וְזֶרַע אַחֵי בַחֲסָר אֲמוֹנָה, וַיִּגְנְפוּ לִפְנֵי הַגּוֹיִים, אֶכֶן, אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר יַחְנֶה יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים כְּדוֹר וַיִּצּוֹר עֲלֵיהֶם מִצָּב וַיִּקִּים עֲלֵיהֶם מִצְרוֹת, וְאַחֵר אֲשֶׁר יִשְׁפְּלוּ לְעַפְרָה עַד כְּלוֹתָם, אֵף עַל פִּי כֹן יִכְתְּבוּ אִמְרוֹת הַצַּדִּיקִים, וְתִשְׁמַעְנָה תְּפִלוֹת הַנֶּאֱמָנִים, וְכָל אֲשֶׁר שָׁקְעוּ בַחֲסָר אֲמוֹנָה שָׂכוֹחַ לֹא יִשְׁכָּחוּ.
- 16 For those who shall be destroyed shall speak unto them out of the ground, and their speech shall be low out of the dust, and their voice shall be as one that hath a familiar spirit; for the Lord God will give unto him power, that he may whisper concerning them, even as it were out of the ground; and their speech shall whisper out of the dust.
- כִּי יִדְּבְרוּ אֲלֵיהֶם הַנִּשְׁמָדִים מִן הָאֲדָמָה, וּמִתַּחַתִּית עֹפֵר תִּשָּׁח אִמְרָתָם, וַיְהִיָּה כְּאוֹב מִכָּר קוֹלָם, כִּי יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים יִתֵּן לוֹ כֹּחַ לִלְחָשׁ עַל אוֹדוֹתֵיהֶם, כִּי אִם יָבֹא מִתּוֹךְ הָאֲדָמָה; וְדְבוּרָם יִלְחֹשׁ מִן הָעֶפֶר.
- 17 For thus saith the Lord God: They shall write the things which shall be done among them, and they shall be written and sealed up in a book, and those who have dwindled in unbelief shall not have them, for they seek to destroy the things of God.
- כִּי כֹה אָמַר יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים: הֵמָּה יִכְתְּבוּ אֶת אֲשֶׁר יַעֲשֶׂה בְּקֶרְבָּם, וַיִּכְתְּבוּ דְּבָרֵיהֶם וַיַּחְתְּמוּ בְּסֵפֶר וְלֹא יִהְיוּ לְשׁוֹקְעִים בַּחֲסָר אֲמוֹנָה, כִּי מִבְּקָשִׁים הֵם לְשַׁחַת אֶת דְּבָרֵי אֱלֹהִים.
- 18 Wherefore, as those who have been destroyed have been destroyed speedily; and the multitude of their terrible ones shall be as chaff that passeth away—yea, thus saith the Lord God: It shall be at an instant, suddenly—
- וְכִי חִישׁ יִשְׁמְדוּ הַנִּשְׁמָדִים; וַיְהִיָּה הַמִּוֶּה עֲרִיצֵיהֶם כְּמִץ עוֹבֵר, כִּי כֹה אָמַר יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים: וַיְהִיָּה לְפֶתַע פְּתָאִם.
- 19 And it shall come to pass, that those who have dwindled in unbelief shall be smitten by the hand of the Gentiles.
- וְהִשּׁוֹקְעִים בַּחֲסָר אֲמוֹנָה יִגְנְפוּ בְּיַד הַגּוֹיִים.
- 20 And the Gentiles are lifted up in the pride of their eyes, and have stumbled, because of the greatness of their stumbling block, that they have built up many churches; nevertheless, they put down the power and miracles of God, and preach up unto themselves their own wisdom
- אֵף הַגּוֹיִים מִתְנַשְּׂאִים בְּגִבְהוֹת עֵינֵיהֶם, וַיִּכְשְׁלוּ עַל כִּי גָדוֹל מְכֻשׁוֹלָם, וּבְאֶשֶׁר בָּנוּ כְּנִסְיוֹת לָרֹב, הֵם מוֹרִידִים אֶת גְּבוּרַת אֱלֹהִים וְאֶת נְפִלְאוֹתָיו וּמְשִׁיפִים לְעַצְמָם אֶת חֻכְמָתָם



וְאֵת לְמוּדָם, לְמַעַן בָּצֵעַ וְלִטְחֹן פָּנֵי עֲנִיִּים.

and their own learning, that they may get gain and grind upon the face of the poor.

אֲכֹן רַבּוֹת הַכְּנָסִיּוֹת אֲשֶׁר נִבְנוֹת אֲשֶׁר הֵן מִקּוֹר קִנְאָה וּמְרִיבָה וְרִשְׁעָה.

21 And there are many churches built up which cause envyings, and strifes, and malice.

אִי יֵשׁ בָּהֶן אֲגִידוֹת סֵתֶר, כְּבִימֵי קֶדֶם, כְּמִסְתָּרֵי הַשָּׁטָן, כִּי הוּא יְסוֹד כָּל אֵלֶּה; אֲכֹן יְסוֹד הַרְצָח וּמַעֲשֵׂי הַחֹשֶׁךְ; וְהוּא מוֹבִילֵם בְּצִוְאַרְם בְּחֶבֶל פִּשְׁתִּים, עַד אוֹסְרוֹ אוֹתָם בַּעֲבוּתָיו לְעוֹלָם.

22 And there are also secret combinations, even as in times of old, according to the combinations of the devil, for he is the founder of all these things; yea, the founder of murder, and works of darkness; yea, and he leadeth them by the neck with a flaxen cord, until he bindeth them with his strong cords forever.

וְהִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, אֲחֵי הָאֱהוּבִים, כִּי יִהְיֶה אֱלֹהִים אֵינּוּ פוֹעֵל בַּמַּחְשָׁבִים.

23 For behold, my beloved brethren, I say unto you that the Lord God worketh not in darkness.

וְהוּא לֹא יַעֲשֶׂה דָבָר, בְּלִתִּי אִם יוֹעִיל לְעוֹלָם; כִּי הוּא אוֹהֵב אֶת הָעוֹלָם, עַד כִּי מוֹסְרוֹ אֶת חַיָּיו בְּעַבּוֹר יְמִשְׁךְ אֵלָיו אֶת כָּל בְּנֵי הָאָדָם. לָכֵן אֵינְנוּ אוֹסְרִים עַל אִישׁ לְקַחַת חֵלֶק בִּישׁוּעָתוֹ.

24 He doeth not anything save it be for the benefit of the world; for he loveth the world, even that he layeth down his own life that he may draw all men unto him. Wherefore, he commandeth none that they shall not partake of his salvation.

הִיִּקְרָא הוּא לְאִישׁ לֵאמֹר: סוּר מִמֶּנִּי? הִנֵּה אֹמֵר לָכֶם: לֹא; כִּי כֹה יֹאמֵר: בּוֹאוּ אֵלַי, כָּל קִצּוֹת הָאָרֶץ, שִׁבְרוּ חֶלֶב וְדָבַשׁ, בְּלֹא כֶסֶף וּבְלֹא מַחִיר.

25 Behold, doth he cry unto any, saying: Depart from me? Behold, I say unto you, Nay; but he saith: Come unto me all ye ends of the earth, buy milk and honey, without money and without price.

הִצְוָה הוּא אִישׁ לַעֲזֹב אֶת בֵּית הַכְּנָסֶת, אוֹ לְצֵאת מִבֵּית הַתַּפְלָה? הִנֵּה אֹמֵר לָכֶם: לֹא.

26 Behold, hath he commanded any that they should depart out of the synagogues, or out of the houses of worship? Behold, I say unto you, Nay.

הִצְוָה הוּא אִישׁ לְהִמָּנַע מִקַּחַת חֵלֶק בִּישׁוּעָתוֹ? הִנֵּה אֹמֵר לָכֶם: לֹא; כִּי נָתַן אֶת יִשׁוּעָתוֹ חֲנֹם לְכָל בְּנֵי הָאָדָם; וְהוּא צִוָּה עַל עַמּוֹ לְמַשֹּׁךְ אֶת לֵב כָּל בְּנֵי הָאָדָם לְהִנָּחֵם מִחֲטָא.

27 Hath he commanded any that they should not partake of his salvation? Behold I say unto you, Nay; but he hath given it free for all men; and he hath commanded his people that they should persuade all men to repentance.

הִצְוָה יִהְיֶה עַל אִישׁ שְׁלֹא לְקַחַת חֵלֶק בְּטוֹבוֹ? הִנֵּה אֹמֵר לָכֶם: לֹא; כִּי לְכָל אָדָם זְכוּת שְׁוֹה לְזוּלָתוֹ, וְאֵין אִסּוּר עַל אִישׁ.

28 Behold, hath the Lord commanded any that they should not partake of his goodness? Behold I say unto you, Nay; but all men are privileged the one like unto the other, and none are forbidden.

אֲךְ מִצְוָה הוּא לֹאֲסֹר עַל תְּרִמְיֹת כְּמָרִים; אֲשֶׁר הֵן הַסָּפּוֹת אֲנָשִׁים הַמִּתְנַשְּׂאִים לְאוֹר עוֹלָם, לְמַעַן בָּצֵעַ וְתִהְיֶה לָּם בְּנֵי תִבְלָה, וְאֵת טוֹבַת צִיּוֹן לֹא בִקְשׁוּ.

29 He commandeth that there shall be no priestcrafts; for, behold priestcrafts are that men preach and set themselves up for a light unto the world, that they may get gain and praise of the world; but they seek not the welfare of Zion.

הִנֵּה יִהְיֶה אוֹסֵר זֹאת; לָכֵן צִוָּה יִהְיֶה אֱלֹהִים עַל כָּל בְּנֵי הָאָדָם לְשִׁמּוֹר חֶסֶד; וְהַחֲסֵד הוּא אֲהָבָה. וְאִם אֵין בָּהֶם חֶסֶד אֵין הֵם מֵאוּמָה.

30 Behold, the Lord hath forbidden this thing; wherefore, the Lord God hath given a commandment that all men should have charity, which charity is love, and except they should have charity they were nothing.

על כן, אֱלֹהֵי הָיְהוָה בָּהֶם חֶסֶד, לֹא הָיוּ מְנִיחִים  
לְאַבְדֹן הָעוֹבֵד בְּצִיּוֹן.

Wherefore, if they should have charity they would not suffer the laborer in Zion to perish.

אֲפֹר הָעוֹבֵד בְּצִיּוֹן יַעֲבֹד לְשֵׁם צִיּוֹן; כִּי אִם  
תְּמֹרֶת כֶּסֶף יַעֲבֹד, אָבוֹד יֵאָבֵד.

31 But the laborer in Zion shall labor for Zion; for if they labor for money they shall perish.

וְעוֹד צִוָּה יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים כִּי אִישׁ לֹא יִרְצַח וְלֹא  
יִשְׁקַר וְלֹא יִגְנוֹב, וְכִי לֹא יִשָּׂא אֶת שֵׁם אֱלֹהָיו  
לְשׁוֹא; וְלֹא יִקְנֵא, וְלֹא יִשְׁתִּי אִיבָה; וְכִי לֹא  
יִרִיב אִישׁ עִם רֵעֵהוּ, וְלֹא יִזְנֶה; וְלֹא יַעֲשֶׂה כְּכָל  
הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה; כִּי אֲשֶׁר יַעֲשֶׂה, אָבוֹד יֵאָבֵד.

32 And again, the Lord God hath commanded that men should not murder; that they should not lie; that they should not steal; that they should not take the name of the Lord their God in vain; that they should not envy; that they should not have malice; that they should not contend one with another; that they should not commit whoredoms; and that they should do none of these things; for whoso doeth them shall perish.

כִּי אִף אֶחָד מִן הָעוֹנוֹת הָאֵלֶּה אֵינָנוּ מַאֲת  
יְהוָה; כִּי הוּא עוֹשֶׂה אֶת הַטוֹב לְבָנֵי הָאָדָם;  
וְהוּא לֹא יַעֲשֶׂה דָּבָר, כִּי אִם יִהְיֶה יֹשֵׁר לָהֶם.  
וְהוּא קוֹרָא לָהֶם כָּל־מַלְאָכָיו וְלִקְחַת חֶלֶק  
בְּטוֹבוֹ; וְאֵין הוּא מְשִׁיב רִיקָם אִף אֶחָד מִן  
הַבָּאִים אֵלָיו, שׁוֹחַר כְּלָב, עֹבֵד כְּחַפְּשִׁי, זָכָר  
כְּנַקְבָּה; וְהוּא זוֹכֵר אֶת הַכּוֹפְרִים; הַכֹּל שְׂוִים  
לִפְנֵי אֱלֹהִים, יְהוּדִי וְנִכְרִי.

33 For none of these iniquities come of the Lord; for he doeth that which is good among the children of men; and he doeth nothing save it be plain unto the children of men; and he inviteth them all to come unto him and partake of his goodness; and he denieth none that come unto him, black and white, bond and free, male and female; and he remembereth the heathen; and all are alike unto God, both Jew and Gentile.

## כז

## 27

כִּי הִנֵּה בְּאַחֲרֵית הַיָּמִים, יָמֵי הַגּוֹיִּים, יִהְיוּ כָל  
עַמֵּי הַגּוֹיִּים, וְכֵן הַיְּהוּדִים, אֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר יָבוֹאוּ  
אֶל הָאֶרֶץ הַזֹּאת וְאֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר יִהְיוּ בְּאַרְצוֹת  
אַחֲרוֹת, אִף בְּכָל אַרְצוֹת הָעוֹלָם, הִנֵּה כָּל־  
יִהְיוּ שְׂכוֹרִים מִעוֹן וְכָל מִינֵי תוֹעֵבוֹת.

1 But, behold, in the last days, or in the days of the Gentiles—yea, behold all the nations of the Gentiles and also the Jews, both those who shall come upon this land and those who shall be upon other lands, yea, even upon all the lands of the earth, behold, they will be drunken with iniquity and all manner of abominations—

וּבָבוֹא הַיּוֹם הַהוּא, מִעַם יְהוָה צְבָאוֹת יִפְקְדוּ,  
בְּרַעַם וּבְרַעַשׁ וְקוֹל גָּדוֹל; סוּפָה וּסְעָרָה וְלֶהֱב  
אֵשׁ אוֹכְלָה.

2 And when that day shall come they shall be visited of the Lord of Hosts, with thunder and with earthquake, and with a great noise, and with storm, and with tempest, and with the flame of devouring fire.

וְהָיוּ כְּחֶלֶם חֲזוֹן לַיְלָה, כָּל הַגּוֹיִּים הַצּוֹבְאִים  
עַל צִיּוֹן וְהַמְצִיקִים לָהּ; וְהָיָה לָהֶם כְּאִשׁוֹר  
יְחֹלֶם הָרָעֵב, וְהִנֵּה אוֹכֵל וְהִקְיָן וְרִיקָה נִפְשׁוֹ;  
וְכַאֲשֶׁר יְחֹלֶם הַצָּמָא, וְהִנֵּה שׁוֹתֶה וְהִקְיָן  
וְהִנֵּה עֵיט, וְנִפְשׁוֹ שׁוֹמְקָה; כֵּן יִהְיֶה הַמּוֹן כָּל  
הַגּוֹיִם הַצּוֹבְאִים עַל הַר צִיּוֹן.

3 And all the nations that fight against Zion, and that distress her, shall be as a dream of a night vision; yea, it shall be unto them, even as unto a hungry man which dreameth, and behold he eateth but he awaketh and his soul is empty; or like unto a thirsty man which dreameth, and behold he drinketh but he awaketh and behold he is faint, and his soul hath appetite; yea, even so shall the multitude of all the nations be that fight against Mount Zion.

כִּי הִנֵּה, כְּלָכֶם הָעוֹשִׂים עוֹל, הַתְּמַהְמָהוּ  
וְהַתְּמַהְמָה, הַשְׁתַּעֲשְׂעוּ וְשַׁעֲנוּ; שְׂכָרוֹ וְלֹא יֵין, נָעוּ  
וְלֹא שִׁכָּר.

4 For behold, all ye that doeth iniquity, stay yourselves and wonder, for ye shall cry out, and cry; yea, ye shall be drunken but not with wine, ye shall stagger but not with strong drink.

- 5 For behold, the Lord hath poured out upon you the spirit of deep sleep. For behold, ye have closed your eyes, and ye have rejected the prophets; and your rulers, and the seers hath he covered because of your iniquity.
- 6 And it shall come to pass that the Lord God shall bring forth unto you the words of a book, and they shall be the words of them which have slumbered.
- 7 And behold the book shall be sealed; and in the book shall be a revelation from God, from the beginning of the world to the ending thereof.
- 8 Wherefore, because of the things which are sealed up, the things which are sealed shall not be delivered in the day of the wickedness and abominations of the people. Wherefore the book shall be kept from them.
- 9 But the book shall be delivered unto a man, and he shall deliver the words of the book, which are the words of those who have slumbered in the dust, and he shall deliver these words unto another;
- 10 But the words which are sealed he shall not deliver, neither shall he deliver the book. For the book shall be sealed by the power of God, and the revelation which was sealed shall be kept in the book until the own due time of the Lord, that they may come forth; for behold, they reveal all things from the foundation of the world unto the end thereof.
- 11 And the day cometh that the words of the book which were sealed shall be read upon the house tops; and they shall be read by the power of Christ; and all things shall be revealed unto the children of men which ever have been among the children of men, and which ever will be even unto the end of the earth.
- 12 Wherefore, at that day when the book shall be delivered unto the man of whom I have spoken, the book shall be hid from the eyes of the world, that the eyes of none shall behold it save it be that three witnesses shall behold it, by the power of God, besides him to whom the book shall be delivered; and they shall testify to the truth of the book and the things therein.
- 13 And there is none other which shall view it, save it be a few according to the will of God, to bear testimony of his word unto the children of men; for the Lord God hath said that the words of the faithful should speak as if it were from the dead.
- 14 Wherefore, the Lord God will proceed to bring forth the words of the book; and in the mouth of as many witnesses as seemeth him good
- כִּי נִסַּךְ עֲלֵיכֶם יְהוָה רוּחַ תְּרִדְמָה, כִּי עֲצַמְתֶּם אֶת עֵינֵיכֶם וּמָאַסְתֶּם בְּנְבִיאִים, וְאֶת רְאשֵׁיכֶם וְהַחֲזִוִּים כֶּסֶה מִפְּנֵי עֲוֹנוֹנְכֶם.
- וְהָבִיא יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים אֲלֵיכֶם דְּבָרֵי סֵפֶר, וְהֵם דְּבָרֵי אֱלֹהֵי אֲשֶׁר נָמוּ שָׁנְתֶם.
- וְהִנֵּה, חֲתוּם יִהְיֶה הַסֵּפֶר; וּבּוֹ דְּבָרֵי חֲזוֹת מֵאֵת אֱלֹהִים, מֵרֵאשִׁית הָעוֹלָם וְעַד אַחֲרִיתוֹ.
- עַל כֵּן, מִפְּנֵי הַדְּבָרִים הַחֲתוּמִּים, לֹא יֵצְאוּ לְאוֹר הַדְּבָרִים הַחֲתוּמִּים בְּעַת הָרָשָׁעָה וְתוֹעֵבוֹת בְּנֵי תָבֵל; אַכֵּן, נִצּוֹר מֵהֶם יִהְיֶה הַסֵּפֶר.
- וְאוּלָּם יִנָּתֵן הַסֵּפֶר לְאִישׁ וְהוּא יִתֵּן אֶת דְּבָרֵי הַכְּתוּב בּוֹ, אֲשֶׁר הֵם דְּבָרֵי יִשְׁנֵי עָפָר, אַכֵּן הוּא יִתֵּן לְאֲחֵר.
- אֲךָ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הַחֲתוּמִּים לֹא יִמְסֹר וְאִף אֶת הַסֵּפֶר לֹא יִתֵּן; כִּי חֲתוּם יִהְיֶה בְּכַח אֱלֹהִים, וּדְבָרֵי חֲזוֹת אֲשֶׁר נִחְתָּמִים, נִצּוֹרִים יִהְיוּ בַּסֵּפֶר עַד לְעֵת אֲשֶׁר תִּישֹׁר בְּעֵינֵי יְהוָה, בָּהּ יֵצְאוּ לְאוֹר; וְהִנֵּה מְגִלִּים הֵם אֶת הַכֹּל, מִיְסוּד הָעוֹלָם וְעַד אַחֲרִיתוֹ.
- בּוֹא יָבוֹא הַיּוֹם אֲשֶׁר יִקְרָאוּ דְּבָרֵי הַסֵּפֶר הַחֲתוּמִּים מֵעַל גִּגּוֹת הַבָּתִּים; בְּכַח הַמְּשִׁיחַ יִקְרָאוּ; וְכָל הַדְּבָרִים יִתְגַּלוּ לְבְנֵי הָאָדָם, אֶת אֲשֶׁר מֵעוֹלָם הָיָה בְּקִרְבָּם וְאֶת אֲשֶׁר יִהְיֶה עַד קֵץ הָעוֹלָם.
- לְכֵן, בְּיוֹם יִנָּתֵן הַסֵּפֶר לְאִישׁ אֲשֶׁר הִזְכַּרְתִּי, יִסְתֵּר הַסֵּפֶר מֵעֵינֵי יוֹשְׁבֵי תָבֵל, לְמַעַן לֹא תִרְאֶהוּ עֵין אִישׁ, זוּלַת שְׁלֹשָׁה עֲדִים אֲשֶׁר יִחְזּוּ בּוֹ, בְּכַח אֱלֹהִים; זוּלַת הָאִישׁ אֲשֶׁר יִנָּתֵן הַסֵּפֶר לְיָדוֹ; וְהֵם יַעֲדִידוּ עַל אֱמֻת הַסֵּפֶר וְעַל הַדְּבָרִים הַכְּתוּבִים בּוֹ.
- וְלֹא יִהְיֶה אִישׁ אֲחֵר אֲשֶׁר יִרְאֶה אֶת הַסֵּפֶר, זוּלַת מִתֵּי מַעַט, כְּרִצּוֹן אֱלֹהִים, בְּעֶבֶר עֲדִידוֹ עַל דְּבָרוֹ לְבְנֵי הָאָדָם; כִּי אָמַר יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים כִּי דְבָרֵי הַנֶּאֱמָנִים יִדְּבְרוּ כְּאֵלוֹ מֵאֵת הַמֵּתִים.
- עַל כֵּן, יוֹסִיף יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים לְהוֹצִיא אֶת דְּבָרֵי הַסֵּפֶר לְאוֹר, וְהוּא יְכִוֵּן אֶת דְּבָרוֹ בְּפִי עֲדִים,

- כַּמְסַפֵּר אֲשֶׁר יִיטֵב בְּעֵינָיו; וְהוּא לֹאֲשֶׁר יִמָּאֵס  
אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים!
- וְהִיָּה כִּי יֹאמֶר יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים לְאֲשֶׁר יִנְתֵּן הַסֵּפֶר  
לְיָדוֹ; קַח אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, אֲשֶׁר אֵינָם  
חֲתוּמִּים, וְתִמְסְרֵם לְאַחֵר, לְמַעַן יֵרְאֶה אוֹתָם  
אֶל יוֹדְעֵי סֵפֶר לֵאמֹר: קְרָא נָא זֶה. וְאָמַר  
הַמְּלָמֵד: הֲבֵא נָא הִנֵּה אֶת הַסֵּפֶר וְאֶקְרָא  
אֶת הַדְּבָרִים.
- וְיֹאמְרוּ כֵּן הַמְּלָמְדִּים לְמַעַן תִּפְאָרְתָּם בְּקֶרֶב בְּנֵי  
תִּבְלָה וּלְמַעַן בָּצֵעַ, וְלֹא לְמַעַן תִּפְאָרֶת אֱלֹהִים.
- וְאָמַר הָאִישׁ: לֹא אוּכַל הֵבִיא אֶת הַסֵּפֶר,  
כִּי חֲתוּם הוּא.
- וְאָמַר הַמְּלָמֵד: לֹא אוּכַל לְקַרְאוֹ.
- עַל כֵּן, יִתֵּן יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים שְׁנִית אֶת הַסֵּפֶר  
וְדְבָרָיו לְיָד אֲשֶׁר לֹא יָדַע סֵפֶר; וְאָמַר הָאִישׁ  
אֲשֶׁר לֹא לָמַד: לֹא יָדַעְתִּי סֵפֶר.
- וְיֹאמֶר יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים אֵלָיו: לֹא יִקְרְאוּם יוֹדְעֵי  
סֵפֶר, כִּי מֵאֲסוּם, וּבִידֵי לַעֲשׂוֹת אֶת הַמַּעֲשֶׂה  
אֲשֶׁר לִי; לָכֵן תִּקְרָא אֹתָהּ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר  
אֶתֵּן לָךְ.
- אֶל תִּשְׁלַח יָדְךָ אֶל הַדְּבָרִים הַחֲתוּמִּים, אֲשֶׁר  
אֲנִכִּי אוֹצִיָּאֵם לְאוֹר בְּעֵת אֲשֶׁר תִּישֶׁר בְּעֵינֵי;  
וְהִרְאִיתִי לְבִנֵי הָאָדָם כִּי בִידֵי לְבָצֵעַ אֶת  
הַמַּעֲשֶׂה אֲשֶׁר לִי.
- לָכֵן, אַחֵר קְרָאָךְ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר צִוִּיתִיךָ,  
וְאַחֵר קִבַּלְךָ אֶת הָעֵדִים אֲשֶׁר הִגַּדְתִּי לָךְ עַל  
אוֹדוֹתֵיָהֶם, אָזִי תַּחֲתֵם אֹתָהּ אֶת הַסֵּפֶר שְׁנִית  
וְתִסְתִּירָהּ לִי לְמַעַן אֲשַׁמֵּר אֶת הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר  
לֹא קְרָאתָ, עַד אֲשֶׁר אֶרְאֶה בְּחֻמְתִּי לְגִלּוֹת  
אֶת כָּל הַדְּבָרִים לְבִנֵי הָאָדָם.
- כִּי אֲנִי אֱלֹהִים, וְאֲנִכִּי אֱלֹהֵי פְלָאוֹת; וְאֲנִי  
אֶרְאֶה לְכָל בֶּנִי תִּבְלָה כִּי אֶחָד אֲנִי אֶתְמוּל,  
הַיּוֹם וְלָעוֹלָם; לֹא אֶעֱשֶׂה דְבַר בְּקֶרֶב בְּנֵי  
אָדָם כִּי אִם כְּפִי אֲמוֹנָתָם.
- וְיוֹסִיף יְהוָה וְיֹאמַר אֶל אֲשֶׁר יִקְרָא אֶת  
הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר יִנְתֵּנוּ לְיָדוֹ:
- 15 But behold, it shall come to pass that the Lord God shall say unto him to whom he shall deliver the book: Take these words which are not sealed and deliver them to another, that he may show them unto the learned, saying: Read this, I pray thee. And the learned shall say: Bring hither the book, and I will read them.
- 16 And now, because of the glory of the world and to get gain will they say this, and not for the glory of God.
- 17 And the man shall say: I cannot bring the book, for it is sealed.
- 18 Then shall the learned say: I cannot read it.
- 19 Wherefore it shall come to pass, that the Lord God will deliver again the book and the words thereof to him that is not learned; and the man that is not learned shall say: I am not learned.
- 20 Then shall the Lord God say unto him: The learned shall not read them, for they have rejected them, and I am able to do mine own work; wherefore thou shalt read the words which I shall give unto thee.
- 21 Touch not the things which are sealed, for I will bring them forth in mine own due time; for I will show unto the children of men that I am able to do mine own work.
- 22 Wherefore, when thou hast read the words which I have commanded thee, and obtained the witnesses which I have promised unto thee, then shalt thou seal up the book again, and hide it up unto me, that I may preserve the words which thou hast not read, until I shall see fit in mine own wisdom to reveal all things unto the children of men.
- 23 For behold, I am God; and I am a God of miracles; and I will show unto the world that I am the same yesterday, today, and forever; and I work not among the children of men save it be according to their faith.
- 24 And again it shall come to pass that the Lord shall say unto him that shall read the words that shall be delivered him:

- 25 Forasmuch as this people draw near unto me with their mouth, and with their lips do honor me, but have removed their hearts far from me, and their fear towards me is taught by the precepts of men—
- יֵעַן כִּי נִגַּשׁ הָעָם הַזֶּה, בִּפְּיָם וּבִשְׂפָתָיו כְּבֹדוֹנִי, וְלִבּוֹ רָחַק מִמֶּנִּי, וְתִהְיֶה יִרְאַתָּם אֹתִי מִצְוֹת אֲנָשִׁים מִלְמָדָה,
- 26 Therefore, I will proceed to do a marvelous work among this people, yea, a marvelous work and a wonder, for the wisdom of their wise and learned shall perish, and the understanding of their prudent shall be hid.
- לְכֹן, הִנְנִי יוֹסֵף לְהַפְלִיא אֶת הָעָם הַזֶּה הַפְּלֵא וּפְלֵא; וְאֲבַדָּה חֲכָמַת חֲכָמָיו וּבִינַת נִבְנָיו תִּסְתָּתֵר.
- 27 And wo unto them that seek deep to hide their counsel from the Lord! And their works are in the dark; and they say: Who seeth us, and who knoweth us? Surely, your turning of things upside down shall be esteemed as the potter's clay. For shall the work say of him that made it, he made me not? Or shall the thing framed say of him that framed it, he had no understanding?
- הוֹי, הַמַּעֲמִיקִים מִיְהוָה לְסִתֵּר עֲצָה; וְהִיָּה בְּמַחְשֹׁךְ מַעֲשֵׂיהֶם, וַיֹּאמְרוּ: מִי רֹאֵנוּ וּמִי יֹדְעֵנוּ? הַפְּכֶכֶם אִם כְּחֹמֶר הַיֵּצֵר יִחֲשָׁב. כִּי יֹאמֶר מַעֲשֵׂה לַעֲשֹׂהוּ לֹא עָשִׂנִי, וַיֵּצֵר אֹמֶר לַיֵּצֵר לֹא הָבִין?
- 28 But behold, saith the Lord of Hosts: I will show unto the children of men that it is yet a very little while and Lebanon shall be turned into a fruitful field; and the fruitful field shall be esteemed as a forest.
- וְכֹה אָמַר יְהוָה צְבָאוֹת: אֶרְאֶה לְבָנֵי הָאָדָם כִּי עוֹד מְעַט מִזֶּמֶר, וְשֵׁב לְבָנוֹן לְכַרְמֵל; וְהַכַּרְמֵל לִיעֵר יִחֲשָׁב.
- 29 And in that day shall the deaf hear the words of the book, and the eyes of the blind shall see out of obscurity and out of darkness.
- וּשְׁמָעוּ בַּיּוֹם הַהוּא הַחֲרָשִׁים דְּבָרֵי סֵפֶר; וּמֵאֲפֹל וּמִחֹשֶׁךְ עֵינֵי עֹרְרִים תִּרְאֶינָה.
- 30 And the meek also shall increase, and their joy shall be in the Lord, and the poor among men shall rejoice in the Holy One of Israel.
- וַיִּסְפּוּ עֲנוּיִם בִּיהוָה שְׂמֵחָה; וְאֲבִיוֹנֵי אָדָם בְּקִדּוֹשׁ יִשְׂרָאֵל יִגִּילוּ.
- 31 For assuredly as the Lord liveth they shall see that the terrible one is brought to naught, and the scorner is consumed, and all that watch for iniquity are cut off;
- חֵי יְהוָה כִּי יֵרָאוּ כִּי אָפֶס עֲרִיצִי וְכֹלָה לִּי; וְנִכְרְתוּ כָּל שֹׁקְדֵי אָוֶן.
- 32 And they that make a man an offender for a word, and lay a snare for him that reproveth in the gate, and turn aside the just for a thing of naught.
- מַחֲטִיאֵי אָדָם בְּדָבָר וּלְמוֹכִיחַ בִּשְׁעַר יִקְשׁוּ; וַיִּטּוּ בִּתְהוֹ צִדִּיק.
- 33 Therefore, thus saith the Lord, who redeemed Abraham, concerning the house of Jacob: Jacob shall not now be ashamed, neither shall his face now wax pale.
- לְכֹן, כֹּה אָמַר יְהוָה אֵל בֵּית יַעֲקֹב, אֲשֶׁר פָּדָה אֶת אַבְרָהָם: לֹא עֲתָה יִבּוֹשׁ יַעֲקֹב, וְלֹא עֲתָה פָּנָיו יִחְוֹרוּ.
- 34 But when he seeth his children, the work of my hands, in the midst of him, they shall sanctify my name, and sanctify the Holy One of Jacob, and shall fear the God of Israel.
- כִּי בִּרְאֹתוֹ יִלְדָּיו מַעֲשֵׂה יָדַי בְּקִרְבּוֹ יִקְדִּישׁוּ שְׁמִי; וְהִקְדִּישׁוּ אֶת קִדּוֹשׁ יַעֲקֹב וְאֶת אֱלֹהֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל יִירְאוּ.
- 35 They also that erred in spirit shall come to understanding, and they that murmured shall learn doctrine.
- וַיִּדְעוּ תַעֲיֵי רוּחַ בִּינָה; וְרוֹגְגִים יִלְמְדוּ לִקְחַ.



## כח

## 28

- 1 And now, behold, my brethren, I have spoken unto you, according as the Spirit hath constrained me; wherefore, I know that they must surely come to pass.
- 2 And the things which shall be written out of the book shall be of great worth unto the children of men, and especially unto our seed, which is a remnant of the house of Israel.
- 3 For it shall come to pass in that day that the churches which are built up, and not unto the Lord, when the one shall say unto the other: Behold, I, I am the Lord's; and the others shall say: I, I am the Lord's; and thus shall every one say that hath built up churches, and not unto the Lord—
- 4 And they shall contend one with another; and their priests shall contend one with another, and they shall teach with their learning, and deny the Holy Ghost, which giveth utterance.
- 5 And they deny the power of God, the Holy One of Israel; and they say unto the people: Hearken unto us, and hear ye our precept; for behold there is no God today, for the Lord and the Redeemer hath done his work, and he hath given his power unto men;
- 6 Behold, hearken ye unto my precept; if they shall say there is a miracle wrought by the hand of the Lord, believe it not; for this day he is not a God of miracles; he hath done his work.
- 7 Yea, and there shall be many which shall say: Eat, drink, and be merry, for tomorrow we die; and it shall be well with us.
- 8 And there shall also be many which shall say: Eat, drink, and be merry; nevertheless, fear God—he will justify in committing a little sin; yea, lie a little, take the advantage of one because of his words, dig a pit for thy neighbor; there is no harm in this; and do all these things, for tomorrow we die; and if it so be that we are guilty, God will beat us with a few stripes, and at last we shall be saved in the kingdom of God.
- 9 Yea, and there shall be many which shall teach after this manner, false and vain and foolish doctrines, and shall be puffed up in their hearts, and shall seek deep to hide their counsels from the Lord; and their works shall be in the dark.
- 10 And the blood of the saints shall cry from the ground against them.
- ועתה, אחי, דברתי אליכם כפי אשר הציקתני הרוח; על כן אדע אשר בוא יבואו הדברים האלה.
- אכן, ערף רב יהיה לבני האדם בדברים אשר יכתבו בספר, ובפרט לזרענו, אשר הם שארית בית ישראל.
- וביום ההוא תבנינה כנסיות, אך לא לשם יהוה, וכה תאמר האחת לרעותה: הנה, אני, אני ליהוה; ותאמרנה זולתותיהן אף הן: אני, אני ליהוה; וכה יאמר כל המקים כנסיות ולא לשם יהוה.
- ותרבנה אשה באחותה; וכמריהן יתנכחו איש עם אחיו וילמדו בלמודם ויתפחשו לרוח הקדש אשר ממנה נוב שפתיים.
- והם שוללים את כח אלהים, קדוש ישראל; וכה יאמרו אל העם: שמעונו והאזינו למצוותינו; כי אין היום אלהים, כי בצע האדון והגואל את מעשהו, ונתן את כחו לאדם.
- הנה, שמעו אל מצותי; ואם יאמרו כי יש פלא מאת יהוה, אל תאמינו; כי היום הוא איננו אלהי פלאות; הוא בצע את מעשהו.
- ורבים יאמרו: אכול ושתו ועלזו, כי מחר נמות, וטוב יהיה לנו.
- ואף רבים יאמרו: אכול ושתו ועלזו, אך ירא את אלהים; מנקה הוא את העובר עברת חטא קטן; אכן, שקרו מעט; נצלו איש בדבר הנעתק מפיו; כרו שחת לרעכם, אין רע בזאת; אכן, עשו את כל הדברים האלה, כי מחר נמות; והיה אם אמןם נאשם, יכנו אלהים מלקות מעט ובאחרית נחשע במלכות אלהים.
- ורבים יהיו המלמדים בדרך זאת, שקר ושוא ותורות סכלות; ויתנפחו בגאות לבם ויבקשו להעמיק הסתיר את עצתם מיהוה; ובמחשף יהיו מעשיהם.
- ודם הקדושים יצעק עליהם מן האדמה.



- 11 Yea, they have all gone out of the way; they have become corrupted.  
אָכֵן, הֵם כֻּלָּם סָרוּ מִן הַדֶּרֶךְ; הִשְׁחָתוּ נִשְׁחָתוּ.
- 12 Because of pride, and because of false teachers, and false doctrine, their churches have become corrupted, and their churches are lifted up; because of pride they are puffed up.  
מִפְּנֵי גָאוֹן, וּמִפְּנֵי מוֹרֵי שֶׁקֶר וְתוֹרוֹת כָּזָב נִשְׁחָתוּ כְּנִסְיוֹתֵיהֶם, וּמוֹרְמוֹת הֵן, וּנְפֻחוֹת הֵן בְּגָאוֹן.
- 13 They rob the poor because of their fine sanctuaries; they rob the poor because of their fine clothing; and they persecute the meek and the poor in heart, because in their pride they are puffed up.  
גּוֹזְלִים הֵם אֶת הָעֶנִי מִפְּנֵי פָאָר מְקֻדְשֵׁיהֶם; גּוֹזְלִים הֵם אֶת הָעֶנִי מִפְּנֵי פָאָר לְבוּשָׁם; וְרוֹדְפִים הֵם אֶת הָעֶנִי וְאֶת רֵךְ הַלֵּבָב, כִּי בָרֵב גָּאוֹן הֵם הִתְנַפְּחוּ;
- 14 They wear stiff necks and high heads; yea, and because of pride, and wickedness, and abominations, and whoredoms, they have all gone astray save it be a few, who are the humble followers of Christ; nevertheless, they are led, that in many instances they do err because they are taught by the precepts of men.  
וּמְקֻשִּׁים הֵם עֵרֶךְ וְנוֹשְׂאִים רֹאשׁ; וּמִפְּנֵי גָאוֹן וְרִשְׁעָתָם וְתוֹעֲבוֹתֵיהֶם וְזִנְיֹתֵיהֶם תָּעוּ כֻּלָּם, זֹלָת מַעֲטִים אֲשֶׁר הֵם הָעֲנִיִּים הַנּוֹהִים אַחֲרֵי הַמָּשִׁיחַ; אֲךָ מִנְּהִיגִים הֵם עַד אֲשֶׁר טוֹעִים פְּעָמִים רַבּוֹת, כִּי לְמוֹדֵם מִצְוֹת אֲנָשִׁים.
- 15 O the wise, and the learned, and the rich, that are puffed up in the pride of their hearts, and all those who preach false doctrines, and all those who commit whoredoms, and pervert the right way of the Lord, wo, wo, wo be unto them, saith the Lord God Almighty, for they shall be thrust down to hell!  
הוֹי, חֲכָמִים, מְלֻמְּדִים וְעֹשִׂירִים, הַנִּפְּחוֹתִים בְּגָאוֹן לִבָּם, וְכָל הַמְּשִׁיפִים תּוֹרוֹת כָּזָב וְכָל הַזּוֹנִים וְהַמְּסַלְּפִים אֶת דֶּרֶךְ יְהוָה הַיִּשְׁרָה; הוֹי, הוֹי, הוֹי לָהֶם, נָאֻם יְהוָה, אֵל שֹׁדֵי, כִּי יִשְׁלָכוּ שְׂאוֹלָה!
- 16 Wo unto them that turn aside the just for a thing of naught and revile against that which is good, and say that is of no worth! For the day shall come that the Lord God will speedily visit the inhabitants of the earth; and in that day that they are fully ripe in iniquity they shall perish.  
הוֹי לַמְּשִׁים בְּתוֹהוּ צִדִּיק, מְגַדְּפֵי הַטוֹב הָאוֹמְרִים אֲשֶׁר אֵין עֵרֶךְ לוֹ! כִּי בּוֹא יְבוֹא הַיּוֹם אֲשֶׁר יִפְקֹד יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים מִהֲרָה אֶת כָּל יוֹשְׁבֵי תֵבֶל; וּבַיּוֹם אֲשֶׁר מְלָאָה תְהִיָּה סָאת עוֹוֹנָם אָבוֹד יֵאָבְדוּ.
- 17 But behold, if the inhabitants of the earth shall repent of their wickedness and abominations they shall not be destroyed, saith the Lord of Hosts.  
אֲךָ אִם יִשׁוּבוּ יוֹשְׁבֵי תֵבֶל מִרִשְׁעָתָם וּמִתוֹעֲבוֹתֵיהֶם, לֹא יִשְׁמְדוּ, נָאֻם יְהוָה צְבָאוֹת.
- 18 But behold, that great and abominable church, the whore of all the earth, must tumble to the earth, and great must be the fall thereof.  
אוֹלָם הַכְּנִסְיָה הַגְּדוֹלָה וְהַנִּתְעַבֶּת, זֹנוֹת כָּל הָאָרֶץ, נָפֹל תִּפֹּל אֶל הָעָפָר, וְגְדוֹלָה תְהִיָּה מִפִּלְתָּהּ.
- 19 For the kingdom of the devil must shake, and they which belong to it must needs be stirred up unto repentance, or the devil will grasp them with his everlasting chains, and they be stirred up to anger, and perish;  
כִּי רָעוּד תִּרְעַד מַלְכוּת הַשָּׁטָן וְאֵת שִׁיכִיָּה יִשׁ לְעוֹרֵר לְהַנְחִים מִחֲסָא פֶּן יֵאָחֲזוּם הַשָּׁטָן בְּזִנְיָ הַנֶּצֶחַ אֲשֶׁר לוֹ, וְיִתְעוֹרְרוּ הֵם אֶל כַּעַס וְיֵאָבְדוּ.
- 20 For behold, at that day shall he rage in the hearts of the children of men, and stir them up to anger against that which is good.  
כִּי בַיּוֹם הַהוּא יַעֲלֶה הַשָּׁטָן חֲמָה בְּלִבְ בְּנֵי הָאָדָם, וְיִעוֹרֵר זַעֲמָם עַל אֲשֶׁר טוֹב הוּא.
- 21 And others will he pacify, and lull them away into carnal security, that they will say: All is well in Zion; yea, Zion prospereth, all is well—and  
וְאַחֲרֵים, אוֹתָם יְרַנֵּעַ וְיִשְׂכַּחם אֵל בְּטָחָה בְּבִשּׁוֹר, עַד אֲשֶׁר יֵאָמְרוּ: הֲכֵל שְׁלוֹם בְּצִיּוֹן; אָכֵן,

ציון מצלחת, הכל טוב. כִּי יוֹלִיף הַשֵּׁטָן אֶת  
נַפְשָׁם שׁוֹלֵל יוֹבִילִם בְּרַב הַשְּׁגָחָתוֹ אֵלֵי שַׁחַת.

thus the devil cheateth their souls, and leadeth them away carefully  
down to hell.

וְאַחֲרֵים, אֲלֵיהֶם יְדַבֵּר חֲלָקוֹת בְּאִמְרוֹ לָהֶם  
אֲשֶׁר אֵין שָׂאוֹל; וַיֹּאמֶר אֲלֵיהֶם: אֵינֶנִּי שֵׁטָן,  
כִּי אֵין כָּל שֵׁטָן; כִּי יִלְחֹשׁ בְּאִזְנֵיהֶם,  
עַד אֲשֶׁר יֵאחֲזִיחַם בְּזַקְיֹו הַנּוֹרָאִים, אֲשֶׁר  
מֵהֶם אֵין תְּקוּמָה.

22 And behold, others he flattereth away, and telleth them there is no hell;  
and he saith unto them: I am no devil, for there is none—and thus he  
whispereth in their ears, until he grasps them with his awful chains,  
from whence there is no deliverance.

אָכֵן, יֵאחֲזִיחַם מוֹת וּשְׂאוֹל; וּמוֹת, וּשְׂאוֹל,  
וְהַשֵּׁטָן וְכָל אֲשֶׁר נִתְפָּשׁ בִּידָם, עֲמוּד יַעֲמֻדוּ  
לִפְנֵי כֹס אֱלֹהִים לְהַשְׁפִּט עַל פִּי מַעֲשֵׂיהֶם;  
וּמִשָּׁם יֵלְכוּ אֶל הַמְּקוֹם הַמוֹכֵן לָהֶם, מְקוֹה  
אֵשׁ וְגִפְרִית, אֲשֶׁר הוּא עֲנוּי אֵין קֵץ.

23 Yea, they are grasped with death, and hell; and death, and hell, and the  
devil, and all that have been seized therewith must stand before the  
throne of God, and be judged according to their works, from whence  
they must go into the place prepared for them, even a lake of fire and  
brimstone, which is endless torment.

עַל כֵּן, הוּא לְשָׁלוֹ בְּצִיּוֹן! 24 Therefore, wo be unto him that is at ease in Zion!

הוּא לְקוֹרָא: הַכֹּל שְׁלוֹם! 25 Wo be unto him that crieth: All is well!

הוּא לְמַאֲזִין אֶל מִצְוֹת אַנְשִׁים וְשׁוֹלֵל אֶת כֹּחַ  
אֱלֹהִים וּמַתַּת רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ!

26 Yea, wo be unto him that hearkeneth unto the precepts of men, and  
denieth the power of God, and the gift of the Holy Ghost!

הוּא לְאוֹמֵר: קִבְּלָנוּ וְאֵינָנוּ צְרִיכִים עוֹד!

27 Yea, wo be unto him that saith: We have received, and we need no more!

אָכֵן, הוּא לְכָל הַרוֹעֲדִים וְהַזּוֹעֲמִים מִפְּנֵי אִמְתּוֹ  
אֱלֹהִים! כִּי הִבְנוּי עַל סֵלַע יִקְבַּל זֹאת בְּשִׁמְחָה;  
אֲךְ הִבְנוּי עַל יְסוֹד חוֹל יִרְעַד פֶּן יִפֹּל.

28 And in fine, wo unto all those who tremble, and are angry because of  
the truth of God! For behold, he that is built upon the rock receiveth it  
with gladness; and he that is built upon a sandy foundation trembleth  
lest he shall fall.

הוּא לְאֲשֶׁר יֹאמֶר: קִבְּלָנוּ אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים,  
וְאֵינָנוּ צְרִיכִים עוֹד אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים, כִּי דִּינוּ!

29 Wo be unto him that shall say: We have received the word of God, and  
we need no more of the word of God, for we have enough!

כִּי כֹה אָמַר יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים: אֶתֵּן לְבִנֵי הָאָדָם  
קוֹ לָקוֹ, צוֹ לָצוֹ, זְעִיר שָׁם, זְעִיר שָׁם; וּבְרוּכִים  
הַשּׁוֹמְעִים אֶל מִצְוֹתַי וּמִשְׁמֵים אוֹן לְעַצְמִי,  
כִּי הֵם יִלְמְדוּ חֲכָמָה; כִּי לְאֲשֶׁר יִקְבַּל אֶתֵּן עוֹד;  
וּמִן הָאוֹמְרִים: דִּינוּ, יִלְקַח אִף אֶת אֲשֶׁר לָהֶם.

30 For behold, thus saith the Lord God: I will give unto the children of men  
line upon line, precept upon precept, here a little and there a little; and  
blessed are those who hearken unto my precepts, and lend an ear unto  
my counsel, for they shall learn wisdom; for unto him that receiveth  
I will give more; and from them that shall say, We have enough, from  
them shall be taken away even that which they have.

אָרוּר הַבוֹטֵחַ בְּאָדָם, וְשֵׁם אֶת הַבֶּשֶׂר זְרוֹעוֹ,  
וַיִּשְׁמַע אֶל מִצְוֹת אַנְשִׁים, בְּלִתִּי אִם נִתְּנוּ  
מִצְוֹתֵיהֶם מִכֹּחַ רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ.

31 Cursed is he that putteth his trust in man, or maketh flesh his arm, or  
shall hearken unto the precepts of men, save their precepts shall be  
given by the power of the Holy Ghost.

הוּא לְגוֹיִּים, אָמַר יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵי צְבָאוֹת! אִף כִּי  
אֲשַׁלַּח זְרוֹעֵי אֱלֹהִים יוֹם לְיוֹמוֹ, הֵם יִתְכַחְשׁוּ  
לִי; אוֹלָם, אִם יִנָּחֲמוּ מִחֲטָא וַיְבֹאוּ אֵלַי, רַחֵם

32 Wo be unto the Gentiles, saith the Lord God of Hosts! For notwith-  
standing I shall lengthen out mine arm unto them from day to day,  
they will deny me; nevertheless, I will be merciful unto them, saith

אֲרַחֵם עֲלֵיהֶם, נְאוּם יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים; כִּי וְרוּעִי  
שְׁלוּחָה כָּל הַיּוֹם, אָמַר יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵי צְבָאוֹת.

the Lord God, if they will repent and come unto me; for mine arm is  
lengthened out all the day long, saith the Lord God of Hosts.

## כט

## 29

בַּיּוֹם הַהוּא רַבִּים יִהְיוּ אֲשֶׁר אוֹסִיף לַעֲשׂוֹת  
מַעֲשֵׂה פֶלֶא בִּינֵיהֶם, לְמַעַן אֶזְכֹּר אֶת בְּרִיתוֹתַי  
אֲשֶׁר כָּרַתִּי עִם בְּנֵי הָאָדָם, לְהוֹסִיף שְׁנִית יְדִי  
לְהָשִׁיב אֶת עַמִּי, אֲשֶׁר מִבֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל הֵמָּה;

1 But behold, there shall be many—at that day when I shall proceed to do a  
marvelous work among them, that I may remember my covenants which  
I have made unto the children of men, that I may set my hand again  
the second time to recover my people, which are of the house of Israel;

וּלְמַעַן אֶזְכֹּר אֶת דְּבָרֵי בְרִיתִי אֵלֶיךָ, נְפִי,  
וְכֵן אֶל אָבִיךָ, לְפָקֵד אֶת זִרְעֶכֶם; וּבְעֵבֹר  
יֵצְאוּ דְבָרֵי זִרְעֶכֶם מִפִּי אֶל זִרְעֶכֶם; וּדְבָרֵי  
יִשְׂרָאֵל אֶל קְצוֹת הָאָרֶץ, נֹס לְעַמִּי, אֲשֶׁר  
מִבֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל הֵמָּה;

2 And also, that I may remember the promises which I have made unto  
thee, Nephi, and also unto thy father, that I would remember your seed;  
and that the words of your seed should proceed forth out of my mouth  
unto your seed; and my words shall hiss forth unto the ends of the  
earth, for a standard unto my people, which are of the house of Israel;

וַיַּעַן כִּי יִשְׁרְקוּ דְּבָרֵי, יֹאמְרוּ רַבִּים מִן הַגּוֹיִּים:  
סֵפֶר מִקְרָא! סֵפֶר מִקְרָא! יֵשׁ לָנוּ סֵפֶר מִקְרָא  
וְאֵין סֵפֶר מִקְרָא נֹסֶף עָלֵינוּ.

3 And because my words shall hiss forth—many of the Gentiles shall  
say: A Bible! A Bible! We have got a Bible, and there cannot be any  
more Bible.

אָךְ כֹּה אָמַר יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים: הוּא, סְכָלִים,  
יִהְיֶה לָהֶם סֵפֶר מִקְרָא; וְהוּא יֵצֵא מֵאֵת  
הַיְּהוּדִים, עִם בְּרִיתִי מִקְדָּם. וְאִיזוֹ תוֹדָה נִתְּנוּ  
לַיְּהוּדִים עַל סֵפֶר הַמִּקְרָא אֲשֶׁר קִבְּלוּהוּ  
מִיָּדָם? וּמָה כּוֹנֵנֶת הַגּוֹיִּים? הַזּוֹכְרִים הֵם אֶת  
יְגִיעֵי הַיְּהוּדִים, אֶת עֲמָלָם וְאֶת מְכַאוֹבָם  
וְשִׁקִּידוֹתָם לְמַעַן בְּהִבְיָאם יְשׁוּעָה לַגּוֹיִּים?

4 But thus saith the Lord God: O fools, they shall have a Bible; and it  
shall proceed forth from the Jews, mine ancient covenant people. And  
what thank they the Jews for the Bible which they receive from them?  
Yea, what do the Gentiles mean? Do they remember the travails, and  
the labors, and the pains of the Jews, and their diligence unto me, in  
bringing forth salvation unto the Gentiles?

הוּא, אַתֶּם הַגּוֹיִּים, הַזּוֹכְרֶתֶם אֶת הַיְּהוּדִים,  
עִם בְּרִיתִי מִקְדָּם? לֹא! וְאַתֶּם קִלְלֶתֶם אוֹתָם  
בְּשִׁנְאוֹתְכֶם וְלֹא בְּקִשְׁתֶּם לְהַשִּׁיבָם. אָךְ אֲנִכִּי  
אֲשִׁיב אֶת כָּל אֱלֹהֵי עַל רֹאשְׁכֶם; כִּי אֲנִי,  
יְהוָה, לֹא שָׁכַחְתִּי אֶת עַמִּי.

5 O ye Gentiles, have ye remembered the Jews, mine ancient covenant  
people? Nay; but ye have cursed them, and have hated them, and have  
not sought to recover them. But behold, I will return all these things  
upon your own heads; for I the Lord have not forgotten my people.

סְכָל אַתָּה הָאוֹמֵר: סֵפֶר מִקְרָא, יֵשׁ לָנוּ  
סֵפֶר מִקְרָא וְאֵין צָרָה לָנוּ בְּסֵפֶר מִקְרָא נֹסֶף.  
הַקִּבְּלֶתֶם סֵפֶר מִקְרָא וְלֹא מִיַּד הַיְּהוּדִים?

6 Thou fool, that shall say: A Bible, we have got a Bible, and we need no  
more Bible. Have ye obtained a Bible save it were by the Jews?

הֲלֹא תִדְעוּ כִּי רַב מִסְפַּר הָאֲמֹת מֵאַחַת?  
הֲלֹא תִדְעוּ כִּי אֲנִי, יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵיכֶם, יִצְרַתִּי אֶת  
כָּל הָאָדָם וְכִי אֶזְכֹּר אֶת יוֹשְׁבֵי אֵי הַיָּם? וְכִי  
שָׁלַטְנִי בַּשָּׁמַיִם מִמַּעַל וּבָאָרֶץ מִתַּחַת? וְאֲנִי  
מוֹצִיא אֶת דְּבָרֵי אֱלֹהֵי בְּנֵי הָאָדָם, אֵף עַל כָּל  
אֲמֹת הָאָרֶץ.

7 Know ye not that there are more nations than one? Know ye not that  
I, the Lord your God, have created all men, and that I remember those  
who are upon the isles of the sea; and that I rule in the heavens above  
and in the earth beneath; and I bring forth my word unto the children  
of men, yea, even upon all the nations of the earth?

עַל מָה הַתְּלוּנְתֶם, עַל אֲשֶׁר תִּקְבְּלוּ עוֹד

8 Wherefore murmur ye, because that ye shall receive more of my word?

מִדְבָּרִי? הֲלֹא תִדְעוּ כִּי עֲדוֹת שְׁתֵּי אֲמֹת  
הִיא עֲדוֹת לָכֶם כִּי אֲנִי אֱלֹהִים, כִּי אֶזְכֹּר אֲמֶה  
אֶחָת כְּזֹכֵר אֶת מִשְׁנֶה? עַל כֵּן דְּבַרִי אֶל אֲמֶה  
אֶחָת הֵם כְּדְבַרִי אֶל זֹלָתָהּ. וּבְהִלָּךְ שְׁתֵּי  
הָאֲמֹת יִחָדְדוּ, כֵּן תִּלָּךְ עֲדוּתָן יִחָדְדוּ.

וְזֹאת עוֹשֶׂה אֲנִי לְמַעַן הוֹכֵחַ לְרַבִּים, כִּי אֶחָד  
אֲנִכִּי אֶתְמוֹל וְהַיּוֹם וּלְעוֹלָם, וְכִי אוֹצִיא אֶת  
דְּבַרִי כְּפִי רְצוֹנִי. וְעַתָּה אֲשֶׁר דְּבַרְתִּי דְּבַר אֶחָד,  
אֵל לָכֶם לְחֹשֵׁב כִּי אֵין בִּי לְדַבֵּר שֵׁנִית; כִּי טָרֵם  
כְּלָתָה מְלֹאכְתִּי; וְלֹא תִשָּׁלֵם הִיא עַד קֵץ  
הָאָדָם, וְאֵף לֹא מֵאָז וְעַד עוֹלָם.

וְעַתָּה אֲשֶׁר בִּידְכֶם סֵפֶר מִקְרָא, אֵל לָכֶם  
לְחֹשֵׁב כִּי יֵשׁ בּוֹ כָּל דְּבַרִי, וְכִי לֹא אֶצְוֶה  
לְהוֹסִיף כְּתִיבָה.

כִּי הִנְנִי מְצַוֶּה אֶת כָּל הָאָדָם, בְּמִזְרָח  
וּבִמְעָרָב, בְּצָפוֹן וּבְדָרוֹם וּבְאֵי הַיָּם, לְכַתֵּב  
אֶת הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר אֲדַבֵּר אֲלֵיהֶם; כִּי עַל פִּי  
הַסִּפְרִים אֲשֶׁר יִכְתְּבוּ, אֲשַׁפֵּט אֶת הָעוֹלָם,  
כָּל אִישׁ כַּמַּעֲשִׂיוֹ, עַל פִּי הַכְּתוּב.

כִּי הִנֵּה אֲדַבֵּר אֶל הַיְּהוּדִים וְהֵם יִכְתְּבוּ זֹאת;  
וְכֵן אֲדַבֵּר אֶל הַנִּפְתִּיִם וְהֵם יִכְתְּבוּ זֹאת; וְכֵן  
אֲדַבֵּר אֶל שְׂאֵר שְׁבֵטֵי בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל אֲשֶׁר  
הִגְלִיתִי, וְהֵם יִכְתְּבוּ זֹאת; וְאֵף אֲדַבֵּר אֶל כָּל  
אֲמֹת הָאָרֶץ, וְהֵן יִכְתְּבוּ זֹאת.

וְיָבוֹא הַיּוֹם, וְיִהְיוּ דְבַרֵי הַנִּפְתִּיִם בְּיַד הַיְּהוּדִים,  
וְיִהְיוּ דְבַרֵי הַיְּהוּדִים בְּיַד הַנִּפְתִּיִם; וְיִהְיוּ דְבַרֵי  
שְׁבֵטֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל הָאֲבֹדִים בְּיַד הַנִּפְתִּיִם  
וְהַיְּהוּדִים; וְיִהְיוּ דְבַרֵי הַנִּפְתִּיִם וְהַיְּהוּדִים  
בְּיַד שְׁבֵטֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל הָאֲבֹדִים.

וְעַמִּי, אֲשֶׁר מִבֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל הֵמָּה, יִקְבְּצוּ  
אֶל בֵּיתָם, אֶל אֶרְצוֹת נַחֲלָתָם; וְאֵף דְּבַרִי  
יִאֲסֹף לְאֶחָד. וְאֲנִכִּי אֶרְאֶה לְנִלְחָמִים עַל  
דְּבַרִי וְעַל עַמִּי, אֲשֶׁר מִבֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל הֵמָּה,  
כִּי אֲנִי אֱלֹהִים וְאֲנִי כְּרָתִי בְרִית עִם אַבְרָהָם  
לְזִכֹּר אֶת זִרְעוֹ לְעוֹלָם.

Know ye not that the testimony of two nations is a witness unto you that I am God, that I remember one nation like unto another? Wherefore, I speak the same words unto one nation like unto another. And when the two nations shall run together the testimony of the two nations shall run together also.

9 And I do this that I may prove unto many that I am the same yesterday, today, and forever; and that I speak forth my words according to mine own pleasure. And because that I have spoken one word ye need not suppose that I cannot speak another; for my work is not yet finished; neither shall it be until the end of man, neither from that time henceforth and forever.

10 Wherefore, because that ye have a Bible ye need not suppose that it contains all my words; neither need ye suppose that I have not caused more to be written.

11 For I command all men, both in the east and in the west, and in the north, and in the south, and in the islands of the sea, that they shall write the words which I speak unto them; for out of the books which shall be written I will judge the world, every man according to their works, according to that which is written.

12 For behold, I shall speak unto the Jews and they shall write it; and I shall also speak unto the Nephites and they shall write it; and I shall also speak unto the other tribes of the house of Israel, which I have led away, and they shall write it; and I shall also speak unto all nations of the earth and they shall write it.

13 And it shall come to pass that the Jews shall have the words of the Nephites, and the Nephites shall have the words of the Jews; and the Nephites and the Jews shall have the words of the lost tribes of Israel; and the lost tribes of Israel shall have the words of the Nephites and the Jews.

14 And it shall come to pass that my people, which are of the house of Israel, shall be gathered home unto the lands of their possessions; and my word also shall be gathered in one. And I will show unto them that fight against my word and against my people, who are of the house of Israel, that I am God, and that I covenanted with Abraham that I would remember his seed forever.

## ל

## 30

וְעַתָּה, אֲחֵי הָאֱהוּבִים, אֲדַבֵּר נָא אֵלֵיכֶם;  
כִּי אֲנִי, נְפִי, לֹא אֶנִּיחַ לָכֶם כִּי תִחָשְׁבוּ אֲשֶׁר

1 And now behold, my beloved brethren, I would speak unto you; for I, Nephi, would not suffer that ye should suppose that ye are more

רַבָּה צְדִיקְתְּכֶם מֵאֲשֶׁר תִּהְיֶה צְדָקַת הַגּוֹיִים.  
כִּי הִנֵּה, אִם לֹא תִשְׁמְרוּ אֶת מִצְוֹת אֱלֹהִים,  
וְאִבְדֶּתֶם כָּלְכֶם כְּמוֹתָם; וּבְפָנֵי הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר  
נֶאֱמְרוּ, אֵל נָא תִחָשְׁבוּ כִּי יֵאבְדוּ הַגּוֹיִים כָּלִיל.

כִּי הִנֵּה אוֹמֵר אֲנִי אֲלֵיכֶם כִּי כָל אֲשֶׁר יִנְחֲמוּ  
מִחֲטָא מִן הַגּוֹיִים, עִם בְּרִית יְהוָה הֵמָּה; וְכָל  
אֲשֶׁר לֹא יִנְחֲמוּ מִחֲטָא מִן הַיְּהוּדִים, הִשְׁלֹךְ  
יִשְׁלָכֻהוּ; כִּי לֹא יִכְרֹת הָאֵב בְּרִית, כִּי אִם עִם  
הַמִּנְחָמִים מִחֲטָא וּמֵאֲמִינִים בְּבָנָו, אֲשֶׁר הוּא  
קְדוֹשׁ יִשְׂרָאֵל.

וְעַתָּה אֲנִיבֹא עוֹד מִקְצַת דְּבָרִים עַל הַיְּהוּדִים  
וְעַל הַגּוֹיִים. כִּי הִיָּה אַחֵר צֵאת הַסֵּפֶר הַזֶּה  
לְאוֹר, אַכֵּן, אַחֵר הַכְּתוּב לְגוֹיִם וְהַחֲתָמֻ שְׁנֵית  
לְשֵׁם יְהוָה, רַבִּים יִהְיוּ הַמֵּאֲמִינִים בְּדְבָרִים  
הַכְּתוּבִים; וְהֵם יוֹצִיאוּם אֶל שְׂאֵרֵית זֶרְעֵנוּ.

אֲזַי תִּדְעַ שְׂאֵרֵית זֶרְעֵנוּ עַל אוֹדוֹתֵינוּ,  
מֵה הִבִּיאֵנוּ לְצֵאת מִירוּשָׁלַם, וְכִי זֶרְעֵנוּ  
הוּא צֶאֱצָאֵי הַיְּהוּדִים.

וְתִכְרֹז בְּקִרְבָּם בְּשׁוֹרֵת יֵשׁוּעַ הַמָּשִׁיחַ, וְכִן  
יָשׁוּבוּ אֶל יְדִיעַת אֲבוֹתֵיהֶם וְאֶל יְדִיעַת יֵשׁוּעַ  
הַמָּשִׁיחַ אֲשֶׁר הָיְתָה בְּקִרְבָּם אֲבוֹתֵיהֶם.

אֲזַי יִגִּילוּ, כִּי יִדְעוּ אֲשֶׁר הִבְרָכָה הַזֹּאת מִיַּד  
אֱלֹהִים הִיא; וְכִסּוֹת הַחֹשֶׁכָה תִּחַל לְהִשָּׁמֵט  
מֵעֵינֵיהֶם; וְלֹא יַעֲבְרוּ עֲלֵיהֶם דּוֹרוֹת רַבִּים עַד  
אֲשֶׁר יִהְיוּ עִם טָהוֹר וְנָעִים.

וְאַף הַיְּהוּדִים הַנִּפְּוֹצִים יִחַלוּ לְהֵאֱמִין בְּמָשִׁיחַ,  
וְהֵם יִחַלוּ לְהִקְבֹּץ יַחַד עַל פְּנֵי הָאָרֶץ; וְכָכָל  
אֲשֶׁר יֵאֱמִינוּ בְּמָשִׁיחַ יִהְיוּ לְעַם נָעִים.

וְתִבּוֹא הָעֵת אֲשֶׁר יִבְצֹעַ יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים  
אֶת מַעֲשָׂהוּ בֵּין כָּל הָאֻמּוֹת, וְהַמִּשְׁפָּחוֹת,  
וְהַלְשׁוֹנוֹת וְהָעַמִּים, לְהִבְיֵא אֶת הַשְּׁבִי  
עִמּוֹ עַל פְּנֵי הָאָרֶץ.

וְשִׁפֹּט יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים בְּצִדֵּק דְּלִים, וְהוֹכִיחַ  
בְּמִישׁוֹר לְעַנּוֹי אָרֶץ; וְהִכָּה אָרֶץ בְּשֶׁבֶט פִּי,  
וּבְרוּחַ שְׁפָתָיו יָמִית רָשָׁע.

righteous than the Gentiles shall be. For behold, except ye shall keep the commandments of God ye shall all likewise perish; and because of the words which have been spoken ye need not suppose that the Gentiles are utterly destroyed.

2 For behold, I say unto you that as many of the Gentiles as will repent are the covenant people of the Lord; and as many of the Jews as will not repent shall be cast off; for the Lord covenanteth with none save it be with them that repent and believe in his Son, who is the Holy One of Israel.

3 And now, I would prophesy somewhat more concerning the Jews and the Gentiles. For after the book of which I have spoken shall come forth, and be written unto the Gentiles, and sealed up again unto the Lord, there shall be many which shall believe the words which are written; and they shall carry them forth unto the remnant of our seed.

4 And then shall the remnant of our seed know concerning us, how that we came out from Jerusalem, and that they are descendants of the Jews.

5 And the gospel of Jesus Christ shall be declared among them; wherefore, they shall be restored unto the knowledge of their fathers, and also to the knowledge of Jesus Christ, which was had among their fathers.

6 And then shall they rejoice; for they shall know that it is a blessing unto them from the hand of God; and their scales of darkness shall begin to fall from their eyes; and many generations shall not pass away among them, save they shall be a pure and delightsome people.

7 And it shall come to pass that the Jews which are scattered also shall begin to believe in Christ; and they shall begin to gather in upon the face of the land; and as many as shall believe in Christ shall also become a delightsome people.

8 And it shall come to pass that the Lord God shall commence his work among all nations, kindreds, tongues, and people, to bring about the restoration of his people upon the earth.

9 And with righteousness shall the Lord God judge the poor, and reprove with equity for the meek of the earth. And he shall smite the earth with the rod of his mouth; and with the breath of his lips shall he slay the wicked.



- 10 For the time speedily cometh that the Lord God shall cause a great division among the people, and the wicked will he destroy; and he will spare his people, yea, even if it so be that he must destroy the wicked by fire.
- 11 And righteousness shall be the girdle of his loins, and faithfulness the girdle of his reins.
- 12 And then shall the wolf dwell with the lamb; and the leopard shall lie down with the kid, and the calf, and the young lion, and the fatling, together; and a little child shall lead them.
- 13 And the cow and the bear shall feed; their young ones shall lie down together; and the lion shall eat straw like the ox.
- 14 And the sucking child shall play on the hole of the asp, and the weaned child shall put his hand on the cockatrice's den.
- 15 They shall not hurt nor destroy in all my holy mountain; for the earth shall be full of the knowledge of the Lord as the waters cover the sea.
- 16 Wherefore, the things of all nations shall be made known; yea, all things shall be made known unto the children of men.
- 17 There is nothing which is secret save it shall be revealed; there is no work of darkness save it shall be made manifest in the light; and there is nothing which is sealed upon the earth save it shall be loosed.
- 18 Wherefore, all things which have been revealed unto the children of men shall at that day be revealed; and Satan shall have power over the hearts of the children of men no more, for a long time. And now, my beloved brethren, I make an end of my sayings.
- כִּי בַמְהֵרָה יָבוֹא הַיּוֹם אֲשֶׁר יַפְרִיד יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים הַפָּרִד וְחָלַק בֵּין הָעַמִּים; אֶת הַרְשָׁעִים יִשְׁמִיד וְעַל עַמּוֹ יָחוּס, אִף אִם יִשְׁמִיד אֶת הַרְשָׁעִים בָּאֵשׁ.
- וְהָיָה צֶדֶק אֲזוּר מִתְנָיו, וְהָאֱמוּנָה אֲזוּר חֻלְצֵיו.
- וְנָר זָאֵב עִם כֶּבֶשׂ, וְנֹמֵר עִם גְּדִי יִרְבֹּץ; וְעֵגֶל וְכִפִּיר וּמִרְיָא יִחָדּוּ, וְנֶעַר קִטָּן נִהְגָּ בֵּם.
- וּפָרָה וְדֹב תִּרְעִינָה, יִחָדּוּ יִרְבְּצוּ יְלְדֵיהֶן; וְאַרְיֵה בְּבָקָר יֹאכַל תֶּבֶן.
- וְשֹׁשֶׁעַ יוֹנֵק עַל חֹר פֶּתֶן, וְעַל מְאוּרַת צִפְעוֹנִי גְמוּל יָדוֹ הָדָה.
- לֹא יָרְעוּ וְלֹא יִשְׁחִיתוּ בְּכָל הָר קִדְשִׁי: כִּי מְלֵאָה הָאָרֶץ דְּעָה אֶת יְהוָה, כַּמַּיִם לַיָּם מְכַסִּים.
- אֲזִי יוֹדְעוּ דְּבָרֵי כָּל הָעַמִּים; אָכֵן, כָּל הַדְּבָרִים יוֹדְעוּ לְבָנֵי הָאָדָם.
- כִּי אֵין סוֹד בְּלָתִי אִם נִגְלָה; אֵין מַעֲשֶׂה מְחֻשָּׁד בְּלָתִי אִם יוֹצֵא לְאוֹר וְאֵין דְּבַר חֲתוּם עַל פְּנֵי הָאָרֶץ, בְּלָתִי אִם יִפְתָּח.
- עַל כֵּן, כָּל הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר נִגְלוּ לְבָנֵי הָאָדָם יִתְגַּלוּ בַּיּוֹם הַהוּא; וְלִשְׁטָן לֹא יִהְיֶה עוֹד שְׁלֹטוֹן עַל לֵב בְּנֵי הָאָדָם עַתָּה אַרְכָּה. וְעַתָּה, אַחִי הָאֱהוּבִים, אֲכַלֶּה אֶת דְּבָרִי.

## לֹא

## 31

- 1 And now I, Nephi, make an end of my prophesying unto you, my beloved brethren. And I cannot write but a few things, which I know must surely come to pass; neither can I write but a few of the words of my brother Jacob.
- 2 Wherefore, the things which I have written sufficeth me, save it be a few words which I must speak concerning the doctrine of Christ; wherefore, I shall speak unto you plainly, according to the plainness of my prophesying.
- וְעַתָּה, אֲנִי, נְפִי, אֲכַלֶּה לְנִבְא אֲלֵיכֶם, אַחִי הָאֱהוּבִים. וְלֹא אוּכַל לְכַתֵּב כִּי אִם דְּבָרִים אֲחָדִים, אֲשֶׁר יָדַעְתִּי כִּי בּוֹא יָבוֹאוּ; אִף מִדְּבָרֵי אַחִי, יַעֲקֹב, לֹא אוּכַל לְכַתֵּב כִּי אִם מֵעַט מֵהֶם.
- לְכֵן דִּי לִי בְּדְבָרִים אֲשֶׁר פְּתַבְתִּי, וְרַק דְּבָרִים אֲחָדִים עָלַי לְהַגִּיד עַל תּוֹרַת הַמְּשִׁיחַ; עַל כֵּן אֲדַבֵּר אֲלֵיכֶם בְּפִשְׁטוּת, כַּפִּי פִשְׁטוּת נְבוֹאָתִי.



- 3 כי נפְשִׁי מִתְעַנֶּגֶת בַּפִּשְׁטוּת; כִּי בְּאִפֹּן הַזֶּה פּוֹעֵל יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים בְּקֶרֶב בְּנֵי הָאָדָם. אֲכֹן יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים נוֹתֵן אֹר לְבִינָה; וְהוּא מְדַבֵּר אֶל בְּנֵי הָאָדָם כְּפִי לְשׁוֹנָם אֶל בִּינָתָם.
- 4 Wherefore, I would that ye should remember that I have spoken unto you concerning that prophet which the Lord showed unto me, that should baptize the Lamb of God, which should take away the sins of the world.
- 5 And now, if the Lamb of God, he being holy, should have need to be baptized by water, to fulfil all righteousness, O then, how much more need have we, being unholy, to be baptized, yea, even by water!
- 6 And now, I would ask of you, my beloved brethren, wherein the Lamb of God did fulfil all righteousness in being baptized by water?
- 7 Know ye not that he was holy? But notwithstanding he being holy, he showeth unto the children of men that, according to the flesh he humbleth himself before the Father, and witnesseth unto the Father that he would be obedient unto him in keeping his commandments.
- 8 Wherefore, after he was baptized with water the Holy Ghost descended upon him in the form of a dove.
- 9 And again, it showeth unto the children of men the straightness of the path, and the narrowness of the gate, by which they should enter, he having set the example before them.
- 10 And he said unto the children of men: Follow thou me. Wherefore, my beloved brethren, can we follow Jesus save we shall be willing to keep the commandments of the Father?
- 11 And the Father said: Repent ye, repent ye, and be baptized in the name of my Beloved Son.
- 12 And also, the voice of the Son came unto me, saying: He that is baptized in my name, to him will the Father give the Holy Ghost, like unto me; wherefore, follow me, and do the things which ye have seen me do.
- 13 Wherefore, my beloved brethren, I know that if ye shall follow the Son, with full purpose of heart, acting no hypocrisy and no deception before God, but with real intent, repenting of your sins, witnessing unto the Father that ye are willing to take upon you the name of Christ, by baptism—yea, by following your Lord and your Savior down into
- הִנֵּה רְצוֹנִי כִּי תִזְכְּרוּ אֲשֶׁר אָנִי דִּבַּרְתִּי אֵלֵיכֶם עַל אֲדוּת הַנְּבִיא הַהוּא אֲשֶׁר הָרָאֵנִי יְהוָה, אֲשֶׁר יְטַבִּיל אֶת שֵׁה אֱלֹהִים, אֲשֶׁר יִמְחָה אֶת חַטָּאֵי הָעוֹלָם.
- וְאָכֹן, אִם יִהְיֶה עַל שֵׁה אֱלֹהִים, אֲשֶׁר קָדוֹשׁ הוּא, לְהִטְבֵּל בַּמַּיִם כְּדִי לְקַיֵּם אֶת כָּל הַצְדָּקָה, אַף רַב מוֹנִים צָרִיכִים אֲנַחְנוּ, אֲשֶׁר אֵינָנו קָדוֹשִׁים, לְהִטְבֵּל בַּמַּיִם!
- וְהִנֵּה אֲשָׁאֲלֵכֶם, אַחֵי הָאֱהוּבִים: בְּמָה קָיֵם שֵׁה אֱלֹהִים אֶת כָּל הַצְדָּקָה בְּהִטְבָּלוֹ בַּמַּיִם?
- הֲלֹא תִדְעוּ כִּי קָדוֹשׁ הוּא? וְאַף אֲשֶׁר קָדוֹשׁ, מֵרָאָה הוּא לְבְנֵי הָאָנוּשׁ כִּי הוּא מְכַנִּיעַ עַצְמוֹ בַּבֶּשֶׁר לִפְנֵי הָאָב, וַיַּעֲדֵד לִפְנֵיו כִּי יִכְנַע לוֹ בְּשִׁמְרוֹ אֶת מִצְוֹתָיו.
- עַל כֵּן, אַחֵר הִטְבָּלוֹ בַּמַּיִם, יָרְדָה עָלָיו רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ בְּדְמוּת יוֹנָה.
- וְעוֹד, בְּתִתּוֹ מוֹפֵת לִפְנֵי בְנֵי הָאָנוּשׁ, מֵרָאָה זֶה לָהֶם אֶת הַדֶּרֶךְ הַיָּשָׁרָה וְאֶת הַשַּׁעַר הַצָּר אֲשֶׁר בוּ יְבוֹאוּ.
- וְהוּא אָמַר אֶל בְּנֵי הָאָנוּשׁ: לָכוּ אַחֲרַי! עַל כֵּן, אַחֵי הָאֱהוּבִים, הַנוֹכַח לְלַכֵּת אַחֲרָיו בְּלִיתִי אֲשֶׁר נִרְצָה לְשָׁמֹר אֶת מִצְוֹת הָאָב?
- וְאָמַר הָאָב: הִנָּחֲמוּ מִחַטָּא, הִנָּחֲמוּ וְשׁוּבוּ וְהִטְבָּלוּ בַּשֵּׁם בְּנֵי אֱהוּבִי.
- וְהִיָּה אִף קוֹל הַבֶּן אֵלַי לֵאמֹר: הַנִּטְבָּל בַּשֵּׁם, יִתֵּן לוֹ הָאָב אֶת רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ כְּפִי תִתּוֹ לִי; לָכוּ לָכוּ אַחֲרַי וַעֲשִׂיתֶם אֶת הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר תִּרְאוּ כִּי עֲשִׂיתִים אָנִי.
- עַל כֵּן, אַחֵי הָאֱהוּבִים, יִדְעִיתִי אֲשֶׁר אִם תִּלְכוּ אַחֵר הַבֶּן, בְּכָל תַּכְלִית לְבַבְכֶּם, בְּלֹא חֲנִף וּבְלֹא כָזָב לִפְנֵי אֱלֹהִים, בְּכֹונָת אִמָּת, מִנְחָמִים מִחַטָּא, בְּעִדּוֹת לִפְנֵי הָאָב אֲשֶׁר חִפְצִים אִתָּם לְשִׂאת אֶת שֵׁם הַמָּשִׁיחַ עַל יְדֵי טְבִילָה, לָרֶדֶת

אַחַר אֲדוֹנֵכֶם וּמוֹשִׁיעֵכֶם אֶל הַמַּיִם עַל פִּי דְבָרוֹ,  
אֲנִי תִקְבְּלוּ אֶת רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ; אֲנִי תִבּוֹא טְבִילַת  
הָאֵשׁ וְרוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ; אֲנִי תוֹכְלוּ לְדַבֵּר בְּלָשׁוֹן  
מַלְאָכִים וְלִקְרֹא תְהִלּוֹת אֵל קְדוֹשׁ יִשְׂרָאֵל.

the water, according to his word, behold, then shall ye receive the Holy Ghost; yea, then cometh the baptism of fire and of the Holy Ghost; and then can ye speak with the tongue of angels, and shout praises unto the Holy One of Israel.

אֲנִי הִנֵּה, אַחֵי הָאֱהוּבִים, כֹּה הִיָּה אֵלַי קוֹל הַבֶּן  
לְאִמִּר: אַחַר אֲשֶׁר נִחַמְתֶּם מִחַטָּאתֵיכֶם, וְאַחַר  
אֲשֶׁר הִעַדְתֶּם לִפְנֵי הָאֵב כִּי חֲפָצְכֶם לְשֹׁמֵר  
אֶת מִצְוֹתַי בְּטְבִילָה בַּמַּיִם, וְאַחַר קִבְּלֶכֶם אֶת  
הַטְבִּילָה בָּאֵשׁ וּבְרוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ וְיִכּוּלִים אַתֶּם  
דַּבֵּר בְּלָשׁוֹן חֲדָשָׁה, לָשׁוֹן הַמַּלְאָכִים, אִם  
אַחַר אֵלֶּה תִכְחָשׁוּ בִּי, הִנֵּה טוֹב הִיָּה לָכֶם לוֹ  
לֹא יִדְעַתֶּם אוֹתִי.

14 But, behold, my beloved brethren, thus came the voice of the Son unto me, saying: After ye have repented of your sins, and witnessed unto the Father that ye are willing to keep my commandments, by the baptism of water, and have received the baptism of fire and of the Holy Ghost, and can speak with a new tongue, yea, even with the tongue of angels, and after this should deny me, it would have been better for you that ye had not known me.

וְשָׁמַעְתִּי קוֹל מֵהָאֵב לְאִמִּר: אָכֵן, דְּבָרֵי אֱהוּבֵי  
אֱמֶת וְנֶאֱמָן; הַמְתִּמִּיד עַד הַקֵּץ, הוּא יִישָׁע.

15 And I heard a voice from the Father, saying: Yea, the words of my Beloved are true and faithful. He that endureth to the end, the same shall be saved.

וְהִנֵּה, אַחֵי הָאֱהוּבִים, יִדְעֵתִי מִן הַדְּבָרִים  
הָאֵלֶּה כִּי אָדָם לֹא יִישָׁע בְּלִתִּי אִם יִתְמִיד עַד  
הַקֵּץ, וְיִדְבֹק בְּמוֹפֶת בֶּן אֱלֹהִים.

16 And now, my beloved brethren, I know by this that unless a man shall endure to the end, in following the example of the Son of the living God, he cannot be saved.

עַל כֵּן, עָשׂוּ נָא אֶת הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר אִמַּרְתִּי  
לָכֶם כִּפִּי אֲשֶׁר רָאִיתִי כִּי יַעֲשׂוּ אֲדוֹנֵכֶם  
וְגוֹאֲלֵכֶם; כִּי בַעֲבוּר זֹאת הָרָאוּ הֵם לִי, לְמַעַן  
תִּדְעוּ אֶת הַשַּׁעַר אֲשֶׁר בּוֹ תִבּוֹאוּ, וְהוּא  
הַנְּחִמָּה מִחַטָּא וְהַטְבִּילָה בַּמַּיִם; אֲנִי תִבּוֹא  
מִחִילַת חַטָּאתֵיכֶם בָּאֵשׁ וּבְרוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ.

17 Wherefore, do the things which I have told you I have seen that your Lord and your Redeemer should do; for, for this cause have they been shown unto me, that ye might know the gate by which ye should enter. For the gate by which ye should enter is repentance and baptism by water; and then cometh a remission of your sins by fire and by the Holy Ghost.

אֲנִי תָהִיוּ בְּשִׁבִּיל הַיָּשָׁר וְהַצָּר הַמוֹבִיל אֶל חַיֵּי  
עוֹלָם. אָכֵן, נִכְנַסְתֶּם בַּשַּׁעַר; עָשִׂיתֶם כִּפִּי  
מִצְוֹת הָאֵב וְהַבֶּן; קִבְּלֶתֶם אֶת רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ,  
הַמְעִידָה עַל הָאֵב וְהַבֶּן וְזֹאת יָקִים דְּבַר  
הַבְּרִית אֲשֶׁר אָמַר יְהוָה, כִּי אִם תִּכְנָסוּ בַּדֶּרֶךְ,  
קִבַּל תִּקְבְּלוּהוּ.

18 And then are ye in this straight and narrow path which leads to eternal life; yea, ye have entered in by the gate; ye have done according to the commandments of the Father and the Son; and ye have received the Holy Ghost, which witnesses of the Father and the Son, unto the fulfilling of the promise which he hath made, that if ye entered in by the way ye should receive.

וְעַתָּה, אַחֵי הָאֱהוּבִים, אַחַר אֲשֶׁר הִגַּעְתֶּם אֶל  
הַשִּׁבִּיל הַיָּשָׁר וְהַצָּר הַזֶּה, אֲשִׁאלְכֶם: הֲאִם  
עָשִׂיתֶם הַכֹּל? הִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם: לֹא; כִּי לֹא  
הִגַּעְתֶּם עַד הִנֵּה, כִּי אִם עַל פִּי דְבַר הַמְּשִׁיתִי,  
בְּאִמּוּנָה בְּלִתִּי מַעֲרֵרַת בּוֹ, סוֹמְכִים בְּכָל עַל  
סִגְלוֹתָיו אֲשֶׁר כָּחוּ רַב לוֹ לְהוֹשִׁיעַ.

19 And now, my beloved brethren, after ye have gotten into this straight and narrow path, I would ask if all is done? Behold, I say unto you, Nay; for ye have not come thus far save it were by the word of Christ with unshaken faith in him, relying wholly upon the merits of him who is mighty to save.

לָכֵן, עֲלֵיכֶם לָלֶכֶת קְדִימָה בַּדְּבָקוֹת בְּמִשְׁתִּיתִי,  
בְּהִיוֹתְכֶם חֲדוּרֵי תִקְוָה מְזִהִירָה שְׁלֵמָה,  
וְאַהֲבָה לְאֱלֹהִים וּלְכָל אָדָם. אָכֵן, אִם

20 Wherefore, ye must press forward with a steadfastness in Christ, having a perfect brightness of hope, and a love of God and of all men. Wherefore, if ye shall press forward, feasting upon the word of Christ,

וְתִקְדְּמוּ, שְׂבָעִים נֶפֶשׁ בְּדִבְרֵי הַמְּשִׁיחַ,  
וְהַתְּמַדְתֶּם עַד הַקֵּץ, הִנֵּה כֹה אָמַר הָאֵב:  
יְהִיו לָכֶם חַיֵּי עוֹלָם.

and endure to the end, behold, thus saith the Father: Ye shall have eternal life.

וְעַתָּה, אֲחֵי הָאֱהוּבִים, זֹאת הַדֶּרֶךְ; וְאִין דֶּרֶךְ  
אַחֶרֶת וְאִין נָתַן שֵׁם אַחֵר תַּחַת הַשָּׁמַיִם, אֲשֶׁר  
בּוֹ יוֹכַל אָדָם לְהוֹשִׁיעַ בְּמַלְכוּת אֱלֹהִים. אָכֵן  
זֹאת תּוֹרַת הַמְּשִׁיחַ, תּוֹרַת הָאֱמֶת הָאֲחֵת  
אֲשֶׁר לָאֵב וְהָבֵן וְרוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ, אֲשֶׁר הֵם  
אֱלֹהִים אֶחָד בְּלִי קוץ. אָמֵן.

21 And now, behold, my beloved brethren, this is the way; and there is none other way nor name given under heaven whereby man can be saved in the kingdom of God. And now, behold, this is the doctrine of Christ, and the only and true doctrine of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost, which is one God, without end. Amen.

## לֵב

## 32

וְעַתָּה, אֲחֵי הָאֱהוּבִים, סְבוּרֵנִי כִּי מֵהֶרְרִים  
אַתֶּם בְּדִבְרֵי אֲשֶׁר עָלִיכֶם לַעֲשׂוֹת אַחֵר  
כְּנִיסַתְכֶם בְּדֶרֶךְ. אֵיךְ מְדַעַתְהוּ בְּלִבְבְּכֶם  
בְּדִבְרֵי הַזֶּה?

1 And now, behold, my beloved brethren, I suppose that ye ponder somewhat in your hearts concerning that which ye should do after ye have entered in by the way. But, behold, why do ye ponder these things in your hearts?

הַאֵינְכֶם זֹכְרִים אֶת אֲשֶׁר אָמַרְתִּי אֵלֵיכֶם, כִּי  
אַחֵר קִבַּלְתֶּם אֶת רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ, תּוֹכְלוּ לְדַבֵּר  
בְּלִשׁוֹן הַמַּלְאָכִים? וְאָכֵן, אֵיךְ תּוֹכְלוּ לְדַבֵּר  
בְּלִשׁוֹן הַמַּלְאָכִים בְּלֹא רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ?

2 Do ye not remember that I said unto you that after ye had received the Holy Ghost ye could speak with the tongue of angels? And now, how could ye speak with the tongue of angels save it were by the Holy Ghost?

מַלְאָכִים מְדַבְּרִים בְּכַח רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ, עַל כֵּן הֵם  
מְדַבְּרִים אֶת דְּבָרֵי הַמְּשִׁיחַ. לָכֵן, אָמַרְתִּי לָכֶם,  
הַשְׁבִּיעוּ נֶפֶשׁ בְּדִבְרֵי הַמְּשִׁיחַ, כִּי הֵמָּה יֹאמְרוּ  
לָכֶם אֶת כָּל הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר עָלִיכֶם לַעֲשׂוֹת.

3 Angels speak by the power of the Holy Ghost; wherefore, they speak the words of Christ. Wherefore, I said unto you, feast upon the words of Christ; for behold, the words of Christ will tell you all things what ye should do.

וְעַתָּה, אַחֵר דִּבַּרְתִּי אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, אִם  
לֹא תוֹכְלוּ הִבִּינֶם, אִין זֹאת כִּי אִם לֹא בִקְשָׁתֶם  
וְלֹא הִקְשַׁתֶּם; עַל כֵּן לֹא תוֹבְאוּ אֶל הָאוֹר  
וְאֶבֹד תֵּאבְדוּ בַּמַּחְשֶׁה.

4 Wherefore, now after I have spoken these words, if ye cannot understand them it will be because ye ask not, neither do ye knock; wherefore, ye are not brought into the light, but must perish in the dark.

אֵיךְ הִנֵּה, אוֹסִיף וְאָמַר לָכֶם, כִּי אִם תִּפְנְסוּ  
בְּדֶרֶךְ וְתִקְבְּלוּ אֶת רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ, תִּרְאֶה הִיא  
לָכֶם אֶת כָּל אֲשֶׁר עָלִיכֶם לַעֲשׂוֹת.

5 For behold, again I say unto you that if ye will enter in by the way, and receive the Holy Ghost, it will show unto you all things what ye should do.

הִנֵּה, זֹאת תּוֹרַת הַמְּשִׁיחַ, וְלֹא תִנָּתֵן תּוֹרָה  
נוֹסֶפֶת עַד אֲשֶׁר יִתְגַּלֵּה הוּא לְפָנֵיכֶם בְּבָשָׂר.  
וְאַחֵר הַתְּגַלּוּתוֹ אֵלֵיכֶם בְּבָשָׂר, תִּשְׁמְרוּ  
לַעֲשׂוֹת אֶת הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר יֹאמַר לָכֶם.

6 Behold, this is the doctrine of Christ, and there will be no more doctrine given until after he shall manifest himself unto you in the flesh. And when he shall manifest himself unto you in the flesh, the things which he shall say unto you shall ye observe to do.

וְעַתָּה אֲנִי, נְפִי, לֹא אוֹכַל לְהוֹסִיף אֲמֹר כִּי  
הָרוּחַ תַּעֲצֹר נִיב שְׂפָתַי, וְאֲנִי נֹתֵר לְהִתְאָבֵל  
עַל הָסֵר הָאֲמוּנָה וְהַרְשָׁעָה וְהַבּוֹרוּת וְקוֹשִׁי

7 And now I, Nephi, cannot say more; the Spirit stoppeth mine utterance, and I am left to mourn because of the unbelief, and the wickedness, and the ignorance, and the stiffneckedness of men; for they will not

הַעֲרֹף אֲשֶׁר לִבִּי הֶאֱנֹשׁ; כִּי הֵם לֹא יִחְפְּשׂוּ  
דַּעַת וְלֹא יִבְיִנוּ דַּעַת רַבָּה כַּאֲשֶׁר זֶה תִּנָּתֵן לָהֶם  
מִפְּרָשׁוֹת, כָּכָל אֲשֶׁר יוּכַל דָּבָר לִהְיוֹת בְּרוּר.

וְהִנֵּה, אַחֵי הָאֱהוּבִים, אֲנִי רוֹאֶה כִּי עוֹדְכֶם  
מִהֲרָרִים בְּלִבְכֶם; וְדָאֵב לִבִּי כִּי יֵשׁ עָלַי לְדַבֵּר  
עַל הַדְּבָר הַזֶּה; כִּי אִם תִּשְׁמְעוּ לְרוּחַ הַמְּלִמָּדָת  
לְאָדָם לְהִתְפַּלֵּל, תִּדְעוּ אֲשֶׁר עָלֵיכֶם לְהִתְפַּלֵּל;  
כִּי הַרוּחַ הָרָעָה אֵינָה מְלִמָּדָת אֶת הָאָדָם  
לְהִתְפַּלֵּל, כִּי אִם לְחַדֵּל מִתְפַּלֵּה.

אֲךָ הִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם אֲשֶׁר עָלֵיכֶם לְהִתְפַּלֵּל  
תָּמִיד לֹלֵא הַפּוֹנֶה; וְכִי לֹא תַעֲשׂוּ דְבָר לְשֵׁם  
יְהוָה, בְּלִתִּי אִם הִתְפַּלְלֶתֶם תַּחֲלָה אֶל הָאֵב  
בְּשֵׁם הַמְּשִׁיחַ, כִּי יִקְדֹּשׁ לָכֶם אֶת אֲשֶׁר תַּעֲשׂוּ;  
בְּעִבּוֹר יִהְיֶה מַעֲשֵׂיכֶם לְטוֹבָת נַפְשְׁכֶם.

## לג

וְעַתָּה, אֲנִי, נְפִי, אֵינֶנִּי יוֹכֵל לְכַתֵּב אֶת כָּל  
הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר נִלְמְדוּ בְּקֶרֶב עַמִּי; אֲךָ חֲזָקִי  
אֵינוֹ בְּכַתִּיבָה, כְּהִיּוֹתִי מִיִּטִּב דְּבָר; כִּי בְּדַבֵּר  
אִישׁ בְּכַח רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ נוֹשָׂאֵת רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ אֶת  
דְּבָרוֹ אֶל לִבִּי הָאָדָם.

אֲךָ הִנֵּה רַבִּים הַמְּקַשִּׁים אֶת לִבָּם עַל רוּחַ  
הַקֹּדֶשׁ, עַד אֲשֶׁר אֵין מְקוֹם לָהּ בְּקֶרֶב; עַל  
כֵּן, מַשְׁלִיכִים הֵם דְּבָרִים רַבִּים אֲשֶׁר כְּתוּבִים  
בְּהַחֲשִׁיבֵם דְּבָרֵי רִיק.

אֲךָ אֲנִי, נְפִי, כְּתַבְתִּי אֶת אֲשֶׁר כְּתַבְתִּי וּמַחֲשִׁיב  
אֲנִי אֶת הַכְּתוּב כְּבַעַל עֶרֶף רַב וּבְעֶקֶר לְעַמִּי;  
כִּי מִתְפַּלֵּל אֲנִי עָלֵיהֶם תָּמִיד יוֹמָם, וּמִפְּנֵיהֶם  
יִמְסוּ עֵינַי אֶת כָּרִי לִילָה; וְקָרָאתִי אֶל אֱלֹהֵי  
בְּאֻמוֹנָה וַיִּדְעֵתִי כִּי יִשְׁמַע שְׁוֹעֵתִי.

וַיִּדְעֵתִי כִּי יִקְדֹּשׁ יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים אֶת תְּפִלָּתִי  
לְטוֹבָת עַמִּי; וְהַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר כְּתַבְתִּי בְּרַפְיוֹנִי,  
יִגְבְּרוּ לָהֶם, כִּי יִמְשְׁכוּ הֵם אֶת לִבָּם לַעֲשׂוֹת  
טוֹב; מוֹדִיעִים הֵם אוֹתָם עַל אוֹדוֹת אֲבוֹתֵיהֶם;  
וּמְדַבְּרִים הֵם בִּישׁוּעַ וּמוֹשָׁכִים לִבָּם לְהֶאֱמִין  
בּוֹ וּלְהִתְמַיֵּד עַד הַקֵּץ, אֲשֶׁר הוּא חַי עוֹלָם.

קָשִׁים עַל חֹטָא הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר כְּתַבְתִּי, כִּפִּי  
פִּשְׁטוֹת הָאָמֶת; עַל כֵּן לֹא יִכְעַס אִישׁ עָלֵיהֶם,  
בְּלִתִּי אִם תִּהְיֶה בְּקֶרְבוֹ רוּחַ הַשָּׁטָן.

search knowledge, nor understand great knowledge, when it is given  
unto them in plainness, even as plain as word can be.

8 And now, my beloved brethren, I perceive that ye ponder still in your  
hearts; and it grieveth me that I must speak concerning this thing. For  
if ye would hearken unto the Spirit which teacheth a man to pray ye  
would know that ye must pray; for the evil spirit teacheth not a man to  
pray, but teacheth him that he must not pray.

9 But behold, I say unto you that ye must pray always, and not faint;  
that ye must not perform any thing unto the Lord save in the first  
place ye shall pray unto the Father in the name of Christ, that he will  
consecrate thy performance unto thee, that thy performance may be  
for the welfare of thy soul.

## 33

1 And now I, Nephi, cannot write all the things which were taught  
among my people; neither am I mighty in writing, like unto speaking;  
for when a man speaketh by the power of the Holy Ghost the power of  
the Holy Ghost carrieth it unto the hearts of the children of men.

2 But behold, there are many that harden their hearts against the Holy  
Spirit, that it hath no place in them; wherefore, they cast many things  
away which are written and esteem them as things of naught.

3 But I, Nephi, have written what I have written, and I esteem it as of  
great worth, and especially unto my people. For I pray continually for  
them by day, and mine eyes water my pillow by night, because of them;  
and I cry unto my God in faith, and I know that he will hear my cry.

4 And I know that the Lord God will consecrate my prayers for the  
gain of my people. And the words which I have written in weakness  
will be made strong unto them; for it persuadeth them to do good; it  
maketh known unto them of their fathers; and it speaketh of Jesus, and  
persuadeth them to believe in him, and to endure to the end, which is  
life eternal.

5 And it speaketh harshly against sin, according to the plainness of the  
truth; wherefore, no man will be angry at the words which I have  
written save he shall be of the spirit of the devil.

- אֶפְאָר בַּפִּשְׁטוּת; אֶפְאָר בְּאִמְתּוּת; אֶפְאָר בְּיִשׁוּעַ  
אֲשֶׁר לִי, כִּי פָדָה הוּא אֶת נַפְשִׁי מִשְׁאֹל.
- 6 I glory in plainness; I glory in truth; I glory in my Jesus, for he hath redeemed my soul from hell.
- יֵשׁ עִמִּי חֶסֶד לְעַמִּי וְאִמּוּנָה רַבָּה בַּמְּשִׁיחַ  
אֲשֶׁר אֶפְגֹּשׁ נַפְשוֹת רַבּוֹת וְזָכוֹת לֹלָא דְפִי  
אֶצְל כֹּס מִשְׁפָּטוֹ.
- 7 I have charity for my people, and great faith in Christ that I shall meet many souls spotless at his judgment-seat.
- יֵשׁ עִמִּי חֶסֶד לְיִהוּדִים; אֲכֹן, אֲדַבֵּר עַל  
הַיְּהוּדִים אֲשֶׁר מֵהֶם יָצֵאתִי.
- 8 I have charity for the Jew—I say Jew, because I mean them from whence I came.
- יֵשׁ עִמִּי אַף חֶסֶד לְגוֹיִים; אַף אֵין עִמִּי כָּל  
תִּקְוָה עָלֵיהֶם, בְּלִיתִּי אִם יִתְרַצוּ לְמִשְׁיחַ  
וְיָבוֹאוּ דֶּרֶךְ הַשְּׁעָר הַצָּר, וְיִלְכוּ בַּשְּׁבִיל הַיָּשָׁר  
הַמּוֹבִיל אֶל הַחַיִּים וְיִמְשִׁיכוּ דֶּרֶכְכֶם בַּשְּׁבִיל  
עַד קֵץ יוֹם הַמִּבְחָן.
- 9 I also have charity for the Gentiles. But behold, for none of these can I hope except they shall be reconciled unto Christ, and enter into the narrow gate, and walk in the straight path which leads to life, and continue in the path until the end of the day of probation.
- וְעַתָּה, אַחֵי הָאֱהוּבִים, וְאַף יְהוּדִים, וְכָל קְצוֹת  
הָאָרֶץ, שְׁמַעוּ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה וְהִיאֲמִינוּ  
בַּמְּשִׁיחַ; וְאִם לֹא תִאֲמִינוּ בַּדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה,  
הִיאֲמִינוּ בַּמְּשִׁיחַ; וְאִם תִּאֲמִינוּ בַּמְּשִׁיחַ, אֲכֹן  
תִּאֲמִינוּ בַּדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, כִּי הֵם דְּבָרֵי הַמְּשִׁיחַ,  
וְהוּא אֲשֶׁר נָתַן לִי אוֹתוֹת; וּמִלְמָדִים הֵם אֶת  
כָּל הָאָדָם כִּי עָלֵיהֶם לַעֲשׂוֹת אֶת הַטוֹב.
- 10 And now, my beloved brethren, and also Jew, and all ye ends of the earth, hearken unto these words and believe in Christ; and if ye believe not in these words believe in Christ. And if ye shall believe in Christ ye will believe in these words, for they are the words of Christ, and he hath given them unto me; and they teach all men that they should do good.
- וְאִם אֵין אֵלֶּה דְּבָרֵי הַמְּשִׁיחַ, שְׁפֹטוּ אֹתָם,  
כִּי יִרְאֶה הַמְּשִׁיחַ לָכֶם, בְּגִבּוֹרָה וּבְתַפָּאָרָה  
רַבָּה בְּיוֹם הָאַחֲרִית, כִּי דְבָרָיו הֵמָּה; אֲכֹן,  
כִּאֲשֶׁר אֹתָם וְאֲנִי נִעְמַד פְּנִים אֶל פְּנִים,  
לִפְנֵי כֹס מִשְׁפָּטוֹ, אֲזִי תִדְעוּ כִּי צוּנִי לְכַתֵּב  
אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה עַל אֶף רְפוּיָנִי.
- 11 And if they are not the words of Christ, judge ye—for Christ will show unto you, with power and great glory, that they are his words, at the last day; and you and I shall stand face to face before his bar; and ye shall know that I have been commanded of him to write these things, notwithstanding my weakness.
- וְאֲנִי אֶתְחַנֵּן אֶל הָאֵב בְּשֵׁם הַמְּשִׁיחַ כִּי רַבִּים  
מֵאֲתָנּוּ, אִם לֹא הֵכֵל, יִשְׁעוּ בְּמַלְכוּתוֹ בְּיוֹם  
הַגָּדוֹל וְהָאַחֲרוֹן.
- 12 And I pray the Father in the name of Christ that many of us, if not all, may be saved in his kingdom at that great and last day.
- וְעַתָּה, אַחֵי הָאֱהוּבִים, כָּל אֲשֶׁר מִבֵּית  
יִשְׂרָאֵל הֵמָּה, וְכָלְכֶם, מִצְּוֵי אֶרֶץ, הִנְנִי מְדַבֵּר  
אֵלֵיכֶם פְּקוּל הַקּוֹרָא מִן הָעֶפֶר: שְׁלוֹם עַד  
בּוֹא הַיּוֹם הַגָּדוֹל.
- 13 And now, my beloved brethren, all those who are of the house of Israel, and all ye ends of the earth, I speak unto you as the voice of one crying from the dust: Farewell until that great day shall come.
- וְאֹתָם, אֲשֶׁר לֹא תִאֲבֹו לְטַעַם מִטּוֹב אֱלֹהִים  
וְלֹא תִכְבְּדוּ אֶת דְּבָרֵי הַיְּהוּדִים, וְאַף אֶת דְּבָרֵי  
וְאֶת הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר יֵצְאוּ מִפִּי שֶׁהֵם אֱלֹהִים,  
לָכֶם הִנְנִי אוֹמֵר שְׁלוֹם עַד עוֹלָם, כִּי הַדְּבָרִים  
הָאֵלֶּה יֵאֲשִׁימוּכֶם בְּיוֹם הָאַחֲרוֹן.
- 14 And you that will not partake of the goodness of God, and respect the words of the Jews, and also my words, and the words which shall proceed forth out of the mouth of the Lamb of God, behold, I bid you an everlasting farewell, for these words shall condemn you at the last day.



כִּי אֶת אֲשֶׁר אֶחָתָם בָּאָרֶץ, יוֹבֵא הוּא  
עֲלֵיכֶם לִפְנֵי כֹס הַמִּשְׁפָּט; כִּי כֵן צִוֵּנִי יְהוָה  
וְעָלִי לִשְׁמֹעַ בְּקוֹלוֹ. אָמֵן.

15 For what I seal on earth, shall be brought against you at the judgment bar; for thus hath the Lord commanded me, and I must obey. Amen.

## סֵפֶר יַעֲקֹב

## THE BOOK OF JACOB

דְּבָרֵי יַעֲקֹב, אֶחֱי נְפִי. דְּבָרֵי הַטִּפְתּוֹ אֶל אֶחָיו. הוּא  
מוֹכִיחַ אִישׁ הַמְבַקֵּשׁ לְהַדְיִחַ אֶת תּוֹרַת הַמָּשִׁיחַ.  
דְּבָרִים מְעַטִּים עַל אוֹדוֹת יָמֵי עַם נְפִי. (בְּעֶרְךָ  
421–544 לִפְנֵי הַסְפִּירָה.)

*The words of Jacob, the brother of Nephi. An account of his preaching to his brethren. He confounds a man who seeks to overthrow the doctrine of Christ. A few words concerning the history of the people of Nephi. (About 544–421 B.C.)*

### א

### 1

וְהִיָּה כִּי חָלְפוּ חֲמִשִּׁים וְחֲמִשָּׁה שָׁנִים מֵעַתָּה  
צֵאתָ לְחֵי מִירוּשָׁלַם; וְנָפִי צִוֵּנִי, אוֹתִי, יַעֲקֹב,  
עַל אוֹדוֹת הַלְּוִחוֹת הַקְּטָנִים, אֲשֶׁר עָלִיהֶם  
נִחְרְטִים הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה.

1 For behold, it came to pass that fifty and five years had passed away from the time that Lehi left Jerusalem; wherefore, Nephi gave me, Jacob, a commandment concerning the small plates, upon which these things are engraven.

וְהוּא צִוֵּנִי, אוֹתִי, יַעֲקֹב, לְכַתֵּב עַל גְּבֵי  
הַלְּוִחוֹת הָאֵלֶּה מְעַט מִן הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר  
מִצְאָתִים יִקְרִים בְּיוֹתֵר; וְהוּא צִוֵּנִי אֲשֶׁר  
לֹא אֶגַּע, כִּי אִם קְלוֹת, בְּדְבָרֵי הַיָּמִים אֲשֶׁר  
לָעַם הַזֶּה, אֲשֶׁר נִקְרָא שְׁמוֹ עַם נְפִי.

2 And he gave me, Jacob, a commandment that I should write upon these plates a few of the things which I consider to be most precious; that I should not touch, save it were lightly, concerning the history of this people which are called the people of Nephi.

וְהוּא אָמַר כִּי דְבָרֵי יָמֵי עַמּוֹ יִחְרְטוּ עַל גְּבֵי  
לְוִחוֹתָיו הַנוֹסְפִים וְכִי אֲשֶׁמַּר נָא אֶת הַלְּוִחוֹת  
הָאֵלֶּה וְאֶמְסַר אוֹתָם לְזֶרְעִי, מִדּוֹר לְדוֹר.

3 For he said that the history of his people should be engraven upon his other plates, and that I should preserve these plates and hand them down unto my seed, from generation to generation.

וְאִם תְּהִיָּה הַטִּפְתּוֹ דְּבָרֵי קֹדֶשׁ, אוֹ הַתְּגִלּוֹת  
גְּדוֹלָה, אוֹ נְבוּאָה, חֲרוּט אַחֲרֵי אֶת עֵקְרָם  
עַל גְּבֵי הַלְּוִחוֹת הָאֵלֶּה וְתִאֲרָתִי אוֹתָם כְּכֹל  
הָאֲפֹשֶׁר, לְשֵׁם הַמָּשִׁיחַ וְלִמְעַן בְּנֵי עַמּוֹ.

4 And if there were preaching which was sacred, or revelation which was great, or prophesying, that I should engraven the heads of them upon these plates, and touch upon them as much as it were possible, for Christ's sake, and for the sake of our people.

כִּי מִפְּנֵי אֱמוּנָה וַחֲרָדָה גְּדוֹלָה, גְּלָה לָנוּ  
בְּאַמֻּת עַל אוֹדוֹת בְּנֵי עַמּוֹ, וְאֵת הָעֲתִיד  
לְבוֹא עֲלֵיהֶם.

5 For because of faith and great anxiety, it truly had been made manifest unto us concerning our people, what things should happen unto them.

אֶף הַתְּגִלּוֹת רַבּוֹת וְרוּחַ נְבוּאָה רַבָּה הָיוּ לָנוּ;  
לְכֵן יָדַעְנוּ עַל הַמָּשִׁיחַ וְעַל מַלְכוּתוֹ אֲשֶׁר תָּבוֹא.

6 And we also had many revelations, and the spirit of much prophecy; wherefore, we knew of Christ and his kingdom, which should come.

עַל כֵּן שָׁקַדְנוּ עֲמַל בְּקֶרֶב בְּנֵי עַמּוֹ, לְשִׁכְנוֹתָם  
לְבוֹא אֶל הַמָּשִׁיחַ וְלִשְׁטַעַם מִטּוֹב אֱלֹהִים,  
לִמְעַן יָבוֹאוּ אֶל מְנוּחָתוֹ, כֹּן יִשְׁבַּע בְּכָל אִפְּן

7 Wherefore we labored diligently among our people, that we might persuade them to come unto Christ, and partake of the goodness of God, that they might enter into his rest, lest by any means he should



## יעקב א:ח-יז

- בַּחֲמָתוֹ שֶׁלֹא לְתַתֵּם לְבֹא שָׁמָּה, כְּמִרְיָבָה  
בִּימֵי מִסָּה, בְּהִיּוֹת בְּנֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל בַּמִּדְבָּר.
- 8 Wherefore, we would to God that we could persuade all men not to rebel against God, to provoke him to anger, but that all men would believe in Christ, and view his death, and suffer his cross and bear the shame of the world; wherefore, I, Jacob, take it upon me to fulfil the commandment of my brother Nephi.
- וּמִי יִתֵּן וַיְכַלִּים הֵינֵנו, לְשֵׁם אֱלֹהִים, לְשַׁכְנֶעַ  
אֶת כָּל הָאֲנָשִׁים לְחַדֵּל מִמְרֹדֶם בְּאֱלֹהִים  
וּמִהֲקַעִיסוֹ, אֲלֵא יֵאֱמִינוּ כָּל בְּנֵי הָאָדָם  
בַּמָּשִׁיחַ וַיִּתְּבוּנָנוּ אֶל מוֹתוֹ, וַיֵּשְׂאוּ אֶת צִלְבוֹ  
וְאֶת כָּל־מִת הָעוֹלָם; עַל כֵּן, אֲנִי, יַעֲקֹב, מְקַבֵּל  
עָלַי לְמַלֵּא אֶת מִצְוֹת אָחִי, נָפִי.
- 9 Now Nephi began to be old, and he saw that he must soon die; wherefore, he anointed a man to be a king and a ruler over his people now, according to the reigns of the kings.
- וּנְפִי בָא בִּימֵיָם, וַרְאָה אֲשֶׁר קָרְבוּ יָמָיו לְמוֹת;  
וְהוּא מָשַׁח אִישׁ לְהִיּוֹת מֶלֶךְ וּמוֹשֵׁל עַל עַמּוֹ  
אֲחֵרָיו, כְּמִשְׁפַּט שְׁלֹטוֹן הַמְּלָכִים.
- 10 The people having loved Nephi exceedingly, he having been a great protector for them, having wielded the sword of Laban in their defence, and having labored in all his days for their welfare—
- וּנְפִי אֲהוּב הָיָה עַל הָעָם עַד מְאֹד, וְהוּא הָיָה  
מִגִּנָּם הַגָּדוֹל, בִּנְשָׂאוֹ אֶת חֶרֶב לָבָן לְהַגְנָתָם  
וּבְעִמְלֹו כָּל יָמָיו לְטוֹבָתָם.
- 11 Wherefore, the people were desirous to retain in remembrance his name. And whoso should reign in his stead were called by the people, second Nephi, third Nephi, and so forth, according to the reigns of the kings; and thus they were called by the people, let them be of whatever name they would.
- עַל כֵּן חָפֵץ הָעָם לְשַׁמֵּר אֶת שְׁמוֹ לְזָכְרוֹן. וְכָל  
אֲשֶׁר נוֹשָׂא אֶת מְשָׁרְתּוֹ לְמִשְׁלַל אֲחֵרָיו נִקְרָא  
בְּפִי הָעָם, נְפִי הַשֵּׁנִי, נְפִי הַשְּׁלִישִׁי וְכֵן הִיָּתָר,  
כְּמִשְׁפַּט שְׁלֹטוֹן הַמְּלָכִים; כִּךְ קִרְאָם הָעָם,  
יְהִיָּה שְׁמָם אֲשֶׁר יְהִיָּה.
- 12 And it came to pass that Nephi died.
- וְהָיָה כִּי מָת נְפִי.
- 13 Now the people which were not Lamanites were Nephites; nevertheless, they were called Nephites, Jacobites, Josephites, Zoramites, Lamanites, Lemuelites, and Ishmaelites.
- וְהָעָם אֲשֶׁר לֹא הָיוּ לְמָנִים, הָיוּ נְפִיִּים;  
וְאוּלָם נִקְרְאוּ הֵם אֲנָשֵׁי נְפִי, אֲנָשֵׁי יַעֲקֹב,  
אֲנָשֵׁי יוֹסֵף, אֲנָשֵׁי זֹרָם, אֲנָשֵׁי לָמֹן, אֲנָשֵׁי  
לְמוּאֵל וְאֲנָשֵׁי יִשְׁמָעֵאל.
- 14 But I, Jacob, shall not hereafter distinguish them by these names, but I shall call them Lamanites that seek to destroy the people of Nephi, and those who are friendly to Nephi I shall call Nephites, or the people of Nephi, according to the reigns of the kings.
- וְאֲנִי, יַעֲקֹב, לֹא אַבְדִּיל בֵּינֵיהֶם בְּשֵׁמוֹת הָאֵלֶּה  
בְּכַתְּבִי, כִּי אֶכְנֶה כָּל־מְנִים אֶת אֲשֶׁר יִבְקְשׁוּ  
לְהַשְׁמִיד אֶת עַם נְפִי, וְאֶת יְדִידֵי נְפִי אֶכְנֶה  
נְפִיִּים, אוֹ עַם נְפִי, כְּמִשְׁפַּט שְׁלֹטוֹן הַמְּלָכִים.
- 15 And now it came to pass that the people of Nephi, under the reign of the second king, began to grow hard in their hearts, and indulge themselves somewhat in wicked practices, such as like unto David of old desiring many wives and concubines, and also Solomon, his son.
- וְהָיָה בִּימֵי הַמֶּלֶךְ הַשֵּׁנִי, הִחֲלוּ בְנֵי עַם נְפִי  
לְהַקְשׁוֹת אֶת לִבָּם וּלְהִתְעַנֵּג מֵעַט בַּמַּעֲשֵׂי  
רָשָׁע, וּכְדוּד בִּימֵי קְדָם, וְכַשְׁלֵמָה בְּנוֹ,  
בְּחָפְצָם לְקַחַת לָהֶם נָשִׁים וּפִילְגָּשִׁים רַבּוֹת.
- 16 Yea, and they also began to search much gold and silver, and began to be lifted up somewhat in pride.
- וְהֵם הִחֲלוּ לְבַקֵּשׁ רַב זָהָב וְכֶסֶף  
וְהִתְנַשְּׂאוּ בְּגִאוּהָ.
- 17 Wherefore I, Jacob, gave unto them these words as I taught them in the temple, having first obtained mine errand from the Lord.
- עַל כֵּן, אֲנִי, יַעֲקֹב, אֲמַרְתִּי לָהֶם אֶת הַדְּבָרִים  
הָאֵלֶּה כְּפִי אֲשֶׁר לְמִדְּתִים בְּבֵית הַמִּקְדָּשׁ,  
אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר קִבַּלְתִּי אֶת דְּבַר שְׁלִיחוּתִי מִיְהוָה.

## יעקב א:יח-ב:ז

- 18 כי אני, יעקב, ואחי יוסף, קדשנו בידי נפי להיות כהנים ומורים לבני העם הזה.
- 19 And we did magnify our office unto the Lord, taking upon us the responsibility, answering the sins of the people upon our own heads if we did not teach them the word of God with all diligence; wherefore, by laboring with our might their blood might not come upon our garments; otherwise their blood would come upon our garments, and we would not be found spotless at the last day.
- ורוממנו את משמרתנו לשם יהוה, בקחתנו עלינו את החובה, להסב את חטאי העם על ראשנו אלו לא למדנו אותם את דבר אלהים ברב שקידתנו; לכן, ברב עמלנו, לא יכתים דמם את לבושנו; ואלמלא זאת, היה דמם מכתים את לבושנו ולא היינו נמצאים ללא דפי ביום האחרון.

## ב

## 2

- 1 דברי יעקב, אחי נפי, אשר דבר אל עם נפי אחר מות נפי:
- 2 The words which Jacob, the brother of Nephi, spake unto the people of Nephi, after the death of Nephi:
- 2 הנה, אחי האהובים, אני, יעקב, כפי החובה הרובצת עלי לפני אלהים, לרומם את משמרתי בלב ער, ולרחק את חטאיכם מבגדי, הנני בא היום אל היכל הקדש להגיד לכם את דבר אלהים.
- 3 And ye yourselves know that I have hitherto been diligent in the office of my calling; but I this day am weighed down with much more desire and anxiety for the welfare of your souls than I have hitherto been.
- 3 יודעים אתם כי שקדתי עד היום לעמוד על משמרת פקדתי, אף היום מכריעה אותי, מרבה מלפנים, התשוקה לטובת נפשכם ולהדאגה לה.
- 4 For behold, as yet, ye have been obedient unto the word of the Lord, which I have given unto you.
- 4 הנה, עד עתה שמעתם לדבר יהוה אשר הבאתי לפניכם.
- 5 But behold, hearken ye unto me, and know that by the help of the all-powerful Creator of heaven and earth I can tell you concerning your thoughts, how that ye are beginning to labor in sin, which sin appeareth very abominable unto me, yea, and abominable unto God.
- 5 אף שמעוני ודעו אשר אוכל, בעזרת אל שדי, הבורא שמים וארץ, להגידכם על אודות מחשבותיכם, איכה תחלו לעמל בחטא, והוא חטא נתעב מאד בעיני ומאוס לפני אלהים.
- 6 Yea, it grieveth my soul and causeth me to shrink with shame before the presence of my Maker, that I must testify unto you concerning the wickedness of your hearts.
- 6 אכן, מדאיב הדבר את לבי, והוא מרתיעני בבשת פני לפני יוצרי, כי שומה עלי להעיד לפניכם על רשעת לבבכם.
- 7 And also it grieveth me that I must use so much boldness of speech concerning you, before your wives and your children, many of whose feelings are exceedingly tender and chaste and delicate before God, which thing is pleasing unto God;
- 7 ואף דואב אני, כי שומה עלי דבר עליכם קשות, לפני נשותיכם וטפכם, אשר רגשות רבים מהם רכים מאד, אף צנועים ועגבים לפני אלהים, אשר זאת לרצונו.

וְסָבוֹר אֲנִי כִּי בָאוּ הֵם הִנֵּה לְשִׁמְעַת אֶת  
דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים הַנִּרְצָה, אֲשֶׁר הוּא מְרַפֵּא  
לְנַפְשׁ פְּצוּעָה.

And it supposeth me that they have come up hither to hear the pleasing word of God, yea, the word which healeth the wounded soul.

לְכֵן שָׁחָה נַפְשִׁי מֵאֲלוּצֵי, כִּי אֱלֹהִים צוּנִי  
מִפְּרָשׁוֹת לְהוֹכִיחַ אֶתְכֶם כְּפִי פִשְׁעֵיכֶם,  
לְהַעֲמִיק אֶת פְּצָעֵי הַפְּצוּעִים, תַּחַת נְחוּמִים  
וְרַפּוּי פְּצָעֵיהֶם; וְאֲשֶׁר אֵינֶם פְּצוּעִים, תַּחַת  
אֲשֶׁר יִשְׁבִּיעוּ נֶפֶשׁ בְּדִבְרֵי אֱלֹהִים הַנִּרְצָה,  
יִשְׂאוּ חֶרֶב לְדַקֵּר אֶת נַפְשָׁם וּלְפַצֵּעַ אֶת  
לִבָּם הָעֵגֵג.

9 Wherefore, it burdeneth my soul that I should be constrained, because of the strict commandment which I have received from God, to admonish you according to your crimes, to enlarge the wounds of those who are already wounded, instead of consoling and healing their wounds; and those who have not been wounded, instead of feasting upon the pleasing word of God have daggers placed to pierce their souls and wound their delicate minds.

וְעַל אֵף כְּבֹד הַמִּשְׁאֵל, שׁוּמָה עָלַי לַעֲשׂוֹת כְּפִי  
אֲשֶׁר צוּנִי אֱלֹהִים מִפְּרָשׁוֹת, וּלְהַגִּידְכֶם עַל  
אוֹדוֹת רְשָׁעֵיכֶם וְתוֹעֲבוֹתֵיכֶם, לִפְנֵי הַטְּהוֹרִים  
בְּלִבָּם וּשְׁבוּרֵי הַלֵּב, וְתַחַת עֵינֵי הַחוֹדֶדֶת אֲשֶׁר  
לֹאֵל שָׁדִי.

10 But, notwithstanding the greatness of the task, I must do according to the strict commands of God, and tell you concerning your wickedness and abominations, in the presence of the pure in heart, and the broken heart, and under the glance of the piercing eye of the Almighty God.

עַל כֵּן, שׁוּמָה עָלַי לְהַגִּיד לָכֶם אֶת הָאֱמֶת עַל  
פִּי פִשְׁטוֹת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים. כִּי שָׁאַלְתִּי אֶת יְהוָה  
וְהָיָה אֵלַי דְּבָרוֹ לֵאמֹר: יַעֲקֹב, בּוֹאָה נָא לְמַחֲרָת  
אֶל הַיִּכָּל הַקֹּדֶשׁ וְהִגַּד לָעָם הַזֶּה אֶת הַדְּבָר  
אֲשֶׁר אֶתֵּן בְּפִי.

11 Wherefore, I must tell you the truth according to the plainness of the word of God. For behold, as I inquired of the Lord, thus came the word unto me, saying: Jacob, get thou up into the temple on the morrow, and declare the word which I shall give thee unto this people.

וְעַתָּה, אַחֵי, הִנֵּה הַדְּבָר אֲשֶׁר אֲגִידְכֶם: אֲכֹן,  
רַבִּים מִכֶּם הֵחֵלוּ לְבַקֵּשׁ זָהָב וְכֶסֶף וְכָל מִינֵי  
עִפְרוֹת יְקָרוֹת אֲשֶׁר הָאָרֶץ הַזֹּאת, אֲשֶׁר הִיא  
אָרֶץ יְעוּדָה לָכֶם וּלְזֶרְעְכֶם, אֲכֹן עֲתִירָה בָּהֶן  
עַד מָאֹד.

12 And now behold, my brethren, this is the word which I declare unto you, that many of you have begun to search for gold, and for silver, and for all manner of precious ores, in the which this land, which is a land of promise unto you and to your seed, doth abound most plentifully.

וַיַּד הַהִשְׁתַּחֲוָה הָעֲלִיוֹנָה חִיכָה אֲלֵיכֶם  
בְּכָל שְׁבִיעוֹת הָרָצוֹן וְהַעֲשִׁירָה אֶתְכֶם;  
וַיַּעַן אֲשֶׁר קִבְּלוּ כְּמָה מִכֶּם שֹׁפַע רַב מֵאֲחֵיכֶם,  
הַתְּנַשְׂאוֹת בְּגָאוֹת לְבָבְכֶם וְהַקִּשְׁיֹת עֲרֹף,  
וְהַגְּבֹהֶתֶם רֹאשׁ מִפְּנֵי יָקָר לְבוּשְׁכֶם, וְרוֹדְפִים  
אֶתְכֶם אֶת אַחֵיכֶם, בְּחָשְׁבְּכֶם אֲשֶׁר טוֹבִים  
אַתֶּם מֵאֵלֶּה.

13 And the hand of providence hath smiled upon you most pleasingly, that you have obtained many riches; and because some of you have obtained more abundantly than that of your brethren ye are lifted up in the pride of your hearts, and wear stiff necks and high heads because of the costliness of your apparel, and persecute your brethren because ye suppose that ye are better than they.

וְעַתָּה, אַחֵי, הַחוֹשְׁבִים אֶתְכֶם כִּי יַצְדִּיק אֶתְכֶם  
אֱלֹהִים בְּדִבְרֵי הַזֶּה? הֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם: לֹא, כִּי  
אִם יִגָּנֶה אֶתְכֶם; וְאִם תּוֹסִיפוּ עֲשׂוֹת כְּדִבְרֵי  
הָאֵלֶּה, עַד מְהֵרָה יָבוֹאוּ עֲלֵיכֶם שְׁפָטָיו.

14 And now, my brethren, do ye suppose that God justifieth you in this thing? Behold, I say unto you, Nay. But he condemneth you, and if ye persist in these things his judgments must speedily come unto you.

מִי יִתֵּן וַיִּרְאֶכֶם אֲשֶׁר יָכוֹל הוּא לְדַקֵּר בָּכֶם,  
וּבְמַבֵּט עֵינָיו לְמַחֵץ אֶתְכֶם אֶל הָעֶפְרָא!

15 O that he would show you that he can pierce you, and with one glance of his eye he can smite you to the dust!

## יעקב ב:טז-כו

- 16 O that he would rid you from this iniquity and abomination. And, O that ye would listen unto the word of his commands, and let not this pride of your hearts destroy your souls!
- מי יתן וינקה מן העון הזה והתועבה. ומי יתן ושמעתם אל מצוותיו ולא תכחד גאות לבכם הזאת את נפשכם!
- 17 Think of your brethren like unto yourselves, and be familiar with all and free with your substance, that they may be rich like unto you.
- חשבו על אחיכם כמוכם, והיו מידעים עם כל אחד ואחד ונדיבים בקניינכם, למען יעשירו הם כמוכם.
- 18 But before ye seek for riches, seek ye for the kingdom of God.
- וטרום בקשכם עשר, בקשו את מלכות אלהים.
- 19 And after ye have obtained a hope in Christ ye shall obtain riches, if ye seek them; and ye will seek them for the intent to do good—to clothe the naked, and to feed the hungry, and to liberate the captive, and administer relief to the sick and the afflicted.
- ואחר אשר תשיגו תקוה במשיח, תשיגו עשר, אם תבקשוהו; ואזי תבקשוהו בכונת עשות טוב, להלביש עירמים ולהאכיל רעבים, ולקרא דרור לאסירים ולהגיש סעד לחולים ולסובלים.
- 20 And now, my brethren, I have spoken unto you concerning pride; and those of you which have afflicted your neighbor, and persecuted him because ye were proud in your hearts, of the things which God hath given you, what say ye of it?
- והנה, אחי, דברתי אליכם על גאותכם: ואלה מכם אשר צררתם את שכונכם, ורדפתם אותו, מפני גאות לבכם מפני הדברים אשר העניק לכם אלהים, מה תאמרו על כך?
- 21 Do ye not suppose that such things are abominable unto him who created all flesh? And the one being is as precious in his sight as the other. And all flesh is of the dust; and for the selfsame end hath he created them, that they should keep his commandments and glorify him forever.
- האניכם סוברים כי בורא כל בשר יתעב מעשים אשר כאלה? כי כל אדם יקר בעיניו כזולתו, וכל הבשר יסודו בעפר; את כלם הוא ברא לתכלית האחת, למען ישמרו את מצוותיו ויפארוהו עד עולם.
- 22 And now I make an end of speaking unto you concerning this pride. And were it not that I must speak unto you concerning a grosser crime, my heart would rejoice exceedingly because of you.
- ועתה אכלה דברי אליכם על הגאווה; ואם לא היה עלי לדבר אליכם על פשע גדול יותר, שש היה לבי מפניכם עד מאוד.
- 23 But the word of God burdens me because of your grosser crimes. For behold, thus saith the Lord: This people begin to wax in iniquity; they understand not the scriptures, for they seek to excuse themselves in committing whoredoms, because of the things which were written concerning David, and Solomon his son.
- אף כבד דבר אלהים עלי מפני פשעיכם הגדולים. כי כה אמר יהוה: גברו עוונות העם הזה ואין הם מבינים בכתבי הקדש כי משאת נפשם היא לזכות עצמם מעברות זנות, מפני הכתוב על אודות דוד ושלמה בנו.
- 24 Behold, David and Solomon truly had many wives and concubines, which thing was abominable before me, saith the Lord.
- אכן, דוד ושלמה הרבו לשאת נשים ופילגשים לרב, והדבר היה נתעב לפני, נאום יהוה.
- 25 Wherefore, thus saith the Lord, I have led this people forth out of the land of Jerusalem, by the power of mine arm, that I might raise up unto me a righteous branch from the fruit of the loins of Joseph.
- לכן, כה אמר יהוה, אנכי הוצאתי את העם הזה מארץ ירושלם בכח זרועי, למען אנגיד לי צמח צדקה מפרי חלצי יוסף.
- 26 Wherefore, I the Lord God will not suffer that this people shall do like unto them of old.
- לכן, אני יהוה אלהים, לא אתן כי יעשה העם הזה כאשר עשו לפניהם.

## יעקב ב:כז-ג:א

- 27 על כן, שמעוני, אחי, והאזינו לדבר יהוה:  
איש מקרבכם לא ישא אשה, כי אם אחת,  
וכל פילגש לא תהיה לו.
- 28 כי אני, יהוה אלהים, חפץ בצניעות הנשים;  
וזנות תועבה היא לפני, נאום יהוה צבאות.
- 29 לכן ישמר העם הזה את מצוותי, ולא, ארורה  
תהיה הארץ בעבורם, נאום יהוה צבאות.
- 30 כי כה אמר יהוה צבאות: אם ברצוני לגדל  
לי זרע, אצוה את עמי, ולא, עליהם לשמע  
אל הדברים האלה.
- 31 כי אני, יהוה, ראיתי את יגון בנות עמי,  
ושמעתי את אנחתן בארץ ירושלם ובכל  
ארצות עמי, מפני רשעת בעליהן  
ותועבותיהם.
- 32 וכה אמר יהוה צבאות: לא אתן כי תעלינה  
אלי זעקות בנות העם הזה, הנאות, על  
אנשי עמי, אשר הוצאתיו מארץ ירושלם,  
נאום יהוה צבאות.
- 33 כי לא יגלו את בנות עמי מפני עדנותן, בלתי  
אם אפקדם קללה נמרצת, עד אבדן; כי לא  
יזנו כאשר לפני, נאום יהוה צבאות.
- 34 ועתה, אחי, אתם ידעתם כי נתנו המצוות  
האלה לאבינו, לחי, על כן ידעתם אותן  
תמול שלשום; אכן, אשרם כבד רבץ עליכם,  
כי עשיתם את אשר היה לכם לרחוק ממנו.
- 35 הנה הגדלתם עוון מן הלמנים, אחינו.  
שברתם לב נשיכם הענגות ואבדתם את  
אמון בניהם, כי דגמה רעה הייתם להם,  
ואנקות לבם עולות אל אלהים להעיד עליכם.  
ומפני דברי אלהים הנכוחים, הבאים עליכם,  
מתו לבבות רבים, מקררים פצעים עמקים.
- 37 Wherefore, my brethren, hear me, and hearken to the word of the Lord:  
For there shall not any man among you have save it be one wife; and  
concubines he shall have none;
- 38 For I, the Lord God, delight in the chastity of women. And whoredoms  
are an abomination before me; thus saith the Lord of Hosts.
- 39 Wherefore, this people shall keep my commandments, saith the Lord  
of Hosts, or cursed be the land for their sakes.
- 40 For if I will, saith the Lord of Hosts, raise up seed unto me, I will  
command my people; otherwise they shall hearken unto these things.
- 41 For behold, I, the Lord, have seen the sorrow, and heard the mourning  
of the daughters of my people in the land of Jerusalem, yea, and in all  
the lands of my people, because of the wickedness and abominations  
of their husbands.
- 42 And I will not suffer, saith the Lord of Hosts, that the cries of the fair  
daughters of this people, which I have led out of the land of Jerusalem,  
shall come up unto me against the men of my people, saith the Lord  
of Hosts.
- 43 For they shall not lead away captive the daughters of my people because  
of their tenderness, save I shall visit them with a sore curse, even unto  
destruction; for they shall not commit whoredoms, like unto them of  
old, saith the Lord of Hosts.
- 44 And now behold, my brethren, ye know that these commandments  
were given to our father, Lehi; wherefore, ye have known them before;  
and ye have come unto great condemnation; for ye have done these  
things which ye ought not to have done.
- 45 Behold, ye have done greater iniquities than the Lamanites, our  
brethren. Ye have broken the hearts of your tender wives, and lost  
the confidence of your children, because of your bad examples before  
them; and the sobbings of their hearts ascend up to God against you.  
And because of the strictness of the word of God, which cometh down  
against you, many hearts died, pierced with deep wounds.

ג

3

- 1 ואני, יעקב, חפץ לדבר אליכם, טהורי הלב.  
הביטו בדעת איתנה אל אלהים והתפללו
- 1 But behold, I, Jacob, would speak unto you that are pure in heart. Look  
unto God with firmness of mind, and pray unto him with exceeding



אֱלֹוֹ בְּאַמוּנָה יִתְּרָה, וְהוּא יִנְחֶמְכֶם בְּצָר  
לָכֶם, וְיָרִיב רִיבְכֶם, וְיֹרִיד מִשְׁפָּטוֹ עַל רֹאשׁ  
מִבְקָשֵׁי כְּלִיּוֹנְכֶם.

faith, and he will console you in your afflictions, and he will plead your cause, and send down justice upon those who seek your destruction.

שָׂאוּ רֹאשְׁכֶם, כָּל טְהוֹרֵי הַלֵּב, וְקַבְלוּ אֶת דְּבַר  
אֱלֹהִים הָרָצוּי, וְהִשְׁבִּיעוּ נֶפֶשׁ בְּאַהֲבָתוֹ, יַעַן  
אֲשֶׁר יְכוּלִים אַתֶּם, תָּמִיד, אִם אַף דַּעַתְכֶם  
אֵיתְנָה הִיא.

2 O all ye that are pure in heart, lift up your heads and receive the pleasing word of God, and feast upon his love; for ye may, if your minds are firm, forever.

אֶף אוֹי, אוֹי לָכֶם, אֲשֶׁר אֵינְכֶם טְהוֹרֵי לֵב, כִּי  
אִם טְמֵאִים הַיּוֹם לִפְנֵי אֱלֹהִים; אִם לֹא תִנְחֲמוּ  
מִחֻטְאֵיכֶם, אַרְוֶרָה תִּהְיֶה הָאָרֶץ בְּעִבּוּרְכֶם.  
וְהַלְמָנִים, אֲשֶׁר אֵינֶם טְמֵאִים כְּמוֹתְכֶם, אֶף  
מִקְלָלִים הֵם קָלְלָה נִמְרָצָת, יִכּוּכֶם עַד אֲבָדוֹן.

3 But, woe, woe, unto you that are not pure in heart, that are filthy this day before God; for except ye repent the land is cursed for your sakes; and the Lamanites, which are not filthy like unto you, nevertheless they are cursed with a sore cursing, shall scourge you even unto destruction.

וְעַד מְהֵרָה תָּבוֹא הָעֵת אֲשֶׁר בְּה, אִם לֹא תִשׁוּבוּ  
מִרְעַתְכֶם, יִנְחֲלוּ הַלְמָנִים אֶת אֶרֶץ יִשְׂרָאֵל  
וַיהוֹה אֱלֹהִים יוֹצִיא אֶת הַצַּדִּיקִים מִקִּרְבְּכֶם.

4 And the time speedily cometh, that except ye repent they shall possess the land of your inheritance, and the Lord God will lead away the righteous out from among you.

הֵן אַחֵיכֶם הַלְמָנִים, אֲשֶׁר תִּשְׁנְאוּם מִפְּנֵי  
טְמֵאָתָם וְהַקְלָלָה אֲשֶׁר בָּאָה עַל עוֹרָם,  
צַדִּיקִים מִכֶּם; כִּי לֹא שָׁכַחוּ אֶת מִצְוֹת יְהוֹה  
אֲשֶׁר צִוָּה אֶת אֲבוֹתֵינוּ לִשְׁאֵת אֶף אִשָּׁה אַחַת  
וְלִהְיוֹת מִפִּילְגָּשִׁים וּמִזְנוֹת.

5 Behold, the Lamanites your brethren, whom ye hate because of their filthiness and the cursing which hath come upon their skins, are more righteous than you; for they have not forgotten the commandment of the Lord, which was given unto our father—that they should have save it were one wife, and concubines they should have none, and there should not be whoredoms committed among them.

וְהֵם שׁוֹמְרִים לְקִים אֶת הַמִּצְוָה הַזֹּאת, לָכֵן,  
מִפְּנֵי שׁוֹמְרֵם אֶת הַמִּצְוָה, לֹא יִשְׁמִידֶם יְהוֹה  
אֱלֹהִים, כִּי אִם יִרְחֲמֶם, וַיּוֹסֵף יְהוֹה  
עִם מִבְרָךְ.

6 And now, this commandment they observe to keep; wherefore, because of this observance, in keeping this commandment, the Lord God will not destroy them, but will be merciful unto them; and one day they shall become a blessed people.

הֵן בְּעֲלִיהֶן אוֹהֲבִים אֶת נְשֹׁתֵיהֶם, וְנְשֹׁתֵיהֶם  
אוֹהֲבוֹת אֶת בְּעֲלֵיהֶן; וְהַבָּעִלִּים וְהַנָּשִׁים  
אוֹהֲבִים אֶת יְלָדֵיהֶם, וְחָסֵר אֱמוּנָתָם וְשִׁנְאָתָם  
אֲלֵיכֶם הִיא מִפְּנֵי עוֹוֹן אֲבוֹתֵיהֶם; לָכֵן, כַּמָּה  
טוֹבִים אַתֶּם מֵהֶם, בְּעֵינֵי בּוֹרְאֵכֶם הַגָּדוֹל?

7 Behold, their husbands love their wives, and their wives love their husbands; and their husbands and their wives love their children; and their unbelief and their hatred towards you is because of the iniquity of their fathers; wherefore, how much better are you than they, in the sight of your great Creator?

אָכֵן, אַחֵי, אִם לֹא תִנְחֲמוּ מִחֻטְאֵיכֶם,  
יָרָא אֲנִי כֹן יִהְיֶה עוֹר הַלְמָנִים בְּהִיר מַעוֹרְכֶם  
בְּעֵת אֲשֶׁר תּוֹבְאוּ עִמָּם לִפְנֵי כֹס אֱלֹהִים.

8 O my brethren, I fear that unless ye shall repent of your sins that their skins will be whiter than yours, when ye shall be brought with them before the throne of God.

עַל כֵּן, הִנְנִי מַצְוֶכֶם בְּדַבַּר אֱלֹהִים, אֲשֶׁר  
לֹא תִחַרְפוּם עוֹד עַל דְּבַר עוֹרָם הַכָּהָה וְאֲשֶׁר  
לֹא תִגְדְּפוּם עַל דְּבַר טְמֵאָתָם; אֶף אֶת  
טְמֵאָתְכֶם תִּזְכְּרוּ, וְחָכְרוּ כִּי טְמֵאָתָם בָּאָה  
מִפְּנֵי אֲבוֹתֵיהֶם.

9 Wherefore, a commandment I give unto you, which is the word of God, that ye revile no more against them because of the darkness of their skins; neither shall ye revile against them because of their filthiness; but ye shall remember your own filthiness, and remember that their filthiness came because of their fathers.



- לכן, זכרו את ילדיכם, כמה העצבתם את לבם בלקח אשר להתנהגותכם לפניכם; אף זכרו כי מפני טמאתכם עשויים אתם להביא כליון על ילדיכם, וחטאיכם יערמו על ראשכם ביום האחרון.
- 10 Wherefore, ye shall remember your children, how that ye have grieved their hearts because of the example that ye have set before them; and also, remember that ye may, because of your filthiness, bring your children unto destruction, and their sins be heaped upon your heads at the last day.
- אכן, אחי, שמעו אל דברי: עוררו נא את כחות נפשכם; התנערו למען תעורו מתנומת המות; התירו עצמכם ממכאובי שאול, למען לא תעשו מלאכים לשטן, ולא תשלוכו אל מקוה האש והגפרית אשר הוא המות השני.
- 11 O my brethren, hearken unto my words; arouse the faculties of your souls; shake yourselves that ye may awake from the slumber of death; and loose yourselves from the pains of hell that ye may not become angels to the devil, to be cast into that lake of fire and brimstone which is the second death.
- ואני, יעקב, דברתי עוד רבות אל בני עם נפי והזהרתיים מפני זנוגים וזמה וכל מיני חטא בהגיד ילדיכם מה נוראות תוצאותיהם.
- 12 And now I, Jacob, spake many more things unto the people of Nephi, warning them against fornication and lasciviousness, and every kind of sin, telling them the awful consequences of them.
- ואף חלק אחד ממאמץ מקורות העם הזה, אשר החל עתה להתעצם במנינו, לא יוכל להכתב על גבי הלוחות האלה, אולם רבות מקורותיהם, וכן דברי מלחמותיהם, מריבותיהם ושלטון מלכיהם, כתובים על הלוחות הגדולים.
- 13 And a hundredth part of the proceedings of this people, which now began to be numerous, cannot be written upon these plates; but many of their proceedings are written upon the larger plates, and their wars, and their contentions, and the reigns of their kings.
- הלוחות האלה נקראים בשם לוחות יעקב ונעשו הם ביד נפי. ואני מכלה לומר דברים אלה.
- 14 These plates are called the plates of Jacob, and they were made by the hand of Nephi. And I make an end of speaking these words.

## ד

## 4

- ואני יעקב, שרתי רבות את עמי בדברי, ולא אוכל לכתב כי אם מעט מדברי מפני קשי חריטת דברינו על גבי לוחות, אף יודעים אנחנו כי אשר נכתב על הלוחות אכן ישאר.
- 1 Now behold, it came to pass that I, Jacob, having ministered much unto my people in word, (and I cannot write but a little of my words, because of the difficulty of engraving our words upon plates) and we know that the things which we write upon plates must remain;
- וכל אשר נכתב, והוא לא נחרט על גבי לוחות, אכן יכלה ויאבד; אף נתן לנו לכתב דברים מעטים על לוחות, אשר יתנו לבנינו וכן לאחינו האהובים ידיעה מעטה על אודותינו, או על אודות אבותיהם.
- 2 But whatsoever things we write upon anything save it be upon plates must perish and vanish away; but we can write a few words upon plates, which will give our children, and also our beloved brethren, a small degree of knowledge concerning us, or concerning their fathers—
- הנה, בדבר הזה ישמח לבנו; ושווקדים אנחנו בעמלנו לחרט את הדברים האלה על לוחות, מקוים כי יקבלום אחינו האהובים וילדינו בתודת לבב ויביטו בהם למען ילמדו מהם בשמחה, ולא בצער או בבוז על אודות אבותיהם הראשונים.
- 3 Now in this thing we do rejoice; and we labor diligently to engraven these words upon plates, hoping that our beloved brethren and our children will receive them with thankful hearts, and look upon them that they may learn with joy and not with sorrow, neither with contempt, concerning their first parents.

## יעקב ד:ד-יא

כי בכונה זאת כתבנו את הדברים האלה, למען ידעו הם אשר ידענו אנחנו על המשיח והיתה לנו תקוה בתפארתו מאות שנים רבות לפני בואו; ולא רק לנו היתה תקוה בתפארתו, כי אם לכל הנביאים הקדושים אשר קדמונו.

הן אלה האמינו במשיח ועבדו את האב בשמו, ואף אנחנו עובדים את האב בשמו. ובכונה הזאת שומרים אנחנו את תורת משה כי מובילה היא את נפשנו אליו; ומפני שמירתנו מקדשת היא לנו לצדקה, כפי אשר נחשב לאברהם במדבר בהשמעו למצוות אלהים להקריב את בנו יצחק, אשר דומה הוא לאלהים ובנו הילוד היחיד.

על כן מחפשים אנחנו בדברי הנביאים ולנו רב התגליות ורוח הנבואה; ובהיות לנו כל העדיות האלה, מוצאים אנחנו תקוה ואמונתנו נהיית בלתי מערערת, עד כי אכן נוכל לצוות בשם ישוע וישמעו לנו אף העצים, ההרים וגלי הים.

אף עם זאת, מראה לנו יהוה אלהים את חלשתנו למען נדע כי על ידי חסדו ומחילת כבודו הגדולה לבני האדם, יש לנו כח לעשות את הדברים האלה.

הנה, גדולים ונפלאים מעשי יהוה. עד כמה נסתר חקר מעמקי מסתוריו. אין איש יכול לחקור את כל דרכיו; ולא ידע איש את דרכיו, בלתי אם יגלה לו; לכן, אחי, אל תבוזו לגלויי אלהים.

הן בכח דברו בא אדם על פני האדמה, והאדמה נבראה בכח דברו. לכן, אם יכול היה אלהים לדבר והעולם נהיה, ולדבר ונברא האדם, מדוע אפוא לא יוכל לצוות על האדמה או על יציר כפיו אשר על פניה, כפי חפצו ורצונו?

על כן, אחי, אל תבקשו יעץ ליהוה, כי אם בקשו עצמה מידו. הן יודעים אתם כי הוא יועץ לכל ברואיו בחכמה ובצדק וברחמים גדולים.

על כן, אחים אהובים, התרצו לפני אלהים על ידי כפרת המשיח, בנו הילוד היחיד, ותזכו בתחיה, כפי כח התחיה אשר במשיח,

4 For, for this intent have we written these things, that they may know that we knew of Christ, and we had a hope of his glory many hundred years before his coming; and not only we ourselves had a hope of his glory, but also all the holy prophets which were before us.

5 Behold, they believed in Christ and worshiped the Father in his name, and also we worship the Father in his name. And for this intent we keep the law of Moses, it pointing our souls to him; and for this cause it is sanctified unto us for righteousness, even as it was accounted unto Abraham in the wilderness to be obedient unto the commands of God in offering up his son Isaac, which is a similitude of God and his Only Begotten Son.

6 Wherefore, we search the prophets, and we have many revelations and the spirit of prophecy; and having all these witnesses we obtain a hope, and our faith becometh unshaken, insomuch that we truly can command in the name of Jesus and the very trees obey us, or the mountains, or the waves of the sea.

7 Nevertheless, the Lord God showeth us our weakness that we may know that it is by his grace, and his great condescensions unto the children of men, that we have power to do these things.

8 Behold, great and marvelous are the works of the Lord. How unsearchable are the depths of the mysteries of him; and it is impossible that man should find out all his ways. And no man knoweth of his ways save it be revealed unto him; wherefore, brethren, despise not the revelations of God.

9 For behold, by the power of his word man came upon the face of the earth, which earth was created by the power of his word. Wherefore, if God being able to speak and the world was, and to speak and man was created, O then, why not able to command the earth, or the workmanship of his hands upon the face of it, according to his will and pleasure?

10 Wherefore, brethren, seek not to counsel the Lord, but to take counsel from his hand. For behold, ye yourselves know that he counseleth in wisdom, and in justice, and in great mercy, over all his works.

11 Wherefore, beloved brethren, be reconciled unto him through the atonement of Christ, his Only Begotten Son, and ye may obtain a resurrection, according to the power of the resurrection which is in

## יעקב ד:יב-יח

והראו כפרי הבכורים אשר למשיח המובא  
לאֱלֹהִים, ובהיות לָכֶם בוֹ תְקוּנָה פֶּאֶר טוֹבָה,  
אִי טָרֵם יִתְגַּלֶּה בְּבָשָׁר.

Christ, and be presented as the first-fruits of Christ unto God, having faith, and obtained a good hope of glory in him before he manifesteth himself in the flesh.

וְעַתָּה, אֶהוּבִים, אֵל תִּשְׁתַּמְּחוּ עַל אֲשֶׁר אוֹמַר  
אֲנִי לָכֶם דְּבָרִים אֵלֶּה; אָכֵן, מִדּוּעַ לֹא נִדְבַר  
עַל כְּפָרֶת הַמִּשְׁחָה, לְהַשִּׁיג יְדִיעָה מִשְׁלֵמֹת בּוֹ,  
כִּהְשִׁיג אֶת יְדִיעַת הַתְחִיָּה וְהַעוֹלָם הַבֶּא?

12 And now, beloved, marvel not that I tell you these things; for why not speak of the atonement of Christ, and attain to a perfect knowledge of him, as to attain to the knowledge of a resurrection and the world to come?

הִנֵּה, אַחֵי, כֹּל הַמְתַּנְבֵּא, יִנְבֵּא נָא לִפְנֵי הַבְּנֵי  
בְּנֵי הָאָדָם; כִּי רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ תִּדְבֹּר אֶת הָאֱמֶת  
וְלֹא תִשְׁקַר. לָכֵן מִדְּבָרֶת הִיא עַל דְּבָרִים כְּפִי  
הַיּוֹתֵם בְּאֵמֶת וְעַל דְּבָרִים כְּפִי אֲשֶׁר יִהְיֶה  
בְּאֵמֶת; וְדְבָרִים אֵלֶּה מִתְגַּלִּים לָנוּ בְּרוּרוֹת,  
לְמַעַן יִשׁוּעַת נַפְשֵׁנוּ. וְהִנֵּה לֹא אֲנַחְנוּ לְבִדְנוּ  
עֲדִים לְדְבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, כִּי אָכֵן דְּבָרֵם אֱלֹהִים  
אֵל נְבִיאִים אֲשֶׁר מִקֶּדֶם.

13 Behold, my brethren, he that prophesieth, let him prophesy to the understanding of men; for the Spirit speaketh the truth and lieth not. Wherefore, it speaketh of things as they really are, and of things as they really will be; wherefore, these things are manifested unto us plainly, for the salvation of our souls. But behold, we are not witnesses alone in these things; for God also spake them unto prophets of old.

אֲנִי הַיְּהוּדִים עִם קִשָּׁה עָרְף הָיוּ וּבָזוּ אֶת  
הַדְּבָרִים הַבְּרוּרִים, וְהָרְגוּ אֶת הַנְּבִיאִים וּבִקְשׁוּ  
דְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר קָצְרָה בִּינְתָם מִהֲשִׁיג. עַל כֵּן,  
מִפְּנֵי עוֹרוֹנָם, אֲשֶׁר בָּא לָהֶם מִהִבְטֵם מִעֵבֶר  
לְמִטָּרָה, נָפֹל יָפֹלוּ. כִּי הִסִּיר אֱלֹהִים אֶת  
פִּשְׁטוֹתוֹ מֵהֶם וְשָׁלַח אֲלֵיהֶם דְּבָרִים רַבִּים  
אֲשֶׁר אֵין יְכוּלִים הֵם לְהַבִּין, כִּי כֵן חָפְצוּ. וַיַּעַן  
אֲשֶׁר חָפְצוּ כֵן, עָשָׂה אֱלֹהִים כְּדִבְרֵי הַזֶּה,  
לְמַעַן יִכָּשְׁלוּ.

14 But behold, the Jews were a stiffnecked people; and they despised the words of plainness, and killed the prophets, and sought for things that they could not understand. Wherefore, because of their blindness, which blindness came by looking beyond the mark, they must needs fall; for God hath taken away his plainness from them, and delivered unto them many things which they cannot understand, because they desired it. And because they desired it God hath done it, that they may stumble.

וְהִנֵּה אֲנִי, יַעֲקֹב, מוּבָל עַל יְדֵי הָרוּחַ לְהִנְבֵּא;  
כִּי מִבֵּין אֲנִי אֶת אִפֹּן פְּעֻלַּת רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ אֲשֶׁר  
בִּי, כִּי מִפְּנֵי כְשָׁלוֹנָם יִמָּאֲסוּ הַיְּהוּדִים אֶת  
הָאָכֵן אֲשֶׁר יְכוּלִים לִבְנוֹת עָלֶיהָ, לְהִיּוֹת  
לָהֶם יְסוֹד אֵיתָן.

15 And now I, Jacob, am led on by the Spirit unto prophesying; for I perceive by the workings of the Spirit which is in me, that by the stumbling of the Jews they will reject the stone upon which they might build and have safe foundation.

וְהִנֵּה, עַל פִּי כְתָבֵי הַקֹּדֶשׁ, תִּהְיֶה הָאָכֵן הַזֶּה אֶת  
הַגְּדוּלָּה וְהָאֲחֻרֹּנָה וְהַיְסוּד הַבְּטוּחַ הַיְחִיד,  
אֲשֶׁר עָלָיו יוּכְלוּ הַיְּהוּדִים לִבְנוֹת.

16 But behold, according to the scriptures, this stone shall become the great, and the last, and the only sure foundation, upon which the Jews can build.

וְעַתָּה, אֶהוּבִי, אִיד יִתְכֵּן אֲשֶׁר אֵלֶּה, אַחֵר  
מֵאָסָם אֶת הַיְסוּד הַבְּטוּחַ, וְיִכְלוּ בְּאִיזוֹ עַת  
לִבְנוֹת עָלָיו, לְמַעַן יִהְיֶה לָהֶם לְרֹאשׁ פִּנָּה?

17 And now, my beloved, how is it possible that these, after having rejected the sure foundation, can ever build upon it, that it may become the head of their corner?

רְאוּ, אַחֵי הָאֶהוּבִים, אֲגַלֶּה לָכֶם אֶת דְּבַר  
הַמִּסְתֵּר הַזֶּה, אִם לֹא אֶטְלֹטֵל, בְּכָל אִפֹּן  
שְׂהוּא, מִעַז מִבְּטָחִי בְּרוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ וְאִמְעַד  
מִפְּנֵי עֲצָם דְּאֲגָתִי לָכֶם.

18 Behold, my beloved brethren, I will unfold this mystery unto you; if I do not, by any means, get shaken from my firmness in the Spirit, and stumble because of my over anxiety for you.

## ה

## 5

הִנֵּה, אָחִי, הֲלֹא תִזְכְּרוּ כִּי קִרְאתֶם אֶת דְּבָרֵי  
הַנָּבִיא זֶנוֹס אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר עַל בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל לֵאמֹר:

שְׁמָעוּ, בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל, וְהֶאֱזִינוּ לְדְבָרִי, וְאֲנִי  
נָבִיא לַיהוָה.

כִּי כֹה אָמַר: הִנְנִי מִמְשִׁיל אֶתְכֶם, בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל,  
לְעֵץ זֵית מְשֻׁבַּח אֲשֶׁר לָקַחוּ אִישׁ וְגִדְלוּ בְּכַרְמוֹ;  
וְהוּא גָדַל וְאָף הִזְקִין וְהַחֵל לִנְבֹּל.

וְכֹא בַעַל הַכֶּרֶם וְרָאָה כִּי פָשָׁה הָרֶקֶב בָּעֵץ;  
וְהוּא אָמַר: אֲזַמְרֶנּוּ וְאֶעְדֵּר סְבִיבוֹתָיו וְאֶדְשָׁנּוּ;  
אוּלֵּי יִשָּׂא דְלִיּוֹת יְנִיקוֹת וְלֹא יֵאָבֵד.

וְהוּא זָמְרוּ וְעָדַר סְבִיבוֹתָיו, וְדָשְׁנוּ כְּאִשֶּׁר  
דִּבֶּר.

וְהָיָה אַחֵר יָמִים רַבִּים, הִחֵל הָעֵץ לִשְׁלַח  
אֶסְטָאט דְלִיּוֹת יְנִיקוֹת, אֲדָּה הִנֵּה הִחֵלָה צִמְחָתָהּ  
הָעֵץ לִנְבֹּל.

וְרָאָה בַעַל הַכֶּרֶם, וְאָמַר אֶל עַבְדּוֹ:  
צֵר לִי אֲשֶׁר יֵאָבֵד לִי הָעֵץ הַזֶּה; לָכֵן, לֵךְ וְכָרַת  
זְמוֹרוֹת מֵעֵץ זֵית הַגָּדֹל פָּרָא וְהִבִּיאוּ אֵלַי;  
וְאֶנְחֶנּוּ נִכְרֹת אֶת הָעֲנָפִים הָרָאשִׁיִּים אֲשֶׁר  
הִחֵלוּ לִנְבֹּל וְנִשְׁלִיכֶם בָּאֵשׁ וְהָיוּ לְכַעֵר.

וְאָמַר בַּעַל הַכֶּרֶם: הִנְנִי מְסִיר רַבּוֹת מִן  
הַדְלִיּוֹת הַיְנִיקוֹת הָאֵלֶּה וְהִרְפַּבְתִּין בְּכָל אֲשֶׁר  
אֶחָפֵץ; וְאַחַת הִיא לִי אִם אֶכֶן יֵאָבֵד שְׁרֵשׁ  
הָעֵץ הַזֶּה, אִם אֶךְ אֶת פְּרִיו אוֹכֵל לְשֹׁמֵר לִי.  
לָכֵן אֶקַּח אֶת הַדְלִיּוֹת הַיְנִיקוֹת הָאֵלֶּה  
וְאֶרְפִּיבֵן בְּכָל אֲשֶׁר אֶחָפֵץ.

קַח אֶתָּה אֶת זְמוֹרוֹת זֵית הַכֶּרֶם וְהִרְפַּבְתָּ אוֹתָן  
תַּחְתֵּיהֶן; וְאֲנִי אֲשַׁלֵּיךְ בָּאֵשׁ אֶת הָעֲנָפִים אֲשֶׁר  
כָּרַתִּי לְכַעֵר, כִּי יִהְיוּ לְמַפְנֵעַ בְּאֶדְמַת כְּרָמִי.

וַעֲשֵׂה עָבֵד בַּעַל הַכֶּרֶם כְּדִבְרֵי אֲדוֹנָיו, וְהִרְפִּיב  
אֶת זְמוֹרוֹת זֵית הַכֶּרֶם עַל הָעֵץ.

1 Behold, my brethren, do ye not remember to have read the words of the prophet Zenos, which he spake unto the house of Israel, saying:

2 Hearken, O ye house of Israel, and hear the words of me, a prophet of the Lord.

3 For behold, thus saith the Lord, I will liken thee, O house of Israel, like unto a tame olive-tree, which a man took and nourished in his vineyard; and it grew, and waxed old, and began to decay.

4 And it came to pass that the master of the vineyard went forth, and he saw that his olive-tree began to decay; and he said: I will prune it, and dig about it, and nourish it, that perhaps it may shoot forth young and tender branches, and it perish not.

5 And it came to pass that he pruned it, and digged about it, and nourished it according to his word.

6 And it came to pass that after many days it began to put forth somewhat a little, young and tender branches; but behold, the main top thereof began to perish.

7 And it came to pass that the master of the vineyard saw it, and he said unto his servant: It grieveth me that I should lose this tree; wherefore, go and pluck the branches from a wild olive-tree, and bring them hither unto me; and we will pluck off those main branches which are beginning to wither away, and we will cast them into the fire that they may be burned.

8 And behold, saith the Lord of the vineyard, I take away many of these young and tender branches, and I will graft them whithersoever I will; and it mattereth not that if it so be that the root of this tree will perish, I may preserve the fruit thereof unto myself; wherefore, I will take these young and tender branches, and I will graft them whithersoever I will.

9 Take thou the branches of the wild olive-tree, and graft them in, in the stead thereof; and these which I have plucked off I will cast into the fire and burn them, that they may not cumber the ground of my vineyard.

10 And it came to pass that the servant of the Lord of the vineyard did according to the word of the Lord of the vineyard, and grafted in the branches of the wild olive-tree.

- 11 And the Lord of the vineyard caused that it should be digged about, and pruned, and nourished, saying unto his servant: It grieveth me that I should lose this tree; wherefore, that perhaps I might preserve the roots thereof that they perish not, that I might preserve them unto myself, I have done this thing.
- 12 Wherefore, go thy way; watch the tree, and nourish it, according to my words.
- 13 And these will I place in the nethermost part of my vineyard, whithersoever I will, it mattereth not unto thee; and I do it that I may preserve unto myself the natural branches of the tree; and also, that I may lay up fruit thereof against the season, unto myself; for it grieveth me that I should lose this tree and the fruit thereof.
- 14 And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard went his way, and hid the natural branches of the tame olive-tree in the nethermost parts of the vineyard, some in one and some in another, according to his will and pleasure.
- 15 And it came to pass that a long time passed away, and the Lord of the vineyard said unto his servant: Come, let us go down into the vineyard, that we may labor in the vineyard.
- 16 And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard, and also the servant, went down into the vineyard to labor. And it came to pass that the servant said unto his master: Behold, look here; behold the tree.
- 17 And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard looked and beheld the tree in the which the wild olive branches had been grafted; and it had sprung forth and begun to bear fruit. And he beheld that it was good; and the fruit thereof was like unto the natural fruit.
- 18 And he said unto the servant: Behold, the branches of the wild tree have taken hold of the moisture of the root thereof, that the root thereof hath brought forth much strength; and because of the much strength of the root thereof the wild branches have brought forth tame fruit. Now, if we had not grafted in these branches, the tree thereof would have perished. And now, behold, I shall lay up much fruit, which the tree thereof hath brought forth; and the fruit thereof I shall lay up against the season, unto mine own self.
- 19 And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said unto the servant: Come, let us go to the nethermost part of the vineyard, and behold if the natural branches of the tree have not brought forth much fruit
- ובעל הכרם צוה לעדור סביבות העץ, לזמר אותו ולדשנו, ואמר אל עבדו: צר לי כי יאבד לי העץ הזה; לכן, בעבור אולי אציל את שרשיו לבל יאבדו, למען אשמרם לי, הן עשיתי זאת.
- על כן, לך לדרכך, ונצרת את העץ, וטפחתיו כדברי.
- ואת הנטישות האלה אניח בחלקת כרמי התחתונה; באשר אחפץ, אחת היא לה; זאת אעשה בעבור אשמר לי את ענפי העץ המשבחים, ולמען אקבץ לי מפריו עד בוא המועד; כי צר לי אשר יאבד לי העץ הזה ופריו.
- ובעל הכרם הלך לדרכו והטמין את נטישות עץ הזית המשבח בחלקות הכרם התחתונות, במקום זה ובמקום אחר כחפצו וכרצונו.
- והיה לאחר עבר עת ארבה, ואמר בעל הכרם אל עבדו: הבה נרדה אל הכרם לעבד בו.
- וירד בעל הכרם, וכן עבדו, אל הכרם לעמל. ואמר העבד אל אדוניו: הבט נא: ראה את העץ!
- ובעל הכרם הביט וראה את העץ אשר עליו הרקבו זמורות זית הבר, והנה צמח העץ והחל לעשות פרי. והוא ראה כי טוב, ופריו כפרי המשבח.
- והוא אמר אל עבדו: הנה, זמורות עץ הבר אֶחָזוּ בְלֶח שֶׁרֶשׁ הָעֵץ, וְהִשְׁרֵשׁ חֲזָקוֹ עַד מְאֹד, וּמִפְּנֵי רֹב כַּח הַשְׁרֵשׁ, הִבְשִׁילוּ זְמוֹרוֹת הַבֵּר פְּרִי מִשְׁבַּח. הֵן לֹא הִרְכַּבְנוּ אֶת הָעֲנָפִים הָאֵלֶּה, אֲבוֹד אֲבֵד הָעֵץ. וְעַתָּה אֶקְבֹּץ לִי פְרִי רֹב אֲשֶׁר עָשָׂה הָעֵץ וְאַצְפִּינוּ לִי עַד בּוֹא הַמוֹעֵד.
- ואמר בעל הכרם אל עבדו: הבה נלכה אל חלקת הכרם התחתונה ונראה אם עשו ענפי העץ המשבחים פרי לרב אף המה,



- וְקִבַּצְתִּי לִי אֶת פְּרִים עַד בּוֹא הַמוֹעֵד.  
also, that I may lay up of the fruit thereof against the season, unto mine own self.
- 20 וְהִם הֵלְכוּ אֶל הַמָּקוֹם אֲשֶׁר טָמַן בּוֹ בַּעַל הַכֶּרֶם אֶת נְטִישׁוֹת הָעֵץ הַמְּשֻׁבָּח. וְהוּא אָמַר אֶל הָעֶבֶד: רְאֵה אֶת אֱלֹהִי! וְהוּא רָאָה אֶת הָעֵץ הָרָאשׁוֹן וְהִנֵּה עֵשָׂה פְּרִי רַב; וְהוּא רָאָה כִּי טוֹב. וְהוּא אָמַר אֶל הָעֶבֶד: אֶסֶף מִפְּרִי הָעֵץ וְהִנִּיחֵהוּ עַד בּוֹא מוֹעֵד, בְּעִבּוֹר אֲשַׁמְרֵהוּ לִי, כִּי עַתָּה אֶרְכֶּה טַפְחָתִי אוֹתוֹ, וְעֵשָׂה פְּרִי רַב.  
20 And it came to pass that they went forth whither the master of the vineyard had hid the natural branches of the tree, and he said unto the servant: Behold these; and he beheld the first that it had brought forth much fruit; and he beheld also that it was good. And he said unto the servant: Take of the fruit thereof, and lay it up against the season, that I may preserve it unto mine own self; for behold, said he, this long time have I nourished it, and it hath brought forth much fruit.
- 21 וְאָמַר הָעֶבֶד אֶל אֲדוֹנָיו: מִדּוּעַ בָּאתָ הֵנָּה לִטְעַת אֶת הָעֵץ הַזֶּה, אַכֵּן חֲכָנָה הִזְאתָ? הֵן הִיְתָה זֶה הַדֹּלָה בְּכָל חֲלָקוֹת כְּרָמְךָ.  
21 And it came to pass that the servant said unto his master: How comest thou hither to plant this tree, or this branch of the tree? For behold, it was the poorest spot in all the land of thy vineyard.
- 22 וְאָמַר אֵלָיו בַּעַל הַכֶּרֶם: אַל תִּיעָצְנִי יְדַעְתִּי אֲשֶׁר הִיְתָה זֹאת חֲלָקַת אֲדָמָה דֹּלָה; לָכֵן אָמַרְתִּי לָךְ כִּי טַפְחָתִי אוֹתָהּ עַתָּה אֶרְכֶּה, וְהִנֵּה רוֹאָה כִּי הִרְבֵּתָהּ לַעֲשׂוֹת פְּרִי.  
22 And the Lord of the vineyard said unto him: Counsel me not; I knew that it was a poor spot of ground; wherefore, I said unto thee, I have nourished it this long time, and thou beholdest that it hath brought forth much fruit.
- 23 וְאָמַר בַּעַל הַכֶּרֶם אֶל עַבְדּוֹ: הִבֵּט נָא, הִנֵּה נִטְעֵתִי עוֹד כִּנָּה מִן הָעֵץ; וְאִתָּה יְדַעְתָּ אֲשֶׁר חֲלָקַת הָאֲדָמָה הִזְאתָ הִיְתָה דֹּלָה מִן הָרָאשׁוֹנָה. אַךְ רְאֵה אֶת הָעֵץ; עַתָּה אֶרְכֶּה טַפְחָתִי אוֹתוֹ וְעֵשָׂה פְּרִי רַב. לָכֵן, אֶסֶף אֶת פְּרִיו וְהִנִּיחֵהוּ עַד בּוֹא הַמוֹעֵד, בְּעִבּוֹר אֲשַׁמְרֵהוּ לִי.  
23 And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said unto his servant: Look hither; behold I have planted another branch of the tree also; and thou knowest that this spot of ground was poorer than the first. But, behold the tree. I have nourished it this long time, and it hath brought forth much fruit; therefore, gather it, and lay it up against the season, that I may preserve it unto mine own self.
- 24 וּבַעַל הַכֶּרֶם הוֹסִיף לֹאמַר אֶל עַבְדּוֹ: הִבֵּט נָא וּרְאֵה כִּנָּה נֹסֶפֶת, אֲשֶׁר גַּם אוֹתָהּ נִטְעֵתִי; הִנֵּה אַף אוֹתָהּ טַפְחָתִי וְעֵשָׂתָה פְּרִיָּהּ.  
24 And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said again unto his servant: Look hither, and behold another branch also, which I have planted; behold that I have nourished it also, and it hath brought forth fruit.
- 25 וְהוּא אָמַר אֶל הָעֶבֶד: הִבֵּט נָא וּרְאֵה אוֹתָהּ, הָאֲחֵרוֹנָה. הִנֵּה, נִטְעֵתִיהָ בְּחֻלָּקַת אֲדָמָה טוֹבָה, וְטַפְחָתִי אוֹתָהּ זֶה עַתָּה אֶרְכֶּה, וְנִתְּנָה רַק מִחֲצִית הָעֵץ פְּרִי מְשֻׁבָּח, וּמִחֲצִיתוֹ הָאֲחֵרָת עֵשָׂתָהּ פְּרִי בָר; הֵן טַפְחָתִי אֶת הָעֵץ הַזֶּה כְּטַפְחִי אֶת שְׂאֵר הָעֵצִים.  
25 And he said unto the servant: Look hither and behold the last. Behold, this have I planted in a good spot of ground; and I have nourished it this long time, and only a part of the tree hath brought forth tame fruit, and the other part of the tree hath brought forth wild fruit; behold, I have nourished this tree like unto the others.
- 26 וְאָמַר בַּעַל הַכֶּרֶם אֶל עַבְדּוֹ: לָךְ וְכֹרֶת אֶת עֲנָפָיו אֲשֶׁר לֹא עָשׂוּ פְּרִי טוֹב וְהִשְׁלַכְתָּם בָּאֵשׁ.  
26 And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said unto the servant: Pluck off the branches that have not brought forth good fruit, and cast them into the fire.
- 27 אֲוִלָּם אָמַר לוֹ הָעֶבֶד: הֵבָה נִזְמֹר נָא אֶת הָעֵץ, אַף נַעֲדֹר סְבִיבוֹתָיו וְנִטְפַּח אוֹתוֹ עוֹד מַעֲט, אוֹלִי יִתֵּן פְּרִי טוֹב לְמַעַן תִּקְבָּצוּ לָךְ עַד בּוֹא הַמוֹעֵד.  
27 But behold, the servant said unto him: Let us prune it, and dig about it, and nourish it a little longer, that perhaps it may bring forth good fruit unto thee, that thou canst lay it up against the season.



- 28 And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard and the servant of the Lord of the vineyard did nourish all the fruit of the vineyard.  
וְהָיָה כִּי עָשׂוּ כֵן, בָּעַל הַכֶּרֶם וְעַבְדּוֹ, וְטָפְחוּ אֶת כָּל פְּרֵי הַכֶּרֶם.
- 29 And it came to pass that a long time had passed away, and the Lord of the vineyard said unto his servant: Come, let us go down into the vineyard, that we may labor again in the vineyard. For behold, the time draweth near, and the end soon cometh; wherefore, I must lay up fruit against the season, unto mine own self.  
וְהָיָה אַחֵר עָבַר עֵת אַרְכָּה, אָמַר בָּעַל הַכֶּרֶם אֶל עַבְדּוֹ: הֵבֵה נִרְדָּה אֶל הַכֶּרֶם לְהוֹסִיף לַעֲמֹל בּוֹ. כִּי הִנֵּה, קִרְבָּה הָעֵת וְהַקֵּץ חָשׁ לְבֹא; עַל כֵּן, עָלִי לִקְבֹּץ לִי פְרִי עַד בּוֹא הַמוֹעֵד.
- 30 And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard and the servant went down into the vineyard; and they came to the tree whose natural branches had been broken off, and the wild branches had been grafted in; and behold all sorts of fruit did cumber the tree.  
וּבָעַל הַכֶּרֶם וְעַבְדּוֹ יָרְדּוּ אֶל הַכֶּרֶם; וְהֵם בָּאוּ אֶל הָעֵץ אֲשֶׁר עֲנָפוּ הַמִּשְׁבָּחִים נִכְרְתוּ וּזְמוֹרוֹת הַבֵּר הִרְכְּבוּ עָלָיו; וְהִנֵּה כָּל מִינֵי פְרִי מִכְבִּידִים עַל הָעֵץ.
- 31 And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard did taste of the fruit, every sort according to its number. And the Lord of the vineyard said: Behold, this long time have we nourished this tree, and I have laid up unto myself against the season much fruit.  
וּבָעַל הַכֶּרֶם טָעַם מִן הַפְּרִי, כָּל מִין כַּפִּי זֶנֶן, וְאָמַר: עֵת אַרְכָּה טָפְחֵנוּ אֶת הָעֵץ הַזֶּה וְקִבְצָתִי לִי פְרִי רַב עַד בּוֹא הַמוֹעֵד.
- 32 But behold, this time it hath brought forth much fruit, and there is none of it which is good. And behold, there are all kinds of bad fruit; and it profiteth me nothing, notwithstanding all our labor; and now it grieveth me that I should lose this tree.  
וְהִנֵּה, זֹאת הַפֶּעַם עָשָׂה הָעֵץ פְּרִי רַב אֲךָ אֵין בּוֹ אֶף אֶחָד אֲשֶׁר טוֹב הוּא. הִנֵּה, יֵשׁ בּוֹ כָּל מִינֵי בָאוּשִׁים, וְאֵין בּוֹ כֵּל יִתְרוֹן לִי, עַל אֶף כָּל עֲמָלִנִי; וְעַתָּה צָר לִי כִּי יֵאבֵד לִי הָעֵץ הַזֶּה.
- 33 And the Lord of the vineyard said unto the servant: What shall we do unto the tree, that I may preserve again good fruit thereof unto mine own self?  
וְאָמַר בָּעַל הַכֶּרֶם אֶל עַבְדּוֹ: מָה נַעֲשֶׂה לָעֵץ בְּעֵבוֹר אֶקְבֹּץ לִי שְׁנִית מִפְּרִיו הַטּוֹב?
- 34 And the servant said unto his master: Behold, because thou didst graft in the branches of the wild olive-tree they have nourished the roots, that they are alive and they have not perished; wherefore thou beholdest that they are yet good.  
וְאָמַר הָעַבֵּד אֶל אֲדוֹנָיו: יֵעַן אֲשֶׁר הִרְכַּבְתָּ אֶת זְמוֹרוֹת זֵית הַבֵּר, נִזְוְנוּ שְׂרָשֵׁי הָעֵץ מִן הָעֲנָפִים הַמִּרְכָּבִים, וְחַיִּים הֵמָּה, לֹא אָבְדוּ; אֲכֵן רוֹאֶה אֶתָּה כִּי שְׂרָשֵׁי הָעֵץ עוֹדִם טוֹבִים.
- 35 And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said unto his servant: The tree profiteth me nothing, and the roots thereof profit me nothing so long as it shall bring forth evil fruit.  
וְאָמַר בָּעַל הַכֶּרֶם אֶל עַבְדּוֹ: אֵין לִי כָּל תּוֹעֶלֶת בָּעֵץ, וְלֹא יוֹעִילוּנִי שְׂרָשָׁיו כָּל יְמֵי עֲשׂוֹת הָעֵץ בָּאוּשִׁים.
- 36 Nevertheless, I know that the roots are good, and for mine own purpose I have preserved them; and because of their much strength they have hitherto brought forth, from the wild branches, good fruit.  
אוֹלָם יָדַעְתִּי אֲשֶׁר שְׂרָשֵׁי הָעֵץ טוֹבִים וְנִצְרָתִים לְתַכְלִיתִי; וְיֵעַן אֲשֶׁר כֹּחָם רַב, הֵמָּה עָשׂוּ עַד כֹּה פְרִי טוֹב מִזְמוֹרוֹת הַבֵּר.
- 37 But behold, the wild branches have grown and have overrun the roots thereof; and because that the wild branches have overcome the roots thereof it hath brought forth much evil fruit; and because that it hath brought forth so much evil fruit thou beholdest that it beginneth to  
אֲךָ עַתָּה, הִנֵּה צָמְחוּ זְמוֹרוֹת הַבֵּר וּפָשְׁטוּ עַל שְׂרָשֵׁי הָעֵץ לְהַכְרִיעֵם; וְיֵעַן אֲשֶׁר פָּשְׁטוּ זְמוֹרוֹת הַבֵּר עַל שְׂרָשֵׁיהֶם, וְעָשׂוּ בָאוּשִׁים לָרַב, וְיֵעַן אֲשֶׁר הִרְבָּה הָעֵץ לַעֲשׂוֹת בָּאוּשִׁים,

- הַנֶּדָּה רוּאָה כִּי הַחֵל לְכָלוֹת; עַד מְהֵרָה יִנְבֵּל  
וְתִגַּע עֵתוֹ לִהְיוֹת מְשֻׁלָּךְ אֶל הָאֵשׁ, בְּלֹא  
אִם נַעֲשֶׂה דְבָר לְשָׁמְרוֹ.
- וְאָמַר בֶּעַל הַכֶּרֶם אֶל עַבְדּוֹ: הִבֵּה נִרְדֵּה אֶל  
חֲלָקוֹת הַכֶּרֶם הַתַּחְתּוֹנוֹת וְנִרְאָה אִם עָשׂוּ גַם  
הַכִּנּוֹת הַמְּשַׁבְּחוֹת בְּאוֹשִׁים.
- וְהֵם יָרְדוּ אֶל חֲלָקוֹת הַכֶּרֶם הַתַּחְתּוֹנוֹת,  
וְרָאוּ אֲשֶׁר פְּרִי הַכִּנּוֹת הַמְּשַׁבְּחוֹת נִשְׁחָתָה  
גַּם הוּא. אָכֵן, פְּרִי הָרִאשׁוֹנָה וְהַשֵּׁנִיָּה וְאִף  
הָאַחֲרוֹנָה; כָּל־מִן נִשְׁחָתָה.
- וּפְרִי הַבֵּר אֲשֶׁר לִכְנָה הָאַחֲרוֹנָה, אִף הוּא גָבַר  
עַל חֲצִי הָעֵץ אֲשֶׁר עָשָׂה פְּרִי טוֹב, עַד כִּי נָבֵל  
וָמָת.
- וּבֶעַל הַכֶּרֶם בָּכָה וְאָמַר אֶל עַבְדּוֹ: מֶה יִכְלֹתִי  
לַעֲשׂוֹת עוֹד לְכֶרְמִי?
- אָמַנְם יָדַעְתִּי אֲשֶׁר כָּל תְּנוּבַת כְּרָמִי, זֹלַת  
אֵלֶּה, נִשְׁחָתָה, וְהִנֵּה אֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר עָשׂוּ פִּעַם  
פְּרִי טוֹב, הִשְׁחִיתוּ אִף הֵן; וְעַתָּה, כָּל עֵצִי  
כְּרָמִי לֹא יִצְלַח לְהוֹשִׁיל, כִּי אִם לְגִדֵּם  
וּלְהַשְׁלִיכֵם אֶל הָאֵשׁ.
- וְהִנֵּה הָעֵץ הָאַחֲרוֹן אֲשֶׁר נָבֵל עֲנַפּוֹ, אוֹתוֹ  
נִטְעַמְתִּי בְּחִלְקָת אֲדָמָה טוֹבָה; אָכֵן, חֲלָקוֹתֵי  
נִבְחָרְתָּ הָיִיתָ לִי מִכָּל חֲלָקוֹת אֲדָמַת כְּרָמִי.
- וְאַתָּה רָאִיתָ כִּי אִף כְּרַתִּי אֶת אֲשֶׁר הָיָה  
לְמַפְנֶע בְּחִלְקָת הָאֲדָמָה הַזֹּאת, בְּעִבּוֹר אִשֶּׁע  
תַּחְתּוֹ אֶת הָעֵץ הַזֶּה.
- וְאַתָּה רָאִיתָ כִּי מִחֲצִית הָעֵץ הַזֹּאת נִתְּנָה פְּרִי  
טוֹב וּמִחֲצִיתוֹ הָאַחֲרָת עָשָׂתָה פְּרִי בָר; וַיֵּעַן  
אֲשֶׁר לֹא קִטַּפְתִּי אֶת עֲנַפָּיו וְלֹא הִשְׁלַכְתִּים אֶל  
הָאֵשׁ, גָּבְרוּ אֵלֶּה עַל הָעֵנָף הַטּוֹב וְנָבֵל הוּא.
- וְעַתָּה, עַל אִף כָּל אֲשֶׁר טַפְּחָנוּ בְּכֶרְמִי,  
הִשְׁחִיתוּ עֵצָיו וְלֹא עָשׂוּ פְּרִי טוֹב, וְאֲנִי קוִיתִי  
לְשָׁמְרָם, לְקַבֵּץ לִי פְּרִים עַד בּוֹא הַמּוֹעֵד.  
וְהִנֵּה נִהְיוּ כְּזֵית הַבֵּר וְאִין בָּהֶם לְהוֹשִׁיל, כִּי  
אִם לְגִדֵּם וּלְהַשְׁלִיכֵם אֶל הָאֵשׁ. צַר לִי כִּי  
יֵאבְדוּ לִי.
- perish; and it will soon become ripened, that it may be cast into the fire,  
except we should do something for it to preserve it.
- 38 And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said unto his servant:  
Let us go down into the nethermost parts of the vineyard, and behold  
if the natural branches have also brought forth evil fruit.
- 39 And it came to pass that they went down into the nethermost parts of  
the vineyard. And it came to pass that they beheld that the fruit of the  
natural branches had become corrupt also; yea, the first and the second  
and also the last; and they had all become corrupt.
- 40 And the wild fruit of the last had overcome that part of the tree which  
brought forth good fruit, even that the branch had withered away and  
died.
- 41 And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard wept, and said unto  
the servant: What could I have done more for my vineyard?
- 42 Behold, I knew that all the fruit of the vineyard, save it were these,  
had become corrupted. And now these which have once brought forth  
good fruit have also become corrupted; and now all the trees of my  
vineyard are good for nothing save it be to be hewn down and cast into  
the fire.
- 43 And behold this last, whose branch hath withered away, I did plant in  
a good spot of ground; yea, even that which was choice unto me above  
all other parts of the land of my vineyard.
- 44 And thou beheldest that I also cut down that which cumbered this spot  
of ground, that I might plant this tree in the stead thereof.
- 45 And thou beheldest that a part thereof brought forth good fruit, and  
a part thereof brought forth wild fruit; and because I plucked not  
the branches thereof and cast them into the fire, behold, they have  
overcome the good branch that it hath withered away.
- 46 And now, behold, notwithstanding all the care which we have taken of  
my vineyard, the trees thereof have become corrupted, that they bring  
forth no good fruit; and these I had hoped to preserve, to have laid up  
fruit thereof against the season, unto mine own self. But, behold, they  
have become like unto the wild olive-tree, and they are of no worth but  
to be hewn down and cast into the fire; and it grieveth me that I should  
lose them.

מה יכלתי לעשות עוד בכרמי? הרפתה ידי  
מטפח אותו? לא כן; כי טפחתי וגם עדרתי  
סביבותיו ואזמרהו, ואף זבלתי, וכמעט כל  
היום נטיתי יד; והקז קרב ובא. צר לי כי עלי  
לכרת את כל עצי כרמי ולהשליכם אל האש  
לבשרה. מי הוא אשר שחת את כרמי?

47 But what could I have done more in my vineyard? Have I slackened mine hand, that I have not nourished it, Nay, I have nourished it, and I have digged about it, and I have pruned it, and I have dunged it; and I have stretched forth mine hand almost all the day long, and the end draweth nigh. And it grieveth me that I should hew down all the trees of my vineyard, and cast them into the fire that they should be burned. Who is it that has corrupted my vineyard?

ואמר העבד אל אדוניו: האין מפני גבהות  
כרמך באה זאת? הלא גברו ענפיו על  
שרשיהם אשר טובים הם. ויען אשר גברו על  
שרשיהם, הנה צמחו מהר מאשר כח  
השרשים ולקחו כח למו. הנני אומר: האין  
זאת סבת השחתת עצי כרמך?

48 And it came to pass that the servant said unto his master: Is it not the loftiness of thy vineyard—have not the branches thereof overcome the roots which are good? And because the branches have overcome the roots thereof, behold they grew faster than the strength of the roots, taking strength unto themselves. Behold, I say, is not this the cause that the trees of thy vineyard have become corrupted?

ואמר בעל הכרם אל עבדו: הבה נרדה  
ונכרתה את עצי הכרם ונשליכם אל האש,  
לבל יהיו למפגע באדמת כרמי, כי עשיתי  
הכל. מה יכלתי לעשות עוד לכרמי?

49 And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said unto the servant: Let us go to and hew down the trees of the vineyard and cast them into the fire, that they shall not cumber the ground of my vineyard, for I have done all. What could I have done more for my vineyard?

אף הנה, אמר העבד אל בעל הכרם: חוסה  
נא על הכרם עוד מעט.

50 But, behold, the servant said unto the Lord of the vineyard: Spare it a little longer.

ואמר האדון: אכן, אנכי אחוס על כרמי  
עוד מעט, כי יצר לי באבד לי עציו.

51 And the Lord said: Yea, I will spare it a little longer, for it grieveth me that I should lose the trees of my vineyard.

לכן, הבה נקחה מן הפנות אשר נטעתי  
בחלקות כרמי התחתונות ונרביבן על העץ  
אשר לקחו ממנו; ונכרתה מן העץ את ענפיו  
אשר פרים מר מכל, ונרביב תחתיהם את  
הענפים המשבחים.

52 Wherefore, let us take of the branches of these which I have planted in the nethermost parts of my vineyard, and let us graft them into the tree from whence they came; and let us pluck from the tree those branches whose fruit is most bitter, and graft in the natural branches of the tree in the stead thereof.

ואני אעשה זאת פן יאבד העץ; אולי אשמר  
לי את שרשיו לתכלית אשר לי.

53 And this will I do that the tree may not perish, that, perhaps, I may preserve unto myself the roots thereof for mine own purpose.

והנה שרשי כנות העץ המשבחות, אשר  
נטעתי באשר חפצתי, עודם חיים. לכן,  
בעבור אשמר אף אותם לתכלית אשר לי,  
אקח מענפי העץ הזה וארביב עליהם. אכן,  
ארביב על הכנות ההן מענפי עץ מוצאן,  
בעבור אשמר לי אף את שרשיהן; והיה אם  
יחזקו דים, אולי יעשו לי פרי טוב ועוד אקנה  
לי תפארה בפרי כרמי.

54 And, behold, the roots of the natural branches of the tree which I planted whithersoever I would are yet alive; wherefore, that I may preserve them also for mine own purpose, I will take of the branches of this tree, and I will graft them in unto them. Yea, I will graft in unto them the branches of their mother tree, that I may preserve the roots also unto mine own self, that when they shall be sufficiently strong perhaps they may bring forth good fruit unto me, and I may yet have glory in the fruit of my vineyard.

והם לקחו מענפי העץ המשבחת, אשר הפך  
לעץ בר, והרביבו על העצים המשבחים,  
אשר הפכו אף הם גדולי בר.

55 And it came to pass that they took from the natural tree which had become wild, and grafted in unto the natural trees, which also had become wild.

- 56 And they also took of the natural trees which had become wild, and grafted into their mother tree.
- וְהֵם לָקְחוּ מֵעֵצֵי הַמִּשְׁבָּחִים, אֲשֶׁר הָפְכוּ גִדּוּלֵי בֵר, וְהִרְכִּיבוּם עַל עֵץ מוֹצָאָם.
- 57 And the Lord of the vineyard said unto the servant: Pluck not the wild branches from the trees, save it be those which are most bitter; and in them ye shall graft according to that which I have said.
- וַאֲמַר בֶּעַל הַכֶּרֶם אֶל עַבְדּוֹ: אַל תִּכְרֹת אֶת עֵנְפֵי הַבֵּר מִן הָעֵצִים, כִּי אִם אֶת הַמְרִים בִּיּוֹתָר, וְהִרְכַּבְתָּ תַּחְתֵּיהֶם כַּאֲשֶׁר אָמַרְתִּי.
- 58 And we will nourish again the trees of the vineyard, and we will trim up the branches thereof; and we will pluck from the trees those branches which are ripened, that must perish, and cast them into the fire.
- וְאֶנְחֲנוּ נוֹסִיף לְטַפֵּחַ בְּעֵצֵי הַכֶּרֶם, וְנִזְמַר אֶת עֵנְפֵיהֶם, וְנִכְרֹת אֶת עֵנְפֵי הָעֵצִים אֲשֶׁר נִבְלוּ וְאֲשֶׁר קִרְבָּה עַת כְּלִיוָנָם, וְנִשְׁלִיכֵם אֶל הָאֵשׁ.
- 59 And this I do that, perhaps, the roots thereof may take strength because of their goodness; and because of the change of the branches, that the good may overcome the evil.
- וְזֹאת אֲנִי אַעֲשֶׂה בְּעִבּוֹר יִתְחַזְּקוּ שְׂרָשֵׁי הָעֵצִים, עַל כִּי טוֹבִים הֵמָּה; וְיַעַן אֲשֶׁר הִחֲלָפוּ עֵנְפֵיהֶם, אוֹלֵי יִגְבְּרוּ הַטּוֹבִים עַל הָרָעִים.
- 60 And because that I have preserved the natural branches and the roots thereof, and that I have grafted in the natural branches again into their mother tree, and have preserved the roots of their mother tree, that, perhaps, the trees of my vineyard may bring forth again good fruit; and that I may have joy again in the fruit of my vineyard, and, perhaps, that I may rejoice exceedingly that I have preserved the roots and the branches of the first fruit—
- וְיַעַן אֲשֶׁר אֶשְׁמֹר אֶת הַכִּנּוֹת הַמִּשְׁבָּחוֹת וְאֶת שְׂרָשֵׁיהֶן וּמִפְנֵי הַשִּׁיבּוֹן בְּהִרְכִּבִי אוֹתָם עַל עֵץ מוֹצָאָן, לְשֹׁמֵר אֶת שְׂרָשֵׁיו, אוֹלֵי יַעֲשׂוּ עֵצֵי כֶרֶמִי שֵׁנִית פְּרִי טוֹב, וְאֲנִי אֶשְׂמַח שֵׁנִית בְּפְרִי כֶרֶמִי, וְאֶשְׂשֵׁי מְשׁוֹשׁ: עַל כִּי שָׁמַרְתִּי אֶת שְׂרָשֵׁי הַפְּרִי הָרִאשׁוֹן וְעֵנְפָיו.
- 61 Wherefore, go to, and call servants, that we may labor diligently with our might in the vineyard, that we may prepare the way, that I may bring forth again the natural fruit, which natural fruit is good and the most precious above all other fruit.
- לָכֵן, לֵךְ אַתָּה וְקִרְאֵת לַעֲבָדִים, לְמַעַן נִשְׁקֹד לַעֲמַל בְּכֶרֶם בְּכָל מַאֲדָנוּ לַפְנוֹת אֶת הַדֶּרֶךְ, בְּעִבּוֹר אוֹצִיא שֵׁנִית אֶת הַפְּרִי הַמִּשְׁבָּח, אֲשֶׁר הוּא הַטּוֹב וְהַיָּקָר מִכָּל פְּרִי.
- 62 Wherefore, let us go to and labor with our might this last time, for behold the end draweth nigh, and this is for the last time that I shall prune my vineyard.
- עַל כֵּן, הִבֵּה נִלְכָּה וְנַעֲמַל, זֹאת הַפֶּעַם הָאַחֲרוֹנָה, בְּכָל מַאֲדָנוּ, כִּי קָרֵב הַקֵּץ וּבָא, וְזֹאת הַפֶּעַם הָאַחֲרוֹנָה אֲשֶׁר אֶזְמַר אֶת כֶּרֶמִי.
- 63 Graft in the branches; begin at the last that they may be first, and that the first may be last, and dig about the trees, both old and young, the first and the last; and the last and the first, that all may be nourished once again for the last time.
- הִרְכַּב נָא אֶת הָעֵנְפִים, וְהִתְחַלֵּת בְּאַחֲרוֹנִים לְמַעַן יִהְיוּ רִאשׁוֹנִים, וּלְמַעַן יִהְיוּ הָרִאשׁוֹנִים אַחֲרוֹנִים. עֲדַר נָא סְבִיבוֹת הָעֵצִים, הַזָּקֵן כַּצֶּעִיר, רִאשׁוֹנִים בְּאַחֲרוֹנִים וְאַחֲרוֹנִים בְּרִאשׁוֹנִים, לְמַעַן יִשׁוּבוּ כֻלָּם וְיִתְכַלְכְּלוּ בַּפֶּעַם הָאַחֲרוֹנָה.
- 64 Wherefore, dig about them, and prune them, and dung them once more, for the last time, for the end draweth nigh. And if it be so that these last grafts shall grow, and bring forth the natural fruit, then shall ye prepare the way for them, that they may grow.
- עַל כֵּן, עֲדַר סְבִיבוֹתָם, זָמְרָם וְשׁוּב לְזַבֵּלָם, בַּפֶּעַם הָאַחֲרוֹנָה, כִּי הַקֵּץ קָרֵב וּבָא. וְהִיָּה אִם יִצְמְחוּ הִרְכָּבִים הָאַחֲרוֹנִים הָאֵלֶּה, וְיַעֲשׂוּ פְרִי מִשְׁבָּח, הֲכֵן תִּכְּנִין אֶת דֶּרֶכָם לְמַעַן יִגְדְּלוּ.
- 65 And as they begin to grow ye shall clear away the branches which bring forth bitter fruit, according to the strength of the good and the size thereof; and ye shall not clear away the bad thereof all at once, lest the
- וּבִהְחֵלֵם לִגְדֹל, וְהִסְרֹת אֶת הָעֵנְפִים הָעוֹשִׂים פְּרִי מַר, כְּפִי כֹחַ הַטּוֹבִים וְגִדְלָם; אַכֵּן, אַל תִּסֵּר אֶת הָרָעִים בְּאַחַת, כֹּן יִהְיוּ הַשְּׂרָשִׁים

## יעקב ה:סו-עד

חֲזָקִים מִרְכָּבֵיהֶם, וְהַמְרָכָבִים יָבִלוּ וַיֵּאבְדּוּ לִי  
עֲצֵי כַרְמִי.

roots thereof should be too strong for the graft, and the graft thereof shall perish, and I lose the trees of my vineyard.

כִּי יֵצֵר לִי בְּאֵבֶד לִי עֲצֵי כַרְמִי; לָכֵן, הִסִּירָה נָא  
אֶת הָעֲנָפִים הָרָעִים בְּהִתְאֵם לְגִדִּילַת הַטּוֹבִים,  
לְמַעַן יִהְיוּ שְׁוִים הַשָּׁרֵשׁ וְהַצִּמָּת זֶה לָזֶה  
בְּכַחַם, עַד אֲשֶׁר יִגְבְּרוּ הַטּוֹבִים עַל הָרָעִים;  
וְהָרָעִים יִגְדְּעוּ וְאֵל הָאֵשׁ יִשְׁלָכוּ, לְבָל יִהְיוּ  
לְמַפְנֵעַ בְּאֲדַמַּת כַּרְמִי; כֹּךְ אֲטֹאטָא אֶת  
הָרָעִים הַחוּצָה מִכַּרְמִי.

66 For it grieveth me that I should lose the trees of my vineyard; wherefore ye shall clear away the bad according as the good shall grow, that the root and the top may be equal in strength, until the good shall overcome the bad, and the bad be hewn down and cast into the fire, that they cumber not the ground of my vineyard; and thus will I sweep away the bad out of my vineyard.

אָכֵן, אֶת כְּנוֹת הָעֵץ הַמִּשְׁבָּח אֶרְכִּיב שְׁנִית  
עַל הָעֵץ הַמִּשְׁבָּח;

67 And the branches of the natural tree will I graft in again into the natural tree;

וְאֶת עֲנָפֵי הָעֵץ הַמִּשְׁבָּח אֶרְכִּיב עַל הַכְּנוֹת  
הַמִּשְׁבָּחוֹת, כֹּךְ שׁוּב הַבְּאֲתָיִם יִחדוּ, לְמַעַן  
יַעֲשׂוּ פְרִי מִשְׁבָּח וְהָיוּ לְאֶחָד.

68 And the branches of the natural tree will I graft into the natural branches of the tree; and thus will I bring them together again, that they shall bring forth the natural fruit, and they shall be one.

וְהָעֲנָפִים הָרָעִים יִשְׁלָכוּ הַחוּצָה מִכָּל אֲדַמַּת  
כַּרְמִי; כִּי רַק בְּפַעַם הַזֹּאת אֶזְמַר אֶת כַּרְמִי.

69 And the bad shall be cast away, yea, even out of all the land of my vineyard; for behold, only this once will I prune my vineyard.

וּבַעַל הַכָּרִם שָׁלַח אֶת עַבְדּוֹ; וְהָעַבְדַּ הֵלֵךְ  
וַעֲשָׂה כְּמִצְוֹת אֲדוֹנָיו, וַהֲבִיא עֲבָדִים נֹסְפִים;  
וְהָיוּ אֵלֶּה מְעַטִּים.

70 And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard sent his servant; and the servant went and did as the Lord had commanded him, and brought other servants; and they were few.

וַאֲמַר אֲלֵיהֶם בַּעַל הַכָּרִם: לָכוּ וְעַמְלֵתֶם  
בַּכָּרִם בְּכָל מְאֹדְכֶם. כִּי הִנֵּה, זֹאת הַפַּעַם  
הָאַחֲרוֹנָה אֲשֶׁר אֲטַפֵּחַ אֶת כַּרְמִי; כִּי אָכֵן  
קָרוֹב הַקֵּץ וְהַמוֹעֵד בְּמַהֲרָה יָבוֹא; וְהָיָה אִם  
תִּאֲמָצוּ כְּחֹכֶם בַּעֲבוּדָה עִמִּי, וְשִׁמַּחְתֶּם בְּפְרִי  
אֲשֶׁר אֶאֱסֹף לִי לְמוֹעֵד אֲשֶׁר חֵשׁ הוּא לָבוֹא.

71 And the Lord of the vineyard said unto them: Go to, and labor in the vineyard, with your might. For behold, this is the last time that I shall nourish my vineyard; for the end is nigh at hand, and the season speedily cometh; and if ye labor with your might with me ye shall have joy in the fruit which I shall lay up unto myself against the time which will soon come.

וְהָעַבְדִּים הֵלְכוּ וַאֲמָצוּ אֶת כָּחֶם בַּעֲבוּדָה;  
וְאִף בַּעַל הַכָּרִם עָמַל עִמָּם; וְהֵם עָשׂוּ כְּכֹל  
אֲשֶׁר צִוּם.

72 And it came to pass that the servants did go and labor with their might; and the Lord of the vineyard labored also with them; and they did obey the commandments of the Lord of the vineyard in all things.

וְהַכָּרִם שָׁב וְנָתַן אֶת פְּרִיו הַמִּשְׁבָּח.  
וְהָעֲנָפִים הַמִּשְׁבָּחִים הֵחֵלוּ לִצְמַח וּלְשִׁגְשֹׁג  
עַד מְאֹד; וְהִחֲלָה כְּרִיתַת זְמוֹרוֹת הַבֵּר  
וְהַשְׁלָכָתָן; וְכֹךְ נִשְׁמְרוּ הַשָּׁרֵשׁ וְהַצִּמָּת  
שְׁוִים, בְּהִתְאֵם לְכַחַם.

73 And there began to be the natural fruit again in the vineyard; and the natural branches began to grow and thrive exceedingly; and the wild branches began to be plucked off and to be cast away; and they did keep the root and the top thereof equal, according to the strength thereof.

וְהָעַבְדִּים שָׁקְדוּ בְּעַמְלָם, כְּכֹל אֲשֶׁר צִוּם בַּעַל  
הַכָּרִם, עַד אֲשֶׁר הִשְׁלָכוּ הַחוּצָה מִן הַכָּרִם  
הָעֲנָפִים הָרָעִים; וְהָאֲדוֹן שָׁמַר לוֹ אֶת הָעֲצִים  
לְמַעַן יִשׁוּבוּ לַעֲשׂוֹת אֶת הַפְּרִי הַמִּשְׁבָּח;  
וְהָעֲצִים נַעֲשׂוּ כְּאֵלוּ גוֹי אֶחָד; וּפְרוֹתֵיהֶם הָיוּ

74 And thus they labored, with all diligence, according to the commandments of the Lord of the vineyard, even until the bad had been cast away out of the vineyard, and the Lord had preserved unto himself that the trees had become again the natural fruit; and they became like unto one body; and the fruits were equal; and the Lord of the vineyard



## יעקב ה:עה-ו:ד

שנים; ובעל הכרם שמר לו את הפרי המשבח,  
אשר הוא יקר לו עד מאד מראשיתו.

had preserved unto himself the natural fruit, which was most precious  
unto him from the beginning.

והיה כראות בעל הכרם כי פריו טוב וכרמו  
חדל לשחת, והוא קרא אל עבדיו ואמר אליהם:  
הנה, זאת הפעם האחרונה אשר טפחנו את  
כרמי; ורואים אתם כי כפי חפצי עשיתי  
בשמרי את הפרי המשבח, וכי טוב הוא  
כפי שהיה בראשונה. ברוכים אתם, כי אחר  
שקידתכם בעמל עמי בכרמי, ושמירתכם  
את מצוותי, ואחר הביאתכם אלי שנית את  
הפרי המשבח, עד כי אין כרמי משחת עוד,  
והרע משלך ממנו החוצה, היה תהיה לכם  
שמחה עמדי, בעבור פרי כרמי.

75 And it came to pass that when the Lord of the vineyard saw that his  
fruit was good, and that his vineyard was no more corrupt, he called  
up his servants, and said unto them: Behold, for this last time have we  
nourished my vineyard; and thou beholdest that I have done according  
to my will; and I have preserved the natural fruit, that it is good, even  
like as it was in the beginning. And blessed art thou; for because ye  
have been diligent in laboring with me in my vineyard, and have kept  
my commandments, and have brought unto me again the natural fruit,  
that my vineyard is no more corrupted, and the bad is cast away, behold  
ye shall have joy with me because of the fruit of my vineyard.

כי עת ארכה אקבץ לי מפרי כרמי עד  
בוא המועד, אשר קרב ובא; וזאת הפעם  
האחרונה אשר טפחתי ומרתי את כרמי  
ועדרתי את סביבותיו וזבלתי. לכן אקבץ לי  
מן הפרי לארץ ימים, באשר דברתי.

76 For behold, for a long time will I lay up of the fruit of my vineyard unto  
mine own self against the season, which speedily cometh; and for the  
last time have I nourished my vineyard, and pruned it, and dug about  
it, and dunged it; wherefore I will lay up unto mine own self of the fruit,  
for a long time, according to that which I have spoken.

ובבוא העת אשר ישוב כרמי לעשות פרי רע,  
אזי אצוה לאסוף את הפרי הטוב והרע; את  
הפרי הטוב שמור אשמר לי, ואת הרע אשליך  
החוצה אל מקומו. אזי בוא המועד ויגיע  
הקץ, ואצוה אשר יהיה כרמי לבערה באש.

77 And when the time cometh that evil fruit shall again come into my  
vineyard, then will I cause the good and the bad to be gathered; and the  
good will I preserve unto myself, and the bad will I cast away into its  
own place. And then cometh the season and the end; and my vineyard  
will I cause to be burned with fire.

## 1

## 6

ועתה, אחי, הן אמרתי לכם כי אתנבא, והנה  
זאת נבואתי: הדברים אשר דבר הנביא זנוס  
על בית ישראל, אשר בהם המשילם לעץ זית  
משבח, קום יקומו.

1 And now, behold, my brethren, as I said unto you that I would prophesy,  
behold, this is my prophecy—that the things which this prophet Zenos  
spake, concerning the house of Israel, in the which he likened them  
unto a tame olive-tree, must surely come to pass.

והיום אשר יוסיף יהוה שנית ידו לקנות את  
עמו להשיבם, הוא, אכן, הפעם האחרונה  
אשר יצאו עבדי יהוה בכחו לטפל בכרמו  
ולזמר אותו; ואחר זאת, במהרה יבוא הקץ.

2 And the day that he shall set his hand again the second time to recover  
his people, is the day, yea, even the last time, that the servants of the  
Lord shall go forth in his power, to nourish and prune his vineyard;  
and after that the end soon cometh.

ומה ברוכים הם אלה אשר שקדו לעמל  
בכרם, ומה ארורים אלה אשר ישלכו החוצה  
אל מקומם! והעולם ישרף באש.

3 And how blessed are they who have labored diligently in his vineyard;  
and how cursed are they who shall be cast out into their own place!  
And the world shall be burned with fire.

מה רבים רחמי אלהינו עלינו, כי זוכר הוא  
את בית ישראל, שרשים וענפים, והוא כל  
היום שולח את ידיו אליהם; והם עם קשה

4 And how merciful is our God unto us, for he remembereth the house  
of Israel, both roots and branches; and he stretches forth his hands  
unto them all the day long; and they are a stiffnecked and a gainsaying



## יעקב ו:ה-יג

- עֲרֵף וְסוֹרְרִים; אֲךָ כָּל אֲשֶׁר לֹא יִקְשֶׁה אֶת לְבוֹ, יִישָׁע בְּמַלְכוּת אֱלֹהִים.
- עַל כֵּן, אַחֵי הָאֱהוּבִים, הִנְנִי מִפְּצִיר בָּכֶם בְּדִבְרִים מְפֻכְחִים, לְהִנָּחֵם מִחֲטָא וּלְבֹא אֶל אֱלֹהִים בְּלֵב שָׁלֵם, וּלְדַבֵּק בּוֹ כְּפִי הַדְּבָקוֹ בָּכֶם. וּבְעוֹד זָרוּעַ רַחֲמָיו שְׁלֹחָה אֲלֵיכֶם בְּאוֹר הַיּוֹם, אֵל תִּקְשׁוּ לְבַבְכֶּם.
- אֲכֹן, הַיּוֹם, אִם תִּשְׁמְעוּ בְּקוֹלִי, אֵל תִּקְשׁוּ לְבַבְכֶּם; כִּי לָמָּה תָּמוּתוּ?
- הִנֵּה, אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר כָּלְכַל אֶתְכֶם דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים הַטּוֹב כָּל הַיּוֹם, הַתְּשֹׂאוּ פְּרִי רֵעַ לְהַגְדֵּעַ וּלְהַיִּית מִשְׁלָכִים בָּאֵשׁ?
- הַתְּמַאֲסוּ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה? הַתְּשִׁיבוּ פְּנֵיכֶם מִדְּבַרֵי הַנְּבִיאִים? הַתְּדַחוּ אֶת כָּל הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר נֶאֱמְרוּ עַל אוֹדוֹת הַמְּשִׁיחַ, אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר כֹּה רַבִּים דְּבָרוּ עָלָיו? הַתְּשַׁלְּלוּ אֶת בְּשׁוֹרְתוֹ הַטּוֹבָה שֶׁל הַמְּשִׁיחַ, וְאֶת כֹּחַ אֱלֹהִים, וְאֶת מַתַּת רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ? הַתְּכַבּוּ אֶת רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ וְתִשְׁמְיֻהוּ לְלַעַג אֶת תְּכֵנִית הַגְּאֻלָּה הַגְּדוּלָּה, אֲשֶׁר נִעְרְכָה בְּעִבּוּרְכֶם?
- הֲלֹא תִדְעוּ אֲשֶׁר בְּעִשְׂוֹתְכֶם אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה יִבְיֹאֲכֶם כֹּחַ הַגְּאֻלָּה וְהַתְּחִיָּה, אֲשֶׁר בַּמְּשִׁיחַ, לַעֲמֹד בְּבוֹשָׁה וּבְאִשְׁמָה נוֹרָאָה לִפְנֵי כֹס הַמִּשְׁפָּט אֲשֶׁר לְאֱלֹהִים?
- וְעַל פִּי כֹחַ מִשְׁפָּטוֹ, כִּי לֹא יוּפָר צִדְקוֹ, שׁוּמָה עָלֵיכֶם לָרֶדֶת אֶל מְקוֹה הָאֵשׁ וְהַגְּפָרִית, אֲשֶׁר שְׁלֵהֲבֹתוֹ לֹא תִכָּבֵּה, וְעִשְׁנוֹ עוֹלָה לָעַד, וְהוּא יְסוּרֵי אֵין קֵץ.
- אֲנֹא, אַחֵי הָאֱהוּבִים, הִנָּחֲמוּ מִחֲטָא וְהִכָּנְסוּ בְּשַׁעַר הַצָּר, וּלְכוּ בַּמִּשְׁעוֹל הַצָּר עַד אֲשֶׁר תִּקְבְּלוּ חַיֵּי עוֹלָם.
- אֲנֹא, הִשְׁכִּילוּ. מָה אוֹסִיף דַּבֵּר?
- וּכְכִלּוֹתִי אֶת דְּבָרִי, הִנְנִי מְבָרֵךְ אֶתְכֶם לְשָׁלוֹם, עַד אֲשֶׁר אֶפְגְּשְׁכֶם לִפְנֵי כֹס מִשְׁפָּטוֹ הַנִּרְצָה אֲשֶׁר לְאֱלֹהִים, הַמַּכָּה אֶת הַרְשָׁעִים בְּפֶחַד אִים וּבְמוֹרָא. אָמֵן.
- 5 Wherefore, my beloved brethren, I beseech of you in words of soberness that ye would repent, and come with full purpose of heart, and cleave unto God as he cleaveth unto you. And while his arm of mercy is extended towards you in the light of the day, harden not your hearts.
- 6 Yea, today, if ye will hear his voice, harden not your hearts; for why will ye die?
- 7 For behold, after ye have been nourished by the good word of God all the day long, will ye bring forth evil fruit, that ye must be hewn down and cast into the fire?
- 8 Behold, will ye reject these words? Will ye reject the words of the prophets; and will ye reject all the words which have been spoken concerning Christ, after so many have spoken concerning him; and deny the good word of Christ, and the power of God, and the gift of the Holy Ghost, and quench the Holy Spirit, and make a mock of the great plan of redemption, which hath been laid for you?
- 9 Know ye not that if ye will do these things, that the power of the redemption and the resurrection, which is in Christ, will bring you to stand with shame and awful guilt before the bar of God?
- 10 And according to the power of justice, for justice cannot be denied, ye must go away into that lake of fire and brimstone, whose flames are unquenchable, and whose smoke ascendeth up forever and ever, which lake of fire and brimstone is endless torment.
- 11 O then, my beloved brethren, repent ye, and enter in at the strait gate, and continue in the way which is narrow, until ye shall obtain eternal life.
- 12 O be wise; what can I say more?
- 13 Finally, I bid you farewell, until I shall meet you before the pleasing bar of God, which bar striketh the wicked with awful dread and fear. Amen.

ז

7

- וְהָיָה כְּעָבַר שָׁנִים מִסְפָּר, קָם אִישׁ בְּקֶרֶב עָם  
נָפִי, וְשָׁמוֹ נִקְרָא שֶׁרֶם.
- וְהוּא הֵחֵל לְהִטִּיף בְּקֶרֶב הָעָם וְהַשְׁמִיעֵם כִּי  
לֹא יִהְיֶה מָשִׁיחַ. וְהִרְבֵּה הוּא לְהִטִּיף אֶל הָעָם  
חֲלָקוֹת, לְמַעַן יָדִיחַ אֶת תּוֹרַת הַמָּשִׁיחַ.
- וְהוּא שָׁקַד בְּעִמְלּוֹ לְמַשּׁוֹף אֶת לֵב הָעָם, עַד  
אֲשֶׁר עָלָה בִּידּוֹ לְמַשּׁוֹף לֵב רַבִּים. וַיַּעַן אֲשֶׁר  
יָדַע כִּי אֲנִי, יַעֲקֹב, הָאֵמֵנָתִי בַּמָּשִׁיחַ הַעֲתִיד  
לְבוֹא, הִרְבֵּה לְבַקֵּשׁ עֵת לְבוֹא אֵלַי.
- וְהוּא הָיָה מְלָמֵד, וַיֵּדַע הֵיטֵב אֶת שְׁפַת הָעָם;  
עַל כֵּן יָכֹל הָיָה לְהִרְבּוֹת חֲלָקוֹת לְשׁוֹן וּלְפַעַל  
בְּכַח הַדְּבֹר, כְּכִי כַח הַשָּׁטָן.
- וְהוּא קָנָה לְהַדִּיחַנִי מִן הָאֵמֻנָה, עַל אֲף  
הַהִתְגַּלִּיּוֹת הָרַבּוֹת וְהַדְּבָרִים הָרַבִּים אֲשֶׁר  
רָאִיתִי עַל אוֹדוֹת דְּבָרִים אֵלֶּה; כִּי אֵמֵנָם  
רָאִיתִי מִלְּאֲכִים וְהֵם אָבֹן שְׁרֵתוֹנִי. אֲף  
שָׁמַעְתִּי, כְּפַעַם בְּפַעַם, אֶת קוֹל יְהוָה מְדַבֵּר  
אֵלַי מִלִּים בְּרוּרוֹת; לָכֵן לֹא נָתַן הָיָה לְהַדִּיחַנִי.
- וְהָיָה כִּי הוּא בָּא אֵלַי, וַדְּבַר אֵלַי בְּזֶה הָאָפֹן.  
לֵאמֹר: אַחִי יַעֲקֹב, בְּקִשְׁתִּי הִרְבֵּה לְדַבֵּר אֵלֶיךָ  
כִּי שָׁמַעְתִּי, וְאֲף יָדַעְתִּי לִי, אֲשֶׁר מְרַבֵּה אֶתָּה  
לְלַכֵּת בְּקֶרֶב הָעָם וּלְהִטִּיף עַל הַדְּבָר אֲשֶׁר  
אַתָּם קוֹרְאִים הַבְּשׂוּרָה, אוֹ תּוֹרַת הַמָּשִׁיחַ.
- וְאַתָּה הוֹבֵלֶת רַבִּים מִן הָעָם הַזֶּה לַעֲוֹת אֶת דֶּרֶךְ  
אֱלֹהִים הַיִּשְׁרָה, וּלְחַדֵּל מִשְׁמִירַת תּוֹרַת מֹשֶׁה,  
אֲשֶׁר הִיא דֶּרֶךְ הַיִּשְׁרָה, וּלְהַחֲלִיף אֶת תּוֹרַת מֹשֶׁה  
בְּעִבּוֹדֹת מִי אֲשֶׁר לְדְבָרֶיךָ יָבוֹא בְּעוֹד מֵאוֹת  
שָׁנִים רַבּוֹת. וְעַתָּה, אֲנִי, שֶׁרֶם, אוֹמֵר לָךְ אֲשֶׁר  
זֶה גְדוּף, כִּי אֵין אִישׁ יוֹדֵעַ דְּבָרִים כְּאַלֶּה וְלֹא  
יֻכַּל אָדָם לְסַפֵּר עַל הַבְּאוֹת. כֹּף רַב עָמִי שֶׁרֶם.
- אֲף הִנֵּה שָׁפַף יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים אֶל נַפְשִׁי אֶת רוּחוֹ  
עַד כִּי הִכְלַמְתִּיו בְּכָל דְּבָרָיו.
- 1 And now it came to pass after some years had passed away, there came a man among the people of Nephi, whose name was Sherem.
- 2 And it came to pass that he began to preach among the people, and to declare unto them that there should be no Christ. And he preached many things which were flattering unto the people; and this he did that he might overthrow the doctrine of Christ.
- 3 And he labored diligently that he might lead away the hearts of the people, insomuch that he did lead away many hearts; and he knowing that I, Jacob, had faith in Christ who should come, he sought much opportunity that he might come unto me.
- 4 And he was learned, that he had a perfect knowledge of the language of the people; wherefore, he could use much flattery, and much power of speech, according to the power of the devil.
- 5 And he had hope to shake me from the faith, notwithstanding the many revelations and the many things which I had seen concerning these things; for I truly had seen angels, and they had ministered unto me. And also, I had heard the voice of the Lord speaking unto me in very word, from time to time; wherefore, I could not be shaken.
- 6 And it came to pass that he came unto me, and on this wise did he speak unto me, saying: Brother Jacob, I have sought much opportunity that I might speak unto you; for I have heard and also know that thou goest about much, preaching that which ye call the gospel, or the doctrine of Christ.
- 7 And ye have led away much of this people that they pervert the right way of God, and keep not the law of Moses which is the right way; and convert the law of Moses into the worship of a being which ye say shall come many hundred years hence. And now behold, I, Sherem, declare unto you that this is blasphemy; for no man knoweth of such things; for he cannot tell of things to come. And after this manner did Sherem contend against me.
- 8 But behold, the Lord God poured in his Spirit into my soul, insomuch that I did confound him in all his words.

וְאָמַרְתִּי אֵלָיו: הַתַּכְחַשׁ בְּמִשִּׁיחַ אֲשֶׁר יָבוֹא?  
וְהוּא אָמַר: אִם אָכֵן יִהְיֶה מְשִׁיחַ, לֹא אֶכְחַשׁ  
בוֹ; אֲבָל אֲנִי יוֹדֵעַ כִּי אֵין מְשִׁיחַ, וְאִף לֹא הָיָה,  
וְלֹא יִהְיֶה לְעוֹלָם.

9 And I said unto him: Deniest thou the Christ who shall come? And he said: If there should be a Christ, I would not deny him; but I know that there is no Christ, neither has been, nor ever will be.

וְאָמַרְתִּי אֵלָיו: הֲתֵאֱמִין בְּכַתְבֵי הַקִּדְשׁ?  
וְהוּא אָמַר: אָכֵן.

10 And I said unto him: Believest thou the scriptures? And he said, Yea.

וְאָמַרְתִּי אֵלָיו: אִם כֵּן אַפּוֹא אֵינְךָ מְבִינֵם, כִּי  
אֱלֹהִים מַעֲיִדִים נִאֻמָּנָה עַל הַמְּשִׁיחַ, הַנִּגְנִי אוֹמְרָה  
לְךָ אֲשֶׁר אִף אֶחָד מִן הַנְּבִיאִים לֹא כָּתַב וְלֹא  
נָבֵא, כִּי אִם דְּבַר עַל אֲדוּת הַמְּשִׁיחַ הַזֶּה.

11 And I said unto him: Then ye do not understand them; for they truly testify of Christ. Behold, I say unto you that none of the prophets have written, nor prophesied, save they have spoken concerning this Christ.

וְאֵין זֹאת הַכֹּל, אָכֵן נִגְלָה לִי הַדְּבַר, כִּי רָאִיתִיו  
וְגַם שָׁמַעְתִּיו; וְאִף נֹדַע לִי בְכַח רוּחַ הַקִּדְשׁ;  
עַל כֵּן יוֹדֵעַ אֲנִי אֲשֶׁר אִם לֹא תַעֲשֶׂה כְּפָרָה,  
אֲבוֹד יֵאבֹד כָּל הָאָדָם.

12 And this is not all—it has been made manifest unto me, for I have heard and seen; and it also has been made manifest unto me by the power of the Holy Ghost; wherefore, I know if there should be no atonement made all mankind must be lost.

וְהוּא אָמַר אֵלָיו: הֲרָאִנִּי אוֹת מֵאֵת כֹּחַ רוּחַ  
הַקִּדְשׁ הַזֶּה, אֲשֶׁר כֹּה רַבָּה יְדִיעַתְךָ עָלָיו.

13 And it came to pass that he said unto me: Show me a sign by this power of the Holy Ghost, in the which ye know so much.

וְאָמַרְתִּי אֵלָיו: מָה אֲנִי אֲשֶׁר אֲנֹסֶה אֶת אֱלֹהִים  
לְמַעַן יֵרָאֶה אוֹת בְּדַבַּר אֲשֶׁר הִנֵּךְ יוֹדֵעַ כִּי אֱמַת  
הוּא? עַל אִף זֹאת נִכְרַתְנִכְרַת, כִּי מֵאֵת הַשָּׁטָן  
הִנֵּךְ. וְאוֹלָם לֹא כְרַצוֹנִי יַעֲשֶׂה; אִף אִם יִכָּה  
אֱלֹהִים, יִהְיֶה זֶה אוֹת לְךָ אֲשֶׁר לוֹ הַכֹּחַ,  
בְּשָׁמַיִם וּבָאָרֶץ, וְאִף כִּי בּוֹא יָבוֹא הַמְּשִׁיחַ.  
אֲנִי, יְהוָה, יַעֲשֶׂה נָא רְצוֹנְךָ וְלֹא רְצוֹנִי.

14 And I said unto him: What am I that I should tempt God to show unto thee a sign in the thing which thou knowest to be true? Yet thou wilt deny it, because thou art of the devil. Nevertheless, not my will be done; but if God shall smite thee, let that be a sign unto thee that he has power, both in heaven and in earth; and also, that Christ shall come. And thy will, O Lord, be done, and not mine.

וּבְאֶמְרִי, יַעֲקֹב, אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה,  
בָּא עָלָיו כֹּחַ יְהוָה, עַד כִּי נָפַל אֶרְצָה. וְאַחֲרֵי  
הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה הוּא הִתְכַּלְכֵּל יָמִים רַבִּים.

15 And it came to pass that when I, Jacob, had spoken these words, the power of the Lord came upon him, insomuch that he fell to the earth. And it came to pass that he was nourished for the space of many days.

יוֹם בָּא וְהוּא דְּבַר אֶל הָעָם לֵאמֹר: הֲאִסְפוּ  
מָחָר, כִּי עֵת מוֹתִי בָּאָה; עַל כֵּן חֲפָצְתִּי לְדַבֵּר  
אֶל הָעָם לִפְנֵי מוֹתִי.

16 And it came to pass that he said unto the people: Gather together on the morrow, for I shall die; wherefore, I desire to speak unto the people before I shall die.

וְהָיָה לַמָּחָרָת, וְנִאֲסַף הַמּוֹן הָעָם; וְהוּא דְּבַר  
אֲלֵיהֶם מִפְּרִשׁוֹת וְכַחֵשׁ בְּדְבָרִים אֲשֶׁר הוֹרָה  
אוֹתָם; וְהוּא הִתְנַדָּה עַל הַמְּשִׁיחַ וְכַח רוּחַ  
הַקִּדְשׁ וְשֵׁרוֹת הַמַּלְאָכִים.

17 And it came to pass that on the morrow the multitude were gathered together; and he spake plainly unto them and denied the things which he had taught them, and confessed the Christ, and the power of the Holy Ghost, and the ministering of angels.

וְהוּא דְּבַר אֲלֵיהֶם בְּרוּרוֹת, עַל כִּי מִכַּח הַשָּׁטָן  
רָמָה. וְהוּא דְּבַר עַל שְׂאוֹל וְעַל חַי עוֹלָם וְעַל  
עֲנִשׁ נִצְחִי.

18 And he spake plainly unto them, that he had been deceived by the power of the devil. And he spake of hell, and of eternity, and of eternal punishment.

- 19 והוא אמר: יראתי פן חטאתי חטא בל יסלח, כי כזבתי לאלהים; כי כחשתי במשיח ואמרתי כי האמנתי בכתבי הקדש; ואלה אכן מעידים עליי. ויען אשר כזבתי כף לאלהים, גדולה יראתי פן נורא יהיה משפטי; אך הנני מתודה לפני אלהים.
- 20 And he said: I fear lest I have committed the unpardonable sin, for I have lied unto God; for I denied the Christ, and said that I believed the scriptures; and they truly testify of him. And because I have thus lied unto God I greatly fear lest my case shall be awful; but I confess unto God.
- 21 וככלותו לומר את הדברים האלה, לא יכול היה לדבר עוד, והשיב את נשמתו.
- 22 And it came to pass that when he had said these words he could say no more, and he gave up the ghost.
- 23 והנה כאשר שמע ההמון את הדברים האלה מפיו, בעמדו להשיב את נשמתו, השתוממו מאד, עד כי ירד עליהם כח אלהים, וגבר עליהם, והם נפלו ארצה.
- 24 And when the multitude had witnessed that he spake these things as he was about to give up the ghost, they were astonished exceedingly; insomuch that the power of God came down upon them, and they were overcome that they fell to the earth.
- 25 והדבר הזה לרצון היה לי, כי אני, יעקב, בקשתי אותו מאת אבי אשר בשמים; כי הוא שמע צעקתי וענה לתפילתי.
- 26 Now, this thing was pleasing unto me, Jacob, for I had requested it of my Father who was in heaven; for he had heard my cry and answered my prayer.
- 27 והשלוש ואהבת אלהים שבו אל העם; והם התבוננו בכתבי הקדש ולא האזינו עוד לדברי הרשע ההוא.
- 28 And it came to pass that peace and the love of God was restored again among the people; and they searched the scriptures, and hearkened no more to the words of this wicked man.
- 29 ותחבולות רבות נמצאו למען תקן את דעת הלמנים ולהשיבם אל האמת; אך הכל לשוא היה כי הם ששו אלי קרב ושפיכת דמים, ושנאת עולם שנאו אותנו, אחיהם. והם בקשו תמיד להשמידנו בלח נשקם.
- 30 And it came to pass that many means were devised to reclaim and restore the Lamanites to the knowledge of the truth; but it all was vain, for they delighted in wars and bloodshed, and they had an eternal hatred against us, their brethren. And they sought by the power of their arms to destroy us continually.
- 31 על פן התבצרו הנפיים עליהם בכלי נשקם ובכל כחם, בבטחם באלהים, צור ישועתם; לכן כבשו את אויביהם, עד היום הזה.
- 32 Wherefore, the people of Nephi did fortify against them with their arms, and with all their might, trusting in the God and rock of their salvation; wherefore, they became as yet, conquerors of their enemies.
- 33 ואני, יעקב, קרבתי לשיבה. ויען אשר כתובים דברי ימי העם הזה על הלוחות הנוספים אשר לנפי, הנני חותם את כתב הזכרון הזה בהגיד כי כתבתי כפי מיטב ידיעתי, וכי חלף הזמן עמנו וגם חיינו חלפו עלינו כבחלום, בהיותנו עם בודד ושוקט, נודדים, מדחים מירושלם, ליליד עת צרה, במדבר, שנאי אחינו אשר הסבו מלחמות וריב; על פן עברו עלינו ימינו ביגון.
- 34 And it came to pass that I, Jacob, began to be old; and the record of this people being kept on the other plates of Nephi, wherefore, I conclude this record, declaring that I have written according to the best of my knowledge, by saying that the time passed away with us, and also our lives passed away like as it were unto us a dream, we being a lonesome and a solemn people, wanderers, cast out from Jerusalem, born in tribulation, in a wilderness, and hated of our brethren, which caused wars and contentions; wherefore, we did mourn out our days.
- 35 ואני, יעקב, ראיתי אשר קרב ובא יום רדתי אלי קבר; על פן אמרתי לבני אנש: קח נא את הלוחות האלה. ואמרתי לו את אשר צוני אחי נפי, והוא אמר כי ישמע אל מצוותי.
- 36 And I, Jacob, saw that I must soon go down to my grave; wherefore, I said unto my son Enos: Take these plates. And I told him the things which my brother Nephi had commanded me, and he promised obedience unto the commands. And I make an end of my writing

## אנוש א:א-ט

וְאֲנִי שָׁם קִץ לְכַתִּיבְתִּי עַל הַלִּיחוֹת הָאֵלֶּה,  
וּכְתִבְתִּי מַעֲשִׂים; וְאֵת הַקּוֹרֵא אֲבָרֶךְ לְשָׁלוֹם;  
הֵן תִּקְנוֹתַי אֲשֶׁר רַבִּים מֵאַחִי יִקְרְאוּ אֶת דְּבָרִי.  
הָיָה שָׁלוֹם, אֲחִים!

upon these plates, which writing has been small; and to the reader I  
bid farewell, hoping that many of my brethren may read my words.  
Brethren, adieu.

## ספר אנוש

אֲנוֹשׁ מִתְפַּלֵּל וְשׁוֹמֵעַ לְקוֹל יְהוָה. הוּא שָׁשׁ בְּשֵׁל  
הָאֲפָשָׁרוֹת לְמַצֵּא מְנוּחָה עִם גּוֹאֲלוֹ. (בְּעֶרְךָ 420  
לפני הספירה.)

## THE BOOK OF ENOS

*Enos prays and hears the voice of the Lord. He rejoices in the prospect of  
finding rest with his Redeemer. (About 420 B.C.)*

אֲנִי, אֲנוֹשׁ, יָעַן אֲשֶׁר יָדַעְתִּי כִּי אָבִי הִיָּה אִישׁ  
צַדִּיק, עַל כִּי לְמַדְנִי בְּשִׁפְתּוֹ וּבְתוֹרַת יְהוָה  
וּתּוֹכַחְתּוֹ, לָכֵן אֲבָרֶךְ עַל כָּךְ אֶת שֵׁם אֱלֹהֵי:

1 Behold, it came to pass that I, Enos, knowing my father that he was a  
just man—for he taught me in his language, and also in the nurture and  
admonition of the Lord—and blessed be the name of my God for it—

וְאֲנִי אֶסְפֹּר לָכֵם עַל מַאֲבָקִי לִפְנֵי אֱלֹהִים,  
בְּטָרֶם נִמְחְלוּ לִי חַטָּאִי.

2 And I will tell you of the wrestle which I had before God, before I  
received a remission of my sins.

וְהִיָּה כִּי יֵצְאֵתִי לְצוּד חַיּוֹת בְּיַעְרוֹת; וְהִדְבְּרִים  
אֲשֶׁר שָׁמַעְתִּי מִפִּי אָבִי לְעֵתִים קְרוֹבוֹת עַל  
אֲוִדוֹת חַיִּי עוֹלָם וְעַל שְׁמִיחַת הַקְדוֹשִׁים שֶׁקָּעוּ  
עִמָּךְ אֶל תּוֹף לִבִּי.

3 Behold, I went to hunt beasts in the forests; and the words which I had  
often heard my father speak concerning eternal life, and the joy of the  
saints, sunk deep into my heart.

וּנְפָשִׁי רָעָבָה; וְאֲנִי כָרַעְתִּי בָרֶךְ לִפְנֵי יוֹצְרִי,  
וְקָרָאתִי אֵלָיו בְּתַפִּלַּת עֹז וּתְחִנּוּנִים לְמַעַן  
נִפְשִׁי; אָכֵן, כָּל הַיּוֹם שׁוֹעֲתִי אֵלָיו, וּבָבֹא  
הַלֵּילָה עוֹד נִשְׁאֲתִי קוֹלִי עַד הַגִּיעוּ הַשָּׁמַיִמָּה.

4 And my soul hungered; and I kneeled down before my Maker, and I  
cried unto him in mighty prayer and supplication for mine own soul;  
and all the day long did I cry unto him; yea, and when the night came I  
did still raise my voice high that it reached the heavens.

וְקוֹל בָּאֵנִי לֵאמֹר: אֲנוֹשׁ, נִמְחְלוּ לָךְ חַטָּאֶיךָ  
וְאֵתָה תִּבְרָךְ.

5 And there came a voice unto me, saying: Enos, thy sins are forgiven  
thee, and thou shalt be blessed.

וְאֲנִי, אֲנוֹשׁ, יָדַעְתִּי אֲשֶׁר לֹא יִכְזֹּב אֱלֹהִים; עַל  
כֵּן נִמְחַתָּה אֲשָׁמְתִּי.

6 And I, Enos, knew that God could not lie; wherefore, my guilt was  
swept away.

וְאֲנִי אָמַרְתִּי: יְהוָה, אֵיךְ נַעֲשֶׂיתָה זֹאת?

7 And I said: Lord, how is it done?

וְהוּא אָמַר אֵלָי: בְּעֶבֶר אֲמוֹנֶתְךָ בְּמִשְׁחִית,  
אוֹתוֹ לֹא שָׁמַעְתָּ, אֲף לֹא רָאִיתָ מַעֲדוֹךָ. וְעוֹד  
תִּחְלַפְנָה שָׁנִים רַבּוֹת עַד אֲשֶׁר יִתְגַּלֶּה בְּגוֹף;  
לָכֵן לָךְ, אֲמוֹנֶתְךָ עֲשֶׂיתָה אוֹתָךְ שָׁלֵם.

8 And he said unto me: Because of thy faith in Christ, whom thou hast  
never before heard nor seen. And many years pass away before he shall  
manifest himself in the flesh; wherefore, go to, thy faith hath made thee  
whole.

וּכְשָׁמַעִי אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, הִתְעוֹרַרָה  
בִּי תְשׁוּקָה בְּדַבַּר טוֹבַת אֲחִי הַנְּפִיִּים; עַל כֵּן  
שָׁפַכְתִּי אֶת כָּל נִפְשִׁי אֶל אֱלֹהִים לְמַעַנָּם.

9 Now, it came to pass that when I had heard these words I began to feel  
a desire for the welfare of my brethren, the Nephites; wherefore, I did  
pour out my whole soul unto God for them.



## אֲנוֹשׁ א:י-יח

- ובְּעוֹדִי מִתְאַמֵּץ כִּד בְּרוּחִי, וְהִנֵּה קוֹל יְהוָה  
דִּבֶּר שֵׁנִית אֶל לְבִי, לֵאמֹר: אֲנִי אֶפְקֹד אֶת  
אֲחִיד כְּפִי שְׁקִידָתְם לְשֹׁמֵר אֶת מִצְוֹתַי. נִתְּנָה  
לָהֶם אֶת הָאָרֶץ הַזֹּאת, וְהִיא אָרֶץ קֹדֶשׁ; אָרֶר  
לֹא אֶאֱרֹא אוֹתָהּ, כִּי אִם מִפְּנֵי עוֹן; וְאֲנִי אֶפְקֹד  
אֶת אֲחִיד כְּאֲשֶׁר אֲמַרְתִּי; וְאֶת פְּשָׁעֵיהֶם  
אוֹרִיד בִּיגּוֹן עַל רִאשָׁם.
- 10 And while I was thus struggling in the spirit, behold, the voice of the Lord came into my mind again, saying: I will visit thy brethren according to their diligence in keeping my commandments. I have given unto them this land, and it is a holy land; and I curse it not save it be for the cause of iniquity; wherefore, I will visit thy brethren according as I have said; and their transgressions will I bring down with sorrow upon their own heads.
- וּכְשִׁמְעִי, אֲנוֹשׁ, אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה,  
נַעֲשֵׂתָה אֲמוּנָתִי בִיהוּה בְּלִתִּי מַעֲרַעֲרָת;  
וְאֲנִי הִתְפַּלֵּלְתִּי אֵלָיו וְהִתְאַמֵּצְתִּי רַבּוֹת  
וְאַרְכוֹת לְמַעַן אַחִי הַלְּמָנִים.
- 11 And after I, Enos, had heard these words, my faith began to be unshaken in the Lord; and I prayed unto him with many long strugglings for my brethren, the Lamanites.
- וְאַחֵר אֲשֶׁר שְׁקִידָתִי רַבּוֹת בְּתַפְלָה וּבַעֲמָל,  
אָמַר אֵלַי יְהוָה: הִנְנִי נוֹתֵן לְךָ כְּחָפְצְךָ בַּעֲבוּר  
אֲמוּנָתְךָ.
- 12 And it came to pass that after I had prayed and labored with all diligence, the Lord said unto me: I will grant unto thee according to thy desires, because of thy faith.
- וְהָיָה חֶפְצִי מִמֶּנּוּ: אֲשֶׁר אִם אֲמַנְם יִפְּלוּ  
עַמִּי, הַנִּפְיִים, אֶל פֶּשַׁע וּבִאֲפֹן שֶׁהוּא יִשְׁמְדוּ,  
וְהַלְּמָנִים לֹא יִשְׁמְדוּ, יִשְׁמֹר יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵיהֶם אֶת  
כְּתָב זִכְרוֹן עַמִּי, הַנִּפְיִים; אִף אִם בְּכַח זְרוּעַ  
קֹדֶשׁוֹ, בַּעֲבוּר יֵצֵא לְאוּר בְּיוֹם יְבוּאָה, וְיִלָּךְ לִידֵי  
הַלְּמָנִים, וְאוּלֵי יְבוּאוּ הֵם אֶל הַיְּשׁוּעָה.
- 13 And now behold, this was the desire which I desired of him—that if it should so be, that my people, the Nephites, should fall into transgression, and by any means be destroyed, and the Lamanites should not be destroyed, that the Lord God would preserve a record of my people, the Nephites; even if it so be by the power of his holy arm, that it might be brought forth at some future day unto the Lamanites, that, perhaps, they might be brought unto salvation—
- כִּי בְיָמֵינוּ, כָּל מֵאַמְצֵינוּ לְהַשִּׁיבֵם אֶל אֲמוּנָת  
אֲמֵת, לְשׂוּא הָיוּ; וּבְחִמָּתָם נִשְׁבָּעוּ, אֲשֶׁר אֵלֹו  
נִתֵּן הַדְּבָר לְהַעֲשׂוֹת, יִשְׁחִיתוּ אֶת כְּתָבֵינוּ,  
וְאוֹתֵנוּ, וְאֶת כָּל מִסֹּרוֹת אֲבוֹתֵינוּ.
- 14 For at the present our strugglings were vain in restoring them to the true faith. And they swore in their wrath that, if it were possible, they would destroy our records and us, and also all the traditions of our fathers.
- וַיַּעַן אֲשֶׁר יָדַעְתִּי כִּי יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים יָכוֹל לְשׁוֹמֵר  
אֶת כְּתָבֵינוּ, קָרָאתִי אֵלָיו חֲזוֹר וְקָרָא, כִּי אָמַר  
אֵלַי: כָּל אֲשֶׁר תִּבְקֹשׁ בְּאַמוּנָה, בְּהֶאֱמִינָה כִּי  
תִקְבֹּל בְּשֵׁם הַמָּשִׁיחַ, קִבֵּל תִּקְבָּלֵנָה.
- 15 Wherefore, I knowing that the Lord God was able to preserve our records, I cried unto him continually, for he had said unto me: Whatsoever thing ye shall ask in faith, believing that ye shall receive in the name of Christ, ye shall receive it.
- וְאֲנִי הֶאֱמַנְתִּי, וְקָרָאתִי אֶל אֱלֹהִים כִּי יִשְׁמֹר אֶת  
הַכְּתָבִים; וְהוּא כָּרַת לִי בְרִית אֲשֶׁר יוֹצִיאֵם  
לְאוּר לִידֵי הַלְּמָנִים בְּעַת אֲשֶׁר תִּישָׁר בְּעֵינָיו.
- 16 And I had faith, and I did cry unto God that he would preserve the records; and he covenanted with me that he would bring them forth unto the Lamanites in his own due time.
- וְאֲנִי, אֲנוֹשׁ, יָדַעְתִּי כִּי כֵן יִהְיֶה, כְּדָבָר בְּרִיתוֹ;  
וְלָכֵן תִּנּוּחַ נַפְשִׁי.
- 17 And I, Enos, knew it would be according to the covenant which he had made; wherefore my soul did rest.
- וְאָמַר יְהוָה אֵלַי: גַּם אֲבוֹתֶיךָ דָּרָשׁוּ זֹאת מִמֶּנִּי;  
וְהַדְּבָר יַעֲשֶׂה לָהֶם כְּפִי אֲמוּנָתָם; כִּי אֲמוּנָתָם  
הִיְתָה כְּאַמוּנָתְךָ.
- 18 And the Lord said unto me: Thy fathers have also required of me this thing; and it shall be done unto them according to their faith; for their faith was like unto thine.



- 19 ואֲנִי, אֵנוֹשׁ, הִלְכֵתִי בְקָרֵב עִם נָפִי, וְנִבְאֵתִי  
עַל הַבָּאוֹת וְהַעֲדָתִי עַל הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר  
שָׁמַעְתִּי וְרָאִיתִי.
- 20 And now it came to pass that I, Enos, went about among the people of Nephi, prophesying of things to come, and testifying of the things which I had heard and seen.
- וְהִנְנִי מַעֲיִד כִּי בָנִי עִם נָפִי שָׁקְדוּ לְהָשִׁיב אֶת  
הַלְּמָנִים אֶל אֱמוּנַת הָאֱמֶת אֲשֶׁר בְּאֱלֹהִים.  
אֲדָרְשָׁא הָיָה עִמָּלְנוּ. שִׁנְאַתָּם הָיְתָה חֲרוּצָה,  
וְהֵם הָלְכוּ אַחֵר יִצְרָם הָרַע וְהָיוּ לָעַם פָּרָא  
וְאֶכְזָר, צִמְאֵי דָם, עוֹבְדֵי פְסִילִים וְטִמְאִים;  
מִשְׁבִּיעִים נַפְשָׁם בְּבֶשֶׂר חַיּוֹת טָרֶף, שׁוֹכְנִים  
בְּאֹהֲלִים וְנוֹדְדִים בְּיַעְרֹת, וְלִמְתַּנִּיהֶם חֲגוּרֵי  
עוֹרוֹת וְרָאשֵׁיהֶם מְגֻלָּחִים; כֹּשֶׁר מַעֲשֶׂה הָיָה  
לָהֶם בְּקִשְׁת׃ וּבַפְּגִיז׃ וּבַגִּרְזֵל׃ רַבִּים מֵהֶם אָכְלוּ  
אֶת בֶּשֶׂר נָא, וְתָמִיד הָיוּ מִבְּקָשִׁים לְהַשְׁמִידֵנוּ.
- 20 And I bear record that the people of Nephi did seek diligently to restore the Lamanites unto the true faith in God. But our labors were vain; their hatred was fixed, and they were led by their evil nature that they became wild, and ferocious, and a bloodthirsty people, full of idolatry and filthiness; feeding upon beasts of prey; dwelling in tents, and wandering about in the wilderness with a short skin girdle about their loins and their heads shaven; and their skill was in the bow, and in the cimeter, and the ax. And many of them did eat nothing save it was raw meat; and they were continually seeking to destroy us.
- וְעִם נָפִי הָיוּ עוֹבְדֵי אֲדָמָה וְגִדְלוּ כָּל מִינֵי דָגָן  
וּפְרִי, וְעִדְרֵי בָקָר וְכָל מִינֵי צֹאן, וְעִזִּים וְיַעֲלִים  
וְכֵן סוֹסִים לָרֶב.
- 21 And it came to pass that the people of Nephi did till the land, and raise all manner of grain, and of fruit, and flocks of herds, and flocks of all manner of cattle of every kind, and goats, and wild goats, and also many horses.
- וְהָיוּ בְּקִרְבָּנוּ נְבִיאִים רַבִּים מְאֹד, וְהָעָם הָיוּ  
קָשִׁי עֵרָף, וְקָשִׁי הִבְנָה.
- 22 And there were exceedingly many prophets among us. And the people were a stiffnecked people, hard to understand.
- וְלֹא נָתַן הָיָה לַעֲשׂוֹת דְּבָר, בְּלִתִּי אִם בְּדַבּוֹר  
קֹשֶׁה מְאֹד, וְדִבְרֵי הַטָּפָה וְהַתְּנַבְּאוֹת עַל  
מִלְחָמוֹת, וְעַל מְרִיבוֹת וְעַל חֲרָב, וְהַזְכָּרָה  
מִתְמַדֶּדֶת עַל הַמָּוֶת וְעַל אֶרֶץ חַיֵּי עוֹלָם,  
וּמִשְׁפָּטֵי אֱלֹהִים וְכַח, וְכָל הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה,  
לְמַעַן עוֹרֶרֶם תִּמְיֵד וּלְשַׁמְרֵם בִּירְאַת יְהוָה.  
הִנְנִי אוֹמֵר כִּי הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה בְּלִבִּי, אֲכַן  
דְּבָרִים בְּרוּרִים וּמִפְרָשִׁים מְאֹד, יִכְלוּ לְשַׁמֹּר  
עֲלֵיהֶם מִרְדַּת מְהֵרָה אֵלַי אֲבִדוּ. וְכִדְרֹף  
הַזֹּאת כּוֹתֵב אֲנִי עַל אוֹדוֹתֵיהֶם.
- 23 And there was nothing save it was exceeding harshness, preaching and prophesying of wars, and contentions, and destructions, and continually reminding them of death, and the duration of eternity, and the judgments and the power of God, and all these things—stirring them up continually to keep them in the fear of the Lord. I say there was nothing short of these things, and exceedingly great plainness of speech, would keep them from going down speedily to destruction. And after this manner do I write concerning them.
- וּבִימֵי חַיֵּי רִאִיתִי מִלְחָמוֹת בֵּין  
הַנְּפִיִּים וְהַלְּמָנִים.
- 24 And I saw wars between the Nephites and Lamanites in the course of my days.
- וְהָיָה כִּי זָקַנְתִּי; וּמִיּוֹם צֵאת אָבִינוּ, לְחִי,  
מִירוּשָׁלַם חָלְפוּ מֵאָה וְשִׁבְעִים וְתִשְׁעֵי שָׁנִים.
- 25 And it came to pass that I began to be old, and an hundred and seventy and nine years had passed away from the time that our father Lehi left Jerusalem.
- וְאֲנִי רִאִיתִי אֲשֶׁר קָרוֹב לְבֹא יוֹם רְדָתִי אֵלַי  
קֶבֶר, כִּי כֹה פָעַל עָלַי כַּח אֱלֹהִים בְּעֶבְרוֹ אֲטִיף  
וְאֶנְבֵּא אֶל הָעָם הַזֶּה, לְהַשְׁמִיעַ אֶת דְּבָר  
אֱלֹהִים עַל כִּי הָאֱמֶת אֲשֶׁר בְּמִשְׁתִּי. כָּל יְמֵי  
הַשְׁמַעְתִּי, וְשִׁמְחָתִי בּוֹ מִכָּל אֲשֶׁר בְּעוֹלָם.
- 26 And I saw that I must soon go down to my grave, having been wrought upon by the power of God that I must preach and prophesy unto this people, and declare the word according to the truth which is in Christ. And I have declared it in all my days, and have rejoiced in it above that of the world.

## אנוש א:כז – ירום א:ה

קרוב לְכִתִּי אֶל מְקוֹם מְנוּחָתִי, אֲשֶׁר הוּא  
עִם גּוֹאֲלִי; כִּי יִדְעֵתִי אֲשֶׁר בּוֹ מְנוּחָתִי וְאֲנִי  
אֶשְׂמַח לְקִרְאָת יוֹם חֲלִי מוֹתִי בְּאַלְמֻנֹת,  
וְאֶעֱמֹד לִפְנֵיו; אֲזִי אֶחְזֶה פָּנָיו בְּעֵנִי לְבִי, וְהוּא  
יֹאמַר אֵלַי: בּוֹאָה אֵלַי, אֶתָּה הַמְּבֹרָךְ; מְקוֹם  
מוֹכֵן לְךָ בְּמִשְׁכְּנוֹת אָבִי. אָמֵן.

27 And I soon go to the place of my rest, which is with my Redeemer; for I know that in him I shall rest. And I rejoice in the day when my mortal shall put on immortality, and shall stand before him; then shall I see his face with pleasure, and he will say unto me: Come unto me, ye blessed, there is a place prepared for you in the mansions of my Father. Amen.

## סֵפֶר יְרוֹם

עִם נְפִי שׁוֹמֵר אֶת תּוֹרַת מֹשֶׁה. הֵם מַצְלִיחִים  
בְּאֶרֶץ. נְבִיאֵיהֶם, כְּהֲנֵיהֶם וּמוֹרֵיהֶם מְלַמְּדִים  
אוֹתָם לְצִפּוֹת לְבוֹא הַמְּשִׁיחַ. (בְּעֵרֶךְ 361–399  
לְפָנֵי הַסְּפִירָה.)

## THE BOOK OF JAROM

*The people of Nephi observe the Law of Moses. They prosper in the land. Their prophets, priests and teachers teach them to look forward to the coming of Messiah. (About 399–361 B.C.)*

אֲנִי, יְרוֹם, כּוֹתֵב דְּבָרִים מְעֻשִׁים, עַל פִּי מִצְוֹת  
אָבִי, אֲנוֹשׁ, לְמַעַן יִשְׁמְרוּ דְּבָרֵי תוֹלְדוֹתֵינוּ.

1 Now behold, I, Jarom, write a few words according to the commandment of my father, Enos, that our genealogy may be kept.

וַיַּעַן אֲשֶׁר הַלּוּחוֹת הָאֵלֶּה קְטַנִּים, וַיַּעַן  
אֲשֶׁר הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה נִכְתָּבִים בְּכֹנֶה לְהִיטִיב  
לְאַחֲיֵינוּ הַלְמָנִים, עַל כֵּן הִכְרַח הוּא כִּי אֶכְתֹּב  
מְעַט; וְאוֹלָם לֹא אֶכְתֹּב אֶת דְּבָרֵי נְבוּאָתִי, אִם  
לֹא אֶת חֲזִיוֹנוֹתִי. כִּי מָה אוֹכֵל לְהוֹסִיף עַל  
אֲשֶׁר כְּתָבוּ אֲבוֹתַי? הֲלֹא גָלוּ הֵם אֶת תְּכֵנִית  
הַיְשׁוּעָה? הֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֵם: אַכֹּן, וְיָדִי לִי בְּזֹאת.

2 And as these plates are small, and as these things are written for the intent of the benefit of our brethren the Lamanites, wherefore, it must needs be that I write a little; but I shall not write the things of my prophesying, nor of my revelations. For what could I write more than my fathers have written? For have not they revealed the plan of salvation? I say unto you, Yea; and this sufficeth me.

הִנֵּה, הִכְרַח הוּא לַפְּעֹל רַב פְּעֻלָּה בְּקִרְבִּי  
הָעָם הַזֶּה, מִפְּנֵי קָשִׁי לִבָּם וְכֹכַד אָזְנוֹם, וְעִוְרוֹן  
שִׁכְלָם וְקָשִׁי עֲרָפָם. וְאוֹלָם מְרִבָּה אֱלֹהִים  
לְרַחֲמָם עַד מָאֵד וְעוֹד לֹא מָחָה אוֹתָם מֵעַל  
פְּנֵי הָאֶרֶץ.

3 Behold, it is expedient that much should be done among this people, because of the hardness of their hearts, and the deafness of their ears, and the blindness of their minds, and the stiffness of their necks; nevertheless, God is exceedingly merciful unto them, and has not as yet swept them off from the face of the land.

אִם לְרַבִּים אֲשֶׁר בְּקִרְבָּנוּ חֲזִיוֹנוֹת רַבִּים, כִּי  
לֹא הִכַּל קָשִׁי עֲרָף. וְכָל אֲשֶׁר אֵינָם קָשִׁי עֲרָף  
וְאֲשֶׁר לָהֶם אֲמוּנָה, הִמָּה בָּאִים בְּסוֹד רוּחַ  
הַקֹּדֶשׁ, הַמְתַּגַּלָּה לְבָנֵי הָאָדָם כְּפִי אֲמוּנָתָם.

4 And there are many among us who have many revelations, for they are not all stiffnecked. And as many as are not stiffnecked and have faith, have communion with the Holy Spirit, which maketh manifest unto the children of men, according to their faith.

וְהִנֵּה מֵאֲתָיִים שְׁנָה חָלְפוּ וְעַם נְפִי הִתְעַצֵּם  
מְאֹד בְּאֶרֶץ. וְהֵם הִשְׁתִּיתוּ לִבָּם לִשְׁמֹר אֶת  
תּוֹרַת מֹשֶׁה וְאֶת יוֹם הַשַּׁבָּת, קֹדֶשׁ לַיהוָה.  
וְהֵם לֹא חָלְלוּ וְלֹא גִדְּפוּ אֶת הַקּוֹדֶשׁ; וְחֻמוֹרִים  
מְאֹד הָיוּ חֻקֵּי הָאֶרֶץ.

5 And now, behold, two hundred years had passed away, and the people of Nephi had waxed strong in the land. They observed to keep the law of Moses and the sabbath day holy unto the Lord. And they profaned not; neither did they blaspheme. And the laws of the land were exceedingly strict.

## יְרוֹם א':ו-יג

- וְהַנְּפִיִּים, וְאֵף הַלְּמָנִים, נִפְּצוּ בְּרַחְבֵּי הָאָרֶץ. וְהַלְּמָנִים רַבּוּ מֵהַנְּפִיִּים עֲשָׂרַת מוֹנִים; וְהֵם אָהָבוּ רֵצַח וְשָׂוִי דַם חַיּוֹת.
- וְהֵם קָמוּ עָלֵינוּ, הַנְּפִיִּים, פְּעָמִים רַבּוֹת לְהִלָּחֵם בָּנוּ; אֵף מְלָכֵינוּ וּמְנַהֲיֵינוּ אֲנָשֵׁי חֵיל הָיוּ בְּאֵמוּנַת יְהוָה, וְלָמְדוּ הֵם אֶת הָעָם אֶת דְּרָכֵי יְהוָה; עַל כֵּן עָמְדָנוּ בְּפָנֵי הַלְּמָנִים, וְגִרְשָׁנוּ אוֹתָם מֵאֲדָמוֹתֵינוּ, וְנִגְשָׁנוּ לְבַצֵּר אֶת עָרֵינוּ וְאֶת כָּל מְקוֹמוֹת נַחֲלָתָנוּ.
- וְהִרְבִּינוּ מְאֹד בְּאָרֶץ וּנְפֻצוֹנוּ עַל פָּנֶיהָ, וְהִתְעַשְׂרָנוּ עַד מְאֹד בְּזָהָב וּבְכֶסֶף וּבְחַפְצֵי יָקָרוֹת, וּבְמַעֲשֵׂה מַחֲשָׁבֶת מְלָאכַת חָרָשֵׁי עֵץ, בְּבָתִּים וּבְמִכּוֹנוֹת, וְכֵן בְּבָרָזֶל וּנְחָשֶׁת, וּנְחָשֶׁת קָלֶל וּפְלָדָה, וְעֵשִׂינוּ מִיָּנִי כְּלִים לְעַבֹּדֶת הָאֲדָמָה, לְסוּגִיָּהֶם הַשּׁוֹנִים, וְכָלִי מְלָחָמָה. וְנִשְׁקָנוּ הָיָה חֵץ חֵד רֹאשׁ וְאַשְׁפַּת חֲצִים, וְשֵׁלַח וְחִנִּית וְכָל הַכְּנוֹת הַמְּלָחָמָה.
- וַעֲנֵן אֲשֶׁר הָיִינוּ נִכּוֹנִים לְעַמֹּד אֶל מוֹל הַלְּמָנִים, לֹא עָלָה בְּיָדֵם לְגַבֵּר עָלֵינוּ. וְאֵכֶן הִתְקַים דְּבַר יְהוָה אֶל אֲבוֹתֵינוּ לֵאמֹר: אִם תִּשְׁמְרוּ אֶת מִצְוֹתַי, תִּצְלִיחוּ בְּאָרֶץ.
- וּבִנְיָאֵי יְהוָה הִזְהִירוּ אֶת עַם נָפִי עַל פִּי דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים, אֲשֶׁר אִם לֹא יִשְׁמְרוּ אֶת מִצְוֹתַי, וְיָפְלוּ אֶל פֶּשַׁע, אֲכָן אָבוֹד יֵאבְדוּ מֵעַל פְּנֵי הָאָרֶץ.
- עַל כֵּן שָׁקְדוּ הַנְּבִיאִים וְהַכֹּהֲנִים וְהַמּוֹרִים בְּעִמְלָם לְעוֹרֵר אֶת הָעָם, בְּכָל אֶרֶץ אֶפְס, לְעַמֹּד עַל מִשְׁמָרָם. וְלָמְדוּ הֵם אוֹתָם אֶת תּוֹרַת מֹשֶׁה וְהַפְּנוּהָ אֲשֶׁר בְּנִתְיָנָהּ; וְהֵם שִׁכְנְעוּ אֶת הָעָם לְהִבִּיט קְדִימָה אֶל הַמָּשִׁיחַ, וּלְהֶאֱמִין בּוֹ אֲשֶׁר יָבוֹא, כְּאֵלוֹ כְּבָרָא. בְּדֶרֶךְ זֹאת לָמְדוּם.
- וּבְעֲשׂוֹתָם כֵּן, הִצִּילוֹם מִכְּלִיָּה מֵעַל פְּנֵי הָאָרֶץ; כִּי בְּדִבְרֵי יְהוָה דִּקְרוּ אֶת לֵב הָעָם, וְעוֹרְרוּם תָּמִיד לְהִנָּחֵם מִחֲטָא.
- וְחָלְפוּ מְאֵתִים וּשְׁלָשִׁים וּשְׁמוֹנֶה שָׁנִים, בְּמִלְחָמוֹת וּבְמִרְיבוֹת וּבְמִחְלּוֹקוֹת אֲשֶׁר אָרְכוּ יָמִים רַבִּים בְּמִשְׁךָ הָעֵת הַזֶּה.
- 6 And they were scattered upon much of the face of the land, and the Lamanites also. And they were exceedingly more numerous than were they of the Nephites; and they loved murder and would drink the blood of beasts.
- 7 And it came to pass that they came many times against us, the Nephites, to battle. But our kings and our leaders were mighty men in the faith of the Lord; and they taught the people the ways of the Lord; wherefore, we withstood the Lamanites and swept them away out of our lands, and began to fortify our cities, or whatsoever place of our inheritance.
- 8 And we multiplied exceedingly, and spread upon the face of the land, and became exceedingly rich in gold, and in silver, and in precious things, and in fine workmanship of wood, in buildings, and in machinery, and also in iron and copper, and brass and steel, making all manner of tools of every kind to till the ground, and weapons of war—yea, the sharp pointed arrow, and the quiver, and the dart, and the javelin, and all preparations for war.
- 9 And thus being prepared to meet the Lamanites, they did not prosper against us. But the word of the Lord was verified, which he spake unto our fathers, saying that: Inasmuch as ye will keep my commandments ye shall prosper in the land.
- 10 And it came to pass that the prophets of the Lord did threaten the people of Nephi, according to the word of God, that if they did not keep the commandments, but should fall into transgression, they should be destroyed from off the face of the land.
- 11 Wherefore, the prophets, and the priests, and the teachers, did labor diligently, exhorting with all long-suffering the people to diligence; teaching the law of Moses, and the intent for which it was given; persuading them to look forward unto the Messiah, and believe in him to come as though he already was. And after this manner did they teach them.
- 12 And it came to pass that by so doing they kept them from being destroyed upon the face of the land; for they did prick their hearts with the word, continually stirring them up unto repentance.
- 13 And it came to pass that two hundred and thirty and eight years had passed away—after the manner of wars, and contentions, and dissensions, for the space of much of the time.

## יְרוֹם אֶיִד – אוֹמְנִי אֶו

וְאֲנִי, יְרוֹם, לֹא אוֹסִיף לְכַתֵּב, כִּי קִטְנִים הַלּוּחוֹת. אַךְ הִנֵּה, אַחִי, תּוֹכְלוּ לִפְנוֹת אֶל לּוּחוֹת נְפִי הַנוֹסְפִים, אֲשֶׁר בָּהֶם חֲרוּטִים כְּתָבֵי זִכְרוֹן מִלְחָמוֹתֵינוּ, כְּפִי כְּתִיבַת הַמֶּלֶכִּים, אוֹ אֲשֶׁר צִוּוּ הֵם לְכַתֵּב.

וְהֵנִי מוֹסֵר אֶת הַלּוּחוֹת הָאֵלֶּה לְיָדִי בְנִי אוֹמְנִי, לְמַעַן יִשְׁמְרוּ כְּמִצְוֹת אֲבוֹתַי.

14 And I, Jarom, do not write more, for the plates are small. But behold, my brethren, ye can go to the other plates of Nephi; for behold, upon them the records of our wars are engraven, according to the writings of the kings, or those which they caused to be written.

15 And I deliver these plates into the hands of my son Omni, that they may be kept according to the commandments of my fathers.

## סֵפֶר אוֹמְנִי

נְבִיאֵי הָעָם שׁוֹמְרִים אֶת הַכְּתָבִים. הַמֶּלֶךְ מוֹשִׁיעַ מְגַלֵּה אֶנְשֵׁי זִרְעֵהֶם שָׁבְאוּ מִירוּשָׁלַם בְּיָמֵי הַמֶּלֶךְ צִדְקִיָּהוּ. הוּא מְתַמְנֵה לְמֶלֶךְ עֲלֵיהֶם. בְּנִימִין, בְּנוֹ שֵׁל מוֹשִׁיעַ, יוֹרֵשׁ מִמֶּנּוּ אֶת הַמְּלוּכָה. (בְּעֶרְךָ 130–323 לְפָנֵי הַסְּפִירָה)

## THE BOOK OF OMNI

*The people's prophets keep the records. King Mosiah discovers the people of Zarahemla, who came from Jerusalem in the days of King Zedekiah. He is appointed king over them. Mosiah's son Benjamin succeeds him as king. (About 323–130 B.C.)*

אֲנִי, אוֹמְנִי, אֲשֶׁר אָבִי, יְרוֹם, צִוִּי לְכַתֵּב מַעַט עַל הַלּוּחוֹת הָאֵלֶּה לְשִׁמּוֹר אֶת דְּבָרֵי תוֹלְדוֹתֵינוּ.

הֵנִי חָפֵץ כִּי תִדְעוּ אֲשֶׁר רַבּוֹת נִלְחַמְתִּי בְּיָמַי בַּחֶרֶב לְשִׁמּוֹר אֶת עַמִּי, הַנְּפִיִּים, מִנִּפֹל בְּיַד אוֹיְבֵיהֶם, הַלָּמָנִים. וְאֲשֶׁר לִי, הֵנִי אִישׁ אָוֶן וְלֹא שֹׁמְרֵתִי אֶת חֻקֹּת יְהוָה וּמִצְוֹתָיו, כְּאֲשֶׁר הָיָה עָלַי לַעֲשׂוֹת.

מֵאֲתַם וְשִׁבְעִים וְשֵׁשׁ שָׁנִים חָלַפּוּ, וְהָיוּ לָנוּ עֵתוֹת שְׁלוֹם רַבּוֹת, וְכֵן עֵתוֹת רַבּוֹת שֶׁל מִלְחָמָה כְּבִדָּה וְשִׁפְכַת דָּם. וּבִקְצָהּ: מֵאֲתַם וְשִׁמּוֹנִים וְשָׁתַיִם שָׁנִים חָלַפּוּ, וְאֲנִי שֹׁמְרֵתִי אֶת הַלּוּחוֹת הָאֵלֶּה כְּמִצְוֹת אֲבוֹתַי; וּמִסְרָתִים לְבְנִי אַמְרוֹן. וּבִזְאת אֲשִׁים קֵץ לְדִבְרִי.

אֲנִי, אַמְרוֹן, אֶכְתֹּב דְּבַר־מָה, אֲשֶׁר מַעַט הוּא, בְּסֵפֶר אָבִי.

וְחָלַפּוּ שְׁלֹשׁ מֵאוֹת וְעֶשְׂרִים שָׁנָה, וְהָרְשָׁעִים בְּיוֹתֵר בְּקֶרֶב הַנְּפִיִּים נִשְׁמְדוּ.

כִּי יְהוָה, אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר הוֹצִיאָם מֵאֶרֶץ יְרוּשָׁלַם וְשִׁמְרָם וּנְצָרָם מִנִּפֹל בְּיַד אוֹיְבֵיהֶם, לֹא הִתִּיר אֶת הַפֶּרֶת דְּבָרוֹ אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר אֶל אֲבוֹתֵינוּ, לֵאמֹר: אִם לֹא תִשְׁמְרוּ אֶת מִצְוֹתַי, לֹא תִצְלִיחוּ בָאֶרֶץ.

1 Behold, it came to pass that I, Omni, being commanded by my father, Jarom, that I should write somewhat upon these plates, to preserve our genealogy.

2 Wherefore, in my days, I would that ye should know that I fought much with the sword to preserve my people, the Nephites, from falling into the hands of their enemies, the Lamanites. But behold, I of myself am a wicked man, and I have not kept the statutes and the commandments of the Lord as I ought to have done.

3 And it came to pass that two hundred and seventy and six years had passed away, and we had many seasons of peace; and we had many seasons of serious war and bloodshed. Yea, and in fine, two hundred and eighty and two years had passed away, and I had kept these plates according to the commandments of my fathers; and I conferred them upon my son Amaron. And I make an end.

4 And now I, Amaron, write the things whatsoever I write, which are few, in the book of my father.

5 Behold, it came to pass that three hundred and twenty years had passed away, and the more wicked part of the Nephites were destroyed.

6 For the Lord would not suffer, after he had led them out of the land of Jerusalem and kept and preserved them from falling into the hands of their enemies, yea, he would not suffer that the words should not be verified, which he spake unto our fathers, saying that: Inasmuch as ye will not keep my commandments ye shall not prosper in the land.

- 7 Wherefore, the Lord did visit them in great judgment; nevertheless, he did spare the righteous that they should not perish, but did deliver them out of the hands of their enemies.
- על כן פקדם יהוה במשפט גדול; ואולם, חס על הצדיקים לבל יאבדו, והצילם מידי אויביהם.
- 8 And it came to pass that I did deliver the plates unto my brother Chemish.
- ואני מסרתי את הלוחות לאחי חמיש.
- 9 Now I, Chemish, write what few things I write, in the same book with my brother; for behold, I saw the last which he wrote, that he wrote it with his own hand; and he wrote it in the day that he delivered them unto me. And after this manner we keep the records, for it is according to the commandments of our fathers. And I make an end.
- אני, חמיש, כותב את הדברים המעטים הבאים, בספר אחד עם אחי; כי ראיתי את אחרית דבריו הכתובים בעצם ידו; והוא כתבם ביום אשר מסרם לי. ובאופן הזה אנחנו שומרים את הכתבים כמצות אבותינו. וזה קץ דברי.
- 10 Behold, I, Abinadam, am the son of Chemish. Behold, it came to pass that I saw much war and contention between my people, the Nephites, and the Lamanites; and I, with my own sword, have taken the lives of many of the Lamanites in the defence of my brethren.
- אני אבינדום בן חמיש. מלחמות ומריבות לרב ראיתי בין בני עמי, הנפיים, ובין הלמנים; ואני, בחרבי הרגתי רבים מן הלמנים בהגנני על אחי.
- 11 And behold, the record of this people is engraven upon plates which is had by the kings, according to the generations; and I know of no revelation save that which has been written, neither prophecy; wherefore, that which is sufficient is written. And I make an end.
- וכתבי הזכרונות אשר לעם הזה חרוטים על גבי לוחות אשר למלכים, לפי דורותיהם; לא אדע על דברי חזות, ואף לא על נבואה, זולת אשר נכתב; לכן מספיק הוא אשר נכתב. ובזאת אשים קץ לדברי.
- 12 Behold, I am Amaleki, the son of Abinadam. Behold, I will speak unto you somewhat concerning Mosiah, who was made king over the land of Zarahemla; for behold, he being warned of the Lord that he should flee out of the land of Nephi, and as many as would hearken unto the voice of the Lord should also depart out of the land with him, into the wilderness—
- אני אמלקי בן אבינדום, אדבר אליכם מעט על מושיע, אשר המלך על ארץ זרעהמלה; כי הזהירו יהוה אשר יברח מארץ נפי, ואשר יברחו עמו המדברה כל השומעים בקול יהוה.
- 13 And it came to pass that he did according as the Lord had commanded him. And they departed out of the land into the wilderness, as many as would hearken unto the voice of the Lord; and they were led by many preachings and prophesying. And they were admonished continually by the word of God; and they were led by the power of his arm, through the wilderness, until they came down into the land which is called the land of Zarahemla.
- ומושיע עשה כמצות יהוה, וכל השומעים בקול יהוה יצאו מן הארץ אל היערות; דברי השפה ונבואה לרב הנהיגום, ודבר אלהים הזהירם כל העת; וזרוע עזו הובילה אותם דרך היערות, עד אשר ירדו אל הארץ אשר שמה נקרא ארץ זרעהמלה.
- 14 And they discovered a people, who were called the people of Zarahemla. Now, there was great rejoicing among the people of Zarahemla; and also Zarahemla did rejoice exceedingly, because the Lord had sent the people of Mosiah with the plates of brass which contained the record of the Jews.
- והם גלו שם עם, אשר שמו נקרא עם זרעהמלה. ובקרב אנשי זרעהמלה הייתה שמחה רבה; וגם זרעהמלה שמח עד מאד כי יהוה שלח את אנשי מושיע עם לוחות נחשת הקלל, אשר בהם היה כתב זכרון היהודים.



- 15 Behold, it came to pass that Mosiah discovered that the people of Zarahemla came out from Jerusalem at the time that Zedekiah, king of Judah, was carried away captive into Babylon.
- 16 And they journeyed in the wilderness, and were brought by the hand of the Lord across the great waters, into the land where Mosiah discovered them; and they had dwelt there from that time forth.
- 17 And at the time that Mosiah discovered them, they had become exceedingly numerous. Nevertheless, they had had many wars and serious contentions, and had fallen by the sword from time to time; and their language had become corrupted; and they had brought no records with them; and they denied the being of their Creator; and Mosiah, nor the people of Mosiah, could understand them.
- 18 But it came to pass that Mosiah caused that they should be taught in his language. And it came to pass that after they were taught in the language of Mosiah, Zarahemla gave a genealogy of his fathers, according to his memory; and they are written, but not in these plates.
- 19 And it came to pass that the people of Zarahemla, and of Mosiah, did unite together; and Mosiah was appointed to be their king.
- 20 And it came to pass in the days of Mosiah, there was a large stone brought unto him with engravings on it; and he did interpret the engravings by the gift and power of God.
- 21 And they gave an account of one Coriantumr, and the slain of his people. And Coriantumr was discovered by the people of Zarahemla; and he dwelt with them for the space of nine moons.
- 22 It also spake a few words concerning his fathers. And his first parents came out from the tower, at the time the Lord confounded the language of the people; and the severity of the Lord fell upon them according to his judgments, which are just; and their bones lay scattered in the land northward.
- 23 Behold, I, Amaleki, was born in the days of Mosiah; and I have lived to see his death; and Benjamin, his son, reigneth in his stead.
- 24 And behold, I have seen, in the days of king Benjamin, a serious war and much bloodshed between the Nephites and the Lamanites. But behold, the Nephites did obtain much advantage over them; yea, insomuch that king Benjamin did drive them out of the land of Zarahemla.
- וּלְמוֹשִׁיעַ נִגְלָה כִּי עִם זְרַעְחֶמְלָה יָצְאוּ  
מִירוּשָׁלַם בְּעֵת אֲשֶׁר הִגְלָה צִדְקִיָּהוּ, מֶלֶךְ  
יְהוּדָה, בְּבָבֶלָה.
- וְהֵם נָסְעוּ בַּמִּדְבָּר, וַיֵּד יְהוָה הַעֲבִירָה אוֹתָם  
בְּתוֹךְ הַמַּיִם הַרְבִּים אֶל הָאָרֶץ אֲשֶׁר בָּהּ גָּלָה  
אוֹתָם מוֹשִׁיעַ; וּמֵאָז הֵם שָׁכְנוּ שָׁם.
- וּבְעֵת אֲשֶׁר גָּלָה אוֹתָם מוֹשִׁיעַ, מִסְפָּרָם הָיָה  
רַב מְאֹד. וְאוֹלָם, רַבּוֹת הָיוּ מִלְחָמוֹתֵיהֶם,  
וּמְרִיבוֹתֵיהֶם הָיוּ גְדוּלוֹת וְהֵם לְעֵתִים נָפְלוּ  
בַּחֶרֶב; אֵף שְׁפָתָם נִשְׁחָתָה וְהֵם לֹא הִבִּיאוּ  
עִמָּם כְּתָבֵי זְכוּנוֹת; וְהֵם כִּחְשׁוּ בְּבוֹרָאָם,  
וּמוֹשִׁיעַ וְאַנְשֵׁיוֹ לֹא יָכְלוּ לְהִבְיֵן.
- אֵף מוֹשִׁיעַ הוֹרָה לְלַמֶּדֶם אֶת שְׁפָתוֹ. וְהָיָה  
אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר לָמְדוּ אֶת שְׁפַת מוֹשִׁיעַ, נָתַן  
זְרַעְחֶמְלָה, עַל פִּי זְכוּנוֹ, אֶת דּוֹרוֹת אֲבוֹתָיו;  
וְהַדְּבָרִים כְּתוּבִים, אֵף לֹא בְּלוֹחוֹת אֵלֶּה.
- וְאַנְשֵׁי זְרַעְחֶמְלָה וְאַנְשֵׁי מוֹשִׁיעַ הִתְאָחְדוּ.  
וּמוֹשִׁיעַ הִתְמַנָּה לְמֶלֶכָם.
- וּבִימֵי מוֹשִׁיעַ הוּבָאָה אֵלָיו אֶבֶן גְּדוֹלָה, אֲשֶׁר  
עָלֶיהָ חֲרִיטוֹת; וְהוּא פָּעַנָח אֶת הַחֲרִיטוֹת עַל  
יְדֵי מַתַּת אֱלֹהִים וְכֹחוֹ.
- וְסִפֵּר שָׁם עַל אִישׁ אֲשֶׁר שְׁמוֹ קוֹרִיאֲנִטוּמֶר,  
וְעַל הָרֶג עֲמוֹ. וְאַנְשֵׁי זְרַעְחֶמְלָה גָּלוּ אֶת  
קוֹרִיאֲנִטוּמֶר, וְהוּא גָר עִמָּם תִּשְׁעָה יָרֵחִים.
- וְעוֹד סִפֵּר שָׁם מַעֲסַל עַל אֲדוֹת אֲבוֹתָיו.  
וְאַבּוֹתָיו אֲשֶׁר מִקֶּדֶם יָצְאוּ מִהֶמְכָּדֵל, בְּעֵת  
אֲשֶׁר בָּלַל יְהוָה אֶת שְׁפַת הָעַמִּים; וַיְהוֶה  
הָרָאָה אֶת נַחַת דִּינּוֹ הַחֲמוּר עֲלֵיהֶם כְּפִי צֶדֶק  
מִשְׁפָּטוֹ; וַעֲצָמוֹתֵיהֶם פֻּזְרוּ בְּאֶרֶץ אֲשֶׁר  
לְפָאֵת צָפוֹן.
- וְאַנִּי, עַמְלֵקִי, נולַדְתִּי בִימֵי מוֹשִׁיעַ; אֵף רָאִיתִי  
אֶת מוֹתוֹ; וּבִנְיָמִין בְּנוֹ מִשְׁלַח תַּחְתָּיו.
- וּבִימֵי הַמֶּלֶךְ בִּנְיָמִין, רָאִיתִי מִלְחָמָה כְּבֹדָה  
וּשְׁפִיכַת דָּמִים רַבָּה בֵּין הַנְּפִיטִים וּבֵין הַלָּמָנִיתִים.  
אֵף הַנְּפִיטִים הִשְׁיִגוּ יִתְרוֹן רַב עַל אוֹיְבֵיהֶם, עַד  
כִּי גָרְשָׁם הַמֶּלֶךְ בִּנְיָמִין מֵאֶרֶץ זְרַעְחֶמְלָה.



- 25 ואני זקנתי: ונען אשר אין לי זרע, ואשר אדע כי המלך בנימין איש צדיק לפני יהוה, הנני מוסר לו את הלוחות האלה. ואני מפציר בכל בני האדם לבוא אל אלהים, קדוש ישראל, ולהאמין בנבואה ו בדברי חזות ובשרות מלאכים, ובמתת הדבור בלשונות ובמתת תרגום הלשונות ובכל דבר אשר טוב הוא; כי אין דבר טוב בלתי אם בא הוא מאת יהוה. ואשר רע, בא הוא מאת השטן.
- 26 And it came to pass that I began to be old; and, having no seed, and knowing king Benjamin to be a just man before the Lord, wherefore, I shall deliver up these plates unto him, exhorting all men to come unto God, the Holy One of Israel, and believe in prophesying, and in revelations, and in the ministering of angels, and in the gift of speaking with tongues, and in the gift of interpreting languages, and in all things which are good; for there is nothing which is good save it comes from the Lord; and that which is evil cometh from the devil.
- 26 והנה, אחי האהובים, חפצי כי תבואו אל המשיח, אשר הוא קדוש ישראל, ותקחו חלק בישועתו ובכח גאלתו. אכן, בואו אליו והקריבו את כל נפשכם קרבן לו, והמשיכו בצום ובתפלה והתמידו עד הקץ. חי יהוה כי אכן תושעו.
- 27 And now, my beloved brethren, I would that ye should come unto Christ, who is the Holy One of Israel, and partake of his salvation, and the power of his redemption. Yea, come unto him, and offer your whole souls as an offering unto him, and continue in fasting and praying, and endure to the end; and as the Lord liveth ye will be saved.
- 27 והנה אספר מעט על כמה אנשים אשר עלו אל היערות, בדרפם לשוב אל ארץ נפִי; כי רב היה מספר החפצים להתנחל בארץ ירשתם.
- 28 Wherefore, they went up into the wilderness. And their leader being a strong and mighty man, and a stiffnecked man, wherefore he caused a contention among them; and they were all slain, save fifty, in the wilderness, and they returned again to the land of Zarahemla.
- 28 לכן עלו הם אל היערות; ומנהיגם היה איש חיל וגבור, וקשה ערף, והוא הסב ריב ביניהם עד כי יהרגו כלם ביער, וזולת חמשים איש, ואלה שבו אל ארץ זרעהמלה.
- 29 And it came to pass that they also took others to a considerable number, and took their journey again into the wilderness.
- 29 ואף הם לקחו עמם אנשים נוספים ומספרם גדול, והם שבו ונסעו ביער.
- 30 And I, Amaleki, had a brother, who also went with them; and I have not since known concerning them. And I am about to lie down in my grave; and these plates are full. And I make an end of my speaking.
- 30 ולִי, עמלקי, היה אח אשר הלך אִי הוא עִמָּם, וימָאָז לא נודע לִי דָּבָר עַל אֹדוֹתֵיהֶם. וְהֵנָּה קִרְבָּה עֵתִי לִשְׁכַּב בְּקִבְרִי; וְהַלּוּחֹת הָאֵלֶּה מְלֵאִים; וְאֲנִי שֹׁם קֵץ לְדִבְרִי.

## דברי מורמון

מורמון מקצר את תולדות עמו על גבי לוחות מורמון. הוא כולל בקצורו את לוחות נפִי. (בערך 385 לספירה.)

## WORDS OF MORMON

Mormon abridges his people's history on the plates of Mormon. He includes the plates of Nephi in his abridgement. (About A.D. 385.)

- 1 And now I, Mormon, being about to deliver up the record which I have been making into the hands of my son Moroni, behold I have witnessed almost all the destruction of my people, the Nephites.
- 1 הנה אני, מורמון, עומד למסר את כתב הזכרון אשר כתבתי, לידי בני מורוני; עד הייתי לחרבן כמעט כל עמי, הנפִיים.

## דְּבָרֵי מוֹרְמוֹן א:ב-ט

- וְעַתָּה, מֵאוֹת שָׁנִים רַבּוֹת אַחֵר בּוֹא הַמְּשִׁיחַ  
הַנִּנִּי מוֹסֵר אֶת הַכְּתָבִים הָאֵלֶּה לְיָדִי בְּנִי;  
וְסָבוֹר אֲנִי כִּי הוּא יַחְזֶה בְּחֻרְבָּן עַמִּי כְּתֻמּוֹ.  
יְהִי רָצוֹן מִלִּפְנֵי אֱלֹהִים כִּי יוֹתֵר בְּאַרְץ הַחַיִּים  
אֲחַר־הֵם, לְמַעַן יוּכַל לְכַתֵּב מַעַט עַל  
אוֹדוֹתֵיהֶם וְכֵן עַל הַמְּשִׁיחַ. אוֹלֵי יוֹעִילִם זֶה  
בְּאַחַד הַיָּמִים.
- וְאֲנִי אֲדַבֵּר מַעַט עַל אֲשֶׁר כָּתַבְתִּי; כִּי אַחֵר  
הַכִּינוֹתִי קִצּוֹר מִן הַכְּתוּב עַל לוֹחוֹת נָפִי, עַד  
עַת שְׁלֹטוֹן הַמֶּלֶךְ הַזֶּה, בְּנִימִין, עָלָיו דְּבַר  
עֲמֻלְקִי, חֻקְרָתִי בְּכַתְבֵי הַזְכְּרוֹנוֹת אֲשֶׁר  
נִמְסְרוּ לִידִי, וּמִצָּאֹתִי אֶת הַלוֹחוֹת הָאֵלֶּה,  
אֲשֶׁר יֵשׁ בָּהֶם אֶת הַסְּפּוֹר הַקָּטָן הַזֶּה עַל  
הַנְּבִיאִים, מִיָּמֵי יַעֲקֹב עַד שְׁלֹטוֹן הַמֶּלֶךְ הַזֶּה,  
בְּנִימִין, וְכֵן רַבִּים מִדְּבָרֵי נָפִי.
- וְהַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר עַל גְּבֵי הַלוֹחוֹת הָאֵלֶּה טוֹבִים  
בְּעֵינַי, מִפְּנֵי הַנְּבוּאוֹת עַל בּוֹא הַמְּשִׁיחַ, וְעַל כִּי  
יָדְעוּ אֲבוֹתַי אֲשֶׁר רַבּוֹת מֵהֵן הִתְקַיְּמוּ; וְאִף  
יֹדַע אֲנִי כִּי דְּבָרִים רַבִּים אֲשֶׁר נִבְּאוּ עַל  
אוֹדוֹתֵנוּ עַד הַיּוֹם הַזֶּה הִתְקַיְּמוּ, וְכָל אֲשֶׁר  
נִבְּאוּהוּ עַל הָעֵתִיד לָבוֹא, אֲכֹן, קוֹם יָקוּם.
- עַל כֵּן, בְּחֻרְתִּי אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה לְמַעַן  
הַשְׁלֵם אֶת כְּתָבִי עַל גְּבִיָּהֶם, וְאֶת שְׂאֵר כְּתָבִי  
אֶקַּח מִלוֹחוֹת נָפִי; וְלֹא אוּכַל לְכַתֵּב אִף חֵלֶק  
אֶחָד מִמָּאָה מִדְּבָרֵי עַמִּי.
- אֲכֹן, הַנִּנִּי לִזְכֹּר אֶת הַלוֹחוֹת הָאֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר  
כְּתוּבִים בָּהֶם דְּבָרֵי הַנְּבוּאוֹת וְדְּבָרֵי הַהִתְגַּלּוּת  
הָאֵלֶּה וּמִנִּיחָם עִם יִתֵּר כְּתָבִי, כִּי מִבְּחָר הֵם  
בְּעֵינַי; וְאֲנִי יֹדַע כִּי יִהְיוּ מִבְּחָרִים לְאַחֵי.
- וְאֲנִי עוֹשֶׂה זֹאת לְתַכְלִית חֻקְמָה; כִּי כֵן נִלְחַשׁ  
לִי, כִּפִּי פְּעֻלוֹת רוּחַ יְהוָה אֲשֶׁר בִּי. הֵן אֵינִנִּי  
יֹדַע הַכֹּל, אִף יְהוָה יֹדַע אֶת כָּל אֲשֶׁר יְבוֹא;  
לְכֵן, הוּא פּוֹעֵל בְּקִרְבִּי בַּעֲבוּר אַעֲשֶׂה כְּחֻצּוֹ.
- תְּפִלָּתִי הִיא אֶל אֱלֹהִים עֲבוֹר אַחֵי, לְמַעַן  
יָשׁוּבוּ לְדַעַת אֶת אֱלֹהִים, אֲכֹן, אֶת גְּאֻלַּת  
הַמְּשִׁיחַ, לְמַעַן יָשׁוּבוּ שִׁנִּית לַהֲיוֹת עִם עֲנִי.
- וְעַתָּה, אֲנִי, מוֹרְמוֹן, אוֹסִיף לְהַשְׁלִים אֶת כְּתָב  
הַזְּכוּר אֲשֶׁר לִי, אֲשֶׁר אֶת דְּבָרָיו אֶקַּח  
מִלוֹחוֹת נָפִי; וְאֲנִי עוֹשֶׂה זֹאת עַל פִּי דַעְתִּי  
וּבִינְתִי אֲשֶׁר נָתַן לִי אֱלֹהִים.
- 2 And it is many hundred years after the coming of Christ that I deliver these records into the hands of my son; and it supposeth me that he will witness the entire destruction of my people. But may God grant that he may survive them, that he may write somewhat concerning them, and somewhat concerning Christ, that perhaps some day it may profit them.
- 3 And now, I speak somewhat concerning that which I have written; for after I had made an abridgment from the plates of Nephi, down to the reign of this king Benjamin, of whom Amaleki spake, I searched among the records which had been delivered into my hands, and I found these plates, which contained this small account of the prophets, from Jacob down to the reign of this king Benjamin, and also many of the words of Nephi.
- 4 And the things which are upon these plates pleasing me, because of the prophecies of the coming of Christ; and my fathers knowing that many of them have been fulfilled; yea, and I also know that as many things as have been prophesied concerning us down to this day have been fulfilled, and as many as go beyond this day must surely come to pass—
- 5 Wherefore, I chose these things, to finish my record upon them, which remainder of my record I shall take from the plates of Nephi; and I cannot write the hundredth part of the things of my people.
- 6 But behold, I shall take these plates, which contain these prophesyings and revelations, and put them with the remainder of my record, for they are choice unto me; and I know they will be choice unto my brethren.
- 7 And I do this for a wise purpose; for thus it whispereth me, according to the workings of the Spirit of the Lord which is in me. And now, I do not know all things; but the Lord knoweth all things which are to come; wherefore, he worketh in me to do according to his will.
- 8 And my prayer to God is concerning my brethren, that they may once again come to the knowledge of God, yea, the redemption of Christ; that they may once again be a delightsome people.
- 9 And now I, Mormon, proceed to finish out my record, which I take from the plates of Nephi; and I make it according to the knowledge and the understanding which God has given me.

## דברי מורמון א:י-יח

- והיה אחר אשר מסר עמלקי את הלוחות האלה לידי המלך בנמינ, לקחם בנמינ והניחם עם שאר הלוחות, אשר בהם כתבי זכרונות אשר נמסרו מידי המלכים, מדור לדור עד ימי המלך בנמינ.
- 10 Wherefore, it came to pass that after Amaleki had delivered up these plates into the hands of king Benjamin, he took them and put them with the other plates, which contained records which had been handed down by the kings, from generation to generation until the days of king Benjamin.
- והם נמסרו מידי המלך בנמינ, מדור לדור, עד אשר הגיעו לידי. ואני, מורמון, מתפלל אל אלהים כי ישמרו מעתה ואילך. ויודע אני כי ישמרו, יען אשר כתובים על גביהם גדולות, אשר על פיהן ישפטו עמי ואחיהם ביום הגדול והאחרון, כדבר אלהים הכתוב.
- 11 And they were handed down from king Benjamin, from generation to generation until they have fallen into my hands. And I, Mormon, pray to God that they may be preserved from this time henceforth. And I know that they will be preserved; for there are great things written upon them, out of which my people and their brethren shall be judged at the great and last day, according to the word of God which is written.
- ועתה, באשר למלך בנמינ, הנה היו לו כמה מריבות בין בני עמו.
- 12 And now, concerning this king Benjamin—he had somewhat of contentions among his own people.
- והיה גם כי חילות הלמנים ירדו מארץ נפי להלחם בעמו. אף הנה אסף המלך בנמינ את צבאותיו ועמד נגדם; ולחם הוא בכח זרעו, וחרב לבן בידו.
- 13 And it came to pass also that the armies of the Lamanites came down out of the land of Nephi, to battle against his people. But behold, king Benjamin gathered together his armies, and he did stand against them; and he did fight with the strength of his own arm, with the sword of Laban.
- והם נלחמו בעז יהוה באויביהם, עד אשר הרגו אלפים רבים מן הלמנים. והם נלחמו בלמנים עד אשר גרשום מכל ארצות נחלתם.
- 14 And in the strength of the Lord they did contend against their enemies, until they had slain many thousands of the Lamanites. And it came to pass that they did contend against the Lamanites until they had driven them out of all the lands of their inheritance.
- וקמו אז משיחי שקר, אף נספר פיהם והם נענשו כפשעיהם.
- 15 And it came to pass that after there had been false Christs, and their mouths had been shut, and they punished according to their crimes;
- ובקום בעם נביאי השקר ומשיפי כזב ומורי מרמה, והם נענשו כלם כפשעיהם; ובבוא אז מריבות ומחלוקות רבות אשר הסבו פלוגים אל הלמנים, נעזר המלך בנמינ בנביאים הקדושים אשר היו בקרב עמו.
- 16 And after there had been false prophets, and false preachers and teachers among the people, and all these having been punished according to their crimes; and after there having been much contention and many dissensions away unto the Lamanites, behold, it came to pass that king Benjamin, with the assistance of the holy prophets who were among his people—
- כי המלך בנמינ איש קדוש היה, אשר משל בעמו בצדק; ואף היו בארץ קדושים רבים אשר דברו בעז ובתקף את דבר אלהים, ודבריהם קשים, כי קשה ערף היה העם.
- 17 For behold, king Benjamin was a holy man, and he did reign over his people in righteousness; and there were many holy men in the land, and they did speak the word of God with power and with authority; and they did use much sharpness because of the stiffneckedness of the people—
- על כן, בעזרת אלה, ובעמל כל כח גופו וכשרון כל נפשו, הצליח המלך בנמינ, עם הנביאים, להשיב את השלום בארץ על פנו.
- 18 Wherefore, with the help of these, king Benjamin, by laboring with all the might of his body and the faculty of his whole soul, and also the prophets, did once more establish peace in the land.

## ספר מושיע

המלך בנמין מלמד את עמו. הם מקבלים מחיר  
לה על חטאיהם. מושיע בנו מולך תחתיו. (בערך  
121-130 לפני הספירה.) נכלל בפרקים א-ח.

### א

והנה חדל מדון בכל ארץ זרחמלה, בקרב  
כל העם אשר למלך בנמין; והיתה שלוה  
בכל שארית ימי המלך.

והיו לבנמין שלשה בנים; והוא קרא את  
שמותם: מושיע, הילורום והילמן. והוא  
הורה ללמדם את כל שפת אבותיו, למען  
יהיו אנשי בינה, ובעבור ידעו את דברי  
הנבואות אשר יצאו מפי אבותם, אשר  
נמסרו להם מיד יהוה.

אף הוא למד אותם את דברי הזכרונות  
החרוטים על גבי לוחות נחשת הקלל, ואמר  
אליהם: בני, חפצני כי תזכרו, כי לולא הלוחות  
האלה, אשר כתובים בהם הזכרונות והמצוות  
האלה, היינו סובלים בבורות, גם בעת הזאת,  
מבלי הבן את נסתרות אלהים.

כי בלא עזרת הלוחות האלה, לא יכול היה  
אבינו, לחי, לזכר את כל הדברים האלה  
וללמדם את בניו. ויען אשר למד את שפת  
המצרים יכול היה לקרא את החריטות  
האלה וללמדן את בניו, וכך יכלו הם ללמדן  
את בניהם, ובה קימו את מצוות אלהים, עד  
היום הזה.

הנני אומר לכם, בני, כי לולא הדברים האלה,  
אשר יד אלהים שמרתם ונצרתם, בעבור נוכל  
לקרא את נסתרותיו ולהבין אותן, ולמען  
תהיינה מצוותיו לנגד עינינו תמיד, היו גם  
אבותינו שוקעים בחסר אמונה, והיינו דומים  
לאחינו הלמנים, אשר אינם יודעים מאומה  
על אודות הדברים האלה, אף אינם מאמינים  
בהם כאשר ילמדום, מפני מסורות אבותם  
אשר אינן נכונות.

אכן, בני, חפצתי כי תזכרו כי הדברים האלה  
אמת הם, וכן כי כתבי הזכרון האלה, אמת

## THE BOOK OF MOSIAH

*King Benjamin teaches his people. They receive a remission of their  
sins. His son Mosiah reigns after him. (About 130-121 B.C.) Comprising  
chapters 1-8.*

### 1

1 And now there was no more contention in all the land of Zarahemla,  
among all the people who belonged to king Benjamin, so that king  
Benjamin had continual peace all the remainder of his days.

2 And it came to pass that he had three sons; and he called their names  
Mosiah, and Helorum, and Helaman. And he caused that they should  
be taught in all the language of his fathers, that thereby they might  
become men of understanding; and that they might know concerning  
the prophecies which had been spoken by the mouths of their fathers,  
which were delivered them by the hand of the Lord.

3 And he also taught them concerning the records which were engraven  
on the plates of brass, saying: My sons, I would that ye should remember  
that were it not for these plates, which contain these records and these  
commandments, we must have suffered in ignorance, even at this  
present time, not knowing the mysteries of God.

4 For it were not possible that our father, Lehi, could have remembered  
all these things, to have taught them to his children, except it were  
for the help of these plates; for he having been taught in the language  
of the Egyptians therefore he could read these engravings, and teach  
them to his children, that thereby they could teach them to their  
children, and so fulfilling the commandments of God, even down to  
this present time.

5 I say unto you, my sons, were it not for these things, which have  
been kept and preserved by the hand of God, that we might read and  
understand of his mysteries, and have his commandments always  
before our eyes, that even our fathers would have dwindled in unbelief,  
and we should have been like unto our brethren, the Lamanites, who  
know nothing concerning these things, or even do not believe them  
when they are taught them, because of the traditions of their fathers,  
which are not correct.

6 O my sons, I would that ye should remember that these sayings are  
true, and also that these records are true. And behold, also the plates of

## מושיע א:ז-יד

הם. והנה, גם לוחות נפִי, אשר בהם זכרונות  
אבותינו ואמרותיהם מעת צאתם מירושלם  
ועד היום הזה, אמת הם; ואנחנו יכולים  
להפִיר באמתם, כי הנם לנגד עינינו.

ועתה, בני, רצוני כי תזכרו לחקֹרם בשקִידה,  
למען יועילו לָכֶם; אף חפִצִי אֲנִי כי תשמְרוּ  
את מצוות אֱלֹהִים, לַמען תצליחוּ באֶרֶץ,  
כְּדַבֵּר בְּרִית יהוה אֵל אֲבוֹתֵינוּ.

ודברים נוספים רבים למד המלֹךְ בְּנִימִין את  
בְּנָיו, ואִין הם כתובים בסֵפֶר הַזֶּה.

והִיא ככלותו ללמד את בְּנָיו, זֶקֶן המלֹךְ  
בְּנִימִין, והוא רָאָה כי קרוב יום לָכוֹתוֹ בְּדֶרֶךְ  
כָּל הָאָרֶץ. על כֵּן, רָאָה כי יִיטֵב עֲשׂוֹת  
בְּהַעֲבִירוֹ את המלוכה אֵל אֶחָד מִבְּנָיו.

לִכֵּן הוא בִּקֵּשׁ כי יובא מושיע לְפָנָיו; ואלה  
הַדְּבָרִים אשר דִּבֶּר אֵלָיו לֵאמֹר: בְּנִי, רצוני כי  
תודיע בְּכָל הָאָרֶץ הַזֹּאת, בְּקֶרֶב כָּל הָעָם  
הַזֶּה, עִם זִרְעֻמָּלָה וְעִם מושיע השׁוֹכְנִים  
בְּאֶרֶץ, לְהֶאֱסֹף יחד, כי לַמַּחֲרָת אודיע לְעַמִּי,  
בְּמוֹ פִי, כי אֶתֶּה מֶלֶךְ וּמוֹשֵׁל עַל הָעָם הַזֶּה,  
אֲשֶׁר יהוה אֱלֹהֵינוּ נָתַן לָנוּ.

ואֲנִכִּי אֵף אֶתֶּן לָעָם הַזֶּה שֵׁם, אֲשֶׁר עַל יָדִיו  
יִבָּדְלוּ מִכָּל הָעַמִּים אֲשֶׁר הוֹצִיאָם יהוה אֱלֹהִים  
מֵאֶרֶץ יְרוּשָׁלַם; וְהִנֵּנִי עוֹשֶׂה זֹאת כי הִיוּ הֵם  
עַם שׁוֹקֵד עַל שְׁמִירַת מִצְוֹת יהוה.

ואֲנִי אֶתֶּן לָהֶם שֵׁם אֲשֶׁר לֹא ימָחָה עַד עוֹלָם,  
בְּלֹתִי אִם מִפְּנֵי פֶשַׁע.

ועוד אמר אֵלָיו, כי אִם יִפְשַׁע הָעָם הַזֶּה,  
אֲשֶׁר יהוה נָטָה לוֹ חֶסֶד כֹּה רַב, וַיְהִי עִם  
רִשְׁעָה וְנֶאֱוָף, וְשִׁלַּחַם יהוה וַיְהִי חֲלָשִׁים  
כְּאֲחֵיהֶם; וְהוּא לֹא יוֹסִיף לְשַׁמְרָם בְּכַחוֹ  
הָעֲלִיוֹן וְהַנִּפְלָא, כְּאֲשֶׁר שָׁמַר אֶת  
אֲבוֹתֵינוּ עַד הַיּוֹם הַזֶּה.

הִנֵּנִי אֹמֵר לָךְ כי לֹא יִשְׁלַח יהוה אֶת זִרְעוֹ  
לְנַצֵּר אֶת אֲבוֹתֵינוּ, אֲזִי נִפְּלוּ לַיַּד הַלְּמָנִים  
וְהִיוּ קָרְבָּנוֹת לְשִׂנְאָתָם.

Nephi, which contain the records and the sayings of our fathers from  
the time they left Jerusalem until now, and they are true; and we can  
know of their surety because we have them before our eyes.

7 And now, my sons, I would that ye should remember to search them  
diligently, that ye may profit thereby; and I would that ye should keep  
the commandments of God, that ye may prosper in the land according  
to the promises which the Lord made unto our fathers.

8 And many more things did king Benjamin teach his sons, which are  
not written in this book.

9 And it came to pass that after king Benjamin had made an end of  
teaching his sons, that he waxed old, and he saw that he must very  
soon go the way of all the earth; therefore, he thought it expedient that  
he should confer the kingdom upon one of his sons.

10 Therefore, he had Mosiah brought before him; and these are the words  
which he spake unto him, saying: My son, I would that ye should make a  
proclamation throughout all this land among all this people, or the peo-  
ple of Zarahemla, and the people of Mosiah who dwell in the land, that  
thereby they may be gathered together; for on the morrow I shall pro-  
claim unto this my people out of mine own mouth that thou art a king  
and a ruler over this people, whom the Lord our God hath given us.

11 And moreover, I shall give this people a name, that thereby they may be  
distinguished above all the people which the Lord God hath brought  
out of the land of Jerusalem; and this I do because they have been a  
diligent people in keeping the commandments of the Lord.

12 And I give unto them a name that never shall be blotted out, except it  
be through transgression.

13 Yea, and moreover I say unto you, that if this highly favored people of  
the Lord should fall into transgression, and become a wicked and an  
adulterous people, that the Lord will deliver them up, that thereby they  
become weak like unto their brethren; and he will no more preserve  
them by his matchless and marvelous power, as he has hitherto  
preserved our fathers.

14 For I say unto you, that if he had not extended his arm in the  
preservation of our fathers they must have fallen into the hands of the  
Lamanites, and become victims to their hatred.



- 15 And it came to pass that after king Benjamin had made an end of these sayings to his son, that he gave him charge concerning all the affairs of the kingdom.
- 16 And moreover, he also gave him charge concerning the records which were engraven on the plates of brass; and also the plates of Nephi; and also, the sword of Laban, and the ball or director, which led our fathers through the wilderness, which was prepared by the hand of the Lord that thereby they might be led, every one according to the heed and diligence which they gave unto him.
- 17 Therefore, as they were unfaithful they did not prosper nor progress in their journey, but were driven back, and incurred the displeasure of God upon them; and therefore they were smitten with famine and sore afflictions, to stir them up in remembrance of their duty.
- 18 And now, it came to pass that Mosiah went and did as his father had commanded him, and proclaimed unto all the people who were in the land of Zarahemla that thereby they might gather themselves together, to go up to the temple to hear the words which his father should speak unto them.
- וְהָיָה כְּכֹלֹת הַמִּלְךָ בְּנִימִין אֶת הַנְּאֻם הַזֶּה לְבָנוֹ, הוּא פָקֵדוֹ לְקַבֵּל לְיָדָיו אֶת כָּל עֲנִינֵי הַמַּמְלָכָה.
- וְהוּא אֵף פָקֵד אוֹתוֹ עוֹד עַל כְּתָבֵי הַזְכְּרוֹנוֹת הַחֲרוּטִים עַל גְּבֵי לוחות נְחֹשֶׁת הַקָּלֵל, וְכֵן עַל לוחות נָפִי; וְאֵף עַל חֶרֶב לָבָן וְעַל הַכְּדוֹר, אוֹ הַמּוֹרָה, אֲשֶׁר הוֹבִיל אֶת אֲבוֹתֵינוּ בַּמִּדְבָּר, וְאֲשֶׁר הִכִּינָה יְדֵי יְהוָה לְמַעַן יוֹבִילֵם, כָּל אֶחָד כְּפִי מְסִירוֹתָו וּשְׂקִידָתוֹ לִיהוָה.
- עַל כֵּן, כְּאֲשֶׁר לֹא הָיוּ נְאֻמִּים לוֹ, לֹא הָאִירָה לָהֶם הַהֲצִלָּה פָּנִים, וְהֵם לֹא הִתְקַדְּמוּ בַּמִּסְעָם; אֵף נִסּוּגוּ אַחֲוֹר וְעוֹרְרוּ אֶת חֲמַת אֱלֹהִים עֲלֵיהֶם; לְכֵן הָכּוּ בָרָעַב וּבִמְכּוֹת נִמְרָצוֹת, לְמַעַן יַעֲזֹרוּ לְזָכֹר אֶת חוּבָתָם.
- וְאִכֵּן קָם מוֹשִׁיעַ וַעֲשָׂה כְּכֹל אֲשֶׁר צִוָּהוּ אָבִיו, וְהוּא הוֹדִיעַ לְכָל הָעָם הַיּוֹשֵׁב בְּאֶרֶץ זֶרַח־מֶלֶחָ כִּי יֵאָסְפוּ יַחַד, לַעֲלוֹת אֶל בֵּית הַמִּקְדָּשׁ לִשְׁמֹעַ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר יְדַבֵּר אֱלֹהִים אֲבִיו.

## ב

## 2

- 1 And it came to pass that after Mosiah had done as his father had commanded him, and had made a proclamation throughout all the land, that the people gathered themselves together throughout all the land, that they might go up to the temple to hear the words which king Benjamin should speak unto them.
- 2 And there were a great number, even so many that they did not number them; for they had multiplied exceedingly and waxed great in the land.
- 3 And they also took of the firstlings of their flocks, that they might offer sacrifice and burnt offerings according to the law of Moses;
- 4 And also that they might give thanks to the Lord their God, who had brought them out of the land of Jerusalem, and who had delivered them out of the hands of their enemies, and had appointed just men to be their teachers, and also a just man to be their king, who had established peace in the land of Zarahemla, and who had taught them to keep the commandments of God, that they might rejoice and be filled with love towards God and all men.
- וְהָיָה כְּעֲשׂוֹת מוֹשִׁיעַ כְּמִצְוֹת אָבִיו וּכְקִרְאוֹ בְּכָל הָאֶרֶץ, נֶאֱסַף הָעָם מִכָּל רַחְבֵּי הָאֶרֶץ לַעֲלוֹת אֶל בֵּית הַמִּקְדָּשׁ לִשְׁמֹעַ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר יְדַבֵּר אֱלֹהִים הַמִּלְךָ בְּנִימִין.
- אִזּוּ בָּא עִם רַב, כֹּה עָצוּם עַד כִּי לֹא נִמְנָה מִסְפָּרָם; כִּי רַבּוּ מְאֹד וַנִּשְׁעָצְמוּ בְּקֶרֶב הָאֶרֶץ.
- וְהֵם אֵף הִבִּיאוּ מִבְּכוֹרוֹת צֹאנָם, לְהִקְרִיב קֶרֶבֶן וְעוֹלָה עַל פִּי תוֹרַת מֹשֶׁה;
- וְכֵן לָתֵת תּוֹדָה לִיהוָה אֱלֹהֵיהֶם, אֲשֶׁר הוֹצִיאָם מֵאֶרֶץ יְרוּשָׁלַם, וְאֲשֶׁר הֲצִילֵם מִיַּד אוֹיְבֵיהֶם וּמִנָּה אֲנָשֵׁי צָדִק לְהִיּוֹת מוֹרִיהֶם וְכֵן אִישׁ צָדִיק לְהִיּוֹת מֶלֶכָם, אֲשֶׁר כּוֹנֵן שְׁלוֹם בְּאֶרֶץ זֶרַח־מֶלֶחָ, וְאֲשֶׁר לְמַדֵּם לִשְׁמֹר אֶת מִצְוֹת אֱלֹהִים לְמַעַן יִשְׂמְחוּ וְיִמְלְאוּ אֶהְבָּה לְאֱלֹהִים וּלְכָל הָאָדָם.



- 5 And it came to pass that when they came up to the temple, they pitched their tents round about, every man according to his family, consisting of his wife, and his sons, and his daughters, and their sons, and their daughters, from the eldest down to the youngest, every family being separate one from another.
- וּבְבוֹאֵם אֶל הַמִּקְדָּשׁ הָיוּ אֵת אֹהֲלֵיהֶם סָבִיב אֶת אֹהֲלֵיהֶם סָבִיב, כָּל אִישׁ לְמִשְׁפַּחְתּוֹ, עִם אִשְׁתּוֹ, בָּנָיו וּבָנוֹתָיו, וּבְנֵיהֶם וּבָנוֹתֵיהֶם, לְמַגְדֹּל וָעֵד קָסוֹ; כָּל מִשְׁפָּחָה נִפְרְדֶּת מִרְעוּתָהּ.
- 6 And they pitched their tents round about the temple, every man having his tent with the door thereof towards the temple, that thereby they might remain in their tents and hear the words which king Benjamin should speak unto them;
- וְהָיוּ הָיוּ אֵת אֹהֲלֵיהֶם סָבִיב בֵּית הַמִּקְדָּשׁ, כָּל אִישׁ וּפְתָחוֹ אֹהֲלוֹ פָּנָה אֶל הַהִיכָל, לְמַעַן יֻכְלוּ הָאֲנָשִׁים לְשָׁמֹעַ בְּשִׁמְעָם אֶת הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר יִדְבֹר אֲלֵיהֶם הַמֶּלֶךְ בְּנִימִין.
- 7 For the multitude being so great that king Benjamin could not teach them all within the walls of the temple, therefore he caused a tower to be erected, that thereby his people might hear the words which he should speak unto them.
- אֲךָ כֹּה רַב הָיָה הַהֶמְכּוֹן עַד כִּי לֹא יָכוֹל הָיָה הַמֶּלֶךְ בְּנִימִין לְלַמֵּד אֶת כָּלֵם בֵּין כְּתָלֵי הַמִּקְדָּשׁ; לָכֵן הָיָה הוֹרָה לְהָקִים מִגְדָּל, לְמַעַן יֻכְלוּ עַמּוֹ לְשִׁמְעַת אֶת הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר יִדְבֹר אֲלֵיהֶם.
- 8 And it came to pass that he began to speak to his people from the tower; and they could not all hear his words because of the greatness of the multitude; therefore he caused that the words which he spake should be written and sent forth among those that were not under the sound of his voice, that they might also receive his words.
- וְאוּלָם בְּדַבְּרוֹ מִן הַמִּגְדָּל, לֹא יָכוֹל כָּל הָעָם לְשִׁמְעַת אֶת דְּבָרָיו מִפְּנֵי גְדֹל הַהֶמְכּוֹן. עַל כֵּן הָיָה הוֹרָה לְכַתֵּב אֶת הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר וּלְשַׁלְּחַת אֶת הַכְּתוּב בֵּין אֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר לֹא הָיְתָם קוֹלּוֹ, לְמַעַן יִקְבְּלוּ אֹף הֵם אֶת דְּבָרָיו.
- 9 And these are the words which he spake and caused to be written, saying: My brethren, all ye that have assembled yourselves together, you that can hear my words which I shall speak unto you this day; for I have not commanded you to come up hither to trifle with the words which I shall speak, but that you should hearken unto me, and open your ears that ye may hear, and your hearts that ye may understand, and your minds that the mysteries of God may be unfolded to your view.
- וְאֵלֶּה הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר, וְגַם הוֹרָה לְכַתֵּבָם, לֵאמֹר: אַחֵי, כָּלְכֶם אֲשֶׁר נֶאֱסַפְתֶּם יַחַד, הַשּׁוֹמְעִים אֶת דְּבָרֵי אֲשֶׁר אֲדַבֵּר בְּאָזְנֵיכֶם הַיּוֹם. לֹא צִוִּיתִיכֶם לָבוֹא הֵנָּה לְהַקְל בְּדַבָּרִים אֲשֶׁר אֲדַבֵּר, כִּי אִם בְּעֵבֹר תִּקְשִׁיבוּ לִי וּתִפְקְחוּ אָזְנֵיכֶם לְשִׁמְעַת וּלְבָבְכֶם לְהִבִּין, וְכִי תִכְנִינוּ דַּעְתְּכֶם בְּעֵבֹר יִתְגַּלוּ נִסְתָּרוֹת אֱלֹהִים לְמַרְאֵה עֵינֵיכֶם.
- 10 I have not commanded you to come up hither that ye should fear me, or that ye should think that I of myself am more than a mortal man.
- אֹף לֹא צִוִּיתִיכֶם לָבוֹא הֵנָּה לִירֵא מִפָּנַי, אוֹ בְּעֵבֹר תִּדְמוּ בְּנַפְשְׁכֶם כִּי יִתְרוֹן לִי עַל כֵּן תִּמּוּתָהּ.
- 11 But I am like as yourselves, subject to all manner of infirmities in body and mind; yet I have been chosen by this people, and consecrated by my father, and was suffered by the hand of the Lord that I should be a ruler and a king over this people; and have been kept and preserved by his matchless power, to serve you with all the might, mind and strength which the Lord hath granted unto me.
- כִּי כְמוֹנִי כְמוֹכֶם, נָתַן לְכָל מִיָּנִי חֲלָשׁוֹת הַגּוּף וְהָרוּחַ; וְאוּלָם נִבְחַרְתִּי עַל יְדֵי הָעָם הַזֶּה, וְאַבִּי קִדְּשָׁנִי, וְיָד יְהוָה הֵנִיחָנִי לְהִיּוֹת מוֹשֵׁל וּמֶלֶךְ עַל הָעָם הַזֶּה; כֹּחַו הָעֲלִיּוֹן שְׁמִרָנִי וּנְצָרָנִי לְשִׁרְתְּכֶם בְּכָל מְאֹדִי וּבְכָל נַפְשִׁי וּבְכָל כֹּחִי אֲשֶׁר נָתַן לִי יְהוָה.
- 12 I say unto you that as I have been suffered to spend my days in your service, even up to this time, and have not sought gold nor silver nor any manner of riches of you;
- הֵנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם כִּי בְּהִנֵּחַ לִי יְהוָה לְהַעֲבִיר אֶת יָמֵי בְּשִׁרְתְּכֶם עַד הַיּוֹם הַזֶּה, לֹא בִקְשָׁתִי מִכֶּם זָהָב וְכֶסֶף, אָכֵן לֹא כָל עֶשֶׂר;

## מוֹשִׁיעַ בִּיג-כֹּא

- 13 Neither have I suffered that ye should be confined in dungeons, nor that ye should make slaves one of another, nor that ye should murder, or plunder, or steal, or commit adultery; nor even have I suffered that ye should commit any manner of wickedness, and have taught you that ye should keep the commandments of the Lord, in all things which he hath commanded you—
- 14 And even I, myself, have labored with mine own hands that I might serve you, and that ye should not be laden with taxes, and that there should nothing come upon you which was grievous to be borne—and of all these things which I have spoken, ye yourselves are witnesses this day.
- 15 Yet, my brethren, I have not done these things that I might boast, neither do I tell these things that thereby I might accuse you; but I tell you these things that ye may know that I can answer a clear conscience before God this day.
- 16 Behold, I say unto you that because I said unto you that I had spent my days in your service, I do not desire to boast, for I have only been in the service of God.
- 17 And behold, I tell you these things that ye may learn wisdom; that ye may learn that when ye are in the service of your fellow beings ye are only in the service of your God.
- 18 Behold, ye have called me your king; and if I, whom ye call your king, do labor to serve you, then ought not ye to labor to serve one another?
- 19 And behold also, if I, whom ye call your king, who has spent his days in your service, and yet has been in the service of God, do merit any thanks from you, O how you ought to thank your heavenly King!
- 20 I say unto you, my brethren, that if you should render all the thanks and praise which your whole soul has power to possess, to that God who has created you, and has kept and preserved you, and has caused that ye should rejoice, and has granted that ye should live in peace one with another—
- 21 I say unto you that if ye should serve him who has created you from the beginning, and is preserving you from day to day, by lending you breath, that ye may live and move and do according to your own will, and even supporting you from one moment to another—I say, if ye should serve him with all your whole souls yet ye would be unprofitable servants.
- אִם לֹא הִנַּחְתִּי כִּי תִכְלְאוּ בְּבוֹר, אוֹ כִּי יַעֲשׂוּ לְעֶבֶד אִישׁ אֶת רֵעֵהוּ, וְכִי תִרְצְחוּ, וְתִשְׁדְּדוּ, וְתִגְנְבוּ וְתִנָּאֲפוּ. גַּם לֹא הִנַּחְתִּי כִּי תִבְאוּ לְיָדֵי כָּל רָשָׁעָה, כִּי אִם לְמִדְּתֵיכֶם כִּי שׁוּמָה עָלֵיכֶם לְשׁמֹר אֶת מִצְוֹת יְהוָה בְּכָל אֲשֶׁר צִוָּה אֶתְכֶם.
- אֲףִי אֲנִכִּי, עָמַלְתִּי בְּמוֹ יָדִי לְשִׁרְתְּכֶם, לְמַעַן לֹא תִכְרְעוּ תַּחַת כְּבֹד מַסִּים וּבְעִבּוֹר לֹא יָבֹא עָלֵיכֶם אֶת אֲשֶׁר תִּקְשׁוּ לְשִׁאתוֹ; וּלְכָל הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר עָלִיהֶם דִּבַּרְתִּי, הִנֵּכֶם עֲדִים הַיּוֹם.
- וְאֹלָם, אַחִי, לֹא לְהִתְפָּאֵר עָשִׂיתִי אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, אֲףִי אֲנִי מְסַפֵּר אוֹתָם לְמַעַן הָאֲשִׁימְכֶם; אֲףִי הִנֵּנִי מְסַפֵּר לָכֶם לְמַעַן תֵּדְעוּ כִּי יָכוֹל אֲנִי לַעֲנוֹת הַיּוֹם לִפְנֵי אֱלֹהִים כִּי מִצְפוֹנִי טוֹהֵר.
- אֲכֹן, זֶה דְּבָרִי אֵלֵיכֶם: יַעַן אֲשֶׁר אֶמְרָתִי לָכֶם כִּי יָמִי עָבְרוּ עָלַי בְּשִׁרְוֹתְכֶם, אֲנִינִי רוֹצֶה לְהִתְפָּאֵר, כִּי בְּשִׁרְוֹת אֱלֹהִים בְּלִבִּי פָעַלְתִּי.
- הִנֵּנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה לְמַעַן תִּלְמְדוּ חֻקָּה; בְּעִבּוֹר תֵּדְעוּ כִּי בְּשִׁרְתְּכֶם אֶת חֲבֵרֵיכֶם, אֲףִי בְּשִׁרְוֹת אֱלֹהֵיכֶם אַתֶּם פּוֹעֲלִים.
- הִנֵּה, קָרָאתֶם אוֹתִי מֶלֶכְכֶם; וְאִם אֲנִי, אֲשֶׁר קוֹרְאִים אֶתֶם מֶלֶכְכֶם, עָמַל לְשִׁרְתְּכֶם, הֲאִין עָלֵיכֶם לַעֲמֹל לְשִׁרְתִּי אִישׁ אֶת רֵעֵהוּ?
- וְאִף־זֹאת: אִם אֲנִי, אֲשֶׁר תִּקְרְאוּנִי מֶלֶכְכֶם, אֲשֶׁר הֶעֱבִיר אֶת יָמָיו בְּשִׁרְוֹתְכֶם, וּבְזֹאת פָּעַל בְּשִׁרְוֹת לֵאלֹהִים, רְאוּ לְתוֹדָה מֵאֲתָכֶם, עַד כַּמָּה עָלֵיכֶם לְהוֹדוֹת לְמֶלֶכְכֶם אֲשֶׁר בְּשָׁמַיִם!
- הִנֵּנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, אַחִי, כִּי אֵלֹהִים נִתְּתָם אֶת תּוֹדַתְכֶם וְשִׁבְחָכֶם, כִּפִּי כָּל כְּחוֹת נַפְשְׁכֶם, לֵאלֹהִים, בּוֹרְאֵכֶם, אֲשֶׁר שָׁמַרְכֶם וְנִצְרְכֶם, וְשִׁמְחָכֶם, וְהֶעֱנִיק לָכֶם חַיֵּי שְׁלוֹם אִישׁ עִם רֵעֵהוּ,
- אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, כִּי אֵלֹהִים שִׁרְתֶּם אֶת אֲשֶׁר בָּרָא אֶתְכֶם בְּתַחֲלָה, הַמְּשִׁימֶר אֶתְכֶם מִיּוֹם לְיוֹם בְּנִפְחוֹ בְּאַפְכֶם נְשִׁמַת חַיִּים, בְּעִבּוֹר תַּחֲיוֹ וְתַנְעוּוֹ וְתַעֲשׂוּ כְּחַפְצְכֶם, וְהַתּוֹמָךְ בְּכֶם מִרְגַע לְרְגַע, הִנֵּנִי אוֹמֵר: אֲףִי אֵלֹהִים שִׁרְתֶּם אוֹתוֹ בְּכָל נַפְשְׁכֶם, אֲףִי כֹךְ לֹא הֵייתֶם לוֹ עֲבָדִים נוֹשְׂאֵי רוּחַ.

- 22 And behold, all that he requires of you is to keep his commandments; and he has promised you that if ye would keep his commandments ye should prosper in the land; and he never doth vary from that which he hath said; therefore, if ye do keep his commandments he doth bless you and prosper you.
- הן כל אשר יבקש מכם אלהים הוא לשמור את מצוותיו; ואמר הוא לכם כי אם תשמרו את מצוותיו תעשו חיל בארץ ולעולם לא ימיר דברתו. על כן, אם אכן תשמרו את מצוותיו, הוא יברך אתכם ויצלחכם.
- 23 And now, in the first place, he hath created you, and granted unto you your lives, for which ye are indebted unto him.
- הנה, ראשית, הוא בראכם והעניק לכם את חייכם אשר על כך הנכם בעלי חובו.
- 24 And secondly, he doth require that ye should do as he hath commanded you; for which if ye do, he doth immediately bless you; and therefore he hath paid you. And ye are still indebted unto him, and are, and will be, forever and ever; therefore, of what have ye to boast?
- ושנית, הוא דורש כי תעשו כאשר צוה אתכם; ובעשותכם כן, במהרה יברך אתכם, ויבך גמל לכם. אך אתם עודכם חבים לו, כעת ובעתיד, לעולמי עולמים; לכן, מה לכם להתפאר?
- 25 And now I ask, can ye say aught of yourselves? I answer you, Nay. Ye cannot say that ye are even as much as the dust of the earth; yet ye were created of the dust of the earth; but behold, it belongeth to him who created you.
- ועתה אשאלכם: התוכלו לומר דבר בשבחכם? ואני אענכם: לא! אי לא תוכלו לומר כי כעפר הארץ אתם; הן מעפר הארץ נוצרתם; ואין הוא כי אם לאשר יצרכם.
- 26 And I, even I, whom ye call your king, am no better than ye yourselves are; for I am also of the dust. And ye behold that I am old, and am about to yield up this mortal frame to its mother earth.
- ואף אני, אשר תקראוני מלכם, אינני טוב מכם; כי גם אני מן העפר. והנכם רואים כי זקן אני ועומד להשיב את הגוף בן התמותה לאמו, האדמה.
- 27 Therefore, as I said unto you that I had served you, walking with a clear conscience before God, even so I at this time have caused that ye should assemble yourselves together, that I might be found blameless, and that your blood should not come upon me, when I shall stand to be judged of God of the things whereof he hath commanded me concerning you.
- על כן, כפי אמרי לכם כי שרתי אתכם, בהתהלכי לפני אלהים ומצפוני טהור, הנה גם היום הוריתי כי תתכנסו יחדו, למען אמצא ללא אשמה ולא יחול דמכם על ראשי בעמדי להשפט לפני אלהים על אשר צוני בעבורכם.
- 28 I say unto you that I have caused that ye should assemble yourselves together that I might rid my garments of your blood, at this period of time when I am about to go down to my grave, that I might go down in peace, and my immortal spirit may join the choirs above in singing the praises of a just God.
- הנני אומר לכם אשר צויתי כי תתכנסו למען אפטר את בגדי מדמכם בעת הזאת, בעמדי לרדת אלי קבר, בעבור ארד בשלום, ורוחי בת האלמות תדבק במקהלות מרום לשרי תהלות לאלהי צדק.
- 29 And moreover, I say unto you that I have caused that ye should assemble yourselves together, that I might declare unto you that I can no longer be your teacher, nor your king;
- ועוד אני אומר לכם: צויתי על התאספותכם להגידכם כי אינני יכול עוד להיות מורכם ומלכם.
- 30 For even at this time, my whole frame doth tremble exceedingly while attempting to speak unto you; but the Lord God doth support me, and hath suffered me that I should speak unto you, and hath commanded me that I should declare unto you this day, that my son Mosiah is a king and a ruler over you.
- אף כעת, כל גופי מרעיד מאד, בנסותי לדבר אליכם; אך יהוה אלהים תומכני והוא הניחני לדבר אליכם וצוני להגידכם היום כי בני מושיע הוא מלך ומושל עליכם.

- ועתה, אחי, רצוני כי תעשו כאשר עשיתם עד כה. כפי אשר שמרתם את מצוותי, וכן את מצוות אבי, והצלחתם ונשמרתם מנפל בידי אויביכם, כן יהיה בשמרתם את מצוות בני, או את מצוות אלהים אשר ינתנו לכם מפי בני. אז תצליחו בארץ ולא יהיה לאויביכם כח לגבר עליכם.
- אך, עמי, הזהרו פן יקומו מריבות ביניכם ותטו להשמע לרוח הרע, אשר אבי מושיע דבר עליו.
- כי הנה, נחרצה צרה לאשר יטה לשמע לרוח ההוא; כי אם יטה לשמע לו, ויוסיף וימות בעודו אוהו בחטאיו, מארת חרם לנפשו ישטה; כי שכר פשעו הוא ענש נצחי, יען אשר עבר על חק אלהים למרות ידיעתו.
- הנני אומר לכם כי אין אחד בכם, זולת ילדיכם הקטנים, אשר לא למד על אודות הדברים האלה ואשר לא ידע כי חבים אתם חוב עולם לאביכם אשר בשמים להשיבו את כל אשר לכם ואשר הנכם; ואף למדתם על כתבי הזכרון המכילים את דברי הנבואה אשר דברו הנביאים הקדושים, עד יום צאת אבינו, לחי, מירושלם;
- וכן כל אשר דברו אבותינו עד היום הזה. הנה, אף הם דברו את אשר צגס יהוה; לכן דברי צדק ואמת הם.
- והנני אומר לכם, אחי, כי אחר אשר ידעתם ולמדתם את כל הדברים האלה, אם תפשעו ותלכו להפך מאשר נאמרה אם תסוגו מעם רוח יהוה עד כי לא תשפן בכם להנהיגכם בנתיבות חכמה, ותתנכם ברך והצלחה ושלוש,
- אני אומר לכם, כי האיש אשר יעשה כן, מורד הוא בגלוי באלהים; נוטה הוא לשמע לרוח הרע, ונהפך אויב לכל צדק; על כן, אין ליהוה מקום בקרבו, כי לא ישפן יהוה בהיכלי טמאה.
- לכן, אם לא ישוב האיש ההוא מרעתו, ואף ימות בעודו אויב לאלהים, תעוררנה תביעות דינו, אשר מאת אלהים, את רוחו בת האלמות לחוש בלי הרף את אשמתו, אשר
- 31 And now, my brethren, I would that ye should do as ye have hitherto done. As ye have kept my commandments, and also the commandments of my father, and have prospered, and have been kept from falling into the hands of your enemies, even so if ye shall keep the commandments of my son, or the commandments of God which shall be delivered unto you by him, ye shall prosper in the land, and your enemies shall have no power over you.
- 32 But, O my people, beware lest there shall arise contentions among you, and ye list to obey the evil spirit, which was spoken of by my father Mosiah.
- 33 For behold, there is a wo pronounced upon him who listeth to obey that spirit; for if he listeth to obey him, and remaineth and dieth in his sins, the same drinketh damnation to his own soul; for he receiveth for his wages an everlasting punishment, having transgressed the law of God contrary to his own knowledge.
- 34 I say unto you, that there are not any among you, except it be your little children that have not been taught concerning these things, but what knoweth that ye are eternally indebted to your heavenly Father, to render to him all that you have and are; and also have been taught concerning the records which contain the prophecies which have been spoken by the holy prophets, even down to the time our father, Lehi, left Jerusalem;
- 35 And also, all that has been spoken by our fathers until now. And behold, also, they spake that which was commanded them of the Lord; therefore, they are just and true.
- 36 And now, I say unto you, my brethren, that after ye have known and have been taught all these things, if ye should transgress and go contrary to that which has been spoken, that ye do withdraw yourselves from the Spirit of the Lord, that it may have no place in you to guide you in wisdom's paths that ye may be blessed, prospered, and preserved—
- 37 I say unto you, that the man that doeth this, the same cometh out in open rebellion against God; therefore he listeth to obey the evil spirit, and becometh an enemy to all righteousness; therefore, the Lord has no place in him, for he dwelleth not in unholy temples.
- 38 Therefore if that man repenteth not, and remaineth and dieth an enemy to God, the demands of divine justice do awaken his immortal soul to a lively sense of his own guilt, which doth cause him to shrink from the presence of the Lord, and doth fill his breast with guilt, and pain, and

תִּרְתִּיעוּ מִלִּפְנֵי יְהוָה וּתְמַלֵּא אֶת חִיקוֹ  
בְּאַשְׁמָה וּבִכְאָב וּבְמִצּוּקָה, אֲשֶׁר הֵנָּם כְּאֵשׁ  
אֲשֶׁר לֹא תִכָּבֶה וְשִׁלְהִבְתָּה עוֹלָה עַד־עַד.

anguish, which is like an unquenchable fire, whose flame ascendeth up forever and ever.

וְעַתָּה, אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם כִּי אֵין הַרְחָמִים  
נוֹגְעִים לְאִישׁ הַזֶּה; עַל כֵּן דִּינוֹ הוּא לְסִבֵּל  
עֲנוּי עוֹלָמִי עַד.

39 And now I say unto you, that mercy hath no claim on that man; therefore his final doom is to endure a never-ending torment.

שְׁמַעוּ כָּל זָקֵן וְצֶעִיר וְיֶלֶד קָטָן, אַתֶּם הַיְּכוּלִים  
לְהִבִּין אֶת דְּבָרִי, כִּי דִבַּרְתִּי אֵלֵיכֶם בְּרוּרוֹת  
לְמַעַן תִּבְיִנוּ: הִנְנִי מִבְּקֵשׁ כִּי תִתְעוֹרְרוּ לְזָכֹר  
אֶת אֵימַת מִצַּב הַנוֹפְלִים אֵלַי פֶּשַׁע.

40 O, all ye old men, and also ye young men, and you little children who can understand my words, for I have spoken plainly unto you that ye might understand, I pray that ye should awake to a remembrance of the awful situation of those that have fallen into transgression.

וְעוֹד, רְצוֹנִי כִּי תִתְבּוֹנְנוּ בְּכִרְפַּת הַשּׁוֹמְרִים  
אֶת מִצְוֹת אֱלֹהִים וּבְשִׁמְחָתָם. כִּי הִמָּה  
מְבֹרָכִים בְּכָל, בְּגוֹף וּבְרוּחַ; וְאִם יִתְמַיֵּדוּ  
בְּאַמוּנָתָם עַד הַקֵּץ, יִתְקַבְּלוּ בְּשָׁמַיִם לְשֹׁכְנֵי עִם  
אֱלֹהִים בְּשִׁמְחַת עוֹלָם. זָכוֹר תִּזְכְּרוּ אֲשֶׁר אָלַה  
דְּבָרִי אֲמַת, כִּי יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים דִּבֶּר זֹאת.

41 And moreover, I would desire that ye should consider on the blessed and happy state of those that keep the commandments of God. For behold, they are blessed in all things, both temporal and spiritual; and if they hold out faithful to the end they are received into heaven, that thereby they may dwell with God in a state of never-ending happiness. O remember, remember that these things are true; for the Lord God hath spoken it.

## ג

## 3

וְשׁוּב, אַחִי, הֶאֱזִינוּ, כִּי יֵשׁ לִי עוֹד לְדַבֵּר  
אֵלֵיכֶם; הִנֵּה, יֵשׁ לִי דְבַר־מָה לְסַפֵּר לָכֶם עַל  
הָעִתִּיד לָבוֹא.

1 And again my brethren, I would call your attention, for I have somewhat more to speak unto you; for behold, I have things to tell you concerning that which is to come.

וְאֲשֶׁר אֶסְפֹּר לָכֶם, נֹדַע לִי מֵאֵת מַלְאָךְ  
אֱלֹהִים. וְהוּא אָמַר אֵלַי: עוֹרָה! נָא! וְאֲנִי  
הִתְעוֹרַרְתִּי, וְהִנֵּה הוּא עוֹמֵד לִפְנֵי.

2 And the things which I shall tell you are made known unto me by an angel from God. And he said unto me: Awake; and I awoke, and behold he stood before me.

וְהוּא אָמַר אֵלַי: עוֹרָה וּשְׁמַע אֶת הַדְּבָרִים  
אֲשֶׁר אֲגִיד לָךְ. הִנֵּה בָאתִי לְהוֹדִיעַךְ בְּשׂוֹרֵת  
שְׂשׂוֹן וְרַב שְׂמֵחָה.

3 And he said unto me: Awake, and hear the words which I shall tell thee; for behold, I am come to declare unto you the glad tidings of great joy.

כִּי יְהוָה שָׁמַע אֶת תְּפִלּוֹתֶיךָ וּשְׁפֹט בְּצִדְקָתָךְ,  
וְהוּא שָׁלַח אוֹתִי לְהוֹדִיעַךְ כִּי יֵשׁ לָךְ לְשִׂמְחָה;  
וְכִי תֻּכַּל לְהוֹדִיעַ לְעַמְּךָ, בְּעִבּוֹר יִתְמַלֵּאוּ  
שְׂמֵחָה אַף הֵם.

4 For the Lord hath heard thy prayers, and hath judged of thy righteousness, and hath sent me to declare unto thee that thou mayest rejoice; and that thou mayest declare unto thy people, that they may also be filled with joy.

כִּי הִנֵּה בָּאָה הָעֵת, וְלֹא רַחוּקָה הִיא, אֲשֶׁר  
יְהוָה אֵל־יְשִׁדִּי, הַמוֹלֵךְ אֲשֶׁר הָיָה וְאֲשֶׁר הוּוֹה  
מִעוֹלָם וְלְעוֹלָמֵי עוֹלָמִים, יֵרֵד מִשְׁמַיִם אֶל בְּנֵי  
הָאָדָם, וְיִשְׁכֵּן בְּמִשְׁכַּן חָמֵר וְיִלְךָ בִּינֵיהֶם,  
וְיַעֲשֶׂה נִפְלְאוֹת גְּדוֹלוֹת, כְּרַפּוֹ חוֹלִים וְהַקְמַת

5 For behold, the time cometh, and is not far distant, that with power, the Lord Omnipotent who reigneth, who was, and is from all eternity to all eternity, shall come down from heaven among the children of men, and shall dwell in a tabernacle of clay, and shall go forth amongst men, working mighty miracles, such as healing the sick, raising the dead,



- מתים, ומידו פסחים יהלכו, ועורים יראו,  
וחרשים ישמעו, וכל מיני תחלואים ירפאו.
- והוא יגרש שדים, או רוחות רעות, השוכנים  
בלב בני האדם.
- והנה, הוא יסבל פתויים ומכאובי גוף,  
רעב, צמא ויגיעה יותר מאשר יוכל אדם  
לסבל מבלי למוות; כי הנה נגר הדם מכל  
נקבובית; כה גדולה תהיה מצוקתו מפני  
רשעת עמו ותועבותיהם.
- ושמו יקרא ישוע המשיח, בן אלהים, אבי  
שמים וארץ, בורא הכל מבראשית, ושם  
אמו יקרא מרים.
- והנה, הוא בא אל אשר לו, למען תבוא  
הישועה אל בני האדם על ידי האמונה בשמו.  
ואף אחר כל זאת, יחשבוהו אדם ויאמרו כי  
יש בו שד ויכוהו בשוטים ויצלבוהו.
- וביום השלישי יקום מן המתים; והוא יעמד  
לשפט את העולם; והנה כל הדברים האלה  
נעשים למען יבוא על בני האדם משפט צדק.
- ואף דמו מכפר על עונות אלה אשר  
נפלו בעברת אדם הראשון, אשר מתו מבלי  
ידעת רצון אלהים לגביהם, או אלה אשר  
חטאו בשגגה.
- אף אוי, אוי לאשר יודע כי מורד הוא  
באלהים! כי אין הישועה בזה לאשר  
קמוהו, בלתי אם ינחם מחטא ויאמין  
באדון ישוע המשיח.
- ויהוה אלהים שלח את נביאיו הקדושים  
בקרב כל בני האדם להודיע את הדברים  
האלה לכל משפחה, אמה ולשון, בעבור  
יוכל כל המאמין אשר יבוא המשיח לקבל  
מחילה על חטאיו ולשמח שמחה רבה מאד,  
כאלו בא הוא כבר בקרבם.
- ואולם ראה יהוה אלהים כי עם קשה ערף  
עמו והוא מנה להם תורה, היא תורת משה.
- והוא הראה להם אותות ונפלאות, מופתים  
ותבניות הנוגעים לבואו; וגם הנביאים
- causing the lame to walk, the blind to receive their sight, and the deaf  
to hear, and curing all manner of diseases.
- 6 And he shall cast out devils, or the evil spirits which dwell in the hearts  
of the children of men.
- 7 And lo, he shall suffer temptations, and pain of body, hunger, thirst,  
and fatigue, even more than man can suffer, except it be unto death; for  
behold, blood cometh from every pore, so great shall be his anguish for  
the wickedness and the abominations of his people.
- 8 And he shall be called Jesus Christ, the Son of God, the Father of  
heaven and earth, the Creator of all things from the beginning; and his  
mother shall be called Mary.
- 9 And lo, he cometh unto his own, that salvation might come unto the  
children of men even through faith on his name; and even after all this  
they shall consider him a man, and say that he hath a devil, and shall  
scourge him, and shall crucify him.
- 10 And he shall rise the third day from the dead; and behold, he standeth  
to judge the world; and behold, all these things are done that a righteous  
judgment might come upon the children of men.
- 11 For behold, and also his blood atoneth for the sins of those who have  
fallen by the transgression of Adam, who have died not knowing the  
will of God concerning them, or who have ignorantly sinned.
- 12 But wo, wo unto him who knoweth that he rebelleth against God! For  
salvation cometh to none such except it be through repentance and  
faith on the Lord Jesus Christ.
- 13 And the Lord God hath sent his holy prophets among all the children  
of men, to declare these things to every kindred, nation, and tongue,  
that thereby whosoever should believe that Christ should come, the  
same might receive remission of their sins, and rejoice with exceedingly  
great joy, even as though he had already come among them.
- 14 Yet the Lord God saw that his people were a stiffnecked people, and he  
appointed unto them a law, even the law of Moses.
- 15 And many signs, and wonders, and types, and shadows showed he  
unto them, concerning his coming; and also holy prophets spake unto



הַקְדוּשִׁים דָּבְרוּ אֲלֵיהֶם עַל אֲדוּת בּוֹאוֹ; אֲף  
הֵם הִקְשׁוּ אֶת לִבָּם וְלֹא הִבִּינוּ כִּי אֵין מוֹעִילָה  
תּוֹרַת מֹשֶׁה דָּבָר, כִּי אִם עַל יְדֵי כַּפֶּרֶת דָּמוֹ.

them concerning his coming; and yet they hardened their hearts, and understood not that the law of Moses availeth nothing except it were through the atonement of his blood.

אֲף אֱלֹו יִכְלוּ יְלָדִים קְטָנִים לַחֲטָא, לֹא הָיָה  
נוֹשָׁעִים; אֲף אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָךְ כִּי בְרוּכִים הֵם; כִּי  
מִפְּנֵי אָדָם הָרָאשׁוֹן, עַל יְדֵי הַטֵּבֵעַ, יִפְּלוּ, וְדָם  
הַמְּשִׁיחַ יִכְפֹּר עַל חַטְאֵיהֶם.

**16** And even if it were possible that little children could sin they could not be saved; but I say unto you they are blessed; for behold, as in Adam, or by nature, they fall, even so the blood of Christ atoneth for their sins.

וְעוֹד אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָךְ, כִּי לֹא יִנָּתֵן שֵׁם אֲחֵר וְלֹא  
דֶּרֶךְ אַחֶרֶת וְלֹא פְּלִים אֲשֶׁר בָּהֶם תָּבוֹא  
הַיְשׁוּעָה לְבְנֵי הָאָדָם, כִּי אִם בְּשֵׁם הַמְּשִׁיחַ,  
יְהוָה אֱלֹו שַׁדִּי, וְעַל יְדֵיו בְּלִבָּד.

**17** And moreover, I say unto you, that there shall be no other name given nor any other way nor means whereby salvation can come unto the children of men, only in and through the name of Christ, the Lord Omnipotent.

כִּי הִנֵּה הוּא שׁוֹפֵט, וּמִשְׁפָּטוֹ צָדִיק; וְהַעוֹלָל  
אֲשֶׁר מֵת בְּיָנְקוּתוֹ, לֹא יֵאבֹד, אֲף אֲנָשִׁים  
שׁוֹתִים מֵאֶרֶת חֶרֶם לְנַפְשָׁם, בְּלֹתִי אִם יִשְׁפִּילוּ  
וְיִהְיוּ כִּילָדִים קְטָנִים, וְיִאֲמִינוּ כִּי הַיְשׁוּעָה  
הַיְתָה וְהוֹנָה וְתִהְיֶה בְּדָם הַכַּפֶּרָה אֲשֶׁר  
לַמְּשִׁיחַ, יְהוָה אֱלֹו שַׁדִּי, וְעַל יְדֵיו.

**18** For behold he judgeth, and his judgment is just; and the infant perisheth not that dieth in his infancy; but men drink damnation to their own souls except they humble themselves and become as little children, and believe that salvation was, and is, and is to come, in and through the atoning blood of Christ, the Lord Omnipotent.

כִּי הָאָדָם הַטֵּבֵעִי הוּא אוֹיֵב לֵאלֹהִים וְכֵן הָיָה  
מִיּוֹם נִפְלִית אָדָם הָרָאשׁוֹן, וְכֵן יִהְיֶה לְעַד־עַד,  
בְּלֹתִי אִם יַעֲנֶה לַמְּשִׁיכַת רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ וְיִסִּיר  
אֶת הָאָדָם הַטֵּבֵעִי וְיַעֲשֶׂה קְדוֹשׁ עַל יְדֵי כַּפֶּרֶת  
אֲדוֹן הַמְּשִׁיחַ, אֲשֶׁר הוּא יְהוָה, וְיַעֲשֶׂה כְּיֶלֶד,  
נִכְנָע, עָנָו, שָׂפֵל רוּחַ, סִבְלוֹ, מְלֵא אֱהָבָה, נָכוֹן  
לְהַכְנִיעַ לְכָל אֲשֶׁר יֵרָאֶה יְהוָה מִתְאַיֵּם לְהַטִּיל  
בוֹ, כְּהַכְנִיעַ בֶּן לְאָבִיו.

**19** For the natural man is an enemy to God, and has been from the fall of Adam, and will be, forever and ever, unless he yields to the enticings of the Holy Spirit, and putteth off the natural man and becometh a saint through the atonement of Christ the Lord, and becometh as a child, submissive, meek, humble, patient, full of love, willing to submit to all things which the Lord seeth fit to inflict upon him, even as a child doth submit to his father.

וְעוֹד אֲמַר לָךְ כִּי יוֹם יָבוֹא וְיִדְעִיעַת הַמּוֹשִׁיעַ  
תִּפְּוֹץ בְּכָל אֲמָה, מִשְׁפָּחָה, לָשׁוֹן וְעָם.

**20** And moreover, I say unto you, that the time shall come when the knowledge of the Savior shall spread throughout every nation, kindred, tongue, and people.

וְהִנֵּה, בְּבוֹא הַיּוֹם הַהוּא, לֹא יִמָּצֵא אִישׁ  
נָקִי מֵאֲשֶׁם לִפְנֵי אֱלֹהִים, זֹלַת יְלָדִים קְטָנִים,  
בְּלֹתִי אִם יִנָּחֵם מִחֲטָא וְיִאֲמִין בְּשֵׁם יְהוָה  
אֱלֹהִים, אֱלֹו שַׁדִּי.

**21** And behold, when that time cometh, none shall be found blameless before God, except it be little children, only through repentance and faith on the name of the Lord God Omnipotent.

וְאֲף עַתָּה, בְּלִמְדָּךְ אֶת עַמְּךָ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים  
אֲשֶׁר צִוָּךְ יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים, אֵין הֵם נָקִיִּים בְּעֵינֵי  
אֱלֹהִים, בְּלֹתִי אִם עַל פִּי הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר  
דִּבַּרְתִּי אֵלֶיךָ.

**22** And even at this time, when thou shalt have taught thy people the things which the Lord thy God hath commanded thee, even then are they found no more blameless in the sight of God, only according to the words which I have spoken unto thee.

הִנֵּה דִבַּרְתִּי אֶת הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר צִוָּנִי יְהוָה  
אֱלֹהִים לְהַגִּידָם.

**23** And now I have spoken the words which the Lord God hath commanded me.

- 24 And thus saith the Lord: They shall stand as a bright testimony against this people, at the judgment day; whereof they shall be judged, every man according to his works, whether they be good, or whether they be evil.
- 25 And if they be evil they are consigned to an awful view of their own guilt and abominations, which doth cause them to shrink from the presence of the Lord into a state of misery and endless torment, from whence they can no more return; therefore they have drunk damnation to their own souls.
- 26 Therefore, they have drunk out of the cup of the wrath of God, which justice could no more deny unto them than it could deny that Adam should fall because of his partaking of the forbidden fruit; therefore, mercy could have claim on them no more forever.
- 27 And their torment is as a lake of fire and brimstone, whose flames are unquenchable, and whose smoke ascendeth up forever and ever. Thus hath the Lord commanded me. Amen.
- וְכֵן אָמַר יְהוָה: עֲמוּד יַעֲמֵדוּ הַדְּבָרִים  
הָאֵלֶּה כְּעֵדוּת בְּרוּרָה עַל הָעָם הַזֶּה בְּיוֹם  
הַדִּין; כִּי עַל פִּיָּהֶם יִשְׁפָּטוּ, אִישׁ כְּמַעֲשָׁיו,  
אִם טוֹבִים וְאִם רָעִים.
- וְאִם רָעִים יִהְיוּ, יִפְקְדוּ לְרָאוֹת אֶת מַרְאֵה  
אֲשָׁמָם וְתוֹעֲבוֹתֵיהֶם הַנּוֹרָא, וְהוּא יִרְתִּיעֵם  
מִלִּפְנֵי יְהוָה אֶל עֲנוֹת וַיְסוּרֵי אֵין קֵץ אֲשֶׁר  
מֵהֶם אֵין חוֹרָה; כִּי הִנֵּה שְׁתּוֹ מֵאֶרֶץ חָרָם  
אֶל תּוֹךְ נַפְשָׁם.
- אֲכֵן, הֵם שְׁתּוֹ מִכּוֹס חֲמַת אֱלֹהִים, אֲשֶׁר לֹא  
יָכַל הַדִּין לְמַנֵּעַ מֵהֶם כִּפִּי אֲשֶׁר לֹא יָכַל לְמַנֵּעַ  
מִן הָאָדָם אֶת נִפְּלֻתוֹ מִפְּנֵי טַעֲמוֹ מִן הַפֶּרִי  
הָאֲסוּר; עַל כֵּן, לְעוֹלָם לֹא תִהְיֶה עָלֵיהֶם  
תְּבִיעֵת זְכוּת לְרַחֲמִים.
- וַיְסוּרֵיהֶם כְּמִקְוֵה אֵשׁ וְנֹפֶרֶת, אֲשֶׁר שְׁלֹהֶבְתּוֹ  
לֹא תִכָּבֵּה וְעֵשָׁנוֹ עוֹלָה לְעַד־עַד. כֹּה צִוֵּנִי  
יְהוָה לְדַבֵּר. אָמֵן.

## ד

## 4

- 1 And now, it came to pass that when king Benjamin had made an end of speaking the words which had been delivered unto him by the angel of the Lord, that he cast his eyes round about on the multitude, and behold they had fallen to the earth, for the fear of the Lord had come upon them.
- 2 And they had viewed themselves in their own carnal state, even less than the dust of the earth. And they all cried aloud with one voice, saying: O have mercy, and apply the atoning blood of Christ that we may receive forgiveness of our sins, and our hearts may be purified; for we believe in Jesus Christ, the Son of God, who created heaven and earth, and all things; who shall come down among the children of men.
- 3 And it came to pass that after they had spoken these words the Spirit of the Lord came upon them, and they were filled with joy, having received a remission of their sins, and having peace of conscience, because of the exceeding faith which they had in Jesus Christ who should come, according to the words which king Benjamin had spoken unto them.
- 4 And king Benjamin again opened his mouth and began to speak unto them, saying: My friends and my brethren, my kindred and my people,
- וְהָיָה כְּכֹלֹת הַמִּלָּךְ בְּנִימִין לְדַבֵּר אֶת הַדְּבָרִים  
אֲשֶׁר הֵבִיא אֵלָיו מִלְאָךְ יְהוָה, הוּא נָשָׂא אֶת  
עֵינָיו אֶל הַקְּהָלִים אֲשֶׁר סָבִיב וַהֲגִה הֵם נוֹפְלִים  
אֶרְצָה כִּי נָפַל עָלֵיהֶם פַּחַד יְהוָה.
- וְהֵם הִבִּיטוּ אֶל מַצָּבָם בְּבָשָׁר וְחָשְׁבוּ עַצְמָם  
פָּחוֹת מֵעָפָר הָאָרֶץ. וְהֵם צָעֲקוּ כָלֶם בְּקוֹל  
אֶחָד: הוֹ רַחֵם נָא וּזְקַף לְזִכּוֹתֵנוּ אֶת דָּם  
הַכֹּפֶרֶה אֲשֶׁר לְמִשְׁיַח בְּעֵבֹר וּמַחְלוֹ חֲטָאֵינוּ  
וְלִבֵּנוּ יִשְׁתַּחֲוֶה; אֲנַחְנוּ מֵאֲמִינִים בִּישׁוּעַ הַמָּשִׁיחַ,  
בֶּן אֱלֹהִים, בּוֹרֵא שָׁמַיִם וָאָרֶץ וְאֶת הַכֹּל,  
וְאֲשֶׁר יֵרֵד אֶל קֶרֶב בְּנֵי הָאָנוּשׁ.
- וּכְדַבְּרָם אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, בָּא עָלֵיהֶם רוּחַ  
יְהוָה וְהֵם מָלְאוּ שִׂמְחָה, כִּי קִבְּלוּ מַחֲיֵלָה עַל  
חֲטָאֵיהֶם וּמַצְפּוֹנִים שְׁלֹו, מִפְּנֵי אֲמוּנָתָם הַרְבֵּה  
בִּישׁוּעַ הַמָּשִׁיחַ, אֲשֶׁר יָבוֹא, כִּפִּי אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר  
אֵלֵיהֶם הַמִּלָּךְ בְּנִימִין.
- וְהַמִּלָּךְ בְּנִימִין פָּתַח אֶת פִּיו שֵׁנִית, וְדִבֶּר אֲלֵיהֶם  
לֵאמֹר: יְדִידֵי וְאֲחֵי, מִשְׁפַּחְתִּי וְעַמִּי, הִנְנִי מִבְּקָשׁ

## מושיע ד:ה-יא

- כי שוב תשימו לבכם, למען תשמעו ותבינו את שארית דברי אשר אדבר אליכם.
- כי הנה, אם עוררה אתכם היום דעת טוב אלהים, לחוש את אפסותכם ואת חסר ערככם ונפילתכם,
- הנני אומר לכם, אם השגתם בדעתכם את טוב אלהים ואת כחו העליון, ואת חכמתו, את ארך רוחו ואת כח סבלו אל בני האדם, ואף את הכפרה המוכנה מיסוד העולם, למען יושע כל אשר ישם את מבטחו ביהוה, ואשר ישקד על שמירת מצוותיו, ויתמיד באמונתו עד קץ ימי חייו, כלומר, היא חיי הגוף אשר הוא בן תמותה,
- הנני אומר כי זה האיש אשר יושע על ידי הכפרה המוכנה מיסוד העולם למען כל בני האדם, אשר חיו מימי נפילת אדם הראשון, ואשר חיים עתה, ואשר יחיו בעתיד, עד קץ העולם.
- זה האפן אשר על ידיו תבוא הישועה, ואין ישועה אחרת בלתי זאת אשר עליה מדבר; אף אין כל תנאים אשר על ידיהם יושע איש, זולת התנאים אשר הזכרתי בדברי.
- האמינו באלהים; האמינו כי הוא קים וכי הוא ברא את הכל, בשמים ובארץ. האמינו כי לו כל החכמה וכל הכח, בשמים ובארץ. האמינו כי אין האדם מבין את כל אשר מבין יהוה.
- ועוד, האמינו כי עליכם להנחם מחטאיכם ולנטש אותם, ולהקנע לפני אלהים, ולבקש בתם לבב כי יסלח לכם; ואם תאמינו בכל הדברים האלה, שיתו לבכם לעשותם.
- ועוד אומר לכם, באשר אמרתי לפניכם, כי אם השגתם בדעתכם את תפארת אלהים, וידעתם את טובו וטעמתם מאהבתו, וקבלתם מחילה על חטאיכם, אשר מביאה שמחה רבה מאד בנפשכם, כן אף חפצי כי תזכרו, ותשמרו בזכרוכם תמיד, את גדלת אלהים ואת אפסותכם, את טובו ואת ארך רוחו כלפיכם, בריות בלתי ראיות, ותקנעו במעמקי ענוה
- I would again call your attention, that ye may hear and understand the remainder of my words which I shall speak unto you.
- 5 For behold, if the knowledge of the goodness of God at this time has awakened you to a sense of your nothingness, and your worthless and fallen state—
- 6 I say unto you, if ye have come to a knowledge of the goodness of God, and his matchless power, and his wisdom, and his patience, and his long-suffering towards the children of men; and also, the atonement which has been prepared from the foundation of the world, that thereby salvation might come to him that should put his trust in the Lord, and should be diligent in keeping his commandments, and continue in the faith even unto the end of his life, I mean the life of the mortal body—
- 7 I say, that this is the man who receiveth salvation, through the atonement which was prepared from the foundation of the world for all mankind, which ever were since the fall of Adam, or who are, or who ever shall be, even unto the end of the world.
- 8 And this is the means whereby salvation cometh. And there is none other salvation save this which hath been spoken of; neither are there any conditions whereby man can be saved except the conditions which I have told you.
- 9 Believe in God; believe that he is, and that he created all things, both in heaven and in earth; believe that he has all wisdom, and all power, both in heaven and in earth; believe that man doth not comprehend all the things which the Lord can comprehend.
- 10 And again, believe that ye must repent of your sins and forsake them, and humble yourselves before God; and ask in sincerity of heart that he would forgive you; and now, if you believe all these things see that ye do them.
- 11 And again I say unto you as I have said before, that as ye have come to the knowledge of the glory of God, or if ye have known of his goodness and have tasted of his love, and have received a remission of your sins, which causeth such exceedingly great joy in your souls, even so I would that ye should remember, and always retain in remembrance, the greatness of God, and your own nothingness, and his goodness and long-suffering towards you, unworthy creatures, and humble yourselves even in the depths of humility, calling on the name of the

## מוֹשִׁיעַ דִּיב-כ

בְּקִרְאָכֶם בְּשֵׁם יְהוָה יוֹמָם, וּבַעֲמֻדְכֶם אֵיתָנִים  
בְּאַמְנָה בְּאִשֶּׁר עֲתִיד לְבֹא, עַל פִּי דְבַר הַמַּלְאָךְ.

Lord daily, and standing steadfastly in the faith of that which is to come, which was spoken by the mouth of the angel.

הֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם כִּי אִם תַּעֲשׂוּ זֹאת, לְעוֹלָם  
תִּשְׁמְחוּ וְתִמְלְאוּ אֶהְבֶּת אֱלֹהִים, וְתִדְבְּקוּ תְּמִיד  
בְּמַחֲלַת חֲטָאֵיכֶם; וְתִגְדְּלוּ בִידֵיעַת הַתַּפְּאֶרֶת  
אֲשֶׁר לְבוֹרְאֵכֶם, בִּידֵיעָה אֲשֶׁר הוּא צָדֵק וְאֱמֶת.

12 And behold, I say unto you that if ye do this ye shall always rejoice, and be filled with the love of God, and always retain a remission of your sins; and ye shall grow in the knowledge of the glory of him that created you, or in the knowledge of that which is just and true.

וְלֹא תִשְׂתִּיתוּ דַּעַתְכֶם לְהַרְעַת אִישׁ לְרֵעֵהוּ, כִּי אִם  
לְחַיּוֹת בְּשָׁלוֹם וְלָתֵת לְכָל אִישׁ כְּפִי הָרְאוּי לוֹ.

13 And ye will not have a mind to injure one another, but to live peaceably, and to render to every man according to that which is his due.

וְלֹא תִנְיָחוּ לְבַנְיֵכֶם לִלְכֹּת רָעִבִים אוֹ עִרְמִים;  
אִף לֹא תִנְיָחוּם לַעֲבֹר עַל חֻקֵּי אֱלֹהִים וּלְהִלָּחֵם  
וּלְרִיב אִישׁ בְּאֶחָיו, וּלְשָׂרֵת אֶת הַשָּׁטָן, בַּעַל  
הַחֲטָא, הוּא הָרוּחַ הָרַע, אוֹיֵב כָּל הַצְדָּקָה,  
אֲשֶׁר אֲבוֹתֵינוּ דִּבְּרוּ עָלָיו.

14 And ye will not suffer your children that they go hungry, or naked; neither will ye suffer that they transgress the laws of God, and fight and quarrel one with another, and serve the devil, who is the master of sin, or who is the evil spirit which hath been spoken of by our fathers, he being an enemy to all righteousness.

אִךְ תִּלְמְדוּם לִלְכֹּת בְּדַרְכֵי אֱמֶת וּפְנִחוֹת;  
תִּלְמְדוּם לֶאֱהֹב וּלְשָׂרֵת אִישׁ אֶת רֵעֵהוּ.

15 But ye will teach them to walk in the ways of truth and soberness; ye will teach them to love one another, and to serve one another.

אִף אַתֶּם תִּתְמַכּוּ בְּאֵלֶּה הַצְּרִיכִים אֶת  
תְּמִיכָתְכֶם וְתִגִּישׁוּ מִקְנֵינְכֶם לְאִשֶּׁר הוּא  
נֶצְרָךְ; לֹא תִנְיָחוּ לְאֶבְיוֹן לְשִׁטַּח אֶת בִּקְשָׁתוֹ  
לִפְנֵיכֶם לְרִיק וּלְשִׁלְחוֹ לִכְלוֹן.

16 And also, ye yourselves will succor those that stand in need of your succor; ye will administer of your substance unto him that standeth in need; and ye will not suffer that the beggar putteth up his petition to you in vain, and turn him out to perish.

וְאוּלִי תֹאמַר: הֵן הָאִישׁ הֵבִיא עַל עַצְמוֹ אֶת  
עָנְיוֹ, לָכֵן אֲשִׁיב יָדִי מִתַּת לוֹ מִלַּחֲמִי וּמִחֶלֶק  
לוֹ מִקְנֵינִי לְמַנְעוֹ מִסָּבֵל, כִּי בַּצָּדֵק נִעֲנֶשׁ.

17 Perhaps thou shalt say: The man has brought upon himself his misery; therefore I will stay my hand, and will not give unto him of my food, nor impart unto him of my substance that he may not suffer, for his punishments are just—

וְאֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָךְ, בֶּן אָדָם, כִּי הָעוֹשֶׂה כֵּן, עַל  
אַחַת כְּמָה וְכְמָה עָלָיו לְהִנָּחֵם מֵאִשֶּׁר עָשָׂה;  
וְאִם לֹא יִנָּחֵם, יֵאָבֵד לָעַד, וְאִין לוֹ חֶלֶק  
בְּמַלְכוּת אֱלֹהִים.

18 But I say unto you, O man, whosoever doeth this the same hath great cause to repent; and except he repenteth of that which he hath done he perisheth forever, and hath no interest in the kingdom of God.

הֲכִי אֵין כָּלָנוּ אֶבְיוֹנִים? הֲאֵין כָּלָנוּ נִסְמָכִים  
עַל אוֹתוֹ הַקָּדֵם, הוּא אֱלֹהִים, אֲשֶׁר מִמֶּנּוּ כָּל  
קִנְיָנֵנוּ, הַמָּזוֹן וְהַלְבוּשׁ, הַזָּהָב וְהַכֶּסֶף וְכָל  
עֲשָׂרֵנוּ לְמִינֵהוּ?

19 For behold, are we not all beggars? Do we not all depend upon the same Being, even God, for all the substance which we have, for both food and raiment, and for gold, and for silver, and for all the riches which we have of every kind?

הִנֵּה, אִף עַתָּה, קִרְאתֶם בְּשֵׁמוֹ וּבִקְשַׁתֶּם  
מַחֲלָה עַל חֲטָאֵיכֶם. הֲאֵם הִנֵּחְכֶם לְבַקֵּשׁ  
לְשׂוֹא? לֹא; כִּי הוּא שָׁפַךְ אֶת רוּחוֹ עָלֵיכֶם,  
לְמַלֵּא אֶת לְבָבְכֶם שִׂמְחָה עַד אֲשֶׁר חִדְלִיתֶם  
מִדְּבַר, כִּי לֹא נוֹתֵר דְּבַר בְּפִיכֶם בְּעֶצְמַת  
שִׂמְחָתְכֶם הַגְדוֹלָה.

20 And behold, even at this time, ye have been calling on his name, and begging for a remission of your sins. And has he suffered that ye have begged in vain? Nay; he has poured out his Spirit upon you, and has caused that your hearts should be filled with joy, and has caused that your mouths should be stopped that ye could not find utterance, so exceedingly great was your joy.

וְהִנֵּה, אִם אֱלֹהִים אֲשֶׁר בְּרָאֲכֶם, אֲשֶׁר  
עָלִיו אַתֶּם נִסְמָכִים לְחַיֵּיכֶם וְלָכֹל אֲשֶׁר הֵנֶכֶם  
וְלָכֶם, מַעֲנִיךְ לָכֶם אֶת כָּל מִבְקֶשְׁכֶם הַצֹּדֵק,  
בְּאִמּוֹנְתְכֶם בּוֹ, וּבְהֶאֱמִינְכֶם כִּי תַעֲנוּ, אֲנִי,  
עַל אַחַת כַּמָּה וְכַמָּה חַיִּים אַתֶּם לְחֵלֶק  
מִקְנֵינְכֶם זֶה לָזֶה.

21 And now, if God, who has created you, on whom you are dependent for your lives and for all that ye have and are, doth grant unto you whatsoever ye ask that is right, in faith, believing that ye shall receive, O then, how ye ought to impart of the substance that ye have one to another.

וְאִם תִּשְׁפָּטוּ וְתִרְשִׁיעוּ אֶת הָאִישׁ הַמִּבְקֵשׁ  
אֶתְכֶם לְתַתּוֹ מִקְנֵינְכֶם לְמַעַן לֹא יֵאבֹד, עַל  
אַחַת כַּמָּה וְכַמָּה תַּצְדִּיק הַרְשַׁעְתְּכֶם בְּמִשְׁפָּט  
בַּעֲבוּר מִנִּיעַת קִנְיֹנְכֶם, אֲשֶׁר אֵינוֹ שִׂיף לָכֶם,  
כִּי אִם לְאֱלֹהִים, אֲשֶׁר לוֹ שִׂיכִים גַּם חַיִּים;  
וְאַתֶּם אַף אֵינְכֶם מִבְקָשִׁים וְאֵינְכֶם נְחָמִים עַל  
הַדָּבָר אֲשֶׁר עָשִׂיתֶם.

22 And if ye judge the man who putteth up his petition to you for your substance that he perish not, and condemn him, how much more just will be your condemnation for withholding your substance, which doth not belong to you but to God, to whom also your life belongeth; and yet ye put up no petition, nor repent of the thing which thou hast done.

אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם: אוֹי לְאִישׁ הַהוּא, כִּי קִנְיֹנוֹ  
יֵאבֹד עִמּוֹ; וְאֲנִי אוֹמֵר אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה  
אֶל הָעֹשִׂירִים, בְּאֲשֶׁר לְחֶפְצֵי הָעוֹלָם הַזֶּה.

23 I say unto you, wo be unto that man, for his substance shall perish with him; and now, I say these things unto those who are rich as pertaining to the things of this world.

וְעוֹד, אֹמֵר אֶל הָעֲנִיִּים: אַתֶּם אֲשֶׁר אֵין לָכֶם,  
וְנוֹתֵר עֲלֵיכֶם לְהַתְקִים יוֹם-יוֹם; כְּלוּמָר, אֶל  
כָּלֶכֶם, הַמְסָרִים לְאִבְיוֹן, יַעַן אֲשֶׁר אֵין  
בְּיַדְכֶם דָּבָר רְצוֹנִי כִּי זֶה תֹאמְרוּ בְּלִבְכֶם:  
אֵינְנִי נוֹתֵן, כִּי אֵין לִי דָבָר, אַךְ אֱלֹהֵי ה' יִהְיֶה  
בְּיָדִי, נוֹתֵן הַיִּיתִי.

24 And again, I say unto the poor, ye who have not and yet have sufficient, that ye remain from day to day; I mean all you who deny the beggar, because ye have not; I would that ye say in your hearts that: I give not because I have not, but if I had I would give.

אִם תֹּאמְרוּ זֹאת בְּלִבְבְּכֶם, אֵין בָּכֶם אֲשָׁם,  
וְאִם לֹא תַעֲשׂוּ כֵן, אֲשָׁמִים אַתֶּם; וְאֲשַׁמְכֶם  
נִכּוֹן, כִּי חִמַּדְתֶּם אֶת אֲשֶׁר לֹא קִבַּלְתֶּם.

25 And now, if ye say this in your hearts ye remain guiltless, otherwise ye are condemned; and your condemnation is just for ye covet that which ye have not received.

וְעַתָּה, לְמַעַן הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, אֲשֶׁר דִּבַּרְתִּי  
אֲלֵיכֶם, לְמַעַן תִּדְּבְקוּ מִיּוֹם לְיוֹם בְּמַחֲלַת  
חֲטָאֵיכֶם, לְמַעַן תּוֹכְלוּ לָלֶכֶת לִפְנֵי אֱלֹהִים  
בְּלֹא אֲשָׁם, רְצוֹנִי כִּי תַחֲלִקוּ מִקְנֵינְכֶם לְעֲנִיִּים,  
כָּל אֶחָד כַּפִּי יִכְלֹתוּ, כְּגוֹן הַשֹּׁבַעַת רְעֵבִים,  
הַלְבִּישַׁת עִרְמִים, בְּקוֹר חוֹלִים וְשֵׁרוֹת  
לְרוֹחָתָם, בְּרוּחַ וּבְחֶמֶר, כַּפִּי צָרְכֵיהֶם.

26 And now, for the sake of these things which I have spoken unto you—that is, for the sake of retaining a remission of your sins from day to day, that ye may walk guiltless before God—I would that ye should impart of your substance to the poor, every man according to that which he hath, such as feeding the hungry, clothing the naked, visiting the sick and administering to their relief, both spiritually and temporally, according to their wants.

הִשְׁמְרוּ לַעֲשׂוֹת אֶת כָּל הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה  
בְּחֻקָּמָה וּבִסְדֵּר; הֵן אֵין נִדְרֵשׁ מֵאִישׁ לָרוֹץ  
מִהֵר מִכַּפִּי כּוֹחַ. וְאוּלָם רְאוּי לְאָדָם לְהִיטֹת  
חֲרוֹץ, כִּי בְּכֹף יִשְׁגִּי רֹחַ. עַל כֵּן, כָּל הַדְּבָרִים  
צָרִיכִים לְהַתְנַהֵל כְּסֻדָּרָם.

27 And see that all these things are done in wisdom and order; for it is not requisite that a man should run faster than he has strength. And again, it is expedient that he should be diligent, that thereby he might win the prize; therefore, all things must be done in order.

וְרְצוֹנִי כִּי תִזְכְּרוּ, כִּי הַשּׁוֹאֵל בָּכֶם דָּבָר מִשְׁכָּנוֹ,  
יָשִׁיב אֶת אֲשֶׁר שָׁאֵל כְּאֲשֶׁר הִסְפִּים. וְאִם לֹא

27 And I would that ye should remember, that whosoever among you borroweth of his neighbor should return the thing that he borroweth,



## מוֹשִׁיעַ דְּכַט-ה:ה

יַעֲשֶׂה כֵן, חָטָא הוּא חוֹטֵא וְאוֹלִי אִף אֶת  
שְׂכֵנוֹ יַחֲטִיא.

according as he doth agree, or else thou shalt commit sin; and perhaps  
thou shalt cause thy neighbor to commit sin also.

וְכַלּוֹתִי אֶת דְּבָרֵי אִמְרֵי כִי אֵינֶנִּי יָכוֹל  
לְהַגִּידְכֶם אֶת כָּל הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר בָּהֶם תַּחֲטְאוּ,  
כִּי שׁוֹנִים הַדְּרָכִים וְנִבְדָּל הָאָפֹן, וְכֵה רַבִּים הֵם  
עַד כִּי לֹא אוּכַל לְמַנוֹתָם.

29 And finally, I cannot tell you all the things whereby ye may commit  
sin; for there are divers ways and means, even so many that I cannot  
number them.

אִךְ זֹאת אוּכַל לְהַגִּידְכֶם: אִם לֹא תִשְׁגִּיחוּ  
עַל נַפְשְׁכֶם וְעַל מַחְשְׁבוֹתֵיכֶם וְעַל דְּבָרֵיכֶם  
וְעַל מַעֲשֵׂיכֶם, וְלֹא תִשְׁמְרוּ אֶת מִצְוֹת  
אֱלֹהִים, וְלֹא תִמְשְׁכוּ לְהַחֲזִיק בְּאֲמוֹנְתְּכֶם  
בְּאֲשֶׁר שְׁמַעְתֶּם עַל בּוֹא אֲדוֹנֵנוּ עַד סוֹף יְמֵי  
חַיֵּיכֶם, אֲבוֹד תִּאֲבָדוּ. וְעַתָּה, בְּנֵי אָדָם,  
זְכְּרוּ לִבְל תִּאֲבָדוּ.

30 But this much I can tell you, that if ye do not watch yourselves, and  
your thoughts, and your words, and your deeds, and observe the  
commandments of God, and continue in the faith of what ye have  
heard concerning the coming of our Lord, even unto the end of your  
lives, ye must perish. And now, O man, remember, and perish not.

## ה

## 5

וְכַלּוֹת הַמֶּלֶךְ בְּנִימִין לְהַגִּיד זֹאת אֶל עַמּוֹ,  
הוּא שָׁלַח אֲלֵיהֶם שְׁלִיחִים, כִּי רָצָה לְהוֹדֵעַ  
אִם מֵאֱמִינִים הֵם בַּדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר אֲלֵיהֶם.

1 And now, it came to pass that when king Benjamin had thus spoken to  
his people, he sent among them, desiring to know of his people if they  
believed the words which he had spoken unto them.

וְהֵם קָרְאוּ כָּלם פֶּה אֶחָד: אָכֵן, מֵאֱמִינִים  
אֲנַחְנוּ בְּכָל הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר דִּבַּרְתָּ אֵלֵינוּ; אִךְ  
נִדַּע כִּי נֶאֱמַנִים וְאִמְתָּ הֵם, יְעַן אֲשֶׁר רוּחַ  
יְהוָה, אֵל שֵׁדִי, עָשָׂה בָּנוּ וּבִלְבָּנוּ שְׁנוֹי כְּבִיר,  
עַד כִּי לֹא חִפְצִים אֲנַחְנוּ עוֹד לְהִרְעַ, כִּי אִם  
לְהִיטִיב עֲשׂוֹת תָּמִיד.

2 And they all cried with one voice, saying: Yea, we believe all the words  
which thou hast spoken unto us; and also, we know of their surety  
and truth, because of the Spirit of the Lord Omnipotent, which has  
wrought a mighty change in us, or in our hearts, that we have no more  
disposition to do evil, but to do good continually.

וְאִף לָנוּ, עֲצָמָנוּ, עַל יְדֵי טוֹב אֱלֹהִים אֲשֶׁר  
לֹא קָץ, וְעַל יְדֵי הַתְּגַלּוּת רוּחוֹ, יֵשׁ מִרְאוֹת  
גְּדוֹלִים עַל אֲשֶׁר עָתִיד לְבוֹא; וְאֵלֵינוּ הָיָה זֶה  
לְהוֹעִיל, יְכַלְנוּ לִנְבֵּא עַל הַכֹּל.

3 And we, ourselves, also, through the infinite goodness of God, and the  
manifestations of his Spirit, have great views of that which is to come;  
and were it expedient, we could prophesy of all things.

וְאֵין זֹאת כִּי אִם אֲמוֹנָתָנוּ בַּדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר  
אֱלֹהֵינוּ מִלְּכָנוּ, אֲשֶׁר הִבִּיאָתָנוּ אֶל הַדַּעַת  
הַגְּדוֹלָה הַזֹּאת, אֲשֶׁר בָּהּ אֲנַחְנוּ שְׂמֵחִים  
שְׂמִיחָה יִתְּרָה כָּל כּוֹן.

4 And it is the faith which we have had on the things which our king has  
spoken unto us that has brought us to this great knowledge, whereby  
we do rejoice with such exceedingly great joy.

וְרָצוֹנָנוּ לְבוֹא בְּבְרִית עִם אֱלֹהֵינוּ, לַעֲשׂוֹת אֶת  
רְצוֹנוֹ וּלְהִשְׁמַע לְמִצְוֹתָיו בְּכָל דְּבַר אֲשֶׁר  
יִצְוֵנוּ, כָּל שְׂאִירֵי יְמֵי חַיֵּינוּ, לְמַעַן לֹא נָבִיא  
עָלֵינוּ יְסוּרֵי אֵין קָץ, כְּדִבַּר הַמֶּלֶאךָ, לְכֹל  
נִשְׁתָּה מְכוֹס חֲמַת אֱלֹהִים.

5 And we are willing to enter into a covenant with our God to do his will,  
and to be obedient to his commandments in all things that he shall  
command us, all the remainder of our days, that we may not bring  
upon ourselves a never-ending torment, as has been spoken by the  
angel, that we may not drink out of the cup of the wrath of God.



## מושיע ה:ו-יד

- והנה, אלה הדברים אשר חפץ מהם המלך בנמיני. על כן אמר להם: הנה דברתם את הדברים אשר חפצתי, והברית אשר כרתם, ברית צדק היא.
- 6 And now, these are the words which king Benjamin desired of them; and therefore he said unto them: Ye have spoken the words that I desired; and the covenant which ye have made is a righteous covenant.
- וען אשר כרתם את הברית הזאת, תקראו בשם ילדי המשיח, בנים ובנותיו; כי הנה היום הוא ילדכם ברוח, כי אמרתם: לבנו השתנה על ידי האמונה בשמו. לכן ממנו נולדתם, ונעשיתם בנים ובנותיו.
- 7 And now, because of the covenant which ye have made ye shall be called the children of Christ, his sons, and his daughters; for behold, this day he hath spiritually begotten you; for ye say that your hearts are changed through faith on his name; therefore, ye are born of him and have become his sons and his daughters.
- ותחת הראש הזה אתם משתחררים, ואין ראש אחר אשר על ידיו אתם יכולים להשתחרר; לא נתן שם אחר אשר על ידיו תבוא הישועה. על כן, רצוני כי תשארו עליכם את שם המשיח, כלכם אשר באתם בברית עם אלהים, להשמע לו עד קץ ימי חייכם.
- 8 And under this head ye are made free, and there is no other head whereby ye can be made free. There is no other name given whereby salvation cometh; therefore, I would that ye should take upon you the name of Christ, all you that have entered into the covenant with God that ye should be obedient unto the end of your lives.
- והיה כי כל אשר יעשה זאת, ימצא לימין אלהים, כי הוא ידע את השם אשר הוא נקרא בו; כי בשם המשיח יקרא.
- 9 And it shall come to pass that whosoever doeth this shall be found at the right hand of God, for he shall know the name by which he is called; for he shall be called by the name of Christ.
- והיה כי כל אשר לא ישא עליו את שם המשיח יקראוהו בשם אחר; לכן, הוא ימצא עצמו לשמאל אלהים.
- 10 And now it shall come to pass, that whosoever shall not take upon him the name of Christ must be called by some other name; therefore, he findeth himself on the left hand of God.
- רצוני גם כי תזכרו כי זה השם, אשר אמרתי כי אתגנו לכם, לא ימחה לעולם בלתי אם על ידי עברה; על כן, תנו לבכם לרחוק מפשע, למען לא ימחה השם מלבכם.
- 11 And I would that ye should remember also, that this is the name that I said I should give unto you that never should be blotted out, except it be through transgression; therefore, take heed that ye do not transgress, that the name be not blotted out of your hearts.
- ואני אומר לכם: רצוני כי תזכרו לשאת את כתבת השם בלבכם תמיד, ולא תמחצאו לשמאל אלהים, כי תשמעו ותדעו את הקול אשר יקראכם, ואף את השם אשר יקראכם בו.
- 12 I say unto you, I would that ye should remember to retain the name written always in your hearts, that ye are not found on the left hand of God, but that ye hear and know the voice by which ye shall be called, and also, the name by which he shall call you.
- כי איך ידע איש את אדוניו אשר לא עבדו, והוא זר לו ורחוק ממחשבות לבו ועצתו?
- 13 For how knoweth a man the master whom he has not served, and who is a stranger unto him, and is far from the thoughts and intents of his heart?
- ועוד, היקח איש חמור שכנו לטפל בו? אני אומר לכם: לא; אף לא יניח כי ירעה בתוך עדרו; הן שלח ישלחנו וגרש יגרשנו. אני אומר לכם: כך יהיה בקרבכם, אם לא תדעו את השם אשר יקראכם בו.
- 14 And again, doth a man take an ass which belongeth to his neighbor, and keep him? I say unto you, Nay; he will not even suffer that he shall feed among his flocks, but will drive him away, and cast him out. I say unto you, that even so shall it be among you if ye know not the name by which ye are called.

- 15 Therefore, I would that ye should be steadfast and immovable, always abounding in good works, that Christ, the Lord God Omnipotent, may seal you his, that you may be brought to heaven, that ye may have everlasting salvation and eternal life, through the wisdom, and power, and justice, and mercy of him who created all things, in heaven and in earth, who is God above all. Amen.
- על כן, רצוני כי תהיו יציבים ואיתנים, מרבים תמיד במעשים טובים, בעבור יתן בכם המשיח, יהוה אל שדי, את חותמו, למען תובאו השמימה, להיות לכם ישועת עולם וחי נצח על פי החכמה והגבורה, והדין והרחמים אשר לבוֹרָא הַכֹּל, בשמים ובארץ, אשר הוא אֱלֹהֵי מְרוֹמִים. אָמֵן.

## 1

והיה בכלותו לדבר אל העם, ראה המלך בנימין כי טוב יהיה לפקד את שמות כל הבאים בברית עם אלהים לשמר את מצוותיו.

והיה כי לא נעדרה מהם אף נפש אחת; אכן, הכל באו בברית אלהים, וזלת ילדים קטנים, לקבל עליהם את שם המשיח.

והיה כי אחר אשר פלה המלך בנימין לעשות את כל הדברים האלה, ואחר קדשו את בנו מושיע להיות מושל ומלך על עמו, ואחר מסרו לו את כל פקדות הממלכה, ואחר אשר מנה גם כהנים ללמד את העם, למען ישמעו האנשים את מצוות אלהים וידעו, ולמען עוררם לזכר את השבועה אשר נשבעו, הוא שלח את הקהל, והם שבו, איש ומשפחתו, לביתם.

ומושיע מלך תחת אביו. בן שלשים שנה היה במלכו, וראשית מלכותו כארבע מאות ושבעים ושש שנים מיום צאת לחי מירושלם.

והמלך בנימין חי שלש שנים ומת.

והמלך מושיע הלך בדרכי יהוה, ושמר את משפטי ואת חקיו ומצוותיו, ועשה ככל אשר צוהו יהוה.

והמלך מושיע הורה לעמו לעבד את האדמה. ואף הוא עצמו עבד את האדמה למען לא יפל למשא על עמו ולמען עשות כמעשה אביו בכל דבר. ולא היה כל ריב בקרב עמו שלש שנים.

## 6

1 And now, king Benjamin thought it was expedient, after having finished speaking to the people, that he should take the names of all those who had entered into a covenant with God to keep his commandments.

2 And it came to pass that there was not one soul, except it were little children, but who had entered into the covenant and had taken upon them the name of Christ.

3 And again, it came to pass that when king Benjamin had made an end of all these things, and had consecrated his son Mosiah to be a ruler and a king over his people, and had given him all the charges concerning the kingdom, and also had appointed priests to teach the people, that thereby they might hear and know the commandments of God, and to stir them up in remembrance of the oath which they had made, he dismissed the multitude, and they returned, every one, according to their families, to their own houses.

4 And Mosiah began to reign in his father's stead. And he began to reign in the thirtieth year of his age, making in the whole, about four hundred and seventy-six years from the time that Lehi left Jerusalem.

5 And king Benjamin lived three years and he died.

6 And it came to pass that king Mosiah did walk in the ways of the Lord, and did observe his judgments and his statutes, and did keep his commandments in all things whatsoever he commanded him.

7 And king Mosiah did cause his people that they should till the earth. And he also, himself, did till the earth, that thereby he might not become burdensome to his people, that he might do according to that which his father had done in all things. And there was no contention among all his people for the space of three years.

ז

7

- וְהָיָה אַחֲרֵי אֲשֶׁר אָרְכוּ יְמֵי הַשָּׁלוֹם לְמֶלֶךְ מוֹשִׁיעַ שְׁלֹשׁ שָׁנִים, הוּא חָפֵץ לָדַעַת עַל אֲדוֹת הָאֲנָשִׁים אֲשֶׁר עָלוּ לָאָרֶץ לְחִי-נֶפְחִי אוֹ לְעִיר לְחִי-נֶפְחִי לְגֹרֶשׁ, כִּי לֹא שָׁמְעוּ אֲנָשָׁיו דְּבַר עֲלֵיהֶם מֵעַתָּה עַד יִבְתָּם אֶת אֶרֶץ יְזִרְעֵחֶמְלָה; וְלָכֵן הָלְאוּ אֶת מוֹשִׁיעַ בְּהַפְצָרוֹתֵיהֶם.
- וְהָמְלֶךְ מוֹשִׁיעַ הִתִּיר לְשֵׁשׁ עָשָׂר מַגְבֹּרִיָּהֶם לָעֲלוֹת אֶל אֶרֶץ לְחִי-נֶפְחִי לְחַקֵּר עַל אֲדוֹת חֲבֵרֵיהֶם.
- וּלְמַחֲרַת הַיּוֹם הַזֶּה הֵתְחִילוּ לָעֲלוֹת בְּמִסְעָם וּבָהֶם אִישׁ גִּבּוֹר וְכֹחַ וְשִׁמוּ עֲמוֹן, הוּא צֶאֱצָא לְיִזְרְעֵחֶמְלָה; וְהוּא הָיָה לָהֶם לְמִנְהִיג.
- וְהֵם לֹא יָדְעוּ אֶת מַסְלֹל מִסְעָם בְּיַעַר אֲשֶׁר יַעֲלוּ בוֹ אֶל אֶרֶץ לְחִי-נֶפְחִי; עַל כֵּן נָדְדוּ יָמִים רַבִּים בְּיַעַר; אַרְבָּעִים יוֹם הָיוּ נִדְוִיָּהֶם.
- וְהָיָה אַחֲרֵי אַרְבָּעִים יְמֵי נִדְוִיָּהֶם, הֵם בָּאוּ אֶל גִּבְעָה אֲשֶׁר הָיָה מִצְפּוֹן לְאֶרֶץ שִׁילוֹם, וְהֵם הִטּוּ שָׁם אֶת אֹהֲלֵיהֶם.
- וְעֲמוֹן לָקַח שְׁלֹשָׁה מֵעַמִּיתָיו וְשִׁמּוֹתֵיהֶם עַמְלֶקִי, חֶלֶם וְחֵם, וְהֵם יָרְדוּ אֶל אֶרֶץ נֶפְחִי.
- וְהָיָה בְּבוֹאָם הֵם פָּגְשׁוּ בְּמֶלֶךְ הָעָם הַשּׁוֹכֵן בְּאֶרֶץ נֶפְחִי וּבְאֶרֶץ שִׁילוֹם; וְהִקִּיפּוּם שׁוֹמְרֵי הַמֶּלֶךְ וּלְקַחוּם וְאַסְרוּם וּנְתָנוּם אֶל בֵּית הַסֵּהָר.
- וְאַחֲרֵי הַיּוֹתֵם בְּבֵית הַסֵּהָר יוֹמִים, הֵם הוֹבֵאוּ לִפְנֵי הַמֶּלֶךְ שְׁנֵית וְכַבְלֵיהֶם הוֹסְרוּ; וּבְעוֹדָם עוֹמְדִים לִפְנֵי הַמֶּלֶךְ הִתֵּר לָהֶם, אִף צֹוָה עֲלֵיהֶם, לְהָשִׁיב עַל הַשְּׁאֵלוֹת אֲשֶׁר יִשְׁאַלֵם.
- וְהוּא אָמַר אֲלֵיהֶם: הִנְנִי לְמַחִי בֶן נֹחַ, וְהוּא בֶן צִנְיָה, אֲשֶׁר עָלָה מֵאֶרֶץ יְזִרְעֵחֶמְלָה לָרֶשֶׁת אֶת הָאֶרֶץ הַזֹּאת, אֶרֶץ אֲבוֹתֵיהֶם, וְאֲשֶׁר הִמְלִיךְ עָלָהּ פִּי דְבַר הָעָם.
- 1 And now, it came to pass that after king Mosiah had had continual peace for the space of three years, he was desirous to know concerning the people who went up to dwell in the land of Lehi-Nephi, or in the city of Lehi-Nephi; for his people had heard nothing from them from the time they left the land of Zarahemla; therefore, they wearied him with their teasings.
- 2 And it came to pass that king Mosiah granted that sixteen of their strong men might go up to the land of Lehi-Nephi to inquire concerning their brethren.
- 3 And it came to pass that on the morrow they started to go up, having with them one Ammon, he being a strong and mighty man, and a descendant of Zarahemla; and he was also their leader.
- 4 And now, they knew not the course they should travel in the wilderness to go up to the land of Lehi-Nephi; therefore they wandered many days in the wilderness, even forty days did they wander.
- 5 And when they had wandered forty days they came to a hill, which is north of the land of Shilom, and there they pitched their tents.
- 6 And Ammon took three of his brethren, and their names were Amaleki, Helem, and Hem, and they went down into the land of Nephi.
- 7 And behold, they met the king of the people who were in the land of Nephi, and in the land of Shilom; and they were surrounded by the king's guard, and were taken, and were bound, and were committed to prison.
- 8 And it came to pass when they had been in prison two days they were again brought before the king, and their bands were loosed; and they stood before the king, and were permitted, or rather commanded, that they should answer the questions which he should ask them.
- 9 And he said unto them: Behold, I am Limhi, the son of Noah, who was the son of Zeniff, who came up out of the land of Zarahemla to inherit this land, which was the land of their fathers, who was made a king by the voice of the people.

- ועתה, רצוני לדעת מדוע הרהבתם עז  
בנפשכם לקרב אל חומות העיר, בעת היותי,  
אני, עם שומרי מחוץ לשער?
- 10 And now, I desire to know the cause whereby ye were so bold as to come near the walls of the city, when I, myself, was with my guards without the gate?
- ואני הנחתי כי תחיו למען אחקר את דבר  
בואכם, ולולא זאת הייתי מצוה על שומרי  
להמיתכם. עתה, מתר לכם לדבר.
- 11 And now, for this cause have I suffered that ye should be preserved, that I might inquire of you, or else I should have caused that my guards should have put you to death. Ye are permitted to speak.
- וכראות עמון כי התר לו לדבר, הוא צעד  
קדימה והשתחוה לפני המלך; ובקומו אמר:  
אדוני המלך, הנני מודה מאד היום לפני  
אלהים כי עודני חי והרשות נתונה לי לדבר;  
ואני אתאמץ לדבר בבטחון.
- 12 And now, when Ammon saw that he was permitted to speak, he went forth and bowed himself before the king; and rising again he said: O king, I am very thankful before God this day that I am yet alive, and am permitted to speak; and I will endeavor to speak with boldness;
- בטוח אני כי אלו הפרת אותי, לא הנחתי  
להכביל בכבלים האלה. הנני עמון, צאצא  
לזרעחמלה; באתי מארץ זרעחמלה לשאל  
על אודות חברינו, אשר צניף העלה מן  
הארץ ההיא.
- 13 For I am assured that if ye had known me ye would not have suffered that I should have worn these bands. For I am Ammon, and am a descendant of Zarahemla, and have come up out of the land of Zarahemla to inquire concerning our brethren, whom Zeniff brought up out of that land.
- וכשמע למחי את דברי עמון, הוא שמח  
מאד, ואמר: עתה ידוע ידעתי כי חברי אשר  
היו בארץ זרעחמלה עודם חיים. ועתה  
אשמחה, ומחר אשמח אף את עמי.
- 14 And now, it came to pass that after Limhi had heard the words of Ammon, he was exceedingly glad, and said: Now, I know of a surety that my brethren who were in the land of Zarahemla are yet alive. And now, I will rejoice; and on the morrow I will cause that my people shall rejoice also.
- כי הננו משעבדים ללמנים ומעלים אנחנו  
מס להם, אשר הוא כבד מנשא. ועתה,  
יצילנו חברינו מן השעבוד מידי הלמנים,  
ואנחנו נהיה עבדיהם, כי טוב היותנו עבדי  
הנפיים מהעלות מס למלך הלמנים.
- 15 For behold, we are in bondage to the Lamanites, and are taxed with a tax which is grievous to be borne. And now, behold, our brethren will deliver us out of our bondage, or out of the hands of the Lamanites, and we will be their slaves; for it is better that we be slaves to the Nephites than to pay tribute to the king of the Lamanites.
- והמלך למחי צוה את שומריו לכל יוסיפו  
לכבול את עמון ואת עמיתיו, והורה להם  
ללכת אל הגבעה אשר מצפון לשילום  
ולהביא את אחיהם אל העיר, בעבור יאכלו  
וישתו וינוחו מעמל מסעם, כי רבות סבלו  
האנשים, רעב וצמא ויגיעה.
- 16 And now, king Limhi commanded his guards that they should no more bind Ammon nor his brethren, but caused that they should go to the hill which was north of Shilom, and bring their brethren into the city, that thereby they might eat, and drink, and rest themselves from the labors of their journey; for they had suffered many things; they had suffered hunger, thirst, and fatigue.
- ולמחרת היום שלח המלך למחי הודעה בכל  
עמו, להתאסף יחדו אל בית המקדש לשמע  
את הדברים אשר ידבר אליהם.
- 17 And now, it came to pass on the morrow that king Limhi sent a proclamation among all his people, that thereby they might gather themselves together to the temple to hear the words which he should speak unto them.
- והיה כאשר התאספו, דבר אליהם המלך  
כדברים האלה: עמי, שאו ראש והנחמו, כי  
הנה קרבה העת, לא רחוק היום אשר לא
- 18 And it came to pass that when they had gathered themselves together that he spake unto them in this wise, saying: O ye, my people, lift up your heads and be comforted; for behold, the time is at hand, or is not

נְהִיָּה עוֹד נִכְנָעִים לְאוֹיְבֵינוּ, אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר לִשְׂוֹא  
הָיוּ מִאֲבָקֵינוּ הַרְבֵּים. אַךְ יוֹדַע אֲנִי כִּי עוֹד  
עֲתִיד לָבוֹא מִאֲבָק מְכָרִיעַ.

far distant, when we shall no longer be in subjection to our enemies,  
notwithstanding our many strugglings, which have been in vain; yet I  
trust there remaineth an effectual struggle to be made.

עַל כֵּן, שָׂאוּ רֹאשׁ וְגִילוּ, וְשִׂימוּ אֶת מִבְטְחְכֶם  
בְּאֱלֹהִים, אֱלֹהֵי אַבְרָהָם וְיִצְחָק וְיַעֲקֹב, הָאֱלֹהִים  
אֲשֶׁר הוֹצִיא אֶת בְּנֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל מֵאֶרֶץ מִצְרַיִם  
וְהוֹלִיכֵם בִּיבְשָׁה בְּתוֹךְ יָם סוּף וְהֶאֱכִילֵם  
מִן, לִבְל יֵאבְדוּ בַּמִּדְבָּר; וְעוֹד רַבּוֹת  
עֲשָׂה בְּעַבְדֵּיכֶם.

19 Therefore, lift up your heads, and rejoice, and put your trust in God, in  
that God who was the God of Abraham, and Isaac, and Jacob; and also,  
that God who brought the children of Israel out of the land of Egypt,  
and caused that they should walk through the Red Sea on dry ground,  
and fed them with manna that they might not perish in the wilderness;  
and many more things did he do for them.

וְאֵכֵן, הוּא הָאֱלֹהִים אֲשֶׁר הוֹצִיא אֶת אֲבוֹתֵינוּ  
מֵאֶרֶץ יְרוּשָׁלַם, וְשָׁמַר אֶת עַמּוֹ וַיִּנְצֶרֶם עַד  
הַיּוֹם; הֵן מִפְּנֵי עוֹנוֹתֵינוּ וְתוֹעֲבוֹתֵינוּ הִכְנִסָנוּ  
אֶל הַשְּׁעָבֹד.

20 And again, that same God has brought our fathers out of the land of  
Jerusalem, and has kept and preserved his people even until now; and  
behold, it is because of our iniquities and abominations that he has  
brought us into bondage.

וְעֵדִים כָּלְכֶם הַיּוֹם כִּי צִנִּיף, אֲשֶׁר הִמְלִיךְ עַל הָעָם  
הַזֶּה, בְּלִהִיטוֹת יִתֵּר לָרֶשֶׁת אֶת אֶרֶץ אֲבוֹתָיו,  
רָמָה עַל יְדֵי עֲרֻמַּת הַמֶּלֶךְ לָמֹן וְתַחבּוּלוֹתָיו.  
וּבַעֲשׂוֹתוֹ בְּרִית עִם הַמֶּלֶךְ צִנִּיף, מָסַר לְיָדוֹ  
אֶת קִנְיָיו חֵלֶק הָאֶרֶץ, אֶת הָעִיר לְחִי־נֶפִי, וְאֶת  
הָעִיר שִׁילוֹם וְאֶת מְגִרְשֵׁיהֶם אֲשֶׁר סָבִיב;

21 And ye all are witnesses this day, that Zeniff, who was made king over  
this people, he being over-zealous to inherit the land of his fathers,  
therefore being deceived by the cunning and craftiness of king Laman,  
who having entered into a treaty with king Zeniff, and having yielded  
up into his hands the possessions of a part of the land, or even the city  
of Lehi-Nephi, and the city of Shilom; and the land round about—

וְאֶת כָּל זֹאת עָשָׂה אַךְ לְמַעַן הִכְנִיעַ אֶת הָעָם  
הַזֶּה לְשִׁעְבָדוֹ. וְהִנֵּנוּ מַעֲלִים הַיּוֹם מִסַּלְמָה  
הַלְּמָנִים בְּשַׁעֲוֹר מַחְצִית מִיבּוֹלָנוּ, מִן הַתִּירָס  
וְהַשְּׁעוֹרָה וְכָל דִּגְגָנוֹ לְמִינֵהוּ, וּמַחְצִית שֹׁגֵר עֲדָרֵי  
צֹאנָנוּ וּבָקָרָנוּ; אֵכֵן מַחְצִית כָּל אֲשֶׁר לָנוּ נוֹשָׂה  
מֶלֶךְ הַלְּמָנִים מֵאֲתָנוּ, וְלֹא, אֶת חַיֵּינוּ יָקָח.

22 And all this he did, for the sole purpose of bringing this people into  
subjection or into bondage. And behold, we at this time do pay tribute  
to the king of the Lamanites, to the amount of one half of our corn,  
and our barley, and even all our grain of every kind, and one half of the  
increase of our flocks and our herds; and even one half of all we have or  
possess the king of the Lamanites doth exact of us, or our lives.

הֲאִין זֶה כְּבֵד מִנְשָׂא? הֲאִין צָרְתָנוּ הַזֹּאת גְּדוֹלָה?  
אֵכֵן, רְאוּ נָא, מִה גְּדוֹלָה סִבְתָנוּ לְהִתְאַבֵּל.

23 And now, is not this grievous to be borne? And is not this, our affliction,  
great? Now behold, how great reason we have to mourn.

אֵכֵן, אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם כְּפֹה רַבּוֹת סְבוֹתֵינוּ  
לְהִתְאַבֵּל; כִּי הִנֵּה מִה רַבִּים מֵאֲחֵינוּ הוּמָתוּ  
וְדָמָם נִשְׁפָּף לִשְׂוֹא, וְהַכֹּל מִפְּנֵי עוֹן.

24 Yea, I say unto you, great are the reasons which we have to mourn; for  
behold how many of our brethren have been slain, and their blood has  
been spilt in vain, and all because of iniquity.

כִּי אִלוּלָא פָּשְׁעוּ הָעָם הַזֶּה, לֹא הָיָה מִנִּיחַ  
יְהוָה לָרָעָה הַגְּדוֹלָה הַזֹּאת לָבוֹא עֲלֵיהֶם.  
אֲךָ הֵם לֹא שָׁמְעוּ לְדְבָרָיו, וַיִּתְּגַלְעוּ שָׁם  
מְרִיבוֹת בֵּינֵיהֶם; כֹּה רַבּוֹת הָיוּ עַד כִּי שִׁפְכוּ  
אִישׁ אֶת דַּם אָחִיו.

25 For if this people had not fallen into transgression the Lord would not  
have suffered that this great evil should come upon them. But behold,  
they would not hearken unto his words; but there arose contentions  
among them, even so much that they did shed blood among themselves.

וְהֵם הִמִּיתוּ נְבִיא יְהוָה, אִישׁ אֱלֹהִים נִבְחָר,  
אֲשֶׁר הִגִּידָם עַל רְשָׁעֵתָם וְתוֹעֲבוֹתֵיהֶם וְהִרְבָּה  
לְנִבְאָה עַל אֲשֶׁר תְּבוֹאֵנָה, אֵכֵן, עַל בּוֹא הַמָּשִׁיחַ.

26 And a prophet of the Lord have they slain; yea, a chosen man of God,  
who told them of their wickedness and abominations, and prophesied  
of many things which are to come, yea, even the coming of Christ.



## מושיע ז:כז-ח:ב

- וַיֵּעַן אֲשֶׁר אָמַר לָהֶם כִּי הַמָּשִׁיחַ הוּא אֱלֹהִים, אָבִי כָל הַדְּבָרִים; וְכִי הוּא יִקַּח לוֹ אֶת דְּמוּת הָאָדָם, וְתִהְיֶה זֶה הַדְּמוּת אֲשֶׁר עַל פִּיהָ נִבְרָא הָאָדָם בְּרֹאשִׁית; וּבְמַלְאִים אַחֲרוֹת: הוּא אָמַר כִּי הָאָדָם נִבְרָא עַל פִּי צֶלֶם אֱלֹהִים, וְכִי אֱלֹהִים יֵרֵד אֶל בְּנֵי הָאָדָם, וְיִשִּׁית עָלָיו בָּשָׂר וָדָם, וְיִתְהַלֵּךְ עַל פְּנֵי הָאָרֶץ;
- וַיֵּעַן אֲשֶׁר אָמַר זֹאת, הִמְתִּירוּהוּ, וַעֲשׂוּ עוֹד מַעֲשִׂים רַבִּים נֹסְפִים אֲשֶׁר הִבִּיאוּ אֶת חַמַּת אֱלֹהִים עֲלֵיהֶם. עַל כֵּן, מִי יִתְמַה עַל שְׁעִבּוּדָם וְעַל אֲשֶׁר הֵם מִכִּים בְּצָרוֹת וּבְמִכָּאוֹב.
- כִּי כֹה אָמַר יְהוָה: לֹא אֶעֱזֹר לַעֲמִי בְיוֹם פְּשָׁעָם, כִּי אֲגַדֵּר אֶת דֶּרֶכָם לְבַל יִצְלִיחוּ, וְהָיוּ מַעֲשֵׂיהֶם מִכְשׁוֹל לִפְנֵיהֶם.
- וְעוֹד אָמַר: אִם טָמְאָה יִזְרְעוּ עֲמִי, מוֹץ בְּסוּפָה יִקְצְרוּ וּפְעֻלָּתָהּ תִּרְעַלָּה הִיא.
- וְעוֹד אָמַר: אִם טָמְאָה יִזְרְעוּ עֲמִי, רוּחַ קָדִים יִקְצְרוּ, אֲשֶׁר תִּבּוֹאָתָהּ כָּלִיוֹן מִהִיר.
- הִנֵּה קָם דְּבַר יְהוָה וּמִכּוֹת וְיִסּוּרִים בָּאוּ עֲלֵיהֶם.
- אֲךָ אִם תִּשׁוּבוּ אֶל יְהוָה בְּכָל פִּנְיַת לִבְבְּכֶם, וְתַשְׁיִמוּ בוֹ אֶת מִבְּטַחְכֶם, וְתַעֲבְדוּהוּ בְּכָל שִׁקְיֹדָת דַּעְתְּכֶם, אַכֵּן אִם תַּעֲשׂוּ כֵן, הוּא יִגְאֹלְכֶם מִן הַשְׁעָבוּד, כְּחֻצּוֹ וְכִרְצוֹנוֹ.
- 27 And because he said unto them that Christ was the God, the Father of all things, and said that he should take upon him the image of man, and it should be the image after which man was created in the beginning; or in other words, he said that man was created after the image of God, and that God should come down among the children of men, and take upon him flesh and blood, and go forth upon the face of the earth—
- 28 And now, because he said this, they did put him to death; and many more things did they do which brought down the wrath of God upon them. Therefore, who wondereth that they are in bondage, and that they are smitten with sore afflictions?
- 29 For behold, the Lord hath said: I will not succor my people in the day of their transgression; but I will hedge up their ways that they prosper not; and their doings shall be as a stumbling block before them.
- 30 And again, he saith: If my people shall sow filthiness they shall reap the chaff thereof in the whirlwind; and the effect thereof is poison.
- 31 And again he saith: If my people shall sow filthiness they shall reap the east wind, which bringeth immediate destruction.
- 32 And now, behold, the promise of the Lord is fulfilled, and ye are smitten and afflicted.
- 33 But if ye will turn to the Lord with full purpose of heart, and put your trust in him, and serve him with all diligence of mind, if ye do this, he will, according to his own will and pleasure, deliver you out of bondage.

## ח

## 8

- וּכְכֹלּוֹת הַמֶּלֶךְ לִמְחִי לְדַבֵּר אֶל עַמּוֹ, כִּי רַבּוֹת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים וְרַק מְעַט מִדְּבָרָיו כְּתִבְתִּי בְּסֵפֶר הַזֶּה, הוּא סֵפֶר לָהֶם אֶת כָּל הַדְּבָרִים עַל אוֹדוֹת אַחֵיהֶם אֲשֶׁר בְּאָרֶץ יִזְרְעֵמֶלָה.
- וְהוּא הוֹרָה לַעֲמֹון לַעֲמֹד לִפְנֵי הַקָּהָל וּלְסַפֵּר בְּאִזְנֵיהֶם אֶת כָּל הַקּוֹרוֹת אֶת אַחֵיהֶם מִיּוֹם עֲלוֹת צִנִּיף מִן הָאָרֶץ, עַד אֲשֶׁר הוּא עֲצָמוּ יֵצֵא לַעֲלוֹת מִמֶּנָּה.
- 1 And it came to pass that after king Limhi had made an end of speaking to his people, for he spake many things unto them and only a few of them have I written in this book, he told his people all the things concerning their brethren who were in the land of Zarahemla.
- 2 And he caused that Ammon should stand up before the multitude, and rehearse unto them all that had happened unto their brethren from the time that Zeniff went up out of the land even until the time that he himself came up out of the land.



- 3 And he also rehearsed unto them the last words which king Benjamin had taught them, and explained them to the people of king Limhi, so that they might understand all the words which he spake.
- וְעִמּוֹן אִף הִגָּה בְּאַזְנוֹיהֶם אֶת דְּבָרֵי הַמֶּלֶךְ  
בְּנִימִין הָאֲחֵרוֹנִים אֲשֶׁר לְמֶדֶם, וְהוּא בְּאֶרֶם  
לְאַנְשֵׁי הַמֶּלֶךְ לְמַחִי, לְמַעַן יָבִינוּ אֶת כָּל  
הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר.
- 4 And it came to pass that after he had done all this, that king Limhi dismissed the multitude, and caused that they should return every one unto his own house.
- וְהָיָה אַחֵר עֲשׂוֹתוֹ אֶת כָּל זֹאת, שָׁלַח הַמֶּלֶךְ  
לְמַחִי אֶת הַקָּהָל אִישׁ לְבֵיתוֹ.
- 5 And it came to pass that he caused that the plates which contained the record of his people from the time that they left the land of Zarahemla, should be brought before Ammon, that he might read them.
- וְהוּא הוֹרָה לְהָבִיא לִפְנֵי עִמּוֹן אֶת הַלוּחוֹת  
אֲשֶׁר כְּתוּבִים בָּהֶם זְכוֹנוֹת עַמּוֹ מִיּוֹם עָזְבָם  
אֶת אֶרֶץ זִרְעֵהֶמְלָה, לְמַעַן יִקְרָא בָהֶם.
- 6 Now, as soon as Ammon had read the record, the king inquired of him to know if he could interpret languages, and Ammon told him that he could not.
- וּכְכֹלֹת עִמּוֹן לִקְרֹא אֶת הַכְּתוּב, שָׁאָלוּ הַמֶּלֶךְ  
אִם יָכוֹל הוּא לְתַרְגֵּם לְשׁוֹנוֹת, וְעִמּוֹן הֵשִׁיבוּ  
כִּי אֵינוּ יָכוֹל.
- 7 And the king said unto him: Being grieved for the afflictions of my people, I caused that forty and three of my people should take a journey into the wilderness, that thereby they might find the land of Zarahemla, that we might appeal unto our brethren to deliver us out of bondage.
- וְאָמַר אֵלָיו הַמֶּלֶךְ: בְּהִתְעַצֵּב לִבִּי עַל סִבְלוֹת  
עַמִּי פָקַדְתִּי כִּי יַעֲרְכוּ אַרְבָּעִים וּשְׁלֹשָׁה מְאֻנְשֵׁי  
מִסָּע בְּיַעְרֹת לְמַצֵּא אֶת אֶרֶץ זִרְעֵהֶמְלָה,  
לְבַקֵּשׁ מֵאַחֵינוּ לְהַצִּילֵנוּ מִן הַשְׁעָבֹד.
- 8 And they were lost in the wilderness for the space of many days, yet they were diligent, and found not the land of Zarahemla but returned to this land, having traveled in a land among many waters, having discovered a land which was covered with bones of men, and of beasts, and was also covered with ruins of buildings of every kind, having discovered a land which had been peopled with a people who were as numerous as the hosts of Israel.
- וְהֵם תָּעוּ בְּיַעְרֹת יָמִים רַבִּים, וְאִף כִּי  
הִתְאֲמָצוּ, לֹא מָצְאוּ אֶת אֶרֶץ זִרְעֵהֶמְלָה  
וְשָׁבוּ אֶל הָאֶרֶץ הַזֹּאת. וּבְמִסָּעָם בְּאֶרֶץ  
עֲתִירַת מְקוֹי מִים הֵם גָּלוּ אֶרֶץ אֲשֶׁר כְּסוּיָהּ  
עֲצָמוֹת אָדָם וּבְהֵמָה, וְאֲשֶׁר מְלֵאוּיָהּ חֲרֻבוֹת  
כָּל מִינֵי בְּנִינִים, וְאִף אֶרֶץ אֲשֶׁר תּוֹשְׁבֶיהָ  
הָיוּ רַבִּים כְּצִבְאוֹת יִשְׂרָאֵל.
- 9 And for a testimony that the things that they had said are true they have brought twenty-four plates which are filled with engravings, and they are of pure gold.
- וּלְעֵדוּת עַל אֱמֶתֶת דְּבָרֵיהֶם, הֵם הָבִיאוּ  
עִמָּהֶם עֲשָׂרִים וָאַרְבָּעָה לוחות זָהָב טָהוֹר,  
אֲשֶׁר הֵם מְלֵאִים חֲרִיטוֹת.
- 10 And behold, also, they have brought breastplates, which are large, and they are of brass and of copper, and are perfectly sound.
- וְהִנֵּה, הֵם אִף הָבִיאוּ מְגִי חֹזֶה רַבִּי  
מְדוֹת, עֲשׂוּיִים נְחֹשֶׁת וְנְחֹשֶׁת קָלִל,  
וְהֵם שְׁלֵמִים וְטוֹבִים.
- 11 And again, they have brought swords, the hilts thereof have perished, and the blades thereof were cankered with rust; and there is no one in the land that is able to interpret the language or the engravings that are on the plates. Therefore I said unto thee: Canst thou translate?
- וְהֵם הָבִיאוּ חֲרָבוֹת, אֲשֶׁר נִצְבְּיָהֶן נִשְׁחָתוּ  
וְלְהַבִּיָּהֶן אָכְלוּ בַחֲלָדָה; וְאֵין אִישׁ בְּאֶרֶץ הַמִּבְרִין  
אֶת שְׁפַת הַלּוּחוֹת אוֹ אֶת הַחֲרִיטוֹת אֲשֶׁר עַל  
גְּבִיהֶם. לָכֵן שְׁאֵלְתִּיךָ: הֲתוּכַל לְתַרְגֵּם?
- 12 And I say unto thee again: Knowest thou of any one that can translate? For I am desirous that these records should be translated into our language; for, perhaps, they will give us a knowledge of a remnant of the
- וְאֹסִיף וְאֲשַׁאֲלֶךָ: הֲתֵדַע אִישׁ אֲשֶׁר יוּכַל  
לְתַרְגֵּם? כִּי חִפְץ אֲנִי בְּתַרְגוּם הָרְשׁוּמוֹת הָאֵלֶּה  
לְלִשׁוֹנֵנוּ; אוּלַּי יוֹדַע לָנוּ מֵהֶם עַל שְׂרִיד מִן

## מושיע ח:יג-כ

הָעַם הַנִּשְׁמָד אֲשֶׁר מִמֶּנּוּ בָּאוּ הַלוּחוֹת הָאֵלֶּה;  
אוֹ, אוֹלִי, יִלְמְדוּנִי עַל הָעַם הַזֶּה אֲשֶׁר נִשְׁמָד;  
וְאֲנִי חֲפִץ לָדַעַת מֶה הִבִּיא לְכַלְיוֹנָם.

people who have been destroyed, from whence these records came; or, perhaps, they will give us a knowledge of this very people who have been destroyed; and I am desirous to know the cause of their destruction.

וְאָמַר אֵלָיו עֲמוֹן: אֲדוֹנִי הַמֶּלֶךְ, אֲכֹן  
אוּכַל לְהַגִּידָךְ מִי הָאִישׁ אֲשֶׁר יָכוֹל לְתַרְגֵּם  
אֶת הַכְּתָבִים, כִּי יֵשׁ לוֹ בְּאֲשֶׁר יָכוֹל לְהַבִּיט  
וּלְתַרְגֵּם אֶת כָּל הַרְשׁוּמוֹת הַקְּדוּמוֹת,  
וְזֹאת מִתַּת אֱלֹהִים. וְהַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר בִּידֹ  
נִקְרָאִים מִבְּאָרִים, וְאִין אִישׁ יָכוֹל לְהַבִּיט  
בָּהֶם, בְּלִתִּי אִם צָוָה, פֶּן יָבִיט בְּאֲשֶׁר אֲסוּר  
לוֹ וְאָבֹד יֵאָבֵד. וְהָאִישׁ אֲשֶׁר מְצָוָה לְהַבִּיט  
בָּהֶם, חוֹזֶה נִקְרָא.

13 Now Ammon said unto him: I can assuredly tell thee, O king, of a man that can translate the records; for he has wherewith that he can look, and translate all records that are of ancient date; and it is a gift from God. And the things are called interpreters, and no man can look in them except he be commanded, lest he should look for that he ought not and he should perish. And whosoever is commanded to look in them, the same is called seer.

הִנֵּה כִּי מֶלֶךְ הָעַם אֲשֶׁר בְּאֶרֶץ זֶרַחֶמְלָה הוּא  
הָאִישׁ הַמְּצָוָה לַעֲשׂוֹת אֶת הַמַּעֲשִׂים הָאֵלֶּה,  
וְלוֹ מִתַּת אֱלֹהִים הַמְרוֹמָמָה הַזֹּאת.

14 And behold, the king of the people who are in the land of Zarahemla is the man that is commanded to do these things, and who has this high gift from God.

וְהַמֶּלֶךְ אָמַר כִּי חוֹזֶה גָּדוֹל מִנְּבִיא.

15 And the king said that a seer is greater than a prophet.

וְעֲמוֹן אָמַר כִּי חוֹזֶה הוּא מְגַלֵּה נִסְתָּרוֹת וְאִף  
הוּא נְבִיא, וְאִין אָדָם יָכוֹל לְקַבֵּל מִתַּת גְּדוּלָּה  
מִזֹּאת, בְּלִתִּי אִם יִהְיֶה לוֹ כַּחַ אֱלֹהִים, אֲשֶׁר  
הוּא מַעֲבֵר לִיכְלֹת הָאָדָם; וְאוּלַם יִתְּכֶן כִּי  
יִהְיֶה לְאִישׁ כַּחַ רַב, אֲשֶׁר נָתַן מֵאֵת אֱלֹהִים.

16 And Ammon said that a seer is a revelator and a prophet also; and a gift which is greater can no man have, except he should possess the power of God, which no man can; yet a man may have great power given him from God.

וְחוֹזֶה יָכוֹל לָדַעַת דְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר הָיוּ בְּעָבֶר וְכֵן  
דְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר יִבְאוּ בְּעָתִיד; וְעַל יְדֵי הַחוּזִים  
נִגְלִים כָּל הַדְּבָרִים, אוֹ, בְּיַתֵּר דִּיּוֹק, נִסְתָּרוֹת  
הוֹפְכוֹת נִגְלוֹת, וְדְבָרֵי סִתְרִים יוֹצְאִים לְאוֹר.  
וְדְבָרִים אֲשֶׁר אֵינָם יְדוּעִים, נוֹדְעִים עַל יְדֵיהֶם;  
וְכֵן דְּבָרִים יַעֲשׂוּ נוֹדְעִים עַל יְדֵיהֶם, אֲשֶׁר  
בְּלַעֲדֵיהֶם לֹא יוּכְלוּ לְהוֹדֹעַ.

17 But a seer can know of things which are past, and also of things which are to come, and by them shall all things be revealed, or, rather, shall secret things be made manifest, and hidden things shall come to light, and things which are not known shall be made known by them, and also things shall be made known by them which otherwise could not be known.

כֹּה הִכִּין אֱלֹהִים דֶּרֶךְ לְמַעַן יוּכַל הָאָדָם, עַל  
יְדֵי אֱמוּנָתוֹ, לַעֲשׂוֹת נִפְלְאוֹת; וְכֵה הוּא נִעֲשֶׂה  
לְמוֹעִיל וּמִיטִיב לְשָׂאֵר בְּנֵי הָאָדָם.

18 Thus God has provided a means that man, through faith, might work mighty miracles; therefore he becometh a great benefit to his fellow beings.

וּכְכִלּוֹת עֲמוֹן לְדַבֵּר אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, שָׂמַח  
הַמֶּלֶךְ עַד מְאֹד וְהוּא הוֹדָה לְאֱלֹהִים לֵאמֹר:  
אֲכֹן דְּבַר סֵתֶר גָּדוֹל רָשׁוּם בְּלוּחוֹת הָאֵלֶּה,  
וְהַמְּבָאָרִים אֲכֹן הוֹכֵנוּ לְתַכְלִית גְּלוֹי כָּל  
נִסְתָּרוֹת כְּאֵלֶּה לְבְנֵי הָאָדָם.

19 And now, when Ammon had made an end of speaking these words the king rejoiced exceedingly, and gave thanks to God, saying: Doubtless a great mystery is contained within these plates, and these interpreters were doubtless prepared for the purpose of unfolding all such mysteries to the children of men.

מֶה נִפְלְאִים מַעֲשֵׂי יְהוָה, וּמֶה רַבָּה סִבְלָנוֹתוֹ  
אֵל עֲמוֹ; אֲכֹן, מֶה עֲנִירָת וְאִסְטוּמָה הִבְנֵת בְּנֵי

20 O how marvelous are the works of the Lord, and how long doth he suffer with his people; yea, and how blind and impenetrable are the

## מושיע ח:כא-ט:ה

הָאָדָם, כִּי אֵינָם מְבַקְשִׁים חֲכָמָה, וְאֵינָם  
חֹפְצִים כִּי תִמְשָׁל בָּהֶם!

understandings of the children of men; for they will not seek wisdom,  
neither do they desire that she should rule over them!

אָכֵן, הֵם כְּעֶדֶר פָּרָא הַבוֹרֵחַ מִן הָרוּעָה וְנִפְּוֹץ;  
תִּגְרָשׁם חִיתוֹ יַעַר וְתִטְרָפָם.

21 Yea, they are as a wild flock which fleeth from the shepherd, and  
scattereth, and are driven, and are devoured by the beasts of the forest.

כְּתָבִי צִנִּיף. סְפּוֹר עֲמוֹ מֵעַתָּה עֵזְבְּכֶם אֶת אֶרֶץ  
זֶרַעְהֶמְלָה עַד אֲשֶׁר שְׁחָרְרוּ מִיַּד הַלְּמָנִים  
(בְּעֶרְךָ 200–120 לִפְנֵי הַסְּפִירָה). נִכְלָל  
בְּפָרָקִים ט–כב.

*The record of Zeniff. An account of his people from the time they left the  
land of Zarahemla until the time they were delivered out of the hands of  
the Lamanites. (About 200–120 B.C.) Comprising chapters 9–22.*

## ט

## 9

אֲנִי צִנִּיף לְמַדְתִּי בְּכָל לְשׁוֹן הַנִּפְּיִים, וְאֶף  
הַכְּרִיתִי אֶת אֶרֶץ נֶפִי, אֲשֶׁר הִיא אֶרֶץ יִרְשָׁת  
אֲבוֹתֵינוּ הָרִאשׁוֹנָה. וְאֲנִי נִשְׁלַחְתִּי לְרַגֵּל בְּקֶרֶב  
הַלְּמָנִים, לְצַפּוֹת בְּחִילוֹתֵיהֶם, לְמַעַן יוֹכַל  
צָבָאֵנוּ לְהִתְנַפֵּל עֲלֵיהֶם וְלִהְשָׁמִידָם. אֶף  
בְּרִאוֹתֵי אֶת הַטּוֹב אֲשֶׁר בָּהֶם, חֲפָצְתִּי  
כִּי לֹא יִשָּׁמְדוּ.

1 I, Zeniff, having been taught in all the language of the Nephites, and  
having had a knowledge of the land of Nephi, or of the land of our  
fathers' first inheritance, and having been sent as a spy among the  
Lamanites that I might spy out their forces, that our army might come  
upon them and destroy them—but when I saw that which was good  
among them I was desirous that they should not be destroyed.

לָכֵן הִתְוַפַּחְתִּי עִם חֲבֵרֵי בִיעֵרוֹת, יַעַן אֲשֶׁר  
רָצִיתִי כִּי יִכְרַת מוֹשְׁלָנוּ בְּרִית עִמָּהֶם; אוֹלָם  
מוֹשְׁלָנוּ, בְּהִיּוֹתוֹ אִישׁ קָשָׁה וְצָמָא דָּם צָנוֹה  
לְהַרְגֵנִי; אֶף אֲנִי נִצַּלְתִּי מִפְּנֵי שְׁפִיכוֹת דָּמִים  
גְּדוֹלָה; אֲבוֹת נִלְחָמוּ בְּאֲבוֹת וְאֲחִים בְּאֲחֵיהֶם,  
עַד כִּי הִשָּׁמַד מִרְבִּית מִנֵּן צָבָאֵנוּ בִּיעֵרוֹת,  
וְאֲנַחְנוּ, הַנִּשְׁאָרִים בַּחַיִּים, שָׁבְנוּ אֶל  
אֶרֶץ זֶרַעְהֶמְלָה לְסַפֵּר אֶת הַסְּפּוֹר  
לְנַשְׁיָהֶם וּלְיִלְדֵיהֶם.

2 Therefore, I contended with my brethren in the wilderness for I would  
that our ruler should make a treaty with them; but he being an austere  
and a bloodthirsty man commanded that I should be slain; but I was  
rescued by the shedding of much blood; for father fought against  
father, and brother against brother, until the greater number of our  
army was destroyed in the wilderness; and we returned, those of us that  
were spared, to the land of Zarahemla, to relate that tale to their wives  
and their children.

אֶף אֲנִי, בְּהִיּוֹתִי לְהוֹט לְרִשְׁתָּהּ אֶת אֶרֶץ  
אֲבוֹתֵינוּ, קִבַּצְתִּי אֶת כָּל אֲשֶׁר חֲפָצוֹ לַעֲלוֹת  
אֵלֶיהָ וּלְנַחֲלָהּ, וְהַחֲלוֹנוּ שָׁנִית בְּמַסְעֵנוּ בִּיעֵרוֹת  
לַעֲלוֹת אֶרְצָה; אֶף הָכִינוּ בְּרָעָב וּבִיסוּרִים  
קָשִׁים כִּי נִלְאִינוּ לִזְכֹּר אֶת יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵינוּ.

3 And yet, I being over-zealous to inherit the land of our fathers, collected  
as many as were desirous to go up to possess the land, and started again  
on our journey into the wilderness to go up to the land; but we were  
smitten with famine and sore afflictions; for we were slow to remember  
the Lord our God.

וְאוֹלָם, אַחֵר יָמֵי נְדוּדִים רַבִּים בִּיעֵרוֹת, נָסִינוּ  
אֶת אֹהֲלֵינוּ בְּמָקוֹם אֲשֶׁר בּוֹ נִהָרְגוּ אֲחֵינוּ,  
וְהוּא לִיד אֶרֶץ אֲבוֹתֵינוּ.

4 Nevertheless, after many days' wandering in the wilderness we pitched  
our tents in the place where our brethren were slain, which was near to  
the land of our fathers.

וְאֲנִי הִלַּכְתִּי שָׁנִית, וְעַמִּי אֶרְבָּעָה מֵאָנָשִׁי,  
אֶל הָעִיר, אֶל בֵּית הַמֶּלֶךְ, לְדַעַת אֶת לֵב  
הַמֶּלֶךְ, וְאִם אוֹכַל לְבוֹא עִם אָנָשִׁי וּלְנַחֵל  
אֶת הָאֶרֶץ בְּשָׁלוֹם.

5 And it came to pass that I went again with four of my men into the city,  
in unto the king, that I might know of the disposition of the king, and  
that I might know if I might go in with my people and possess the land  
in peace.

- 6 And I went in unto the king, and he covenanted with me that I might possess the land of Lehi-Nephi, and the land of Shilom.
- וַנִּכְנַסְתִּי אֶל בֵּית הַמֶּלֶךְ, וְהוּא כָרַת עִמִּי בְרִית לְתִתֵּן לִי, אֶת אֶרֶץ לְחֵי-נֶפְחִי וְאֶת אֶרֶץ שִׁילֹם, לְנַחֲלָה.
- 7 And he also commanded that his people should depart out of the land, and I and my people went into the land that we might possess it.
- וְהוּא אַף צִוָּה אֶת עַמּוֹ לְצֵאת מִן הָאָרֶץ, וְאֲנִי וְאֲנָשֵׁי בָּאֲנִי אֶל הָאָרֶץ לְנַחֵל אוֹתָהּ.
- 8 And we began to build buildings, and to repair the walls of the city, yea, even the walls of the city of Lehi-Nephi, and the city of Shilom.
- וְאֶנְחֵנוּ הַחֲלוֹנוּ לְבָנוֹת בְּנִינִים, וּלְתַקֵּן אֶת חוֹמוֹת הָעִיר, אֲכֹן, חוֹמוֹת הָעִיר לְחֵי-נֶפְחִי וְהָעִיר שִׁילֹם.
- 9 And we began to till the ground, yea, even with all manner of seeds, with seeds of corn, and of wheat, and of barley, and with neas, and with sheum, and with seeds of all manner of fruits; and we did begin to multiply and prosper in the land.
- וְאֶנְחֵנוּ הַחֲלוֹנוּ לְעַבֵּד אֶת הָאֲדָמָה בְּכָל מִינֵי זֵרַעִים, וְזֵרַעֵי תֵירָס, וְחֶטֶה וּשְׁעוֹרָה, וְנֶאֱס וְשֵׁאֻם, וְזֵרַעֵי כָּל פְּרִי לְמִינָהּ. אֹז הַחֲלוֹנוּ לְרַבּוֹת בְּאֶרֶץ וּלְהַצְלִיחַ בָּהּ.
- 10 Now it was the cunning and the craftiness of king Laman, to bring my people into bondage, that he yielded up the land that we might possess it.
- כֹּה, בְּעֶרְמַת הַמֶּלֶךְ לָמֹן וְתַחְבּוּלָתוֹ, לְמַעַן שְׁעַבְדּוּ אֶת עַמִּי, הוּא וְתָר עַל הָאָרֶץ לְתִתָּהּ לָנוּ לְנַחֲלָה.
- 11 Therefore it came to pass, that after we had dwelt in the land for the space of twelve years that king Laman began to grow uneasy, lest by any means my people should wax strong in the land, and that they could not overpower them and bring them into bondage.
- וְהָיָה כְּעֵבֶר שְׁתֵּים עָשָׂר שָׁנָה מִיּוֹם יָשְׁבֵנוּ בְּאֶרֶץ, הַחֹל הַמֶּלֶךְ לָמֹן לְחַשֵּׁשׁ פֶּן יִתְחַזֵּק עַמִּי בְּאֶרֶץ, וְלֹא יוֹכֵל עַמּוֹ לְגַבֵּר עָלָיו וּלְשַׁעְבְּדוֹ.
- 12 Now they were a lazy and an idolatrous people; therefore they were desirous to bring us into bondage, that they might glut themselves with the labors of our hands; yea, that they might feast themselves upon the flocks of our fields.
- וְהִלְמָנִים הָיוּ עִם עֶצֶל וְעוֹבְדֵי פְסִילִים; לָכֵן חָפְצוּ לְשַׁעְבְּדָנוּ, לְמַעַן יִזְלְלוּ בְעַמְל יְדֵינוּ, לְמַעַן יַעֲשׂוּ לָהֶם סְעֻדוֹת מִעֲדָרֵי שְׂדוֹתֵינוּ.
- 13 Therefore it came to pass that king Laman began to stir up his people that they should contend with my people; therefore there began to be wars and contentions in the land.
- עַל כֵּן הַחֹל הַמֶּלֶךְ לָמֹן לְהָסִית אֶת עַמּוֹ לְרִיב עִם עַמִּי; לָכֵן פָּשְׁטוּ בְּאֶרֶץ מִלְחָמוֹת וּמִדִּנִּים.
- 14 For, in the thirteenth year of my reign in the land of Nephi, away on the south of the land of Shilom, when my people were watering and feeding their flocks, and tilling their lands, a numerous host of Lamanites came upon them and began to slay them, and to take off their flocks, and the corn of their fields.
- כִּי בִשְׁנַת שְׁלֹשׁ עָשָׂרָה לְמַלְכוּתִי בְּאֶרֶץ נֶפְחִי, הָרְחַק בְּדָרוֹם אֶרֶץ שִׁילֹם, בְּעֵת אֲשֶׁר הָשְׁקוּ עַמִּי אֶת עֲדְרֵיהֶם וְרָעוּם, וּבְעֵת עֲבָדָם אֶת אֲדָמוֹתֵיהֶם, נָפַל עֲלֵיהֶם חֵיל גָּדוֹל מִן הַלְּמָנִים, וְהָחֹל לְהָרֵג אוֹתָם וּלְגַזֵּל אֶת עֲדְרֵיהֶם וְאֶת דָּגַן שְׂדוֹתֵיהֶם.
- 15 Yea, and it came to pass that they fled, all that were not overtaken, even into the city of Nephi, and did call upon me for protection.
- וּבְנֵי עַמִּי, כָּל אֲשֶׁר לֹא הִשְׁיִגוּם הַלְּמָנִים, נִמְלָטוּ אֶל הָעִיר נֶפְחִי, וְהֵם קָרְאוּ אֵלַי לְהִגֹּן עֲלֵיהֶם.
- 16 And it came to pass that I did arm them with bows, and with arrows, with swords, and with cimeters, and with clubs, and with slings, and

## מוֹשִׁיָּה ט:יז–י:ה

וּבְכָל סוּג נֶשֶׁק אֲשֶׁר יִכְלְנוּ לְהַמְצִיא;  
וְאֲנִי יִצְאָתִי עִם אַנְשֵׁי לְקָרֵב עַל הַלְּמָנִים.

with all manner of weapons which we could invent, and I and my people did go forth against the Lamanites to battle.

וַיֵּצְאוּנוּ לְקָרֵב עַל הַלְּמָנִים לְבוֹשִׁים עֹז יְהוָה,  
כִּי אֲנִי וְאַנְשֵׁי צַעֲקָנוּ צַעֲקָה גְדוֹלָה לַיהוָה  
לְהַצִּילֵנוּ מִיַּד אוֹיְבֵינוּ, כִּי הִתְעוֹרְרָנוּ לְזָכֹר  
הַצִּלּוֹת אוֹת אֲבוֹתֵינוּ.

17 Yea, in the strength of the Lord did we go forth to battle against the Lamanites; for I and my people did cry mightily to the Lord that he would deliver us out of the hands of our enemies, for we were awakened to a remembrance of the deliverance of our fathers.

וְאֱלֹהִים שָׁמַע אוֹת צַעֲקוֹתֵינוּ וְאֵל תְּפִלּוֹתֵינוּ  
שָׁעָה; וַיֵּצְאוּנוּ בְּגִבּוֹרָתוֹ, וַנִּפְלְנוּ עַל הַלְּמָנִים;  
שְׁלֹשָׁת אֲלָפִים וְאַרְבַּעַם וּשְׁלֹשָׁה מֵהֶם הָרַגְנוּ  
בְּיוֹם אֶחָד וּבְלַיְלָה. אַכֵּן, הָרַגְנוּ בָּהֶם עַד אֲשֶׁר  
גָּרְשׁוּם מֵאַרְצֵנוּ.

18 And God did hear our cries and did answer our prayers; and we did go forth in his might; yea, we did go forth against the Lamanites, and in one day and a night we did slay three thousand and forty-three; we did slay them even until we had driven them out of our land.

וְאֲנִי, בְּמוֹ יָדִי, עֲזָרְתִּי לְקַבֵּר אוֹת מֵתֵיהֶם.  
וְהִנֵּה, לְרֹב יְגוֹנֵנוּ וּמִסְפָּדָנוּ, מֵאַתִּים וּשְׁבַעִים  
וּתְשַׁעַה מֵאַחֵינוּ נָהָרְגוּ.

19 And I, myself, with mine own hands, did help to bury their dead. And behold, to our great sorrow and lamentation, two hundred and seventy-nine of our brethren were slain.

## י

## 10

וַשְׁבָּנוּ לְכוֹנוֹן אוֹת הַמַּמְלָכָה, וְהַחֲלוֹנוּ שְׁנִית  
לְנַחֵל אוֹת הָאָרֶץ בְּשָׁלוֹם. וְאֲנִי הוֹרִיתִי כִּי  
יַעֲשֶׂה לָנוּ נֶשֶׁק לְמַלְחָמָה מִכָּל מִין, לְמַעַן יִהְיֶה  
לִי נֶשֶׁק בְּעֵבּוֹר עַמִּי לְעַת אֲשֶׁר יָקוּמוּ הַלְּמָנִים  
שְׁנִית לְמַלְחָמָה עַל עַמִּי.

1 And it came to pass that we again began to establish the kingdom and we again began to possess the land in peace. And I caused that there should be weapons of war made of every kind, that thereby I might have weapons for my people against the time the Lamanites should come up again to war against my people.

וְאֲנִי הַצַּבְתִּי שׁוּמְרִים מְסָבִיבִים הָאָרֶץ, לְכָל  
יִפְתָּיוֹנוּ הַלְּמָנִים שְׁנִית בְּהִתְנַפֵּלֵם עָלֵינוּ  
וַיִּשְׁמִידוּנוּ; כִּךְ שָׁמַרְתִּי אוֹת עַמִּי וְאוֹת עַדְרִי  
וּמִנְעָתִים מִנִּפְּל לַיָּד אוֹיְבֵינוּ.

2 And I set guards round about the land, that the Lamanites might not come upon us again unawares and destroy us; and thus I did guard my people and my flocks, and keep them from falling into the hands of our enemies.

וְהִיְתָה אֶרֶץ אֲבוֹתֵינוּ לִירֵשָׁה לָנוּ עַת אַרְבָּה,  
עֶשְׂרִים וּשְׁתַּיִם שָׁנָה.

3 And it came to pass that we did inherit the land of our fathers for many years, yea, for the space of twenty and two years.

וְאֲנִי הוֹרִיתִי כִּי הַגִּבָּרִים יַעֲבְדוּ אוֹת הָאֲדָמָה  
וַיַּגְדְּלוּ כָּל מִיְּנֵי דָגָן וְכָל פְּרִי לְמִינָהּ.

4 And I did cause that the men should till the ground, and raise all manner of grain and all manner of fruit of every kind.

וְלִנְשִׁים הוֹרִיתִי לְסוּת וְלַעֲמֹל וְלַעֲבֹד,  
וְלַעֲשׂוֹת כָּל מִיְּנֵי אֲרִיגֵי פֶשֶׁתָּן הַדּוֹרִים וּבָדִים  
מִכָּל סוּג לְהַלְבִּישׁ אוֹת מַעֲרַמֵּינוּ; כִּךְ הִצִּלְחָנוּ  
בְּאֶרֶץ, וְשִׁרְרָה בָּהּ שְׁלוֹה אַרְבָּה, עֶשְׂרִים  
וּשְׁתַּיִם שָׁנָה.

5 And I did cause that the women should spin, and toil, and work, and work all manner of fine linen, yea, and cloth of every kind, that we might clothe our nakedness; and thus we did prosper in the land—thus we did have continual peace in the land for the space of twenty and two years.



- והמלך למן מת, ובנו מלך תחתיו. והוא החל להקטיר את עמו למרד בעמי; לכן התכוננו הלמנים למלחמה, ולקום לקרב על עמי.
- 6 And it came to pass that king Laman died, and his son began to reign in his stead. And he began to stir his people up in rebellion against my people; therefore they began to prepare for war, and to come up to battle against my people.
- אך אני שלחתי מרגלים מסביב לארץ שמלון, לגלות את הכנותיהם ולהשמר מפניהם, לבל יתנפלו על עמי וישמידונו.
- 7 But I had sent my spies out round about the land of Shemlon, that I might discover their preparations, that I might guard against them, that they might not come upon my people and destroy them.
- והם עלו עלינו בצפון ארץ שילום בחילותיהם הרבים, מזינים בקשת וחץ, חרב ופגיון, אבני קלע ומרגמות. והם מגלחי ראש לקרחה, וחגורים חגורות עור על מתניהם.
- 8 And it came to pass that they came up upon the north of the land of Shilom, with their numerous hosts, men armed with bows, and with arrows, and with swords, and with cimeters, and with stones, and with slings; and they had their heads shaved that they were naked; and they were girded with a leathern girdle about their loins.
- ואני הוריתי להחביא את נשי עמי וילדינו ביער; ואף הוריתי כי כל הזקנים, וכן הנערים, אשר כח בהם לשאת נשק, יתקבצו ליצאת למלחמה על הלמנים; והעבתי אותם במערכותיהם, כל גבר כפי שנותיו.
- 9 And it came to pass that I caused that the women and children of my people should be hid in the wilderness; and I also caused that all my old men that could bear arms, and also all my young men that were able to bear arms, should gather themselves together to go to battle against the Lamanites; and I did place them in their ranks, every man according to his age.
- ועלינו לקרב על הלמנים; וגם אני, אף כי זקן הייתי, עליתי להלחם בהם; אכן, עלינו לקרב לבושים בעז יהוה.
- 10 And it came to pass that we did go up to battle against the Lamanites; and I, even I, in my old age, did go up to battle against the Lamanites. And it came to pass that we did go up in the strength of the Lord to battle.
- והלמנים לא ידעו דבר על יהוה ועל עז יהוה; על כן נשענו על כחם בלבד. אולם הם היו עם חזק, כפי מדת כח גברים.
- 11 Now, the Lamanites knew nothing concerning the Lord, nor the strength of the Lord, therefore they depended upon their own strength. Yet they were a strong people, as to the strength of men.
- והם היו עם פראים, עזי פנים וצמאי דם, מחזיקים במסורת אבותיהם, והיא האמונה כי גרשו מארץ ירושלים מפני עוונות אבותיהם, וכי אחיהם הרעו להם במדבר, ואף הרעו להם בעת עברם את הים.
- 12 They were a wild, and ferocious, and a blood-thirsty people, believing in the tradition of their fathers, which is this—Believing that they were driven out of the land of Jerusalem because of the iniquities of their fathers, and that they were wronged in the wilderness by their brethren, and they were also wronged while crossing the sea;
- והם אף האמינו כי אחיהם הרעו להם בימיהם בארץ ירשתם הראשונה, אחר חצותם את הים; וכל זאת על כי שמר נפי את מצוות יהוה בנאמנות רבה מהם. לכן מצא חן בעיני יהוה, אשר שמע את תפלותיו וענה לו, והיה נפי מנהיג מסעם במדבר.
- 13 And again, that they were wronged while in the land of their first inheritance, after they had crossed the sea, and all this because that Nephi was more faithful in keeping the commandments of the Lord—therefore he was favored of the Lord, for the Lord heard his prayers and answered them, and he took the lead of their journey in the wilderness.
- ואחיו רגזו עלי, יען אשר לא הבינו את פעלות יהוה; ואף רגזו עלי על פני הים, כי הקשו את לבם על יהוה.
- 14 And his brethren were wroth with him because they understood not the dealings of the Lord; they were also wroth with him upon the waters because they hardened their hearts against the Lord.



- 15 And again, they were wroth with him when they had arrived in the promised land, because they said that he had taken the ruling of the people out of their hands; and they sought to kill him.
- וְשׁוּב, הֵם רָגְזוּ עָלָיו בְּהִגָּעֵם אֶל הָאָרֶץ הַיְעוּדָה, וְאָמְרוּ כִּי לָקַח מִיַּדֵּיהֶם אֶת הַשְׁלֹטוֹן עַל הָעָם, וְהֵם בִּקְשׁוּ אֶת נַפְשׁוֹ.
- 16 And again, they were wroth with him because he departed into the wilderness as the Lord had commanded him, and took the records which were engraven on the plates of brass, for they said that he robbed them.
- וְעוֹד הֵם רָגְזוּ עָלָיו, כִּי יָצָא אֶל הַיַּעַר, כְּמִצְוַת יְהוָה, וְלָקַח אֶת כְּתָבֵי הַזְכָּרוֹנוֹת, הַחֲרוּטִים עַל לוחות נְחֹשֶׁת קָלֵל, וְאָמְרוּ כִּי גָזַל אוֹתָם.
- 17 And thus they have taught their children that they should hate them, and that they should murder them, and that they should rob and plunder them, and do all they could to destroy them; therefore they have an eternal hatred towards the children of Nephi.
- וְכֵן לָמְדוּ אֶת בְּנֵיהֶם לְשׂוֹנֵא אֶת בְּנֵי נְפִי, לְרָצָחָם, לְשַׁדֵּד וּלְגַזֵּל אוֹתָם, וְלַעֲשׂוֹת כָּל אֲשֶׁר לֹאֵל יָדָם לְהַשְׁמִידָם; לְכֹן יֵשׁ בָּלָבָם שְׂנֵאת עוֹלָם לְבְנֵי נְפִי.
- 18 For this very cause has king Laman, by his cunning, and lying craftiness, and his fair promises, deceived me, that I have brought this my people up into this land, that they may destroy them; yea, and we have suffered these many years in the land.
- וְזֹאת הַסִּבָּה אֲשֶׁר הִמְלִיךְ לָמֹן, בְּעִרְמֻתוֹ וּבִנְכָלָיו וּבְדַבְרֵי חֲלָקוֹת, רַמְיָי לְהַעֲלוֹת אֶת עַמִּי לָאָרֶץ הַזֹּאת, לְהַשְׁמִידָם. אָכֵן, בְּשָׁנִים הַרְבּוֹת הָאֵלֶּה סָבְלָנוּ סָבֵל בָּאָרֶץ הַזֹּאת.
- 19 And now I, Zeniff, after having told all these things unto my people concerning the Lamanites, I did stimulate them to go to battle with their might, putting their trust in the Lord; therefore, we did contend with them, face to face.
- וְאַנִּי צִנִּיף, אַחֲרֵי שֶׁסִּפְּרִי לְעַמִּי אֶת כָּל הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה עַל אוֹדוֹת הַלְּמָנִים, עוֹרְרֵתִים לְצִאת לְקָרֵב בְּגִבּוֹרָתָם, וְלִשֵּׁם אֶת מִבְטָחָם בַּיהוָה. לְכֹן נִלְחַמְנוּ בָּהֶם פָּנִים אֶל פָּנִים.
- 20 And it came to pass that we did drive them again out of our land; and we slew them with a great slaughter, even so many that we did not number them.
- וְאַנְחֵנוּ גִרְשָׁנוּ אוֹתָם שְׁנִית מֵאֶרְצֵנוּ. וְהִרְגָנוּ בָּהֶם הֶרֶג רַב, עַד כִּי לֹא מִנִּינוּ אוֹתָם.
- 21 And it came to pass that we returned again to our own land, and my people again began to tend their flocks, and to till their ground.
- וְשָׁבְנוּ אֶל אֶרְצֵנוּ, וְעַמִּי שָׁבוּ לְרֻעוֹת אֶת עֹדְרֵיהֶם וְלַעֲבֹד אֶת אֲדָמָתָם.
- 22 And now I, being old, did confer the kingdom upon one of my sons; therefore, I say no more. And may the Lord bless my people. Amen.
- וְהִנֵּה אֲנִי, בְּזָקְנָתִי, הֶעֱבַרְתִּי אֶת הַמְּלוּכָה אֶל אֶחָד מִבְּנֵי וְלָכֵן לֹא אֲדַבֵּר עוֹד. יְבָרֶךְ נָא יְהוָה אֶת עַמִּי. אָמֵן.

## יֵאָבֵב

## 11

- 1 And now it came to pass that Zeniff conferred the kingdom upon Noah, one of his sons; therefore Noah began to reign in his stead; and he did not walk in the ways of his father.
- וְאַנִּי הֶעֱבִיר אֶת הַמְּלוּכָה לְנֹחַ, אֶחָד מִבְּנָיו; וְנֹחַ מָלַךְ תַּחְתָּיו; וְהוּא לֹא הִלֵּךְ בְּדַרְכֵי אָבִיו.
- 2 For behold, he did not keep the commandments of God, but he did walk after the desires of his own heart. And he had many wives and concubines. And he did cause his people to commit sin, and do that which was abominable in the sight of the Lord. Yea, and they did commit whoredoms and all manner of wickedness.
- אָכֵן, הוּא לֹא שָׁמַר אֶת מִצְוֹת אֱלֹהִים כִּי הִלֵּךְ אַחֲרֵי מִשְׁאָלוֹת לְבוֹ. וְהוּא הִרְבָּה נָשִׁים וּפִילְגָשִׁים. וְהוּא הִחֲסִיא אֶת עַמּוֹ לְהַתְעִיב עָלֶיהָ לִפְנֵי יְהוָה. אָכֵן, הֵם הִלְכוּ בְּנִתְיָבֵי זְנוּת וּבְכָל דְּרָכֵי רָשָׁע.

- והוא הטיל עליהם מס אשר הוא חמישית מערך כל רכושם, חמישית מזהבם וכסףם, חמישית מן הברז, מן הנחשת, מן הנחשת הקלה ומן הברזל אשר להם, וחמישית מעגלי המרבק, וכן חמישית מכל דגנם.
- וְכָל זֹאת לָקַח לְכַלְכֵּל אֶת עַצְמוֹ וְאֶת נָשָׁיו וְאֶת פִּילְגָשָׁיו וְאֶת כְּהֲנָיו, וְאֶת נָשֵׁיהֶם וּפִילְגָשֵׁיהֶם; כִּי שָׁנָה הִמְלִיךְ אֶת עֲנִיֵּי הַמְּלוּכָה.
- כִּי הִסִּיר מִמִּשְׁמֶרֶתָם אֶת כָּל הַכֹּהֲנִים אֲשֶׁר קִדֵּשׁ אָבִיו, וְהוּא קִדֵּשׁ אַחֲרֵיהֶם תַּחֲתָם, וְהָיוּ הֵם כְּמִתְנַשְּׂאִים בְּגִאוֹת לָבָם.
- כִּי הִתְכַּלְּכוּ כָּל אֵלֶּה בְּעַצְלוּתָם, בְּעִבּוֹדֵת אֱלִילִיָּהֶם וּבִתְזוּנוֹתָם, מִן הַמַּסִּים אֲשֶׁר הִטִּיל הַמֶּלֶךְ נָח עַל עַמּוֹ; וְכִי רִבְתָּה מְאֹד עֲבֹדֵת הָעָם לְכַלְכֵּל אֶת מַעֲשֵׂה הָעוֹן.
- וְהָעָם פָּנָה לְעִבּוֹדֵת אֱלִילִים, יַעַן אֲשֶׁר הִמְלִיךְ וְהַכֹּהֲנִים רְמוּם בְּדִבְרֵי הַשָּׁוְא וּבַחֲלָקוֹת, כִּי כִּאֲלֹהָ הָיוּ דְּבָרֵיהֶם אֶל הָעָם.
- וְהַמֶּלֶךְ נָח בָּנָה בָתִּים רַבִּים, בְּתֵי מִדּוֹת יָפִים לְמֶרְאָה, מְקֻשָּׁטִים בָּעֵץ, מַעֲשֵׂה חֶרֶשׁ וַיְדִי צוּרִי בְּכָל מִינֵי יָקָר, מִזָּהָב וּמִכֶּסֶף וּמִבְּרָזֶל וּמִנְחָשֶׁת קָלָל וּמִזִּיף וּמִנְחָשֶׁת.
- וְהוּא אָף בָּנָה לוֹ אַרְמוֹן נֶרְחָב וּבִתּוֹכּוֹ כֶּסֶם מְלָכוֹת, אֲשֶׁר כָּלוּ עַץ הַדּוֹר, מִשְׁבָּץ זָהָב, כֶּסֶף וַיִּקָּר.
- וְהוּא צִוָּה כִּי יַעֲשׂוּ חֶרֶשָׁיו כָּל מְלָאכָה מִחֻשְׁבֵּת בְּקִירוֹת הַהִיכָל בָּעֵץ יָקָר, בְּנִחָשֶׁת וּבְנִחָשֶׁת קָלָל.
- וְהַמּוֹשְׁבִים, אֲשֶׁר יָחֲדוּ לַכֹּהֲנִים הַגְּדוֹלִים, הָיוּ גְבוּהִים מֵעַל כָּל שְׂאֵר הַמּוֹשְׁבִים, וְהוּא קִשְׁטָם בְּזָהָב טָהוֹר; וְהוּא צִוָּה לִבְנוֹת בְּחִזִּיתָם מִסְעָדִים, לְמַעַן יִשְׁעִינוּ הַכֹּהֲנִים אֶת גּוֹפָם וְאֶת זְרֻעוֹתֵיהֶם, בְּעֵת נִשְׁאֵם אֶת דְּבָרֵי הַשִּׁקָּר וְהַשָּׁוְא אֶל עַמּוֹ.
- וְהוּא בָּנָה מִגְדָּל רָם וְנִשְׂא לִיד בֵּית הַמִּקְדָּשׁ; כֹּה גְבוּהָ הָיָה, עַד כִּי בַעֲלוֹתוֹ אֶל רֹאשׁוֹ, יָכוֹל הָיָה לְהַשְׁקִיף עַל כָּל אֶרֶץ שִׁילוֹם וְכֵן עַל אֶרֶץ
- 3 And he laid a tax of one fifth part of all they possessed, a fifth part of their gold and of their silver, and a fifth part of their ziff, and of their copper, and of their brass and their iron; and a fifth part of their fatlings; and also a fifth part of all their grain.
- 4 And all this did he take to support himself, and his wives and his concubines; and also his priests, and their wives and their concubines; thus he had changed the affairs of the kingdom.
- 5 For he put down all the priests that had been consecrated by his father, and consecrated new ones in their stead, such as were lifted up in the pride of their hearts.
- 6 Yea, and thus they were supported in their laziness, and in their idolatry, and in their whoredoms, by the taxes which king Noah had put upon his people; thus did the people labor exceedingly to support iniquity.
- 7 Yea, and they also became idolatrous, because they were deceived by the vain and flattering words of the king and priests; for they did speak flattering things unto them.
- 8 And it came to pass that king Noah built many elegant and spacious buildings; and he ornamented them with fine work of wood, and of all manner of precious things, of gold, and of silver, and of iron, and of brass, and of ziff, and of copper;
- 9 And he also built him a spacious palace, and a throne in the midst thereof, all of which was of fine wood and was ornamented with gold and silver and with precious things.
- 10 And he also caused that his workmen should work all manner of fine work within the walls of the temple, of fine wood, and of copper, and of brass.
- 11 And the seats which were set apart for the high priests, which were above all the other seats, he did ornament with pure gold; and he caused a breastwork to be built before them, that they might rest their bodies and their arms upon while they should speak lying and vain words to his people.
- 12 And it came to pass that he built a tower near the temple; yea, a very high tower, even so high that he could stand upon the top thereof and overlook the land of Shilom, and also the land of Shemlon, which was

## מוֹשִׁיעַ יֵאָמֵר: כ

שְׁמִלּוֹן, אֲשֶׁר לְלִמְנִים, וְאֵף יָכוֹל הָיָה לְהִשְׁקִיף  
עַל כָּל הָאָרֶץ אֲשֶׁר סָבִיב.

possessed by the Lamanites; and he could even look over all the land round about.

וְהוּא צִוָּה לְבָנוֹת בָּתִּים רַבִּים בְּאֶרֶץ שִׁלּוֹם,  
וְאֵף לְבָנוֹת מִגְדָּל גָּדוֹל עַל גִּבְעָה מִצְפוֹן לְאֶרֶץ  
שִׁלּוֹם אֲשֶׁר הָיְתָה מִפְּלֹט לְבָנֵי נְפִי בְּעֵת  
בְּרַחֲם מִן הָאֲדָמָה; וְזֹאת עָשָׂה בְּעֶשֶׂר אֲשֶׁר  
קִבַּל מִמָּסִי עִמּוֹ.

13 And it came to pass that he caused many buildings to be built in the land Shilom; and he caused a great tower to be built on the hill north of the land Shilom, which had been a resort for the children of Nephi at the time they fled out of the land; and thus he did do with the riches which he obtained by the taxation of his people.

וְהוּא שָׁת אֶת לְבוֹ בְּעֶשֶׂר וּבָלָה אֶת יָמָיו בְּחַיֵּי  
פְּרִיצוֹת עִם נָשָׁיו וּפִילְגָּשָׁיו; וְאֵף כִּהְנִיּוּ בְּלוּ  
אֶת יְמֵיהֶם עִם זִוְנוֹת.

14 And it came to pass that he placed his heart upon his riches, and he spent his time in riotous living with his wives and his concubines; and so did also his priests spend their time with harlots.

וְהוּא נָטַע כְּרָמִים בְּאַזְוָרֵי הָאָרֶץ; וּבָנָה  
יָקָבִים וְעָשָׂה יַיִן לְמִכְבָּרִי; לָכֵן הָיָה סוֹבֵא יַיִן,  
וְכָךְ גַּם עִמּוֹ.

15 And it came to pass that he planted vineyards round about in the land; and he built wine-presses, and made wine in abundance; and therefore he became a wine-bibber, and also his people.

וְהַלְמָנִים הֵחֵלוּ לְבֹא בְּאֶרֶץ וּלְהִתְנַפֵּל עֲלֵיהֶם,  
עַל מְתֵי מִסְפָּר מֵהֶם, לְהָרֹגֵם בְּשָׂדֵיהֶם  
וּבְרִעוֹתָם אֶת צֹאנָם.

16 And it came to pass that the Lamanites began to come in upon his people, upon small numbers, and to slay them in their fields, and while they were tending their flocks.

וְהַמֶּלֶךְ נֹחַ שָׁלַח אֲנָשִׁי מִשְׁמֶר לִסָּב בְּאֶרֶץ  
לְהִגּוֹ מִפְּנֵיהֶם; אֲף יַעַן אֲשֶׁר לֹא שָׁלַח דָּיִם,  
הִתְנַפְּלוּ עֲלֵיהֶם הַלְמָנִים וְהָרְגוּם, וְנִהְגוּ רַבִּים  
מִצֹּאנָם מִן הָאָרֶץ; כִּךָּ הֵחֵלוּ הַלְמָנִים  
לְהִשְׁמִידֵם וּלְעֲשׂוֹת פְּעֻלוֹת אִיבָה בְּקִרְבָּם.

17 And king Noah sent guards round about the land to keep them off; but he did not send a sufficient number, and the Lamanites came upon them and killed them, and drove many of their flocks out of the land; thus the Lamanites began to destroy them, and to exercise their hatred upon them.

וְהַמֶּלֶךְ נֹחַ שָׁלַח אֶת חֵילוֹתָיו עֲלֵיהֶם, וְהַלְמָנִים  
נִסּוּגוּ אַחֲוֹר מִפְּנֵיהֶם וְהֵם הִרְחִקוּ לְזָמַן מָה;  
לָכֵן שָׁבוּ אֲנָשֵׁי נֹחַ שְׂמִחִים עַל שְׁלָלָם.

18 And it came to pass that king Noah sent his armies against them, and they were driven back, or they drove them back for a time; therefore, they returned rejoicing in their spoil.

וּמִפְּנֵי הַנִּצָּחוֹן הַגָּדוֹל הַזֶּה, הֵם הִתְנַשְּׂאוּ  
בְּגִאוֹת לִבָּם; וְהֵם הִתְפָּאְרוּ בְּגִבוּרָתָם, וְאָמְרוּ  
כִּי חֲמִשִּׁים מֵהֶם יָכוֹלִים לַעֲמֹד מוֹל אֶלְפֵי  
לְמָנִים; כֹּה הִתְפָּאְרוּ וְהִתְעַנְּגוּ עַל דָּם וְעַל  
שְׂפִיכַת דָּמֵי אֲחֵיהֶם, וְזֹאת מִפְּנֵי רָשָׁעַת  
מַלְכָם וְכֹהֲנֵיהֶם.

19 And now, because of this great victory they were lifted up in the pride of their hearts; they did boast in their own strength, saying that their fifty could stand against thousands of the Lamanites; and thus they did boast, and did delight in blood, and the shedding of the blood of their brethren, and this because of the wickedness of their king and priests.

וְהָיָה אִישׁ אֶחָד בָּהֶם, אַבִּינָדִי שְׁמוֹ; וְהוּא  
הִתְהַלֵּךְ בֵּינֵיהֶם, וְהֵחֵל לְנַבֵּא לֵאמֹר: כֹּה אָמַר  
יְהוָה, וְכֹה צִוִּי לֵאמֹר: לֵךְ וְאִמְרָתָ אֶל הָעָם  
הַזֶּה, כֹּה אָמַר יְהוָה: אוֹי לָעָם הַזֶּה, כִּי רָאִיתִי  
אֶת תּוֹעֲבוֹתֵיהֶם וְאֶת רָשָׁעֵתָם וְאֶת תּוֹנוֹתָם;  
אִם לֹא יִשׁוּבוּ מִחֲטָאָם, פֶּקוּד אֶפְקְדֵם בְּעֵמִי.

20 And it came to pass that there was a man among them whose name was Abinadi; and he went forth among them, and began to prophesy, saying: Behold, thus saith the Lord, and thus hath he commanded me, saying, Go forth, and say unto this people, thus saith the Lord—Wo be unto this people, for I have seen their abominations, and their wickedness, and their whoredoms; and except they repent I will visit them in mine anger.

## מוֹשִׁיעַ יֵאָכָא–יב:א

- וְהָיָה אִם לֹא יִשְׁוּבוּ מִחַטָּאתָם וְלֹא יִפְנוּ אֶל  
יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵיהֶם, נָתַן אֶתְנֶם בְּיַד אוֹיְבֵיהֶם.  
אָכֵן, וְהֵם יִשְׁעַבְדּוּ וְיִעֲנוּ תַּחַת יַד שׁוֹנְאֵיהֶם.
- וְיָדְעוּ כִּי אֲנִי יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵיהֶם, אֵל קַנָּא, פּוֹקֵד  
עֲוֹן עַמִּי.
- וְהָיָה אִם לֹא יִשְׁוּבוּ הָעָם הַזֶּה מִחַטָּאתָם, וְלֹא  
יִפְנוּ אֶל יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵיהֶם, הֵם יִשְׁתַּעַבְדּוּ; וְהָצֵל  
לֹא יֵצִילֵם אִישׁ, בְּלֹתִי אִם יְהוָה, אֵל שְׂדֵי.
- וְהָיָה כַּאֲשֶׁר יִצְעֲקוּ אֵלַי, לֹא אֶמְהַר לִשְׁמַע אֵל  
צַעֲקָתָם; הִנֵּחַ אֲנִי לְאוֹיְבֵיהֶם לְהַכּוֹתָם.
- וּבְלֹתִי אִם יִשְׁוּבוּ מִחַטָּא בִּשְׂךְ וּבֶאֱפָר, וְיִצְעֲקוּ  
צַעֲקָה גְדוֹלָה אֶל יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵיהֶם, לֹא אֶשְׁמַע  
אֶל תַּפְלוּתֵיהֶם וְלֹא אֶצִּילֵם מִצָּרוֹתֵיהֶם; כִּי  
אָמַר יְהוָה וְכִי צִוֵּנִי לְדַבֵּר.
- וְהָיָה כְּדַבֵּר אַבִּינָדִי אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה  
אֵלֵיהֶם, הֵם רָגְזוּ עָלָיו, וּבִקְשׁוּ אֶת נַפְשׁוֹ; אִךְ  
יְהוָה הִצִּילוֹ מִיָּדָם.
- וְכַשְׁמַע הַמֶּלֶךְ נֹחַ אֶת דְּבָרֵי אַבִּינָדִי אֶל הָעָם,  
רָגַז אִף הוּא; וְאָמַר: מִי הוּא אַבִּינָדִי, אֲשֶׁר  
יִשְׁפֹּט אוֹתִי וְאֶת עַמִּי, וּמִי הוּא יְהוָה אֲשֶׁר  
יָבִיא עַל עַמִּי צָרָה גְדוֹלָה אֲשֶׁר כְּזֹאת?
- אֲנִי מִצֻּוְכֶם לְהָבִיא אֶת אַבִּינָדִי הֵנָּה וְאֶהְרָגֶהוּ,  
כִּי אָמַר אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה לְעוֹרֵר אֶת עַמִּי  
לְכַעַס אִישׁ עַל אַחֲיוֹ וּלְחַרְחֹר רִיב בְּקִרְבָּם;  
לָכֵן אֶהְרָגֶהוּ.
- וַיַּעַן אֲשֶׁר עָוְרוּ עֵינֵי הָעָם, הֵם הִקְשׁוּ אֶת לְבָם  
עַל דְּבָרֵי אַבִּינָדִי, וּבִקְשׁוּ לְתַפְשׁוֹ מִן הַיּוֹם  
הַהוּא וְהִלָּאָה. וְהַמֶּלֶךְ נֹחַ הִכְבִּיד אֶת לְבֹו עַל  
דְּבַר יְהוָה וְלֹא נָחַם מִרַעְתּוֹ.
- 21 And except they repent and turn to the Lord their God, behold, I will deliver them into the hands of their enemies; yea, and they shall be brought into bondage; and they shall be afflicted by the hand of their enemies.
- 22 And it shall come to pass that they shall know that I am the Lord their God, and am a jealous God, visiting the iniquities of my people.
- 23 And it shall come to pass that except this people repent and turn unto the Lord their God, they shall be brought into bondage; and none shall deliver them, except it be the Lord the Almighty God.
- 24 Yea, and it shall come to pass that when they shall cry unto me I will be slow to hear their cries; yea, and I will suffer them that they be smitten by their enemies.
- 25 And except they repent in sackcloth and ashes, and cry mightily to the Lord their God, I will not hear their prayers, neither will I deliver them out of their afflictions; and thus saith the Lord, and thus hath he commanded me.
- 26 Now it came to pass that when Abinadi had spoken these words unto them they were wroth with him, and sought to take away his life; but the Lord delivered him out of their hands.
- 27 Now when king Noah had heard of the words which Abinadi had spoken unto the people, he was also wroth; and he said: Who is Abinadi, that I and my people should be judged of him, or who is the Lord, that shall bring upon my people such great affliction?
- 28 I command you to bring Abinadi hither, that I may slay him, for he has said these things that he might stir up my people to anger one with another, and to raise contentions among my people; therefore I will slay him.
- 29 Now the eyes of the people were blinded; therefore they hardened their hearts against the words of Abinadi, and they sought from that time forward to take him. And king Noah hardened his heart against the word of the Lord, and he did not repent of his evil doings.

## יב

## 12

- וְהָיָה אַחֵר שְׁנָתִים יָמִים, בָּא אֵלֵיהֶם אַבִּינָדִי  
וְהוּא מְחַפֵּשׁ, וְהֵם לֹא הִכִּירוּהוּ. וְהוּא הִחֵל  
לְהִנְבֵּא בְּקִרְבָּם לֵאמֹר: כֹּה צִוֵּנִי יְהוָה לֵאמֹר:  
אַבִּינָדִי, לֵךְ נָא וְהִנְבֵּא אֶל עַמִּי זֶה, כִּי הִכְבִּידוּ
- 1 And it came to pass that after the space of two years that Abinadi came among them in disguise, that they knew him not, and began to prophesy among them, saying: Thus has the Lord commanded me, saying—Abinadi, go and prophesy unto this my people, for they have

## מושיע יב:ב-יא

- את לבם על דברי, ולא שבו מרעם; לכן  
אפקדם בזעמי, אכן, פקוד אפקדם בחמת  
זעמי על פשעיהם ותועבותיהם.
- אכן, הוי לדור הזה! ואמר יהוה אלי: נטה ידך  
והנבא לאמר: כה אמר יהוה, יען אשר פשע  
הדור הזה, הנה ימים באים והם ישתעבדו  
ויכּו על הלחי; אכן, ידחפּוּם בני האדם  
וימיתום; ודית השמים והכלבים וחית  
השדה יאכלו את בשרם.
- וחיי המלך נח ישקלו במחיר בגד אשר  
בלהט כבשן; והוא ידע כי אני יהוה.
- ואני אכה את עמי זה ביסורים קשים,  
רעב ודבר; עד אשר ייללו כל היום.
- ואני אכביד את גבם במשאות;  
והם יובלו כחמור אלם.
- ואני אשלח ברד בתוכם, ויהלם אותם;  
ותכּם רוח קדים; ותחריקם יגפו את ארצם  
ויאכלו את דגנם;
- ויכּם דבר כבד. כל זאת אעשה מפני  
פשעיהם ותועבותיהם.
- והיה אם לא ישוּבו מחטאם, השמד  
אשמידם כליל מעל פני האדמה; ואולם הם  
יותירו אחריהם כתבי זכרון, ואני אשמרם  
לעמים אחרים אשר יירשו את הארץ; אכן,  
אף זאת אעשה, למען אגלה את תועבות  
העם הזה לעמים אחרים. ועוד רבות נבא  
אבינדי על העם הזה.
- ורגזו עליו האנשים; והם לקחוהו והביאוהו  
כבול לפני המלך, ואמרו אליו: הנה, הבאנו  
לפניך איש אשר מנבא רע על עמך ואומר כי  
אלהים ישמידם.
- ואף הוא מנבא רע על חייך, ואמר כי חייך  
יהיו כבגד באש כבשן.
- ועוד אמר כי כקנה תהיה, כקנה יבש בשדה  
אשר חית השדה תדרסנו ותחת רגלים ירמס.
- 2 Yea, wo be unto this generation! And the Lord said unto me: Stretch forth thy hand and prophesy saying: Thus saith the Lord, it shall come to pass that this generation, because of their iniquities, shall be brought into bondage, and shall be smitten on the cheek; yea, and shall be driven by men, and shall be slain; and the vultures of the air, and the dogs, yea, and the wild beasts, shall devour their flesh.
- 3 And it shall come to pass that the life of king Noah shall be valued even as a garment in a hot furnace; for he shall know that I am the Lord.
- 4 And it shall come to pass that I will smite this my people with sore afflictions, yea, with famine and with pestilence; and I will cause that they shall howl all the day long.
- 5 Yea, and I will cause that they shall have burdens lashed upon their backs; and they shall be driven before like a dumb ass.
- 6 And it shall come to pass that I will send forth hail among them, and it shall smite them; and they shall also be smitten with the east wind; and insects shall pester their land also, and devour their grain.
- 7 And they shall be smitten with a great pestilence—and all this will I do because of their iniquities and abominations.
- 8 And it shall come to pass that except they repent I will utterly destroy them from off the face of the earth; yet they shall leave a record behind them, and I will preserve them for other nations which shall possess the land; yea, even this will I do that I may discover the abominations of this people to other nations. And many things did Abinadi prophesy against this people.
- 9 And it came to pass that they were angry with him; and they took him and carried him bound before the king, and said unto the king: Behold, we have brought a man before thee who has prophesied evil concerning thy people, and saith that God will destroy them.
- 10 And he also prophesieth evil concerning thy life, and saith that thy life shall be as a garment in a furnace of fire.
- 11 And again, he saith that thou shalt be as a stalk, even as a dry stalk of the field, which is run over by the beasts and trodden under foot.



- 12 And again, he saith thou shalt be as the blossoms of a thistle, which, when it is fully ripe, if the wind bloweth, it is driven forth upon the face of the land. And he pretendeth the Lord hath spoken it. And he saith all this shall come upon thee except thou repent, and this because of thine iniquities.
- 13 And now, O king, what great evil hast thou done, or what great sins have thy people committed, that we should be condemned of God or judged of this man?
- 14 And now, O king, behold, we are guiltless, and thou, O king, hast not sinned; therefore, this man has lied concerning you, and he has prophesied in vain.
- 15 And behold, we are strong, we shall not come into bondage, or be taken captive by our enemies; yea, and thou hast prospered in the land, and thou shalt also prosper.
- 16 Behold, here is the man, we deliver him into thy hands; thou mayest do with him as seemeth thee good.
- 17 And it came to pass that king Noah caused that Abinadi should be cast into prison; and he commanded that the priests should gather themselves together that he might hold a council with them what he should do with him.
- 18 And it came to pass that they said unto the king: Bring him hither that we may question him; and the king commanded that he should be brought before them.
- 19 And they began to question him, that they might cross him, that thereby they might have wherewith to accuse him; but he answered them boldly, and withstood all their questions, yea, to their astonishment; for he did withstand them in all their questions, and did confound them in all their words.
- 20 And it came to pass that one of them said unto him: What meaneth the words which are written, and which have been taught by our fathers, saying:
- 21 How beautiful upon the mountains are the feet of him that bringeth good tidings; that publisheth peace; that bringeth good tidings of good; that publisheth salvation; that saith unto Zion, Thy God reigneth;
- 22 Thy watchmen shall lift up the voice; with the voice together shall they sing; for they shall see eye to eye when the Lord shall bring again Zion;
- וְעוֹד אָמַר כִּי תִהְיֶה כְּפֶרֶחַ הַדִּרְדָּר אֲשֶׁר בְּהִבְשִׁילוֹ, בְּנִשְׁבֹּת הַרוּחַ, הוּא נִשָּׂא לְמִרְחָקִים, עַל פְּנֵי הָאָרֶץ. וְהוּא מִתְרַאֶה בְּשׂוֹא בְּאָמְרוֹ כִּי דָבָר יִהְיֶה בְּפִיו. וְהוּא אֹמֵר כִּי אִם לֹא תִנָּחֵם מִחַטָּא, יָבוֹאוּ עָלֶיךָ כָּל אֱלֹהִים מִפְּנֵי עֲוֹנוֹתֶיךָ.
- וְהֵנָּה, אֲדוֹנֵנוּ הַמֶּלֶךְ, מֶה הָרַעַה הַגְּדוֹלָה אֲשֶׁר עָשִׂיתָ, וּמֶה הַחַטָּאִים הַגְּדוֹלִים אֲשֶׁר חָטָא עִמָּךְ, כִּי יִרְשָׁעֵנוּ אֱלֹהִים וְיִשְׁפָּטֵנוּ הָאִישׁ הַזֶּה?
- הֵנָּה, אֲדוֹנֵנוּ הַמֶּלֶךְ, אֵין בָּנוּ אָשָׁם, וְאַתָּה, הַמֶּלֶךְ, לֹא חָטָאתָ; לָכֵן שָׁקֵר טָפַל הָאִישׁ עָלֶיךָ, וְשׂוֹא נָבֵא.
- הוּא חֲזָקִים אֲנַחְנוּ, לֹא נִכְבָּשׁ לְעַבְדִּים וְלֹא נִלְוֶה בְּשָׂבִי אוֹיְבֵינוּ; אַכֵּן, עָשִׂיתָ חֵיל בְּאָרֶץ וְהוֹסֵף תוֹסִיף לְהַצְלִיחַ.
- הֵנָּה הָאִישׁ, מוֹסְרִים אֲנַחְנוּ אוֹתוֹ לְיָדֶיךָ; וְתַעֲשֶׂה בּוֹ כְּטוֹב בְּעֵינֶיךָ.
- וְהַמֶּלֶךְ נָח צָוָה לְהַשְׁלִיךְ אֶת אַבִּינָדִי לְבֵית הַסֵּהֶר, וְלַכֹּהֲנִים קָרָא לְמוֹעֶצָה לְהוֹעֵץ עִמָּם מֶה יַעֲשֶׂה אֹתוֹ.
- וְהֵם אָמְרוּ אֶל הַמֶּלֶךְ: הַבִּיאוּהוּ אֵלֵינוּ וְנִחְקֹר אוֹתוֹ; וְהַמֶּלֶךְ צָוָה לְהַבְיִאוֹ לִפְנֵיהֶם.
- וְהֵם הֵחִלוּ לְחַקֵּר אוֹתוֹ שְׁתֵּי וְעָרֵב, לְמַעַן יִמְצְאוּ דָבָר לְהַאֲשִׁימוֹ; אוּלָם הוּא הִשְׁיִבָם בְּאִמָּץ לֵב וְעָמַד בְּכָל שְׁאֵלוֹתֵיהֶם לְמַרְבֵּה פְּלִיאָתָם; כִּי עָמַד עֲלֵיהֶם בְּכָל שְׁאֵלוֹתֵיהֶם וְהִכְלִימָם בְּכָל דְּבָרֵיהֶם.
- וְאָמַר אֶלָּו אֶחָד מֵהֶם: מֶה פִּנְתָּ הַדְּבָרִים הַכְּתוּבִים אֲשֶׁר לְמֹדוֹ אֲבוֹתֵינוּ לֵאמֹר:
- מֶה נָּאוּ עַל הַהָרִים רַגְלֵי מְבַשֵּׁר; מִשְׁמִיעַ שְׁלוֹם מְבַשֵּׁר טוֹב; מִשְׁמִיעַ יְשׁוּעָה; אֹמֵר לְצִיּוֹן: מֶלֶךְ אֱלֹהֶיךָ.
- קוֹל צִפְנִיךָ נִשְׂאָא קוֹל, יַחְדּוֹ יִרְנְנוּ; כִּי עֵין בְּעֵין יִרְאוּ בְּשׁוֹב יְהוָה צִיּוֹן. פְּצִחוּ רִנְנוּ יַחְדּוֹ,



- 23 Break forth into joy; sing together ye waste places of Jerusalem; for the Lord hath comforted his people, he hath redeemed Jerusalem;  
 חֲרִבּוֹת יְרוּשָׁלַם: כִּי נָחַם יְהוָה עַמּוֹ, גָּאֹל יְרוּשָׁלַם.
- 24 The Lord hath made bare his holy arm in the eyes of all the nations, and all the ends of the earth shall see the salvation of our God?  
 חֲשָׁף יְהוָה אֶת זְרוֹעַ קִדְשׁוֹ לְעֵינֵי כָּל הַגּוֹיִם, וְרָאוּ כָּל אֶפְסֵי אֶרֶץ אֶת יְשׁוּעַת אֱלֹהֵינוּ.
- 25 And now Abinadi said unto them: Are you priests, and pretend to teach this people, and to understand the spirit of prophesying, and yet desire to know of me what these things mean?  
 וְאָמַר אַבִּינָדִי אֲלֵיהֶם: הֲאַתֶּם כֹּהֲנִים, הַמְתַּרְאִים לְלַמֵּד אֶת הָעָם הַזֶּה וּלְהָבִין אֶת רוּחַ הַנְּבוּאָה, וְאוֹלָם חֲפָצִים אֲתֶם לָדַעַת מִמֶּנִּי מָה פִּנְתַּת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה?
- 26 I say unto you, wo be unto you for perverting the ways of the Lord! For if ye understand these things ye have not taught them; therefore, ye have perverted the ways of the Lord.  
 אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם: הוּא לָכֶם כִּי תַעֲוֹתוּ דִּרְכֵי יְהוָה! כִּי אֵלּוּ הַבִּינוּתֶם אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, לֹא לַמְדַּתֶּם אוֹתָם; לָכֵן עֲוִיתֶם אֶת דִּרְכֵי יְהוָה.
- 27 Ye have not applied your hearts to understanding; therefore, ye have not been wise. Therefore, what teach ye this people?  
 לֹא שִׁתֶּם לְבַבְכֶּם לְהָבִין; עַל כֵּן לֹא חֲכַמְתֶּם. וּמָה תִּלְמְדוּ אֶת הָעָם הַזֶּה?
- 28 And they said: We teach the law of Moses.  
 וְהֵם אָמְרוּ: אֶת תּוֹרַת מֹשֶׁה אֲנַחְנוּ מְלַמְּדִים.
- 29 And again he said unto them: If ye teach the law of Moses why do ye not keep it? Why do ye set your hearts upon riches? Why do ye commit whoredoms and spend your strength with harlots, yea, and cause this people to commit sin, that the Lord has cause to send me to prophesy against this people, yea, even a great evil against this people?  
 וְהוּא אָמַר אֲלֵיהֶם שֵׁנִית: אִם אֶת תּוֹרַת מֹשֶׁה אֲתֶם מְלַמְּדִים, מַדּוּעַ אֵינְכֶם שׁוֹמְרִים לַעֲשׂוֹתָהּ? מַדּוּעַ תַּשְׁתִּיתוּ לְבַבְכֶּם לְעֵשֶׂר? מַדּוּעַ תִּזְנֶנּוּ וּתְכַלּוּ אֶת כֹּחְכֶם עִם זֹנוֹת, וּתַחֲטִיאוּ אֶת הָעָם הַזֶּה, עַד כִּי שְׁלַחְנִי יְהוָה לְהַנְבִּיאַ עֲלֵיהֶם, לְהַגִּיד לָהֶם כִּי רָעָה גְדוֹלָה בָּאָה עֲלֵיהֶם.
- 30 Know ye not that I speak the truth? Yea, ye know that I speak the truth; and you ought to tremble before God.  
 הֲאֵינְכֶם יוֹדְעִים כִּי אֲמַת אֲנִי מִגִּיד? אָכֵן, הֵנִיכֶם יוֹדְעִים כִּי אֲמַת בְּפִי, וְעַלְיֶיכֶם לִחְרֹד מִלִּפְנֵי אֱלֹהִים.
- 31 And it shall come to pass that ye shall be smitten for your iniquities, for ye have said that ye teach the law of Moses. And what know ye concerning the law of Moses? Doth salvation come by the law of Moses? What say ye?  
 וּבּוֹא יָבוֹא הַיּוֹם אֲשֶׁר תִּכּוּ עַל פְּשָׁעֵיכֶם, יַעַן אֲשֶׁר אָמַרְתֶּם כִּי אֶת תּוֹרַת מֹשֶׁה תִּלְמְדוּ. וּמָה יוֹדְעִים אֲתֶם עַל תּוֹרַת מֹשֶׁה? הַמְתּוֹרַת מֹשֶׁה תִּצָּא יְשׁוּעָה? מָה תֹּאמְרוּ?
- 32 And they answered and said that salvation did come by the law of Moses.  
 וְהֵם עָנוּ וְאָמְרוּ, כִּי הַיְשׁוּעָה אָכֵן תִּצָּא מִתּוֹרַת מֹשֶׁה.
- 33 But now Abinadi said unto them: I know if ye keep the commandments of God ye shall be saved; yea, if ye keep the commandments which the Lord delivered unto Moses in the mount of Sinai, saying:  
 וְאַבִּינָדִי אָמַר אֲלֵיהֶם: יוֹדַע אֲנִי כִּי אִם תִּשְׁמְרוּ אֶת מִצְוֹת אֱלֹהִים, אָכֵן תִּשְׁשָׁעוּ; אָכֵן, אִם תִּשְׁמְרוּ אֶת הַמִּצְוֹת אֲשֶׁר נָתַן יְהוָה לְמֹשֶׁה בְּהַר סִינַי לֵאמֹר:
- 34 I am the Lord thy God, who hath brought thee out of the land of Egypt, out of the house of bondage.  
 אֲנִיכִי יְהוָה אֱלֹהֶיךָ, אֲשֶׁר הוֹצֵאתִיךָ מֵאֶרֶץ מִצְרַיִם מִבֵּית עֲבָדִים:

- 35 Thou shalt have no other God before me. לא יהיה לך אלהים אחרים על פני.
- 36 Thou shalt not make unto thee any graven image, or any likeness of any thing in heaven above, or things which are in the earth beneath. לא תעשה לך פסל וכל תמונה, אשר בשמים ממעל, ואשר בארץ מתחת.
- 37 Now Abinadi said unto them, Have ye done all this? I say unto you, Nay, ye have not. And have ye taught this people that they should do all these things? I say unto you, Nay, ye have not. ואמר אליהם אבינדי: העשיתם כל אלה? אני אומר לכם: לא, לא עשיתם כן. והלמדתם את העם הזה כי עליהם לעשות כל אלה? אני אומר לכם: לא, לא עשיתם כן.

## יג

## 13

- 1 And now when the king had heard these words, he said unto his priests: Away with this fellow, and slay him; for what have we to do with him, for he is mad. וכשמע המלך את הדברים האלה, הוא אמר אל כהניו: הוציאו את הפוחז הזה והרגוהו; כי מה לנו לעשות עמו, הן משגע הוא.
- 2 And they stood forth and attempted to lay their hands on him; but he withstood them, and said unto them: והם קמו ובקשו לשלח ידם אליו; אך הוא עמד כנגדם ואמר אליהם:
- 3 Touch me not, for God shall smite you if ye lay your hands upon me, for I have not delivered the message which the Lord sent me to deliver; neither have I told you that which ye requested that I should tell; therefore, God will not suffer that I shall be destroyed at this time. אל תגעו בי, כי אלהים יככם אם תשלחו ידכם אלי, כי לא פליתי להגיד את ההודעה אשר שלחני יהוה למסרה. אך לא אמרתי לכם את אשר בקשתם ממני להגידו; לכן, לא יניח אלהים כי אבד כעת.
- 4 But I must fulfil the commandments wherewith God has commanded me; and because I have told you the truth ye are angry with me. And again, because I have spoken the word of God ye have judged me that I am mad. כי שומה עלי לקיים את המצוות אשר צוני אלהים; ויען אשר אמת דברתי, הנכם רוגזים עלי. ויען אשר דברתי את דבר אלהים, שפטתם אותי כמשגע.
- 5 Now it came to pass after Abinadi had spoken these words that the people of king Noah durst not lay their hands on him, for the Spirit of the Lord was upon him; and his face shone with exceeding luster, even as Moses' did while in the mount of Sinai, while speaking with the Lord. וכדבר אבינדי את הדברים האלה, לא העזו אנשי המלך נח לשלח ידם אליו, כי נחה עליו רוח יהוה; ופניו האירו בזיו זוהר מאד, כפני משה בהר סיני, בדברו עם יהוה.
- 6 And he spake with power and authority from God; and he continued his words, saying: והוא דבר בעז ובתקף אשר מאלהים, והוסיף דבר לאמר:
- 7 Ye see that ye have not power to slay me, therefore I finish my message. Yea, and I perceive that it cuts you to your hearts because I tell you the truth concerning your iniquities. הן ראייתם כי אין בכם כח להרגני, לכן אכלה את הודעתי. הנני רואה כי נדקר לבכם כי אומר אני אמת על עוונותיכם.
- 8 Yea, and my words fill you with wonder and amazement, and with anger. אכן, דברי ממלאים אתכם תמיהה ופליאה, ואף רגז.

## מושיע יג:ט-כב

- 9 But I finish my message; and then it matters not whither I go, if it so be that I am saved.
- וְהִנְנִי מְכַלֶּה אֶת הַדְּעָתִי: וְאַחֵר כֵּן, אֵין חֲשִׁיבוֹת לְאֵן אֵלַי, אִם אֶף תִּהְיֶה לִי הַיְשׁוּעָה.
- 10 But this much I tell you, what you do with me, after this, shall be as a type and a shadow of things which are to come.
- וְאִלֵּים זֹאת אֲגִידְכֶם: אֶת אֲשֶׁר תַּעֲשׂוּ בִי, אַחֲרֵי כֵן, כְּתִבְנִית יִהְיֶה וְכֶצֶל הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר יָבוֹאוּ.
- 11 And now I read unto you the remainder of the commandments of God, for I perceive that they are not written in your hearts; I perceive that ye have studied and taught iniquity the most part of your lives.
- וְעַתָּה, אֶקְרָא לְפָנֵיכֶם אֶת שְׁאָר מִצְוֹת אֱלֹהִים, כִּי נֹכַחְתִּי אֲשֶׁר אֵין כְּתוּבוֹת עַל לִבְכֶם; נֹכַחְתִּי כִּי לְמַדְתֶּם פֶּשַׁע וְכֵן לְמַדְתֶּם אוֹתוֹ מִרְבִּית יְמֵי חַיֵּיכֶם.
- 12 And now, ye remember that I said unto you: Thou shalt not make unto thee any graven image, or any likeness of things which are in heaven above, or which are in the earth beneath, or which are in the water under the earth.
- הֵן תִּזְכְּרוּ כִּי אָמַרְתִּי לָכֶם: לֹא תַעֲשֶׂה לָּךְ פֶּסֶל וְכָל תְּמוּנָה, אֲשֶׁר בְּשָׁמַיִם מִמַּעַל, וְאֲשֶׁר בְּאָרֶץ מִתַּחַת, וְאֲשֶׁר בַּמַּיִם מִתַּחַת לָאָרֶץ.
- 13 And again: Thou shalt not bow down thyself unto them, nor serve them; for I the Lord thy God am a jealous God, visiting the iniquities of the fathers upon the children, unto the third and fourth generations of them that hate me;
- וְעוֹד: לֹא תִשְׁתַּחֲוֶה לָהֶם, וְלֹא תַעֲבֹדֵם: כִּי אֲנִכִּי יְהוָה אֱלֹהֶיךָ, אֵל קַנָּא פֶקֶד עוֹן אֲבֹת עַל בָּנִים, עַל שְׁלִישִׁים וְעַל רְבָעִים, לְשֹׂנְאֵי;
- 14 And showing mercy unto thousands of them that love me and keep my commandments.
- וְעֹשֶׂה חֶסֶד לְאַלְפִים, לְאַהֲבֵי וּלְשֹׁמְרֵי מִצְוֹתַי.
- 15 Thou shalt not take the name of the Lord thy God in vain; for the Lord will not hold him guiltless that taketh his name in vain.
- לֹא תִשָּׂא אֶת שֵׁם יְהוָה אֱלֹהֶיךָ לְשׁוֹא; כִּי לֹא יִנָּקֶה יְהוָה אֶת אֲשֶׁר יִשָּׂא אֶת שְׁמוֹ לְשׁוֹא.
- 16 Remember the sabbath day, to keep it holy.
- זְכוֹר אֶת יוֹם הַשַּׁבָּת לְקֹדְשׁוֹ.
- 17 Six days shalt thou labor, and do all thy work;
- שֵׁשֶׁת יָמִים תַּעֲבֹד, וְעָשִׂיתָ כָּל מְלָאכָתְךָ;
- 18 But the seventh day, the sabbath of the Lord thy God, thou shalt not do any work, thou, nor thy son, nor thy daughter, thy man-servant, nor thy maid-servant, nor thy cattle, nor thy stranger that is within thy gates;
- וְיוֹם הַשְּׁבִיעִי, שַׁבָּת לַיהוָה אֱלֹהֶיךָ; לֹא תַעֲשֶׂה כָּל מְלָאכָה, אַתָּה וּבִנְךָ וּבִתְךָ, עַבְדְּךָ וַאֲמָתְךָ וּבְהֶמְתְּךָ וְגֵרְךָ אֲשֶׁר בְּשַׁעְרֶיךָ.
- 19 For in six days the Lord made heaven and earth, and the sea, and all that in them is; wherefore the Lord blessed the sabbath day, and hallowed it.
- כִּי שֵׁשֶׁת יָמִים עָשָׂה יְהוָה אֶת הַשָּׁמַיִם וְאֶת הָאָרֶץ, אֶת הַיָּם וְאֶת כָּל אֲשֶׁר בָּם, וַיְבָרֶךְ בְּיוֹם הַשְּׁבִיעִי; עַל כֵּן, בָּרַךְ יְהוָה אֶת יוֹם הַשַּׁבָּת וַיְקַדְּשֶׁהוּ.
- 20 Honor thy father and thy mother, that thy days may be long upon the land which the Lord thy God giveth thee.
- כְּבֹד אֶת אָבִיךָ וְאֶת אִמְךָ, לְמַעַן יָאָרְכוּ יָמֶיךָ עַל הָאֲדָמָה אֲשֶׁר יְהוָה אֱלֹהֶיךָ נָתַן לָּךְ.
- 21 Thou shalt not kill.
- לֹא תִרְצַח.
- 22 Thou shalt not commit adultery. Thou shalt not steal.
- לֹא תִנָּאֵף. לֹא תִגְנוֹב.

- 23 Thou shalt not bear false witness against thy neighbor.  
לא תענה ברעך עד שקר.
- 24 Thou shalt not covet thy neighbor's house, thou shalt not covet thy neighbor's wife, nor his man-servant, nor his maid-servant, nor his ox, nor his ass, nor anything that is thy neighbor's.  
לא תחמד בית רעך; לא תחמד אשת רעך וְעַבְדוֹ וְאִמָּתוֹ וְשׁוֹרוֹ וְחֲמֹרוֹ, וְכָל אֲשֶׁר לְרֵעֲךָ.
- 25 And it came to pass that after Abinadi had made an end of these sayings that he said unto them: Have ye taught this people that they should observe to do all these things for to keep these commandments?  
וּכְכָלוֹת אַבְינָדִי לְהַגִּיד אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, הוּא אָמַר אֲלֵיהֶם: הֲלִמְדַּתֶּם אֶת הָעָם הַזֶּה לְקַיֵּם אֶת כָּל הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה בְּעֵבֹר יִשְׁמְרוּ אֶת הַמִּצְוֹת הָאֵלֶּה?
- 26 I say unto you, Nay; for if ye had, the Lord would not have caused me to come forth and to prophesy evil concerning this people.  
אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם: לֹא; כִּי אִלּוּ עָשִׂיתֶם כֵּן, אֲנִי לֹא שָׁלַחְנִי יְהוָה לְבֹא וּלְהִתְנַבֵּא רָעָה עַל הָעָם הַזֶּה.
- 27 And now ye have said that salvation cometh by the law of Moses. I say unto you that it is expedient that ye should keep the law of Moses as yet; but I say unto you, that the time shall come when it shall no more be expedient to keep the law of Moses.  
הִנֵּה אַמַּרְתֶּם כִּי הַיְשׁוּעָה תֵּצֵא מִתּוֹרַת מֹשֶׁה. וְאֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם כִּי שְׁמִירַת תּוֹרַת מֹשֶׁה מִתְּאִימָה לָכֶם כְּעַתָּה; אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם כִּי בּוֹא יָבֹא הַיּוֹם וּשְׁמִירַת תּוֹרַת מֹשֶׁה לֹא תִּתְּאִים עוֹד.
- 28 And moreover, I say unto you, that salvation doth not come by the law alone; and were it not for the atonement, which God himself shall make for the sins and iniquities of his people, that they must unavoidably perish, notwithstanding the law of Moses.  
וְהִנֵּה אָמַר לָכֶם: אֵין הַיְשׁוּעָה יוֹצֵאת מִן הַתּוֹרָה בְּלֻבָּד; וְאִלְמָלָא הַכִּפּוּרָה, אֲשֶׁר אֱלֹהִים עֲצָמוּ יַעֲשֶׂה לְחַטָּאֵי עַמּוֹ וּלְעִוְוֹנוֹתֵיהֶם, אָבוֹד יֵאבְדוּ, עַל אֵף תּוֹרַת מֹשֶׁה.
- 29 And now I say unto you that it was expedient that there should be a law given to the children of Israel, yea, even a very strict law; for they were a stiffnecked people, quick to do iniquity, and slow to remember the Lord their God;  
הֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, כִּי הָיָה זֶה מוֹעִיל לָתֵת תּוֹרָה לְבְנֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל, אַכֵּן, לָתֵת לָהֶם תּוֹרָה חֲמֹרָה מְאֹד, כִּי הָיוּ עִם קִשָּׁה עֶרֶךְ, מְהִירִים לַעֲוֹל וְאִטְיִים לִזְכֹּר אֶת יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵיהֶם.
- 30 Therefore there was a law given them, yea, a law of performances and of ordinances, a law which they were to observe strictly from day to day, to keep them in remembrance of God and their duty towards him.  
עַל כֵּן נִתְּנָה לָהֶם תּוֹרָה, תּוֹרַת הַלְכוֹת וּמִשְׁפָּטִים, תּוֹרָה אֲשֶׁר הֶצְטִווּ לְקַיֵּם בְּמִפְרָשׁ, יוֹסִיּוֹם, לְשִׁמְרָם לִזְכֹּר אֶת אֱלֹהִים וְחֻבָּתָם כָּלִפּוֹ.
- 31 But behold, I say unto you, that all these things were types of things to come.  
וְאוֹלָם, אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, כִּי כָּל הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה הָיוּ תִּבְנִית הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר יָבֹאוּ.
- 32 And now, did they understand the law? I say unto you, Nay, they did not all understand the law; and this because of the hardness of their hearts; for they understood not that there could not any man be saved except it were through the redemption of God.  
וְהִנֵּה, הֲהִבִּינוּ אֶת הַתּוֹרָה? אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם: לֹא. לֹא כָּלֶם הִבִּינוּ אֶת הַתּוֹרָה; וְזֹאת מִפְּנֵי קִשְׁי לָבָם כִּי הֵם לֹא הִבִּינוּ כִּי לֹא יוּכַל אִף אָדָם אֶחָד לְהוֹשִׁיעַ בְּלִתִּי אִם עַל יְדֵי גְאֻלַּת אֱלֹהִים.
- 33 For behold, did not Moses prophesy unto them concerning the coming of the Messiah, and that God should redeem his people? Yea, and even  
כִּי הֲלֹא נִבֵּא לָהֶם מֹשֶׁה עַל בּוֹא הַמָּשִׁיחַ, וְעַל כִּי אֱלֹהִים יִגְאֹל אֶת עַמּוֹ? אַכֵּן, אִף כָּל

הַנְּבִיאִים אֲשֶׁר נִבְּאוּ מֵאֶז ראשית העולם,  
הֲאֵם לֹא דִבְּרוּ, פְּחוּת אוֹ יוֹתֵר, עַל אוֹדוֹת  
הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה?

all the prophets who have prophesied ever since the world began—  
have they not spoken more or less concerning these things?

הֲאֵם לֹא אָמְרוּ כִּי אֱלֹהִים עֲצֻמוֹ יֵרֵד בְּקֶרֶב  
בְּנֵי הָאָדָם, וְיִלְבֹּשׁ צוּרַת אָדָם, וְיֵלֶךְ בִּכְחַ אֲדִיר  
עַל פְּנֵי הָאָרֶץ?

34 Have they not said that God himself should come down among the  
children of men, and take upon him the form of man, and go forth in  
mighty power upon the face of the earth?

הֲאֵם גַּם לֹא אָמְרוּ כִּי יָבִיא אֶת תְּחִיַּת הַמֵּתִים  
וְכִי הוּא עֲצֻמוֹ יִנְגָּשׁ וְיַעֲנֶה?

35 Yea, and have they not said also that he should bring to pass the  
resurrection of the dead, and that he, himself, should be oppressed  
and afflicted?

## יד

## 14

אָכֵן, הֲאֵם לֹא אָמַר יִשְׁעִיָּהוּ: מִי הָאָמִין  
לְשִׁמְעָתָנוּ, וְזָרַע יִהְיֶה עַל מִי נִגְלָתָה?

1 Yea, even doth not Isaiah say: Who hath believed our report, and to  
whom is the arm of the Lord revealed?

וַיַּעַל כִּיּוֹנֵק לִפְנֵי, וְכַשְׂרֵשׁ מֵאֶרֶץ צִיָּה  
לֹא תֵאָר לוֹ וְלֹא הָדָר; וְנִרְאָהוּ וְלֹא  
מִרְאָה וְנִחְמְדָהוּ.

2 For he shall grow up before him as a tender plant, and as a root out of  
dry ground; he hath no form nor comeliness; and when we shall see  
him there is no beauty that we should desire him.

נִבְזָה וְחָדַל אִישִׁים; אִישׁ מְכַאֲבוֹת וַיְדוּעַ חֲלִי,  
וְכַמְסָתָר פָּנִים מִמֶּנּוּ; נִבְזָה וְלֹא חֲשַׁבְנָהוּ.

3 He is despised and rejected of men; a man of sorrows, and acquainted  
with grief; and we hid as it were our faces from him; he was despised,  
and we esteemed him not.

אָכֵן חָלִינוּ הוּא נֶשָׂא, וּמְכַאֲבֵינוּ סָבָלָם;  
וְאֶנְחָנוּ חֲשַׁבְנָהוּ נִגּוּעַ מִפְּנֵי אֱלֹהִים וּמַעֲנָה.

4 Surely he has borne our griefs, and carried our sorrows; yet we did  
esteem him stricken, smitten of God, and afflicted.

וְהוּא מַחְלָל מִפְּשָׁעֵנוּ, מִדְּכָא מַעֲוֹנוֹתֵינוּ; מוֹסֵר  
שְׁלוֹמֵנוּ עָלָיו, וּבְחֻבְרָתוֹ נִרְפָּא לָנוּ.

5 But he was wounded for our transgressions, he was bruised for our  
iniquities; the chastisement of our peace was upon him; and with his  
stripes we are healed.

כָּלֵנוּ כְּצֹאן תָּעִינוּ, אִישׁ לְדֶרֶךְ פָּנֵינוּ; וַיְהִי  
הַפְּגִיעַ בּוֹ אֶת עֲוֹן כָּלֵנוּ.

6 All we, like sheep, have gone astray; we have turned everyone to his  
own way; and the Lord hath laid on him the iniquities of us all.

נִגָּשׁ וְהוּא נַעֲנָה, וְלֹא יִפְתַּח פִּי; כֶּשֶׂה  
לְטִיבַח יוֹבֵל, וְכִרְחַל לִפְנֵי גֹזְזִיהָ נֶאֱלָמָה,  
וְלֹא יִפְתַּח פִּי.

7 He was oppressed, and he was afflicted, yet he opened not his mouth;  
he is brought as a lamb to the slaughter, and as a sheep before her  
shearers is dumb so he opened not his mouth.

מַעֲצָר וּמִמְשָׁפֶט לָקַח, וְאֵת דּוֹרוֹ מִיִּשׁוּחָהּ?  
כִּי נִגְזַר מֵאֶרֶץ חַיִּים; מִפְּשָׁע עַמִּי נִגַּע לָמוֹ.

8 He was taken from prison and from judgment; and who shall declare  
his generation? For he was cut off out of the land of the living; for the  
transgressions of my people was he stricken.

וַיַּתֵּן אֶת רֶשְׁעִים קִבְּרוֹ, וְאֵת עֲשִׂיר בְּמִתּוֹ; עַל  
לֹא חָמַס עָשָׂה, וְלֹא מִרְמָה בָּפִיו.

9 And he made his grave with the wicked, and with the rich in his death;  
because he had done no evil, neither was any deceit in his mouth.

- ויהוה חפץ דכאן; החלי אם תשים אשם נפשו, יראה זרע יאריך ימים, וחפץ יהוה בידו יצליח. 10 Yet it pleased the Lord to bruise him; he hath put him to grief; when thou shalt make his soul an offering for sin he shall see his seed, he shall prolong his days, and the pleasure of the Lord shall prosper in his hand.
- מעמל נפשו יראה ישבע; בדעתו יצדיק צדיק עבדי לרבים; ועונתם הוא יסבל. 11 He shall see the travail of his soul, and shall be satisfied; by his knowledge shall my righteous servant justify many; for he shall bear their iniquities.
- לכן אחלק לו ברבים, ואת עצומים יחלק שָׁלֵל; תחת אשר הערה למות נפשו, ואת פשעים נמנה; והוא חטא רבים נשא, ולפשעים יפגיע. 12 Therefore will I divide him a portion with the great, and he shall divide the spoil with the strong; because he hath poured out his soul unto death; and he was numbered with the transgressors; and he bore the sins of many, and made intercession for the transgressors.

## טו

## 15

- ואמר אבינדי אליהם: מי יתן ותבינו כי אלהים עצמו ירד בקרב בני האדם ויגאל את עמו. 1 And now Abinadi said unto them: I would that ye should understand that God himself shall come down among the children of men, and shall redeem his people.
- ועו אשר ישכן בִּבְשָׁר, יקרא בן אלהים, ויען אשר נכנע הבשר לרצון האב, הריהו אב ובן. 2 And because he dwelleth in flesh he shall be called the Son of God, and having subjected the flesh to the will of the Father, being the Father and the Son—
- האב, כי הוא הורה בכח אלהים; והבן, מפני הבשר; כך היה לאב ולבן. 3 The Father, because he was conceived by the power of God; and the Son, because of the flesh; thus becoming the Father and Son—
- והם אלהים אחד, אבי שמים וארץ הנצחי. 4 And they are one God, yea, the very Eternal Father of heaven and of earth.
- כך נכנע הבשר לרוח, או הבן לאב, בהיותם אלהים אחד, והוא סובל פיתויים, אף אינו נכנע להם; והוא מניח עצמו ללעג, למכות ולתדחה ולתחיה מעמו. 5 And thus the flesh becoming subject to the Spirit, or the Son to the Father, being one God, suffereth temptation, and yieldeth not to the temptation, but suffereth himself to be mocked, and scourged, and cast out, and disowned by his people.
- ואחר כל זאת, אחר עשותו נפלאות גדולות ורבות בקרב בני האדם, הוא יובל, כפי דבר ישעיהו, כרחל נאלמה לפני הגוזז, ולא יפתח פיו. 6 And after all this, after working many mighty miracles among the children of men, he shall be led, yea, even as Isaiah said, as a sheep before the shearer is dumb, so he opened not his mouth.
- אכן, הוא יובל, אף יצלב ויהרג, והבשר יכנע אף למות, כאשר רצון הבן נבלע ברצון האב. 7 Yea, even so he shall be led, crucified, and slain, the flesh becoming subject even unto death, the will of the Son being swallowed up in the will of the Father.



## מוֹשִׁיעַ טו:ח-יח

כֹּה נֹתֵק אֱלֹהִים אֶת מוֹסְרוֹת הַמָּוֶת, בְּהַשְׁיִיגוֹ  
נִצְחֹן עַל הַמָּוֶת, בְּנִתְּנוֹ לְבֶן כַּח לְהִיּוֹת מְלִיץ  
יֵשֶׁר לְבָנֵי הָאָנוּשׁ;

8 And thus God breaketh the bands of death, having gained the victory over death; giving the Son power to make intercession for the children of men—

אָכֵן, בְּעֲלִיתוֹ הַשְׁמִימָה, בְּהִיּוֹתוֹ מְלֵא רַחֲמִים,  
בְּהִתְמַלְאוֹ חֶמְלָה עַל בְּנֵי הָאָנוּשׁ, הוּא יַעֲמֹד  
בֵּינָם לְבִין הַדִּין; בְּנִתְּקוֹ אֶת מוֹסְרוֹת הַמָּוֶת,  
כְּאֲשֶׁר הוּא מְקַבֵּל עָלָיו אֶת עֲוֹנוֹם וְאֶת פְּשָׁעָם,  
בְּנִצְּלוֹ אוֹתָם וּבְסִפְקוֹ אֶת תְּבִיעוֹת הַדִּין.

9 Having ascended into heaven, having the bowels of mercy; being filled with compassion towards the children of men; standing betwixt them and justice; having broken the bands of death, taken upon himself their iniquity and their transgressions, having redeemed them, and satisfied the demands of justice.

הַנִּנִּי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, אֶת דּוֹרוֹ מִי יִשׁוּחַח? אֲנִי  
אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, כִּי כְּאֲשֶׁר תּוֹשֵׁם אָשֶׁם נִפְשׁוֹ, יֵרָאֶה  
זְרַעוֹ. וְעַתָּה מֶה תֹּאמְרוּ? וּמִי יִהְיֶה זְרַעוֹ?

10 And now I say unto you, who shall declare his generation? Behold, I say unto you, that when his soul has been made an offering for sin he shall see his seed. And now what say ye? And who shall be his seed?

הַנִּנִּי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, כִּי כָל אֲשֶׁר שָׁמַע אֶת דְּבָרֵי  
הַנְּבִיאִים, כָּל הַנְּבִיאִים הַקְּדוֹשִׁים אֲשֶׁר נִבְּאוּ  
עַל בּוֹא יְהוָה, אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם כִּי כָל אֲשֶׁר  
שָׁמְעוּ לְדְבָרֵיהֶם, וְהֶאֱמִינוּ כִּי יְהוָה יִגְאֹל אֶת  
עַמּוֹ, וְקִוּוּ לַיּוֹם הַהוּא, לְמַחִילַת חַטָּאתָם, אֲנִי  
אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, כִּי אֵלֶּה הֵם זְרַעוֹ, וְאֵלֶּה הֵם יוֹרְשֵׁי  
מַלְכוּת אֱלֹהִים.

11 Behold I say unto you, that whosoever has heard the words of the prophets, yea, all the holy prophets who have prophesied concerning the coming of the Lord—I say unto you, that all those who have hearkened unto their words, and believed that the Lord would redeem his people, and have looked forward to that day for a remission of their sins, I say unto you, that these are his seed, or they are heirs of the kingdom of God.

כִּי אֵלֶּה הֵם אֲשֶׁר אֶת חַטָּאתָם נִשָּׂא; אֵלֶּה  
הֵם אֲשֶׁר לְמַעַנָם מֵת, לְגָאֹלָם מִפְּשָׁעֵיהֶם.  
וְעַתָּה, הֲאִין הֵם זְרַעוֹ?

12 For these are they whose sins he has borne; these are they for whom he has died, to redeem them from their transgressions. And now, are they not his seed?

וְכִי אֵין הַנְּבִיאִים, כָּל אֶחָד אֲשֶׁר פָּתַח פִּי  
בְּנְבוּאָה וְלֹא נָפַל אֵלָי פֶּשַׁע? כִּנְחֵי לְכָל  
הַנְּבִיאִים הַקְּדוֹשִׁים אֲשֶׁר מֵאָז רֵאשִׁית  
הָעוֹלָם. אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם כִּי הֵם זְרַעוֹ.

13 Yea, and are not the prophets, every one that has opened his mouth to prophesy, that has not fallen into transgression, I mean all the holy prophets ever since the world began? I say unto you that they are his seed.

וְאֵלֶּה הֵם אֲשֶׁר הִשְׁמִיעוּ שְׁלוֹם, בְּשָׂרוֹ טוֹב,  
הִשְׁמִיעוּ יִשׁוּעָה וְאָמְרוּ לְצִיּוֹן: מֶלֶךְ אֱלֹהֶיךָ.

14 And these are they who have published peace, who have brought good tidings of good, who have published salvation; and said unto Zion: Thy God reigneth!

מֶה נָּאוּ עַל הַהָרִים רַגְלֵיהֶם!

15 And O how beautiful upon the mountains were their feet!

וְעוֹד, מֶה נָּאוּ עַל הַהָרִים רַגְלֵי אֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר  
עוֹדִם מְשִׁמִּיעִים שְׁלוֹם!

16 And again, how beautiful upon the mountains are the feet of those that are still publishing peace!

וְעוֹד, מֶה נָּאוּ עַל הַהָרִים רַגְלֵי אֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר  
יִשְׁמִיעוּ שְׁלוֹם בְּיָמִים אֲשֶׁר יְבוֹאוּ, אָכֵן,  
מִעַתָּה וְהָלָאָה, וְעַד עוֹלָם.

17 And again, how beautiful upon the mountains are the feet of those who shall hereafter publish peace, yea, from this time henceforth and forever!

וְהַנִּנִּי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם: אֵין זֶה הַכֹּל כִּי מֶה נָּאוּ עַל  
הַהָרִים רַגְלֵי מְבַשֵּׂר טוֹב, אֲשֶׁר הוּא יְהוָה,

18 And behold, I say unto you, this is not all. For O how beautiful upon the mountains are the feet of him that bringeth good tidings, that is the

- הַמְּסֹד שְׁלוֹם, הַגּוֹאֵל אֶת עַמּוֹ; הוּא הַנוֹתֵן  
אֶת עַמּוֹ יְשׁוּעָה.
- founder of peace, yea, even the Lord, who has redeemed his people;  
yea, him who has granted salvation unto his people;
- 19 For were it not for the redemption which he hath made for his people,  
which was prepared from the foundation of the world, I say unto you,  
were it not for this, all mankind must have perished.
- כִּי לֹא הִגָּאֵל אֲשֶׁר עָשָׂה לְעַמּוֹ, הָעֲרוּכָה  
מִיְסוּד הָעוֹלָם, אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, כִּי לֹא זֹאת,  
הָיוּ אוֹבְדִים כָּל בְּנֵי הָאָדָם.
- 20 But behold, the bands of death shall be broken, and the Son reigneth,  
and hath power over the dead; therefore, he bringeth to pass the  
resurrection of the dead.
- אֲךָ הִנֵּה יִנְתָּקוּ מוֹסְרוֹת הַמָּוֶת, וְהִבֵּן יִמְלֹךְ  
וְיִהְיֶה לוֹ הַשְׁלֵטוֹן בַּמֵּתִים; עַל כֵּן יָבִיא אֶת  
תַּחֲיַת הַמֵּתִים.
- 21 And there cometh a resurrection, even a first resurrection; yea, even a  
resurrection of those that have been, and who are, and who shall be,  
even until the resurrection of Christ—for so shall he be called.
- וְבוֹא תָבוֹא תַחֲיָה, וְהִיא תַחֲיָה הָרִאשׁוֹנָה;  
אֲכֹן, זֹאת תַּחֲיַת אֱלֹהֵי אֲשֶׁר הָיוּ וְאֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר  
עוֹדִם וְאֵלֶּה הַעֲתִידִים לְהָיוֹת, עַד תַּחֲיַת  
הַמְּשִׁיחַ, כִּי כֹךָ הוּא יִקְרָא.
- 22 And now, the resurrection of all the prophets, and all those that have  
believed in their words, or all those that have kept the commandments  
of God, shall come forth in the first resurrection; therefore, they are the  
first resurrection.
- וְתַחֲיַת כָּל הַנְּבִיאִים וְכָל אֲשֶׁר הֶאֱמִינוּ  
בְּדְבָרֵיהֶם, כָּל אֱלֹהֵי אֲשֶׁר שָׁמְרוּ אֶת מִצְוֹת  
אֱלֹהִים, תִּהְיֶה בְּתַחֲיָה הָרִאשׁוֹנָה; עַל כֵּן, הֵם  
הַתַּחֲיָה הָרִאשׁוֹנָה.
- 23 They are raised to dwell with God who has redeemed them; thus they  
have eternal life through Christ, who has broken the bands of death.
- וְהֵם קָמִים לִשְׁכֹּן עִם אֱלֹהִים אֲשֶׁר גָּאֵלָם; כֹּךָ  
יֵשׁ לָהֶם חַיֵּי עוֹלָם עַל יְדֵי הַמְּשִׁיחַ, אֲשֶׁר נָתַן  
אֶת מוֹסְרוֹת הַמָּוֶת.
- 24 And these are those who have part in the first resurrection; and these  
are they that have died before Christ came, in their ignorance, not  
having salvation declared unto them. And thus the Lord bringeth about  
the restoration of these; and they have a part in the first resurrection, or  
have eternal life, being redeemed by the Lord.
- וְהֵם אֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר יֵשׁ לָהֶם חֵלֶק בְּתַחֲיָה  
הָרִאשׁוֹנָה; וְהֵם אֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר מָתוּ לִפְנֵי בּוֹא  
הַמְּשִׁיחַ, בְּהִיוֹתָם בְּבִלִי דַעַת, וְלֹא הִשְׁמָעָה  
לָהֶם הַיְשׁוּעָה. כֹּךָ מְבִיא יְהוָה אֶת תְּקוּנָם; וְיֵשׁ  
לָהֶם חֵלֶק בְּתַחֲיָה הָרִאשׁוֹנָה; אֲכֹן, חַיֵּי עוֹלָם  
יֵשׁ לָהֶם כִּי גָאֵלָם יְהוָה.
- 25 And little children also have eternal life.
- וְכֹן לִילְדִים קְטַנִּים יֵשׁ חַיֵּי עוֹלָם.
- 26 But behold, and fear, and tremble before God, for ye ought to tremble;  
for the Lord redeemeth none such that rebel against him and die in  
their sins; yea, even all those that have perished in their sins ever since  
the world began, that have wilfully rebelled against God, that have  
known the commandments of God, and would not keep them; these  
are they that have no part in the first resurrection.
- וְאִלֵּם הִנֵּה, יִרְאוּ וְחָרְדוּ מִלִּפְנֵי אֱלֹהִים, כִּי  
עָלֵיכֶם לְחָרֵד; כִּי אֵין יְהוָה גּוֹאֵל אֶף אֶחָד מִן  
הַמוֹרְדִים בּוֹ וְהַמֵּתִים בְּחַטָּאִם. אֲכֹן, כָּל אֲשֶׁר  
אָבְדוּ בְּחַטָּאִם מֵאֶזְרַשִּׁית הָעוֹלָם, אֲשֶׁר  
מָרְדוּ בְּאֱלֹהִים בְּזִדּוֹן לָבָם, אֲשֶׁר יָדְעוּ אֶת  
מִצְוֹת אֱלֹהִים וְלֹא שָׁמְרוּ, לֹאֵלֶּה אֵין חֵלֶק  
בְּתַחֲיָה הָרִאשׁוֹנָה.
- עַל כֵּן, הֲאֵין עָלֵיכֶם לְחָרֵד? כִּי אֵין יְשׁוּעָה בָּאָה  
גַּם לְאֶחָד מֵאֵלֶּה; כִּי לֹא יִגָּאֵל יְהוָה אֶף אֶחָד  
אֲשֶׁר כָּזָה; אֶף לֹא יִוָּכַל יְהוָה לְגַאֵל כְּמוֹתָם;  
כִּי אֵין הוּא יָכוֹל לְכַחַשׁ בְּעַצְמוֹ; כִּי אֵינוּ יָכוֹל  
לְכַחַשׁ אֶת צִדְקוֹ לְעַמֶּת תְּבִיעֵת הַדִּין.

- 28 And now I say unto you that the time shall come that the salvation of the Lord shall be declared to every nation, kindred, tongue, and people.
- וְעַתָּה, אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, כִּי יוֹם יָבוֹא וְתִשְׁמַע יִשְׁוֹעַת יְהוָה לְכָל אָמָה, מִשְׁפָּחָה, לָשׁוֹן וְעַם.
- 29 Yea, Lord, thy watchmen shall lift up their voice; with the voice together shall they sing; for they shall see eye to eye, when the Lord shall bring again Zion.
- אָכֵן יְהוָה, קוֹל צִפְיָךְ נִשְׁאָו קוֹל, יַחְדּוֹ יִרְנְנוּ: כִּי עֵין בְּעֵין יִרְאוּ, בְּשׁוּב יְהוָה צִיּוֹן.
- 30 Break forth into joy, sing together, ye waste places of Jerusalem; for the Lord hath comforted his people, he hath redeemed Jerusalem.
- פָּצְחוּ רִנְנוּ יַחְדּוֹ, חֲרָבוֹת יְרוּשָׁלַם; כִּי נָחַם יְהוָה עֲמוֹ, גָּאֹל יְרוּשָׁלַם.
- 31 The Lord hath made bare his holy arm in the eyes of all the nations; and all the ends of the earth shall see the salvation of our God.
- חֲשָׁף יְהוָה אֶת זְרוֹעַ קִדְשׁוֹ לְעֵינֵי כָל הַגּוֹיִם; וְרָאוּ כָל אֲפָסֵי אֶרֶץ אֶת יִשְׁוֹעַת אֱלֹהֵינוּ.

## 16

## טז

- 1 And now, it came to pass that after Abinadi had spoken these words he stretched forth his hand and said: The time shall come when all shall see the salvation of the Lord; when every nation, kindred, tongue, and people shall see eye to eye and shall confess before God that his judgments are just.
- וּבְדַבֵּר אַבִּינָדִי אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, הוּא פָּשַׁט אֶת יָדוֹ וְאָמַר: בּוֹא יָבוֹא הַיּוֹם אֲשֶׁר הַכֹּל יִרְאוּ אֶת יִשְׁוֹעַת יְהוָה, וְכָל אָמָה, מִשְׁפָּחָה, לָשׁוֹן וְעַם יִרְאוּ עֵין בְּעֵין וְיִוְדוּ לִפְנֵי אֱלֹהִים כִּי צָדִק מִשְׁפָּטָיו.
- 2 And then shall the wicked be cast out, and they shall have cause to howl, and weep, and wail, and gnash their teeth; and this because they would not hearken unto the voice of the Lord; therefore the Lord redeemeth them not.
- אָז יִשְׁלַחוּ הָרָשָׁעִים, וְיִהְיֶה לָהֶם עַל מַה לְהִילָל וּלְבָכּוֹת וּלְזַעַק וּלְחַרֵּק שׁוֹן; וְזֹאת כִּי לֹא שָׁמְעוּ לְקוֹל יְהוָה; לָכֵן לֹא גֹאֲלָם יְהוָה.
- 3 For they are carnal and devilish, and the devil has power over them; yea, even that old serpent that did beguile our first parents, which was the cause of their fall; which was the cause of all mankind becoming carnal, sensual, devilish, knowing evil from good, subjecting themselves to the devil.
- כִּי בְּעֲלֵי תַאֲוֹת בְּשָׂרִים הֵם וּשְׂטָנִיִּים וְשׁוֹלֵט עֲלֵיהֶם הַשֶּׁטָן; אָכֵן, הוּא הַנָּחֵשׁ הַקְּדֻמוֹנִי אֲשֶׁר הִשְׁיֵא אֶת הוֹרֵינוּ הָרִאשׁוֹנִים וְהִסֵּב אֶת הַשְּׁפָלָתָם, אֲשֶׁר הִבִּיא עַל כָּל בְּנֵי הָאָדָם לְהִיּוֹת בְּעֲלֵי תַאֲוֹת בְּשָׂרִים, חוֹשְׁנִיִּים, שְׂטָנִיִּים, יוֹדְעֵי טוֹב וָרָע, בְּהִכְנָעַם לַשֶּׁטָן.
- 4 Thus all mankind were lost; and behold, they would have been endlessly lost were it not that God redeemed his people from their lost and fallen state.
- כֹּה אָבְדוּ כָל בְּנֵי הָאָדָם; וְהִנֵּה כֹה הָיוּ אָבוֹדִים לְעוֹלָם, לוֹלֵא גָאֹל אֱלֹהִים אֶת עַמּוֹ מִכְּלִיוָנָם וּכְשִׁלוֹנָם.
- 5 But remember that he that persists in his own carnal nature, and goes on in the ways of sin and rebellion against God, remaineth in his fallen state and the devil hath all power over him. Therefore, he is as though there was no redemption made, being an enemy to God; and also is the devil an enemy to God.
- אֲךָ זָכְרוּ נָא כִּי כָל הַדְּבָק בְּטִבְעוֹ תַאֲב הַבָּשָׂר וְיִלֵּךְ בְּדַרְכֵי חַטָּא וּמִרֵּי בְּאַלְהִים, בְּכַשְׁלוֹנוֹ יִשְׁאַר, וְלִשְׁטָן יִהְיֶה שְׁלֹטוֹן מַחְלָט עָלָיו. עַל כֵּן הוּא כְּאִלוֹ חֶסֶר גָּאֹלָה וְאוֹיֵב הוּא לְאַלְהִים, כְּאֲשֶׁר הַשֶּׁטָן אוֹיֵב לְאַלְהִים.
- 6 And now if Christ had not come into the world, speaking of things to come as though they had already come, there could have been no redemption.
- אָכֵן, לוֹלֵא בָּא הַמְּשִׁיחַ אֶל הָעוֹלָם, וְהִנֵּנִי מְדַבֵּר עַל הַבָּאוֹת כְּאִלוֹ בָּאוּ כְּבָר, לֹא הָיְתָה כָּל גָּאֹלָה לְבְנֵי הָאָדָם.

## מושיע טז:ז-יז:ב

- 7 And if Christ had not risen from the dead, or have broken the bands of death that the grave should have no victory, and that death should have no sting, there could have been no resurrection.
- 8 But there is a resurrection, therefore the grave hath no victory, and the sting of death is swallowed up in Christ.
- 9 He is the light and the life of the world; yea, a light that is endless, that can never be darkened; yea, and also a life which is endless, that there can be no more death.
- 10 Even this mortal shall put on immortality, and this corruption shall put on incorruption, and shall be brought to stand before the bar of God, to be judged of him according to their works whether they be good or whether they be evil—
- 11 If they be good, to the resurrection of endless life and happiness; and if they be evil, to the resurrection of endless damnation, being delivered up to the devil, who hath subjected them, which is damnation—
- 12 Having gone according to their own carnal wills and desires; having never called upon the Lord while the arms of mercy were extended towards them; for the arms of mercy were extended towards them, and they would not; they being warned of their iniquities and yet they would not depart from them; and they were commanded to repent and yet they would not repent.
- 13 And now, ought ye not to tremble and repent of your sins, and remember that only in and through Christ ye can be saved?
- 14 Therefore, if ye teach the law of Moses, also teach that it is a shadow of those things which are to come—
- 15 Teach them that redemption cometh through Christ the Lord, who is the very Eternal Father. Amen.
- וְלֹא־אִם הָיָה מִן הַמָּשִׁיחַ מִן הַמֵּתִים, אוֹ לֹא־נָתַק אֶת מוֹסְרוֹת הַמָּוֶת, וְלֹקֵבֶר לֹא יִהְיֶה נִצָּחוֹן וְלָמוֹת לֹא יִהְיֶה עֶקֶץ, לֹא יִכְלֶה לְחַלּוֹת תְּחִיָּה.
- אִם־יֵשׁ תְּחִיָּה, וְלָכֵן אֵין לִקְבֵר נִצָּחוֹן, וְעֶקֶץ הַמָּוֶת נִבְלָע בַּמָּשִׁיחַ.
- הוּא אוֹר תָּבֵל וְחַיִּיָּה; אָכֵן, הוּא אוֹר אֵין קֵץ, אֲשֶׁר לְעוֹלָם לֹא יִחְשֹׁךְ; וְאֵף הוּא חַיִּי אֵין קֵץ, אֲשֶׁר אֵין בָּהֶם עוֹד מוֹת.
- אֲף לָכֵן הַתְּמוּתָה הַזֶּה יִנְתֵּן אִלְמוּת, וְהַבֵּן הַמְשֻׁחַת הַזֶּה יִהְיֶה לְבִלְתִּי מְשֻׁחַת, וְיֻבָּא לַעֲמֹד לִפְנֵי כֹס הַמִּשְׁפָּט אֲשֶׁר לְאַלְהִים, לְהִשְׁפֹּט עַל יָדָיו עַל פִּי מַעֲשָׂיו, אִם טוֹבִים וְאִם רָעִים;
- אִם טוֹבִים, יִקוּמוּ לְחַיִּי עוֹלָם וְלֹא־אֲשֶׁר נִצָּחִי; וְאִם רָעִים, יִקוּמוּ לְחֶרֶם עוֹלָם, לְהַמָּסֵר לְשָׂטָן, אֲשֶׁר הִכְנִיעָם, וְזֹאת מֵאֲרַת חֶרֶם.
- כִּי הָלְכוּ עַל פִּי תַאֲוֹת בְּשָׂרָם וְחַמְדָּתָם, מִבְּלִי לִקְרֹא מֵעוֹלָם אֶל יְהוָה, בְּעוֹד זְרוּעוֹת הַרְחָמִים פְּשׁוּטוֹת אֲלֵיהֶם; כִּי זְרוּעוֹת הַרְחָמִים הָיוּ פְּשׁוּטוֹת אֲלֵיהֶם וְלֹא אָבוּ; אֲף כִּי הִזְהָרוּ עַל פְּשָׁעֵיהֶם, הֵם לֹא חָדְלוּ מֵעֲשׂוֹתָם. וְאֵף כִּי הִצְטִווּ לָשׁוּב מִרְעַתָּם, שׁוֹב לֹא שָׁבוּ.
- וְעַתָּה, הֲאֵין עֲלֵיכֶם לְחַרֵּד וּלְהִנָּחַם מִחֻטְאֵיכֶם, וּלְזָכֹר כִּי רַק עַל יְדֵי הַמָּשִׁיחַ תִּשְׁלָשׁוּ?
- לָכֵן, אִם תִּלְמְדוּ אֶת תּוֹרַת מֹשֶׁה, לְמַדּוּ גַם כִּי צֶלֶל הֵיא לְדָבָרִים אֲשֶׁר עֲתִידִים לָבוֹא.
- לְמַדּוּ אֶת הָעָם כִּי גֹאֲלָהּ בָּאָה עַל יְדֵי אֲדֹנָי הַמְּשִׁיחַ, אֲשֶׁר הֵנוּ אֲבֵי הָעוֹלָמִים. אָמֵן.

## יז

## 17

- 1 And now it came to pass that when Abinadi had finished these sayings, that the king commanded that the priests should take him and cause that he should be put to death.
- 2 But there was one among them whose name was Alma, he also being a descendant of Nephi. And he was a young man, and he believed the words which Abinadi had spoken, for he knew concerning the iniquity which Abinadi has testified against them; therefore he began to plead
- וּכְכֹלֹת אַבִּינָדִי לֵאמֹר אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, צִוָּה הַמֶּלֶךְ עַל הַכֹּהֲנִים לְקַחְתּוֹ וּלְהוֹצִיאוֹ לְהוֹרֵג.
- אֲף הָיָה בִּינֵיהֶם אִישׁ אֶחָד, אֲשֶׁר שְׁמוֹ נִקְרָא עֲלְמָא, וְהוּא מִצֵּאצְאֵי נְפִי. וּבְהִיּוֹתוֹ אִישׁ צָעִיר הוּא הָאָמִין בַּדְּבָרֵי אַבִּינָדִי, כִּי יָדָע עַל אֲדוּת הַפְּשָׁעִים אֲשֶׁר הָעִיד עֲלֵיהֶם אַבִּינָדִי.

- לְכֵן הוּא הִפְצִיר בַּמֶּלֶךְ לִבְל יִרְגֹז עַל אַבִּינָדִי,  
וְכִי יִנְיַחֵהוּ לְלֶכֶת לְשָׁלוֹם.
- אֲךָ תַעֲלֵ חֲמַת הַמֶּלֶךְ, וְהוּא צָוָה לְגֶרֶשׁ  
אֶת עַלְמָא מִקְּרֹבָם, וְשָׁלַח אֶת עַבְדָּיו  
אַחֲרָיו לְהִרְגוֹ.
- אֻלָּם עַלְמָא בָּרַח מִפְּנֵיהֶם וְהִתְחַבֵּא,  
וְהֵם לֹא מָצְאוּהוּ. וּבִימֵי הַסֵּתֶר הָרַבִּים הוּא  
כָּתַב אֶת כָּל הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר אַבִּינָדִי.
- וְהַמֶּלֶךְ צָוָה אֶת שׁוּמְרָיו לְהַקִּיף אֶת  
אַבִּינָדִי וּלְקַחְתּוֹ; וְהֵם אָסְרוּהוּ, וְהִשְׁלִיכוּהוּ  
אֶל בֵּית הַסֵּהֶר.
- וְכַעֲבֹר שְׁלֹשָׁה יָמִים, אַחֵר הוֹעִץ הַמֶּלֶךְ עִם  
כְּהֲנָיו, הוּא צָוָה לְהֵבִיא אֶת אַבִּינָדִי שְׁנִית לְפָנָיו.
- וְהוּא אָמַר אֵלָיו: אַבִּינָדִי, מִצָּאנוּךְ אֲשֶׁם,  
עֲלִידָךְ לָמוֹת.
- יַעַן אֲשֶׁר אָמַרְתָּ כִּי אֱלֹהִים עֲצֻמוֹ יֵרֵד בְּקִרְבִּי  
בְּנֵי הָאָדָם. עַל זֹאת תּוֹצֵא לְהוֹרֵג אִם לֹא  
תָשׁוּב בְּךָ מִכָּל הָרָעוֹת אֲשֶׁר דִּבַּרְתָּ עָלַי וְעַל  
עַמִּי.
- וְאָמַר אֵלָיו אַבִּינָדִי: אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָךְ, לֹא אָשׁוּב  
מִן הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר דִּבַּרְתִּי אֵלֵיכֶם עַל אוֹדוֹת  
הָעַם הַזֶּה, כִּי אָמַתְּ הֵם; וְלִמְעַן אֲשֶׁר תִּדְעוּ  
בְּאַמְתָּם, נָתַתִּי עֲצָמִי לִנְפֹל בְּיַדְכֶם.
- הֲנִי מוֹכֵן לְסָבֵל עַד מוֹת, וְלֹא אָשׁוּב מִדְּבָרִי,  
וְהֵם יַעֲמְדוּ לְעֵדוּת עֲלֵיכֶם. וְאִם תִּהְרַגְנִי, דָּם  
נָקִי תִשְׁפֹּכוּ, וְגַם זֹאת תַעֲמֹד לְהָעִיד עֲלֵיכֶם  
בְּיוֹם הָאֲחֵרוֹן.
- וְהִנֵּה הַמֶּלֶךְ נָח בָּא לְשַׁחֵר אֶת אַבִּינָדִי, כִּי  
יֵרָא אֶת דְּבָרוֹ וַיֵּרָא פֶּן יִבְאֲנוּ מִשְׁפַּט אֱלֹהִים.
- אֲךָ הַכֹּהֲנִים הִרִימוּ קוֹלָם עָלָיו וְהִרְשִׁיעוּהוּ  
לֵאמֹר: הֵן אֶת הַמֶּלֶךְ חָרַף. לְכֵן הִתְעוֹרְרָה  
חֲמַת הַמֶּלֶךְ עַל אַבִּינָדִי וְהוּא שָׁלַחוֹ לְהוֹרֵג.
- וְהֵם לָקְחוּהוּ וְאָסְרוּהוּ וְהָכּוּ אוֹתוֹ בְּעֵקְרָבִים  
מִכּוֹת מָוֶת.
- with the king that he would not be angry with Abinadi, but suffer that  
he might depart in peace.
- 3 But the king was more wroth, and caused that Alma should be cast  
out from among them, and sent his servants after him that they might  
slay him.
- 4 But he fled from before them and hid himself that they found him not.  
And he being concealed for many days did write all the words which  
Abinadi had spoken.
- 5 And it came to pass that the king caused that his guards should sur-  
round Abinadi and take him; and they bound him and cast him  
into prison.
- 6 And after three days, having counseled with his priests, he caused that  
he should again be brought before him.
- 7 And he said unto him: Abinadi, we have found an accusation against  
thee, and thou art worthy of death.
- 8 For thou hast said that God himself should come down among the  
children of men; and now, for this cause thou shalt be put to death  
unless thou wilt recall all the words which thou hast spoken evil  
concerning me and my people.
- 9 Now Abinadi said unto him: I say unto you, I will not recall the words  
which I have spoken unto you concerning this people, for they are true;  
and that ye may know of their surety I have suffered myself that I have  
fallen into your hands.
- 10 Yea, and I will suffer even until death, and I will not recall my words,  
and they shall stand as a testimony against you. And if ye slay me  
ye will shed innocent blood, and this shall also stand as a testimony  
against you at the last day.
- 11 And now king Noah was about to release him, for he feared his word;  
for he feared that the judgments of God would come upon him.
- 12 But the priests lifted up their voices against him, and began to accuse  
him, saying: He has reviled the king. Therefore the king was stirred up  
in anger against him, and he delivered him up that he might be slain.
- 13 And it came to pass that they took him and bound him, and scourged  
his skin with faggots, yea, even unto death.



- 14 And now when the flames began to scorch him, he cried unto them, saying:
- 15 Behold, even as ye have done unto me, so shall it come to pass that thy seed shall cause that many shall suffer the pains that I do suffer, even the pains of death by fire; and this because they believe in the salvation of the Lord their God.
- 16 And it will come to pass that ye shall be afflicted with all manner of diseases because of your iniquities.
- 17 Yea, and ye shall be smitten on every hand, and shall be driven and scattered to and fro, even as a wild flock is driven by wild and ferocious beasts.
- 18 And in that day ye shall be hunted, and ye shall be taken by the hand of your enemies, and then ye shall suffer, as I suffer, the pains of death by fire.
- 19 Thus God executeth vengeance upon those that destroy his people. O God, receive my soul.
- 20 And now, when Abinadi had said these words, he fell, having suffered death by fire; yea, having been put to death because he would not deny the commandments of God, having sealed the truth of his words by his death.
- ובחרדו להבות האש את בשרו הוא קרא אליהם לאמר:
- ראו, כמעשה אשר עשיתם לי, יסב זרעכם סבל לרבים כסבלי, ענויי מות באש, וזאת על אמונתם בישועת יהוה אלהיהם.
- ויבואוכם תלאות וכל מיני חלאים מפני עוונותיכם.
- ואתם תכו מכל עבר, ותגרשו ותפזרו הנה ונה, כצאן פורץ, הנרדף על ידי חיות פרא אכזריות.
- ביום ההוא יצודו אתכם, ותתפשו בידי אויביכם; אז תסבלו ענויי מות באש כסבלי עתה.
- כה ינקם אלהים במאבדי עמו. אלהי, קבל את נשמת.
- וכדברו את הדברים האלה, נפל אבינדי, מומת באש; והוא הוצא להורג כי לא הכחיש את מצוות אלהים, ובמותו חתם את אמתות דבריו.

## יח

## 18

- 1 And now, it came to pass that Alma, who had fled from the servants of king Noah, repented of his sins and iniquities, and went about privately among the people, and began to teach the words of Abinadi—
- 2 Yea, concerning that which was to come, and also concerning the resurrection of the dead, and the redemption of the people, which was to be brought to pass through the power, and sufferings, and death of Christ, and his resurrection and ascension into heaven.
- 3 And as many as would hear his word he did teach. And he taught them privately, that it might not come to the knowledge of the king. And many did believe his words.
- 4 And it came to pass that as many as did believe him did go forth to a place which was called Mormon, having received its name from the king, being in the borders of the land having been infested, by times or at seasons, by wild beasts.
- ועלמא, אשר ברח מפני עבדי המלך נח, נחם על חטאיו ועל עוונותיו; והלך בסתר בקרב העם והחל ללמד את דברי אבינדי.
- והוא דבר על העתיד לבוא ועל תחיית המתים ועל גאלת בני האנוש, אשר תבוא על ידי כח המשיח וסבלו ומותו ותחייתו מן המתים ועלייתו השמימה.
- והוא למד את כל אשר הקשיב לדבריו. והוא למד בסתר, למען לא יודע הדבר למלך. ורבים האמינו לדבריו.
- וכל אשר האמינו לדבריו הלכו אל מקום אשר שמו נקרא מורמון; ושמו נתן לו מאת המלך, והוא בגבול הארץ, ואשר חיות פרא שרצו בו לפעמים לפי עונות השנה.



## מוֹשִׁיעַ יח:ה-יג

- 5 Now, there was in Mormon a fountain of pure water, and Alma resorted thither, there being near the water a thicket of small trees, where he did hide himself in the daytime from the searches of the king.
- 6 And it came to pass that as many as believed him went thither to hear his words.
- 7 And it came to pass after many days there were a goodly number gathered together at the place of Mormon, to hear the words of Alma. Yea, all were gathered together that believed on his word, to hear him. And he did teach them, and did preach unto them repentance, and redemption, and faith on the Lord.
- 8 And it came to pass that he said unto them: Behold, here are the waters of Mormon (for thus were they called) and now, as ye are desirous to come into the fold of God, and to be called his people, and are willing to bear one another's burdens, that they may be light;
- 9 Yea, and are willing to mourn with those that mourn; yea, and comfort those that stand in need of comfort, and to stand as witnesses of God at all times and in all things, and in all places that ye may be in, even until death, that ye may be redeemed of God, and be numbered with those of the first resurrection, that ye may have eternal life—
- 10 Now I say unto you, if this be the desire of your hearts, what have you against being baptized in the name of the Lord, as a witness before him that ye have entered into a covenant with him, that ye will serve him and keep his commandments, that he may pour out his Spirit more abundantly upon you?
- 11 And now when the people had heard these words, they clapped their hands for joy, and exclaimed: This is the desire of our hearts.
- 12 And now it came to pass that Alma took Helam, he being one of the first, and went and stood forth in the water, and cried, saying: O Lord, pour out thy Spirit upon thy servant, that he may do this work with holiness of heart.
- 13 And when he had said these words, the Spirit of the Lord was upon him, and he said: Helam, I baptize thee, having authority from the Almighty God, as a testimony that ye have entered into a covenant to serve him until you are dead as to the mortal body; and may the Spirit of the Lord be poured out upon you; and may he grant unto you eternal life, through the redemption of Christ, whom he has prepared from the foundation of the world.
- וּבְמִוְרְמוֹן הָיָה מַעְיֵן מַיִם וְעִלְמָא הִלְךְ שָׁמָּה, כִּי בִקְרִבְתָּ הַמַּיִם הָיָה חֹרֶשׁ עֲצִים נְמוּכִים, וּבֹה הִתְחַבֵּא בַּיּוֹם מִמְּחַפְּשֵׁי הַמֶּלֶךְ.
- וְכָל אֲשֶׁר הֶאֱמִינוּ לוֹ הִלְכוּ שָׁמָּה לִשְׁמַע אֶת דְּבָרָיו.
- וְהָיָה אַחֵר יָמִים רַבִּים, הָרַב מִסְפַּר הַנֶּאֱסָפִים אֶל מְקוֹם מוֹרְמוֹן לִשְׁמַע אֶת דְּבָרֵי עִלְמָא. אָכֵן, כָּל הַמֵּאֲמִינִים בְּדְבָרָיו הִתְאַסְפוּ יַחְדָּו לִשְׁמָעוֹ. וְהוּא לְמַדָּם וְהִסִּיף בְּאַזְנוֹתָם עַל תְּשׁוּבָה וְעַל נִצְלָה וְעַל אֱמוּנָה בַיהוָה.
- וְהוּא אָמַר אֲלֵיהֶם: הִנֵּה מִי מוֹרְמוֹן, כִּי כֵן נִקְרָא, וְעַתָּה אִם חִשְׁקָה נַפְשְׁכֶם לְבֹא אֶל צֵאן אֱלֹהִים וּלְהִקְרָא עִמּוֹ, וְאִם חֲפָצִים אַתֶּם לִשְׂאת אִישׁ אֶת מִשְׁאֵל אָחִיו בְּעִבּוֹר הַקָּל לָהֶם;
- אָכֵן, אִם תִּאֲוֹתוֹ לְקוֹנֵן עִם הַמְּקוֹנְנִים, וּלְנַחֵם אֶת הַצָּרִיכִים נַחֲמָה, וְלַעֲמֹד כְּעַדֵי אֱלֹהִים בְּכָל עֵת וּבְכָל דָּבָר וּבְכָל מְקוֹם אֲשֶׁר תִּהְיוּ בּוֹ, אֲפֹלוּ עַד מוֹתְכֶם, לְמַעַן יִגָּאֲלֶכֶם אֱלֹהִים, וְתִמְנֶנּוּ עַל הַקָּמִים בַּתְּחִיָּה הָרִאשׁוֹנָה, וְיִהְיוּ לָכֶם חַיֵּי עוֹלָם;
- הֲנִי אוֹמֵר אֲלֵיכֶם: אִם זֹאת מִשְׁאֵל לְבַבְכֶם, מִה יֵשׁ לָכֶם נֶגֶד הַטְּבִלְכֶם בְּשֵׁם יְהוָה, כְּעִדּוֹת לְפָנָיו עַל כְּנִיסַתְכֶם עִמּוֹ בְּבְרִית, כִּי תִשְׁתַּחֲוֶהוּ וְתִשְׁמְרוּ אֶת מִצְוֹתָיו, לְמַעַן יִשְׁפֹּךְ רוּחוֹ עֲלֵיכֶם בְּשֹׁפַע רַב יוֹתֵר?
- וְכִשְׁמַע הָאֲנָשִׁים אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, הֵם מִחֲאוּ כַף מִשְׁמִיחָה וְקִרְאוּ: זֶה חֲפָצֵנוּ לְבָנוּ.
- וְעִלְמָא לָקַח אֶת חֵילָם, אֲשֶׁר הָיָה מִן הָרִאשׁוֹנִים, וְהִלְךְ וְעָמַד בַּמַּיִם וְקִרָא לֵאמֹר: אֲנִי, יְהוָה, שֹׁפֵךְ נָא אֶת רוּחְךָ עַל עַבְדְּךָ לְמַעַן אֲעֲשֶׂה אֶת הָעֲבוּדָה הַזֹּאת בְּקִדְשֵׁת הַלֵּב.
- וּכְדִבְרֹו אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, הִיָּתָה עָלָיו רוּחַ יְהוָה וְהוּא אָמַר: חֵילָם, הֲנִי מְטַבִּילְךָ, בְּהִיּוֹת לִי תִקְוָה מֵאֵת אֵל שֶׁדִּי, כְּעִדּוֹת עַל כְּנִיסַתְךָ בְּבְרִית לְעַבְדּוֹ עַד מוֹתָהּ, מוֹת הַגּוּי בֶן הַתְּמוּתָה; וְהִי רְצוֹן מִלְפָּנֵי יְהוָה כִּי יִשְׁפֹּךְ אֶת רוּחוֹ עָלֶיךָ וְכִי יִתֵּן לְךָ חַיֵּי עוֹלָם עַל יְדֵי גִאֲלַת הַמְּשִׁיחַ, אֲשֶׁר הוֹכֵן מִיְסוּד הָעוֹלָם.

## מוֹשִׁיעַ יח:יד-כה

- 14 And after Alma had said these words, both Alma and Helam were buried in the water; and they arose and came forth out of the water rejoicing, being filled with the Spirit.
- וְאַחַר אֲשֶׁר אָמַר עֲלֵמָא אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, נִקְבְּרוּ עֲלֵמָא וְחֵילָם בַּמַּיִם; וְהֵם קָמוּ וַיֵּצְאוּ מִן הַמַּיִם שְׂמִיחִים, כִּי מָלְאוּ רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ.
- 15 And again, Alma took another, and went forth a second time into the water, and baptized him according to the first, only he did not bury himself again in the water.
- וְעֲלֵמָא שָׁב וְלָקַח אִישׁ אֲחֵר, וַהֲלִיף שְׁנִית אֶל הַמַּיִם, וְטָבַל אוֹתוֹ כְּרִאשֹׁנוֹ, וְזֹלַת אֲשֶׁר לֹא קָבַר עַצְמוֹ שְׁנִית בַּמַּיִם.
- 16 And after this manner he did baptize every one that went forth to the place of Mormon; and they were in number about two hundred and four souls; yea, and they were baptized in the waters of Mormon, and were filled with the grace of God.
- וּבְאַפְּן הַזֶּה הוּא הִטְבִּיל כָּל אֶחָד אֲשֶׁר בָּא אֶל מְקוֹם מוֹרְמוֹן; וְהָיָה מִסְפָּרָם כְּמֵאתִים וָאַרְבַּע נַפְשוֹת. וְהֵם הִטְבְּלוּ בְּמֵי מוֹרְמוֹן וּמָלְאוּ חֶסֶד אֱלֹהִים.
- 17 And they were called the church of God, or the church of Christ, from that time forward. And it came to pass that whosoever was baptized by the power and authority of God was added to his church.
- וּמִן הַיּוֹם הַהוּא וְאֵילָף הֵם נִקְרָאוּ כְּנִסְיַת אֱלֹהִים, אוֹ כְּנִסְיַת הַמְּשִׁיחַ. וְכָל אֲשֶׁר הִטְבֵּל בְּכַח אֱלֹהִים וּבִסְמִכוּתוֹ נוֹסֵף אֶל כְּנִסְיָתוֹ.
- 18 And it came to pass that Alma, having authority from God, ordained priests; even one priest to every fifty of their number did he ordain to preach unto them, and to teach them concerning the things pertaining to the kingdom of God.
- וְעֲלֵמָא, בְּהִיּוֹת לוֹ תִּקְוָה מֵאֱלֹהִים, הִסְמִיךְ כֹּהֲנִים, כִּהְיוּ אֶחָד לְכָל חֲמִשִּׁים נֶפֶשׁ הַסְמִיךְ, לְהַשְׁיִיף לָהֶם וּלְלַמְּדָם עַל אוֹדוֹת דְּבָרֵי מַלְכוּת אֱלֹהִים.
- 19 And he commanded them that they should teach nothing save it were the things which he had taught, and which had been spoken by the mouth of the holy prophets.
- וְהוּא צִוָּם לְהַמְנִיעַ מִהוֹרָאת דְּבָרִים, בְּלֹתֵי אֵם הוּא לְמַדָּם, אוֹ אֲשֶׁר יֵצְאוּ מִפִּי הַנְּבִיאִים הַקְּדוּשִׁים.
- 20 Yea, even he commanded them that they should preach nothing save it were repentance and faith on the Lord, who had redeemed his people.
- אִף הוּא צִוָּם כִּי לֹא יִשְׁיפוּ דְּבַר, בְּלֹתֵי אֵם דְּבָרֵי נְחֻמָּה מִחֻטָּא וְאִמּוּנָה בִּיהוּה, אֲשֶׁר גָּאֵל אֶת עַמּוֹ.
- 21 And he commanded them that there should be no contention one with another, but that they should look forward with one eye, having one faith and one baptism, having their hearts knit together in unity and in love one towards another.
- וְהוּא צִוָּם כִּי לֹא יִרְיבוּ אִישׁ עִם רֵעֵהוּ, כִּי אֵם יִבִּיטוּ קְדִימָה בְּעֵין אַחַת, בְּאִמּוּנָה אַחַת וּבִטְבִּילָה אַחַת, וּבְלִבְבוֹת קְשׁוּרִים יַחַד כְּאַחַד בְּאַהֲבַת אִישׁ אֶת אָחִיו.
- 22 And thus he commanded them to preach. And thus they became the children of God.
- כֹּה צִוָּם לְהַשְׁיִיף. וְכֹה הֵם הָיוּ לְבָנֵי אֱלֹהִים.
- 23 And he commanded them that they should observe the sabbath day, and keep it holy, and also every day they should give thanks to the Lord their God.
- וְהוּא צִוָּם לְשַׁמֵּר אֶת יוֹם הַשַּׁבָּת וּלְקַדְּשׁוֹ וְכֵן לְהוֹדוֹת לִיהוּה אֱלֹהֵיהֶם בְּכָל יוֹם.
- 24 And he also commanded them that the priests whom he had ordained should labor with their own hands for their support.
- וְעוֹד צִוָּם, כִּי הַכֹּהֲנִים אֲשֶׁר הִסְמִיכָם, יִתְכַּלְכְּלוּ בִּיגִיעַ כְּפִיהֶם.
- 25 And there was one day in every week that was set apart that they should gather themselves together to teach the people, and to worship the
- וְנִקְבַּע יוֹם אֶחָד בְּכָל שָׁבוּעַ לְהִקָּבֵץ יַחַד לְלַמּוֹד הָעָם, וְלַעֲבוֹדַת יְהוּה אֱלֹהֵיהֶם;

- ואף כי יתאספו יחד בכל עת אשר היתה  
לאל ידם.
- 26 And the priests were not to depend upon the people for their support; but for their labor they were to receive the grace of God, that they might wax strong in the Spirit, having the knowledge of God, that they might teach with power and authority from God.
- 27 And again Alma commanded that the people of the church should impart of their substance, every one according to that which he had; if he have more abundantly he should impart more abundantly; and of him that had but little, but little should be required; and to him that had not should be given.
- 28 And thus they should impart of their substance of their own free will and good desires towards God, and to those priests that stood in need, yea, and to every needy, naked soul.
- 29 And this he said unto them, having been commanded of God; and they did walk uprightly before God, imparting to one another both temporally and spiritually according to their needs and their wants.
- 30 And now it came to pass that all this was done in Mormon, yea, by the waters of Mormon, in the forest that was near the waters of Mormon; yea, the place of Mormon, the waters of Mormon, the forest of Mormon, how beautiful are they to the eyes of them who there came to the knowledge of their Redeemer; yea, and how blessed are they, for they shall sing to his praise forever.
- 31 And these things were done in the borders of the land, that they might not come to the knowledge of the king.
- 32 But behold, it came to pass that the king, having discovered a movement among the people, sent his servants to watch them. Therefore on the day that they were assembling themselves together to hear the word of the Lord they were discovered unto the king.
- 33 And now the king said that Alma was stirring up the people to rebellion against him; therefore he sent his army to destroy them.
- 34 And it came to pass that Alma and the people of the Lord were apprised of the coming of the king's army; therefore they took their tents and their families and departed into the wilderness.
- 35 And they were in number about four hundred and fifty souls.
- וְנִקְבַּע כִּי הַכֹּהֲנִים לֹא יִתְּלוּ אֶת כָּלְכָלָתָם עַל  
הָעָם, כִּי אִם יִקְבְּלוּ בְעִבּוּר עֲמָלָם אֶת חֶסֶד  
אֱלֹהִים, לְמַעַן יִתְחַזְּקוּ בְרוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ בְּהִיּוֹת  
לָהֶם דַּעַת אֱלֹהִים, וְיִוְכְּלוּ לְלַמֵּד בְּעַז אֱלֹהִים  
וּבִתְקַף סִמְכוּתוֹ.
- וְעַלְמָא צִוָּה עוֹד כִּי יִחְלְקוּ אַנְשֵׁי הַכְּנִסָּה  
מִרְכוּשָׁם בִּינִיָּהֶם, כָּל אֶחָד כְּפִי קִנְיָנוֹ; אִם רַב  
לוֹ, יִרְבֶּה לָתֵת; וְאִשֶּׁר מְעֻט לוֹ, יִמְעֻט לָתֵת;  
וְיִנָּתֶן לְזֶה אֲשֶׁר אֵין לוֹ כָּל.
- כֹּה יִחְלְקוּ מִרְכוּשָׁם בְּרִצּוֹן חֲפָזִי וּבְטוֹב לָבָם  
לְפָנֵי אֱלֹהִים, וְלִכְהֻנִּים הַנֶּצְרָכִים וּלְנֶפֶשׁ כָּל  
אָבִיוֹן וְעִירָם.
- זֹאת אָמַר לָהֶם עַלְמָא, כְּאֲשֶׁר צִוָּהוּ אֱלֹהִים.  
וְהֵם הָלְכוּ בְּדֶרֶךְ הַיָּשָׁר לְפָנֵי אֱלֹהִים, וְיִחְלְקוּ  
אִישׁ עִם רֵעֵהוּ, בַּחֲמֵר וּבְרוּחַ, כְּפִי צִרְכָּם  
וְהַנְּחוּץ לָהֶם.
- כָּל זֹאת נַעֲשֶׂה בְּמוֹרְמוֹן, עַל מִי מוֹרְמוֹן, בְּיַעַר  
אֲשֶׁר בְּקִרְבָּת מִי מוֹרְמוֹן, אָכֹן, מְקוֹם מוֹרְמוֹן,  
מִי מוֹרְמוֹן, יַעַר מוֹרְמוֹן, מֵה נְאוֹו אֵלֶּה בְּעֵינֵי  
הַמִּתְוַדְּעִים שָׁם אֶל גּוֹאֲלָם; מֵה בְּרוּכִים הֵם,  
כִּי יִרְנְנוּ לְתִהְלֹתוֹ לְעַד.
- וְהַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה נַעֲשׂוּ בְּגִבּוֹל הָאָרֶץ, לְמַעַן  
לֹא יוֹדְעוּ לַמֶּלֶךְ.
- אֲךָ הָיָה, כְּאֲשֶׁר גָּלָה הַמֶּלֶךְ תְּנוּעָה בְּקִרְבֵּי  
הָעָם, הוּא שָׁלַח אֶת עֲבָדָיו לְהִתְחַקֵּקוֹת  
אֲחֵרֵיהֶם. לָכֵן נִתְגַּלּוּ עַל יְדֵיו בְּיוֹם אֲשֶׁר  
נִאֲסְפוּ יַחַד לְשִׁמְעַת דְּבַר יְהוָה.
- אֲזִי אָמַר הַמֶּלֶךְ כִּי עַלְמָא מְעוֹרֵר אֶת הָעָם  
לְמַרְדּ בּוֹ; לָכֵן שָׁלַח אֶת צְבָאוֹ לְהַשְׁמִידָם.
- וְאוּלַם נֹודַע דְּבַר בּוֹא צְבָא הַמֶּלֶךְ לְעַלְמָא  
וּלְעַם יְהוָה; לָכֵן הֵם לָקְחוּ אֶת אֹהֲלֵיהֶם וַיִּצְאוּ  
עִם מִשְׁפְּחוֹתֵיהֶם אֶל הַיַּעְרוֹת.
- וְהָיָה מִסְפָּרָם כְּאַרְבַּע מֵאוֹת וְחֲמִשִּׁים נַפְשׁ.

## יט

## 19

- 1 And it came to pass that the army of the king returned, having searched in vain for the people of the Lord.
- 2 And now behold, the forces of the king were small, having been reduced, and there began to be a division among the remainder of the people.
- 3 And the lesser part began to breathe out threatenings against the king, and there began to be a great contention among them.
- 4 And now there was a man among them whose name was Gideon, and he being a strong man and an enemy to the king, therefore he drew his sword, and swore in his wrath that he would slay the king.
- 5 And it came to pass that he fought with the king; and when the king saw that he was about to overpower him, he fled and ran and got upon the tower which was near the temple.
- 6 And Gideon pursued after him and was about to get upon the tower to slay the king, and the king cast his eyes round about towards the land of Shemlon, and behold, the army of the Lamanites were within the borders of the land.
- 7 And now the king cried out in the anguish of his soul, saying: Gideon, spare me, for the Lamanites are upon us, and they will destroy us; yea, they will destroy my people.
- 8 And now the king was not so much concerned about his people as he was about his own life; nevertheless, Gideon did spare his life.
- 9 And the king commanded the people that they should flee before the Lamanites, and he himself did go before them, and they did flee into the wilderness, with their women and their children.
- 10 And it came to pass that the Lamanites did pursue them, and did overtake them, and began to slay them.
- 11 Now it came to pass that the king commanded them that all the men should leave their wives and their children, and flee before the Lamanites.
- 12 Now there were many that would not leave them, but had rather stay and perish with them. And the rest left their wives and their children and fled.
- וְהָיָה כִּי שָׁבוּ חֵילֵי הַמֶּלֶךְ אֲשֶׁר חָפְשׁוּ לַשָּׂאֵן אֶת אֲנָשֵׁי יְהוָה.
- וְחֵיל הַמֶּלֶךְ הָיָה קָטָן, כִּי הִפְחַת, וּבֵין שְׂאָר הָעָם קָם פְּלוּג.
- וּפְלָג הָעָם הִקְטִין לִנְשֹׂף אִיוִּמִּים עַל הַמֶּלֶךְ, וּמְרִיבָה גְדוֹלָה הִתְפַּתְּחָה בֵּינֵיהֶם.
- וְאִישׁ אֶחָד הָיָה בֵּינֵיהֶם, גִּדְעוֹן שְׁמוֹ; וּבְהִיּוֹתוֹ אִישׁ חֲזָק וְאוֹיֵב לַמֶּלֶךְ, הוּא שָׁלַף אֶת חֶרְבּוֹ, וְנִשְׁבַּע בְּחִמּוֹ כִּי יַהַרֵּג אֶת הַמֶּלֶךְ.
- וְהוּא לָחֵם בַּמֶּלֶךְ; וּבְרָאוֹת הַמֶּלֶךְ כִּי גִדְעוֹן גּוֹבֵר עָלָיו, הוּא בָּרַח וָרָץ וְעָלָה עַל הַמִּגְדָּל אֲשֶׁר אֶצֶל הַהֵיכָל.
- וְגִדְעוֹן רָדַף אַחֵר הַמֶּלֶךְ, וּבָא לַעֲלוֹת עַל הַמִּגְדָּל לַהֲרֹגוֹ; וּבִנְשָׂאוֹ הַמֶּלֶךְ אֶת עֵינָיו סָבִיב נֹכַח אֶרֶץ שְׁמֶלּוֹן, וְהִנֵּה צָבָא הַלְּמָנִיתִים בְּגִבּוֹל הָאֶרֶץ.
- וְהַמֶּלֶךְ קָרָא בְּמִצּוֹקַת נַפְשׁוֹ לֵאמֹר: גִּדְעוֹן, חוּסָה עָלַי כִּי בָּאִים הַלְּמָנִיתִים עָלֵינוּ לְהַשְׁמִידֵנוּ; אַכֵּן, הֵם יִשְׁמִידוּ אֶת עַמִּי.
- אֲךָ דָּאֲגַת הַמֶּלֶךְ הִרְבָּה לֹא הִיָּתָה לַעֲמוֹ כִּי אִם לַחַיָּיו. וְאוֹלָם, חָס גִּדְעוֹן עַל חַיָּיו.
- וְהַמֶּלֶךְ צִוָּה אֶת הָעָם לָנוֹס מִפְּנֵי הַלְּמָנִיתִים, וְהוּא עָצְמוֹ הָלַךְ בְּרֹאשָׁם; וְהֵם נָסוּ לַיַּעְרוֹת עִם נְשֵׁיהֶם וְיִלְדֵיהֶם.
- וְהַלְּמָנִיתִים רָדְפוּ אַחֲרֵיהֶם, וְהִשְׁיִגוּם וְהִחֲלוּ לַהֲרֹג בָּהֶם.
- וְהַמֶּלֶךְ צִוָּם לַעֲזֹב אֶת נְשֹׂתֵיהֶם וְטַפָּם וּלְנוֹס מִפְּנֵי הַלְּמָנִיתִים.
- אֲךָ הָיוּ רַבִּים אֲשֶׁר לֹא עָזְבוּם, כִּי בָחֲרוּ לְהִשָּׂאֵר וּלְמוֹת עִמָּהֶם. וְהַשְּׂאָר עָזְבוּ אֶת נְשֹׂתֵיהֶם וְטַפָּם וְנִמְלָטוּ.

- 13 והנשואים עם נשותיהם וטפם הורו לבנותיהם היפות לעמוד לפני הלקמים ולהתחנן כי לא יהרגום.
- 14 And it came to pass that those who tarried with their wives and their children caused that their fair daughters should stand forth and plead with the Lamanites that they would not slay them.
- 14 והלקמים חמלו עליהם, כי הקסמו מיפי נשיהם.
- 14 And it came to pass that the Lamanites had compassion on them, for they were charmed with the beauty of their women.
- 15 לכן חסו הלקמים על חייהם, ולקחו בשובי ונשואם אל ארץ נפי; והם התירו להם להחזיק בארץ בתנאי אשר יסגירו את המלך נח לידיהם, וימסרו את רכושם, מחצית מכל קנינם; והיא מחצית מזהבם ומכסףם ומכל יקרותיהם; וכך יעלו מס למלך הלקמים, מדי שנה בשנה.
- 15 Therefore the Lamanites did spare their lives, and took them captives and carried them back to the land of Nephi, and granted unto them that they might possess the land, under the conditions that they would deliver up king Noah into the hands of the Lamanites, and deliver up their property, even one half of all they possessed, one half of their gold, and their silver, and all their precious things, and thus they should pay tribute to the king of the Lamanites from year to year.
- 16 ובין הנשבים היה אחד מבני המלך, ושמו למחי.
- 16 And now there was one of the sons of the king among those that were taken captive, whose name was Limhi.
- 17 ולמחי חפץ כי לא יומת אביו; ואף כי לא נעלמו ממנו עוונות אביו, היה הוא איש ישר.
- 17 And now Limhi was desirous that his father should not be destroyed; nevertheless, Limhi was not ignorant of the iniquities of his father, he himself being a just man.
- 18 וגדעון שלח בסתר אנשים אל היערות, לחפש את המלך ואת ההולכים עמו. והם פגשו את האנשים ביערות, את כלם, זולת המלך וכהניו.
- 18 And it came to pass that Gideon sent men into the wilderness secretly, to search for the king and those that were with him. And it came to pass that they met the people in the wilderness, all save the king and his priests.
- 19 והאנשים נשבעו בלבם לשוב אל ארץ נפי; וכי אם הומתו נשותיהם וילדיהם וגם אלה אשר נשארו עם משפחתם, נקום ונקמו את דמם וימותו עמקם.
- 19 Now they had sworn in their hearts that they would return to the land of Nephi, and if their wives and their children were slain, and also those that had tarried with them, that they would seek revenge, and also perish with them.
- 20 והמלך צוה כי לא ישובו; והם רגזו עליו והמיתוהו באש.
- 20 And the king commanded them that they should not return; and they were angry with the king, and caused that he should suffer, even unto death by fire.
- 21 והם אמרו לתפוש גם את הכהנים ולהוציאם להורג, אף הם ברחו מפניהם.
- 21 And they were about to take the priests also and put them to death, and they fled before them.
- 22 והיה כי בעמדם לשוב אל ארץ נפי, הם פגשו את אנשי גדעון. ואנשי גדעון ספרו להם את כל אשר קרה לנשותיהם ולטפם; וכי הלקמים התירו להם להחזיק בארץ תמורת מס ללקמים בגבה מחצית כל קנינם.
- 22 And it came to pass that they were about to return to the land of Nephi, and they met the men of Gideon. And the men of Gideon told them of all that had happened to their wives and their children; and that the Lamanites had granted unto them that they might possess the land by paying a tribute to the Lamanites of one half of all they possessed.
- 23 והאנשים ספרו לאנשי גדעון כי הרגו את המלך וכי כהניו נמלטו מהם הרחק אל היערות.
- 23 And the people told the men of Gideon that they had slain the king, and his priests had fled from them farther into the wilderness.



## מושיע יט:כד-כ:ה

- 24 And it came to pass that after they had ended the ceremony, that they returned to the land of Nephi, rejoicing, because their wives and their children were not slain; and they told Gideon what they had done to the king.
- 25 And it came to pass that the king of the Lamanites made an oath unto them, that his people should not slay them.
- 26 And also Limhi, being the son of the king, having the kingdom conferred upon him by the people, made oath unto the king of the Lamanites that his people should pay tribute unto him, even one half of all they possessed.
- 27 And it came to pass that Limhi began to establish the kingdom and to establish peace among his people.
- 28 And the king of the Lamanites set guards round about the land, that he might keep the people of Limhi in the land, that they might not depart into the wilderness; and he did support his guards out of the tribute which he did receive from the Nephites.
- 29 And now king Limhi did have continual peace in his kingdom for the space of two years, that the Lamanites did not molest them nor seek to destroy them.
- וְאַחַר אֲשֶׁר כָּלוּ אֶת הַטָּקֶס, שָׁבוּ אֶל אֶרֶץ נְפִי בְשִׂמְחָה, כִּי נִשְׁוֹתֵיהֶם וְטַפָּם לֹא הוּמָתוּ; וְהֵם סִפְּרוּ לְגִדְעוֹן מָה עָשׂוּ לַמֶּלֶךְ.
- וּמֶלֶךְ הַלְּמָנִים נִשְׁבַּע לָהֶם, כִּי אֲנִשְׁוֵי לֹא יִהְרָגוּם.
- וְלִמְחִי, בֶּן הַמֶּלֶךְ נָח, בְּקִבְלוֹ מִן הָעָם אֶת הַמְּלוּכָה, נִשְׁבַּע לַמֶּלֶךְ הַלְּמָנִים כִּי עִמּוֹ יִשְׁלַם לוֹ אֶת הַמַּס, אֶת מִחְצִית כָּל קִנְיָנָם.
- וְלִמְחִי הֵחֵל לְכוֹנֵן אֶת הַמְּלוּכָה וּלְהַשְׁכִּין שָׁלוֹם בְּקִרְבָּם עִמּוֹ.
- וּמֶלֶךְ הַלְּמָנִים הִפְקִיד שׁוּמְרִים סָבִיב הָאָרֶץ, לְשָׁמֹר אֶת עַם לִמְחִי בָּאָרֶץ, לְמַעַן לֹא יֵצְאוּ אֶל הַיַּעְרוֹת; וְהוּא כָּלְכָל אֶת שׁוּמְרָיו בַּמַּס אֲשֶׁר קִבֵּל מִן הַנֶּפְתִּיִּים.
- וְהָיָה שָׁלוֹם בַּמְּלָכוּת לִמְחִי בְּמִשְׁךָ שְׁנַתַּיִם יָמִים, וְלֹא הִצִּיקוּ לָהֶם הַלְּמָנִים וְלֹא בִקְשׁוּ לְהַשְׁמִידָם.

## כ

## 20

- 1 Now there was a place in Shemlon where the daughters of the Lamanites did gather themselves together to sing, and to dance, and to make themselves merry.
- 2 And it came to pass that there was one day a small number of them gathered together to sing and to dance.
- 3 And now the priests of king Noah, being ashamed to return to the city of Nephi, yea, and also fearing that the people would slay them, therefore they durst not return to their wives and their children.
- 4 And having tarried in the wilderness, and having discovered the daughters of the Lamanites, they laid and watched them;
- 5 And when there were but few of them gathered together to dance, they came forth out of their secret places and took them and carried them into the wilderness; yea, twenty and four of the daughters of the Lamanites they carried into the wilderness.
- וּמְקוֹם הָיָה בָּאָרֶץ שְׁמֶלּוֹן, אֲשֶׁר נִקְבְּצוּ בוֹ בָנוֹת הַלְּמָנִים לְשִׁיר וּלְרֹקֵד וּלְעֵלֹז.
- וְהָיָה הַיּוֹם וּמִקְצֶתָן נִקְבְּצוּ לְשִׁיר וּלְרֹקֵד.
- וְכַהֲנֵי הַמֶּלֶךְ נָח, יָעַן אֲשֶׁר בּוֹשׁוּ לָשׁוּב אֶל הָעִיר נְפִי, וַיַּעַן אֲשֶׁר פָּחְדוּ כִּי יִהְרָגֵם הָעָם, לֹא הֵעֲזוּ לָשׁוּב אֶל נִשְׁוֹתֵיהֶם וְיִלְדֵיהֶם.
- וּבְשׁוֹטְטָם בַּיַּעְרוֹת הֵם גָּלוּ אֶת בָּנוֹת הַלְּמָנִים, וְשָׁכְבוּ וְחָזוּ בָהֶן.
- וְהָיָה בַּיּוֹם אֲשֶׁר רַק נִקְבְּצוּ מֵעֵטָן לְרֹקֵד, יֵצְאוּ הַכַּהֲנִים מִמְּסָתֵיהֶם וְלָקְחוּ וַנָּשְׂאוּ אוֹתָן אֶל הַיַּעְרוֹת; אַכֵּן, עֶשְׂרִים וָאַרְבַּע מִבָּנוֹת הַלְּמָנִים נָשְׂאוּ אֶל הַיַּעְרוֹת.



- 6 And it came to pass that when the Lamanites found that their daughters had been missing, they were angry with the people of Limhi, for they thought it was the people of Limhi.
- וַהֲנִדְעוּ לְלִמְחִי כִּי נִפְקְדוּ בְּנוֹתֵיהֶם הֵם רָגְזוּ עַל עַם לְמַחִי, כִּי שָׁעְרוּ בְּנַפְשָׁם כִּי יָדָם בַּמַּעֲשֶׂה.
- 7 Therefore they sent their armies forth; yea, even the king himself went before his people; and they went up to the land of Nephi to destroy the people of Limhi.
- וְהֵם שָׁלְחוּ אֶת חִילוֹתֵיהֶם, וְאִף מֶלֶכָם בְּרֹאשׁוֹ; וְהֵם עָלוּ עַל אֶרֶץ נֶפְחִי לְהַשְׁמִיד אֶת עַם לְמַחִי.
- 8 And now Limhi had discovered them from the tower, even all their preparations for war did he discover; therefore he gathered his people together, and laid wait for them in the fields and in the forests.
- וְלִמְחִי גִלָּה אוֹתָם מִן הַמִּגְדָּל, אֶת כָּל תְּכוּנָתָם לְמַלְחָמָה גִּלָּה; וְהוּא אָסַף אֶת עַמּוֹ וְהֵם שָׁכְבוּ בַּמְּאָרֵב בַּשָּׂדוֹת וּבַיַּעֲרוֹת.
- 9 And it came to pass that when the Lamanites had come up, that the people of Limhi began to fall upon them from their waiting places, and began to slay them.
- וּבַעֲלוֹת הַלָּמָנִיתִים, נָפְלוּ עֲלֵיהֶם אֲנָשֵׁי לְמַחִי מִמְּאָרְבֵּיהֶם וְהֵחִלוּ לְהַרְגֵם בָּהֶם.
- 10 And it came to pass that the battle became exceedingly sore, for they fought like lions for their prey.
- וְהִקְרֵב הָיָה קָשָׁה מְאֹד, כִּי נִלְחְמוּ כְּהִלָּחֵם אֲרִיּוֹת עַל טְרֶפֶס.
- 11 And it came to pass that the people of Limhi began to drive the Lamanites before them; yet they were not half so numerous as the Lamanites. But they fought for their lives, and for their wives, and for their children; therefore they exerted themselves and like dragons did they fight.
- וְהָיָה כִּי הֵחִלוּ אֲנָשֵׁי לְמַחִי לְגַרֵּשׁ אֶת הַלָּמָנִיתִים מִעֲלֵיהֶם, אֲף כִּי לֹא הָיוּ עֲדָה לְמַחֲצִית מִמֶּסְפָּרָם. אֲף הֵם נִלְחְמוּ עַל חַיֵּיהֶם, עַל נְשֹׁוֹתֵיהֶם וְעַל יְלָדֵיהֶם; לָכֵן הִתְאַמְּצוּ מְאֹד וְנִלְחְמוּ כְּתַנִּינִים.
- 12 And it came to pass that they found the king of the Lamanites among the number of their dead; yet he was not dead, having been wounded and left upon the ground, so speedy was the flight of his people.
- וְהֵם מְצְאוּ בְּקֶרֶב הַהַרוּגִים אֶת מֶלֶךְ הַלָּמָנִיתִים; אוֹלָם הוּא לֹא מֵת, כִּי אִם נִפְצַע וְנִעָזַב עַל הָאֶרֶץ, כִּי נִחְפְּזוּ מְאֹד אֲנָשָׁיו לְבָרַח.
- 13 And they took him and bound up his wounds, and brought him before Limhi, and said: Behold, here is the king of the Lamanites; he having received a wound has fallen among their dead, and they have left him; and behold, we have brought him before you; and now let us slay him.
- וְהֵם לָקְחוּהוּ, וְחָבְשׁוּ אֶת פְּצָעָיו, וְהֵבִיאוּהוּ לְפָנֵי לְמַחִי, וְאָמְרוּ: הִנֵּה מֶלֶךְ הַלָּמָנִיתִים; נִפְצַע הוּא וְנָפַל בֵּין הַרוּגִים, וְהֵם עָזְבוּהוּ; הִנֵּה, הֵבֵאנוּ אוֹתוֹ לְפָנֶיךָ, הֲבָה נַהַרְגֵהוּ.
- 14 But Limhi said unto them: Ye shall not slay him, but bring him hither that I may see him. And they brought him. And Limhi said unto him: What cause have ye to come up to war against my people? Behold, my people have not broken the oath that I made unto you; therefore, why should ye break the oath which ye made unto my people?
- אֲךָ לְמַחִי אָמַר אֲלֵיהֶם: לֹא תַהַרְגוּהוּ, כִּי אֲלִי תֵבִיאוּהוּ לְמַעַן אֶרְאֶהוּ. וּבִהְבִּיאָם אוֹתוֹ אָמַר אֲלֵי לְמַחִי: מַה זֶּה הֵבִיאָכֶם לָצֵאת לְמַלְחָמָה עָלַי? הֵן לֹא הִפַּר עַמִּי אֶת הַשְּׁבוּעָה אֲשֶׁר נִשְׁבַּעְתִּי לָךְ. עַל כֵּן, מַדּוּעַ הִפַּרְתֶּם אֶת הַשְּׁבוּעָה אֲשֶׁר נִשְׁבַּעְתֶּם לְעַמִּי?
- 15 And now the king said: I have broken the oath because thy people did carry away the daughters of my people; therefore, in my anger I did cause my people to come up to war against thy people.
- וְאָמַר הַמֶּלֶךְ: הִפַּרְתִּי אֶת הַשְּׁבוּעָה כִּי אֲנִישֶׁיךָ חָטְפוּ אֶת בָּנוֹת עַמִּי; לָכֵן צִוִּיתִי, בְּחִמְתִּי, עַל עַמִּי לָצֵאת לְמַלְחָמָה עַל עַמְּךָ.
- 16 And now Limhi had heard nothing concerning this matter; therefore he said: I will search among my people and whosoever has done this
- וְלִמְחִי לֹא שָׁמַע מֵאוֹמָה עַל הַדָּבָר הַזֶּה; לָכֵן אָמַר: אֲנִי אַחְקֹר בְּקֶרֶב עַמִּי וְכָל אֲשֶׁר עָשָׂה

## מוֹשִׁיעַ כ:יז–כו

- זאת מות יומת. והוא צָוָה לְעֶרְךָ חֲקִירָה  
בְּקֶרֶב עַמּוֹ.  
17 Now when Gideon had heard these things, he being the king's captain, he went forth and said unto the king: I pray thee forbear, and do not search this people, and lay not this thing to their charge.
- וְכַשְׁמַע גִּדְעוֹן, אֲשֶׁר הָיָה שָׂר צָבָא הַמֶּלֶךְ,  
אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, הוּא נָגַשׁ אֶל הַמֶּלֶךְ וְאָמַר  
אֵלָיו: אֲנִי, הַתְּאַפֵּק וְאַל תַּחְקֹר בְּעַם הַזֶּה,  
וְאַל תִּשֶׂים עֲלֵיהֶם אֶת הָאָשָׁם הַזֶּה.  
18 For do ye not remember the priests of thy father, whom this people sought to destroy? And are they not in the wilderness? And are not they the ones who have stolen the daughters of the Lamanites?
- הַאִיִּנָּה זֹכֵר אֶת כֹּהֲנֵי אָבִיו, אֲשֶׁר בִּקְשׁוּ הָעָם  
הַזֶּה לְהָרְגָם? הֲאֵין הֵם בְּיַעְרֹת? הֲאֵין הֵם  
הַנְּשִׂים אֲשֶׁר גָּזְלוּ אֶת בָּנוֹת הַלְּמָנִיתִים?  
19 And now, behold, and tell the king of these things, that he may tell his people that they may be pacified towards us; for behold they are already preparing to come against us; and behold also there are but few of us.
- הִנֵּה, סֹפֵר נָא לְמֶלֶךְ הַלְּמָנִיתִים עַל הַדְּבָרִים  
הָאֵלֶּה, לְמַעַן יִסְפְּרֶם לְעַמּוֹ וְיִרְגֹּעַ אֶת רוּחָם  
עָלֵינוּ. כִּי הִנֵּה הֵם נֹעְרָכִים כְּבָר לְצֹאת עָלֵינוּ;  
וְהֵן רַק מְעַשִּׂים אֲנַחְנוּ.  
20 And behold, they come with their numerous hosts; and except the king doth pacify them towards us we must perish.
- הִנֵּה בָּאִים הֵם בְּחִילוּתֵיהֶם הַרְבֵּים; וְאִם לֹא  
יִשְׁכַּף הַמֶּלֶךְ אֶת רוּחָם עָלֵינוּ, אָבוֹד אֲבָדְנוּ.  
21 For are not the words of Abinadi fulfilled, which he prophesied against us—and all this because we would not hearken unto the words of the Lord, and turn from our iniquities?
- הֲאֵין דְּבָרֵי אֲבִינָדִי אֲשֶׁר נִבֵּא עָלֵינוּ  
מִתְקַיָּמִים? וְכָל זֹאת כִּי לֹא שָׁמַעְנוּ לְדְּבָרֵי  
יְהוָה וְלֹא שָׁבְנוּ מִמַּעֲוֹנוֹתֵינוּ?  
22 And now let us pacify the king, and we fulfil the oath which we have made unto him; for it is better that we should be in bondage than that we should lose our lives; therefore, let us put a stop to the shedding of so much blood.
- הֲבֵיא נִשְׁקִיט אֶת הַמֶּלֶךְ וְנִקְנִים אֶת הַשְּׁבוּעָה  
אֲשֶׁר נִשְׁבַּעְנוּ לוֹ; כִּי טוֹב הָיִיתָנוּ מִשְׁעַבְדִּים  
מֵאֲבִד אֶת חַיֵּינוּ; עַל כֵּן, הֲבֵיא נָשִׂים קֹץ  
לְשִׁפְכוֹת הַדָּמִים הַגְּדוֹלָה.  
23 And now Limhi told the king all the things concerning his father, and the priests that had fled into the wilderness, and attributed the carrying away of their daughters to them.
- וְלִמְחִי סֹפֵר לְמֶלֶךְ אֶת כָּל הַדְּבָרִים עַל אֲדוֹת  
אָבִיו וְעַל הַכֹּהֲנִים אֲשֶׁר נָסוּ אֶל הַיַּעְרֹת;  
וְהוּא תָּלָה בָּהֶם אֶת חֲטִיפַת בָּנוֹת הַלְּמָנִיתִים.  
24 And it came to pass that the king was pacified towards his people; and he said unto them: Let us go forth to meet my people, without arms; and I swear unto you with an oath that my people shall not slay thy people.
- אִז שָׁכַף כַּעַס הַמֶּלֶךְ אֶל אָנְשֵׁי לְמַחֵי וְהוּא  
אָמַר אֲלֵיהֶם: הֲבֵיא נֵלֶךְ לִקְרֹאת אָנְשֵׁי בְּלִי כְּלִי  
נֶשֶׁק, וְאֲנִי נִשְׁבַּע לָכֶם שְׁבוּעָה כִּי לֹא יִהְיֶה  
עִמִּי אֶת עַמּוֹ.  
25 And it came to pass that they followed the king, and went forth without arms to meet the Lamanites. And it came to pass that they did meet the Lamanites; and the king of the Lamanites did bow himself down before them, and did plead in behalf of the people of Limhi.
- אִז הָלְכוּ אָנְשֵׁי לְמַחֵי אַחֵר הַמֶּלֶךְ בְּלִי כְּלִי  
נֶשֶׁק לִקְרֹאת הַלְּמָנִיתִים, וּבִפְגֻשָּׁם אֶת הַלְּמָנִיתִים  
הַשְׁתַּחֲוָה לִפְנֵיהֶם מֶלֶךְ הַלְּמָנִיתִים וְהִעֲתִיר דְּבָרוֹ  
בְּזָכוֹת עִם לְמַחֵי.  
26 And when the Lamanites saw the people of Limhi, that they were without arms, they had compassion on them and were pacified towards them, and returned with their king in peace to their own land.
- וְכִרְאוֹת הַלְּמָנִיתִים אֶת אָנְשֵׁי לְמַחֵי כִּי אֵין  
חַמוּשִׁים, נִכְמְרוּ רַחֲמֵיהֶם וְלָבָם שָׁקֵט. אִז  
שָׁבוּ עִם מֶלְכָם בְּשָׁלוֹם אֶל אֶרְצָם.

## כֹּא

## 21

- וְלִמְחִי וְאֶנְשָׁיו שָׁבוּ אֶל הָעִיר נָפִי, וַהֲחֵלוּ  
לְשֹׁכֵן שְׁנִית בְּאֶרֶץ בְּשָׁלוֹם. 1 And it came to pass that Limhi and his people returned to the city of Nephi, and began to dwell in the land again in peace.
- וְהָיָה אַחֵר יָמִים רַבִּים, הֵחֵלוּ הַלְּמָנִים שְׁנִית  
לְהִתְעוֹרֵר בְּרָגֶז עַל הַנְּפִיִּים; וְהֵם בָּאוּ בְּגִבּוֹל  
הָאֶרֶץ סָבִיב. 2 And it came to pass that after many days the Lamanites began again to be stirred up in anger against the Nephites, and they began to come into the borders of the land round about.
- וְלֹא הָעִזּוּ הַלְּמָנִים לְהָרְגֵם מִפְּנֵי הַשְּׁבוּעָה אֲשֶׁר  
נִשְׁבַּע מֶלֶכָם לְלִמְחִי; אֲךָ הֵם הָכּוּ עַל לְחֵייהֶם  
וְהִשְׁתַּרְרוּ עֲלֵיהֶם; וְהֵם שָׂמוּ עַל גֻּבֶם מִשְׁאוֹת  
כְּבָדִים וְנִהְגוּם כְּנֶהֱגַת חֲמוֹר אֱלָם. 3 Now they durst not slay them, because of the oath which their king had made unto Limhi; but they would smite them on their cheeks, and exercise authority over them; and began to put heavy burdens upon their backs, and drive them as they would a dumb ass—
- כָּל זֹאת נַעֲשָׂה כְּדִי לְהַקִּים אֶת דְּבַר יְהוָה. 4 Yea, all this was done that the word of the Lord might be fulfilled.
- וְרַבּוּ עֲנֻיֵּי הַנְּפִיִּים, וְלֹא עָלָה בְּיָדָם לְהַחֲלֹץ  
מִיַּדִּי הַלְּמָנִים כִּי הִקִּיפוּם מִכָּל עֵבֶר. 5 And now the afflictions of the Nephites were great, and there was no way that they could deliver themselves out of their hands, for the Lamanites had surrounded them on every side.
- וְהָאֶנְשִׁים הֵחֵלוּ לְהִתְלַוֵּן לִפְנֵי הַמֶּלֶךְ  
עַל עֲנֻיֵּיהֶם; וְהֵם בִּקְשׁוּ לְצֵאתָ עַל מַעֲנֵיהֶם  
לְמַלְחָמָה וְהֵם הִצִּיקוּ מְאֹד לְמֶלֶךְ בְּתִלְוֹתֵיהֶם,  
עַד כִּי נָעֲתַר לָהֶם לַעֲשׂוֹת כַּחפְצָם. 6 And it came to pass that the people began to murmur with the king because of their afflictions; and they began to be desirous to go against them to battle. And they did afflict the king sorely with their complaints; therefore he granted unto them that they should do according to their desires.
- וְהֵם הִתְקַבְּצוּ שְׁנִית יַחְדוֹ וַחֲגֹרוּ אֶת כָּלִי  
נִשְׁקָם וַיֵּצְאוּ עַל הַלְּמָנִים לְגָרֶשׁם מֵאֶרְצָם. 7 And they gathered themselves together again, and put on their armor, and went forth against the Lamanites to drive them out of their land.
- וְהַלְּמָנִים הִכּוּם וַגִּרְשׁוּם לְאַחֹר וַהֲרִגוּ  
רַבִּים מֵהֶם. 8 And it came to pass that the Lamanites did beat them, and drove them back, and slew many of them.
- אֲזִי הָיָה אֶבֶל וּמִסְפַּד גָּדוֹל בְּעַם לִמְחִי, אֵלְמָנָה  
הַתְּאַבְּלָה עַל בַּעְלָהּ, בֵּן וּבַת הַתְּאַבְּלוּ עַל  
אֲבֵיהֶם וְאֶחָיו עַל אֶחָיהֶם. 9 And now there was a great mourning and lamentation among the people of Limhi, the widow mourning for her husband, the son and the daughter mourning for their father, and the brothers for their brethren.
- וְהָאֵלְמָנוֹת רַבּוּ בְּאֶרֶץ וַיַּעֲקוּ יוֹסִיּוֹם, כִּי גָבַר  
עָלֵיהֶן פַּחַד גָּדוֹל מִפְּנֵי הַלְּמָנִים. 10 Now there were a great many widows in the land, and they did cry mightily from day to day, for a great fear of the Lamanites had come upon them.
- וַיַּעֲקוּתֵיהֶן בְּלֹא הַפִּגְוָה עוֹרְרוּ בְּשִׂאֲרֵית  
עַם לִמְחִי כַּעַס עַל הַלְּמָנִים; וְהֵם יֵצְאוּ שְׁנִית  
לְקָרֵב, אֲךָ גַּם הַפַּעַם נִסּוּגוּ אַחֹר וְלָהֶם  
אֲבֹדוֹת כְּבָדוֹת. 11 And it came to pass that their continual cries did stir up the remainder of the people of Limhi to anger against the Lamanites; and they went again to battle, but they were driven back again, suffering much loss.

## מוֹשִׁיעַ כֹּא:יב-כא

- 12 והם הוסיפו לַצָּאת בַּפֶּעַם הַשְּׁלִישִׁית, וְסָבְלוּ כְּלָפְנִים; וְאֲשֶׁר לֹא נִהָרְגוּ שָׁבוּ אֶל הָעִיר נֶפִּי.
- 13 והם הִשְׁפִּילוּ עַצְמָם עַד עָפָר וְנִכְנְעוּ תַּחַת עַל הַשְׁעָבוֹד וְנָתְנוּ עַצְמָם לְמַכּוֹת, נִדְּחִים הֵנָּה וְהֵנָּה, וְסוֹבְלִים מִמַּעֲמָסוֹת כַּחפֶּץ לֵב אוֹיְבֵיהֶם.
- 14 והם נִכְנְעוּ עַד מַעֲמָקֵי הָעֲנוּהָ, וְזָעְקוּ אֶל אֱלֹהִים; כָּל הַיּוֹם שָׁעוּ אֶל אֱלֹהֵיהֶם כִּי יַחֲלָצֵם מִיָּסוּרֵיהֶם.
- 15 And now the Lord was slow to hear their cry because of their iniquities; nevertheless the Lord did hear their cries, and began to soften the hearts of the Lamanites that they began to ease their burdens; yet the Lord did not see fit to deliver them out of bondage.
- 16 ואִם-אֵת הֵם הִחֲלוּ לַעֲשׂוֹת חֵיל בְּאַרְצָא, וְהִגְבִּירוּ אֶת יְבוֹל הָגֶנֶס, וְגִדֹל צֹאנָם וּבָקָרָם, וְלֹא סָבְלוּ רָעָב.
- 17 ומִסְפַּר הַנָּשִׁים רַב הָיָה מִמִּסְפַּר הַגָּבָרִים; עַל כֵּן צִוָּה הַמֶּלֶךְ לְמַחִי כִּי יַחֲלֹק כָּל גָּבֵר מִמְּזוֹנוֹ בְּאַלְמָנוֹת וּבְיָלְדֵיהֶן, לְמַעַן לֹא יָמוּתוּ בָרָעָב. וְהֵם עָשׂוּ כֵן, כִּי גִדֹל הָיָה מִסְפַּר הַגָּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר נִהָרְגוּ.
- 18 וְאֲנָשֵׁי לְמַחִי, כָּכֹל אֲשֶׁר יָכְלוּ הִתְחַבְּרוּ לְחֻבָּר מֵאַחַד וְשִׁמְרוּ הַיֵּטֵב אֶת גִּרְעֵינֵי תְּבוּאַתָּם וְאֶת צֹאנָם.
- 19 And the king himself did not trust his person without the walls of the city, unless he took his guards with him, fearing that he might by some means fall into the hands of the Lamanites.
- 20 והוא צִוָּה אֶת עַמּוֹ לִקְיָם תְּצִפִּית מִסְבִּיב לְאַרְצָא, לְמַעַן יִיכָלוּ בְּדֶרֶךְ כָּל־שֹׁהֵי לְתַפֵּשׂ אֶת הַכֹּהֲנִים אֲשֶׁר בָּרְחוּ אֶל הַיַּעְרוֹת, וְאֲשֶׁר חֲטָפוּ אֶת בָּנוֹת הַלְּמָנִים וְהִסְבוּ חֲרָבָן רַב כָּל כּוֹף לְעַמּוֹ.
- 21 כִּי הֵם חָפְצוּ לְתַפֵּשׂ אוֹתָם וּלְהַעֲנִיֵּשׁ; כִּי נִכְנְסוּ אֶל אֶרֶץ נֶפִּי בַלַּיְלָה וְגָזְלוּ אֶת תְּבוּאַת גִּרְעֵינֵיהֶם וְרַבִּים מִיְּקָרוֹתֵיהֶם; לָכֵן אָרְבוּ לָהֶם.

- 22 And it came to pass that there was no more disturbance between the Lamanites and the people of Limhi, even until the time that Ammon and his brethren came into the land.
- וְלֹא הָיְתָה עוֹד הַפְּרָעָה בֵּין הַלְּמָנִים וּבֵין עַם לְמַחִי, עַד עֵת בּוֹא עַמּוֹן וְאַנְשֵׁיוֹ אֶל הָאָרֶץ.
- 23 And the king having been without the gates of the city with his guard, discovered Ammon and his brethren; and supposing them to be priests of Noah therefore he caused that they should be taken, and bound, and cast into prison. And had they been the priests of Noah he would have caused that they should be put to death.
- וּבָעֵת אֲשֶׁר גָּלָה הַמֶּלֶךְ אֶת עַמּוֹן וְאַנְשָׁיו, הוּא הָיָה עִם שׁוּמְרָיו מִחוּץ לְשַׁעְרֵי הָעִיר; וּבִסְבָּרוֹ כִּי הֵם כֹּהֲנֵי נֹחַ צִוָּה לְתַפְּשָׁם וּלְאַסְרָם וּלְהַשְׁלִיכָם אֶל בֵּית הַסֵּהַר. וְאִלּוּ הָיוּ הֵם כֹּהֲנֵי נֹחַ, הָיָה מְצִוָּה לְהוֹצִיאָם לְהוֹרֵג.
- 24 But when he found that they were not, but that they were his brethren, and had come from the land of Zarahemla, he was filled with exceedingly great joy.
- אֲךָ כַּאֲשֶׁר נֹכַח כִּי אֵין הֵם כֹּהֲנֵי נֹחַ, כִּי אִם חֻבְרָיו אֲשֶׁר בָּאוּ מֵאֶרֶץ זֶרַחְמֶלָה, נִמְלָא לְבוֹ שִׂמְחָה רַבָּה מְאֹד.
- 25 Now king Limhi had sent, previous to the coming of Ammon, a small number of men to search for the land of Zarahemla; but they could not find it, and they were lost in the wilderness.
- כִּי עוֹד לִפְנֵי בּוֹא עַמּוֹן, שָׁלַח הַמֶּלֶךְ לְמַחִי מִסְפָּר אֲנָשִׁים לְחַפֵּשׁ אֶת אֶרֶץ זֶרַחְמֶלָה, אֲךָ הֵם לֹא מְצָאוּהָ וְתָעוּ בִּיעָרוֹת.
- 26 Nevertheless, they did find a land which had been peopled; yea, a land which was covered with dry bones; yea, a land which had been peopled and which had been destroyed; and they, having supposed it to be the land of Zarahemla, returned to the land of Nephi, having arrived in the borders of the land not many days before the coming of Ammon.
- אוּלָּם הֵם מְצָאוּ אֶרֶץ אֲשֶׁר נִשְׁכָּה פֶּעַם, אֶרֶץ מְכֻסָּה עֲצָמוֹת יְבִשׁוֹת; אֲכֹן, אֶרֶץ אֲשֶׁר נִשְׁכָּה וְנִחְרְבָה. וַיַּעַן אֲשֶׁר דָּמוּ כִּי אֶרֶץ זֶרַחְמֶלָה לִפְנֵיהֶם, שָׁבוּ אֶל אֶרֶץ נְפִי, וּבָאוּ בְּגִבּוֹלָה יָמִים אַחֲדִים לִפְנֵי הוֹפְעַת עַמּוֹן.
- 27 And they brought a record with them, even a record of the people whose bones they had found; and it was engraven on plates of ore.
- וְהֵם הֵבִיאוּ עִמָּהֶם כְּתָב זִכְרוֹנוֹת, וְהוּא מֵאֵת הָאֲנָשִׁים אֲשֶׁר אֶת עֲצָמוֹתֵיהֶם מְצָאוּ; וְהַכְּתוּבִים הָיוּ חֲרוּטִים עַל לוחות מתכת.
- 28 And now Limhi was again filled with joy in learning from the mouth of Ammon that king Mosiah had a gift from God, whereby he could interpret such engravings; yea, and Ammon also did rejoice.
- וּלְמַחִי הוֹסִיף לִשְׂמֹחַ בְּהִנָּדַע לוֹ מִפִּי עַמּוֹן כִּי לְמוֹשִׁיָּע מֵמַת אֱלֹהִים, אֲשֶׁר עַל יְדִיהָ יוֹכֵל לְפָרֵשׁ חֲרִיטוֹת כְּאֵלֶּה; וְאַף עַמּוֹן עָלָּז בְּזֹאת.
- 29 Yet Ammon and his brethren were filled with sorrow because so many of their brethren had been slain;
- וְאוּלָּם מָה עָגְמָה נָפַשׁ עַמּוֹן וְאַנְשָׁיו עַל כִּי רַבִּים כָּל כֶּף מֵאֲנָשֵׁי לְמַחִי נִהָרְגוּ.
- 30 And also that king Noah and his priests had caused the people to commit so many sins and iniquities against God; and they also did mourn for the death of Abinadi; and also for the departure of Alma and the people that went with him, who had formed a church of God through the strength and power of God, and faith on the words which had been spoken by Abinadi.
- וְהֵם גַּם נִעְצְבוּ עַל כִּי הִחֲטִיאוּ הַמֶּלֶךְ נֹחַ וְכֹהֲנָיו אֶת הָעָם לַעֲשׂוֹת חֲטָא רַב וּפָשַׁע לִפְנֵי אֱלֹהִים. וְהֵם אַף הִתְאַבְּלוּ עַל מוֹת אַבִּינָדִי וְעַל עֲזִיבַת עֲלְמָא וְהָאֲנָשִׁים אֲשֶׁר הָלְכוּ אִתּוֹ, אֲשֶׁר יִסְדּוּ כְּנִסֵּית אֱלֹהִים בְּגִבּוֹרַת אֱלֹהִים וּכְחוֹ, וּבְאַמּוּנָה בְּדִבְרִים אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר אַבִּינָדִי.
- 31 Yea, they did mourn for their departure, for they knew not whither they had fled. Now they would have gladly joined with them, for they themselves had entered into a covenant with God to serve him and keep his commandments.
- אֲכֹן, הֵם אֲבָלוּ עַל עֲזִיבָתָם, כִּי לֹא יָדְעוּ לָאֵן נִמְלָטוּ; וְהֵם הָיוּ מִתְחַבְּרִים לָהֶם בְּחֻפְזָם לָב, כִּי הֵם עֲצָמָם נִכְנסוּ בְּבְרִית עִם אֱלֹהִים לְשָׁרְתוֹ וּלְשִׁמּוֹר אֶת מִצְוֹתָיו.



- 32 And now since the coming of Ammon, king Limhi had also entered into a covenant with God, and also many of his people, to serve him and keep his commandments.
- 33 And it came to pass that king Limhi and many of his people were desirous to be baptized; but there was none in the land that had authority from God. And Ammon declined doing this thing, considering himself an unworthy servant.
- 34 Therefore they did not at that time form themselves into a church, waiting upon the Spirit of the Lord. Now they were desirous to become even as Alma and his brethren, who had fled into the wilderness.
- 35 They were desirous to be baptized as a witness and a testimony that they were willing to serve God with all their hearts; nevertheless they did prolong the time; and an account of their baptism shall be given hereafter.
- 36 And now all the study of Ammon and his people, and king Limhi and his people, was to deliver themselves out of the hands of the Lamanites and from bondage.
- וּמַעַתָּה בּוֹא עֲמוֹן, גַּם הַמֶּלֶךְ לִמְחִי, וְכֹן רַבִּים מֵעַמּוֹ, נִכְנְסוּ לְבְרִית עִם אֱלֹהִים, לְשֵׁרֵת אוֹתוֹ וּלְשָׁמֹר אֶת מִצְוֹתָיו.
- וְהַמֶּלֶךְ לִמְחִי וְרַבִּים מֵעַמּוֹ חָפְצוּ לְהִטָּבֵל; אֲךָ לֹא הָיָה אִף אִישׁ בְּאַרְץ אֲשֶׁר קִבֵּל לְכֹד סִמְכוֹת מֵאֵת אֱלֹהִים. וְעַמּוֹן נִמְנַע מֵעֲשׂוֹת אֶת הַדְּבָר הַזֶּה, כִּי הִחְשִׁיב עֲצָמוֹ עֶבֶד בְּלֹתִי רָאוּי.
- לְכֹן לֹא עָרְכוּ עֲצָמָם לְכַנְסִיָּה בְּעֵת הַהִיא, וְחָכוּ לְקַבֵּל רוּחַ יְהוָה. אֲךָ חָפְצוּ לְשׁוֹת לְעֵלְמָא וּלְאַחֵיו, אֲשֶׁר בָּרְחוּ אֶל הַיַּעְרוֹת.
- אָכֵן, חָפְצָם הָיָה לְהִטָּבֵל כְּרֵאִיָּה וּכְעֹדוֹת עַל רְצוֹנָם לְשֵׁרֵת אֶת אֱלֹהִים בְּכָל לֵבָם; אוּלָם הֵם הִאָּרִיכוּ אֶת הָעֵת; וְעוֹד יִסְפָּר בְּהַמְשָׁךְ הַדְּבָרִים עַל טִבְלָתָם.
- וּמַעַתָּה הִיָּתָה כָּל דְּאֶגְתָּ עֲמוֹן וְאַנְשָׁיו, וְהַמֶּלֶךְ לִמְחִי וְעַמּוֹ, לְחַלֵּץ עֲצָמָם מִיַּד הַלְּמָנִים וּמִן הַשְּׁעָבוֹד.

## כב

## 22

- 1 And now it came to pass that Ammon and king Limhi began to consult with the people how they should deliver themselves out of bondage; and even they did cause that all the people should gather themselves together; and this they did that they might have the voice of the people concerning the matter.
- 2 And it came to pass that they could find no way to deliver themselves out of bondage, except it were to take their women and children, and their flocks, and their herds, and their tents, and depart into the wilderness; for the Lamanites being so numerous, it was impossible for the people of Limhi to contend with them, thinking to deliver themselves out of bondage by the sword.
- 3 Now it came to pass that Gideon went forth and stood before the king, and said unto him: Now O king, thou hast hitherto hearkened unto my words many times when we have been contending with our brethren, the Lamanites.
- 4 And now O king, if thou hast not found me to be an unprofitable servant, or if thou hast hitherto listened to my words in any degree, and they have been of service to thee, even so I desire that thou wouldst
- וְעַמּוֹן וְהַמֶּלֶךְ לִמְחִי הֵחֵלוּ לְהִתְעִיץ עִם הָעָם בְּאִיזָה אֲפֹן עֲלֵיהֶם לְחַלֵּץ עֲצָמָם מִן הַשְּׁעָבוֹד; וְהֵם הוֹרּוּ לְכָל הָעָם לְהִתְקַבֵּץ יַחַד; וְזֹאת עָשׂוּ לְמַעַן תִּשְׁמַע בְּאִזְנֵיהֶם דְּעַת הָעָם בְּדִבְרֵי הַזֶּה.
- וְהֵם לֹא יָכוּלִים הָיוּ לְמַצֵּא אִף דֶּרֶךְ אַחֶרֶת לְהַשְׁתַּחֲרֵר מִן הַשְּׁעָבוֹד, בְּלֹתִי אִם לְקַחַת אֶת נְשֵׁיהֶם וְיִלְדֵיהֶם, צֹאנָם וּבָקָרָם וְאַהֲלֵיהֶם וּלְצֹאֹת אֹתָם אֶל הַיַּעְרוֹת. כִּי כֹה רַבִּים הָיוּ הַלְּמָנִים, עַד כִּי נִמְנַע מֵעַם לִמְחִי לְהִלָּחֵם בָּהֶם בַּחֶרֶב כְּדִי לְהַחֲלִץ מִן הַשְּׁעָבוֹד.
- אִז הָלַךְ גִּדְעוֹן, וְעָמַד לִפְנֵי הַמֶּלֶךְ וְאָמַר אֵלָיו: אֲדוֹנִי הַמֶּלֶךְ, פְּעָמִים רַבּוֹת עַד כֹּה שָׁמַעְתָּ לְדִבְרִי, בְּעֵת מֵאֲבָקִינוּ בְּאַחֵינוּ הַלְּמָנִים.
- וְעַתָּה, אֲדוֹנִי הַמֶּלֶךְ, אִם לֹא מַצֵּאתָנִי עֶבֶד לֹא יִצְלַח, וְאִם הִקְשַׁבְתָּ אֶל דְּבָרִי לְפַעְמִים, וְהֵם הָיוּ לְךָ לְתוֹעֵלָתְךָ, חָפְצִי כִּי תִקְשֵׁיב לְדִבְרִי



עתה, ואני אהיה עבדך להציל את העם הזה מן השעבוד.

listen to my words at this time, and I will be thy servant and deliver this people out of bondage.

- 5 And the king granted unto him that he might speak. And Gideon said unto him:
- 6 Behold the back pass, through the back wall, on the back side of the city. The Lamanites, or the guards of the Lamanites, by night are drunken; therefore let us send a proclamation among all this people that they gather together their flocks and herds, that they may drive them into the wilderness by night.
- 7 And I will go according to thy command and pay the last tribute of wine to the Lamanites, and they will be drunken; and we will pass through the secret pass on the left of their camp when they are drunken and asleep.
- 8 Thus we will depart with our women and our children, our flocks, and our herds into the wilderness; and we will travel around the land of Shilom.
- 9 And it came to pass that the king hearkened unto the words of Gideon.
- 10 And king Limhi caused that his people should gather their flocks together; and he sent the tribute of wine to the Lamanites; and he also sent more wine, as a present unto them; and they did drink freely of the wine which king Limhi did send unto them.
- 11 And it came to pass that the people of king Limhi did depart by night into the wilderness with their flocks and their herds, and they went round about the land of Shilom in the wilderness, and bent their course towards the land of Zarahemla, being led by Ammon and his brethren.
- 12 And they had taken all their gold, and silver, and their precious things, which they could carry, and also their provisions with them, into the wilderness; and they pursued their journey.
- 13 And after being many days in the wilderness they arrived in the land of Zarahemla, and joined Mosiah's people, and became his subjects.
- 14 And it came to pass that Mosiah received them with joy; and he also received their records, and also the records which had been found by the people of Limhi.
- והמלך נתן לו לדבר, וגידעון אמר אליו:
- ראה נא את המעבר האחורי אשר בחומה המערבית, מאחורי העיר. הלמנים, או שומרי הלמנים, שותים לשכרה בלילה; הבה נכריז בקרב כל העם הזה כי יקבצו את צאנם ובקרים ובלילה ינהגום אל היערות.
- ואני אלה, כפי פקדתך, ואשלם את מס ייגנו האחרון ללמנים. והם ישתוהו וישכרו, ואנחנו נצא דרך מעבר הסתרים משמאל למחנה, בעודם שכורים וישנים.
- כך נצא עם נשינו וילדינו, צאננו ובקרנו אל היערות; ובמסענו נסב את ארץ שילום.
- והמלך שמע לדברי גידעון.
- והמלך למחי צוה את עמו לקבץ את עדריהם. והוא שלח אל הלמנים את מס היין, ואף שלח יין נוסף, תשורה להם. והלמנים שתו כמות נפושם מן היין אשר שלח להם המלך למחי.
- והיה בלילה ועם למחי אכן יצאו אל היערות ועמיהם עדרי צאנם ובקרים; והם הקיפו את ארץ שילום ביערות, ופנו אל עבר ארץ זרעהמלה, ועמון ואחיו נוהגים אותם.
- והם לקחו עמם אל היערות את כל זהבם וכסףם ויקרותיהם אשר יכלו לשאת ואף את צידתם, ויצאו למסעם.
- וכעבר ימי מסע רבים ביערות הם הגיעו אל ארץ זרעהמלה, ודבקו בעם מושיע והיו לנתיניו.
- ומושיע קבלם בשמחה. והוא קבל את כתבי הזכרון אשר להם וכן את הכתבים אשר מצאום אנשי למחי.

- 15 And now it came to pass when the Lamanites had found that the people of Limhi had departed out of the land by night, that they sent an army into the wilderness to pursue them;
- 16 And after they had pursued them two days, they could no longer follow their tracks; therefore they were lost in the wilderness.

ספור עלמא ועם יהוה, אשר המלך נח גרשם אל היערות (בערך 145–121 לפני הספירה). נכלל בפרקים כג–כד.

*An account of Alma and the people of the Lord who were driven into the wilderness by the people of King Noah. (About 145–121 B.C.). Comprising chapters 23–24.*

## כג

## 23

- 1 Now Alma, having been warned of the Lord that the armies of king Noah would come upon them, and having made it known to his people, therefore they gathered together their flocks, and took of their grain, and departed into the wilderness before the armies of king Noah.
- 2 And the Lord did strengthen them, that the people of king Noah could not overtake them to destroy them.
- 3 And they fled eight days' journey into the wilderness.
- 4 And they came to a land, yea, even a very beautiful and pleasant land, a land of pure water.
- 5 And they pitched their tents, and began to till the ground, and began to build buildings; yea, they were industrious, and did labor exceedingly.
- 6 And the people were desirous that Alma should be their king, for he was beloved by his people.
- 7 But he said unto them: Behold, it is not expedient that we should have a king; for thus saith the Lord: Ye shall not esteem one flesh above another, or one man shall not think himself above another; therefore I say unto you it is not expedient that ye should have a king.
- 8 Nevertheless, if it were possible that ye could always have just men to be your kings it would be well for you to have a king.
- 9 But remember the iniquity of king Noah and his priests; and I myself was caught in a snare, and did many things which were abominable in the sight of the Lord, which caused me sore repentance;
- בהיות דבר יהוה אל עלמא להזהירו מפני צבא המלך נח הבא עליו, ובהודיע עלמא את הדבר לאנשיו, הם קבצו את עדריהם, ולקחו את דגנם ויצאו אל היערות, בסתרם בוא צבא המלך נח.
- ויהוה חזקם, ולא יכלו אנשי המלך נח להשיגם ולהשמידם.
- והם נסו דרך שמונת ימים ביערות.
- והם באו אל ארץ חמדה זפה מאד, ארץ מים זכים.
- והם הטו את אהליהם, והחלו לעבד את האדמה ולבנות בתים; ובחריצותם עמלו עמל רב.
- והאנשים חפצו כי עלמא ימלך עליהם, כי היה אהוב על עמו.
- אף הוא אמר להם: הנה, לא מועיל כי יהיה לנו מלך, כי כה אמר יהוה: לא תחשיבו בשר אחד על פני אחר; או, לא יחשיב איש כי רם הוא מעל רעהו; לכן אני אומר לכם, לא מועיל כי יהיה לכם מלך.
- ואולם, אלו נתן כי יהיו לכם תמיד אנשי צדק למלכים, אזי טוב בהיות לכם מלך.
- אף זכרו את עוון המלך נח וכהניו; הן אף אני נאחזתי בפח, ועשיתי רבות אשר הן תועבה בעיני יהוה, ועל זאת סבלתי יסורי תרסעה.

## מושיע כג:י-כא

- 10 אַךְ, אַחַר תְּלָאָה רַבָּה, שָׁמַע יְהוָה אֶת קְרִיאָתִי וַתִּפְלְתִי עָנָה. וְהוּא עָשָׂנִי כְּלִי בְיָדוֹ בְּהִבְיֵאוֹ כֹּה רַבִּים מִכֶּם לִידְעַת אֱמֻתּוֹ.
- 11 וְאוֹלָם, אֵינֶנִּי מִתְפָּאֵר בְּכֶךָ כִּי אֵינֶנִּי רָאוּי לְהִתְהַלָּל.
- 12 וְהִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם: הַמֶּלֶךְ נֹחַ נִגַּשׁ אֶתְכֶם, וְאַתֶּם הֵייתֶם מִשְׁעֲבָדִים לוֹ וּלְכֹהֲנָיו וְהֵם הִבְיֵאוּכֶם לְיָדֵי עֹוֹן; עַל כֵּן הֵייתֶם אֲסוּרִים בְּמוֹסְרוֹת עֹוֹן.
- 13 אַכֵּן, אַחַר אֲשֶׁר נִצַּלְתֶּם מִן הַמוֹסְרוֹת הָאֵלֶּה בְּכֹחַ אֱלֹהִים, אַחַר אֲשֶׁר נִחַלְצַתֶּם מִיַּד הַמֶּלֶךְ נֹחַ וְאֶנְשָׁיו וְאֶף מִמוֹסְרוֹת הָעֹוֹן, חֲפָצִי כִּי תַעֲמְדוּ אֵיתָנִים בַּחֲרוּת הַזֹּאת, אֲשֶׁר דָּרוֹר נִקְרָא לָכֶם בָּהּ, וְלֹא תִשְׁיִמוּ מִבְּטַחְכֶּם בְּאִישׁ לְהִיּוֹת מֶלֶךְ עֲלֵיכֶם.
- 14 וְאֶף לֹא תִשְׁיִמוּ מִבְּטַחְכֶּם בְּאִישׁ לְהִיּוֹת מוֹרֶכֶם, אוֹ שֹׁרְתְכֶם, בְּלֹתִי אִם יְהִיֶּה אִישׁ אֱלֹהִים, הוֹלֵךְ בְּדַרְכֵּי וְשׁוֹמֵר אֶת מִצְוֹתָיו.
- 15 אַכֵּן כֵּן לָמַד עֲלֵמָא אֶת אֶנְשָׁיו, כִּי עַל כָּל אָדָם לֶאֱהָב אֶת רֵעֵהוּ כְמוֹהוּ, וְכִי לֹא יִהְיֶה מִדּוֹן בְּקֶרֶבָם.
- 16 וְהָיָה עֲלֵמָא כְּהֵנָּם הַגָּדוֹל, וְהוּא מִיִּסַּד כְּנִסְיָתָם.
- 17 וְאֶף אִישׁ לֹא קִבַּל סְמֻכוֹת לְהִטְיֹף אוֹ לְלַמֵּד, כִּי אִם עַל יְדֵי עֲלֵמָא מֵאֵת אֱלֹהִים. עַל כֵּן קִדָּשׁ עֲלֵמָא אֶת כָּל כְּהֹנִיָּהִם וְאֶת כָּל מוֹרִיָּהִם; וְלֹא קִדָּשׁוּ כִּי אִם אֲנָשֵׁי צַדִּיק.
- 18 לְכֵן הֵם הִשְׁגִּיחוּ עַל אֲנָשֵׁיהֶם וּכְלָבָלוּם בְּדַבְרֵי צַדִּיק.
- 19 וְהִצְלַחַה גְּדוּלָּה הִחֲלָה לְהֵאִיר לָהֶם פָּנִים בְּאֶרֶץ; וְהֵם קָרְאוּ אֶת הָאֶרֶץ חֵילָם.
- 20 וְהֵם רַבּוּ וְהִצְלִיחוּ מְאֹד בְּאֶרֶץ חֵילָם; וְהֵם בָּנוּ עִיר, וּקְרָאוּהָ חֵילָם.
- 21 Nevertheless the Lord seeth fit to chasten his people; yea, he trieth their patience and their faith.

- 22 אֲכֹן, כֹּל אֲשֶׁר שָׂם אֶת מִבְּטָחוֹ בִּיהוּה יִנָּשָׂא בְיוֹם הָאַחֲרוֹן. וְכֵן הָיָה הַדָּבָר בְּעַם הַזֶּה.
- 23 כִּי הִנֵּה אֶרְאָה לָכֶם, כִּי עַל שְׁעָבוֹד נָתַן עַל צִוְּאֶרְךָ, וְאִף אֶחָד לֹא יָכוֹל הָיָה לְהַצִּילֶם, כִּי אִם יְהוּה אֱלֹהֵיהֶם, אֱלֹהֵי אֲבֹרָהֶם, יִצְחָק וְיַעֲקֹב.
- 24 וְהוּא הִצִּילֶם, וְהוּא הֶרְאָה לָהֶם אֶת עֲצָם כָּחֹן, וְהֵם שָׂמְחוּ שְׂמִיחָה רַבָּה.
- 25 וּבְשִׁבְתָּם בְּאֶרֶץ חֵילָם, בְּעִיר חֵילָם, בְּעִבְדָם אֶת אֲדָמָתָם אֲשֶׁר סָבִיב, וְהִנֵּה חֵיל לְמָנִים בְּגִבּוֹל הָאֶרֶץ.
- 26 וְאֲנָשֵׁי עֲלָמָא בָּרוּחוּ מִשְׁדּוּתֵיהֶם, וְנִאָּסְפוּ בְּעִיר חֵילָם; וְהֵם נִפְחָדוּ מְאֹד מִהוֹפְעַת הַלְּמָנִים.
- 27 וְעֲלָמָא יָצָא, וְעָמַד בֵּינֵיהֶם, וְעוֹרָרָם לְגִבּוֹר עַל פְּחָדָם, וְאָמַר לָהֶם כִּי עָלִיהֶם לִזְכֹּר אֶת יְהוּה אֱלֹהֵיהֶם וְהוּא יִצִּילֶם.
- 28 אֲזַי הֵם הִשְׁקִיטוּ פְּחָדָם, וְקִרְאוּ אֶל יְהוּה כִּי יִרְכֶּךָ אֶת לֵב הַלְּמָנִים, וְכִי הֵם יַחוּסוּ עָלֵיהֶם וְעַל נְשׁוֹתֵיהֶם וְטַפָּם.
- 29 וַיְהוּה הִרְךָ אֶת לֵב הַלְּמָנִים. וְעֲלָמָא וְאֲנָשָׁיו יָצְאוּ לְהַתְּמַסָּר לְיַדֵּיהֶם; וְהַלְּמָנִים לָקְחוּ אֶת אֶרֶץ חֵילָם לְנַחֲלָתָם.
- 30 וַצָּבָא הַלְּמָנִים, אֲשֶׁר רָדְף אַחֲרֵי הַמֶּלֶךְ לְמַחִי וְאֲנָשָׁיו, תָּעָה בְּיַעְרוֹת יָמִים רַבִּים.
- 31 וְהִנֵּה הֵם מְצָאוּ אֶת כֹּהֲנֵי הַמֶּלֶךְ נֹחַ בְּמָקוֹם אֲשֶׁר קָרְאוּ אֹתוֹ עַמּוּלוֹן; וְהַכֹּהֲנִים הֵחִלּוּ לַרְשֹׁת אֶת אֶרֶץ עַמּוּלוֹן וּלְעַבֵּד אֶת אֲדָמָתָהּ.
- 32 וְשֵׁם רֹאשׁ הַכֹּהֲנִים הָהֵם הָיָה עַמּוּלוֹן.
- 33 וְעַמּוּלוֹן הִתְחַנֵּן לִפְנֵי הַלְּמָנִים, וְאִף שָׁלַח אֶת נְשׁוֹתֵיהֶם, אֲשֶׁר הָיוּ בָנוֹת הַלְּמָנִים, לְהַתְּחַנֵּן לִפְנֵי אֲחֵיהֶן כִּי לֹא יַמִּיתוּ אֶת בְּעֻלֵּיהֶן.
- 34 וְהַלְּמָנִים חָמְלוּ עַל עַמּוּלוֹן וְאֲנָשָׁיו, וְלֹא הִמִּיתוּם מִפְּנֵי נְשׁוֹתֵיהֶם.
- 22 Nevertheless—whosoever putteth his trust in him the same shall be lifted up at the last day. Yea, and thus it was with this people.
- 23 For behold, I will show unto you that they were brought into bondage, and none could deliver them but the Lord their God, yea, even the God of Abraham and Isaac and of Jacob.
- 24 And it came to pass that he did deliver them, and he did show forth his mighty power unto them, and great were their rejoicings.
- 25 For behold, it came to pass that while they were in the land of Helam, yea, in the city of Helam, while tilling the land round about, behold an army of the Lamanites was in the borders of the land.
- 26 Now it came to pass that the brethren of Alma fled from their fields, and gathered themselves together in the city of Helam; and they were much frightened because of the appearance of the Lamanites.
- 27 But Alma went forth and stood among them, and exhorted them that they should not be frightened, but that they should remember the Lord their God and he would deliver them.
- 28 Therefore they hushed their fears, and began to cry unto the Lord that he would soften the hearts of the Lamanites, that they would spare them, and their wives, and their children.
- 29 And it came to pass the Lord did soften the hearts of the Lamanites. And Alma and his brethren went forth and delivered themselves up into their hands; and the Lamanites took possession of the land of Helam.
- 30 Now the armies of the Lamanites, which had followed after the people of king Limhi, had been lost in the wilderness for many days.
- 31 And behold, they had found those priests of king Noah, in a place which they called Amulon; and they had begun to possess the land of Amulon and had begun to till the ground.
- 32 Now the name of the leader of those priests was Amulon.
- 33 And it came to pass that Amulon did plead with the Lamanites; and he also sent forth their wives, who were the daughters of the Lamanites, to plead with their brethren, that they should not destroy their husbands.
- 34 And the Lamanites had compassion on Amulon and his brethren, and did not destroy them, because of their wives.

- 35 ועמולון ואנשיו התחברו אל הלמנים, ובנסעם ביערות לגלות את ארץ נפי, הם גלו את ארץ חילם, אשר הייתה נחלת עלמא ואנשיו.
- 36 And Amulon and his brethren did join the Lamanites, and they were traveling in the wilderness in search of the land of Nephi when they discovered the land of Helam, which was possessed by Alma and his brethren.
- 37 והלמנים אמרו לעלמא ולאנשיו כי אם יראו את הדרך המוליכה אל ארץ נפי, יתנו להם את חייהם ואת חרותם.
- 37 But after Alma had shown them the way that led to the land of Nephi the Lamanites would not keep their promise; but they set guards round about the land of Helam, over Alma and his brethren.
- 38 ואולם אחר אשר הראה להם עלמא את הדרך המוליכה אל ארץ נפי, לא קימו הלמנים את דברם, כי אם הפקידו שומרים סביב ארץ חילם, על עלמא ועל אנשיו.
- 38 And the remainder of them went to the land of Nephi; and a part of them returned to the land of Helam, and also brought with them the wives and the children of the guards who had been left in the land.
- 39 ושאריהם הלכו לארץ נפי; וקצתם שבו אל ארץ חילם והביאו עמם את נשות השומרים אשר השארו בארץ חילם ואת ילדיהם.
- 39 And the king of the Lamanites had granted unto Amulon that he should be a king and a ruler over his people, who were in the land of Helam; nevertheless he should have no power to do anything contrary to the will of the king of the Lamanites.

## כד

## 24

- 1 ועמולון מצא חן בעיני מלך הלמנים. על כן נתן מלך הלמנים ביד עמולון ועמיתיו להמנות למורים בעמו, אכן, בקרב העם אשר בארץ שמלון, בארץ שילום ובארץ עמולון.
- 1 And it came to pass that Amulon did gain favor in the eyes of the king of the Lamanites; therefore, the king of the Lamanites granted unto him and his brethren that they should be appointed teachers over his people, yea, even over the people who were in the land of Shemlon, and in the land of Shilom, and in the land of Amulon.
- 2 כי הלמנים החזיקו בכל הארצות האלה; על כן מנה מלך הלמנים מלכים על כל הארצות ההן.
- 2 For the Lamanites had taken possession of all these lands; therefore, the king of the Lamanites had appointed kings over all these lands.
- 3 ושם מלך הלמנים נקרא למן על שם אביו; על כן נקרא המלך למן. והוא מלך על עם רב.
- 3 And now the name of the king of the Lamanites was Laman, being called after the name of his father; and therefore he was called king Laman. And he was king over a numerous people.
- 4 והוא מנה מורים מעמיתיו עמולון בכל ארצות נחלת עמו; כך נלמדה שפת נפי בקרב כל עם הלמנים.
- 4 And he appointed teachers of the brethren of Amulon in every land which was possessed by his people; and thus the language of Nephi began to be taught among all the people of the Lamanites.
- 5 והם היו עם אשר בגיו הלכו בדרכי נעם זה עם זה; אך לא ידעו הם את אלהים. ועמיתיו עמולון לא למדו דבר על יהוה אלהיהם, גם לא את תורת משה; ואף לא למדו את דברי אבינדי;
- 5 And they were a people friendly one with another; nevertheless they knew not God; neither did the brethren of Amulon teach them anything concerning the Lord their God, neither the law of Moses; nor did they teach them the words of Abinadi;



- 6 But they taught them that they should keep their record, and that they might write one to another.
- 7 And thus the Lamanites began to increase in riches, and began to trade one with another and wax great, and began to be a cunning and a wise people, as to the wisdom of the world, yea, a very cunning people, delighting in all manner of wickedness and plunder, except it were among their own brethren.
- 8 And now it came to pass that Amulon began to exercise authority over Alma and his brethren, and began to persecute him, and cause that his children should persecute their children.
- 9 For Amulon knew Alma, that he had been one of the king's priests, and that it was he that believed the words of Abinadi and was driven out before the king, and therefore he was wroth with him; for he was subject to king Laman, yet he exercised authority over them, and put tasks upon them, and put task-masters over them.
- 10 And it came to pass that so great were their afflictions that they began to cry mightily to God.
- 11 And Amulon commanded them that they should stop their cries; and he put guards over them to watch them, that whosoever should be found calling upon God should be put to death.
- 12 And Alma and his people did not raise their voices to the Lord their God, but did pour out their hearts to him; and he did know the thoughts of their hearts.
- 13 And it came to pass that the voice of the Lord came to them in their afflictions, saying: Lift up your heads and be of good comfort, for I know of the covenant which ye have made unto me; and I will covenant with my people and deliver them out of bondage.
- 14 And I will also ease the burdens which are put upon your shoulders, that even you cannot feel them upon your backs, even while you are in bondage; and this will I do that ye may stand as witnesses for me hereafter, and that ye may know of a surety that I, the Lord God, do visit my people in their afflictions.
- 15 And now it came to pass that the burdens which were laid upon Alma and his brethren were made light; yea, the Lord did strengthen them that they could bear up their burdens with ease, and they did submit cheerfully and with patience to all the will of the Lord.
- אָף הֵם לְמִדּוּם לְנַהֵל אֶת רִשְׁמוֹתֵיהֶם בְּעִבּוּר יִכְתְּבוּ אִישׁ אֶל אָחִיו.
- וְכֵן הַלְּמָנִיתִים הֵחֵלוּ לְהִתְעַשֵּׂר, לְסַחֵר אִישׁ עִם אָחִיו וּלְגַדֵּל, וְהָיוּ עִם עָרוֹם וְחָכָם בְּחִכְמַת הָעוֹלָם, אַכֵּן, עִם רַב תַּחְבּוּלוֹת, אֲשֶׁר לוֹ חֶפֶץ בְּכָל מִינֵי רָשָׁע וְגִזְלֵי אֲנָשִׁים זֹלָת בְּנָיו.
- וְעַמּוּלוֹן הֵחֵל לְהִשְׁתַּרֵּר עַל עֲלָמָא וְעַמִּיתָיו, וּלְרַדֹּף אוֹתָם, וְאָף הֵסֵב לְבָנָיו כִּי יִרְדְּפוּ אֶת בְּנֵיהֶם.
- כִּי עַמּוּלוֹן הִכִּיר אֶת עֲלָמָא, וְכִי הוּא הָיָה אֶחָד מִכֹּהֲנֵי הַמֶּלֶךְ, וְזֶה אֲשֶׁר הָאָמִי בְּדַבְרֵי אַבְינָדִי וְגֵרֶשׁ מִלְפָּנֵי הַמֶּלֶךְ. עַל כֵּן יָצָא קֶצְפוֹ עַל עֲלָמָא; וְאָף כִּי הָיָה נָתִין לַמֶּלֶךְ לָמֶן הוּא שָׂרֵר עַל אֲנָשֵׁי עֲלָמָא בְּהִטִּילוֹ עֲלֵיהֶם עֲבוּדָה וּבְשִׁימוֹ עֲלֵיהֶם נוֹגְשִׁים.
- וְהָיָה כִּי כָה רַבּוּ יְסוּרֵיהֶם עַד כִּי צָעָקוּ אֶל אֱלֹהִים.
- וְעַמּוּלוֹן צִוָּה עֲלֵיהֶם לְחַדֵּל מִצַּעֲקָתָם, וְהוּא שָׁם עֲלֵיהֶם שׁוֹמְרִים לְהִשְׁגִּיחַ עֲלֵיהֶם, וְאֲשֶׁר יִמָּצָא קוֹרֵא לְאֱלֹהִים מוֹת יוֹמָת.
- וְעֲלָמָא וְאֲנָשָׁיו לֹא הִרִימוּ אֶת קוֹלָם אֶל יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵיהֶם, אָף הֵם שָׁפְכוּ אֶת לִבָּם לִפְנָיו, וְהוּא יָדַע אֶת מַחְשְׁבוֹת לִבָּם.
- וְהָיָה קוֹל יְהוָה אֲלֵיהֶם בְּסִבְלָם לֵאמֹר: שְׂאוּ רֹאשְׁכֶם וְיִיטֵב לְבַבְכֶם נְחֻמָּה, כִּי יוֹדַע אֲנִי עַל הַבְּרִית אֲשֶׁר כָּרַתָּם לִי; וְאֲנִי אֶכְרַת בְּרִית עִם עַמִּי וְאֶצִּילָהוּ מִן הַשְּׁעָבוֹד.
- גַּם אֶת הַמִּשְׁאֹת אֲשֶׁר הִעֲמָסוּ עַל שִׁכְמְכֶם אֶקַּל, עַד כִּי לֹא תַחוּשׁוּ בָהֶם עַל גִּבְכֶּם, אֲף כִּי מִשְׁעָבָדִים אַתֶּם, וְזֹאת אֶעֱשֶׂה לָמַעַן תַּעֲמְדוּ לִי אַחֲרַי כֵּן לְעֵדִים. וְלָמַעַן יָדוּעַ תִּדְּעוּ כִּי אֲנִי, יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים, פּוֹקֵד עַמִּי בְּסִבְלִי.
- אֲזַ וְהוֹקְלוּ הַמִּשְׁאֹת אֲשֶׁר עַל עֲלָמָא וְעַמִּיתָיו; אַכֵּן, יְהוָה חִזְקָם בְּעִבּוּר יִשְׂאוּ בְּנִחַת אֶת מִשְׁאֹתֵיהֶם, וְהֵם נִכְנְעוּ לְכָל חֶפֶץ יְהוָה בְּאֶרֶץ רִיחַ.



- 16 And it came to pass that so great was their faith and their patience that the voice of the Lord came unto them again, saying: Be of good comfort, for on the morrow I will deliver you out of bondage.
- וְכֵן רַבָּה הָיְתָה אֱמוּנָתָם וְאַרְךָ רוּחָם, עַד כִּי הָיָה אֲלֵיהֶם קוֹל יְהוָה שֵׁנִית, לֵאמֹר: יִיטֵב לְבַבְכֶּם נַחֲמָה, כִּי מָחָר אֶצִּילְכֶם מִשְׁעָבוֹד.
- 17 And he said unto Alma: Thou shalt go before this people, and I will go with thee and deliver this people out of bondage.
- וְהוּא אָמַר אֶל עֲלְמָא: תֵּצֵא לִפְנֵי הָעָם הַזֶּה. וְאֲנִי אֵלַיךְ עִמָּךְ וְאֶצִּיל אֶת הָעָם הַזֶּה מִשְׁעָבוֹד.
- 18 Now it came to pass that Alma and his people in the night-time gathered their flocks together, and also of their grain; yea, even all the night-time were they gathering the flocks together.
- וְהָיָה בַּלַּיְלָה, וְעֲלְמָא וְאֲנָשָׁיו קִבְּצוּ אֶת צֹאֲנָם וְלֶקְחוּ מִדָּגָנָם; אַכֵּן, כָּל הַלַּיְלָה קִבְּצוּ אֶת עֲדְרֵיהֶם.
- 19 And in the morning the Lord caused a deep sleep to come upon the Lamanites, yea, and all their task-masters were in a profound sleep.
- וּבֹבֹא הַבֹּקֶר, הִפִּיל יְהוָה תִּרְדֵּמָה עַמְקָה עַל הַלְּמָנִים, וְכָל נוֹגְשֵׁיהֶם שָׁקְעוּ בְּשֵׁנָה כְּבִדָּה.
- 20 And Alma and his people departed into the wilderness; and when they had traveled all day they pitched their tents in a valley, and they called the valley Alma, because he led their way in the wilderness.
- וְעֲלְמָא וְאֲנָשָׁיו יָצְאוּ אֶל הַיַּעְרוֹת. וְאַחֲרֵי נִסְעָם בַּיַּעְרוֹת כָּל הַיּוֹם הָם נָטוּ אֶת אֹהֲלֵיהֶם בְּעֵמֶק; וְהֵם קָרְאוּ אֶת שְׁמוֹ עֵמֶק עֲלְמָא, כִּי הוּא הִנְהִיגָם בַּיַּעְרוֹת.
- 21 Yea, and in the valley of Alma they poured out their thanks to God because he had been merciful unto them, and eased their burdens, and had delivered them out of bondage; for they were in bondage, and none could deliver them except it were the Lord their God.
- וּבְעֵמֶק עֲלְמָא הֵם שָׁפְכוּ אֶת תּוֹדָתָם לִפְנֵי אֱלֹהִים, עַל רַחֲמָיו עֲלֵיהֶם, וְעַל כִּי הִקָּל אֶת מִשְׁאָם וְהִצִּילָם מִן הַשְׁעָבוֹד; יֵשֵׁן אִשָּׁר הָיוּ מִשְׁעָבָדִים, וְאִף אִישׁ אֶחָד לֹא יָכַל לְהִצִּילָם, כִּי אִם יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵיהֶם.
- 22 And they gave thanks to God, yea, all their men and all their women and all their children that could speak lifted their voices in the praises of their God.
- וְהֵם נָתְנוּ תּוֹדָה לֵאלֹהִים, אַכֵּן, כָּל אֲנָשֵׁיהֶם וְכָל נְשֵׁיהֶם וְכָל יְלָדֵיהֶם אִשָּׁר יָדְעוּ לְדַבֵּר הִרְיָמוּ קוֹלָם וְהִלְלוּ אֶת אֱלֹהֵיהֶם.
- 23 And now the Lord said unto Alma: Haste thee and get thou and this people out of this land, for the Lamanites have awakened and do pursue thee; therefore get thee out of this land, and I will stop the Lamanites in this valley that they come no further in pursuit of this people.
- וְאָמַר יְהוָה אֶל עֲלְמָא: מַהֵר וְצֵא, אֶתָּה וְהָעָם הַזֶּה, מִן הָאָרֶץ הַזֹּאת, כִּי הִתְעוֹרְרוּ הַלְּמָנִים מִשְׁנָתָם וְהֵם רוֹדְפִים אַחֲרֶיךָ; לָכֵן צֵא מִן הָאָרֶץ הַזֹּאת, וְאֲנִי אֶעְצֹר אֶת הַלְּמָנִים בְּעֵמֶק הַזֶּה לְבֹל יוֹסִיפוּ לָרֹדֶף אַחֲרֵי הָעָם הַזֶּה.
- 24 And it came to pass that they departed out of the valley, and took their journey into the wilderness.
- וְהֵם עָזְבוּ אֶת הָעֵמֶק וְנִסְעוּ אֶל הַיַּעְרוֹת.
- 25 And after they had been in the wilderness twelve days they arrived in the land of Zarahemla; and king Mosiah did also receive them with joy.
- וְאַחֲרֵי הָיוּתָם שְׁנָיִם עָשָׂר יוֹם בַּיַּעְרוֹת, הֵם הִגִּיעוּ אֶל אֶרֶץ זֶרַחֶמְלָה; וְהַמֶּלֶךְ מוֹשִׁיעַ קִבֵּל גַּם אוֹתָם בְּשִׂמְחָה.

עֲלָמָא מִיִּסְד אֶת הַכְּנִסְיָה בְּקֶרֶב הָעָם הַמֵּאֲחָד  
שֶׁל הַנְּפִיִּים וּמוֹלָקִים. הַמֶּלֶךְ מוֹשִׁיעַ אוֹסֵר רְדִיפָה  
שֶׁל חֲסְרֵי אֲמוּנָה. בְּנָיו יוֹצֵאִים לְהַטִּיף לְלִמְנִים.  
עִם הַנְּפִיִּים בּוֹחֵר שׁוֹפְטִים. (בְּעֶרְךָ 91-120  
לְפָנֵי הַסְּפִירָה.) נִכְלָל בַּפָּרָקִים כה-כט.

*Alma establishes the church among the united people of the Nephites and Mulekites. King Mosiah forbids persecution by non-believers. His sons depart to preach to the Lamanites. The people of the Nephites elect judges. (About 120-91 B.C.) Comprising chapters 25-29.*

## כה

## 25

וְהַמֶּלֶךְ מוֹשִׁיעַ קָרָא אֶת כָּל עַמּוֹ לְהִתְאַסֵּף יַחַד.

1 And now king Mosiah caused that all the people should be gathered together.

וּבְנֵי נְפִי, אוֹ צֶאֱצָאֵי נְפִי, לֹא הָיוּ רַבִּים כְּמִסְפַּר  
אֲנָשֵׁי זֶרַחְמֶלָה, אֲשֶׁר הָיָה מִזֶּרַע מוֹלֵק, וּמִן  
הָאֲנָשִׁים אֲשֶׁר בָּאוּ עִמּוֹ אֶל הַיַּעְרוֹת.

2 Now there were not so many of the children of Nephi, or so many of those who were descendants of Nephi, as there were of the people of Zarahemla, who was a descendant of Mulek, and those who came with him into the wilderness.

וְעַם נְפִי עִם עַם זֶרַחְמֶלָה לֹא הָיוּ כֹּה רַבִּים  
כְּמִסְפַּר הַלְּמָנִים, אֵיף לֹא כְּדִי מִחֲצִית מֵהֶם.

3 And there were not so many of the people of Nephi and of the people of Zarahemla as there were of the Lamanites; yea, they were not half so numerous.

וְכָל עַם נְפִי וְכֵן כָּל עַם זֶרַחְמֶלָה נֶאֱסְפוּ  
וְנִקְבְּצוּ בְּשְׁנֵי מַחֲנוֹת.

4 And now all the people of Nephi were assembled together, and also all the people of Zarahemla, and they were gathered together in two bodies.

וּמוֹשִׁיעַ קָרָא אֶת כְּתָבֵי הַזִּכְרוֹן אֲשֶׁר לְצִנִּיף  
וְאֵף הוֹרָה לְקֶרְאֵם לְעִמּוֹ; אַכֵּן, הוּא קָרָא אֶת  
כְּתָבֵי הַזִּכְרוֹן אֲשֶׁר לְעַם צִנִּיף מֵעַת עֲזָבָם אֶת  
אֶרֶץ זֶרַחְמֶלָה וְעַד שׁוּבָם אֵלֶיהָ.

5 And it came to pass that Mosiah did read, and caused to be read, the records of Zeniff to his people; yea, he read the records of the people of Zeniff, from the time they left the land of Zarahemla until they returned again.

וְהוּא קָרָא גַם אֶת סְפּוֹר עֲלָמָא וְעִמִּיתָיו וְכָל  
יְסוּרֵיהֶם, מֵעַת עֲזָבָם אֶת אֶרֶץ זֶרַחְמֶלָה וְעַד  
עַת שׁוּבָם.

6 And he also read the account of Alma and his brethren, and all their afflictions, from the time they left the land of Zarahemla until the time they returned again.

וּכְכֹלּוֹת מוֹשִׁיעַ לְקֶרָא אֶת הַכְּתָבִים הַכּוּ בְּנֵי  
הָעָם אֲשֶׁר נִשְׁאָרוּ בְּאֶרֶץ בְּפִלְיָה וּבִתְמָהוּן.

7 And now, when Mosiah had made an end of reading the records, his people who tarried in the land were struck with wonder and amazement.

כִּי לֹא יָדְעוּ מַה לַּחֲשֹׁב; וּבִרְאוֹתָם אֶת אֱלֹהֵי אֲשֶׁר  
נִצְּלוּ מִן הַשְּׁעָבֹד, נִמְלְאוּ שְׂמִיחָה רַבָּה עַד מְאֹד.

8 For they knew not what to think; for when they beheld those that had been delivered out of bondage they were filled with exceedingly great joy.

וְאוֹלָם, בְּחֻשְׁבָּם עַל אַחֵיהֶם אֲשֶׁר נִהָרְגוּ בְּיַד־  
הַלְּמָנִים, נִמְלְאוּ צֹעַר, וְעֵינֵיהֶם דָּמְעוּ דִּמְעוֹת  
רַבּוֹת בִּיגוֹנָם.

9 And again, when they thought of their brethren who had been slain by the Lamanites they were filled with sorrow, and even shed many tears of sorrow.

וְעוֹד, בְּחֻשְׁבָּם עַל טוֹב אֱלֹהִים הַמִּידִי,  
וּגְבוּרָתוֹ בְּהַצֵּלָת עֲלָמָא וְעִמִּיתָיו מִיַּד־  
הַלְּמָנִים וּמִשְׁעָבֹדָם, הֵם נִשְׂאוּ קוֹלָם  
וְנִתְּנוּ תוֹדָה לְאֱלֹהִים.

10 And again, when they thought of the immediate goodness of God, and his power in delivering Alma and his brethren out of the hands of the Lamanites and of bondage, they did raise their voices and give thanks to God.

## מוֹשִׁיעַ כה:יא-כא

- 11 And again, when they thought upon the Lamanites, who were their brethren, of their sinful and polluted state, they were filled with pain and anguish for the welfare of their souls.
- 12 And it came to pass that those who were the children of Amulon and his brethren, who had taken to wife the daughters of the Lamanites, were displeased with the conduct of their fathers, and they would no longer be called by the names of their fathers, therefore they took upon themselves the name of Nephi, that they might be called the children of Nephi and be numbered among those who were called Nephites.
- 13 And now all the people of Zarahemla were numbered with the Nephites, and this because the kingdom had been conferred upon none but those who were descendants of Nephi.
- 14 And now it came to pass that when Mosiah had made an end of speaking and reading to the people, he desired that Alma should also speak to the people.
- 15 And Alma did speak unto them, when they were assembled together in large bodies, and he went from one body to another, preaching unto the people repentance and faith on the Lord.
- 16 And he did exhort the people of Limhi and his brethren, all those that had been delivered out of bondage, that they should remember that it was the Lord that did deliver them.
- 17 And it came to pass that after Alma had taught the people many things, and had made an end of speaking to them, that king Limhi was desirous that he might be baptized; and all his people were desirous that they might be baptized also.
- 18 Therefore, Alma did go forth into the water and did baptize them; yea, he did baptize them after the manner he did his brethren in the waters of Mormon; yea, and as many as he did baptize did belong to the church of God; and this because of their belief on the words of Alma.
- 19 And it came to pass that king Mosiah granted unto Alma that he might establish churches throughout all the land of Zarahemla; and gave him power to ordain priests and teachers over every church.
- 20 Now this was done because there were so many people that they could not all be governed by one teacher; neither could they all hear the word of God in one assembly;
- 21 Therefore they did assemble themselves together in different bodies, being called churches; every church having their priests and their teach-
- וְעוֹד, בְּחִשְׁבָם עַל הַלְמָנִים, אֲשֶׁר הֵם אֲחֵיהֶם, עַל מַצָּבָם הַטָּמֵא, נִמְלְאוּ מִכָּאֻב וּמְצוּק עַל דְּבַר שְׁלוֹם נַפְשֹׁתֵיהֶם.
- וְהַבָּנִים אֲשֶׁר לְעִמּוּלֹן וְלַעֲמִיתִיו, אֲשֶׁר אֲבוֹתֵיהֶם לָקְחוּ אֶת בָּנוֹת הַלְמָנִים לָהֶם לְנָשִׁים, לֹא מָצְאוּ חֶפֶץ בְּהַתְנַהּגוֹת אֲבוֹתֵיהֶם, וְלֹא חָפְצוּ לְהִקְרָא עוֹד בְּשֵׁמָם; עַל כֵּן קָרְאוּ עַצְמָם בְּשֵׁם נְפִי, בְּעֵבֹר יִקְרָאוּ בְּנֵי נְפִי וַיִּחְשְׁבוּ בְּמִסְפַּר הַנִּקְרָאִים נְפִיִּים.
- וְכָל עַם זְרַעְחֶמְלָה נִחְשְׁבוּ עִם הַנְּפִיִּים, יַעַן אֲשֶׁר לֹא יָשָׁב אִישׁ עַל כֵּס הַמְּלוּכָה, בְּלִתִּי אִם יוֹצְאֵי חֻלְצֵי נְפִי.
- וְהָיָה כְּכָלוֹת מוֹשִׁיעַ לְדַבֵּר אֶל הָעָם וּלְקָרֵא לְפָנָיו, הוּא חָפֵץ כִּי גַם עֲלָמָא יְדַבֵּר אֶל הָעָם.
- וְעֲלָמָא דִּבֶּר אֲלֵיהֶם, וְהֵם מְכַנְּסִים בְּמַחֲנוֹת; וְהוּא הֵלֵךְ מִן הַמַּחֲנֶה הָאֶחָד אֶל מַשְׁנֶהוּ, וְהִסְיִף בְּאַזְנֵי הָעָם דְּבַר תְּשׁוּבָה וְאַמּוּנָה בִּיהוָה.
- וְהוּא הוֹכִיחַ אֶת עַם לְמַחִי וְאֶת עַמִּיתֵיו, וְאֵת כָּל הַנִּצָּלִים מִשְׁעֶבֶד, כִּי יִזְכְּרוּ כִּי יְהוָה הוּא אֲשֶׁר הִצִּילָם.
- וְאַחֵר אֲשֶׁר לָמַד עֲלָמָא אֶת הָעָם דְּבָרִים רַבִּים, וּכְכָלוֹתוֹ לְדַבֵּר אֲלֵיהֶם, חָפֵץ הָמְלִיךְ לְמַחִי לְהַטְבִּיל וְגַם כָּל עַמּוֹ חָפֵץ לְהַטְבִּיל.
- לְכֵן נִכְנַס עֲלָמָא אֶל הַמַּיִם וְהִטְבִּילָם. אַכֵּן, הוּא הִטְבִּילָם בְּדֶרֶךְ אֲשֶׁר הִטְבִּיל אֶת עַמִּיתֵיו בְּמֵי מוֹרְמוֹן. וְכָל אֲשֶׁר הִטְבִּילָם הָיוּ לְחֻבְרֵי כְּנִסְיַת אֱלֹהִים, וְהֵם הַמֵּאֲמִינִים בְּדְבָרֵי עֲלָמָא.
- וְהָמְלִיךְ מוֹשִׁיעַ נָתַן לְעֲלָמָא לְיִסַּד כְּנִסְיֹת בְּכָל אֶרֶץ זְרַעְחֶמְלָה; וְהוּא נָתַן בִּידוֹ לְהִסְמִיךְ כֹּהֲנִים וּמוֹרִים לְכָל כְּנִסְיָהּ.
- וְהַדְּבָר הַזֶּה נַעֲשֶׂה, מִרַב מִסְפַּר הָאֲנָשִׁים, כִּי לֹא יָכֹל מוֹרֶה אֶחָד לְלַמְּדָם; וְאִף לֹא יָכֹל הַכָּל לִשְׁמָע אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים בְּאַסְפַּת עִם אַחַת.
- עַל כֵּן הִתְאַסְפוּ בְּאַסְפוֹת נִפְרָדוֹת, אֲשֶׁר נִקְרָאוּ כְּנִסְיֹת; בְּכָל כְּנִסְיָהּ הָיוּ לָהֶם כֹּהֲנִים

## מוֹשִׁיעַ כה:כב-כו:ז

- ומורִים, וְכָל כֹּהֵן הִטִּיף אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים  
כְּפִי אֲשֶׁר נָתַן לוֹ מִפִּי עֲלְמָא.
- וְכֹה, אִף כִּי רַבּוֹת הָיוּ כְּנִסְיֹתֵיהֶם,  
הָיוּ הַכֹּל כְּנִסְיָה אַחַת, כְּנִסְיַת אֱלֹהִים;  
וְלֹא הִטִּיפוּ דְּבַר בְּכָל הַכְּנִסְיֹת, כִּי אִם  
תְּשׁוּבָה וְאֵמוּנָה בְּאֱלֹהִים.
- שִׁבְעַת כְּנִסְיֹת הָיוּ בְּאַרְצָא זֶרַחְהִמְלָה; וְכָל אֲשֶׁר  
הִפְצָא לְקַרְא עָלֵיו אֶת שֵׁם הַמָּשִׁיחַ אוֹ אֶת שֵׁם  
אֱלֹהִים, הִסְתַּפַּח לְכְנִסְיֹת אֱלֹהִים.
- וְהֵם נִקְרְאוּ עִם אֱלֹהִים: וַיְהוּה שָׁפַר עֲלֵיהֶם  
אֶת רוּחוֹ, וְהֵם בִּרְכוּ וַיְהַלִּיחוּ בְּאַרְצָא.
- 22 And thus, notwithstanding there being many churches they were all one church, yea, even the church of God; for there was nothing preached in all the churches except it were repentance and faith in God.
- 23 And now there were seven churches in the land of Zarahemla. And it came to pass that whosoever were desirous to take upon them the name of Christ, or of God, they did join the churches of God;
- 24 And they were called the people of God. And the Lord did pour out his Spirit upon them, and they were blessed, and prospered in the land.

## כו

## 26

- וְהָיוּ רַבִּים מִבְּנֵי הַדּוֹר הַצֶּעִיר אֲשֶׁר לֹא יָכְלוּ  
לְהִבִּין אֶת דְּבַר הַמֶּלֶךְ בְּנִימִין, כִּי הָיוּ יְלָדִים  
קְטַנִּים בְּעֵת אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר אֵל עֲמוֹ; וְהֵם לֹא קִבְּלוּ  
עֲלֵיהֶם אֶת מִסְרַת אֲבוֹתֵיהֶם;
- וְהֵם לֹא הֶאֱמִינוּ בְּאֲשֶׁר נֶאֱמַר עַל תְּחִיַּת  
הַמֵּתִים וְאִף לֹא הֶאֱמִינוּ בְּבֹא הַמָּשִׁיחַ.
- וּמִפְּנֵי חֶסֶר אֱמוּנָתָם לֹא יָכְלוּ לְהִבִּין אֶת דְּבַר  
אֱלֹהִים, וְהֵם הִקְשׁוּ אֶת לְבָם.
- וְהֵם לֹא אָבוּ לְהִטְבִּיל, וְאִף לֹא לְהִסְתַּפַּח  
אֶל הַכְּנִסְיָה. וְהֵם הָיוּ עִם נִבְדָּל בְּאֱמוּנָתָם,  
וְכֵן נִשְׁאָרוּ לְעַד, בְּבִשָּׁר וּבְחַטָּא, כִּי לֹא  
קָרְאוּ אֵל יְהוּה אֱלֹהֵיהֶם.
- וּבִימֵי שְׁלֹטוֹן מוֹשִׁיעַ, לֹא הִיגַע מִסְפָּרָם  
אִף לְמַחְצִית מִסְפָּר עִם אֱלֹהִים. אִף מִפְּנֵי  
הַמַּחְלֻקוֹת בֵּין חֲבֵרֵי הַכְּנִסְיָה גָּדַל מִסְפָּרָם.
- כִּי הֵם רַמּוּ רַבִּים מִן הַכְּנִסְיָה בְּדִבְרֵי חֲלָקוֹת  
וְהַחֲטִיאוּם בְּחַטָּאִים רַבִּים; לָכֵן הִכָּרַח הָיָה כִּי  
תִנָּזֵר הַכְּנִסְיָה בְּחַטָּאִים אֲשֶׁר הָיוּ חֲבֵרֶיהָ.
- וְהֵם הוּבְּאוּ לִפְנֵי הַכֹּהֲנִים. אָכֵן, הַמּוֹרִים  
מִסְרוּם אֶל הַכֹּהֲנִים וְהַכֹּהֲנִים הֵבִיאוּם לִפְנֵי  
עֲלְמָא, אֲשֶׁר הָיָה הַכֹּהֵן הַגָּדוֹל.
- 1 Now it came to pass that there were many of the rising generation that could not understand the words of king Benjamin, being little children at the time he spake unto his people; and they did not believe the tradition of their fathers.
- 2 They did not believe what had been said concerning the resurrection of the dead, neither did they believe concerning the coming of Christ.
- 3 And now because of their unbelief they could not understand the word of God; and their hearts were hardened.
- 4 And they would not be baptized; neither would they join the church. And they were a separate people as to their faith, and remained so ever after, even in their carnal and sinful state; for they would not call upon the Lord their God.
- 5 And now in the reign of Mosiah they were not half so numerous as the people of God; but because of the dissensions among the brethren they became more numerous.
- 6 For it came to pass that they did deceive many with their flattering words, who were in the church, and did cause them to commit many sins; therefore it became expedient that those who committed sin, that were in the church, should be admonished by the church.
- 7 And it came to pass that they were brought before the priests, and delivered up unto the priests by the teachers; and the priests brought them before Alma, who was the high priest.

## מוֹשִׁיעַ כּוֹחַ-כ

- 8 Now king Mosiah had given Alma the authority over the church.  
וְהַמֶּלֶךְ מוֹשִׁיעַ נָתַן לְעֹלְמָא אֶת הַסְּמִכוֹת  
עַל הַכְּנִסְיָהּ.
- 9 And it came to pass that Alma did not know concerning them; but there were many witnesses against them; yea, the people stood and testified of their iniquity in abundance.  
וְעֹלְמָא לֹא יָדַע עַל אֲדוּתֵיהֶם, אֶף רַבִּים הָיוּ  
הַמַּעֲיָדִים עֲלֵיהֶם; אַכֵּן אַנְשִׁים הָרַבּוּ לְעַמּוֹד  
וּלְהָעִיד עַל עֲוֹנָם.
- 10 Now there had not any such thing happened before in the church; therefore Alma was troubled in his spirit, and he caused that they should be brought before the king.  
דָּבָר אֲשֶׁר כָּזָה לֹא קָרָה בַּכְּנִסְיָהּ מֵעוֹדָה; לָכֵן  
הָיָה עֹלְמָא שָׂרוּי בַּמְצוּקָת רֹחַ וְהוּא הוֹרָה  
לְהַבִּיאֵם לִפְנֵי הַמֶּלֶךְ.
- 11 And he said unto the king: Behold, here are many whom we have brought before thee, who are accused of their brethren; yea, and they have been taken in divers iniquities. And they do not repent of their iniquities; therefore we have brought them before thee, that thou mayest judge them according to their crimes.  
וְהוּא אָמַר אֶל הַמֶּלֶךְ: הִנֵּה, רַבִּים הָאֲנָשִׁים  
אֲשֶׁר הֵבֵאנוּ לְפָנֶיךָ, הַמֵּאֲשָׁמִים בְּיַדֵּי אַחֵיהֶם  
וְהֵם נִמְצְאוּ אֲשָׁמִים בַּמַּעֲשֵׂי עוֹן שׁוֹנִים,  
וְאֵינָם נִחָמִים מֵעֲוֹנָם; לָכֵן הֵבֵאנוּם לְפָנֶיךָ  
לְמַעַן תִּשְׁפֹּטֵם כַּפְּשָׁעָם.
- 12 But king Mosiah said unto Alma: Behold, I judge them not; therefore I deliver them into thy hands to be judged.  
אֶף הַמֶּלֶךְ מוֹשִׁיעַ אָמַר אֶל עֹלְמָא: לֹא  
אֲשַׁפֵּטֶם, כִּי הִנְנִי מוֹסְרָם לְיָדֶיךָ לְשַׁפֵּטֶם.
- 13 And now the spirit of Alma was again troubled; and he went and inquired of the Lord what he should do concerning this matter, for he feared that he should do wrong in the sight of God.  
וְהָיָה עֹלְמָא שָׂרוּי בַּמְצוּקָת רֹחַ שֵׁנִית; וְהוּא  
הִלָּךְ לְשָׂאֵל אֶת פִּי יְהוָה מָה הַדָּבָר אֲשֶׁר עָלָיו  
לַעֲשׂוֹת, כִּי יֵרָא לַעֲשׂוֹת הָרַע בְּעֵינֵי אֱלֹהִים.
- 14 And it came to pass that after he had poured out his whole soul to God, the voice of the Lord came to him, saying:  
וְהָיָה אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר שָׁפַף אֶת כָּל נַפְשׁוֹ לַפָּנִי  
אֱלֹהִים, דִּבֶּר אֵלָיו קוֹל יְהוָה לֵאמֹר:
- 15 Blessed art thou, Alma, and blessed are they who were baptized in the waters of Mormon. Thou art blessed because of thy exceeding faith in the words alone of my servant Abinadi.  
בָּרוּךְ אַתָּה, עֹלְמָא, וּבְרוּכִים הַמְּטַבְּלִים בְּמִי  
מוֹרְמוֹן. בָּרוּךְ אַתָּה עַל אֱמוּנָתְךָ הָרַבָּה בְּדִבְרֵי  
עַבְדִּי אַבִּינָדִי לְבָדֵם.
- 16 And blessed are they because of their exceeding faith in the words alone which thou hast spoken unto them.  
וּבְרוּכִים הֵם, עַל אֱמוּנָתָם הָרַבָּה בְּדִבְרֶיךָ  
לְבָדֵם, אֲשֶׁר אַתָּה דִּבַּרְתָּ אֲלֵיהֶם.
- 17 And blessed art thou because thou hast established a church among this people; and they shall be established, and they shall be my people.  
וּבְרוּךְ אַתָּה עַל אֲשֶׁר כּוֹנֵנְתָּ כְּנִסְיָהּ בְּקֶרֶב  
הָעָם הַזֶּה; וְהֵם יִכּוֹנְנוּ וְיִהְיוּ עַמִּי.
- 18 Yea, blessed is this people who are willing to bear my name; for in my name shall they be called; and they are mine.  
אָכֵן, בָּרוּךְ הָעָם הַזֶּה הַחֹפֵץ לְשֵׂאת אֶת שְׁמִי,  
כִּי בְשִׁמִּי יִקְרָאוּ; וְלִי הֵמָּה.
- 19 And because thou hast inquired of me concerning the transgressor, thou art blessed.  
וְעַן אֲשֶׁר שְׁאֲלַתְנִי עַל אֲדוּת הַפּוֹשְׁעִים,  
מִבְּרֹךְ אַתָּה.
- 20 Thou art my servant; and I covenant with thee that thou shalt have eternal life; and thou shalt serve me and go forth in my name, and shalt gather together my sheep.  
עַבְדִּי אַתָּה; וּבְרִיתִי עִמָּךְ אֲשֶׁר יִהְיֶה לְךָ  
חַיֵּי עוֹלָם. הִנֵּה, תַּעֲבָדְנִי וְתִלָּךְ בְּשִׁמִּי וְתִקְבֹּץ  
אֶת צֹאנִי.

- 21 And he that will hear my voice shall be my sheep; and him shall ye receive into the church, and him will I also receive.  
 וְכָל הַשּׁוֹמֵעַ בְּקוֹלִי יִהְיֶה; אוֹתוֹ תִּקְבְּלֶה אֶל הַכְּנִסְיָהּ, וְגַם אֲנִי אֶקְבֹּלֶנּוּ.
- 22 For behold, this is my church; whosoever is baptized shall be baptized unto repentance. And whomsoever ye receive shall believe in my name; and him will I freely forgive.  
 כִּי הִנֵּה זֹאת כְּנִסְיָתִי; כָּל הַמִּטְבָּל, יִטְבַּל לְשֵׁם תְּשׁוּבָה. וְכָל אֲשֶׁר תִּקְבְּלוּ יֵאֱמִין בְּשִׁמִּי, וְלוֹ מִרְצוֹנִי אֶתֶן אֶת סְלִיחָתִי.
- 23 For it is I that taketh upon me the sins of the world; for it is I that hath created them; and it is I that granteth unto him that believeth unto the end a place at my right hand.  
 כִּי אֲנִי הוּא אֲשֶׁר מִקְבֵּל עָלַי אֶת חַטָּאֵי הָעוֹלָם; כִּי אֲנִי בְּרָאֲתִים; וְאֲנִי הוּא הַמּוֹשִׁיעַ לִימִינִי אֶת אֲשֶׁר יֵאֱמִין עַד הַקֵּץ.
- 24 For behold, in my name are they called; and if they know me they shall come forth, and shall have a place eternally at my right hand.  
 כִּי הִנֵּה, בְּשִׁמִּי הֵם נִקְרָאִים, וְאִם הֵם יוֹדְעִים אוֹתִי, הֵם יָבוֹאוּ, וְלִימִינִי מוֹשֵׁב נִכּוֹן לָהֶם עַד עוֹלָם.
- 25 And it shall come to pass that when the second trump shall sound then shall they that never knew me come forth and shall stand before me.  
 וּבְהִשְׁמַע קוֹל הַשּׁוֹפָר הַשֵּׁנִי, יָבוֹאוּ לְעַמּוּד לִפְנֵי כָל אֲשֶׁר מֵעוֹדָם לֹא יָדְעוּנִי.
- 26 And then shall they know that I am the Lord their God, that I am their Redeemer; but they would not be redeemed.  
 אָז יֵדְעוּ כִּי אֲנִי יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵיהֶם, כִּי אֲנִי גּוֹאֲלָם, אַךְ הֵם לֹא אָבוּ לְהִנָּצֵל.
- 27 And then I will confess unto them that I never knew them; and they shall depart into everlasting fire prepared for the devil and his angels.  
 אָז אוֹדִיעֵם כִּי מֵעוֹלָם לֹא יָדַעְתִּים. וְהֵם יִבְדְּלוּ אֶל אֵשׁ הַתֵּמִיד אֲשֶׁר הוֹכְנָה לְשָׂטָן וּלְמַלְאָכָיו.
- 28 Therefore I say unto you, that he that will not hear my voice, the same shall ye not receive into my church, for him I will not receive at the last day.  
 לָכֵן אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָךְ, אֶת אֲשֶׁר לֹא יִשְׁמַע בְּקוֹלִי לֹא תִקְבְּלוּ אֶל כְּנִסְיָתִי, כִּי לֹא אֶקְבֹּלֶנּוּ בַּיּוֹם הַהִיחָרוֹן.
- 29 Therefore I say unto you, Go; and whosoever transgresseth against me, him shall ye judge according to the sins which he has committed; and if he confess his sins before thee and me, and repenteth in the sincerity of his heart, him shall ye forgive, and I will forgive him also.  
 לָכֵן אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָךְ: לֵךְ וְכָל אֲשֶׁר יִפְשַׁע בִּי, אוֹתוֹ תִשְׁפֹּט כְּפִי חַטָּאֵיו אֲשֶׁר חָטָא; וְאִם יִתְוֹדֶה עַל חַטָּאֵיו לִפְנֶיךָ וּלְפָנַי, וְיִנָּחֵם בְּתֵם לְבוֹ, סְלוּחַ תִּסְלַח לוֹ, וְכֵן אֶסְלַח לוֹ אֲנִי.
- 30 Yea, and as often as my people repent will I forgive them their trespasses against me.  
 וְכָל אֲשֶׁר יָבוֹאוּ עִמִּי בְּתְשׁוּבָה, אֶסְלַח לָהֶם עַל חַטָּאֵיהֶם בִּי.
- 31 And ye shall also forgive one another your trespasses; for verily I say unto you, he that forgiveth not his neighbor's trespasses when he says that he repents, the same hath brought himself under condemnation.  
 וְגַם אַתֶּם תִּסְלְחוּ אִישׁ לְרֵעֵהוּ עַל חַטָּאֵיהֶם; אַךְ, הִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם כִּי אֲשֶׁר לֹא יִסְלַח לְרֵעֵהוּ עַל חַטָּאֵיו בְּעֵת אֲמָרוֹ כִּי נָחַם עָלֵיהֶם, אֲשֶׁם הוּא מְבִיא עַל עַצְמוֹ.
- 32 Now I say unto you, Go; and whosoever will not repent of his sins the same shall not be numbered among my people; and this shall be observed from this time forward.  
 וְעַתָּה הִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לָךְ: לֵךְ וְכָל אֲשֶׁר לֹא יִנָּחֵם עַל חַטָּאֵיו, לֹא יִמְנָה בְּמִסְפַּר עַמִּי; זֹאת תִּשְׁמְרוּ לַעֲשׂוֹת מִן הַיּוֹם וְהַלָּאָה.



- 33 And it came to pass when Alma had heard these words he wrote them down that he might have them, and that he might judge the people of that church according to the commandments of God.
- וְכָשֶׁמֶעַ עֲלָמָא אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, הוּא כָתַבָם לֹא לְזִכְרוֹן, וְלִמְעַן יִשְׁפֹּט אֶת אַנְשֵׁי הַכְּנִסְיָה עַל פִּי מִצְוֹת אֱלֹהִים.
- 34 And it came to pass that Alma went and judged those that had been taken in iniquity, according to the word of the Lord.
- וְהָלַךְ עֲלָמָא וְשִׁפֹּט אֶת הָאֲנָשִׁים אֲשֶׁר נִמְצְאוּ פְּוַעֲלֵי אָוֹן, כַּאֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר יְהוָה.
- 35 And whosoever repented of their sins and did confess them, them he did number among the people of the church;
- וְכָל אֲשֶׁר נִחְמוּ מִחַטֹּאתֵיהֶם וְהִתְוֹדוּ עֲלֵיהֶם, אוֹתָם מִנֵּה בְּאֲנָשֵׁי הַכְּנִסְיָה;
- 36 And those that would not confess their sins and repent of their iniquity, the same were not numbered among the people of the church, and their names were blotted out.
- וְאֲשֶׁר לֹא הִתְוֹדוּ עַל חַטֹּאתֵיהֶם וְלֹא נִחְמוּ מִעֲוֹנָם, לֹא נִמְנוּ בְּקֶרֶב אַנְשֵׁי הַכְּנִסְיָה, וְשִׁמוֹתֵיהֶם נִמְחוּ.
- 37 And it came to pass that Alma did regulate all the affairs of the church; and they began again to have peace and to prosper exceedingly in the affairs of the church, walking circumspectly before God, receiving many, and baptizing many.
- וְעֲלָמָא הָיָה מְסַדֵּר אֶת כָּל עֲנִינֵי הַכְּנִסְיָה; וְהֵם שָׁבוּ לְחַיִּית בְּשָׁלוֹם וּלְהַצְלִיחַ מְאֹד בְּעֲנִינֵי הַכְּנִסְיָה. וְהֵם הָלְכוּ בְּזִהְרִיּוֹת לִפְנֵי אֱלֹהִים, וְקִבְּלוּ רַבִּים וְהִטְבִּילוּ רַבִּים.
- 38 And now all these things did Alma and his fellow laborers do who were over the church, walking in all diligence, teaching the word of God in all things, suffering all manner of afflictions, being persecuted by all those who did not belong to the church of God.
- כָּל הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה נַעֲשׂוּ בְיַד עֲלָמָא וּבְיַד הָעֹמְלִים עִמּוֹ, אֲשֶׁר הָיוּ מְפַקְדִּים עַל הַכְּנִסְיָה, בְּהִלָּכָם בְּרַב שִׁקִּידָה, וּבְהוֹרָאָה אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים בְּכָל, בְּהִתְיַסָּרָם בְּכָל מִינֵי יְסוּרִים בְּהִרְדָּפָם בְּיַד כָּל אֲשֶׁר לֹא הָיוּ חֲבֵרֵי כְּנִסְיַת אֱלֹהִים.
- 39 And they did admonish their brethren; and they were also admonished, everyone by the word of God, according to his sins, or to the sins which he had committed, being commanded of God to pray without ceasing, and to give thanks in all things.
- וְהֵם הוֹכִיחוּ אֶת חֲבֵרֵיהֶם בְּכְנִסְיָה, אִם גַּם קִבְּלוּ תוֹכַחָה, כָּל אֶחָד מֵהֶם, בְּדִבְרֵי אֱלֹהִים, אִישׁ כְּפִי חַטֹּאתָיו אוֹ הָרָעוֹת אֲשֶׁר עָשָׂה; וְהֵם צִוּוּ בְּדִבְרֵי אֱלֹהִים לְהִתְפַּלֵּל בְּלֹא לְחַדֵּל וְלִתַּת תּוֹדָה בְּכָל.

## כז

## 27

- 1 And now it came to pass that the persecutions which were inflicted on the church by the unbelievers became so great that the church began to murmur, and complain to their leaders concerning the matter; and they did complain to Alma. And Alma laid the case before their king, Mosiah. And Mosiah consulted with his priests.
- וְהָיָה כִּי הִרְדִּיפוֹת אֲשֶׁר רָדְפוּ חֲסְרֵי הָאֱמוּנָה אֶת אַנְשֵׁי הַכְּנִסְיָה גָּבְרוּ עַד אֲשֶׁר הִחֲלָה הַכְּנִסְיָה לְהִתְלוֹנֵן וּלְהִתְאָוֶן עַל כֵּךְ בָּאֲזִי מִנְהִיגֵיהֶם וְאֵלֶּה הִתְלוֹנְנוּ בָּאֲזִי עֲלָמָא; וְעֲלָמָא הֵבִיא אֶת עֲנִינָם לִפְנֵי מֶלֶכָם, מוֹשִׁיעַ; וּמוֹשִׁיעַ נֹעֵץ עִם כֹּהֲנָיו.
- 2 And it came to pass that king Mosiah sent a proclamation throughout the land round about that there should not any unbeliever persecute any of those who belonged to the church of God.
- אִז שָׁלַח הַמֶּלֶךְ מוֹשִׁיעַ קוֹל בְּכָל הָאֶרֶץ סְבִיב וְאָסַר עַל כָּל חֲסְרֵי הָאֱמוּנָה לְרַדֵּף אֶת כָּל חֲבֵרֵי כְּנִסְיַת אֱלֹהִים.

- וְהָיָה צו חֲמור בְּכָל הַכְּנִסִּיּוֹת, אֲשֶׁר לֹא תִהְיֶינָה רְדִיפּוֹת בֵּינֵיהֶם, וְכִי שְׂוִיוֹן יִשְׁרָר בֵּין כָּל הָאָנָשִׁים;
- וְכִי לֹא יִתְנוּ לְגָאוֹה וּלְהִרְהָרָה לְהַפְרִיעַ אֶת שְׁלוֹמָם, וְכִי יִכְבֹּד כָּל אָדָם אֶת רֵעֵהוּ כְּאֶת עַצְמוֹ, וַיַּעֲבֹד בְּמוֹ יָדָיו לְכַלְכֶּלֶתוֹ.
- אָכֵן, כִּי כָל כֹּהֲנֵיהֶם וּמוֹרִיָּהֶם יַעֲבֹדוּ בְּמוֹ יְדֵיהֶם לְכַלְכֶּלֶתָם, בְּכָל מִקְרָה, זֹלַת בְּמַצְבֵּי מַחֲלָה אוֹ מַחְסוֹר גָּדוֹל. וּבַעֲשׂוֹתָם אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה הֵם הִתְבָּרְכוּ בַּחֲסָדֵי אֱלֹהִים הַרְבֵּים.
- אֲזַי שָׁב שְׁלוֹם רַב אֶל הָאָרֶץ; וּמִסְפַּר הָאָנָשִׁים גָּדָל וַעֲצָם, וְהֵם הִחֲלוּ לַפּוֹץ הַחוּצָה עַל פְּנֵי הָאֲדָמָה, אָכֵן, צָפוֹנָה, דְּרוֹמָה, מְזֻרְחָה וּמַעֲרָבָה, וּלְבָנוֹת עָרִים גְּדוּלוֹת וּכְפָרִים בְּכָל קְצוֹת הָאָרֶץ.
- וַיְהוֶה פָקֵד אוֹתָם וַיַּחֲלִיחֵם, וְהָיוּ לְעַם גָּדוֹל וְעָשִׁיר.
- וּבְנֵי מוֹשִׁיעַ נִמְנוּ עִם חֲסָרֵי הָאֱמוּנָה; וְכֵן אָחַד מִבְּנֵי עֲלָמָא, וְשֵׁמוֹ נִקְרָא עֲלָמָא, כִּשֶׁם אָבִיו, נִמְנָה עִמָּם. אוֹלָם הוּא הָיָה לְאִישׁ רָשָׁע מְאֹד וְעוֹבֵד גִּלּוּלִים. וְהוּא הִרְבָּה מְלִים וְהִרְבָּה דִּבֵּר חֲלָקוֹת אֶל הָאָנָשִׁים; לְכֵן מִשּׁוּם רַבִּים לַעֲשׂוֹת כְּעוֹנוֹתָיו.
- וְהוּא הָיָה לְמַכְשׁוֹל גָּדוֹל לְהַצְלִיחַת כְּנִסִּיּוֹת אֱלֹהִים, בְּגִנְבוֹ אֶת לֵב הָאָנָשִׁים, וְעוֹרֵר מְדוֹן רַב בֵּינֵיהֶם, וְנָתַן פֶּתַח לְאוֹיֵב אֱלֹהִים לְהַפְעִיל אֶת כּוֹחוֹ עֲלֵיהֶם.
- וְהָיָה בְּצֵאתוֹ לְאַבֵּד אֶת כְּנִסִּיּוֹת אֱלֹהִים, וְהוּא הוֹלֵךְ בְּסִטְרָה עִם בְּנֵי מוֹשִׁיעַ לְבַקֵּשׁ לְאַבֵּד אֶת הַכְּנִסִּיָּה, וּלְהַטּוֹת מִדְרָךְ הַיֵּשֶׁר אֶת עִם יְהוָה, וְזֹאת נִגְדָה מִצְוֹת אֱלֹהִים וְאֵף מִצְוֹת הַמֶּלֶךְ,
- וּכְפִי אֲמַרִי לָכֵם, בְּהִלָּכְכֶם מִתְקוֹמָמִים עַל אֱלֹהִים, וְהִנֵּה מֵלָאךְ יְהוָה הוֹפִיעַ לְפָנֵיהֶם; וְהוּא יָרַד, כְּאִלּוּ בְּעָנָן, וַדְּבַר כְּאִלּוּ בְּקוֹל רָעַם, אֲשֶׁר הִחְרִיד אֶת הָאֲדָמָה אֲשֶׁר עָמְדוּ עָלֶיהָ.
- וְכֵן גְּדוּלָה הִיטָה פְּלִיאָתָם, עַד כִּי נָפְלוּ אֶרְצָה וְלֹא הִבִּינוּ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר אֱלֹהִים.
- 3 And there was a strict command throughout all the churches that there should be no persecutions among them, that there should be an equality among all men;
- 4 That they should let no pride nor haughtiness disturb their peace; that every man should esteem his neighbor as himself, laboring with their own hands for their support.
- 5 Yea, and all their priests and teachers should labor with their own hands for their support, in all cases save it were in sickness, or in much want; and doing these things, they did abound in the grace of God.
- 6 And there began to be much peace again in the land; and the people began to be very numerous, and began to scatter abroad upon the face of the earth, yea, on the north and on the south, on the east and on the west, building large cities and villages in all quarters of the land.
- 7 And the Lord did visit them and prosper them, and they became a large and wealthy people.
- 8 Now the sons of Mosiah were numbered among the unbelievers; and also one of the sons of Alma was numbered among them, he being called Alma, after his father; nevertheless, he became a very wicked and an idolatrous man. And he was a man of many words, and did speak much flattery to the people; therefore he led many of the people to do after the manner of his iniquities.
- 9 And he became a great hinderment to the prosperity of the church of God; stealing away the hearts of the people; causing much dissension among the people; giving a chance for the enemy of God to exercise his power over them.
- 10 And now it came to pass that while he was going about to destroy the church of God, for he did go about secretly with the sons of Mosiah seeking to destroy the church, and to lead astray the people of the Lord, contrary to the commandments of God, or even the king—
- 11 And as I said unto you, as they were going about rebelling against God, behold, the angel of the Lord appeared unto them; and he descended as it were in a cloud; and he spake as it were with a voice of thunder, which caused the earth to shake upon which they stood;
- 12 And so great was their astonishment, that they fell to the earth, and understood not the words which he spake unto them.

- 13 And nevertheless he cried again, saying: Alma, arise and stand forth, for why persecutest thou the church of God? For the Lord hath said: This is my church, and I will establish it; and nothing shall overthrow it, save it is the transgression of my people.
- 14 And again, the angel said: Behold, the Lord hath heard the prayers of his people, and also the prayers of his servant, Alma, who is thy father; for he has prayed with much faith concerning thee that thou mightest be brought to the knowledge of the truth; therefore, for this purpose have I come to convince thee of the power and authority of God, that the prayers of his servants might be answered according to their faith.
- 15 And now behold, can ye dispute the power of God? For behold, doth not my voice shake the earth? And can ye not also behold me before you? And I am sent from God.
- 16 Now I say unto thee: Go, and remember the captivity of thy fathers in the land of Helam, and in the land of Nephi; and remember how great things he has done for them; for they were in bondage, and he has delivered them. And now I say unto thee, Alma, go thy way, and seek to destroy the church no more, that their prayers may be answered, and this even if thou wilt of thyself be cast off.
- 17 And now it came to pass that these were the last words which the angel spake unto Alma, and he departed.
- 18 And now Alma and those that were with him fell again to the earth, for great was their astonishment; for with their own eyes they had beheld an angel of the Lord; and his voice was as thunder, which shook the earth; and they knew that there was nothing save the power of God that could shake the earth and cause it to tremble as though it would part asunder.
- 19 And now the astonishment of Alma was so great that he became dumb, that he could not open his mouth; yea, and he became weak, even that he could not move his hands; therefore he was taken by those that were with him, and carried helpless, even until he was laid before his father.
- 20 And they rehearsed unto his father all that had happened unto them; and his father rejoiced, for he knew that it was the power of God.
- 21 And he caused that a multitude should be gathered together that they might witness what the Lord had done for his son, and also for those that were with him.
- אך הוא קרא שנית לאמר: עלמא, קום ועמד על רגליך; למה תרדף את כנסיית אלהים? כי כה אמר יהוה: זאת כנסייתי, ואני אכוננה; לא יהרסנה דבר, בלתי חטאי עמי.
- והמלאך הוסיף לאמר: הנה, שמע יהוה את תפלות עמו, אף שמע את תפלות עבדו, עלמא, הוא אביך, כי הוא התפלל עליך באמונה רבה, למען תתודע אל דעת האמת. לכן, לתכלית הזאת באתי לשכנעך כי לאלהים העז והמשרה, למען יענו תפלות עבדיו, כפי אמונתם.
- והנה, התוכל לסתר את כח אלהים? האין קולי מחריד את האדמה? האין יכול אף לראותני לפניה? ומאת אלהים אני נשלחתי.
- והנני אומר אליך: לך, וזכר את גלות אבותיך בארץ חילם ובארץ נפי; וזכר כי גדולות עשה למענם; כי הם היו משעבדים והוא גאלם. והנני אומר אליך, עלמא: לך לדרךך ואל תבקש עוד לאבד את הכנסייה, יען אשר יענו תפלותיהם, אף אם חפצך כי תנדה.
- והיו אלה דברי המלאך האחרונים אשר דבר אל עלמא בסתרם לכתו ממנו.
- ועלמא והאנשים אשר עמו נפלו ארצה שנית, כי גדולה היתה פליאתם, יען אשר במו עיניהם ראו מלאך יהוה, וקולו כקול הרעם אשר החריד את האדמה; והם ידעו כי אין דבר, מלבד כח אלהים, היכול להחריד את האדמה ולהרעידנה כאלו תבקע.
- וכה רבה היתה פליאת עלמא, עד כי נאלם ולא יכל לפתח את פיו. והוא נחלש, עד כי לא יכול היה להניע את ידיו. על כן לקחוהו האנשים אשר עמו, ונשאווהו חסר אונים, והניחוהו לפני אביו.
- והם ספרו לאביו את כל הקורות אותם; ואביו שמח כי ידע כי כח אלהים היה זה.
- והוא הורה לאסוף המון רב למען יחזו באשר עשה יהוה בעבור בנו ובעבור אלה אשר היו עמו.

- והוא קרא את הכהנים להאסף יחדו. והם צמו והתפללו אל יהוה אלהיהם, כי יפתח את פי עלמא וידבר, וכי ישוב אונו אל איברי גופו, ולמען יפקחו עיני האנשים לראות ולהבין את טוב אלהים ואת תפארתו.
- 22 And he caused that the priests should assemble themselves together; and they began to fast, and to pray to the Lord their God that he would open the mouth of Alma, that he might speak, and also that his limbs might receive their strength—that the eyes of the people might be opened to see and know of the goodness and glory of God.
- והיה אחר אשר צמו והתפללו שני ימים ושני לילות, שב כח עלמא אל איבריו, והוא קם ופתח את פיו ודבר אליהם דברי נחמה.
- 23 And it came to pass after they had fasted and prayed for the space of two days and two nights, the limbs of Alma received their strength, and he stood up and began to speak unto them, bidding them to be of good comfort:
- והוא אמר אליהם: נחמתי על חטאי ויהוה גאלני; הנה נולדתי ברוח הקדש.
- 24 For, said he, I have repented of my sins, and have been redeemed of the Lord; behold I am born of the Spirit.
- ויהוה אמר לי: אל תשתומם על פי כל בני האדם צריכים להולד שנית; אכן, על כל איש ואשה, אמה משפחה, לשון ועם להולד מאלהים; אכן, להנאל מאלהים, ממצבם בבשר והיותם נשלים, ולהפך להיות צדיקים, בניו ובנותיו.
- 25 And the Lord said unto me: Marvel not that all mankind, yea, men and women, all nations, kindreds, tongues and people, must be born again; yea, born of God, changed from their carnal and fallen state, to a state of righteousness, being redeemed of God, becoming his sons and daughters;
- כה הם הופכים בריות חדשות, אך אם לא יעשו כן, לא יוכלו בשום אופן לרשת את מלכות אלהים.
- 26 And thus they become new creatures; and unless they do this, they can in nowise inherit the kingdom of God.
- אני אומר לכם, כי אם לא יהיה כדבר הזה, נגזר עליהם להיות מנדים. זאת ידוע ידעתי, כי אף אני כמעט נדיתי.
- 27 I say unto you, unless this be the case, they must be cast off; and this I know, because I was like to be cast off.
- ואולם, אחר עברי במצוקה רבה, אחר הנחמי על חטאי, כמעט עד מות, ראה יהוה לנכון, ברב רחמי, לחטפני משרפת תמיד, ומאלהים אני נולד.
- 28 Nevertheless, after wading through much tribulations, repenting nigh unto death, the Lord in mercy hath seen fit to snatch me out of an everlasting burning, and I am born of God.
- נפשי נגאלה מראש התרעלה ומפבלי העוון. הייתי במעמקי חשכת תהום, ועתה אור אלהים הנפלא לנגד עיני. נפשי נלחצה בענויי נצח; אך אני נחטפתי ואין עוד מכאוב לנפשי.
- 29 My soul hath been redeemed from the gall of bitterness and bonds of iniquity. I was in the darkest abyss; but now I behold the marvelous light of God. My soul was racked with eternal torment; but I am snatched, and my soul is pained no more.
- מאסתי בגואלי וכחשתי בדברי אבותינו; אך למען יראו כי בוא יבוא, וכי הוא זוכר כל בריה מבריאתו, הוא יודע לכל.
- 30 I rejected my Redeemer, and denied that which had been spoken of by our fathers; but now that they may foresee that he will come, and that he remembereth every creature of his creating, he will make himself manifest unto all.
- אכן, כל ברך תכרע וכל לשון תתודה לפניו. אכן, ביום האחרון, בעמד כל האדם להשפט לפניו, אז יתודו כי הוא האלהים; אז יתודו
- 31 Yea, every knee shall bow, and every tongue confess before him. Yea, even at the last day, when all men shall stand to be judged of him, then shall they confess that he is God; then shall they confess, who

החיים בעולם בלא האלהים, כי צודק דינם  
להענש ענש אין קץ; והם יזעזעו וירעדו  
וירתעו ממבט עינו החוקרת כל.

live without God in the world, that the judgment of an everlasting  
punishment is just upon them; and they shall quake, and tremble, and  
shrink beneath the glance of his all-searching eye.

ומן היום ההוא והלאה החל עלמא, וכן אלה  
אשר היו עמו בעת הופיע המלאך לפניהם,  
ללמד את העם; והם סובבו בכל הארץ  
והפיצו בכל העם את הדברים אשר שמעו  
וראו, והטיפו את דבר אלהים ברב מצוקה,  
כי רדפום קשות חסרי האמונה ואף הכום  
רבים מהם.

32 And now it came to pass that Alma began from this time forward  
to teach the people, and those who were with Alma at the time the  
angel appeared unto them, traveling round about through all the land,  
publishing to all the people the things which they had heard and seen,  
and preaching the word of God in much tribulation, being greatly  
persecuted by those who were unbelievers, being smitten by many  
of them.

על אף זאת, הם חלקו נחמה רבה לחברי  
הכנסייה, חזקו את אמונתם, והוכיחו בסבלנות  
ובעמל רב לשמירת מצוות אלהים.

33 But notwithstanding all this, they did impart much consolation to the  
church, confirming their faith, and exhorting them with long-suffering  
and much travail to keep the commandments of God.

וארבעה מהם היו בני מושיע; ושמותיהם:  
עמון, אהרן, אומנר וחמני: אלה שמות  
בני מושיע.

34 And four of them were the sons of Mosiah; and their names were  
Ammon, and Aaron, and Omner, and Himni; these were the names of  
the sons of Mosiah.

הם עברו בכל ארץ זרחמלה ובקרב  
כל העם אשר תחת שלטון המלך מושיע,  
והתאמצו בקנאותם לתקן את כל הפגע אשר  
הביאו על הכנסייה, והתודו על כל חטאייהם,  
והשמיעו את כל אשר ראו עיניהם, ובארו  
את הנבואות ואת כתבי הקודש לכל אשר  
הפצו לשמעם.

35 And they traveled throughout all the lands of Zarahemla, and among  
all the people who were under the reign of king Mosiah, zealously  
striving to repair all the injuries which they had done to the church,  
confessing all their sins, and publishing all the things which they had  
seen, and explaining the prophecies and the scriptures to all who  
desired to hear them.

כה הם היו לכלי שרת ביד אלהים להביא  
רבים לידיעת האמת, אכן, לידיעת גואלים.

36 And thus they were instruments in the hands of God in bringing many  
to the knowledge of the truth, yea, to the knowledge of their Redeemer.

מה ברוכים הם! כי השמיעו שלום, השמיעו  
בשורה טובה, והגידו לעם כי מלך יהוה.

37 And how blessed are they! For they did publish peace; they did publish  
good tidings of good; and they did declare unto the people that the  
Lord reigneth.

## כח

## 28

והיה אחר אשר עשו בני מושיע את כל  
הדברים האלה, הם לקחו עמם מעטים ושבּו  
אל אביהם המלך, ובקשו ממנו כי יתיר להם  
לעלות אל ארץ נפי עם אלה אשר בחרם,  
למען יטיפו את הדברים אשר שמעו, ולמען  
יחלקו את דבר אלהים עם אחיהם הלמנים;

1 Now it came to pass that after the sons of Mosiah had done all these  
things, they took a small number with them and returned to their  
father, the king, and desired of him that he would grant unto them that  
they might, with these whom they had selected, go up to the land of  
Nephi that they might preach the things which they had heard, and that  
they might impart the word of God to their brethren, the Lamanites—

אולי יביאום אל ידיעת יהוה אלהיהם  
וישכנעם בדבר עון אבותיהם; ואולי

2 That perhaps they might bring them to the knowledge of the Lord  
their God, and convince them of the iniquity of their fathers; and that



- יִרְפְּאוּם מִשִּׂנְאָתָם לְפָנֵי, וְיִכְלוּ אִף הֵם  
לְשׂוֹמְחַ בִּיהוּה אֱלֹהֵיהֶם, לְהִיטוֹת רָעִים זֶה לָזֶה,  
וְלִחְדוֹל מִרִיב בְּכָל הָאָרֶץ אֲשֶׁר נָתַן לָהֶם  
יְהוּה אֱלֹהֵיהֶם.
- וְהֵם חָפְצוּ כִּי הִישׁוּעָה תִּשְׁמַע בְּאַנְיָ כָּל בְּרִיָּה.  
יַעַן אֲשֶׁר לֹא יָכְלוּ לְהִנִּיחַ כִּי תֵּאבֹד כָּל נֶפֶשׁ  
אָדָם; אֲכֹן, אִף הַמַּחְשְׁבָה לְבָדָה, כִּי תִסְבֵּל נֶפֶשׁ  
כָּל־שְׂחִי עֲנִי אִין קִץ, הַסִּבָּה לָהֶם חֵיל וְרַעְדָּה.
- כֹּה פָּעַל עֲלֵיהֶם רוּחַ יְהוּה כִּי לִפְנֵי כֵן הָיוּ מִן  
הַמְרָשָׁעִים אֲשֶׁר בְּחוֹטָאִים וִיהוּה, בְּרַחֲמָיו  
אִין קִץ, רָאָה לְנַכּוֹן לְחוֹס עֲלֵיהֶם; וְאוֹלָם הֵם  
סָבְלוּ יִסּוּרֵי נֶפֶשׁ רַבִּים מִפְּנֵי עֲוֹנוֹתֵיהֶם, וּבְרַב  
סָבָלָם פָּחְדוּ כִּי יִגְדּוּ עַד עוֹלָם.
- וְהֵם הִפְצִירוּ בְּאֲבֵיהֶם יָמִים רַבִּים כִּי יֵנִיחַ לָהֶם  
לַעֲלוֹת לְאֶרֶץ נָפִי.
- וְהַמֶּלֶךְ מוֹשִׁיעַ הֵלֵךְ וַשְּׂאֵל אֶת יְהוּה אִם עָלִיו  
לְהִנִּיחַ לְבָנָיו לַעֲלוֹת אֶל הַלְּמָנִים לְהִטִּיף  
בְּקִרְבָם אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים.
- וִיהוּה אָמַר אֶל מוֹשִׁיעַ: תֵּנֶם לַעֲלוֹת, כִּי רַבִּים  
יֵאֱמִינוּ בְּדִבְרֶם וְיִנְחֻלוּ חַיֵּי עוֹלָם; וְאֲנִי אֲצִיל  
אֶת בְּנֵיךְ מִיַּד הַלְּמָנִים.
- וּמוֹשִׁיעַ הִתִּיר לָהֶם לָלֶכֶת וְלַעֲשׂוֹת כַּבְּקִשָׁתָם.
- וְהֵם הִחֲלוּ אֶת מִסְעָם בַּיַּעְרוֹת לַעֲלוֹת לְהִטִּיף  
אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים בְּקִרְבַּ הַלְּמָנִים; וְאֲנִי אֲסַפֵּר  
אֶת הַקּוּרוֹת אוֹתָם בְּהַמְשָׁךְ.
- וְלַמֶּלֶךְ מוֹשִׁיעַ לֹא הָיָה אִישׁ לְהַעֲבִיר אֵלָיו אֶת  
הַמְּלוּכָה, כִּי אִף אֶחָד מִבְּנָיו לֹא רָצָה לְקַבֵּל  
עָלָיו אֶת הַמְּמֻלָּכָה.
- עַל כֵּן הוּא לָקַח אֶת כְּתָבֵי הַזְכָּרוֹנוֹת  
הַחֲרוּטִים עַל גְּבֵי לוחות נְחֹשֶׁת הַקָּלֵל, וְגַם  
אֶת לוחות נָפִי, וְאֶת כָּל אֲשֶׁר שָׁמַר וְנָצַר  
כְּמִצְוֹת אֱלֹהִים, אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר תִּרְגַּם אֶת לוחות  
הַזָּהָב, אֲשֶׁר מִצָּאוּם אֲנָשִׁי לְמַחִי וְאֲשֶׁר נָתַנוּ  
לוֹ בְּיַד לְמַחִי, וְאַחֵר אֲשֶׁר צִוָּה לְכַתְּבָם;
- perhaps they might cure them of their hatred towards the Nephites,  
that they might also be brought to rejoice in the Lord their God, that  
they might become friendly to one another, and that there should be  
no more contentions in all the land which the Lord their God had  
given them.
- 3 Now they were desirous that salvation should be declared to every  
creature, for they could not bear that any human soul should perish;  
yea, even the very thoughts that any soul should endure endless  
torment did cause them to quake and tremble.
- 4 And thus did the Spirit of the Lord work upon them, for they were  
the very vilest of sinners. And the Lord saw fit in his infinite mercy to  
spare them; nevertheless they suffered much anguish of soul because  
of their iniquities, suffering much and fearing that they should be cast  
off forever.
- 5 And it came to pass that they did plead with their father many days that  
they might go up to the land of Nephi.
- 6 And king Mosiah went and inquired of the Lord if he should let his  
sons go up among the Lamanites to preach the word.
- 7 And the Lord said unto Mosiah: Let them go up, for many shall believe  
on their words, and they shall have eternal life; and I will deliver thy  
sons out of the hands of the Lamanites.
- 8 And it came to pass that Mosiah granted that they might go and do  
according to their request.
- 9 And they took their journey into the wilderness to go up to preach  
the word among the Lamanites; and I shall give an account of their  
proceedings hereafter.
- 10 Now king Mosiah had no one to confer the kingdom upon, for there  
was not any of his sons who would accept of the kingdom.
- 11 Therefore he took the records which were engraven on the plates of  
brass, and also the plates of Nephi, and all the things which he had  
kept and preserved according to the commandments of God, after  
having translated and caused to be written the records which were on  
the plates of gold which had been found by the people of Limhi, which  
were delivered to him by the hand of Limhi;



## מושיע כח:יב-כ

- 12 וְזֹאת עָשָׂה מִפְּנֵי דַאֲגַת עַמּוֹ הָרְבָה, כִּי הֵם חָשְׁקוּ עַד בְּלִי דֵי לְדַעַת עַל אֲדוּת הָאֲנָשִׁים הָהֵם אֲשֶׁר נִשְׁמְדוּ; And this he did because of the great anxiety of his people; for they were desirous beyond measure to know concerning those people who had been destroyed.
- 13 וּמוֹשִׁיעַ תִּרְגַּם אֶת הַכְּתוּבִים עַל לוחות הַזֶּהב עַל יְדֵי שְׁתֵּי הָאֲבָנִים הָהֵן אֲשֶׁר נִקְבְּעוּ בְּשְׁנֵי שׁוּלֵי קֶשֶׁת; And now he translated them by the means of those two stones which were fastened into the two rims of a bow.
- 14 וְהָאֲבָנִים הָאֵלֶּה הָיוּ מוֹכֵנוֹת מִיָּמֵי קֶדֶם וְנִמְסְרוּ מִדּוֹר לְדוֹר לְתַכְלִית תִּרְגוֹם לְשׁוֹנוֹת; Now these things were prepared from the beginning, and were handed down from generation to generation, for the purpose of interpreting languages;
- 15 וְהֵן נִשְׁמְרוּ וְנִנְצְרוּ בְּיַד יְהוָה, לְגִלּוֹת לְכָל יְצוֹר הַנוֹחַל אֶת הָאָרֶץ אֶת עֲוֹנוֹת עַמּוֹ וְתוֹעֲבוֹתָיו; And they have been kept and preserved by the hand of the Lord, that he should discover to every creature who should possess the land the iniquities and abominations of his people;
- 16 וְכֹל אֲשֶׁר הַחֲזִיק בַּדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה נִקְרָא חוֹזֶה, כְּבִימֵי קֶדֶם; And whosoever has these things is called seer, after the manner of old times.
- 17 וּכְכֹלּוֹת מוֹשִׁיעַ לְתִרְגָּם אֶת הַכְּתָבִים הָאֵלֶּה, וְהִנֵּה הֵם סִפְרוּ עַל הָעָם אֲשֶׁר הִשְׁמַד, אַחֲרִיתוֹ בְּהִשְׁמָדָם וְרֵאשִׁיתוֹ בְּבִנְיָן הַמִּגְדָּל הַגְּבוּהָ, בַּעַת אֲשֶׁר בָּלַבַּל יְהוָה אֶת לְשׁוֹנוֹת בְּנֵי הָאָדָם, וְהֵם נִפְצוּ עַל כָּל פְּנֵי הָאָרֶץ, וְאֵף לְפָנָי כֹּן, מֵעַתָּה בְּרִיאַת אָדָם; Now after Mosiah had finished translating these records, behold, it gave an account of the people who were destroyed, from the time that they were destroyed back to the building of the great tower, at the time the Lord confounded the language of the people and they were scattered abroad upon the face of all the earth, yea, and even from that time back until the creation of Adam.
- 18 וְהָיָה כִּי הִסְפּוֹר הָזֶה הִסֵּב לָעָם מוֹשִׁיעַ אֲבָל כְּבֵד, וְלָבָם נִמְלָא יָגוֹן; וְאוֹלָם, הוּא לְמָדָם רַב דַּעַת, וּבְזֹאת שִׂמְחוּ. Now this account did cause the people of Mosiah to mourn exceedingly, yea, they were filled with sorrow; nevertheless it gave them much knowledge, in the which they did rejoice.
- 19 וְהִסְפּוֹר הָזֶה יִכְתָּב בְּהַמְשׁוֹךְ הַדְּבָרִים, כִּי רָאוּ אֲשֶׁר כָּל הָאֲנָשִׁים יֵדְעוּ אֶת דְּבָרֵי הַכְּתוּב בִּסְפּוֹר הָזֶה. And this account shall be written hereafter; for behold, it is expedient that all people should know the things which are written in this account.
- 20 וְעַתָּה, כִּפִּי אָמַרְי לָכֶם, אַחֵר עָשׂוֹת מוֹשִׁיעַ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, הוּא לָקַח אֶת לוחות נְחֹשֶׁת הַקָּלָל, וְאֶת כָּל הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר שָׁמַר, וְהַפְּקִידָם בְּיַד עֲלְמָא בֶן עֲלְמָא; אֲכֹן, אֶת כָּל הַכְּתָבִים וְכֹן אֶת הַמְּבַאָרִים הוּא הַפְּקִיד בְּיַדְיוֹ וְצִוָּהוּ לְשָׁמַר אוֹתָם וּלְצַרְרָם, וְאֵף לְכַתֵּב סֵפֶר זְכוֹרֹן לָעָם, וּלְהַעֲבִיר אֶת הַכְּתָבִים מִדּוֹר לְדוֹר, כִּפִּי אֲשֶׁר נִמְסְרוּ מֵעַתָּה צֵאת לְחֵי מִירוּשָׁלַם. And now, as I said unto you, that after king Mosiah had done these things, he took the plates of brass, and all the things which he had kept, and conferred them upon Alma, who was the son of Alma; yea, all the records, and also the interpreters, and conferred them upon him, and commanded him that he should keep and preserve them, and also keep a record of the people, handing them down from one generation to another, even as they had been handed down from the time that Lehi left Jerusalem.

## כט

## 29

וְהָיָה אַחֵר עֲשׂוֹת מוֹשִׁיעַ אֶת כָּל אֶלֶה, הוּא שָׁלַח אֶת דְּבָרוֹ בְּכָל הָאָרֶץ, אֶל כָּל הָעָם, כִּי חָפֵץ לָדַעַת אֶת רְצוֹנָם בְּאִשֶּׁר לָמִי יְהִיָּה מֶלֶכָם.

וְהָיָה אֵלָיו קוֹל הָעָם לֵאמֹר: רְצוֹנָנוּ כִּי אֶהְרֹן בֶּנְךָ יְהִיָּה לָנוּ מֶלֶךְ וּמוֹשֵׁל.

וַיַּעַן כִּי אֶהְרֹן הָיָה אֲזִי בְּעוֹלָם אֶל אֶרֶץ נָפִי, לֹא יָכַל הַמֶּלֶךְ לְהַעֲבִיר אֵלָיו אֶת הַמְּלוּכָה; וְאֶהְרֹן לֹא רָצָה לְקַבֵּל עָלָיו אֶת הַמְּלוּכָה; וְכֵן שָׁאָר בְּנֵי מוֹשִׁיעַ, אֵף הֵם לֹא אָבוּ לְהִתְמַלֵּךְ.

עַל כֵּן שָׁלַח הַמֶּלֶךְ מוֹשִׁיעַ שְׁנֵית אֶת דְּבָרוֹ אֶל הָעָם, דְּבָר כְּתוּב. וְאֶלֶה הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר נִכְתְּבוּ, לֵאמֹר:

הַקְשִׁיבוּ, עַמִּי, אַחִי, כִּי אֲנִי מְכַבְּדְכֶם כְּאַחִי, חָפְצִי כִּי תִתְּנוּ אֶת לְבַבְכֶם אֶל הַדְּבָר אֲשֶׁר נִקְרָאתֶם לְחַשֵּׁב עָלָיו; כִּי הִנֵּכֶם חָפְצִים בְּמֶלֶךְ.

הִנְנִי מוֹדִיעְכֶם כִּי לְאִשֶּׁר יֵאָתֶה הַמְּלוּכָה כַּמִּשְׁפָּט נִמְנָע לְקַבֵּל עָלָיו אֶת הַמִּשְׁרָה.

וְאֲנִי יִרְאֵתִי אִם יִמְנָה תַּחֲתָיו אִישׁ אַחֵר כֵּן יִפְרְצוּ בֵּינֵיכֶם מִדְּנִים. מִי יוֹדֵעַ, אוֹלֵי יִרְגֹּז בְּנִי, אֲשֶׁר לוֹ הַמְּלוּכָה, וְיִמְשֹׁף אַחֲרָיו חֶלֶק מִן הָעָם הַזֶּה, וְתַחֲלִנָה מַלְחָמוֹת וּמְרִיבוֹת בֵּינֵיכֶם, אֲשֶׁר תּוֹצְאוֹתֵיהֶן שְׁפִיכוֹת דָּמִים רַבִּים וְעוֹתֵת דֶּרֶךְ יְהוָה וְאֲבוֹד נִפְשׁוֹת אֲנָשִׁים רַבִּים.

הִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, הִבֵּה נִתְחַכְּמָה וְנִחְשָׁב עַל הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, כִּי אֵין לָנוּ הִזְכוּת לְהֶאֱבִיד אֶת בְּנֵי, אֵף לֹא לְהֶאֱבִיד אִישׁ אַחֵר, אִם יִמְנָה בְּמִקוֹמוֹ.

וְאִם יָשׁוּב בְּנִי אֶל גִּאְוָתוֹ וְהִבְלִי, וְיִתְחַרֵּט עַל שְׂאֵמֹר, וְיִדְרֹשׁ אֶת זְכוּתוֹ לְכֶס הַמְּלוּכָה, יִחְסִיא הַדְּבָר הַזֶּה אוֹתוֹ וְאֶת הָעָם הַזֶּה רַב חֲסָאָה.

וְעַתָּה, הִבֵּה נִתְחַכְּמָה לְצַפּוֹת אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה וְאֵף לַעֲשׂוֹת לְמַעַן שְׁלוֹם הָעָם הַזֶּה.

1 Now when Mosiah had done this he sent out throughout all the land, among all the people, desiring to know their will concerning who should be their king.

2 And it came to pass that the voice of the people came, saying: We are desirous that Aaron thy son should be our king and our ruler.

3 Now Aaron had gone up to the land of Nephi, therefore the king could not confer the kingdom upon him; neither would Aaron take upon him the kingdom; neither were any of the sons of Mosiah willing to take upon them the kingdom.

4 Therefore king Mosiah sent again among the people; yea, even a written word sent he among the people. And these were the words that were written, saying:

5 Behold, O ye my people, or my brethren, for I esteem you as such, I desire that ye should consider the cause which ye are called to consider—for ye are desirous to have a king.

6 Now I declare unto you that he to whom the kingdom doth rightly belong has declined, and will not take upon him the kingdom.

7 And now if there should be another appointed in his stead, behold I fear there would rise contentions among you. And who knoweth but what my son, to whom the kingdom doth belong, should turn to be angry and draw away a part of this people after him, which would cause wars and contentions among you, which would be the cause of shedding much blood and perverting the way of the Lord, yea, and destroy the souls of many people.

8 Now I say unto you let us be wise and consider these things, for we have no right to destroy my son, neither should we have any right to destroy another if he should be appointed in his stead.

9 And if my son should turn again to his pride and vain things he would recall the things which he had said, and claim his right to the kingdom, which would cause him and also this people to commit much sin.

10 And now let us be wise and look forward to these things, and do that which will make for the peace of this people.

## מושיע כט:יא–כ

- לְכֹן אֲנִי אֶהְיֶה מִלְכְּכֶם עַד קֵץ יְמֵי חַיִּי. וְאוֹלָם, הִבֵּה נִמְנָה שׁוֹפְטִים לְשֹׁפֵט אֶת הָעָם הַזֶּה עַל פִּי חֲקִינוּ; וְנַעֲרֹךְ מִחֲדָשׁ אֶת עֲנִינֵי הָעָם הַזֶּה, וְנִמְנָה אֲנָשִׁים חֲכָמִים לְשׁוֹפְטִים לְמַעַן יִשְׁפְּטוּ אֶת הָעָם הַזֶּה עַל פִּי מִצְוֹת אֱלֹהִים.
- 11 Therefore I will be your king the remainder of my days; nevertheless, let us appoint judges, to judge this people according to our law; and we will newly arrange the affairs of this people, for we will appoint wise men to be judges, that will judge this people according to the commandments of God.
- הֵן טוֹב לְאָדָם כִּי יִשְׁפֹּטֵהוּ אֱלֹהִים וְלֹא אָדָם, כִּי מִשְׁפֹּט אֱלֹהִים צוֹדֵק תָּמִיד, וּמִשְׁפֹּט אָדָם לֹא תָמִיד יִצְדָּק.
- 12 Now it is better that a man should be judged of God than of man, for the judgments of God are always just, but the judgments of man are not always just.
- לְכֹן אֵלֹו אֶפְשָׁר הִיָּה כִּי מִלְכִּיכֶם יִהְיוּ אֲנָשִׁים צַדִּיקִים, אֲשֶׁר יִכּוֹנְנוּ אֶת חֲקֵי אֱלֹהִים וְיִשְׁפְּטוּ אֶת הָעָם הַזֶּה עַל פִּי מִצְוֹתָיו, אַכֵּן, אֵלֹו הִיוּ מִלְכִּיכֶם אֲנָשִׁים אֲשֶׁר הִיוּ פּוֹעֲלִים כְּאָבִי בְנִימִין, אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם כִּי אֵלֹו כֹּף הִיָּה הַדְּבָר תָּמִיד, רְצוּי הִיָּה כִּי מִלְכִּים יִמְשְׁלוּ עֲלֵיכֶם תָּמִיד.
- 13 Therefore, if it were possible that you could have just men to be your kings, who would establish the laws of God, and judge this people according to his commandments, yea, if ye could have men for your kings who would do even as my father Benjamin did for this people—I say unto you, if this could always be the case then it would be expedient that ye should always have kings to rule over you.
- וְאִף אֲנִי עֲצָמִי, עֲמַלְתִּי בְּכָל כּוֹחַ וַיְכַלְתִּי לְלַמְּדְכֶם אֶת מִצְוֹת אֱלֹהִים וּלְכוֹנֵן שְׁלוֹם בְּכָל הָאֶרֶץ, לְהַרְחִיק מִלְחָמָה וּמִדּוֹן, גְּנֵבָה וְגִזְלָה, וְרֹצַח וְכָל פְּשָׁע.
- 14 And even I myself have labored with all the power and faculties which I have possessed, to teach you the commandments of God, and to establish peace throughout the land, that there should be no wars nor contentions, no stealing, nor plundering, nor murdering, nor any manner of iniquity;
- וְכָל עוֹשֶׂה עָוֹן, אוֹתוֹ הֶעֱנַשְׁתִּי כַּפֶּשַׁעוֹ, עַל פִּי הַחֹק אֲשֶׁר מָסְרוּ לָנוּ אֲבוֹתֵינוּ.
- 15 And whosoever has committed iniquity, him have I punished according to the crime which he has committed, according to the law which has been given to us by our fathers.
- הֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, יַעַן אֲשֶׁר כָּל הָאָדָם אֵינֶם צַדִּיקִים, אֵין זֶה רְצוּי כִּי יִהְיֶה לָכֶם מֶלֶךְ, אוֹ מִלְכִּים, לְמִשְׁלָל בָּכֶם.
- 16 Now I say unto you, that because all men are not just it is not expedient that ye should have a king or kings to rule over you.
- כִּי הִנֵּה, מֶה רַב הָעוֹוֹן אֲשֶׁר יַעֲשֶׂה מֶלֶךְ רָשָׁע, וּמֶה רַב הַחֲרָבָן!
- 17 For behold, how much iniquity doth one wicked king cause to be committed, yea, and what great destruction!
- זָכְרוּ אֶת הַמֶּלֶךְ נֹחַ, אֶת רָשָׁעוֹתָיו וְאֶת תּוֹעֲבוֹתָיו וְכֵן אֶת רָשָׁעַת אֲנָשָׁיו וְתוֹעֲבוֹתֵיהֶם. רְאוּ מֶה רַב הַחֲרָבָן אֲשֶׁר בָּא עֲלֵיהֶם; וְכִי מִפְּנֵי עוֹוֹנָם הִשְׁתַּעֲבְדוּ.
- 18 Yea, remember king Noah, his wickedness and his abominations, and also the wickedness and abominations of his people. Behold what great destruction did come upon them; and also because of their iniquities they were brought into bondage.
- וְלֹא הִתְעַרַּב בּוֹרְאֵם הַיּוֹדֵעַ כָּל, יַעַן אֲשֶׁר נִחְמוּ מִחַטָּאתֵיהֶם בְּתַשׁבּוּחַ שְׁלָמָה, הִיָּה הִיוּ נֹתָרִים בְּשִׁעְבָּדָם עַד הַיּוֹם הַזֶּה.
- 19 And were it not for the interposition of their all-wise Creator, and this because of their sincere repentance, they must unavoidably remain in bondage until now.
- אֲךָ הִנֵּה, הִצִּילָם אֱלֹהִים, כִּי נִכְנְעוּ לִפְנָיו. וַיַּעַן אֲשֶׁר הִתְאַמְצוּ לְזַעַק אֵלָיו, הוּא חָלַצָם מִשִּׁעְבָּדוֹ. כֹּף פּוֹעֵל יִהְיֶה בְּכֹחוֹ בְּקִרְבָּ בְּנֵי
- 20 But behold, he did deliver them because they did humble themselves before him; and because they cried mightily unto him he did deliver them out of bondage; and thus doth the Lord work with his power

## מושיע כט:כא-כט

- הָאָדָם בְּכָל הַמְקָרִים, בְּהוֹשִׁיטוֹ זְרוּעַ רַחֲמִים  
אֶל הַבּוֹטְחִים בּוֹ. in all cases among the children of men, extending the arm of mercy  
towards them that put their trust in him.
- 21 And behold, now I say unto you, ye cannot dethrone an iniquitous king  
save it be through much contention, and the shedding of much blood.
- 22 For behold, he has his friends in iniquity, and he keepeth his guards  
about him; and he teareth up the laws of those who have reigned  
in righteousness before him; and he trampleth under his feet the  
commandments of God;
- 23 And he enacteth laws, and sendeth them forth among his people, yea,  
laws after the manner of his own wickedness; and whosoever doth not  
obey his laws he causeth to be destroyed; and whosoever doth rebel  
against him he will send his armies against them to war, and if he can  
he will destroy them; and thus an unrighteous king doth pervert the  
ways of all righteousness.
- 24 And now behold I say unto you, it is not expedient that such abomin-  
ations should come upon you.
- 25 Therefore, choose you by the voice of this people, judges, that ye may  
be judged according to the laws which have been given you by our  
fathers, which are correct, and which were given them by the hand of  
the Lord.
- 26 Now it is not common that the voice of the people desireth anything  
contrary to that which is right; but it is common for the lesser part  
of the people to desire that which is not right; therefore this shall ye  
observe and make it your law—to do your business by the voice of the  
people.
- 27 And if the time comes that the voice of the people doth choose iniquity,  
then is the time that the judgments of God will come upon you; yea,  
then is the time he will visit you with great destruction even as he has  
hitherto visited this land.
- 28 And now if ye have judges, and they do not judge you according to the  
law which has been given, ye can cause that they may be judged of a  
higher judge.
- 29 If your higher judges do not judge righteous judgments, ye shall cause  
that a small number of your lower judges should be gathered togeth-  
er, and they shall judge your higher judges, according to the voice of  
the people.
- כִּי הִנֵּה יֵשׁ לוֹ חֲבֵרִים לְעוֹן וְהוּא מַחֲזִיק  
שׁוֹמְרִים סְבִיבוֹ; וְהוּא מִפָּר אֶת חֻקֵּי הַמִּלְכִּים  
אֲשֶׁר מְשַׁלּוֹ בְּצֶדֶק לִפְנֵי וְרוֹמֵם בְּרִגְלָיו אֶת  
מִצְוֹת אֱלֹהִים.
- וְהוּא מַחֲזִיק חֻקִּים וּמוֹדִיעֵם בְּקֶרֶב עַמּוֹ,  
וְהֵם חֻקִּים הַעֲשׂוּיִים עַל פִּי דִרְכֵי רְשָׁעִתוֹ;  
וְכָל אֲשֶׁר אֵינוֹ מִצִּית לְחֻקָּיו מוֹצֵא לְהוֹרֵג  
בְּפָקְדָתוֹ. וְאֵל כָּל הַמּוֹרְדִים בּוֹ הוּא שׁוֹלַח אֶת  
צְבָאוֹ לְהִלָּחֵם בָּהֶם, וַיִּשְׁמִידֵם אִם אֵף עוֹלָה  
בִּידּוֹ. כֹּה יַעֲשֶׂה מֶלֶךְ רְשָׁע אֶת כָּל דִּרְכֵי צֶדֶק.
- הֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם: אֵין הֶכְרֵחַ כִּי יִבֹּאוּכֶם  
תּוֹעֲבוֹת כָּאֵלֶּה.
- עַל כֵּן, שִׂאֲלוּ אֶת פִּי הָעָם וּבַחֲרוּ לָכֶם שׁוֹפְטִים  
אֲשֶׁר יִשְׁפֹּטוּכֶם עַל פִּי הַחֻקִּים אֲשֶׁר נִתְּנוּכֶם  
אֲבוֹתֵינוּ, אֲשֶׁר יִשְׁרִים הֵם, וְאֲשֶׁר נִתְּנוּ לָהֶם  
מִיַּד יְהוָה.
- וְאֵין זֶה דְּבַר רְגִיל כִּי יִבְקֹשׁ פִּי הָעָם אֶת אֲשֶׁר  
הוּא הַפֶּךְ הַצֶּדֶק; אֵף דְּבַר רְגִיל הוּא כִּי מַעֲוֹת  
מִן הָעָם יִבְקֹשׁ אֶת אֲשֶׁר אֵינוֹ צֶדֶק; עַל כֵּן  
שִׁמְרוּ אֶת זֹאת וַעֲשִׂיהֶם חֻק לָכֶם, לִנְהַל אֶת  
עֲנִינֵיכֶם עַל פִּי קוֹל הָעָם.
- וְהִיא אִם יִבֹּא יוֹם אֲשֶׁר יִבְחַר פִּי הָעָם בְּעוֹן,  
אָז יִבֹּא אֲלֵיכֶם דִּין אֱלֹהִים; אָכֵן, אִזּוֹ יִפְקְדְּכֶם  
אֱלֹהִים בְּחִרְבֹּן גָּדוֹל, כְּפָקְדוֹ אֶת הָאָרֶץ  
הַזֹּאת לְפָנִים.
- וְהִנֵּה, אִם יִהְיוּ לָכֶם שׁוֹפְטִים, וְאֵין הֵם  
שׁוֹפְטִים אֲתָכֶם עַל פִּי הַחֻק הַנָּתֵן לָכֶם, תּוֹכְלוּ  
לְהִבְיֵאֵם בְּמִשְׁפָּט לִפְנֵי שׁוֹפֵט גָּבוֹה יוֹתֵר.
- וְאִם שׁוֹפְטֵיכֶם הָעֲלִיּוֹנִים לֹא יִשְׁפֹּטוּכֶם  
בְּצֶדֶק, אַתֶּם תִּקְרְאוּ אֶז מַעֲטִים מִשׁוֹפְטֵיכֶם  
הַנְּמוּכִים וְהֵם יִשְׁפֹּטוּ אֶת שׁוֹפְטֵיכֶם הָעֲלִיּוֹנִים  
עַל פִּי קוֹל הָעָם.

- 30 And I command you to do these things in the fear of the Lord; and I command you to do these things, and that ye have no king; that if these people commit sins and iniquities they shall be answered upon their own heads.
- הִנְנִי מְצַוְכֶם כִּי בִירְאַת יְהוָה תַּעֲשׂוּ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, וְאֲנִי מְצַוְכֶם לַעֲשׂוֹת אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה לְבֹל יִהְיֶה לָכֶם מֶלֶךְ; וְהָיָה כִּי יַחֲטְאוּ הָעָם הַזֶּה וַיַּפְשְׁעוּ, נָשׂוּא יִשְׂאוּ אֶת עֲוֹנָם.
- 31 For behold I say unto you, the sins of many people have been caused by the iniquities of their kings; therefore their iniquities are answered upon the heads of their kings.
- הִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם: חֲטָאֵי אֲנָשִׁים רַבִּים הוּסְבוּ בַעֲוֹן מַלְכֵיהֶם; עַל כֵּן יָשׁוּב עֲוֹנָם בְּרֹאשׁ מַלְכֵיהֶם.
- 32 And now I desire that this inequality should be no more in this land, especially among this my people; but I desire that this land be a land of liberty, and every man may enjoy his rights and privileges alike, so long as the Lord sees fit that we may live and inherit the land, yea, even as long as any of our posterity remains upon the face of the land.
- וְאֲנִי חֹפֵץ כִּי הַעֲדָר הַשְׁוִיּוֹן הַזֶּה יִחְדַּל מִן הָאָרֶץ הַזֹּאת, וּבִפְרֹט מִקְרֵב עַמִּי. חֹפֵצִי כִּי תִהְיֶה הָאָרֶץ הַזֹּאת אֶרֶץ חֲרוּת, וְכָל אָדָם יוּכַל לְהֵנוֹת כְּרַעְהוּ מִזְכִּיּוֹתָיו וּמִיִּתְרוֹנוֹתָיו, כָּל אֲשֶׁר יִמְצָא יְהוָה לִנְכוֹן לְתַתֵּנוּ חַיִּים וְנִחְלָה בְּאֶרֶץ, אוֹ כָּל עוֹד יִחְיֶה אִישׁ מִצֵּאֲצָאֵינוּ עַל פְּנֵיהָ.
- 33 And many more things did king Mosiah write unto them, unfolding unto them all the trials and troubles of a righteous king, yea, all the travails of soul for their people, and also all the murmurings of the people to their king; and he explained it all unto them.
- וְעוֹד דְּבָרִים רַבִּים כָּתַב לָהֶם הַמֶּלֶךְ מוֹשִׁיעַ, וּבָהֶם שָׁטַח לְפָנֵיהֶם אֶת כָּל הַנִּסְיוֹנוֹת וְהַצָּרוֹת אֲשֶׁר לְמֶלֶךְ צָדִיק, כָּל עֵמֶל נַפְשׁוֹ לְמַעַן עַמּוֹ וְכָל תַּלְנוֹת הָעָם אֶל מַלְכָּם; אֶת הַכֹּל בָּאָר לָהֶם.
- 34 And he told them that these things ought not to be; but that the burden should come upon all the people, that every man might bear his part.
- וְהוּא אָמַר לָהֶם, כִּי לֹא נִכוֹן אֲשֶׁר יִהְיֶה הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, כִּי עַל הַמִּשָּׂא לְנַפֵּל עַל כָּל הָעָם, לְמַעַן יִשָּׂא כָּל אִישׁ אֶת חֶלְקוֹ.
- 35 And he also unfolded unto them all the disadvantages they labored under, by having an unrighteous king to rule over them;
- וְהוּא אַף תָּאָר לָהֶם אֶת כָּל הַמַּעְפָּם אֲשֶׁר בָּעָלוּ עֲמָלוֹ בְּמִשָּׁל בָּהֶם מֶלֶךְ רָשָׁע.
- 36 Yea, all his iniquities and abominations, and all the wars, and contentions, and bloodshed, and the stealing, and the plundering, and the committing of whoredoms, and all manner of iniquities which cannot be enumerated—telling them that these things ought not to be, that they were expressly repugnant to the commandments of God.
- וְהוּא אָמַר לָהֶם עַל כָּל הָעוֹנוֹת וְהַתּוֹעֵבוֹת, וְעַל כָּל הַמִּלְחָמוֹת, הַמְּרִיבוֹת, שְׂפִיכוֹת הַדָּמִים, הַגִּנְבָּה, הַגָּזֵל, הַהֲנוֹת וְכָל מִינֵי עוֹלָה אֲשֶׁר לֹא יִסְפְּרוּ מֵרֶב; וְכִי אֵין לְאֵלֶּה לְקִרּוֹת, כִּי מִבְּזִים הֵם בְּמִפְרָשׁ אֶת מִצְוֹת אֱלֹהִים.
- 37 And now it came to pass, after king Mosiah had sent these things forth among the people they were convinced of the truth of his words.
- וְהָיָה אַחֵר שָׁלַח הַמֶּלֶךְ מוֹשִׁיעַ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה אֶל עַמּוֹ, נֹכַחוּ הָאֲנָשִׁים לְדַעַת כִּי אֱמֶת דְּבַר.
- 38 Therefore they relinquished their desires for a king, and became exceedingly anxious that every man should have an equal chance throughout all the land; yea, and every man expressed a willingness to answer for his own sins.
- לָכֵן הֵם נָטְשׁוּ אֶת חֲפָצָם בְּמֶלֶךְ, וְנִפְשָׁם חֲשָׁקָה מְאֹד כִּי תִהְיֶה לְכָל אָדָם הַזְדַּמְנוֹת שׁוֹה בְּכָל הָאֶרֶץ; וְכָל אִישׁ הִבִּיעַ אֶת חֲפָצוֹ לְקַבֵּל עָלָיו אַחֲרִיּוֹת לְחֲטָאָיו.
- 39 Therefore, it came to pass that they assembled themselves together in bodies throughout the land, to cast in their voices concerning who
- עַל כֵּן הִתְאָסְפוּ הָאֲנָשִׁים בְּכָל הָאֶרֶץ, מִחֲנוֹת, מִחֲנוֹת, לְבַחֵר מִי יִהְיֶה שׁוֹפְטֵיהֶם אֲשֶׁר



וְשִׁפְטוּם עַל פִּי הַחֹק הַמְסוּר לָהֶם; וְרָבְתָה  
עַל־יִצְוָתָם עַל הַחֲרוֹת אֲשֶׁר נָתַנָּה לָהֶם.

should be their judges, to judge them according to the law which had been given them; and they were exceedingly rejoiced because of the liberty which had been granted unto them.

וְאַהֲבָתָם לְמוֹשִׁיעַ גְּבָרָה; וְהֵם כִּבְדוּהוּ מִכָּל  
אִישׁ אֲחֵר, כִּי לֹא הִבִּיטוּ עָלָיו כְּעַל עָרִיץ  
הַרֹדֶף בְּצַע וְשִׁלְמוֹנִים, הַמְשַׁחֲתִים אֶת נַפְשׁ  
הָאָדָם, כִּי הוּא לֹא דִרֵּשׁ מֵהֶם הוֹן וְאֵף לֹא  
הִתְעַנֵּג מִשְׁפִּיכַת דָּם, אֲלָא כּוֹנֵן שְׁלוֹם בְּאֶרֶץ  
וּפַעַל לְמַעַן יִהְיֶה עִמּוֹ חֲפָשִׁי מִכָּל שְׁעָבוֹד;  
לִכֵּן כִּבְדוּהוּ עַד מְאֹד, בְּלֹא גְבוּל.

40 And they did wax strong in love towards Mosiah; yea, they did esteem him more than any other man; for they did not look upon him as a tyrant who was seeking for gain, yea, for that lucre which doth corrupt the soul; for he had not exacted riches of them, neither had he delighted in the shedding of blood; but he had established peace in the land, and he had granted unto his people that they should be delivered from all manner of bondage; therefore they did esteem him, yea, exceedingly, beyond measure.

וְהֵם מִנּוּ שׁוֹפְטִים לְמִשְׁלַב בָּהֶם, לְשִׁפְטָם כְּחֹק,  
וְעָשׂוּ כֵן בְּכָל הָאֶרֶץ.

41 And it came to pass that they did appoint judges to rule over them, or to judge them according to the law; and this they did throughout all the land.

וְהֵם מִנּוּ אֶת עֲלְמָא לְשׁוֹפֵט הָעֵלְיוֹן הָרָאשׁוֹן,  
וְהוּא גַם הַכֹּהֵן הַגָּדוֹל, כִּי אָבִיו נָתַן אֶת הַמְשָׁרָה  
בְּיָדָיו וְהַפְקִידוֹ עַל כָּל עֲנִינֵי הַכְּנִסְיָה.

42 And it came to pass that Alma was appointed to be the first chief judge, he being also the high priest, his father having conferred the office upon him, and having given him the charge concerning all the affairs of the church.

וְעֲלְמָא הָלַךְ בְּדַרְכֵי יְהוָה, וְשָׁמַר אֶת  
מִצְוֹתָיו וְשִׁפֵּט מִשְׁפַּט צְדָק; וְהָיָה שְׁלוֹם  
בְּאֶרֶץ יָמִים רַבִּים.

43 And now it came to pass that Alma did walk in the ways of the Lord, and he did keep his commandments, and he did judge righteous judgments; and there was continual peace through the land.

כֹּךְ הֵחַל שְׁלִטוֹן הַשׁוֹפְטִים בְּכָל אֶרֶץ  
זֶרַח־מְלָה, בְּקִרְבֵּי כָּל הָעָם אֲשֶׁר נִקְרְאוּ נִפְיִים.  
וְעֲלְמָא הָיָה הַשׁוֹפֵט הָרָאשׁוֹן וְהָעֵלְיוֹן.

44 And thus commenced the reign of the judges throughout all the land of Zarahemla, among all the people who were called the Nephites; and Alma was the first and chief judge.

וְאָבִיו מָת, וְהוּא בֶן שְׁמוֹנִים וּשְׁתַּיִם שָׁנִים;  
וְהוּא קִים בְּחַיָּו אֶת מִצְוֹת אֱלֹהִים.

45 And now it came to pass that his father died, being eighty and two years old, having lived to fulfil the commandments of God.

וְגַם מוֹשִׁיעַ מָת בְּשָׁנַת שְׁלֹשִׁים וְשָׁלֹשׁ  
לְמַלְכוֹ, וְהוּא בֶן שְׁשִׁים וְשָׁלֹשׁ שָׁנִים.  
וּבִסְפָּר הַכֹּל חָלְפוּ חֲמִשׁ מֵאוֹת וְתִשְׁעַ  
שָׁנִים מִיּוֹם צֵאת לְחֵי מִירוּשָׁלַם.

46 And it came to pass that Mosiah died also, in the thirty and third year of his reign, being sixty and three years old; making in the whole, five hundred and nine years from the time Lehi left Jerusalem.

כֹּךְ הִגִּיעַ קֶץ שְׁלִטוֹן הַמְּלָכִים עַל עַם נִפִּי;  
וְכֹךְ הִגִּיעַ קֶץ יְמֵי עֲלְמָא, מִיַּסַּד כְּנִסְיָתָם.

47 And thus ended the reign of the kings over the people of Nephi; and thus ended the days of Alma, who was the founder of their church.



## ספר עלמא

## THE BOOK OF ALMA

דברי ימי עלמא בן עלמא, אשר היה השופט הראשון והעליון לעם נפי וגם הכהן הגדול בכנסייה. ספור שלטון השופטים, המלחמות והמריבות בקרב העם. וגם ספור על מלחמה בין הנפיים והלמנים, על פי כתבי עלמא, השופט הראשון והעליון. (בערך 91-52 לפני הספירה.)

*The account of Alma, who was the son of Alma, the first and chief judge over the people of Nephi, and also the high priest over the Church. An account of the reign of the judges, and the wars and contentions among the people. Also an account of a war between the Nephites and the Lamanites, according to the record of Alma, the first and chief judge. (About 91-52 B.C.)*

### א

### 1

והיה בשנה הראשונה לשלטון השופטים על עם נפי, מן העת ההיא והלאה, התחילו העם לקיים את החוקים אשר קבלו עליהם אשר חוקק להם המלך מושיע. ומושיע, אחר אשר נלחם בהצלחה והלך וקורא לפני אלהים, הלך בדרך כל הארץ. ועל אף כי הוא לא הניח אחרי יושב על כסאו, הוא חוקק להם את חקיהם ואותם הם שמרו.

1 Now it came to pass that in the first year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, from this time forward, king Mosiah having gone the way of all the earth, having warred a good warfare, walking uprightly before God, leaving none to reign in his stead; nevertheless he had established laws, and they were acknowledged by the people; therefore they were obliged to abide by the laws which he had made.

והיה בשנה הראשונה לשבת עלמא על כס המושפט, הובא לפניו איש להשפט, איש גדול ונודע בכחו הרב.

2 And it came to pass that in the first year of the reign of Alma in the judgment-seat, there was a man brought before him to be judged, a man who was large, and was noted for his much strength.

והוא התהלך בקרב העם, והטיו להם דברים אשר הוא כנה דבר אלהים, בגדפו את הכנסייה; והוא השמיע את העם כי על כל כהן ומורה להיות חביב על העם, וכי אין להם לעבוד מלאכת כפנים, כי ראוי לעם לתמוך בהם.

3 And he had gone about among the people, preaching to them that which he termed to be the word of God, bearing down against the church; declaring unto the people that every priest and teacher ought to become popular; and they ought not to labor with their hands, but that they ought to be supported by the people.

והוא אף העיד בפני העם כי כל האדם אכן יושעו ביום האחרון. ואין להם לירא ולחזר; וכי יכולים הם לשאת את ראשיהם ולעלו; כי יהיה ברא את כל האדם והוא גם גאל את כל האדם; ובקץ עתידים כל האדם לנחל חיי עולם.

4 And he also testified unto the people that all mankind should be saved at the last day, and that they need not fear nor tremble, but that they might lift up their heads and rejoice; for the Lord had created all men, and had also redeemed all men; and, in the end, all men should have eternal life.

והיה כי הרבה ללמד את הדברים האלה, עד כי האמינו לדבריו אנשים רבים; אכן, כה רבים היו עד כי החלו לתמוך בו ולתת לו כסף.

5 And it came to pass that he did teach these things so much that many did believe on his words, even so many that they began to support him and give him money.

והוא החל להתנשא בגאות לבו וללבוש בגדים יקרים מאד, ואף החל ליסד כנסייה על פי תורתו.

6 And he began to be lifted up in the pride of his heart, and to wear very costly apparel, yea, and even began to establish a church after the manner of his preaching.

## עֲלִמָּא א:ז-טז

וְהָיָה בְּלָכְתּוֹ לְחַטִּיף בְּקֶרֶב הַמַּאֲמִינִים בְּדָבָרוֹ,  
הוּא פָּגַשׁ אִישׁ אֲשֶׁר הָיָה חֵבֶר וּמִזֹּרָה בְּכִנְסִית  
אֱלֹהִים; וְהוּא הֵחֵל לָרִיב עִמּוֹ בְּחִזְקָה, בְּחִפְצוֹ  
לְהַדִּיחַ אֶת אַנְשֵׁי הַכִּנְסִיָּה; אַף הַמִּזֹּרָה יָכַל לוֹ,  
וְהוֹכִיחוֹ בְּדָבָרֵי אֱלֹהִים.

וְשֵׁם הָאִישׁ גִּדְעוֹן; וְהוּא אֲשֶׁר הָיָה כָּלִי שֵׁרֶת  
בְּיַד אֱלֹהִים לְהַצִּיל אֶת אַנְשֵׁי לְמַחִי מִן הַשְׁעָבוֹד.

וַיַּעַן אֲשֶׁר יָכֹל הָיָה גִדְעוֹן לְאִישׁ הַהוּא, כִּי הָיָה  
דָּבָרֵי אֱלֹהִים בְּפִיו, הוּא חָרָה בְּגִדְעוֹן, וְשָׁלַף  
אֶת חֶרְבוֹ וְהִכָּהוּ. וְגִדְעוֹן לֹא יָכֹל הָיָה לְמַכּוֹת  
כִּי זָקֵן וְשָׁבַע יָמִים הָיָה, וְהוּא מֵת בְּחֶרֶב.

וְאַנְשֵׁי הַכִּנְסִיָּה הוֹבִילוּ אֶת הָאִישׁ אֲשֶׁר  
רָצַח אוֹתוֹ, וְהִבִּיאוּהוּ לִפְנֵי עֲלִמָּא לְהַשְׁפִּט  
כְּפִי פִשְׁעָיו.

וְהוּא עָמַד לִפְנֵי עֲלִמָּא וְטָעַן לְעַצְמוֹ  
בְּרַב עֲזוּת.

אֶף עֲלִמָּא אָמַר אֵלָיו: הִנֵּה, זֹאת הַפַּעַם  
הָרִאשׁוֹנָה אֲשֶׁר הוֹבָאָה תְּרִמִּית כְּמָרִים בְּקֶרֶב  
הָעָם הַזֶּה. וְהִנֵּה, לֹא בְּתִרְמִית כְּמָרִים בְּלִבָּד  
אֶתָּה אִשָּׁם, כִּי אִף בְּחֶרֶב הָתַמְאַצְתָּ  
לְהַשְׁלִיטָה. הֵן אֱלֹהֵי הַשְׁלִטָּה תְּרִמִּית כְּמָרִים  
בְּקֶרֶב הָעָם הַזֶּה, הִיתָה זֹאת מְבִיאָה עֲלֵיהֶם  
חֶרֶב עַד תָּם.

וְאַתָּה שִׁפַּכְתָּ דָם אִישׁ צַדִּיק, אִישׁ אֲשֶׁר עָשָׂה  
רַב טוֹבָה בְּקֶרֶב הָעָם הַזֶּה; אֱלֹהֵי חַסְדּוֹ עָלֶיךָ  
הָיָה דָמוֹ קָם עֲלֵינוּ לְהִנָּקֵם.

לָכֵן נִדּוֹן אַתָּה לְמוֹת, עַל כִּי הִחַק אֲשֶׁר  
מָסַר לָנוּ מוֹשִׁיעַ, מִלְּכֵנוּ הָאֲחִירוֹן, וְאֲשֶׁר  
הִתְקַבֵּל עַל יְדֵי הָעָם הַזֶּה. לָכֵן חַיֵּב הָעָם  
הַזֶּה לְהִנָּח פָּחַק.

וְשֵׁם הָאִישׁ נְחוֹר. וְהֵם לָקְחוּהוּ וּנְשָׂאוּהוּ  
אֶל רֹאשׁ גִּבְעַת מְנַטִּי שָׁם, בֵּין שָׁמַיִם וָאָרֶץ,  
נֶאֱלָץ לְהוֹדוֹת, וְאָכַן הוֹדָה, כִּי אֲשֶׁר לָמַד  
אֶת הָעָם הַכֹּף הָיָה מְדַבֵּר אֱלֹהִים, וְשֵׁם  
מֵת מוֹת בְּזוּי.

וְאוּלָם, לֹא שָׁם כָּל זֶה קָץ לְהַתְּפָשׁוֹת  
תַּחְבּוּלוֹת כְּמָרִים בְּכָל הָאָרֶץ, כִּי רַבִּים הָיוּ

7 And it came to pass as he was going, to preach to those who believed on his word, he met a man who belonged to the church of God, yea, even one of their teachers; and he began to contend with him sharply, that he might lead away the people of the church; but the man withstood him, admonishing him with the words of God.

8 Now the name of the man was Gideon; and it was he who was an instrument in the hands of God in delivering the people of Limhi out of bondage.

9 Now, because Gideon withstood him with the words of God he was wroth with Gideon, and drew his sword and began to smite him. Now Gideon being stricken with many years, therefore he was not able to withstand his blows, therefore he was slain by the sword.

10 And the man who slew him was taken by the people of the church, and was brought before Alma, to be judged according to the crimes which he had committed.

11 And it came to pass that he stood before Alma and pleaded for himself with much boldness.

12 But Alma said unto him: Behold, this is the first time that priestcraft has been introduced among this people. And behold, thou art not only guilty of priestcraft, but hast endeavored to enforce it by the sword; and were priestcraft to be enforced among this people it would prove their entire destruction.

13 And thou hast shed the blood of a righteous man, yea, a man who has done much good among this people; and were we to spare thee his blood would come upon us for vengeance.

14 Therefore thou art condemned to die, according to the law which has been given us by Mosiah, our last king; and it has been acknowledged by this people; therefore this people must abide by the law.

15 And it came to pass that they took him; and his name was Nehor; and they carried him upon the top of the hill Manti, and there he was caused, or rather did acknowledge, between the heavens and the earth, that what he had taught to the people was contrary to the word of God; and there he suffered an ignominious death.

16 Nevertheless, this did not put an end to the spreading of priestcraft through the land; for there were many who loved the vain things of the

- אֲשֶׁר אָהָבוּ אֶת הַבְּלִי הָעוֹלָם וַיֵּצְאוּ לְהַטִּיף תּוֹרוֹת כָּזָב. וְזֹאת עָשׂוּ לְמַעַן עֶשֶׂר וְכָבוֹד.
- אֲפִי עַל זֹאת, הֵם לֹא הָעִזּוּ לְשָׁקֵר, כִּי יִתְגַּלֶּה הַדִּבְרִי, מִיִּרְאַתָם אֶת הַחֹק, כִּי רִמָּאִים נִעְנְשׂוּ; לְכֵן הָעֵמִידוּ פָּנִים כָּאֵלוּ הֵם מְטִיפִים עַל פִּי אֲמוֹנָתָם, כִּי לֹחֵק לֹא הָיָה כָּל תִּקְוָה עַל אָדָם בְּאֲשֶׁר לְאֲמוֹנָתוֹ.
- וְהֵם לֹא הָעִזּוּ לִגְנוֹב, מִפֶּתַח הַחֹק, כִּי גִנְבִים בָּאוּ עַל עֲנָשׁ. וְכֵן לֹא הָעִזּוּ לְשַׁלַּח יָדָם בְּשׂוֹד וּבְרִצָּח, כִּי הַרוֹצֵחַ נָדוֹן לְמוֹת.
- וְהָיָה כִּי כָל אֲשֶׁר לֹא נִמְנָה עִם חֲבֵרֵי כְּנִסְיָת אֱלֹהִים הֵחֵל לְרֹדֶף אֶת חֲבֵרֵי הַכְּנִסְיָה אֲשֶׁר קָבְלוּ עֲלֵיהֶם אֶת שֵׁם הַמָּשִׁיחַ.
- אָכֵן, הֵם רָדְפוּ וְעָנּוּ אוֹתָם בְּכָל מִינֵי דְבוּרִים, וְזֹאת מִפְּנֵי עֲנוּתָם כִּי לֹא רָמוּ בְּעֵינֵי עֲצָמָם, וְחָלְקוּ אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים אִישׁ עִם אַחִיו, בְּלֹא כֶסֶף וּבְלֹא מַחִיר.
- וְחֹק חָמור הָיָה לְאֲנָשֵׁי הַכְּנִסְיָה, אֲשֶׁר לֹא יָקוּם אִישׁ, חֲבֵר בַּכְּנִסְיָה, לְרֹדֶף אֶת אֲשֶׁר אִינוּ חֲבֵר בָּהּ, וְכִי לֹא תִהְיֶינָה כָּל רְדִיפּוֹת בְּקִרְבָּם.
- וְאוֹלָם, הָיוּ בְּיַנְיָהֶם רַבִּים אֲשֶׁר הֵחֵלוּ לְהִתְנַאוּת וּלְרִיב בַּחֲמָה עִם בְּעָלֵי רִיבָם וּלְהַכּוֹתָם. אָכֵן, הֵם הִלְמוּ זֶה בָּזֶה בְּאַגְרוֹף.
- וְהַדִּבְרִי הָיָה בִּשְׁנָה הַשֵּׁנִיָּה לְמָלְכוֹ עֲלֵמָא, וְהוּא הִסֵּב צָרוֹת רַבּוֹת לְכְּנִסְיָה וּלְנִסְיוֹנוֹת רַבִּים בְּתוֹכָהּ.
- כִּי רַבִּים הִקְשׂוּ אֶת לִבָּם, וּשְׁמוֹתֵיהֶם נִמְחוּ וְלֹא נִזְכְּרוּ עוֹד בְּקִרְבָּם עִם אֱלֹהִים. אֲפִי רַבִּים הָיוּ אֲשֶׁר רָחֲקוּ מֵעֲלֵיהֶם.
- וְהַדִּבְרִי הָיָה נִסְיוֹן גָּדוֹל לְדַבְּקִים בְּאֲמוֹנָה; אֲפִי הֵם הָיוּ חֲזָקִים וְאִיתָנִים בְּשִׁמְרֵית מִצְוֹת אֱלֹהִים וַיִּשְׁאוּ בְּאֶרֶץ רוּחַ אֶת הַרְדִּיפּוֹת אֲשֶׁר הִכְבִּדוּ עֲלֵיהֶם.
- וּבְהֵנִיחַ הַכֹּהֲנִים אֶת מְלֹאכְתָּם לְמַעַן חֲלֹק אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים לָעָם, הָיוּ גַם הָאֲנָשִׁים מְנִיחִים אֶת מְלֹאכְתָּם לְמַעַן שְׁמַע אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים.
- world, and they went forth preaching false doctrines; and this they did for the sake of riches and honor.
- Nevertheless, they durst not lie, if it were known, for fear of the law, for liars were punished; therefore they pretended to preach according to their belief; and now the law could have no power on any man for his belief.
- And they durst not steal, for fear of the law, for such were punished; neither durst they rob, nor murder, for he that murdered was punished unto death.
- But it came to pass that whosoever did not belong to the church of God began to persecute those that did belong to the church of God, and had taken upon them the name of Christ.
- Yea, they did persecute them, and afflict them with all manner of words, and this because of their humility; because they were not proud in their own eyes, and because they did impart the word of God, one with another, without money and without price.
- Now there was a strict law among the people of the church that there should not any man, belonging to the church, arise and persecute those that did not belong to the church, and that there should be no persecution among themselves.
- Nevertheless, there were many among them who began to be proud, and began to contend warmly with their adversaries, even unto blows; yea, they would smite one another with their fists.
- Now this was in the second year of the reign of Alma, and it was a cause of much affliction to the church; yea, it was the cause of much trial with the church.
- For the hearts of many were hardened, and their names were blotted out, that they were remembered no more among the people of God. And also many withdrew themselves from among them.
- Now this was a great trial to those that did stand fast in the faith; nevertheless, they were steadfast and immovable in keeping the commandments of God, and they bore with patience the persecution which was heaped upon them.
- And when the priests left their labor to impart the word of God unto the people, the people also left their labors to hear the word of God. And when the priest had imparted unto them the word of God they

וּכְכָלוֹת הִכְהִין לְחַלֵּק לָהֶם אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים  
שָׁבוּ הַכֹּל לְשָׁקֵד עַל עֲבוֹדָתָם; וְהִכְהִין לֹא  
הַתְנַשֵּׂא עַל שׁוֹמְעָיו, כִּי הַמְסִיף לֹא הָיָה טוֹב  
מִהַשּׁוֹמֵעַ, וְהַמּוֹרָה לֹא הָיָה טוֹב מִן הַתְלַמִּיד;  
הַכֹּל הָיוּ שְׁוִים, הַכֹּל עָמְלוּ, אִישׁ כְּפִי כחו.

all returned again diligently unto their labors; and the priest, not esteeming himself above his hearers, for the preacher was no better than the hearer, neither was the teacher any better than the learner; and thus they were all equal, and they did all labor, every man according to his strength.

וְהָאֲנָשִׁים חָלְקוּ מִרְכּוּשָׁם, אִישׁ כְּפִי שֶׁהָיָה  
בְּיָדוֹ, לְעָנִי וּלְנֹצֵרָה, לַחֹלֶה וּלְנִגְוָע. וְהֵם לֹא  
לָבְשׁוּ בִגְדֵי יָקָר, אֶךְ לְבוּשָׁם נָקִי וְנֹאָה הָיָה.

27 And they did impart of their substance, every man according to that which he had, to the poor, and the needy, and the sick, and the afflicted; and they did not wear costly apparel, yet they were neat and comely.

כִּךְ הֵם כּוֹנְנוּ אֶת עֲנִיֵּי הַכְּנִסְיָה, וְכִךְ שָׁב  
הַשָּׁלוֹם וְהַיִּתְהָ לָהֶם שְׁלוֹהַ מְמִשְׁכָּת, עַל אִף  
כָּל רְדִיפוֹתֵיהֶם.

28 And thus they did establish the affairs of the church; and thus they began to have continual peace again, notwithstanding all their persecutions.

וַיַּעַן אֲשֶׁר הָיְתָה הַכְּנִסְיָה יְצִיבָה וְאִיתָנָה,  
הַחֲלוּ אֲנָשֶׁיהָ לְרִבּוֹת עֶשֶׂר רַב מְאֹד, כִּי רָאוּ  
שִׁפְעַת בָּכָל אֲשֶׁר הֵצִטְרְכוּ, רַב צֹאן וּבָקָר וְעִגְלֵי  
מִרְבָּק לְמִינֵיהֶם וְרַב דָּגָן, וְזֶהָב וְכֶסֶף וְחִפְצֵי  
יָקָר, וְרַב מְשִׁי וְשֵׁשׁ מְשֻׁזָּר וְכָל מִינֵי אֶרֶץ טוֹב,  
מְלֹאכֶת בֵּית.

29 And now, because of the steadiness of the church they began to be exceedingly rich, having abundance of all things whatsoever they stood in need—an abundance of flocks and herds, and fatlings of every kind, and also abundance of grain, and of gold, and of silver, and of precious things, and abundance of silk and fine-twined linen, and all manner of good homely cloth.

וּבַהֲצִלָּחָתָם הֵם לֹא שָׁלְחוּ מֵעֲלֵיהֶם כָּל עִירִים  
וְרַעֲב, צָמָא וְחוֹלָה וְאֲשֶׁר לֹא הִתְפַּלְּל; וְהֵם  
לֹא שָׁתוּ לָבֶם לְעֶשֶׂר; עַל כֵּן פָּתְחוּ יָדָם  
לְהַעֲנִיק לְכָל, זָקֵן וְצָעִיר, חֵיב וְחַפְשִׁי, אִישׁ  
וְאִשָּׁה, חֵבֵר בְּכִנְסִיָּה וְאֲשֶׁר מִחוּץ לָהּ, בְּלֹא  
מִשׁוֹא פָּנִים לְכָל הַנֹּצֵרָה.

30 And thus, in their prosperous circumstances, they did not send away any who were naked, or that were hungry, or that were athirst, or that were sick, or that had not been nourished; and they did not set their hearts upon riches; therefore they were liberal to all, both old and young, both bond and free, both male and female, whether out of the church or in the church, having no respect to persons as to those who stood in need.

כִּךְ רִבְתָּה הֲצִלָּחָתָם, וְהֵם עָשְׂרוּ מְאֹד מִזּוּלָּתָם  
אֲשֶׁר לֹא חָבְרוּ לְכְנִסְיָתָם.

31 And thus they did prosper and become far more wealthy than those who did not belong to their church.

כִּי הֵם אֲשֶׁר לֹא הָיוּ חֲבֵרִים בְּכְנִסְיָתָם  
הִתְעַנְּגוּ בְּכִשְׁפִּים, וּבַעֲבוֹדַת אֱלִילִים  
וּבַעֲצָלוֹת, בְּפִטְפוּטִים וּבִקְנָאָה וּמִדְּנִים; וְהֵם  
לָבְשׁוּ בִגְדֵי יָקָר, וְהִתְנַשֵּׂאוּ בְּעֵינֵיהֶם בְּנֹאָוֹת  
לֵב וּדְבָקוֹ בְּרִדְפוֹת וּבְשִׁקָּר, בְּגִיבָה וּבְשֹׁד,  
וּבִזְנוּת, וּבְרִצְחָ וּבְכָל דְּרָכֵי רָשָׁע. וְאוּלָּם,  
הַפְּעַל הַחֹק לְגַבִּי כָּל הָעוֹבְרִים עָלָיו, כָּכָל  
אֲשֶׁר נָתַן הַדָּבָר לְהַעֲשׂוֹת.

32 For those who did not belong to their church did indulge themselves in sorceries, and in idolatry or idleness, and in babblings, and in envyings and strife; wearing costly apparel; being lifted up in the pride of their own eyes; persecuting, lying, thieving, robbing, committing whoredoms, and murdering, and all manner of wickedness; nevertheless, the law was put in force upon all those who did transgress it, inasmuch as it was possible.

וְהָיָה עַל יְדֵי הַפְּעֻלַּת הַחֹק עֲלֵיהֶם, נִעְנְשׁוּ  
הָאֲנָשִׁים כְּפִי מַעֲשֵׂיהֶם, וְלָכֵן שָׁקְטוּ וְלֹא הָיוּ  
לְהָרַע, כִּי יוֹדַע פְּשָׁעָם. עַל כֵּן רוּחָה הַשְּׁלוֹהַ  
בְּקֶרֶב עִם נְפִי עַד הַשָּׁנָה הַחֲמִישִׁית  
לְשִׁלְטוֹן הַשּׁוֹפְטִים.

33 And it came to pass that by thus exercising the law upon them, every man suffering according to that which he had done, they became more still, and durst not commit any wickedness if it were known; therefore, there was much peace among the people of Nephi until the fifth year of the reign of the judges.

## ב

## 2

- 1 And it came to pass in the commencement of the fifth year of their reign there began to be a contention among the people; for a certain man, being called Amlici, he being a very cunning man, yea, a wise man as to the wisdom of the world, he being after the order of the man that slew Gideon by the sword, who was executed according to the law—
- 2 Now this Amlici had, by his cunning, drawn away much people after him; even so much that they began to be very powerful; and they began to endeavor to establish Amlici to be king over the people.
- 3 Now this was alarming to the people of the church, and also to all those who had not been drawn away after the persuasions of Amlici; for they knew that according to their law that such things must be established by the voice of the people.
- 4 Therefore, if it were possible that Amlici should gain the voice of the people, he, being a wicked man, would deprive them of their rights and privileges of the church; for it was his intent to destroy the church of God.
- 5 And it came to pass that the people assembled themselves together throughout all the land, every man according to his mind, whether it were for or against Amlici, in separate bodies, having much dispute and wonderful contentions one with another.
- 6 And thus they did assemble themselves together to cast in their voices concerning the matter; and they were laid before the judges.
- 7 And it came to pass that the voice of the people came against Amlici, that he was not made king over the people.
- 8 Now this did cause much joy in the hearts of those who were against him; but Amlici did stir up those who were in his favor to anger against those who were not in his favor.
- 9 And it came to pass that they gathered themselves together, and did consecrate Amlici to be their king.
- 10 Now when Amlici was made king over them he commanded them that they should take up arms against their brethren; and this he did that he might subject them to him.
- וּבְרֵאשִׁית הַשָּׁנָה הַחֲמִישִׁית לְשִׁלְטֹנָם  
פְּרִצָּה מְרִיבָה בְּקֶרֶב הָעָם; וְאִישׁ אֶחָד הָיָה  
שֵׁם, עַמְלִיקִי שְׁמוֹ וְהוּא עָרוּם מְאֹד, מְבִין  
בְּחֻכְמַת הָעוֹלָם, אֲשֶׁר הָלַךְ בְּדַרְכֵי הָאִישׁ  
אֲשֶׁר הָרַג אֶת גִּדְעוֹן בְּחֶרֶבוֹ וְאֲשֶׁר הוּצָא  
לְהוֹרֵג כְּחֹק.
- וְעַמְלִיקִי, בְּעֶרְמָתוֹ, הֵסֵךְ אֵלָיו אֲנָשִׁים  
רַבִּים; וּבְרַבּוּת מְסַפָּרָם גָּדַל כְּחֹם מְאֹד עַד  
כִּי הִתְאַמְּצוּ לְהַמְלִיךְ אֶת עַמְלִיקִי עַל הָעָם.
- וְהַדְּבָר הַטֵּיִל אִימָה עַל אֲנָשֵׁי הַכְּנִסְיָה וְגַם  
עַל כָּל אֲשֶׁר לֹא נִמְשְׁכוּ אַחֵר מִדּוּחֵי עַמְלִיקִי;  
יָעִן אֲשֶׁר יָדְעוּ כִּי עַל פִּי הַחֹק, דְּעַת הָעָם  
הִיא הַקּוֹבֵעַת בְּדִבְרֵים כָּאלֵהָ.
- עַל כֵּן, אֵלּוּ יָכַל עַמְלִיקִי לְהַשִּׁיג אֶת תְּמִיכַת  
הָעָם, הָיָה, בְּרָשָׁעָתוֹ, מוֹנֵעַ מֵהֶם אֶת  
זְכוּתֵיהֶם וְאֶת יִתְרוֹנָם בְּכְנִסְיָה; כִּי כְּוִנָּתוֹ  
הָיְתָה לְאַבֵּד אֶת כְּנִסְיַת אֱלֹהִים.
- אֲזַי הִתְאַסְּפוּ הָעָם יַחְדָּו בְּכָל הָאָרֶץ, כָּל אִישׁ  
כְּדַעְתּוֹ, בְּעַד עַמְלִיקִי אוֹ נֶגְדּוֹ, וְהִתּוֹכַחוּ זֶה עִם  
זֶה, וְרַבּוּ מְרִיבוֹת גְּדוֹלוֹת.
- וְכֵן הֵם נֶאֱסָפוּ יַחְדָּו לְהַשְׁמִיעַ קוֹלָם בְּדִבְרָ  
הַזֶּה, וְהִבִּיאוּ אֶת דִּבְרָם לִפְנֵי הַשּׁוֹפְטִים.
- וְהִנֵּה יָצָא קוֹל הָעָם עַל עַמְלִיקִי, וְהוּא לֹא  
הִמְלִיךְ עַל הָעָם.
- וְהַדְּבָר הַסֵּב שְׂמִיחָה רַבָּה בְּלִב מִתְנַגְּדָיו;  
אֲךָ עַמְלִיקִי שָׂסָה אֶת תּוֹמְכָיו בְּאַלְהָ אֲשֶׁר  
לֹא חָפְצוּ בוֹ.
- אֲזַי הֵם נֶאֱסָפוּ וְקִדְּשׁוּ אֶת עַמְלִיקִי לְמֶלֶךְ עֲלֵיהֶם.
- וּבְהִמְלִיךְ עַמְלִיקִי עֲלֵיהֶם הוּא צִוָּם לְצִאת  
וּלְהִלָּחֵם בְּאַחֵיהֶם; וְזֹאת עָשָׂה לְמַעַן הַכְּנִיעַ  
אוֹתָם תַּחֲתָיו.



## עֲלָמָא ב:יא-כ

- 11 וְאַנְשֵׁי עַמְלִיקִי נִדְעוּ בְּשֵׁם עַמְלִיקִי וְנִקְרְאוּ  
עַמְלִיקִיִּים. וְהַרְגוּם נִקְרְאוּ בְּשֵׁם נֶפְתִּיִם,  
אוֹ עַם אֱלֹהִים.
- 12 וְהָיָה עִם הַנֶּפְתִּיִם שְׁתֵּי לָבָם לְכַוְנוֹת הָעַמְלִיקִיִּים  
וְהַתְּכַוְּנוּ לְפָגְשָׁם, וְהָם הִתְחַמְּשׁוּ בַחֲרָבוֹת  
וּבַפְּגִיוֹנוֹת, בַּקְּשָׁתוֹת וּבַחֲצָצִים, בְּאַבְנִים  
וּבַקִּלְעִים וּבְכָל כְּלִי נֶשֶׁק לְמִינֵיהֶם.
- 13 כִּי הֵם נִעְרְכוּ לַפִּגְשׁ אֶת הָעַמְלִיקִיִּים בְּבוֹאָם.  
וְהָם שָׂמוּ לָהֶם מַפְקָדִים נְמוּכִים וְגִבּוֹהִים  
וְעֲלִיּוֹנִים כְּמִסְפָּרָם.
- 14 וְעַמְלִיקִי חִמַּשׁ אֶת אָנְשָׁיו בְּכָל מִינֵי כְלִי  
מִלְחָמָה, וְאִף מִנָּה מוֹשְׁלִים וּמִנְהַיִּגִּים עַל  
אָנְשָׁיו לְהַנְהִיגָם אֵלֶי קֶרֶב עַל אַחֵיהֶם.
- 15 וְהָעַמְלִיקִיִּים עָלוּ עַל הָרַם אֲמִינִיְהוּ, אֲשֶׁר מִמְּזֶרֶח  
נָהָר צִידוֹן, הַהוֹלֵךְ עַל יַד אֶרֶץ זֶרַחְעִמְלָה, וְשָׁם  
הֵם הֵחִלוּ לִלְחֹם בְּנֶפְתִּיִם.
- 16 נֹכַח עַלְמָא, בְּהִיּוֹתוֹ הַשּׁוֹפֵט הָעֲלִיוֹן וּמוֹשֵׁל  
עַם נָפִי, עָלָה עִם עַמּוֹ, עִם מַפְקָדָיו  
הַנְּמוּכִים וְהַגִּבּוֹהִים, בְּרֹאשׁ חִילוֹתָיו,  
לְהִלָּחֵם בְּעַמְלִיקִיִּים.
- 17 וְהַנֶּפְתִּיִם הֵחִלוּ לְהַרְגַּם בְּעַמְלִיקִיִּים עַל הָהָר  
אֲשֶׁר מִמְּזֶרֶח לְצִידוֹן. וְהָעַמְלִיקִיִּים הִשִּׁיבוּ  
מִלְחָמָה בָּרַב עֲצָמָה וְרַבִּים מִן הַנֶּפְתִּיִם נָפְלוּ  
חֲלָלִים לִפְנֵי הָעַמְלִיקִיִּים.
- 18 אֲףִי יְהוָה אֲמַץ אֶת יַד הַנֶּפְתִּיִם, וְהֵם  
הִרְגוּ בְּעַמְלִיקִיִּים הֶרֶג רַב, עַד כִּי הֵחִלוּ  
לָנוּס מִפְּנֵיהֶם.
- 19 וְהַנֶּפְתִּיִם רָדְפוּ אַחֵר הָעַמְלִיקִיִּים כָּל הַיּוֹם  
הַהוּא, וְהִרְגוּ בָהֶם הֶרֶג רַב, עַד כִּי מִסְפַּר  
הַרוּגֵי הָעַמְלִיקִיִּים הָיָה שְׁנַיִם עָשָׂר אֶלֶף וַחֲמִשׁ  
מֵאוֹת וְשִׁלְשִׁים וּשְׁתַּיִם נָפְשׁ. וּמִסְפַּר חֲלָלֵי  
הַנֶּפְתִּיִם הָיָה שְׁשָׁת אֶלְפִים וַחֲמִשׁ מֵאוֹת  
וְשִׁלְשִׁים וּשְׁתַּיִם נָפְשׁ.
- 20 וְהָיָה כְּאֲשֶׁר נִלְאָה עֲלָמָא מִרְדֹּף אַחֵר  
הָעַמְלִיקִיִּים, הוּא צִוָּה אֶת עַמּוֹ לָנוּס אֶת



אֶהְלִיחֶם בְּעֶמְקִי גִדְעוֹן, אֲשֶׁר נִקְרָא עַל שֵׁם  
גִדְעוֹן, הָאִישׁ אֲשֶׁר נִהְרַג בְּיַד נְחוֹר. בְּעֶמְקִי  
הַהוּא נָטוּ הַנְּפִיִּים אֶת אֶהְלִיחֶם לַלַּיְלָה.

Gideon, the valley being called after that Gideon who was slain by the hand of Nehor with the sword; and in this valley the Nephites did pitch their tents for the night.

וְעֲלָמָא שְׁלַח מְרַגְלִים לַעֲקֹב אַחֵר שְׂאֲרִית  
הָעַמְּלִיקִיִּים, לְדַעַת אֶת תַּכְנִיּוֹתֵיהֶם וְאֵת  
תַּחְבּוּלוֹתֵיהֶם, לְמַעַן הִגּוּ מִפְּנֵיהֶם וְיִשְׁמְרוּ  
אֶת אָנְשָׁיו מִהִשָּׁמָד.

21 And Alma sent spies to follow the remnant of the Amlicites, that he might know of their plans and their plots, whereby he might guard himself against them, that he might preserve his people from being destroyed.

וְאֵלֶּה שְׁמוֹת הָאֲנָשִׁים אֲשֶׁר שְׁלָחם לַפֶּקֶחַ  
עֵין עַל מַחֲנֵה הָעַמְּלִיקִיִּים: זֶרָם, אַמְנוֹר, מַנְטִי  
וְלִמְהֵר; אֵלֶּה הֵם אֲשֶׁר הִלְכוּ עִם אָנְשֵׁיהֶם  
לְרַגֵּל אַחֵר מַחֲנֵה הָעַמְּלִיקִיִּים.

22 Now those whom he had sent out to watch the camp of the Amlicites were called Zeram, and Amnor, and Manti, and Limher; these were they who went out with their men to watch the camp of the Amlicites.

וְהָיָה כִּי לַמָּחָרָת הֵם שָׁבוּ בְּרַב מִהִירוֹת  
אֶל מַחֲנֵה הַנְּפִיִּים, כִּי הָיוּ בְּתִדְהָמָה וּבְאִימָה  
רַבָּה, וְאָמְרוּ:

23 And it came to pass that on the morrow they returned into the camp of the Nephites in great haste, being greatly astonished, and struck with much fear, saying:

הִנֵּה בְּעַקְבֵּנוּ אַחֵר חֵיל הָעַמְּלִיקִיִּים מִה גְּדֹלָה  
הַשְׁתּוֹמְמוֹתֵנוּ בְּרֹאוֹתֵנוּ צָבָא לְמָנִים גְּדוֹל בְּאַרְצֵי  
מִינוֹן, מִמַּעַל לְאַרְצֵי זֶרַחְמֵלָה, עַל דֶּרֶךְ אֶרֶץ  
נֶפִי. וְהִנֵּה גַם הָעַמְּלִיקִיִּים הִתְחַבְּרוּ אֵלֵיהֶם.

24 Behold, we followed the camp of the Amlicites, and to our great astonishment, in the land of Minon, above the land of Zarahemla, in the course of the land of Nephi, we saw a numerous host of the Lamanites; and behold, the Amlicites have joined them;

הִנֵּה הֵם עוֹלִים עַל אַחֵינוּ בְּאַרְצֵי הַהִיא  
וְאַחֵינוּ נָסִים מִפְּנֵיהֶם עִם עֲדָרֵיהֶם, נְשֵׁיהֶם  
וְיִלְדֵיהֶם אֶל עִירֵנוּ; וְאֵם לֹא נִמְהָר יִשִּׁימוּ הֵם  
אֶת יָדָם עַל עִירֵנוּ וְיִהְיֶה אֶת אֲבוֹתֵינוּ וְאֵת  
נְשֵׁינוּ וְאֵת יִלְדֵינוּ.

25 And they are upon our brethren in that land; and they are fleeing before them with their flocks, and their wives, and their children, towards our city; and except we make haste they obtain possession of our city, and our fathers, and our wives, and our children be slain.

אִז אֶסְפּוּ בְּנֵי עַם נֶפִי אֶת אֶהְלִיחֶם וְנָסְעוּ  
מִעֶמְקִי גִדְעוֹן אֶל עִירָם, הָעִיר זֶרַחְמֵלָה.

26 And it came to pass that the people of Nephi took their tents, and departed out of the valley of Gideon towards their city, which was the city of Zarahemla.

וְהָיָה כְּעָבְרָם אֶת נְהַר צִידוֹן, וְהִנֵּה הַלְּמָנִים  
וְהָעַמְּלִיקִיִּים עוֹלִים עֲלֵיהֶם לְהַשְׁמִידָם,  
וּמִסָּפָרָם רַב כְּחוֹל הַיָּם.

27 And behold, as they were crossing the river Sidon, the Lamanites and the Amlicites, being as numerous almost, as it were, as the sands of the sea, came upon them to destroy them.

אֲךָ יְדִי יְהוָה חֲזָקָה אֶת הַנְּפִיִּים, יַעַן אֲשֶׁר  
הִתְפַּלְּלוּ אֵלָיו בְּעֵז כִּי יַצִּילֵם מִיַּד אוֹיְבֵיהֶם.  
וְיְהוָה שָׁמַע אֶת שׁוֹעֲתָם וְחֻזָּקָם, וְהַלְּמָנִים  
וְהָעַמְּלִיקִיִּים נָפְלוּ לַפְּנֵיהֶם.

28 Nevertheless, the Nephites being strengthened by the hand of the Lord, having prayed mightily to him that he would deliver them out of the hands of their enemies, therefore the Lord did hear their cries, and did strengthen them, and the Lamanites and the Amlicites did fall before them.

וְעֲלָמָא נִלְחַם בְּעַמְּלִיקִי פָנִים אֶל  
פָּנִים בְּחֶרֶב; וְהֵם נִלְחָמוּ זֶה בְּזֶה בְּעֵז.

29 And it came to pass that Alma fought with Amlici with the sword, face to face; and they did contend mightily, one with another.

## עֲלָמָא ב:ל-ג:א

- וְעֲלָמָא, בְּהִיּוֹתוֹ אִישׁ אֱלֹהִים, אֲשֶׁר אֲמוֹנָה רָבָה הִפְעִילָה אוֹתוֹ, קָרָא לֵאמֹר: אָנָּה, יְהוָה, רַחֵם נָא וְחוֹסֶה עַל חַיִּי, לְמַעַן אֶהְיֶה כְּלִי שְׁרָת בְּיָדְךָ לְהַצִּיל אֶת הָעָם הַזֶּה וּלְנַצְרוֹ.
- וּכְכֹלוֹת עֲלָמָא לֹמַר אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, הוּא שָׁב לְהִלָּחֵם בְּעַמְּלִיקִי וְהִתְחַזַּק וְהָרַג אֶת עַמְּלִיקִי בַחֲרָבוֹ.
- וְהוּא אַף נִלָּחֵם בְּמֶלֶךְ הַלְּמָנִים, אִךְ מֶלֶךְ הַלְּמָנִים נִסּוּג מִלְפָּנָיו עֲלָמָא וְשָׁלַח אֶת שׁוּמְרָיו לְהִלָּחֵם בּוֹ.
- וְעֲלָמָא וְשׁוּמְרָיו נִלָּחְמוּ בְּשׁוּמְרֵי מֶלֶךְ הַלְּמָנִים, עַד אֲשֶׁר הוּא הָרַג בָּהֶם וְגָרְשָׁם.
- כֹּה פָּנָה אֶת הַשָּׂטֶח, אַכֵּן, אֶת הַשָּׂפָה הַמַּעְרִבִית אֲשֶׁר לְנֹהַר צִידוֹן, בְּהַשְׁלִיכוֹ אֶת גּוֹיֹת הַלְּמָנִים הַהוּגִים אֶל מִי צִידוֹן; וּבָזָאת הִתְפַּנָּה מְקוֹם לְאִנְשָׁיו לְעָבֵר אֶת הַנָּהָר וּלְהִלָּחֵם בְּלְמָנִים וּבְעַמְּלִיקִים בְּגִדַת נֹהַר צִידוֹן הַמַּעְרִבִית.
- וְהָיָה כַּאֲשֶׁר עָבְרוּ כָּל הַנְּפִיִּים אֶת נֹהַר צִידוֹן, הִחֲלוּ הַלְּמָנִים וְהַעַמְּלִיקִים לָנוּס מִפְּנֵיהֶם, אַף כִּי רַב מִסְפָּרָם עַד כִּי לֹא יִמְנּוּ.
- וְהֵם נָסוּ מִפְּנֵי הַנְּפִיִּים אֶל הַיַּעַר, אֲשֶׁר הִשְׁתַּרַע מַעְרָבָה וְצָפוֹנָה, מֵעַבֵּר לְגִבּוֹלוֹת אֶרֶץ. וְהַנְּפִיִּים רָדְפוּ אַחֲרֵיהֶם בְּרַב כֹּחַם וְהָרְגוּם.
- אַכֵּן, בְּכָל אֲשֶׁר פָּנוּ הֵם נִתְקְלוּ בְּרֹדְפֵיהֶם, אֲשֶׁר הָרְגוּ בָּהֶם וְגָרְשׁוּם, עַד אֲשֶׁר נָפְזוּ בַּמַּעְרָב וּבַצָּפוֹן, וְהִגִּיעוּ אֶל הַיַּעַר, אֲשֶׁר נִקְרָא שְׁמוֹ חֶרְמוֹנָאִי; זֶה הָיָה חֶלֶק הַיַּעַר אֲשֶׁר שְׂרָץ חַיּוֹת פָּרָא מִשְׁחָרוֹת לְטָרֵף.
- וְהָיָה כִּי רַבִּים מֵהֶם מָתוּ בַּיַּעַר מִפְּצַעֵיהֶם, וְהָיוּ טָרֵף לַחַיּוֹת הָהֵן, וְגַם דְּיוֹת הַשָּׁמַיִם עָטוּ עֲלֵיהֶם; וְעֲצָמוֹתֵיהֶם נִמְצְאוּ שָׁם וְנִעְרְמוּ עַל פְּנֵי הָאָרֶץ.
- 30 And it came to pass that Alma, being a man of God, being exercised with much faith, cried, saying: O Lord, have mercy and spare my life, that I may be an instrument in thy hands to save and preserve this people.
- 31 Now when Alma had said these words he contended again with Amlici; and he was strengthened, insomuch that he slew Amlici with the sword.
- 32 And he also contended with the king of the Lamanites; but the king of the Lamanites fled back from before Alma and sent his guards to contend with Alma.
- 33 But Alma, with his guards, contended with the guards of the king of the Lamanites until he slew and drove them back.
- 34 And thus he cleared the ground, or rather the bank, which was on the west of the river Sidon, throwing the bodies of the Lamanites who had been slain into the waters of Sidon, that thereby his people might have room to cross and contend with the Lamanites and the Amlicites on the west side of the river Sidon.
- 35 And it came to pass that when they had all crossed the river Sidon that the Lamanites and the Amlicites began to flee before them, notwithstanding they were so numerous that they could not be numbered.
- 36 And they fled before the Nephites towards the wilderness which was west and north, away beyond the borders of the land; and the Nephites did pursue them with their might, and did slay them.
- 37 Yea, they were met on every hand, and slain and driven, until they were scattered on the west, and on the north, until they had reached the wilderness, which was called Hermounts; and it was that part of the wilderness which was infested by wild and ravenous beasts.
- 38 And it came to pass that many died in the wilderness of their wounds, and were devoured by those beasts and also the vultures of the air; and their bones have been found, and have been heaped up on the earth.

- וְהַנְּפִיִּים אֲשֶׁר לֹא נָפְלוּ בַּחֲרָב קָבְרוּ אֶת הַרוּגֵי הַמִּלְחָמָה, וְהֵם לֹא סָפְרוּ אֶת הַחֲלָלִים, כִּי רַב
- 1 And it came to pass that the Nephites who were not slain by the weapons of war, after having buried those who had been slain—now

## עֲלָמָא ג:ב-יא

מֵאֲד מִסְפָּרָם. וְאַחַר אֲשֶׁר קָבְרוּ אֶת מֵתֵיהֶם,  
שָׁבוּ כָּלם אֶל אֲדֻמוֹתֵיהֶם, אֶל בְּתֵיהֶם, אֶל  
נְשֵׁיהֶם וְאֶל יְלָדֵיהֶם.

the number of the slain were not numbered, because of the greatness of their number—after they had finished burying their dead they all returned to their lands, and to their houses, and their wives, and their children.

וְנָשִׁים וְיְלָדִים רַבִּים נֶהָרְגוּ בַחֶרֶב, וְכֹן רַבִּים  
מִצֹּאנָם וּבִקְרָם; גַּם שְׂדוֹת דָּגָן רַבִּים אָבְדוּ כִּי  
נִרְמְסוּ תַּחַת רַגְלֵי הַצָּבָאוֹת.

2 Now many women and children had been slain with the sword, and also many of their flocks and their herds; and also many of their fields of grain were destroyed, for they were trodden down by the hosts of men.

וְכָל הַלְּמָנִים וְהָעֲמֻלְקִיִּים אֲשֶׁר נֶהָרְגוּ עַל  
שְׂפַת נְהַר צִידוֹן הִשְׁלָכוּ אֶל מִי צִידוֹן; הִנֵּה  
עֲצָמוֹתֵיהֶם שְׂקוּעוֹת בְּמַעְמְקֵי הַיָּם וְהֵן רַבּוֹת.

3 And now as many of the Lamanites and the Amlicites who had been slain upon the bank of the river Sidon were cast into the waters of Sidon; and behold their bones are in the depths of the sea, and they are many.

וְהָעֲמֻלְקִיִּים נִכְרוּ מִן הַנִּפְיִים בְּתוֹ אָדָם אֲשֶׁר  
נָתְנוּ עַל מִצְחָם, כְּמִשְׁפֹּט הַלְּמָנִים; אֲךָ הֵם לֹא  
גִזְזוּ כְּמוֹתָם אֶת שֵׁעַר רֹאשָׁם.

4 And the Amlicites were distinguished from the Nephites, for they had marked themselves with red in their foreheads after the manner of the Lamanites; nevertheless they had not shorn their heads like unto the Lamanites.

וְהַלְּמָנִים הָיוּ גִזְזוּי רֹאשׁ וְהָלְכוּ עִרְמִים, וְזֹלַת  
עוֹר אֲשֶׁר חָגְרוּ עַל מְתֵנֵיהֶם, וְנִשְׁקָם אֲשֶׁר  
חָגְרוּ עַל גּוֹפָם וְקִשְׁוֹתֵיהֶם וְחֻצֵּיהֶם וְאִבְגֵּי  
קֶלַע וּמִקְלָעִים וְיֵתֶר נִשְׁקָם.

5 Now the heads of the Lamanites were shorn; and they were naked, save it were skin which was girded about their loins, and also their armor, which was girded about them, and their bows, and their arrows, and their stones, and their slings, and so forth.

וְהַלְּמָנִים הָיוּ כְּהִי עוֹר, עַל כִּי הָיוּ אֲשֶׁר הִתְּנוּ  
עַל אֲבוֹתֵיהֶם, אֲשֶׁר הָיָה לָהֶם קֶלְלָה, מִפְּנֵי  
פְּשָׁעָם וּמִרְדָּם בְּאַחֵיהֶם, בְּנָפִי, יַעֲקֹב, יוֹסֵף  
וְשָׁם, אֲשֶׁר הָיוּ אֲנָשִׁים צַדִּיקִים וְקָדוֹשִׁים.

6 And the skins of the Lamanites were dark, according to the mark which was set upon their fathers, which was a curse upon them because of their transgression and their rebellion against their brethren, who consisted of Nephi, Jacob, and Joseph, and Sam, who were just and holy men.

וְאַחֵיהֶם בִּקְשׁוּ לְהֶאֱבִידָם; עַל כֵּן קָלְלוּ וַיְהִי  
אֱלֹהִים הַתְּוָה עֲלֵיהֶם תּוֹ, עַל לָמָן וְלִמְוֶאל וְעַל  
בְּנֵי יִשְׁמַעֲאֵל וְעַל נְשׂוֹת בֵּית יִשְׁמַעֲאֵל.

7 And their brethren sought to destroy them, therefore they were cursed; and the Lord God set a mark upon them, yea, upon Laman and Lemuel, and also the sons of Ishmael, and Ishmaelitish women.

וְהַדְּבָר נַעֲשֶׂה לְמַעַן יִבְדֹּל זֶרַע מִזֶּרַע אֲחֵיהֶם,  
כִּי בָזְזָת יִשְׁמֹר יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים אֶת עַמּוֹ, לְבָל  
יִתְבּוֹלְלוּ בְּזוֹלָתָם, וּלְבָל יֶאֱמִינוּ בְּמִסּוּרוֹת  
בְּלֹתֵי נְכוֹנוֹת אֲשֶׁר אַחֲרִיתָן כָּלִיוֹן.

8 And this was done that their seed might be distinguished from the seed of their brethren, that thereby the Lord God might preserve his people, that they might not mix and believe in incorrect traditions which would prove their destruction.

וְכָל אֲשֶׁר עָרַב אֶת זֶרְעוֹ בְּזֶרַע הַלְּמָנִים הִבִּיא  
אֶת הַקֶּלְלָה הַזֹּאת עַל זֶרְעוֹ.

9 And it came to pass that whosoever did mingle his seed with that of the Lamanites did bring the same curse upon his seed.

עַל כֵּן, כָּל אֲשֶׁר סָר בְּרִצּוֹנוֹ אֶל דְּרָכֵי הַלְּמָנִים  
נִקְרָא עַל שְׁמֹם, וְתוֹ הַתְּוָה עָלָיו.

10 Therefore, whosoever suffered himself to be led away by the Lamanites was called under that head, and there was a mark set upon him.

וְכָל אֲשֶׁר לֹא הֶאֱמִין בְּמִסְרַת הַלְּמָנִים, כִּי  
הֶאֱמִין בְּכַתְּבִים אֲשֶׁר הוֹבֵאוּ מֵאַרְצֵי יְרוּשָׁלַם,

11 And it came to pass that whosoever would not believe in the tradition of the Lamanites, but believed those records which were brought out

וְגַם בְּמִסְכֵּת אֲבוֹתֵיהֶם, אֲשֶׁר נִכְוְנָה הִיא,  
וְאֲשֶׁר הָאָמִין בְּמִצְוֹת אֱלֹהִים וּשְׁמָרוּ, נִקְרְאוּ  
נֶפְתִּיִים, אוֹ עִם נְפִי, מִן הַיּוֹם הַהוּא וְהִלָּאָה.

of the land of Jerusalem, and also in the tradition of their fathers, which were correct, who believed in the commandments of God and kept them, were called the Nephites, or the people of Nephi, from that time forth—

כִּי אֵלֶּה הֵם אֲשֶׁר שָׁמְרוּ אֶת כְּתָבֵי הַזְכָּרֹנוֹת,  
אֲשֶׁר אָמַת הֵם, עַל אִידוֹת עִמָּם וְכֵן עַל  
אִידוֹת עִם הַלְּמָנִיתִים.

12 And it is they who have kept the records which are true of their people, and also of the people of the Lamanites.

וְעַתָּה נָשׁוּב אֶל הָעַמְלִיקִיִּים, כִּי גַם עֲלֵיהֶם  
הִתְּוָה תָּו, אָכֵן, הֵם הִתְּוָהוּ עַל עֲצָמָם, תָּו  
אָדָם עַל מִצְחָם.

13 Now we will return again to the Amlicites, for they also had a mark set upon them; yea, they set the mark upon themselves, yea, even a mark of red upon their foreheads.

כֹּךְ קָם דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים, כִּי אֵלֶּה הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר  
אָמַר אֶל נְפִי: הִנֵּה אֶת הַלְּמָנִיתִים קָלַלְתִּי וְתוֹ  
אֲתוֹהָ עֲלֵיהֶם, לְמַעַן יִכְדְּלוּ, הֵם וְזֶרְעָם, מִמָּוֶה  
וּמִזֶּרְעָה, מֵעַתָּה וְעַד עוֹלָם, זֹלַת אִם יִשׁוּבוּ  
מִרְשָׁעָתָם וַיִּפְּנוּ אֵלַי בְּעִבּוֹר אַרְחָם עֲלֵיהֶם.

14 Thus the word of God is fulfilled, for these are the words which he said to Nephi: Behold, the Lamanites have I cursed, and I will set a mark on them that they and their seed may be separated from thee and thy seed, from this time henceforth and forever, except they repent of their wickedness and turn to me that I may have mercy upon them.

וְעוֹד אָמַר: תָּו אֲתוֹהָ עַל כָּל הַמַּעֲרָב אֶת  
זֶרְעוֹ בְּאַחִיָּה, בְּעִבּוֹר יְהִיו אַרְוִירִים אִף הֵם.

15 And again: I will set a mark upon him that mingleth his seed with thy brethren, that they may be cursed also.

וְאָמַר: תָּו אֲתוֹהָ עַל כָּל הַנִּלְחָם בָּךְ וּבִזְרָעֶךָ.

16 And again: I will set a mark upon him that fighteth against thee and thy seed.

וְשׁוּב, אָנִי אוֹמֵר כִּי כָל אֲשֶׁר יִפְרֹד מִמָּוֶה, לֹא  
יִקְרָא עוֹד זֶרְעֶךָ; וְאִנִּי אֲבָרַךְ אוֹתָהּ וְאֶת כָּל  
אֲשֶׁר יִקְרָא זֶרְעֶךָ, מֵעַתָּה וְעַד עוֹלָם; אֵלֶּה  
דְּבָרֵי בְרִית יְהוָה לְנֶפְתִּי וּלְזֶרְעוֹ.

17 And again, I say he that departeth from thee shall no more be called thy seed; and I will bless thee, and whomsoever shall be called thy seed, henceforth and forever; and these were the promises of the Lord unto Nephi and to his seed.

וְהָעַמְלִיקִיִּים לֹא יָדְעוּ כִּי בְּהִתּוֹוֹתָם אֶת  
מִצְחָם, אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים הֵם מְקַיְמִים; בְּכָל  
זֹאת, בְּגִלּוֹי הֵם מְרִדּוֹ בְּאֱלֹהִים; עַל כֵּן רָאוּ  
הֵיכָּה כִּי תַחּוֹל הַקָּלָלָה עֲלֵיהֶם.

18 Now the Amlicites knew not that they were fulfilling the words of God when they began to mark themselves in their foreheads; nevertheless they had come out in open rebellion against God; therefore it was expedient that the curse should fall upon them.

וְהִנֵּה רְצוֹנִי הוּא כִּי תִרְאוּ כִּי עַל עֲצָמָם הֵם  
הִבִּיאוּ אֶת הַקָּלָלָה; וְכֵן, כָּל אִישׁ מְקַלֵּל, הוּא  
הַחוּרֵץ אֶת מִשְׁפָּטוֹ.

19 Now I would that ye should see that they brought upon themselves the curse; and even so doth every man that is cursed bring upon himself his own condemnation.

וְהָיָה בְּטָרֶם יַעֲבְרוּ יָמִים רַבִּים מִיּוֹם קָרַב  
הַלְּמָנִיתִים וְהָעַמְלִיקִיִּים בְּאַרְצָה זֶרַחֶמְלָה, וְהִנֵּה,  
חֵיל לְמָנִיתִים נֹסֵף עָלָה עַל עִם נְפִי בְּמָקוֹם אֲשֶׁר  
פָּגַשׁ הַצָּבָא הָרִאשׁוֹן אֶת הָעַמְלִיקִיִּים.

20 Now it came to pass that not many days after the battle which was fought in the land of Zarahemla, by the Lamanites and the Amlicites, that there was another army of the Lamanites came in upon the people of Nephi, in the same place where the first army met the Amlicites.

אִזּוֹ נִשְׁלַח צָבָא לְגָרְשָׁם מִן הָאָרֶץ.

21 And it came to pass that there was an army sent to drive them out of their land.

- 22 Now Alma himself being afflicted with a wound did not go up to battle at this time against the Lamanites;  
וְעֲלֵמָא, אֲשֶׁר הָיָה פְּצוּעַ, לֹא יָצָא הַפֶּעַם לְהִלָּחֵם בַּלְמָנִים;
- 23 But he sent up a numerous army against them; and they went up and slew many of the Lamanites, and drove the remainder of them out of the borders of their land.  
אֲדָהּ הוּא שָׁלַח צָבָא רַב לְהִלָּחֵם בָּהֶם; וְהֵם עָלוּ לְקָרֵב וְהָרְגוּ רַבִּים מִן הַלְמָנִים, וְאֵת הַנּוֹתָרִים גָּרְשׁוּ מֵעֵבֶר לְגְבוּלוֹת אֶרְצָם.
- 24 And then they returned again and began to establish peace in the land, being troubled no more for a time with their enemies.  
וְהֵם שָׁבוּ וְהִחֲלוּ לְכוֹנֵן אֶת הַשְּׁלוֹם בָּאֶרֶץ, בְּאֵין אוֹיֵב מְטָרִידִם זְמַן מָה.
- 25 Now all these things were done, yea, all these wars and contentions were commenced and ended in the fifth year of the reign of the judges.  
כָּל הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, הַמְלָחָמוֹת וְהַמְרִיבוֹת, הִחֲלוּ וְכָלוּ בִּשְׁנָה הַחֲמִישִׁית לְשִׁלְטוֹן הַשּׁוֹפְטִים.
- 26 And in one year were thousands and tens of thousands of souls sent to the eternal world, that they might reap their rewards according to their works, whether they were good or whether they were bad, to reap eternal happiness or eternal misery, according to the spirit which they listed to obey, whether it be a good spirit or a bad one.  
וּבְתוֹךְ שָׁנָה אַחַת נִשְׁלָחוּ לְעוֹלָם הַנֶּצְחִי אֲלָפִים וְרַבּוֹת נַפְשׁ, לְמַעַן יִקְצְרוּ שְׂכָרָם כַּפֶּעֱלָם, אִם טוֹב וְאִם רָע; שְׂכָר אֲשֶׁר נָצְחִי, אוֹ יְסוּרֵי עוֹלָם, כִּפִּי הָרוּחַ אֲשֶׁר לָהּ נָטוּ לְהִשְׁמַע, אִם טוֹב וְאִם רָע.
- 27 For every man receiveth wages of him whom he listeth to obey, and this according to the words of the spirit of prophecy; therefore let it be according to the truth. And thus ended the fifth year of the reign of the judges.  
כִּי כָל אָדָם מְקַבֵּל אֶת שְׂכָרוֹ מִמֶּנּוּ אֲשֶׁר לוֹ יֵטֶה לְהִשְׁמַע. וְזֹאת עַל פִּי רוּחַ הַנְּבוּאָה; עַל כֵּן תִּהְיֶה זֹאת עַל פִּי הָאֱמֻנָה. כֹּךְ כָּלְתָה הַשָּׁנָה הַחֲמִישִׁית לְשִׁלְטוֹן הַשּׁוֹפְטִים.

## ד

## 4

- 1 Now it came to pass in the sixth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, there were no contentions nor wars in the land of Zarahemla;  
וּבִשְׁנָה הַשְּׁשִׁית לְשִׁלְטוֹן הַשּׁוֹפְטִים עַל עַם נְפִי לֹא הָיְתָה כָּל מְרִיבָה וּמִלְחָמָה בְּאֶרֶץ זֶרַחְעֵמְלָה.
- 2 But the people were afflicted, yea, greatly afflicted for the loss of their brethren, and also for the loss of their flocks and herds, and also for the loss of their fields of grain, which were trodden under foot and destroyed by the Lamanites.  
אֲדָהּ גָּדוֹל הָיָה שְׂכָר הָעָם עַל אֲבִדוֹן אֲחֵיהֶם, וְעַל אֲבִדוֹן צֹאנָם וּבָקָרָם וְעַל הַשְׂחָתַת שְׂדוֹת דִּגְנָם, אֲשֶׁר נִרְמְסוּ תַּחַת רַגְלֵי הַלְמָנִים וְאֲבִדוּ.
- 3 And so great were their afflictions that every soul had cause to mourn; and they believed that it was the judgments of God sent upon them because of their wickedness and their abominations; therefore they were awakened to a remembrance of their duty.  
כֹּה רַבָּה הָיְתָה מִצּוֹקָתָם, עַד כִּי אֲבָלָה כָּל נֶפֶשׁ; וְהֵם הֶאֱמִינוּ כִּי אֱלֹהִים גִּזַּר מִשְׁפָּטוֹ עֲלֵיהֶם מִפְּנֵי רְשָׁעָתָם וְתוֹעֲבוֹתֵיהֶם; עַל כֵּן הִתְעוֹרְרוּ לְזָכֹר אֶת חוּבָתָם.
- 4 And they began to establish the church more fully; yea, and many were baptized in the waters of Sidon and were joined to the church of God; yea, they were baptized by the hand of Alma, who had been consecrated the high priest over the people of the church, by the hand of his father Alma.  
וְהֵם הִחֲלוּ לְכוֹנֵן אֶת הַכְּנֶסִיָּה בְּיָתֵר שְׂאֵת; רַבִּים הִטְבְּלוּ בְּמֵי צִידוֹן וְהִתְחַבְּרוּ אֶל כְּנֶסֶת אֱלֹהִים. אֲכֹן, הֵם הִטְבְּלוּ בְּיַד עֲלֵמָא אֲשֶׁר אָבִיו עֲלֵמָא קִדְּשָׁהּ לְכֹהֵן גָּדוֹל לְאִנְשֵׁי הַכְּנֶסִיָּה.



- ובשנה השביעית לשלטון השופטים, התחברו לכנסית אלהים והטבלו בשלש אֶלְפִים וחמש מאות נפש. כה כִּלְתָה השנה השביעית לשלטון השופטים על עם נְפִי. וְכָל הַעַת הָיָה לָהֶם שָׁלוֹם.
- ובשנה השמינית לשלטון השופטים, החלו אנשי הכִּנְסִיָּה לְהִתְגָּאוֹת מִפְּנֵי עֲשָׂרָם הַעֲצוֹם, מִשֵּׁם הַטוֹב וּשְׁשׁ מִשְׁוֹר, מִפְּנֵי רֹב צֹאנָם וּבָקָרָם, וְהֵבֶם וְכֶסֶףם וְכָל חֲפָצֵי יָקָר אֲשֶׁר עָשׂוּ לָהֶם בְּמִלְאֲכָתָם. וּמִפְּנֵי כָּל הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה הֵם הִתְנַשְּׂאוּ בְּגָאוֹת עֵינֵיהֶם וְהִחֲלוּ לִלְבֹּשׁ בְּגָדֵי יָקָרוֹת מְאֹד.
- וְהַדְּבָר הַזֶּה יָסַר אֶת עֵלְמָא עַד מְאֹד וְגַם אֶת רַבִּים מִן הָאֲנָשִׁים אֲשֶׁר הוּא קִדְּשָׁם לְהִיּוֹת מוֹרִים וְכֹהֲנִים וְזִקְנִים עַל הַכִּנְסִיָּה. אַכֵּן, רַבִּים מֵהֶם נִעְצְבוּ מְאֹד לְרָאוֹת אֶת הָרָשָׁעָה אֲשֶׁר קָמָה בְּקֶרֶב אֲנָשֵׁיהֶם.
- כִּי רָאוּ בָּרֵב יָגוֹן וְהִבִּיטוּ כִּי אֲנָשֵׁי הַכִּנְסִיָּה הִחֲלוּ לְהִתְנַשֵּׂא בְּגָאוֹת עֵינֵיהֶם וּלְשִׁית לֶבָם לַעֲשׂוֹר וּלְהַבְלִי הָעוֹלָם וּלְלַעַג אִישׁ לְרֵעֵהוּ, וּלְרַדֹּף אֶת כָּל אֲשֶׁר לֹא הֶאֱמִין בְּחֻפְצָם וּכְרֻצֹנָם.
- הִנֵּה כִּי כֵּן, בְּשָׁנָה הַשְּׁמִינִית לְשִׁלְטוֹן הַשּׁוֹפְטִים פָּרְצוּ מְרִיבוֹת גְּדוּלוֹת בֵּין אֲנָשֵׁי הַכִּנְסִיָּה; וְהָיוּ בִּינֵיהֶם קִנְאָה וּמְדוֹן וְדוֹן, רְדִיפוֹת וּגְאוֹהָה אֲשֶׁר עָלְתָה עַל גְּאוֹת אֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר הֵם לֹא חֲבָרִי כְּנִסִּית אֱלֹהִים.
- וּבִזְאוֹת כִּלְתָה הַשָּׁנָה הַשְּׁמִינִית לְשִׁלְטוֹן הַשּׁוֹפְטִים; וְרָשַׁעַת הַכִּנְסִיָּה הִיָּתָה אַכֵּן נִגָּה גְדוּלָה לְאֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר הֵם לֹא חֲבָרִים בָּה. כֵּן הִחֲלָה הַכִּנְסִיָּה לְהַכְשִׁל בְּהִתְקַדְּמוּתָהּ.
- וּבִרְאִישִׁית הַשָּׁנָה הַתְּשִׁיעִית רָאָה עֵלְמָא אֶת רָשַׁעַת הַכִּנְסִיָּה, וְאִף רָאָה כִּי דִגְמַת הַכִּנְסִיָּה שִׁמְשָׁה מוֹפֵת לְחֲסָרֵי הָאֱמוּנָה, לְהוֹבִילִם מֵעוֹן אֶל פֶּשַׁע, וְכֵן הִבִּיָּאָה אֶת הָעָם עַדִּי אֲבִידוֹן.
- אַכֵּן, הוּא רָאָה כִּי רַב הָאִישִׁישׁוּיּוֹן בֵּין הָאֲנָשִׁים; יֵשׁ הַמִּתְנַשְּׂאִים בְּגָאוֹה, וְהֵם בְּזִים לְזוּלָתָם וּפּוֹנִים עֶרֶף לְנִצְרָד וּלְעִירָם, לְרַעֵב וּלְצָמָא, לְחֹלָה וּלְסוֹכֵל.
- 5 And it came to pass in the seventh year of the reign of the judges there were about three thousand five hundred souls that united themselves to the church of God and were baptized. And thus ended the seventh year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi; and there was continual peace in all that time.
- 6 And it came to pass in the eighth year of the reign of the judges, that the people of the church began to wax proud, because of their exceeding riches, and their fine silks, and their fine-twined linen, and because of their many flocks and herds, and their gold and their silver, and all manner of precious things, which they had obtained by their industry; and in all these things were they lifted up in the pride of their eyes, for they began to wear very costly apparel.
- 7 Now this was the cause of much affliction to Alma, yea, and to many of the people whom Alma had consecrated to be teachers, and priests, and elders over the church; yea, many of them were sorely grieved for the wickedness which they saw had begun to be among their people.
- 8 For they saw and beheld with great sorrow that the people of the church began to be lifted up in the pride of their eyes, and to set their hearts upon riches and upon the vain things of the world, that they began to be scornful, one towards another, and they began to persecute those that did not believe according to their own will and pleasure.
- 9 And thus, in this eighth year of the reign of the judges, there began to be great contentions among the people of the church; yea, there were envyings, and strife, and malice, and persecutions, and pride, even to exceed the pride of those who did not belong to the church of God.
- 10 And thus ended the eighth year of the reign of the judges; and the wickedness of the church was a great stumbling-block to those who did not belong to the church; and thus the church began to fail in its progress.
- 11 And it came to pass in the commencement of the ninth year, Alma saw the wickedness of the church, and he saw also that the example of the church began to lead those who were unbelievers on from one piece of iniquity to another, thus bringing on the destruction of the people.
- 12 Yea, he saw great inequality among the people, some lifting themselves up with their pride, despising others, turning their backs upon the needy and the naked and those who were hungry, and those who were athirst, and those who were sick and afflicted.



- 13 Now this was a great cause for lamentations among the people, while others were abasing themselves, succoring those who stood in need of their succor, such as imparting their substance to the poor and the needy, feeding the hungry, and suffering all manner of afflictions, for Christ's sake, who should come according to the spirit of prophecy;
- עַל זֹאת רַבּוּ הַמִּקְוִנִּים בְּקֶרֶב הָעָם; וְהָיוּ אֲנָשִׁים אֲשֶׁר הִשְׁפִּילוּ עַצְמָם, בְּהוֹשִׁיעַם עֲזָרָה לְאִשְׁרֵי נִצְרָכוֹ לְעֲזָרָתָם, בְּהַתְחַלֵּק־לָהֶם עִם הָעֲנִי וְהָאֲבִיּוֹן בְּרִכּוּשָׁם, בְּכֻלָּלָם אֶת הָרָעִב וּבִנְשׂאָם כָּל מִיָּנִי תִלְאָה, לְמַעַן הַמְּשִׁיחַ, הָעֹתִיד לָבוֹא עַל פִּי רוּחַ הַנְּבוּאָה.
- 14 Looking forward to that day, thus retaining a remission of their sins; being filled with great joy because of the resurrection of the dead, according to the will and power and deliverance of Jesus Christ from the bands of death.
- הֵם צָפוּ לַיּוֹם הַהוּא וְכָךְ שָׁמְרוּ עַל מַחֲלַת חֲטָאֵיהֶם; וְהֵם מְלֵאִים שְׂמֵחָה רַבָּה, מִפְּנֵי תַחֲיַת הַמֵּתִים, אֲשֶׁר עַל פִּי רְצוֹן יֵשׁוּעַ הַמְּשִׁיחַ וְכֹחוֹ וְיִשׁוּעָתוֹ מִכַּבְּלֵי הַמָּוֶת.
- 15 And now it came to pass that Alma, having seen the afflictions of the humble followers of God, and the persecutions which were heaped upon them by the remainder of his people, and seeing all their inequality, began to be very sorrowful; nevertheless the Spirit of the Lord did not fail him.
- וְהָיָה בְּרֹאוֹת עֲלֵמָא אֶת עֲנוּת נַאֲמָנֵי אֱלֹהִים הָעֲנִיּוֹם וְאֶת הִרְדִּיפּוֹת אֲשֶׁר נִתְּבוּ עֲלֵיהֶם מִיַּד יִתְרֵי עַמּוֹ, וּבְרֹאוֹתָיו אֶת כָּל הָאִי־שָׁוִיּוֹן אֲשֶׁר בֵּינֵיהֶם, נִפְלָה עָלָיו עֲצָבוֹת גְּדוֹלָה. וְאוֹלָם לֹא עָזְבָה אוֹתוֹ רוּחַ יְהוָה.
- 16 And he selected a wise man who was among the elders of the church, and gave him power according to the voice of the people, that he might have power to enact laws according to the laws which had been given, and to put them in force according to the wickedness and the crimes of the people.
- אִזּוּ בָחַר עֲלֵמָא אִישׁ חָכָם, אֶחָד מִזִּקְנֵי הַכְּנִסְיָה, וְנָתַן לוֹ, עַל דְּעַת הָעָם, סְמֻכוֹת לְחֻקֵּי חֻקִּים עַל פִּי הַחֻקִּים אֲשֶׁר לָהֶם, וּלְהַפְעִילָם כְּפִי רְשָׁעַת הָאֲנָשִׁים וּפְשָׁעֵיהֶם.
- 17 Now this man's name was Nephihah, and he was appointed chief judge; and he sat in the judgment-seat to judge and to govern the people.
- וְשֵׁם הָאִישׁ נִפְיָהָה, וְהוּא מְנָה לְשׁוֹפֵט עָלֵיוֹן; וְהוּא יָשָׁב עַל כִּסֵּי הַמִּשְׁפָּט לְשֹׁפֵט אֶת הָעָם וּלְמַשֵּׁל עָלָיו.
- 18 Now Alma did not grant unto him the office of being high priest over the church, but he retained the office of high priest unto himself; but he delivered the judgment-seat unto Nephihah.
- וְעֲלֵמָא לֹא מָסַר לוֹ אֶת מִשְׁרַת הַכֹּהֵן הַגָּדוֹל בְּכְנִסְיָהּ, כִּי שָׁמַר אוֹתָהּ לְעַצְמוֹ; אֲךָ אֶת כִּסֵּי הַמִּשְׁפָּט הוּא מָסַר לְנִפְיָהָה.
- 19 And this he did that he himself might go forth among his people, or among the people of Nephi, that he might preach the word of God unto them, to stir them up in remembrance of their duty, and that he might pull down, by the word of God, all the pride and craftiness and all the contentions which were among his people, seeing no way that he might reclaim them save it were in bearing down in pure testimony against them.
- וְזֹאת עָשָׂה לְמַעַן יֻכַּל לָלֶכֶת בְּקֶרֶב עַמּוֹ, בְּתוֹךְ עַם נְפִי, וְיֻכַּל לְהַטִּיף לָהֶם אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים, וְיַעְזְרֵם לְזִכֹּר אֶת חֻבְבָּתָם, וּלְמַעַן הִשְׁפִּיל, בְּדִבְרֵי אֱלֹהִים, אֶת כָּל הַגָּאֹה וְהַתְרַמִּיט וְאֶת כָּל הַמְּרִיבוֹת אֲשֶׁר בְּקֶרֶב עַמּוֹ, כִּי לֹא רָאָה כָּל דֶּרֶךְ לְהַשִּׁיבָם לְמוֹטֵב, בְּלֹתִי אִם יִכְרִיעַם בְּעֵדוֹת בְּרוּרָה לְפָנֵיהֶם.
- 20 And thus in the commencement of the ninth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, Alma delivered up the judgment-seat to Nephihah, and confined himself wholly to the high priesthood of the holy order of God, to the testimony of the word, according to the spirit of revelation and prophecy.
- וְכָךְ, בְּרֹאשִׁית הַשָּׁנָה הַתְּשִׁיעִית לְשִׁלְטוֹן הַשׁוֹפְטִים בְּעַם נְפִי, מָסַר עֲלֵמָא אֶת מוֹשְׁבוֹ בְּכִסֵּי הַמִּשְׁפָּט לְנִפְיָהָה וְהִתְמַסֵּר כָּלִיל לְכַהֲנָה הָרִאשִׁית אֲשֶׁר לְפִי סֹדֵר הַקֹּדֶשׁ אֲשֶׁר לְאֱלֹהִים, לְעֵדוּת עַל דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים, עַל פִּי רוּחַ הַהִתְגַּלּוּת וְהַנְּבוּאָה.

דְּבָרֵי עֲלָמָא, הִכְהִין הָרֹאשִׁי לְפִי סֵדֵר הַקֹּדֶשׁ  
אֲשֶׁר לְאֱלֹהִים, אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר אֶל הָעָם הַיוֹשְׁבִים  
בְּעָרֵיהֶם וּבְכִפְרֵיהֶם בְּרַחֲבֵי הָאָרֶץ (בְּעֶרְךָ 83  
לְפָנֵי הַסְּפִירָה). וְכָלֵל בְּפֶרֶק ה'.

*The words which Alma, the high priest according to the holy order of God, delivered to the people in their cities and villages throughout the land. (About 83 B.C.) Comprising chapter 5.*

## ה

## 5

- 1 וְעֲלָמָא הֵחֵל לְהַשְׁמִיעַ אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים לָעָם,  
רֹאשִׁית בָּאָרֶץ זְרַחֲמֵלָה, וְאַחֲרֵי כֵן בְּכָל  
רַחֲבֵי הָאָרֶץ.
- 2 וְאַלֶּה הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר אֶל אַנְשֵׁי הַכְּנִסְיָה,  
אֲשֶׁר כּוֹנְנָה בְּעִיר זְרַחֲמֵלָה, עַל פִּי כְּתָב  
זְכוֹנוֹתָיו, לֵאמֹר:
- 3 אֲנִי עֲלָמָא, אֲשֶׁר קִדְשִׁיתִי בְיַדִּי אָבִי, עֲלָמָא,  
לְהִיט הִכְהִין הַגְדוֹל בְּכִנְסִית אֱלֹהִים. וְלוֹ הָיוּ  
כַּח וְתִקְּףָה מֵאֵת אֱלֹהִים לַעֲשׂוֹת כֵּן. הִנְנִי אוֹמֵר  
לָכֶם כִּי הוּא הֵחֵל לְכוֹנֵן כְּנִסְיָה בָּאָרֶץ אֲשֶׁר  
בְּגִבּוֹלוֹת נָפִי, אֲשֶׁר נִקְרָאָה אָרֶץ מוֹרְמוֹן;  
וְהוּא הִטְבִּיל אֶת אָחָיו בְּמֵי מוֹרְמוֹן.
- 4 הִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם כִּי הֵם נִצְלוּ מִיַּדִּי אַנְשֵׁי הַמֶּלֶךְ  
נֹחַ בְּרַחֲמֵי אֱלֹהִים וּבְכֹחוֹ.
- 5 וְאַחֲרֵי כֵן, הֵם הִשְׁתַּעֲבְדוּ בְיַדִּי הַלָּמָנִים  
בְּעִירָוֹת; אָכֵן, אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם: הֵם הָיוּ שְׁבוּיִים  
וַיְהִי הוֹצִיאֵם מִשְׁעָבֹד בְּכַח דְּבָרֹ. וְאַנְחֵנוּ  
הוֹבֵאֵנוּ אֶל הָאָרֶץ הַזֹּאת, וְגַם פֹּה הִחְלוֹנוּ  
לִיסַד אֶת כְּנִסְיַת אֱלֹהִים בְּכָל רַחֲבֵי הָאָרֶץ.
- 6 וְעַתָּה, אָחִי, חֲבָרֵי הַכְּנִסְיָה, הִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם:  
הֲאִם דִּבְקַתְּם דִּיכֶם בְּזִכָּר שְׁעָבֹד אֲבוֹתֵיכֶם?  
הַדְּבַקְתֶּם דִּיכֶם בְּזִכָּר רַחֲמֵי יְהוָה וְאֶרֶץ אֲפִיו  
לָהֶם? נוֹסֶף עַל כֵּן, הַדְּבַקְתֶּם דִּיכֶם בְּזִכָּר  
הַצִּילוֹ אֶת נַפְשָׁם מִשַּׁחַת?
- 7 בְּהוֹל, הוּא הִמְרִי אֶת לְבָבָם וְהִעִירָם מִתַּרְדֵּמָה  
עֲמֻקָּה, וְהֵם הִתְעוֹרְרוּ לְאֱלֹהִים. הִנֵּה, בְּתוֹךְ  
אֲפֹלָה הָיוּ, אֲךָ דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים נִצְחִי הָאִיר אֶת  
נַפְשָׁם; אָכֵן, הֵם הָיוּ מְקִיפִים מוֹסְרוֹת מוֹת,  
חֲרָצְבוֹת שָׂאוֹל סָבוּם וְאַבְדוֹן עוֹלָם  
אָרַב לְפָתָחָם.
- 8 וְהִנֵּה אֲשַׁאלְכֶם, אָחִי: הֲאָבֹד אָבְדוּ? הִנְנִי  
אוֹמֵר לָכֶם: לֹא, לֹא אָבְדוּ.
- 8 And now it came to pass that Alma began to deliver the word of God unto the people, first in the land of Zarahemla, and from thence throughout all the land.
- 2 And these are the words which he spake to the people in the church which was established in the city of Zarahemla, according to his own record, saying:
- 3 I, Alma, having been consecrated by my father, Alma, to be a high priest over the church of God, he having power and authority from God to do these things, behold, I say unto you that he began to establish a church in the land which was in the borders of Nephi; yea, the land which was called the land of Mormon; yea, and he did baptize his brethren in the waters of Mormon.
- 4 And behold, I say unto you, they were delivered out of the hands of the people of king Noah, by the mercy and power of God.
- 5 And behold, after that, they were brought into bondage by the hands of the Lamanites in the wilderness; yea, I say unto you, they were in captivity, and again the Lord did deliver them out of bondage by the power of his word; and we were brought into this land, and here we began to establish the church of God throughout this land also.
- 6 And now behold, I say unto you, my brethren, you that belong to this church, have you sufficiently retained in remembrance the captivity of your fathers? Yea, and have you sufficiently retained in remembrance his mercy and long-suffering towards them? And moreover, have ye sufficiently retained in remembrance that he has delivered their souls from hell?
- 7 Behold, he changed their hearts; yea, he awakened them out of a deep sleep, and they awoke unto God. Behold, they were in the midst of darkness; nevertheless, their souls were illuminated by the light of the everlasting word; yea, they were encircled about by the bands of death, and the chains of hell, and an everlasting destruction did await them.
- 8 And now I ask of you, my brethren, were they destroyed? Behold, I say unto you, Nay, they were not.

## עלמא ה:ט-יח

- ועוד אֲשָׁאֵל: הֲנִתְּקוּ מוֹסְרוֹת הַמָּוֶת, וְנִפְתְּחוּ חֲרָצְבוֹת שְׂאוֹל אֲשֶׁר סְבוּם? הֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם: כֵּן! הֵן נִפְתְּחוּ, וְנִפְשָׁם רָחְבָּה וּלְשׁוֹנָם רִנְּנָה עַל אֲהָבָה פְּדוּהָ. וְאֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם כִּי נִשְׁעוּ.
- 9 And again I ask, were the bands of death broken, and the chains of hell which encircled them about, were they loosed? I say unto you, Yea, they were loosed, and their souls did expand, and they did sing redeeming love. And I say unto you that they are saved.
- וְעַתָּה אֲשָׁאֵלְכֶם: מֵהֶם תִּנָּאִי יִשׁוּעַתֶּם? עַל מָה סָמְכוּ אֶת תִּקְוַתְכֶם לִישׁוּעָה? מִדּוּעַ הִתְּרוּ מִמוֹסְרוֹת הַמָּוֶת וְאֶף מִחֲרָצְבוֹת שְׂאוֹל?
- 10 And now I ask of you on what conditions are they saved? Yea, what grounds had they to hope for salvation? What is the cause of their being loosed from the bands of death, yea, and also the chains of hell?
- הִנֵּה אוֹכֵל לְהַגִּידְכֶם: הָאֵם לֹא הָאֲמִין עַלְמָא אָבִי בַּדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר יֵצְאוּ מִפִּי אֲבִינָדִי? הָאֵם לֹא הָיָה אֲבִינָדִי נְבִיא קְדוֹשׁ? הָאֵם לֹא דִבֶּר אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים? הָאֵם עַלְמָא אָבִי לֹא הָאֲמִין בַּדְּבָרוֹ?
- 11 Behold, I can tell you—did not my father Alma believe in the words which were delivered by the mouth of Abinadi? And was he not a holy prophet? Did he not speak the word of God, and my father Alma believe it?
- וְכַפִּי אֲמוֹנָתוֹ חָלָה בְּלִבּוֹ תְּמוּרָה עָזָה. הֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם כִּי כָל זֹאת אֱמֶת.
- 12 And according to his faith there was a mighty change wrought in his heart. Behold I say unto you that this is all true.
- וְהִנֵּה, הוּא הִסִּיף אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים לְאַבּוֹתֵיכֶם, וְתְּמוּרָה עָזָה חָלָה גַם בְּלִבָּם, וְהֵם נִכְנְעוּ בַּעֲנֻה וְשָׂמוּ אֶת מִבְטָחָם בְּאֱלֹהֵי אֱמֶת חַי. אָכֵן, הֵם שָׁמְרוּ לוֹ אֲמוּנָה עַד הַקֵּץ; עַל כֵּן נִשְׁעוּ.
- 13 And behold, he preached the word unto your fathers, and a mighty change was also wrought in their hearts, and they humbled themselves and put their trust in the true and living God. And behold, they were faithful until the end; therefore they were saved.
- וְעַתָּה, אַחֵי בְּכִנְסִיָּה, אֲשָׁאֵלְכֶם: הֲנִוּלְדִיתֶם בְּרוּחַ מַאֲלֵהִים? הָאֵם קִבַּלְתֶּם אֶת דְּמוּתוֹ בְּתֹאֵר פְּנִיכֶם? הָאֵם רָאִיתֶם תְּמוּרָה עָזָה זֹאת בְּלִבְכֶם?
- 14 And now behold, I ask of you, my brethren of the church, have ye spiritually been born of God? Have ye received his image in your countenances? Have ye experienced this mighty change in your hearts?
- הֵישׁ בְּקִרְבְּכֶם אֲמוּנָה בְּגִאֲלָה אֲשֶׁר מָאֵת בּוֹרְאָכֶם? הֲתִישִׁירוּ מִבְטָכֶם בְּאֲמוּנָה, וְתִחַזּוּ בַּגּוֹף בֶּן הַתְּמוּרָה מִתְּעֵלָה בְּאַלְמוּנוֹת, וְהַבְלִיָּה מִתְּעֵלָה בְּבִלְתִּי בְלִיָּה, לַעֲמֹד לִפְנֵי אֱלֹהִים וּלְהַשְׁפֹּט כְּפִי הַמַּעֲשִׂים אֲשֶׁר נַעֲשׂוּ בַּגּוֹף בֶּן הַתְּמוּרָה?
- 15 Do ye exercise faith in the redemption of him who created you? Do you look forward with an eye of faith, and view this mortal body raised in immortality, and this corruption raised in incorruption, to stand before God to be judged according to the deeds which have been done in the mortal body?
- אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, הֲתִדְמוּ בְּלִבְכֶם כִּי בְיוֹם הַהוּא תִשְׁמַעְנָה אֲזִנֵּיכֶם אֶת קוֹל יְהוָה אוֹמֵר אֲלֵיכֶם: בּוֹאוּ נָא אֵלַי, הַבְּרוּכִים, כִּי הִנֵּה מַעֲשֵׂיכֶם מַעֲשֵׂי צֶדֶק הָיוּ עַל פְּנֵי הָאָרֶץ?
- 16 I say unto you, can you imagine to yourselves that ye hear the voice of the Lord, saying unto you, in that day: Come unto me ye blessed, for behold, your works have been the works of righteousness upon the face of the earth?
- אוֹ, הֲתִדְמוּ בְּלִבְכֶם כִּי תוֹכְלוּ בְיוֹם הַהוּא לִכְזֹב לִיהוָה בְּאִמְרָכֶם: יְהוָה, מַעֲשֵׂינוּ מַעֲשֵׂי צֶדֶק הָיוּ עַל פְּנֵי הָאָרֶץ; וְהוּא יוֹשִׁיעֲכֶם?
- 17 Or do ye imagine to yourselves that ye can lie unto the Lord in that day, and say—Lord, our works have been righteous works upon the face of the earth—and that he will save you?
- אוֹ, בְּלִשׁוֹן אַחֵר, הֲתִדְמוּ בְּלִבְכֶם כִּי תוֹבֵאוּ לִפְנֵי פָס מִשְׁפָּט אֱלֹהִים וְנִפְשְׁכֶם מִלֵּאָה אֲשֶׁם וְחֲרָטָה, בְּזִכְרְכֶם אֶת כָּל אֲשֶׁמְכֶם, אָכֵן,
- 18 Or otherwise, can ye imagine yourselves brought before the tribunal of God with your souls filled with guilt and remorse, having a remembrance of all your guilt, yea, a perfect remembrance of all your wicked-

- בְּזָכְרְכֶם אֶת כָּל רִשְׁעֵיכֶם כְּתִמָּה, זָכְרוּן עַל  
כִּי מִרְדֵּיתֶם בְּמִצְוֹת אֱלֹהִים?
- 19 I say unto you, can ye look up to God at that day with a pure heart and clean hands? I say unto you, can you look up, having the image of God engraven upon your countenances?
- אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם: הַתּוֹכְלוּ לְהִבִּיט בְּיוֹם הַהוּא  
אֶל אֱלֹהִים בְּלֵב טָהוֹר וּבְנִקְיוֹן כַּפַּיִם? אֲנִי  
אוֹמֵר לָכֶם: הַתּוֹכְלוּ לְהִבִּיט מֵעֵלָה וּדְמוּת  
אֱלֹהִים חֲקוּקָה בְּתֵאֵר פָּנֵיכֶם?
- 20 I say unto you, can ye think of being saved when you have yielded yourselves to become subjects to the devil?
- אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם: הַתְּחַשְׁבוּ כִּי תוֹשְׁעוּ בְּעַת  
אֲשֶׁר הִתְמַסְרֶתֶם לְהַכְנֹעַ לְשָׂטָן?
- 21 I say unto you, ye will know at that day that ye cannot be saved; for there can no man be saved except his garments are washed white; yea, his garments must be purified until they are cleansed from all stain, through the blood of him of whom it has been spoken by our fathers, who should come to redeem his people from their sins.
- אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, בְּיוֹם הַהוּא תֵדָעוּ כִּי אֵין  
לָכֶם יְשׁוּעָה; כִּי לֹא יוֹשַׁע אִישׁ בְּלֹא רִחְצוֹ  
בַּגָּדִיו וְהַלְבִּינוֹ; אָכֵן, שׁוֹמֵה עַל בַּגְדָּיו כִּי  
יִטְהַרוּ עַד אֲשֶׁר נִקְיִים יִהְיוּ מִכָּל כֶּתֶם,  
עַל יְדֵי דָם מִי שְׁאֲבוּתֵינוּ דָּבְרוּ עָלָיו כִּי  
יָבוֹא לְגָאֵל אֶת עַמּוֹ מִחַטָּאתָם.
- 22 And now I ask of you, my brethren, how will any of you feel, if ye shall stand before the bar of God, having your garments stained with blood and all manner of filthiness? Behold, what will these things testify against you?
- וְעַתָּה, אַחֵי, אֲשַׁאלְכֶם: אֵיכָה תִרְגְּשׁוּ,  
אִישׁ-אִישׁ מִכֶּם, אִם תַּעֲמִדוּ לִפְנֵי כֵס  
מִשְׁפַּט אֱלֹהִים, וּבְגְדֵיכֶם מְכֻתְמִים בְּדָם  
וְכָל מִינֵי טִנְפָה? הִנֵּה, מָה יַעֲיִדוּ עָלֵיכֶם  
הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה?
- 23 Behold will they not testify that ye are murderers, yea, and also that ye are guilty of all manner of wickedness?
- הֲלֹא יַעֲיִדוּ כִּי מִרְצָחִים הֵנֶכֶם וְכִי אָכֵן  
אֲשַׁמְתֶּם בְּכָל מִינֵי רִשְׁעָה?
- 24 Behold, my brethren, do ye suppose that such an one can have a place to sit down in the kingdom of God, with Abraham, with Isaac, and with Jacob, and also all the holy prophets, whose garments are cleansed and are spotless, pure and white?
- רְאוּ, אַחֵי, הַתְּחַשְׁבוּ כִּי לְאִישׁ אֲשֶׁר כָּזָה  
יִהְיֶה מוֹשֵׁב בְּמַלְכוּת אֱלֹהִים, עִם אַבְרָהָם,  
עִם יִצְחָק וְעִם יַעֲקֹב וְכֵן עִם כָּל הַנְּבִיאִים  
הַקְּדוֹשִׁים אֲשֶׁר בְּגְדֵיהֶם נִקְיִים, לְלֹא רָבָב,  
טְהוֹרִים וְצַהֲרִים?
- 25 I say unto you, Nay; except ye make our Creator a liar from the beginning, or suppose that he is a liar from the beginning, ye cannot suppose that such can have place in the kingdom of heaven; but they shall be cast out for they are the children of the kingdom of the devil.
- אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם: לֹא! רַק בְּתִתְּכֶם אֶת בּוֹרְאָנוּ  
כְּשֶׁקֶרן מֵאֲזוּ וּמַעֲוֹלָם, אוֹ כִּי תַחֲשִׁיבוּהוּ שֶׁקֶרן  
מֵאֲזוּ וּמַעֲוֹלָם, לֹא תוֹכְלוּ לַחֲשֹׁב כִּי לְכֻמוֹת  
אֱלֹהִים יֵשׁ מוֹשֵׁב בְּמַלְכוּת שָׁמַיִם; וְהֵם אָכֵן  
יִדְחוּ כִּי בְנֵי מַלְכוּת הַשָּׂטָן הֵם.
- 26 And now behold, I say unto you, my brethren, if ye have experienced a change of heart, and if ye have felt to sing the song of redeeming love, I would ask, can ye feel so now?
- וְעַתָּה, אַחֵי, אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם: אִם אָכֵן רָאִיתֶם  
תְּמוּרַת לֵב, וְחָפֵץ לְבָבְכֶם לְשִׁיר אֶת שִׁיר הָאֱהָבָה  
הַפִּזֻּדָּה, אֲשַׁאלְכֶם, הַתּוֹכְלוּ לַחוֹשׁ כֹּךְ עַתָּה?
- 27 Have ye walked, keeping yourselves blameless before God? Could ye say, if ye were called to die at this time, within yourselves, that ye have been sufficiently humble? That your garments have been cleansed and
- הֲאִם הִתְהַלַּכְתֶּם נִשְׁמְרִים מִפְּשַׁע לִפְנֵי אֱלֹהִים?  
הַתּוֹכְלוּ לומר בְּלִבְבְּכֶם, אִלּוּ נִקְרַאתֶם עַתָּה  
לְמוֹת, כִּי הִיִּיתֶם נִכְנָעִים דִּיקָם? וְכִי בְּגְדֵיכֶם

- נְקוּ וְהִלְבִּינוּ עַל יְדֵי דָם הַמְּשִׁיחַ, אֲשֶׁר יָבֹוא לְגַאֵל אֶת עַמּוֹ מִחַטָּאתָם?
- 28 Behold, are ye stripped of pride? I say unto you, if ye are not ye are not prepared to meet God. Behold ye must prepare quickly; for the kingdom of heaven is soon at hand, and such an one hath not eternal life.
- הָאֵם חַפִּים אַתֶּם מִגָּאוּה? אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, אִם לֹא כֵן אֵינְכֶם מוֹכְנִים לְהִקְרָא לְפָנֵי אֱלֹהִים. הִנֵּה, עָלֵיכֶם לְהִתְכַּוֵּן מְהֵרָה, כִּי קְרוּבָה כִּי קְרוּבָה לְבֹא מַלְכוּת שָׁמַיִם, וְלֹאִישׁ כִּזֶּה אֵין חַיִּי עוֹלָם.
- 29 Behold, I say, is there one among you who is not stripped of envy? I say unto you that such an one is not prepared; and I would that he should prepare quickly, for the hour is close at hand, and he knoweth not when the time shall come; for such an one is not found guiltless.
- הֲנִי אוֹמֵר, הֲיֵשׁ בָּכֶם אֶחָד אֲשֶׁר אֵינוֹ חָף מִקְנָאוּה? אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, כִּי אִישׁ כִּזֶּה אֵינוֹ מוֹכֵן, וּמִי יָתֵן וְיִתְכַּוֵּן מְהֵרָה, כִּי קְרוּבָה הַשְׁעָה וְאֵין הוּא יוֹדֵעַ מַתִּי יָבֹא מוֹעֵד, כִּי אִישׁ כִּזֶּה לֹא יִמָּצֵא נָקִי מֵאִשָּׁם.
- 30 And again I say unto you, is there one among you that doth make a mock of his brother, or that heapeth upon him persecutions?
- וְעוֹד אֲנִי אוֹמֵר אֲלֵיכֶם: הֲיֵשׁ בָּכֶם אִישׁ לֹועֵג לְאַחִיו, אוֹ נוֹגֵשׁ אוֹתוֹ בְּרִדְפוֹת?
- 31 Wo unto such an one, for he is not prepared, and the time is at hand that he must repent or he cannot be saved!
- הוּא לֹאִישׁ הַהוּא, כִּי אֵינוֹ מוֹכֵן, כִּי קְרוּבָה הָעֵת לְבֹא, וְעָלָיו לְהִנָּחֵם מִרְעָתוֹ; וְלֹא, לֹא יוֹכֵל לְהוֹשִׁיעַ!
- 32 Yea, even wo unto all ye workers of iniquity; repent, repent, for the Lord God hath spoken it!
- אָכֵן, אוֹי לָכֶם, כָּל פּוֹעֲלֵי אָוֹן; הִנָּחֲמוּ, הִנָּחֲמוּ, כִּי יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים דִּבֶּר זֹאת!
- 33 Behold, he sendeth an invitation unto all men, for the arms of mercy are extended towards them, and he saith: Repent, and I will receive you.
- הִנֵּה הִזְמִינָתוֹ אֵלַי כָּל, כִּי יְרוּעוֹת הַרְחָמִים פְּשׁוּטוֹת לְקִרְאָתָם וְהוּא אוֹמֵר: הִנָּחֲמוּ נָא וְאֲנִי אֶקַּבְלָכֶם.
- 34 Yea, he saith: Come unto me and ye shall partake of the fruit of the tree of life; yea, ye shall eat and drink of the bread and the waters of life freely;
- אָכֵן, כֹּה הוּא אוֹמֵר: בּוֹאוּ אֵלַי וְטַעְמוּ מִפְּרֵי עֵץ הַחַיִּים; אָכֵן, אֶכּוֹל וְאֶשְׁתֶּה מִלֶּחֶם הַחַיִּים וּשְׁתֶּה מִתְּשׁוּתוֹ מִמֵּי הַחַיִּים כְּאוֹת נִפְשָׁכֶם;
- 35 Yea, come unto me and bring forth works of righteousness, and ye shall not be hewn down and cast into the fire—
- אָכֵן, בּוֹאוּ אֵלַי וּבְיָדְכֶם מַעֲשֵׂי צֶדֶק, וְלֹא תִגְדְּעוּ וְלֹא תִשְׁלָכוּ אֶל הָאֵשׁ.
- 36 For behold, the time is at hand that whosoever bringeth forth not good fruit, or whosoever doeth not the works of righteousness, the same have cause to wail and mourn.
- כִּי הִנֵּה קְרוּבָה הָעֵת לְבֹא וְכָל אֲשֶׁר לֹא יָתֵן פְּרִי טוֹב, אֲשֶׁר לֹא פָעַל צִדְקוֹת, נָהִי וּמִסָּפַד חֶלְקוֹ.
- 37 O ye workers of iniquity; ye that are puffed up in the vain things of the world, ye that have professed to have known the ways of righteousness nevertheless have gone astray, as sheep having no shepherd, notwithstanding a shepherd hath called after you and is still calling after you, but ye will not hearken unto his voice!
- הוּא, פּוֹעֲלֵי אָוֹן, אַתֶּם הַנִּפְּחוֹתִים בַּהֲבִלֵי הָעוֹלָם, אַתֶּם הַטּוֹעֲנִים לְדַעַת אֶת דְּרָכֵי הַצֶּדֶק, וּבְכָל זֹאת תַּעֲשִׂיתֶם, כְּצֹאן בְּלֹא רוֹעֶה, אִף כִּי קָרָא אַחֲרֵיהֶם רוֹעֶה וְעוֹדוֹ קוֹרָא לָכֶם, אִף אַתֶּם אֵינְכֶם שׁוֹמְעִים בְּקוֹלוֹ!



- 38 Behold, I say unto you, that the good shepherd doth call you; yea, and in his own name he doth call you, which is the name of Christ; and if ye will not hearken unto the voice of the good shepherd, to the name by which ye are called, behold, ye are not the sheep of the good shepherd.
- הַנְּנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, כִּי הָרוּעָה הַטּוֹב קוֹרָא לָכֶם; אַכֵּן, בְּשֵׁמוֹ הוּא קוֹרָא לָכֶם, אֲשֶׁר הוּא שֵׁם הַמְּשִׁיחַ; וְאִם לֹא תִשְׁמָעוּ לְקוֹל הָרוּעָה הַטּוֹב, וְלֹא תִקְשְׁבוּ לְשֵׁם אֲשֶׁר אַתֶּם נִקְרָאִים בּוֹ, אֵינְכֶם צֹאן הָרוּעָה הַטּוֹב.
- 39 And now if ye are not the sheep of the good shepherd, of what fold are ye? Behold, I say unto you, that the devil is your shepherd, and ye are of his fold; and now, who can deny this? Behold, I say unto you, whosoever denieth this is a liar and a child of the devil.
- וְאִם אֵין אַתֶּם צֹאן הָרוּעָה הַטּוֹב, מֵאִיזָה עֵדֶר אַתֶּם? הַנְּנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם כִּי הַשָּׂטָן רוּעֶכֶם וּמַעֲדָרוֹ אַתֶּם; מִי יוֹכַל לִכְחַשׁ בְּזֹאת? הַנְּנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם כִּי כָל הַמְּכַחֵשׁ בְּזֹאת שֶׁקֶר הוּא וְכֵן הַשָּׂטָן.
- 40 For I say unto you that whatsoever is good cometh from God, and whatsoever is evil cometh from the devil.
- וְאֵנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם כִּי כָל טוֹב, מֵאֱלֹהִים מוֹצֵאוֹ, וְכָל רָע, מֵהַשָּׂטָן מוֹצֵאוֹ.
- 41 Therefore, if a man bringeth forth good works he hearkeneth unto the voice of the good shepherd, and he doth follow him; but whosoever bringeth forth evil works, the same becometh a child of the devil, for he hearkeneth unto his voice, and doth follow him.
- לָכֵן, אִם בְּיַד אִישׁ מַעֲשִׂים טוֹבִים, אֵין זֹאת כִּי לְקוֹל הָרוּעָה הַטּוֹב הוּא שׁוֹמֵעַ וְבִעֲקֻבוֹתָיו הוּא הוֹלֵךְ; אֲךָ כָּל אֲשֶׁר בְּיַדוֹ מַעֲשִׂים רָעִים, בֶּן הַשָּׂטָן הוּא נֶעֱשֶׂה, כִּי לְקוֹלוֹ הוּא שׁוֹמֵעַ וְבִעֲקֻבוֹתָיו הוּא הוֹלֵךְ.
- 42 And whosoever doeth this must receive his wages of him; therefore, for his wages he receiveth death, as to things pertaining unto righteousness, being dead unto all good works.
- וְכָל הַעוֹשֶׂה זֹאת, מֵאֵת הַשָּׂטָן יִקְבַּל אֵת שְׂכָרוֹ; עַל כֵּן שְׂכָרוֹ מוֹת, בְּאֲשֶׁר לְדַבְּרֵי צֶדֶק, כִּי מֵת הוּא לְכָל מַעֲשִׂים טוֹבִים.
- 43 And now, my brethren, I would that ye should hear me, for I speak in the energy of my soul; for behold, I have spoken unto you plainly that ye cannot err, or have spoken according to the commandments of God.
- וְעַתָּה, אַחֵי, חֲפָצִי כִּי תִשְׁמָעוּ אֵלַי, כִּי בְּתַעֲצוּמַת נַפְשִׁי אֲנִי מְדַבֵּר. הֵן דִּבְרֵתִי אֵלֵיכֶם בְּרוּרוֹת, לְמַעַן לֹא תִטְעוּ, כִּי כְּמִצְוֹת אֱלֹהִים דִּבְרֵתִי.
- 44 For I am called to speak after this manner, according to the holy order of God, which is in Christ Jesus; yea, I am commanded to stand and testify unto this people the things which have been spoken by our fathers concerning the things which are to come.
- כִּי נִקְרָאתִי לְדַבֵּר בְּאִפְסוֹ הַזֶּה, עַל פִּי סֵדֶר הַקֹּדֶשׁ אֲשֶׁר לְאֱלֹהִים, אֲשֶׁר בְּמִשְׁחֵי יִשׁוּעַ; הַנְּנִי מְצֻוֶּה לָקוּם וּלְהִעָד לְפָנֵי הָעָם הַזֶּה עַל הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר דִּבְּרוּ אֲבוֹתֵינוּ עַל אוֹדוֹת הַבָּאוֹת.
- 45 And this is not all. Do ye not suppose that I know of these things myself? Behold, I testify unto you that I do know that these things whereof I have spoken are true. And how do ye suppose that I know of their surety?
- וְאֵין זֹאת הַכֹּל. הֲאֵינְכֶם סוֹבְרִים כִּי אֲנִי עֹצְמִי יוֹדֵעַ אֵת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה? הַנְּנִי מַעֲדִיד לְפָנֵיכֶם כִּי הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר דִּבְּרֵתִי עֲלֵיהֶם אֱמֶת הֵנּם. וְכֵן סוֹבְרִים אַתֶּם, כִּי צֶדֶק נִדְּעָה לִּי אֲמַתְתֶּם?
- 46 Behold, I say unto you they are made known unto me by the Holy Spirit of God. Behold, I have fasted and prayed many days that I might know these things of myself. And now I do know of myself that they are true; for the Lord God hath made them manifest unto me by his Holy Spirit; and this is the spirit of revelation which is in me.
- הַנְּנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, הֵם נִדְּעוּ לִי עַל יְדֵי רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ אֲשֶׁר לְאֱלֹהִים. הִנֵּה, צִמְתִּי וְהִתְפַּלֵּלְתִּי יָמִים רַבִּים לְמַעַן אֲדַע אֲנִי אֵת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה. וְעַתָּה, אֲנִי עֹצְמִי יוֹדֵעַ כִּי אֱמֶת הֵם; כִּי יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים גָּלָה אוֹתָם לִי בְּרוּחַ קְדָשׁוֹ; וְאֵין זֹאת כִּי אִם רוּחַ הַהִתְגַּלּוּת אֲשֶׁר בְּקִרְבִּי.



וְעוֹד אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם כִּי כֹה הִתְגַּלָּה לִּי, כִּי  
הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר דִּבְּרוּ אֲבוֹתֵינוּ אֱמֶת הֵם, וְזֹאת  
עַל פִּי רוּחַ הַנְּבוּאָה אֲשֶׁר בְּקִרְבִּי, אֲשֶׁר אִף  
הֵיא עַל יְדֵי הִתְגַּלוּת רוּחַ אֱלֹהִים.

47 And moreover, I say unto you that it has thus been revealed unto me, that the words which have been spoken by our fathers are true, even so according to the spirit of prophecy which is in me, which is also by the manifestation of the Spirit of God.

אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, כִּי אֲנִי עֲצָמִי יוֹדֵעַ כִּי כָל אֲשֶׁר  
אֲגִיד לָכֶם עַל הָעֵתִיד לְבוֹא, אֱמֶת הוּא, וְאֲנִי  
אוֹמֵר לָכֶם כִּי אֲנִי יוֹדֵעַ כִּי בּוֹא יְבוֹא יֵשׁוּעַ  
הַמָּשִׁיחַ, וְהוּא הֵבִן, הַיְלוּד הַיְחִיד אֲשֶׁר לְאָב,  
מְלֵא חֶסֶד וְרַחֲמִים וְאֱמֶת. הִנֵּה, הוּא אֲשֶׁר  
בָּא לְהַסִּיר אֶת חַטָּאת הָעוֹלָם, חַטָּאת כָּל אִישׁ  
אֲשֶׁר אֵיתָן בְּאֵמוּנָתוֹ בְּשִׁמוֹ.

48 I say unto you, that I know of myself that whatsoever I shall say unto you, concerning that which is to come, is true; and I say unto you, that I know that Jesus Christ shall come, yea, the Son, the Only Begotten of the Father, full of grace, and mercy, and truth. And behold, it is he that cometh to take away the sins of the world, yea, the sins of every man who steadfastly believeth on his name.

וְעַתָּה, אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם כִּי זֶה הַסֵּדֶר אֲשֶׁר עַל  
פִּיו נִקְרָאתִי, לְהַטִּיף אֶל אַחֵי הָאֱהוּבִים, וְאִף  
אֶל כָּל תּוֹשֵׁב בְּאֶרֶץ; אַכֵּן, לְהַטִּיף לְכָל, לְזֶקֶן  
וְלַצֵּעִיר, לְחַיִּב וְלַחֲפָשִׁי; אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, לְזֶקֶן,  
לְבוֹנֵר וְלְדוֹר הַצֵּעִיר, לְקַרֵּא אֲלֵיהֶם כִּי יִנְחָמוּ  
מִרְעַתָּם וְיִוָּלְדוּ שֵׁנִית.

49 And now I say unto you that this is the order after which I am called, yea, to preach unto my beloved brethren, yea, and every one that dwelleth in the land; yea, to preach unto all, both old and young, both bond and free; yea, I say unto you the aged, and also the middle aged, and the rising generation; yea, to cry unto them that they must repent and be born again.

כִּי כֹה אֶמְרָה הַרוּחַ: הִנְחָמוּ כָל קְצוֵי אֶרֶץ,  
כִּי מַלְכוּת שָׁמַיִם קְרוּבָה לְבוֹא; אַכֵּן, בֵּן  
אֱלֹהִים בָּא בְּתַפְאֲרָתוֹ, בְּגִבּוּרָתוֹ, בְּהוֹדוֹ,  
בְּכֹחוֹ וּבְמִמְשָׁלָתוֹ. הִנֵּה, אַחֵי הָאֱהוּבִים, אֲנִי  
אוֹמֵר לָכֶם כִּי כֹה אֶמְרָה הַרוּחַ: רְאוּ הַדָּר  
מְלֹךְ כָּל הָאֶרֶץ, וְאִף יִזְרַח מְלֹךְ הַשָּׁמַיִם עַד  
מִהֲרָה בְּקִרְבְּכֶם כָּל בְּנֵי הָאָדָם.

50 Yea, thus saith the Spirit: Repent, all ye ends of the earth, for the kingdom of heaven is soon at hand; yea, the Son of God cometh in his glory, in his might, majesty, power, and dominion. Yea, my beloved brethren, I say unto you, that the Spirit saith: Behold the glory of the King of all the earth; and also the King of heaven shall very soon shine forth among all the children of men.

וְכֵן אֶמְרָה לִי הַרוּחַ, וְהֵיא קוֹרֵאת אֵלַי בְּקוֹל  
אֲדִיר לֵאמֹר: צֵא וְאָמַר אֶל הָעָם הַזֶּה: הִנְחָמוּ  
מִחַטָּא! כִּי אִם לֹא תִנְחָמוּ, לֹא תִנְחָלוּ בְּשׁוּם  
אִפְּן אֶת מַלְכוּת שָׁמַיִם.

51 And also the Spirit saith unto me, yea, crieth unto me with a mighty voice, saying: Go forth and say unto this people—Repent, for except ye repent ye can in nowise inherit the kingdom of heaven.

וְעוֹד אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, כֹּה אֶמְרָה הַרוּחַ: הִנֵּה  
מוֹנֵף הַגֶּרֶן עַל שְׂרָשֵׁי הָעֵץ. כָּל עֵץ אֲשֶׁר אֵינוֹ  
נוֹשֵׂא פְרִי טוֹב יִגְדַּע וְיִשְׁלַף אֶל הָאֵשׁ, אֲשֶׁר  
אֲשֶׁר לֹא תִחַדֵּל, אֲשֶׁר בַּל תִּכָּבֵּה. רְאוּ וְזָכְרוּ כִּי  
הָאֵל הַקְּדוֹשׁ דִּבֶּר זֹאת.

52 And again I say unto you, the Spirit saith: Behold, the ax is laid at the root of the tree; therefore every tree that bringeth not forth good fruit shall be hewn down and cast into the fire, yea, a fire which cannot be consumed, even an unquenchable fire. Behold, and remember, the Holy One hath spoken it.

וְעַתָּה, אַחֵי הָאֱהוּבִים, אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם,  
הַתּוֹכְלוּ לַעֲמֹד לִפְנֵי הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה? הַתּוֹכְלוּ  
לְדַחֹת אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה מִפְּנֵיכֶם, וְלִרְמֹס  
אֶת הָאֵל הַקְּדוֹשׁ תַּחַת רִגְלֵיכֶם? אַכֵּן, הַתְּהִי  
נְפוּחִים בְּגָאוֹת לְבָבְכֶם? הַתּוֹסִיפוּ לְלִבֶּשׁ בְּגָדֵי  
יָקָר וְלִשִׁית לְבָבְכֶם לְהַבְלִי הָעוֹלָם וּלְעִשְׂרָכֶם?

53 And now my beloved brethren, I say unto you, can ye withstand these sayings; yea, can ye lay aside these things, and trample the Holy One under your feet; yea, can ye be puffed up in the pride of your hearts; yea, will ye still persist in the wearing of costly apparel and setting your hearts upon the vain things of the world, upon your riches?

- 54 Yea, will ye persist in supposing that ye are better one than another; yea, will ye persist in the persecution of your brethren, who humble themselves and do walk after the holy order of God, wherewith they have been brought into this church, having been sanctified by the Holy Spirit, and they do bring forth works which are meet for repentance—
- הַתּוֹסִיפוּ לְהַחֲזִיק בְּדַעְתְּכֶם כִּי טוֹבִים אַתֶּם מֵרַעְיֵכֶם? אָכֵן, הַתּוֹסִיפוּ לְרֹדֹף אֶת אֲחֵיכֶם, הַמִּצְוִינֵי עֲצָמָם בְּעֵנֻתָם לָלֶכֶת עַל פִּי סֹדֵר הַקֹּדֶשׁ אֲשֶׁר לֵאלֹהִים, עַל יְדֵיו הַכִּנְסוּ לְכַנְסִיָּהּ הַזֹּאת, וְאֲשֶׁר קָדְשׁוּ עַל יְדֵי רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ, וּבִידֵיהֶם מַעֲשִׂים הַהוֹלָמִים תְּשׁוּבָה?
- 55 Yea, and will you persist in turning your backs upon the poor, and the needy, and in withholding your substance from them?
- הַתּוֹסִיפוּ לִפְנוֹת עַרְףְּ לַעֲנִי וְלָאֲבִיּוֹן וְלַמְּנַע מֵהֶם אֶת קִנְיָנְכֶם?
- 56 And finally, all ye that will persist in your wickedness, I say unto you that these are they who shall be hewn down and cast into the fire except they speedily repent.
- וּלְבַסּוֹף, כָּלְכֶם הַמִּתְמַמִּידִים בְּרַשָּׁעֵתְכֶם, אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם כִּי אֵלֶּה הֵם אֲשֶׁר יִהְיוּ הַגְּדוּעִים וְהַמְּשָׁלְכִים אֶל הָאֵשׁ, בְּלֹתִי אִם יִנְחָמוּ מִהֵרָה מִרַעְיָתָם.
- 57 And now I say unto you, all you that are desirous to follow the voice of the good shepherd, come ye out from the wicked, and be ye separate, and touch not their unclean things; and behold, their names shall be blotted out, that the names of the wicked shall not be numbered among the names of the righteous, that the word of God may be fulfilled, which saith: The names of the wicked shall not be mingled with the names of my people;
- וְהַנְּנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, כָּלְכֶם הַחֹפְצִים לָלֶכֶת אַחֵר קוֹל הַרוֹעֶה הַטוֹב, צֵאוּ מִן הָרַשָּׁעִים וְהַבְּדִלוּ וְאַל תִּגְעוּ בְּטִמְאוֹתֵיהֶם; הֵן שְׁמוֹתֵיהֶם יִמָּחוּ, לְבַל יִמְנוּ שְׁמוֹת הָרַשָּׁעִים עִם שְׁמוֹת הַצְּדִיקִים, לְמַעַן יִקּוּם דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים הָאוֹמֵר: לֹא יִתְעַרְבוּ שְׁמוֹת הָרַשָּׁעִים בְּשְׁמוֹת עַמִּי.
- 58 For the names of the righteous shall be written in the book of life, and unto them will I grant an inheritance at my right hand. And now, my brethren, what have ye to say against this? I say unto you, if ye speak against it, it matters not, for the word of God must be fulfilled.
- כִּי שְׁמוֹת הַצְּדִיקִים יִכְתָּבוּ בְּסֵפֶר הַחַיִּים, וְלָהֶם אֶתֵּן נַחֲלָה לְיְמִינִי. וְעַתָּה, אֲחֵי, מָה תֹּאמְרוּ נֹגֵד זֹאת? אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, אִם תִּדְּבְרוּ נֹגֵד זֹאת, אֵין בְּכֶךָ חֲשִׁיבוֹת, כִּי דְבַר אֱלֹהִים קוֹם יִקּוּם.
- 59 For what shepherd is there among you having many sheep doth not watch over them, that the wolves enter not and devour his flock? And behold, if a wolf enter his flock doth he not drive him out? Yea, and at the last, if he can, he will destroy him.
- הֵיזָה בְּכֶם רוֹעֶה, אֲשֶׁר לוֹ צֹאן רַבּוֹת, וְאֵינָנוּ נוֹטֵר אוֹתָן, לְבַל יִכְנָסוּ זְאֵבִים וַיִּטְרְפוּ אֶת צֹאנָנוּ? הֵן אִם יִכְנָס זְאֵב לְתוֹךְ עֶדְרוֹ, הֲלֹא יִגְרֹשֶׁנוּ? וְהִנֵּה, אִם יוּכַל לוֹ, יִשְׁמִידֵהוּ.
- 60 And now I say unto you that the good shepherd doth call after you; and if you will hearken unto his voice he will bring you into his fold, and ye are his sheep; and he commandeth you that ye suffer no ravenous wolf to enter among you, that ye may not be destroyed.
- וְהַנְּנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם כִּי הַרוֹעֶה הַטוֹב קוֹרֵא אַחֲרֵיכֶם, וְאִם תִּשְׁמָעוּ בְּקוֹלוֹ, יְבִיאֲכֶם אֶל עֶדְרוֹ וְתִהְיוּ צֹאנֵו. וְהוּא מְצַוְכֶם כִּי לֹא תִתְּרוּ לְשׁוֹם זְאֵב טוֹרֵף לְהַכְנִס אֵלֵיכֶם, לְבַל תִּשְׁמָדוּ.
- 61 And now I, Alma, do command you in the language of him who hath commanded me, that ye observe to do the words which I have spoken unto you.
- וְעַתָּה, אֲנִי, עֲלָמָא, מְצַוְכֶם בְּלָשׁוֹן זֶה אֲשֶׁר צִוֵּנִי כִי תִשְׁמְרוּ לַעֲשׂוֹת אֶת הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר דִּבַּרְתִּי אֵלֵיכֶם.
- 62 I speak by way of command unto you that belong to the church; and unto those who do not belong to the church I speak by way of invitation, saying: Come and be baptized unto repentance, that ye also may be partakers of the fruit of the tree of life.
- וְאֵלֵיכֶם, חֲבֵרֵי הַכְּנָסִיָּה, אֲנִי מְדַבֵּר דְּרוֹךְ פְּקָדָה; וְלָאֲשֶׁר אֵינֶם חֲבֵרֵי הַכְּנָסִיָּה מְדַבֵּר אֲנִי בְּדְרוֹךְ הַזְּמָנָה לֵאמֹר: בּוֹאוּ וְהִשְׁתַּבְּלוּ לְשֵׁם תְּשׁוּבָה, לְמַעַן תִּהְיוּ אַף אַתֶּם טוֹעֲמֵי פְרֵי עֵץ הַחַיִּים.

## ו

## 6

וְהָיָה כְּכָלוֹת עֲלָמָא לְדַבֵּר אֶל אַנְשֵׁי הַכְּנִסְיָה  
אֲשֶׁר כּוֹנְנָה בְּעִיר זְרַחֲמֵלָה, הוּא הִסְמִיךְ כְּהֲנִיִּם  
וְזִקְנִים בְּסִמְכַת יָדָיו עַל פִּי סֵדֶר אֱלֹהִים,  
לְמַעַן יַעֲמִדוּ בְּרֹאשׁ הַכְּנִסְיָה וְיִשְׁמְרוּהָ.

וְכָל אֲשֶׁר לֹא הָיָה חֵבֶר בְּכְנִסְיָה וְנָחֵם  
מִחֻטְאָיו, הִטְבֵּל לְשֵׁם תְּשׁוּבָה וְהִתְקַבֵּל  
לְתוֹךְ הַכְּנִסְיָה.

וְכָל אֲשֶׁר הָיוּ חֵבֶרִים בְּכְנִסְיָה, אֲשֶׁר לֹא נָחֵמוּ  
מִרְעָתָם וְלֹא הִשְׁפִּילוּ עַצְמָם לִפְנֵי אֱלֹהִים,  
כְּלוּמֵר הִתְנַשְּׂאוּ בְּגָאוֹת לָבָם, נִדְחוּ וְשִׁמָּם  
נִמְחָה לְמַעַן לֹא יִמָּנֶה עִם הַצַּדִּיקִים.

כֹּךְ הֵם הִחֲלוּ לְכוֹנֵן אֶת סִדְרֵי הַכְּנִסְיָה  
בְּעִיר זְרַחֲמֵלָה.

וְחִפְצִי כִּי תִבְיֵנוּ כִּי דְבַר אֱלֹהִים הִיָּה חֲפָשִׁי  
לְכָל, וּמֵאִישׁ לֹא נִמְנָעָה זְכוּת הַהִתְכַּנְּסוֹת  
יַחְדּוֹ לְשִׁמְעַת אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים.

וְאוּלָּם בְּנֵי אֱלֹהִים הִצְטִווּ לְהִתְכַּנֵּס לַעֲתִים  
קְרוֹבוֹת, וְלִהְיוֹת חֵבֶר בְּצוּם וּבִתְפִלָּה אֲדִירָה  
בְּעִבּוֹר נְשָׁמוֹת הָאֲנָשִׁים אֲשֶׁר לֹא יָדְעוּ  
אֶת אֱלֹהִים.

וְאַחֵר עָשׂוֹתוֹ אֶת הַתְּקִנּוֹת הָאֵלֶּה נִפְרַד מֵהֶם  
עֲלָמָא, אָכֵן, מִהַכְּנִסְיָה אֲשֶׁר בְּעִיר זְרַחֲמֵלָה,  
וְהָלַךְ מִמְּזֶרֶח לְנֹהַר צִידוֹן אֶל עִמְק גִּדְעוֹן; שָׁם  
נִבְנְתָה עִיר אֲשֶׁר נִקְרָא שְׁמָהּ גִּדְעוֹן, וְהָיָה  
בְּעִמְק אֲשֶׁר נִקְרָא שְׁמוֹ גִּדְעוֹן, עַל שֵׁם הָאִישׁ  
אֲשֶׁר נִרְצַח בְּחֶרֶב נָחוֹר.

וְעֲלָמָא הָלַךְ וְהִחֵל לְהַשְׁמִיעַ אֶת דְּבַר  
אֱלֹהִים לְכְנִסְיָה אֲשֶׁר כּוֹנְנָה בְּעִמְק גִּדְעוֹן,  
כְּפִי הַתְּגִלּוֹת דְּבַר הָאֱמֶת אֲשֶׁר דִּבְּרוּ אֲבוֹתָיו,  
וְכִפִּי רוּחַ הַנְּבוּאָה אֲשֶׁר בְּקֶרְבוֹ, וְהָיָה עַל פִּי  
עֲדוּת יֵשׁוּעַ הַמָּשִׁיחַ, בֶּן אֱלֹהִים, אֲשֶׁר יָבֹא  
לְגַאֲלָתָא עִמּוֹ מִחֻטְאֵיהֶם, וְכִפִּי סֵדֶר הַקֹּדֶשׁ  
אֲשֶׁר עַל יָדָיו נִקְרָא. וְכֹךְ כְּתוּב הַדְּבָר. אָמֵן.

1 And now it came to pass that after Alma had made an end of speaking unto the people of the church, which was established in the city of Zarahemla, he ordained priests and elders, by laying on his hands according to the order of God, to preside and watch over the church.

2 And it came to pass that whosoever did not belong to the church who repented of their sins were baptized unto repentance, and were received into the church.

3 And it also came to pass that whosoever did belong to the church that did not repent of their wickedness and humble themselves before God—I mean those who were lifted up in the pride of their hearts—the same were rejected, and their names were blotted out, that their names were not numbered among those of the righteous.

4 And thus they began to establish the order of the church in the city of Zarahemla.

5 Now I would that ye should understand that the word of God was liberal unto all, that none were deprived of the privilege of assembling themselves together to hear the word of God.

6 Nevertheless the children of God were commanded that they should gather themselves together oft, and join in fasting and mighty prayer in behalf of the welfare of the souls of those who knew not God.

7 And now it came to pass that when Alma had made these regulations he departed from them, yea, from the church which was in the city of Zarahemla, and went over upon the east of the river Sidon, into the valley of Gideon, there having been a city built, which was called the city of Gideon, which was in the valley that was called Gideon, being called after the man who was slain by the hand of Nehor with the sword.

8 And Alma went and began to declare the word of God unto the church which was established in the valley of Gideon, according to the revelation of the truth of the word which had been spoken by his fathers, and according to the spirit of prophecy which was in him, according to the testimony of Jesus Christ, the Son of God, who should come to redeem his people from their sins, and the holy order by which he was called. And thus it is written. Amen.

דְּבָרֵי עֲלִמָא אֲשֶׁר הִשְׁמִיעַם לְאִנְשֵׁי גִדְעוֹן, עַל פִּי סֵפֶר הַזִּכְרוֹן אֲשֶׁר לוֹ (בְּעֶרְךָ 83 לְפָנֵי הַסְפִּירָה). וְכָלֵל בְּפָרֶק ז.

*The words of Alma which he delivered to the people in Gideon, according to his own record. (About 83 B.C.) Comprising chapter 7.*

## ז

## 7

הִנֵּה, אֲחֵי הָאֱהוּבִים, אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר נָתַן לִי לָבוֹא אֵלֵיכֶם, הִנֵּי מִבְּקֵשׁ לָפְנוֹת אֵלֵיכֶם בְּשִׁפְתַי. אֲכֹן, בְּמוֹ פִי אֲדַבֵּר אֵלֵיכֶם, וְזֹאת הַפֶּעַם הָרִאשׁוֹנָה אֲשֶׁר אֲדַבֵּר אֵלֵיכֶם בְּדִבְרֵי פִי, יֵעַן אֲשֶׁר הִתְמַסְרֹתִי כָּלִי לְכֶסֶם הַמִּשְׁפָּט, כִּי רַבָּה הָיְתָה עָלַי הָעֲבוּדָה וְלֹא יָכַלְתִּי לָבוֹא עֲדֵיכֶם.

וְגַם הַיּוֹם לֹא יָכַלְתִּי לָבוֹא הִנֵּה לֹוֹלָא נִמְסַר כֶּסֶם הַמִּשְׁפָּט לְאִישׁ אֲחֵר לְמִשְׁלַב בְּמִקְוָמִי, וַיְהוּה בְּרַחֲמָיו הָרַבִּים נָתַנִּי לָבוֹא אֵלֵיכֶם.

אֲכֹן, בְּאֵתִי וּבְלִבִּי תִקְוָה גְּדוֹלָה וְחִפְצִי רַב לְמַצֵּא אֶתְכֶם נִכְנָעִים לְפָנֵי אֱלֹהִים, שׁוֹקְדִים תָּמִיד לְהַעֲתִיר לְחִסְדּוֹ, לְמַצֵּא אֶתְכֶם נְקִיִּים מֵאֲשָׁם לְפָנָיו, וּבְלֹא הַבְּרָרָה הַנוֹרָאָה, כְּאֲשֶׁר הָיְתָה לְאֲחֵינוּ בְּזִרְעַחְמָלָה.

בְּרוּךְ שֵׁם אֱלֹהִים, אֲשֶׁר הוֹדִיעַנִי, אֲכֹן, אֲשֶׁר נָתַנִּי שְׂמֵחָה רַבָּה מֵאֵד בְּיָדִיעָה כִּי שָׁבוּ לְהִישִׁיר דְּרָכָם בְּצִדְקוֹ.

וּכְפִי רוּחַ אֱלֹהִים אֲשֶׁר בְּקִרְבִּי, מֵאֲמִין אֲנִי כִּי תִהְיֶה לִי שְׂמֵחָה אַף עַלֵיכֶם. וְאִנִּי רֹצֵה כִּי שְׂמֵחָתִי עֲלֵיכֶם תִּגִּיעַנִי בְּיָסוּרִים רַבִּים וָצֶעַר, כְּפִי שֶׁסִּבַּלְתִּי מִפְּנֵי אֲחֵיכֶם אֲשֶׁר בְּזִרְעַחְמָלָה כִּי הָיְתָה לִי שְׂמֵחָה עֲלֵיהֶם רַק אַחֵר רַב יָסוּרִים וָצֶעַר.

הִנֵּנִי מֵאֲמִין כִּי אֵין אֶתֶם שְׂרוּיִים בַּחֲסָר אֲמוּנָה כְּאֲשֶׁר הָיוּ אֲחֵיכֶם; אֲנִי מֵאֲמִין כִּי אֵינְכֶם מִתְנַשְּׂאִים בְּגִאוֹת לֵב; וּמֵאֲמִין אֲנִי כִּי לֹא שִׂתֶּם לְבַבְכֶם לְעֶשֶׂר וּלְהַבְלֵי הָעוֹלָם, אֲכֹן, כִּי אֵינְכֶם עוֹבְדִים פְּסִילִים, כִּי אִם אֶת אֱלֹהֵי אֱמֶת וְחַיִּים, וְכִי צוֹפִים אֶתֶם לְמַחֲלַת חֲטָאֵיכֶם, בְּאֲמוּנָת עֵד, לְקִרְאָת הָעֵתִיד לָבוֹא.

הִנֵּנִי אוֹמֵר לְכֶם כִּי רַבִּים הַדְּבָרִים הָעֵתִידִים לָבוֹא, אַף דְּבָר אֶחָד חָשׁוּב מִכֻּלָּם, הִנֵּה כִּי אֵין הָעֵת רְחוּקָה וְחִי הַגּוֹאֵל וְכָא בְּקֶרֶב עִמּוֹ.

1 Behold my beloved brethren, seeing that I have been permitted to come unto you, therefore I attempt to address you in my language; yea, by my own mouth, seeing that it is the first time that I have spoken unto you by the words of my mouth, I having been wholly confined to the judgment-seat, having had much business that I could not come unto you.

2 And even I could not have come now at this time were it not that the judgment-seat hath been given to another, to reign in my stead; and the Lord in much mercy hath granted that I should come unto you.

3 And behold, I have come having great hopes and much desire that I should find that ye had humbled yourselves before God, and that ye had continued in the supplicating of his grace, that I should find that ye were blameless before him, that I should find that ye were not in the awful dilemma that our brethren were in at Zarahemla.

4 But blessed be the name of God, that he hath given me to know, yea, hath given unto me the exceedingly great joy of knowing that they are established again in the way of his righteousness.

5 And I trust, according to the Spirit of God which is in me, that I shall also have joy over you; nevertheless I do not desire that my joy over you should come by the cause of so much afflictions and sorrow which I have had for the brethren at Zarahemla, for behold, my joy cometh over them after wading through much affliction and sorrow.

6 But behold, I trust that ye are not in a state of so much unbelief as were your brethren; I trust that ye are not lifted up in the pride of your hearts; yea, I trust that ye have not set your hearts upon riches and the vain things of the world; yea, I trust that you do not worship idols, but that ye do worship the true and living God, and that ye look forward for the remission of your sins, with an everlasting faith, which is to come.

7 For behold, I say unto you there be many things to come; and behold, there is one thing which is of more importance than they all—for behold, the time is not far distant that the Redeemer liveth and cometh among his people.

- הִנֵּה, לֹא אָמַרְתִּי כִּי יָבוֹא בְּתוֹכֵנוּ בְּעֵת דְּוֹרוֹ  
בְּמִשְׁכְּנוֹ בֵּן הַתְּמוֹנָה, כִּי לֹא אָמַרְהָ לִּי הָרוּחַ  
כִּי כֵן יִהְיֶה הַדְּבָר; וּבִדְבַר הַזֶּה אֵינֶנִּי יוֹדֵעַ. אֲדָּ  
זֹאת יָדַעְתִּי, כִּי לִיהוָה אֱלֹהִים הַכֹּחַ לַעֲשׂוֹת  
אֵת כָּל הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר הֵם כֹּדְבָרוֹ.
- כִּי הִנֵּה, אֵת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה הִגִּידָה לִּי הָרוּחַ  
לֵאמֹר: קְרֵא אֶל הָעָם הַזֶּה לֵאמֹר: שׁוּבוּ נָא  
וּפְנוּ אֶת דְּרֹךְ יְהוָה, וּלְכוּ בְּאַרְחוֹתָיו אֲשֶׁר  
יִשְׁרִים הֵם; כִּי הִנֵּה קְרוֹבָה לְבוֹא מַלְכוּת  
שָׁמַיִם וּבֶן אֱלֹהִים בָּא עַל פְּנֵי הָאָרֶץ.
- וְהִנֵּה הוּא יוֹלֵד לְמָרִים, בִּירוּשָׁלַם אֲשֶׁר הִיא  
אֶרֶץ אַבְרָהָם; וְהִיא בְּתוֹלָה, כְּלִי יָקָר וְנִבְחָה,  
אֲשֶׁר תִּחְסֶה בְּצֵל רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ וּבְכֹחַ תְּהִלָּתָהּ,  
וְתֵלֵד בּוֹ, הוּא בֶן אֱלֹהִים.
- וְהוּא יֵלֵךְ וְיִסְבֵּל מִכְּאוֹבִים, יְסוּרִים וְכָל מִינֵי  
מִבְחָנִים. וְזֹאת לְמַלֵּא אֵת הַדְּבָר אֲשֶׁר נֶאֱמַר,  
כִּי הוּא יִשָּׂא אֶת מִכְאוֹבֵי עַמּוֹ וְאֵת חֲלָאֵיו.
- וְהוּא יִקְבֵּל עָלָיו מוֹת, לְמַעַן יִתִּיר אֵת מוֹסְרוֹת  
הַמּוֹת הָאוֹסְרוֹת אֶת עַמּוֹ. וְהוּא יִקְבֵּל עָלָיו  
אֵת חֲלָאֵיהֶם, לְמַעַן יִמְלֹא מִעֵי רַחֲמִים, כְּפִי  
הַבֶּשֶׁר, לְמַעַן יֵדַע, כְּפִי הַבֶּשֶׁר, כִּיצַד לְהִינִיק  
אֶת עַמּוֹ, כְּפִי חֲלָאֵיהֶם.
- וְהָרוּחַ יוֹדַעַת הַכֹּל; וְאוֹלָם יִסְבֵּל בֶּן אֱלֹהִים  
כְּפִי הַבֶּשֶׁר, לְמַעַן יִשָּׂא עָלָיו אֵת חַטָּאֵי עַמּוֹ,  
לְמַחֲוֹת אֵת פְּשָׁעֵיהֶם כְּפִי כַח גְּאֻלָּתוֹ; הִנֵּה  
זֹאת הָעֵדוּת אֲשֶׁר בִּי.
- וְהֵנִי אֹמֵר לָכֵם כִּי עֲלִיכֶם לְהִנָּחֵם מִחַטָּאֵיכֶם  
וּלְהוֹלִיד שְׁנִית; כִּי כֹה אֹמַרְתָּ הָרוּחַ: אִם לֹא  
תְּוֹלְדוּ שְׁנִית, לֹא תוּכְלוּ לָרֶשֶׁת אֵת מַלְכוּת  
שָׁמַיִם. עַל כֵּן בּוֹאוּ וְהִטְבְּלוּ לְשֵׁם תְּשׁוּבָה,  
לְמַעַן תִּרְחֲצוּ, וְתִהְיֶה לָכֵם אִמּוּנָה בְּשֵׁה  
אֱלֹהִים, הַמְּסִיר אֶת חַטָּאֵי הָעוֹלָם, אֲשֶׁר  
לוֹ הַכֹּחַ לְהוֹשִׁיעַ וּלְסַהֵר מִכָּל עוֹלָה.
- הִנֵּה אֲנִי אֹמֵר לָכֵם, בּוֹאוּ וְאֵל תִּירְאוּ; הִסִּירוּ  
כָּל חַטָּא, אֲשֶׁר עַל נַפְלָה מִטְרִידְכֶם וְאֲשֶׁר אוֹסֵר  
אֶתְכֶם אֵלֵי כְלָיוֹ; אָכֵן, בּוֹאוּ וְצִאוּ לְהִרְאוֹת  
לְאֱלֹהֵיכֶם כִּי רוֹצִים אֲתֶם לְשׁוּב מִחַטָּאֵיכֶם  
וּלְבוֹא עִמּוֹ בְּבְרִית לְשֹׁמֵר אֵת מִצְוֹתָיו וּלְהַעֲדִיד  
עַל כֹּךָ הַיּוֹם בְּהִלְכַתְכֶם אֶל מֵי הַסְּבִילָה.
- 8 Behold, I do not say that he will come among us at the time of his dwelling in his mortal tabernacle; for behold, the Spirit hath not said unto me that this should be the case. Now as to this thing I do not know; but this much I do know, that the Lord God hath power to do all things which are according to his word.
- 9 But behold, the Spirit hath said this much unto me, saying: Cry unto this people, saying—Repent ye, and prepare the way of the Lord, and walk in his paths, which are straight; for behold, the kingdom of heaven is at hand, and the Son of God cometh upon the face of the earth.
- 10 And behold, he shall be born of Mary, at Jerusalem which is the land of our forefathers, she being a virgin, a precious and chosen vessel, who shall be overshadowed and conceive by the power of the Holy Ghost, and bring forth a son, yea, even the Son of God.
- 11 And he shall go forth, suffering pains and afflictions and temptations of every kind; and this that the word might be fulfilled which saith he will take upon him the pains and the sicknesses of his people.
- 12 And he will take upon him death, that he may loose the bands of death which bind his people; and he will take upon him their infirmities, that his bowels may be filled with mercy, according to the flesh, that he may know according to the flesh how to succor his people according to their infirmities.
- 13 Now the Spirit knoweth all things; nevertheless the Son of God suffereth according to the flesh that he might take upon him the sins of his people, that he might blot out their transgressions according to the power of his deliverance; and now behold, this is the testimony which is in me.
- 14 Now I say unto you that ye must repent, and be born again; for the Spirit saith if ye are not born again ye cannot inherit the kingdom of heaven; therefore come and be baptized unto repentance, that ye may be washed from your sins, that ye may have faith on the Lamb of God, who taketh away the sins of the world, who is mighty to save and to cleanse from all unrighteousness.
- 15 Yea, I say unto you come and fear not, and lay aside every sin, which easily doth beset you, which doth bind you down to destruction, yea, come and go forth, and show unto your God that ye are willing to repent of your sins and enter into a covenant with him to keep his commandments, and witness it unto him this day by going into the waters of baptism.



- 16 And whosoever doeth this, and keepeth the commandments of God from thenceforth, the same will remember that I say unto him, yea, he will remember that I have said unto him, he shall have eternal life, according to the testimony of the Holy Spirit, which testifieth in me.
- 17 And now my beloved brethren, do you believe these things? Behold, I say unto you, yea, I know that ye believe them; and the way that I know that ye believe them is by the manifestation of the Spirit which is in me. And now because your faith is strong concerning that, yea, concerning the things which I have spoken, great is my joy.
- 18 For as I said unto you from the beginning, that I had much desire that ye were not in the state of dilemma like your brethren, even so I have found that my desires have been gratified.
- 19 For I perceive that ye are in the paths of righteousness; I perceive that ye are in the path which leads to the kingdom of God; yea, I perceive that ye are making his paths straight.
- 20 I perceive that it has been made known unto you, by the testimony of his word, that he cannot walk in crooked paths; neither doth he vary from that which he hath said; neither hath he a shadow of turning from the right to the left, or from that which is right to that which is wrong; therefore, his course is one eternal round.
- 21 And he doth not dwell in unholy temples; neither can filthiness or anything which is unclean be received into the kingdom of God; therefore I say unto you the time shall come, yea, and it shall be at the last day, that he who is filthy shall remain in his filthiness.
- 22 And now my beloved brethren, I have said these things unto you that I might awaken you to a sense of your duty to God, that ye may walk blameless before him, that ye may walk after the holy order of God, after which ye have been received.
- 23 And now I would that ye should be humble, and be submissive and gentle; easy to be entreated; full of patience and long-suffering; being temperate in all things; being diligent in keeping the commandments of God at all times; asking for whatsoever things ye stand in need, both spiritual and temporal; always returning thanks unto God for whatsoever things ye do receive.
- וְכָל אֲשֶׁר יַעֲשֶׂה זֹאת וְיִשְׁמֹר מִהוּיּוֹם וְהַלְאָה אֶת מִצְוֹת אֱלֹהִים, הוּא יִזְכֹּר אֶת אִמְרֵי אֱלִי, אֲכֹן, הוּא יִזְכֹּר כִּי אָמַרְתִּי לוֹ כִּי חַי עוֹלָם יִנְחַל, כִּפִּי עֵדוּת רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ, אֲשֶׁר מְעִידָה בְּקִרְבִּי.
- וְעַתָּה, אַחֵי הָאֱהוּבִים, הֲתֵאֱמִינוּ בַּדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה? הֲנִנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם: כֵּן! יָדַעְתִּי כִּי מֵאֱמִינִים אַתֶּם; וְאֲנִי יוֹדֵעַ זֹאת עַל פִּי הַתְּגִלּוֹת הַרוּחַ אֲשֶׁר בְּקִרְבִּי. וְעַתָּה אֲשֶׁר אֵיתָנָה אֱמוּנַתְכֶם בַּדְּבָר הַזֶּה, בַּדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר עָלִיהֶם דִּבַּרְתִּי, רַבָּה שְׂמֵחָתִי.
- כִּי כִפִּי תַחֲלֹת דְּבָרֵי אֱלִיכֶם, בְּאִמְרֵי כִי רַב חֲפָצִי כִּי לֹא תִהְיוּ כְּאַחֵיכֶם הַפּוֹסְחִים עַל שְׂתֵי הַסֵּעָפִים, הִנֵּה מִצְאָתִי כִּי חֲפָצִי הִתְמַלֵּא.
- כִּי רוֹאֶה אֲנִי כִּי אַתֶּם הוֹלְכִים בְּאַרְחוֹת צְדָקָה; אֲנִי רוֹאֶה כִּי דֶרֶכְכֶם מוֹלִיכָה אֶל מַלְכוּת אֱלֹהִים; אֲכֹן, אֲנִי רוֹאֶה כִּי אַתֶּם מִיִּשְׁרִים בְּדֶרֶכְכִּי.
- וְאֲנִי רוֹאֶה כִּי נֹדֵעַ לָכֶם, עַל יְדֵי עֵדוּת דְּבָרִי, כִּי אֵין הוּא יָכוֹל לָלֶכֶת בַּדְּרָכִים עֶקְלָקְלוֹת; גַּם אֵין הוּא מִמִּיר מִהַדְבֵּר אֲשֶׁר אָמַר; אִף אֵינְנוּ סוּטָה כְּחוֹט הַשְׁעָרָה מִן הַיָּמִין אֶל הַשְּׂמָאל, וְלֹא מִן הַצּוּדֵק אֶל הַלֵּא צוּדֵק. עַל כֵּן מִהֲלָכוֹ מַעְגָּל נִצְחִי אֶחָד.
- וְאֵין הוּא שׁוֹכֵן בְּהִיכָלוֹת טְמֵאָה. וְכֵן לֹא תִתְקַבֵּל בְּמַלְכוּת אֱלֹהִים כָּל טִנְפָת, אוֹ כָּל דְּבָר אֲשֶׁר אֵינְנוּ נְקִי; לָכֵן הֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם: בּוֹא תְּבוֹא הָעֵת, וְהִיא תִּהְיֶה בַּיּוֹם הָאֶחָד, אֲשֶׁר הִטְמֵא יִשְׂאָר בְּטִמְאָתוֹ.
- וְעַתָּה, אַחֵי הָאֱהוּבִים, אִמְרְתִּי לָכֶם אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה בְּעֵבֹר אַעֲוֹר אֶתְכֶם לְחוּשׁ אֶת חוֹבַתְכֶם לִפְנֵי אֱלֹהִים, לָלֶכֶת לִפְנֵי בְּהִיּוֹתְכֶם נְקִיִּים מֵאֲשֶׁם וּלְהִתְהַלֵּךְ עַל פִּי סֵדֶר הַקֹּדֶשׁ, אֲשֶׁר עַל פִּיו הוּא קִבֵּל אֶתְכֶם.
- וְעַתָּה, רְצוֹנִי כִּי תִהְיוּ עֲנוּיִם, וְכִי תִהְיוּ נִכְנָעִים וְאִדְּבָבִים, נוֹחִים לְהִתְרַצוֹת, מְלֵאִים אֶרְפוֹ רוּחַ וְכַח סֶבֶל, מֵתוּנִים בְּכָל, שׁוֹקְדִים עַל שְׂמִירַת מִצְוֹת אֱלֹהִים כְּכָל עֵת, מְבַקְשִׁים מִמֶּנּוּ אֶת כָּל צְרֻכְכֶם, בְּרוּחַ וּבַחֲמֹר, וּמַשִּׁיבִים תַּמִּיד דְּבָרֵי תוֹדָה לְאֱלֹהִים עַל כָּל אֲשֶׁר אַתֶּם מְקַבְּלִים.



- 24 And see that ye have faith, hope, and charity, and then ye will always abound in good works.
- וְהִשְׁמְרוּ לְהַחֲזִיק בְּאֵמוּנָה, בְּתִקְוָה, וּבְחֶסֶד כִּי אַז תִּהְיוּ תָמִיד עֹתִירֵי מַעֲשִׂים טוֹבִים.
- 25 And may the Lord bless you, and keep your garments spotless, that ye may at last be brought to sit down with Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, and the holy prophets who have been ever since the world began, having your garments spotless even as their garments are spotless, in the kingdom of heaven to go no more out.
- יְבָרְכְּכֶם יְהוָה וְיִשְׁמֹר אֶת בְּגָדֵיכֶם לֵלֵא רָבָב, לְמַעַן תּוּבְאוּ לְבִסּוּף לְשִׁבְתָּ בְּמַלְכוּת שָׁמַיִם עִם אֲבֹרָהֶם, יִצְחָק וְיַעֲקֹב וְעִם הַנְּבִיאִים הַקְּדוּשִׁים, אֲשֶׁר הָיוּ מֵאֶז ראשית העולם, בְּהִיּוֹת בְּגָדֵיכֶם לֵלֵא רָבָב כְּבְּגָדֵיהֶם, וּלְלֵא לְצֵאת עוֹד.
- 26 And now my beloved brethren, I have spoken these words unto you according to the Spirit which testifieth in me; and my soul doth exceedingly rejoice, because of the exceeding diligence and heed which ye have given unto my word.
- וְעַתָּה, אַחֵי הָאֱהוּבִים, דִּבַּרְתִּי אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה כְּפִי רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ הַמְעִידָה בְּקִרְבִּי; נַפְשִׁי תִשְׂמַח מְאֹד עַל שְׂקִידְתְּכֶם וְתִשׁוּמַת הַלֵּב אֲשֶׁר נָתַתֶּם לְדִבְרִי.
- 27 And now, may the peace of God rest upon you, and upon your houses and lands, and upon your flocks and herds, and all that you possess, your women and your children, according to your faith and good works, from this time forth and forever. And thus I have spoken. Amen.
- וְעַתָּה, יְהִי שְׁלוֹם אֱלֹהִים עֲלֵיכֶם וְעַל בְּתֵיכֶם וְעַל אֲדָמוֹתֵיכֶם, עַל צֹאנְכֶם וּבְקִרְכֶם, וְעַל כָּל אֲשֶׁר לָכֶם, נְשִׁיכֶם וְיֻלְדֵיכֶם, כְּפִי אֱמוּנַתְכֶם וּמַעֲשֵׂיכֶם הַטוֹבִים, מֵעַתָּה וְעַד עוֹלָם. זֹאת דִּבַּרְתִּי. אָמֵן.

## ח

## 8

- 1 And now it came to pass that Alma returned from the land of Gideon, after having taught the people of Gideon many things which cannot be written, having established the order of the church, according as he had before done in the land of Zarahemla, yea, he returned to his own house at Zarahemla to rest himself from the labors which he had performed.
- וְעַלְמָא שָׁב מֵאַרְצָא גִדְעוֹן, שֶׁם לָמַד אֶת אַנְשֵׁי גִדְעוֹן דְּבָרִים רַבִּים אֲשֶׁר לֹא אוּכַל לְכַתְּבָם, וְכוּנֵן אֶת סִדְרֵי הַכְּנִסָּה, כְּאֲשֶׁר עָשָׂה לִפְנֵי כֵן בְּאַרְצָא זֶרַחְמְלָה: אָכֵן, הוּא שָׁב אֶל בֵּיתוֹ אֲשֶׁר בְּזֶרַחְמְלָה לְנוּחַ מֵעֲמָלוֹ אֲשֶׁר עָמַל.
- 2 And thus ended the ninth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.
- כֹּה כָּלְתָה הַשָּׁנָה הַתְּשִׁיעִית לְשִׁלְטוֹן הַשׁוֹפְטִים בְּעַם נְפִי.
- 3 And it came to pass in the commencement of the tenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, that Alma departed from thence and took his journey over into the land of Melek, on the west of the river Sidon, on the west by the borders of the wilderness.
- וּבִרְאשִׁית הַשָּׁנָה הָעֲשִׂירִית לְשִׁלְטוֹן הַשׁוֹפְטִים בְּעַם נְפִי, עָזַב עַלְמָא אֶת בֵּיתוֹ וְנָסַע אֶל אֶרֶץ מֶלֶךְ, אֲשֶׁר בְּמַעְרֵב נְהַר צִידוֹן, בְּמַעְרֵב, בְּגִבּוֹל הַיַּעְרוֹת.
- 4 And he began to teach the people in the land of Melek according to the holy order of God, by which he had been called; and he began to teach the people throughout all the land of Melek.
- וְהוּא הֵחֵל לְלַמֵּד אֶת אַנְשֵׁי אֶרֶץ מֶלֶךְ עַל פִּי סֵדֵר הַקְּדוֹשׁ אֲשֶׁר לְאֱלֹהִים, אֲשֶׁר בּוֹ נִקְרָא לְשִׁלְחוֹתוֹ; וְהוּא לָמַד אֶת הָעָם בְּכָל רַחְבֵּי אֶרֶץ מֶלֶךְ.
- 5 And it came to pass that the people came to him throughout all the borders of the land which was by the wilderness side. And they were baptized throughout all the land;
- וְהָיָה כִּי בָּאוּ אֵלָיו הָאֲנָשִׁים בְּכָל גִּבּוֹל הָאֶרֶץ אֲשֶׁר לִיד הַיַּעְרוֹת. וְהֵם הִטְבְּלוּ בְּכָל הָאֶרֶץ.

- 6 So that when he had finished his work at Melek he departed thence, and traveled three days' journey on the north of the land of Melek; and he came to a city which was called Ammonihah.
- 7 Now it was the custom of the people of Nephi to call their lands, and their cities, and their villages, yea, even all their small villages, after the name of him who first possessed them; and thus it was with the land of Ammonihah.
- 8 And it came to pass that when Alma had come to the city of Ammonihah he began to preach the word of God unto them.
- 9 Now Satan had gotten great hold upon the hearts of the people of the city of Ammonihah; therefore they would not hearken unto the words of Alma.
- 10 Nevertheless Alma labored much in the spirit, wrestling with God in mighty prayer, that he would pour out his Spirit upon the people who were in the city; that he would also grant that he might baptize them unto repentance.
- 11 Nevertheless, they hardened their hearts, saying unto him: Behold, we know that thou art Alma; and we know that thou art high priest over the church which thou hast established in many parts of the land, according to your tradition; and we are not of thy church, and we do not believe in such foolish traditions.
- 12 And now we know that because we are not of thy church we know that thou hast no power over us; and thou hast delivered up the judgment-seat unto Nephihah; therefore thou art not the chief judge over us.
- 13 Now when the people had said this, and withstood all his words, and reviled him, and spit upon him, and caused that he should be cast out of their city, he departed thence and took his journey towards the city which was called Aaron.
- 14 And it came to pass that while he was journeying thither, being weighed down with sorrow, wading through much tribulation and anguish of soul, because of the wickedness of the people who were in the city of Ammonihah, it came to pass while Alma was thus weighed down with sorrow, behold an angel of the Lord appeared unto him, saying:
- 15 Blessed art thou, Alma; therefore, lift up thy head and rejoice, for thou hast great cause to rejoice; for thou hast been faithful in keeping the
- וּכְכֹלֹתוֹ אֶת עֲבֹדָתוֹ בְּמֶלֶק הוּא הֵלךְ מִשָּׁם  
וְנִסַּע דֶּרֶךְ שְׁלֹשֶׁת יָמִים לְצָפוֹן אֶרֶץ מֶלֶק;  
וְהוּא בָּא אֶל עִיר אֲשֶׁר נִקְרָא שְׁמָהּ עַמּוֹנִיָּהָ.
- וּמִנְהֵג עִם נָפִי הָיָה לִקְרֹא אֶת אֲרָצוֹתֵיהֶם,  
עָרֵיהֶם וּכְפָרֵיהֶם, וְאֵף אֶת הַכְּפָרִים הַקְּטָנִים,  
עַל שֵׁם הָאִישׁ הָרִאשׁוֹן אֲשֶׁר נָחֲלַם וְכֵן הָיָה  
דְּבַר אֶרֶץ עַמּוֹנִיָּהָ.
- וּבְבֹא עֲלָמָא אֶל הָעִיר עַמּוֹנִיָּהָ הוּא הֵחֵל  
לְהַטִּיף לָהֶם אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים.
- וְהַשְׁטָן קָנָה לוֹ שְׁבִיתָה בְּלִב אַנְשֵׁי הָעִיר  
עַמּוֹנִיָּהָ; לְכֵן לֹא שָׁמְעוּ לְדְבָרֵי עֲלָמָא.
- אוּלָּם עֲלָמָא עָמַל בְּרוּחוֹ עִמָּל רַב, וְנֶאֱבַק עִם  
אֱלֹהִים בְּתַעֲצוּמוֹת תְּפִלָּה, בְּתַחֲנֹה אֵלָיו כִּי  
יִשְׁפֹּךְ אֶת רוּחוֹ עַל אַנְשֵׁי הָעִיר, וְכִי יוֹאִיל  
לְתַתּוֹ לְהִטְבִּילֵם בְּתַשׁוּבָתָם מִחַטָּאתֵיהֶם.
- אֲף הֵם הִקְשׁוּ אֶת לִבָּם וְאָמְרוּ לוֹ: הִנֵּה יָדַעְנוּ  
כִּי אַתָּה עֲלָמָא וְכִי אַתָּה כֹּהֵן גָּדוֹל בְּכִנְסִיָּה  
אֲשֶׁר כּוֹנֵנָתָ, עַל פִּי הַמִּסְרָת אֲשֶׁר בִּידָךְ,  
בְּאֲזוּרִים רַבִּים בְּאֶרֶץ; אֲף לָנוּ אֵין חֵלֶק  
בְּכִנְסִיָּתְךָ, וְאָנוּ לֹא מֵאֲמִינִים בְּמִסֹּרוֹת  
אֵינִלִּיּוֹת אֲשֶׁר כְּאֵלָה.
- וְאֵף יוֹדְעִים אֲנַחְנוּ כִּי אֵין לָךְ כֹּחַ עָלֵינוּ, כִּי  
אֵינָנו חֲבָרֵי כְּנִסְיָתְךָ; וְיַעַן אֲשֶׁר מִסְרָתְךָ אֶת כֹּס  
הַמִּשְׁפָּט לְנִפְיָהָ, אֵינָךְ הַשּׁוֹפֵט הָעֲלִיּוֹן  
לְמִשְׁל בָּנוּ.
- וְאַחַר אֲשֶׁר אָמְרוּ זֵאת הָאֲנָשִׁים וְהִתְנַגְּדוּ לְכָל  
דְּבָרָיו, וְחָרְפוּהוּ וְיָרְקוּ עָלָיו וְגִרְשׁוּהוּ מֵעִירָם,  
הוּא יָצָא מִשָּׁם וְנִסַּע אֶל עִיר אֲשֶׁר נִקְרָא  
שְׁמָהּ אֶהְרֹן.
- וּבְנִסְעוֹ שְׁמָהּ בְּהִיּוֹת לְבוֹ כְּבֵד מִצָּעַר וְהוּא  
שָׁרוּי בְּיָגוֹן עָז וּבְמִצְוֹקָת נֶפֶשׁ עַל רִשְׁעַת  
אֲנָשֵׁי הָעִיר עַמּוֹנִיָּהָ, וְהִנֵּה מַלְאָךְ יְהוָה  
נִגְלָה אֵלָיו וְאָמַר:
- בְּרוּךְ אַתָּה, עֲלָמָא; לְכֵן, שֵׂא רֹאשְׁךָ וְשִׂישָׂה,  
כִּי חֵלֶקְךָ לְשִׂמְחָה עַד מָאֵד; כִּי שָׁמַרְתָּ אֲמוּנִים

לַעֲשׂוֹת אֶת מִצְוֹת אֱלֹהִים מִיּוֹם קִבַּלְךָ מִמֶּנּוּ  
אֶת דְּבַר שְׁלִיחוֹתָהּ הָרִאשׁוֹן; וְאַנִּי הוּא אֲשֶׁר  
שָׁלַחְתִּיו אֵלֶיךָ.

commandments of God from the time which thou receivedst thy first message from him. Behold, I am he that delivered it unto you.

וְהִנְנִי שָׁלּוּחַ לְצוּרְתָּהּ לָשׁוּב אֶל הָעִיר עֲמוֹנִיָּהָ  
וּלְהַטִּיף שֵׁנִית דְּבָרִי תוֹכְחָה לְאַנְשֵׁי הָעִיר;  
אָכֵן, אֲמַר לָהֶם כִּי אִם לֹא יִנְחָמוּ מִחֲטָאֵיהֶם  
כֻּלָּה יִכָּלֵם יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים.

16 And behold, I am sent to command thee that thou return to the city of Ammonihah, and preach again unto the people of the city; yea, preach unto them. Yea, say unto them, except they repent the Lord God will destroy them.

כִּי הֵנָּה זֹמְמִים עֹתָהּ לְאַבֵּד אֶת חֲרוּת עֲמֻךְ,  
אֲמַר יְהוָה, וְזֹאת הִפָּךְ מִן הַחֲקִים וְהַמִּשְׁפָּטִים  
וְהַמִּצְוֹת אֲשֶׁר הוּא נָתַן לְעַמּוֹ.

17 For behold, they do study at this time that they may destroy the liberty of thy people, (for thus saith the Lord) which is contrary to the statutes, and judgments, and commandments which he has given unto his people.

וְהָיָה אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר קִבַּל עֲלִמָּא אֶת דְּבַר שְׁלִיחוֹתָהּ  
מֵאֵת מַלְאָךְ יְהוָה הוּא מְהֵרָ לָשׁוּב אֶל אֶרֶץ  
עֲמוֹנִיָּהָ. וְהוּא נִכְנַס הָעִירָה בַּדֶּרֶךְ אַחֲרֵת,  
וְהָיָה הַדֶּרֶךְ אֲשֶׁר מִדְּרוֹם לָעִיר עֲמוֹנִיָּהָ.

18 Now it came to pass that after Alma had received his message from the angel of the Lord he returned speedily to the land of Ammonihah. And he entered the city by another way, yea, by the way which is on the south of the city of Ammonihah.

וּבְבוֹאוֹ הָעִירָה הִצִּיקָהּ הָרָעָב, וְהוּא אָמַר  
אֶל אִישׁ אֶחָד: הֲתִתֵּן לְעַבְדְּךָ אֱלֹהִים עֲנֹ מַעֲט  
אֲכָל לְאָכְלָא?

19 And as he entered the city he was an hungered, and he said to a man: Will ye give to an humble servant of God something to eat?

וְאָמַר אֵלָיו הָאִישׁ: אִישׁ נִפְיִי אֲנִי, וְאַנִּי יוֹדֵעַ כִּי  
נִבִּיא אֱלֹהִים קְדוֹשׁ אַתָּה, כִּי הִנֵּה הָאִישׁ אֲשֶׁר  
עָלִיו אָמַר לִי מַלְאָךְ בְּחֻזּוֹן: קִבַּל אוֹתוֹ! לָכֵן  
בוֹאָה עָמִי אֶל בֵּיתִי וְאֶחְלַק עִמָּךְ אֶת לֶחֶמִי;  
הֵן יָדַעְתִּי כִּי תִהְיֶה בִּרְכָּה לִי וּלְבֵיתִי.

20 And the man said unto him: I am a Nephite, and I know that thou art a holy prophet of God, for thou art the man whom an angel said in a vision: Thou shalt receive. Therefore, go with me into my house and I will impart unto thee of my food; and I know that thou wilt be a blessing unto me and my house.

וְהָאִישׁ הִכְנִיסָהוּ אֶל בֵּיתוֹ; וְשֵׁם הָאִישׁ עֲמוּלֵק;  
וְהוּא לָקַח לֶחֶם וּמִזֶּן וַיִּתֵּן לִפְנֵי עֲלִמָּא.

21 And it came to pass that the man received him into his house; and the man was called Amulek; and he brought forth bread and meat and set before Alma.

וְעֲלִמָּא אָכַל לֶחֶם וְשִׁבַּע. וְהוּא בִּרַךְ אֶת  
עֲמוּלֵק וְאֶת בֵּיתוֹ וְנָתַן תּוֹדָה לְאֱלֹהִים.

22 And it came to pass that Alma ate bread and was filled; and he blessed Amulek and his house, and he gave thanks unto God.

וְאַחֵר אָכְלוּ לְשִׁבְעָה הוּא אָמַר אֶל עֲמוּלֵק:  
אֲנִכִּי עֲלִמָּא, הִכְהֵן הַגָּדוֹל לְכִנְסִית אֱלֹהִים  
בְּכָל הָאָרֶץ.

23 And after he had eaten and was filled he said unto Amulek: I am Alma, and am the high priest over the church of God throughout the land.

הִנְנִי קְרוּא לְהַגִּיד אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים בְּקִרְבְּךָ כָּל  
הָעַם הַזֶּה, כִּפִּי רוּחַ הַהִתְגַּלּוּת וְהַנְּבוּאָה;  
הֵייתִי בָּאָרֶץ הַזֹּאת וְלֹא אָבוּ אֲנִשְׁיָהּ לְקַבְּלֵנִי,  
כִּי אִם גִּרְשׁוּנִי, וְאַנִּי אָמַרְתִּי בְּלִבִּי לִפְנוֹת עֲרִץ  
לְאֶרֶץ הַזֹּאת וּלְסוּר מִמֶּנָּה לָעַד.

24 And behold, I have been called to preach the word of God among all this people, according to the spirit of revelation and prophecy; and I was in this land and they would not receive me, but they cast me out and I was about to set my back towards this land forever.

## עֲלֵמָא ח:כה–ט:א

- 25 But behold, I have been commanded that I should turn again and prophesy unto this people, yea, and to testify against them concerning their iniquities.
- 26 And now, Amulek, because thou hast fed me and taken me in, thou art blessed; for I was an hungered, for I had fasted many days.
- 27 And Alma tarried many days with Amulek before he began to preach unto the people.
- 28 And it came to pass that the people did wax more gross in their iniquities.
- 29 And the word came to Alma, saying: Go; and also say unto my servant Amulek, go forth and prophesy unto this people, saying—Repent ye, for thus saith the Lord, except ye repent I will visit this people in mine anger; yea, and I will not turn my fierce anger away.
- 30 And Alma went forth, and also Amulek, among the people, to declare the words of God unto them; and they were filled with the Holy Ghost.
- 31 And they had power given unto them, insomuch that they could not be confined in dungeons; neither was it possible that any man could slay them; nevertheless they did not exercise their power until they were bound in bands and cast into prison. Now, this was done that the Lord might show forth his power in them.
- 32 And it came to pass that they went forth and began to preach and to prophesy unto the people, according to the spirit and power which the Lord had given them.

דְּבָרֵי עֲלֵמָא וְכֵן דְּבָרֵי עֲמוּלֵק, אֲשֶׁר הִטִּיפוּם  
אֶל הָעָם אֲשֶׁר בְּאֶרֶץ עַמּוֹנִיָּהָ. סְפֹר הִשְׁלַכְתֶּם  
אֶל בֵּית הַכְּלָא וְהַצַּלְתֶּם עַל יְדֵי כַח אֱלֹהִים  
הַנִּפְלָא אֲשֶׁר הָיָה בָּהֶם, עַל פִּי כַתְּבֵי עֲלֵמָא  
(בְּעֶרְךָ 82 לִפְנֵי הַסְפִּירָה). נִכְלָל בְּפָרָקִים ט–י.

*The words of Alma, and also of Amulek, which were declared to the people who were in the land of Ammonihah. They are cast in prison and delivered by the miraculous power of God that was in them, according to the record of Alma. (About 82 B.C.) Comprising chapters 9–14.*

## ט

## 9

- 1 And again, I, Alma, having been commanded of God that I should take Amulek and go forth and preach again unto this people, or the people who were in the city of Ammonihah, it came to pass as I began to preach unto them, they began to contend with me, saying:

- 2 מי אתה? הִתְחַשֵּׁב כִּי נֶאֱמִין לְעֵדוֹת אִישׁ אֶחָד, אֲפִי כִּי יִטִּיף לָנוּ כִּי הָאָרֶץ תִּחְלֶף?
- 3 וְהֵם לֹא הִבִּינוּ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר דִּבְּרוּ, כִּי לֹא יָדְעוּ כִּי הָאָרֶץ אַכּוֹן תִּחְלֶף.
- 4 וְעוֹד אָמְרוּ: לֹא נֶאֱמִין לְדְּבָרֶיךָ אִם תִּנָּבֵא עַל הָעִיר הַגְּדוֹלָה הַזֹּאת כִּי תִחָרֵב בְּיוֹם אֶחָד.
- 5 וְהֵם לֹא יָדְעוּ כִּי בְּיַד אֱלֹהִים לַעֲשׂוֹת נִפְלְאוֹת כְּאֵלֶּה, כִּי הָיוּ עִם קָשָׁה לֵב וְקָשָׁה עֶרֶף.
- 6 וְהֵם אָמְרוּ: מִי הוּא אֱלֹהִים, הַשּׁוֹלֵחַ רַק אִישׁ בֶּן סְמִכוֹת אֶחָד אֶל בְּנֵי הָעָם הַזֶּה לְהַשְׁמִיעַ בְּקִרְבָּם אֲמִתּוֹת דְּבָרִים כֹּה גְדוֹלִים וְנִפְלְאִים?
- 7 וְהֵם עָמְדוּ לְשַׁלַּח בִּי אֶת יָדִם, אַךְ הִנֵּה חָדְלוּ. וְאֲנִי עָמַדְתִּי בְּאִמְץ לֵב לְהַשְׁמִיעֵם; אַכּוֹן, בְּאִמְץ הָעֵידוּתִי לִפְנֵיהֶם לֵאמֹר:
- 8 הוֹי, דּוֹר רָשָׁע וְעָקֹשׁ, אֵיכָה שָׁכַחְתֶּם אֶת מִסֹּרֶת אֲבוֹתֵיכֶם; אֵיכָה מִהֲרַתֶּם לְשַׁכַּח אֶת מִצְוֹת אֱלֹהִים.
- 9 הֲאֵינְכֶם זֹכְרִים כִּי אֲבִינוּ, לְחִי, הוֹצֵא מִירוּשָׁלַם בְּיַד אֱלֹהִים? הֲאֵינְכֶם זֹכְרִים כִּי הוֹלִיכֶם כָּלָם בַּמִּדְבָּר?
- 10 וְהֵם שָׁכַחְתֶּם כְּכֹר כַּמָּה פְּעָמִים הֵצִיל אֶת אֲבוֹתֵינוּ מִיַּד אוֹיְבֵיהֶם, וְשָׁמְרָם מִכַּלְיוֹן, אֲפִי מִיַּד אֲחֵיהֶם?
- 11 וְלֹאִי כֹחַ, אֲשֶׁר אֵין שׁוּה לּוֹ, וְרַחֲמֵיו וְאֶרְךְ אַפָּיו לָנוּ, אֲזִי נִכְרַתְנוּ, בְּלֹא מִנִּיעָה, מֵעַל פְּנֵי הָאָדָמָה, לִפְנֵי זְמַן רַב, וְאוֹלֵי הָיִינוּ גְדוֹנִים לְסֻבָּל וְעֲנוּת הַתְּמִיד.
- 12 הֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם כִּי אֱלֹהִים מְצַוְכֶם לְהִנָּחַם מִחֻטְאֵיכֶם; וְאִם לֹא תִעָשׂוּ כֵּן, לֹא תוֹכְלוּ בְּשׁוּם אַפֹּן לְרַשֵּׁת אֶת מַלְכוּתוֹ. אַךְ אֵין זֹאת הַכֹּל, הוּא אֲפִי מְצַוְכֶם לְהִנָּחַם פֶּן יִמְחָה אֶתְכֶם כָּלִיל מֵעַל פְּנֵי הָאָדָמָה; אַכּוֹן, פְּקוֹד וּפְקֻדְכֶם בְּחִמָּתוֹ וְלֹא יִשָּׁב מִכֶּם חֶרֶן אַפּוֹ.
- 13 הֲאֵינְכֶם זֹכְרִים אֶת דְּבָרֵינוּ אֶל לְחִי לֵאמֹר: וְהָיָה אִם תִּשְׁמְרוּ אֶת מִצְוֹתֵי, וְהִצַּלְתֶּם
- 2 Who art thou? Suppose ye that we shall believe the testimony of one man, although he should preach unto us that the earth should pass away?
- 3 Now they understood not the words which they spake; for they knew not that the earth should pass away.
- 4 And they said also: We will not believe thy words if thou shouldst prophesy that this great city should be destroyed in one day.
- 5 Now they knew not that God could do such marvelous works, for they were a hard-hearted and a stiffnecked people.
- 6 And they said: Who is God, that sendeth no more authority than one man among this people, to declare unto them the truth of such great and marvelous things?
- 7 And they stood forth to lay their hands on me; but behold, they did not. And I stood with boldness to declare unto them, yea, I did boldly testify unto them, saying:
- 8 Behold, O ye wicked and perverse generation, how have ye forgotten the tradition of your fathers; yea, how soon ye have forgotten the commandments of God.
- 9 Do ye not remember that our father, Lehi, was brought out of Jerusalem by the hand of God? Do ye not remember that they were all led by him through the wilderness?
- 10 And have ye forgotten so soon how many times he delivered our fathers out of the hands of their enemies, and preserved them from being destroyed, even by the hands of their own brethren?
- 11 Yea, and if it had not been for his matchless power, and his mercy, and his long-suffering towards us, we should unavoidably have been cut off from the face of the earth long before this period of time, and perhaps been consigned to a state of endless misery and woe.
- 12 Behold, now I say unto you that he commandeth you to repent; and except ye repent, ye can in nowise inherit the kingdom of God. But behold, this is not all—he has commanded you to repent, or he will utterly destroy you from off the face of the earth; yea, he will visit you in his anger, and in his fierce anger he will not turn away.
- 13 Behold, do ye not remember the words which he spake unto Lehi, saying that: Inasmuch as ye shall keep my commandments, ye shall



- בְּאַרְצִי? וְעוֹד נֶאֱמַר: אִם לֹא תִשְׁמְרוּ אֶת  
מִצְוֹתַי, תִּכָּרְתוּ מִלִּפְנֵי יְהוָה.
- 14 Now I would that ye should remember, that inasmuch as the Lamanites have not kept the commandments of God, they have been cut off from the presence of the Lord. Now we see that the word of the Lord has been verified in this thing, and the Lamanites have been cut off from his presence, from the beginning of their transgressions in the land.
- 15 Nevertheless I say unto you, that it shall be more tolerable for them in the day of judgment than for you, if ye remain in your sins, yea, and even more tolerable for them in this life than for you, except ye repent.
- 16 For there are many promises which are extended to the Lamanites; for it is because of the traditions of their fathers that caused them to remain in their state of ignorance; therefore the Lord will be merciful unto them and prolong their existence in the land.
- 17 And at some period of time they will be brought to believe in his word, and to know of the incorrectness of the traditions of their fathers; and many of them will be saved, for the Lord will be merciful unto all who call on his name.
- 18 But behold, I say unto you that if ye persist in your wickedness that your days shall not be prolonged in the land, for the Lamanites shall be sent upon you; and if ye repent not they shall come in a time when you know not, and ye shall be visited with utter destruction; and it shall be according to the fierce anger of the Lord.
- 19 For he will not suffer you that ye shall live in your iniquities, to destroy his people. I say unto you, Nay; he would rather suffer that the Lamanites might destroy all his people who are called the people of Nephi, if it were possible that they could fall into sins and transgressions, after having had so much light and so much knowledge given unto them of the Lord their God;
- 20 Yea, after having been such a highly favored people of the Lord; yea, after having been favored above every other nation, kindred, tongue, or people; after having had all things made known unto them, according to their desires, and their faith, and prayers, of that which has been, and which is, and which is to come;
- 21 Having been visited by the Spirit of God; having conversed with angels, and having been spoken unto by the voice of the Lord; and having the spirit of prophecy, and the spirit of revelation, and also many gifts, the
- מִי יִתֵּן וְתִזְכְּרוּ, כִּי בְּכָל אֲשֶׁר לֹא שִׁמְרוּ  
הַלְּמָנִים אֶת מִצְוֹת אֱלֹהִים, נִכְרְתוּ מִלִּפְנֵי  
יְהוָה. וְעַתָּה רֹאִים אֲנִיכֶם כִּי בָּזָה קֶם וְהָיָה  
דְּבַר יְהוָה, וְהַלְּמָנִים אֲכֹן נִכְרְתוּ מִלִּפְנֵי מֵאֲזֵ  
הַחֲלוּ לִפְשָׁע בְּאַרְצִי.
- וְאִוְלָם הִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, כִּי בַּיּוֹם הַדִּין יִהְיֶה  
לָכֶם קָל מִדִּינְכֶם, אִם תּוֹסִיפוּ לַחֲטָא, וְאַף קָל  
יוֹתֵר בְּעִבּוּרְכֶם בְּעוֹלָם הַזֶּה, אִם לֹא תִתְּנֶמוּ.
- כִּי יֵשׁ דְּבָרֵי בְרִית רַבִּים אֲשֶׁר מוֹשְׁטִים  
לְלָמָנִים, יַעַן אֲשֶׁר מִסּוּרוֹת אֲבוֹתֵיהֶם הֵן אֲשֶׁר  
הִסְבוּ לָהֶם לְהִשָּׂאֵר בְּבַעֲרוֹתָם; לָכֵן יִרְחַמֵם  
יְהוָה וְיֹאדִיר אֶת קִיּוּמָם עַל הָאָרֶץ.
- וַיּוֹם יָבֹא אֲשֶׁר יִהְיֶכּוּ מֵאֲמִינִים בְּדַבְּרוֹ  
וְיִדְעוּ כִּי מִסּוּרוֹת אֲבוֹתֵיהֶם מִשּׁוּגָה. אֲזַי יִשְׁעוּ  
רַבִּים מֵהֶם, כִּי יְהוָה יִרְחַם אֶת כָּל אֲשֶׁר  
יִקְרָא בִשְׁמוֹ.
- אֲדָּה הִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם כִּי אִם תּוֹסִיפוּ לְהִרְשִׁיעַ,  
לֹא תֵאָרִיכוּ יָמִים עַל פְּנֵי הָאֲדָמָה, כִּי הַלְּמָנִים  
יִשְׁלְחוּ בָכֶם; וְאִם לֹא תִתְּנֶמוּ מִחֲטָאֵיכֶם,  
יָבֹאוּ בְּמוֹעֵד אֲשֶׁר לֹא תִדְעוּ וּבְכִלְיוֹן מַחֲלָט  
תִּפְקְדוּ; כִּפִּי חֲרוֹן אַף יִהְיֶה זֹאת.
- כִּי הוּא לֹא יִתְּנֶכֶם כִּי תַחֲיוּ בְּפַעֲלֵכֶם אֲנֹן  
לְהַשְׁמִיד אֶת עַמּוֹ. אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם: לֹא! אִם  
כֵּן, הוּא יִבְרַךְ לְהַנִּיחַ לְלָמָנִים לְהַשְׁמִיד אֶת  
עַמּוֹ כֵּל, הַנִּקְרָאִים עִם נָפִי, אִם אֲמִנִם יִשְׁקֻעוּ  
בְּחֲטָא וּפְשָׁע. אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר הָיְתָה לָהֶם שְׁפַעַת  
אוֹר כֹּה רַבָּה וְאַחֵר נִתְּנָה לָהֶם יְדַעַת כֹּה רַבָּה  
מֵאֵת יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵיהֶם;
- אֲכֹן, אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר הָיוּ עִם סִגְלָה לַיהוָה, אַחֵר  
בְּרַכָּם יְהוָה עַל פְּנֵי כָּל אֲמָה, מִשְׁפָּחָה, לְשׁוֹן  
וְעַם; אַחֵר נִוְדְּעוּ לָהֶם כָּל הַדְּבָרִים, כִּפִּי חֲפָצָם  
וְאֲמוֹנָתָם וְתַפְלָתָם עַל אֲשֶׁר הָיְתָה, וְקִיָּם עֲתָה,  
וְאַשְׁרֵ עֲתִיד לָבֹא;
- אַחֵר פָּקַד אוֹתָם רוּחַ אֱלֹהִים; אַחֵר שִׁיחָם עִם  
מַלְאָכִים, וְאַחֵר אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר אֱלֹהִים קוֹל יְהוָה;  
וּבִהֲנֵתוּ לָהֶם רוּחַ הַנְּבוּאָה וְרוּחַ הַהִתְגַּלּוּת וְגַם



מתנות רבות: מתת הדבור בלשונות, מתת ההשפּה, מתת רוח הקדש ומתת התרגום;

gift of speaking with tongues, and the gift of preaching, and the gift of the Holy Ghost, and the gift of translation;

אכן, אחר אשר הוציאם אלהים מארץ ירושלים ביד יהוה, ואחר נצלו מרעב ומחלי ומכל מיני תחלואים; ואחר התעצמו במלחמה למען לא יאבדו; אחר הוצאו פעם בפעם משעבוד וננצרו ונשמרו עד היום הזה, ואחר הצליחם, עד כי התעשרו בכל.

22 Yea, and after having been delivered of God out of the land of Jerusalem, by the hand of the Lord; having been saved from famine, and from sickness, and all manner of diseases of every kind; and they having waxed strong in battle, that they might not be destroyed; having been brought out of bondage time after time, and having been kept and preserved until now; and they have been prospered until they are rich in all manner of things—

הנני אומר לכם, אם יפשעו בני העם הזה, אשר יד יהוה ברכתם הרבה מאד, אכן אם יפשעו על האור והדעת אשר בקרבם, אני אומר לכם, כי אם כה יעשו, יהיה דין הלמנים קל מדינם.

23 And now behold I say unto you, that if this people, who have received so many blessings from the hand of the Lord, should transgress contrary to the light and knowledge which they do have, I say unto you that if this be the case, that if they should fall into transgression, it would be far more tolerable for the Lamanites than for them.

כי הנה, דברי ברית יהוה מושטים ללמנים, אך לכם לא ינתנו אם תפשעו. האם לא דבר יהוה מפורשות ונזר בתקף כי אם תמרדו בו, תמחו עד תמכם מעל פני האדמה?

24 For behold, the promises of the Lord are extended to the Lamanites, but they are not unto you if ye transgress; for has not the Lord expressly promised and firmly decreed, that if ye will rebel against him that ye shall utterly be destroyed from off the face of the earth?

לכן, בעבור זאת, למען לא תאבדו, שלח יהוה את מלאכו לפקד רבים מעמו, להשמיעם כי יצאו ויקראו בעז אל העם הזה לאמר: הנחמו מרעתכם, כי קרובה לבוא מלכות השמים;

25 And now for this cause, that ye may not be destroyed, the Lord has sent his angel to visit many of his people, declaring unto them that they must go forth and cry mightily unto this people, saying: Repent ye, for the kingdom of heaven is nigh at hand;

ולא יעברו ימים רבים וכן אלהים יבוא בתפארתו. והיתה תפארתו תפארת הבן הילוד היחיד אשר לאב. והוא מלא חסד וישר ואמת, ולו רב סבלנות ורחמים וארף אפים, מהיר לשמע את קריאות עמו ולענות לתפלותיהם.

26 And not many days hence the Son of God shall come in his glory; and his glory shall be the glory of the Only Begotten of the Father, full of grace, equity, and truth, full of patience, mercy, and long-suffering, quick to hear the cries of his people and to answer their prayers.

והנהו בא לגאל את אשר ישבילו לשם תשובה, על ידי אמונתם בשמו.

27 And behold, he cometh to redeem those who will be baptized unto repentance, through faith on his name.

לכן פנו דרך יהוה, כי קרוב היום אשר כל האדם יקצרו את פרי עמלם, איש כפי מעלליו; הצדיק יקצר את ישועת נפשו, כפי כח ישוע המשיח וגאלתו; והרשע יקצר את קללת נפשו, כפי כח השטן ושעבודו.

28 Therefore, prepare ye the way of the Lord, for the time is at hand that all men shall reap a reward of their works, according to that which they have been—if they have been righteous they shall reap the salvation of their souls, according to the power and deliverance of Jesus Christ; and if they have been evil they shall reap the damnation of their souls, according to the power and captivation of the devil.

והנה, זה קול המלאך הקורא אל העם.

29 Now behold, this is the voice of the angel, crying unto the people.

- ועתה, אחי האהובים, כי אחי אתם, ועליכם להיות אהובים; ועליכם לעשות מעשים ההולמים תשובה, כי קשה מאד לבכם על דבר אלהים, ואמנם בני כליו וכשלו הנכם.
- 30 And now, my beloved brethren, for ye are my brethren, and ye ought to be beloved, and ye ought to bring forth works which are meet for repentance, seeing that your hearts have been grossly hardened against the word of God, and seeing that ye are a lost and a fallen people.
- וכדברי, עלמא, את הדברים האלה, והנה עלתה חמת העם עלי, על אשר אמרתי להם כי עם קשה לב וקשה ערף הם.
- 31 Now it came to pass that when I, Alma, had spoken these words, behold, the people were wroth with me because I said unto them that they were a hard-hearted and a stiffnecked people.
- ואף על אמרי להם כי הם בני כליו וכשלו, רגזו עלי ובקשו לשלח ידם בי, להשליכני אל בית הכלא.
- 32 And also because I said unto them that they were a lost and a fallen people they were angry with me, and sought to lay their hands upon me, that they might cast me into prison.
- אף יהוה לא הניחם לתפשני בעת ההיא להשליכני אל בית הכלא.
- 33 But it came to pass that the Lord did not suffer them that they should take me at that time and cast me into prison.
- אז קם עמולק ועמד לפניהם והחל להשיף להם אף הוא. הנה, אין כל דברי עמולק כתובים, אולם חלקם כתובים בספר הזה.
- 34 And it came to pass that Amulek went and stood forth, and began to preach unto them also. And now the words of Amulek are not all written, nevertheless a part of his words are written in this book.

## י

## 10

- אלה דברי עמולק אשר קרא אל העם אשר בארץ עמוניה לאמר:
- 1 Now these are the words which Amulek preached unto the people who were in the land of Ammonihah, saying:
- אני עמולק בן גדונה בן ישמעאל, צאצא לעמינדי, הוא עמינדי אשר פתר את הכתוב על קיר בית המקדש, אשר נכתב באצבע אלהים.
- 2 I am Amulek; I am the son of Giddonah, who was the son of Ishmael, who was a descendant of Aminadi; and it was the same Aminadi who interpreted the writing which was upon the wall of the temple, which was written by the finger of God.
- ועמינדי היה צאצא לנפי בן לחי, אשר יצא מארץ ירושלם, הוא צאצא למנשה בן יוסף אשר אחיו מכרוהו למצרים.
- 3 And Aminadi was a descendant of Nephi, who was the son of Lehi, who came out of the land of Jerusalem, who was a descendant of Manasseh, who was the son of Joseph who was sold into Egypt by the hands of his brethren.
- ולי שם בין כל יודעי; אכן, משפחתי גדולה ורבים חברי, ואף התעשרתי ממלאכת כפי.
- 4 And behold, I am also a man of no small reputation among all those who know me; yea, and behold, I have many kindreds and friends, and I have also acquired much riches by the hand of my industry.
- ואולם, אחר כל זאת, מעודי לא קניתי רב דעת על דרכי יהוה ועל נסתרותיו ועל כוח הנפלא. אמרתי כי מעודי לא ידעתי הרבה על הדברים האלה, אף טעות היא בידי, כי ראיתי רבות מנסתרותיו ומכוחו הנפלא; אכן, את שמירת העם בחיים.
- 5 Nevertheless, after all this, I never have known much of the ways of the Lord, and his mysteries and marvelous power. I said I never had known much of these things; but behold, I mistake, for I have seen much of his mysteries and his marvelous power; yea, even in the preservation of the lives of this people.

- בְּכָל זֹאת, הִקְשִׁיתִי אֶת לְבִי, כִּי פַעַמִּים רַבּוֹת נִקְרָאתִי, אֲךָ מֵאַנְתִּי לִשְׁמַע. עַל כֵּן יָדַעְתִּי עַל אֲוֹדוֹת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, אֲךָ מֵאַנְתִּי לִדְעוֹתָם; לְכֵן הוֹסַפְתִּי לְמַרְד בְּאֱלֹהִים, בְּרָשָׁעַת לְבִי, עַד הַיּוֹם הָרְבִיעִי לַחֹדֶשׁ הַשְּׁבִיעִי הַזֶּה, בִּשְׁנָה הָעֲשִׁירִית לְשִׁלְטוֹן הַשּׁוֹפֵטִים.
- וּבַעֲת נִסִּיעָתִי לְבַקֵּר קְרוֹב מִשְׁפָּחָה, הוֹפִיעַ מִלֵּאָף יְהוּה לִפְנֵי וְכֵה אָמַר: עֲמוּלֶךָ, שׁוּב אֶל בֵּיתְךָ כִּי תִכְלֹל נְבִיא יְהוּה, אִישׁ קָדוֹשׁ אֲשֶׁר אֱלֹהִים בָּחַר; כִּי הוּא צָם יָמִים רַבִּים מִפְּנֵי חֲטָאֵי הָעָם הַזֶּה, וְרָעַב. וְאַתָּה, הִבִּיאָהוּ אֶל בֵּיתְךָ וְכִלְכְּלָהוּ, וְהוּא יְבָרֵךְ אוֹתְךָ וְאֶת בֵּיתְךָ; וְנַחַה בְּרַכַּת יְהוּה עָלֶיךָ וְעַל בֵּיתְךָ.
- וְאַנִּי שָׁמַעְתִּי בְּקוֹל הַמִּלְאָךְ, וּפָנִיתִי לְשׁוּב אֶל בֵּיתִי. וּבִלְכָתִּי שָׁמָּה, מִצָּאתִי אֶת הָאִישׁ אֲשֶׁר עָלָיו דְּבַר הַמִּלְאָךְ לֵאמֹר: הִבִּיאָהוּ אֶל בֵּיתְךָ, וְהִנֵּה, הוּא הָאִישׁ אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר אֵלַיְכֶם עַל דְּבָרֵי אֱלֹהִים.
- וְאָמַר אֵלַי הַמִּלְאָךְ: אִישׁ קָדוֹשׁ הוּא; עַל כֵּן יוֹדַע אָנִי כִּי קָדוֹשׁ הָאִישׁ, כִּי מִפִּי מִלֵּאָף אֱלֹהִים יֵצֵא הַדְּבָר.
- וַיּוֹדַע אָנִי כִּי הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר הֵעִיד עָלֵיהֶם, אֲמַת הֵם; הִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם: חֵי יְהוּה כִּי שָׁלַח אֶת מִלְאָכּוֹ לְהוֹדִיעַנִי אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה; וְזֹאת הוּא עֲשֵׂה בְּעַת מְגוּרֵי עֲלָמָא זֶה בְּבֵיתִי.
- הִנֵּה, הוּא בָּרַךְ אֶת בֵּיתִי; הוּא בָּרַךְ אוֹתִי וְאֶת נְשׁוֹתַי וְאֶת יְלָדַי, וְאֶת אֲבִי וְאֶת קְרוֹבֵי מִשְׁפָּחָתִי; אַכֵּן, אֶת כָּל מִשְׁפָּחָתִי הוּא בָּרַךְ, וּבְרַכַּת יְהוּה נָחָה עָלֵינוּ כְּפִי דְּבָרֹוֹ אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר.
- וְכַאֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר עֲמוּלֶךָ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה הִשְׁתּוֹמְמוּ הָאֲנָשִׁים בְּרֹאוֹתָם כִּי יֵשׁ יוֹתֵר מֵעַד אֶחָד הַמַּעֲיִד עַל הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר הָאֲשִׁמּוּס, וְאֵף עַל הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר יְבוֹאוּ, כְּפִי רוּחַ הַנְּבוּאָה אֲשֶׁר בָּהֶם.
- וְאוֹלָם הָיוּ שֵׁם אֲנָשִׁים אֲשֶׁר זָמְמוּ לְשַׁאל אֶת עֲמוּלֶךָ וְאֶת עֲלָמָא שְׁאֵלוֹת, וְלַתְּפֹשׁ אוֹתָם בְּדְבָרֵיהֶם, בְּתַחבּוּלוֹת עֲרַמְתָּם, לְמַצֵּא עָלֵיהֶם רְאָיָה וּלְשַׁלַּח אֶל שׁוֹפְטֵיהֶם, לְשַׁפֵּט כְּפִי
- 6 Nevertheless, I did harden my heart, for I was called many times and I would not hear; therefore I knew concerning these things, yet I would not know; therefore I went on rebelling against God, in the wickedness of my heart, even until the fourth day of this seventh month, which is in the tenth year of the reign of the judges.
- 7 As I was journeying to see a very near kindred, behold an angel of the Lord appeared unto me and said: Amulek, return to thine own house, for thou shalt feed a prophet of the Lord; yea, a holy man, who is a chosen man of God; for he has fasted many days because of the sins of this people, and he is an hungered, and thou shalt receive him into thy house and feed him, and he shall bless thee and thy house; and the blessing of the Lord shall rest upon thee and thy house.
- 8 And it came to pass that I obeyed the voice of the angel, and returned towards my house. And as I was going thither I found the man whom the angel said unto me: Thou shalt receive into thy house—and behold it was this same man who has been speaking unto you concerning the things of God.
- 9 And the angel said unto me he is a holy man; wherefore I know he is a holy man because it was said by an angel of God.
- 10 And again, I know that the things whereof he hath testified are true; for behold I say unto you, that as the Lord liveth, even so has he sent his angel to make these things manifest unto me; and this he has done while this Alma hath dwelt at my house.
- 11 For behold, he hath blessed mine house, he hath blessed me, and my women, and my children, and my father and my kinsfolk; yea, even all my kindred hath he blessed, and the blessing of the Lord hath rested upon us according to the words which he spake.
- 12 And now, when Amulek had spoken these words the people began to be astonished, seeing there was more than one witness who testified of the things whereof they were accused, and also of the things which were to come, according to the spirit of prophecy which was in them.
- 13 Nevertheless, there were some among them who thought to question them, that by their cunning devices they might catch them in their words, that they might find witness against them, that they might deliver them to their judges that they might be judged according to the

- החוק, ולהרגם או לכלואם, ככל אשר יוכלו להציגם כפושעים כפי העדות אשר יעידו עליהם.
- 14 Now it was those men who sought to destroy them, who were lawyers, who were hired or appointed by the people to administer the law at their times of trials, or at the trials of the crimes of the people before the judges.
- 15 Now these lawyers were learned in all the arts and cunning of the people; and this was to enable them that they might be skilful in their profession.
- 16 And it came to pass that they began to question Amulek, that thereby they might make him cross his words, or contradict the words which he should speak.
- 17 Now they knew not that Amulek could know of their designs. But it came to pass as they began to question him, he perceived their thoughts, and he said unto them: O ye wicked and perverse generation, ye lawyers and hypocrites, for ye are laying the foundation of the devil; for ye are laying traps and snares to catch the holy ones of God.
- 18 Ye are laying plans to pervert the ways of the righteous, and to bring down the wrath of God upon your heads, even to the utter destruction of this people.
- 19 Yea, well did Mosiah say, who was our last king, when he was about to deliver up the kingdom, having no one to confer it upon, causing that this people should be governed by their own voices—yea, well did he say that if the time should come that the voice of this people should choose iniquity, that is, if the time should come that this people should fall into transgression, they would be ripe for destruction.
- 20 And now I say unto you that well doth the Lord judge of your iniquities; well doth he cry unto this people, by the voice of his angels: Repent ye, repent, for the kingdom of heaven is at hand.
- 21 Yea, well doth he cry, by the voice of his angels that: I will come down among my people, with equity and justice in my hands.
- 22 Yea, and I say unto you that if it were not for the prayers of the righteous, who are now in the land, that ye would even now be visited with utter destruction; yet it would not be by flood, as were the people in the days of Noah, but it would be by famine, and by pestilence, and the sword.
- והאנשים אשר בקשו להשמידם היו עורכי דין אשר נשכרו, או מנו על ידי העם, לקיים את החוק בעת משפטיהם או בהשפט העם לפני השופטים על פשעיהם.
- ועורכי הדין האלה היו מלמדים בכל ארחות אדם ותחבולותיהם; וזאת למען ישפילו במלוי תפקידם.
- והם החלו לחקור את עמולק, למען יכשילוהו בדבריו, או יפילוהו בסתירת דבריו אשר ידבר.
- והם לא ידעו כי עמולק מבין את מזמרתם. והיה בהחלם לחקור אותו, ידע עמולק את מחשבותיהם ואמר אליהם: הוי, דור רשע ועקש, עורכי דין וחנפים, הן מניחים אתם את יסודות השטן; הנכם שמים פח ומוקש ללכוד את קדושי אלהים.
- הנכם מחשבים לעות את דרך הצדיקים ולהביא את חמת אלהים על ראשכם, אכן, כליון מחלט על העם הזה.
- צדק מושיע, מלכנו האחרון, אשר בקש למסור את המלוכה ולא מצא איש למסרה לו, וכך כונן ממשל על ידי קול העם; צדק הוא באמר כי אם יבוא יום וקול העם יבחר עון, אשר היא שקיעה בפשיעה, אזי תגיע עתם לאבדון.
- והנני אומר לכם כי מיטיב יהוה לשפט אתכם על עוונותיכם; מיטיב הוא עשות בקראו אל עמו בקול מלאכיו: הנחמו, הנחמו מחטאיכם, כי קרובה לבוא מלכות שמים.
- אכן, טוב קראו בקול מלאכיו: ארדה אל עמי ובדי משפט ומישרים.
- ואני אומר לכם כי לולי תפלות הצדיקים אשר בארץ עתה, נפקדים הייתם היום בכליון מחלט, אף לא במבול כבימי נח, כי אם ברעב ובמגפה ובחרב.

- 23 But it is by the prayers of the righteous that ye are spared; now therefore, if ye will cast out the righteous from among you then will not the Lord stay his hand; but in his fierce anger he will come out against you; then ye shall be smitten by famine, and by pestilence, and by the sword; and the time is soon at hand except ye repent.
- וּמִפְּנֵי תַפְלוֹת הַצְדִּיקִים חָסִים עֲלֵיכֶם; עַל כֵּן, אִם תִּדְּחוּ מִקִּרְבְּכֶם אֶת הַצְדִּיקִים, לֹא יִמָּנַע יְהוָה מִנִּטּוֹת יָדוֹ עֲלֵיכֶם, כִּי בַחֲרוֹן אַפּוֹ יֵצֵא עֲלֵיכֶם, וַיִּכֶּה אֶתְכֶם בָּרָעַב וּבִמְגֹפָה וּבַחֶרֶב; וְקִרְבֹּב הַיּוֹם, בְּלִתִּי אִם תִּנְחָמוּ מִחֻטְאֵיכֶם.
- 24 And now it came to pass that the people were more angry with Amulek, and they cried out, saying: This man doth revile against our laws which are just, and our wise lawyers whom we have selected.
- וְחִמַּת הָעָם עָלְתָה עַל עֲמוּלֵק, וְהֵם קָרְאוּ לֵאמֹר: הָאִישׁ הַזֶּה מְגַדֵּף אֶת חֻקֵּינוּ, אֲשֶׁר הֵם חֻקֵּי צֶדֶק, וְאֵת עוֹרְכֵי הַדִּין הַחֲכָמִים אֲשֶׁר בָּחַרְנוּ.
- 25 But Amulek stretched forth his hand, and cried the mightier unto them, saying: O ye wicked and perverse generation, why hath Satan got such great hold upon your hearts? Why will ye yield yourselves unto him that he may have power over you, to blind your eyes, that ye will not understand the words which are spoken, according to their truth?
- אָז הוֹשִׁיט עֲמוּלֵק אֶת יָדוֹ וְקָרָא אֲלֵיהֶם בְּקוֹל אֲדִיר לֵאמֹר: הוּא, דּוֹר רָשָׁע וְעָקֹשׁ. מַדּוּעַ קָנָה הַשָּׂטָן שְׁבִיטָה כֹּה רַבָּה בְּלִבְכֶם? מַדּוּעַ תִּכְנְעוּ לוֹ עַד כִּי יִשְׁלִיט עֲלֵיכֶם כּוֹחַ לַעְוֹר אֶת עֵינֵיכֶם, לִמְעַן לֹא תִבְיִנוּ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֲמֻרִים עַל פִּי אֲמִתָּתָם?
- 26 For behold, have I testified against your law? Ye do not understand; ye say that I have spoken against your law; but I have not, but I have spoken in favor of your law, to your condemnation.
- הֲאִם נִגַּד חֻקְתְּכֶם הַעִידוֹתִי? אֵינְכֶם מְבִינִים; אֲמַרְתֶּם כִּי דִבַּרְתִּי נֶגֶד חֻקְתְּכֶם, וְלֹא כֵן הִדְבַּרְתִּי, כִּי בַעַד חֻקְתְּכֶם דִּבַּרְתִּי לְגֹזֵר דִּינְכֶם לְחֻבָּה.
- 27 And now behold, I say unto you, that the foundation of the destruction of this people is beginning to be laid by the unrighteousness of your lawyers and your judges.
- וְהִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם כִּי עוֹלַת עוֹרְכֵי הַדִּין וְשׁוֹפְטֵיכֶם הִיא הַמְּנִיחָה אֶת יְסוֹד חֲרָבֹן הָעָם הַזֶּה.
- 28 And now it came to pass that when Amulek had spoken these words the people cried out against him, saying: Now we know that this man is a child of the devil, for he hath lied unto us; for he hath spoken against our law. And now he says that he has not spoken against it.
- וּכְדִבַּר עֲמוּלֵק אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, קָרְאוּ הָאֲנָשִׁים עָלָיו לֵאמֹר: עַתָּה יָדַעְנוּ כִּי הָאִישׁ הַזֶּה בֶּן הַשָּׂטָן, כִּי כָזָב לָנוּ; כִּי דִבַּר נֶגֶד חֻקְתָּנוּ וְהִנֵּה אוֹמֵר הוּא כִּי לֹא דִבַּר נֶגְדָה.
- 29 And again, he has reviled against our lawyers, and our judges.
- וְעוֹד, אֶת עוֹרְכֵי הַדִּין וְאֵת שׁוֹפְטֵינוּ גָדַף.
- 30 And it came to pass that the lawyers put it into their hearts that they should remember these things against him.
- וְעוֹרְכֵי הַדִּין שָׂמוּ אֶל לִבָּם לִזְכֹּר אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה עָלָיו.
- 31 And there was one among them whose name was Zeezrom. Now he was the foremost to accuse Amulek and Alma, he being one of the most expert among them, having much business to do among the people.
- וְאִישׁ אֶחָד הָיָה בְּתוֹכָם וּשְׁמוֹ נִקְרָא זִיזְרוֹם. וְהוּא עֶמֶד בְּרֹאשׁ הַמַּאֲשִׁימִים אֶת עֲמוּלֵק וְאֶת עֲלָמָא, בְּהִיּוֹתוֹ אֶחָד הַמְּמַחִים בֵּינֵיהֶם, וְרַב עֲסָקוֹ בְּקִרְבֵּי הָעָם.
- 32 Now the object of these lawyers was to get gain; and they got gain according to their employ.
- וְתַכְלִית עוֹרְכֵי הַדִּין הָאֵלֶּה הָיְתָה בְּצַעַ; וְזֹאת הֵם הִשִּׁיגוּ כְּפִי תַעֲסוֹקָתָם.



## יֵא

## 11

וְחָק הָיָה בְּחֻקֵּי מוֹשִׁיעַ, אֲשֶׁר כָּל אִישׁ שׁוֹפֵט  
עַל פִּי הַחֹק, וְכָל אֲשֶׁר מָנָה לְשֹׁפֵט, יִקְבַּל אֶת  
מִשְׁכָּרְתּוֹ כְּפִי הַזְּמַן אֲשֶׁר עָמַל לְשֹׁפֵט אֶת  
אֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר הוּבְאוּ לִפְנֵי לְמִשְׁפָּט.

אִם חָב אִישׁ לְרֵעֵהוּ וְלֹא שָׁלַם אֶת חֻבּוֹ,  
הוּא נִתְּבַע לִפְנֵי שׁוֹפֵט, וְזֶה הִפְעִיל אֶת  
סְמִכוֹתוֹ וְשָׁלַח פְּקִידִים לְהֵבִיא אֶת הָאִישׁ  
לִפְנָיו. וְהוּא שָׁפֵט אוֹתוֹ לְפִי הַחֹק וּלְפִי  
הָעֵדוּת אֲשֶׁר הוּבְאוּ עָלָיו; וְכֵן הִכְרִחַ  
הָאִישׁ לְשַׁלֵּם אֶת חֻבּוֹ, וְלֹא, הִפְשֵׁט  
אוֹ נָדָה מִקֶּרֶב עִמּוֹ כְּגַנֵּב וְכַשּׁוּדָר.

וּמִשְׁכָּרְתָּ הַשׁוֹפֵט הִיְתָה כְּפִי זְמָנוֹ, סִנִּין זָהָב  
אֶחָד לְיוֹם אוֹ סֶנוֹם כֶּסֶף, הַשְּׁוֶה לְסִנִּין זָהָב;  
וְזֹאת עַל פִּי הַחֹק הַמָּסוּר.

וְאֵלֶּה שְׁמוֹת מִטְּבְּעוֹתֵיהֶם הַשּׁוֹנִים, זָהָב  
וְכֶסֶף, כְּפִי עֶרְכָם. וּשְׁמוֹתֵיהֶם נִקְרְאוּ עַל  
פִּי הַנְּפִיִּים. כִּי הֵם לֹא חֲשָׁבוּ אֶת עֶרְכָם וְאֶת  
מִדּוֹתֵיהֶם כְּדֶרֶךְ הַיְּהוּדִים אֲשֶׁר בִּירוּשָׁלַם;  
כִּי הֵם שָׁנוּ אֶת מַעְרְכָתָם חֲשׁוֹב עֶרְכָם  
וּמִדּוֹתֵיהֶם עַל פִּי דַעַת הָעָם וְנִסְבּוֹתֵיהֶם  
בְּכָל דּוֹר, עַד תַּחֲלַת שְׁלֹטוֹן הַשׁוֹפְטִים, וְהֵם  
נִכְוֶנוּ אֶז בְּיַדִּי הַמְּלִיךְ מוֹשִׁיעַ.

וְזֹאת מַעְרְכַת הַמִּטְּבְּעוֹת: סִנִּין זָהָב,  
סֶאוֹן זָהָב, שׁוֹם זָהָב וְלִמְנָה זָהָב.

סֶנוֹם כֶּסֶף, אֲמִנּוֹר כֶּסֶף, אֶזְרוֹם כֶּסֶף  
וְאוֹנְטִי כֶסֶף.

עֶרֶךְ סֶנוֹם כֶּסֶף שְׁוֶה לְסִנִּין זָהָב, וּבְמַחִיר  
כָּל אֶחָד מֵאֵלֶּה נִקְנְתָה מִנֵּת שְׁעוּרִים,  
אוֹ מִנֵּת כָּל דָּגָן.

עֶרֶךְ סֶאוֹן זָהָב כְּפָלִים מֵעֶרֶךְ סִנִּין.

עֶרֶךְ שׁוֹם זָהָב כְּפָלִים מֵעֶרֶךְ סֶאוֹן.

וְעֶרֶךְ לִמְנָה זָהָב כְּעֶרֶךְ כָּל הַמִּטְּבְּעוֹת הָאֵלֶּה.

עֶרֶךְ אֲמִנּוֹר כֶּסֶף שְׁנֵי סֶנוֹמִים.

1 Now it was in the law of Mosiah that every man who was a judge of the law, or those who were appointed to be judges, should receive wages according to the time which they labored to judge those who were brought before them to be judged.

2 Now if a man owed another, and he would not pay that which he did owe, he was complained of to the judge; and the judge executed authority, and sent forth officers that the man should be brought before him; and he judged the man according to the law and the evidences which were brought against him, and thus the man was compelled to pay that which he owed, or be stripped, or be cast out from among the people as a thief and a robber.

3 And the judge received for his wages according to his time—a senine of gold for a day, or a senum of silver, which is equal to a senine of gold; and this is according to the law which was given.

4 Now these are the names of the different pieces of their gold, and of their silver, according to their value. And the names are given by the Nephites, for they did not reckon after the manner of the Jews who were at Jerusalem; neither did they measure after the manner of the Jews; but they altered their reckoning and their measure, according to the minds and the circumstances of the people, in every generation, until the reign of the judges, they having been established by king Mosiah.

5 Now the reckoning is thus—a senine of gold, a seon of gold, a shum of gold, and a limnah of gold.

6 A senum of silver, an amnor of silver, an ezrom of silver, and an onti of silver.

7 A senum of silver was equal to a senine of gold, and either for a measure of barley, and also for a measure of every kind of grain.

8 Now the amount of a seon of gold was twice the value of a senine.

9 And a shum of gold was twice the value of a seon.

10 And a limnah of gold was the value of them all.

11 And an amnor of silver was as great as two senums.



- 12 And an ezrom of silver was as great as four senums.  
עֲרֹם אֶזְרוֹם כֶּסֶף אֶרְבָּעָה סֵנוּמִים.
- 13 And an onti was as great as them all.  
וְעֲרֹם אוֹנְטִי כְּעֲרֹם כָּל הַמִּטְבָּעוֹת הָאֵלֶּה.
- 14 Now this is the value of the lesser numbers of their reckoning—  
וְזֶה עֲרֹם הַמִּטְבָּעוֹת הַקְּטָנִים בְּמַעְרַכְתָּ כֶּסֶפִּים:
- 15 A shiblon is half of a senum; therefore, a shiblon for half a measure of barley.  
שִׁבְלוֹן הוּא חֲצִי סֵנוּם; עַל כֵּן נִקְנְתָה מִחֲצִית מִנֵּת שְׁעוּרִים בְּעֵד שִׁבְלוֹן אֶחָד.
- 16 And a shiblum is a half of a shiblon.  
שִׁבְלוֹם הוּא חֲצִי שִׁבְלוֹן.
- 17 And a leah is the half of a shiblum.  
לֵאָה הִיא מִחֲצִית שִׁבְלוֹם.
- 18 Now this is their number, according to their reckoning.  
זֶה מִנְיָנָם לְפִי מַעְרַכְתָּ מְדוּתֵיהֶם.
- 19 Now an antion of gold is equal to three shiblons.  
עֲרֹם אַנְטִיוֹן זָהָב שָׁוֶה לְשִׁלְשָׁה שִׁבְלוֹנִים.
- 20 Now, it was for the sole purpose to get gain, because they received their wages according to their employ, therefore, they did stir up the people to riotings, and all manner of disturbances and wickedness, that they might have more employ, that they might get money according to the suits which were brought before them; therefore they did stir up the people against Alma and Amulek.  
וְעוֹרְכֵי הַדִּין רַק לְתַכְלִית בְּצַע כֶּסֶף פָּעִלּוּ, כִּי קִבְּלוּ אֶת מִשְׁכָּרָתָם כְּפִי תַעֲסוּקָתָם. עַל כֵּן עוֹרְרוּ אֶת הָעָם לְמַהוּמוֹת וּלְאֵי סִדְרִים וְרִשְׁעָה לְהַרְבוֹת לָהֶם תַעֲסוּקָה, לְמַעַן הִגְדִּיל שְׂכָרָם כְּרִבּוֹת הַתְּבִיעוֹת לְמִשְׁפָּט אֲשֶׁר הוּבְאוּ לִפְנֵיהֶם; לְכֵן שָׁסוּ אֶת הָעָם בְּעֲלָמָא וּבְעַמּוּלֶק.
- 21 And this Zeezrom began to question Amulek, saying: Will ye answer me a few questions which I shall ask you? Now Zeezrom was a man who was expert in the devices of the devil, that he might destroy that which was good; therefore, he said unto Amulek: Will ye answer the questions which I shall put unto you?  
וְזֵעֶזְרוֹם הֵחֵל לְחַקֵּר אֶת עַמּוּלֶק, לֵאמֹר: הֲתַעֲנֶה עַל שְׁאֵלוֹת אַחַדוֹת אֲשֶׁר אֶשְׁאַלְךָ? וְזֵעֶזְרוֹם הָיָה מֵמָחָה בְּתַחְבּוּלוֹת הַשָּׁטָן, לְאַבֵּד אֶת אֲשֶׁר טוֹב הוּא; לְכֵן אָמַר אֶל עַמּוּלֶק: הֲתַעֲנֶה עַל הַשְׁאֵלוֹת אֲשֶׁר אֶתֵּן לְפָנֶיךָ?
- 22 And Amulek said unto him: Yea, if it be according to the Spirit of the Lord, which is in me; for I shall say nothing which is contrary to the Spirit of the Lord. And Zeezrom said unto him: Behold, here are six onties of silver, and all these will I give thee if thou wilt deny the existence of a Supreme Being.  
וְאָמַר לוֹ עַמּוּלֶק: כֵּן, אִם תְּהִיֶּנָּה כְּפִי רוּחַ יְהוָה אֲשֶׁר בְּקִרְבִּי; כִּי לֹא אֶמַּר דְּבַר אֲשֶׁר יְהוָה הִפָּךְ רוּחַ יְהוָה. וְאָמַר אֵלָיו זֵעֶזְרוֹם: הִנֵּה שֵׁשׁ אוֹנְטִיִּים כֶּסֶף, וְאֵת כָּלֶם אֶתֵּן לְךָ אִם תִּכְחֹשׁ אֶת מְצִיאוֹת הַקִּים הָעֶלְיוֹן.
- 23 Now Amulek said: O thou child of hell, why tempt ye me? Knowest thou that the righteous yieldeth to no such temptations?  
וְעַמּוּלֶק אָמַר: הוּי, בֶּן שְׂאוּל, מַדּוּעַ תִּנְסֶה אוֹתִי? הֲלֹא יָדַע כִּי אֵין הַצַּדִּיק נִכְנָע לְפִתּוּיִים אֲשֶׁר בָּאֵלֶּה?
- 24 Believest thou that there is no God? I say unto you, Nay, thou knowest that there is a God, but thou lovest that lucre more than him.  
הֲתֵאֱמִין כִּי אֵין אֱלֹהִים? אָנִי אוֹמֵר לְךָ, לֹא! אַתָּה יוֹדֵעַ כִּי אֵכֵן יֵשׁ אֱלֹהִים, אֲךָ בְּצַע כֶּסֶף אֶהוּב עָלֶיךָ יוֹתֵר מִמֶּנּוּ.
- 25 And now thou hast lied before God unto me. Thou saidst unto me—Behold these six onties, which are of great worth, I will give unto  
וְאַתָּה כַּחֲשֹׁת לִי לִפְנֵי אֱלֹהִים; אָמַרְתָּ לִי, הִנֵּה שֵׁשׁ אוֹנְטִיִּים, אֲשֶׁר רַב עֶרְכָּם, לְךָ אֶתֵּנָם,

בְּעוֹד אֲשֶׁר בִּלְבָבְךָ אָמַרְתָּ לְמִנְעָם מִמֶּנִּי. הֵן  
אֶף רָצִיתָ כִּי אֶכְחַשׁ בְּאֱלֹהֵי הָאֱמֶת, אֵל חַי,  
לְמַעַן תּוּכַל לְאַבְדֵנִי. וְעַתָּה, רְאֵה כִּי עַל רָעַתְךָ  
הַגְדוֹלָה יִשְׁלַם לְךָ כְּגִמּוּלָּהּ.

thee—when thou hadst it in thy heart to retain them from me; and  
it was only thy desire that I should deny the true and living God, that  
thou mightest have cause to destroy me. And now behold, for this great  
evil thou shalt have thy reward.

26 And Zeezrom said unto him: Thou sayest there is a true and living God?  
וְאָמַר אֵלָיו זְעִזְרוֹם: הֲתֹאמַר כִּי יֵשׁ אֱלֹהִי  
אֱמֶת, אֵל חַי?

27 And Amulek said: Yea, there is a true and living God.  
וְאָמַר עֲמוּלֵק: אָכֵן, יֵשׁ אֱלֹהִי אֱמֶת, אֵל חַי.

28 Now Zeezrom said: Is there more than one God?  
וְאָמַר זְעִזְרוֹם: הֲיֵשׁ יוֹתֵר מֵאֱלֹהִים אֶחָד?

29 And he answered, No.  
וְהוּא עָנָהוּ: לֹא.

30 Now Zeezrom said unto him again: How knowest thou these things?  
וְעוֹד אָמַר אֵלָיו זְעִזְרוֹם: אִיךָ יָדַעְתָּ אֵת  
הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה?

31 And he said: An angel hath made them known unto me.  
וְהוּא אָמַר: מִלְּאֵךְ הוֹדִיעַנִי אוֹתָם.

32 And Zeezrom said again: Who is he that shall come? Is it the Son of  
God?  
וְזְעִזְרוֹם הוֹסִיף לֵאמֹר: מִי הוּא אֲשֶׁר יָבוֹא?  
הָאֵם הוּא בֶן אֱלֹהִים?

33 And he said unto him, Yea.  
וְהוּא אָמַר אֵלָיו: אָכֵן.

34 And Zeezrom said again: Shall he save his people in their sins? And  
Amulek answered and said unto him: I say unto you he shall not, for it  
is impossible for him to deny his word.  
וְעוֹד אָמַר זְעִזְרוֹם: הֲיִוָּשִׁיעַ אֶת עַמּוֹ וְהֵם  
חוֹטְאִים? וְעֲמוּלֵק עָנָה וְאָמַר לוֹ: אֲנִי אוֹמֵר  
לְךָ, לֹא, כִּי לֹא יוּכַל לְכַחַשׁ בְּדִבְרֹוֹ.

35 Now Zeezrom said unto the people: See that ye remember these things;  
for he said there is but one God; yet he saith that the Son of God shall  
come, but he shall not save his people—as though he had authority to  
command God.  
וְזְעִזְרוֹם אָמַר אֶל הָעָם: שִׁמְרוּ וְזָכְרוּ אֶת  
הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה; הֵן הוּא אָמַר כִּי יֵשׁ אֱלֹהִים  
אֶחָד בִּלְבָד, וְאוֹלָם, הוּא אוֹמֵר, כִּי בֶן אֱלֹהִים  
יָבוֹא, אֶף הוּא לֹא יוֹשִׁיעַ אֶת עַמּוֹ, כְּאִלּוּ בִּידְיוֹ  
סְמִכוֹת לְצִוּוֹת עַל אֱלֹהִים.

36 Now Amulek saith again unto him: Behold thou hast lied, for thou  
sayest that I spake as though I had authority to command God because  
I said he shall not save his people in their sins.  
וְעוֹד אָמַר אֵלָיו עֲמוּלֵק: הִנֵּה שָׁקַרְתָּ,  
אָמַרְתָּ כִּי דִבַּרְתִּי כְּאִלּוּ בִּידִי סְמִכוֹת לְצִוּוֹת  
עַל אֱלֹהִים, מִפְּנֵי אֲמָרִי כִּי הוּא לֹא יוֹשִׁיעַ  
אֶת עַמּוֹ וְהֵם חוֹטְאִים.

37 And I say unto you again that he cannot save them in their sins; for  
I cannot deny his word, and he hath said that no unclean thing can  
inherit the kingdom of heaven; therefore, how can ye be saved, except  
ye inherit the kingdom of heaven? Therefore, ye cannot be saved in  
your sins.  
וְאֲנִי אוֹמֵר לְךָ שֵׁנִית כִּי הוֹשִׁיעַ לֹא יוֹשִׁיעַם בְּעוֹדָם  
חוֹטְאִים; כִּי אֲנִינִי יוּכַל לְכַחַשׁ בְּדִבְרֹוֹ, וְהוּא אָכֵן  
אָמַר כִּי כָּל טָמֵא לֹא יִירַשׁ אֶת מַלְכוּת הַשָּׁמַיִם;  
לָכֵן, אִיךָ תִּוָּשַׁע וְלֹא תִירַשׁ אֶת מַלְכוּת הַשָּׁמַיִם?  
לָכֵן אֵינְךָ יוּכַל לְהוֹשִׁיעַ בְּעוֹדְךָ חוֹטֵא.

38 Now Zeezrom saith again unto him: Is the Son of God the very Eternal  
Father?  
וְזְעִזְרוֹם הוֹסִיף וְאָמַר לוֹ: הָאֵם בֶּן אֱלֹהִים הוּא  
עֲצָמוֹ אֲב הָעוֹלָמִים?

- 39 And Amulek said unto him: Yea, he is the very Eternal Father of heaven and of earth, and all things which in them are; he is the beginning and the end, the first and the last;
- וְאָמַר לוֹ עֲמוּלֵק: אָכֵן, הוּא עֲצֵמוֹ אֲב הָעוֹלָמִים, אָבִי שָׁמַיִם וָאָרֶץ וְכָל מְלָאִים, הוּא רֵאשִׁית וְהוּא אַחֲרִית, הוּא הָרֵאשׁוֹן וְהוּא הָאַחֲרוֹן.
- 40 And he shall come into the world to redeem his people; and he shall take upon him the transgressions of those who believe on his name; and these are they that shall have eternal life, and salvation cometh to none else.
- וְהוּא יָבוֹא אֶל הָעוֹלָם לְגַאֲלֵת אֶת עַמּוֹ; וְהוּא יִקַּח עָלָיו אֶת פְּשָׁעֵי הַמֵּאֲמִינִים בְּשֵׁמוֹ; אֵלֶּה הֵם אֲשֶׁר יַחֲיֶי חַיֵּי עוֹלָם, וְלִזְוִלָתָם לֹא תִהְיֶה יְשׁוּעָה.
- 41 Therefore the wicked remain as though there had been no redemption made, except it be the loosing of the bands of death; for behold, the day cometh that all shall rise from the dead and stand before God, and be judged according to their works.
- לְכֵן יִשָּׁאֲרוּ הָרָשָׁעִים כְּאִלּוּ לֹא בָּאָה הַגְּאֻלָּה, זִוִּילַת הַתֵּרֶת חֲבֻלֵי הַמָּוֶת; כִּי הִנֵּה בָּא הַיּוֹם אֲשֶׁר כָּל הַמֵּתִים יָקוּמוּ לְתַחִיָּה וְיַעֲמְדוּ לִפְנֵי אֱלֹהִים, וְיִשְׁפָּטוּ כְּמַעֲשֵׂיהֶם;
- 42 Now, there is a death which is called a temporal death; and the death of Christ shall loose the bands of this temporal death, that all shall be raised from this temporal death.
- כִּי יֵשׁ מָוֶת הַנִּקְרָא מָוֶת חֲמָרִי; וּמוֹת הַמְּשִׁיחַ יַתִּיר אֶת חֲבֻלֵי הַמָּוֶת הַחֲמָרִי לְמַעַן יָקוּמוּ הַכֹּל מִן הַמָּוֶת הַזֶּה.
- 43 The spirit and the body shall be reunited again in its perfect form; both limb and joint shall be restored to its proper frame, even as we now are at this time; and we shall be brought to stand before God, knowing even as we know now, and have a bright recollection of all our guilt.
- אֲנִי יִתְאַחֲדוּ שְׁנֵי הָרוּחַ וְהַגּוּף בְּצוּרַת הַגּוּף הַמְּשֻׁלְמָת; אֵיבָרִים וּמַפְרָקִים יִשְׁוּבוּ לְמִקְוָם; כָּפִי הַיּוֹתֵנוּ כַּעַת; וְאֲנַחְנוּ נוֹבָא לְעֵמֶד לִפְנֵי אֱלֹהִים, וְיִדְעֵתֵנוּ תִּהְיֶה כִּידְעֵתֵנוּ עַתָּה, וְזִכְרוֹנֵנוּ יִהְיֶה בְּהִיר עַל כָּל אֲשֶׁר אֲשַׁמְנוּ;
- 44 Now, this restoration shall come to all, both old and young, both bond and free, both male and female, both the wicked and the righteous; and even there shall not so much as a hair of their heads be lost; but everything shall be restored to its perfect frame, as it is now, or in the body, and shall be brought and be arraigned before the bar of Christ the Son, and God the Father, and the Holy Spirit, which is one Eternal God, to be judged according to their works, whether they be good or whether they be evil.
- וְהַשִּׁיבָה הַזֹּאת תָּבוֹא עַל הַכֹּל, זָקֵן וְצֶעִיר, חָיִב וְחָפְזִי, זָכָר וְנִקְבָּה, רָשָׁע וְצַדִּיק, וְלֹא תִחָסֵר מֵהֶם שְׁעֵרָה מִרְאָשָׁם. הַכֹּל יִשְׁוּבֶה אֶל צוּרָתוֹ הַמְּשֻׁלְמָת, כְּמוֹ הַיּוֹם, אֲשֶׁר הוּא בְּגוּף. וְהוּא יִבָּא וְיַעֲמֵד לְמִשְׁפָּט לִפְנֵי כֹס הַמְּשִׁיחַ הַבֵּן, וְאֱלֹהִים הָאָב, וְרוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ, אֲשֶׁר הֵם אֱלֹהֵי הָעוֹלָמִים אֶחָד, לְהִשְׁפָּט כָּפִי מַעֲשֵׂיהֶם, אִם טוֹבִים וְאִם רָעִים.
- 45 Now, behold, I have spoken unto you concerning the death of the mortal body, and also concerning the resurrection of the mortal body. I say unto you that this mortal body is raised to an immortal body, that is from death, even from the first death unto life, that they can die no more; their spirits uniting with their bodies, never to be divided; thus the whole becoming spiritual and immortal, that they can no more see corruption.
- הִנֵּה דִבַּרְתִּי אֵלֵיכֶם עַל מוֹת הַגּוּף בֶּן הַתְּמוּתָה וְכֵן עַל תְּחִיתַת הַגּוּף בֶּן הַתְּמוּתָה. אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם כִּי הַגּוּף בֶּן הַתְּמוּתָה הַזֶּה קָם לְגוּף אֱלִמּוּת; אָכֵן זֹאת מִן הַמָּוֶת, מִן הַמָּוֶת הַחֲמָרִי, קָם אֶל הַחַיִּים לְמַעַן לֹא יָמוּתוּ עוֹד. וְרוּחַם תִּתְאַחֵד עִם גּוּפָם וְלֹא יִפְרְדּוּ עוֹד לְעוֹלָם. כִּךְ הוּפֵד הַכֹּל רוּחָנִי וְאֱלִמּוּת, לְמַעַן לֹא יָרְאוּ עוֹד שַׁחַת.
- 46 Now, when Amulek had finished these words the people began again to be astonished, and also Zeezrom began to tremble. And thus ended the words of Amulek, or this is all that I have written.
- וּכְכֹלּוֹת עֲמוּלֵק אֶת דִּבְרָיו אֵלֶּה הַשְׁתוּמָּמוֹ הָעָם שְׁנֵי, וְגַם זִעְזְרוֹם הֵחֵל מְרַעֵד. כֹּה כָּלוּ דִבְרֵי עֲמוּלֵק, וְאָכֵן זֶה כָּל אֲשֶׁר כָּתַבְתִּי.

## יב

## 12

וּבִרְאוֹת עֲלָמָא כִּי הִשְׁתִּיקוּ דְּבָרֵי עֲמוּלֵק  
אֶת זְאֵזְרוֹם, יַעַן אֲשֶׁר נֹכַח כִּי תִפְשׂוּ עֲמוּלֵק  
בְּדִבְרֵי שְׁקֵר וְתִרְמִית לְמַעַן הִשְׁמִידוֹ; וּבִרְאוֹתוֹ  
כִּי הִחַל זְאֵזְרוֹם מִרְעִיד מִפְּנֵי הַכֶּרֶת אֲשֶׁמְתּוֹ,  
הוּא פָתַח אֶת פִּי וְדִבֵּר אֵלָיו, לֵאמֹר אֶת דְּבָרֵי  
עֲמוּלֵק, וּלְבַאֵר דְּבָרִים נֹסְפִים, וּלְגַלּוֹת אֶת  
כְּתָבֵי הַקֹּדֶשׁ מֵעֵבֶר לְדְבָרֵי עֲמוּלֵק.

וְהָיָה כִּי הָעַם אֲשֶׁר נֶאֱסָפוּ מִסְבִּיב שְׁמַעוּ אֶת  
דְּבָרֵי עֲלָמָא אֶל זְאֵזְרוֹם, כִּי רַב הָיָה שָׁם  
הַהֶמוֹן. וְכִדְבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה דִּבֶּר:

הִנֵּה זְאֵזְרוֹם, נִתְפַּשֵּׁת בְּתִרְמִיתוֹ וּבִמְזֻמָּתּוֹ, כִּי  
לֹא רַק לְאִנָּשִׁים שִׁקְרָתָהּ, כִּי אִם גַּם לְאֱלֹהִים;  
הֵן יוֹדֵעַ אֱלֹהִים אֶת כָּל מַחְשְׁבוֹתֶיהָ, וְהֵנָּה  
רוֹאֶה כִּי מַחְשְׁבוֹתֶיהָ נִודָּעוֹת לָנוּ עַל יְדֵי רוּחוֹ.

הִנֵּה נֹכַחְתָּ כִּי יָדַעְנוּ כִּי מְזֻמָּתָהּ עֲרוּמָהּ מְאֹד,  
כְּעֶרְמַת הַשָּׁטָן, לְרִמּוֹת וּלְשִׁקָּר לָעַם הַזֶּה  
לְמַעַן תִּקְוִימָם אוֹתוֹ עָלֵינוּ, לְגַדְּפֵנוּ וּלְגַרְשָׁנוּ.

וְזֹאת מְזֻמַּת הַשָּׁטָן, וְהוּא הַפְעִיל אֶת כָּחוֹ  
בָּךְ. מִי יִתֵּן וְתִזְכֹּר כִּי דְבָרֵי אֱלִיד הוּא מִפְּנֵה  
אֶל הַכָּל.

הִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לְכֻלְכֶּם, כִּי פֹחַ יְקוֹשׁ מִן הַשָּׁטָן  
הָיָה זֶה, וְהוּא הִנִּיחוֹ לְלַכְּדָהּ אֶת הָעָם הַזֶּה,  
לְשַׁעְבְּדָכֶם אֵלָיו, לְאַסֹּר אֶתְכֶם בְּזִקּוֹ וּלְכַבֵּל  
אֶתְכֶם לְאַבְדּוֹן עוֹלָם, כְּפִי כֹחַ שְׁבָתוֹ.

וּכְדִבְרֵי עֲלָמָא אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, הִחַל  
זְאֵזְרוֹם מִרְעִיד בְּחֻזְקָה, כִּי שָׁכַנַּע יוֹתֵר וַיּוֹתֵר  
כִּי כֹחַ אֱלֹהִים אֵמֶת, וְאֵף שָׁכַנַּע כִּי לְעֲלָמָא  
וּלְעֲמוּלֵק הָיְתָה יְדִיעָה עָלָיו, מִפְּנֵי שָׁכַנְעוּ כִּי  
הֵם יָדְעוּ אֶת מַחְשְׁבוֹתָיו וְאֶת כּוֹנֵנוֹת לְבוֹ; כִּי  
כֹחַ נָתַן לָהֶם לְדַעַת עַל הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה כְּפִי  
רוּחַ הַנְּבוּאָה.

אֲזַי הִחַל זְאֵזְרוֹם לְחַקֵּר אוֹתָם בְּשִׁקְדָה,  
בְּעִבּוֹר יָדַע יוֹתֵר עַל מַלְכוּת אֱלֹהִים. וְהוּא  
אָמַר אֶל עֲלָמָא: מַה פֶּשֶׁר דְּבָרֵי עֲמוּלֵק עַל  
תַּחֲתֵית הַמֵּתִים, אֲשֶׁר הַכָּל יִקְוִמוּ מִן הַמֵּתִים,

1 Now Alma, seeing that the words of Amulek had silenced Zeezrom, for he beheld that Amulek had caught him in his lying and deceiving to destroy him, and seeing that he began to tremble under a consciousness of his guilt, he opened his mouth and began to speak unto him, and to establish the words of Amulek, and to explain things beyond, or to unfold the scriptures beyond that which Amulek had done.

2 Now the words that Alma spake unto Zeezrom were heard by the people round about; for the multitude was great, and he spake on this wise:

3 Now Zeezrom, seeing that thou hast been taken in thy lying and craftiness, for thou hast not lied unto men only but thou hast lied unto God; for behold, he knows all thy thoughts, and thou seest that thy thoughts are made known unto us by his Spirit;

4 And thou seest that we know that thy plan was a very subtle plan, as to the subtlety of the devil, for to lie and to deceive this people that thou mightest set them against us, to revile us and to cast us out—

5 Now this was a plan of thine adversary, and he hath exercised his power in thee. Now I would that ye should remember that what I say unto thee I say unto all.

6 And behold I say unto you all that this was a snare of the adversary, which he has laid to catch this people, that he might bring you into subjection unto him, that he might encircle you about with his chains, that he might chain you down to everlasting destruction, according to the power of his captivity.

7 Now when Alma had spoken these words, Zeezrom began to tremble more exceedingly, for he was convinced more and more of the power of God; and he was also convinced that Alma and Amulek had a knowledge of him, for he was convinced that they knew the thoughts and intents of his heart; for power was given unto them that they might know of these things according to the spirit of prophecy.

8 And Zeezrom began to inquire of them diligently, that he might know more concerning the kingdom of God. And he said unto Alma: What does this mean which Amulek hath spoken concerning the resurrection of the dead, that all shall rise from the dead, both the just and the

הַצָּדִיק וְאִשֶּׁר אֵינוֹ צָדִיק, וְיֻבְּאוּ לְעֹמֵד לִפְנֵי  
אֱלֹהִים וְלִהְשֹׁפֵט כְּפִי מַעֲשֵׂיהֶם?

unjust, and are brought to stand before God to be judged according to their works?

וְעַלְמָא הַחַל לְבָאֵר לוֹ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה,  
וְאָמַר: יָדִיעַת הַנִּסְתָּרוֹת אֲשֶׁר לֵאלֹהִים נְתֻנָּה  
לְרַבִּים, אֲךָ מִצְוִים הֵם חֲמוּרוֹת שֶׁלֹּא לְהַתְחַלֵּק  
בָּהֶן, כִּי אִם רַק כְּפִי חֵלֶק דְּבָרוֹ אֲשֶׁר הוּא נֹתֵן  
לְבָנֵי הָאָדָם; וְזֹאת עַל פִּי הַתְּמַסְרוֹתָם אֵלָיו  
וְשִׁקְיָתָם עַל דְּבָרוֹ.

9 And now Alma began to expound these things unto him, saying: It is given unto many to know the mysteries of God; nevertheless they are laid under a strict command that they shall not impart only according to the portion of his word which he doth grant unto the children of men, according to the heed and diligence which they give unto him.

לָכֵן, כָּל מִקְשָׁה לְבֹו יִקְבַּל חֵלֶק מִצֶּעֶר מִדְּבַר  
אֱלֹהִים; וְאֲשֶׁר לֹא יִקְשֶׁה אֶת לְבֹו, יִקְבַּל מִנָּה  
גְּדוּלָּה יוֹתֵר מִדְּבָרוֹ, עַד אֲשֶׁר יִנָּתֵן לוֹ לְדַעַת  
אֶת נִסְתָּרוֹת אֱלֹהִים, וְיִדְעוּ בְּמִלְאָן.

10 And therefore, he that will harden his heart, the same receiveth the lesser portion of the word; and he that will not harden his heart, to him is given the greater portion of the word, until it is given unto him to know the mysteries of God until he know them in full.

וְאֲשֶׁר יִקְשׁוּ אֶת לְבָבָם, מִנָּה קִטְנָה מִדְּבָרוֹ תִּתֵּן  
לָהֶם, עַד כִּי לֹא יֵדְעוּ מֵאוֹמָה עַל נִסְתָּרוֹתָיו;  
אֲזִי נִשְׁבִּים הֵם בְּיַד הַשָּׁטָן, וּבִרְצוֹנוֹ הֵם  
מוֹבְלִים אֵלָיו כְּלִיּוֹן. זֶה פֶּשֶׁר חֲרָצְבוֹת שָׂאוֹל.

11 And they that will harden their hearts, to them is given the lesser portion of the word until they know nothing concerning his mysteries; and then they are taken captive by the devil, and led by his will down to destruction. Now this is what is meant by the chains of hell.

וְעַמּוּלֶק דִּבֶּר בְּרוּרוֹת עַל הַמָּוֶת, וְעַל עֲלִיָּה  
מִכֵּן הַתְּמוּתָה הַזֶּה לְכֵן אֱלֻמוֹת וְעַל הַהִבָּאָה  
לִפְנֵי כֹס אֱלֹהִים לְהִשְׁפֹּט כְּפִי מַעֲשֵׂיהֶם.

12 And Amulek hath spoken plainly concerning death, and being raised from this mortality to a state of immortality, and being brought before the bar of God, to be judged according to our works.

אֲזִי, אִם הִקְשָׁה לְבָנֵנו, אָכֵן, אִם הִקְשִׁינוּ אֶת  
לְבָנֵנו עַל דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים, עַד כִּי הוּא לֹא יִמְצָא בָּנוּ,  
אֲזִי אֵינִי יִהְיֶה מִצְבָּנֵנו, כִּי אֲזִי יִגְזֹר דִּינָנוּ לְחוּבָה.

13 Then if our hearts have been hardened, yea, if we have hardened our hearts against the word, insomuch that it has not been found in us, then will our state be awful, for then we shall be condemned.

כִּי יִרְשִׁיעוּנוּ דְּבָרֵינוּ; אָכֵן, כָּל מַעֲשֵׂינוּ  
יִרְשִׁיעוּנוּ וְלֹא נִמְצָא זִכָּרֵם; גַּם מַחְשְׁבוֹתֵינוּ  
יִרְשִׁיעוּנוּ, וּבִמְצָב הָאֵים הַזֶּה לֹא נִעָז לְהַבִּיט  
מֵעֵלָּה אֶל אֱלֹהֵינוּ; וְאֵלּוּ הֵיךְ בִּידְנוּ, בְּרָצוֹן  
הֵינּוּ מִצְוִים עַל הַסְּלָעִים וְעַל הַהָרִים לְנִפֹּל  
עָלֵינוּ לְהַסְתִּירֵנוּ מִפְּנֵיו.

14 For our words will condemn us, yea, all our works will condemn us; we shall not be found spotless; and our thoughts will also condemn us; and in this awful state we shall not dare to look up to our God; and we would fain be glad if we could command the rocks and the mountains to fall upon us to hide us from his presence.

אֲךָ כְּזֹאת לֹא תִהְיֶה; בּוֹא נִבְּאֵם וְנַעֲמֵד  
לִפְנֵיו וְהוּא בְּתַפְאֲרָתוֹ וּבְכֹחוֹ וּבְגִבּוֹרָתוֹ  
וּבְהוֹדוֹ וּבְשִׁלְטוֹנוֹ, וְנוֹדָה, לְבוֹשֶׁתְּנוּ הַנִּצָּחִית,  
כִּי כָּל מִשְׁפָּטָיו צָדִיק; כִּי יֵשֶׁר הוּא בְּכָל פְּעֻלָּיו,  
וְכִי רַחוּם הוּא לְבָנֵי הָאָדָם, וְכִי לוֹ הַכֹּחַ לְגָאֵל  
כָּל אָדָם הַמֵּאֲמִין בְּשִׁמוֹ וְהַנּוֹתֵן פְּרִי הַמַּעֲד  
עַל תְּשׁוּבָתוֹ.

15 But this cannot be; we must come forth and stand before him in his glory, and in his power, and in his might, majesty, and dominion, and acknowledge to our everlasting shame that all his judgments are just; that he is just in all his works, and that he is merciful unto the children of men, and that he has all power to save every man that believeth on his name and bringeth forth fruit meet for repentance.

וְהִנֵּנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֵם, אֲזִי בָּא הַמָּוֶת, הַמָּוֶת הַשֵּׁנִי,  
אֲשֶׁר הוּא מָוֶת רוּחָנִי; וְכָל אֲשֶׁר מֵת וְהוּא

16 And now behold, I say unto you then cometh a death, even a second death, which is a spiritual death; then is a time that whosoever dieth in



חוטא, ומותו מות הגוף, אַזי תבוא עתו לְמוֹת  
גַם מְוֹת רוּחָנִי; אַכֵּן, הוּא יְמוֹת מְוֹת בְּאִשְׁרֵי  
לְדַבְּרֵי צֶדֶק.

his sins, as to a temporal death, shall also die a spiritual death; yea, he shall die as to things pertaining unto righteousness.

אֲזִי תבוא הָעֵת וְיִסְוִרִיהֶם יִהְיוּ כִּי־מַיִם אֵשׁ וְנִפְרִית  
אֲשֶׁר שְׁלֹהֲבָתוֹ עוֹלָה לְנֶצַח נֶצְחִים; וְאֲזִי תבוא  
עַתְּ הָאֶסְרָם בְּזֻקִים לְאֲבִדוֹן עוֹלָם, כִּפִּי כֹחַ  
שְׁבִית הַשָּׁטָן אֲשֶׁר שֶׁעֲבָדָם כְּרִצּוֹנוֹ.

17 Then is the time when their torments shall be as a lake of fire and brimstone, whose flame ascendeth up forever and ever; and then is the time that they shall be chained down to an everlasting destruction, according to the power and captivity of Satan, he having subjected them according to his will.

וְאֵנִי אוֹמֵר אֲלֵיכֶם, יִהְיֶה אֲזִי מִצְבְּכֶם כְּאֵלּוֹ  
לֹא בָּאָה הַגְּאֻלָּה; כִּי הֵם לֹא יוֹכְלוּ לְהַגְאֹל עַל  
פִּי צֶדֶק אֱלֹהִים, אֲפִּי לֹא יוֹכְלוּ לְמוֹת, כִּי אֵין  
עוֹד הַשְּׁחָתָה.

18 Then, I say unto you, they shall be as though there had been no redemption made; for they cannot be redeemed according to God's justice; and they cannot die, seeing there is no more corruption.

וּכְכֹלּוֹת עֲלֵמָא לְדַבֵּר אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה,  
הַשְׁתוּמְמוּ הָאֲנָשִׁים עוֹד יוֹתֵר.

19 Now it came to pass that when Alma had made an end of speaking these words, the people began to be more astonished;

וְהָיָה שֵׁם אִישׁ אֶחָד, אַנְטִיוֹנָה שְׁמוֹ, וְהוּא  
מוֹשֵׁל רָאשֵׁי בִינִיָּהֶם. וְהוּא בָּא וְאָמַר אֵלָיו:  
מָה הַדְּבָר הַזֶּה אֲשֶׁר דִּבַּרְתָּ, כִּי הָאָדָם יָקוּם  
מִן הַמָּתִים וְיִשְׁתַּנֶּה מִכֵּן הַתְּמוּתָה הַזֶּה לְכֵן  
אֲלֵמוֹת, אֲשֶׁר בּוֹ לֹא תְּמוּת הַנֶּפֶשׁ לְעוֹלָם?

20 But there was one Antionah, who was a chief ruler among them, came forth and said unto him: What is this that thou hast said, that man should rise from the dead and be changed from this mortal to an immortal state that the soul can never die?

מָה כְּוִנַּת הַכְּתוּב בְּכֹתְבֵי הַקֹּדֶשׁ כִּי אֱלֹהִים  
הַשְׁכִּין כְּרוּבִים וְלֹהֵט הַחֶרֶב מִקֶּדֶם לְגַן עֵדֶן,  
כֵּן יָבֹאוּ אֲבוֹתֵינוּ הָרָאשׁוֹנִים וְאָכְלוּ מִפְּרֵי עֵץ  
הַחַיִּים וַחֲיוּ לְעוֹלָם? וְכֵן רוֹאִים אֲנִיכֶם כִּי לֹא  
נִתְּנָה לָהֶם כָּל אֲפֻשְׁרוֹת לַחַיּוֹת לְעוֹלָם.

21 What does the scripture mean, which saith that God placed cherubim and a flaming sword on the east of the garden of Eden, lest our first parents should enter and partake of the fruit of the tree of life, and live forever? And thus we see that there was no possible chance that they should live forever.

וְאָמַר אֵלָיו עֲלֵמָא: זֶה הַדְּבָר אֲשֶׁר עֲמַדְתִּי  
לְבַאֵר. רְאִינוּ כִּי אָדָם נָפַל מִמְּרוֹמָיִם, מִפְּנֵי  
אֲכִילַת הַפֶּרִי הָאֲסוּר, כְּדִבַּר אֱלֹהִים. וְכֵן  
רוֹאִים אֲנִיכֶם כִּי עַל יְדֵי נְפִילָתוֹ הָיָה כָּל בְּנֵי  
הָאָדָם לִבְנֵי כָלִיוֹן וְכִשְׁלוֹן.

22 Now Alma said unto him: This is the thing which I was about to explain, now we see that Adam did fall by the partaking of the forbidden fruit, according to the word of God; and thus we see, that by his fall, all mankind became a lost and fallen people.

וְהִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם כִּי אֵלּוֹ יָכֹל אָדָם בְּיוֹם  
הַהוּא לְאָכֹל מִפְּרֵי עֵץ הַחַיִּים, לֹא הָיָה כָּל  
מָוֶת, וְדִבַּר אֱלֹהִים הָיָה בָּטֵל, וְאֱלֹהִים הָיָה  
כְּמַכְזֵב כִּי הוּא אַכֵּן אָמַר: בְּיוֹם אָכְלָךְ  
מִהַפְּרִי הָאֲסוּר מוֹת תָּמוּת.

23 And now behold, I say unto you that if it had been possible for Adam to have partaken of the fruit of the tree of life at that time, there would have been no death, and the word would have been void, making God a liar, for he said: If thou eat thou shalt surely die.

וְאֲנִיכֶם רוֹאִים כִּי הַמָּוֶת בָּא עַל בְּנֵי הָאָדָם,  
וְהוּא הַמָּוֶת הַחֲמִירִי אֲשֶׁר עָלָיו דְּבַר עֲמוּלֵק.  
וְאוּלָּם נָתַן לְאָדָם מִרְחַב פְּעֻלָּה אֲשֶׁר בְּתַחוּמוֹ  
הוּא יָכֹל לְהִנָּחֵם מִחֻטָּא, עַל כֵּן נִהְפְּכוּ הַחַיִּים

24 And we see that death comes upon mankind, yea, the death which has been spoken of by Amulek, which is the temporal death; nevertheless there was a space granted unto man in which he might repent; therefore this life became a probationary state; a time to prepare to meet God; a

## עֲלֵמָא יב:כה–לב

עֲתָה לְתַקּוּפַת נְסִיּוֹן, תְּקוּפַת הַתְּכּוֹנְנוֹת לְעַמּוֹד  
לְקִרְאָת אֱלֹהִים. תְּקוּפַת הַתְּכּוֹנְנוֹת לְמַצֵּב  
הַנִּצְחִי הַהוּא, אֲשֶׁר עָלָיו דְּבַרְנוּ, הַחֵל אַחֵר  
תַּחֲיִית הַמֵּתִים.

time to prepare for that endless state which has been spoken of by us,  
which is after the resurrection of the dead.

וְאִלּוּלִי תִּכְנִית הַגָּאֻלָּה, אֲשֶׁר הוּכְנָה מִסּוּד  
הָעוֹלָם, לֹא יִכָּלֶה לִּהְיוֹת תַּחֲיִית מֵתִים. אֲךָ  
תִּכְנִית גָּאֻלָּה אֲכֵן הוּכְנָה, וְהִיא אֲשֶׁר תָּבִיא  
אֶת תַּחֲיִית הַמֵּתִים אֲשֶׁר עָלֶיהָ דִּבֶּר.

25 Now, if it had not been for the plan of redemption, which was laid from  
the foundation of the world, there could have been no resurrection of  
the dead; but there was a plan of redemption laid, which shall bring to  
pass the resurrection of the dead, of which has been spoken.

וְהִנֵּה, אֵלּוּ יָכְלוּ אֲבוֹתֵינוּ הָרִאשׁוֹנִים לָבוֹא  
וּלְאָכַל מֵעֵץ הַחַיִּים, הָיוּ הֵם אֲמֻלִּים לְעוֹלָם,  
כִּי לֹא הָיְתָה לָהֶם תְּקוּפַת הַתְּכּוֹנְנוֹת; וְאִזּוּ  
הָיְתָה מוֹפְרַת תִּכְנִית הַגָּאֻלָּה, וְדִבֶּר אֱלֹהִים  
הָיָה דְּבַר בָּטָל, חֲסֵר תִּקְוָה.

26 And now behold, if it were possible that our first parents could have  
gone forth and partaken of the tree of life they would have been  
forever miserable, having no preparatory state; and thus the plan of  
redemption would have been frustrated, and the word of God would  
have been void, taking none effect.

אֲךָ לֹא כֵן הָיָה; כִּי הִכְרַח הַמּוֹת לְבְנֵי אָדָם;  
וְאַחֵר מוֹתָם מִכְּרַחִים הֵם לָבוֹא לְהִשְׁפֹּט בְּאוֹתוֹ  
הַמִּשְׁפָּט אֲשֶׁר דְּבַרְנוּ עָלָיו, אֲשֶׁר הוּא הַקֵּץ.

27 But behold, it was not so; but it was appointed unto men that they  
must die; and after death, they must come to judgment, even that same  
judgment of which we have spoken, which is the end.

וְאַחֵר אֲשֶׁר מָנָה אֱלֹהִים כִּי יַחֲוּלוּ הַדְּבָרִים  
הָאֵלֶּה לְאָדָם, הוּא רָאָה לְנִכּוֹן לְהוֹדִיעַ אֶת  
הָאָדָם עַל אֲדוּתֵיהֶם.

28 And after God had appointed that these things should come unto  
man, behold, then he saw that it was expedient that man should know  
concerning the things whereof he had appointed unto them;

עַל כֵּן שְׁלַח מַלְאָכִים לְדַבֵּר אִתָּם; וְאֵלֶּה נָתַנוּ  
לְבְנֵי אָדָם לְחַזוֹת אֶת תִּפְאֶרְתּוֹ.

29 Therefore he sent angels to converse with them, who caused men to  
behold of his glory.

וּמִן הָעֵת הַהִיא וְהִלָּאָה הֵם הַחֲלוּ לְקִרְאָה  
בְּשֵׁמוֹ. עַל כֵּן, דִּבֶּר אֱלֹהִים עִם בְּנֵי אָדָם  
וְהוֹדִיעָם אֶת תִּכְנִית הַגָּאֻלָּה, אֲשֶׁר הוּכְנָה  
מִסּוּד הָעוֹלָם; וְהוּא הוֹדִיעָם אוֹתָהּ כְּפִי  
אֲמוּנָתָם וְתִשׁוּבָתָם וּמַעֲשֵׂי קִדְשָׁם.

30 And they began from that time forth to call on his name; therefore  
God conversed with men, and made known unto them the plan of  
redemption, which had been prepared from the foundation of the  
world; and this he made known unto them according to their faith and  
repentance and their holy works.

לְכֵן הוּא נָתַן מִצְוֹת לְבְנֵי הָאָדָם. תַּחֲלָה  
עָבְרוּ הֵם עַל הַמִּצְוֹת הָרִאשׁוֹנוֹת, בְּאֲשֶׁר  
לְעֵנֶינִי הַחֲמַר, וְהָיוּ כְּאֱלֹהִים, לְדַעַת טוֹב וְרָע,  
וְשָׂמוּ עֲצָמָם בְּמַצֵּב פֶּעֶלָה, אוֹ הוֹשְׂמוּ בְּמַצֵּב  
אֲשֶׁר יוּכְלוּ לַפְעֵל כְּפִי חֲפָצָם וּרְצוֹנָם, אִם  
הֵיטִיב עֲשׂוֹת וְאִם לְהָרַע;

31 Wherefore, he gave commandments unto men, they having first  
transgressed the first commandments as to things which were temporal,  
and becoming as Gods, knowing good from evil, placing themselves in  
a state to act, or being placed in a state to act according to their wills  
and pleasures, whether to do evil or to do good—

לְכֵן נָתַן לָהֶם אֱלֹהִים מִצְוֹת, אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר הוֹדִיעָם  
אֶת תִּכְנִית הַגָּאֻלָּה, לְבַל יַרְעוּ, וְהוֹדִיעָם אֶת  
הָעֲנֹשׁ לְעוֹשֵׁי רָעָה, וְהוּא הַמּוֹת הַשֵּׁנִי, מוֹת  
נִצְחִי בְּאֲשֶׁר לְדַבְּרֵי צֶדֶק; כִּי לְבְנֵי כְּאֵלֶּה אֵין  
לְתִכְנִית הַגָּאֻלָּה כָּל תִּקְוָה, כִּי מַעֲשֵׂי הַצֶּדֶק לֹא  
יּוֹפְרוּ, לְפִי הַטּוֹב הָעוֹלָיוֹן אֲשֶׁר לְאֱלֹהִים.

32 Therefore God gave unto them commandments, after having made  
known unto them the plan of redemption, that they should not do evil,  
the penalty thereof being a second death, which was an everlasting  
death as to things pertaining unto righteousness; for on such the plan  
of redemption could have no power, for the works of justice could not  
be destroyed, according to the supreme goodness of God.

- אך אלהים קרא לבני האדם בשם בנו, כי זאת תכנית הגאולה אשר הוכנה, לאמר: אם תנחמו מחטא ולא תקשו את לבכם, רחם ארחמכם על ידי בני הילוד היחיד.
- לכן, כל השב מחטאיו ואינו מקשה לבו, זכאי הוא לרחמים על ידי בני הילוד היחיד, למחילת חטאיו. אלה יבואו למנוחתו.
- וכל אשר יקשה לבו ויפעל און, הנני נשבע באפי כי לא יבוא אל מנוחתו.
- ועתה, אחי, הנני אומר לכם כי אם תקשו את לבכם, לא תבואו אל מנוחת יהוה, ועוונתכם יכעיסנו עד אשר ישפך בכם את חמתו, כבמריבה הראשונה; אכן, כדברו במריבה האחרונה כבראשונה, ותאבד נפשכם אבדן עולם, וזאת על פי דברו על המות האחרון כעל המות הראשון.
- ועתה, אחי, יען אשר ידענו את הדברים האלה, ואמת הם, הבה ננחם מחטאינו ולא נקשה את לבנו, ולא נכעיס את יהוה אלהינו לשפך עלינו את חמתו אחר אשר נתן לנו את מצוותיו השניות האלה, כי אם נבוא נא אל מנוחת אלהים, אשר הוכנה על פי דברו.
- 33 But God did call on men, in the name of his Son, (this being the plan of redemption which was laid) saying: If ye will repent and harden not your hearts, then will I have mercy upon you, through mine Only Begotten Son;
- 34 Therefore, whosoever repenteth, and hardeneth not his heart, he shall have claim on mercy through mine Only Begotten Son, unto a remission of his sins; and these shall enter into my rest.
- 35 And whosoever will harden his heart and will do iniquity, behold, I swear in my wrath that he shall not enter into my rest.
- 36 And now, my brethren, behold I say unto you, that if ye will harden your hearts ye shall not enter into the rest of the Lord; therefore your iniquity provoketh him that he sendeth down his wrath upon you as in the first provocation, yea, according to his word in the last provocation as well as the first, to the everlasting destruction of your souls; therefore, according to his word, unto the last death, as well as the first.
- 37 And now, my brethren, seeing we know these things, and they are true, let us repent, and harden not our hearts, that we provoke not the Lord our God to pull down his wrath upon us in these his second commandments which he has given unto us; but let us enter into the rest of God, which is prepared according to his word.

## יג

## 13

- ועוד, אחי, אעזר את תשומת לבכם לעת אשר נתן יהוה אלהים את המצוות האלה לבניו. חפצי כי תזכרו כי יהוה אלהים הסמיך כהנים, כפי סדר קדשו, אשר הוא כפי סדר בנו, ללמד את הדברים האלה לאנשים.
- והכהנים ההם הסמכו כפי סדר בנו, באפן אשר על ידיו יוכלו האנשים לצפות לבנו בעבור גאולה.
- וזה האפן אשר לפיו הם הסמכו: אחר אשר נקראו והוכנו מיסוד העולם, על פי הידיעה מראש אשר לאלהים בעבור שפע אמונתם וטוב מעשיהם; ותחלה הם היו חפשיים לבחור טוב ורע; ויען אשר בחרו בטוב והחזיקו
- 1 And again, my brethren, I would cite your minds forward to the time when the Lord God gave these commandments unto his children; and I would that ye should remember that the Lord God ordained priests, after his holy order, which was after the order of his Son, to teach these things unto the people.
- 2 And those priests were ordained after the order of his Son, in a manner that thereby the people might know in what manner to look forward to his Son for redemption.
- 3 And this is the manner after which they were ordained—being called and prepared from the foundation of the world according to the foreknowledge of God, on account of their exceeding faith and good works; in the first place being left to choose good or evil; therefore they having chosen good, and exercising exceedingly great faith, are called

בְּאִמּוּנָה רַבָּה מְאֹד, הֵם נִקְרְאוּ לְשִׁיחוֹת קֹדֶשׁ,  
אֲכֹן, לְאוֹתָהּ שְׁלִיחוֹת קֹדֶשׁ אֲשֶׁר הוֹכְנָה עִם  
גְּאֻלָּה מְכִינָה לְאֲשֶׁר כָּאֵלָה וְעַל פִּיהָ;

with a holy calling, yea, with that holy calling which was prepared with,  
and according to, a preparatory redemption for such.

וְכֵן הֵם נִקְרְאוּ לְשִׁיחוֹת קֹדֶשׁ הַזֹּאת בְּעֵבוֹר  
אֲמוּנָתָם, בְּעוֹד אֲשֶׁר אַחֲרֵים מְאֹסוֹ בְּרוּחַ  
אֱלֹהִים מִפְּנֵי קִשִׁי לִבָּם וְעוֹרוֹן דַּעְתָּם, אֲשֶׁר  
אִם לֹא כֵן, הִיְתָה לָהֶם זְכוּת רַבָּה כְּלוּלָתָם.

4 And thus they have been called to this holy calling on account of their  
faith, while others would reject the Spirit of God on account of the  
hardness of their hearts and blindness of their minds, while, if it had not  
been for this they might have had as great privilege as their brethren.

וּבְקִצְרָה: תְּחִלָּה עָמְדוּ הֵם עִם אַחֵיהֶם בְּאוֹתוֹ  
מִעַמָּד; כֵּן הוֹכְנָה שְׁלִיחוֹת קֹדֶשׁ הַזֹּאת  
מִיְסוּד הָעוֹלָם לְמַעַן אֵלָה אֲשֶׁר לֹא יִקְשׁוּ אֶת  
לִבָּם, בְּזְכוּת הַכִּפּוּרָה אֲשֶׁר לְכֵן אֱלֹהִים הֵילֹד  
הַיְחִיד, אֲשֶׁר הוֹכֵן, וְעַל יְדִיָּהּ.

5 Or in fine, in the first place they were on the same standing with their  
brethren; thus this holy calling being prepared from the foundation  
of the world for such as would not harden their hearts, being in and  
through the atonement of the Only Begotten Son, who was prepared—

וְכֵן הֵם נִקְרְאוּ לְשִׁיחוֹת קֹדֶשׁ הַזֹּאת  
וְהִסְמְכוּ לְכַהֲנָה הַגְּדוֹלָה אֲשֶׁר בְּסֹדֶר קֹדֶשׁ  
אֲשֶׁר לְאֱלֹהִים, לְמַעַן יִלְמְדוּ אֶת מִצְוֹתָיו לְבָנָי  
הָאָדָם, בְּעֵבוֹר יָבוֹאוּ גַם הֵם אֶל מְנוּחָתוֹ.

6 And thus being called by this holy calling, and ordained unto the high  
priesthood of the holy order of God, to teach his commandments unto  
the children of men, that they also might enter into his rest—

וְהַכְהֵנָה הַגְּדוֹלָה הַזֹּאת הִיא עַל פִּי סֹדֶר בְּנוֹ,  
אֲשֶׁר הַסֹּדֶר הַזֶּה הִיָּה מִיְסוּד הָעוֹלָם; אוֹ,  
בְּמִלִּים אַחֲרוֹת, הוּא לֹא רֵאשִׁית בְּיָמִים  
וְלֹא אַחֲרִית בְּשָׁנִים, וְהוּא הוֹכֵן מִעוֹלָם וְעַד  
עוֹלָם, כִּפִּי יְדִיעָתוֹ אֶת כָּל הַדְּבָרִים מֵרֵאשִׁית.

7 This high priesthood being after the order of his Son, which order was  
from the foundation of the world; or in other words, being prepared from  
beginning of days or end of years, being prepared from eternity to all  
eternity, according to his foreknowledge of all things—

וְכֵן הֵם הִסְמְכוּ לְכַהֲנָה: הֵם נִקְרְאוּ לְשִׁיחוֹת  
קֹדֶשׁ וְהִסְמְכוּ בְּסִמְכָה קְדוּשָׁה וְקִבְלוּ עֲלֵיהֶם  
אֶת הַכְהֵנָה הַגְּדוֹלָה אֲשֶׁר בְּסֹדֶר קֹדֶשׁ, אֲשֶׁר  
שְׁלִיחוֹתָהּ וְסִמְכָתָהּ וְהַכְהֵנָה הַגְּדוֹלָה הִיא בְּלִי  
רֵאשִׁית וּבְלִי אַחֲרִית.

8 Now they were ordained after this manner—being called with a holy  
calling, and ordained with a holy ordinance, and taking upon them the  
high priesthood of the holy order, which calling, and ordinance, and  
high priesthood, is without beginning or end—

כֹּה הֵם נִהְיוּ כַּהֲנִים גְּדוֹלִים לְעוֹלָם, עַל פִּי הַסֹּדֶר  
אֲשֶׁר לְבֵן, הֵילֹד הַיְחִיד אֲשֶׁר לְאָב, אֲשֶׁר הוּא  
בְּלִי רֵאשִׁית בְּיָמִים וּבְלִי קֵץ בְּשָׁנִים, אֲשֶׁר הוּא  
מִלֵּא חֶסֶד וְיֵשֶׁר וְאֱמֶת. כֵּן הַדְּבָר. אָמֵן.

9 Thus they become high priests forever, after the order of the Son, the  
Only Begotten of the Father, who is without beginning of days or end  
of years, who is full of grace, equity, and truth. And thus it is. Amen.

וְעַתָּה, כִּפִּי שֶׁאֲמַרְתִּי עַל סֹדֶר קֹדֶשׁ אֲשֶׁר  
לְכַהֲנָה הַגְּדוֹלָה הַזֹּאת, רַבִּים הָיוּ אֲשֶׁר הִסְמְכוּ  
וְהָיוּ לְכַהֲנִים גְּדוֹלִים לְאֱלֹהִים; וְזֹאת בְּעֵבוֹר  
שִׁפְעָה אֲמוּנָתָם וְחִשְׁבֹּתָם וְצִדְקָתָם לִפְנֵי  
אֱלֹהִים, כִּי הֵם בָּחֲרוּ לְהִנָּחֵם מִחֲטָאִים וּלְפַעַל  
בְּמִישָׁרִים וְלֹא לְהִסְפּוֹת.

10 Now, as I said concerning the holy order, or this high priesthood,  
there were many who were ordained and became high priests of God;  
and it was on account of their exceeding faith and repentance, and  
their righteousness before God, they choosing to repent and work  
righteousness rather than to perish;

לְכֵן נִקְרְאוּ עַל פִּי סֹדֶר קֹדֶשׁ הַזֶּה, וְנִקְדְּשׁוּ,  
וּבִגְדֵיהֶם רָחְצוּ וְהִלְבִּינוּ עַל יְדֵי דַם הַשֶּׁה.

11 Therefore they were called after this holy order, and were sanctified,  
and their garments were washed white through the blood of the Lamb.

- 12 Now they, after being sanctified by the Holy Ghost, having their garments made white, being pure and spotless before God, could not look upon sin save it were with abhorrence; and there were many, exceedingly great many, who were made pure and entered into the rest of the Lord their God.
- וְאַחַר הָיוּתָם נִקְדָּשִׁים בְּרוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ, וּבִגְדֵיהֶם רָחֲצוּ עַד זֶה בַּהִיוּתָם טְהוֹרִים לֹלֵא רֻבָּב לִפְנֵי אֱלֹהִים, לֹא יָכְלוּ לְהַבִּיט עַל חַטָּא, בְּלִתִּי בִגְעַל נֶפֶשׁ. וְרַבִּים הָיוּ, אַכֵּן, רַבִּים וְעֲצוּמִים אֲשֶׁר נִטְהָרוּ וּבָאוּ אֶל מְנוּחַת יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵיהֶם.
- 13 And now, my brethren, I would that ye should humble yourselves before God, and bring forth fruit meet for repentance, that ye may also enter into that rest.
- וְעַתָּה, אַחֵי, חַפְצָתִי כִּי תִשְׁפִּילוּ עַצְמְכֶם לִפְנֵי אֱלֹהִים וְתִתְּנוּ פְּרִי הַהוֹלֵם תְּשׁוּבָה, בְּעִבּוֹר תְּבוֹאוּ גַם אַתֶּם אֶל הַמְּנוּחָה הַהִיא.
- 14 Yea, humble yourselves even as the people in the days of Melchizedek, who was also a high priest after this same order which I have spoken, who also took upon him the high priesthood forever.
- הַכְּנַעוּ נָא כְּעַם בִּימֵי מֶלְכִּיצֶדֶק, אֲשֶׁר גַּם הוּא הָיָה כֹהֵן גָּדוֹל עַל פִּי הַסֹּדֵר הַהוּא אֲשֶׁר עָלִיו דִּבַּרְתִּי, וְאֲשֶׁר קָבַל עָלָיו אֶת הַכֹּהֲנָה הַגְּדוֹלָה עַד עוֹלָם.
- 15 And it was this same Melchizedek to whom Abraham paid tithes; yea, even our father Abraham paid tithes of one-tenth part of all he possessed.
- הָיָה זֶה אוֹתוֹ מֶלְכִּיצֶדֶק אֲשֶׁר אֲבְרָהָם הֵבִיא לוֹ מַעֲשֵׂרוֹת; אַכֵּן, אֲבְרָהָם אֶבְיֵנוּ עֲשָׂר מַעֲשֵׂר מִכָּל אֲשֶׁר הָיָה לוֹ.
- 16 Now these ordinances were given after this manner, that thereby the people might look forward on the Son of God, it being a type of his order, or it being his order, and this that they might look forward to him for a remission of their sins, that they might enter into the rest of the Lord.
- וְהַמְשָׁפְטִים הָאֵלֶּה נִתְּנוּ בְּאִפְּן הַזֶּה, בְּעִבּוֹר יִצְפָּה הָעָם עַל יְדִיהֶם לְבֶן אֱלֹהִים; זֹאת תְּבִנִית סֹדֵרוֹ, אוֹ זֶה סֹדֵרוֹ, וְזֹאת בְּעִבּוֹר יִצְפָּה לוֹ הָעָם לְמַחִילָה עַל חַטְאֵיהֶם, לְמַעַן יָבוֹאוּ אֶל מְנוּחַת יְהוָה.
- 17 Now this Melchizedek was a king over the land of Salem; and his people had waxed strong in iniquity and abomination; yea, they had all gone astray; they were full of all manner of wickedness;
- וּמֶלְכִּיצֶדֶק הָיָה מֶלֶךְ אֶרֶץ שָׁלֵם, וְעַמּוֹ הִרְבּוּ עָווֹן וְתוֹעֵבָה; אַכֵּן, כָּלֶם תָּעוּ וְהִרְבּוּ כָּל מִינֵי רָשָׁעָה.
- 18 But Melchizedek having exercised mighty faith, and received the office of the high priesthood according to the holy order of God, did preach repentance unto his people. And behold, they did repent; and Melchizedek did establish peace in the land in his days; therefore he was called the prince of peace, for he was the king of Salem; and he did reign under his father.
- אֲךָ מֶלְכִּיצֶדֶק, אֲשֶׁר הִחֲזִיק בְּאִמּוּנָה גְּדוֹלָה וְקָבַל אֶת מִשְׁרַת הַכֹּהֲנָה הַגְּדוֹלָה כְּפִי סֹדֵר הַקֹּדֶשׁ אֲשֶׁר לְאֱלֹהִים, הִסִּיר לְעַמּוֹ לְהִנָּחֵם מִחַטָּא. וְהִנֵּה, הֵם שָׁבוּ מִרַעְתָּם; וּמֶלְכִּיצֶדֶק כֹּנֵן שָׁלוֹם בְּאֶרֶץ בְּיָמָיו, עַל כֵּן נִקְרָא שׁוֹר שָׁלוֹם, כִּי הָיָה מֶלֶךְ שָׁלֵם וְהוּא מָשַׁל תַּחַת אָבִיו.
- 19 Now, there were many before him, and also there were many afterwards, but none were greater; therefore, of him they have more particularly made mention.
- רַבִּים הָיוּ לִפְנָיו וְרַבִּים הָיוּ אַחֲרָיו, אֲךָ לֹא הָיוּ גְּדוֹלִים מִמֶּנּוּ; עַל כֵּן אוֹתוֹ צִיָּנוּ וְהִזְכִּירוּ.
- 20 Now I need not rehearse the matter; what I have said may suffice. Behold, the scriptures are before you; if ye will wrest them it shall be to your own destruction.
- אִין לִי צָרָךְ לְחַזֵּר וּלְסַפֵּר עַל כֵּן, דִּי בְּאֶשֶׁר אִמַּרְתִּי. הִנֵּה כְּתָבֵי הַקֹּדֶשׁ לִפְנֵיכֶם, אִם תַּעֲזוּתוֹם אֶת אֲבִדְנֶכֶם תְּבִיאֻ:
- 21 And now it came to pass that when Alma had said these words unto them, he stretched forth his hand unto them and cried with a mighty
- וּבְאַמְרוֹ לָהֶם עֲלֵמָא אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, הוּא פָּשַׁט אֶת יָדוֹ אֲלֵיהֶם וְקָרָא בְּקוֹל גָּדוֹל



- לֹאמֹר: הִנֵּה הַעֵת לְתַשׁוּבָה, כִּי קָרוֹב לְבֹא  
יוֹם הַיְשׁוּעָה.
- 22 Yea, and the voice of the Lord, by the mouth of angels, doth declare it unto all nations; yea, doth declare it, that they may have glad tidings of great joy; yea, and he doth sound these glad tidings among all his people, yea, even to them that are scattered abroad upon the face of the earth; wherefore they have come unto us.
- וְקוֹל יְהוָה מְשַׁמֵּיעַ זֹאת לְכָל הָאֻמוֹת בְּפִי  
מַלְאָכִים. וְהוּא מְשַׁמֵּיעַ זֹאת לְמַעַן יִתְבַּשְּׂרוּ  
בְּשׂוֹרַת שְׂמִיחָה וְשִׂשׂוֹן. וְהוּא מְבַשֵּׂר אֶת  
בְּשׂוֹרַת הַשְׂמִיחָה הַזֹּאת בְּקֶרֶב כָּל עַמּוֹ, גַּם  
בְּאֲזֵי הָרְחוֹקִים הַנְּפוּצִים עַל פְּנֵי הָאָרֶץ. עַל  
כֵּן הִיא הַגִּיעָה עֲדֵינוּ.
- 23 And they are made known unto us in plain terms, that we may understand, that we cannot err; and this because of our being wanderers in a strange land; therefore, we are thus highly favored, for we have these glad tidings declared unto us in all parts of our vineyard.
- וְהִיא נִדְעָה לָנוּ בְּמַלְשֵׁי בְּרוּרֹת, לְמַעַן נִבְּיִן  
וְלֹא נִטְעָה; וְזֹאת מִפְּנֵי נְדוּדֵינוּ בָּאָרֶץ נִכְרִיָּה;  
הִנֵּה רַבָּה הַבְּכוּרָה אֲשֶׁר הֶעֱנָקָה לָנוּ, כִּי  
הַבְּשׂוֹרָה הַמְּשֻׁמָּחַת הַזֹּאת מְשַׁמַּעַת לָנוּ  
בְּכָל חִלְקֵי כְּרִמְנוֹ.
- 24 For behold, angels are declaring it unto many at this time in our land; and this is for the purpose of preparing the hearts of the children of men to receive his word at the time of his coming in his glory.
- כִּי הִנֵּה מְשַׁמֵּיעִים אוֹתָהּ עֲתָה מַלְאָכִים לְרַבִּים  
אֲשֶׁר בָּאָרְצֵנוּ; וְזֹאת בַּעֲבוּר הַכִּין אֶת לֵב בְּנֵי  
הָאָדָם לְקַבֵּל אֶת דְּבָרוֹ בְּעֵת בּוֹאוֹ בְּתִפְאָרְתּוֹ.
- 25 And now we only wait to hear the joyful news declared unto us by the mouth of angels, of his coming; for the time cometh, we know not how soon. Would to God that it might be in my day; but let it be sooner or later, in it I will rejoice.
- וְעַתָּה אֲנִי מַחְכִּים אֲנַחְנוּ לִשְׁמֹעַ מִפִּי מַלְאָכִים  
אֶת הַחֲדָשׁוֹת בּוֹאוֹ הַמְּשֻׁמָּחֹת; כִּי קָרֵב הַיּוֹם  
אֲנִי אֵינְנוּ יוֹדְעִים אֶת מוֹעֲדוֹ. יְהִי רָצוֹן מִלִּפְנֵי  
אֱלֹהִים כִּי יָבוֹא בְּיָמֵי, וְאִם יִקְדִּים אוֹ יֵאָחֶר,  
אֲשַׁמְּחָה בּוֹ.
- 26 And it shall be made known unto just and holy men, by the mouth of angels, at the time of his coming, that the words of our fathers may be fulfilled, according to that which they have spoken concerning him, which was according to the spirit of prophecy which was in them.
- וְיִוָּדַע הַדָּבָר לְצַדִּיקִים וְלְקָדוֹשִׁים מִפִּי  
מַלְאָכִים בְּעֵת בּוֹאוֹ, לְקִים אֶת דְּבָרֵי אֲבוֹתֵינוּ  
אֲשֶׁר דִּבְּרוּ עָלָיו, עַל פִּי רוּחַ הַנְּבוּאָה.
- 27 And now, my brethren, I wish from the inmost part of my heart, yea, with great anxiety even unto pain, that ye would hearken unto my words, and cast off your sins, and not procrastinate the day of your repentance;
- וְעַתָּה, אַחֵי, הֲנִי מְבַקֵּשׁ מֵעֵמֶק לִבִּי,  
בְּחִרְדָּה רַבָּה עַד כְּאַב, כִּי תִשְׁמְעוּ לְדִבְרֵי  
וְתִשְׁלִיכוּ חַטָּאֵיכֶם הֵלָאָה מִכֶּם וְלֹא תִדְחוּ  
אֶת יוֹם תְּשׁוּבַתְכֶם;
- 28 But that ye would humble yourselves before the Lord, and call on his holy name, and watch and pray continually, that ye may not be tempted above that which ye can bear, and thus be led by the Holy Spirit, becoming humble, meek, submissive, patient, full of love and all long-suffering;
- כִּי תִכְנַעוּ לִפְנֵי יְהוָה וְתִקְרְאוּ בְּשֵׁם קָדְשׁוֹ  
וְתִשְׁגִּיחוּ וְתִתְפַּלְלוּ תָמִיד, לְבַל יְבוֹאֲכֶם פְּתוּי  
גָּדוֹל מִיִּכְלָתְכֶם לְשֹׂאת; וְכֹךְ תוֹלִיכְכֶם רוּחַ  
הַקָּדֹשׁ וְתִהְיוּ שְׂפָלִים וְעֲנִיִּים וְנִכְנָעִים וְסַבְּלָנִים,  
מִלֵּאִים אֲהֶבָה וּמֵאֲרִיכִים אֶת אַפְכֶם;
- 29 Having faith on the Lord; having a hope that ye shall receive eternal life; having the love of God always in your hearts, that ye may be lifted up at the last day and enter into his rest.
- בְּהִיּוֹת לָכֶם אֲמוּנָה בַּיהוָה, וְתִקְוָה כִּי תִנָּחֵל  
חַיֵּי עוֹלָם, וּבְלִבְכֶם תָּמִיד אֲהַבַת אֱלֹהִים, לְמַעַן  
תִּתְנַשְּׂאוּ בַּיּוֹם הָאַחֲרוֹן וְתִבּוֹאוּ אֶל מְנוּחָתוֹ.

וְיִהְיֶה רְצוֹן מִלִּפְנֵי יְהוָה לָתֵת בְּלִבְכֶם נְחֵמָה  
עַל רָעַתְכֶם, לְמַעַן לֹא תִבְיֹאוּ עֲלֵיכֶם אֶת חֲרוֹן  
אַפּוֹ, וְלֹא תִאָּסְרוּ בַּחֲרָצְבוֹת שָׂאוֹל וְלֹא  
תִּבּוֹאֲכֶם מִיַּתָּה שְׁנִיָּה.

30 And may the Lord grant unto you repentance, that ye may not bring down his wrath upon you, that ye may not be bound down by the chains of hell, that ye may not suffer the second death.

וְעוֹד דְּבָרִים רַבִּים דִּבֶּר עֲלָמָא אֶל  
הָעָם, אֲשֶׁר אֵינָם כְּתוּבִים בַּסֵּפֶר הַזֶּה.

31 And Alma spake many more words unto the people, which are not written in this book.

## י

## 14

וַיְכַלּוּתוֹ לְדַבֵּר אֶל הָעָם, הֶאֱמִינוּ רַבִּים מֵהֶם  
לְדַבְּרֵיו וְהִחֲלוּ לְהִנָּחֵם מִחֲטָאֵיהֶם וּלְחַקֵּר  
בְּכִתְבֵי הַקִּדְשׁ.

1 And it came to pass after he had made an end of speaking unto the people many of them did believe on his words, and began to repent, and to search the scriptures.

אֶף רַבִּים חָפְצוּ לְכַלּוֹת אֶת עֲלָמָא וְאֶת  
עֲמוּלֵק, כִּי רָגְזוּ עַל עֲלָמָא, עַל דְּבָרָיו  
הַבְּרוּרִים אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר אֶל זְעִזְרוֹם; וְאֵף אָמְרוּ  
כִּי עֲמוּלֵק שָׁקַר לָהֶם וְגַדֵּף אֶת חֻקֵּיהֶם וְאֶת  
עוֹרְכֵי דִינָם וְאֶת שׁוֹפְטֵיהֶם.

2 But the more part of them were desirous that they might destroy Alma and Amulek; for they were angry with Alma, because of the plainness of his words unto Zeezrom; and they also said that Amulek had lied unto them, and had reviled against their law and also against their lawyers and judges.

וְהֵם רָגְזוּ עַל עֲלָמָא וְעַל עֲמוּלֵק. וַיַּעֲזֹבוּ  
אֲשֶׁר הָעִידוּ גְלוּיּוֹת עַל רְשָׁעָתָם, בְּקִשְׁוֹ  
לְכַלּוֹתָם בַּסֵּתֶר.

3 And they were also angry with Alma and Amulek; and because they had testified so plainly against their wickedness, they sought to put them away privily.

אֶף הֵם לֹא עָשׂוּ כֵן, כִּי אִם לָקְחוּ אוֹתָם  
וְאָסְרוּם בַּעֲבוּתֵיהֶם וַהֲבִיאוּם לִפְנֵי שׁוֹפֵט  
אֶרֶץ הָעֵלְיוֹן.

4 But it came to pass that they did not; but they took them and bound them with strong cords, and took them before the chief judge of the land.

וְהָאֲנָשִׁים נָגְשׁוּ וְהָעִידוּ עֲלֵיהֶם בְּאִמְרָם כִּי  
גִּדְּפוּ אֶת הָרוֹק, אֶת עוֹרְכֵי הַדִּין וְאֶת שׁוֹפְטֵי  
הָאֶרֶץ, וְכֵן אֶת כָּל הָעָם אֲשֶׁר בָּאֶרֶץ; וְהֵם אֵף  
הָעִידוּ עַל דְּבָרֵיהֶם כִּי יֵשׁ רֶק אֱלֹהִים אֶחָד, וְכִי  
יִשְׁלַח אֶת בְּנוֹ אֶל הָעָם, אֶף הוּא לֹא יוֹשִׁיעֵם.  
דְּבָרִים רַבִּים כְּאֵלֶּה הָעִידוּ הָאֲנָשִׁים עַל עֲלָמָא  
וְעַל עֲמוּלֵק; וְכָל זֹאת נַעֲשֶׂה לִפְנֵי שׁוֹפֵט  
אֶרֶץ הָעֵלְיוֹן.

5 And the people went forth and witnessed against them—testifying that they had reviled against the law, and their lawyers and judges of the land, and also of all the people that were in the land; and also testified that there was but one God, and that he should send his Son among the people, but he should not save them; and many such things did the people testify against Alma and Amulek. Now this was done before the chief judge of the land.

וְזֶעִזְרוֹם הִשְׁתּוֹמֵם עַל הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר  
נֶאֱמָרוּ; וְהוּא אֵף יָדַע עַל עוֹרוֹן הַדַּעַת אֲשֶׁר  
הֵסֵב לָעָם בְּדַבְּרֵי הַכָּזָב אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר; וּבְהַכְפִּירוֹ  
אֶת אִשְׁמֹתוֹ הַחֲלָה נִפְשׁוֹ לְהִצְיָקוֹ; אָכֵן,  
יִסּוּרֵי שָׂאוֹל סְבוּהוּ.

6 And it came to pass that Zeezrom was astonished at the words which had been spoken; and he also knew concerning the blindness of the minds, which he had caused among the people by his lying words; and his soul began to be harrowed up under a consciousness of his own guilt; yea, he began to be encircled about by the pains of hell.

וְהוּא קָרָא אֶל הָעָם לֵאמֹר: הִנְנִי אָשִׁם,  
וְהָאֲנָשִׁים הָאֵלֶּה נְקִיִּים מֵעוֹן לִפְנֵי אֱלֹהִים.  
וּמִן הַיּוֹם הַהוּא וְהָלָאָה הָיָה מְלַמֵּד עֲלֵיהֶם

7 And it came to pass that he began to cry unto the people, saying: Behold, I am guilty, and these men are spotless before God. And he began to plead for them from that time forth; but they reviled him,

זכות; ואולם העם גִּדְפוּהוּ וְאָמְרוּ לוֹ: הֲגַם  
אֶתְּהָ אֲחֻזָּה בְּרוּחַ הַשָּׁטָן? וְהֵם יָרְקוּ בְּפָנָיו  
וְהִדְיָחוּהוּ מִקִּרְבָּם, וְכֵן עָשׂוּ לְכָל אִשָּׁר  
הָאָמִינוּ לְדִבְרֵי עֲלָמָא וְעֲמוּלֵק. וְהֵם גִּרְשׁוּם  
וְשָׁלְחוּ בָהֶם אֲנָשִׁים לְרִגְמָם אָבוּ.

וְהֵם אָסְפוּ יַחַד אֶת נְשֵׁי הַמִּגְרָשִׁים וְאֶת  
יְלָדֵיהֶם, וְכָל אִשָּׁר הָאָמִינוּ אוֹ לְמַד לְהָאָמִין  
בְּדִבְרֵי אֱלֹהִים הַשֵּׁלֶף בָּאֵשׁ עַל פִּי פְקֻדָּתָם; וְכֵן  
עָשׂוּ לְכַתְּבֵי זְכוּנוֹתֵיהֶם אִשָּׁר בָּהֶם כְּתָבִי  
הַקֹּדֶשׁ; לְאֵשׁ הַשְּׁלִיכֻם, לְהַשְׂרֹף וּלְכַלּוֹת בָּהֶם.

וְהֵם לָקְחוּ אֶת עֲלָמָא וְאֶת עֲמוּלֵק וְנִשְׂאוּם אֶל  
מְקוֹם הַהוּצָאָה לְהוֹרֵג, לְמַעַן יֵרָאוּ בְּעֵינֵיהֶם  
אֶת כְּלִיּוֹן הָעוֹלָם עַל הַמוֹקֵד.

וּבְרֹאוֹת עֲמוּלֵק אֶת יְסוּרֵי הַנָּשִׁים וְהַטָּף  
הַנִּשְׂרָפִים בָּאֵשׁ, הֵצִיר לוֹ מַאֵד; וְהוּא אָמַר אֶל  
עֲלָמָא: אֵיכָה נִחְזֶה בְּמִרְאֵה הַנוֹרָא הַזֶּה?  
הֲבָה נִטֶּה אֶת יָדֵינוּ וְנַפְעִיל אֶת כַּח אֱלֹהִים  
אִשָּׁר בָּנוּ וְנַצִּילָם מִן הַלֵּהָבוֹת.

וְאָמַר אֵלָיו עֲלָמָא: רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ עוֹצָרֶת אוֹתִי  
מִפְּשֹׁט יָדִי; כִּי הִנֵּה מִקְבָּלָם יְהוָה אֵלָיו  
בְּתַפְאָרָה; וְהוּא מִתִּיר אֶת הַמַּעֲשֶׂה הַזֶּה, אֶת  
מַעֲשֶׂה הָעָם לְנִשְׂרָפִים, כְּפִי קָשִׁי לָבָם, לְמַעַן  
יִהְיֶה דִּינָם, אִשָּׁר יִחְרָץ עֲלֵיהֶם בְּעֶבְרָתוֹ,  
מִשְׁפַּט צֶדֶק. וְדָם הַזִּכָּאִים יִהְיֶה לְעֵד עֲלֵיהֶם,  
וְצִעוֹק יִצְעַק עֲלֵיהֶם בְּיוֹם הָאֲחִירוֹן.

וְעֲמוּלֵק אָמַר אֶל עֲלָמָא: אוֹלִי אִף אוֹתֵנוּ יִשְׂרְפוּ.

וְאָמַר עֲלָמָא: כִּרְצוֹן יְהוָה יִהְיֶה; אִף מְלֹאכְתָּנוּ  
לֹא תָמָה; לָכֵן לֹא יִשְׂרְפוּנוּ.

וּבָעִת אִשָּׁר אָכְלוּ גִּוִּיּוֹת הַמִּשְׁלָכִים בָּאֵשׁ,  
וְעִמָּהֶם הַכְּתָבִים אִשָּׁר הִשְׁלָכוּ לְשַׂרְפָּה, בָּא  
שׁוֹפֵט הָאָרֶץ הָעֲלִיּוֹן, וְעָמַד לִפְנֵי עֲלָמָא  
וְעֲמוּלֵק, אִשָּׁר הָיוּ כְּבוֹלִים, וְסָטֵר בִּידוֹ עַל  
לְחֵייהֶם, וְאָמַר אֲלֵיהֶם: אַחֵר הַדְּבָרִים אִשָּׁר  
רָאִיתֶם, הַתּוֹסִיפוּ לְהִטִּיף לָעָם הַזֶּה כִּי יִשְׁלָכוּ  
אֶל אֲגַם אֵשׁ וְגַפְרִית?

הִנֵּה רָאִיתֶם כִּי לֹא הָיָה בָכֶם כַּח לְהַצִּיל אֶת  
הַמִּשְׁלָכִים בָּאֵשׁ; אִף אֱלֹהִים לֹא הִצִּילָם עַל  
הַיּוֹתָם בְּנֵי אֱמוּנָתְכֶם. וְהַשּׁוֹפֵט סָטֵר עַל  
לְחֵייהֶם שְׁנִית וְשָׂאֵל: מַה תֹּאמְרוּ בְּעֶדְכֶם?

saying: Art thou also possessed with the devil? And they spit upon him, and cast him out from among them, and also all those who believed in the words which had been spoken by Alma and Amulek; and they cast them out, and sent men to cast stones at them.

8 And they brought their wives and children together, and whosoever believed or had been taught to believe in the word of God they caused that they should be cast into the fire, and they also brought forth their records which contained the holy scriptures, and cast them into the fire also, that they might be burned and destroyed by fire.

9 And it came to pass that they took Alma and Amulek, and carried them forth to the place of martyrdom, that they might witness the destruction of those who were consumed by fire.

10 And when Amulek saw the pains of the women and children who were consuming in the fire, he also was pained; and he said unto Alma: How can we witness this awful scene? Therefore let us stretch forth our hands, and exercise the power of God which is in us, and save them from the flames.

11 But Alma said unto him: The Spirit constraineth me that I must not stretch forth mine hand; for behold the Lord receiveth them up unto himself, in glory; and he doth suffer that they may do this thing, or that the people may do this thing unto them, according to the hardness of their hearts, that the judgments which he shall exercise upon them in his wrath may be just; and the blood of the innocent shall stand as a witness against them, yea, and cry mightily against them at the last day.

12 Now Amulek said unto Alma: Behold, perhaps they will burn us also.

13 And Alma said: Be it according to the will of the Lord. But, behold, our work is not finished; therefore they burn us not.

14 Now it came to pass that when the bodies of those who had been cast into the fire were consumed, and also the records which were cast in with them, the chief judge of the land came and stood before Alma and Amulek, as they were bound; and he smote them with his hand upon their cheeks, and said unto them: After what ye have seen, will ye preach again unto this people, that they shall be cast into a lake of fire and brimstone?

15 Behold, ye see that ye had not power to save those who had been cast into the fire; neither has God saved them because they were of thy faith. And the judge smote them again upon their cheeks, and asked: What say ye for yourselves?

- 16 Now this judge was after the order and faith of Nehor, who slew Gideon.  
וְהַשּׁוֹפֵט הַזֶּה הָלַךְ בְּדֶרֶךְ תּוֹרַת נְחוֹר אֲשֶׁר הָרַג אֶת גִּדְעוֹן וְכַאֲמוֹנָתוֹ.
- 17 And it came to pass that Alma and Amulek answered him nothing; and he smote them again, and delivered them to the officers to be cast into prison.  
וְעֲלָמָא וְעַמְלֵק לֹא עָנוּהוּ דְבָר; וְהוּא הוֹסִיף לְסַטֵּר עַל לַחְיֵיהֶם, וַיַּתֵּן בְּיַד הַפְּקִידִים לְכַלְאֵם בְּבֵית הַכְּלָא.
- 18 And when they had been cast into prison three days, there came many lawyers, and judges, and priests, and teachers, who were of the profession of Nehor; and they came in unto the prison to see them, and they questioned them about many words; but they answered them nothing.  
וְאַחַר שְׁלוֹשָׁה יָמִים לְהַכְלָאֵם, בָּאוּ עוֹרְכֵי דִין רַבִּים, וְשׁוֹפְטִים וְכֹהֲנִים וּמוֹרִים, אֲשֶׁר הָיוּ מִבְּנֵי אֲמוֹנַת נְחוֹר, אֵל בֵּית הַכְּלָא לְרְאוֹתָם. וְהֵם שְׁאַלוּם עַל דְּבָרִים רַבִּים, אַךְ הֵם לֹא עָנוּם.
- 19 And it came to pass that the judge stood before them, and said: Why do ye not answer the words of this people? Know ye not that I have power to deliver you up unto the flames? And he commanded them to speak; but they answered nothing.  
וְהַשּׁוֹפֵט עָמַד לִפְנֵיהֶם וְאָמַר: מַדּוּעַ אֵינְכֶם עוֹנִים עַל דְּבָרֵי הָעָם הַזֶּה? הֲיֵיתֶם יוֹדְעִים כִּי יֵשׁ לִי יָד לְשַׁלְחֶכֶם אֶל הַלֶּהָבוֹת? וְהוּא צִוָּם לְדַבֵּר, אַךְ הֵם לֹא עָנוּהוּ.
- 20 And it came to pass that they departed and went their ways, but came again on the morrow; and the judge also smote them again on their cheeks. And many came forth also, and smote them, saying: Will ye stand again and judge this people, and condemn our law? If ye have such great power why do ye not deliver yourselves?  
וְהֵם יָצְאוּ וְהָלְכוּ לְדַרְכָּם וּבָאוּ שֵׁנִית לַמַּחֲרָת. וְהַשּׁוֹפֵט שׁוּב הִכָּה אֶת לַחְיֵיהֶם, וְכֹן רַבִּים אַחֲרֵיהֶם בָּאוּ וְהִכּוּם וְאָמְרוּ לָהֶם: הֲתוֹסִיפוּ לַעֲמֹד וּלְשַׁפֵּט אֶת הָעָם הַזֶּה וּלְגַנוֹת אֶת חֻקֵּינוּ? אִם כֹּה רַב כֹּחְכֶם, מַדּוּעַ אֵינְכֶם מַחְלִצִים עַצְמְכֶם?
- 21 And many such things did they say unto them, gnashing their teeth upon them, and spitting upon them, and saying: How shall we look when we are damned?  
וְעוֹד דְּבָרִים רַבִּים כְּאֵלֶּה אָמְרוּ לָהֶם, וְחָרְקוּ עֲלֵיהֶם שׁוֹן וִירְקוּ בִּפְנֵיהֶם וְאָמְרוּ: מַה יִּהְיֶה מִרְאֵנוּ בְּבוֹא עָלֵינוּ חֶרְמָה?
- 22 And many such things, yea, all manner of such things did they say unto them; and thus they did mock them for many days. And they did withhold food from them that they might hunger, and water that they might thirst; and they also did take from them their clothes that they were naked; and thus they were bound with strong cords, and confined in prison.  
וְעוֹד דְּבָרִים רַבִּים כְּאֵלֶּה, אַכֹּן, כָּל מִינֵי דְבָרִים אֲשֶׁר כְּאֵלֶּה אָמְרוּ לָהֶם; וְכֹה לָעָגוּ לָהֶם יָמִים רַבִּים; וּמָנְעוּ מֵהֶם מֵאֲכָל בַּעֲבוּר הָרַעֲבָם וּמִשֶּׁתָּה בַּעֲבוּר הַצְּמִיאָם; וְהִפְשִׁיטוּ אֶת בְּגָדֵיהֶם לְתַתָּם עִרְמִים. כֹּה הֵם הָיוּ אֲסוּרִים בַּעֲבוּתִים, כְּלוּאִים בְּבֵית הַכְּלָא.
- 23 And it came to pass after they had thus suffered for many days, (and it was on the twelfth day, in the tenth month, in the tenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi) that the chief judge over the land of Ammonihah and many of their teachers and their lawyers went in unto the prison where Alma and Amulek were bound with cords.  
וְהָיָה בְּשָׁנִים עֶשֶׂר לַחֹדֶשׁ הָעֲשִׁירִי, בַּשָּׁנָה הָעֲשִׁירִית לְשִׁלְטוֹן הַשּׁוֹפְטִים בְּעַם נְפִי, אַחֲרֵי אֲשֶׁר סָבְלוּ כֹךְ עֲלָמָא וְעַמְלֵק יָמִים רַבִּים, וּבְעוֹדָם כְּבוּלִים בְּבֵית כְּלָאֵם, בָּא אֶלְיֵהֶם הַשּׁוֹפֵט הָעֲלִיוֹן לְאַרְצָא עַמּוֹנִיָּה, וְעַמּוֹ רַבִּים מִמוֹרֵי הָעָם וְעוֹרְכֵי הַדִּין.
- 24 And the chief judge stood before them, and smote them again, and said unto them: If ye have the power of God deliver yourselves from these bands, and then we will believe that the Lord will destroy this people according to your words.  
וְהַשּׁוֹפֵט הָעֲלִיוֹן עָמַד לִפְנֵיהֶם, וְהִכָּם עוֹד פַּעַם וְאָמַר אֲלֵיהֶם: אִם בְּיָדְכֶם כֹּחַ אֱלֹהִים, חֲלִצוּ עַצְמְכֶם מִן הַכְּבָלִים הָאֵלֶּה וְאַז נֶאֱמָן כִּי יִהְיֶה יִשְׁמִיד אֶת הָעָם הַזֶּה כְּדְבָרֵיכֶם.

25 And it came to pass that they all went forth and smote them, saying the same words, even until the last; and when the last had spoken unto them the power of God was upon Alma and Amulek, and they rose and stood upon their feet.

וְכָל־מִן בָּאוּ וְהִכּוּם, עַד אַחַד, וְשׁוּב אָמְרוּ לָהֶם אֶת אוֹתָם הַדְּבָרִים. וַיְדַבֵּר אֲלֵיהֶם אַחֲרוֹן הַבָּאִים הִיתָה יַד אֱלֹהִים עַל עֲלָמָא וְעַל עֲמוּלֶק, וְהֵם קָמוּ וַעֲמָדוּ עַל רַגְלֵיהֶם.

26 And Alma cried, saying: How long shall we suffer these great afflictions, O Lord? O Lord, give us strength according to our faith which is in Christ, even unto deliverance. And they broke the cords with which they were bound; and when the people saw this, they began to flee, for the fear of destruction had come upon them.

וְעֲלָמָא קָרָא לֵאמֹר: אֵהָהּ, יְהוָה, עַד אַנְהָ נִסְבֵּל אֶת הַיְסוּרִים הַגְּדוֹלִים הָאֵלֶּה? אָנָּה, יְהוָה, תִּנֶּה לָנוּ כַּח כְּפִי אֱמוּנָתִנוּ, אֲשֶׁר הִיא בְּמִשִּׁיחַ, לְהִנָּצֵל. וְהֵם נָתְקוּ אֶת הַחֲבָלִים אֲשֶׁר אָסְרוּם. וְכִרְאוֹת הָאֲנָשִׁים זֹאת הֵם הִחֲלוּ לִבְרוֹחַ, כִּי נָפַל עֲלֵיהֶם פַּחַד חֲרָפָנָם.

27 And it came to pass that so great was their fear that they fell to the earth, and did not obtain the outer door of the prison; and the earth shook mightily, and the walls of the prison were rent in twain, so that they fell to the earth; and the chief judge, and the lawyers, and priests, and teachers, who smote upon Alma and Amulek, were slain by the fall thereof.

וְכֵן גְּדוֹל הָיָה פַּחַדָּם, עַד כִּי נָפְלוּ לָאָרֶץ, וְלֹא הִגִּיעוּ עַד שַׁעַר בֵּית הַכְּלָא הַחִיצוֹן; וְהָאָרֶץ הִזְדַּעְזְעָה וְזָעָזְעָה, וְחוֹמוֹת בֵּית הַכְּלָא נִבְקְעוּ וְנָפְלוּ אַרְצָה, וְהַשּׁוֹפֵט הָעֶלְיוֹן וְעוֹרְכֵי הַדִּין וְהַכֹּהֲנִים וְהַמּוֹרִים אֲשֶׁר סָטְרוּ בְּפָנֵי עֲלָמָא וְעֲמוּלֶק נִהְרְגוּ תַּחַת הַמַּפֶּלֶת.

28 And Alma and Amulek came forth out of the prison, and they were not hurt; for the Lord had granted unto them power, according to their faith which was in Christ. And they straightway came forth out of the prison; and they were loosed from their bands; and the prison had fallen to the earth, and every soul within the walls thereof, save it were Alma and Amulek, was slain; and they straightway came forth into the city.

וְעֲלָמָא וְעֲמוּלֶק יָצְאוּ מִבֵּית הַכְּלָא בְּלֹא פְגַע, כִּי הָעֲנִיק לָהֶם יְהוָה כַּח כְּפִי אֱמוּנָתָם אֲשֶׁר בְּמִשִּׁיחַ. וְהֵם יָצְאוּ יָשָׁר הַחוּצָה מִבֵּית הַכְּלָא, חֲפָשִׁיִּים מִמּוֹסְרוֹתֵיהֶם; וּבֵית הַכְּלָא נָפַל אַרְצָה וְכָל נֶפֶשׁ אֲשֶׁר בֵּין חוֹמוֹת הַכְּלָא, זָוְלָת עֲלָמָא וְעֲמוּלֶק, נִהְרְגָה. וְהֵם הִישִׁירוּ דֶּרֶכָם הַעִירָה.

29 Now the people having heard a great noise came running together by multitudes to know the cause of it; and when they saw Alma and Amulek coming forth out of the prison, and the walls thereof had fallen to the earth, they were struck with great fear, and fled from the presence of Alma and Amulek even as a goat fleeth with her young from two lions; and thus they did flee from the presence of Alma and Amulek.

וְכַשְׁמַע הָעָם אֶת הָרֶעַשׁ הַגְּדוֹל, הֵם רָצוּ יַחַד בְּהִמּוּנָהֶם לָדַעַת אֶת סִבַּת הַדְּבָר; וּבִרְאוֹתָם אֶת עֲלָמָא וְאֶת עֲמוּלֶק יוֹצְאִים מִן הַכְּלָא, וְאֵת חוֹמוֹתָיו נוֹפְלוֹת אַרְצָה, הֵם הָיוּ בְּפַחַד גְּדוֹל, וְנָסוּ מִפָּנֵי עֲלָמָא וְעֲמוּלֶק כְּנוֹס הָעֵז עִם גִּדְיָהּ מִפָּנֵי צֶמֶד אַרְיוֹת. כֵּן נָסוּ מִפָּנֵי עֲלָמָא וְעֲמוּלֶק.

## טו

## 15

1 And it came to pass that Alma and Amulek were commanded to depart out of that city; and they departed, and came out even into the land of Sidom; and behold, there they found all the people who had departed out of the land of Ammonihah, who had been cast out and stoned, because they believed in the words of Alma.

וְעֲלָמָא וְעֲמוּלֶק הִצְטִווּ לִצְאָתָם מִן הָעִיר הַהִיא. וְהֵם הִלְכוּ וּבָאוּ אֶל אֶרֶץ צִידוֹם; וְהִנֵּה, שָׁם הֵם מָצְאוּ אֶת כָּל הָאֲנָשִׁים אֲשֶׁר גָּלוּ מֵאֶרֶץ עַמּוֹנִיָּה, אֲשֶׁר הִדְּחוּ וְנִרְגְּמוּ בְּאֲבָנִים עַל אֲשֶׁר הֶאֱמִינוּ בְּדִבְרֵי עֲלָמָא.

2 And they related unto them all that had happened unto their wives and children, and also concerning themselves, and of their power of deliverance.

וְהֵם סִפְּרוּ לָהֶם אֶת כָּל אֲשֶׁר קָרָה לְנִשְׁיָהֶם וּלְטַפָּם, וְכֵן עַל אוֹדוֹתֵיהֶם וְעַל כֹּחַם לְהִנָּצֵל.



- וְזִאזְרוֹם שָׁכַב חוֹלָה בְּצִידוֹם וְהָיָה קוֹדֶחַ בְּחַמוֹ, יַעַן אֲשֶׁר הִתְיַסֵּר מְאֹד בְּלִבּוֹ עַל רִשְׁעָתוֹ בְּדַמּוֹתוֹ בְּנַפְשׁוֹ כִּי עַלְמָא וְעַמּוּלֶק אֵינָם עוֹד; וְהוּא דָּמָה כִּי הֵם נִהְרְגוּ מִפְּנֵי עֲוֹנוֹ. וְהַחֲטָא הַגָּדוֹל הַזֶּה וְשָׂר חֲטָאֵי הָרַבִּים הֵצִיקוּ לְנַפְשׁוֹ, עַד כִּי גָבַר עָלָיו חֲלָיו לֹלָא מִרְפָּא; לָכֵן הֵחַל גּוֹפּוֹ לְצַרְבַּ בְּחַם לֹוְהָ.
- וְהָיָה בְּשִׁמְעוֹ כִּי עַלְמָא וְעַמּוּלֶק בָּאוּ אֶל אֶרֶץ צִידוֹם, הֵחַל לִבּוֹ לְהִתְגַּבֵּר, וּמִיַּד שָׁלַח אֲלֵיהֶם הוֹדְעָה לְהַפְצִירָם כִּי יָבוֹאוּ אֵלָיו.
- וְהֵם נִעְנֶוּ מִיַּד לְבִקְשָׁתוֹ אֲשֶׁר שָׁלַח אֲלֵיהֶם, וּבָאוּ אֶל הַבַּיִת, אֶל זִאזְרוֹם. וְהֵם מְצָאוּהוּ חוֹלָה, שׁוֹכֵב עַל מִטָּתוֹ, חֲלָשׁ מְאֹד וְהָחַם קוֹדֶחַ בּוֹ, וְנַפְשׁוֹ כּוֹאֶבֶת עָלָיו מְאֹד מִפְּנֵי עֲוֹנוֹתָיו; וְכַאֲשֶׁר רָאָה אוֹתָם הוּא פָּשַׁט אֶת יָדוֹ לִפְנֵיו וּבִקְשָׁם לְרַפָּא.
- וְעַלְמָא לָקַח אֶת זִאזְרוֹם בְּיָדוֹ וְאָמַר אֵלָיו: הֲתִאֲמִין בְּכֹחַ הַמְּשִׁיחַ לְהוֹשִׁיעַ?
- וְהוּא עָנָה וְאָמַר: כֵּן, מֵאֲמִין אֲנִי בְּכָל הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר לִמַּדְתָּ.
- וְאָמַר עַלְמָא: אִם מֵאֲמִין אַתָּה בְּגִאֲלַת הַמְּשִׁיחַ, תּוּכַל לְהִרְפָּא.
- וְהוּא אָמַר: אָכֵן, מֵאֲמִין אֲנִי בְּדְבָרֶיךָ.
- אָז קָרָא עַלְמָא אֶל יְהוָה לֵאמֹר: אָנָּה, יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵינוּ, רַחֵם עַל הָאִישׁ הַזֶּה וְרַפְּאֵהוּ כְּפִי אֲמוֹנָתוֹ אֲשֶׁר בְּמִשְׁיחַ.
- וְכַאֲמֹר עַלְמָא אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה קִפֵּץ זִאזְרוֹם עַל רַגְלָיו וְהֵחַל לָלֶכֶת. הַדְּבָר נַעֲשֶׂה לְמַרְבֵּה הַשְׁתּוֹמָמוֹת כָּל הָעָם, וְשִׁמּוּעָתוֹ פָּשְׁטָה בְּכָל אֶרֶץ צִידוֹם.
- וְעַלְמָא הִטְבִּיל אֶת זִאזְרוֹם אֶל יְהוָה; וּמִן הַיּוֹם הַהוּא וְהִלָּאָה הוּא הַטִּיף לָעָם.
- וְעַלְמָא יָסַד כְּנִסְיָהּ בְּאֶרֶץ צִידוֹם, וְקִדֵּשׁ כְּהֻנִּים וּמוֹרִים בְּאֶרֶץ, לְהִטְבִּיל אֶל יְהוָה כָּל אָדָם הַחֲפֵץ לְהִטְבֵּל.
- 3 And also Zeezrom lay sick at Sidom, with a burning fever, which was caused by the great tribulations of his mind on account of his wickedness, for he supposed that Alma and Amulek were no more; and he supposed that they had been slain because of his iniquity. And this great sin, and his many other sins, did harrow up his mind until it did become exceedingly sore, having no deliverance; therefore he began to be scorched with a burning heat.
- 4 Now, when he heard that Alma and Amulek were in the land of Sidom, his heart began to take courage; and he sent a message immediately unto them, desiring them to come unto him.
- 5 And it came to pass that they went immediately, obeying the message which he had sent unto them; and they went in unto the house unto Zeezrom; and they found him upon his bed, sick, being very low with a burning fever; and his mind also was exceedingly sore because of his iniquities; and when he saw them he stretched forth his hand, and besought them that they would heal him.
- 6 And it came to pass that Alma said unto him, taking him by the hand: Believest thou in the power of Christ unto salvation?
- 7 And he answered and said: Yea, I believe all the words that thou hast taught.
- 8 And Alma said: If thou believest in the redemption of Christ thou canst be healed.
- 9 And he said: Yea, I believe according to thy words.
- 10 And then Alma cried unto the Lord, saying: O Lord our God, have mercy on this man, and heal him according to his faith which is in Christ.
- 11 And when Alma had said these words, Zeezrom leaped upon his feet, and began to walk; and this was done to the great astonishment of all the people; and the knowledge of this went forth throughout all the land of Sidom.
- 12 And Alma baptized Zeezrom unto the Lord; and he began from that time forth to preach unto the people.
- 13 And Alma established a church in the land of Sidom, and consecrated priests and teachers in the land, to baptize unto the Lord whosoever were desirous to be baptized.

- 14 And it came to pass that they were many; for they did flock in from all the region round about Sidom, and were baptized.
- והם היו רבים, כי מכל סביבות צידום נהרו ונטבלו.
- 15 But as to the people that were in the land of Ammonihah, they yet remained a hard-hearted and a stiffnecked people; and they repented not of their sins, ascribing all the power of Alma and Amulek to the devil; for they were of the profession of Nehor, and did not believe in the repentance of their sins.
- ואולם אנשי ארץ עמוניהה ושאר קשי לב וקשי ערף; והם לא שבו מחטאתיהם באמרם כי כל כח עלמא ועמולק מאת השטן הוא, כי הם היו בני תורת נחור ולא האמינו בתשובה מחטאתיהם.
- 16 And it came to pass that Alma and Amulek, Amulek having forsaken all his gold, and silver, and his precious things, which were in the land of Ammonihah, for the word of God, he being rejected by those who were once his friends and also by his father and his kindred;
- ועמולק עזב את כל זהבו וכספו ויקרותיו אשר בארץ עמוניהה, בעבור דבר אלהים, כי רחקו ממנו חביריו אשר היו רעים לו וכן עשו אביו ומשפחתו.
- 17 Therefore, after Alma having established the church at Sidom, seeing a great check, yea, seeing that the people were checked as to the pride of their hearts, and began to humble themselves before God, and began to assemble themselves together at their sanctuaries to worship God before the altar, watching and praying continually, that they might be delivered from Satan, and from death, and from destruction—
- ועלמא, אחר כוננו את הכנסייה בצידום, ובראותו בלימה גדולה, כי האנשים נבלמו מהתנשא בגאות לבם ונכנעו לפני אלהים, והחלו להתכנס במקדשיהם לעבד את אלהים לפני המזבח, והשגיחו והתפללו תמיד למען ינצלו מן השטן וממות ומאבדון;
- 18 Now as I said, Alma having seen all these things, therefore he took Amulek and came over to the land of Zarahemla, and took him to his own house, and did administer unto him in his tribulations, and strengthened him in the Lord.
- אכן, כראות עלמא את כל אלה, הוא לקח את עמולק עמו ובא אל ארץ זרעהמלה, והביאו אל ביתו, ונחמהו בצרתו, וחקקהו ביהוה.
- 19 And thus ended the tenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.
- כה כלתה השנה העשירית לשלטון השופטים בעם נפי.

## 16

## טז

- 1 And it came to pass in the eleventh year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, on the fifth day of the second month, there having been much peace in the land of Zarahemla, there having been no wars nor contentions for a certain number of years, even until the fifth day of the second month in the eleventh year, there was a cry of war heard throughout the land.
- והיה בשנת אחת עשרה לשלטון השופטים בעם נפי, ביום החמישי לחודש השני, אחר אשר היה שלום רב בארץ זרעהמלה, בלא מלחמה ובלא ריב שנים אחדות, עד היום ההוא, נשמעה זעקת מלחמה בכל הארץ.
- 2 For behold, the armies of the Lamanites had come in upon the wilderness side, into the borders of the land, even into the city of Ammonihah, and began to slay the people and destroy the city.
- כי הנה חילות הלמנים פלשו אל עבר היער אשר בגבול הארץ, ובאו על העיר עמוניהה והחלו להרג את יושביה ולהחריבה.
- 3 And now it came to pass, before the Nephites could raise a sufficient army to drive them out of the land, they had destroyed the people who were in the city of Ammonihah, and also some around the borders of Noah, and taken others captive into the wilderness.
- ובטרם יכלו הנפיים למנות חיל לגרשם מן הארץ, השמידו הלמנים את העם אשר בעיר עמוניהה, והרגו אנשים בסביבת גבולות נח, ואף שבו אחרים ולקחום אל היער.

- וְהַנְפִיִּים חָפְצוּ לְהַשִּׁיב אֶת הַשְּׁבוּיִים אֲשֶׁר הוּבְלוּ בַשָּׁבִי אֶל הַיַּעַר.
- 4 Now it came to pass that the Nephites were desirous to obtain those who had been carried away captive into the wilderness.
- וְאִישׁ אֶחָד מִנֵּה לִהְיוֹת הַמְּפָקֵד הָרָאשִׁי לְחִילוֹת הַנְּפִיִּים. וְשֵׁמוֹ נְקָרָא זֹרָם, וְשְׁמוֹת שְׁנֵי בָנָיו לְחִי וְאַחָא. וְזֹרָם וּשְׁנֵי בָנָיו הָלְכוּ אֶל עֲלָמָא, כִּי יָדְעוּ כִּי הוּא הִכְהֵן הַגָּדוֹל בְּכִנְסָיָהּ, וְאַף שָׁמְעוּ כִּי רוּחַ הַנְּבוּאָה בְּקִרְבּוֹ; לָכֵן הֵם בִּקְשׁוּ לָדַעַת מִמֶּנּוּ אֶת רְצוֹן יְהוָה, אֲנֵה יֵלְכוּ בַּיַּעַר וַיַּחפְּשׂוּ אֶת עַמִּיתֵיהֶם אֲשֶׁר נִלְקְחוּ בַשָּׁבִי הַלְּמָנִים.
- 5 Therefore, he that had been appointed chief captain over the armies of the Nephites, (and his name was Zoram, and he had two sons, Lehi and Aha)—now Zoram and his two sons, knowing that Alma was high priest over the church, and having heard that he had the spirit of prophecy, therefore they went unto him and desired of him to know whither the Lord would that they should go into the wilderness in search of their brethren, who had been taken captive by the Lamanites.
- וְעֲלָמָא שָׁאַל אֶת יְהוָה עַל הַדָּבָר הַזֶּה, וּכְשׁוּבוֹ אֶלֵּיהֶם אָמַר: הִנֵּה יַחַצוּ הַלְּמָנִים אֶת נְהַר צִידוֹן בַּיַּעַר הַדְּרוֹמִי הַרְחֵק מֵעֵבֶר לְגִבּוֹל אֶרֶץ מְנַטִּי; שָׁם תִּפְגְּשׁוּם, בְּמִזְרַח נְהַר צִידוֹן, וְשָׁם יִמְסְרוּ יְהוָה לְיָדְכֶם אֶת עַמִּיתֵיכֶם שְׁבוּיֵי הַלְּמָנִים.
- 6 And it came to pass that Alma inquired of the Lord concerning the matter. And Alma returned and said unto them: Behold, the Lamanites will cross the river Sidon in the south wilderness, away up beyond the borders of the land of Manti. And behold there shall ye meet them, on the east of the river Sidon, and there the Lord will deliver unto thee thy brethren who have been taken captive by the Lamanites.
- וְזֹרָם וּבָנָיו חָצוּ בְּרָאשׁ צָבָאֵם אֶת נְהַר צִידוֹן וְנָסְעוּ אֶל הַיַּעַר הַדְּרוֹמִי אֲשֶׁר מִמְּזָרַח לְגִדַּת נְהַר צִידוֹן, מֵעֵבֶר לְגִבּוֹל מְנַטִּי.
- 7 And it came to pass that Zoram and his sons crossed over the river Sidon, with their armies, and marched away beyond the borders of Manti into the south wilderness, which was on the east side of the river Sidon.
- וּכְבוֹאֵם עַל חִילוֹת הַלְּמָנִים, נָפְצוּ הַלְּמָנִים וְנִסְגּוּ אֶל הַיַּעַר. וְהֵם לָקְחוּ אֶת עַמִּיתֵיהֶם, שְׁבוּיֵי הַלְּמָנִים, וַיְהִיבֵם אֶל אֶרֶץ נַחֲלָתָם. וּמִן הַשְּׁבוּיִים לֹא הָיְתָה כָּל אִבְדָּה בְּנַפְשׁ.
- 8 And they came upon the armies of the Lamanites, and the Lamanites were scattered and driven into the wilderness; and they took their brethren who had been taken captive by the Lamanites, and there was not one soul of them had been lost that were taken captive. And they were brought by their brethren to possess their own lands.
- כֹּה כָּלְתָה שְׁנַת אַחַת עֶשְׂרֵה לְשִׁלְטוֹן הַשּׁוֹפְטִים, וְכֹה גָּרְשׁוּ הַלְּמָנִים מִן הָאָרֶץ וְאֲנָשֵׁי עַמּוֹנִיָּהּ הַשְּׂמָדוּ; אַכֵּן, כָּל נֶפֶשׁ חִיָּה מִן הָעַמּוֹנִיָּהִים אִבְדָּה וְשִׁרָם הַגָּדוֹלָה חָרְבָה, אֲשֶׁר אֲנָשִׁיָּהּ אָמְרוּ כִּי לֹא יוּכַל אֱלֹהִים לְאַבְדָּהּ, כִּי גְדוֹלָה הִיא.
- 9 And thus ended the eleventh year of the judges, the Lamanites having been driven out of the land, and the people of Ammonihah were destroyed; yea, every living soul of the Ammonihahites was destroyed, and also their great city, which they said God could not destroy, because of its greatness.
- וְהֵנָּה, בְּיוֹם אֶחָד שָׁמְמָה עַמּוֹנִיָּהּ וּפְגָרֵי יוֹשְׁבֵיהָ הָיוּ טָרֶף לְכָלְבִּים וּלְחַיֵּית הַשָּׂדֶה.
- 10 But behold, in one day it was left desolate; and the carcasses were mangled by dogs and wild beasts of the wilderness.
- וְאוּלָּם, אַחֵר יָמִים רַבִּים, נִעְרְמוּ גְוִיֹּתֵיהֶם עַל פְּנֵי הָאֲדָמָה וְכִסּוּ בַשִּׁכְבַּת עֶפְרָ דָּקָה. וְלֹא בָּאוּ אֲנָשִׁים לְהַתְנַחֵל בָּאָרֶץ עַמּוֹנִיָּהּ שְׁנִים רַבּוֹת מִפְּנֵי צַחֲנַת הַפְּגָרִים הָעֶזְזָה. וְהִיא נִקְרָאָה חֲרַבַּת הַנְּחֹרִים. כִּי הָיוּ הַמֵּתִים בְּנֵי אַמּוֹנִית נְחֹר, וְאֶרֶצָם נִשְׁאַרָה שְׁמָמָה.
- 11 Nevertheless, after many days their dead bodies were heaped up upon the face of the earth, and they were covered with a shallow covering. And now so great was the scent thereof that the people did not go in to possess the land of Ammonihah for many years. And it was called Desolation of Nehors; for they were of the profession of Nehor, who were slain; and their lands remained desolate.

- 12 And the Lamanites did not come again to war against the Nephites until the fourteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi. And thus for three years did the people of Nephi have continual peace in all the land.
- וְהַלְמָנִים לֹא הוֹסִיפוּ לְצֹאת עוֹד לְמִלְחָמָה עַל הַנְּפִיִּים עַד שְׁנַת אַרְבַּע עָשָׂרָה לְשִׁלְטוֹן הַשּׁוֹפְטִים בָּעַם נְפִי. כִּךָּ הָיָה לַנְּפִיִּים שָׁלוֹם בְּכָל הָאָרֶץ שְׁלֹשׁ שָׁנִים.
- 13 And Alma and Amulek went forth preaching repentance to the people in their temples, and in their sanctuaries, and also in their synagogues, which were built after the manner of the Jews.
- וְעֲלָמָא וְעַמּוּלֵק הֵלְכוּ אֶל הָעָם לְקַרְאָם לְתַשׁוּבָה, בְּמִקְדָּשָׁיו וְגַם בְּבֵתֵי הַכְּנָסֶת אֲשֶׁר נִבְנוּ כְּדֶרֶךְ הַיְּהוּדִים.
- 14 And as many as would hear their words, unto them they did impart the word of God, without any respect of persons, continually.
- וְהֵם חִלְקוּ אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים עִם כָּל אֲשֶׁר חָפֵץ לִשְׁמָע אֶת דְּבָרֵיהֶם, בְּלֹא מִשְׁוֹא פָנִים לְאִישׁ, כָּל הַעֵת הַהִיא.
- 15 And thus did Alma and Amulek go forth, and also many more who had been chosen for the work, to preach the word throughout all the land. And the establishment of the church became general throughout the land, in all the region round about, among all the people of the Nephites.
- כֹּה הִתְהַלְכוּ עֲלָמָא וְעַמּוּלֵק וְעוֹד רַבִּים אֲשֶׁר נִבְחָרוּ לְמַלְאכָה, לְהַשִּׁיף אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים בְּכָל רְחֹבֵי הָאָרֶץ. וְכִנּוּן הַכְּנִסְיָה נִהְיָה דְּבַר כָּלְלִי בְּרַחֲבֵי הָאָרֶץ, בְּכָל הָאֲזוּר אֲשֶׁר סָבִיב, בְּקֶרֶב כָּל עַם הַנְּפִיִּים.
- 16 And there was no inequality among them; the Lord did pour out his Spirit on all the face of the land to prepare the minds of the children of men, or to prepare their hearts to receive the word which should be taught among them at the time of his coming—
- וְלֹא הָיָה הַעֲדָר שְׁוִיוֹן בֵּינֵיהֶם; וַיְהִי שִׁפְפוֹ אֶת רוּחוֹ עַל פְּנֵי כָל הָאָרֶץ לְהַכִּין אֶת דַּעַת בְּנֵי הָאָדָם וְאֶת לִבָּם לְקַבֵּל אֶת דְּבָרוֹ אֲשֶׁר יִלְמְדוּהוּ בְּקֶרֶבָם בַּעֵת בּוֹאוֹ;
- 17 That they might not be hardened against the word, that they might not be unbelieving, and go on to destruction, but that they might receive the word with joy, and as a branch be grafted into the true vine, that they might enter into the rest of the Lord their God.
- לְמַעַן לֹא יִהְיוּ קָשִׁים עַל דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים וּבַעֲבוּר לֹא יִהְיוּ חֲסָרֵי אֱמוּנָה, וְיִלְכוּ לְכַלְיוֹן; כִּי אִם יוֹכְלוּ לְקַבֵּל אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים בְּשִׂמְחָה וַיְהִי כִכְנָה אֲשֶׁר מִרְפַּבֵּת עַל גֶּפֶן הָאֱמֶת לְמַעַן יָבוֹאוּ אֶל מְנוּחַת יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵיהֶם.
- 18 Now those priests who did go forth among the people did preach against all lyings, and deceivings, and envyings, and strifes, and malice, and revilings, and stealing, robbing, plundering, murdering, committing adultery, and all manner of lasciviousness, crying that these things ought not so to be—
- וְהַכֹּהֲנִים אֲשֶׁר הֵלְכוּ אֶל הָעָם הִסִּיפוּ נֹגֵד כָּל קֶזֶב וּמִרְמָה, קִנְאָה וּמִדָּנִים, אִיבָה וּגְדוּף, גִּנְבָה, שָׂד וְגֵזֶל, רִצָּח, נָאוֹף וְכָל מִינֵי זִמָּה, וְקִרְאוּ בְּקוֹל גָּדוֹל כִּי אֲסוּרִים הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה.
- 19 Holding forth things which must shortly come; yea, holding forth the coming of the Son of God, his sufferings and death, and also the resurrection of the dead.
- וְהֵם נֹאֲמוּ עַל דְּבָרִים הַקְּרִבִּים לְבּוֹא; אָכֵן, עַל בּוֹא בֶן אֱלֹהִים, סְבִלּוֹתָיו וּמוֹתוֹ, וְכֵן עַל תַּחֲיַת הַמֵּתִים.
- 20 And many of the people did inquire concerning the place where the Son of God should come; and they were taught that he would appear unto them after his resurrection; and this the people did hear with great joy and gladness.
- וְרַבִּים מִן הָעָם שָׁאֲלוּ עַל מְקוֹם בּוֹא שֶׁל בֶּן אֱלֹהִים; וְהֵם לְמַדּוּ כִּי הוּא יוֹפִיעַ אֲלֵיהֶם אַחֵר תַּחֲיָתוֹ; וְהַדְּבַר הִסִּב לָהֶם רַב שִׂשׂוֹן וְשִׂמְחָה.
- 21 And now after the church had been established throughout all the land—having got the victory over the devil, and the word of God being
- כֹּה כּוֹנְנָה הַכְּנִסְיָה בְּכָל הָאָרֶץ, אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר הִשֵּׁג הַנִּצְחוֹן עַל הַשָּׂטָן, וְדְבַר אֱלֹהִים

בְּטַהֲרָתוֹ נִקְרָא בְּכָל הָאָרֶץ, וַיְהוֶה עֲרָה אֶת  
בְּרַכְתּוֹ עַל הָעָם. וּבִזְמַת כְּלָתָה שְׁנַת אַרְבַּע  
עָשָׂרָה לְשִׁלְטוֹן הַשּׁוֹפְטִים בָּעָם נָפִי.

preached in its purity in all the land, and the Lord pouring out his  
blessings upon the people—thus ended the fourteenth year of the reign  
of the judges over the people of Nephi.

מַעֲשֵׂה בְנֵי מוֹשִׁיעַ אֲשֶׁר מָאָסוּ בְּזִכּוֹתָם לַמֶּלֶךְ,  
לְמַעַן דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים, וַעֲלוּ אֶל אֶרֶץ נָפִי לְהַטִּיף  
בְּקֶרֶב הַלְּמָנִים; סָפּוּר סְבִלּוֹתֵיהֶם וְהַצִּלָּתָם, עַל  
פִּי כְתָבִי עֲלֵמָא (בְּעֶרְךָ 91–77 לְפָנֵי הַסְפִּירָה).  
נִכְלָל בַּפָּרָקִים יז–כז.

*An account of the sons of Mosiah, who rejected their rights to the kingdom  
for the word of God, and went up to the land of Nephi to preach to the  
Lamanites. Their sufferings and deliverance, according to the record of  
Alma. (About 91–77 B.C.) Comprising chapters 17–27.*

## יז

## 17

וַהֲיָה בְּנִסְעָה עֲלֵמָא מֵאֶרֶץ גִּדְעוֹן דְּרוּמָה  
לְעֵבֶר אֶרֶץ מַנְטִי, וַהֲנִה, לְמַרְבֵּה פְּלִיאָתוֹ,  
הוּא פָּגַשׁ אֶת בְּנֵי מוֹשִׁיעַ אֲשֶׁר נָסְעוּ לְעֵבֶר  
אֶרֶץ זֶרַחֵמְלָה.

1 And now it came to pass that as Alma was journeying from the  
land of Gideon southward, away to the land of Manti, behold, to his  
astonishment, he met with the sons of Mosiah journeying towards the  
land of Zarahemla.

וּבְנֵי מוֹשִׁיעַ הָאֵלֶּה הָיוּ עִם עֲלֵמָא בְּעַת אֲשֶׁר  
הוֹפִיעַ לְפָנָיו הַמֶּלֶךְ בְּרִאשׁוֹנָה. לָכֵן שָׂמַח  
עֲלֵמָא עַד מְאֹד בְּרִאשׁוֹתוֹ אוֹתָם; וְשִׂמְחָתוֹ  
גָּדְלָה שְׁבַעֲתִים בְּרִאשׁוֹתוֹ כִּי הֵם נִשְׁאָרוּ אִתּוֹ  
לְאַמּוּנָה בִּיהוּה. וְהֵם הִתְחַזְּקוּ בַּיָּדֵי עַת  
הָאֶמֶת; כִּי הֵם הָיוּ אֲנָשִׁים נְבוֹנִים וְהִתְבּוֹנְנוּ  
בְּשִׁקְיָתָם לַחֲקֹר בְּכִתְבֵי הַקֹּדֶשׁ, בַּעֲבוּר  
יָדְעוּ אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים.

2 Now these sons of Mosiah were with Alma at the time the angel first  
appeared unto him; therefore Alma did rejoice exceedingly to see his  
brethren; and what added more to his joy, they were still his brethren in  
the Lord; yea, and they had waxed strong in the knowledge of the truth;  
for they were men of a sound understanding and they had searched the  
scriptures diligently, that they might know the word of God.

וְאֵין זֹאת הַכֹּל; הֵם הִתְמַסְּרוּ לְתַפְלָה רַבָּה  
וּלְצוּם. לָכֵן שָׂרוּ עֲלֵיהֶם רוּחַ הַנְּבוּאָה וְרוּחַ  
הַהִתְגַּלּוּת וְכַאֲשֶׁר לְמִדּוֹ, הָיָה זֶה בַּעַז מֵאֵת  
אֱלֹהִים וּבְסִמְכוּתוֹ.

3 But this is not all; they had given themselves to much prayer, and fasting;  
therefore they had the spirit of prophecy, and the spirit of revelation,  
and when they taught, they taught with power and authority of God.

וְהֵם לְמִדּוֹ אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים בְּמִשְׁוֹ אַרְבַּע  
עָשָׂרָה שָׁנָה בְּקֶרֶב הַלְּמָנִים; וְהָיְתָה לָהֶם  
הַצִּלָּחָה מְרִבָּה בְּהַבִּיאֵם רַבִּים לַיָּדֵי עַת  
הָאֶמֶת; אֲכֹן, בָּכַח דְּבָרֵיהֶם בָּאוּ רַבִּים לְפָנָיו  
מִזִּבְחַת אֱלֹהִים, לְקִרְאָה בְּשִׁמּוֹ וּלְהִתְנוּדוֹת לְפָנָיו  
עַל חַטָּאֵיהֶם.

4 And they had been teaching the word of God for the space of fourteen  
years among the Lamanites, having had much success in bringing  
many to the knowledge of the truth; yea, by the power of their words  
many were brought before the altar of God, to call on his name and  
confess their sins before him.

וְאֵלֶּה הַמַּאֲרָעוֹת אֲשֶׁר קָרוּ בְּמִסְעֵיהֶם,  
כִּי רַבָּה הָיְתָה תְּלָאָתָם. וְהֵם סָבְלוּ רַבּוֹת  
בְּגוּף וּבְנַפְשׁ, רָעָב, צָמָא וְיָגַע, וְנַפְשָׁם  
רָאָתָה עֲמַל רַב.

5 Now these are the circumstances which attended them in their  
journeyings, for they had many afflictions; they did suffer much, both  
in body and in mind, such as hunger, thirst and fatigue, and also much  
labor in the spirit.

וְאֵלֶּה מִסְעֵיהֶם: הֵם עָזְבוּ אֶת אֲבִיהֶם, מוֹשִׁיעַ,  
בְּשָׁנָה הָרִאשׁוֹנָה לְשִׁלְטוֹן הַשּׁוֹפְטִים, כִּי סָרְבוּ

6 Now these were their journeyings: Having taken leave of their father,  
Mosiah, in the first year of the reign of the judges; having refused the



לְקַבֵּל אֶת הַמְּלוּכָה אֲשֶׁר חָפֵץ אֲבִיהֶם  
לְהַנְחִילָם, וְאֵף בְּדַעַת הָעָם הָיָה לְהַמְּלִיכָם.

וְהֵם יֵצְאוּ מֵאֶרֶץ זֶרַחֶמְלָה, וְעִמָּהֶם  
חֶרְבוֹתֵיהֶם וְחִנִּיתוֹתֵיהֶם, קִשְׁתוֹתֵיהֶם וְחִצֵּיהֶם  
וְכָלֵי קֶלָעַם. וְזֹאת עָשׂוּ בְּעִבּוֹר יוֹכְלוֹ לְסַפֵּק  
אֶת מִזּוֹנָם בַּיַּעַר.

וְהֵם יֵצְאוּ אֶל הַיַּעַר עִם מִתֵּי מִסְפָּר אֲשֶׁר  
בָּחָרוּ לַעֲלוֹת אֶל אֶרֶץ נִפְי, לְמַעַן הִטִּיף אֶת  
דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים לְלַמְּנִים.

וְהֵם נִסְעוּ יָמִים רַבִּים בַּיַּעֲרוֹת וְהִרְבוּ לְצוֹם  
וּלְהִתְפַּלֵּל אֶל יְהוָה כִּי יִתֵּן לָהֶם מְרוּחוֹ לְהִיּוֹת  
עִמָּהֶם וּלְשָׁכֵן בָּם. וְזֹאת עָשׂוּ לְמַעַן יִהְיוּ כְּלִי  
שֵׁרָת בְּיַד אֱלֹהִים לְהָבִיא, כְּכֹל הָאֲפָשָׁר, אֶת  
אֲחֵיהֶם, הַלְּמָנִים, לִידְעֵת הָאֱמֻנָה לִידְעֵת  
קְלוֹן מִסֵּרַת אֲבוֹתֵיהֶם, אֲשֶׁר אֵינָה נְכוֹנָה.

וַיְהִי כִּשְׁעוֹ פָּקָדָם בְּרוּחוֹ וְאָמַר אֲלֵיהֶם: הִנֵּחֶמוּ.  
וְהֵם נִחְמָו.

וְעוֹד אָמַר אֲלֵיהֶם יְהוָה: לָכוּ אֶל הַלְּמָנִים,  
אֲחֵיכֶם, וְכוֹנְנוּ אֶת דְּבָרִי; וְהִתְאַוְּרֶתֶם אַרְוֹ  
רוּחַ בְּסִבְלָכֶם וּבְמִצּוֹקְכֶם, לְמַעַן תִּשְׁמְשׁוּ  
לָהֶם בִּי דִגְמָה טוֹבָה, וְאֲנִי אֶעֱשֶׂכֶם כְּלִי  
שֵׁרָת בְּיַדִּי לְהוֹשִׁיעַ נַפְשוֹת רַבּוֹת.

וּבְנֵי מוֹשִׁיעַ הִתְאַוְּרוּ עַד בִּלְבָבָם,  
וְכֵן הָהוֹלְכִים עִמָּם, לָלֶכֶת אֶל הַלְּמָנִים  
וּלְהַשְׁמִיעַם אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים.

וְהָיָה בְּבוֹאָם אֶל גְּבוּל אֶרֶץ הַלְּמָנִים, הֵם  
נִפְרְדוּ אִישׁ מֵעַל אֲחִיו בְּשִׂמָּה מְבֹסָסָה  
בִּיהוּהוּ כִּי יָשׁוּבוּ וַיִּפְגְּשׁוּ לַעֲת הַקִּצֵּיר, כִּי הָבִינוּ  
אֶת גֹּדֶל הַמַּעֲשֶׂה אֲשֶׁר קָבְלוּ עֲלֵיהֶם לְבַצֵּעוֹ.

וְאִמְנָם גְּדוֹלָה הָיְתָה הַמְּשִׁימָה, כִּי הֵם קָבְלוּ  
עֲלֵיהֶם לְהִטִּיף אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים לָעַם פָּרָא,  
קָשָׁה וְאִכְזָר; עִם אֲשֶׁר עָלָץ לְהַרְגֹּת אֶת הַנְּפִיִּים,  
לְגוֹל מֵהֶם וּלְבָזֵּם, אֲשֶׁר שָׁתוּ לָבָם אֶל הַבָּצֵעַ,  
אֶל זָהָב וְכֶסֶף וְאֲבִנֵי יָקָר; וְאֵת אֵלֶּה בִקְשׁוּ  
לְתַפֵּשׁ בְּרָצָח וּבְבָזָה, בְּעִבּוֹר יִנְחָלוּם בְּלֹא  
עֲמַל כְּפִיָּם.

kingdom which their father was desirous to confer upon them, and  
also this was the minds of the people;

7 Nevertheless they departed out of the land of Zarahemla, and took their  
swords, and their spears, and their bows, and their arrows, and their  
slings; and this they did that they might provide food for themselves  
while in the wilderness.

8 And thus they departed into the wilderness with their numbers which  
they had selected, to go up to the land of Nephi, to preach the word of  
God unto the Lamanites.

9 And it came to pass that they journeyed many days in the wilderness,  
and they fasted much and prayed much that the Lord would grant unto  
them a portion of his Spirit to go with them, and abide with them, that  
they might be an instrument in the hands of God to bring, if it were  
possible, their brethren, the Lamanites, to the knowledge of the truth,  
to the knowledge of the baseness of the traditions of their fathers,  
which were not correct.

10 And it came to pass that the Lord did visit them with his Spirit, and  
said unto them: Be comforted. And they were comforted.

11 And the Lord said unto them also: Go forth among the Lamanites,  
thy brethren, and establish my word; yet ye shall be patient in long-  
suffering and afflictions, that ye may show forth good examples unto  
them in me, and I will make an instrument of thee in my hands unto  
the salvation of many souls.

12 And it came to pass that the hearts of the sons of Mosiah, and also those  
who were with them, took courage to go forth unto the Lamanites to  
declare unto them the word of God.

13 And it came to pass when they had arrived in the borders of the land of  
the Lamanites, that they separated themselves and departed one from  
another, trusting in the Lord that they should meet again at the close  
of their harvest; for they supposed that great was the work which they  
had undertaken.

14 And assuredly it was great, for they had undertaken to preach the  
word of God to a wild and a hardened and a ferocious people; a  
people who delighted in murdering the Nephites, and robbing and  
plundering them; and their hearts were set upon riches, or upon gold  
and silver, and precious stones; yet they sought to obtain these things  
by murdering and plundering, that they might not labor for them with  
their own hands.

- 15 וְהֵם הָיוּ עִם אוֹהֵב בְּטָלָה, וְרַבִּים מֵהֶם עָבְדוּ פְּסִילִים. וְקָלַלְתָּ אֱלֹהִים הָיְתָה עֲלֵיהֶם מִפְּנֵי מִסֵּרְתָּ אֲבוֹתֵיהֶם; וְאוֹלָם דְּבָרֵי בְרִית יְהוָה נִתְּנוּ לָהֶם בְּתִנָּאִי שִׁינְחָמוּ מִרְעָתָם.
- 16 Therefore they were a very indolent people, many of whom did worship idols, and the curse of God had fallen upon them because of the traditions of their fathers; notwithstanding the promises of the Lord were extended unto them on the conditions of repentance.
- מִפְּנֵי זֹאת קִבְּלוּ עֲלֵיהֶם בְּנֵי מוֹשִׁיעַ אֶת הַמְּלָאכָה; אוֹלֵי יִסְבוּם לָשׁוּב מִרְעָתָם; אוֹלֵי יִסְבוּם לָדַעַת אֶת תְּכֵנִית הַגְּאֻלָּה.
- 16 Therefore, this was the cause for which the sons of Mosiah had undertaken the work, that perhaps they might bring them unto repentance; that perhaps they might bring them to know of the plan of redemption.
- עַל כֵּן נִפְרְדּוּ אִישׁ מֵעַל אָחִיו וּבָאוּ בְּקֶרֶב הַלְּמָנִים, אִישׁ-אִישׁ לְבָדּוּ, כְּפִי דְבַר אֱלֹהִים וְכַחוֹ אֲשֶׁר נָתַן לוֹ.
- 17 Therefore they separated themselves one from another, and went forth among them, every man alone, according to the word and power of God which was given unto him.
- וְעִמּוֹן הָיָה רֹאשׁ לָהֶם; אָכֵן, הוּא שָׂרְתָם; וְאַחַר אֲשֶׁר בָּרַכְסָם, כָּל אִישׁ כְּמִשְׁמֶרְתּוֹ, וְאַחַר אֲשֶׁר חָלַק לָהֶם אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים, הוּא נִפְרַד מֵעֲלֵיהֶם. אָכֵן, אַחַר אֲשֶׁר שָׁמַשׁ עִמּוֹן לִפְנֵיהֶם יָצָא כָּל אֶחָד לְמַסְעֹו בְּרַחְבֵּי הָאָרֶץ.
- 18 Now Ammon being the chief among them, or rather he did administer unto them, and he departed from them, after having blessed them according to their several stations, having imparted the word of God unto them, or administered unto them before his departure; and thus they took their several journeys throughout the land.
- וְעִמּוֹן הָלַךְ אֶל אֶרֶץ יִשְׁמַעֵאל, אֲשֶׁר נִקְרָאָה עַל שֵׁם בְּנֵי יִשְׁמַעֵאל, אֲשֶׁר נָהִיּוּ גַם הֵם לְמָנִים.
- 19 And Ammon went to the land of Ishmael, the land being called after the sons of Ishmael, who also became Lamanites.
- וּבָבֹא עִמּוֹן אֶל אֶרֶץ יִשְׁמַעֵאל, תִּפְּשׂוּהוּ הַלְּמָנִים וְאַסְרוּהוּ, כְּמִנְהֻגָם בְּכָל הַנְּפִיִּים אֲשֶׁר נָפְלוּ בִּידֵיהֶם; לְאַסֹּר אוֹתָם וְלִהְבִּיאֵם לִפְנֵי הַמֶּלֶךְ. כִּי נִקְבַּע כְּחָפֶץ הַמֶּלֶךְ, אִם לְהַרְגֵם, אוֹ לְהַנִּיחֵם בְּשִׁבְיָה, אוֹ לְהַשְׁלִיכֵם אֶל בֵּית הַסֵּהַר, אוֹ לְגַרְשָׁם מִן הָאָרֶץ, כְּכֹל אֲשֶׁר יַעֲלֶה בְּרָצוֹנוֹ וּכְחָפְצוֹ.
- 20 And as Ammon entered the land of Ishmael, the Lamanites took him and bound him, as was their custom to bind all the Nephites who fell into their hands, and carry them before the king; and thus it was left to the pleasure of the king to slay them, or to retain them in captivity, or to cast them into prison, or to cast them out of his land, according to his will and pleasure.
- לָכֵן הוּבָא עִמּוֹן לִפְנֵי הַמֶּלֶךְ הַמוֹלֵךְ עַל אֶרֶץ יִשְׁמַעֵאל. וְשֵׁם הַמֶּלֶךְ לְמוֹנִי, וְהוּא הָיָה צֶאֱצָא לִישְׁמַעֵאל.
- 21 And thus Ammon was carried before the king who was over the land of Ishmael; and his name was Lamoni; and he was a descendant of Ishmael.
- וְהַמֶּלֶךְ שָׁאַל אֶת עִמּוֹן אִם חָפֶץ הוּא לְשִׁבֹּת בְּאֶרֶץ בְּקֶרֶב הַלְּמָנִים, אוֹ בְּקֶרֶב עַמּוֹ.
- 22 And the king inquired of Ammon if it were his desire to dwell in the land among the Lamanites, or among his people.
- וְאָמַר אֵלָיו עִמּוֹן: חָפֶצִי לְשִׁבֹּת בְּקֶרֶב הָעָם הַזֶּה זְמַן מָה; אוֹלֵי אֶף עַד יוֹם מוֹתִי.
- 23 And Ammon said unto him: Yea, I desire to dwell among this people for a time; yea, and perhaps until the day I die.
- וְעִמּוֹן מָצָא חֵן בְּעֵינֵי הַמֶּלֶךְ לְמוֹנִי. וְהַמֶּלֶךְ צִוָּה לְהַתִּיר אֶת חֲבָלָיו; וְהוּא בִקֵּשׁ כִּי יִקַּח עִמּוֹן אֶת אַחַת מִבְּנוֹתָיו לֹא לְאִשָּׁה.
- 24 And it came to pass that king Lamoni was much pleased with Ammon, and caused that his bands should be loosed; and he would that Ammon should take one of his daughters to wife.
- אֹלָם עִמּוֹן אָמַר אֵלָיו: לֹא, כִּי עָבָדְךָ אֶהְיֶה. וְהָיָה עִמּוֹן עֹבֵד הַמֶּלֶךְ לְמוֹנִי, וְהוּא
- 25 But Ammon said unto him: Nay, but I will be thy servant. Therefore Ammon became a servant to king Lamoni. And it came to pass that he

הִפְקֵד עִם עֲבָדִים אֲחֵרִים עַל שְׁמִירַת עֲדָרֵי  
לְמוֹנֵי כְּמִנְהַג הַלָּמָנִיתִים.

was set among other servants to watch the flocks of Lamoni, according to the custom of the Lamanites.

וְהָיָה אַחֵר שְׁלֹשָׁה יָמִים בְּשֵׁרוֹת הַמֶּלֶךְ,  
בְּהִיּוֹת עֲמוֹן עִם עֲבָדֵי הַמֶּלֶךְ בְּלָמָנִיתִים, בָּעֵת  
הַזֵּה הָיָה אֵת צֹאנָם אֶל מְקוֹם הַמַּיִם הַנִּקְרָא  
מִי שְׁבוּץ, אֲשֶׁר אֵלָיו נָהֲגוּ כָּל הַלָּמָנִיתִים אֶת  
עֲדָרֵיהֶם לְהִשְׁקוֹתָם,

26 And after he had been in the service of the king three days, as he was with the Lamanitish servants going forth with their flocks to the place of water, which was called the water of Sebus, and all the Lamanites drive their flocks hither, that they may have water—

אָכוּ, בָּעֵת אֲשֶׁר נָהֲגוּ עֲמוֹן וְעֲבָדֵי הַמֶּלֶךְ  
אֶת צֹאנָם אֶל מְקוֹם הַמַּיִם הַזֶּה, וְהָיָה קָמוּ  
לָמָנִיתִים מִסָּפָר אֲשֶׁר הִשְׁקוּ אֶת צֹאנָם,  
וְהִפְיָצוּ אֶת צֹאן עֲמוֹן וְעֲבָדֵי הַמֶּלֶךְ  
עַד כִּי נָסוּ בְּשִׁבְעַת דְּרָכִים.

27 Therefore, as Ammon and the servants of the king were driving forth their flocks to this place of water, behold, a certain number of the Lamanites, who had been with their flocks to water, stood and scattered the flocks of Ammon and the servants of the king, and they scattered them insomuch that they fled many ways.

וְהָיָה הַחֲלוֹ עֲבָדֵי הַמֶּלֶךְ לְהִתְלַוֵּן, וְאָמְרוּ:  
עַתָּה יִהְיֶה נֶהֱרָגוּ הַמֶּלֶךְ, כְּאֲשֶׁר עָשָׂה לַעֲמִיתֵינוּ  
עַל פְּזוּר עֲדָרֵיהֶם מִפְּנֵי רָשָׁעַת הָאֲנָשִׁים  
הָאֵלֶּה. וְהֵם בָּכוּ רַבּוֹת וְאָמְרוּ: הִנֵּה, כְּבָר  
נִפְרָצוּ צֹאנֵנוּ.

28 Now the servants of the king began to murmur, saying: Now the king will slay us, as he has our brethren because their flocks were scattered by the wickedness of these men. And they began to weep exceedingly, saying: Behold, our flocks are scattered already.

וְהֵם בָּכוּ מִיָּרְאָתָם כִּי יָמוּתוּ. וְכִרְאוֹת עֲמוֹן  
זֹאת רָחַב לְבוֹ בְּקִרְבּוֹ מִגִּיל; וְאָמַר: אֵרָאָה אֶת  
כְּחִי לְחַבְרִי, עֲבָדֵי הַמֶּלֶךְ, וְרָאוּ אֶת הַכֹּחַ אֲשֶׁר  
בִּי לְהָשִׁיב אֶת הַצֹּאן הָאֵלֶּה לְמֶלֶךְ, לְמַעַן  
אֶקְנֶה אֶת לִבָּם, וְאֶנְהַגֶּם לְהֶאֱמִין בְּדִבְרִי.

29 Now they wept because of the fear of being slain. Now when Ammon saw this his heart was swollen within him with joy; for, said he, I will show forth my power unto these my fellow-servants, or the power which is in me, in restoring these flocks unto the king, that I may win the hearts of these my fellow-servants, that I may lead them to believe in my words.

אֵלֶּה מַחְשְׁבוֹת עֲמוֹן בְּרֹאוֹתוֹ אֶת יְסוּרֵי  
הָאֲנָשִׁים אֲשֶׁר הָיוּ בְּעֵינָיו כְּאֲחִים.

30 And now, these were the thoughts of Ammon, when he saw the afflictions of those whom he termed to be his brethren.

אֲזַי הִנְעִימָם עֲמוֹן בְּדִבְרָיו וְאָמַר: אֲחִי,  
אֵל תִּפְּל רִיחוֹקָם; נִלְכֶּה נָא לְבַקֵּשׁ אֶת הַצֹּאן;  
הִבֵּה נִקְבְּצוּ, וְנִשְׁיִב אֶל מְקוֹם הַמַּיִם, וּבְזֹאת  
נִצִּיל אֶת עֲדָרֵי הַמֶּלֶךְ וְלֹא יִהְיֶה נֶהֱרָגוּ.

31 And it came to pass that he flattered them by his words, saying: My brethren, be of good cheer and let us go in search of the flocks, and we will gather them together and bring them back unto the place of water; and thus we will preserve the flocks unto the king and he will not slay us.

וְהֵם הָלְכוּ לְבַקֵּשׁ אֶת צֹאנָם וְעֲמוֹן בְּרֹאשׁוֹ,  
וְהֵם רָצוּ מִיָּהָר וְהִשִּׁיגוּ אֶת צֹאן הַמֶּלֶךְ וְקִבְּצוּ  
שֵׁנִית וְהִבְיָאוּ אֶל מְקוֹם הַמַּיִם.

32 And it came to pass that they went in search of the flocks, and they did follow Ammon, and they rushed forth with much swiftness and did head the flocks of the king, and did gather them together again to the place of water.

וְהָאֲנָשִׁים הָאֵלֶּם קָמוּ שֵׁנִית לְהַפִּיץ אֶת צֹאנָם;  
וְעֲמוֹן אָמַר אֶל אֲחָיו: הַקִּיפוּ אֶת הָעֲדָרִים  
סָבִיב לְבָל יִבְרָחוּ, וְאֲנִי אֵלֶּךְ לְרִיב עִם הָאֲנָשִׁים  
הָאֵלֶּה הַמִּפְיָצִים אֶת צֹאנֵנוּ.

33 And those men again stood to scatter their flocks; but Ammon said unto his brethren: Encircle the flocks round about that they flee not; and I go and contend with these men who do scatter our flocks.

- 34 Therefore, they did as Ammon commanded them, and he went forth and stood to contend with those who stood by the waters of Sebus; and they were in number not a few.
- 35 Therefore they did not fear Ammon, for they supposed that one of their men could slay him according to their pleasure, for they knew not that the Lord had promised Mosiah that he would deliver his sons out of their hands; neither did they know anything concerning the Lord; therefore they delighted in the destruction of their brethren; and for this cause they stood to scatter the flocks of the king.
- 36 But Ammon stood forth and began to cast stones at them with his sling; yea, with mighty power he did sling stones amongst them; and thus he slew a certain number of them insomuch that they began to be astonished at his power; nevertheless they were angry because of the slain of their brethren, and they were determined that he should fall; therefore, seeing that they could not hit him with their stones, they came forth with clubs to slay him.
- 37 But behold, every man that lifted his club to smite Ammon, he smote off their arms with his sword; for he did withstand their blows by smiting their arms with the edge of his sword, insomuch that they began to be astonished, and began to flee before him; yea, and they were not few in number; and he caused them to flee by the strength of his arm.
- 38 Now six of them had fallen by the sling, but he slew none save it were their leader with his sword; and he smote off as many of their arms as were lifted against him, and they were not a few.
- 39 And when he had driven them afar off, he returned and they watered their flocks and returned them to the pasture of the king, and then went in unto the king, bearing the arms which had been smitten off by the sword of Ammon, of those who sought to slay him; and they were carried in unto the king for a testimony of the things which they had done.
- וְהֵם עָשׂוּ כְּאֲשֶׁר צִוָּם עֲמוֹן; וְהוּא יָצָא וְעָמַד לְרִיב עִם הָעוֹמְדִים לְיַד מֵי שֶׁבּוּץ, וּמִסְפָּרָם לֹא הָיָה מְעַט.
- עַל כֵּן לֹא יָרְאוּ אֶת עֲמוֹן, בְּחָשְׁבָם כִּי אֶחָד אֲנָשֵׁיהֶם יוּכַל לְהָרְגוֹ כְּאֻתָּת נַפְשׁוֹ, כִּי לֹא יָדְעוּ עַל דְּבַר יְהוָה לְמוֹשִׁיָּע לְהַצִּיל אֶת בְּנָיו מִיָּדֵיהֶם; וְאֵף לֹא יָדְעוּ מְאוּמָּה עַל יְהוָה. אָכֵן, הֵם הִתְעַנְּגוּ בְּהַשְׁמֵדָת בְּנֵי עַמָּם וּמִפְּנֵי זֹאת קָמוּ לְפָזֵר אֶת צֹאן הַמֶּלֶךְ.
- אֲף עֲמוֹן עָמַד לִפְנֵיהֶם וְהֵחֵל לָרֶגֶם אוֹתָם אֶבֶן בְּמִקְלָעוֹ; אָכֵן, בְּכַח רַב רָגַם אוֹתָם בְּאַבְנֵים; וְהוּא הָרַג אֶחָדִים מֵהֶם עַד כִּי נִדְּהָמוּ מִעֲצָמָת כָּחוֹ. אֲף הֵם קָעְסוּ עַל הָרַג עַמִּיתֵיהֶם, וְנִקְמְרוּ אֶמֶר לְהַכּוֹתוֹ. וּבְרֹאוֹתָם כִּי לֹא יוּכְלוּ לוֹ בְּאַבְנֵיהֶם, בָּאוּ לְהָרְגוֹ בְּאַלּוֹתֵיהֶם.
- וְהִנֵּה, כָּל אִישׁ אֲשֶׁר הִנִּיף אֶת אַלְתּוֹ לְהַכּוֹת אֶת עֲמוֹן, כָּרַת עֲמוֹן אֶת זְרוּעוֹ בְּחֶרֶב. אָכֵן, הוּא עָמַד בְּפָנָיו מִהִלְמוֹתֵיהֶם בְּכַרְתּוֹ אֶת זְרוּעוֹתֵיהֶם בְּקִצֵּה חֶרֶב עַד כִּי הִשְׁתַּוְּמוּ וְהֵחֵלוּ לָנוּס מִפְּנָיו. וְאֵף כִּי מִסְפָּרָם לֹא הָיָה מְעַט הוּא הֵנִיסָם בְּכַח זְרוּעוֹ.
- שֵׁשֶׁה מֵהֶם נָפְלוּ מֵאַבְנֵי הַקֶּלֶעַ, וְהוּא לֹא הָרַג בְּחֶרֶב אִישׁ, זֹלַת מְנַהִיגָם; וְהוּא כָרַת מִזְרוּעוֹתֵיהֶם כְּמִסְפָּר אֲשֶׁר הוֹרְמוּ עָלָיו, וְלֹא הָיוּ הֵן מְעֻטּוֹת.
- וְאַחַר גָּרְשׁוּ אוֹתָם הָרַחֵק מִמֶּנּוּ, שָׁב וְהִשְׁקָה, עִם אֶחָיו, אֶת עֲדָרֵיהֶם, וְהִשִּׁיבָם אֶל מְרֻעַ הַמֶּלֶךְ. אֲזַי הֵם בָּאוּ אֶל הַמֶּלֶךְ וְהֵם נוֹשְׂאִים אֶת זְרוּעוֹת אֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר בִּקְשׁוּ לְהָרַג אֶת עֲמוֹן, וְנִכְרְתוּ בְּחֶרֶב לְמַעַן יִהְיוּ עֵדוֹת עַל הַמַּעֲשִׂים אֲשֶׁר עָשׂוּ.

## יח

## 18

- 1 And it came to pass that king Lamoni caused that his servants should stand forth and testify to all the things which they had seen concerning the matter.
- 2 And when they had all testified to the things which they had seen, and he had learned of the faithfulness of Ammon in preserving his flocks,
- וְהַמֶּלֶךְ לָמוֹנִי צִוָּה עַל עֲבָדָיו לַעֲמֹד לִפְנָיו וּלְהָעִיד עַל כָּל אֲשֶׁר רָאוּ בְּעֵינָיו הַזֶּה.
- וְאַחַר אֲשֶׁר הִעִידוּ כֻּלָּם עַל אֲשֶׁר רָאוּ, וְאַחַר אֲשֶׁר הוּא לָמַד עַל נְאֻמָּנוֹת עֲמוֹן בְּהַצִּילוֹ אֶת

## עלמא יחג-י

צאנו, ומה רב כחו במלחמה על מבקשי נפשו, הוא השתומם מאד ואמר: אכן, גדול זה מאדם. האין זה הרוח הגדול השולח שפטים כה גדולים בעם הזה, על רציחותיהם?

והם ענו למלך ואמרו: איננו יודעים אם הרוח הגדול הוא או אדם, אף זאת ידענו, כי אין אויבי המלך יכולים להרגו; אף אינם יכולים לפזר את צאן המלך בהיותו עמנו, מפני ממחיותו ורב כחו; לכן, ידענו כי הוא ידיד למלך. הנה, אדונינו המלך, לא נאמין כי יש לאדם כח רב כזה; הן ידוע נדע כי איש לא יוכל להרגו.

וכשמע המלך את הדברים האלה, הוא אמר אליהם: עתה ידעתי כי זה הרוח הגדול; הוא ירד לעת הזאת להציל את חייכם, למענני מהריגתכם, כהרגי את עמיתים. הנה, זה הרוח הגדול אשר עליו דברו אבותינו.

ובידי למוני היתה מסורת על קיום רוח גדול, והוא קבלה מאביו. ואף כי האמינו עמו ברוח גדול, חשבו כי כל מעשיהם ישרו. ואולם למוני החל לירא מאד פן עוה בהרגו את עבדיו.

יען אשר רבים מהם הרג כי הפיצו בני עמם את העדרים ליד מקום המים; וכך, מפני פזור צאנם, הומתו.

והנה היה זה מנהג הלמנים האלה לעמד ליד מי שבוץ למען פזר את עדרי האנשים בעבור ינהגו רבים מהפזורים אל אדמותיהם, כי היה זה נהג מעשה הבזה בקרבם.

והמלך למוני שאל את עבדיו לאמר: איפה האיש הזה אשר לו כח רב כזה?

והם אמרו לו: הנהו נותן מספוא אל סוסיו. כי עוד בטרם עת השקות הצאן, צוה המלך את עבדיו להכין את סוסיו ואת מרכבותיו למען יובל אל ארץ נפי, כי אבי למוני, אשר הוא מלך כל הארץ, יעד לעשות שם משתה גדול.

וכשמע המלך למוני כי היה עמון מכין את סוסיו ואת מרכבותיו, רבתה השתוממותו

and also of his great power in contending against those who sought to slay him, he was astonished exceedingly, and said: Surely, this is more than a man. Behold, is not this the Great Spirit who doth send such great punishments upon this people, because of their murders?

3 And they answered the king, and said: Whether he be the Great Spirit or a man, we know not; but this much we do know, that he cannot be slain by the enemies of the king; neither can they scatter the king's flocks when he is with us, because of his expertness and great strength; therefore, we know that he is a friend to the king. And now, O king, we do not believe that a man has such great power, for we know he cannot be slain.

4 And now, when the king heard these words, he said unto them: Now I know that it is the Great Spirit; and he has come down at this time to preserve your lives, that I might not slay you as I did your brethren. Now this is the Great Spirit of whom our fathers have spoken.

5 Now this was the tradition of Lamoni, which he had received from his father, that there was a Great Spirit. Notwithstanding they believed in a Great Spirit they supposed that whatsoever they did was right; nevertheless, Lamoni began to fear exceedingly, with fear lest he had done wrong in slaying his servants;

6 For he had slain many of them because their brethren had scattered their flocks at the place of water; and thus, because they had had their flocks scattered they were slain.

7 Now it was the practice of these Lamanites to stand by the waters of Sebus to scatter the flocks of the people, that thereby they might drive away many that were scattered unto their own land, it being a practice of plunder among them.

8 And it came to pass that king Lamoni inquired of his servants, saying: Where is this man that has such great power?

9 And they said unto him: Behold, he is feeding thy horses. Now the king had commanded his servants, previous to the time of the watering of their flocks, that they should prepare his horses and chariots, and conduct him forth to the land of Nephi; for there had been a great feast appointed at the land of Nephi, by the father of Lamoni, who was king over all the land.

10 Now when king Lamoni heard that Ammon was preparing his horses and his chariots he was more astonished, because of the faithfulness



## עֲלָמָא יח:יא-כ

- על נַאֲמָנוּת עֲמוֹן, וְהוּא אָמַר: אֲכֹן, לֹא הָיָה  
בְּכָל עֲבָדֵי מְשָׁרֵת נֶאֱמָן כְּאִישׁ הַזֶּה, כִּי זֹכֵר  
הוּא אֶת כָּל מִצְוֹתַי לְקַיְּמָן.
- עַתָּה יָדוּעַ יָדַעְתִּי כִּי זֶה הָרוּחַ הַגָּדוֹל וְרִצּוֹנִי  
כִּי יָבוֹא אֵלַי, אֲךָ לֹא אֶרְהִיב עוֹ בְּנַפְשִׁי.
- וְכַאֲשֶׁר כָּלָה עֲמוֹן לְהַכִּין אֶת הַסּוּסִים וְאֶת  
הַמְּרָכְבוֹת לְמַסַּע הַמֶּלֶךְ וְעַבְדָּיו, הוּא בָּא לִפְנֵי  
מוֹשֵׁב הַמֶּלֶךְ וְרָאָה כִּי שֵׁנָה מְרָאָה הַמֶּלֶךְ,  
וְהוּא עָמַד לָשׁוּב וּלְצֵאת מִפָּנָיו.
- וְאָמַר אֵלָיו אֶחָד עֲבָדֵי הַמֶּלֶךְ: רַבְּנָה,  
אֲשֶׁר פִּשְׁרוֹ מֶלֶךְ גָּבוֹר וָרֵב, כִּי מַלְכֵיהֶם  
נִחְשְׁבוּ אֲדִירִים. וְכֵן אָמַר אֵלָיו: רַבְּנָה,  
הַמֶּלֶךְ חָפֵץ כִּי תִשָּׂאֵר.
- וְעֲמוֹן סָב וּפָנָה אֶל הַמֶּלֶךְ וְאָמַר אֵלָיו:  
מָה חָפֵצְךָ כִּי אַעֲשֶׂה לְמַעֲנֶךָ, אֲדוֹנִי הַמֶּלֶךְ?  
וְהַמֶּלֶךְ לֹא עָנָהוּ בְּתוֹךְ שְׁעָה תְּמִימָה עַל פִּי  
חֲשָׁבוֹן זְמַנִּים, כִּי לֹא יָדַע מָה יֹאמַר לוֹ.
- וְעֲמוֹן אָמַר אֵלָיו שֵׁנִית: מָה רִצּוֹנְךָ מִפָּנָי?  
לֹא עָנָהוּ הַמֶּלֶךְ.
- וַיֵּן אֲשֶׁר מָלֵא עֲמוֹן רוּחַ אֱלֹהִים, יָדַע אֶת  
מַחְשְׁבוֹת הַמֶּלֶךְ וְאָמַר אֵלָיו: הֲאֵם כִּי שָׁמַעְתָּ  
כִּי הִגַּנְתִּי עַל עֲבָדֶיךָ וְעַל צֹאנְךָ, וְהִרְגַּתִּי שִׁבְעָה  
מֵעַמִּיתֵיהֶם בְּמִקְלַע וּבַחֲרֹב, וְלֹאֲחֵרִים כְּרַתִּי  
אֶת הַזְּרֻעוֹת לְמַעַן הִגֵּן עַל צֹאנְךָ וְעַל עֲבָדֶיךָ?  
הִזֵּאת סִבֵּת פְּלִיאָתְךָ?
- אֲשָׁל נָא אוֹתְךָ: מָה זֹאת כִּי כֵן גָּדוֹלָה  
פְּלִיאָתְךָ? הֵן גָּבַר אֲנִי וְעַבְדְּךָ. לָכֵן, כָּל אֲשֶׁר  
יֵשֶׁר וְתַחֲפֹצָהוּ, אוֹתוֹ אֶעֱשֶׂה.
- וְכַשְׁמַע הַמֶּלֶךְ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, הוֹסִיף  
לְהִשְׁתַּוְּמוֹם, כִּי נֹכַח כִּי יָכוֹל עֲמוֹן לָדַעַת אֶת  
מַחְשְׁבוֹתָיו. וְאוֹלָם הַמֶּלֶךְ לְמוֹנֵי פֶתַח אֶת פִּי  
וְאָמַר אֵלָיו: מִי אַתָּה? הֲאֵתָה הוּא הָרוּחַ  
הַגָּדוֹל, הַיּוֹדֵעַ הַכֹּל?
- וְהִשִּׁיבָהוּ עֲמוֹן וְאָמַר אֵלָיו: אֵינֶנִּי.
- וְאָמַר הַמֶּלֶךְ: אֵיךְ תִּדַּע אֶת מַחְשְׁבוֹת לִבִּי?  
דַּבֵּר גְּלוּיּוֹת וְסַפֵּר לִי עַל הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה; סַפֵּר
- of Ammon, saying: Surely there has not been any servant among all  
my servants that has been so faithful as this man; for even he doth  
remember all my commandments to execute them.
- 11 Now I surely know that this is the Great Spirit, and I would desire him  
that he come in unto me, but I durst not.
- 12 And it came to pass that when Ammon had made ready the horses and  
the chariots for the king and his servants, he went in unto the king, and  
he saw that the countenance of the king was changed; therefore he was  
about to return out of his presence.
- 13 And one of the king's servants said unto him, Rabbanah, which is,  
being interpreted, powerful or great king, considering their kings to  
be powerful; and thus he said unto him: Rabbanah, the king desireth  
thee to stay.
- 14 Therefore Ammon turned himself unto the king, and said unto him:  
What wilt thou that I should do for thee, O king? And the king  
answered him not for the space of an hour, according to their time, for  
he knew not what he should say unto him.
- 15 And it came to pass that Ammon said unto him again: What desirest  
thou of me? But the king answered him not.
- 16 And it came to pass that Ammon, being filled with the Spirit of God,  
therefore he perceived the thoughts of the king. And he said unto  
him: Is it because thou hast heard that I defended thy servants and  
thy flocks, and slew seven of their brethren with the sling and with the  
sword, and smote off the arms of others, in order to defend thy flocks  
and thy servants; behold, is it this that causeth thy marvelings?
- 17 I say unto you, what is it, that thy marvelings are so great? Behold, I am  
a man, and am thy servant; therefore, whatsoever thou desirest which  
is right, that will I do.
- 18 Now when the king had heard these words, he marveled again, for he  
beheld that Ammon could discern his thoughts; but notwithstanding  
this, king Lamoni did open his mouth, and said unto him: Who art  
thou? Art thou that Great Spirit, who knows all things?
- 19 Ammon answered and said unto him: I am not.
- 20 And the king said: How knowest thou the thoughts of my heart? Thou  
mayest speak boldly, and tell me concerning these things; and also tell

## עֲלָמָא יח:כא-לג

לִי גַם בְּאִיזָה כַח הִרְגַתְּ וְכָרַתְּ אֶת זְרוּעוֹת בְּנֵי  
עַמִּי אֲשֶׁר הִפִּיצוּ אֶת צֹאנִי.

me by what power ye slew and smote off the arms of my brethren that  
scattered my flocks—

הִנֵּה, אִם תִּסְפָּר לִי עַל הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, כָּל אֲשֶׁר  
תִּאֲמָה נִפְשִׁי, לֹךְ אֶתְנֶנּוּ, וְאִם יִהְיֶה צָרְךָ אֲשֶׁמֹּר  
עָלַי בְּחִילִי; אֲנִי יוֹדֵעַ אֲנִי כִי חֹזֵק אַתָּה מִכָּל־  
וְאוֹלָם, כָּל אֲשֶׁר תִּבְקֹשׁ מִמֶּנִּי, אֶתְנֶנּוּ לָךְ.

21 And now, if thou wilt tell me concerning these things, whatsoever thou  
desirest I will give unto thee; and if it were needed, I would guard thee  
with my armies; but I know that thou art more powerful than all they;  
nevertheless, whatsoever thou desirest of me I will grant it unto thee.

וְעַמּוֹן, בְּהִיּוֹתוֹ חָכָם אֲף תָּמִים, אָמַר אֶל  
לְמוֹנִי: הֲתִקְשִׁיב לְדַבְּרֵי אִם אֶסְפָּר לָךְ בְּאִיזָה  
כַּח אֲנִי עוֹשֶׂה אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה? זֶה הַדְּבָר  
אֲשֶׁר אֲנִי מִבְּקָשׁוֹ.

22 Now Ammon being wise, yet harmless, he said unto Lamoni: Wilt thou  
hearken unto my words, if I tell thee by what power I do these things?  
And this is the thing that I desire of thee.

וְהַמֶּלֶךְ עָנָה לוֹ וְאָמַר: אָכֵן, אֲאָמִין לְכָל  
דְּבָרֶיךָ. כֹּה נִתְפַּשׁ הַמֶּלֶךְ בַּתְּחִבּוּלָה.

23 And the king answered him, and said: Yea, I will believe all thy words.  
And thus he was caught with guile.

וְעַמּוֹן הֵחֵל לְדַבֵּר אֵלָיו גְּלוּיּוֹת וְאָמַר: הַמֶּאֱמִין  
אַתָּה כִּי יֵשׁ אֱלֹהִים?

24 And Ammon began to speak unto him with boldness, and said unto  
him: Believest thou that there is a God?

וְהוּא עָנָה וְאָמַר: אֵינֶנִּי יוֹדֵעַ מַה פֶּשֶׁר זֶה.

25 And he answered, and said unto him: I do not know what that meaneth.

אָז אָמַר עַמּוֹן: הַמֶּאֱמִין אַתָּה כִּי יֵשׁ  
רוּחַ גָּדוֹל?

26 And then Ammon said: Believest thou that there is a Great Spirit?

וְהוּא עָנָה: אָכֵן.

27 And he said, Yea.

וְעַמּוֹן אָמַר: זֶה הוּא אֱלֹהִים. וְעַמּוֹן הוֹסִיף  
לֵאמֹר: הַמֶּאֱמִין אַתָּה כִּי הָרוּחַ הַגָּדוֹל הַזֶּה,  
אֲשֶׁר הוּא אֱלֹהִים, בָּרָא אֶת כָּל הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר  
בַּשָּׁמַיִם וּבָאָרֶץ?

28 And Ammon said: This is God. And Ammon said unto him again:  
Believest thou that this Great Spirit, who is God, created all things  
which are in heaven and in the earth?

וְהוּא אָמַר: אָכֵן, מֶאֱמִין אֲנִי כִי הוּא בָּרָא אֶת  
כָּל אֲשֶׁר בָּאָרֶץ; אֲף אֵינֶנִּי יוֹדֵעַ אֶת הַשָּׁמַיִם.

29 And he said: Yea, I believe that he created all things which are in the  
earth; but I do not know the heavens.

וְאָמַר אֵלָיו עַמּוֹן: הַשָּׁמַיִם הֵם מְקוֹם מִשְׁכַּן  
אֱלֹהִים וְכָל מַלְאָכֵי קְדָשׁוֹ.

30 And Ammon said unto him: The heavens is a place where God dwells  
and all his holy angels.

וְהַמֶּלֶךְ לְמוֹנִי אָמַר: הֲאִם הוּא מֵעַל הָאָרֶץ?

31 And king Lamoni said: Is it above the earth?

וְעַמּוֹן אָמַר: אָכֵן, וְהוּא מִשְׁקִיף מִשָּׁמַיִם עַל כָּל  
בְּנֵי אָדָם; וְהוּא יוֹדֵעַ אֶת כָּל מַחְשְׁבוֹת הַלֵּב  
וּכְנוּתָיו; כִּי בִּידוֹ נִבְרְאוּ הַכָּל מִבְּרֵאשִׁית.

32 And Ammon said: Yea, and he looketh down upon all the children of  
men; and he knows all the thoughts and intents of the heart; for by his  
hand were they all created from the beginning.

וְהַמֶּלֶךְ לְמוֹנִי אָמַר: אֲנִי מֶאֱמִין בְּכָל הַדְּבָרִים  
הָאֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר דִּבַּרְתָּ. הֲשִׁלַּחְתָּ אֹתָהּ מֵעַם אֱלֹהִים?

33 And king Lamoni said: I believe all these things which thou hast  
spoken. Art thou sent from God?

- 34 ואמר אליו עמון: בן אדם אני; ואדם נברא בראשית בצלם אלהים. ואני קרוא מאת רוח קדשו ללמד את הדברים האלה לעם הזה, למען יתודעו אל הצדק והאמת.
- 35 And Ammon said unto him: I am a man; and man in the beginning was created after the image of God, and I am called by his Holy Spirit to teach these things unto this people, that they may be brought to a knowledge of that which is just and true;
- והלך מהרוח ההיא שוכן בי, והוא אשר נותן לי ידיעה ואף כח כפי אמונותי באלהים ויתשוקתי לו.
- 36 And a portion of that Spirit dwelleth in me, which giveth me knowledge, and also power according to my faith and desires which are in God.
- ובאמר עמון את הדברים האלה, הוא פתח בספור בריאת העולם ובריאת אדם. והוא ספר את כל הדברים על נפילת אדם ותאר לפניו את כתבי הזכרון אשר לעם ואת כתבי קדשו אשר נאמרו מפי הנביאים, עד עת צאת אביהם לחי מירושלם.
- 37 Now when Ammon had said these words, he began at the creation of the world, and also the creation of Adam, and told him all the things concerning the fall of man, and rehearsed and laid before him the records and the holy scriptures of the people, which had been spoken by the prophets, even down to the time that their father, Lehi, left Jerusalem.
- והוא אף שגן באזניהם, אכן, באזני המלך ועבדיו, את דברי כל מסעי אבותיהם במדבר וכל סבלותיהם ברעב ובצמא ואת יגיעתם ועוד כדברים האלה.
- 38 And he also rehearsed unto them (for it was unto the king and to his servants) all the journeyings of their fathers in the wilderness, and all their sufferings with hunger and thirst, and their travail, and so forth.
- והוא שגן לפניהם גם את מעשי מרד למן ולמואל ובני ישמעאל, אכן, על כל מרידותיהם ספר להם; והוא באר להם את כל כתבי הזכרון וכתבי הקדש אשר מעת צאת לחי מירושלם ועד עצם היום ההוא.
- 39 And he also rehearsed unto them concerning the rebellions of Laman and Lemuel, and the sons of Ishmael, yea, all their rebellions did he relate unto them; and he expounded unto them all the records and scriptures from the time that Lehi left Jerusalem down to the present time.
- ואין זאת הכל, כי הוא באר להם את תכנית הנאולה, אשר הוכנה מיסוד העולם; ואף הודיעם על בוא המשיח ועל כל מעשי יהוה.
- 40 But this is not all; for he expounded unto them the plan of redemption, which was prepared from the foundation of the world; and he also made known unto them concerning the coming of Christ, and all the works of the Lord did he make known unto them.
- והיה אחר אשר הוא אמר את כל הדברים האלה ובאדם למלך, האמין המלך לכל דבריו.
- 41 And it came to pass that after he had said all these things, and expounded them to the king, that the king believed all his words.
- והוא החל לזעק אל יהוה לאמר: יהוה, רחם נא! חוסה עלי ועל עמי כרב רחמיו על עם נפי.
- 42 And he began to cry unto the Lord, saying: O Lord, have mercy; according to thy abundant mercy which thou hast had upon the people of Nephi, have upon me, and my people.
- ויכבלותו לומר זאת הוא נפל ארצה כמת.
- 43 And now, when he had said this, he fell unto the earth, as if he were dead.
- ועבדיו לקחוהו ונשאו אותו פנימה אל אשתו, והניחוהו על מטה; והוא שכב כמת במשך שני ימים ושני לילות; ואשתו ובניו ובנותיו ספדו לו מספד גדול, כמשפט הלמנים, על אבדתם.
- 44 And it came to pass that his servants took him and carried him in unto his wife, and laid him upon a bed; and he lay as if he were dead for the space of two days and two nights; and his wife, and his sons, and his daughters mourned over him, after the manner of the Lamanites, greatly lamenting his loss.

## יט

## 19

- וְהָיָה כְּעֵבֶר שְׁנֵי יָמִים וּשְׁנֵי לַיְלוֹת הֵם עָמְדוּ  
לְקַחַת אֶת גּוֹיָתוֹ וּלְהַנִּיחָהּ בַּקֶּבֶר אֲשֶׁר כָּרוּ  
לְקַבֹּרֶת מֵתֵיהֶם.
- וְהַמַּלְכָּה, אֲשֶׁר שָׁמַע עֲמוֹן הַגִּיעַ לְאַזְנוֹתֶיהָ,  
שָׁלְחָה לְקָרֵא לוֹ וְחָפְצָה כִּי יָבוֹא אֵלֶיהָ.
- וְעֲמוֹן עָשָׂה כְּאֲשֶׁר הִצְטִוָהּ, וּבָא אֶל הַמַּלְכָּה  
וּבִקֵּשׁ לָדַעַת מָה הִיא תַּחֲפֹץ כִּי יַעֲשֶׂהָ.
- וְהִיא אָמְרָה אֵלָיו: מִפִּי עֲבָדֵי אִישִׁי נֹדַע  
לִי כִּי נָבִיא לֵאלֹהִים קָדוֹשׁ אַתָּה, וְכִי בִידְךָ כֹּחַ  
לַעֲשׂוֹת רַב מִעֲשֵׂי עֹז בְּשִׁמּוֹ.
- לְכֹן, אִם נִכּוֹן הַדָּבָר, רְצוֹנִי כִּי תֵלֶךְ וְתִרְאֶה  
אֶת אִישִׁי, כִּי זֶה שְׁנֵי יָמִים וּשְׁנֵי לַיְלוֹת מוֹטָל  
הוּא עַל מִסְתּוֹ. יֵשׁ הָאוֹמְרִים כִּי לֹא מָת, וְיֵשׁ  
הָאוֹמְרִים כִּי מָת וְהַצְחָנָה עָלֶתָה מִמֶּנּוּ וְצָרִיד  
לְהַנִּיחוֹ בַּקֶּבֶר; אֲךָ בְּאִפִּי לֹא עָלֶתָה מִמֶּנּוּ  
כָּל צַחְחָנָה.
- הִנֵּה, זֹאת חָפֵץ עֲמוֹן בִּידְעוֹ כִּי הַמֶּלֶךְ  
לְמוֹנֵי שָׂרָיו תַּחַת כֹּחַ אֱלֹהִים; וּבִידְעוֹ כִּי  
הוֹסֵר מִדַּעַת הַמֶּלֶךְ לֹא חֹסֵר הָאֱמוּנָה הָאֶפְלָל,  
וְהָאוֹר אֲשֶׁר הָאִיר אֶת דַּעַתוֹ, אֲשֶׁר הוּא אוֹר  
תַּפְאֶרֶת אֱלֹהִים, וְהוּא אוֹר נִפְלֵא אֲשֶׁר  
לְטוֹבוֹ, הַכֵּנִס רַב גִּיל אֶל נַפְשׁוֹ, עַד כִּי נִמּוֹג  
עָנָן הַקִּדְרוֹת וְאוֹר חַי עוֹלָם הִצַּת בְּנַפְשׁוֹ.  
אָכֵן, הוּא יָדַע כִּי הָאוֹר הַזֶּה הִתְגַּבֵּר עַל גּוֹ  
וְהוּא הִתְנַשָּׂא בְּאֱלֹהִים.
- וְהִנֵּה, חָפֵץ הַמַּלְכָּה הָיָה חָפְצוֹ הַיָּחִיד. לְכֹן  
הוּא נִכְנָס לִרְאוֹת אֶת הַמֶּלֶךְ בְּבִקְשַׁת הַמַּלְכָּה;  
וְהוּא רָאָה אֶת הַמֶּלֶךְ וַיֵּדַע כִּי לֹא מָת.
- וְהוּא אָמַר אֶל הַמַּלְכָּה: לֹא מָת הוּא,  
כִּי תִרְדַּמְתָּ אֱלֹהִים נִפְלֵא עָלָיו וּמָחָר קִיץ  
וְיָקוּם; לְכֹן, אֵל תִּקְבְּרוּהוּ.
- וְאָמַר לָהּ עֲמוֹן: הֲתֵאֱמִינִי בְּזֹאת? וְהִיא אָמְרָה  
לוֹ: אֵינִי לִי עֵדוּת כִּי אִם דְּבָרְךָ וּדְבַר עֲבָדֶינִי. עַל  
אֵף זֹאת, מֵאֲמִינָה אֲנִי כִּי כְּדָבָרְךָ יִהְיֶה.
- 1 And it came to pass that after two days and two nights they were about to take his body and lay it in a sepulchre, which they had made for the purpose of burying their dead.
- 2 Now the queen having heard of the fame of Ammon, therefore she sent and desired that he should come in unto her.
- 3 And it came to pass that Ammon did as he was commanded, and went in unto the queen, and desired to know what she would that he should do.
- 4 And she said unto him: The servants of my husband have made it known unto me that thou art a prophet of a holy God, and that thou hast power to do many mighty works in his name;
- 5 Therefore, if this is the case, I would that ye should go in and see my husband, for he has been laid upon his bed for the space of two days and two nights; and some say that he is not dead, but others say that he is dead and that he stinketh, and that he ought to be placed in the sepulchre; but as for myself, to me he doth not stink.
- 6 Now, this was what Ammon desired, for he knew that king Lamoni was under the power of God; he knew that the dark veil of unbelief was being cast away from his mind, and the light which did light up his mind, which was the light of the glory of God, which was a marvelous light of his goodness—yea, this light had infused such joy into his soul, the cloud of darkness having been dispelled, and that the light of everlasting life was lit up in his soul, yea, he knew that this had overcome his natural frame, and he was carried away in God—
- 7 Therefore, what the queen desired of him was his only desire. Therefore, he went in to see the king according as the queen had desired him; and he saw the king, and he knew that he was not dead.
- 8 And he said unto the queen: He is not dead, but he sleepeth in God, and on the morrow he shall rise again; therefore bury him not.
- 9 And Ammon said unto her: Believest thou this? And she said unto him: I have had no witness save thy word, and the word of our servants; nevertheless I believe that it shall be according as thou hast said.

- 10 And Ammon said unto her: Blessed art thou because of thy exceeding faith; I say unto thee, woman, there has not been such great faith among all the people of the Nephites.
- 11 And it came to pass that she watched over the bed of her husband, from that time even until that time on the morrow which Ammon had appointed that he should rise.
- 12 And it came to pass that he arose, according to the words of Ammon; and as he arose, he stretched forth his hand unto the woman, and said: Blessed be the name of God, and blessed art thou.
- 13 For as sure as thou livest, behold, I have seen my Redeemer; and he shall come forth, and be born of a woman, and he shall redeem all mankind who believe on his name. Now, when he had said these words, his heart was swollen within him, and he sunk again with joy; and the queen also sunk down, being overpowered by the Spirit.
- 14 Now Ammon seeing the Spirit of the Lord poured out according to his prayers upon the Lamanites, his brethren, who had been the cause of so much mourning among the Nephites, or among all the people of God because of their iniquities and their traditions, he fell upon his knees, and began to pour out his soul in prayer and thanksgiving to God for what he had done for his brethren; and he was also overpowered with joy; and thus they all three had sunk to the earth.
- 15 Now, when the servants of the king had seen that they had fallen, they also began to cry unto God, for the fear of the Lord had come upon them also, for it was they who had stood before the king and testified unto him concerning the great power of Ammon.
- 16 And it came to pass that they did call on the name of the Lord, in their might, even until they had all fallen to the earth, save it were one of the Lamanitish women, whose name was Abish, she having been converted unto the Lord for many years, on account of a remarkable vision of her father—
- 17 Thus, having been converted to the Lord, and never having made it known, therefore, when she saw that all the servants of Lamoni had fallen to the earth, and also her mistress, the queen, and the king, and Ammon lay prostrate upon the earth, she knew that it was the power of God; and supposing that this opportunity, by making known unto the people what had happened among them, that by beholding this scene
- וַאֲמַר אֱלִיָּה עִמּוֹן: בְּרוּכָה אַתְּ עַל גְּדֹלַת אֱמוּנָתְךָ. אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָךְ, אִשָּׁה, כִּי לֹא נִמְצְאָה אֱמוּנָה רַבָּה כְּזֹאת בְּכָל עַם הַנְּפִיטִים.
- וְהָאִשָּׁה שָׁמְרָה אֶת מִטַּת בַּעְלָהּ מִן הַשָּׁעָה הַהִיא עַד לַמָּחָרֶת בַּשָּׁעָה אֲשֶׁר יַעֲד עִמּוֹן לָקוּמוֹ.
- וְהוּא קָם כַּדְּבַר עִמּוֹן; וּבְקוּמוֹ פָּשַׁט אֶת יָדוֹ לְקִרְאֵת הָאִשָּׁה וְאָמַר: בְּרוּךְ שֵׁם אֱלֹהִים וּבְרוּכָה אַתְּ.
- כִּי כַּהִיֹתָף חַיָּה, הִנֵּה רָאִיתִי אֶת גּוֹאֲלִי; וְהוּא יָבוֹא, וְיֵלֵד מֵאִשָּׁה וְיִגְאֹל אֶת כָּל בְּנֵי אָנוּשׁ הַמֵּאֲמַנִּים בְּשִׁמּוֹ. וּבְאָמְרוֹ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, מָלָא לִבּוֹ בְּקִרְבּוֹ וְהוּא נָפַל עוֹד פַּעַם מִשְׁמִיחָה; וְכֵן נָפְלָה הַמַּלְכָּה, כִּי גָבַר עָלֶיהָ רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ.
- וְכַאֲשֶׁר רָאָה עִמּוֹן כִּי רוּחַ אֱלֹהִים נִשְׁפָּכָה כְּפִי תַפְלוּתָיו, עַל אֶחָיו הַלְּמָנִיטִים, אֲשֶׁר הָיוּ מְקוֹר אֲבָל כֹּה רַב בְּקִרְבָּם הַנְּפִיטִים, אוֹ בְּקִרְבָּם כָּל עַם אֱלֹהִים, מִפְּנֵי עוֹנִוּוֹתֵיהֶם וּמִסּוּרֹתֵיהֶם, הוּא נָפַל עַל בְּרָכְיוֹ וְשָׁפַךְ אֶת נַפְשׁוֹ בְּתַפְלָה וּבְהוֹדָיָה לְאֱלֹהִים עַל מַעֲשָׂהוּ לִמְעַן אֶחָיו, וְאֵף עָלֵיו גְּבַרָה הַשְׁמִיחָה; וְכֹה נָפְלוּ שְׁלֹשָׁתָם אַרְצָה.
- וְכַאֲשֶׁר רָאוּ עַבְדֵי הַמֶּלֶךְ כִּי נָפְלוּ אֵלֶּה, הִחֲלוּ גַם הֵם לְקִרְאֵי אֱלֹהִים, כִּי אֵף עָלֵיהֶם הָיְתָה יְרֵאתָ יְהוָה, יַעַן אֲשֶׁר הִמָּה הָיוּ אֲשֶׁר עָמְדוּ לִפְנֵי הַמֶּלֶךְ וְהִעִידוּ עַל הַכֹּחַ הָרַב אֲשֶׁר לְעִמּוֹן.
- וְהֵם קָרְאוּ בְּשֵׁם יְהוָה בְּרַב כֹּחַם, עַד אֲשֶׁר נָפְלוּ כָּלָם אַרְצָה, זֹלַת אַחַת הַנָּשִׁים הַלְּמָנִיטוֹת, אֲשֶׁר נִקְרְאָה שְׁמָהּ אַבִּישׁ, וְהִיא הִפְכָּה לְהֶאֱמִין בִּיהוָה לִפְנֵי שָׁנִים רַבּוֹת, אַחֵר חֲזָיוֹן נִפְלָא אֲשֶׁר לְאִבֶּיהָ.
- וְכֵן, אַחֵר הִפְכָּה מֵאֲמִינָה בִּיהוָה, וַיַּעַן אֲשֶׁר לֹא הוֹדִיעָה בְּרַבִּים אֶת הַדְּבָר מֵעוֹלָם, בְּרִאוּתָהּ אֶת כָּל עַבְדֵי לְמוֹנֵי נוֹפְלִים אַרְצָה וְאֵף אֶת גְּבַרְתָּהּ, הַמַּלְכָּה, וְאֶת הַמֶּלֶךְ וְאֶת עִמּוֹן שְׂרוּעִים עַל הָאָרֶץ, יְדוּעַ יְדוּעָה כִּי הָיָה כֹחַ אֱלֹהִים. וְסִבְרָה הִיא כִּי זֹאת שְׁעַת



כִּשְׁר, בְּהוֹדִיעַ לָעַם אֶת אֲשֶׁר קָרָה בְּתוֹכָם,  
כִּי בְרָאִיתֶם אֶת הַמֶּלֶכָה הַזֶּה, הֵם יוֹסִיבוּ  
לְהֵאָמִין בְּכֹחַ אֱלֹהִים. לָכֵן הִיא רָצָה מִבֵּית  
אֶל בֵּית וְהוֹדִיעָה לְאֲנָשִׁים אֶת הַדָּבָר.

it would cause them to believe in the power of God, therefore she ran forth from house to house, making it known unto the people.

וְהֵם הִחֲלוּ לְהִתְקַבֵּץ אֶל בֵּית הַמֶּלֶךְ.  
וּבָאוּ הַמִּזְנִים וְחֻזּוֹ, לְמִרְבֵּה הַפְּתָעָתָם,  
בְּמִלָּךְ וּבְמִלְכָּה וּבְעַבְדֵיהֶם שׁוֹכְבִים עַל  
הָאָרֶץ, כָּלֵם מִטָּלִים כְּמֵתִים; וְהֵם אַף  
רָאוּ אֶת עֲמוֹן וְהִנֵּהוּ אִישׁ עִם נָפִי.

18 And they began to assemble themselves together unto the house of the king. And there came a multitude, and to their astonishment they beheld the king, and the queen, and their servants prostrate upon the earth, and they all lay there as though they were dead; and they also saw Ammon, and behold, he was a Nephite.

וְהָעַם הִחֵל לְהִתְלַוֵּן בֵּינֵיהֶם; וְחָלַק אֶמְרוּ כִּי  
רָעָה גְדוֹלָה בָּאָה עֲלֵיהֶם, עַל הַמֶּלֶךְ וְעַל בֵּיתוֹ,  
כִּי הִתִּיר לְאִישׁ מֵעַם נָפִי לְהִשָּׂאֵר בְּאַרְצָם.

19 And now the people began to murmur among themselves; some saying that it was a great evil that had come upon them, or upon the king and his house, because he had suffered that the Nephite should remain in the land.

וְאַחֲרֵים גָּעְרוּ בָהֶם וְאָמְרוּ כִּי הַמֶּלֶךְ הֵבִיא אֶת  
הָרָעָה הַזֹּאת עַל בֵּיתוֹ, יֵשֶׁן אֲשֶׁר הִרְגָּה אֶת  
עַבְדָּיו, אֲשֶׁר נָתַנוּ לְצֹאֲנוֹ לַפּוֹץ עַל מִי שְׁבוּץ.

20 But others rebuked them, saying: The king hath brought this evil upon his house, because he slew his servants who had had their flocks scattered at the waters of Sebus.

וְהָאֲנָשִׁים אֲשֶׁר עָמְדוּ עַל מִי שְׁבוּץ וְאֲשֶׁר  
פָּזְרוּ אֶת צֹאן הַמֶּלֶךְ גָּעְרוּ בְּאֵלָהּ, כִּי הֵם רָגְזוּ  
עַל עֲמוֹן מִפְּנֵי הַהֶרֶג אֲשֶׁר הִרְגָּה בְּעַמִּיתֵיהֶם  
עַל מִי שְׁבוּץ, בְּהִגָּנוֹ עַל עַבְדֵי הַמֶּלֶךְ.

21 And they were also rebuked by those men who had stood at the waters of Sebus and scattered the flocks which belonged to the king, for they were angry with Ammon because of the number which he had slain of their brethren at the waters of Sebus, while defending the flocks of the king.

וְאַחַד מֵהֶם, אֲשֶׁר אָחִיו נָפַל בְּחֶרֶב עֲמוֹן  
וְאֲשֶׁר חָמְתּוֹ עַל עֲמוֹן בְּעֵרָה בּוֹ, שָׁלַח אֶת  
חֶרְבוֹ וְקָרַב אֶל עֲמוֹן לְהִטִּיל בּוֹ אֶת חֶרְבוֹ  
וּלְהִרְגּוֹ; וְהִנֵּה, כִּהְנִיפוֹ אֶת הַחֶרֶב לְהַכּוֹתוֹ,  
הוּא נָפַל אַרְצָה מֵת.

22 Now, one of them, whose brother had been slain with the sword of Ammon, being exceedingly angry with Ammon, drew his sword and went forth that he might let it fall upon Ammon, to slay him; and as he lifted the sword to smite him, behold, he fell dead.

וְהִנֵּנוּ רוֹאִים כִּי לֹא נָתַן ה' לְהִרְגֵּה אֶת עֲמוֹן,  
וְזֹאת עַל פִּי דְבַר יְהוָה אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר אֶל מֹשִׁיעַ  
אָבִיו לֵאמֹר: חוֹס אַחוֹס עָלָיו וְיַעֲשֶׂה לוֹ כְּפִי  
אֲמוֹנָתָדָה. לָכֵן הִפְקִידוֹ מֹשִׁיעַ בְּיַד יְהוָה.

23 Now we see that Ammon could not be slain, for the Lord had said unto Mosiah, his father: I will spare him, and it shall be unto him according to thy faith—therefore, Mosiah trusted him unto the Lord.

וְהָיָה כִּרְאוֹת הָעֲמוֹן כִּי הָאִישׁ אֲשֶׁר הִנִּיף אֶת  
חֶרְבוֹ לְהִרְגֵּה אֶת עֲמוֹן, נָפַל מֵת, יָרַד פַּחַד עַל  
כָּלֵם וְהֵם לֹא הֵעִזוּ לְשַׁלַּח יָדָם לִגְעַת בְּעֲמוֹן  
אוּ בְּאַחַד הַנוֹפְלִים; וְהֵם הוֹסִיפוּ לְתַמְהָה זֶה  
אֶל זֶה מִה מְקוֹר הַכֹּחַ הַגָּדוֹל הַזֶּה, וּמִה  
מִשְׁמַע כָּל הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה.

24 And it came to pass that when the multitude beheld that the man had fallen dead, who lifted the sword to slay Ammon, fear came upon them all, and they durst not put forth their hands to touch him or any of those who had fallen; and they began to marvel again among themselves what could be the cause of this great power, or what all these things could mean.

וְרַבִּים מִן הַקָּהָל אָמְרוּ כִּי עֲמוֹן הוּא הָרוֹחַ  
הַגָּדוֹל, וְאַחֲרֵים אָמְרוּ כִּי הָרוֹחַ הַגָּדוֹל שְׁלָחוֹ;

25 And it came to pass that there were many among them who said that Ammon was the Great Spirit, and others said he was sent by the Great Spirit;

- 26 But others rebuked them all, saying that he was a monster, who had been sent from the Nephites to torment them.
- 27 And there were some who said that Ammon was sent by the Great Spirit to afflict them because of their iniquities; and that it was the Great Spirit that had always attended the Nephites, who had ever delivered them out of their hands; and they said that it was this Great Spirit who had destroyed so many of their brethren, the Lamanites.
- 28 And thus the contention began to be exceedingly sharp among them. And while they were thus contending, the woman servant who had caused the multitude to be gathered together came, and when she saw the contention which was among the multitude she was exceedingly sorrowful, even unto tears.
- 29 And it came to pass that she went and took the queen by the hand, that perhaps she might raise her from the ground; and as soon as she touched her hand she arose and stood upon her feet, and cried with a loud voice, saying: O blessed Jesus, who has saved me from an awful hell! O blessed God, have mercy on this people!
- 30 And when she had said this, she clasped her hands, being filled with joy, speaking many words which were not understood; and when she had done this, she took the king, Lamoni, by the hand, and behold he arose and stood upon his feet.
- 31 And he, immediately, seeing the contention among his people, went forth and began to rebuke them, and to teach them the words which he had heard from the mouth of Ammon; and as many as heard his words believed, and were converted unto the Lord.
- 32 But there were many among them who would not hear his words; therefore they went their way.
- 33 And it came to pass that when Ammon arose he also administered unto them, and also did all the servants of Lamoni; and they did all declare unto the people the selfsame thing—that their hearts had been changed; that they had no more desire to do evil.
- 34 And behold, many did declare unto the people that they had seen angels and had conversed with them; and thus they had told them things of God, and of his righteousness.
- וְהָיוּ אֲשֶׁר אָמְרוּ כִּי עֲמוֹן נִשְׁלַח מֵאֵת הָרוּחַ  
הַגָּדוֹל לְהַצִּיקָם מִפְּנֵי עֲוֹנוֹתֵיהֶם; וְכִי הָרוּחַ  
הַגָּדוֹל עֲמַד תָּמִיד לְנַפְשֵׁים וְהָצִיל אוֹתָם מִיָּדֵיהֶם.  
וְעוֹד אָמְרוּ כִּי הָרוּחַ הַגָּדוֹל הַזֶּה, הוּא אֲשֶׁר  
הִשְׁמִיד כָּה רַבִּים מִן הַלָּמָנִים אֲחֵיהֶם.
- כֹּה הִחֲלָה הַמְּרִיבָה בִּינֵיהֶם לְהַחֲרִיף עַד מְאֹד.  
וּבְהִיּוֹתָם מְרִיבִים כֵּן, בָּאָה הָאִשָּׁה הַמְּשָׁרְתָת,  
אֲשֶׁר גָּרְמָה לְהַמּוֹן לְהֵאָסֵף, וּבְרֹאוֹתָהּ אֶת  
הַמְּרִיבָה אֲשֶׁר בִּקְרֵב הַקְּהָל, גָּדַל צַעֲרָה מְאֹד,  
עַד דְּמְעוֹת.
- וְהָיָה הִלְכָּה וּלְקַחְתָּהּ אֶת הַמַּלְכָּה בְּיָדָהּ, כִּי  
אוֹלִי תוּכַל לְהַקִּימָהּ מִן הָאָרֶץ; וּכְנִגְעָהּ בְּיָדָהּ,  
הִיא קָמָה וַעֲמָדָה עַל רַגְלֶיהָ, וְקָרָאָה בְּקוֹל  
גָּדוֹל לֵאמֹר: בְּרוּךְ יֵשׁוּעַ, אֲשֶׁר הוֹשִׁיעָנִי  
מִשְׁאוֹל הָאֵימָה! בְּרוּךְ אַתָּה, אֱלֹהִים, רַחֵם נָא  
עַל הָעָם הַזֶּה!
- וּבְאֲמָרָהּ זֹאת, סָפְקָה כַּפֶּיהָ וְהִשְׁמַחָהּ  
מִמַּלְאָהּ אֶת לִבָּהּ וּשְׁפָטֶיהָ דּוֹבְרוֹת מִלִּים  
רַבּוֹת בְּלִמִּי מוֹבִנּוֹת. וְאַחֵר עֲשׂוֹתָהּ כֹּה, הִיא  
לְקַחְתָּהּ אֶת הַמֶּלֶךְ לְמוֹנִי בְּיָדוֹ, וְהִנֵּה הוּא קָם  
וַעֲמַד עַל רַגְלָיו.
- וּמִיָּד, בְּרֹאוֹת הַמֶּלֶךְ אֶת מְרִיבַת עֲמוֹן, הוּא קָרַב  
אֲלֵיהֶם וְהִחֲל לְגַעֵר בָּהֶם וּלְלַמְּדָם אֶת הַדְּבָרִים  
אֲשֶׁר שָׁמַע מִפִּי עֲמוֹן; וְכָל אֲשֶׁר הֶאֱזִינוּ  
לְדַבְּרֵי הָאֱמִינִי בָּהֶם וְהִפְכוּ מֵאֱמִינֵי יְהוָה.
- אֲךָ רַבִּים מִן הָאֲנָשִׁים לֹא הֶאֱזִינוּ לְדַבְּרָיו; עַל  
כֵּן הֵם הִלְכוּ אִישׁ בְּדַרְכּוֹ.
- וְעֲמוֹן, אַחֵר קוּמוֹ, הָיָה מְשַׁמֵּשׁ לִפְנֵיהֶם אִף  
הוּא, וְכֵן עָשׂוּ כָּל עַבְדֵי לְמוֹנִי; וְכָל־הַגִּידוֹ אֶל  
הָעָם דְּבַר אֶחָד: כִּי לִבָּם הִשְׁתַּנָּה, וְכִי אֵין הֵם  
חֹפְצִים עוֹד לַהֲרַע.
- וְהִנֵּה, רַבִּים הִגִּידוּ בְּאָזְנֵי הָעָם כִּי רָאוּ מַלְאָכִים  
וְדִבְּרוּ עִמָּהֶם; וּבְכֵן סִפְּרוּ לָהֶם הַמַּלְאָכִים  
דְּבָרֵי אֱלֹהִים וְדְבָרֵי צִדְקָתוֹ.

- 35 והיו שם רבים אשר האמינו בדבריהם; כל אשר האמינו נטבלו, והם היו לעם צדיק ויסדו כנסיה בקרבם.
- 36 And it came to pass that there were many that did believe in their words; and as many as did believe were baptized; and they became a righteous people, and they did establish a church among them.
- כה החלה פעלת יהוה בקרב הלמנים. וכה החל יהוה לשפוך את רוחו עליהם. ואנחנו רואים כי זרועו מושטת לכל השבים מרעתם ומאמינים בשמו.
- 36 And thus the work of the Lord did commence among the Lamanites; thus the Lord did begin to pour out his Spirit upon them; and we see that his arm is extended to all people who will repent and believe on his name.

## כ

## 20

- והיה אחר יסדם כנסיה בארץ ההיא, חפץ המלך למוני כי ילך עמו אל ארץ נפי בעבור יציגהו לפני אביו.
- 1 And it came to pass that when they had established a church in that land, that king Lamoni desired that Ammon should go with him to the land of Nephi, that he might show him unto his father.
- וקול יהוה היה אל עמון לאמר: לא תעלה אל ארץ נפי, כי המלך יבקש להרגך; אך אל ארץ מדוני תלך, כי אחיך אהרן ואף מולוקי ועמה אסורים שם בית הכלא.
- 2 And the voice of the Lord came to Ammon saying: Thou shalt not go up to the land of Nephi, for behold, the king will seek thy life; but thou shalt go to the land of Middoni; for behold, thy brother Aaron, and also Muloki and Ammah are in prison.
- וכשמע עמון את הדבר הזה, הוא אמר אל למוני: הנה אחי ועמיתי אסורים בבית הכלא במדוני, ואני הולך לחלצם.
- 3 Now it came to pass that when Ammon had heard this, he said unto Lamoni: Behold, my brother and brethren are in prison at Middoni, and I go that I may deliver them.
- ואמר למוני אל עמון: ידעתי כי בכם יהוה תוכל לעשות הכל, אולם הנני הולך עמך אל ארץ מדוני; כי מלך ארץ מדוני, אשר שמו אנטיאומנו, הוא רעי; לכן אלך אל ארץ מדוני, למען אדבר חלקות אל מלך הארץ והוא יוציא את עמיתיך מבית הכלא. ואמר למוני אל עמון: מי הגיד לך כי עמיתיך אסורים?
- 4 Now Lamoni said unto Ammon: I know, in the strength of the Lord thou canst do all things. But behold, I will go with thee to the land of Middoni; for the king of the land of Middoni, whose name is Antiomno, is a friend unto me; therefore I go to the land of Middoni, that I may flatter the king of the land, and he will cast thy brethren out of prison. Now Lamoni said unto him: Who told thee that thy brethren were in prison?
- ואמר לו עמון: איש לא הגיד לי, בלתי אלהים; והוא אמר לי: לך וחלץ את עמיתיך, כי אסורים הם בארץ מדוני.
- 5 And Ammon said unto him: No one hath told me, save it be God; and he said unto me—Go and deliver thy brethren, for they are in prison in the land of Middoni.
- וכשמע זאת למוני, הוא צוה את עבדיו להכין את סוסיו ואת מרכבותיו.
- 6 Now when Lamoni had heard this he caused that his servants should make ready his horses and his chariots.
- והוא אמר אל עמון: בוא נא, הנני יורד עמך אל ארץ מדוני ושם אפציר במלך לשחרר את עמיתיך האסורים.
- 7 And he said unto Ammon: Come, I will go with thee down to the land of Middoni, and there I will plead with the king that he will cast thy brethren out of prison.
- והיה בצאת עמון ולמוני למסעם שמה, הם פגשו את אבי למוני, אשר היה מלך על כל הארץ.
- 8 And it came to pass that as Ammon and Lamoni were journeying thither, they met the father of Lamoni, who was king over all the land.

- 9 And behold, the father of Lamoni said unto him: Why did ye not come to the feast on that great day when I made a feast unto my sons, and unto my people?
- 10 And he also said: Whither art thou going with this Nephite, who is one of the children of a liar?
- 11 And it came to pass that Lamoni rehearsed unto him whither he was going, for he feared to offend him.
- 12 And he also told him all the cause of his tarrying in his own kingdom, that he did not go unto his father to the feast which he had prepared.
- 13 And now when Lamoni had rehearsed unto him all these things, behold, to his astonishment, his father was angry with him, and said: Lamoni, thou art going to deliver these Nephites, who are sons of a liar. Behold, he robbed our fathers; and now his children are also come amongst us that they may, by their cunning and their lyings, deceive us, that they again may rob us of our property.
- 14 Now the father of Lamoni commanded him that he should slay Ammon with the sword. And he also commanded him that he should not go to the land of Middoni, but that he should return with him to the land of Ishmael.
- 15 But Lamoni said unto him: I will not slay Ammon, neither will I return to the land of Ishmael, but I go to the land of Middoni that I may release the brethren of Ammon, for I know that they are just men and holy prophets of the true God.
- 16 Now when his father had heard these words, he was angry with him, and he drew his sword that he might smite him to the earth.
- 17 But Ammon stood forth and said unto him: Behold, thou shalt not slay thy son; nevertheless, it were better that he should fall than thee, for behold, he has repented of his sins; but if thou shouldst fall at this time, in thine anger, thy soul could not be saved.
- 18 And again, it is expedient that thou shouldst forbear; for if thou shouldst slay thy son, he being an innocent man, his blood would cry from the ground to the Lord his God, for vengeance to come upon thee; and perhaps thou wouldst lose thy soul.
- וְאָבִי לְמוֹנִי אָמַר אֵלָיו: מַדּוּעַ לֹא בָאתָם אֵלַי הַמִּשְׁתֶּה בַּיּוֹם הַגָּדוֹל אֲשֶׁר עָשִׂיתִי בּוֹ מִשְׁתֶּה לְבָנָי וּלְעַמִּי.
- וְעוֹד אָמַר: אַנְה מוֹעֵדוֹת פְּנִידָה עִם הַנְּפִי הַזֶּה, אֲשֶׁר הוּא אֶחָד בְּנֵי אִישׁ כִּזְבִּים.
- וְלְמוֹנִי, בְּחֻשְׁשׁוֹ לְהַעֲלִיב אוֹתוֹ, סָפַר לוֹ לָאֵן הוּא הוֹלֵךְ.
- וְהוּא אָף סָפַר לוֹ אֶת כָּל סִבַּת שְׁהִיטוֹ בְּאַרְצָה מְלָכוֹת, אֲשֶׁר מָנְעָה אוֹתוֹ מִלְכּוֹת אֶל אָבִיו לַמִּשְׁתֶּה אֲשֶׁר עָשָׂה.
- וְכַאֲשֶׁר סָפַר לְמוֹנִי לְאָבִיו אֶת כָּל הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, וְהִנֵּה, לְמַרְבֵּה הַפְּתָעָתוֹ, כַּעַס עָלָיו אָבִיו וְאָמַר: לְמוֹנִי, הִנֵּה הוֹלֵךְ לְחַלֵּץ אֶת הַנְּפִיִּים הָאֵלֶּה, אֲשֶׁר בְּנֵי אִישׁ כִּזְבִּים הֵם. הוּא גָזַל אֶת אֲבוֹתֵינוּ, וְעַתָּה גַם בְּנֵינוּ בָּאִים בְּתוֹכֵנוּ, לְמַעַן יִרְמּוּנוּ בְּנִכְלִיָּהֶם וּבְכִזְבֵּיהֶם, בְּעִבּוֹר יוֹסִיפוּ לְנַשְׁלָנוּ מִכְּרוּשָׁנוּ.
- וְאָבִי לְמוֹנִי צִוָּהוּ לְהָרֹג אֶת עַמּוֹן בַּחֶרֶב, וְאֵף צִוָּהוּ כִּי לֹא יֵלֶךְ אֶל אֶרֶץ מִדּוֹנִי, וְכִי יָשׁוּב עִמּוֹ אֶל אֶרֶץ יִשְׁמָעֵאל.
- אֲף לְמוֹנִי אָמַר אֵלָיו: לֹא אֶהְרֹג אֶת עַמּוֹן וְלֹא אָשׁוּב אֶל אֶרֶץ יִשְׁמָעֵאל, כִּי לְאֶרֶץ מִדּוֹנִי אֲנִי הוֹלֵךְ, לְמַעַן חַלֵּץ אֶת עַמִּיתִי עַמּוֹן, כִּי יוֹדַעְתִּי אֲנִי אֲשֶׁר הֵם אֲנָשִׁי צַדִּיק לֹאֵלֶּהִי הָאֱמֶת וַיִּנְבִּיאֵי קִדְשׁוֹ.
- וְכַשְׁמַע אָבִיו אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה חָרָה אַפּוֹ בְּבָנָו, וְהוּא שָׁלַף אֶת חֶרְבוֹ לְהַכּוֹתוֹ אֶרְצָה.
- אֲף עַמּוֹן עָמַד לְפָנָיו וְאָמַר לוֹ: לֹא תִהְרֹג אֶת בְּנִידִי! וְאוֹלָם, טוֹב הִיָּה כִּי יִפֹּל הוּא וְלֹא אַתָּה, כִּי שָׁב מִחֻטְאֵי; וְאִלּוּ נִפְלֵת אַתָּה כְּעַתָּה הַזֹּאת, בְּהִוִּיתְךָ בְּחַמָּתְךָ, לֹא יִכְלֶה נַפְשְׁךָ לְהִנָּצֵל.
- וְעוֹד: רָאוּ כִּי תִתְאַפֵּק, כִּי אִם תִּהְרֹג אֶת בְּנִידִי, אֲשֶׁר נָקִי כַּפִּים הוּא, תִּעָלֶה צַעֲקַת דָּמָיו מִן הָאֲדָמָה אֶל יְהוָה אֱלֹהָיו בְּתַבִּיעֵת נִקְמָה מִמֶּךָ; וְאוֹלֵי תִתְאַבֵּד אֶת נַפְשְׁךָ.

- 19 Now when Ammon had said these words unto him, he answered him, saying: I know that if I should slay my son, that I should shed innocent blood; for it is thou that hast sought to destroy him.
- וְכַבְלוֹת עֲמוֹן לוֹמַר אֶלְיוֹ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, עֲנָהּ אָבִי לְמוֹנִי לֵאמֹר: יָדַעְתִּי כִּי בְהָרְגִי אֶת בְּנִי, דָּם נָקִי אֲשַׁפֵּךְ; כִּי אַתָּה הוּא אֲשֶׁר בִּקְשָׁתָּ לְכַלּוֹתוֹ.
- 20 And he stretched forth his hand to slay Ammon. But Ammon withstood his blows, and also smote his arm that he could not use it.
- וְהוּא שָׁלַח אֶת יָדוֹ לְהַרְגֵּ אֶת עֲמוֹן; וְאוֹלָם עֲמוֹן נָשָׂא אֶת מַהְלְמוֹתָיו וְאֵף הִכָּה אֶת זְרוּעוֹ עַד כִּי לֹא יָכַל לַפְעֵל בָּהּ.
- 21 Now when the king saw that Ammon could slay him, he began to plead with Ammon that he would spare his life.
- וְהַמֶּלֶךְ, כִּרְאוֹת הַמֶּלֶךְ כִּי יָכוֹל עֲמוֹן לְהָרְגוֹ, הֵחֵל לְהַפְצִיר בּוֹ כִּי יַחֲסֹם עַל חַיּוֹ.
- 22 But Ammon raised his sword, and said unto him: Behold, I will smite thee except thou wilt grant unto me that my brethren may be cast out of prison.
- אָף עֲמוֹן הִנִּיף אֶת חֶרְבוֹ וְאָמַר לוֹ: הִנְנִי מִכָּה בָּךְ, אִם לֹא תוֹרָה בְּעִבּוּרִי עַל שְׁחֻרְרוֹ עַמִּיתִי מִכְּלָאִם.
- 23 Now the king, fearing he should lose his life, said: If thou wilt spare me I will grant unto thee whatsoever thou wilt ask, even to half of the kingdom.
- וְהַמֶּלֶךְ, אֲשֶׁר חָשַׁשׁ לֵאבֹד אֶת חַיּוֹ, אָמַר: אִם תַּחֲסֹם עָלַי, אֶתֶּן לָךְ כָּל אֲשֶׁר תִּבְקֹשׁ, עַד חֲצִי הַמְּלָכוֹת.
- 24 Now when Ammon saw that he had wrought upon the old king according to his desire, he said unto him: If thou wilt grant that my brethren may be cast out of prison, and also that Lamoni may retain his kingdom, and that ye be not displeased with him, but grant that he may do according to his own desires in whatsoever thing he thinketh, then will I spare thee; otherwise I will smite thee to the earth.
- וְכִרְאוֹת עֲמוֹן כִּי פָעַל עַל הַמֶּלֶךְ הַזֶּקֶן כְּכִי חֲפָצוֹ, אָמַר אֵלָיו: אִם תוֹרָה עַל שְׁחֻרְרוֹ עַמִּיתִי מִבֵּית הַכְּלָא, וְאֵף תִּרְשָׁה כִּי לְמוֹנִי יוֹסִיף לְהַחֲזִיק אֶת מַלְכוּתוֹ, וְלֹא יִרַע זֶה בְּעֵינָיָה, כִּי תִרְשָׁה לוֹ לַעֲשׂוֹת כְּחֲפָצוֹ בְּכָל דְּבָר אֲשֶׁר יַחֲשַׁב לִנְכוֹן, חוּס אַחוֹס עָלָיָהּ. וְלֹא, לְאַרְצִי אֶכְפֶּה.
- 25 Now when Ammon had said these words, the king began to rejoice because of his life.
- וְכַבְלוֹת עֲמוֹן לוֹמַר אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, הֵחֵל הַמֶּלֶךְ לְשִׂמְחָה עַל הַצֵּלָת נַפְשׁוֹ.
- 26 And when he saw that Ammon had no desire to destroy him, and when he also saw the great love he had for his son Lamoni, he was astonished exceedingly, and said: Because this is all that thou hast desired, that I would release thy brethren, and suffer that my son Lamoni should retain his kingdom, behold, I will grant unto you that my son may retain his kingdom from this time and forever; and I will govern him no more—
- וְתִמְהוֹנוֹ גָּדַל מְאֹד כְּאֲשֶׁר רָאָה כִּי אֵין עֲמוֹן חֲפֵץ לְהָרְגוֹ וְגַם כִּרְאוֹתוֹ אֶת גָּדַל אֶהְבֵּת עֲמוֹן לְבָנוֹ לְמוֹנִי. וְהוּא אָמַר: יָעַן כִּי כָּל אֲשֶׁר חֲפָצְתָּ מִמּוֹנִי הוּא שְׁחֻרְרוֹ עַמִּיתִיָּהּ וְכִי אֶנִּיחַ כִּי בְנִי לְמוֹנִי יַחֲזִיק אֶת מַלְכוּתוֹ, הִנְנִי נִעְנָה לָךְ כִּי בְנִי יַחֲזִיק בְּמַלְכוּתוֹ מִן הַיּוֹם הַזֶּה וְעַד עוֹלָם. לֹא אוֹסִיף עוֹד לְמַשֵּׁל בּוֹ.
- 27 And I will also grant unto thee that thy brethren may be cast out of prison, and thou and thy brethren may come unto me, in my kingdom; for I shall greatly desire to see thee. For the king was greatly astonished at the words which he had spoken, and also at the words which had been spoken by his son Lamoni, therefore he was desirous to learn them.
- וְהִנְנִי אֵף מוֹרָה בְּעִבּוּרָךְ אֶת שְׁחֻרְרוֹ עַמִּיתִיָּהּ מִבֵּית הַכְּלָא, וְאַתָּה וְעַמִּיתִיָּהּ תוֹכְלוּ לָבוֹא אֵלַי, אֶל מַמְלַכְתִּי; כִּי עַז חֲפָצִי לִקְבֹּל אֶת פְּנִיכֶם. כִּי הַמֶּלֶךְ הָיָה מִפְתָּע מְאֹד מִדְּבָרֵי עֲמוֹן וְכֵן מִדְּבָרֵי בְנוֹ לְמוֹנִי; לָכֵן רָצָה מְאֹד לְלַמְּדָם.
- 28 And it came to pass that Ammon and Lamoni proceeded on their journey towards the land of Middoni. And Lamoni found favor in the
- וְעֲמוֹן וְלְמוֹנִי הִמְשִׁיכוּ בְּמִסְעָם אֶל אֶרֶץ מִדּוֹנִי. וְלְמוֹנִי מָצָא חֵן בְּעֵינֵי מֶלֶךְ הָאֶרֶץ;



## עֲלֵמָא כ:כט–כא:ה

על כן שחררו עמיתי עמון מבית הכלא.

eyes of the king of the land; therefore the brethren of Ammon were brought forth out of prison.

ובראותו אותם עמון הוא התעצב מאד כי היו עירמים, ועורם נשחת מאד, כי נאסרו בעבדותים. והם סבלו ברעב ובצמא ובכל מיני יסורים. ועל אף זאת, את כל יסוריהם הם סבלו בארף רוח.

29 And when Ammon did meet them he was exceedingly sorrowful, for behold they were naked, and their skins were worn exceedingly because of being bound with strong cords. And they also had suffered hunger, thirst, and all kinds of afflictions; nevertheless they were patient in all their sufferings.

ובמקרה היה זה גורלם לכל בידי עם קשה לב וקשה ערף ביותר; על כן לא שמעו לדבריהם, והם גרשום והכום, ושלחום מבית אל בית וממקום אל מקום, עד בואם אל ארץ מדוני; שם הם נלקחו והשלכו לבית הכלא ונאסרו בעבדותים ונשארו כלואים ימים רבים, עד אשר חלצו בידי למוני ועמון.

30 And, as it happened, it was their lot to have fallen into the hands of a more hardened and a more stiffnecked people; therefore they would not hearken unto their words, and they had cast them out, and had smitten them, and had driven them from house to house, and from place to place, even until they had arrived in the land of Middoni; and there they were taken and cast into prison, and bound with strong cords, and kept in prison for many days, and were delivered by Lamoni and Ammon.

## כא

## 21

והיה בהפרד עמון ועמיתיו בגבול ארץ הלמנים, פנה אהרן לנסע אל הארץ אשר הלמנים קראוה ירושלם, על שם ארץ מולדת אבותיהם; והיא הרחק, בגבול ארץ מורמון.

1 Now when Ammon and his brethren separated themselves in the borders of the land of the Lamanites, behold Aaron took his journey towards the land which was called by the Lamanites, Jerusalem, calling it after the land of their fathers' nativity; and it was away joining the borders of Mormon.

והלמנים והעמלקיים ועם עמולון בנו עיר גדולה, אשר שמה נקרא ירושלם.

2 Now the Lamanites and the Amalekites and the people of Amulon had built a great city, which was called Jerusalem.

והלמנים עצמם היו קשים דים, ואולם העמלקיים והעמולונים היו אף קשים מהם; לכן הם הטו את הלמנים להקשות את לבם, להתחזק ברשעה ובתועבותיהם.

3 Now the Lamanites of themselves were sufficiently hardened, but the Amalekites and the Amulonites were still harder; therefore they did cause the Lamanites that they should harden their hearts, that they should wax strong in wickedness and their abominations.

ואהרן בא אל העיר ירושלם, והחל להטיף אל העמלקיים. אכן, הוא החל להטיף להם בבתי הכנסת אשר להם, כי הם בנו בתי כנסת כמשפט הנחורים; כי רבים מן העמלקיים והעמולונים הלכו בדרך מאמיני תורת נחור.

4 And it came to pass that Aaron came to the city of Jerusalem, and first began to preach to the Amalekites. And he began to preach to them in their synagogues, for they had built synagogues after the order of the Nehors; for many of the Amalekites and the Amulonites were after the order of the Nehors.

לכן, בבוא אהרן אל אחד בתי הכנסת להטיף אל העם, וכאשר דבר אליהם, והנה קם איש עמלקי והחל לריב עמו, ואמר: מה הוא הדבר אשר העדת עליו? האתה ראית מלאך? מדוע אין מלאכים מופיעים לפנינו? האין העם הזה טוב כעמך?

5 Therefore, as Aaron entered into one of their synagogues to preach unto the people, and as he was speaking unto them, behold there arose an Amalekite and began to contend with him, saying: What is that thou hast testified? Hast thou seen an angel? Why do not angels appear unto us? Behold are not this people as good as thy people?

## עֲלָמָא כֹּא-ו-יֵד

- הִנֵּה גַם אֲמַרְתָּ כִּי אִם לֹא נִנָּחַם עַל חַטָּאֵינוּ, אֲבוֹד נֹאבֵד. אֵיכְכָּה תִדַּע אֶת מַחְשַׁבְתָּ לִּבְנוּ וְכִנְיֻתֵנוּ? אֵיךְ תִּדַּע כִּי יֵשׁ לָנוּ עַל מַה לְהִנָּחֵם? אֵיךְ תִּדַּע כִּי אֵינָנוּ עִם צְדִיק? הִנֵּה, בְּנִינוּ מִקְדָּשִׁים וְאִנְחָנוּ מִתְכַּנְּסִים לַעֲבֹד אֶת אֱלֹהִים. מֵאֲמִינִים אִנְחָנוּ כִּי יוֹשִׁיעַ אֱלֹהִים אֶת כָּל הָאָדָם.
- וְאָמַר אֵלָיו אֶהְרֹן: הֲתֵאֱמִין כִּי בֶן אֱלֹהִים יָבֹא וְיִגָּאֵל אֶת בְּנֵי הָאָדָם מִחַטְאוֹתֵיהֶם?
- וְאָמַר לוֹ הָאִישׁ: אֵינָנוּ מֵאֲמִינִים כִּי יוֹדַע אֶתְּהָ דְבַר שְׂכָזָה. אֵינָנוּ מֵאֲמִינִים בְּמִסֹּרוֹת אֱוִילִיּוֹת אֱלֹהִים. אֵינָנוּ מֵאֲמִינִים כִּי יוֹדַע אֶתְּהָ אֶת אֲשֶׁר יָבֹא, אוֹ כִּי אֲבוֹתֵיךְ, וְאִף אֲבוֹתֵינוּ, יָדְעוּ אֶת אֲשֶׁר דִּבְרוּ בְּאֲשֶׁר לְעִתִּיד לָבֹא.
- אִז הִחַל אֶהְרֹן לִבְאֹר לִפְנֵיהֶם אֶת כְּתָבֵי הַקִּדְשׁ עַל אוֹדוֹת בּוֹא הַמָּשִׁיחַ וְעַל תְּחִיַּת הַמֵּתִים, וְכִי לֹא תִתְּכֵן גְּאֻלָּה לְאִנּוּשׁוֹת, כִּי אִם עַל יְדֵי מוֹת הַמָּשִׁיחַ וְסִבְלוֹתָיו, וְהַכִּפָּרָה אֲשֶׁר בְּדָמוֹ.
- וְכַאֲשֶׁר הוּא בָּאָר לָהֶם אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, הֵם רָגְזוּ עָלָיו וְהִחֲלוּ לִלְעֹג לוֹ וְלֹא הִאֲזִינוּ לְדְבָרָיו.
- וּבִרְאוֹתוֹ כִּי אֵינִים חִפְצִים לִשְׁמַע אֶת דְּבָרָיו, הוּא יָצָא מִבֵּית הַכְּנֶסֶת וְהָלַךְ אֶל כֶּפֶר אֲשֶׁר שְׁמוֹ נִקְרָא אַנִּיאַנְטִי. שָׁם מָצָא אֶת מוּלוּקִי מְשִׁיף לָהֶם אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים, וְכֵן אֶת עַמָּה וְאֶת עַמִּיתָיו. וְהֵם הִתּוֹכַחוּ עִם רַבִּים עַל דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים.
- וְהָיָה בִּרְאוֹתָם כִּי הִאֲנָשִׁים יִקְשׁוּ אֶת לִבָּם, הֵם עָזְבוּ אֶת הַמָּקוֹם וְהָלְכוּ אֶל אֶרֶץ מִדּוֹנִי. וְהֵם הִשִּׁיפוּ אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים לְרַבִּים, וְאֶחָדִים הִאֲמִינוּ לְדְבָרִים אֲשֶׁר לָמְדוּם.
- עַל אִף זֹאת, נִתְפָּשׂוּ אֶהְרֹן וּמִסְפָּר מַעֲמִיתָיו, וְהֵם הִשְׁלְכוּ אֶל בֵּית הַכְּלָא; וּשְׂאִרֵיהֶם בָּרְחוּ מֵאֶרֶץ מִדּוֹנִי אֶל סְבִיבוֹתֶיהָ.
- וְהָאֲסוּרִים בְּבֵית הַכְּלָא סָבְלוּ יְסוּרִים רַבִּים, וְהֵם חָלְצוּ בְּיַד לָמוֹנִי וְעַמּוֹנִי וְקִבְּלוּ מֵאֶכָּל וּמִלְבוּשׁ.
- 6 Thou also sayest, except we repent we shall perish. How knowest thou the thought and intent of our hearts? How knowest thou that we have cause to repent? How knowest thou that we are not a righteous people? Behold, we have built sanctuaries, and we do assemble ourselves together to worship God. We do believe that God will save all men.
- 7 Now Aaron said unto him: Believest thou that the Son of God shall come to redeem mankind from their sins?
- 8 And the man said unto him: We do not believe that thou knowest any such thing. We do not believe in these foolish traditions. We do not believe that thou knowest of things to come, neither do we believe that thy fathers and also that our fathers did know concerning the things which they spoke, of that which is to come.
- 9 Now Aaron began to open the scriptures unto them concerning the coming of Christ, and also concerning the resurrection of the dead, and that there could be no redemption for mankind save it were through the death and sufferings of Christ, and the atonement of his blood.
- 10 And it came to pass as he began to expound these things unto them they were angry with him, and began to mock him; and they would not hear the words which he spake.
- 11 Therefore, when he saw that they would not hear his words, he departed out of their synagogue, and came over to a village which was called Ani-Anti, and there he found Muloki preaching the word unto them; and also Ammah and his brethren. And they contended with many about the word.
- 12 And it came to pass that they saw that the people would harden their hearts, therefore they departed and came over into the land of Middoni. And they did preach the word unto many, and few believed on the words which they taught.
- 13 Nevertheless, Aaron and a certain number of his brethren were taken and cast into prison, and the remainder of them fled out of the land of Middoni unto the regions round about.
- 14 And those who were cast into prison suffered many things, and they were delivered by the hand of Lamoni and Ammon, and they were fed and clothed.

- 15 And they went forth again to declare the word, and thus they were delivered for the first time out of prison; and thus they had suffered.
- וְהֵם הוֹסִיפוּ לְלַכֵּת לְהַשְׁמִיעַ אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים. וְכֵן הֵם שִׁחְרְרוּ בַּפֶּעַם הָרִאשׁוֹנָה מִבֵּית הַפְּלֶא, וְכֵן סָבְלוּ.
- 16 And they went forth whithersoever they were led by the Spirit of the Lord, preaching the word of God in every synagogue of the Amalekites, or in every assembly of the Lamanites where they could be admitted.
- וְהֵם הִלְכוּ לְכָל אֲשֶׁר הוֹלִיכָה אוֹתָם רוּחַ יְהוָה, וְהִשִּׁיפוּ אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים בְּכָל בֵּית כְּנָסֶת אֲשֶׁר לְעַמְּלִקִּיִּים וּבְכָל אֲסֶפָה אֲשֶׁר לְלָמְנִים, אִם נָתַן לָהֶם לְהִכָּנֵס.
- 17 And it came to pass that the Lord began to bless them, insomuch that they brought many to the knowledge of the truth; yea, they did convince many of their sins, and of the traditions of their fathers, which were not correct.
- וַיְהִי וַיְבָרֶכֶם, וְעָלָה בְיָדָם לְהַבִּיאַ רַבִּים לִידְעִית הָאֵמֶת. אַכֵּן, הֵם שִׁכְנְעוּ רַבִּים עַל חַטָּאֵיהֶם וְעַל מְסֹרוֹת אֲבוֹתֵיהֶם אֲשֶׁר הֵן לֹא נְכוֹנוֹת.
- 18 And it came to pass that Ammon and Lamoni returned from the land of Middoni to the land of Ishmael, which was the land of their inheritance.
- וַעֲמוֹן וְלָמוֹנִי שָׁבוּ מֵאֶרֶץ מִדּוֹנִי אֶל אֶרֶץ יִשְׁמַעֵאל, אֶרֶץ יְרֻשָּׁתָם.
- 19 And king Lamoni would not suffer that Ammon should serve him, or be his servant.
- וְלֹא חָפֵץ הַמֶּלֶךְ לָמוֹנִי כִּי עֲמוֹן יִשְׁרָתֶהוּ אוֹ יִהְיֶה עַבְדּוֹ.
- 20 But he caused that there should be synagogues built in the land of Ishmael; and he caused that his people, or the people who were under his reign, should assemble themselves together.
- וְאוֹלָם הוּא צִוָּה לְבָנוֹת בֵּתֵי כְנָסֶת בְּאֶרֶץ יִשְׁמַעֵאל וְאֵף הוֹרָה לְעַמּוֹ, אוֹ לְנִתְיָנוֹ, לְהֶאָסֵף יַחְדָּו.
- 21 And he did rejoice over them, and he did teach them many things. And he did also declare unto them that they were a people who were under him, and that they were a free people, that they were free from the oppressions of the king, his father; for that his father had granted unto him that he might reign over the people who were in the land of Ishmael, and in all the land round about.
- וְהוּא שִׂמַּח עֲלֵיהֶם וְלָמַדָם דְּבָרִים רַבִּים. וְהוּא אֵף הִשְׁמִיעָם כִּי הֵם עִם הַנָּתוֹן לְשִׁלְטוֹנוֹ, וְכִי הֵם עִם חֲפְשִׁי, חֲפְשִׁיִּים מִדְּכֹי הַמֶּלֶךְ, אָבִיו; יַעַן אֲשֶׁר נָתַן אָבִיו אֶת הַסְּכָמְתוֹ כִּי יִמְלֹךְ עַל הָעָם אֲשֶׁר בְּאֶרֶץ יִשְׁמַעֵאל וּבְכָל הָאֶרֶץ אֲשֶׁר סָבִיב.
- 22 And he also declared unto them that they might have the liberty of worshiping the Lord their God according to their desires, in whatsoever place they were in, if it were in the land which was under the reign of king Lamoni.
- וְהוּא אֵף הִשְׁמִיעָם כִּי חֲפְשִׁיִּים הֵם לְעַבְדָּא אֶת יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵיהֶם כְּרָצוֹנָם בְּכָל מְקוֹם מוֹשְׁבָם, אִם הוּא בְּאֶרֶץ אֲשֶׁר תַּחַת שִׁלְטוֹן הַמֶּלֶךְ לָמוֹנִי.
- 23 And Ammon did preach unto the people of king Lamoni; and it came to pass that he did teach them all things concerning things pertaining to righteousness. And he did exhort them daily, with all diligence; and they gave heed unto his word, and they were zealous for keeping the commandments of God.
- וַעֲמוֹן הָיָה מְשִׁיף לָעָם אֲשֶׁר לְמֶלֶךְ לָמוֹנִי. וְהוּא לָמַדָם אֶת כָּל הַדְּבָרִים הַנּוֹגְעִים לְצִדִּיק וְשִׁקְדָּה לְהַזְהִירָם מִדֵּי יוֹם בְּיוֹמוֹ; וְהֵם הִקְשִׁיבוּ לְדַבְּרוֹ לְשֹׁמֵר בְּדַבְּקוֹת וּבְעִזָּה רוּחָם אֶת מִצְוֹת אֱלֹהִים.

## כב

## 22

- 1 Now, as Ammon was thus teaching the people of Lamoni continually, we will return to the account of Aaron and his brethren; for after he departed from the land of Middoni he was led by the Spirit to the land of Nephi, even to the house of the king which was over all the land save it were the land of Ishmael; and he was the father of Lamoni.
- 2 And it came to pass that he went in unto him into the king's palace, with his brethren, and bowed himself before the king, and said unto him: Behold, O king, we are the brethren of Ammon, whom thou hast delivered out of prison.
- 3 And now, O king, if thou wilt spare our lives, we will be thy servants. And the king said unto them: Arise, for I will grant unto you your lives, and I will not suffer that ye shall be my servants; but I will insist that ye shall administer unto me; for I have been somewhat troubled in mind because of the generosity and the greatness of the words of thy brother Ammon; and I desire to know the cause why he has not come up out of Middoni with thee.
- 4 And Aaron said unto the king: Behold, the Spirit of the Lord has called him another way; he has gone to the land of Ishmael, to teach the people of Lamoni.
- 5 Now the king said unto them: What is this that ye have said concerning the Spirit of the Lord? Behold, this is the thing which doth trouble me.
- 6 And also, what is this that Ammon said—If ye will repent ye shall be saved, and if ye will not repent, ye shall be cast off at the last day?
- 7 And Aaron answered him and said unto him: Believest thou that there is a God? And the king said: I know that the Amalekites say that there is a God, and I have granted unto them that they should build sanctuaries, that they may assemble themselves together to worship him. And if now thou sayest there is a God, behold I will believe.
- 8 And now when Aaron heard this, his heart began to rejoice, and he said: Behold, assuredly as thou livest, O king, there is a God.
- 9 And the king said: Is God that Great Spirit that brought our fathers out of the land of Jerusalem?
- וּבְעוֹד עֲמוֹן מְלַמֵּד כֹּךְ אֶת עַם לְמוֹנִי לֹלֵא הַפֶּסֶק, נָשׁוּב אֶל סִפּוֹר אֶהְרֹן וְעַמִּיתָיו; כִּי אַחֵר עָזְבוּ אֶת אֶרֶץ מִדּוֹנִי, הוֹלִיכָתָהּ רוּחַ אֱלֹהִים אֶל אֶרֶץ נֶפְחִי, אֶל בֵּית הַמֶּלֶךְ אֲשֶׁר מֶלֶךְ עַל כָּל הָאֶרֶץ, וְזוֹלַת אֶרֶץ יִשְׁמָעֵאל; וְהוּא אָבִי לְמוֹנִי.
- וְהוּא בָּא וְנִכְנַס אֶל אֲרָמוֹן הַמֶּלֶךְ עִם עַמִּיתָיו, וְהִשְׁתַּחֲוָה לְפָנָי הַמֶּלֶךְ וְאָמַר אֵלָיו: אֲדוֹנִי הַמֶּלֶךְ, הִנֵּנוּ עַמִּיתֵי עֲמוֹן אֲשֶׁר חִלַּצְתָּ מִבַּיִת הַכְּלָא.
- וְעַתָּה, אֲדוֹנִי הַמֶּלֶךְ, אִם תַּחֲסוּ עַל חַיֵּינוּ, עֲבָדֶיךָ נִהְיָה. וְהַמֶּלֶךְ אָמַר אֲלֵיהֶם: קוּמוּ כִּי הִנֵּנִי נוֹתֵן לָכֶם אֶת נַפְשְׁכֶם. וְאִין חֲפְצִי כִּי תִהְיוּ לִי לְעֲבָדִים, אֲךָ עַז חֲפְצִי כִּי תִשְׁמְשׁוּ לְפָנָי, כִּי טְרוּדָה דַּעְתִּי מִפְּנֵי נְדִיבוּת אַחִיד עֲמוֹן וְגִדְלַת דְּבָרָיו; וּמִשְׁתַּוְּקָק אֲנִי לְדַעַת מַדּוּעַ לֹא בָּא עִמָּכֶם מִמִּדּוֹנִי.
- וְאֶהְרֹן אָמַר אֶל הַמֶּלֶךְ: רוּחַ יְהוָה קָרָאָה לוֹ לָלֶכֶת בְּדֶרֶךְ אַחֲרָת, וְהוּא הִלֵּךְ אֶל אֶרֶץ יִשְׁמָעֵאל לְלַמֵּד אֶת עַם לְמוֹנִי.
- וְאָמַר אֲלֵיהֶם הַמֶּלֶךְ: מָה הוּא הַדָּבָר אֲשֶׁר אָמַרְתֶּם עַל רוּחַ יְהוָה? הִנֵּה, זֶה הַדָּבָר הַמְטָרִיד אֶת דַּעְתִּי.
- וְעוֹד, מָה הוּא הַדָּבָר אֲשֶׁר אָמַר עֲמוֹן אִם תִּנָּחְמוּ מִחַטָּא, תִּנָּשְׁעוּ, וְאִם לֹא תִנָּחְמוּ תִנָּדְחוּ בַּיּוֹם הַהוֹאֲחָרוֹן?
- וְאֶהְרֹן עָנָה וְאָמַר אֵלָיו: הַמֶּאֱמִין אַתָּה כִּי יֵשׁ אֱלֹהִים? וְהַמֶּלֶךְ אָמַר: אֲנִי יוֹדֵעַ כִּי הָעַמְּלֻקִּים אוֹמְרִים כִּי יֵשׁ אֱלֹהִים, וְאֲנִי נֹתֵתִי לָהֶם כִּי יִבְנוּ מִקְדָּשִׁים לְמַעַן יִתְאַסְּפוּ יַחְדָּו לְעַבֵּד אוֹתוֹ; וְאִם אַתָּה אוֹמֵר כִּי יֵשׁ אֱלֹהִים, הֲאֵמִן אֲעָמִין.
- וְכִשְׁמַע זֹאת אֶהְרֹן, שָׂמַח לְבֹו וְהוּא אָמַר: הִנֵּה, כְּנֻכּוֹן הָיִיתִיךָ חִי, אֲדוֹנִי הַמֶּלֶךְ, אָכֵן יֵשׁ אֱלֹהִים.
- וְאָמַר הַמֶּלֶךְ: הֲאִם אֱלֹהִים הוּא הָרוּחַ הַגָּדוֹל אֲשֶׁר הוֹצִיא אֶת אֲבוֹתֵינוּ מֵאֶרֶץ יְרוּשָׁלַם?

- 10 And Aaron said unto him: Yea, he is that Great Spirit, and he created all things both in heaven and in earth. Believest thou this?
- וְאָמַר אֶלְיוֹ אֶהְרֹן: אַכֵּן, הוּא אוֹתוֹ רוּחַ גָּדוֹל, וְהוּא בָּרָא אֶת הַכֹּל אֲשֶׁר בַּשָּׁמַיִם וּבָאָרֶץ. הֲתֵאֱמִין בְּזֹאת?
- 11 And he said: Yea, I believe that the Great Spirit created all things, and I desire that ye should tell me concerning all these things, and I will believe thy words.
- וְהוּא אָמַר: אַכֵּן, מֵאֲמִין אֲנִי כִּי הָרוּחַ הַגָּדוֹל בָּרָא הַכֹּל, וּמִבְקֵשׁ אֲנִי כִּי תִסְפֹּר לִי עַל כָּל הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, וְאֲנִי אֶאֱמִין לְדִבְרֶיךָ.
- 12 And it came to pass that when Aaron saw that the king would believe his words, he began from the creation of Adam, reading the scriptures unto the king—how God created man after his own image, and that God gave him commandments, and that because of transgression, man had fallen.
- וְכַאֲשֶׁר רָאָה אֶהְרֹן כִּי יֵאֱמִין הַמֶּלֶךְ לְדִבְרָיו, הוּא הֵחֵל לְסַפֵּר מִמַּעֲשֵׂה בְרִיאַת אָדָם, וּלְקַרֵּא בְּאָזְנֵי הַמֶּלֶךְ אֶת כְּתָבֵי הַקֹּדֶשׁ הַמְּסֻפָּרִים כִּי בָרָא אֱלֹהִים אָדָם בְּדְמוּתוֹ, וְצָוָהוּ מִצְוֹת וְכִי מִפְּנֵי עֲבָרָה נָפַל הָאָדָם.
- 13 And Aaron did expound unto him the scriptures from the creation of Adam, laying the fall of man before him, and their carnal state and also the plan of redemption, which was prepared from the foundation of the world, through Christ, for all whosoever would believe on his name.
- וְאֶהְרֹן בָּאָר לוֹ אֶת כְּתָבֵי הַקֹּדֶשׁ הַחֵל בְּבְרִיאַת אָדָם; וְתֹאֵר לְפָנָיו אֶת נְפִילַת הָאָדָם, אֶת מִצְבָּם בְּבִשׁוּר וְאֶת תְּכֵנִית הַנִּגְאָלָה אֲשֶׁר הוֹכְנָה מֵעַתָּה יֵסוּד הָעוֹלָם, בְּזִכּוֹת הַמְּשִׁיחַ, בַּעֲבוּר כָּל אֲשֶׁר יֵאֱמִין בְּשֵׁמוֹ.
- 14 And since man had fallen he could not merit anything of himself; but the sufferings and death of Christ atone for their sins, through faith and repentance, and so forth; and that he breaketh the bands of death, that the grave shall have no victory, and that the sting of death should be swallowed up in the hopes of glory; and Aaron did expound all these things unto the king.
- וַיַּעַן אֲשֶׁר נָפַל הָאָדָם, הוּא לֹא יָכוֹל לְזַכּוֹת בְּדִבְרֵי מֵאֵת עַצְמוֹ; אֲף סְבִלּוֹת הַמְּשִׁיחַ וּמוֹתוֹ מְכַפְּרִים עַל חַטָּאֵי בְנֵי הָאָדָם עַל יְדֵי אֱמוּנָה וְתַשׁוּבָה וְכֵן הִלָּאָה. וְהוּא שׁוֹבֵר אֶת מוֹסְרוֹת הַמָּוֶת, וְלִקְבֹּר לֹא יִהְיֶה נֶצַח וְנִשְׁכִּית הַמָּוֶת תִּבְלַע בְּתִקְוָה לְנַחַל תְּפָאֲרָת. וְאֶהְרֹן אַכֵּן בָּאָר לְמֶלֶךְ אֶת כָּל הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה.
- 15 And it came to pass that after Aaron had expounded these things unto him, the king said: What shall I do that I may have this eternal life of which thou hast spoken? Yea, what shall I do that I may be born of God, having this wicked spirit rooted out of my breast, and receive his Spirit, that I may be filled with joy, that I may not be cast off at the last day? Behold, said he, I will give up all that I possess, yea, I will forsake my kingdom, that I may receive this great joy.
- וְהָיָה אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר בָּאָר לוֹ אֶהְרֹן אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, אָמַר הַמֶּלֶךְ: מָה עָלַי לַעֲשׂוֹת בַּעֲבוּר אֲנַחֵל חַיִּי עוֹלָם, כַּאֲשֶׁר דִּבַּרְתָּ? מָה עָלַי לַעֲשׂוֹת לְמַעַן אוֹלֵד לֵאלֹהִים, לַעֲקֹר מַחֲזִי אֶת יֵצֶר הָרַע הַזֶּה, וּלְקַבֵּל אֶת רוּחַ אֱלֹהִים, לְמַעַן אֲמַלֵּא חַדְוָה וְלֹא אֲנַדַּח בְּיוֹם הָאַחֲרוֹן? וְהוּא אָמַר: הֲנִנִי נֹתֵן אֶת כָּל רְכוּשִׁי, הֲנִנִי נוֹטֵשׁ אֶת מַלְכוּתִי, לְמַעַן אֲזַכֶּה בְּחַדְוָה הַגָּדוֹלָה הַזֹּאת.
- 16 But Aaron said unto him: If thou desirest this thing, if thou wilt bow down before God, yea, if thou wilt repent of all thy sins, and will bow down before God, and call on his name in faith, believing that ye shall receive, then shalt thou receive the hope which thou desirest.
- וְאוֹלָם אֶהְרֹן אָמַר אֵלָיו: אִם בְּזֹאת חֲשָׁקְךָ, אִם תִּשְׁתַּחֲוֶה לִפְנֵי אֱלֹהִים, אַכֵּן, אִם תִּנָּחַם מִכָּל חַטָּאֶיךָ, וְתִשְׁתַּחֲוֶה לִפְנֵי אֱלֹהִים וְתִקְרָא בְּשֵׁמוֹ בְּאֱמוּנָה, בְּאֲמוּנָתְךָ כִּי תִקְבַּל, אֲנִי תִזְכֶּה בְּתוֹחֲלָתְךָ אֲשֶׁר תִּאֱבָה נַפְשְׁךָ.
- 17 And it came to pass that when Aaron had said these words, the king did bow down before the Lord, upon his knees; yea, even he did prostrate himself upon the earth, and cried mightily, saying:
- וְכַכְּלוֹת אֶהְרֹן לְדַבֵּר אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, כָּרַע הַמֶּלֶךְ בְּרֶךְ וְהִשְׁתַּחֲוֶה לִפְנֵי יְהוָה; אַכֵּן, הוּא הִשְׁתַּחֲוֶה אַפָּיִם אֶרְצָה וּבָעַז רוּחוֹ קָרָא לֵאמֹר:



- 18 O God, Aaron hath told me that there is a God; and if there is a God, and if thou art God, wilt thou make thyself known unto me, and I will give away all my sins to know thee, and that I may be raised from the dead, and be saved at the last day. And now when the king had said these words, he was struck as if he were dead.
- 19 And it came to pass that his servants ran and told the queen all that had happened unto the king. And she came in unto the king; and when she saw him lay as if he were dead, and also Aaron and his brethren standing as though they had been the cause of his fall, she was angry with them, and commanded that her servants, or the servants of the king, should take them and slay them.
- 20 Now the servants had seen the cause of the king's fall, therefore they durst not lay their hands on Aaron and his brethren; and they pled with the queen saying: Why commandest thou that we should slay these men, when behold one of them is mightier than us all? Therefore we shall fall before them.
- 21 Now when the queen saw the fear of the servants she also began to fear exceedingly, lest there should some evil come upon her. And she commanded her servants that they should go and call the people, that they might slay Aaron and his brethren.
- 22 Now when Aaron saw the determination of the queen, he, also knowing the hardness of the hearts of the people, feared lest that a multitude should assemble themselves together, and there should be a great contention and a disturbance among them; therefore he put forth his hand and raised the king from the earth, and said unto him: Stand. And he stood upon his feet, receiving his strength.
- 23 Now this was done in the presence of the queen and many of the servants. And when they saw it they greatly marveled, and began to fear. And the king stood forth, and began to minister unto them. And he did minister unto them, insomuch that his whole household were converted unto the Lord.
- 24 Now there was a multitude gathered together because of the commandment of the queen, and there began to be great murmurings among them because of Aaron and his brethren.
- 25 But the king stood forth among them and administered unto them. And they were pacified towards Aaron and those who were with him.
- אֲנֵא, אֱלֹהִים! הִנֵּה אָמַר לִי אֶהְרֹן כִּי יֵשׁ אֱלֹהִים;  
וְאִם יֵשׁ אֱלֹהִים, וְאִם אַתָּה אֱלֹהִים, אֲנֵא,  
הִתְוֹדַע אֵלַי וְאֲנִי אֲשַׁלֵּךְ מִמְּנִי אֶת כָּל חַטָּאתִי  
לְמַעַן דַּעַת אוֹתְךָ וּלְמַעַן אֶקוּם לְתַחִיָּה מִן  
הַמָּתִים וְאֶנְשֶׁע בַּיּוֹם הָאַחֲרוֹן. וּכְכֹלֹת הַמֶּלֶךְ  
לְדַבֵּר זֹאת, הוּא הִכָּה בְּהֶלֶם, כְּאִלּוּ מֵת.
- אֲזַרְצוּ מִשְׁרָתָיו וְאָמְרוּ לְמַלְכָּה אֶת כָּל אֲשֶׁר  
קָרָה לְמֶלֶךְ. וְהִיא בָּאָה אֶל הַמֶּלֶךְ, וְכִרְאוֹתָהּ  
אוֹתוֹ וְהוּא כַּמֵּת, וְאֵת אֶהְרֹן וְאֵת עַמִּיתָיו  
עוֹמְדִים כְּאִלּוּ הֵם הִסְבוּ אֶת נְפִילָתוֹ, הִיא  
רָגְזָה עֲלֵיהֶם וְצִוְתָּה עַל מִשְׁרָתֶיהָ, וְהֵם  
מִשְׁרָתֵי הַמֶּלֶךְ, לְתַפְּשֵׁם וּלְהַרְגֵם.
- וְאוֹלָם הַמִּשְׁרָתִים רָאוּ אֶת סִבַּת נְפִילַת הַמֶּלֶךְ  
וְלֹא הִעֲזוּ לְשַׁלַּח יָדָם אֶל אֶהְרֹן וְעַמִּיתָיו; וְהֵם  
הִפְצִירוּ בַּמֶּלֶכָה וְאָמְרוּ: מַדּוּעַ צִוִּית עֲלֵינוּ  
לְהַרֵג אֶת הָאֲנָשִׁים הָאֵלֶּה, אֲשֶׁר אֶחָד מֵהֶם  
חֲזָק מִכָּלֵנוּ? הֵן נִפְּל לִפְנֵיהֶם.
- וְכִרְאוֹת הַמֶּלֶכָה אֶת אֵימַת הַמִּשְׁרָתִים, הִחֵל  
פַּחַד גָּדוֹל לִקְנוֹן בָּהּ כִּי תִבּוֹא עָלֶיהָ רָעָה גְדוֹלָה;  
וְהִיא צִוְתָּה אֶת מִשְׁרָתֶיהָ לְלָכֵת וּלְקַרֵּא אֶל  
הָעָם כִּי יִהְיֶה אֶת אֶהְרֹן וְאֵת עַמִּיתָיו.
- וְכִרְאוֹת אֶהְרֹן אֶת עֲקֻשְׁנוֹת הַמֶּלֶכָה, וּבִידְעוֹ  
אֶת קָשִׁי לֵב הָעָם, הוּא יָרָא כִּי יִתְקַבֵּץ הָעָמוֹ  
וְתִפְרֹץ בְּקִרְבּוֹ מְרִיבָה גְדוֹלָה וְהִתְפָּרְעוּת.  
לְכֵן שָׁלַח אֶת יָדוֹ וְהָקִים אֶת הַמֶּלֶךְ מִן הָאָרֶץ  
וְאָמַר אֵלָיו: קוּם! וְהוּא עָמַד עַל רַגְלָיו וְכָחוּ  
שָׁב אֵלָיו.
- כָּל זֹאת הָיְתָה לְעֵינֵי הַמֶּלֶכָה וְרַבִּים מִן  
הַמִּשְׁרָתִים. וְכִרְאוֹתָם זֹאת הֵם הִשְׁתּוֹמְמוּ  
מְאֹד וַיָּרְאוּ. וְהַמֶּלֶךְ עָמַד וְהִחֵל לְשַׁמֵּשׁ  
לִפְנֵיהֶם. וְכֵה שָׁמַשׁ לִפְנֵיהֶם עַד כִּי הִפְכוּ כָּל  
אֲנָשֵׁי בֵיתוֹ מֵאֲמִינִים בִּיהוָה.
- וְהָיָה כִּי נִקְבֹּץ הָעָם רַב בְּדַבֵּר הַמֶּלֶכָה, וְהֵם  
הִחֲלוּ לְהִתְלוֹנֵן קְשׁוֹת מִפְּנֵי אֶהְרֹן וְעַמִּיתָיו.
- אֲךָ הַמֶּלֶךְ עָמַד בֵּינֵיהֶם וְשָׁמַשׁ לִפְנֵיהֶם, וְשָׁכַף  
אֶת זַעֲמָם עַל אֶהְרֹן וְעַמִּיתָיו.

- 26 And it came to pass that when the king saw that the people were pacified, he caused that Aaron and his brethren should stand forth in the midst of the multitude, and that they should preach the word unto them.
- 27 And it came to pass that the king sent a proclamation throughout all the land, amongst all his people who were in all his land, who were in all the regions round about, which was bordering even to the sea, on the east and on the west, and which was divided from the land of Zarahemla by a narrow strip of wilderness, which ran from the sea east even to the sea west, and round about on the borders of the seashore, and the borders of the wilderness which was on the north by the land of Zarahemla, through the borders of Manti, by the head of the river Sidon, running from the east towards the west—and thus were the Lamanites and the Nephites divided.
- 28 Now, the more idle part of the Lamanites lived in the wilderness, and dwelt in tents; and they were spread through the wilderness on the west, in the land of Nephi; yea, and also on the west of the land of Zarahemla, in the borders by the seashore, and on the west in the land of Nephi, in the place of their fathers' first inheritance, and thus bordering along by the seashore.
- 29 And also there were many Lamanites on the east by the seashore, whither the Nephites had driven them. And thus the Nephites were nearly surrounded by the Lamanites; nevertheless the Nephites had taken possession of all the northern parts of the land bordering on the wilderness, at the head of the river Sidon, from the east to the west, round about on the wilderness side; on the north, even until they came to the land which they called Bountiful.
- 30 And it bordered upon the land which they called Desolation, it being so far northward that it came into the land which had been peopled and been destroyed, of whose bones we have spoken, which was discovered by the people of Zarahemla, it being the place of their first landing.
- 31 And they came from there up into the south wilderness. Thus the land on the northward was called Desolation, and the land on the southward was called Bountiful, it being the wilderness which is filled with all manner of wild animals of every kind, a part of which had come from the land northward for food.
- 32 And now, it was only the distance of a day and a half's journey for a Nephite, on the line Bountiful and the land Desolation, from the east to the west sea; and thus the land of Nephi and the land of Zarahemla
- וְכִרְאוֹת הַמֶּלֶךְ כִּי רָגַע הָעָם, הוּא הוֹרָה  
כִּי אֶהְרֶן וְעַמִּיתָיו יַעֲמִידוּ בְּתוֹךְ הָהֶמוֹן וְיִשְׁפְּעוּ  
אֵלֵיהֶם אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים.
- וְהַמֶּלֶךְ שָׁלַח קוֹל בְּרַחְבֵּי הָאָרֶץ, לְכָל עַמּוֹ  
אֲשֶׁר בְּכָל אֶרֶצוֹ, בְּכָל חִבְלֵי הָאָרֶץ אֲשֶׁר  
סָבִיב, עַד גְּבוּל הַיָּם, בְּמִזְרַח וּבִמְעַרְבּוֹ, בְּשֵׁטַח  
הַנִּפְרָד מֵאֶרֶץ זֶרַחֵמְלָה עַל יְדֵי רְצוּעַת יַעַר  
צָרָה אֲשֶׁר הִשְׁתַּרְעָה מִן הַיָּם אֲשֶׁר בְּמִזְרַח  
וְעַד הַיָּם אֲשֶׁר בְּמַעַרְבּוֹ, וּמִסָּבִיב, בְּגִבּוֹל בְּצִפּוֹן  
חוּף הַיָּם וּבְגִבּוֹל הַיַּעַר אֲשֶׁר מִצִּפּוֹן, לִיד אֶרֶץ  
זֶרַחֵמְלָה, דֶּרֶךְ גְּבוּל מְנָטִי לִיד מְקוֹרוֹת נְהַר  
צִידוֹן, בּוֹאֶכָה מִן הַמִּזְרָח מַעַרְבָּה. כֹּה נַחֲלָקוּ  
הַלְּמָנִים וְהַנֶּפְתִּים זֶה מִזֶּה.
- וְהִנֵּה כִּי אֵלֶּה מֵעַם הַלְּמָנִים אֲשֶׁר חָיו חַיִּי  
בְּטִלָּה, שָׁכְנוּ בַּיַּעַר בְּאַהֲלִים; וְהֵם נָפְצוּ עַל  
פְּנֵי הַיַּעַר בְּמַעַרְבּוֹ, בְּאֶרֶץ נָפִי; וְכֵן מִמַּעַרְב  
לְאֶרֶץ זֶרַחֵמְלָה, בְּגִבּוֹל חוּף הַיָּם, וּבִמְעַרְבּוֹ,  
בְּאֶרֶץ נָפִי, בְּמָקוֹם נַחֲלַת אֲבוֹתֵיהֶם הָרִאשׁוֹנָה,  
וְכֵן הִשְׁתַּרְעוּ שְׂטָחָם לְאֶרֶץ חוּף הַיָּם.
- וְאִף לְמָנִים רַבִּים שָׁכְנוּ לְחוּף הַיָּם הַמִּזְרָחִי,  
כִּי שָׁמָּה גִּרְשׁוּם הַנֶּפְתִּים. כֹּף הָיוּ הַנֶּפְתִּים כְּמַעַט  
מְקַפִּים עַל יְדֵי הַלְּמָנִים; וְאוֹלָם הַנֶּפְתִּים הִתְנַחֲלוּ  
בְּכָל חִבְלֵי הָאָרֶץ אֲשֶׁר בְּצִפּוֹן הַגִּבּוֹלִים בַּיַּעַר,  
לִיד מְקוֹרוֹת נְהַר צִידוֹן, מִמִּזְרָח וְעַד לְמַעַרְבּוֹ,  
וּמִסָּבִיב, עַל עֵבֶר הַיַּעַר; וּבְצִפּוֹן, עַד בּוֹאֵם  
אֶל הָאָרֶץ אֲשֶׁר קָרְאוּהָ רִבְשָׁפֶע.
- וְהָיָה גְּבֻלָּה בְּאֶרֶץ אֲשֶׁר קָרְאוּהָ חֶרְבָּה, אֲשֶׁר  
הִשְׁתַּרְעָה הָרַחֵק צִפּוֹנָה, עַד הָאָרֶץ אֲשֶׁר  
נוֹשְׁבָה פֶּעַם וְהַחֶרְבָּה, אֲשֶׁר עַל עֲצֻמוֹתֶיהָ  
דִּבְרָנוּ, וְגִלּוּהָ אֲנִשֵּׁי זֶרַחֵמְלָה; וְהָיָה הַמָּקוֹם  
אֲשֶׁר בּוֹ הִצִּיגוּ אֶת כָּף רִגְלָם לְרִאשׁוֹנָה.
- מִשָּׁם הָם עָלוּ אֶל הַיַּעַר אֲשֶׁר בְּדָרוֹם. עַל  
כֵּן נִקְרָאָה הָאָרֶץ אֲשֶׁר מִצִּפּוֹן לְהֵם חֶרְבָּה,  
וְהָאָרֶץ אֲשֶׁר מִדָּרוֹם נִקְרָאָה רִבְשָׁפֶע, וְהָיָה  
הַיַּעַר אֲשֶׁר רַבּוּ בּוֹ כָּל מִינֵי חַיּוֹת בָּר; וְחָלַק  
מֵהֶן בָּאוּ מֵאֶרֶץ הַצִּפּוֹן לְבָקֵשׁ אֶת מִזְוָנָם.
- רַק מֵהַלֹּךְ יוֹם וּמִחֲצִית הַיּוֹם הָיָה הַמְּרַחֵק  
לְאִישׁ נָפִי מִן הַיָּם אֲשֶׁר בְּמִזְרָח עַד הַיָּם אֲשֶׁר  
בְּמַעַרְבּוֹ, לְאֶרֶץ גְּבוּל רִבְשָׁפֶע וְאֶרֶץ חֶרְבָּה.

לְכוּ, אֶרֶץ נָפִי וְאֶרֶץ זִרְעֻחַמְלָה הָיוּ כְּמַעַט  
מִקְפּוֹת מַיִם, וּרְצוּעַת יַבְשָׁה קְטַנָּה חִבְרָה אֶת  
הָאֶרֶץ הַצְפוֹנִית וְאֶת הָאֶרֶץ הַדְרֹמִית.

were nearly surrounded by water, there being a small neck of land  
between the land northward and the land southward.

וְהַנְּפִיִּים יָשְׁבוּ אֶת אֶרֶץ רִב־שַׁפְעָה מִן הַיָּם  
הַמְּזֻרְחִי וְעַד הַיָּם הַמַּעֲרָבִי, וְהַנְּפִיִּים,  
בְּחָכְמָתָם וּבִשְׂמִירָתָם וּבְצָבָאָם, גָּדְרוּ אֶת  
הַלְּמָנִיתִים בְּדְרוֹמָם, לְמָנוּעַם מִהֶתְנַחֵל גַּם בְּצָפוֹן  
וּמִפְּשֹׁט עַל הָאֶרֶץ אֲשֶׁר בְּצָפוֹן.

33 And it came to pass that the Nephites had inhabited the land  
Bountiful, even from the east unto the west sea, and thus the Nephites  
in their wisdom, with their guards and their armies, had hemmed in  
the Lamanites on the south, that thereby they should have no more pos-  
session on the north, that they might not overrun the land northward.

לְכוּ לֹא יִכְלוּ הַלְּמָנִיתִים לְהוֹסִיף לְהֶתְנַחֵל כִּי אִם  
בְּאֶרֶץ נָפִי וּבִיַּעַר אֲשֶׁר סָבִיב. בְּחָכְמַת הַנְּפִיִּים  
הִיָּתָה זֹאת, כִּי הַלְּמָנִיתִים הָיוּ צוֹרְרִים לָהֶם וְהֵם  
אָמְרוּ שֶׁלֹּא לִסְבֹּל אֶת מִכּוֹתֵיהֶם בְּכָל מְקוֹם;  
וְכֵן גַּם שָׁמְרוּ לָהֶם מְקוֹם מִפְּלֹט, כִּפִּי צָרְפָם.

34 Therefore the Lamanites could have no more possessions only in the  
land of Nephi, and the wilderness round about. Now this was wisdom  
in the Nephites—as the Lamanites were an enemy to them, they would  
not suffer their afflictions on every hand, and also that they might have  
a country whither they might flee, according to their desires.

וְעַתָּה, אַחֲרֵי אֲמַרְי זֹאת, אָשׁוּב לְסַפֵּר עַל  
עֲמוֹן וְאַהֲרֹן, אוֹמְנֵר וְחִמְנִי וְעַמִּיתֵיהֶם.

35 And now I, after having said this, return again to the account of  
Ammon and Aaron, Omner and Himni, and their brethren.

## כג

## 23

וּמֶלֶךְ הַלְּמָנִיתִים שָׁלַח קוֹל בְּכָל עָמוֹ, לְבָל  
יִשְׁלְחוּ יָד אֶל עָמוֹן, אַהֲרֹן, אוֹמְנֵר וְחִמְנִי,  
אֵף לֹא בְּעַמִּיתֵיהֶם הַיּוֹצְאִים לְהִטִּיף אֶת  
דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים, בְּכָל מְקוֹם אֲשֶׁר יִהְיוּ, בְּכָל  
אֲזוּרֵי אֶרֶץ.

1 Behold, now it came to pass that the king of the Lamanites sent a  
proclamation among all his people, that they should not lay their hands  
on Ammon, or Aaron, or Omner, or Himni, nor either of their brethren  
who should go forth preaching the word of God, in whatsoever place  
they should be, in any part of their land.

אָכֵן, גִּזְרָה יֵצֵאָה מֵאֵת הַמֶּלֶךְ אֶל עָמוֹ, לְבָל  
יִשְׁלְחוּ יָד אֲלֵיהֶם לְאַסְרָם אוֹ לְתַתֵּם אֶל בֵּית  
הַכֶּלֶא; וְהוּא אָסַר לִירֵק עֲלֵיהֶם וּלְהַכּוֹתָם, אוֹ  
לְגַרְשָׁם מִבְּתֵי כְּסִיּוֹתֵיהֶם וּלְהַלְקוֹתָם בְּשׁוֹט  
וּלְרַגְמָם אֲבָן. כִּי חֲפְשִׁיִּים יִהְיוּ לְבוֹא אֶל  
בְּתֵיהֶם וְאֶל הַיְכָלֵיהֶם וְאֶל מִקְדָּשֵׁיהֶם.

2 Yea, he sent a decree among them, that they should not lay their hands  
on them to bind them, or to cast them into prison; neither should they  
spit upon them, nor smite them, nor cast them out of their synagogues,  
nor scourge them; neither should they cast stones at them, but that  
they should have free access to their houses, and also their temples,  
and their sanctuaries.

וְכֵן הֵם יִכְלוּ לְלַכֵּת לְהִטִּיף אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים,  
כִּפִּי חֲפָצָם, כִּי הַמֶּלֶךְ וְכָל בֵּיתוֹ הִפְכוּ לְמַאֲמִינִים  
בִּיהוָה; לְכוּ שְׁלַח הַמֶּלֶךְ אֶת קוֹלוֹ לְעָמוֹ בְּכָל  
הָאֶרֶץ, לְמַעַן הִסֵּר כָּל נִגְי מִפְּנֵי דְבַר אֱלֹהִים,  
לְמַעַן יֵצֵא הַדְּבָר בְּכָל הָאֶרֶץ לְהוֹדִיחַ לְעָמוֹ  
כִּי קָבְלוּ מֵאֲבוֹתֵיהֶם מְסוֹרוֹת רָשָׁע, וְכִי כָּלֵם  
אֲחִים וְכִי עֲלִיהֶם לְרַחֵק מִרְצָח וּמִשָּׂד וּמִגְנֵבָה  
וּמִנְאוּף וּמַעֲשֵׂוֹת כָּל רָע.

3 And thus they might go forth and preach the word according to their  
desires, for the king had been converted unto the Lord, and all his  
household; therefore he sent his proclamation throughout the land  
unto his people, that the word of God might have no obstruction, but  
that it might go forth throughout all the land, that his people might  
be convinced concerning the wicked traditions of their fathers, and  
that they might be convinced that they were all brethren, and that  
they ought not to murder, nor to plunder, nor to steal, nor to commit  
adultery, nor to commit any manner of wickedness.

וְהִיא אַחֲרֵי שֶׁשְׁלַח הַמֶּלֶךְ אֶת הַהִכְרָזָה הַזֹּאת,  
הָלְכוּ אַהֲרֹן וְעַמִּיתָיו מֵעִיר אֶל עִיר, וּמִבֵּית

4 And now it came to pass that when the king had sent forth this  
proclamation, that Aaron and his brethren went forth from city to

עבודת קדש אחד למשנהו, ליסד כנסיות  
ולקדש כהנים ומורים בכל הארץ בקרב  
הלמנים, להטיף וללמד את דבר אלהים  
בעם. כך החלה ההצלחה להאיר להם פנים.

אלפים קבלו את דעת יהוה; אכן, אלפים  
הובאו להאמין במסורות הנפיים; והם למדו  
בכתבי הזכרונות והנבואות אשר נמסרו  
מדור לדור עד עצם היום הזה.

וחי יהוה, כל אשר האמינו, כל אלה אשר  
הובאו אל דעת האמת על ידי השפת עמון  
ועמיתיו, כפי רוח ההתגלות והנבואה וכן  
אלהים העושה בהם נפלאות, אני אומר  
לכם, חי יהוה כי כל הלמנים אשר האמינו  
בדברי השפתם והפכו מאמינים ביהוה, לא  
סרו מאמונתם עד עולם.

כי הם הפכו עם צדיק; והם הניחו את כלי  
נשק מרדם ולא לחמו עוד באלהים, ואף לא  
באיש מאחיהם.

ואלה הם אשר הפכו מאמינים ביהוה:

עם הלמנים יושבי ארץ ישמעאל.

עם הלמנים יושבי ארץ מידוני.

עם הלמנים יושבי העיר נפי.

עם הלמנים יושבי ארץ שילום וארץ שמלון  
ועיר למואל ועיר שמנילום.

אלה שמות ערי הלמנים אשר יושביהו הפכו  
מאמינים ביהוה, ואלה הם אשר הניחו את  
כלי נשק מרדם, אכן, את כל כלי מלחמתם;  
כלם למנים היו.

והעמלקיים לא הפכו את אמונתם, וזלזל  
איש אחד; אף מן העמולונים לא הפך איש  
את אמונתו, כי הם הקשו את לבם ואף את  
לב הלמנים בכל מקום משכנם בחבל הארץ  
ההוא, בכל כפריהם ובכל עריהם.

city, and from one house of worship to another, establishing churches,  
and consecrating priests and teachers throughout the land among the  
Lamanites, to preach and to teach the word of God among them; and  
thus they began to have great success.

5 And thousands were brought to the knowledge of the Lord, yea,  
thousands were brought to believe in the traditions of the Nephites;  
and they were taught the records and prophecies which were handed  
down even to the present time.

6 And as sure as the Lord liveth, so sure as many as believed, or as many  
as were brought to the knowledge of the truth, through the preaching  
of Ammon and his brethren, according to the spirit of revelation and of  
prophecy, and the power of God working miracles in them—yea, I say  
unto you, as the Lord liveth, as many of the Lamanites as believed in  
their preaching, and were converted unto the Lord, never did fall away.

7 For they became a righteous people; they did lay down the weapons of  
their rebellion, that they did not fight against God any more, neither  
against any of their brethren.

8 Now, these are they who were converted unto the Lord:

9 The people of the Lamanites who were in the land of Ishmael;

10 And also of the people of the Lamanites who were in the land of Middoni;

11 And also of the people of the Lamanites who were in the city of Nephi;

12 And also of the people of the Lamanites who were in the land of Shilom,  
and who were in the land of Shemlon, and in the city of Lemuel, and in  
the city of Shimnihilom.

13 And these are the names of the cities of the Lamanites which were  
converted unto the Lord; and these are they that laid down the  
weapons of their rebellion, yea, all their weapons of war; and they were  
all Lamanites.

14 And the Amalekites were not converted, save only one; neither were  
any of the Amulonites; but they did harden their hearts, and also the  
hearts of the Lamanites in that part of the land wheresoever they dwelt,  
yea, and all their villages and all their cities.

- 15 Therefore, we have named all the cities of the Lamanites in which they did repent and come to the knowledge of the truth, and were converted.
- 16 And now it came to pass that the king and those who were converted were desirous that they might have a name, that thereby they might be distinguished from their brethren; therefore the king consulted with Aaron and many of their priests, concerning the name that they should take upon them, that they might be distinguished.
- 17 And it came to pass that they called their names Anti-Nephi-Lehies; and they were called by this name and were no more called Lamanites.
- 18 And they began to be a very industrious people; yea, and they were friendly with the Nephites; therefore, they did open a correspondence with them, and the curse of God did no more follow them.
- וּבְכָךְ נִקְבְּנוּ בְשֵׁמוֹת כָּל עָרֵי הַלָּמָנִים אֲשֶׁר יוֹשְׁבֵיהֶן שָׁבוּ מִרְעֵתָם וְהִגִּיעוּ לְדַעַת אֶת הָאֱמֶת וְהִפְכוּ לְמַאֲמִינֵי יְהוָה.
- וְהַמֶּלֶךְ וּמִמִּירֵי הָאֲמוֹנָה חָפְצוּ בְּשֵׁם אֲשֶׁר יִבְדִּילֵם מִשָּׂאֵר בְּנֵי עַמָּם. לְכֵן נִוְעַץ הַמֶּלֶךְ בְּאַהֲרֹן וּבִרְבָּעִים מִכֹּהֲנֵיהֶם עַל אֹדוֹת הַשֵּׁם אֲשֶׁר בּוֹ יִקְרְאוּ, אֲשֶׁר עַל פִּיו יִכְרוּ.
- וְהֵם קָרְאוּ לְעַצְמָם אֲנְטִי־נֶפְחִי־לְחִיִּים.
- בְּשֵׁם הַזֶּה נִקְרְאוּ וְלֹא נִקְרְאוּ עוֹד לָמָנִים.
- וְהֵם הָיוּ לְעַם חֲרוּץ מְאֹד; וְהֵם הָיוּ חֲבֵרִים לְנֶפְחִיִּים וְקִשְׁרוּ עִמָּם קִשְׁרִים, וְקָלְלָת אֱלֹהִים לֹא רָדְפָה אוֹתָם עוֹד.

## כד

## 24

- 1 And it came to pass that the Amalekites and the Amulonites and the Lamanites who were in the land of Amulon, and also in the land of Helam, and who were in the land of Jerusalem, and in fine, in all the land round about, who had not been converted and had not taken upon them the name of Anti-Nephi-Lehi, were stirred up by the Amalekites and by the Amulonites to anger against their brethren.
- 2 And their hatred became exceedingly sore against them, even insomuch that they began to rebel against their king, insomuch that they would not that he should be their king; therefore, they took up arms against the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi.
- 3 Now the king conferred the kingdom upon his son, and he called his name Anti-Nephi-Lehi.
- 4 And the king died in that selfsame year that the Lamanites began to make preparations for war against the people of God.
- 5 Now when Ammon and his brethren and all those who had come up with him saw the preparations of the Lamanites to destroy their brethren, they came forth to the land of Middoni, and there Ammon met all his brethren; and from thence they came to the land of Ishmael that they might hold a council with Lamoni and also with his brother Anti-Nephi-Lehi, what they should do to defend themselves against the Lamanites.
- וְהָעַמְלֻקִּיִּים וְהָעַמּוֹלוֹנִים וְהַלָּמָנִים יוֹשְׁבֵי אֶרֶץ עַמּוֹלוֹן וְאֶרֶץ חֵילָם וְאֶרֶץ יְרוּשָׁלַם, אוּבְקֶצְרָה, כָּל הַיּוֹשְׁבִים בְּאֶרֶץ סָבִיב, אֲשֶׁר לֹא הִפְכוּ לְמַאֲמִינִים וְאֲשֶׁר לֹא קָרְאוּ עַצְמָם בְּשֵׁם אֲנְטִי־נֶפְחִי־לְחִי, הִתְעוֹרְרוּ עַל יְדֵי הָעַמְלֻקִּיִּים וְהָעַמּוֹלוֹנִים לְכַעַס עַל אֲחֵיהֶם.
- וְשִׂנְאָתָם רַבְתָּה מְאֹד, עַד כִּי הִחֲלוּ לְמָרְדּ בְּמֶלְכָם כִּי לֹא חָפְצוּ בּוֹ לְמֶלֶךְ עֲלֵיהֶם; עַל כֵּן הֵם אָחָזוּ בְּכָלִי נֶשֶׁקָם לְהִלָּחֵם בְּאֲנָשֵׁי אֲנְטִי־נֶפְחִי־לְחִי.
- וְהַמֶּלֶךְ הֶעֱבִיר אֶת הַמְּלוּכָה אֶל בְּנוֹ, וְקָרָא אֶת שְׁמוֹ אֲנְטִי־נֶפְחִי־לְחִי.
- וְהַמֶּלֶךְ מָת בְּעֶצֶם הַשָּׁנָה הַהִיא, כְּאֲשֶׁר הִחֲלוּ הַלָּמָנִים לְהַכִּין מִלְחָמָה עַל עַם אֱלֹהִים.
- וְכִּי רָאוּ עַמּוֹן וְעַמִּיתָיו וְכָל אֲשֶׁר בָּאוּ עִמּוֹ אֶת הַכְּנוּת הַלָּמָנִים לְהַכְרִית אֶת בְּנֵי עַמָּם, הֵם בָּאוּ אֶל אֶרֶץ מִדּוֹנִי. שָׁם פָּגַשׁ עַמּוֹן אֶת כָּל עַמִּיתָיו, וּמִשָּׁם הֵם הֵלְכוּ אֶל אֶרֶץ יִשְׁמָעֵאל לְקִים מוֹעֵצָה עִם לְמוֹנִי וְעִם אֲחָיו, אֲנְטִי־נֶפְחִי־לְחִי, עַל אֲשֶׁר עֲלִיהֶם לַעֲשׂוֹת, לְהִגֹּן מִפְּנֵי הַלָּמָנִים.



- וְלֹא נִמְצָאָה נַפֵּשׁ אַחַת בֵּין כָּל הַהוֹפְכִים  
מֵאֲמִינֵי יְהוָה אֲשֶׁר הִיְתָה נְכוֹנָה לְאַחֹז בְּכָלִי  
נִשְׁקֵם לְהִלָּחֵם עַל בְּנֵי עַמָּם. אָכֵן, הִם אִף לֹא  
עָשׂוּ כָּל הַכְּנוּת לְמִלְחָמָה; וּמִלָּכָם אִף צִוָּה  
עֲלֵיהֶם כִּי לֹא יַעֲשׂוּ כֵן.
- וְאַלֶּה הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר אָמַר לְעַמּוֹ עַל אֹדוֹת  
הַדְּבָר הַזֶּה: עַמִּי הָאֱהוּב, אֹדֶה לְאֱלֹהִים, כִּי  
אֱלֹהֵינוּ הַגָּדוֹל שָׁלַח אֲלֵינוּ בְּטוֹבוֹ אֶת אַחֵינוּ  
הָאֵלֶּה, הַנִּפְיִים, לְהַטִּיף לָנוּ אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים  
וּלְשַׁכְנֵעַנו עַל אֹדוֹת מְסֻרוֹת אֲבוֹתֵינוּ הָרָשָׁעִים.
- וְהִנֵּנִי מוֹדֶה לְאֱלֹהֵי הַגָּדוֹל כִּי נָתַן לָנוּ חֵלֶק  
מְרוּיָח קִדְשׁוֹ לְהִרְדּוֹ אֶת לִבֵּנוּ, עַד כִּי הִחְלוּנוּ  
לִקְשׁוֹר קִשְׁרִים עִם אַחֵינוּ אֵלֶּה, הַנִּפְיִים.
- וְהִנֵּנִי מוֹדֶה לְאֱלֹהֵי עוֹד, כִּי בַעֲשׂוֹתֵנוּ אֶת  
הַקִּשְׁרֵי הַזֶּה נֹכַחְנוּ בְּחַטָּאֵינוּ וּבְמַעֲשֵׂי הָרָצַח  
הַרְבִּים אֲשֶׁר הָיוּ בְּיָדֵינוּ.
- וְאַנִּי מוֹסִיף לְהוֹדוֹת לְאֱלֹהֵי, הָאֵל הַגָּדוֹל, כִּי  
נָתַן לָנוּ לְהִנָּחֵם מִמַּעֲשֵׂים אֵלֶּה, וְכִי סָלַח לָנוּ  
עַל חַטָּאֵינוּ הַרְבִּים הָהֵם וְהָרָצִיחוֹת אֲשֶׁר  
רָצַחְנוּ, וְכִי הִסִּיר אֶת הָאָשָׁם מִלִּבֵּנוּ, וְזֹאת עַל  
יְדֵי זְכוֹת בְּנוֹ.
- וְעַתָּה, אַחִי, יַעַן אֲשֶׁר הָיָה זֶה כָּל אֲשֶׁר יָכְלָנוּ  
לַעֲשׂוֹת לְהִנָּחֵם מִכָּל חַטָּאֵינוּ וְרָצִיחוֹתֵינוּ  
הַרְבִּים, לְמַעַן יִסְיֶרֶם אֱלֹהִים מִלִּבֵּנוּ, כִּי הָיוּ  
הָאֲנָשִׁים הָאֲבוֹדִים בְּיוֹתֵר בְּקִרְבִּי הָאֲנוּשׁוֹת,  
אָכֵן, רָצִיו הָיָה לָנוּ לִפְנֵי אֱלֹהִים לְהִנָּחֵם  
מִרְעַתָּנוּ בַּעֲבוּר יִמְחָה אֶת כָּתֶם עוֹנֵינוּ;
- לָכֵן, אַחִי הָאֱהוּבִים מִכָּל, אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר הִסִּיר  
אֱלֹהִים אֶת הַכָּתֶם אֲשֶׁר הָיָה בָּנוּ וְחִרְבוֹתֵינוּ  
בְּהִקּוֹ, הִבֵּה נִשְׁמְרָה מִגָּאֵל אֶת חִרְבוֹתֵינוּ  
שְׁנִית בְּדָם אַחֵינוּ.
- הִנֵּנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם: לֹא! נִשְׁמַר נָא אֶת חִרְבוֹתֵינוּ  
מִהִתְגָּאֵל בְּדָם אַחֵינוּ. כִּי אִם נִגָּאֵל שְׁנִית אֶת  
חִרְבוֹתֵינוּ, אוֹלִי לֹא תוּכַלְנָה עוֹד לְהִרְחֵץ  
בְּנִקְיוֹן עַל יְדֵי דָם בֶּן אֱלֹהֵינוּ הַגָּדוֹל אֲשֶׁר  
יִשְׁפֹּךְ לְמַעַן כִּפֹּרֶת חַטָּאֵינוּ.
- וְהָאֵל הַגָּדוֹל רַחֵם עָלֵינוּ וְהוֹדִיעֵנוּ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים  
הָאֵלֶּה, לְמַעַן לֹא נֵאבֵד; אָכֵן, מֵרֵאשִׁי הוֹדִיעֵנוּ  
אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, כִּי אוֹהֵב הוּא אֶת
- 6 Now there was not one soul among all the people who had been converted unto the Lord that would take up arms against their brethren; nay, they would not even make any preparations for war; yea, and also their king commanded them that they should not.
- 7 Now, these are the words which he said unto the people concerning the matter: I thank my God, my beloved people, that our great God has in goodness sent these our brethren, the Nephites, unto us to preach unto us, and to convince us of the traditions of our wicked fathers.
- 8 And behold, I thank my great God that he has given us a portion of his Spirit to soften our hearts, that we have opened a correspondence with these brethren, the Nephites.
- 9 And behold, I also thank my God, that by opening this correspondence we have been convinced of our sins, and of the many murders which we have committed.
- 10 And I also thank my God, yea, my great God, that he hath granted unto us that we might repent of these things, and also that he hath forgiven us of those our many sins and murders which we have committed, and taken away the guilt from our hearts, through the merits of his Son.
- 11 And now behold, my brethren, since it has been all that we could do, (as we were the most lost of all mankind) to repent of all our sins and the many murders which we have committed, and to get God to take them away from our hearts, for it was all we could do to repent sufficiently before God that he would take away our stain—
- 12 Now, my best beloved brethren, since God hath taken away our stains, and our swords have become bright, then let us stain our swords no more with the blood of our brethren.
- 13 Behold, I say unto you, Nay, let us retain our swords that they be not stained with the blood of our brethren; for perhaps, if we should stain our swords again they can no more be washed bright through the blood of the Son of our great God, which shall be shed for the atonement of our sins.
- 14 And the great God has had mercy on us, and made these things known unto us that we might not perish; yea, and he has made these things known unto us beforehand, because he loveth our souls as well as he

## עֲלֵמָא כד:טו-כא

נְפֻשׁוֹתֵינוּ כְּאַהֲבָתוֹ אֶת יְלִדֵינוּ. עַל כֵּן, בְּרַחֲמָיו  
הוּא פּוֹקֵד אוֹתָנוּ עַל יְדֵי מַלְאָכָיו, לְמַעַן תִּגִּדַע  
לָנוּ תִּכְנִית הַנֶּאֱלָה וְאֵף לְדוֹרוֹת אֲשֶׁר יָבוֹאוּ.

הִנֵּה, מָה רַבּוֹ רַחֲמֵי אֱלֹהֵינוּ! וְעַתָּה, אַחֵר  
עֲשׂוֹתָנוּ כְּכֹל אֲשֶׁר יָכֻלְנוּ כִּי יִסִּיר מִמֶּנּוּ אֶת  
כְּתָמֵינוּ וְחַרְבוֹתֵינוּ מִבְּהִיקוֹת, הִבֵּה נִסְתִּירָן  
לְמַעַן לֹא יוֹעֵם בְּרָקָן, וְהָיוּ לְפָנֵי אֱלֹהִים לְעֵדוּת  
בְּיוֹם הָאַחֲרוֹן, בְּיוֹם אֲשֶׁר נֻבָּא לַעֲמֹד לְפָנָיו  
לְמִשְׁפָּט, כִּי לֹא גָאֻלְנוּ אֶת חַרְבוֹתֵינוּ בַּדָּם  
אֲחֵינוּ מֵעַתָּה אֲשֶׁר חָלַק לָנוּ אֱלֹהִים אֶת דְּבָרוֹ  
וּבִזְאת טִהַרְנוּ.

וְהִנֵּה, בְּנֵי עַמִּי, אִם יִבְקֹשׁוּ אֲחֵינוּ לְהַכְרִיתָנוּ,  
נִסְתִּיר אֶת חַרְבוֹתֵינוּ, אֵף נִקְבְּרוּ עִמָּם בְּאֲדָמָה  
לְמַעַן לֹא יוֹעֵם בְּרָקָן כְּעֵדוּת בְּיוֹם הָאַחֲרוֹן כִּי  
לֹא הִשְׁתַּמְשְׁנוּ בָהֶן כָּלֵל. וְאִם אֲכֹן יִכְרִיתוּנוּ  
אֲחֵינוּ, נִלְךְ אֶל אֱלֹהֵינוּ וְנוֹשָׁע.

וּכְכֹלֹת הַמֶּלֶךְ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה וְכָל הָעָם  
מִתְקַבְּצִים שָׁם, הֵם לָקְחוּ אֶת חַרְבוֹתֵיהֶם וְאֶת  
כָּל כְּלֵי נֶשֶׁק אֲשֶׁר שָׁפְכוּ בּוֹ דָּם אָדָם,  
וּקְבְּרוּם עִמָּם בְּאֲדָמָה.

וְזֹאת עָשׂוּ, כִּי נִרְאָתָה בְּעֵינֵיהֶם כְּעֵדוּת לְפָנֵי  
אֱלֹהִים וְאֲנָשִׁים, כִּי לְעוֹלָם לֹא יִשְׁתַּמְשׁוּ עוֹד  
בְּכָלֵי נֶשֶׁק לְשַׁפֹּךְ דָּם אָדָם. וְזֹאת עָשׂוּ לְאִשׁוֹר  
וּלְבָרִית עִם אֱלֹהִים, כִּי טוֹב בְּעֵינֵיהֶם לְמָסֹר  
אֶת חַיֵּיהֶם מִשְׁפֹּךְ אֶת דָּם אֲחֵיהֶם, לָתֵת  
לְאֲחֵיהֶם מֵאֲשֶׁר לְקַחַת מִמֶּנּוּ; לַעֲבֹד בִּיגִיעַ  
כְּפִיהֶם מֵאֲשֶׁר לְכַלּוֹת יְמֵיהֶם בְּבִשָּׁלָה.

וְכֵן רֹאִים אֲנִחנוּ כִּי אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר הֻבְּאוּ הַלְּמָנִים  
הָאֵלֶּה לְהֵאֱמִין בְּאֵמַת וּלְדַעְתָּהּ, הֵם הָיוּ אֵיתָנִים  
בְּרוּחָם וְהָיוּ נְכוּנִים לְסַבֵּל עַד מוֹת וּבִלְבָד כִּי לֹא  
יָבוֹאוּ לְיַד חֹטָא. וְכֵן רֹאִים אֲנִחנוּ כִּי הֵם קָבְרוּ  
אֶת נֶשֶׁק הַשָּׁלוֹם אֲשֶׁר לָהֶם, אוֹ, כִּי הֵם קָבְרוּ  
אֶת נֶשֶׁק הַמִּלְחָמָה לְמַעַן הַשָּׁלוֹם.

וְאֲחֵיהֶם, הַלְּמָנִים, הִתְכַּוְּנוּ לְמִלְחָמָה וְעָלוּ  
עַל אֶרֶץ נָפִי כִּי רָצוּ לְהַכְרִית אֶת הַמֶּלֶךְ  
וּלְהַמְלִיךְ אַחֵר תַּחְתָּיו, וְאֵף לְהַכְרִית אֶת  
אֲנָשֵׁי אֲנְטִי-נֶפְחִי-לֵהִי מִן הָאֶרֶץ.

וּכְאֲשֶׁר רָאוּ עִם אֱלֹהִים כִּי הַלְּמָנִים עוֹלִים  
עֲלֵיהֶם, הֵם יָצְאוּ לְקִרְיָתָם וְהִשְׁתַּחֲוּוּ לְפָנֵיהֶם  
אֲרָצָה, וְהִחֲלוּ לְקַרֵּא בְּשֵׁם יְהוָה. וּבִהְיוֹתָם

loveth our children; therefore, in his mercy he doth visit us by his  
angels, that the plan of salvation might be made known unto us as well  
as unto future generations.

15 Oh, how merciful is our God! And now behold, since it has been as  
much as we could do to get our stains taken away from us, and our  
swords are made bright, let us hide them away that they may be kept  
bright, as a testimony to our God at the last day, or at the day that we  
shall be brought to stand before him to be judged, that we have not  
stained our swords in the blood of our brethren since he imparted his  
word unto us and has made us clean thereby.

16 And now, my brethren, if our brethren seek to destroy us, behold, we  
will hide away our swords, yea, even we will bury them deep in the  
earth, that they may be kept bright, as a testimony that we have never  
used them, at the last day; and if our brethren destroy us, behold, we  
shall go to our God and shall be saved.

17 And now it came to pass that when the king had made an end of these  
sayings, and all the people were assembled together, they took their  
swords, and all the weapons which were used for the shedding of man's  
blood, and they did bury them up deep in the earth.

18 And this they did, it being in their view a testimony to God, and also  
to men, that they never would use weapons again for the shedding of  
man's blood; and this they did, vouching and covenanting with God,  
that rather than shed the blood of their brethren they would give up  
their own lives; and rather than take away from a brother they would  
give unto him; and rather than spend their days in idleness they would  
labor abundantly with their hands.

19 And thus we see that, when these Lamanites were brought to believe  
and to know the truth, they were firm, and would suffer even unto  
death rather than commit sin; and thus we see that they buried their  
weapons of peace, or they buried the weapons of war, for peace.

20 And it came to pass that their brethren, the Lamanites, made  
preparations for war, and came up to the land of Nephi for the purpose  
of destroying the king, and to place another in his stead, and also of  
destroying the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi out of the land.

21 Now when the people saw that they were coming against them they  
went out to meet them, and prostrated themselves before them to the  
earth, and began to call on the name of the Lord; and thus they were in

## עלמא כד:כב-ל

- במצב הזה, החלו הלמנים לעלות עליהם ולהרגם בחרב.
- 22 And thus without meeting any resistance, they did slay a thousand and five of them; and we know that they are blessed, for they have gone to dwell with their God.
- וכראות הלמנים כי אחיהם אינם נמלטים מן החרב וגם אינם נוטים ימין ושמאל, וכי על הארץ הם שוכבים ונהרגים, ואף בעת מותם, מפי חרב, הם מהללים את אלהים,
- 23 Now when the Lamanites saw that their brethren would not flee from the sword, neither would they turn aside to the right hand or to the left, but that they would lie down and perish, and praised God even in the very act of perishing under the sword—
- אכן, כראות הלמנים זאת, הם חדלו מהרגם; ורבים מהם התעצבו מקרב לב על חללי החרב אשר באחיהם, כי נחמו על מעשיהם.
- 24 Now when the Lamanites saw this they did forbear from slaying them; and there were many whose hearts had swollen in them for those of their brethren who had fallen under the sword, for they repented of the things which they had done.
- והם השליכו לארץ את כלי נשקם ולא אבו שוב לקחתם, כי התיסרו על מעשי הרצח אשר בצעו; והם נפלו לארץ באחיהם, בשיקם את מבטחם ברחמי האנשים המרימים את ידם להרגם.
- 25 And it came to pass that they threw down their weapons of war, and they would not take them again, for they were stung for the murders which they had committed; and they came down even as their brethren, relying upon the mercies of those whose arms were lifted to slay them.
- וביום ההוא רב מספר הנספחים על עם אלהים ממספר ההרוגים; וההרוגים היו אנשים צדיקים; לכן אין לנו סבה לפקפק כי נושעו.
- 26 And it came to pass that the people of God were joined that day by more than the number who had been slain; and those who had been slain were righteous people, therefore we have no reason to doubt but what they were saved.
- ולא נהרג עמם אף איש רשע אחד, אף למעלה מאלף נפש התנדעו אל האמת. כה רואים אנחנו כי יהוה פועל בדרךים שונות למען ישועת עמו.
- 27 And there was not a wicked man slain among them; but there were more than a thousand brought to the knowledge of the truth; thus we see that the Lord worketh in many ways to the salvation of his people.
- ורב הלמנים אשר הרגו כה רבים מאחיהם היו עמלקים ועמולונים, אשר רבם הלכו בדרך הנחורים.
- 28 Now the greatest number of those of the Lamanites who slew so many of their brethren were Amalekites and Amulonites, the greatest number of whom were after the order of the Nehors.
- ולא היה בין הנספחים על עם יהוה אף איש עמלקי או עמולוני, או מנאמני דרך נחור, כי הכל היו צאצאי למן ולמואל.
- 29 Now, among those who joined the people of the Lord, there were none who were Amalekites or Amulonites, or who were of the order of Nehor, but they were actual descendants of Laman and Lemuel.
- וכה רואים אנחנו ברורות כי אחר אשר מוארת דעת עם ברוח אלהים, והעם משיג ידיעה רבה בדרךים הנוגעים לצדק, ואחרי כן הם שוקעים בחטא ובעברות, הם נעשים קשים יותר ומצבם גרוע יותר מאשר אלו לא ידעו את הדברים האלה מעולם.
- 30 And thus we can plainly discern, that after a people have been once enlightened by the Spirit of God, and have had great knowledge of things pertaining to righteousness, and then have fallen away into sin and transgression, they become more hardened, and thus their state becomes worse than though they had never known these things.

## כה

## 25

- והנה, כעס הלמנים ההם גבר כי הרגו את אחיהם; לכן הם נשבעו נקמה על הנפיים, ולא הוסיפו בקוותם להרג את אנשי אנטי-נפילחי בעת ההיא.
- והם אספו את חילותיהם והלכו אל גבולות ארץ זרחמלה, והתנפלו על העם אשר בארץ עמוניה והשמידום.
- ואחרי כן היו להם קרבות רבים עם הנפיים, אשר בהם הם נגפו ונהרגו.
- ובין הלמנים אשר נפלו בקרב, היו כמעט כל זרע עמולון ועמיתיו, אשר שמשו כהנים לנח; ביד הנפיים הם נהרגו.
- ושאריתם ברחו אל היער המזרחי, ולקחו בחזקת היד את הכח ואת השלטון על הלמנים, ובזאת הסבו ללמנים רבים למות באש מפני אמונתם.
- כי רבים מן הלמנים, אחר אשר סבלו אבדות רבות ויסורים כה רבים, החלו להתעורר בזכרם את דברי אהרן ועמיתיו אשר הטיפו להם בארצם. על כן הם החלו לכפר במסורות אבותיהם, ולהאמין ביהוה, וכי הוא נתן לנפיים כח רב. וכך הפכו רבים מהם מאמיני יהוה בהיותם ביער.
- והמושלים ההם, אשר היו שארית בני עמולון, צוו כי אלה יוצאו להורג, אכן, כל האנשים אשר האמינו בדברים האלה.
- ומות הקדושים הזה עורר את חמת רבים מאחיהם, ומריבה פרצה ביער. אז החלו הלמנים לערוף מצוד על זרע עמולון ועמיתיו ולהרגם; והם ברחו אל היער המזרחי.
- והנה הם נצודים ביד הלמנים עד עצם היום הזה. כה התקיימו דברי אבינדי, אשר דבר על זרע הכהנים אשר הסבו את מותו באש.
- כי כה אמר אליהם: כל אשר תעשו בי יהיה כתבנית הדברים אשר יבואו.
- 1 And behold, now it came to pass that those Lamanites were more angry because they had slain their brethren; therefore they swore vengeance upon the Nephites; and they did no more attempt to slay the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi at that time.
- 2 But they took their armies and went over into the borders of the land of Zarahemla, and fell upon the people who were in the land of Ammonihah, and destroyed them.
- 3 And after that, they had many battles with the Nephites, in the which they were driven and slain.
- 4 And among the Lamanites who were slain were almost all the seed of Amulon and his brethren, who were the priests of Noah, and they were slain by the hands of the Nephites;
- 5 And the remainder, having fled into the east wilderness, and having usurped the power and authority over the Lamanites, caused that many of the Lamanites should perish by fire because of their belief—
- 6 For many of them, after having suffered much loss and so many afflictions, began to be stirred up in remembrance of the words which Aaron and his brethren had preached to them in their land; therefore they began to disbelieve the traditions of their fathers, and to believe in the Lord, and that he gave great power unto the Nephites; and thus there were many of them converted in the wilderness.
- 7 And it came to pass that those rulers who were the remnant of the children of Amulon caused that they should be put to death, yea, all those that believed in these things.
- 8 Now this martyrdom caused that many of their brethren should be stirred up to anger; and there began to be contention in the wilderness; and the Lamanites began to hunt the seed of Amulon and his brethren and began to slay them; and they fled into the east wilderness.
- 9 And behold they are hunted at this day by the Lamanites. Thus the words of Abinadi were brought to pass, which he said concerning the seed of the priests who caused that he should suffer death by fire.
- 10 For he said unto them: What ye shall do unto me shall be a type of things to come.

## עֲלֵמָא כה:יא-כו:א

- 11 And now Abinadi was the first that suffered death by fire because of his belief in God; now this is what he meant, that many should suffer death by fire, according as he had suffered.
- 12 And he said unto the priests of Noah that their seed should cause many to be put to death, in the like manner as he was, and that they should be scattered abroad and slain, even as a sheep having no shepherd is driven and slain by wild beasts; and now behold, these words were verified, for they were driven by the Lamanites, and they were hunted, and they were smitten.
- 13 And it came to pass that when the Lamanites saw that they could not overpower the Nephites they returned again to their own land; and many of them came over to dwell in the land of Ishmael and the land of Nephi, and did join themselves to the people of God, who were the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi.
- 14 And they did also bury their weapons of war, according as their brethren had, and they began to be a righteous people; and they did walk in the ways of the Lord, and did observe to keep his commandments and his statutes.
- 15 Yea, and they did keep the law of Moses; for it was expedient that they should keep the law of Moses as yet, for it was not all fulfilled. But notwithstanding the law of Moses, they did look forward to the coming of Christ, considering that the law of Moses was a type of his coming, and believing that they must keep those outward performances until the time that he should be revealed unto them.
- 16 Now they did not suppose that salvation came by the law of Moses; but the law of Moses did serve to strengthen their faith in Christ; and thus they did retain a hope through faith, unto eternal salvation, relying upon the spirit of prophecy, which spake of those things to come.
- 17 And now behold, Ammon, and Aaron, and Omner, and Himni, and their brethren did rejoice exceedingly, for the success which they had had among the Lamanites, seeing that the Lord had granted unto them according to their prayers, and that he had also verified his word unto them in every particular.
- וְאַבְינָדִי הָיָה הָרִאשׁוֹן אֲשֶׁר נָשָׂא מוֹת בְּשִׂרְפָּה מִפְּנֵי אֱמוּנָתוֹ בָּאלֹהִים. לְזֹאת הָיְתָה כְּוִנָּתוֹ, כִּי רַבִּים יָמוּתוּ בָּאֵשׁ כְּכִי אֲשֶׁר הוּמָת הוּא.
- וְהוּא אָמַר לְכֹהֲנֵי נֹחַ כִּי צִאֲצָאִיהֶם יוֹצִיאוּ רַבִּים לְהוֹרֵג כְּדֶרֶךְ הַמָּתָת, וְכִי הֵם הִפְצוּ יוֹפְצוֹ וְיוֹמָתוֹ; אָכֵן, כִּצְאָן אֲשֶׁר אֵין לָהֶן רוּעָה נִגְפּוֹת וּמוֹמָתוֹת בְּיַד חַיּוֹת טָרֵף. וְהִנֵּה הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה קָמוּ וְהָיוּ, כִּי הֵם נִדְּחוּ עַל יְדֵי הַלְּמָנִיתִים וּמִצִּדּוֹ נִעְרְפוּ עֲלֵיהֶם וְהֵם הֻכּוּ.
- וְכֹאֲשֶׁר רָאוּ הַלְּמָנִיתִים כִּי לֹא יוּכְלוּ לִגְבוֹר עַל הַנֶּפְתִּיִּים הֵם שָׁבוּ אֶל אֶרְצָם. וְרַבִּים מֵהֶם בָּאוּ לִגְרוֹ בְּאֶרֶץ יִשְׁמָעֵאל וּבְאֶרֶץ נְפִי, וְנִסְפְּחוּ עַל עַם אֱלֹהִים אֲשֶׁר הֵם אֲנָשֵׁי אֲנְטִי-נֶפְתְּלִי.
- וְגַם הֵם קָבְרוּ אֶת כָּלִי מִלְחָמָתָם, כְּמַעֲשֵׂה אֲחֵיהֶם, וְהָיוּ לְעַם צַדִּיק; וְהֵם הִלְכוּ בְּדֶרֶךְ יְהוָה וְשָׁמְרוּ לַעֲשׂוֹת אֶת מִצְוֹתָיו וְאֶת חֻקֹּתָיו.
- אָכֵן, הֵם שָׁמְרוּ לַעֲשׂוֹת כְּתוּרַת מֹשֶׁה; כִּי הָיָה זֶה רְאוּי לְשֹׁמֵר אֶזְזֵת תּוֹרַת מֹשֶׁה, כִּי לֹא כָל הַדְּבָרִים הִתְקַיְּמוּ וּבָאוּ; וְאִף כִּי שָׁמְרוּ אֶת תּוֹרַת מֹשֶׁה, הָיוּ מְצַפִּים לְבֹא הַמָּשִׁיחַ, בְּחֻשְׁבָּם כִּי תּוֹרַת מֹשֶׁה הָיְתָה כְּתִבְנִית בּוֹאֵן, וְהֵם הֶאֱמִינוּ כִּי עֲלֵיהֶם לְקַיֵּם אוֹתָן עֲשִׂיּוֹת חִיצוֹנִיּוֹת עַד הַיּוֹם אֲשֶׁר יִתְגַּלֶּה לָהֶם.
- וְהֵם לֹא סָבְרוּ כִּי הִישׁוּעָה בָּאָה עַל יְדֵי תּוֹרַת מֹשֶׁה; כִּי אִם תּוֹרַת מֹשֶׁה מְשַׁרְתָּת כְּחוּק אֱמוּנָתָם בְּמָשִׁיחַ. כֹּה הֵם נִצְרוּ תִקְוָה לִישׁוּעַת עוֹלָם עַל יְדֵי אֱמוּנָה, בְּסִמְכָם עַל רוּחַ הַנְּבוּאָה הַמְּדַבֶּרֶת עַל הַבָּאוֹת.
- וְהִנֵּה, רַבְתָּה שְׂמֵחַת עֲמוֹן וְאַהֲרֹן, אוֹמְנֵר וְחִמְנִי וְעַמִּיתֵיהֶם עַל הַהֲצֻלָּה אֲשֶׁר הָיְתָה לָהֶם בְּקֶרֶב הַלְּמָנִיתִים, בְּרָאוּתָם כִּי נָתַן לָהֶם יְהוָה כְּכִי תַפְלוּתֵיהֶם, וְעַל אֲשֶׁר קָם אֶת דְּבָרוֹ לָהֶם כְּכֹל פְּרָטָיו.

- 1 And now, these are the words of Ammon to his brethren, which say thus: My brothers and my brethren, behold I say unto you, how great



## עֲלָמָא כּוֹב-יָא

לְשִׁמְחָה; וְכִי יָכֻלְנוּ לְהַעֲלוֹת עַל דְּעִתָּנוּ בְּצִאתָנוּ  
מֵאֶרֶץ זֶרַחֵמְלָה כִּי אֱלֹהִים יַעֲנִיק לָנוּ בְּרָכָה  
כֹּה מְרֻבָּה?

reason have we to rejoice; for could we have supposed when we started  
from the land of Zarahemla that God would have granted unto us such  
great blessings?

הִנֵּה אֲנִי שׁוֹאֵל: מָה הֵם הַחֲסִידִים הַגְּדֹלִים  
אֲשֶׁר עָשָׂה עִמָּנוּ? הַתּוֹכְלוּ לְהַגִּידָם?

2 And now, I ask, what great blessings has he bestowed upon us? Can  
ye tell?

וְהִנֵּנִי מַשִּׁיב בְּעִבְרוֹכֶם: אַחֲיָנוּ הַלָּמָנִיתִים הָיוּ  
בַּחֹשֶׁךְ; אַכֵּן, בְּתֵהוֹם מַחֲשָׁכִים הָיוּ; וְרָאוּ  
מָה רַבִּים מֵהֶם מוֹבְאִים לְרֹאוֹת אֶת אֱלֹהִים  
אֲשֶׁר הֵנִיפָלָם! וְזֹאת הַבְּרָכָה אֲשֶׁר הֵעֲנִיקָה  
לָנוּ, בְּהַעֲשׂוֹתָנוּ כְּלֵי שֵׁרֶת בְּיַד אֱלֹהִים  
לַעֲשׂוֹת אֶת הַמַּעֲשֶׂה הַגְּדֹל הַזֶּה.

3 Behold, I answer for you; for our brethren, the Lamanites, were in  
darkness, yea, even in the darkest abyss, but behold, how many of  
them are brought to behold the marvelous light of God! And this is the  
blessing which hath been bestowed upon us, that we have been made  
instruments in the hands of God to bring about this great work.

רְאוּ, אֲלָפִים מֵהֶם שְׂשִׁים וְהֵם הוֹבְאוּ אֶל חֵיק  
צִאֵן אֱלֹהִים.

4 Behold, thousands of them do rejoice, and have been brought into the  
fold of God.

הִנֵּה הַבְּשִׁיל הַשָּׂדֶה, וּבְרוּכִים אַתֶּם כִּי  
הֵנִיפְתֶּם מְגַל וּקְצַרְתֶּם בְּכַחְכֶּם. כָּל הַיּוֹם  
עֲמַלְתֶּם, וְעַתָּה רְאוּ אֶת מִסְפַּר אֲלֻמוֹתֵיכֶם!  
אֵל הָאֶסֶס תֵּאֱסַפְנָה לְכָל תְּשַׁחֲתֶנָּה.

5 Behold, the field was ripe, and blessed are ye, for ye did thrust in the  
sickle, and did reap with your might, yea, all the day long did ye labor;  
and behold the number of your sheaves! And they shall be gathered  
into the garners, that they are not wasted.

לֹא תִרְבִּיצוּן הַסַּעֲרָה בַּיּוֹם הָאֲחֵרוֹן, וּבִסּוּפָה  
לֹא תִנְדָּפְנָה. כִּי בִבּוֹא הַסּוּפָה תֵּאֱסַפְנָה אֶל  
מְקוֹמָן, לְכָל תִּפְגַּע בָּהֶן; אַכֵּן, לְכָל תִּנְשָׂאנָה  
בְּרוּחוֹת עֲזוֹת אֶל אֲשֶׁר יִטֶּה הָאוֹיֵב לְשִׂאתָן.

6 Yea, they shall not be beaten down by the storm at the last day; yea,  
neither shall they be harrowed up by the whirlwinds; but when the  
storm cometh they shall be gathered together in their place, that the  
storm cannot penetrate to them; yea, neither shall they be driven with  
fierce winds whithersoever the enemy listeth to carry them.

וְרָאוּ, הֵנָּה בְּיַד אֲדוֹנֵי הַקְּצִיר וְלוֹ הֵן; הוּא  
יִשְׂאֵן בַּיּוֹם הָאֲחֵרוֹן.

7 But behold, they are in the hands of the Lord of the harvest, and they  
are his; and he will raise them up at the last day.

בְּרוּךְ שֵׁם אֱלֹהֵינוּ; הִבָּה נִשְׁיר בְּשִׁבְחוֹ, הִבָּה נִזְדָּה  
לְשֵׁם קְדֻשּׁוֹ כִּי הוּא עוֹשֶׂה צְדָקוֹת לְעוֹלָם.

8 Blessed be the name of our God; let us sing to his praise, yea, let us give  
thanks to his holy name, for he doth work righteousness forever.

כִּי לוֹלֵא יֵצְאוּ מֵאֶרֶץ זֶרַחֵמְלָה הָיוּ עֲדִין  
אַחֲיָנוּ הָאֲהוּבִים הָאֵלֶּה, הָאֲהוּבִים אוֹתָנוּ  
אֲהָבָה כֹּה עֲזָה, מִכִּי שִׁנְאָה עָלֵינוּ, וְאִף הָיוּ  
זָרִים לְאֱלֹהִים.

9 For if we had not come up out of the land of Zarahemla, these our  
dearly beloved brethren, who have so dearly beloved us, would still  
have been racked with hatred against us, yea, and they would also have  
been strangers to God.

וְהָיָה אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר עִמּוֹן אֶת הַדְּבָרִים  
הָאֵלֶּה, גָּעַר בּוֹ אֶהֱרֹן אַחֲיוֹ, וְאָמַר: עִמּוֹן,  
יִרְאֵתִי כִּי הִשִּׁיאתָךְ הַשְׂמִיחָה לְהִתְפָּאֵר.

10 And it came to pass that when Ammon had said these words, his  
brother Aaron rebuked him, saying: Ammon, I fear that thy joy doth  
carry thee away unto boasting.

וְעִמּוֹן אָמַר אֵלָיו: אֵינִי מִתְפָּאֵר בְּכַחֲשִׁי אוֹ  
בְּחָכְמָתִי; אֲךָ הִנֵּה שְׂמִיחָתִי שְׁלֵמָה, הַחֲדָה  
מִמְּלֶאכֶת אֶת לְבִי וּבִאלֹהֵי אֲשִׁישָׁה.

11 But Ammon said unto him: I do not boast in my own strength, nor in  
my own wisdom; but behold, my joy is full, yea, my heart is brim with  
joy, and I will rejoice in my God.

- 12 Yea, I know that I am nothing; as to my strength I am weak; therefore I will not boast of myself, but I will boast of my God, for in his strength I can do all things; yea, behold, many mighty miracles we have wrought in this land, for which we will praise his name forever.
- הֲנִי יוֹדֵעַ כִּי כֹאֵין אֲנִכִּי. וְאֲשֶׁר לְכֹחִי, חֲלָשׁ אֲנִי; עַל כֵּן לֹא בַעֲצָמִי אֶתְפָּאֵר; כִּי עַל אֱלֹהֵי אֶתְפָּאֵר, כִּי בְּכֹחוֹ אוֹכַל לַעֲשׂוֹת הַכֹּל; אֲכֹן, פְּלִאִים אֲדִירִים רַבִּים עָשִׂינוּ בְּאֶרֶץ הַזֹּאת, אֲשֶׁר מִפְּנֵיהֶם נִהְלַל אֶת שְׁמוֹ לְעוֹלָם.
- 13 Behold, how many thousands of our brethren has he loosed from the pains of hell; and they are brought to sing redeeming love, and this because of the power of his word which is in us, therefore have we not great reason to rejoice?
- הִנֵּה, מָה רַבִּים אֲלֵפֵי אַחֵינוּ אֲשֶׁר שִׁחְרָרם מִמִּכְאוֹבֵי שְׁחַת; וְהֵם הוּבְאוּ לְשִׁיר אֶת הָאֱהָבָה הַפּוֹדָה, וְזֹאת מִפְּנֵי כֹחַ דְּבָרֹו אֲשֶׁר בָּנוּ. הֲאִין רָאוּי לָנוּ לְשִׂמְחָה מְאֹד עַל זֹאת?
- 14 Yea, we have reason to praise him forever, for he is the Most High God, and has loosed our brethren from the chains of hell.
- הוּ רָאוּי לָנוּ לְהִלְלוֹ לְעוֹלָם, כִּי הוּא אֵל עֲלִיוֹן, וְהוּא שִׁחְרָר אֶת אַחֵינוּ מִכַּבְלֵי שְׁחַת.
- 15 Yea, they were encircled about with everlasting darkness and destruction; but behold, he has brought them into his everlasting light, yea, into everlasting salvation; and they are encircled about with the matchless bounty of his love; yea, and we have been instruments in his hands of doing this great and marvelous work.
- אֲכֹן, אֶפְפוּם מִחֲשֵׁכֵי עוֹלָמִים וְאַבְדּוֹן; אֲךָ הוּא הִבִּיֵּאֵם אֶל אוֹר הָעוֹלָמִים אֲשֶׁר לוֹ, אֵל יְשׁוּעַת נֶצַח; וְהֵם מִקְפִּים בְּשִׁפְעָה אֱהָבָתוֹ אֲשֶׁר אֵין עֲרֹךְ לָהּ. אֲכֹן, הָיִינוּ כְּלֵי שֶׁרֶת בְּיָדוֹ לַעֲשׂוֹת אֶת הַמַּעֲשֶׂה הַגָּדוֹל וְהַנִּפְלָא הַזֶּה.
- 16 Therefore, let us glory, yea, we will glory in the Lord; yea, we will rejoice, for our joy is full; yea, we will praise our God forever. Behold, who can glory too much in the Lord? Yea, who can say too much of his great power, and of his mercy, and of his long-suffering towards the children of men? Behold, I say unto you, I cannot say the smallest part which I feel.
- לְכֹן, הִבֵּה נִפְאָרָה; אֲכֹן, נִהְלַל יְהוָה; נְשִׂיִשָּׁה כִּי שִׂמְחָתָנוּ שְׁלֵמָה. נִשְׂבַּחָה אֶת אֱלֹהֵינוּ לְעוֹלָם. מִי אֲשֶׁר יוֹכַל לְשַׂבַּח אֶת יְהוָה יוֹתֵר מִדִּי? מִי יוֹכַל לְהַכְבִּיר מַלְּים בְּסִפְרוֹ עַל כּוֹחַ הַגָּדוֹל, רַחֲמָיו וְאֶרְךְ אֲפָיו עִם בְּנֵי אָדָם? הֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, לֹא אוֹכַל לוֹמַר אֶף מִקְצַת מִהֲרַגְשָׁתִּי.
- 17 Who could have supposed that our God would have been so merciful as to have snatched us from our awful, sinful, and polluted state?
- מִי סָבַר כִּי אֱלֹהֵינוּ יִזְהֶי כֹה רַחֲמָן עִד כִּי יִחַטְּפוּנוּ מִתּוֹךְ מַצְבָּנוּ הַנוֹרָא שֶׁל חַטָּא וְטִמְאַה.
- 18 Behold, we went forth even in wrath, with mighty threatenings to destroy his church.
- הִנֵּה, אֲף יֵצְאָנוּ בְּחִמָּה וּבְאִיוִמִּים עִזִּים לְאַבֵּד אֶת כְּנִסְיָתוֹ.
- 19 Oh then, why did he not consign us to an awful destruction, yea, why did he not let the sword of his justice fall upon us, and doom us to eternal despair?
- וּמַדּוּעַ לֹא גָזַר עָלֵינוּ אֲבָדוֹן נוֹרָא וְלֹא הִפִּיל בָּנוּ אֶת חֶרֶב דִּינֹו לְתַת חֲלָקְנוּ יְאוּשׁ עוֹלָם?
- 20 Oh, my soul, almost as it were, fleeth at the thought. Behold, he did not exercise his justice upon us, but in his great mercy hath brought us over that everlasting gulf of death and misery, even to the salvation of our souls.
- הוּ, נִשְׁמָתִי, כְּמַעַט פּוֹרַחַת בַּמִּחְשָׁבָה. הִנֵּה, הוּא לֹא שִׁפְטָנוּ עַל מַדַּת הַדִּין, כִּי בְּרַחֲמָיו הָעֲבִיר אוֹתָנוּ מֵעֶבֶר לְתֵהוֹם הַמָּוֶת וְהִיסוּרִים הַנֶּצַחִית אֵלֵי יְשׁוּעַת נַפְשׁוֹתֵינוּ.
- 21 And now behold, my brethren, what natural man is there that knoweth these things? I say unto you, there is none that knoweth these things, save it be the penitent.
- וְהִנֵּה, אַחֵי, מִי אָדָם טִבְעִי אֲשֶׁר יָבִין אֵלֶּה? הֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם: אֵין יוֹדֵעַ אֵלֶּה וְזוֹלָת נַחֵם מִחַטָּא.

- 22 Yea, he that repenteth and exerciseth faith, and bringeth forth good works, and prayeth continually without ceasing—unto such it is given to know the mysteries of God; yea, unto such it shall be given to reveal things which never have been revealed; yea, and it shall be given unto such to bring thousands of souls to repentance, even as it has been given unto us to bring these our brethren to repentance.
- 23 Now do ye remember, my brethren, that we said unto our brethren in the land of Zarahemla, we go up to the land of Nephi, to preach unto our brethren, the Lamanites, and they laughed us to scorn?
- 24 For they said unto us: Do ye suppose that ye can bring the Lamanites to the knowledge of the truth? Do ye suppose that ye can convince the Lamanites of the incorrectness of the traditions of their fathers, as stiffnecked a people as they are; whose hearts delight in the shedding of blood; whose days have been spent in the grossest iniquity; whose ways have been the ways of a transgressor from the beginning? Now my brethren, ye remember that this was their language.
- 25 And moreover they did say: Let us take up arms against them, that we destroy them and their iniquity out of the land, lest they overrun us and destroy us.
- 26 But behold, my beloved brethren, we came into the wilderness not with the intent to destroy our brethren, but with the intent that perhaps we might save some few of their souls.
- 27 Now when our hearts were depressed, and we were about to turn back, behold, the Lord comforted us, and said: Go amongst thy brethren, the Lamanites, and bear with patience thine afflictions, and I will give unto you success.
- 28 And now behold, we have come, and been forth amongst them; and we have been patient in our sufferings, and we have suffered every privation; yea, we have traveled from house to house, relying upon the mercies of the world—not upon the mercies of the world alone but upon the mercies of God.
- 29 And we have entered into their houses and taught them, and we have taught them in their streets; yea, and we have taught them upon their hills; and we have also entered into their temples and their synagogues and taught them; and we have been cast out, and mocked, and spit upon, and smote upon our cheeks; and we have been stoned, and taken and bound with strong cords, and cast into prison; and through the power and wisdom of God we have been delivered again.
- אָכֵן, הַמִּנְחָם עַל רְעֵתוֹ וְחֵי בְּאִמּוּנָה וְעוֹשֶׂה מַעֲשִׂים טוֹבִים וּמִתְפַּלֵּל תָּמִיד בְּלִי הַפְּגָה. לְאִשֶּׁר כֵּזֶה נִתְּנָה דַּעַת סִתְּרֵי אֱלֹהִים; לְאִשֶּׁר כֵּזֶה יִנָּתֵן לְגִלּוֹת דְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר מֵעוֹלָם לֹא גִלּוּ; וְיִנָּתֵן לְאִשֶּׁר כֵּזֶה לְהָשִׁיב אֶלֶפִי נֶפֶשׁ מִחֻטָּא, כִּפִּי אֲשֶׁר נָתַן לָנוּ לְהָשִׁיב בְּתִשְׁבָּה אֶת אַחֵינוּ אֵלֶּה.
- הַזּוֹכְרִים אַתֶּם, עַמִּיתִי, כִּי בְּאִמְרָנוּ לְאַחֵינוּ בְּאַרְץ זְרַעְהֶמְלָה, כִּי עוֹלִים אֲנִיחֵנו אֶל אֶרֶץ נָפִי לְהַשִּׁיף אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים אֶל אַחֵינוּ הַלָּמָּנִים, הֵם לָעָגוּ לָנוּ בְּבוֹז?
- וְכֵּה אָמְרוּ לָנוּ: הֲתִתְּשְׁבוּ כִּי תוּכְלוּ לְהִבִּיאַת אֶת הַלָּמָּנִים אֶל דַּעַת הָאֱמֻנָה? הֲתִתְּשְׁבוּ כִּי תוּכְלוּ לְהוֹכִיחַ לְלָמָּנִים, אֲשֶׁר עִם קִשָּׁה עֶרְךָ הֵם, כִּי מִסּוּרוֹת אֲבוֹתֵיהֶם אֵינָם נִכְוֹנוֹת? שְׂפִיכַת דָּם מֵעַנְנָה אֶת לִבָּם. אֶת יְמֵיהֶם הֵם מְבַלִּים בְּמַעֲשֵׂי עֲוֹן גְּדוֹלִים. דְּרָכֵיהֶם דְּרָכֵי עוֹל מְבֻטָּן. וְעַתָּה, עַמִּיתִי, אַתֶּם זּוֹכְרִים כִּי זֹאת הָיְתָה לְשׁוֹן דְּבָרֵיהֶם.
- וְעוֹד אָמְרוּ: הִבֵּה נֹאחֲז בְּנִשְׁק עֲלֵיהֶם, לְמַעַן הַשְׁמִידֵם וּלְמַעַן הַכְחִיד עוֹלָתָם מִן הָאָרֶץ, פֶּן יַפְשֻׁטוּ עָלֵינוּ וְיִשְׁמִידוּנוּ.
- וְהִנֵּה, עַמִּיתִי הָאֱהוּבִים, לֹא בָּאנוּ אֶל הַיַּעַר בְּכַוְנָה לְהַשְׁמִיד אֶת אַחֵינוּ, כִּי אִם בְּכַוְנָה לְהַצִּיל מִסָּפֶר מִנְּפִשׁוֹתֵיהֶם.
- וּבְנִפְל רוּחֵנוּ, בְּעַמְדָנוּ לָשׁוּב אַחֲוָר, וְהִנֵּה נִחְמָנוּ יְהוָה וָאָמַר: לָכוּ אֶל אֲחֵיכֶם הַלָּמָּנִים וְשִׂאוּ בְּאַרְץ רוּחַ אֶת יְסוּרֵיכֶם, וְאֶנְכִּי אֲצַלְחָכֶם.
- וְהִנֵּה אֲנִיחֵנו בָּאנוּ וְהִתְהַלַּכְנוּ בְּקִרְבָּם, וְנִשְׂאָנוּ בְּאַרְץ רוּחַ אֶת יְסוּרֵינוּ וְסַבְלָנוּ כָּל מַחְסוֹר; מִבֵּית אֶל בֵּית הִלָּכְנוּ וּמִשְׁעָנְתָנוּ רַחֲמֵי הָעוֹלָם; לֹא רַחֲמֵי הָעוֹלָם בִּלְבַד, כִּי אִם רַחֲמֵי אֱלֹהִים.
- וְכִנְסָנוּ אֶל בֵּיתֵיהֶם וּלְמַדְנוּ אוֹתָם, וְלִמְדָנוּם בְּרַחוּבוֹתֵיהֶם; אַף עַל הַגְּבָעוֹת לְמַדְנוּם; וְאֵף בָּאנוּ אֶל מִקְדְּשֵׁיהֶם וְאֶל בֵּיתֵי כְּנִסְיֹתֵיהֶם וּלְמַדְנוּם שָׁם. וְהֵם גִּרְשׁוּנוּ וְלָעָגוּ לָנוּ וְיָרְקוּ בְּפָנֵינוּ וְהִכּוּנוּ לָחִי; וְהֵם גִּמּוּנוּ אֶכָּן וְתִפְשׁוּנוּ וּבִעְבוּתִים אֶסְרוּנוּ וְאֶל הַפְּלֵא הִשְׁלִיכוּנוּ; אַף בְּכַח אֱלֹהִים וּבְכַחֲמָתוֹ נִחַלְצָנוּ שְׁנִית.

- 30 And we have suffered all manner of afflictions, and all this, that perhaps we might be the means of saving some soul; and we supposed that our joy would be full if perhaps we could be the means of saving some.
- וְעַתָּה נֹכַח לְהִבִּיט וְלִרְאוֹת אֶת פְּרֵי עֲמָלָנוּ;  
הָאֵם מְעַטִּים הֵם? הֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם: לֹא! רַבִּים  
הֵם. וְאֲנַחְנוּ עֲדִים לָתֵם לָכֶם מִפְּנֵי אֲהֲבָתָם  
אֶת אֲחֵיהֶם וְאוֹתָנוּ.
- 31 Now behold, we can look forth and see the fruits of our labors; and are they few? I say unto you, Nay, they are many; yea, and we can witness of their sincerity, because of their love towards their brethren and also towards us.
- כִּי הִנֵּה הֵם הֶעָדִיפוּ לְהִקְרִיב אֶת חַיֵּיהֶם מִקַּחַת  
נַפְשׁ אוֹיְבָם; וְהֵם קָבְרוּ אֶת כָּלֵי מִלְחָמָתָם  
בְּעֵמֶק הָאֲדָמָה מִפְּנֵי אֲהֲבָתָם אֶת אֲחֵיהֶם.
- 32 For behold, they had rather sacrifice their lives than even to take the life of their enemy; and they have buried their weapons of war deep in the earth, because of their love towards their brethren.
- וְעַתָּה אֲמַר לָכֶם: הָאֵם הִיְתָה בְּכָל הָאֶרֶץ  
אֲהֲבָה כֹּה רַבָּה? הֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם: לֹא! לֹא  
הִיְתָה כִּמּוֹהִי, אִף בֵּין הַנְּפִיטִים.
- 33 And now behold I say unto you, has there been so great love in all the land? Behold, I say unto you, Nay, there has not, even among the Nephites.
- כִּי הֵם הָיוּ נוֹשְׂאִים נֶשֶׁק עַל אֲחֵיהֶם וְלֹא הָיוּ  
מוֹתִירִים עַצְמָם לְהָרֵג. וְהִנֵּה, מִה רַבִּים מֵאֲלֹהֵי  
הַתִּירוֹ דָּמָם; וְאֲנַחְנוּ יוֹדְעִים כִּי הֵם הָלְכוּ אֶל  
אֱלֹהֵיהֶם מִפְּנֵי אֲהֲבָתָם וּמִפְּנֵי שִׂנְאָתָם חֲטָא.
- 34 For behold, they would take up arms against their brethren; they would not suffer themselves to be slain. But behold how many of these have laid down their lives; and we know that they have gone to their God, because of their love and of their hatred to sin.
- הַעַל זֹאת לֹא נִשְׂמַח? הֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, לֹא  
הָיוּ אֲנָשִׁים כְּמוֹנוֹ מֵאֶזְרַת רֵאשִׁית הָעוֹלָם, אֲשֶׁר  
יֵשׁ לָהֶם סִבָּה כֹּה גְדוֹלָה לְשִׂמְחָה; וְאֲנִי נִשְׂאֵתִי  
בְּשִׂמְחָתִי עַד כְּדֵי הַתְּפָאֲרוֹת בְּאֵלֹהֵי; כִּי לוֹ  
הַגְּבוּרָה, הַחֲכָמָה וְהַבִּינָה: הוּא מְבִין אֶת  
הַכֹּל, וְהוּא רַחֲמָן וּמוֹשִׁיעַ אֶת הַנִּחְמָמִים עַל  
חֲטָא וְהַמֵּאֲמִינִים בְּשִׁמּוֹ.
- 35 Now have we not reason to rejoice? Yea, I say unto you, there never were men that had so great reason to rejoice as we, since the world began; yea, and my joy is carried away, even unto boasting in my God; for he has all power, all wisdom, and all understanding; he comprehendeth all things, and he is a merciful Being, even unto salvation, to those who will repent and believe on his name.
- וְאֵם זֹאת הַתְּפָאֲרוֹת, לֹא אֶחָדִל מִהַתְּפָאֵר,  
כִּי הִיא חַיִּי וּמֹאוּרִי, שִׂמְחָתִי וִישׁוּעָתִי, וְנִגְאֻלָּתִי  
מִקְלָלֶת עוֹלָם. בְּרוּךְ שֵׁם אֱלֹהֵי הַזִּכָּר אֶת  
הָעָם הַזֶּה, אֲשֶׁר הֵם עָנְף מֵעֵץ יִשְׂרָאֵל וְהֵם  
כְּרוּתִים מִגּוֹפּוֹ בְּנֶכֶר. אָכֵן, אֲנִי אוֹמֵר, בְּרוּךְ  
שֵׁם אֱלֹהֵי, הַזִּכָּר אוֹתָנוּ, הַנּוֹדְדִים בְּנֶכֶר.
- 36 Now if this is boasting, even so will I boast; for this is my life and my light, my joy and my salvation, and my redemption from everlasting wo. Yea, blessed is the name of my God, who has been mindful of this people, who are a branch of the tree of Israel, and has been lost from its body in a strange land; yea, I say, blessed be the name of my God, who has been mindful of us, wanderers in a strange land.
- וְעַתָּה, עֲמִיתִי, אֲנַחְנוּ רוֹאִים כִּי אֱלֹהִים זֹכֵר  
כָּל עַם, בְּכָל אֶרֶץ אֲשֶׁר יִהְיֶה; וְהוּא מוֹנֶה אֶת  
עֲמוֹ וּמַעֲזֵי הוֹמִים רַחֲמִים עַל פְּנֵי כָל הָאֶרֶץ.  
זֹאת שִׂמְחָתִי וְתוֹדָתִי הַרְבֵּה. אוֹדָה לְאֱלֹהֵי  
עַד עוֹלָם. אָמֵן.
- 37 Now my brethren, we see that God is mindful of every people, whatsoever land they may be in; yea, he numbereth his people, and his bowels of mercy are over all the earth. Now this is my joy, and my great thanksgiving; yea, and I will give thanks unto my God forever. Amen.

## כּוֹז

## 27

- וְהָיָה בְּרֵאוֹת הַלְּמָנִים הָהֵם, אֲשֶׁר הָלְכוּ  
לְהִלָּחֵם בְּנַפְיִים, אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר נִלְחָמוּ רַבּוֹת  
לְהַשְׁמִידָם, כִּי לִשְׂוֹא יִבְקְשׁוּ לְהַכְחִידָם, הֵם  
שָׁבוּ אֶל אֶרֶץ נִפְּי.
- וְהַעֲמֻלָּקִיִּים רָגְזוּ מְאֹד עַל אֲבֹדוֹתֵיהֶם;  
וּבְרֵאוֹתָם כִּי לֹא יוֹכְלוּ לְקַחַת נֶקֶם מִן הַנְּפִיִּים,  
הֵם הִחֲלוּ לְעוֹרֵר בָּעָם רָגֶז עַל אֲחֵיהֶם, אֲנָשֵׁי  
אֲנִי־נִפְּי־לֵחִי; לָכֵן הִחֲלוּ שְׁנֵית לְהַשְׁמִידָם.
- וְשׁוֹב סָרְבוּ אֲנָשֵׁי אֲנִי־נִפְּי־לֵחִי לָאֲחוֹז בְּכָלִי  
נֶשֶׁק וְהַפְּקִירוּ עֲצָמָם לְהָרֶג, כַּחֲפִץ אוֹיְבֵיהֶם.
- וְכִרְאוֹת עֲמוֹן וְעַמִּיתָיו אֵת מַעֲשֵׂה הַהַשְׁמָדָה  
בְּקִרְבָּם אֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר הֵם אֶהְבּוּ עַד מְאֹד, וְאֲשֶׁר  
אֶהְבּוּ מְאֹד, כִּי הָיוּ בְּעֵינֵיהֶם כְּמַלְאכֵי אֱלֹהִים  
אֲשֶׁר נִשְׁלְחוּ לְהַצִּילָם מֵאֲבֹדוֹן עוֹלָם, אָכֵן,  
כִּרְאוֹת עֲמוֹן וְעַמִּיתָיו אֵת מַעֲשֵׂה הַהַשְׁמָדָה  
הַגָּדוֹל, נִכְמְרוּ רַחֲמֵיהֶם וְהֵם אָמְרוּ אֶל הַמֶּלֶךְ:
- הִבֵּה נִקְבְּצָה אֵת עַם יְהוָה הַזֶּה וְנֵרֵד אֶל אֶרֶץ  
זְרַעְחַמְלָה, אֶל אֲחֵינוּ הַנְּפִיִּים, וְנִמְלֹט מִיַּד  
אוֹיְבֵינוּ וְלֹא נֵאֲבֵד.
- אֲךָ הַמֶּלֶךְ אָמַר לָהֶם: הֵן יִשְׁמִידוּנוּ הַנְּפִיִּים  
מִפְּנֵי מַעֲשֵׂי הָרָצָח וְהַחֲטָא אֲשֶׁר עָשִׂינוּ בָּהֶם.
- וְאָמַר עֲמוֹן: אֵלֶּךְ וְאֶשְׁאַל אֵת פִּי יְהוָה; וְהָיָה  
אִם יֹאמַר לִי כִּי יֵרֵד אֶל אֲחֵינוּ, הֲתִלְכוּ שָׁמָּה?
- וְאָמַר אֵלָיו הַמֶּלֶךְ: אָכֵן. אִם יֹאמַר לָנוּ יְהוָה  
לָלֶכֶת, יֵרֵד אֶל אֲחֵינוּ וְנִהְיָה לָהֶם לְעַבְדִּים עַד  
אֲשֶׁר נִפְצָה עַל מַעֲשֵׂי הָרָצָח וְהַחֲטָא הַרְבִּים  
אֲשֶׁר עָשִׂינוּ בָּהֶם.
- וְאָמַר אֵלָיו עֲמוֹן: מִנֵּי הַדָּבָר לַחֹק אֲשֶׁר  
לְאֲחֵינוּ, אֲשֶׁר חָק אָבִי, הָאוֹסֵר כָּל עַבְדּוֹת  
בְּקִרְבָּם. לָכֵן הִבֵּה נִרְדָּה וְנִשְׁתָּם מִבִּטְחָנוּ  
בְּרַחֲמֵי אֲחֵינוּ.
- וְאָמַר אֵלָיו הַמֶּלֶךְ: שְׂאֵל נָא אֵת פִּי יְהוָה.  
אִם יֹאמַר לָנוּ לָלֶכֶת, נֵלֶךְ, וְאִם לֹא, נֵאֲבֵד  
בְּאֶרֶץ הַזֹּאת.
- 1 Now it came to pass that when those Lamanites who had gone to war against the Nephites had found, after their many struggles to destroy them, that it was in vain to seek their destruction, they returned again to the land of Nephi.
- 2 And it came to pass that the Amalekites, because of their loss, were exceedingly angry. And when they saw that they could not seek revenge from the Nephites, they began to stir up the people in anger against their brethren, the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi; therefore they began again to destroy them.
- 3 Now this people again refused to take their arms, and they suffered themselves to be slain according to the desires of their enemies.
- 4 Now when Ammon and his brethren saw this work of destruction among those whom they so dearly beloved, and among those who had so dearly beloved them—for they were treated as though they were angels sent from God to save them from everlasting destruction—therefore, when Ammon and his brethren saw this great work of destruction, they were moved with compassion, and they said unto the king:
- 5 Let us gather together this people of the Lord, and let us go down to the land of Zarahemla to our brethren the Nephites, and flee out of the hands of our enemies, that we be not destroyed.
- 6 But the king said unto them: Behold, the Nephites will destroy us, because of the many murders and sins we have committed against them.
- 7 And Ammon said: I will go and inquire of the Lord, and if he say unto us, go down unto our brethren, will ye go?
- 8 And the king said unto him: Yea, if the Lord saith unto us go, we will go down unto our brethren, and we will be their slaves until we repair unto them the many murders and sins which we have committed against them.
- 9 But Ammon said unto him: It is against the law of our brethren, which was established by my father, that there should be any slaves among them; therefore let us go down and rely upon the mercies of our brethren.
- 10 But the king said unto him: Inquire of the Lord, and if he saith unto us go, we will go; otherwise we will perish in the land.



- 11 And it came to pass that Ammon went and inquired of the Lord, and the Lord said unto him:
- וַעֲמֹן הָלַךְ וַשְּׁאֵל אֶת פִּי יְהוָה. וַאֲמַר יְהוָה אֵלָיו:
- 12 Get this people out of this land, that they perish not; for Satan has great hold on the hearts of the Amalekites, who do stir up the Lamanites to anger against their brethren to slay them; therefore get thee out of this land; and blessed are this people in this generation, for I will preserve them.
- הוֹצֵא אֶת הָעָם הַזֶּה מִן הָאָרֶץ הַזֹּאת, לְבֹל יָאָבְדוּ; כִּי קָנָה לוֹ הַשָּׁטָן שְׁבִיתָהּ בְּלֵב הָעַמְלָקִיִּים, וְהֵם מְסִיתִים אֶת הַלָּמָנִים לְשׂוֹא אֶת אֲחֵיהֶם וּלְהָרְגֵם; לָכֵן צֵאוּ מִן הָאָרֶץ הַזֹּאת; וּבָרוּךְ הָעָם הַזֶּה בְּדוֹר הַזֶּה, כִּי שְׁמוֹר אֶשְׁמְרֵם.
- 13 And now it came to pass that Ammon went and told the king all the words which the Lord had said unto him.
- וַעֲמֹן הָלַךְ אֶל הַמֶּלֶךְ וְסִפֵּר לוֹ אֶת כָּל הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר אָמַר אֵלָיו יְהוָה.
- 14 And they gathered together all their people, yea, all the people of the Lord, and did gather together all their flocks and herds, and departed out of the land, and came into the wilderness which divided the land of Nephi from the land of Zarahemla, and came over near the borders of the land.
- וְהֵם קָבְצוּ יַחְדָּו אֶת כָּל עַמָּם, אֶת כָּל עַם יְהוָה, וְאֶת כָּל צֹאנָם וּבָקָרָם; וְהֵם עָזְבוּ אֶת הָאָרֶץ וּבָאוּ אֶל הַיַּעַר אֲשֶׁר הִפְרִיד בֵּין אֶרֶץ נְפִי וּבֵין אֶרֶץ יִזְרַעְחֶמְלָה, וּבָאוּ אֶל קְרֵבֶת גְּבוּל הָאָרֶץ.
- 15 And it came to pass that Ammon said unto them: Behold, I and my brethren will go forth into the land of Zarahemla, and ye shall remain here until we return; and we will try the hearts of our brethren, whether they will that ye shall come into their land.
- וַעֲמֹן אָמַר אֲלֵיהֶם: נִלְכֶּה אֲנִי וְעַמִּיתִי, אֶל אֶרֶץ יִזְרַעְחֶמְלָה, וְאַתֶּם תִּשְׁאָרוּ פֹה עַד אֲשֶׁר נָשׁוּב; וְאִנְחֲנוּ נִנְסָה אֶת לֵב אֲחֵינוּ, הֲאֵם יֵאוֹתוּ לְכַנִּיסְתְּכֶם אֶל אֶרְצָם.
- 16 And it came to pass that as Ammon was going forth into the land, that he and his brethren met Alma, over in the place of which has been spoken; and behold, this was a joyful meeting.
- וְהָיָה כְּבֹא עֲמֹן אֶל הָאָרֶץ, פָּגְשׁוּ הוּא וְעַמִּיתָיו אֶת עֲלָמָא בַּמָּקוֹם אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר עָלָיו; וְהָיְתָה זֹאת פְּגִישָׁה רַבַּת שְׂמֵחָה.
- 17 Now the joy of Ammon was so great even that he was full; yea, he was swallowed up in the joy of his God, even to the exhausting of his strength; and he fell again to the earth.
- וְשִׂמְחַת עֲמֹן רַבָּתָהּ עַד כִּי מָלֵא. אָכֵן, הוּא נִבְלַע בְּשִׂמְחָה עַל אֱלֹהָיו עַד כִּי עָזְבָהּ כֹּחַ, וְהוּא נָפַל שֵׁנִית עַל הָאָרֶץ.
- 18 Now was not this exceeding joy? Behold, this is joy which none receiveth save it be the truly penitent and humble seeker of happiness.
- וְהֲלֹא הִיְתָה זֹאת שְׂמֵחָה גְּדוֹלָה? הִנֵּה, זֹאת שְׂמֵחָה אֲשֶׁר לֹא יִזְכֶּה בָּהּ אִישׁ, בְּלִתִּי אִם נָחַם מִחֲטָא בְּאַמֶּת וְעָנָו מִבְּקֵשׁ אֲשֶׁר.
- 19 Now the joy of Alma in meeting his brethren was truly great, and also the joy of Aaron, of Omner, and Himni; but behold their joy was not that to exceed their strength.
- וְשִׂמְחַת עֲלָמָא בְּפִגִּישַׁת עַמִּיתָיו אָכֵן הִיְתָה רַבָּה מְאֹד, וְכִמּוֹה שְׂמֵחַת אַהֲרֹן, אוֹמְנֵר וְחִמְנִי, וְאוֹלָם הָיָא לֹא גְּבָרָה עַל כֹּחָם.
- 20 And now it came to pass that Alma conducted his brethren back to the land of Zarahemla; even to his own house. And they went and told the chief judge all the things that had happened unto them in the land of Nephi, among their brethren, the Lamanites.
- וַעֲלָמָא הוֹבִיל אֶת עַמִּיתָיו בְּשׁוּבָם אֶל אֶרֶץ יִזְרַעְחֶמְלָה, אֶל בֵּיתוֹ; וְהֵם הָלְכוּ וְסִפְרוּ לְשׁוֹפֵט הָעֵלְיוֹן אֶת כָּל הַקּוֹרוֹת אוֹתָם בְּאֶרֶץ נְפִי בְּקֶרֶב אֲחֵיהֶם הַלָּמָנִים.

- 21 והשופט העליון שלח קול בכל הארץ לשאל את פי העם על מתן רשות כניסה לארצם לאחיהם, אנשי אנטי-נפִי-לִהִי.
- 22 And it came to pass that the chief judge sent a proclamation throughout all the land, desiring the voice of the people concerning the admitting their brethren, who were the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi.
- 23 והנה אנחנו מציבים את צבאנו בין ארץ יִרְשׁוֹן ובין ארץ נִפְּי, למען נגן על אחינו אשר בארץ יִרְשׁוֹן; זאת נעשה למען אחינו, מפני יראתם לשאת נשק על אחיהם פן יחטאו; ויראתם הגדולה הזאת באה עליהם מפני צער חרסתם, והנחמם על מעשי הרצח והרשעה האימה אשר הרבו לעשות.
- 24 And behold, we will set our armies between the land Jershon and the land Nephi, that we may protect our brethren in the land Jershon; and this we do for our brethren, on account of their fear to take up arms against their brethren lest they should commit sin; and this their great fear came because of their sore repentance which they had, on account of their many murders and their awful wickedness.
- 25 זאת נעשה לאחינו למען יירשו את ארץ יִרְשׁוֹן; נשמרם בצבאנו מאויביהם, בתנאי כי יתנו לנו חלק מקנינם לעזור לנו לכלכל את צבאנו.
- 26 And now behold, this will we do unto our brethren, that they may inherit the land Jershon; and we will guard them from their enemies with our armies, on condition that they will give us a portion of their substance to assist us that we may maintain our armies.
- 27 והיה כשמע זאת עמון, הוא שב אל אנשי אנטי-נפִי-לִהִי ועלמא עמון, אל המקום אשר נטו בו את אהליהם ביער, והודיעם את כל הדברים האלה. ועלמא ספר להם גם על אודות ההפכו מאמין יהוה יחד עם עמון, אהרן ואחיו.
- 28 Now, it came to pass that when Ammon had heard this, he returned to the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi, and also Alma with him, into the wilderness, where they had pitched their tents, and made known unto them all these things. And Alma also related unto them his conversion, with Ammon and Aaron, and his brethren.
- 29 והדבר הסב להם שמחה רבה. והם ירדו אל ארץ יִרְשׁוֹן ולקחו אותה לנחלה. והנפִיִּים קראו את שמם אנשי עמון, ובשם הזה נודעו מהיום ההוא והלאה.
- 30 And it came to pass that it did cause great joy among them. And they went down into the land of Jershon, and took possession of the land of Jershon; and they were called by the Nephites the people of Ammon; therefore they were distinguished by that name ever after.
- 31 והם שָׁכְנוּ בקרב עם נִפְּי ובָּאוּ בְּמִנְיָן עִם כְּנִסְיָת אֱלֹהִים. והם נודעו על דבר קנאתם לאלהים ולבני אדם, כי היו אנשי אמת עד תם וישרים בכל ואיתנים עד תכלית באמונת המשיח.
- 32 And they were among the people of Nephi, and also numbered among the people who were of the church of God. And they were also distinguished for their zeal towards God, and also towards men; for they were perfectly honest and upright in all things; and they were firm in the faith of Christ, even unto the end.
- 33 והם הביטו בתעוב רב על שפוך דמי אחיהם; ומעולם לא הצליח איש לשכנעם לשאת נשק על אחיהם; והם מעולם לא הביטו על המות באימה כלשהי, מפני בטחם במשיח ובתחייה ובחזונוֹתיהם לגביהם; על כן נבלע בעבורם המות על ידי נצחון המשיח.
- 34 And they did look upon shedding the blood of their brethren with the greatest abhorrence; and they never could be prevailed upon to take up arms against their brethren; and they never did look upon death with any degree of terror, for their hope and views of Christ and the resurrection; therefore, death was swallowed up to them by the victory of Christ over it.

29 Therefore, they would suffer death in the most aggravating and distressing manner which could be inflicted by their brethren, before they would take the sword or cimeter to smite them.

30 And thus they were a zealous and beloved people, a highly favored people of the Lord.

## כח

## 28

והיה אחר אשר התישבו אנשי עמון בארץ ירשון ואף יסדו בה כנסייה, והעב צבא הנפיים סביב ארץ ירשון סביב כל גבולות ארץ זרעהמלה, והנה חילות הלמנים פלשו אל היער בעקבות אחיהם.

1 And now it came to pass that after the people of Ammon were established in the land of Jershon, and a church also established in the land of Jershon, and the armies of the Nephites were set round about the land of Jershon, yea, in all the borders round about the land of Zarahemla; behold the armies of the Lamanites had followed their brethren into the wilderness.

אז התחולל קרב אדיר, אשר כמוהו לא נודע בכל העם אשר בארץ, מיום צאת לחי מירושלם. רבבות למנים נהרגו ונפוצו למרחקים.

2 And thus there was a tremendous battle; yea, even such an one as never had been known among all the people in the land from the time Lehi left Jerusalem; yea, and tens of thousands of the Lamanites were slain and scattered abroad.

אף טבח עצום נעשה בבני נפי. ואולם, הלמנים גרשו ונפוצו, ובני עם נפי שבו אל ארצם.

3 Yea, and also there was a tremendous slaughter among the people of Nephi; nevertheless, the Lamanites were driven and scattered, and the people of Nephi returned again to their land.

אלה היו ימי אבל גדול והמספד נשמע בכל הארץ, בקרב כל עם נפי.

4 And now this was a time that there was a great mourning and lamentation heard throughout all the land, among all the people of Nephi—

אז נשמע בכי אלמנות סופדות לבעליהן, אבות סופדים לבניהם, בנות לאחיהן ואחים לאבותיהם. כה נשמעה זעקת הסופדים בקרב כלם, אבל על בני משפחותיהם ההרוגים.

5 Yea, the cry of widows mourning for their husbands, and also of fathers mourning for their sons, and the daughter for the brother, yea, the brother for the father; and thus the cry of mourning was heard among all of them, mourning for their kindred who had been slain.

היתה זאת עת יגון, יראת פבד, ורב צום ותפלה.

6 And now surely this was a sorrowful day; yea, a time of solemnity, and a time of much fasting and prayer.

כה כלתה שנת חמש עשרה לשלטון השופטים בעם נפי.

7 And thus ended the fifteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi;

וזה ספור עמון ועמיתיו, מסעיהם בארץ נפי, סבלותיהם בארץ, יגוניהם ויסוריהם, ושמחתם אשר אין בלתי, וקבלת אחיהם בארץ ירשון ושמירת בטחונם. ויהי רצון מלפני יהוה, גואל כל האדם, כי יברך את נשמותיהם לעולם.

8 And this is the account of Ammon and his brethren, their journeyings in the land of Nephi, their sufferings in the land, their sorrows, and their afflictions, and their incomprehensible joy, and the reception and safety of the brethren in the land of Jershon. And now may the Lord, the Redeemer of all men, bless their souls forever.

- 9 And this is the account of the wars and contentions among the Nephites, and also the wars between the Nephites and the Lamanites; and the fifteenth year of the reign of the judges is ended.
- 10 And from the first year to the fifteenth has brought to pass the destruction of many thousand lives; yea, it has brought to pass an awful scene of bloodshed.
- 11 And the bodies of many thousands are laid low in the earth, while the bodies of many thousands are moldering in heaps upon the face of the earth; yea, and many thousands are mourning for the loss of their kindred, because they have reason to fear, according to the promises of the Lord, that they are consigned to a state of endless wo.
- 12 While many thousands of others truly mourn for the loss of their kindred, yet they rejoice and exult in the hope, and even know, according to the promises of the Lord, that they are raised to dwell at the right hand of God, in a state of never-ending happiness.
- 13 And thus we see how great the inequality of man is because of sin and transgression, and the power of the devil, which comes by the cunning plans which he hath devised to ensnare the hearts of men.
- 14 And thus we see the great call of diligence of men to labor in the vineyards of the Lord; and thus we see the great reason of sorrow, and also of rejoicing—sorrow because of death and destruction among men, and joy because of the light of Christ unto life.
- וְזֶה סִפּוּר הַמִּלְחָמוֹת וְהַמְרִיבוֹת בְּקֶרֶב הַנְּפִיִּים, וְכֵן מִלְחָמוֹת הַנְּפִיִּים וְהַלְמָנִים; וְבִזְמַת כְּלָתָהּ שְׁנַת חֲמִשׁ עָשָׂרָה לְשִׁלְטוֹן הַשּׁוֹפְטִים.
- וּמִהַר בְּשָׁנָה הָרִאשׁוֹנָה וְעַד שְׁנַת חֲמִשׁ עָשָׂרָה הִשְׁמָדוּ אֶלְפֵי נַפְשׁוֹת. אָכֵן, מַחְזָה שְׂפִיכַת דָּמִים אִים נִרְאָה בְּעֵת הַהִיא.
- וְגוֹיֹת אֲלָפִים רַבִּים מוֹטְלוֹת בְּעַמְקֵי הָאֲדָמָה וּפְגָרֵי אֲלָפִים רַבִּים אַחֲרִים מְרֻקְבִּים בְּעֶרְמוֹת אֲשֶׁר עַל פְּנֵי הָאֶרֶץ; אָכֵן, אֲלָפִים רַבִּים מִתְאַבְּלִים עַל אֲבִדוֹן בְּנֵי מִשְׁפְּחוֹתֵיהֶם כִּי יֵשׁ לָהֶם מִמָּה לִירָא, כְּדָבָר יְהוָה, כִּי נִגְזַר עֲלֵיהֶם יְגוֹן עוֹלָם.
- וְאֲלָפִים רַבִּים אַחֲרִים אָכֵן מִתְאַבְּלִים עַל אֲבִדוֹן בְּנֵי מִשְׁפְּחוֹתֵיהֶם, אֲף גַם עוֹלָזִים וְעוֹלָצִים בְּתִקְוָה, וְאֵף בִּידִיעָה, עַל פִּי דְבָר בְּרִית יְהוָה, כִּי נִשְׂאוּ לְשֹׁכֵן לִימִין אֱלֹהִים בְּאֲשֶׁר אֵין קֵץ.
- מִזֹּאת רוֹאִים אֲנַחְנוּ מַה גָּדוֹל הָעֵדֶר הַשְּׁוֹיִן בֵּין בְּנֵי הָאָדָם מִפְּנֵי חֲטָא וּפְשָׁע, וְאֵת כֹּחַ הַשִּׁטָּן הַבָּא בְּתַחבּוּלוֹת הָעֶרְמָה אֲשֶׁר הוּא זוֹמֵם לְלַכְּדָא אֶת לֵב בְּנֵי הָאָדָם.
- וְכֵה רוֹאִים אֲנַחְנוּ אֵת הַקְּרִיאָה הַגְּדוֹלָה לְבְנֵי הָאָדָם לְשָׁקֵד בְּעַמְלָם בְּכַרְמֵי יְהוָה; וְהִנֵּנוּ רוֹאִים אֵת הַמְּקוֹר הַגָּדוֹל לִיְגוֹן וְאֵף לְשִׁמְחָה; יְגוֹן, מִפְּנֵי מוֹת וְחִרְבּוֹן בֵּין בְּנֵי הָאָדָם, וְשִׁמְחָה, מִפְּנֵי אוֹר הַמְּשִׁיחַ אֲשֶׁר לַחַיִּים.

## כט

## 29

- 1 O that I were an angel, and could have the wish of mine heart, that I might go forth and speak with the trump of God, with a voice to shake the earth, and cry repentance unto every people!
- 2 Yea, I would declare unto every soul, as with the voice of thunder, repentance and the plan of redemption, that they should repent and come unto our God, that there might not be more sorrow upon all the face of the earth.
- 3 But behold, I am a man, and do sin in my wish; for I ought to be content with the things which the Lord hath allotted unto me.
- מִי יִתֵּן וְהָיִיתִי מַלְאָךְ אֱלֹהִים, וְהָיָה לִי חֲפִץ לְבִי לְצֵאתָ וּלְדַבֵּר בְּשׁוֹפָר אֱלֹהִים, וּבְקוֹל מְרֻעֵד אֵת הָאֲדָמָה, לְקַרְא לְתִשְׁבּוּבָה אֶת כָּל אָמָה!
- לְהִשְׁמִיעַ לְכָל נֶפֶשׁ, כְּבְּקוֹל רַעַם, אֵת דְּבַר הַתִּשְׁבּוּבָה וְתַכְנִית הַגְּאֻלָּה, לְמַעַן יִשׁוּבוּ וְיָבוֹאוּ אֶל אֱלֹהֵינוּ, וְנֵס יְגוֹן מֵעַל פְּנֵי כָּל הָאֶרֶץ.
- אֲף הִנֵּנִי בֶן אָדָם, וּבְחִפְצִי זֶה אֲנִי חוֹטֵא, כִּי עָלַי לִהְיוֹת מְרַצָּה בְּאֲשֶׁר חֶלֶק לִי יְהוָה.

אִין לִי לְהַפֵּר בְּתַשׁוּקוֹתַי אֶת גְּזֵרַת אֱלֹהֵי צֶדֶק.  
הֵן יוֹדַע אֲנִי כִּי הוּא נוֹתֵן לְבָנֵי הָאָדָם כְּחֶפְצָם,  
אִם לְמוֹת וְאִם לְחַיִּים; אָכֵן, יוֹדַע אֲנִי כִּי  
בַּגְּזֵרָה בְּלִתִּי מוֹפֶרֶת הוּא חוֹלֵק לְבָנֵי הָאָדָם  
כַּפִּי רְצוֹנָם, אִם לִישׁוּעָתָם וְאִם לְכִלְיוֹנָם.

וְיוֹדַע אֲנִי כִּי טוֹב וְרַע בָּאִים לִפְנֵי כָל בְּנֵי  
הָאָדָם; וְאֲשֶׁר אֵינוֹ יוֹדַע הִבְחִין בֵּין טוֹב וּבֵין  
רַע הֵנוּ נְקִי מֵאֲשֻׁמָּה, וְאוֹלָם לִישׁוּעַ הִבְחִין בֵּין  
טוֹב וּבֵין רַע נִתֵּן כְּחֶפְצוֹ: טוֹב אוֹ רַע, חַיִּים אוֹ  
מוֹת, שְׂמֵחָה אוֹ יְסוּרֵי חֲרָטָה.

וְאֲנִי, בִּידְעִי אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, מִדּוּעַ  
אֶחְפֹּץ יוֹתֵר מֵאֲשֶׁר לְבַצֵּעַ אֶת מְלַאכְתִּי אֲשֶׁר  
אֱלֹהֵי נִקְרָאתִי?

מִדּוּעַ אֲשַׁתּוֹקֵק כִּי אֶהְיֶה מְלָאךְ, לְדַבֵּר אֶל כָּל  
אֲפִסֵּי אֶרֶץ?

כִּי הִנֵּה נוֹתֵן יְהוָה לְכָל הָעַמִּים אַנְשִׁים, בְּנֵי  
אֲמָתָם וּלְשׁוֹנָם, בְּעֵבֶר לְלַמְדוֹ אֶת דְּבָרוֹ; אָכֵן,  
בְּחֻמָּתוֹ הוּא נוֹתֵן אֶת כָּל אֲשֶׁר נִכּוֹן בְּעֵינָיו  
כִּי יִקְבְּלוּ; וְכֹה רוֹאִים אֲנַחְנוּ כִּי יְהוָה יוֹעֵץ  
בְּחֻמָּה כַּפִּי צִדְקוֹ וְאֲמָתוֹ.

יְדַעְתִּי מֵה צוֹנִי יְהוָה וּבִזְמַת אֲתַפְּאֵר. אֵינִי  
מִתְפָּאֵר בַּדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר מִמּוֹנִי, כִּי אִם תִּפְאֶרְתִּי  
בַּדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר צוֹנִי יְהוָה; כִּי אוֹלִי אֶהְיֶה כָּלִי  
שְׂרַת בִּידֵי אֱלֹהִים לְהַבִּיא נַפְשׁ כְּלָשְׁתִּי  
לְתִשׁוּבָה. זֹאת שְׂמֵחָתִי.

וְכִרְאוֹתֵי רַבִּים מִבְּנֵי עַמִּי מִנְחָמִים מִחֻטָּא  
בְּאַמָּת, בָּאִים אֶל יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵיהֶם, תִּמְלֵא נַפְשִׁי  
שְׂמֵחָה; אֲנִי אֲזַכֶּרָה אֶת אֲשֶׁר עָשָׂה לִי יְהוָה,  
כִּי שָׁמַע אֶת תְּפִלָּתִי. אֲנִי אֲזַכֶּרָה אֶת זְרוּעַ  
חֲסִדוֹ אֲשֶׁר הוֹשִׁיט אֵלַי.

אֲףִי אֲזַכֶּרָה אֶת שְׁבִית אֲבוֹתַי; הֵן יָדוּעַ אֲדַע  
כִּי יְהוָה הִצִּילָם מִשְׁעֶבֶד וְעַל זֹאת יִסַּד אֶת  
כְּנִסְיָתוֹ; אָכֵן, יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים, אֱלֹהֵי אַבְרָהָם,  
אֱלֹהֵי יִצְחָק וְאֱלֹהֵי יַעֲקֹב הִצִּילָם מִשְׁעֶבֶד.

אָכֵן, תִּמְיד אֲזַכֶּר אֶת שְׁבִית אֲבוֹתַי; כִּי  
הָאֱלֹהִים אֲשֶׁר הִצִּילָם מִיַּד הַמִּצְרִיִּם, הוּא  
אֲשֶׁר הוֹצִיאָם מִשְׁעֶבֶד.

4 I ought not to harrow up in my desires, the firm decree of a just God, for I know that he granteth unto men according to their desire, whether it be unto death or unto life; yea, I know that he allotteth unto men, yea, decreeth unto them decrees which are unalterable, according to their wills, whether they be unto salvation or unto destruction.

5 Yea, and I know that good and evil have come before all men; he that knoweth not good from evil is blameless; but he that knoweth good and evil, to him it is given according to his desires, whether he desireth good or evil, life or death, joy or remorse of conscience.

6 Now, seeing that I know these things, why should I desire more than to perform the work to which I have been called?

7 Why should I desire that I were an angel, that I could speak unto all the ends of the earth?

8 For behold, the Lord doth grant unto all nations, of their own nation and tongue, to teach his word, yea, in wisdom, all that he seeth fit that they should have; therefore we see that the Lord doth counsel in wisdom, according to that which is just and true.

9 I know that which the Lord hath commanded me, and I glory in it. I do not glory of myself, but I glory in that which the Lord hath commanded me; yea, and this is my glory, that perhaps I may be an instrument in the hands of God to bring some soul to repentance; and this is my joy.

10 And behold, when I see many of my brethren truly penitent, and coming to the Lord their God, then is my soul filled with joy; then do I remember what the Lord has done for me, yea, even that he hath heard my prayer; yea, then do I remember his merciful arm which he extended towards me.

11 Yea, and I also remember the captivity of my fathers; for I surely do know that the Lord did deliver them out of bondage, and by this did establish his church; yea, the Lord God, the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, did deliver them out of bondage.

12 Yea, I have always remembered the captivity of my fathers; and that same God who delivered them out of the hands of the Egyptians did deliver them out of bondage.



- 13 Yea, and that same God did establish his church among them; yea, and that same God hath called me by a holy calling, to preach the word unto this people, and hath given me much success, in the which my joy is full.
- 14 But I do not joy in my own success alone, but my joy is more full because of the success of my brethren, who have been up to the land of Nephi.
- 15 Behold, they have labored exceedingly, and have brought forth much fruit; and how great shall be their reward!
- 16 Now, when I think of the success of these my brethren my soul is carried away, even to the separation of it from the body, as it were, so great is my joy.
- 17 And now may God grant unto these, my brethren, that they may sit down in the kingdom of God; yea, and also all those who are the fruit of their labors that they may go no more out, but that they may praise him forever. And may God grant that it may be done according to my words, even as I have spoken. Amen.
- אָכֵן, הוּא הָאֱלֹהִים אֲשֶׁר יָסַד אֶת כְּנִסְיָתוֹ בְּקִרְבָּם; וְהוּא הָאֱלֹהִים אֲשֶׁר קָרָא לִי בְּקִרְיָאָת קִדְשׁ, לְהַטִּיף אֶת דְּבָרָיו אֶל הָעָם הַזֶּה, וְהַצְלִיחַ דִּרְכִּי עַד מְאֹד. עַל זֹאת שִׂמְחָתִי שְׁלֵמָה.
- וְאוֹלָם אֵינִי שִׂמְחָה בְּהַצְלַחְתִּי בִּלְבַד, כִּי שִׂמְחָתִי מְלֵאָה וְגִדּוּשָׁה מִכִּפְנֵי הַצְלַחַת עַמִּיתִי אֲשֶׁר עָלוּ אֶל אֶרֶץ נִפְתִּי.
- הִמָּה עֲמָלוֹ בְּכָל מְאֹדָם וְהִרְבּוּ לָתֵת פְּרִיָם; מָה רַב יִהְיֶה גְמוּלָם!
- וּבְחִשְׁבִּי עַל הַצְלַחַת אַחֵי אֱלֹהִים, כְּאֵלּוּ נִשְׁאֵת נַפְשִׁי מִמֶּנִּי, עַד כִּי נִפְרָדֶת הִיא מִגּוּפִי; כֹּה רַבָּה שִׂמְחָתִי.
- יְהִי רְצוֹן כִּי יִתֵּן אֱלֹהִים לְאַחֵי אֱלֹהִים לִשְׁכֹּן בְּמַלְכוּת אֱלֹהִים; וְכַמוֹהֶם כָּל אֱלֹהִים אֲשֶׁר הֵם פְּרִי עַמְלָם, כִּי לֹא יֵצְאוּ עוֹד וְכִי יִהְלְלוּהוּ עַד עוֹלָמִי עוֹלָמִים. יְהִי רְצוֹן מִלִּפְנֵי אֱלֹהִים כִּי יַעֲשֶׂה כַּדְּבָרִי, כַּכִּי אֲשֶׁר אָמַרְתִּי. אָמֵן.

## ל

## 30

- 1 Behold, now it came to pass that after the people of Ammon were established in the land of Jershon, yea, and also after the Lamanites were driven out of the land, and their dead were buried by the people of the land—
- 2 Now their dead were not numbered because of the greatness of their numbers; neither were the dead of the Nephites numbered—but it came to pass after they had buried their dead, and also after the days of fasting, and mourning, and prayer, (and it was in the sixteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi) there began to be continual peace throughout all the land.
- 3 Yea, and the people did observe to keep the commandments of the Lord; and they were strict in observing the ordinances of God, according to the law of Moses; for they were taught to keep the law of Moses until it should be fulfilled.
- 4 And thus the people did have no disturbance in all the sixteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.
- 5 And it came to pass that in the commencement of the seventeenth year of the reign of the judges, there was continual peace.
- וְהָיָה אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר הִתְיַשְׁבוּ אַנְשֵׁי עַמּוֹן בְּאֶרֶץ יֶרֶשׁוֹן וְאַחֵר אֲשֶׁר גָּרְשׁוּ הַלְּמָנִיתִים מִן הָאֶרֶץ, וְהָרוּגֵיהֶם נִקְבְּרוּ בְיַדִּי הַתּוֹשְׁבִים;
- וְהָרוּגִים לֹא נִמְנְוּ, כִּי עֲצֹם מִסְפָּרָם; וְאִף הָרוּגֵי הַנִּפְתִּים לֹא נִמְנְוּ; אָכֵן, אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר קָבְרוּ אֶת מֵתֵיהֶם וְאַחֵר אֲשֶׁר כָּלוּ אֶת יְמֵי הָצוּם וְהָאֲבֵל וְהַתְּפִלָּה, בְּשָׁנַת שֵׁשׁ עָשָׂר לְשִׁלְטוֹן הַשּׁוֹפְטִים בְּעַם נִפְתִּי, הִחֲלָה תְּקוּפַת שְׁלוֹם אֶרֶץ כָּל הָאֶרֶץ.
- וְהָעָם הִקְפִּידוּ לִקְיֹם אֶת מִצְוֹת יְהוָה; וְהָם הִתְחַמְּרוּ בְּשִׁמְרַת מִצְוֹת אֱלֹהִים וּמִשְׁפָּטָיו עַל פִּי תוֹרַת מֹשֶׁה, כִּי לָמְדוּ לְשִׁמּוֹר אֶת תּוֹרַת מֹשֶׁה עַד אֲשֶׁר תִּתְקַיֵּם.
- וּבְמִשְׁךְ כָּל שָׁנַת שֵׁשׁ עָשָׂר לְשִׁלְטוֹן הַשּׁוֹפְטִים בְּעַם נִפְתִּי לֹא סָבַל הָעָם כָּל פְּרַעְנוֹת.
- וּבִרְאשִׁית שָׁנַת שִׁבְעָה עָשָׂר לְשִׁלְטוֹן הַשּׁוֹפְטִים נִמְשְׁכָה הַשְּׁלוֹה.

- אך בטרם תכלה שנת שבע עשרה, בא איש אחד אל ארץ זרהמלה, אשר היה מתנגד-משיח, והוא החל להטיף לעם דברים הסותרים את נבואות הנביאים על אודות בוא המשיח.
- 6 But it came to pass in the latter end of the seventeenth year, there came a man into the land of Zarahemla, and he was Anti-Christ, for he began to preach unto the people against the prophecies which had been spoken by the prophets, concerning the coming of Christ.
- וְלֹא הָיָה חֹק בְּאַרְץ נֶגֶד אֱמוּנַת אִישׁ, כִּי חֹק הַמִּסֵּב הָעֵדֶר שְׁוִיוֹן בֵּין בְּנֵי הָאָדָם סוֹתֵר חֲמוּרוֹת אֶת צוֵי אֱלֹהִים.
- 7 Now there was no law against a man's belief; for it was strictly contrary to the commands of God that there should be a law which should bring men on to unequal grounds.
- כִּי כֹה נֹאמֵר בְּכַתְבֵי הַקֹּדֶשׁ: בַּחֲרוּ לָכֶם הַיּוֹם אֶת מִי תַעֲבֹדוּן.
- 8 For thus saith the scripture: Choose ye this day, whom ye will serve.
- וְאִם חָפֵץ אָדָם לַעֲבֹד אֶת אֱלֹהִים, הִיְתָה זֹאת זְכוּתוֹ; אוֹ, בְּיִתֵּר דִּיּוֹק, אִם הָאֱמִין אִישׁ בְּאֱלֹהִים, הִיְתָה זֹאת זְכוּתוֹ לַעֲבֹדוֹ; וְאִם לֹא הָאֱמִין בּוֹ, לֹא הָיָה כָּל חֹק לְהַעֲנִישׁוֹ עַל כָּךְ.
- 9 Now if a man desired to serve God, it was his privilege; or rather, if he believed in God it was his privilege to serve him; but if he did not believe in him there was no law to punish him.
- אך אם רצח, היה ענשו מות; ואם שדד נענש, ואם גנב נענש, ואם נאף נענש; אך, על כל הרשעה הזאת נענשו.
- 10 But if he murdered he was punished unto death; and if he robbed he was also punished; and if he stole he was also punished; and if he committed adultery he was also punished; yea, for all this wickedness they were punished.
- כִּי חֹק הָיָה שֵׁם לָדוֹן אִישׁ כְּפִשְׁעוֹ, אֲךָ עַל אֱמוּנַת אִישׁ לֹא הָיָה כָּל חֹק. עַל כֵּן נֶעֱנַשׁ אִישׁ רַק עַל פְּשָׁעִים אֲשֶׁר בָּעָצָה; לָכֵן הָיָה שְׁוִיוֹן בֵּין כָּל הָאֲנָשִׁים.
- 11 For there was a law that men should be judged according to their crimes. Nevertheless, there was no law against a man's belief; therefore, a man was punished only for the crimes which he had done; therefore all men were on equal grounds.
- וּמִתְנַגֵּד-מְשִׁיחַ זֶה, אֲשֶׁר שְׁמוֹ הָיָה קוֹרִיחוֹר, אֲשֶׁר הָחֹק לֹא יָכַל לַפְעֵל עָלָיו, הֵחֵל לְהַטִּיף לָעָם כִּי לֹא יִהְיֶה מְשִׁיחַ. וּבְדֶרֶךְ הַזֹּאת הִטִּיף דְּבָרָיו לֵאמֹר:
- 12 And this Anti-Christ, whose name was Korihor, (and the law could have no hold upon him) began to preach unto the people that there should be no Christ. And after this manner did he preach, saying:
- הוֹי, אַתֶּם הָאֲסוּרִים בְּתַקּוֹת כֶּסֶל וְהֶבֶל; מִדּוּעַ תְּשִׁימוּ עֲלֵיכֶם עַל הֶבֶל אֲשֶׁר כִּזָּה? מִדּוּעַ תִּצְפּוּ לְמְשִׁיחַ? אֵין אִישׁ יָכוֹל לָדַעַת עַל אֲשֶׁר עֹתִיד לָבוֹא.
- 13 O ye that are bound down under a foolish and a vain hope, why do ye yoke yourselves with such foolish things? Why do ye look for a Christ? For no man can know of anything which is to come.
- הִנֵּה, הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר אַתֶּם מְכַנְּסִים נְבוֹאוֹת, אֲשֶׁר תֹּאמְרוּ כִּי נִמְסְרוּ מִיַּד נְבִיאִים קְדוֹשִׁים, הֵנָּה מְסוּרוֹת הֶבֶל מֵאֵת אֲבוֹתֵיכֶם.
- 14 Behold, these things which ye call prophecies, which ye say are handed down by holy prophets, behold, they are foolish traditions of your fathers.
- אִיךָ תִּדְעוּ כִּי אֱמֶת הֵם? הֵן לֹא תוּכְלוּ לָדַעַת דְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר לֹא תֵרְאוּ. עַל כֵּן אֵינְכֶם יְכוּלִים לָדַעַת כִּי יִהְיֶה מְשִׁיחַ.
- 15 How do ye know of their surety? Behold, ye cannot know of things which ye do not see; therefore ye cannot know that there shall be a Christ.
- הִנֵּכֶם צוֹפִים קְדִימָה וְאֹמְרִים כִּי יֵשׁ לָכֶם מַחִילַת חַטָּאֵיכֶם, אֲךָ זֹאת פֶּעֶלַת דַּעַת
- 16 Ye look forward and say that ye see a remission of your sins. But behold, it is the effect of a frenzied mind; and this derangement of your minds

משגגת, ובלבול דעתכם זה, גרמוהו מסורות  
אבותיכם, אשר הסבו אתכם להאמין  
בדברים אשר אינם נכונים.

comes because of the traditions of your fathers, which lead you away  
into a belief of things which are not so.

ועוד דברים רבים כאלה דבר אליהם, ואמר  
להם כי אין כפרה על חטאי אדם, וכל איש  
מנהל את חייו על פי טבעו. על כן מצליח כל  
אחד כפי כשרונו, וכל אדם כובש לו כפי כחו,  
וכל אשר הוא עושה לא יחשב לו פשע.

17 And many more such things did he say unto them, telling them that  
there could be no atonement made for the sins of men, but every  
man fared in this life according to the management of the creature;  
therefore every man prospered according to his genius, and that every  
man conquered according to his strength; and whatsoever a man did  
was no crime.

כה הטיף להם, ובהטותו לב רבים הדיחם  
להרים ראש ברשעתם, ואף הטה נשים רבות  
וגם גברים לזנונים, באמרו להם כי מות אדם  
הוא קצו.

18 And thus he did preach unto them, leading away the hearts of many,  
causing them to lift up their heads in their wickedness, yea, leading  
away many women, and also men, to commit whoredoms—telling  
them that when a man was dead, that was the end thereof.

והאיש הזה הלך גם אל ארץ ירשון להטיף  
את הדברים האלה בקרב עם עמון, אשר היו  
לפנים בני עם הלמנים.

19 Now this man went over to the land of Jershon also, to preach these  
things among the people of Ammon, who were once the people of the  
Lamanites.

והנה, הם החכימו מרבים מן הנפיים, כי הם  
תפשוהו ואסרוהו והביאוהו לפני עמון, אשר  
הוא הכהן הגדול על העם ההוא.

20 But behold they were more wise than many of the Nephites; for they  
took him, and bound him, and carried him before Ammon, who was a  
high priest over that people.

אז הורה עמון לגרשו מן הארץ. והוא הלך  
אל ארץ גדעון והחל להטיף דברו אף  
לאנשיה. ואולם שם לא נצלח לו, כי נתפש  
ונאסר והובא אל הכהן הגדול ואל השופט  
העליון אשר על הארץ.

21 And it came to pass that he caused that he should be carried out of the  
land. And he came over into the land of Gideon, and began to preach  
unto them also; and here he did not have much success, for he was  
taken and bound and carried before the high priest, and also the chief  
judge over the land.

ואמר אליו הכהן הגדול: מדוע תעזת את  
דרכי יהוה? מדוע תלמד את העם הזה כי לא  
יהיה משיח ותפר שמחתם? מדוע תדבר נגד  
כל נבואות הנביאים הקדושים?

22 And it came to pass that the high priest said unto him: Why do ye go  
about perverting the ways of the Lord? Why do ye teach this people  
that there shall be no Christ, to interrupt their rejoicings? Why do ye  
speak against all the prophecies of the holy prophets?

ושם הכהן הגדול נקרא גדונה. וקוריהור  
אמר אליו: יען אשר לא אלמד את מסורות  
ההכל אשר לאבותיכם, ולא אלמד את העם  
הזה לאסר עצמם תחת חקים וטקסים  
אגיליים אשר שמום כהנים קדמונים לגזל כח  
ולתפש שלטון עליהם, להשאינם בבערות,  
למען לא ישאו ראש ויכנעו מפני דבריכם.

23 Now the high priest's name was Giddonah. And Korihor said unto  
him: Because I do not teach the foolish traditions of your fathers, and  
because I do not teach this people to bind themselves down under the  
foolish ordinances and performances which are laid down by ancient  
priests, to usurp power and authority over them, to keep them in  
ignorance, that they may not lift up their heads, but be brought down  
according to thy words.

אתם אומרים כי חפשי העם הזה. ואני אומר  
כי משעבדים המה. אתם אומרים כי  
הנבואות העתיקות הן אמת. ואני אומר כי  
אינכם יודעים אם אמת הן.

24 Ye say that this people is a free people. Behold, I say they are in bondage.  
Ye say that those ancient prophecies are true. Behold, I say that ye do  
not know that they are true.

## עלמא ל:כה-לב

- 25 אַתֶּם אומרים כי אִשֶּׁם הָעָם הַזֶּה וְאִף נָפֶל מִפְּנֵי עֲבֹרַת אָבִיו. וְאֵנִי אֹמֵר כִּי אֵין הֵבֶן אִשֶּׁם מִפְּנֵי הוֹרָיו. Ye say that this people is a guilty and a fallen people, because of the transgression of a parent. Behold, I say that a child is not guilty because of its parents.
- 26 וְעוֹד אומרים אַתֶּם כִּי מִשִּׁיחַ יָבוֹא, וְאֵנִי אֹמֵר כִּי אֵינְכֶם יוֹדְעִים אִם יִהְיֶה מִשִּׁיחַ. וְעוֹד אומרים אַתֶּם כִּי הוּא יוֹמַת בְּעֵבֹר חֲסָאֵי הָעוֹלָם. And ye also say that Christ shall come. But behold, I say that ye do not know that there shall be a Christ. And ye say also that he shall be slain for the sins of the world—
- 27 כִּךְ תְּדִיחוּ אֶת הָעָם הַזֶּה אֶל מִסּוּרוֹת אֲבוֹתֵיכֶם הָאֵוִילוֹת, וְאֶל אֲשֶׁר תַּחְפֹּצוּ. וְהִנֵּכֶם מִדְּכָאִים אוֹתָם כְּהִשְׁפֹּל עֲבָדִים, לְמַעַן תִּסְבְּאוּ מִעֲמַל כַּפֵּיהֶם, וּבְעֵבֹר לֹא יִתְאַמְצוּ לְשֹׂאת עֵינֵיהֶם; וְאִף לֹא יַעֲזוּ לְהִנּוֹת מִזְכוּתֵיהֶם וּיְתִירוֹנוּתֵיהֶם. And thus ye lead away this people after the foolish traditions of your fathers, and according to your own desires; and ye keep them down, even as it were in bondage, that ye may glut yourselves with the labors of their hands, that they durst not look up with boldness, and that they durst not enjoy their rights and privileges.
- 28 אַכֵּן, אֵין הֵם מַעֲזִים לְהִשְׁתַּמֵּשׁ בְּאֲשֶׁר לָהֶם, פֶּן יִפְגְּעוּ בְּכַהֲנֵיהֶם, הַמְּכַבִּידִים עֲלֵיהֶם עֲלָם כְּחֻפָּצָם, וְהַמְּסַבִּים אוֹתָם לְהֶאֱמִין, עַל יְדֵי מִסּוּרוֹתֵיהֶם וְחִלּוּמוֹתֵיהֶם, מֵאֻיֵּיהֶם וְחִזְיוֹנוֹתֵיהֶם וּמִסְתוּרֵיהֶם הַכּוֹזְבִים, כִּי אִם לֹא יִשְׁמְעוּ לְדִבְרֵי הַכַּהֲנִים, יִפְגְּעוּ בַּהוֹיָה בְּלִתִּי יְדוּעָה כְּלִשְׁהִי, אֲשֶׁר הֵם אומרים כִּי הִיא אֱלֹהִים; וְזֹאת הוֹיָה אֲשֶׁר מַעֲוֹלָם לֹא נִרְאָתָה אוּ נֹדְעָה, אֲשֶׁר לֹא הִיָּתָה מַעֲוֹלָם וּלְעוֹלָם לֹא תִהְיֶה. Yea, they durst not make use of that which is their own lest they should offend their priests, who do yoke them according to their desires, and have brought them to believe, by their traditions and their dreams and their whims and their visions and their pretended mysteries, that they should, if they did not do according to their words, offend some unknown being, who they say is God—a being who never has been seen or known, who never was nor ever will be.
- 29 וְכִרְאוֹת הַכֹּהֵן הַגָּדוֹל וְהַשּׁוֹפֵט הָעֶלְיוֹן אֶת קָשִׁי לִבָּבוּ וְכִי אִף אֶת אֱלֹהִים יַגְדֹּף, הֵם לֹא הִשְׁבִּיחוּ דָּבָר. וְהֵם הוֹרִו כִּי יֵאָסֵר, וְהוּא הָעֵבֶר לִידֵי פְקִידֵי הַשְּׁלֹטוֹן וְנִשְׁלַח אֶל אֶרֶץ זֶרַעְחַמְלָה, לַעֲמֹד לִפְנֵי עֲלְמָא וּלְפְנֵי הַשּׁוֹפֵט הָעֶלְיוֹן אֲשֶׁר הוּא מוֹשֵׁל כָּל הָאֶרֶץ. Now when the high priest and the chief judge saw the hardness of his heart, yea, when they saw that he would revile even against God, they would not make any reply to his words; but they caused that he should be bound; and they delivered him up into the hands of the officers, and sent him to the land of Zarahemla, that he might be brought before Alma, and the chief judge who was governor over all the land.
- 30 וְכַאֲשֶׁר הוּבָא לִפְנֵי עֲלְמָא וּלְפְנֵי הַשּׁוֹפֵט הָעֶלְיוֹן, הוּא הוֹסִיף לְהִגַּח כְּדָרְכוֹ בְּאֶרֶץ גִּדְעוֹן, וְאִף לְנַאֵץ אֶת אֱלֹהִים. And it came to pass that when he was brought before Alma and the chief judge, he did go on in the same manner as he did in the land of Gideon; yea, he went on to blaspheme.
- 31 וְהוּא קָם לִפְנֵי עֲלְמָא בְּמִלִּים רַמוֹת וּמִתְנַשְּׂאוֹת, וְגִדְף אֶת הַכַּהֲנִים וְאֶת הַמּוֹרִים, וְהָאִשְׁמִים כִּי מִשְׁכוּ אֶת לֵב הָעָם אֶל מִסּוּרוֹת הַהֶבֶל אֲשֶׁר לְאֲבוֹתֵיהֶם, בְּעֵבֹר יִזְלְלוּ אֶת עַמִּל הָעָם. And he did rise up in great swelling words before Alma, and did revile against the priests and teachers, accusing them of leading away the people after the silly traditions of their fathers, for the sake of glutting on the labors of the people.
- 32 וְאַמְרַת אֵלָיו עֲלְמָא: הֵן יְדַעְתָּ כִּי לֹא נִסְבָּא מִעֲמַל הָעָם הַזֶּה, כִּי מִרְאִשִּׁית שְׁלֹטוֹן הַשּׁוֹפֵטִים וְעַד הַיּוֹם עָמַלְתִּי לְפָרֶקֶתִי בְּמוֹ יְדִי, עַל אִף מִסְעֵי הַרְבִּים בְּאֶזְרוֹרֵי הָאֶרֶץ לְהַשְׁמִיעַ לְעַמִּי אֶת דִּבְרֵי אֱלֹהִים. Now Alma said unto him: Thou knowest that we do not glut ourselves upon the labors of this people; for behold I have labored even from the commencement of the reign of the judges until now, with mine own hands for my support, notwithstanding my many travels round about the land to declare the word of God unto my people.

- 33 And notwithstanding the many labors which I have performed in the church, I have never received so much as even one senine for my labor; neither has any of my brethren, save it were in the judgment-seat; and then we have received only according to law for our time.
- וְאִיךָ כִּי עֲמַלְתִּי רַב עִמָּל בְּכִנְסִיָּה, לֹא קִבַּלְתִּי מֵעוּדֵי אִי סִנִּי אֶחָד בְּעַד עֲמָלִי; וְכַמוֹנִי כָּל עַמִּיתִי, זֹלַת שְׂכָר בְּעַבּוּר זְמַנִּנוּ בְּשִׁבְתָּנוּ עַל כֶּסֶּם הַמִּשְׁפָּט, כְּפִי אֲשֶׁר נִקְבַּע כְּחֹק.
- 34 And now, if we do not receive anything for our labors in the church, what doth it profit us to labor in the church save it were to declare the truth, that we may have rejoicings in the joy of our brethren?
- וְעַתָּה, אִם אֵינָנו מְקַבְּלִים דְּבָר בְּעַד עֲמָלָנוּ בְּכִנְסִיָּה, מַה תּוֹעֵלָתָנוּ מֵעֲמָל זֶה, אִם לֹא לְהַשְׁמִיעַ אֶת הָאֱמֶת, לְמַעַן נִשְׂמַח בְּשִׂמְחַת אֶחָיו?
- 35 Then why sayest thou that we preach unto this people to get gain, when thou, of thyself, knowest that we receive no gain? And now, believest thou that we deceive this people, that causes such joy in their hearts?
- וּמַדּוּעַ תֹּאמַר כִּי אֲנַחְנוּ מְשִׁיפִים לָעַם הַזֶּה בְּעַד בָּצַע, בְּעוֹדָךְ אִי יוֹדֵעַ כִּי אֵינָנו מְקַבְּלִים כָּל תַּמּוּרָה? הֲתֹאמִין כִּי אֲנַחְנוּ מְרַמִּים אֶת הָעָם, וּבִזְזַת מַעֲוָרִים שִׂמְחָה כֹּה רַבָּה בְּלִבָּם?
- 36 And Korihor answered him, Yea.
- וְקוֹרִיחֹר עָנָהוּ: אָכֵן.
- 37 And then Alma said unto him: Believest thou that there is a God?
- וְעַלְמָא אָמַר אֵלָיו: הֲתֹאמִין כִּי יֵשׁ אֱלֹהִים?
- 38 And he answered, Nay.
- וְהוּא עָנָה: לֹא.
- 39 Now Alma said unto him: Will ye deny again that there is a God, and also deny the Christ? For behold, I say unto you, I know there is a God, and also that Christ shall come.
- וְאִמַּר אֵלָיו עַלְמָא: הֲתוֹסִיף לְהַכְחִישׁ כִּי יֵשׁ אֱלֹהִים וְכִי יֵשׁ מְשִׁיחַ? כִּי הִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לָךְ: אֲנִי יוֹדֵעַ כִּי יֵשׁ אֱלֹהִים וְכִי הַמְּשִׁיחַ בּוֹא יָבוֹא.
- 40 And now what evidence have ye that there is no God, or that Christ cometh not? I say unto you that ye have none, save it be your word only.
- הִנֵּה, אִיזוֹ רְאִיָּה יֵשׁ לָךְ כִּי אֵין אֱלֹהִים, אוֹ כִּי הַמְּשִׁיחַ לֹא יָבוֹא? אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָךְ כִּי אֵין לָךְ כָּל רְאִיָּה, כִּי אִם דְּבָרְךָ לְבַדּוֹ.
- 41 But, behold, I have all things as a testimony that these things are true; and ye also have all things as a testimony unto you that they are true; and will ye deny them? Believest thou that these things are true?
- וְהִנֵּה, יֵשׁ לִי כָּל הַדְּבָרִים הַמְּעִידִים כִּי הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה אֱמֶת. וְאִיךָ לָךְ יֵשׁ כָּל הַדְּבָרִים הַמְּעִידִים לְפָנֶיךָ כִּי אֱמֶת הֵם; הֲתַכְחִישׁ אוֹתָם? הֲתֹאמִין כִּי הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה אֱמֶת?
- 42 Behold, I know that thou believest, but thou art possessed with a lying spirit, and ye have put off the Spirit of God that it may have no place in you; but the devil has power over you, and he doth carry you about, working devices that he may destroy the children of God.
- הִנֵּה יָדַעְתִּי כִּי תֹאמִין, אֲךָ הִנֵּה אַחֲזוּ רוּחַ שָׁקֶר וְאַתָּה דֹּחִית מִמֶּנּוּ אֶת רוּחַ אֱלֹהִים, לְבַל יִהְיֶה לָּהּ מְקוֹם בְּקִרְבְּךָ. הַשָּׁטָן גּוֹבֵר עָלֶיךָ, וְהוּא נוֹשֵׂא אוֹתָךְ הִנֵּה וְהִנֵּה וּמַחְבֵּל תַּחְבּוּלוֹת לְהַשְׁמִיד אֶת בְּנֵי אֱלֹהִים.
- 43 And now Korihor said unto Alma: If thou wilt show me a sign, that I may be convinced that there is a God, yea, show unto me that he hath power, and then will I be convinced of the truth of thy words.
- וְקוֹרִיחֹר אָמַר אֶל עַלְמָא: אִם תִּרְאֵנִי אוֹת לְמַעַן אֲוַכַּח כִּי יֵשׁ אֱלֹהִים, אָכֵן, הֲרֹאנִי כִּי יֵשׁ לּוֹ כֹּחַ, וְאֲוַכַּח בְּאֱמַת דְּבָרֶיךָ.
- 44 But Alma said unto him: Thou hast had signs enough; will ye tempt your God? Will ye say, Show unto me a sign, when ye have the testimony of all these thy brethren, and also all the holy prophets? The
- וְעַלְמָא אָמַר אֵלָיו: יֵשׁ לָךְ דֵּי אוֹתוֹת; הֲתִנְסֶה אֶת אֱלֹהֶיךָ? הֲתֹאמַר, הֲרֹאנִי אוֹת בְּעוֹד יֵשׁ לָךְ עֵדוּת כָּל בְּנֵי עַמְּךָ אֵלֶּה וְכֵן עֵדוּת כָּל



הַנְּבִיאִים הַקְּדוּשִׁים? כְּתָבִי הַקְּדָשׁ לְפָנֶיךָ וְכָל  
הַדְּבָרִים מִצִּיּוֹנִים כִּי יֵשׁ אֱלֹהִים, אֵף הָאָרֶץ  
וְתַנוּעָתָהּ וְכָל אֲשֶׁר עָלֶיהָ וְכָל גְּרָמֵי הַשָּׁמַיִם  
הַנִּשְׁעִים בְּמַסְלֹוֹתֵם הַקְּבועוֹת מְעִידִים כִּי יֵשׁ  
בּוֹרֵא עֲלֵיוֹן.

scriptures are laid before thee, yea, and all things denote there is a God; yea, even the earth, and all things that are upon the face of it, yea, and its motion, yea, and also all the planets which move in their regular form do witness that there is a Supreme Creator.

וְעַל אֵף זֹאת, הִתְלַךְ לְהַטּוֹת אֶת לֵב הָעָם הַזֶּה  
וְלִהְיוֹת בְּאִזְנוֹתָם כִּי אֵין אֱלֹהִים? הֲעוֹדֶךָ  
מִכְחֵשׁ כְּנֶגֶד כָּל הָעֵדוּת הָאֵלֶּה? וְהוּא אָמַר:  
אֲכֹן, מִכְחֵשׁ אֲנִי, בְּלִתי אִם תִּרְאֵנִי אוֹת.

45 And yet do ye go about, leading away the hearts of this people, testifying unto them there is no God? And yet will ye deny against all these witnesses? And he said: Yea, I will deny, except ye shall show me a sign.

וְאָמַר אֵלָיו עֲלָמָא: נִשְׁעַבְתִּי עַל קוֹשֵׁי לִבִּי, כִּי  
עוֹדֶךָ מִתְנַגֵּד לְרוּחַ הָאֱמֶת עַד כִּי תֵאבֹד נַפְשִׁי.

46 And now it came to pass that Alma said unto him: Behold, I am grieved because of the hardness of your heart, yea, that ye will still resist the spirit of the truth, that thy soul may be destroyed.

וְאוֹלָם, טוֹב כִּי תֵאבֹד נַפְשִׁי מִהֲיוֹתְךָ הַמְּבִיא  
אֶבְדֹן נַפְשוֹת רַבּוֹת עַל יְדֵי תַרְמִיתְךָ וְחִלְקַת  
דְּבָרֶיךָ; לָכֵן אִם תוֹסִיף לְהַכְחִישׁ, יִכָּכֶה אֱלֹהִים  
וְתֵאָלֵם לְבַל תִּפְתַּח פִּיךָ לְעוֹלָם וּלְבַל תִּכְזֹּב  
עוֹד לָעַם הַזֶּה.

47 But behold, it is better that thy soul should be lost than that thou shouldst be the means of bringing many souls down to destruction, by thy lying and by thy flattering words; therefore if thou shalt deny again, behold God shall smite thee, that thou shalt become dumb, that thou shalt never open thy mouth any more, that thou shalt not deceive this people any more.

וְקוֹרִיחוֹר אָמַר אֵלָיו: אֵינֶנִּי מִכְחֵשׁ כִּי קִים  
אֱלֹהִים, אֵף אֵינֶנִּי מֵאֲמִין כִּי יֵשׁ אֱלֹהִים; וְאֲנִי  
אֵף אוֹמֵר כִּי אֵתָּה אֵינֶךָ יוֹדֵעַ כִּי יֵשׁ אֱלֹהִים,  
וְאִם לֹא תִרְאֵנִי אוֹת לֹא אֲאָמִין.

48 Now Korihor said unto him: I do not deny the existence of a God, but I do not believe that there is a God; and I say also, that ye do not know that there is a God; and except ye show me a sign, I will not believe.

וְאָמַר אֵלָיו עֲלָמָא: אֶתְּנֶנִּי זֹאת לְאוֹת, הִכֶּה  
תִּכָּה בְּאֵלָם, כְּאֲשֶׁר דִּבַּרְתִּי. הִנְנִי אוֹמֵר כִּי  
בְּשֵׁם אֱלֹהִים תִּכָּה בְּאֵלָם, לְבַל תוּכַל לִפְתּוֹחַ  
עוֹד אֶת פִּיךָ.

49 Now Alma said unto him: This will I give unto thee for a sign, that thou shalt be struck dumb, according to my words; and I say, that in the name of God, ye shall be struck dumb, that ye shall no more have utterance.

וְכִדְּבַר עֲלָמָא אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, נִאָּלֵם  
קוֹרִיחוֹר וְלֹא יָכַל לְדַבֵּר, כְּדִבַּר עֲלָמָא.

50 Now when Alma had said these words, Korihor was struck dumb, that he could not have utterance, according to the words of Alma.

וְכִרְאוֹת זֹאת הַשּׁוֹפֵט הֶעָלָיוֹן, הוּא שָׁלַח  
יָדוֹ וְכָתַב אֶל קוֹרִיחוֹר לֵאמֹר: הֲנוֹכַחְתָּ בְּכֶחַ  
אֱלֹהִים? בְּמִי חָפְצְתָּ כִּי יִרְאֶה עָלָיו אוֹת בְּיַד  
עֲלָמָא? הִתְחַפֵּץ כִּי יֵרַע עֲלָמָא לְזוֹלָתְךָ  
לְמַעַן הִרְאוֹתְךָ אוֹת? הִנֵּה הִרְאָה אוֹת;  
הֲתוֹסִיף לְהִתְנַכַּח?

51 And now when the chief judge saw this, he put forth his hand and wrote unto Korihor, saying: Art thou convinced of the power of God? In whom did ye desire that Alma should show forth his sign? Would ye that he should afflict others, to show unto thee a sign? Behold, he has showed unto you a sign; and now will ye dispute more?

וְקוֹרִיחוֹר שָׁלַח אֶת יָדוֹ וְכָתַב לֵאמֹר: יָדַעְתִּי  
כִּי אֵלִם אֲנִי וְלֹא אוּכַל דַּבֵּר, וְכִי כֶחַ אֱלֹהִים  
לְבַדּוֹ יָכַל לְהִבִּיאַ עָלַי זֹאת. אֲכֹן, תִּמְיֵד יַדְעָתִי  
כִּי יֵשׁ אֱלֹהִים.

52 And Korihor put forth his hand and wrote, saying: I know that I am dumb, for I cannot speak; and I know that nothing save it were the power of God could bring this upon me; yea, and I always knew that there was a God.

- 53 But behold, the devil hath deceived me; for he appeared unto me in the form of an angel, and said unto me: Go and reclaim this people, for they have all gone astray after an unknown God. And he said unto me: There is no God; yea, and he taught me that which I should say. And I have taught his words; and I taught them because they were pleasing unto the carnal mind; and I taught them, even until I had much success, insomuch that I verily believed that they were true; and for this cause I withstood the truth, even until I have brought this great curse upon me.
- 54 Now when he had said this, he besought that Alma should pray unto God, that the curse might be taken from him.
- 55 But Alma said unto him: If this curse should be taken from thee thou wouldst again lead away the hearts of this people; therefore, it shall be unto thee even as the Lord will.
- 56 And it came to pass that the curse was not taken off of Korihor; but he was cast out, and went about from house to house begging for his food.
- 57 Now the knowledge of what had happened unto Korihor was immediately published throughout all the land; yea, the proclamation was sent forth by the chief judge to all the people in the land, declaring unto those who had believed in the words of Korihor that they must speedily repent, lest the same judgments would come unto them.
- 58 And it came to pass that they were all convinced of the wickedness of Korihor; therefore they were all converted again unto the Lord; and this put an end to the iniquity after the manner of Korihor. And Korihor did go about from house to house, begging food for his support.
- 59 And it came to pass that as he went forth among the people, yea, among a people who had separated themselves from the Nephites and called themselves Zoramites, being led by a man whose name was Zoram—and as he went forth amongst them, behold, he was run upon and trodden down, even until he was dead.
- 60 And thus we see the end of him who perverteth the ways of the Lord; and thus we see that the devil will not support his children at the last day, but doth speedily drag them down to hell.
- אָד הַשֵּׁטן הוֹלִיכֵנִי שׁוֹלָל, כִּי בְדַמּוֹת מַלְאָךְ  
נִרְאָה אֵלַי, וְכֹה אָמַר: לֵךְ וְהִשְׁבֵּת אֶת הָעָם  
הַזֶּה, כִּי כָלָם תָּעוּ וְאַחֲרֵי אֵל בְּלֹא יָדוּעַ הָלְכוּ.  
וְהוּא אָמַר אֵלַי: אֵין אֱלֹהִים. וְהוּא לְמַדְנִי אֶת  
אֲשֶׁר אֲדַבֵּר, וְאֲנִי לְמַדְתִּי אֶת דְּבָרָיו; לְמַדְתִּים  
כִּי נְעִימִים הָיוּ לְתַחוּשָׁה הַטְּבַעִית, וְלְמַדְתִּים  
עַד כִּי נִחְלַתִּי הַצִּלְחָה רַבָּה, וְאֲנִי אֶמְנֵם  
הָאֶמְנָתִי כִּי אֶמֶת הֵם. עַל כֵּן עָמַדְתִּי נֶגֶד  
הָאֶמֶת, עַד אֲשֶׁר הִמָּטְתִּי עָלַי אֶת הַקְּלָלָה  
הַגְּדוֹלָה הַזֹּאת.
- וְכֵאמָרוּ זֹאת הַתְּחִנָּה אֶל עֲלָמָא כִּי יִתְפַּלֵּל  
אֶל אֱלֹהִים לְהִסִּיר מִמֶּנּוּ אֶת הַקְּלָלָה.
- וְאֹלָם עֲלָמָא אָמַר אֵלָיו: אִם תּוֹסֵר מִמֶּךָ  
הַקְּלָלָה הַזֹּאת, תּוֹסִיף לְהִטּוֹת אֶת לֵב הָעָם  
הַזֶּה. לְכֹן, בּוֹא יְבוֹא עָלֶיךָ אֶת אֲשֶׁר הוּא  
כִּרְצוֹן יְהוָה.
- וְהַקְּלָלָה דְּבָקָה בְּקוֹרִיחוֹר וְלֹא סָרָה מִמֶּנּוּ.  
וְהוּא גָרַשׁ וְהָלַךְ מִבַּיִת אֶל בַּיִת לְבַקֵּשׁ לֶחֶם.
- וְשִׁמְעָה מִקְרָה קוֹרִיחוֹר פָּשַׁט מִיַּד בְּכָל הָאָרֶץ.  
אָכֵן, הוֹדְעָה עַל כֵּךְ נִשְׁלַחַה מֵאֵת הַשׁוֹפֵט  
הַעֲלִיּוֹן אֶל כָּל תּוֹשְׁבֵי הָאָרֶץ, לְהִשְׁמִיעַ לְכָל  
אֲשֶׁר הָאֶמְנִינוּ בְּדַבְרֵי קוֹרִיחוֹר כִּי יִמְהָרוּ  
לְהִנָּחֵם מִחֲטָאָם כֹּן יִהְיֶה מִשְׁפָּטָם כְּמִשְׁפָּטָם.
- וְהַכֹּל שָׁבוּ וְהִפְכוּ מֵאֲמִינֵי יְהוָה כִּי נִוְכְחוּ  
בִּרְשַׁעַת קוֹרִיחוֹר; וּבְכֵךְ הוֹשֵׁם קֵץ לַעֲוֹן אֲשֶׁר  
בְּדַרְכֵי קוֹרִיחוֹר. וְקוֹרִיחוֹר חָזַר עַל הַפְּתָחִים  
לְבַקֵּשׁ לֶחֶם לְמַחֲיָתוֹ.
- וְהוּא הִתְהַלֵּךְ בְּקֶרֶב הָאֲנָשִׁים. וּבְבוֹאוֹ בְּקֶרֶב  
עִם אֲשֶׁר נִפְרְדּוּ מִן הַנְּפִיִּים וְקָרְאוּ עֲצָמָם  
בְּשֵׁם זוֹרָמִים, כִּי מְנַהִיגָם הָיָה אִישׁ בְּשֵׁם  
זוֹרָם; וּכְהִתְהַלְכוֹ בְּקֶרֶבָם, נִרְמַס בְּרַגְלָיו  
וְנִדְרַס לְמוֹת.
- וְכֹה רֹאִים אֲנִיחֵנוּ אֶת אַחֲרִית הַמַּעֲשֵׂה דְרָכֵי  
יְהוָה; וְכֹה רֹאִים אֲנִיחֵנוּ כִּי הַשֵּׁטן לֹא יִתְמָךְ  
בְּבָנָיו בַּיּוֹם הָאַחֲרוֹן, כִּי בְּמַהֲרָה  
יִסְחָבֵם אֶל מַעְמְקֵי שְׁאוֹל.

## לֹא

## 31

וְאַחַר מוֹת קוֹרִיחוֹר נֹדַע לְעֵלְמָא כִּי הַזֹּרְמִים  
עָנְתוּ אֶת דְּרָכֵי יְהוָה, וְכִי זֹרָם, מִנְהִינִם, הָשָׂה  
אֶת לֵב הָעָם לְהַשְׁתַּחֲוֹת אֶל פְּסִילִים דּוֹמָמִים,  
וְלִבּוֹ דָּאֵב שָׁנִית עַל עֹוֹן הָעָם.

1

הִידִיעָה עַל דְּבַר עֹוֹן בְּקֶרֶב עַמּוֹ הֵיטָה מְקוֹר  
צִיעַר רַב לְעֵלְמָא; וְדָאֲבֹון לְבוֹ גָּדֵל מְאֹד עַל  
פְּרוֹד הַזֹּרְמִים מִן הַנְּפִיִּים.

וְהַזֹּרְמִים נִקְבְּצוּ בְּאַרְץ אֲשֶׁר קָרְאוּ שְׁמָהּ  
אַנְטִיאֹנוֹם וְהִיא מִמְּזֹרַח לְאַרְץ זֶרַחְמֵלָה,  
לְיַד חוֹף הַיָּם, מִדְּרוֹם לְאַרְץ יֶרְשׁוֹן; וְגִבּוֹלָהּ  
הַדְּרוֹמִי בִיעַר אֲשֶׁר רַבּוּ בּוֹ הַלְּמָנִים.

וְהַנְּפִיִּים פָּחְדוּ מְאֹד כִּי יָבֹאוּ הַזֹּרְמִים בְּדִבְרֵיהֶם  
עִם הַלְּמָנִים, וְכֵה יוֹסֵב לְנְפִיִּים נֹזֵק רַב.

וַיַּעַן אֲשֶׁר הִטְפֹּת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים מוֹלִיכָה בְּחֻזָּקָה  
לְמַשׁוֹךְ אֶת הָעָם לַעֲשׂוֹת אֶת הַיֵּשֶׁר, אֲכֹן, לַפְּעַל  
בְּחֻזָּקָה עַל דַּעַת הָאֲנָשִׁים מִפְּעֻלַת הַחֶרֶב אוֹ  
מִכָּל דְּבַר אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר קָרָה לָהֶם, לָכֵן חָשַׁב  
עֲלֵמָא כִּי רָאוי לְנִסּוֹת אֶת סִגְלַת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים.

וְעֵלְמָא לָקַח אֶת עַמּוֹן וְאֶת אֶהְרֹן וְאֶת אוֹמְנֵר  
לְלָכֶת עִמּוֹ, וְאֶת חֲמִנִי הַשְּׂאִיר בְּכִנְסִיָּה אֲשֶׁר  
בְּזֶרַחְמֵלָה. וּמִלְכָּד שְׁלֹשֶׁת עֲמִיתָיו הַנִּזְכָּרִים,  
לָקַח עֲלֵמָא גַם אֶת עַמּוּלֵק וְאֶת זֶאזְרוֹם, אֲשֶׁר  
הָיוּ בְּאַרְץ מֶלֶק, וְכֵן שְׁנַיִם מִבְּנָיו לָקַח.

וְאֶת בְּכוֹר בְּנָיו, אֲשֶׁר שְׁמוֹ נִקְרָא הִילְמֹן,  
לֹא לָקַח עִמּוֹ. וּשְׁמוֹת בְּנָיו אֲשֶׁר לָקַח עִמּוֹ  
נִקְרָאוּ שִׁבְלוֹן וְקוֹרִיאֲנִטוֹן; אֵלֶּה הֵם שְׁמוֹת  
הַהוֹלְכִים עִמּוֹ אֶל הַזֹּרְמִים לְהַטִּיף לָהֶם  
אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים.

וְהַזֹּרְמִים הָיוּ פּוֹרְשִׁים אֲשֶׁר חָלְקוּ עַל הַנְּפִיִּים.  
עַל כֵּן נֹדַע לָהֶם דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים לְפָנִים.

אֲךָ הֵם נָפְלוּ אֶל מְשׁוּגוֹת גְּדוּלוֹת, כִּי לֹא  
נִזְהָרוּ לְקַיֵּם אֶת מִצְוֹת אֱלֹהִים וְאֶת מִשְׁפָּטָיו,  
כְּפִי תוֹרַת מֹשֶׁה.

1 Now it came to pass that after the end of Korihor, Alma having received tidings that the Zoramites were perverting the ways of the Lord, and that Zoram, who was their leader, was leading the hearts of the people to bow down to dumb idols, his heart again began to sicken because of the iniquity of the people.

2 For it was the cause of great sorrow to Alma to know of iniquity among his people; therefore his heart was exceedingly sorrowful because of the separation of the Zoramites from the Nephites.

3 Now the Zoramites had gathered themselves together in a land which they called Antionum, which was east of the land of Zarahemla, which lay nearly bordering upon the seashore, which was south of the land of Jershon, which also bordered upon the wilderness south, which wilderness was full of the Lamanites.

4 Now the Nephites greatly feared that the Zoramites would enter into a correspondence with the Lamanites, and that it would be the means of great loss on the part of the Nephites.

5 And now, as the preaching of the word had a great tendency to lead the people to do that which was just—yea, it had had more powerful effect upon the minds of the people than the sword, or anything else, which had happened unto them—therefore Alma thought it was expedient that they should try the virtue of the word of God.

6 Therefore he took Ammon, and Aaron, and Omner; and Himni he did leave in the church in Zarahemla; but the former three he took with him, and also Amulek and Zeezrom, who were at Melek; and he also took two of his sons.

7 Now the eldest of his sons he took not with him, and his name was Helaman; but the names of those whom he took with him were Shiblon and Corianton; and these are the names of those who went with him among the Zoramites, to preach unto them the word.

8 Now the Zoramites were dissenters from the Nephites; therefore they had had the word of God preached unto them.

9 But they had fallen into great errors, for they would not observe to keep the commandments of God, and his statutes, according to the law of Moses.

- 10 Neither would they observe the performances of the church, to continue in prayer and supplication to God daily, that they might not enter into temptation.
- וְהֵם אִף לֹא שָׁמְרוּ אֶת הַנִּסִּים, לְהִתְמַיֵּד בְּתַפִּלָּה וּבְתַחֲנוּנָה אֶל אֱלֹהִים מְדִי יוֹם בְּיוֹמוֹ, לְבָל יְבוֹאוּ לְיַד נְסִיוֹן.
- 11 Yea, in fine, they did pervert the ways of the Lord in very many instances; therefore, for this cause, Alma and his brethren went into the land to preach the word unto them.
- וּבִקְצָרָה, הֵם עָוְתוּ אֶת דְּרָכֵי יְהוָה בְּאַפְּנִים רַבִּים מְאֹד. עַל כֵּן, מִסְבָּה זֹאת, יָצְאוּ עֲלָמָא וְעַמִּיתָיו אֶל הָאָרֶץ, לְהַטִּיף לָהֶם אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים.
- 12 Now, when they had come into the land, behold, to their astonishment they found that the Zoramites had built synagogues, and that they did gather themselves together on one day of the week, which day they did call the day of the Lord; and they did worship after a manner which Alma and his brethren had never beheld;
- וּכְבוֹאֵם אֶל הָאָרֶץ, וַהֲנֵה מִצְאוּ, לְמִרְבֵּה הַתַּעֲתָם, כִּי הִזְרָמִים בָּנוּ בְּתֵי כְנָסִיּוֹת, וְכִי הֵם נִקְבְּצוּ יַחְדָּו יוֹם אֶחָד בַּשָּׁבֹועַ, אֲשֶׁר קְרָאוּהוּ יוֹם יְהוָה; וַעֲבֹדֹת הַקֹּדֶשׁ אֲשֶׁר לָהֶם הָיְתָה בְּאַפֵּן אֲשֶׁר לֹא רָאוּהוּ עֲלָמָא וְעַמִּיתָיו מֵעוֹדָם.
- 13 For they had a place built up in the center of their synagogue, a place for standing, which was high above the head, and the top thereof would only admit one person.
- בְּמִרְכָּז בֵּית הַכְּנָסֶת הֵם בָּנוּ מְקוֹם עֲמִידָה, גְּבוּהָ מִקְוֹמַת אָדָם, וּבְרָאשׁוֹ יָכוֹל לַעֲמֹד אִישׁ אֶחָד בְּלִבָּד.
- 14 Therefore, whosoever desired to worship must go forth and stand upon the top thereof, and stretch forth his hands towards heaven, and cry with a loud voice, saying:
- וְכָל אֲשֶׁר חָפֵץ לַעֲבֹד אֶת יְהוָה עָלָיו לַעֲלוֹת וּלַעֲמֹד בְּמְקוֹם הַמִּגְבָּה הַהוּא, לִפְשֹׁט אֶת יָדָיו הַשְׁמִימָה וְלִקְרֹא בְּקוֹל רָם לֵאמֹר:
- 15 Holy, holy God; we believe that thou art God, and we believe that thou art holy, and that thou wast a spirit, and that thou art a spirit, and that thou wilt be a spirit forever.
- קְדוֹשׁ! אֵל קְדוֹשׁ! מֵאַמִּינִים אֲנַחְנוּ כִּי אַתָּה אֱלֹהִים, וּמֵאַמִּינִים אֲנַחְנוּ כִּי קְדוֹשׁ אַתָּה וְכִי הָיִיתָ רוּחַ, וְהִנֵּה רוּחַ וְתִהְיֶה רוּחַ עַד עוֹלָם.
- 16 Holy God, we believe that thou hast separated us from our brethren; and we do not believe in the tradition of our brethren, which was handed down to them by the childishness of their fathers; but we believe that thou hast elected us to be thy holy children; and also thou hast made it known unto us that there shall be no Christ.
- אֵל קְדוֹשׁ, מֵאַמִּינִים אֲנַחְנוּ כִּי הִפְרַדְתָּ אוֹתָנוּ מֵאַחֵינוּ וְאֵינָנו מֵאַמִּינִים בְּמִסְרָתָם; אֲשֶׁר נִמְסְרָה לָהֶם מֵאֵת פְּתִיּוֹת אֲבוֹתֵיהֶם; וּמֵאַמִּינִים אֲנַחְנוּ כִּי בָנוּ בְּחֵרְתָּ לְהִיְתָב בְּנֵי קְדוֹשׁ; וְכִי הוֹדַעְתָּנוּ כִּי לֹא יְבוֹא כָּל מְשִׁיחַ.
- 17 But thou art the same yesterday, today, and forever; and thou hast elected us that we shall be saved, whilst all around us are elected to be cast by thy wrath down to hell; for the which holiness, O God, we thank thee; and we also thank thee that thou hast elected us, that we may not be led away after the foolish traditions of our brethren, which doth bind them down to a belief of Christ, which doth lead their hearts to wander far from thee, our God.
- הִנֵּה אֲשֶׁר אַתָּה אֶתְמוֹל וְהַיּוֹם וְלָעוֹלָם. אַתָּה בְּחֵרְתָּנוּ לְמַעַן נִשְׁע, בְּעוֹד כָּל אֲשֶׁר סְבִיבָנוּ נִבְחָרוּ לְרִדָּת בְּחִמְתָּךְ שְׂאוּלָה. וְעַל הַקְּדוּשָׁה הַזֹּאת אֲנַחְנוּ מוֹדִים לָךְ, אֱלֹהִים; וְכֵן מוֹדִים אֲנַחְנוּ לָךְ עַל כִּי בְּחֵרְתָּנוּ, לְבָל נִטָּה אַחֵר מִסּוּרוֹת הַהֶבֶל אֲשֶׁר לְאַחֵינוּ, הַאֲוִסְרוֹת אוֹתָם אֶל אֲמוֹנָה בְּמִשְׁיחַ, הַמוֹלִיכָה אֶת לִבָּם לְהִרְחִיק נֶדָד מִמֶּךָ אֱלֹהֵינוּ.
- 18 And again we thank thee, O God, that we are a chosen and a holy people. Amen.
- וְעוֹד מוֹדִים אֲנַחְנוּ לָךְ, אֱלֹהִים, כִּי עַם נִבְחָר וְקְדוֹשׁ אֲנַחְנוּ. אָמֵן.
- 19 Now it came to pass that after Alma and his brethren and his sons had heard these prayers, they were astonished beyond all measure.
- וְהָיָה כְּשֶׁמַּע עֲלָמָא וְעַמִּיתָיו וּבְנֵי אֶת הַתַּפִּלוֹת הָאֵלֶּה, הֵם תַּמְהוּ עַד לְאֵין שְׁעוֹר.

- 20 For behold, every man did go forth and offer up these same prayers.  
כי הנה כל איש עלה והתפלל את אותן התפלות.
- 21 Now the place was called by them Rameumptom, which, being interpreted, is the holy stand.  
והמקום אשר עליו אליו נקרא בפיהם רמיאומפטום, ופשוו העמוד הקדוש.
- 22 Now, from this stand they did offer up, every man, the selfsame prayer unto God, thanking their God that they were chosen of him, and that he did not lead them away after the tradition of their brethren, and that their hearts were not stolen away to believe in things to come, which they knew nothing about.  
מן העמוד הזה התפללו, איש-איש, לאלהים את עצם התפלה ההיא, בהודותם לאלהיהם על כי בחרם ועל כי לא הטא אותם אחר מסרת אחיהם, ועל כי לבבם לא גנב להאמין בבאות, אשר על אודותיהן לא ידעו דבר.
- 23 Now, after the people had all offered up thanks after this manner, they returned to their homes, never speaking of their God again until they had assembled themselves together again to the holy stand, to offer up thanks after their manner.  
ואחר אשר העלו כל האנשים את תודותיהם באופן הזה, הם שבו לבתיהם ולא דברו עוד על אלהיהם עד אשר נאספו שנית ליד העמוד הקדוש, להעלות את תודותיהם כמשפטם.
- 24 Now when Alma saw this his heart was grieved; for he saw that they were a wicked and a perverse people; yea, he saw that their hearts were set upon gold, and upon silver, and upon all manner of fine goods.  
וכראות זאת עלמא, דאב לבו, יען אשר ראה כי עם מרשע ונעקש הם; אכן, הוא ראה כי כל מעיניהם בזהב ובכסף ובכל מיני חפצי יקר.
- 25 Yea, and he also saw that their hearts were lifted up unto great boasting, in their pride.  
הוא אף ראה כי בגאותם התנשא לבבם בהתפארות רבה.
- 26 And he lifted up his voice to heaven, and cried, saying: O, how long, O Lord, wilt thou suffer that thy servants shall dwell here below in the flesh, to behold such gross wickedness among the children of men?  
והוא נשא קולו למרום וקרא לאמר: הוי, יהוה! עד אנה תסבל כי עבדיך ישכנו כאן למטה בפשר, לראות רשעה כה גדולה בין בני האדם?
- 27 Behold, O God, they cry unto thee, and yet their hearts are swallowed up in their pride. Behold, O God, they cry unto thee with their mouths, while they are puffed up, even to greatness, with the vain things of the world.  
הנה, אלהים, הם קוראים אליה, אף לבם נבלע בגאותם. הנה, בפיהם הם קוראים אליה, אלהים, בעודם נפוחי התגדלות בהבלי העולם.
- 28 Behold, O my God, their costly apparel, and their ringlets, and their bracelets, and their ornaments of gold, and all their precious things which they are ornamented with; and behold, their hearts are set upon them, and yet they cry unto thee and say—We thank thee, O God, for we are a chosen people unto thee, while others shall perish.  
הוי, אלהי, ראה את לבוש יקרים, טבעותיהם, צמידיהם, תכשיטי זהבם, וכל יקרותיהם אשר עדו; ראה כי שיתו לבם עליהם, אף אליהם יקראו לאמר: מודים אנחנו לך, אלהים, כי עם נבחר אנחנו לך, וזולתנו יאבד.
- 29 Yea, and they say that thou hast made it known unto them that there shall be no Christ.  
והם אומרים כי הודעתם כי לא יהיה משיח.
- 30 O Lord God, how long wilt thou suffer that such wickedness and infidelity shall be among this people? O Lord, wilt thou give me strength, that I may bear with mine infirmities. For I am infirm, and such wickedness among this people doth pain my soul.  
יהוה אלהים, עד מתי תסבל רשעה וכפירה כאלה בקרב העם הזה? אנא, יהוה, חזקני למען אוכל לשאת את חלשותי. חלש אני, ורשעה כזאת בקרב העם הזה מכאיבה את נפשי.



- 31 O Lord, my heart is exceedingly sorrowful; wilt thou comfort my soul in Christ. O Lord, wilt thou grant unto me that I may have strength, that I may suffer with patience these afflictions which shall come upon me, because of the iniquity of this people.
- יהוה, רב יגון לבי. נחם נא את נפשי במשיח. יהוה, אנא חזקני למען אוכל לשאת בארץ רוח את היסורים אשר יבואוני מפני עון העם הזה.
- 32 O Lord, wilt thou comfort my soul, and give unto me success, and also my fellow laborers who are with me—yea, Ammon, and Aaron, and Omner, and also Amulek and Zeezrom and also my two sons—yea, even all these wilt thou comfort, O Lord. Yea, wilt thou comfort their souls in Christ.
- יהוה, נחם נא את נפשי והצלח אותי ואת העמלים עמי, הלא הם עמו ואהרן ואמון, ועמולק וזאזרם וכן שני בני, את כל אלה נחם נא, יהוה, אנא נחם את נפשים במשיח.
- 33 Wilt thou grant unto them that they may have strength, that they may bear their afflictions which shall come upon them because of the iniquities of this people.
- אנא חזקם למען יוכלו לסבל את יסוריהם הבאים עליהם מפני עוונות העם הזה.
- 34 O Lord, wilt thou grant unto us that we may have success in bringing them again unto thee in Christ.
- אנא, יהוה, הצליחנו להשיבם אליך באמונה במשיח.
- 35 Behold, O Lord, their souls are precious, and many of them are our brethren; therefore, give unto us, O Lord, power and wisdom that we may bring these, our brethren, again unto thee.
- הנה, יהוה, נפשותיהם יקרות, ורבים מהם אחינו; לכן, תננו כח, יהוה, והחכימנו למען נשיב את אלה, אחינו, אליך.
- 36 Now it came to pass that when Alma had said these words, that he clapped his hands upon all them who were with him. And behold, as he clapped his hands upon them, they were filled with the Holy Spirit.
- וככלות עֲלֵמָא לומר את הדברים האלה, הוא טפח בידיו על כל אשר היו עמו. והנה, כאשר טפח ידיו עליהם, מלאו הם רוח הקדש.
- 37 And after that they did separate themselves one from another, taking no thought for themselves what they should eat, or what they should drink, or what they should put on.
- ואחרי כן נפרדו איש מעל אחיו ולא עלה על דעתם צורך עצמם, מה יאכלו או מה ישתו או מה ילבשו.
- 38 And the Lord provided for them that they should hunger not, neither should they thirst; yea, and he also gave them strength, that they should suffer no manner of afflictions, save it were swallowed up in the joy of Christ. Now this was according to the prayer of Alma; and this because he prayed in faith.
- ויהוה ספק להם צרכם לכל ירעבו ולכל יצמאו, ואף חזקם לכל יסבלו כל מיני יסורים, בלתי אם נבלעו בשמחת המשיח; וכל זאת כפי תפלת עֲלֵמָא, יען אשר התפלל באמונה.

## לב

## 32

- 1 And it came to pass that they did go forth, and began to preach the word of God unto the people, entering into their synagogues, and into their houses; yea, and even they did preach the word in their streets.
- ואנשי עֲלֵמָא אכן יצאו והחלו להטיף את דבר אלהים לעם. הם נכנסו אל בתי כנסיותיהם ואל בתיהם; ואף ברחובותיהם הטיפו את דבר אלהים.
- 2 And it came to pass that after much labor among them, they began to have success among the poor class of people; for behold, they were cast out of the synagogues because of the coarseness of their apparel—
- והיה אחר עמל רב בקרב העם הם החלו להצליח בקרב דלת העם, כי אלה הרחקו מבתי הכנסת מפני לבושם הגס;

- והם לא הרשו לבוא אל בתי כנסיותיהם לעבד את אלהים, כי נחשבו טמאה; אכן, הם היו עניים ואחיהם חשבו סגים; אכן, הם היו עניים באשר לדברי העולם הזה ואף עניים בלבם.
- 3 Therefore they were not permitted to enter into their synagogues to worship God, being esteemed as filthiness; therefore they were poor; yea, they were esteemed by their brethren as dross; therefore they were poor as to things of the world; and also they were poor in heart.
- והאשר למד עלמא את העם, וכדברו אליהם על גבעת אונידה, באו אליו המונים רבים מאלה אשר הזכרנו, אשר מהם היו עניים לב, מפני עניים בדברי העולם הזה.
- 4 Now, as Alma was teaching and speaking unto the people upon the hill Onidah, there came a great multitude unto him, who were those of whom we have been speaking, of whom were poor in heart, because of their poverty as to the things of the world.
- והם באו אל עלמא; ואמר אליו העומד בראשם: הנה, מה יעשו אחי אלה? הן בזויים הם מכל אדם מפני עניים, ובפרט יבזום כהנינו, כי גרשונו מבתי כנסיותינו אשר במו ידינו עמלנו רבות לבנותם; והם גרשונו מפני רב ענינו, ואין לנו מקום לעבד את אלהינו; הנה, מה נעשה?
- 5 And they came unto Alma; and the one who was the foremost among them said unto him: Behold, what shall these my brethren do, for they are despised of all men because of their poverty, yea, and more especially by our priests; for they have cast us out of our synagogues which we have labored abundantly to build with our own hands; and they have cast us out because of our exceeding poverty; and we have no place to worship our God; and behold, what shall we do?
- וכשמע זאת עלמא, הוא סובבו עד אשר עמדו פנים אל פנים, והביט בו בשמחה גדולה, יען אשר ראה כי יסוריהם אכן הכניעו, וכי נכונים הם לשמע את דבר אלהים.
- 6 And now when Alma heard this, he turned him about, his face immediately towards him, and he beheld with great joy; for he beheld that their afflictions had truly humbled them and that they were in a preparation to hear the word.
- לכן הוא לא הוסיף לדבר אל ההמון האחר. והוא פשט ידו וקרא אל האנשים אשר ראה, אשר הם שבים מרעתם באמת, ואמר אליהם:
- 7 Therefore he did say no more to the other multitude; but he stretched forth his hand, and cried unto those whom he beheld, who were truly penitent, and said unto them:
- רואה אני כי שפלי רוח אתם, ואם נכון הוא, ברוכים אתם.
- 8 I behold that ye are lowly in heart; and if so, blessed are ye.
- הנה אמר אחיהם: מה נעשה, יען אשר גרשונו מבתי כנסיותינו, ולא נוכל לעבד את אלהינו?
- 9 Behold thy brother hath said, What shall we do?—for we are cast out of our synagogues, that we cannot worship our God.
- הנני אומר לכם, התחשבו כי לא תוכלו לעבד את אלהים, כי אם בבתי כנסיותיכם בלבד?
- 10 Behold I say unto you, do ye suppose that ye cannot worship God save it be in your synagogues only?
- יתר על כן, אשא לכם, התחשבו כי אל לכם לעבד את אלהים, כי אם יום אחד בשבוע בלבד?
- 11 Moreover, I would ask, do ye suppose that ye must not worship God only once in a week?
- הנני אומר לכם כי היותכם מנדים מבתי כנסיותיכם, טוב הוא, למען עשותכם נכונים ולמען תחכימו; כי נחוץ לכם לקנות חכמה; כי מפני היותכם מנדים ובזויים בעיני אחיהם על רב ענייכם, נעשיתם שפלי רוח; לכן בהכרח אתם מובאים לכלל הכנעה.
- 12 I say unto you, it is well that ye are cast out of your synagogues, that ye may be humble, and that ye may learn wisdom; for it is necessary that ye should learn wisdom; for it is because that ye are cast out, that ye are despised of your brethren because of your exceeding poverty, that ye are brought to a lowliness of heart; for ye are necessarily brought to be humble.

- 13 And now, because ye are compelled to be humble blessed are ye; for a man sometimes, if he is compelled to be humble, seeketh repentance; and now surely, whosoever repenteth shall find mercy; and he that findeth mercy and endureth to the end the same shall be saved.
- וְעַתָּה, כִּפִּי אֲשֶׁר נִאֲלָצְתֶם לְהִיטֵב נִכְנָעִים, בְּרוּכִים אַתֶּם; כִּי יֵשׁ אֲשֶׁר יִבְקֹשׁ אָדָם לְשׁוּב מִרְעֻתוֹ, אִם הִכְנִיעָה כְּפוּיָה עָלָיו; וְהֵנָּה, כָּל הַנִּחַם מִחֻטָּא, רַחֵם יְרַחֵם; וְכֹל אֲשֶׁר יִרְחֵם וְיִתְמִיד עַד הַקֵּץ, אָכֵן יוֹשֶׁעַ.
- 14 And now, as I said unto you, that because ye were compelled to be humble ye were blessed, do ye not suppose that they are more blessed who truly humble themselves because of the word?
- וְעַתָּה, כִּפִּי אֲשֶׁר אָמַרְתִּי לָכֶם כִּי בִּרְכָתֶם עַל כִּי נִכְפַּתְתֶּם עָלֵיכֶם הִכְנִיעָה, הֲלֹא תַחֲשְׁבוּ כִּי הַמְּכַנִּיעִים עֲצֵמָם בְּאֵמַת מִפְּנֵי דְבַר אֱלֹהִים, מְבָרְכִים אֵף יוֹתֵר?
- 15 Yea, he that truly humbleth himself, and repenteth of his sins, and endureth to the end, the same shall be blessed—yea, much more blessed than they who are compelled to be humble because of their exceeding poverty.
- אָכֵן, כָּל הַמְּכַנִּיעַ עֲצֵמוֹ בְּאֵמַת וְנִחַם עַל חֻטְאָיו וּמִתְמִיד עַד הַקֵּץ, הוּא יְבָרֵךְ; אָכֵן, מְבָרֵךְ הוּא יוֹתֵר מִהַכְּפוּיִים לְהִכְנַע מִפְּנֵי רֵב עָנִיִּים.
- 16 Therefore, blessed are they who humble themselves without being compelled to be humble; or rather, in other words, blessed is he that believeth in the word of God, and is baptized without stubbornness of heart, yea, without being brought to know the word, or even compelled to know, before they will believe.
- בְּרוּכִים הֵם הַמְּכַנִּיעִים עֲצֵמָם מִבְּלִי שְׂתַכְכָּה עָלֵיהֶם כְּנִיעָה. וּבְמִלִּים אַחֲרוֹת: בְּרוּךְ הַמֵּאֲמִין בְּדִבְרֵי אֱלֹהִים וּמִטְבֵּל בְּלִי עֲקָשׁוּת הַלֵּב; אָכֵן, מִבְּלִי אֲשֶׁר יוֹבֵא אֶל דַּעַת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים, אוֹ אֵף מִבְּלִי אֲשֶׁר יִכְפֹּה לְדַעַת אוֹתוֹ בְּטָרֵם יֵאֱמִין בּוֹ.
- 17 Yea, there are many who do say: If thou wilt show unto us a sign from heaven, then we shall know of a surety; then we shall believe.
- הֵנָּה, רַבִּים הָאוֹמְרִים: אִם תִּרְאֶנּוּ אוֹת מִשְׁמַיִם, יֵדַע אֶת הַדְּבָר לְאַשׁוּרוֹ; אֲזִי נֵאֱמִין.
- 18 Now I ask, is this faith? Behold, I say unto you, Nay; for if a man knoweth a thing he hath no cause to believe, for he knoweth it.
- וְעַתָּה אֲשַׁאלְכֶם: הֲלֹאֵזֶה יִקְרָא אֱמוּנָה? הֲנֵנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם: לֹא; אִם יֵדַע אִישׁ דְּבַר, אֵין לוֹ סִבָּה לְהֵאֱמִין, כִּי יוֹדַע הוּא.
- 19 And now, how much more cursed is he that knoweth the will of God and doeth it not, than he that only believeth, or only hath cause to believe, and falleth into transgression?
- וְהֵנָּה, כַּמָּה אַרְוֵר יוֹתֵר הַיּוֹדֵעַ אֶת רְצוֹן אֱלֹהִים וְאֵינוֹ עוֹשֶׂהוּ, מֵאֲשֶׁר הַמֵּאֲמִין בְּלִבָּד, אוֹ אֲשֶׁר לוֹ רַק סִבָּה לְהֵאֱמִין וְהוּא נִכְשֵׁל בַּעֲבָרָה?
- 20 Now of this thing ye must judge. Behold, I say unto you, that it is on the one hand even as it is on the other; and it shall be unto every man according to his work.
- בְּדִבְרֵי הַזֶּה, אָכֵן, עָלֵיכֶם לְשַׁפֵּט. הֲנֵנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם כִּי עַל הַכֹּף הָאֶחָד יֵשׁ כְּמִשְׁקָל אֲשֶׁר בַּכֹּף הַשֵּׁנִי; וְלֹכֵל אָדָם יִהְיֶה כְּפַעֲלוֹ.
- 21 And now as I said concerning faith—faith is not to have a perfect knowledge of things; therefore if ye have faith ye hope for things which are not seen, which are true.
- וְעַתָּה, כִּפִּי אֲשֶׁר אָמַרְתִּי בְּאֲשֶׁר לְאֱמוּנָה, אֱמוּנָה אֵינָה יְדִיעַת דְּבָרִים מְשֻׁלָּמִת. לָכֵן, אִם יֵשׁ לָכֶם אֱמוּנָה, אַתֶּם מְקוּיִם לְדְבָרִים אֲשֶׁר אֵינֶם נִרְאִים וְאֲשֶׁר אֵמַת הֵמָּה.
- 22 And now, behold, I say unto you, and I would that ye should remember, that God is merciful unto all who believe on his name; therefore he desireth, in the first place, that ye should believe, yea, even on his word.
- וְהֵנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, וְרְצוֹנִי כִּי תִזְכְּרוּ, אֱלֹהִים מְרַחֵם אֶת כָּל הַמֵּאֲמִינִים בְּשִׁמוֹ; לָכֵן, רָאשִׁית חִפְצוֹ כִּי תֵאֱמִינוּ, אָכֵן, כִּי תֵאֱמִינוּ בְּדִבְרֵוֹ.

- 23 And now, he imparteth his word by angels unto men, yea, not only men but women also. Now this is not all; little children do have words given unto them many times which confound the wise and the learned.
- וְהוּא חוֹלֵק אֶת דְּבָרָו לְבָנֵי אָדָם עַל יְדֵי מַלְאָכִים. לֹא לְגִבֹּרִים בְּלִבָּד, כִּי אִם אַף לְנָשִׁים. וְאִין זֹאת הַכֹּל; פְּעָמִים רַבּוֹת נִתְּנִים לְיִלְדִים קְטָנִים דְּבָרִים, הַמְכַלִּימִם אֶת הַחֲכָמִים וְאֶת הַמְלָמְדִים.
- 24 And now, my beloved brethren, as ye have desired to know of me what ye shall do because ye are afflicted and cast out—now I do not desire that ye should suppose that I mean to judge you only according to that which is true—
- וְעַתָּה, אַחֵי הָאֱהוּבִים, יַעֲזֹר אֲשֶׁר חָפְצְתֶם לָדַעַת מִמֶּנִּי מָה תַּעֲשׂוּ כִּי מַעֲזִינִים וּמְגֹרָשִׁים אַתֶּם, וְאִנְנִי רוֹצֶה כִּי תַחֲשְׁבוּ כִּי בְכֹנְנִי לְשַׁפֵּט אֶתְכֶם, כִּי אִם עַל פִּי הָאֲמִת לְבַדָּה,
- 25 For I do not mean that ye all of you have been compelled to humble yourselves; for I verily believe that there are some among you who would humble themselves, let them be in whatsoever circumstances they might.
- כִּי אִין כֹּנְנִי כִּי עַל כָּלְכֶם נִכְפַּתָּה כְּנִיעַתְכֶם, כִּי הָאֲמֹן אֲאָמִין כִּי יֵשׁ בְּקִרְבְּכֶם אֶלֶּה אֲשֶׁר הֵכִינִי אֶת עֲצָמָם, הֵיוּ נִסְבוֹתֵיהֶם אֲשֶׁר הָיוּ.
- 26 Now, as I said concerning faith—that it was not a perfect knowledge—even so it is with my words. Ye cannot know of their surety at first, unto perfection, any more than faith is a perfect knowledge.
- וְכַפִּי אֲשֶׁר אֲמַרְתִּי בְּאֲשֶׁר לֵאמֹנָה, כִּי אִין הִיא יְדִיעָה מְשֻׁלְּמָת, כִּן הִדְבֵּר גַּם בְּאֲשֶׁר לְדַבְּרִי. לֹא תוֹכְלוּ לְהַשִּׁיג מִיַּד יְדִיעָה מְשֻׁלְּמָת בְּאֲשֶׁר לֵאמֹנָתְכֶם, כִּפִּי אֲשֶׁר אֲמֹנָה אִינָה יְדִיעָה מְשֻׁלְּמָת.
- 27 But behold, if ye will awake and arouse your faculties, even to an experiment upon my words, and exercise a particle of faith, yea, even if ye can no more than desire to believe, let this desire work in you, even until ye believe in a manner that ye can give place for a portion of my words.
- וְאִוֹלָם אִם תַּעֲרִירוּ וּתְעוּרְרוּ אֶת תְּבוּנַתְכֶם, וְאַף תִּנְסּוּ אֶת דְּבָרֵי וְיִתְמִינִם חֲלָקִים אֲמֹנָה, אַף אִם אֵינְכֶם מְסֻגְלִים לְקִים יוֹתֵר מֵאֲשֶׁר רָצוֹן לְהֵאֲמִין, תִּנּוּ נָא לְרָצוֹן הַזֶּה לַפֶּעַל בְּכֶם, עַד אֲשֶׁר תֵּאֲמִינוּ בְּאִפֹּן כְּזֶה שֶׁתוֹכְלוּ לָתֵת מְקוֹם בְּלִבְכֶם לְחֵלֶק מִדְּבָרִי.
- 28 Now, we will compare the word unto a seed. Now, if ye give place, that a seed may be planted in your heart, behold, if it be a true seed, or a good seed, if ye do not cast it out by your unbelief, that ye will resist the Spirit of the Lord, behold, it will begin to swell within your breasts; and when you feel these swelling motions, ye will begin to say within yourselves—It must needs be that this is a good seed, or that the word is good, for it beginneth to enlarge my soul; yea, it beginneth to enlighten my understanding, yea, it beginneth to be delicious to me.
- נִמְשִׁילָה נָא אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים לְזֶרַע. אִם תִּתְּנוּ מְקוֹם, לְמַעַן יִזְרַע זֶרַע בְּלִבְבְּכֶם, הִנֵּה יִחַל לְתַפֵּחַ בְּחֻזְכֶּם, אִם יִהְיֶה זֶה זֶרַע אֲמִת, זֶרַע טוֹב, וְלֹא תִשְׁלִיכוּהוּ בְּחֶסֶר אֲמוּנַתְכֶם, וְלֹא תִתְּנֶנּוּ לְרוּחַ יְהוָה; וְכַאֲשֶׁר תִּרְגִּישׁוּ אֶת תְּנוּעַת הַתִּפְיחָה, תֵּאֲמַרוּ בְּלִבְבְּכֶם, אִין זֹאת כִּי אִם זֶרַע טוֹב הוּא, אוֹ, כִּי טוֹב הוּא דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים כִּי הוּא מִרְחִיב אֶת נַפְשִׁי; אַכֵּן, הוּא מִתְחִיל לְהֵאִיר אֶת בִּינָתִי, הוּא מִתְחִיל לְהֵיוֹת עֶרֶב לִחְכִּי.
- 29 Now behold, would not this increase your faith? I say unto you, Yea; nevertheless it hath not grown up to a perfect knowledge.
- הִנֵּה, הֲלֹא תִגְדִּיל זֹאת אֶת אֲמוּנַתְכֶם? הִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם: אַכֵּן! וְאִוֹלָם לֹא תִגְדִּל זֹאת לְכַדִּי יְדִיעָה מְשֻׁלְּמָת.
- 30 But behold, as the seed swelleth, and sprouteth, and beginneth to grow, then you must needs say that the seed is good; for behold it swelleth, and sprouteth, and beginneth to grow. And now behold, will not this
- וְהִנֵּה, כַּאֲשֶׁר יִתְפַּח הַזֶּרַע וַיִּנְבֹּט וַיִּחַל לְצֻמָּח, אַז תֵּאֲמַרוּ כִּי טוֹב הַזֶּרַע; כִּי הִנֵּהוּ תוֹפֵחַ, נוֹבֵט וּמִתְחִיל לְצֻמָּח. וְעַתָּה, הֲלֹא תַחֲזֹק זֹאת אֶת

## עֲלֵמָא לִב: לֹא-לֵט

- אָמוֹנֶתְכֶם? אַכּוֹ, הִיא תַחֲזִק אֶת אָמוֹנֶתְכֶם  
כִּי נִבֵּט וְהִחֵל לְצֻמָּח.  
31 And now, behold, are ye sure that this is a good seed? I say unto you, Yea; for every seed bringeth forth unto its own likeness.
- וְעַתָּה, הֲבִטּוּחִים אַתֶּם כִּי טוֹב הַזֶּרַע? הֲנִנִי  
אוֹמֵר לָכֶם: אַכּוֹ! כִּי כָל זֶרַע מִצְמִיחַ כְּמִינֵהוּ.  
32 Therefore, if a seed groweth it is good, but if it groweth not, behold it is not good, therefore it is cast away.
- לָכֵן, אִם צוּמַח זֶרַע, טוֹב הוּא, וְאִם אֵינוֹ  
צוּמַח, אֵינֶנּוּ טוֹב, עַל כֵּן יִשְׁלַף.  
33 And now, behold, because ye have tried the experiment, and planted the seed, and it swelleth and sprouteth, and beginneth to grow, ye must needs know that the seed is good.
- וְעַתָּה, הֲאֵם יְדִיעַתְכֶם מְשֻׁלָּמָה? אַכּוֹ;  
יְדִיעַתְכֶם מְשֻׁלָּמָה בְּדָבָר הַהוּא, וְאָמוֹנֶתְכֶם  
רְדוּמָה; וְזֹאת מִפְּנֵי יְדִיעַתְכֶם, אַכּוֹ, כִּי יוֹדְעִים  
אַתֶּם כִּי דָבָר אֱלֹהִים תִּפָּח בְּנַפְשְׁכֶם, וְאִף  
יּוֹדְעִים אַתֶּם כִּי נִבֵּט, כִּי בִינְתְּכֶם מִתְבַּהֶרֶת  
וְאִף מִתְרַחֶבֶת דְּעַתְכֶם.  
34 And now, behold, is your knowledge perfect? Yea, your knowledge is perfect in that thing, and your faith is dormant; and this because ye know, for ye know that the word hath swelled your souls, and ye also know that it hath sprouted up, that your understanding doth begin to be enlightened, and your mind doth begin to expand.
- וְאִם כֵּן, הֲאֵין בְּזֹאת מִמֶּשׁ? הֲנִנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם:  
אַכּוֹ! כִּי אֹרֶךְ הִיא, וְכָל אֲשֶׁר הוּא מְאֹר, טוֹב  
הוּא, כִּי אֶפְשָׁר לְהִבְחִין בוֹ; לָכֵן תִּדְעוּ יְדוּעַ  
כִּי טוֹב הוּא; וְעַתָּה, אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר טַעַמְתֶּם מִן  
הָאֹר הַזֶּה, הֲאֵם יְדִיעַתְכֶם מְשֻׁלָּמָה?  
35 O then, is not this real? I say unto you, Yea, because it is light; and whatsoever is light, is good, because it is discernible, therefore ye must know that it is good; and now behold, after ye have tasted this light is your knowledge perfect?
- הֲנִנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם: לֹא! וְאוֹלָם אֵל לָכֶם  
לְהִתְעַלֵּם מֵאָמוֹנֶתְכֶם, כִּי אַתֶּם, רַק אֶת  
אָמוֹנֶתְכֶם הִפְעַלְתֶּם לְזֶרַע אֶת הַזֶּרַע, לְמַעַן  
תּוֹכְלוּ לְנִסּוֹת לְדַעַת בְּנִסּוּי אִם טוֹב הוּא.  
36 Behold I say unto you, Nay; neither must ye lay aside your faith, for ye have only exercised your faith to plant the seed that ye might try the experiment to know if the seed was good.
- וְהִנֵּה, כְּאֲשֶׁר יִחַל הָעֵץ לְצֻמָּח, תֹּאמְרוּ: הֲבֵה  
נִכְלְכָלוּ בְּדֹאגָה רַבָּה, לְמַעַן יִשְׁרִישׁ וַיִּצְמַח  
וַיֵּשֶׂא לָנוּ פְּרִי. וְרֵאוּ, אִם תִּכְלְכְלוּהוּ בְּמִסְרִית  
רַבָּה, יִכָּה שָׂרֵשׁ וַיִּצְמַח וַיֵּעָשֶׂה פְּרִי.  
37 And behold, as the tree beginneth to grow, ye will say: Let us nourish it with great care, that it may get root, that it may grow up, and bring forth fruit unto us. And now behold, if ye nourish it with much care it will get root, and grow up, and bring forth fruit.
- אֲדָּ אִם תִּזְנִיחוּ אֶת הָעֵץ וְלֹא תִשְׁתִּי לוֹ לְבָבְכֶם  
לְכַלְכְּלוֹ, לֹא יִצְמַח לוֹ שָׂרֵשׁ, וּבְבוֹא חֹם  
הַשֶּׁמֶשׁ, אֲשֶׁר יִצְרֹב אוֹתוֹ, יִיבֹשׁ הָעֵץ, מֵאֵין  
לוֹ שָׂרֵשׁ. אֲזִי תַעֲקְרוּהוּ וְתִשְׁלִיכוּהוּ מִכֶּם.  
38 But if ye neglect the tree, and take no thought for its nourishment, behold it will not get any root; and when the heat of the sun cometh and scorched it, because it hath no root it withers away, and ye pluck it up and cast it out.
- וְהִנֵּה, אֵין זֹאת כִּי הַזֶּרַע לֹא הָיָה טוֹב,  
וְאִף לֹא כִּי יִצְמִיחַ בְּאוֹשִׁים; כִּי אִם מִפְּנֵי  
צָחִיחַ אֲדָמַתְכֶם, וְכִי אֶת עֵצְכֶם לֹא תִכְלְכְלוּ,  
לֹא יוֹכֵל לְהִיּוֹת לָכֶם פְּרִי.  
39 Now, this is not because the seed was not good, neither is it because the fruit thereof would not be desirable; but it is because your ground is barren, and ye will not nourish the tree, therefore ye cannot have the fruit thereof.



- 40 And thus, if ye will not nourish the word, looking forward with an eye of faith to the fruit thereof, ye can never pluck of the fruit of the tree of life.
- אִךְ, אִם לֹא תִכְלְלוּ אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים, בְּעוֹדְכֶם מִצַּפִּים בְּמַבְט אֱמוּנָה אֶל פְּרִי, לֹא תִוָּכְלוּ לְעוֹלָם לְקַטֹּף מִפְּרֵי עֵץ הַחַיִּים.
- 41 But if ye will nourish the word, yea, nourish the tree as it beginneth to grow, by your faith with great diligence, and with patience, looking forward to the fruit thereof, it shall take root; and behold it shall be a tree springing up unto everlasting life.
- אִךְ אִם תִּכְלְלוּ אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים, אַכּוּ, אִם תִּכְלְלוּ אֶת הָעֵץ בְּהַחֲלוֹ לְצִמּוֹת, בְּשִׂקְיָה רַבָּה בְּאֶרְץ רֵיחַ בְּאֱמוּנוֹתְכֶם, בְּעוֹדְכֶם מִצַּפִּים אֶל פְּרִי, הוּא יִכֶּה שָׂרֵשׁ וְהָיָה יְהִיָּה עֵץ הַצֹּמַח אֱלֵי חַיֵּי עוֹלָם.
- 42 And because of your diligence and your faith and your patience with the word in nourishing it, that it may take root in you, behold, by and by ye shall pluck the fruit thereof, which is most precious, which is sweet above all that is sweet, and which is white above all that is white, yea, and pure above all that is pure; and ye shall feast upon this fruit even until ye are filled, that ye hunger not, neither shall ye thirst.
- וְיַעַן אֲשֶׁר כָּלְכַלְתֶּם אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים בְּשִׂקְיָדְתְּכֶם, בְּאֱמוּנוֹתְכֶם וּבְאֶרְץ רֵיחַ, לְמַעַן יִשְׂרִישׁ בְּכֶם, הִנֵּה, לֹא יִרְחַק יוֹם אֲסִיף פְּרִי; וּפְרִי יִקָּר מִכָּל, מִתּוֹק מִכָּל מִתְּקָה, וְנָּךְ מִכָּל זֶה וְטָהוֹר מִכָּל טָהוֹר; וּבִפְרֵי הַזֶּה תִּתְעַנְּגוּ עַד אֲשֶׁר תִּשְׂבְּעוּ וְלֹא תִרְעָבוּ, אִךְ לֹא תִצְמָאוּ.
- 43 Then, my brethren, ye shall reap the rewards of your faith, and your diligence, and patience, and long-suffering, waiting for the tree to bring forth fruit unto you.
- אֲנִי, אַחֵי, תִקְצְרוּ אֶת גְּמוּל אֱמוּנוֹתְכֶם וּשְׂקִידְתְּכֶם, סְבִלְנוֹתְכֶם וְאֶרְץ רֵיחַ, כְּאֲשֶׁר יַחֲלֶתֶם לְפָרִי הָעֵץ.

## לִג

## 33

- 1 Now after Alma had spoken these words, they sent forth unto him desiring to know whether they should believe in one God, that they might obtain this fruit of which he had spoken, or how they should plant the seed, or the word of which he had spoken, which he said must be planted in their hearts; or in what manner they should begin to exercise their faith.
- וְהָיָה כְּדַבֵּר עֲלֵמָא אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה הִבִּיאוּ הָאֲנָשִׁים אֶת שְׁאֲלָתָם לִפְנֵי, אִם עֲלֵיהֶם לְהֵאֱמִין בְּאֱלֹהִים אֶחָד לְמַעַן יִזְכוּ בְּפְרִי זֶה אֲשֶׁר עָלָיו דְּבַר, וְכִיצַד יִזְרְעוּ אֶת הַזֶּרַע, אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים אֲשֶׁר עַל אוֹדוֹתָיו דְּבַר, וְאָמַר כִּי עֲלֵיהֶם לִזְרְעוּ בְּלִבָּם, וּבְאִזְנָה אָפוֹן יַחֲלוּ לַפְעַל בְּאֱמוּנוֹתָם.
- 2 And Alma said unto them: Behold, ye have said that ye could not worship your God because ye are cast out of your synagogues. But behold, I say unto you, if ye suppose that ye cannot worship God, ye do greatly err, and ye ought to search the scriptures; if ye suppose that they have taught you this, ye do not understand them.
- וְאָמַר עֲלֵמָא אֲלֵיהֶם: הִנֵּה אֲמַרְתֶּם כִּי אֵינְכֶם יְכוּלִים לְעַבֵּד אֶת אֱלֹהֵיכֶם כִּי גִרְשִׁיתֶם מִבְּתֵי כְּנִסְיֹתֵיכֶם; וְהִנֵּנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם כִּי אִם סוֹבְרִים אַתֶּם כִּי אֵינְכֶם יְכוּלִים לְעַבֵּד אֶת אֱלֹהִים, טְעוֹת גְּדוֹלָה בְּיַדְכֶם, וְכִי עֲלֵיכֶם לַחְקֹר בְּכִתְבֵי הַקֶּדֶשׁ; אִם נִרְאָה בְּעֵינֵיכֶם כִּי כְּדָבָר הַזֶּה יִלְמְדוּכֶם, אֵינְכֶם מְבִינִים אוֹתָם.
- 3 Do ye remember to have read what Zenos, the prophet of old, has said concerning prayer or worship?
- הַזּוֹכְרִים אַתֶּם כִּי קִרְאתֶם אֶת דְּבָרֵי זֵנוֹס הַנְּבִיא הַקֹּדֶמון עַל תְּפִלָּה וְעַבְדוּת אֱלֹהִים?
- 4 For he said: Thou art merciful, O God, for thou hast heard my prayer, even when I was in the wilderness; yea, thou wast merciful when I prayed concerning those who were mine enemies, and thou didst turn them to me.
- וְכֵן הוּא אָמַר: רַחוּם אַתָּה, אֱלֹהִים, כִּי שָׁמַעְתָּ תְּפִלָּתִי בְּהִיְוִתִי בַּמִּדְבָּר; רַחוּם הָיִיתָ בְּהִתְפַּלְלִי אֵלַי עַל אוֹיְבֵי וְאֵתָה הַשִּׁיבוֹת אוֹתָם אֵלַי.

- 5 Yea, O God, and thou wast merciful unto me when I did cry unto thee in my field; when I did cry unto thee in my prayer, and thou didst hear me.
- אֱלֹהִים, אַף רַחוּם הָיִיתָ אֵלַי בְּקִרְאִי  
אֵלֶיךָ בְּשִׂדְדָה, בְּקִרְאִי אֵלֶיךָ בַּתְּפִלָּתִי,  
וְאַתָּה שָׁמַעְתָּנִי.
- 6 And again, O God, when I did turn to my house thou didst hear me in my prayer.
- וְעוֹד: אֱלֹהִים, בְּפָנוּתִי אֶל בֵּיתִי, שָׁמַעְתָּנִי  
בַּתְּפִלָּתִי.
- 7 And when I did turn unto my closet, O Lord, and prayed unto thee, thou didst hear me.
- וּבְפָנוּתִי אֶל חֲדָרִי, בַּתְּפִלָּתִי אֵלֶיךָ,  
יְהוָה, שָׁמַעְתָּנִי.
- 8 Yea, thou art merciful unto thy children when they cry unto thee, to be heard of thee and not of men, and thou wilt hear them.
- אָכֵן, רַחוּם אַתָּה עִם בְּנֵיךָ בְּשׁוֹעָתָם אֵלֶיךָ, לְמַעַן  
תִּשְׁמָעֵם אַתָּה וְלֹא אָדָם, וְאַתָּה שָׁמוֹעַ תִּשְׁמָעֵם.
- 9 Yea, O God, thou hast been merciful unto me, and heard my cries in the midst of thy congregations.
- אֱלֹהִים, רַחוּם הָיִיתָ עִמָּדִי וְאַתָּה שׁוֹעָתִי בְּקִרְבִּי  
מִקְהָלֶיךָ אָכֵן שָׁמַעְתָּ.
- 10 Yea, and thou hast also heard me when I have been cast out and have been despised by mine enemies; yea, thou didst hear my cries, and wast angry with mine enemies, and thou didst visit them in thine anger with speedy destruction.
- אַף שָׁמַעְתָּנִי בְּעֵת הַדִּיחוּנִי אוֹיְבֵי וּבְבוֹזֵם לִי.  
אָכֵן, שָׁמַעְתָּ שׁוֹעוֹתַי וְרִגְזוֹתַי עַל שׁוֹנְאֵי,  
וּבְחֶמְדָּךְ פָּקַדְתָּם בְּכָלִיוֹן מְהִיר.
- 11 And thou didst hear me because of mine afflictions and my sincerity; and it is because of thy Son that thou hast been thus merciful unto me, therefore I will cry unto thee in all mine afflictions, for in thee is my joy; for thou hast turned thy judgments away from me, because of thy Son.
- אָכֵן, שָׁמַעְתָּ אוֹתִי מִפְּנֵי יְסוּרֵי וּמִפְּנֵי תָם לְבִי;  
וְכֹה רַחֲמִיתָנִי מִפְּנֵי בְנֶךָ. לְכֹן אֶקְרָא אֵלֶיךָ בְּכָל  
תְּלָאוֹתַי כִּי בְּךָ שְׂמִינִי; כִּי הִסְרָתָּ מִמֶּנִּי אֶת  
שְׁפָטֶיךָ מִפְּנֵי בְנֶךָ.
- 12 And now Alma said unto them: Do ye believe those scriptures which have been written by them of old?
- וְאַמֵּר אֱלִיהֶם עַלְמָא: הֲתֵאֱמִינוּ בְּכַתְבֵּי הַקְדָּשׁ  
הָהֵם, אֲשֶׁר כָּתְבוּם אַנְשֵׁי קְדָם?
- 13 Behold, if ye do, ye must believe what Zenos said; for, behold he said: Thou hast turned away thy judgments because of thy Son.
- הִנֵּה, אִם תֵּאֱמִינוּ, אָכֵן תֵּאֱמִינוּ בְּדִבְרֵי זֵנוֹס אֲשֶׁר  
אָמַר: הִסְרָתָּ מִמֶּנִּי אֶת שְׁפָטֶיךָ מִפְּנֵי בְנֶךָ.
- 14 Now behold, my brethren, I would ask if ye have read the scriptures? If ye have, how can ye disbelieve on the Son of God?
- וְעַתָּה, אַחֵי, אֲשַׁאלְכֶם אִם קִרְאתֶם אֶת כְּתָבֵי  
הַקְדָּשׁ. אִם אֲמַנֶּם קִרְאתֶם, אֵיכָכָה תוֹכְלוּ  
לְכַפֵּר בְּבֶן אֱלֹהִים?
- 15 For it is not written that Zenos alone spake of these things, but Zenock also spake of these things—
- הֵן אֵין כָּתוּב כִּי זֵנוֹס לְבַדּוֹ דִּבֶּר עַל הַדְּבָרִים  
הָאֵלֶּה, כִּי גַם זֵנוֹק דִּבֶּר עֲלֵיהֶם.
- 16 For behold, he said: Thou art angry, O Lord, with this people, because they will not understand thy mercies which thou hast bestowed upon them because of thy Son.
- וְהוּא אָמַר: כְּעֵסֶתָ עַל הָאֲנָשִׁים הָאֵלֶּה, יְהוָה,  
כִּי לֹא הִבִּינוּ אֶת רַחֲמֶיךָ אֲשֶׁר הֶעֱנַקְתָּ לָהֶם  
מִפְּנֵי בְנֶךָ.
- 17 And now, my brethren, ye see that a second prophet of old has testified of the Son of God, and because the people would not understand his words they stoned him to death.
- וְכֹה רוֹאִים אַתֶּם, אַחֵי, נָבִיא שֵׁנִי אֲשֶׁר מִקְדָּם  
הִמְעִיד עַל בֶּן אֱלֹהִים, וְיַעַן אֲשֶׁר סָרְבוּ הָאֲנָשִׁים  
לְהִבִּין אֶת דִּבְרָיו, רָגְמוּהוּ בְּאֲבָנִים עַד מוֹת.

## עלמא לג:יח-לד:ב

- 18 But behold, this is not all; these are not the only ones who have spoken concerning the Son of God.
- 19 Behold, he was spoken of by Moses; yea, and behold a type was raised up in the wilderness, that whosoever would look upon it might live. And many did look and live.
- 20 But few understood the meaning of those things, and this because of the hardness of their hearts. But there were many who were so hardened that they would not look, therefore they perished. Now the reason they would not look is because they did not believe that it would heal them.
- 21 O my brethren, if ye could be healed by merely casting about your eyes that ye might be healed, would ye not behold quickly, or would ye rather harden your hearts in unbelief, and be slothful, that ye would not cast about your eyes, that ye might perish?
- 22 If so, wo shall come upon you; but if not so, then cast about your eyes and begin to believe in the Son of God, that he will come to redeem his people, and that he shall suffer and die to atone for their sins; and that he shall rise again from the dead, which shall bring to pass the resurrection, that all men shall stand before him, to be judged at the last and judgment day, according to their works.
- 23 And now, my brethren, I desire that ye shall plant this word in your hearts, and as it beginneth to swell even so nourish it by your faith. And behold, it will become a tree, springing up in you unto everlasting life. And then may God grant unto you that your burdens may be light, through the joy of his Son. And even all this can ye do if ye will. Amen.

וְאִין זֹאת הַכֹּל; לֹא הֵם לְבָדִם דִּבְרוּ עַל אוֹדוֹת בֶּן אֱלֹהִים.

הוּא מֹשֶׁה דִּבֶּר עָלָיו. אַכֵּן, אוֹת הוּקַם בְּמִדְבָּר אֲשֶׁר כָּל הַמִּבְטִי אֵלָיו יִחְיֶה; וְרַבִּים הִבִּיטוּ וְחָיוּ.

וְאוֹלָם מַעֲשִׂים הִבִּינוּ אֶת מִשְׁמַע הַדְּבָרִים הָהֵם, וְזֹאת מִפְּנֵי קָשִׁי לְבָבָם; אִף רַבִּים הִקְשׁוּ אֶת לִבָּם עַד כִּי לֹא אָבוּ לְהִבְטִי וְלָכֵן אָבְדוּ. הֵם לֹא אָבוּ לְהִבְטִי כִּי לֹא הֶאֱמִינוּ כִּי זֶה יִרְפָּאֵם.

אֲחִי, אֱלֹו רָפָא לָכֶם עַל יְדֵי נְשִׂיאת עֵינֵיכֶם בְּלִבָּד, בְּעֵבֹר תִּרְפָּאוּ, הֲאֵם לֹא הֵייתֶם חֲשִׁים לְהִבְטִי? אוֹ, לְעֲמַת זֹאת, הֲאֵם הֵייתֶם מְקַשִּׁים אֶת לְבָבְכֶם בְּחֹסֶר אֱמוּנָה וּמִתְרַפִּים לְשֹׂאת אֶת עֵינֵיכֶם לְמַעַן תִּאבְדוּ?

אִם כֵּן, אוֹי לָכֶם. וְאִם לֹא כֵן, שְׂאוּ עֵינֵיכֶם וְהִחֲלוּ לְהֶאֱמִין בֶּן אֱלֹהִים, כִּי יָבוֹא לְגָאֵל אֶת עַמּוֹ, וְכִי יִסְבֹּל וְיָמוּת לְמַעַן כִּפֹּר עַל חַטָּאתֵיהֶם, וְכִי יֵשׁוּב וְיָקוּם מִן הַמֵּתִים, וּבִזְאת יָבִיא אֶת תְּחִילַת הַמֵּתִים לְמַעַן יַעֲמִדוּ קֹדֶם לְבִן הָאָדָם לְפָנָיו, לְהִשְׁפֹּט בְּיוֹם הַחֲרוֹן, יוֹם הַדִּין, אִישׁ כְּפִי מַעֲשָׂיו.

וְעַתָּה, אֲחִי, חֲפְצִי כִּי תִזְרְעוּ אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים זֶה בְּלִבְבְּכֶם וּבְהִחֲלוֹ לְתַפֹּחַ בְּכָל־לִוְהוֹ בְּאַמּוֹנִיתְכֶם. וְהִנֵּה, הוּא יִהְיֶה לְעֵץ וְיִצְמַח בְּכֶם אֱלִי חַי עוֹלָם. וְהִי רְצוֹן כִּי יַעֲתִיר לָכֶם אֱלֹהִים הַקָּלֵת מִשְׁאָכְכֶם עַל יְדֵי הַשְׂמִיחָה בְּבָנוּ. אַכֵּן, אִם תִּרְצוּ, תוּכְלוּ לַעֲשׂוֹת כָּל זֹאת. אָמֵן.

## לד

## 34

- 1 And now it came to pass that after Alma had spoken these words unto them he sat down upon the ground, and Amulek arose and began to teach them, saying:
- 2 My brethren, I think that it is impossible that ye should be ignorant of the things which have been spoken concerning the coming of Christ, who is taught by us to be the Son of God; yea, I know that these things were taught unto you bountifully before your dissension from among us.

סְבוּרָנִי, אֲחִי, כִּי לֹא נָתַן כִּי לֹא תִדְעוּ עַל הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר נֶאֱמָרוּ עַל אוֹדוֹת בּוֹא הַמָּשִׁיחַ, אֲשֶׁר אֲנַחְנוּ מְלַמְּדִים כִּי בֶן אֱלֹהִים הוּא; אַכֵּן, אֲנִי יוֹדֵעַ כִּי לְמַדְתֶּם אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה רַבּוֹת לְפָנַי פְּרִישְׁתֶּכֶם מִקִּרְבָּנוּ.

- 3 And as ye have desired of my beloved brother that he should make known unto you what ye should do, because of your afflictions; and he hath spoken somewhat unto you to prepare your minds; yea, and he hath exhorted you unto faith and to patience—
- וְכַאֲשֶׁר בְּקִשְׁתֶּם מֵאֲחִי הָאָהוּב לְהוֹדִיעֲכֶם מָה עָלֵיכֶם לַעֲשׂוֹת מִפְּנֵי צָרוֹתֵיכֶם, הוּא דִּבֶּר אֲלֵיכֶם מְעַט, לְהַכִּין אֶת דַּעְתְּכֶם וּלְהַזְהִירְכֶם כִּי תִתְאַזְרוּ בְּאִמּוּנָה וּבְאַרְף רִוּחַ.
- 4 Yea, even that ye would have so much faith as even to plant the word in your hearts, that ye may try the experiment of its goodness.
- וְזֹאת לְמַעַן תִּרְבֶּה אִמּוּנַתְכֶם עַד כִּי תִצְמִיחוּ אֶת דִּבְרֵי אֱלֹהִים בְּלִבְבְּכֶם, לְנִסּוֹת אֶת טוֹבוֹ בְּנִסּוּי.
- 5 And we have beheld that the great question which is in your minds is whether the word be in the Son of God, or whether there shall be no Christ.
- וְאַנְחֵנוּ רָאִינוּ כִּי הַשְׁאֵלָה הַגְּדוֹלָה אֲשֶׁר בְּדַעְתְּכֶם, הִיא אִם דִּבְרֵי אֱלֹהִים מְצוּי בְּכֵנוּ, אוֹ, אִם אַכֵּן לֹא יִהְיֶה כָּל מְשִׁיחַ.
- 6 And ye also beheld that my brother has proved unto you, in many instances, that the word is in Christ unto salvation.
- אֲףִי רָאִיתֶם כִּי הוֹכִיחַ לָכֶם אֲחִי בְּאַפְּנֵי רַבִּים, כִּי דִבְרֵי אֱלֹהִים הוּא בְּמִשְׁיחַ לְמַעַן יִשְׁוּעָה.
- 7 My brother has called upon the words of Zenos, that redemption cometh through the Son of God, and also upon the words of Zenock; and also he has appealed unto Moses, to prove that these things are true.
- אֲחִי הִסְתַּמֵּךְ עַל דְּבָרֵי זֵנוֹס כִּי גְאֻלָּה בָּאָה עַל יְדֵי בֶן אֱלֹהִים, וְגַם עַל דְּבָרֵי זֵנוֹק, וְאֲףִי הִסְתַּמֵּךְ עַל מֹשֶׁה לְהוֹכִיחַ כִּי הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה אֱמֶת הֵמָּה.
- 8 And now, behold, I will testify unto you of myself that these things are true. Behold, I say unto you, that I do know that Christ shall come among the children of men, to take upon him the transgressions of his people, and that he shall atone for the sins of the world; for the Lord God hath spoken it.
- וְעַתָּה, אֲנִי עֹצְמִי מֵעֵד לִפְנֵיכֶם כִּי הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה אֱמֶת. הִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם כִּי יוֹדַעְתִּי אֲנִי כִּי יָבוֹא הַמְּשִׁיחַ בְּקֶרֶב בְּנֵי הָאָדָם, לְקַבֵּל עָלָיו אֶת פְּשָׁעֵי עַמּוֹ, וְכִי הוּא יִכְפֹּר עַל חַטָּאֵי הָעוֹלָם, כִּי יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים דִּבֶּר זֹאת.
- 9 For it is expedient that an atonement should be made; for according to the great plan of the Eternal God there must be an atonement made, or else all mankind must unavoidably perish; yea, all are hardened; yea, all are fallen and are lost, and must perish except it be through the atonement which it is expedient should be made.
- כִּי הֶכְרַח כִּי תַעֲשֶׂה כְּפָרָה; כִּי עַל פִּי הַתְּכַנִּית הַגְּדוֹלָה אֲשֶׁר לֵאלֹהֵי הָעוֹלָמִים צְרִיכָה לְהַעֲשׂוֹת כְּפָרָה. וְלֹא, אִין מָנוֹס כִּי תֵאבֵד כָּל הָאֲנוּשׁוֹת; כִּי הַכֹּל מְקֻשִּׁים אֶת לָבָם; אַכֵּן, הַכֹּל כּוֹשָׁלִים וְאוֹבְדִים, וְגוֹרְלָם חֲרוּץ לְהִשָּׁחַת, אֲלֹא אִם בְּכֵן תַעֲשֶׂה כְּפָרָה אֲשֶׁר הֶכְרַח כִּי תַעֲשֶׂה.
- 10 For it is expedient that there should be a great and last sacrifice; yea, not a sacrifice of man, neither of beast, neither of any manner of fowl; for it shall not be a human sacrifice; but it must be an infinite and eternal sacrifice.
- יַעַן אֲשֶׁר רָאִי כִּי יִהְיֶה קֶרְבֵּן גָּדוֹל וְאַחֲרוֹן; אַכֵּן, לֹא קֶרְבֵּן אָדָם, וְלֹא קֶרְבֵּן בְּהֵמָה, וְאֲףִי לֹא מִין עוֹף כְּלָשְׁהוּ; וְלֹא יִהְיֶה זֶה קֶרְבֵּן אָנוּשׁ, כִּי עַל הַקֶּרְבֵּן הַזֶּה לְהִיּוֹת מַחְלָט וְנִצָּחִי.
- 11 Now there is not any man that can sacrifice his own blood which will atone for the sins of another. Now, if a man murdereth, behold will our law, which is just, take the life of his brother? I say unto you, Nay.
- וְאִין אָדָם יָכוֹל לְהַקְרִיב אֶת דָּם עֲצָמוֹ לְכַפֵּר עַל חַטָּאֵי זֻלָּתוֹ. וְהִנֵּה אִם יִרְצַח אִישׁ אֶת רֵעֵהוּ, הִיּוֹמַת אֲחִי הָרוֹצֵחַ עַל פִּי חֻקֵּנוּ אֲשֶׁר יִשְׁרִים הֵם? אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, לֹא!
- 12 But the law requireth the life of him who hath murdered; therefore there can be nothing which is short of an infinite atonement which will suffice for the sins of the world.
- כִּי הַחֹק דּוֹרֵשׁ אֶת חַיֵּי הָרוֹצֵחַ; לָכֵן אִין דְּבָר אֲשֶׁר הוּא פָחוֹת מִכְּפָרָה מְחַלָּטָה, אֲשֶׁר יִסְפִּיק עֲבוֹר חַטָּאֵי הָעוֹלָם.

- 13 Therefore, it is expedient that there should be a great and last sacrifice; and then shall there be, or it is expedient there should be, a stop to the shedding of blood; then shall the law of Moses be fulfilled; yea, it shall be all fulfilled, every jot and tittle, and none shall have passed away.
- 14 And behold, this is the whole meaning of the law, every whit pointing to that great and last sacrifice; and that great and last sacrifice will be the Son of God, yea, infinite and eternal.
- 15 And thus he shall bring salvation to all those who shall believe on his name; this being the intent of this last sacrifice, to bring about the bowels of mercy, which overpowereth justice, and bringeth about means unto men that they may have faith unto repentance.
- 16 And thus mercy can satisfy the demands of justice, and encircles them in the arms of safety, while he that exercises no faith unto repentance is exposed to the whole law of the demands of justice; therefore only unto him that has faith unto repentance is brought about the great and eternal plan of redemption.
- 17 Therefore may God grant unto you, my brethren, that ye may begin to exercise your faith unto repentance, that ye begin to call upon his holy name, that he would have mercy upon you;
- 18 Yea, cry unto him for mercy; for he is mighty to save.
- 19 Yea, humble yourselves, and continue in prayer unto him.
- 20 Cry unto him when ye are in your fields, yea, over all your flocks.
- 21 Cry unto him in your houses, yea, over all your household, both morning, mid-day, and evening.
- 22 Yea, cry unto him against the power of your enemies.
- 23 Yea, cry unto him against the devil, who is an enemy to all righteousness.
- 24 Cry unto him over the crops of your fields, that ye may prosper in them.
- 25 Cry over the flocks of your fields, that they may increase.
- עַל כֵּן הֵכָרַח אֲשֶׁר יִהְיֶה קִרְבָּן גָּדוֹל אַחֲרוֹן; אִזְּ  
יִהְיֶה, אִזְּ רָאוּי כִּי יִהְיֶה, הַפֶּסֶק לְשִׁפְכֵת דָּמִים.  
אִזְּ תִּקְוִים תּוֹרַת מֹשֶׁה; אֲכֹן, אִזְּ תִּקְוִים כָּלָה, כָּל  
אוֹת וּפְרָט אֲשֶׁר בָּהּ, וְאִף אֶחָד מֵהֶם לֹא יַעֲבֹר.
- הִנֵּה, זֶה כָּל מִשְׁמַע הַתּוֹרָה, כָּל פְּרָט שְׂבָה  
מִכֹּהֵן אֶל הַקִּרְבָּן הַגָּדוֹל וְהָאַחֲרוֹן הַהוּא;  
וְהַקִּרְבָּן הַגָּדוֹל וְהָאַחֲרוֹן הַהוּא יִהְיֶה בֶן  
אֱלֹהִים, מִחֻלָּט וְנִצְחִי.
- וְכֵן יָבִיא יְשׁוּעָה לְכָל אֲשֶׁר יֵאֱמִינוּ בִּשְׁמוֹ;  
זֹאת כְּוִנַּת הַקִּרְבָּן הָאַחֲרוֹן הַזֶּה, לְהָבִיא מְלֵא  
רַחֲמִים, הַמִּתְגַּבְּרִים עַל מִדַּת הַדִּין וּמַעֲנִיקִים  
לְבְנֵי הָאָדָם אֶת הַדֶּרֶךְ לַפְּעַל בְּאַמּוֹנָה לְשֵׁם  
תְּשׁוּבָה מִחֻטָּא.
- כֹּה יִכּוֹלִים רַחֲמִים לְסַפֵּק אֶת תְּבִיעוֹת מִדַּת הַדִּין  
וּלְהַקִּיפם בְּזִרְעוֹת בְּטָחוֹן, בְּעוֹד הָאִישׁ אֲשֶׁר  
אֵינוֹ פּוֹעֵל בְּאַמּוֹנָה לְשֵׁם תְּשׁוּבָה חֲשׂוֹף לְכָל  
חֹק תְּבִיעַת הַדִּין; לְכֵן מִפְּעֻלַּת תְּכֵנִית הַגָּאֻלָּה  
הַגָּדוֹלָה וְהַנִּצְחִית רַק לְמֵאֲמִין לְשֵׁם תְּשׁוּבָה.
- לְכֵן, אַחֵי, יִהְיֶה רְצוֹנוֹ כִּי יִזְכְּכֶם אֱלֹהִים לַפְּעַל  
בְּאַמּוֹנָה לְשֵׁם תְּשׁוּבָה, לְמַעַן תִּקְרְאוּ בִּשְׁמוֹ,  
לְמַעַן יִרְחַמְכֶם.
- אֲכֹן, קִרְאוּ אֵלָיו לְרַחֲמִים, כִּי הוּא גִבּוֹר לְהוֹשִׁיעַ.
- אֲכֹן, הִכְנַעו וְהִתְמַיְדוּ בַּתְּפִלָּה אֵלָיו.
- קִרְאוּ אֵלָיו בְּהִיּוֹתְכֶם בַּשָּׂדֶה, אֲכֹן, בְּעַד  
כָּל צֹאנְכֶם.
- קִרְאוּ אֵלָיו בְּבֵיתְכֶם, בְּעַד כָּל בְּנֵי בֵיתְכֶם,  
בֶּקֶר, צִהָרִים וָעָרֶב.
- אֲכֹן, קִרְאוּ אֵלָיו, כְּנִגַּד כַּח אוֹיְבֵיכֶם.
- אֲכֹן, קִרְאוּ אֵלָיו כְּנִגַּד הַשָּׂטָן, אֲשֶׁר הוּא אוֹיֵב  
כָּל צָדִיקָה.
- קִרְאוּ אֵלָיו בְּעַד תְּבוּאֹת שְׂדוֹתֵיכֶם, לְמַעַן  
תִּצְלִיחוּ בָהֶם.
- קִרְאוּ בְּעַד הַצֹּאן אֲשֶׁר בְּשְׂדוֹתֵיכֶם, לְמַעַן יִרְבּוּ.



- 26 ואין זאת הכל עליכם לשפך את נפשכם בהיותכם בחדריכם, במסתוריכם וביערותיכם. But this is not all; ye must pour out your souls in your closets, and your secret places, and in your wilderness.
- 27 ובעת אשר אינכם קוראים אל יהוה, יהי לבכם מלא, ותשפכוהו תמיד בתפלה אליו למען שלומכם, ולמען שלום אלה אשר סביבכם. Yea, and when you do not cry unto the Lord, let your hearts be full, drawn out in prayer unto him continually for your welfare, and also for the welfare of those who are around you.
- 28 ועתה, אחי האהובים, אני אומר לכם, אל תחשבו כי זה הכל, כי אחר עשותיכם כל זאת, אם תסירו את האביון ואת העירם מעליכם, ואת החולה ואת המנגע לא תבקרו, ולא תחלקו לנצרכים מקנינכם, בעוד יש לכם, אני אומר לכם, אם לא תעשו דבר מכל אלה, לשוא תפלתכם, ולא תועילכם מאומה, והנכם כחנפים המכחשים באמונה. And now behold, my beloved brethren, I say unto you, do not suppose that this is all; for after ye have done all these things, if ye turn away the needy, and the naked, and visit not the sick and afflicted, and impart of your substance, if ye have, to those who stand in need—I say unto you, if ye do not any of these things, behold, your prayer is vain, and availeth you nothing, and ye are as hypocrites who do deny the faith.
- 29 לכן, אם לא תזכרו להיות אנשי חסד כסגים תהיו, אשר ישליכם הצורף, כי לא יצלחו לכל, ואשר ברגלים ירמסו. Therefore, if ye do not remember to be charitable, ye are as dross, which the refiners do cast out, (it being of no worth) and is trodden under foot of men.
- 30 ועתה, אחי, אחר אשר קבלתם עדויות כה רבות ונוכחתם כי כתבי הקדש מעידים על הדברים האלה, רצוני כי תבואו ותגישו פרי תשובה. And now, my brethren, I would that, after ye have received so many witnesses, seeing that the holy scriptures testify of these things, ye come forth and bring fruit unto repentance.
- 31 אכן, רצוני כי תבואו ולא תקשו עוד את לבבכם. כי הנה עתה היום והשעה לישועתכם; ולכן, אם תנחמו מחטאכם ולא תקשו את לבבכם, מיד תפעל לגביכם תכנית הגאולה הגדולה. Yea, I would that ye would come forth and harden not your hearts any longer; for behold, now is the time and the day of your salvation; and therefore, if ye will repent and harden not your hearts, immediately shall the great plan of redemption be brought about unto you.
- 32 כי חיי העולם הזה הנם לבני האדם עת הכנה לקראת קבלת פני אלהים; אכן, יום חיי העולם הזה הוא היום אשר נועד לבני האדם לבצע את עמלם. For behold, this life is the time for men to prepare to meet God; yea, behold the day of this life is the day for men to perform their labors.
- 33 וכפי אשר אמרתי לכם, יען כי יש לכם עדויות כה רבות, אני מפציר בכם כי לא תדחו לקץ את יום תשובתכם; כי אחר יום חיים זה, הנתון לנו בעבור נתכונן לחיי עולם, אם לא נשפר את ימינו בעודנו בעולם הזה, יבוא ליל החשכה אשר לא נתן לעשות בו כל עבודה. And now, as I said unto you before, as ye have had so many witnesses, therefore, I beseech of you that ye do not procrastinate the day of your repentance until the end; for after this day of life, which is given us to prepare for eternity, behold, if we do not improve our time while in this life, then cometh the night of darkness wherein there can be no labor performed.
- 34 כי בבוא עליכם המשבר הנורא ההוא, לא תוכלו לומר: אני אנהם מרע, אני אשוב אל אלהי. אכן, אינכם יכולים לומר זאת; כי Ye cannot say, when ye are brought to that awful crisis, that I will repent, that I will return to my God. Nay, ye cannot say this; for that same spirit which doth possess your bodies at the time that ye go out of

## עֲלֵמָא לַד:לֵה-מֵא

לְאוֹתוֹ רוּחַ, הַשּׁוֹלֵט בְּגוֹפְכֶם בְּעֵת צַאתְכֶם  
מִחַיִּי הָעוֹלָם הַזֶּה, יִהְיֶה כַח שְׁלִטוֹן עַל גּוֹפְכֶם  
בְּעוֹלָם הַנֶּצַח הַהוּא.

this life, that same spirit will have power to possess your body in that eternal world.

כִּי אִם תִּדְחוּ אֶת תְּשׁוּבַתְכֶם עַד יוֹם מוֹתְכֶם  
הַפּוֹד הַפֶּד רוּחַ הַשְּׁטָן לְשִׁלְטוֹן עֲלֵיכֶם, וְחוֹתְמוֹ נָתַן  
בְּכֶם; לָכֵן רָחֶקָה מִכֶּם רוּחַ יְהוָה וְאֵין לָהּ  
מָקוֹם בְּתוֹכְכֶם, וְלִשְׁטָן יֵשׁ שְׁלִיטָה מְלָאָה  
עֲלֵיכֶם. זֹאת אַחֲרִית הָרָשָׁעִים.

35 For behold, if ye have procrastinated the day of your repentance even until death, behold, ye have become subjected to the spirit of the devil, and he doth seal you his; therefore, the Spirit of the Lord hath withdrawn from you, and hath no place in you, and the devil hath all power over you; and this is the final state of the wicked.

וְזֹאת יָדַעְתִּי, יַעַן אֲשֶׁר אָמַר יְהוָה כִּי אֵינִי  
שׁוֹכֵן בְּהִיכָלוֹת אֲשֶׁר אֵינִם קְדוֹשִׁים, כִּי אִם  
בְּלֵב צַדִּיקִים יֵשֶׁב; וְהוּא אָף אָמַר כִּי יֵשְׁבוּ  
הַצַּדִּיקִים בְּמַלְכוּתוֹ וְלֹא יֵצְאוּ עוֹד; וְכִי  
לְבוּשֵׁם הִלְבֵּן בְּדַם הַשֶּׁה.

36 And this I know, because the Lord hath said he dwelleth not in unholy temples, but in the hearts of the righteous doth he dwell; yea, and he has also said that the righteous shall sit down in his kingdom, to go no more out; but their garments should be made white through the blood of the Lamb.

וְעַתָּה, אַחֵי הָאֱהוּבִים, רְצוֹנִי כִּי תִזְכְּרוּ אֶת  
הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, וְכִי בִירְאֵת אֱלֹהִים תַּעֲמְלוּ  
לְהַקִּים אֶת יְשׁוּעַתְכֶם, וְכִי לֹא תִכְחָשׁוּ עוֹד  
בְּבוֹא הַמָּשִׁיחַ.

37 And now, my beloved brethren, I desire that ye should remember these things, and that ye should work out your salvation with fear before God, and that ye should no more deny the coming of Christ;

רְצוֹנִי כִּי לֹא תוֹסִיפוּ לָרִיב בְּרוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ, כִּי  
תִקְבְּלוּהָ, וְתִקְבְּלוּ עֲלֵיכֶם אֶת שֵׁם הַמָּשִׁיחַ;  
כִּי תִכְנְעוּ עַד עָפָר, וְתַעֲבֹדוּ אֶת אֱלֹהִים, בְּכָל  
מָקוֹם אֲשֶׁר תִּהְיוּ, בְּרוּחַ וּבִאֲמָת; כִּי תִהְיוּ  
בְּהוֹדְיָה לֹו מְדֵי יוֹם בְּיוֹמוֹ, עַל רֹב רַחֲמָיו  
וְשִׁפְעַת בְּרָכָתוֹ אֲשֶׁר הֵעֲתִיר עֲלֵיכֶם.

38 That ye contend no more against the Holy Ghost, but that ye receive it, and take upon you the name of Christ; that ye humble yourselves even to the dust, and worship God, in whatsoever place ye may be in, in spirit and in truth; and that ye live in thanksgiving daily, for the many mercies and blessings which he doth bestow upon you.

וְאֵנִי אֶף מְזַהֵר אֶתְכֶם, אַחֵי, כִּי תִשְׁמְרוּ  
לְהִתְפַּלֵּל תָּמִיד, לְבַל יִשָּׂה אֶתְכֶם הַשְּׁטָן מִן  
הַדֶּרֶךְ בְּמַדְוִיחוֹ, לְבַל יִגְבֵּר עֲלֵיכֶם וְתִהְיוּ  
מִשְׁעַבְדִּים לוֹ בְּיוֹם הָאֲחֵרוֹן, כִּי גָמוּל לֹא  
יִנְמַלְכֶם כָּל טוֹב.

39 Yea, and I also exhort you, my brethren, that ye be watchful unto prayer continually, that ye may not be led away by the temptations of the devil, that he may not overpower you, that ye may not become his subjects at the last day; for behold, he rewardeth you no good thing.

וְעַתָּה, אַחֵי הָאֱהוּבִים, אֶעֱזֹר אֶתְכֶם לְהִתְאַזָּר  
בְּאֶרֶץ רוּחַ, וְלִשְׁאֵת כָּל מִינֵי יְסוּרִים; אֲלֵ  
תִגְדְּפוּ אֶת הַמְּנַדִּים אֶתְכֶם עַל רֹב עֲנִיְכֶם, פֶּן  
תִּחְטְאוּ כְּמוֹתָם.

40 And now my beloved brethren, I would exhort you to have patience, and that ye bear with all manner of afflictions; that ye do not revile against those who do cast you out because of your exceeding poverty, lest ye become sinners like unto them;

כִּי תִהְיוּ סְבָלָנִים וְתִסְבְּלוּ אֶת יְסוּרֵיכֶם בְּתַקְוָה  
תְּקִיפָה כִּי יָבוֹא יוֹם וְבוֹ תִנּוּחוּ מִכָּל צָרוֹתֵיכֶם.

41 But that ye have patience, and bear with those afflictions, with a firm hope that ye shall one day rest from all your afflictions.

## לַה

## 35

- וְהָיָה בְּכָלֹת עֲמֹלֶק אֶת דְּבָרָיו, הֵם הִסְתַּלְּקוּ מִן הָהָמוֹן וַעֲבְרוּ אֶל אֶרֶץ יֶרְשׁוֹן.
- 1 Now it came to pass that after Amulek had made an end of these words, they withdrew themselves from the multitude and came over into the land of Jershon.
- וְאִי שְׂאָר עַמִּיתֵיהֶם, אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר הָסִיפוּ אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים לְזֹרְמִים, בָּאוּ אֶל אֶרֶץ יֶרְשׁוֹן.
- 2 Yea, and the rest of the brethren, after they had preached the word unto the Zoramites, also came over into the land of Jershon.
- אֲזַי הִתְקַבְּצוּ נְכַבְּדֵי הַזֹּרְמִים וְנוֹעְצוּ עַל אוֹדוֹת הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר הִגְדּוּ לָהֶם; וְהֵם כָּעָסוּ עַל דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים כִּי הוּא הִכְרִית אֶת תְּחֻבֹּלָתָם, וְלֹכֵן לֹא נִשְׁמָעוּ לוֹ.
- 3 And it came to pass that after the more popular part of the Zoramites had consulted together concerning the words which had been preached unto them, they were angry because of the word, for it did destroy their craft; therefore they would not hearken unto the words.
- וְהֵם שְׁלָחוּ וַאֲסָפוּ אֶת כָּל הָעָם מִכָּל הָאֶרֶץ, וְנוֹעְצוּ עִמָּם עַל הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר נֹאמְרוּ.
- 4 And they sent and gathered together throughout all the land all the people, and consulted with them concerning the words which had been spoken.
- וּמוֹשְׁלֵי הָעָם וְכֹהֲנָיו וּמוֹרְיוֹ הִסְתִּירוּ מֵהָעָם אֶת רְצוֹנָם וְכִנּוּתֵיהֶם; וְכֹף הֵם גָּלוּ בְּעֶרְמָה אֶת דַּעַת כָּל הָאֲנָשִׁים.
- 5 Now their rulers and their priests and their teachers did not let the people know concerning their desires; therefore they found out privily the minds of all the people.
- וְאַחֵר אֲשֶׁר גָּלוּ אֶת דַּעַת כָּל הָאֲנָשִׁים, הֵם גָּרְשׁוּ מִן הָאֶרֶץ אֶת כָּל אֲשֶׁר תָּמְכוּ בַּדְּבָרִי עֲלָמָא וְעַמִּיתָיו. רַבִּים הָיוּ הַמְּגֹרָשִׁים; וְאִי הֵם עָבְרוּ אֶל אֶרֶץ יֶרְשׁוֹן.
- 6 And it came to pass that after they had found out the minds of all the people, those who were in favor of the words which had been spoken by Alma and his brethren were cast out of the land; and they were many; and they came over also into the land of Jershon.
- וְעֲלָמָא וְעַמִּיתָיו שָׁמְשׁוּ לְפָנֵיהֶם.
- 7 And it came to pass that Alma and his brethren did minister unto them.
- וְעַם הַזֹּרְמִים כָּעָסוּ עַל אֲנָשֵׁי עֲמֹן אֲשֶׁר שָׁכְנוּ בְּאֶרֶץ יֶרְשׁוֹן. וּמוֹשֵׁל הַזֹּרְמִים הֶעֱלִיז, אֲשֶׁר הוּא אִישׁ רָשָׁע מְאֹד, שָׁלַח אֶת דְּבָרוֹ אֶל אֲנָשֵׁי עֲמֹן וּבִקֵּשׁ מֵהֶם לְגָרֵשׁ מֵאַרְצָם אֶת כָּל הַבָּאִים אֲלֵיהֶם מֵאֵת עֲמֹן.
- 8 Now the people of the Zoramites were angry with the people of Ammon who were in Jershon, and the chief ruler of the Zoramites, being a very wicked man, sent over unto the people of Ammon desiring them that they should cast out of their land all those who came over from them into their land.
- וְהוּא הִפִּיחַ עֲלֵיהֶם רַב אִיוִּמִּים, אִף הַדְּבָרִים לֹא הִפְחִידוּ אֶת אֲנָשֵׁי עֲמֹן וְהֵם לֹא גָרְשׁוּ אֶת הַזֹּרְמִים; וְהֵם קִבְּלוּ אֶת כָּל עֲנִיֵּיהֶם הַבָּאִים אֲלֵיהֶם, אִף כָּל־כֶּלֶס וְהַלְבִּישׁוּם וְנָתְנוּ לָהֶם אֲדָמוֹת לְנַחֲלָה וְסָפְקוּ לָהֶם אֶת צָרֵכֵיהֶם.
- 9 And he breathed out many threatenings against them. And now the people of Ammon did not fear their words; therefore they did not cast them out, but they did receive all the poor of the Zoramites that came over unto them; and they did nourish them, and did clothe them, and did give unto them lands for their inheritance; and they did administer unto them according to their wants.
- וְהַדְּבָר הֶעֱלָה אֶת חֲמַת הַזֹּרְמִים עַל אֲנָשֵׁי עֲמֹן וְהֵם הִחֲלוּ לְהִתְעַרֵּב בְּלִמְנִים וּלְהַעֲלוֹת גַּם בָּהֶם חֲמָה עֲלֵיהֶם.
- 10 Now this did stir up the Zoramites to anger against the people of Ammon, and they began to mix with the Lamanites and to stir them up also to anger against them.

## עֲלֵמָא לַה־יָא-לוֹא

- 11 And thus the Zoramites and the Lamanites began to make preparations for war against the people of Ammon, and also against the Nephites.
- 12 And thus ended the seventeenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.
- 13 And the people of Ammon departed out of the land of Jershon, and came over into the land of Melek, and gave place in the land of Jershon for the armies of the Nephites, that they might contend with the armies of the Lamanites and the armies of the Zoramites; and thus commenced a war betwixt the Lamanites and the Nephites, in the eighteenth year of the reign of the judges; and an account shall be given of their wars hereafter.
- 14 And Alma, and Ammon, and their brethren, and also the two sons of Alma returned to the land of Zarahemla, after having been instruments in the hands of God of bringing many of the Zoramites to repentance; and as many as were brought to repentance were driven out of their land; but they have lands for their inheritance in the land of Jershon, and they have taken up arms to defend themselves, and their wives, and children, and their lands.
- 15 Now Alma, being grieved for the iniquity of his people, yea for the wars, and the bloodsheds, and the contentions which were among them; and having been to declare the word, or sent to declare the word, among all the people in every city; and seeing that the hearts of the people began to wax hard, and that they began to be offended because of the strictness of the word, his heart was exceedingly sorrowful.
- 16 Therefore, he caused that his sons should be gathered together, that he might give unto them every one his charge, separately, concerning the things pertaining unto righteousness. And we have an account of his commandments, which he gave unto them according to his own record.

כַּה הִחִלוּ הַזּוֹרָמִיתִים וְהַלְמָנִיתִים לְהִתְכַּוֵּן לְמִלְחָמָה בְּאַנְשֵׁי עַמּוֹן וְכֵן בְּנִפְיִים.

וְכַה כָּלְתָה שְׁנַת שְׁבַע עָשָׂרָה לְשִׁטּוֹן הַשּׁוֹפְטִים בְּעַם נִפִּי.

וְאַנְשֵׁי עַמּוֹן יִצְאוּ מֵאַרְצָא יִרְשׁוֹן וּבָאוּ אֶל אֶרֶץ מֶלֶךְ. וְהֵם פָּנוּ מְקוֹם בְּאַרְצָא יִרְשׁוֹן לְחִילוֹת הַנִּפְיִים, לְהִלָּחֵם בְּחִילוֹת הַלְמָנִיתִים וּבְחִילוֹת הַזּוֹרָמִיתִים. כִּי הִחֲלָה מִלְחָמָה בֵּין הַלְמָנִיתִים וּבֵין הַנִּפְיִים בְּשָׁנַת שְ�מוֹנֶה עָשָׂרָה לְשִׁטּוֹן הַשּׁוֹפְטִים; וְיִתֵּר דְּבָרֵי הַמִּלְחָמוֹת בֵּינֵיהֶם כְּתוּבִים בְּהַמְשָׁךְ דְּבָרִים אֲלֵהָ.

וְעֲלֵמָא וְעַמּוֹן וְעַמִּיתֵיהֶם וְשְׁנֵי בְנֵי עֲלֵמָא שָׁבוּ אֶל אֶרֶץ זֶרַחֶמְלָא, אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר הָיוּ כְּלֵי שִׁרְתָּ בְּיַד אֱלֹהִים לְהָשִׁיב מִחֲטָא רַבִּים מִן הַזּוֹרָמִיתִים. וְכָל אֲשֶׁר שָׁבוּ מִחֲטָאֵיהֶם גִּרְשׁוּ מֵאַרְצָם; וְאוֹלָם יֵשׁ לָהֶם אֲדָמוֹת לְנַחֲלָה בְּאַרְצָא יִרְשׁוֹן; וְהֵם אָחֳזוּ בְּנִשְׁקָא לְהִגָּן עַל עַצְמָם וְעַל נְשׁוֹתֵיהֶם, וְעַל בְּנֵיהֶם וְעַל אֲדָמוֹתֵיהֶם.

וְעֲלֵמָא נִעְצֵב עַל עוֹן עַמּוֹן, עַל הַמִּלְחָמוֹת וְעַל שְׁפִיכַת הַדָּם וְעַל הַמְּרִיבוֹת אֲשֶׁר בְּקִרְבָּם; וְאַחֵר אֲשֶׁר בָּא לְהַשְׁמִיעַ אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים, אוֹ, אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר שָׁלַח לְהַשְׁמִיעַ בְּאַזְנֵי כָּל הָאָנָשִׁים בְּכָל עִיר, הִתְעַצֵּב מְאֹד אֶל לְבוֹ בְּרָאוֹתוֹ כִּי הִחֵל הָעָם לְהִקְשׁוֹת אֶת לְבוֹ וְכִי נִרְגַּז עַל חֲמַרְתָּ דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים.

לְכֵן הוּא אָסַף אֶת בְּנָיו, לְמַעַן יִפְקִיד כָּל אֶחָד וְאֶחָד מֵהֶם עַל מִשְׁמֶרְתּוֹ בְּדְבָרֵי צֶדֶק. וַיֵּשׁ עִמָּנוּ בְּכַתוּבִים דְּבָרֵי מִצְוֹתָיו אֲשֶׁר צִוָּם, אֲשֶׁר רָשַׁם בְּמוֹ יָדוֹ.

דְּבָרֵי עֲלֵמָא אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר אֶל בְּנוֹ הֵילְמָן, נִכְלָל בְּפָרְקִים לוֹ-לוֹ; אֶל בְּנוֹ שִׁבְלוֹן, נִכְלָל בְּפָרְקֵי לַח; וְאֶל בְּנוֹ קוֹרִיאַנְטוֹן, נִכְלָל בְּפָרְקִים לֹט-מֵב. (בְּעֶרְךָ 74 לְפָנֵי הַסְּפִירָה.)

לו

36

בְּנִי, הִסָּה אָזְן לְדְבָרֵי, כִּי נִשְׁבַּע אָנִי לָךְ כִּי אִם תִּשְׁמֹר אֶת מִצְוֹת אֱלֹהִים תִּצְלִיחַ בְּאַרְצֵךְ.

1 My son, give ear to my words; for I swear unto you, that inasmuch as ye shall keep the commandments of God ye shall prosper in the land.

*The words of Alma to his son Helaman, comprising chapters 36–37; his son Shiblon comprising chapter 38; and his son Corianton, comprising chapters 39–42. (About 74 B.C.)*

## עֲלָמָא לוֹב-יָא

- 2 I would that ye should do as I have done, in remembering the captivity of our fathers; for they were in bondage, and none could deliver them except it was the God of Abraham, and the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob; and he surely did deliver them in their afflictions.
- מִי יִתֵּן וְתַעֲשֶׂה כַּמַּעֲשִׂי וְתִזְכֹּר אֶת שְׁבִיט אֲבוֹתֵינוּ; כִּי הֵם הָיוּ מִשְׁעֲבָדִים וְאִף אֶחָד לֹא הָיָה יָכוֹל לְהַצִּילָם, כִּי אִם אֱלֹהֵי אֲבֹרָהֶם, אֱלֹהֵי יִצְחָק וְאֱלֹהֵי יַעֲקֹב. וְהוּא הֵצִל הַצִּילָם מִצָּרָתָם.
- 3 And now, O my son Helaman, behold, thou art in thy youth, and therefore, I beseech of thee that thou wilt hear my words and learn of me; for I do know that whosoever shall put their trust in God shall be supported in their trials, and their troubles, and their afflictions, and shall be lifted up at the last day.
- וְעַתָּה, בְּנִי הֵילָמֹן, עוֹדָךְ נַעַר, וְלָכֵן אֲנִי מִפְּצִיר בָּךְ כִּי תִשְׁמָע אֶת דְּבָרֵי וְתִלְמַד מִמֶּנִּי; כִּי יָדַעְתִּי אֲשֶׁר כָּל שֵׁם אֶת מִבְטָחוֹ בְּאֱלֹהִים, יִמָּצָא סֵעַד בְּשַׁעַת נִסְיוֹנוֹ וּבְצָרָתוֹ וּבִיסוּרָיו וְיִתְנַשֵּׂא בְיוֹם הָאַחֲרוֹן.
- 4 And I would not that ye think that I know of myself—not of the temporal but of the spiritual, not of the carnal mind but of God.
- אֵין רְצוֹנִי כִּי תַחֲשַׁב כִּי מִדַּעְתִּי נֹדַע לִי הַדָּבָר; אֵין יָדַעְתִּי בָאָה מִן הַגִּשְׁמִי, כִּי אִם מִן הָרוּחַ; לֹא מִן הַשִּׁכְל הַבָּשָׂרִי כִּי אִם מֵאֱלֹהִים.
- 5 Now, behold, I say unto you, if I had not been born of God I should not have known these things; but God has, by the mouth of his holy angel, made these things known unto me, not of any worthiness of myself.
- הַנִּי אֹמֵר לָךְ כִּי לֹאֵל נִולַדְתִּי מֵאֵת אֱלֹהִים לֹא הָיָה לִי לְדַעַת אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, אִךְ אֱלֹהִים הוֹדִיעַנִי אוֹתָם בְּפִי מִלְאָךְ קָדְשׁוֹ, וְלֹא בְזָכוֹת עֲצָמִי כָלָל.
- 6 For I went about with the sons of Mosiah, seeking to destroy the church of God; but behold, God sent his holy angel to stop us by the way.
- כִּי הִלַּכְתִּי עִם בְּנֵי מוֹשִׁיָּע, בְּבִקְשָׁנוּ לְאַבֵּד אֶת כְּנִסְיַת אֱלֹהִים. וְהִנֵּה שָׁלַח אֱלֹהִים אֶת מִלְאָךְ קָדְשׁוֹ לְעָצְרֵנוּ בַּדֶּרֶךְ.
- 7 And behold, he spake unto us, as it were the voice of thunder, and the whole earth did tremble beneath our feet; and we all fell to the earth, for the fear of the Lord came upon us.
- וְהִנֵּה, הוּא דִּבֶּר אֵלֵינוּ, וְקוֹלוֹ כְּקוֹל הָרָעַם וְכָל הָאָרֶץ רָעְדָה תַּחַת רַגְלֵינוּ. וְכָלֵנוּ נִפְלָנוּ אֶרְצָה מִפְּנֵי פַחַד יְהוָה אֲשֶׁר נָפַל עָלֵינוּ.
- 8 But behold, the voice said unto me: Arise. And I arose and stood up, and beheld the angel.
- וְהִנֵּה דִּבֶּר אֵלַי הַקּוֹל לֵאמֹר: קוּמָה! וְקָמְתִי וַרְאִיתִי אֶת הַמִּלְאָךְ.
- 9 And he said unto me: If thou wilt of thyself be destroyed, seek no more to destroy the church of God.
- וְהוּא אָמַר אֵלַי: אִם חָפְצָךְ הוּא לְאַבֵּד עַצְמָךְ, אַל תּוֹסֵף לְבַקֵּשׁ לְאַבֵּד אֶת כְּנִסְיַת אֱלֹהִים.
- 10 And it came to pass that I fell to the earth; and it was for the space of three days and three nights that I could not open my mouth, neither had I the use of my limbs.
- וְנִפְלַתִּי אֶרְצָה; וְלֹא יָכַלְתִּי לִפְתּוֹחַ אֶת פִּי שְׁלֹשָׁה יָמִים וּשְׁלֹשָׁה לַיְלוֹת, וְאִף לֹא לְהִזִּיז אֶת אֵיבְרֵי גּוּפִי.
- 11 And the angel spake more things unto me, which were heard by my brethren, but I did not hear them; for when I heard the words—If thou wilt be destroyed of thyself, seek no more to destroy the church of God—I was struck with such great fear and amazement lest perhaps I should be destroyed, that I fell to the earth and I did hear no more.
- וְהַמִּלְאָךְ הוֹסִיף לְדַבֵּר אֵלַי; וְעַמִּיתִי שָׁמְעוּ אֶת דְּבָרָיו, אִךְ אֲנִי לֹא שָׁמַעְתִּים, כִּי בְשִׁמְעִי אֶת הַמְּלִים: אִם חָפְצָךְ הוּא לְאַבֵּד עַצְמָךְ, אַל תּוֹסֵף לְבַקֵּשׁ לְאַבֵּד אֶת כְּנִסְיַת אֱלֹהִים, הִפְתִּי בַּפֶּה כֹּה עֹז וּבְהִלָּה כִּן אֲבַד, עַד כִּי נִפְלַתִּי אֶרְצָה וְלֹא שָׁמַעְתִּי עוֹד דָּבָר.



## עֲלָמָא לֹו־יֵב־כֵּב

- 12 עֲנוּי נֶצַח עֲנִיתִי, מִצּוֹקַת נַפְשִׁי רִבְתָּה מְכַל, וְהִכִּיתִי מִפְּנֵי כָּל חַטָּאִי.  
But I was racked with eternal torment, for my soul was harrowed up to the greatest degree and racked with all my sins.
- 13 אָכֵן, זָכַרְתִּי אֶת כָּל חַטָּאִי וְעֲוֹנוֹתִי, אֲשֶׁר מִפְּנֵיהֶם עֲנִיתִי בִּיסּוּרֵי שְׂאוּל; רָאִיתִי כִּי מִרְדִּיתִי בְּאֱלֹהֵי, וְלֹא שָׁמַרְתִּי אֶת מִצְוֹת קִדְשׁוֹ.  
Yea, I did remember all my sins and iniquities, for which I was tormented with the pains of hell; yea, I saw that I had rebelled against my God, and that I had not kept his holy commandments.
- 14 אָכֵן, רִצַּחְתִּי רַבִּים מִבְּנֵי, בְּהִטּוֹתִי אוֹתָם מִן הַדֶּרֶךְ אֵלֵי אֲבֹדוֹן; וּבִקְצָרָה, כֹּה גְדוֹלִים הָיוּ עֲוֹנוֹתִי, עַד כִּי הַמַּחְשְׁבָה לְבָדָה עַל בּוֹאֵי לִפְנֵי אֱלֹהֵי, הִכְתָּה אֶת נַפְשִׁי בִּבְעָתָהּ אֲשֶׁר יִלְאַה פֶּה מִהִבֵּיעַ.  
Yea, and I had murdered many of his children, or rather led them away unto destruction; yea, and in fine so great had been my iniquities, that the very thought of coming into the presence of my God did rack my soul with inexpressible horror.
- 15 וָאֲנִי אֲמַרְתִּי בְּלִבִּי, אֵהְיֶה, מִי יִתֵּן וְאֶשְׁלַח וְאֶכְחַד נֶפֶשׁ וְגוֹף, וְלֹא אוּכָא לַעֲמֹד לִפְנֵי אֱלֹהֵי לְהִשְׁפֹּט עַל מַעֲשֵׂי.  
Oh, thought I, that I could be banished and become extinct both soul and body, that I might not be brought to stand in the presence of my God, to be judged of my deeds.
- 16 הִנֵּה, שְׁלֹשָׁה יָמִים וּשְׁלֹשָׁה לַיְלֹוֹת הִתְעַנִּיתִי, מְכָה בְּמַכְאוּבֵי נֶפֶשׁ אַרְוֶרָה.  
And now, for three days and for three nights was I racked, even with the pains of a damned soul.
- 17 וּבְהִיּוֹתִי מַעֲנָה בְּעֲנוּיִים הָאֵלֶּה, בְּעַת אֲשֶׁר הִצִּיקֵנִי זָכְרוֹן רַב חַטָּאִי, וְהִנֵּה זָכַרְתִּי כִּי שָׁמַעְתִּי אֶת נְבוֹאָת אָבִי אֵל הָעָם עַל בּוֹא אִישׁ אֶחָד, יֵשׁוּעַ הַמָּשִׁיחַ, בֶּן אֱלֹהִים, לְמַעַן יִכְפֹּר עַל חַטָּאֵי הָעוֹלָם.  
And it came to pass that as I was thus racked with torment, while I was harrowed up by the memory of my many sins, behold, I remembered also to have heard my father prophesy unto the people concerning the coming of one Jesus Christ, a Son of God, to atone for the sins of the world.
- 18 וְכַאֲשֶׁר הִחֲזִיקָה דַּעְתִּי בַּמַּחְשְׁבָה הַזֹּאת, קָרָאתִי בְּעֵמֶק לִבִּי, הוּא, יֵשׁוּעַ, בֶּן אֱלֹהִים, רַחֵם עָלַי, הַשְׁקוּעַ בְּמַרְרָה וְהַמְקָף בְּחַרְצָבוֹת מוֹת נֶצַחִיוֹת.  
Now, as my mind caught hold upon this thought, I cried within my heart: O Jesus, thou Son of God, have mercy on me, who am in the gall of bitterness, and am encircled about by the everlasting chains of death.
- 19 וְהִנֵּה, בַּחֲשָׁבִי זֹאת, לֹא יִסְפָּתִי לְזָכֹר אֶת מַכְאוּבֵי וְלֹא עֲנִיתִי עוֹד עַל יְדֵי זָכְרוֹן חַטָּאִי.  
And now, behold, when I thought this, I could remember my pains no more; yea, I was harrowed up by the memory of my sins no more.
- 20 וְהִנֵּה, אִיזוֹ שְׂמִיחָה וְאִיזָה אֹר נִפְלָא רָאִיתִי; נִפְשִׁי מְלֵאָה שְׂמִיחָה כֹּה עֲצוּמָה כְּמַדַּת מַכְאוּבֵי לִפְנֵי כֵּן!  
And oh, what joy, and what marvelous light I did behold; yea, my soul was filled with joy as exceeding as was my pain!
- 21 הִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לָךְ, בְּנִי, כִּי אֵין דְּבָר כֹּה נֹרָא וְכֹה מֵר מַכְאוּבֵי אֲשֶׁר פִּקְדוֹנִי. וְעוֹד אֹמֵר לָךְ, בְּנִי, כִּי לַעֲמַת זֹאת אֵין דְּבָר כֹּה נְהָדֵר וְכֹה מְתוֹק כְּשִׂמְחָה אֲשֶׁר הִיָּתָה לִּי.  
Yea, I say unto you, my son, that there could be nothing so exquisite and so bitter as were my pains. Yea, and again I say unto you, my son, that on the other hand, there can be nothing so exquisite and sweet as was my joy.
- 22 אָכֵן, דְּמִיתִי כִּי רָאִיתִי מִרְאָה כְּמִרְאָה אֲשֶׁר רָאָה אֲבִינוֹ, לְחֵי, וְהִנֵּה אֱלֹהִים יוֹשֵׁב עַל

כִּסְאוֹ, וְהוּא מְקַף מִקְהָלֵי מַלְאָכִים אִין מִסְפָּר  
וְהֵם שָׁרִים וּמִשְׁבָּחִים לֵאלֹהֵיהֶם; וְנִפְשִׁי  
הַשְׁתַּוְקָה לְהִיּוֹת שָׁם.

attitude of singing and praising their God; yea, and my soul did long  
to be there.

וְהִנֵּה, שָׁב כַּח אֵיבָרֵי לְקֻדְמוֹתוֹ, וְעַמְדָּתִי עַל רַגְלִי  
וְהִשְׁמַעְתִּי אֶת הָעָם כִּי מֵאֵת אֱלֹהִים נִוְלַדְתִּי.

23 But behold, my limbs did receive their strength again, and I stood upon  
my feet, and did manifest unto the people that I had been born of God.

וּמֵאֵז וְעַד הַיּוֹם הַזֶּה עָמַלְתִּי בְּלֹא חֵדֶל לְהַבְיֵא  
נַפְשוֹת לְתַשׁוּבָה; לְהַבְיֵאן לְטַעַם מִן הַשְׂמִיחָה  
הַגְּדוֹלָה אֲשֶׁר טַעַמְתִּי, לְמַעַן יוֹלְדוּ גַם הֵן  
מֵאֱלֹהִים וְיִמָּלְאוּ בְּרוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ.

24 Yea, and from that time even until now, I have labored without ceasing,  
that I might bring souls unto repentance; that I might bring them to  
taste of the exceeding joy of which I did taste; that they might also be  
born of God, and be filled with the Holy Ghost.

וְהִנֵּה, בְּנִי, מִשְׁמַחְנִי יְהוָה שְׂמִיחָה רַבָּה מְאֹד  
בְּפָרִי עֲמָלִי.

25 Yea, and now behold, O my son, the Lord doth give me exceedingly  
great joy in the fruit of my labors;

כִּי מִפְּנֵי דְבָרוֹ אֲשֶׁר חָלַק לִי, נִוְלְדוּ רַבִּים  
מֵאֵת אֱלֹהִים, וְטַעְמוֹ אֶת אֲשֶׁר טַעַמְתִּי, וְרָאוּ  
עֵין בְּעֵין אֶת אֲשֶׁר רָאִיתִי; לָכֵן יָדוּעַ יוֹדְעִים  
הֵם כְּמוֹנִי עַל הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, אֲשֶׁר עָלִיהֶם  
דִּבַּרְתִּי; וַיִּדְעָתִי מֵאֱלֹהִים הִנֵּה.

26 For because of the word which he has imparted unto me, behold, many  
have been born of God, and have tasted as I have tasted, and have seen  
eye to eye as I have seen; therefore they do know of these things of  
which I have spoken, as I do know; and the knowledge which I have  
is of God.

בְּכָל מִינֵי נִסְיוֹנוֹת וְצָרוֹת הָיָה לִי מִשְׁעָן,  
אֶף בְּכָל מִינֵי יְסוּרִים; כִּי הִצִּילַנִי אֱלֹהִים  
מִמָּוֶלֶת וּמִכַּבְּלִים וּמִמָּוֶת; בּוֹ אֲשִׁים מִבְּטָחִי  
וְהוּא עוֹד יוֹשִׁיעֵנִי.

27 And I have been supported under trials and troubles of every kind, yea,  
and in all manner of afflictions; yea, God has delivered me from prison,  
and from bonds, and from death; yea, and I do put my trust in him, and  
he will still deliver me.

יָדוּעַ אֲדַע כִּי הוּא יִשְׁאַנִּי בַּיּוֹם הַאֲחֵרוֹן לְשֹׁכֵן  
עִמּוֹ בְּתַפְאָרָה; וְאֲנִי אֶהְלֹל לְעוֹלָם, כִּי הוּא  
הוֹצִיא אֶת אֲבוֹתֵינוּ מִמִּצְרַיִם וְטָבַע אֶת  
הַמִּצְרַיִם בַּיָּם סוּף וּבְכַחוֹ הוֹלִיךְ אֶת אֲבוֹתֵינוּ  
אֶל הָאָרֶץ הַיְעוּדָה; אָכֵן, הוּא הִצִּילָם  
מִשְׁעָבוֹד וּמִשְׁבָּיָה פַּעַם בְּפַעַם.

28 And I know that he will raise me up at the last day, to dwell with him in  
glory; yea, and I will praise him forever, for he has brought our fathers  
out of Egypt, and he has swallowed up the Egyptians in the Red Sea;  
and he led them by his power into the promised land; yea, and he has  
delivered them out of bondage and captivity from time to time.

אֶף אֶת אֲבוֹתֵינוּ הוּא הוֹצִיא מֵאֶרֶץ יְרוּשָׁלַם;  
וּבְכַחוֹ הִנְצִחֵנִי אֶף הִצִּילָם מִשְׁעָבוֹד וּמִשְׁבָּיָה,  
פַּעַם בְּפַעַם, עַד הַיּוֹם הַזֶּה; וְזָכַר שְׁבָיָם לְנִגְדֵי  
תְּמִיד. וּבְזָכְרִי אֶת שְׁבָיָם, כִּד עָלִיד לְזָכֹר.

29 Yea, and he has also brought our fathers out of the land of Jerusalem;  
and he has also, by his everlasting power, delivered them out of bondage  
and captivity, from time to time even down to the present day; and I  
have always retained in remembrance their captivity; yea, and ye also  
ought to retain in remembrance, as I have done, their captivity.

וְהִנֵּה, בְּנִי, אִין זֹאת הַכֹּל, כִּי עָלִיד לְדַעַת,  
כְּפִי אֲשֶׁר יוֹדַע אֲנִי, כִּי אִם תִּשְׁמַר אֶת מִצְוֹת  
אֱלֹהִים, הִצְלַח תִּצְלִיחַ בְּאָרֶץ. וְכֵן עָלִיד לְדַעַת  
כִּי אִם לֹא תִשְׁמַר אֶת מִצְוֹת אֱלֹהִים, תִּכָּרֵת  
מִלְּפָנָיו. כֹּל זֹאת כְּדִבְרֹו.

30 But behold, my son, this is not all; for ye ought to know as I do know,  
that inasmuch as ye shall keep the commandments of God ye shall  
prosper in the land; and ye ought to know also, that inasmuch as ye  
will not keep the commandments of God ye shall be cut off from his  
presence. Now this is according to his word.

## לז

## 37

וְעַתָּה, בְּנִי הֵלָמָן, הִנְנִי מִצְוֶה לְקַחַת אֶת כְּתָבֵי הַזְכָּרוֹן הַמִּפְקָדִים בְּיָדִי.

1 And now, my son Helaman, I command you that ye take the records which have been entrusted with me;

וְעוֹד אֲנִי מִצְוֶה לְכַתֵּב אֶת קוֹרוֹת הָעָם הַזֶּה עַל לוחות נְפִי, כְּפִי שֶׁעָשִׂיתִי אֲנִי, וְלִשְׁמֹר אֶת כָּל הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה בְּקִדְשָׁתָם כְּאִשֶּׁר שָׁמַרְתִּים; כִּי שְׁמוֹרִים הֵם לְמַעַן תִּכְלִית חֻכְמָה.

2 And I also command you that ye keep a record of this people, according as I have done, upon the plates of Nephi, and keep all these things sacred which I have kept, even as I have kept them; for it is for a wise purpose that they are kept.

וְלוחות נְחֹשֶׁת קָלָל אֵלֶּה, אֲשֶׁר נִחְרְטוּ בָּהֶם כְּתָבֵי הַקֹּדֶשׁ, וּבָהֶם תוֹלְדוֹת אֲבוֹתֵינוּ לְדוֹרוֹתֵיהֶם מֵרֵאשִׁיתָם.

3 And these plates of brass, which contain these engravings, which have the records of the holy scriptures upon them, which have the genealogy of our forefathers, even from the beginning—

הִנֵּה, אֲבוֹתֵינוּ נִבְּאוּ כִּי הֵמָּה יִשְׁמְרוּ וְיִמְסְרוּ מִדּוֹר לְדוֹר, וְכִי יָד יִהְיוּ תִשְׁמְרֵם וְתִנְצְרֵם עַד אֲשֶׁר יֵצֵא דְבָרְךָ לְכָל אֲמָה, מִשְׁפָּחָה, לְשׁוֹן וְעָם, לְמַעַן יֵדְעוּ אֶת הַנִּסְתָּרוֹת אֲשֶׁר בָּהֶם.

4 Behold, it has been prophesied by our fathers, that they should be kept and handed down from one generation to another, and be kept and preserved by the hand of the Lord until they should go forth unto every nation, kindred, tongue, and people, that they shall know of the mysteries contained thereon.

וְהִנֵּה, אִם אַכֵּן נִשְׁמְרִים הֵם, עֲלֵיהֶם לִשְׁמֹר אֶת בְּרָקָם; וְהֵם אַכֵּן יִשְׁמְרוּ אֶת בְּרָקָם, וְכֵן כָּל הַלּוֹחוֹת אֲשֶׁר בָּהֶם כְּתָב קֹדֶשׁ.

5 And now behold, if they are kept they must retain their brightness; yea, and they will retain their brightness; yea, and also shall all the plates which do contain that which is holy writ.

וְאוֹלֵי תַחֲשֹׁב כִּי אֹלֶלֶת הִיא מִמֶּנִּי; אֲךָ הִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לָךְ כִּי בְּדְבָרִים קְטָנִים וּפְשׁוּטִים מוֹצֵאִים לַפֹּעַל דְּבָרִים גְּדוֹלִים, וְלַעֲתִים קְרוֹבוֹת אֲמַצְעִים קְטָנִים אַכֵּן מְבִיכִים אֶת הַחֻכְמִים.

6 Now ye may suppose that this is foolishness in me; but behold I say unto you, that by small and simple things are great things brought to pass; and small means in many instances doth confound the wise.

וַיְהִי וְאֱלֹהִים פּוֹעֵל עַל יְדֵי אֲמַצְעִים לְהַגְשִׁים אֶת תְּכֵלִיּוֹתָיו הַגְּדוֹלוֹת וְהַנִּצְחִיּוֹת; וּבְאֲמַצְעִים קְטָנִים מְאֹד מְבִיךְ יְהוָה אֶת הַחֻכְמִים וּמְבִיא גְּאֻלָּה לַנִּפְשוֹת רַבּוֹת.

7 And the Lord God doth work by means to bring about his great and eternal purposes; and by very small means the Lord doth confound the wise and bringeth about the salvation of many souls.

וְהִנֵּה בְּחֻכְמַת אֱלֹהִים הִיא זֶה, כִּי הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה נוֹעֲדוּ לְהִשְׁמֹר, וְעַן אֲשֶׁר הִרְחִיבוּ אֶת זְכָרוֹן הָעָם הַזֶּה וְהוֹכִיחוּ לְרַבִּים אֶת שְׂגִיאת דְּרָכָם וְהִבִּיאוּם אֶל דַּעַת אֱלֹהֵיהֶם וְלַגְּאֻלַּת נַפְשָׁם.

8 And now, it has hitherto been wisdom in God that these things should be preserved; for behold, they have enlarged the memory of this people, yea, and convinced many of the error of their ways, and brought them to the knowledge of their God unto the salvation of their souls.

אַכֵּן, אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָךְ, לוֹלֵא הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, הָרְשׁוּמִים בְּכְתָבֵי הַזְכָּרוֹן אֲשֶׁר עַל הַלּוֹחוֹת הָאֵלֶּה, לֹא יָכְלוּ עֲמוֹן וְעַמִּיתָיו לְהוֹכִיחַ לְאֶלְפִים כֹּה רַבִּים מִן הַלְּמָנִים כִּי מִסֵּרֹת אֲבוֹתֵיהֶם אֵינָנָה נְכוּנָה. אַכֵּן, כְּתָבִים אֵלֶּה וְדְבָרֵיהֶם הִבִּיאוּם לִידֵי תְּשׁוּבָה. הֵם הִבִּיאוּם לִידְעַת יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵיהֶם וְלִשְׂמֹחַ בְּיִשׁוּעַ הַמָּשִׁיחַ גּוֹאֲלָם.

9 Yea, I say unto you, were it not for these things that these records do contain, which are on these plates, Ammon and his brethren could not have convinced so many thousands of the Lamanites of the incorrect tradition of their fathers; yea, these records and their words brought them unto repentance; that is, they brought them to the knowledge of the Lord their God, and to rejoice in Jesus Christ their Redeemer.

- 10 And who knoweth but what they will be the means of bringing many thousands of them, yea, and also many thousands of our stiffnecked brethren, the Nephites, who are now hardening their hearts in sin and iniquities, to the knowledge of their Redeemer?
- 11 Now these mysteries are not yet fully made known unto me; therefore I shall forbear.
- 12 And it may suffice if I only say they are preserved for a wise purpose, which purpose is known unto God; for he doth counsel in wisdom over all his works, and his paths are straight, and his course is one eternal round.
- 13 O remember, remember, my son Helaman, how strict are the commandments of God. And he said: If ye will keep my commandments ye shall prosper in the land—but if ye keep not his commandments ye shall be cut off from his presence.
- 14 And now remember, my son, that God has entrusted you with these things, which are sacred, which he has kept sacred, and also which he will keep and preserve for a wise purpose in him, that he may show forth his power unto future generations.
- 15 And now behold, I tell you by the spirit of prophecy, that if ye transgress the commandments of God, behold, these things which are sacred shall be taken away from you by the power of God, and ye shall be delivered up unto Satan, that he may sift you as chaff before the wind.
- 16 But if ye keep the commandments of God, and do with these things which are sacred according to that which the Lord doth command you, (for you must appeal unto the Lord for all things whatsoever ye must do with them) behold, no power of earth or hell can take them from you, for God is powerful to the fulfilling of all his words.
- 17 For he will fulfil all his promises which he shall make unto you, for he has fulfilled his promises which he has made unto our fathers.
- 18 For he promised unto them that he would preserve these things for a wise purpose in him, that he might show forth his power unto future generations.
- 19 And now behold, one purpose hath he fulfilled, even to the restoration of many thousands of the Lamanites to the knowledge of the truth; and he hath shown forth his power in them, and he will also still show
- ומי יודע אם לא ישמשו הם אמצעי להביא עוד אלפים מן הלמנים ואף אלפים רבים מאחינו קשי הערף, הנפיים, המקשים היום את לבם בחטא ובעוון, לידיעת גואלם?
- טרים גלו לי הנסתרות האלה במלאן, לכן אתאפק.
- אולי יספיק אם רק אמר כי שמורים הם לתכלית חכמה, הידועה לאלהים. כי עצת חכמתו על כל מעשיו, וכל נתיבותיו מישרים, ומהלכו הוא מעגל אחד נצחי.
- זכר נא, זכר, בני הילמן, מה חמורות הן מצוות אלהים אשר אמר: אם תשמרו את מצוותי תצליחו בארץ, ואם לא תשמרו, הכרת תכרתו מלפני.
- ועתה, זכר, בני, כי אלהים הפקיד בידיך את הדברים האלה, אשר קדושים הם, והוא שמרם בקדשתם והוא ישמרם וינצחם לתכלית חכמה אשר עמו, למען יראה את כחו לדורות יבוא.
- והנני אומר לך ברוח הנבואה, כי אם תפר את מצוות אלהים, יקחו ממך הדברים האלה, אשר קדושים הם, על ידי כח אלהים, ואתה תפסר לידי השטן, למען יזרח כמזין לפני הרוח.
- ואולם אם תשמר את מצוות אלהים ותנהג בדברים האלה, אשר הם קדושים, כאשר צוה יהוה, כי עליך לשאל אותו על כל הדברים מה תעשה בהם, אזי לא יהיה כח בארץ, או בשאול, אשר יוכל לקחתם ממך, כי רב כח אלהים להקים את כל דברו.
- כי נאמן הוא לקיים את כל דבריו אשר יאמר לך, כי אכן קיים את דברי בריתו לאבותינו.
- כי הוא אמר להם כי ישמר את הדברים האלה לתכלית חכמה אשר עמו, למען יראה את כחו לדורות אשר יבוא.
- והנה, תכלית אחת הוא קיים, השבת אלפים רבים מן הלמנים לידיעת האמת; והוא הראה את כחו בהם והוא עוד יראה את כחו בהם

לדורות אשר יבואו; לכן השמר ישמרו המה.

forth his power in them unto future generations; therefore they shall be preserved.

ולכן אני מצוה, בני הילמן, כי תקים את כל דברי בשקיטה, וכי תשקד לשמר את מצוות אלהים ככתבן.

20 Therefore I command you, my son Helaman, that ye be diligent in fulfilling all my words, and that ye be diligent in keeping the commandments of God as they are written.

ועתה אדבר אליך על עשרים וארבעה הלוחות ההם, כי תשמרם, למען יודעו לעם הזה הנסתרות ומעשי החשך ועלילות הסתרים, או הפעולות הסודיות אשר לאנשים שהשמדו; אכן, כי כל הרציחות, ומעשי השד והגזל, וכל רשעתם ותועבותיהם יגלו לעם הזה; ועוד אני מצוה לשמר את המבארים האלה.

21 And now, I will speak unto you concerning those twenty-four plates, that ye keep them, that the mysteries and the works of darkness, and their secret works, or the secret works of those people who have been destroyed, may be made manifest unto this people; yea, all their murders, and robberings, and their plunderings, and all their wickedness and abominations, may be made manifest unto this people; yea, and that ye preserve these interpreters.

כי הנה ראה יהוה כי החל עמו לפעל במחשכים, לרצח ולהתעב עלילה בסתר; על כן אמר יהוה, כי אם לא ינחמו מרעתם השמד ישמדו מעל פני האדמה.

22 For behold, the Lord saw that his people began to work in darkness, yea, work secret murders and abominations; therefore the Lord said, if they did not repent they should be destroyed from off the face of the earth.

ואמר יהוה: הנני מכין לגזלם עבדי, אבן אשר תאיר באורה את החשכה, למען אגלה לעמי העובדים אותי, למען אגלה להם את פעל אחיהם, את עלילות סתריהם, מעשי מחשביהם, ורשעתם ותועבותיהם.

23 And the Lord said: I will prepare unto my servant Gazelem, a stone, which shall shine forth in darkness unto light, that I may discover unto my people who serve me, that I may discover unto them the works of their brethren, yea, their secret works, their works of darkness, and their wickedness and abominations.

והנה, בני, המבארים האלה הוכנו למען יתקים דבר אלהים אשר דבר לאמר:

24 And now, my son, these interpreters were prepared that the word of God might be fulfilled, which he spake, saying:

הנני מוציא מאפלה אל האור את כל עלילות סתריהם ואת תועבותיהם; ואם הם לא ינחמו מרעתם השמד אשמדם מעל פני האדמה. והנני מוציא אל האור את כל סודותיהם ואת כל תועבותיהם, לעיני כל אמה אשר תנחל את הארץ בימים אשר יבואו.

25 I will bring forth out of darkness unto light all their secret works and their abominations; and except they repent I will destroy them from off the face of the earth; and I will bring to light all their secrets and abominations, unto every nation that shall hereafter possess the land.

והנה, בני, אנחנו רואים כי הם לא נחמו; לכן הם השמדו, ועד היום הזה התקיים דבר אלהים; אכן, תועבותיהם הנסתרות הוצאו מאפלה ונודעו לנו.

26 And now, my son, we see that they did not repent; therefore they have been destroyed, and thus far the word of God has been fulfilled; yea, their secret abominations have been brought out of darkness and made known unto us.

והנני מצוה, בני, לשמר את כל השבועות והבריתות וההסכמים אשר הם עשו בתועבותיהם הנסתרות. וכן את כל האותות

27 And now, my son, I command you that ye retain all their oaths, and their covenants, and their agreements in their secret abominations; yea, and all their signs and their wonders ye shall keep from this



וְהַנִּפְלְאוֹת אֲשֶׁר לָהֶם; אֵת כָּל־תַּרְחִיק מִן  
הָעַם הַזֶּה, לְמַעַן לֹא יִדְעוּם, כִּן יִפְלוּ גַם הֵם  
אֶל חֹשֶׁךְ וַיִּשְׁמְדוּ.

people, that they know them not, lest peradventure they should fall  
into darkness also and be destroyed.

כִּי הִנֵּה קָלְלָהּ רוֹבֶצֶת עַל כָּל הָאֶרֶץ הַזֹּאת כִּי  
תָבוֹא הַשְׁמָדָה עַל כָּל הַפּוֹעֵלִים בַּמַּחֲשָׁכִים,  
כִּפִּי כֹחַ אֱלֹהִים, בָּעֵת אֲשֶׁר תִּמְלֵא סִאתָם;  
לָכֵן, רְצוֹנִי כִּי לֹא יִשְׁמַד הָעַם הַזֶּה.

28 For behold, there is a curse upon all this land, that destruction shall  
come upon all those workers of darkness, according to the power of  
God, when they are fully ripe; therefore I desire that this people might  
not be destroyed.

לָכֵן תִּסְתִּיר אֵת מִזְמוֹתֵיהֶם הַנִּסְתָּרוֹת הָאֵלֶּה,  
אֲשֶׁר עָשׂוּ בִּשְׁבוּעוֹתֵיהֶם וּבְכִרְיֹתֵיהֶם,  
מִיַּד־עַת הָעַם הַזֶּה; רַק עַל דְּבַר רִשְׁעָתָם  
וּמַעֲשֵׂי רִצְיוֹנָתָם וְתוֹעֲבוֹתֵיהֶם תוֹדִיעֵם. וְאַתָּה  
תִּלְמָד־ם לִשְׁנֹא רִשְׁעָה וְתוֹעֲבוֹת וּמַעֲשֵׂי רָצַח  
אֲשֶׁר כָּאֵלֶּה; וְאַף תִּלְמָד־ם כִּי הִשְׁמָדוּ הָאֲנָשִׁים  
הָהֵם מִפְּנֵי רִשְׁעָתָם וְתוֹעֲבוֹתֵיהֶם וּמַעֲשֵׂי  
הָרָצַח אֲשֶׁר בָּעָוֹן.

29 Therefore ye shall keep these secret plans of their oaths and their  
covenants from this people, and only their wickedness and their  
murders and their abominations shall ye make known unto them;  
and ye shall teach them to abhor such wickedness and abominations  
and murders; and ye shall also teach them that these people were  
destroyed on account of their wickedness and abominations and  
their murders.

כִּי הִנֵּה, הֵם הָרְגוּ אֵת כָּל נְבִיאֵי יְהוָה אֲשֶׁר  
בָּאוּ אֲלֵיהֶם לְהַגִּיד לָהֶם אֵת עֲוֹנוֹתֵיהֶם; וְדָמֵי  
הַנִּרְצָחִים קָרְאוּ אֶל יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵיהֶם לִנְקָמָה עַל  
רוֹצְחֵיהֶם; כֵּן יָצָא לַפֶּעַל דִּין אֱלֹהִים עַל  
הַפּוֹעֵלִים בַּמַּחֲשָׁכִים וְעַל אַגְדוֹת הַסֵּתֶר.

30 For behold, they murdered all the prophets of the Lord who came  
among them to declare unto them concerning their iniquities; and  
the blood of those whom they murdered did cry unto the Lord their  
God for vengeance upon those who were their murderers; and thus the  
judgments of God did come upon these workers of darkness and secret  
combinations.

אָכֵן, אֲרוּרָה לְעַד־עַד תִּהְיֶה הָאֲדָמָה  
לַפּוֹעֵלִים בַּמַּחֲשָׁכִים וְעַל אַגְדוֹת הַסֵּתֶר, עַד  
לְהִשְׁמָדָם כָּל־לַיְלָה, בְּלִילִי אִם יִנָּחֲמוּ מִרְעָתָם  
בְּטָרֶם תִּמְלֵא סִאתָם.

31 Yea, and cursed be the land forever and ever unto those workers of  
darkness and secret combinations, even unto destruction, except they  
repent before they are fully ripe.

וְעַתָּה, בְּנִי, זָכֹר אֵת אֲשֶׁר דִּבַּרְתִּי אֵלֶיךָ. אֵל  
תִּמְסַר אֵת מִזְמוֹת הַסֵּתֶר הָאֵלֶּה לָעַם הַזֶּה,  
כִּי אִם לְמַד־ם שְׂנֵאת עוֹלָם עַל חַטָּא וְעָוֹן.

32 And now, my son, remember the words which I have spoken unto  
you; trust not those secret plans unto this people, but teach them an  
everlasting hatred against sin and iniquity.

הִטָּף לָהֶם לְהִנָּחֵם מִחֲסִיאֵיהֶם, וְלִהְיוֹת בְּאֶדְוִן  
יֵשׁוּעַ הַמְּשִׁיחַ; לְמַד־ם לְהִכְנִיעַ עַצְמָם וְלִהְיוֹת  
עֲנֻיִם וְשִׁפְלֵי רוּחַ; לְמַד־ם לְעַמֹּד כְּגַד כָּל פְּתוּיֵי  
הַשָּׁטָן עַל יְדֵי אֲמוֹנָתָם בְּאֶדְוִן יֵשׁוּעַ הַמְּשִׁיחַ.

33 Preach unto them repentance, and faith on the Lord Jesus Christ; teach  
them to humble themselves and to be meek and lowly in heart; teach  
them to withstand every temptation of the devil, with their faith on the  
Lord Jesus Christ.

לְמַד־ם כִּי אֵל לָהֶם לְלֹאוֹת לְעוֹלָם מִמַּעֲשֵׂים  
טוֹבִים וְכִי יִהְיוּ עֲנֻיִם וְשִׁפְלֵי רוּחַ, כִּי אֵלֶּה  
יִמְצְאוּ מְנוּחָה לְנַפְשָׁם.

34 Teach them to never be weary of good works, but to be meek and lowly  
in heart; for such shall find rest to their souls.

זָכֹר, בְּנִי, וּקְנֵה חֻמְרָה בְּנְעוּרֶיךָ; אָכֵן, לְמַד  
בְּנְעוּרֶיךָ לִשְׁמֹר אֵת מִצְוֹת אֱלֹהִים.

35 O, remember, my son, and learn wisdom in thy youth; yea, learn in thy  
youth to keep the commandments of God.

- 36 Yea, and cry unto God for all thy support; yea, let all thy doings be unto the Lord, and whithersoever thou goest let it be in the Lord; yea, let all thy thoughts be directed unto the Lord; yea, let the affections of thy heart be placed upon the Lord forever.
- 37 Counsel with the Lord in all thy doings, and he will direct thee for good; yea, when thou liest down at night lie down unto the Lord, that he may watch over you in your sleep; and when thou risest in the morning let thy heart be full of thanks unto God; and if ye do these things, ye shall be lifted up at the last day.
- 38 And now, my son, I have somewhat to say concerning the thing which our fathers call a ball, or director—or our fathers called it Liahona, which is, being interpreted, a compass; and the Lord prepared it.
- 39 And behold, there cannot any man work after the manner of so curious a workmanship. And behold, it was prepared to show unto our fathers the course which they should travel in the wilderness.
- 40 And it did work for them according to their faith in God; therefore, if they had faith to believe that God could cause that those spindles should point the way they should go, behold, it was done; therefore they had this miracle, and also many other miracles wrought by the power of God, day by day.
- 41 Nevertheless, because those miracles were worked by small means it did show unto them marvelous works. They were slothful, and forgot to exercise their faith and diligence and then those marvelous works ceased, and they did not progress in their journey;
- 42 Therefore, they tarried in the wilderness, or did not travel a direct course, and were afflicted with hunger and thirst, because of their transgressions.
- 43 And now, my son, I would that ye should understand that these things are not without a shadow; for as our fathers were slothful to give heed to this compass (now these things were temporal) they did not prosper; even so it is with things which are spiritual.
- 44 For behold, it is as easy to give heed to the word of Christ, which will point to you a straight course to eternal bliss, as it was for our fathers to give heed to this compass, which would point unto them a straight course to the promised land.
- ועבור כל צרכיך קרא אל אלהים; אכן, יהיו נא כל מעשיך לשם יהוה, ואל כל אשר תלך תהיה נא דרכך בשם יהוה; אכן, יהיו נא מחשבותיך מכונות אל יהוה; אכן, יהיו נא רגשי לבך מכונים אל יהוה לעולם.
- בכל מעשיך הועץ ביהוה, והוא ינהיגך לטוב; אכן, בשכבך לילה יהיה משכבך לשם יהוה, למען ישמרך בשנתך; ובקומך בבקר יהיה לבך שופע תודה לאלהים. ואם את אלה תעשה, תנשא ביום האחרון.
- ועתה, בני, יש לי לומר דבר-מה על אשר קראוהו אבותינו בדור או מורה, ואשר כנוהו אבותינו ליהחונה, אשר פרושו מכון, ויהוה הכינו.
- הנה, לא יוכל איש להוציא תחת ידו מלאכת מחשבת אשר כזו. הנה, הוא הוכן להראות לאבותינו את נתיב מסעם במדבר.
- והמכון פעל למענם כפי אמונתם באלהים. לכן, בהאמינם כי יוכל אלהים לקבוע את החוגות והן באפן אשר תראינה את נתיב מסעם, אכן כך היה. אכן היה להם הנס הזה, וכן נסים רבים נוספים, אשר חולל כח אלהים מדי יום ביומו.
- ואף כי חוללו הנסים ההם באמצעים קטנים, הם הראו נפלאות. וכאשר הם היו נרפים וזנחו להפעיל את אמונתם ושקיפתם, חדלו הנפלאות האלה, והם לא התקדמו במסעם.
- לכן התמהמהו במדבר ולא נסעו בנתיב ישר, וברעב ובצמא הכו מפני פשעיהם.
- ועתה, בני, רצוני כי תבין, כי אין הדברים האלה נעדרים מופת, כי בהיות אבותינו נרפים מהשמע למכון הזה, אשר היה דבר חמרי, לא האירה להם ההצלחה פנים. וכן הדבר אף לגבי דברים רוחניים.
- כי הנה, קל להשמע לדבר המשיח אשר יורה אל נתיב ישר לאשר נצחי, באותה מדה אשר יכלו אבותינו להשמע להוראת המכון הזה, אשר הראה להם נתיב ישר אל הארץ היעודה.

- 45 ואמר: האין בדבר הזה משום תבנית? כי כפי אשר הביא המורה הזה את אבותינו אל הארץ היעודה בהליכה בנתיבו, כן ישאנו דברי המשיח, אם נלך בנתיבם, אל מעבר עמק הבכא הזה, אל ארץ יעודה טובה הרבה יותר.
- 46 O my son, do not let us be slothful because of the easiness of the way; for so was it with our fathers; for so was it prepared for them, that if they would look they might live; even so it is with us. The way is prepared, and if we will look we may live forever.
- 47 ועתה, בני, ראה ושית לבך לדברים הקדושים האלה; תן לבך להביט אל אלהים וחייה. לך אל העם הזה והשמע את דבר אלהים. יהיה מפכח. שלום עליך, בני.
- 47 And now, my son, see that ye take care of these sacred things, yea, see that ye look to God and live. Go unto this people and declare the word, and be sober. My son, farewell.

## לח

## 38

- 1 My son, give ear to my words, for I say unto you, even as I said unto Helaman, that inasmuch as ye shall keep the commandments of God ye shall prosper in the land; and inasmuch as ye will not keep the commandments of God ye shall be cut off from his presence.
- 2 And now, my son, I trust that I shall have great joy in you, because of your steadiness and your faithfulness unto God; for as you have commenced in your youth to look to the Lord your God, even so I hope that you will continue in keeping his commandments; for blessed is he that endureth to the end.
- 3 I say unto you, my son, that I have had great joy in thee already, because of thy faithfulness and thy diligence, and thy patience and thy long-suffering among the people of the Zoramites.
- 4 For I know that thou wast in bonds; yea, and I also know that thou wast stoned for the word's sake; and thou didst bear all these things with patience because the Lord was with thee; and now thou knowest that the Lord did deliver thee.
- 5 And now my son, Shiblon, I would that ye should remember, that as much as ye shall put your trust in God even so much ye shall be delivered out of your trials, and your troubles, and your afflictions, and ye shall be lifted up at the last day.
- 6 Now, my son, I would not that ye should think that I know these things of myself, but it is the Spirit of God which is in me which maketh these
- הטה און לדברי, בני, כי הנני אומר לך, כפי אשר אמרתי להילמן כי אם תשמר את מצוות אלהים תצליח בארץ; ואם לא תשמר את מצוות אלהים תכרת תכרת מלפני.
- 2 והנה בני, אני מאמין כי תהיה לי שמחה רבה בך, כי איתן אתה ומסור לאלהים; וכפי אשר החלית בנעוריך להביט אל יהוה אלהיך, כן מקווה אני כי תוסיף לשמר את מצוותיו; כי ברוך המתמיד עד הקץ.
- 3 אני אומר לך, בני, כי כבר הייתה לי שמחה רבה בך מפני מסירותך ושקיפתך וארך רוחך וכח סבלך בעת שבתך בקרב עם הזורמים.
- 4 ידעתי כי נכבדת, ואף ידעתי כי רגמוך אבן על דבר אלהים, ואתה נשאת את כל אלה בארך רוח, כי היה יהוה עמך; והנך יודע כי יהוה אבן הצילך.
- 5 ועתה, בני שבלון, רצוני כי תזכר כי ככל אשר תשים את מבטך באלהים, כן תציל מנסיונותיך ומצרותיך ומיסוריך, ותנשא ביום האחרון.
- 6 הנה, בני, אין רצוני כי תחשב כי מדעתי נודעו לי הדברים האלה, כי רוח אלהים אשר

## עֲלָמָא לַח:ז-טו

- בִּי, הִיא הַמּוֹדִיעַתִּי אוֹתָם, וְכִי לֹא־נִלְדָּתִי מֵאֵת אֱלֹהִים לֹא הָיִיתִי יוֹדֵעַם.
- things known unto me; for if I had not been born of God I should not have known these things.
- 7 וְהִנֵּה שָׁלַח יְהוָה בְּרַחֲמָיו הַגְּדוֹלִים אֶת מַלְאָכּוֹ לְהַשְׁמִיעַנִי כִּי עָלִי לָשִׁים קֶזַךְ לְמַעֲשֵׂה הַהָרָס בְּקֶרֶב עַמּוֹ. וְאֲנִי רָאִיתִי אֶת הַמַּלְאָךְ פָּנִים אֶל פָּנִים, וְהוּא דִּבֶּר עִמִּי, וְקוֹלוֹ כְּקוֹל הָרַעַם הַמַּחְרִיד אֶת כָּל הָאָרֶץ.
- 7 But behold, the Lord in his great mercy sent his angel to declare unto me that I must stop the work of destruction among his people; yea, and I have seen an angel face to face, and he spake with me, and his voice was as thunder, and it shook the whole earth.
- 8 וְשָׁלֹשָׁה יָמִים וּשְׁלֹשָׁה לַיִלּוֹת סָבַלְתִּי בְּמַכְאוֹב וּבְעִנְיַי הַנֶּפֶשׁ הַמְּרוֹס בְּיוֹתֵר; וְעַד אֲשֶׁר קָרָאתִי אֶל הָאֱדוֹן יֵשׁוּעַ הַמְּשִׁיחַ לְרַחֲמֵנִי, מֵעוֹלָם לֹא נִעֲנִיתִי בְּמַחִילָה עַל חַטָּאתִי, וְהִנֵּה קָרָאתִי אֵלָיו וּמִצָּאתִי שְׁלוֹה לְנַפְשִׁי.
- 8 And it came to pass that I was three days and three nights in the most bitter pain and anguish of soul; and never, until I did cry out unto the Lord Jesus Christ for mercy, did I receive a remission of my sins. But behold, I did cry unto him and I did find peace to my soul.
- 9 וְהִנֵּה, בְּנִי, סִפַּרְתִּי לָךְ זֹאת לְמַעַן תִּקְנֶה חֻקָּהּ, לְמַעַן תִּלְמַד מִמֶּנִּי כִּי אֵין כָּל דֶּרֶךְ אוֹ אִפֹּן אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר יוֹשַׁע בְּהֵם אָדָם, כִּי אִם עַל יְדֵי הַמְּשִׁיחַ וְעַל יְדֵיו בְּלִבָּהּ. הִנֵּה, הוּא חַיִּי הָעוֹלָם וְאֹרֹן. הִנֵּה, הוּא דִּבֶּר הָאֱמֶת וְהַצֶּדֶק.
- 9 And now, my son, I have told you this that ye may learn wisdom, that ye may learn of me that there is no other way or means whereby man can be saved, only in and through Christ. Behold, he is the life and the light of the world. Behold, he is the word of truth and righteousness.
- 10 וְעַתָּה, כִּפִּי אֲשֶׁר הַחֲלוּת לְלַמֵּד אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים, כֵּן רְצוֹנִי כִּי תוֹסִיף לְלַמֵּד; וְכִי תִהְיֶה חָרוֹץ וּמְתוֹן בְּכָל דָּבָר.
- 10 And now, as ye have begun to teach the word even so I would that ye should continue to teach; and I would that ye would be diligent and temperate in all things.
- 11 הַשְׁמַר לִבְל תִּתְנַשֵּׂא בְּגִאָּה; אַכֵּן, הַשְׁמַר לִבְל תִּתְפָּאֵר בְּחֻכְמָתְךָ וּבְכֹחַ בְּחָדְךָ.
- 11 See that ye are not lifted up unto pride; yea, see that ye do not boast in your own wisdom, nor of your much strength.
- 12 נִהַג בְּתַקִּיפוּת, אֲךְ לֹא בְּשִׁחְצָנוּת; תֵּן דַּעְתְּךָ לְרֹשֶׁן אֶת כָּל תְּשׁוּקוֹתֶיךָ לְמַעַן תִּמָּלֵא אֱהָבָה; הַשְׁמַר וּרְחַק מִן הַבִּטְלָה.
- 12 Use boldness, but not overbearance; and also see that ye bridle all your passions, that ye may be filled with love; see that ye refrain from idleness.
- 13 אַל תִּתְפַּלֵּל כְּזֹרָמִיתִים, יַעַן אֲשֶׁר רָאִיתִי כִּי מִתְפַּלְלִים הֵם לְמַעַן יִשְׁמְעוּם אֱנָשִׁים, וּלְמַעַן יִהְיוּ עַל חֻכְמָתָם.
- 13 Do not pray as the Zoramites do, for ye have seen that they pray to be heard of men, and to be praised for their wisdom.
- 14 אַל תֹּאמַר: אֱלֹהִים, מוֹדָה אֲנִי לָךְ כִּי טוֹבִים אֲנִי מֵאֲחֵינוּ. וְכֵן תֹּאמַר: אָנָּה, יְהוָה, מִחַל נָא עָלַי כִּי בִלְתִּי רָאִוִי אֲנִי, וְזָכֹר נָא אֶת אַחֵי בְּרַחֲמֶיךָ. אַכֵּן, הוֹדָה תִּמְדִּיד כִּי בִלְתִּי רָאִוִי אֶתָּה לְפָנַי אֱלֹהִים.
- 14 Do not say: O God, I thank thee that we are better than our brethren; but rather say: O Lord, forgive my unworthiness, and remember my brethren in mercy—yea, acknowledge your unworthiness before God at all times.
- 15 יְבָרֶךְ יְהוָה אֶת נַפְשְׁךָ וְיִקְבַּל אוֹתְךָ אֶל מַלְכוּתוֹ בְּיוֹם הָאַחֲרוֹן, לְשִׁבְתָּ בְּשָׁלוֹם. וְעַתָּה, לֵךְ, בְּנִי, וְלַמַּד אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים לָעָם הַזֶּה. הִנֵּה מִפְּכָח שְׁלוֹם עָלֶיךָ, בְּנִי.
- 15 And may the Lord bless your soul, and receive you at the last day into his kingdom, to sit down in peace. Now go, my son, and teach the word unto this people. Be sober. My son, farewell.

## לט

## 39

וְעַתָּה, בְּנִי, יֵשׁ לִי לֵאמֹר לְךָ דְּבַר־מָה נֹסֵף עַל  
אֲשֶׁר אָמַרְתִּי לְאַחִיָּה. הֲלֹא הִתְבֹּנְנָתָ בְּיָצִיבוֹת  
אֲחִיָּה, נְאֻמָּנוֹתָו וּשְׁקִידָתוֹ בְּשִׁמְרֵת מִצְוֹת  
אֱלֹהִים? הֲאֵם לֹא הָיָה לְךָ לְמוֹפֶת?

כִּי לֹא שָׁמַעְתָּ לְדְבָרִי כְּאַחִיָּה בַּעַת שְׁבַתְךָ  
בְּקִרְבָּה עִם הַזֹּרָמִים. וְזֹו טַעַנְתִּי אֵלֶיךָ: אַתָּה  
הִלַּכְתָּ לְהַתְפָּאֵר בְּכַחַדְךָ וּבְחָכְמָתְךָ.

וְאֵין זֹאת הַכֹּל, בְּנִי. עָשִׂיתָ אֶת אֲשֶׁר צִעַרְנִי,  
כִּי נִטְשָׁתָ אֶת שְׁרֹתְךָ וְהִלַּכְתָּ אֶל אֶרֶץ סִירוֹן,  
בְּקִרְבָּתָ גְּבוּל הַלָּמָנִים, אַחֵר הַזֹּנוֹה אִיזָּבֵל.

אָכֵן, הִיא גָּנְבָה לִבֵּי רַבִּים, אַף אֵין זֹאת  
הַצִּדְקָה לְךָ, בְּנִי. הָיָה עָלֶיךָ לְדַאֵג לְשְׁרֹתְךָ  
אֲשֶׁר הִפְקַד בְּיָדֶיךָ.

הֲאֵינְךָ יוֹדֵעַ, בְּנִי, כִּי הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה תוֹעֵבָה הֵם  
בְּעֵינֵי יְהוָה; אָכֵן, זֶה הַנִּתְעָב בְּחֻטָּאִים, זֹלַת  
שְׁפִיכַת דָּם נָקִי וְהַתְפַּחְשׁוּת לְרוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ?

כִּי אִם מִתְכַּחֵשׁ אַתָּה לְרוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ, אֲשֶׁר  
שָׁכְנָה פֶּעַם בְּקִרְבְּךָ, יוֹדֵעַ אַתָּה כִּי אַתָּה  
מִתְכַּחֵשׁ לָהּ, זֶה חֻטָּא אֲשֶׁר אֵין חֲנִינָה עָלָיו,  
וְכָל הַרוֹצֵחַ נֶגֶד אֱלֹהִים וְיָדִיעָתוֹ, לֹא יִקָּל  
עָלָיו לְזִכּוֹת בְּמַחִילָה; הִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לְךָ, בְּנִי, לֹא  
עַל נִקְלָה יִסְלַח לוֹ.

וְהִנֵּה, בְּנִי, מִי יִתֵּן וְלֹא נִמְצְאָתָ אָשֵׁם בְּפֶשַׁע  
כָּה גָדוֹל. וְאֲנִי לֹא הֵייתִי עוֹמֵד עַל פֶּשַׁעֲךָ,  
לְעֲנֹת אֶת נַפְשְׁךָ, לוֹיֵלָה הִיָּה זֶה לְטוֹבָתְךָ.

הֵן לֹא תוּכַל הִסְתִּיר מֵאֱלֹהִים אֶת פֶּשַׁעֲךָ.  
וְאִם לֹא תִנָּחַם מִחֻטְאֶיךָ יַעֲמִדוּ הֵם כְּעִדּוֹת  
עָלֶיךָ בְּיוֹם הָאַחֲרוֹן.

הִנֵּה, בְּנִי, חָפְצִי כִּי תִנָּחַם מִרְעַתְךָ וּתִנָּטֵשׁ  
אֶת חֻטְאֶיךָ וְאַל תוֹסֵף לָכֵת אַחֵר תַּאֲזוֹת עֵינֶיךָ;  
בְּכָל הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה בָּחוּן אַתָּה עֲצֻמָּה; בְּלִיתִי  
אִם תַּעֲשֶׂה כֵּן, לֹא תוּכַל בָּשׂוּם אַפֹּן לְרִשְׁתָּ  
אֶת מַלְכוּת אֱלֹהִים. זָכֹר וְשִׁים לֵב, וּבָחוּן אֶת  
עֲצֻמְךָ בַּדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה.

1 And now, my son, I have somewhat more to say unto thee than what I said unto thy brother; for behold, have ye not observed the steadiness of thy brother, his faithfulness, and his diligence in keeping the commandments of God? Behold, has he not set a good example for thee?

2 For thou didst not give so much heed unto my words as did thy brother, among the people of the Zoramites. Now this is what I have against thee; thou didst go on unto boasting in thy strength and thy wisdom.

3 And this is not all, my son. Thou didst do that which was grievous unto me; for thou didst forsake the ministry, and did go over into the land of Siron, among the borders of the Lamanites, after the harlot Isabel.

4 Yea, she did steal away the hearts of many; but this was no excuse for thee, my son. Thou shouldst have tended to the ministry wherewith thou wast entrusted.

5 Know ye not, my son, that these things are an abomination in the sight of the Lord; yea, most abominable above all sins save it be the shedding of innocent blood or denying the Holy Ghost?

6 For behold, if ye deny the Holy Ghost when it once has had place in you, and ye know that ye deny it, behold, this is a sin which is unpardonable; yea, and whosoever murdereth against the light and knowledge of God, it is not easy for him to obtain forgiveness; yea, I say unto you, my son, that it is not easy for him to obtain a forgiveness.

7 And now, my son, I would to God that ye had not been guilty of so great a crime. I would not dwell upon your crimes, to harrow up your soul, if it were not for your good.

8 But behold, ye cannot hide your crimes from God; and except ye repent they will stand as a testimony against you at the last day.

9 Now my son, I would that ye should repent and forsake your sins, and go no more after the lusts of your eyes, but cross yourself in all these things; for except ye do this ye can in nowise inherit the kingdom of God. Oh, remember, and take it upon you, and cross yourself in these things.



- 10 ואני מצוה, כי תנעץ באחיה הגדולים ממך במעשיך; הן עודך נער וזקוק לסעד מהם. הן לבך לשמע לעצתם.
- 11 אל תנח לכל דבר הקל ואולת להטותה. אל תנח לשטן להוסיף חטות את לבך אחר זונות הרשע ההן. ראה, בני, מה גדול העוון אשר הבאת על הזרמים, כי בראותם את דרכיך הם לא האמינו בדברי.
- 12 והנה אומרת לי רוח יהוה: צוה את בניך לעשות טוב, פן יטו לבב רבים לאבדון. לכן אני מצוה, בני, ביראת אלהים, כי תרחק מעוונותיך.
- 13 פנה אל יהוה בכל לבבך, בכל מאדך ובכל כחך, ואל תוסיף להטות לב אנשים להרע. כי אם שוב אתה אליהם והתודה על משוגותיך אשר העשית.
- 14 אל תבקש עשר והבלי העולם הזה; הן לא תוכל לשאתם עמך.
- 15 ועתה, בני, רצוני לומר לך דברים על בוא המשיח. הנני אומר לך כי הוא אשר בוא יבוא להסיר את חטאי העולם; אכן, הוא יבוא להשמיט לעמו בשורת ישועה שמחה.
- 16 הנה, בני, זה היה שרותך אשר נקראת אליו, להשמיט את בשורת השמחה הזאת לעם הזה, להכין את לבבם, וביתר דיוק: להסב להם ישועה, בעבור יכינו את לב בניהם לשמע את דבר אלהים בעת בואו.
- 17 ועתה אקל מעט על דעתך בדבר הזה. הנך תמה מדוע יודעו הדברים האלה עת כה ארכה לפני בואם. הנני אומר לך, האין נפש בעת הזאת יקרה לאלהים באותה מדה כנפש בעת בואו?
- 18 האין נחוצ כי תכנית הגאולה תודע אל העם הזה כפי אשר תודע אל בניהם?
- 10 And I command you to take it upon you to counsel with your elder brothers in your undertakings; for behold, thou art in thy youth, and ye stand in need to be nourished by your brothers. And give heed to their counsel.
- 11 Suffer not yourself to be led away by any vain or foolish thing; suffer not the devil to lead away your heart again after those wicked harlots. Behold, O my son, how great iniquity ye brought upon the Zoramites; for when they saw your conduct they would not believe in my words.
- 12 And now the Spirit of the Lord doth say unto me: Command thy children to do good, lest they lead away the hearts of many people to destruction; therefore I command you, my son, in the fear of God, that ye refrain from your iniquities;
- 13 That ye turn to the Lord with all your mind, might, and strength; that ye lead away the hearts of no more to do wickedly; but rather return unto them, and acknowledge your faults and that wrong which ye have done.
- 14 Seek not after riches nor the vain things of this world; for behold, you cannot carry them with you.
- 15 And now, my son, I would say somewhat unto you concerning the coming of Christ. Behold, I say unto you, that it is he that surely shall come to take away the sins of the world; yea, he cometh to declare glad tidings of salvation unto his people.
- 16 And now, my son, this was the ministry unto which ye were called, to declare these glad tidings unto this people to prepare their minds; or rather that salvation might come unto them, that they may prepare the minds of their children to hear the word at the time of his coming.
- 17 And now I will ease your mind somewhat on this subject. Behold, you marvel why these things should be known so long beforehand. Behold, I say unto you, is not a soul at this time as precious unto God as a soul will be at the time of his coming?
- 18 Is it not as necessary that the plan of redemption should be made known unto this people as well as unto their children?

הָאֵין זֶה קַל לִיהוּה לְשַׁלַּח כְּעֵת אֶת מַלְאָכּוֹ  
לְהַשְׁמִיעֵנוּ בְּשׁוֹרֶת שְׂמִיחָה זֹאת בְּאוֹתָהּ מִדָּה  
אֲשֶׁר הוּא יָכוֹל לְהַשְׁמִיעָה אֶל בְּנֵינוּ, אוֹ אַחֵר  
עַתָּה בּוֹאוּ?

19 Is it not as easy at this time for the Lord to send his angel to declare these glad tidings unto us as unto our children, or as after the time of his coming?

## מ

## 40

וְעַתָּה, בְּנִי, הִנֵּה עוֹד דְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר רָצוֹנִי  
לֵאמֹר לָךְ, יַעַן אֲשֶׁר רוֹאֶה אֲנִי כִּי דַעְתָּךְ  
מְטַרְדָּת בְּדִבְרֵי תַחֲתִית הַמֵּתִים.

1 Now my son, here is somewhat more I would say unto thee; for I perceive that thy mind is worried concerning the resurrection of the dead.

הֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָךְ כִּי אֵין תַּחֲתִית מֵתִים, אוֹ  
בְּמַלְּיִם אַחֲרוֹת: הַמֵּתִים לֹא יִהְיֶכּוּ בְּנִי  
אֶלְמוֹת, וְהַמְּשֻׁחָת לֹא יִהְיֶכּוּ לְבִלְתִּי  
מְשֻׁחָת כִּי אִם אַחֵר בּוֹא הַמְּשֻׁיחַ.

2 Behold, I say unto you, that there is no resurrection—or, I would say, in other words, that this mortal does not put on immortality, this corruption does not put on incorruption—until after the coming of Christ.

הִנֵּה, הוּא הַמְּקִיִּם אֶת תַּחֲתִית הַמֵּתִים. וְאוֹלָם,  
רֹאֶה בְּנִי, טָרַם הִגִּיעָה עַת הַתַּחֲתִיָּה. וְהִנֵּה אֲנִי  
לָךְ דְּבַר סֵתֵר. אֲמַנְסָם יֵשׁ נִסְתָּרוֹת שְׂמֹרוֹת  
רַבּוֹת, אֲשֶׁר אֵישׁ לֹא יוֹדֵעַן, כִּי אִם אֱלֹהִים  
לְבַדּוֹ, אֵף דְּבַר אֶחָד אֲרָאָהּ, אֲשֶׁר, בְּרַב  
שְׂקִידָתִי, בְּקִשְׁתִּי מֵאֱלֹהִים לְדַעְתּוֹ וְהוּא  
דְּבַר תַּחֲתִית הַמֵּתִים.

3 Behold, he bringeth to pass the resurrection of the dead. But behold, my son, the resurrection is not yet. Now, I unfold unto you a mystery; nevertheless, there are many mysteries which are kept, that no one knoweth them save God himself. But I show unto you one thing which I have inquired diligently of God that I might know—that is concerning the resurrection.

כִּי הוּעַד מוֹעֵד אֲשֶׁר בּוֹ יָקוּמוּ הַכֹּל מִן  
הַמֵּתִים, וְאֵין אִישׁ יוֹדֵעַ מָתִי יָבוֹא; אֵף אֱלֹהִים  
יֹדֵעַ אֶת עֵתוֹ.

4 Behold, there is a time appointed that all shall come forth from the dead. Now when this time cometh no one knows; but God knoweth the time which is appointed.

וְהִנֵּה, אַחַת הִיא אִם יִהְיֶה מוֹעֵד אֶחָד,  
אוֹ מוֹעֵד שֵׁנִי, אוֹ מוֹעֵד שְׁלִישִׁי לְתַקּוּמָה  
הַמֵּתִים, יַעַן אֲשֶׁר יוֹדֵעַ אֱלֹהִים אֶת כָּל אֵלֶּה;  
וְדִי לְדַעַת כִּי כֵן הַדְּבַר, כִּי מוֹעֵד נִקְבַּע  
לְתַקּוּמַת הַכֹּל מִן הַמֵּתִים.

5 Now, whether there shall be one time, or a second time, or a third time, that men shall come forth from the dead, it mattereth not; for God knoweth all these things; and it sufficeth me to know that this is the case—that there is a time appointed that all shall rise from the dead.

וְהִנֵּה הֶכְרַח כִּי יִהְיֶה מְרוּחַ זְמַן בֵּין יוֹם הַמָּוֶת  
וּבֵין יוֹם הַתַּקּוּמָה.

6 Now there must needs be a space betwixt the time of death and the time of the resurrection.

וְעַתָּה אֶשְׁאַל: מַה הִיּוֹת נִפְשׁ הָאָדָם בֵּין יוֹם  
הַמָּוֶת וּבֵין מוֹעֵד הַתַּקּוּמָה?

7 And now I would inquire what becometh of the souls of men from this time of death to the time appointed for the resurrection?

אַחַת הִיא אִם נִקְבְּעוּ לְבָנֵי הָאָדָם מוֹעֲדֵי תַקּוּמָה  
נוֹסְפִים עַל הָאֶחָד; הֲרִי אֵין הַכֹּל מֵתִים בְּעֵת  
אַחַת, וְאֵין זֶה חֲשׁוּב; הֵן הַכֹּל יוֹם אֶחָד בְּעֵינֵי  
אֱלֹהִים, וְהַזְמַן נִמְדָּד רַק לְבָנֵי הָאָדָם.

8 Now whether there is more than one time appointed for men to rise it mattereth not; for all do not die at once, and this mattereth not; all is as one day with God, and time only is measured unto men.

- אֲכֹן, יֵשׁ מוֹעֵד אֲשֶׁר הוּעַד לְבְנֵי הָאָדָם לְקוֹם מִן הַמֵּתִים; וְיֵשׁ מְרוּחַ בֵּין יוֹם הַמָּוֶת וּמוֹעֵד הַתְּקוּמָה. וְעַתָּה, עַל אֹדוֹת מְרוּחַ הַזְּמַן הַזֶּה וּמָה הָיִיתָ בּוֹ לְנַפְשׁוֹת בְּנֵי הָאָדָם, הוּא הַדְּבָר אֲשֶׁר בִּשְׁקִידָתִי בִקְשָׁתִי מִיְהוָה לְדַעְתּוֹ; וְזֶה הַדְּבָר אֲשֶׁר עָלִיו אֲכֹן אֲדַע.
- 9 Therefore, there is a time appointed unto men that they shall rise from the dead; and there is a space between the time of death and the resurrection. And now, concerning this space of time, what becometh of the souls of men is the thing which I have inquired diligently of the Lord to know; and this is the thing of which I do know.
- וּבְבוֹא הַמוֹעֵד, כְּאֲשֶׁר יָקוּמוּ הַכֹּל מִן הַמֵּתִים, אֲזִי יוֹדַע לָהֶם כִּי אֱלֹהִים יוֹדַע אֶת כָּל הַמוֹעֲדִים הַקְּבוּעִים לָאָדָם.
- 10 And when the time cometh when all shall rise, then shall they know that God knoweth all the times which are appointed unto man.
- וְאֲשֶׁר לְמַצֵּב הַנֶּפֶשׁ בֵּין הַמָּוֶת וּבֵין הַתְּקוּמָה, נֹדַע לִי מִפִּי מְלָאךְ אֱלֹהִים כִּי נִשְׁמוֹת כָּל בְּנֵי הָאָדָם, מִיָּד עִם הַפְּרָדָן מִן הַגּוֹי אֲשֶׁר הוּא בֶן תְּמוֹיָתָהּ, הַטּוֹבוֹת וְהָרָעוֹת כְּאַחַת, נִלְקָחוֹת הַבְּיָתָה אֶל הָאֱלֹהִים אֲשֶׁר נָתַן לָהֶם חַיִּים.
- 11 Now, concerning the state of the soul between death and the resurrection—Behold, it has been made known unto me by an angel, that the spirits of all men, as soon as they are departed from this mortal body, yea, the spirits of all men, whether they be good or evil, are taken home to that God who gave them life.
- אֲזִי תִתְקַבֵּלָה נִשְׁמוֹת הַצַּדִּיקִים לְמַצֵּב שֶׁל שְׂמִיחָה הַנִּקְרָא גֶן עֵדֶן, אֲשֶׁר הוּא מְנוּחָה וְשָׁלוֹם וּמְרוּגוּעַ מִכָּל צָרוֹתֵיהֶם וּמִכָּל דְּאָגָה וְצָעַר.
- 12 And then shall it come to pass, that the spirits of those who are righteous are received into a state of happiness, which is called paradise, a state of rest, a state of peace, where they shall rest from all their troubles and from all care, and sorrow.
- וּנִשְׁמוֹת הָרָשָׁעִים, הֵן אֲשֶׁר רָעוֹת, אִין לָהֶן חֶלֶק וְנִחְלָה בְּרוּחַ יְהוָה, כִּי הֵם בָּחֲרוּ לַעֲשׂוֹת מַעֲשִׂים רָעִים עַל פְּנֵי מַעֲשִׂים טוֹבִים; לָכֵן נִכְנַס רוּחַ הַשָּׁטָן לְתוֹכָם וְהִתְנַחַל בְּבֵיתָם. הֵן יִשְׁלָכוּ אֶל הַחֹשֶׁךְ הַחִיצוֹן; שָׁם יִהְיוּ בְּכִי וְלֵלָה וְחֵרוֹק שָׁנִים, וְכָל זֹאת מִפְּנֵי עוֹוֹנָם, כִּי הָלְכוּ שְׂבִי אַחֵר רָצוֹן הַשָּׁטָן.
- 13 And then shall it come to pass, that the spirits of the wicked, yea, who are evil—for behold, they have no part nor portion of the Spirit of the Lord; for behold, they chose evil works rather than good; therefore the spirit of the devil did enter into them, and take possession of their house—and these shall be cast out into outer darkness; there shall be weeping, and wailing, and gnashing of teeth, and this because of their own iniquity, being led captive by the will of the devil.
- זֶה מַצֵּב נַפְשׁוֹת הָרָשָׁעִים. אֲכֹן, בַּחֲשֶׁךְ וּבְמַצֵּב אֵין וְנוֹרָא בְּצַפּוֹתָן לְחֵרוֹן אֵשׁ אֲשֶׁר לְחַמַּת אֱלֹהִים עָלֵיהֶן. כֹּה הֵם שְׂרוּיִים, בְּעוֹד אֲשֶׁר הַצַּדִּיקִים שְׂרוּיִים בְּגֶן עֵדֶן עַד עַתָּה תְּקוּמָתָם.
- 14 Now this is the state of the souls of the wicked, yea, in darkness, and a state of awful, fearful looking for the fiery indignation of the wrath of God upon them; thus they remain in this state, as well as the righteous in paradise, until the time of their resurrection.
- וְהִנֵּה, יֵשׁ אֲשֶׁר מְבִינִים כִּי מַצֵּב הָאֲשֶׁר הִזָּה וַיְגוֹן הַנֶּפֶשׁ הִזָּה אֲשֶׁר לִפְנֵי הַתְּקוּמָה, הֵם תְּקוּמָה רִאשׁוֹנָה. וּמוֹדָה אֲנִי כִּי אֶפְשָׁר לְכַנּוֹתָהּ תְּקוּמָה, וְהִיא נִשְׁיָאתָ הַנִּשְׁמָה, אֲזִי הַנֶּפֶשׁ וְהַסְּבָתָה אֶל אֲשֶׁר אוֹ אֶל יְגוֹן, כְּפִי הַדְּבָרִים שֶׁנֶּאֱמָרוּ.
- 15 Now, there are some that have understood that this state of happiness and this state of misery of the soul, before the resurrection, was a first resurrection. Yea, I admit it may be termed a resurrection, the raising of the spirit or the soul and their consignment to happiness or misery, according to the words which have been spoken.
- וְהִנֵּה, אִף נֶאֱמַר כִּי יֵשׁ תְּקוּמָה רִאשׁוֹנָה, תְּקוּמַת כָּל אֲשֶׁר הָיוּ, וְאֲשֶׁר הָיוּ וְאֲשֶׁר יִהְיוּ, עַד תְּקוּמַת הַמְּשִׁיחַ מִן הַמֵּתִים.
- 16 And behold, again it hath been spoken, that there is a first resurrection, a resurrection of all those who have been, or who are, or who shall be, down to the resurrection of Christ from the dead.

- 17 Now, we do not suppose that this first resurrection, which is spoken of in this manner, can be the resurrection of the souls and their consignment to happiness or misery. Ye cannot suppose that this is what it meaneth.
- וְאַנְחֵנוּ אֵינְנוּ סְבוּרִים כִּי הַתְּקוּמָה הָרִאשׁוֹנָה הַזֹּאת, אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר עָלֶיהָ בְּאֵפוֹ ה' הִיא תְּקוּמַת הַנְּפֻשׁוֹת וְהַסִּבְתָּן אֶל אֲשֶׁר אוֹ אֶל יְגוֹן. לֹא תַעֲלֶה עַל דַּעְתְּךָ כִּי זֶה מִשְׁמַע הַדְּבָרִים.
- 18 Behold, I say unto you, Nay; but it meaneth the reuniting of the soul with the body, of those from the days of Adam down to the resurrection of Christ.
- הִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לָךְ: לֹא; כִּי הַכֹּנָה הִיא אֶחָד הַנְּפֹשׁ וְהַגּוּף מִחֻדָּשׁ אֲשֶׁר לְאַלֶּה מִיּוֹמֵת אָדָם הָרִאשׁוֹן וְעַד יְעַד תְּקוּמַת הַמָּשִׁיחַ.
- 19 Now, whether the souls and the bodies of those of whom has been spoken shall all be reunited at once, the wicked as well as the righteous, I do not say; let it suffice; that I say that they all come forth; or in other words, their resurrection cometh to pass before the resurrection of those who die after the resurrection of Christ.
- וְאַנִּי אֵינְנִי אוֹמֵר כִּי נְפֻשׁוֹת כָּל הָאָנָשִׁים אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר עָלֵיהֶם וְגוֹפֵם יִשׁוּבוּ וְיִתְאַחֲדוּ בְּאוֹתָהּ הַשָּׁעָה, הַרְשָׁעִים וְהַצְדִּיקִים בְּאַחַד. דִּי אִם אֹמֵר כִּי הַכֹּל יָקוּמוּ וְיָבוֹאוּ; אוֹ בְּמַלְאִים אַחֲרוֹת, תְּקוּמָתָם תִּחֻל לִפְנֵי תְּקוּמַת אֶלֶה אֲשֶׁר יָמוּתוּ אַחֲרֵי תְּקוּמַת הַמָּשִׁיחַ.
- 20 Now, my son, I do not say that their resurrection cometh at the resurrection of Christ; but behold, I give it as my opinion, that the souls and the bodies are reunited, of the righteous, at the resurrection of Christ, and his ascension into heaven.
- וְעַתָּה, בְּנִי, אֵינְנִי אוֹמֵר כִּי תְּקוּמָתָם תִּחֻל בְּעַת תְּקוּמַת הַמָּשִׁיחַ; אֲךְ אֲנִי מְבִיעַ אֶת דַּעְתִּי כִּי נְפֻשׁוֹת הַצְדִּיקִים וְגוֹפֵם יִתְאַחֲדוּ שְׁנִית בְּעַת תְּקוּמַת הַמָּשִׁיחַ וְעֲלִיתוֹ הַשָּׁמַיְמָה.
- 21 But whether it be at his resurrection or after, I do not say; but this much I say, that there is a space between death and the resurrection of the body, and a state of the soul in happiness or in misery until the time which is appointed of God that the dead shall come forth, and be reunited, both soul and body, and be brought to stand before God, and be judged according to their works.
- אִם יִהְיֶה זֶה בְּעַת תְּקוּמָתוֹ אוֹ אַחֲרָיָהּ, זֹאת אֵינְנִי אוֹמֵר; וְאוֹלָם זֹאת אֹמֵר: יֵשׁ מְרוּחַ בֵּין הַמָּוֶת לְבֵין תְּקוּמַת הַגּוּף. וְהוּא מַצֵּב הַנְּפֹשׁ בְּאֲשֶׁר אוֹ בְּיָגוֹן עַד הַמוֹעֵד אֲשֶׁר הוֹעִיד אֱלֹהִים לְתְּקוּמַת הַמֵּתִים וְלֶאחֶד הַנְּפֹשׁ וְהַגּוּף מִחֻדָּשׁ וְהַבָּאָתָם לַעֲמֹד לִפְנֵי אֱלֹהִים, לְהַשְׁפֵּט כְּפִי מַעֲשֵׂיהֶם.
- 22 Yea, this bringeth about the restoration of those things of which has been spoken by the mouths of the prophets.
- וְזֶה יָבִיא אֶת הַשְׁבֵּת הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר עַל אוֹדוֹתֶיהָ הָגָה פִּי הַנְּבִיאִים.
- 23 The soul shall be restored to the body, and the body to the soul; yea, and every limb and joint shall be restored to its body; yea, even a hair of the head shall not be lost; but all things shall be restored to their proper and perfect frame.
- הַנְּפֹשׁ תִּשְׁוּב אֶל הַגּוּף וְהַגּוּף יִשְׁוּב אֶל הַנְּפֹשׁ; כָּל אֵיבָר וּמִפְרָק יִשְׁוּבוּ אֶל מְקוֹמָם בְּגוּף; אֲףִי שֶׁעַר הָרֹאשׁ לֹא יֵאבֵד; אֲכֹן, כָּל דָּבָר יִשְׁוּב אֶל צוּרְתוֹ הַמִּתְאִימָה וְהַמְשֻׁלָּמָה.
- 24 And now, my son, this is the restoration of which has been spoken by the mouths of the prophets—
- הִנֵּה, בְּנִי, זֹאת הַהֲשָׁבָה אֲשֶׁר עַל אוֹדוֹתֶיהָ הָגָה פִּי הַנְּבִיאִים.
- 25 And then shall the righteous shine forth in the kingdom of God.
- אָז יִזְרְחוּ הַצְדִּיקִים בְּמַלְכוּת אֱלֹהִים.
- 26 But behold, an awful death cometh upon the wicked; for they die as to things pertaining to things of righteousness; for they are unclean, and no unclean thing can inherit the kingdom of God; but they are cast out,
- אֲךְ הִנֵּה, מִיתָה אַיִמָּה בָּאָה עַל הַרְשָׁעִים, כִּי מֵתִים הֵם בְּאֲשֶׁר לְדַבְרֵי צֶדֶק; כִּי טְמֵאִים הֵם וְלֹא יִירָשׁ כָּל טְמֵא אֶת מַלְכוּת אֱלֹהִים;

מנדחיים יהיו ויפקדו לאכל מפרי עמלם,  
מעשיהם אשר רעים היו, ולשתות מקבעת  
כוס התרעלה.

and consigned to partake of the fruits of their labors or their works,  
which have been evil; and they drink the dregs of a bitter cup.

## מא

## 41

ועתה, בני, יש לי לומר דבר-מה על ההשבה  
אשר דבר בה. כי הנה, יש אשר עויתו את  
כתבי הקדש וסטו הרחק מדרך הישר מפני  
הדבר הזה. ואני רואה כי אף דעתך מטרת  
בדבר הזה; הנה אבארו לך.

1 And now, my son, I have somewhat to say concerning the restoration of  
which has been spoken; for behold, some have wrested the scriptures,  
and have gone far astray because of this thing. And I perceive that thy  
mind has been worried also concerning this thing. But behold, I will  
explain it unto thee.

הנני אומר לך, בני, כי תכנית ההשבה היא  
הכרח לפי צדק אלהים, כי יש הכרח אשר  
כל הדברים ישובו אל סדרם. הנה, זה הכרח  
וצורך לפי כח המשיח ותקומתו, כי תשוב  
נפש האדם אל גופו, וכי ישוב כל איבר  
אשר לגוף אל בנו.

2 I say unto thee, my son, that the plan of restoration is requisite with  
the justice of God; for it is requisite that all things should be restored  
to their proper order. Behold, it is requisite and just, according to  
the power and resurrection of Christ, that the soul of man should be  
restored to its body, and that every part of the body should be restored  
to itself.

ויש הכרח לפי צדק אלהים כי בני האדם  
ישפטו על פי מעשיהם; אם מעשיהם בעולם  
הזה טובים היו ותשוקות לבם היו טובות,  
הרי הכרח כי אף הם יושבו, ביום האחרון,  
אל אשר הוא טוב.

3 And it is requisite with the justice of God that men should be judged  
according to their works; and if their works were good in this life, and  
the desires of their hearts were good, that they should also, at the last  
day, be restored unto that which is good.

ואם רעים מעשיהם, יושבו אל עושיהם  
לרעה. אכן, כל הדברים יושבו אל סדרם  
הראוי, כל דבר אל מקומו הטבעי; מות ינשא  
לאלמות, המשחת לבלתי משחת; הם ינשאו  
לאשר אין קץ לרשת את מלכות אלהים, או  
יסבו אל יגון אין קץ לרשת את מלכות  
השטן, האחד לכאן והאחר לשם.

4 And if their works are evil they shall be restored unto them for evil.  
Therefore, all things shall be restored to their proper order, everything  
to its natural frame—mortality raised to immortality, corruption to  
incorruption—raised to endless happiness to inherit the kingdom of  
God, or to endless misery to inherit the kingdom of the devil, the one  
on one hand, the other on the other—

האחד הוקם לאשר כפי תשוקותיו לאשר,  
או לטוב כפי תשוקותיו לטוב; והאחר הוקם  
אל הרע, כפי תשוקותיו לרע; כי כפי תשוקתו  
כל היום להרע, כן יושב לו גמולו הרע  
ברדת הלילה.

5 The one raised to happiness according to his desires of happiness, or  
good according to his desires of good; and the other to evil according  
to his desires of evil; for as he has desired to do evil all the day long  
even so shall he have his reward of evil when the night cometh.

וכך אף לזולתו. אם שב הוא מחטאיו ורצה  
בצדק עד קץ ימיו, גמול צדק יושב לו.

6 And so it is on the other hand. If he hath repented of his sins, and  
desired righteousness until the end of his days, even so he shall be  
rewarded unto righteousness.

אלה הם אשר גאלם יהוה. אלה הם אשר  
הוצאו, אשר נצלו מליל החשכה הנצחית;

7 These are they that are redeemed of the Lord; yea, these are they that  
are taken out, that are delivered from that endless night of darkness;



## עֲלָמָא מֵא:ח-מב:א

- כָּךְ הֵם עוֹמְדִים אוֹ נוֹפְלִים, כִּי הֵנָּה שׁוֹפְטִי  
עֲצָמָם, אִם יַעֲשׂוּ טוֹב וְאִם רָע.
- 8 Now, the decrees of God are unalterable; therefore, the way is prepared that whosoever will may walk therein and be saved.
- וְעַתָּה, בְּנִי, אַל תִּסְתַּכֵּן בְּהוֹסַפְתָּ עֲבָרָה אַחַת  
עַל אֱלֹהֶיךָ בְּאוֹתָם עֲקָרֵי תוֹרָתוֹ שֶׁהִסְתַּכַּנְתָּ  
בָּהֶם עַד עַתָּה בְּפַעֲלֶךָ חַטָּא.
- 9 And now behold, my son, do not risk one more offense against your God upon those points of doctrine, which ye have hitherto risked to commit sin.
- אַל תַּחֲשֹׁב, כִּי יַעַן אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר עַל הַשָּׂבָה,  
תּוֹשֵׁב אַתָּה מִחַיִּי חַטָּא לְאַשֶׁר. הֲנֵנִי אוֹמֵר לָךְ,  
מֵעוֹלָם לֹא הָיְתָה רְשָׁעָה אֲשֶׁר.
- 10 Do not suppose, because it has been spoken concerning restoration, that ye shall be restored from sin to happiness. Behold, I say unto you, wickedness never was happiness.
- כִּי הִנֵּה, בְּנִי, כָּל הָאֲנָשִׁים אֲשֶׁר הֵם בְּמַצָּב  
הַטְּבָעִי, כְּלוּמָר, מִצָּבָם הֵנוּ בְּבִשָּׁר, שְׂרִוּיִים  
בְּמִרְרַת רוּשׁ וּבְכִכְלִי הָעוֹן; חֲסָרִים הֵם אֶת  
אֱלֹהִים בְּעוֹלָם וְהֵם הוֹלְכִים נֶגֶד טְבָעוֹ; לָכֵן  
מִצָּבָם מִנֶּגֶד לְאַשֶׁר.
- 11 And now, my son, all men that are in a state of nature, or I would say, in a carnal state, are in the gall of bitterness and in the bonds of iniquity; they are without God in the world, and they have gone contrary to the nature of God; therefore, they are in a state contrary to the nature of happiness.
- וְהִנֵּה, הָאֵם מִשְׁמַע הַמִּלָּה הַשָּׂבָה הוּא  
הַעֲבָרַת דְּבַר מִמַּצְבּוֹ הַטְּבָעִי אֶל אֲשֶׁר הוּא  
בְּלִתִּי טְבָעִי, אִם אֶל אֲשֶׁר הוּא הַפֶּךְ טְבָעוֹ?
- 12 And now behold, is the meaning of the word restoration to take a thing of a natural state and place it in an unnatural state, or to place it in a state opposite to its nature?
- אָכֵן, בְּנִי, לֹא כֵן הַדְּבַר, כִּי מִשְׁמַע הַמִּלָּה  
הַשָּׂבָה הוּא הַשָּׂבָה רָעָה תְּמוּרַת רָעָה, אוֹ  
בְּשָׂרֵי תְּמוּרַת בְּשָׂרִי, אוֹ שְׂטָנִי תְּמוּרַת שְׂטָנִי;  
וְכֵן טוֹב תְּמוּרַת טוֹב, צֶדֶק תְּמוּרַת צֶדֶק, יֵשׁוּ  
תְּמוּרַת יֵשׁוּ, וְרַחֲמִים תְּמוּרַת רַחֲמִים.
- 13 O, my son, this is not the case; but the meaning of the word restoration is to bring back again evil for evil, or carnal for carnal, or devilish for devilish—good for that which is good; righteous for that which is righteous; just for that which is just; merciful for that which is merciful.
- לָכֵן, בְּנִי, הַשְׁמַר כִּי יִהְיוּ לָךְ רַחֲמִים עַל אַחֶיךָ;  
נְהַג בְּיֵשֶׁר, שְׁפֹט בְּצֶדֶק וַעֲשֵׂה תְּמִיד אֶת הַטוֹב.  
וְאִם תַּעֲשֶׂה אֶת כָּל אֵלֹהִי, אֲזִי יִשְׁלַם לָךְ כְּגִמּוּלָךְ;  
אָכֵן, יוֹשְׁבוֹ לָךְ רַחֲמִים; יוֹשֵׁב לָךְ יֵשׁוּ; מִשְׁפָּט  
צֶדֶק תִּשְׁפֹּט וְטוֹב יִהְיֶה גִמּוּלָךְ.
- 14 Therefore, my son, see that you are merciful unto your brethren; deal justly, judge righteously, and do good continually; and if ye do all these things then shall ye receive your reward; yea, ye shall have mercy restored unto you again; ye shall have justice restored unto you again; ye shall have a righteous judgment restored unto you again; and ye shall have good rewarded unto you again.
- כִּי אֵת אֲשֶׁר תִּשְׁלַח, יָשׁוּב אֵלֶיךָ וְלָךְ יִהְיֶה;  
עַל כֵּן מִלֵּת הַשָּׂבָה מִרְשָׁעָה כָּלִיל אֶת הַחַטָּא,  
וְאִינֶנָּה מַצְדִּיקָה אוֹתוֹ כָּלִל וְכָלִל.
- 15 For that which ye do send out shall return unto you again, and be restored; therefore, the word restoration more fully condemneth the sinner, and justifieth him not at all.

- וְעַתָּה, בְּנִי, רֹאֶה אֲנִי כִּי דַעְתְּךָ עוֹדְנָה טְרוּדָה  
בְּדַבְר־מָה אֲשֶׁר אֵינְךָ יוֹכֵל לְהִבְיֵנוּ. אָכֵן, בְּדַבְר־
- 1 And now, my son, I perceive there is somewhat more which doth worry your mind, which ye cannot understand—which is concerning

צִדֵּק אֱלֹהִים בְּעִנְיַשְׁתּוֹ אֶת הַחוּטָא. יַעַן  
אֲשֶׁר סוֹבֵר אֶתָּה כִּי הֶסֶבֶת יָגוֹן לַחוּטָא  
אֵינָה צוֹדֶקֶת.

the justice of God in the punishment of the sinner; for ye do try to suppose that it is injustice that the sinner should be consigned to a state of misery.

הִנֵּה, בְּנִי, אֲבָאֲרָ לְךָ אֶת הַדָּבָר הַזֶּה. כִּי הִנֵּה,  
אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר שָׁלַח יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים אֶת אֲבוֹתֵינוּ  
הָרִאשׁוֹנִים מִן עֵדֶן לַעֲבֹד אֶת הָאָדָמָה אֲשֶׁר  
נִלְקַחוּ מִמֶּנָּה; אָכֵן, אַחֵר הוּצִיָּאוּ אֶת הָאָדָם,  
הוּא הַשְׂכִּין מִקֶּדֶם לְגַן עֵדֶן כְּרוּבִים וְלֹהֵט חֶרֶב  
מִתְהַפֶּכֶת, לְשָׁמֹר אֶת עֵץ הַחַיִּים.

2 Now behold, my son, I will explain this thing unto thee. For behold, after the Lord God sent our first parents forth from the garden of Eden, to till the ground, from whence they were taken—yea, he drew out the man, and he placed at the east end of the garden of Eden, cherubim, and a flaming sword which turned every way, to keep the tree of life—

וְהִנֵּנוּ רוֹאִים כִּי הָאָדָם הָיָה כְּאֱלֹהִים, לְדַעַת  
טוֹב וְרָע; וּפָן יִשְׁלַח יָדוֹ וְיִקַּח גַּם מִעֵץ הַחַיִּים  
וְיֹאכַל וְיִחְיֶה לְעוֹלָם, הַשְׂכִּין יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים  
כְּרוּבִים וְאֶת לֹהֵט הַחֶרֶב הַמִּתְהַפֶּכֶת, לְבָל  
יֹאכַל הָאָדָם מִן הַפְּרִי.

3 Now, we see that the man had become as God, knowing good and evil; and lest he should put forth his hand, and take also of the tree of life, and eat and live forever, the Lord God placed cherubim and the flaming sword, that he should not partake of the fruit—

כֹּה רוֹאִים אֲנִיחֵנוּ, כִּי נָתַן זְמַן לְאָדָם לְהִתְנַחֵם  
מִחֻטְאָיו, תְּקוּפַת נְסִיוֹן, תְּקוּפַת תְּשׁוּבָה  
וְעִבּוּדַת אֱלֹהִים.

4 And thus we see, that there was a time granted unto man to repent, yea, a probationary time, a time to repent and serve God.

כִּי אִלּוּ שָׁלַח אָדָם יָדוֹ מִיָּד וְיֹאכַל מִעֵץ  
הַחַיִּים, הָיָה הוּא חַי לְעוֹלָם, כְּדַבֵּר אֱלֹהִים,  
וְלֹא הָיָה נֹתֵר מִרוּחַ זְמַן לְתִשְׁבּוּהָ; וְאִף דְּבַר  
אֱלֹהִים הָיָה בָטֵל וְתִכְנִית הַיְשׁוּעָה הַגְּדוֹלָה  
הָיְתָה מוֹפְרָת.

5 For behold, if Adam had put forth his hand immediately, and partaken of the tree of life, he would have lived forever, according to the word of God, having no space for repentance; yea, and also the word of God would have been void, and the great plan of salvation would have been frustrated.

וְהִנֵּה, נִגְזַר עַל הָאָדָם לָמוּת; לָכֵן, כִּפִּי אֲשֶׁר  
הֵם הִרְחִקוּ מִעֵץ הַחַיִּים, כֵּן יִרְחִקוּ מֵעַל פְּנֵי  
הָאָדָמָה, וְהָאָדָם הָיָה לְאוֹבֵד עַד עוֹלָם. אָכֵן,  
הֵם הָיוּ לְבָנֵי נִפְיָלָה.

6 But behold, it was appointed unto man to die—therefore, as they were cut off from the tree of life they should be cut off from the face of the earth—and man became lost forever, yea, they became fallen man.

וּבִזְזָת רוֹאָה אֶתָּה כִּי אֲבוֹתֵינוּ הָרִאשׁוֹנִים  
נִכְרְתוּ מִלִּפְנֵי יְהוָה בְּחֹמֶר וְאִף בְּרוּחַ; וְכֹה  
רוֹאִים אֲנִיחֵנוּ כִּי הֵם הִפְכוּ חֲפָשִׁים לְפָעַל  
כְּחָפְצָם וְכִרְצוֹנָם.

7 And now, ye see by this that our first parents were cut off both temporally and spiritually from the presence of the Lord; and thus we see they became subjects to follow after their own will.

וְהִנֵּה, לֹא הָיָה זֶה רָאוּי כִּי הָאָדָם יִצַּל  
מִמוּת הַגּוּף, כִּי הָיָה זֶה מִבְּטֵל אֶת תִּכְנִית  
הָאֲשֶׁר הַגְּדוֹלָה.

8 Now behold, it was not expedient that man should be reclaimed from this temporal death, for that would destroy the great plan of happiness.

עַל כֵּן, יַעַן אֲשֶׁר לְעוֹלָם אֵין הַנֶּפֶשׁ יְכוּלָה  
לָמוּת, וְהַנִּפְיָלָה הַבִּיָּאָה עַל בְּנֵי הָאָדָם מוּת  
רוּחָנִי כִּפִּי אֲשֶׁר הַבִּיָּאָה מוּת גּוּפָנִי, וּמִשְׁמַע  
זֹאת, כִּי הֵם נִכְרְתוּ מִלִּפְנֵי יְהוָה, הָיָה זֶה רָאוּי  
כִּי בְנֵי הָאָדָם יִצְּלוּ מִן הַמּוּת הָרוּחָנִי הַזֶּה.

9 Therefore, as the soul could never die, and the fall had brought upon all mankind a spiritual death as well as a temporal, that is, they were cut off from the presence of the Lord, it was expedient that mankind should be reclaimed from this spiritual death.

## עלמא מב:י-יח

- 10 לכן, יען אֲשֶׁר נַעֲשׂוּ בְּעַלֵּי תַאֲנוּת בְּשָׂרִים, חוֹשְׁנִיִּים וְשִׁטְנִיִּים, כְּדֶרֶךְ הַטֶּבַע, נַעֲשֶׂה לָהֶם מַצֵּב נִסְיוֹן, זֶה מַצֵּב הַתְּכַוֵּנָנוּת, מַצֵּב הַכְּנָה. Therefore, as they had become carnal, sensual, and devilish, by nature, this probationary state became a state for them to prepare; it became a preparatory state.
- 11 וְעַתָּה, זְכוֹר, בְּנִי, לוֹלֵא תִכְנִית הַגְּאֻלָּה, אֱלֹהֵי הָיָה וְתוֹר עָלֶיהָ, אֲמַלְלָה הָיְתָה נַפְשָׁם, מִיָּד עִם מוֹתָם, כִּי הָיוּ נִכְרָתִים מִלִּפְנֵי יְהוָה. And now remember, my son, if it were not for the plan of redemption, (laying it aside) as soon as they were dead their souls were miserable, being cut off from the presence of the Lord.
- 12 וְאִף לֹא הָיָה שׁוּם אֲפֹן לְהִבִּיא אֶת בְּנֵי הָאָדָם לְהַנְצִל מִהַנְפִּילָה הַזֹּאת אֲשֶׁר הִבִּיא הָאָדָם עַל עֲצָמוֹ עַל יְדֵי אִי־הַשְׁמָעוֹ. And now, there was no means to reclaim men from this fallen state, which man had brought upon himself because of his own disobedience;
- 13 לכן, עַל פִּי הַצֶּדֶק, לֹא הָיְתָה יְכוּלָה תִכְנִית הַגְּאֻלָּה לְצִיאָתָא אֶל הַפֶּעַל, כִּי אִם עַל תַּנְאִי אֲשֶׁר יִשְׁוּבוּ בְּנֵי הָאָדָם מִחֲטָא בְּעַת מַצֵּב הַנִּסְיוֹן הַזֶּה, אָכֵן, בְּעַת מַצֵּב הַהַכְּנָה, כִּי לוֹלֵא הַתְּנָאִי הַזֶּה, לֹא יִכָּלָה מִדַּת הַרְחָמִים לְהַשְׁפִּיעַ, כִּי הָיָה זֶה מִבְּטָל אֶת פְּעֻלַּת מִדַּת הַדִּין. אָכֵן, לֹא נָתַן לְבִטֵּל פְּעֻלַּת הַדִּין, כִּי אֱלֹהֵי הַתַּאֲפָשֶׁר הַדֶּבֶר הָיָה אֱלֹהִים חָדָל מֵהִיּוֹת אֱלֹהִים. Therefore, according to justice, the plan of redemption could not be brought about, only on conditions of repentance of men in this probationary state, yea, this preparatory state; for except it were for these conditions, mercy could not take effect except it should destroy the work of justice. Now the work of justice could not be destroyed; if so, God would cease to be God.
- 14 וְכֵן רֹאִים אֲנַחְנוּ כִּי כָל בְּנֵי הָאָנוּשׁ הָיוּ מִפְּלִים וְאַחוּזִים עַל יְדֵי מִדַּת הַדִּין; אָכֵן, אֲשֶׁר הָיָה צֶדֶק אֱלֹהִים, אֲשֶׁר הָיָה גּוֹזֵר עֲלֵיהֶם לְהַכְרִית מִלִּפְנֵי לְעוֹלָם. And thus we see that all mankind were fallen, and they were in the grasp of justice; yea, the justice of God, which consigned them forever to be cut off from his presence.
- 15 וְהִנֵּה, תִכְנִית הַרְחָמִים לֹא הָיְתָה יוֹצֵאת אֶל הַפֶּעַל, בְּלִתִּי אִם הָיְתָה נַעֲשִׂית כְּפָרָה; לָכֵן אֱלֹהִים עֲצָמוּ מִכְּפָר עַל חֲטָאֵי הָעוֹלָם, לְהוֹצִיא לַפֶּעַל אֶת תִּכְנִית הַרְחָמִים, לְסַפֵּק אֶת תְּבִיעוֹת מִדַּת הַדִּין, לְמַעַן יִהְיֶה אֱלֹהִים מְשֻׁלָּם, אֱלֹהֵי צֶדֶק וְאֱלֹהֵי רַחֲמִים. And now, the plan of mercy could not be brought about except an atonement should be made; therefore God himself atoneth for the sins of the world, to bring about the plan of mercy, to appease the demands of justice, that God might be a perfect, just God, and a merciful God also.
- 16 וְהִנֵּה, לֹא יְכוּלִים הָיוּ בְּנֵי הָאָדָם לְשׁוּב מִחֲטָא לוֹלֵא הָיְתָה עֲנִישָׁה, אֲשֶׁר אִף הָיָה נִצְחִית, כְּפִי שְׁחִיִּי הַנֶּפֶשׁ נִצְחִיִּים; וְהַעֲנִישָׁה נִקְבָּעַת לְעַמֻּת תִּכְנִית הָאֲשֶׁר, אֲשֶׁר אִף הָיָה נִצְחִית כְּנִצְחִיוֹת חַיִּי הַנֶּפֶשׁ. Now, repentance could not come unto men except there were a punishment, which also was eternal as the life of the soul should be, affixed opposite to the plan of happiness, which was as eternal also as the life of the soul.
- 17 וְהִכְיָצֵד יוֹכֵל אָדָם לְשׁוּב מִחֲטָא אִם לֹא חֲטָא? וְכִיָּצֵד יִחֲטָא אִם אֵין חֹק? וְכִיָּצֵד יִהְיֶה חֹק אִם אֵין עֲנִישָׁה? Now, how could a man repent except he should sin? How could he sin if there was no law? How could there be a law save there was a punishment?
- 18 הִנֵּה נִקְבָּעָה עֲנִישָׁה וְחֹק צֶדֶק נָתַן אֲשֶׁר הִבִּיא חֲרָטָת מִצְפּוֹן לָאָדָם. Now, there was a punishment affixed, and a just law given, which brought remorse of conscience unto man.

- 19 כי לולא נתן חק, כמו רוצח אדם מות יומת, ההיה רוצח ירא מות?  
Now, if there was no law given—if a man murdered he should die—would he be afraid he would die if he should murder?
- 20 אכן, לולא נתן חק על חטא, לא היו בני האדם יראים לחטא.  
And also, if there was no law given against sin men would not be afraid to sin.
- 21 ולולא נתן חק, מה יכלו לעשות דין, או אף רחמים, על חטא בני אדם? הן לא היה להם כל תקף על הבניות.  
And if there was no law given, if men sinned what could justice do, or mercy either, for they would have no claim upon the creature?
- 22 אך נתן חק ונקבע ענש והענקה תשובה מחטא. ומדת הרחמים תובעת תשובה, אשר אם לא כן, תובעת מדת הדין את הבניה בהוציאה את החק אל הפעל, והחק מטיל את הענש; אם לא כן, תבטל פעלת הצדק, ואלהים יחדל מהיות אלהים.  
But there is a law given, and a punishment affixed, and a repentance granted; which repentance mercy claimeth; otherwise, justice claimeth the creature and executeth the law, and the law inflicteth the punishment; if not so, the works of justice would be destroyed, and God would cease to be God.
- 23 אך אין אלהים חדל מהיות אלהים, ומדת הרחמים פועלת על הנחם מחטא, והרחמים באים מפני הכפרה; והכפרה מביאה את תקומת המתים; ותקומת המתים משיבה את האדם אל נכח אלהים; והוא מושב לעמד לפניו להשפט כפי מעשיו, על פי החק והצדק.  
But God ceaseth not to be God, and mercy claimeth the penitent, and mercy cometh because of the atonement; and the atonement bringeth to pass the resurrection of the dead; and the resurrection of the dead bringeth back men into the presence of God; and thus they are restored into his presence, to be judged according to their works, according to the law and justice.
- 24 כי מדת הדין תובעת את כל תביעותיה, וכן מדת הרחמים תובעת את כל אשר לה. וכך לא נושע איש כי אם הנחמים מחטא באמת בלבד.  
For behold, justice exerciseth all his demands, and also mercy claimeth all which is her own; and thus, none but the truly penitent are saved.
- 25 כי סבור אתה כי מדת הרחמים יכולה לחמס את מדת הדין? הנני אומר לך: לא; אף לא שמץ. כי אם כן, היה אלהים חדל מהיות אלהים.  
What, do ye suppose that mercy can rob justice? I say unto you, Nay; not one whit. If so, God would cease to be God.
- 26 אכן, כה מוציא אלהים לפעל את תכליותיו הגדולות והנצחיות, אשר הוכנו מיסוד העולם. וכה באה ישועת בני האדם וגאולתם, וכן כליונם ויגונם.  
And thus God bringeth about his great and eternal purposes, which were prepared from the foundation of the world. And thus cometh about the salvation and the redemption of men, and also their destruction and misery.
- 27 לכן, בני, כל החפץ לבוא יבוא ויגמע באות נפשו ממי החיים; וכל אשר אינו חפץ לבוא, איננו מכרח לבוא, ואולם ביום האחרון יושב לו גמולו בהתאם למעשיו.  
Therefore, O my son, whosoever will come may come and partake of the waters of life freely; and whosoever will not come the same is not compelled to come; but in the last day it shall be restored unto him according to his deeds.
- 28 אם חפץ להרע ולא שוב מרעותו בימיו, רעה תעשה לו על פי ההשבה אשר לאלהים.  
If he has desired to do evil, and has not repented in his days, behold, evil shall be done unto him, according to the restoration of God.

29 And now, my son, I desire that ye should let these things trouble you no more, and only let your sins trouble you, with that trouble which shall bring you down unto repentance.

וְעַתָּה, בְּנִי, חֲפָצִי כִּי לֹא תִתֵּן עוֹד לְדָבָרִים  
הָאֵלֶּה לְהַטְרִידָךְ. הִנָּח רַק לְחַטְאֶיךָ לְהַטְרִידָךְ  
בְּאוֹתָהּ טְרִידָה אֲשֶׁר תְּבִיאָךְ אֵלַי תְּשׁוּבָה.

30 O my son, I desire that ye should deny the justice of God no more. Do not endeavor to excuse yourself in the least point because of your sins, by denying the justice of God; but do you let the justice of God, and his mercy, and his long-suffering have full sway in your heart; and let it bring you down to the dust in humility.

הִנֵּה, בְּנִי, חֲפָצִי כִּי לֹא תוֹסִיף לְהַכְחִישׁ אֶת  
צַדִּיק אֱלֹהִים. אַל תִּתְּאָמֵץ לְהַצְדִּיק אֶת עַצְמְךָ  
אִף בְּדָבָר הַפְּחוּת בְּיוֹתֵר מִפְּנֵי חַטְאֶיךָ, וּבְזֹאת  
לְהַכְחִישׁ אֶת צַדִּיק אֱלֹהִים; כִּי זֹאת תַּעֲשֶׂה: תֵּן  
לְצַדִּיק אֱלֹהִים וּלְרַחֲמָיו וּלְאַרְךָ אַפְּיוֹ שְׁלֹטוֹן מְלֵא  
בְּלִבְךָ, וְהִנָּח לָהֶם לְהַשְׁפִּילְךָ בְּכִנְיָה עַד עָפָר.

31 And now, O my son, ye are called of God to preach the word unto this people. And now, my son, go thy way, declare the word with truth and soberness, that thou mayest bring souls unto repentance, that the great plan of mercy may have claim upon them. And may God grant unto you even according to my words. Amen.

הִנֵּה, בְּנִי, נִקְרָאתָ מֵאֵת אֱלֹהִים לְהַטְיף אֶת  
דְּבָרוֹ אֶל הָעָם הַזֶּה. וְעַתָּה, בְּנִי, לֵךְ לְדַרְכְּךָ,  
וְהַשְׁמַע אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים בְּאִמְתּוֹת וּבִפְּחָחוֹן,  
לְמַעַן תְּבִיא נַפְשׁוֹת לְתְּשׁוּבָה, לְמַעַן תַּחֲוֹל  
עַלֵּיהֶן תְּכִנִּית הַרְחָמִים הַגְּדוֹלָה. יְהִי רָצוֹן  
מִלְּפָנֵי אֱלֹהִים לְתֵת לְךָ כִּפִּי דְּבָרִי. אָמֵן.

## מג

## 43

1 And now it came to pass that the sons of Alma did go forth among the people, to declare the word unto them. And Alma, also, himself, could not rest, and he also went forth.

וְהָיָה כִּי הִלְכוּ בְּנֵי עֲלֵמָא אֶל הָעָם, לְהַשְׁמִיעַם  
אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים. וְאַף עֲלֵמָא עֲצָמוֹ לֹא יָכוֹל  
הָיָה לְשָׁקֵט וַיֵּצֵא גַם הוּא.

2 Now we shall say no more concerning their preaching, except that they preached the word, and the truth, according to the spirit of prophecy and revelation; and they preached after the holy order of God by which they were called.

וְלֹא נוֹסִיף לְדַבֵּר עַל הַשְׁפָּתָם, רַק כִּי הֵם  
הַטְיִפוּ אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים, אֶת הָאִמְתּוֹת, כִּפִּי רוּחַ  
הַנְּבוּאָה וְהַהֲתַגְלוֹת; וְהֵם הַטְיִפוּ, עַל פִּי סֵדֶר  
הַקֹּדֶשׁ אֲשֶׁר לְאֱלֹהִים אֲשֶׁר עַל פְּיוֹ נִקְרָאוּ.

3 And now I return to an account of the wars between the Nephites and the Lamanites, in the eighteenth year of the reign of the judges.

וְעַתָּה אָשׁוּב לְסַפּוֹר הַמִּלְחָמוֹת בֵּין  
הַנְּפִיטִים וּבֵין הַלָּמָנִים בְּשָׁנַת שְׁמוֹנֶה עָשָׂר  
לְשֹׁלְטוֹן הַשּׁוֹפְטִים.

4 For behold, it came to pass that the Zoramites became Lamanites; therefore, in the commencement of the eighteenth year the people of the Nephites saw that the Lamanites were coming upon them; therefore they made preparations for war; yea, they gathered together their armies in the land of Jershon.

וְהִנֵּה, הַזּוֹרָמִים הָפְכוּ לָמָנִים; וּבִרְאִשִׁית שְׁנַת  
שְׁמוֹנֶה עָשָׂר רָאוּ הַנְּפִיטִים כִּי הַלָּמָנִים עוֹלִים  
עַלֵּיהֶם; לָכֵן הֵם הִתְכַּוְּנוּ לְקָרֵב. אָכֵן, הֵם  
כָּנְסוּ אֶת צְבָאוֹתֵיהֶם בְּאַרְץ יֶרְשׁוֹן.

5 And it came to pass that the Lamanites came with their thousands; and they came into the land of Antionum, which is the land of the Zoramites; and a man by the name of Zerahemnah was their leader.

וְהַלָּמָנִים בָּאוּ בְּאַלְפֵיהֶם. הֵם בָּאוּ אֶל אֶרֶץ  
אַנְטִיאוֹנוֹם, אֲשֶׁר הִיא אֶרֶץ הַזּוֹרָמִים; וְשֵׁם  
מְנַהִיגָם נִקְרָא זֶרַחֶמְנָה.

6 And now, as the Amalekites were of a more wicked and murderous disposition than the Lamanites were, in and of themselves, therefore,

וְעַן אֲשֶׁר נָטוּ הָעַמְלֵקִיִּים בְּעַצְמָם לְרָשָׁעָה  
וּלְרָצַח לְעַמַּת הַלָּמָנִים, מִנָּה זֶרַחֶמְנָה



- מפקדים עליונים על הלמנים אשר היו כלם  
עמלקיים וזורמים.
- 7 Now this he did that he might preserve their hatred towards the Nephites, that he might bring them into subjection to the accomplishment of his designs.
- 8 For behold, his designs were to stir up the Lamanites to anger against the Nephites; this he did that he might usurp great power over them, and also that he might gain power over the Nephites by bringing them into bondage.
- 9 And now the design of the Nephites was to support their lands, and their houses, and their wives, and their children, that they might preserve them from the hands of their enemies; and also that they might preserve their rights and their privileges, yea, and also their liberty, that they might worship God according to their desires.
- 10 For they knew that if they should fall into the hands of the Lamanites, that whosoever should worship God in spirit and in truth, the true and the living God, the Lamanites would destroy.
- 11 Yea, and they also knew the extreme hatred of the Lamanites towards their brethren, who were the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi, who were called the people of Ammon—and they would not take up arms, yea, they had entered into a covenant and they would not break it—therefore, if they should fall into the hands of the Lamanites they would be destroyed.
- 12 And the Nephites would not suffer that they should be destroyed; therefore they gave them lands for their inheritance.
- 13 And the people of Ammon did give unto the Nephites a large portion of their substance to support their armies; and thus the Nephites were compelled, alone, to withstand against the Lamanites, who were a compound of Laman and Lemuel, and the sons of Ishmael, and all those who had dissented from the Nephites, who were Amalekites and Zoramites, and the descendants of the priests of Noah.
- 14 Now those descendants were as numerous, nearly, as were the Nephites; and thus the Nephites were obliged to contend with their brethren, even unto bloodshed.
- 15 And it came to pass as the armies of the Lamanites had gathered together in the land of Antionum, behold, the armies of the Nephites were prepared to meet them in the land of Jerishon.
- זאת הוא עשה למען שמר את שנאתם  
לנפיים, בעבור הכניעם למען יבצעו את  
מזמורתו.
- הנה, הוא זמם לעורר את חמת הלמנים  
על הנפיים, וזאת עשה למען יקח בחזקת  
היד כח רב עליהם ולמען השיג עליונות  
על הנפיים בשעבדם.
- וכונת הנפיים היתה להגן על ארצם ועל  
בתיהם ועל נשיהם ועל ילדיהם, לשמורם  
מיד אויביהם; וכן לשמר על זכויותיהם ועל  
חירותם, למען יעבדו את אלהים כחפצם.
- כי הם ידעו כי אם יפלו לידי הלמנים,  
ישמידו אלה את כל אשר יעבד ברוח ובאמת  
את אלהים, את אלהי האמת החי.
- והם אף ידעו את שנאת הלמנים העזה  
לאחיהם, אנשי אנטיוני-לחי הנקראים  
אנשי עמון, אשר לא נשאו כלי נשק;  
כי בבוזם בברית לא הפרוה בשום אופן;  
על כן ידעו, כי בנפל אלה לידי הלמנים,  
השמיד ישמדם.
- והנפיים לא היו נכונים להתיר את השמדתם,  
ולכן נתנו להם אדמות לנחלה.
- ואנשי עמון נתנו לנפיים חלק גדול מקנינם,  
לכלכל את צבאם. הנה כי כן, נאלצו הנפיים  
לעמד לבדם בפני הלמנים אשר היו  
התחברות למן, למואל, בני ישמעאל וכל  
אשר נפרדו מן הנפיים, והם עמלקיים  
וזורמים וצאצאי כהני נח.
- והצאצאים ההם היו רבים מאד, כמעט  
כמספר הנפיים. כה נאלצו הנפיים להלחם  
באחיהם, עד שפך דם.
- והיה בהאסף חילות הלמנים בארץ  
אנטיאנום, והנה היו חילות הנפיים מוכנים  
לפגוש לקרב בארץ ירשון.

- 16 Now, the leader of the Nephites, or the man who had been appointed to be the chief captain over the Nephites—now the chief captain took the command of all the armies of the Nephites—and his name was Moroni;
- 17 And Moroni took all the command, and the government of their wars. And he was only twenty and five years old when he was appointed chief captain over the armies of the Nephites.
- 18 And it came to pass that he met the Lamanites in the borders of Jershon, and his people were armed with swords, and with cimeters, and all manner of weapons of war.
- 19 And when the armies of the Lamanites saw that the people of Nephi, or that Moroni, had prepared his people with breastplates and with arm-shields, yea, and also shields to defend their heads, and also they were dressed with thick clothing—
- 20 Now the army of Zerahemnah was not prepared with any such thing; they had only their swords and their cimeters, their bows and their arrows, their stones and their slings; and they were naked, save it were a skin which was girded about their loins; yea, all were naked, save it were the Zoramites and the Amalekites;
- 21 But they were not armed with breastplates, nor shields—therefore, they were exceedingly afraid of the armies of the Nephites because of their armor, notwithstanding their number being so much greater than the Nephites.
- 22 Behold, now it came to pass that they durst not come against the Nephites in the borders of Jershon; therefore they departed out of the land of Antionum into the wilderness, and took their journey round about in the wilderness, away by the head of the river Sidon, that they might come into the land of Manti and take possession of the land; for they did not suppose that the armies of Moroni would know whither they had gone.
- 23 But it came to pass, as soon as they had departed into the wilderness Moroni sent spies into the wilderness to watch their camp; and Moroni, also, knowing of the prophecies of Alma, sent certain men unto him, desiring him that he should inquire of the Lord whither the armies of the Nephites should go to defend themselves against the Lamanites.
- 24 And it came to pass that the word of the Lord came unto Alma, and Alma informed the messengers of Moroni, that the armies of the Lamanites were marching round about in the wilderness, that they might come over into the land of Manti, that they might commence an
- וְשֵׁם מְנַהֵיג הַנְּפִיטִים, הָאִישׁ אֲשֶׁר מִנָּה  
לְמַפְקֶדֶם הָרָאשִׁי, נִקְרָא מוֹרוֹנִי; וְהוּא קָבַל  
אֶת הַפְּקוּד עַל כָּל צָבָאָם.
- וּמוֹרוֹנִי קָבַל אֶת הַפְּקוּד וְאֶת נְהוּל כָּל  
מִלְחָמוֹתֵיהֶם. וְהוּא בֶן עֶשְׂרִים וְחָמֵשׁ שָׁנָה  
בְּלִבָּד בְּהַתְּמַנּוּתוֹ לְמַפְקֶד רָאשֵׁי לְחִילוֹת הַנְּפִיטִים.
- וְהוּא פָגַשׁ בְּלָמְנִים בְּגִבּוֹל יֶרֶשׁוֹן,  
וְאֲנָשָׁיו מְזִינִים בַּחֲרָבוֹת וּבַפְּגִיוֹנוֹת וּבְכָל  
מִינֵי כְלֵי מִלְחָמָה.
- וּבְהַפְּגֹשֶׁם רָאוּ חִילוֹת הַלָּמְנִים כִּי אֲנָשֵׁי נָפִי  
צִידוֹ בֶּיַד מוֹרוֹנִי בְּשָׂרְיוֹנָי חֻזָּה וּבְמַגְנֵי זְרוּעַ  
וְאֵף בְּמַגְנֵי רֹאשׁ וּבְלָבוֹשׁ עָבָה.
- וּצָבָא זֶרַחֶמְנָה לֹא כָּךְ הָיָה מְצִיד. בִּידֵיהֶם  
הָיוּ רֶק חֲרָבוֹתֵיהֶם וּפְגִיוֹנוֹתֵיהֶם, קִשְׁתוֹתֵיהֶם  
וְחִצֵּיהֶם, וְאַבְנִים וּמִקְלָעִים; וְהֵם הָיוּ עִירְמִים,  
זוֹלַת עוֹרוֹת אֲשֶׁר חָגְרוּ עַל מְתֵנֵיהֶם. אַכֵּן,  
הַכֹּל הָיוּ עִירְמִים, זוֹלַת הַזּוֹרְמִים וְהָעַמְלֵקִיִּים.
- וְהֵם לֹא הָיוּ מְזִינִים בְּשָׂרְיוֹנֵי חֻזָּה אוֹ בְּמַגְנִים,  
וְעַל כֵּן חָרְדוּ מְאֹד מִפְּנֵי חֵיל הַנְּפִיטִים  
הַמְּשָׂרְיָנִים, אֵף כִּי מִסְפָּרָם רַב מְאֹד הָיָה  
מִמְּסַפְּר הַנְּפִיטִים.
- וְהִנֵּה, הֵם לֹא הֵעִזוּ לְצֹאת עַל הַנְּפִיטִים בְּגִבּוֹל  
יֶרֶשׁוֹן. עַל כֵּן הֵם נָטְשׁוּ אֶת אֶרֶץ אַנְטִיוֹנוֹם  
וּפָנוּ אֶל הַיַּעְרוֹת וְנָסְעוּ בָּהֶם הַלּוֹךְ וְסָב,  
הַרְחֵק, לְמַקְוֹרוֹת נְהַר צִידוֹן, וּמִגַּמַּת פְּנֵיהֶם  
אֶרֶץ מַנְטִי, לְכַבְּשָׁה; כִּי לֹא שָׁעְרוּ כִּי חִילוֹת  
מוֹרוֹנִי יֵדְעוּ אָנָּה הֵלְכוּ.
- אֲךָ הָיָה כִּי מִיד בְּצֹאתָם אֶל הַיַּעְרוֹת, שָׁלַח  
מוֹרוֹנִי אַחֲרֵיהֶם מְרַגְלִים לְצִפּוֹת בְּמַחְנֵם.  
וּמוֹרוֹנִי, אֲשֶׁר יָדַע עַל נְבוֹאוֹת עֲלָמָא, שָׁלַח  
אֵלָיו אֲנָשִׁים מְסַפְּר וּבִקֵּשׁ מִמֶּנּוּ לְשַׁאל אֶת פִּי  
יְהוָה אָנָּה יֵלֵךְ חֵיל הַנְּפִיטִים לְהֵגֹן עַל עַצְמוֹ  
מִפְּנֵי הַלָּמְנִים.
- וְהָיָה דְּבַר יְהוָה אֶל עֲלָמָא, וְהוּא הוֹדִיעַ אֶת  
שְׁלִיחֵי מוֹרוֹנִי כִּי חִילוֹת הַלָּמְנִים נָסְעוּ סָבִיב  
בַּיַּעְרוֹת וּפְנֵיהֶם מוֹעֵדוֹת אֶל אֶרֶץ מַנְטִי,  
לְפָתַח בְּהַתְּקַפָּה עַל חֻלְק הָעָם הַחֹלֵשׁ.

- וְהַשְׁלִיחִים הָלְכוּ וַהֲבִיאוּ אֶת הַדִּבְעָתוֹ  
אֶל מֹרֹנִי.
- וּמֹרֹנִי, אַחֲרֵי הַפְּקִידוֹ חֵיל מַצְבָּאוֹ בְּאֶרֶץ  
יֶרְשׁוֹן, פֶּן יָשׁוּב אֵלֶיהָ חֵיל מִן הַלְּמָנִים  
וַיִּשְׁתַּלֵּט עַל הָעִיר, לָקַח אֶת שְׂאֵר צְבָאוֹ עִמּוֹ  
וַיַּעֲד אֶל אֶרֶץ מַנְטִי.
- וְהוּא צִוָּה אֶת כָּל יוֹשְׁבֵי חֶבֶל הָאֶרֶץ הַהוּא  
לְהֶאָסֵף לְמִלְחָמָה עַל הַלְּמָנִים, לְהִגָּן עַל  
אֲדֻמוּתֵיהֶם וְעַל אֶרְצָם, עַל זְכוּתֵיהֶם  
וְעַל חֲרוּתָם; כֹּה הֵם הָיוּ עָרוּכִים לִפְנֵי  
בּוֹא הַלְּמָנִים.
- וּמֹרֹנִי צִוָּה אֶת צְבָאוֹ לְהִסְתֵּר בְּבִקְעָה אֲשֶׁר  
לְשֹׁפֶת נָהָר צִידוֹן, מִמַּעַרְב לְנָהָר, בִּיעָרוֹת.
- וּמֹרֹנִי הִצִּיב מְרַגְלִים סָבִיב-סָבִיב, לְדַעַת אֶת  
מוֹעֵד בּוֹא מַחֲנֵה הַלְּמָנִים.
- וּמֹרֹנִי יָדַע כִּי כּוֹנֵנֶת הַלְּמָנִים הִיא לְהַשְׁמִיד  
אֶת אֲחֵיהֶם, אוֹ לְהַכְנִיעֵם וּלְשַׁעֲבָדָם לְמַעַן  
יִסַּד לְעַצְמָם מַמְלָכָה עַל כָּל הָאֶרֶץ.
- וְהוּא אֵף יָדַע כִּי כָּל חֲפֵץ הַנֶּפְתִּים הָיָה לְשָׁמֹר  
עַל אֲדֻמוּתֵיהֶם וְחֲרוּתָם וְכִנְסֵיהֶם. לָכֵן לֹא  
רָאָה חֲטָא בְּהִגָּנָתָם עַל יְדֵי תַּחְבּוּלָה; לָכֵן  
נִגְלָה לוֹ עַל יְדֵי מְרַגְלָיו מַסְלּוֹל מִסַּע הַלְּמָנִים.
- וְהוּא חָלַק אֶת צְבָאוֹ וְהַעֲבִיר חֶלֶק מֵמֶנּוּ אֶל  
הַבִּקְעָה, וַהֲבִיאוּ בְּמִזְרָח וּבִדְרוֹם גִּבְעַת רִפְלָה;
- וְאֵת שְׂאִירֵי הַחֵיל הֶחֱבִיֵּא בְּמַעַרְב הַבִּקְעָה,  
מִמַּעַרְב לְנָהָר צִידוֹן, בּוֹאֲכָה גְבוּל אֶרֶץ מַנְטִי.
- וְכֵן, לְאַחֵר הִצִּיבוּ אֶת צְבָאוֹ כְּחֶפְצוֹ, הוּא הָיָה  
מוֹכֵן לִפְגָּשָׁם.
- וְהַלְּמָנִים בָּאוּ מִצָּפוֹן לְגִבְעָה, אֲשֶׁר בְּקִרְבָּתָהּ  
הִתְחַבֵּא חֶלֶק מִצְבָּא מֹרֹנִי.
- וְהָיָה כַּעֲבֹר הַלְּמָנִים אֶת גִּבְעַת רִפְלָה,  
כִּהְנִסְם אֶל הַבִּקְעָה וּבְהַחֲלִם לַחֲצוֹת אֶת  
נָהָר צִידוֹן, יָצָא הַחֵיל הָאוֹרֵב בְּדְרוֹם הַגִּבְעָה,
- attack upon the weaker part of the people. And those messengers went  
and delivered the message unto Moroni.
- Now Moroni, leaving a part of his army in the land of Jershon, lest  
by any means a part of the Lamanites should come into that land and  
take possession of the city, took the remaining part of his army and  
marched over into the land of Manti.
- And he caused that all the people in that quarter of the land should  
gather themselves together to battle against the Lamanites, to defend  
their lands and their country, their rights and their liberties; therefore  
they were prepared against the time of the coming of the Lamanites.
- And it came to pass that Moroni caused that his army should be  
secreted in the valley which was near the bank of the river Sidon, which  
was on the west of the river Sidon in the wilderness.
- And Moroni placed spies round about, that he might know when the  
camp of the Lamanites should come.
- And now, as Moroni knew the intention of the Lamanites, that it  
was their intention to destroy their brethren, or to subject them and  
bring them into bondage that they might establish a kingdom unto  
themselves over all the land;
- And he also knowing that it was the only desire of the Nephites to  
preserve their lands, and their liberty, and their church, therefore he  
thought it no sin that he should defend them by stratagem; therefore,  
he found by his spies which course the Lamanites were to take.
- Therefore, he divided his army and brought a part over into the valley,  
and concealed them on the east, and on the south of the hill Riplah;
- And the remainder he concealed in the west valley, on the west of the  
river Sidon, and so down into the borders of the land Manti.
- And thus having placed his army according to his desire, he was  
prepared to meet them.
- And it came to pass that the Lamanites came up on the north of the  
hill, where a part of the army of Moroni was concealed.
- And as the Lamanites had passed the hill Riplah, and came into  
the valley, and began to cross the river Sidon, the army which was  
concealed on the south of the hill, which was led by a man whose name

- אֲשֶׁר שָׁם מִנְהִיגוֹ נִקְרָא לְחִי, וְהִקְיֹף אוֹתָם מִמִּזְרָח, מֵאַחֲרֵיהֶם.
- 36 And it came to pass that the Lamanites, when they saw the Nephites coming upon them in their rear, turned them about and began to contend with the army of Lehi.
- אֲזַי הָחֵל קָצִיר דָּמִים בְּשֵׁנֵי הַצְּדָדִים, אַךְ נוֹרָא יוֹתֵר הָיָה בְּלִמְנִים, כִּי גּוֹפֶם הָעִירִם חֲשׂוֹף הָיָה לְמַכּוֹת הָעֵזוֹת מִחֶרְבוֹת הַנְּפִיִּים וּמִפְגִּינוֹתֵיהֶם אֲשֶׁר הִנְחִיתוּ מֹות כְּמַעַט בְּכָל מַכָּה.
- 37 And the work of death commenced on both sides, but it was more dreadful on the part of the Lamanites, for their nakedness was exposed to the heavy blows of the Nephites with their swords and their cimeters, which brought death almost at every stroke.
- וְלַעֲמַת זֹאת, הָיוּ בְּקֶרֶב הַנְּפִיִּים רַק בּוֹדִידִים אֲשֶׁר נָפְלוּ מִחֶרֶב הַלִּמְנִים וּמֵאֲבֹד דָּם, כִּי אֵיבְרֵי גּוֹפֶם הַחַיּוּנִיִּים הָיוּ מוֹגְנִים מִמַּכּוֹת הַלִּמְנִים עַל יְדֵי שְׂרִיזֵי הַחֹזֶה וּמִגְנֵי הַזְּרֹעַ וּמִגְנֵי הָרֹאשׁ אֲשֶׁר לָהֶם. כֹּה עָלָה בְּיַד הַנְּפִיִּים לְזַרֵּעַ מֹות בְּקֶרֶב הַלִּמְנִים.
- 38 While on the other hand, there was now and then a man fell among the Nephites, by their swords and the loss of blood, they being shielded from the more vital parts of the body, or the more vital parts of the body being shielded from the strokes of the Lamanites, by their breastplates, and their arm-shields, and their head-plates; and thus the Nephites did carry on the work of death among the Lamanites.
- וְהַלִּמְנִים נִבְהָלוּ מֵעֲצַמַת הַהֲשָׁמָה בְּקֶרֶבָם, וְהִחֲלוּ לָנוּס לְעֵבֶר נָהָר צִידוֹן.
- 39 And it came to pass that the Lamanites became frightened, because of the great destruction among them, even until they began to flee towards the river Sidon.
- וְהֵם נִרְדְּפוּ עַל יְדֵי לְחִי וְאֶנְשָׁיו, אֲשֶׁר גָּרְשׁוּם אֶל מֵי צִידוֹן. וְהֵם חֲצוּ אֶת מֵי צִידוֹן, וְלְחִי הִחֲזִיק אֶת חֲלִילֵי עַל שְׂפַת נָהָר צִידוֹן לְמַנַּע אֶת הַלִּמְנִים מִחֲצִיתוֹ.
- 40 And they were pursued by Lehi and his men; and they were driven by Lehi into the waters of Sidon, and they crossed the waters of Sidon. And Lehi retained his armies upon the bank of the river Sidon that they should not cross.
- וּמִזְרֹנִי וּצִבְאֹו פָּגְשׁוּ אֶת הַלִּמְנִים בְּבִקְעָה, בְּעֵבֶר נָהָר צִידוֹן; וְהֵם הִתְנַפְּלוּ עֲלֵיהֶם וְהִחֲלוּ לְהָרְגֵם.
- 41 And it came to pass that Moroni and his army met the Lamanites in the valley, on the other side of the river Sidon, and began to fall upon them and to slay them.
- וְהַלִּמְנִים נָסוּ שְׁנֵית מַפְיָהֶם, לְעֵבֶר אֶרֶץ מִנְטִי, וְשָׁם פָּגְשׁוּ שְׁנֵית חֵיל מִזְרֹנִי.
- 42 And the Lamanites did flee again before them, towards the land of Manti; and they were met again by the armies of Moroni.
- הַפַּעַם לָחֲמוּ הַלִּמְנִים בְּנִחְשׁוֹת רַבָּה; אָכֵן, מֵעוֹלָם לֹא נִדְּעוּ הַלִּמְנִים כְּלוֹחֲמִים כֹּה עֲזִים וְנוֹעֲזִים, אִף לֹא מִרְאשִׁיתָם.
- 43 Now in this case the Lamanites did fight exceedingly; yea, never had the Lamanites been known to fight with such exceedingly great strength and courage, no, not even from the beginning.
- וְהֵם אֲשֶׁר עוֹרְרוּם לְהִלָּחֵם הָיוּ זֹרָמִים וְהַעֲמֻלָּקִיִּים, אֲשֶׁר הָיוּ רֹאשֵׁי מַפְקְדֵיהֶם וּמִנְהִיגֵיהֶם, וְכֵן יִרְעַחֲמָנָה, רֹאשׁ קְצִינֵיהֶם, מִנְהִיגֵם הָרֹאשִׁי וּמַפְקֵדָם; אָכֵן, הֵם נִלְחָמוּ כְּתַנִּינִים וְרִבִּים מִן הַנְּפִיִּים נִהָרְגוּ עַל יְדֵיהֶם כִּי הֵם פָּצְחוּ רִבִּים מִמִּגְנֵי רֹאשָׁם, וְנִקְבּוּ רִבִּים מִמִּגְנֵי הַחֹזֶה וְכָרְתוּ יָדִים רַבּוֹת. כֹּה הָלְמוּ הַלִּמְנִים בְּחֻמַּת זַעֲמָם.
- 44 And they were inspired by the Zoramites and the Amalekites, who were their chief captains and leaders, and by Zerahemnah, who was their chief captain, or their chief leader and commander; yea, they did fight like dragons, and many of the Nephites were slain by their hands, yea, for they did smite in two many of their head-plates, and they did pierce many of their breastplates, and they did smite off many of their arms; and thus the Lamanites did smite in their fierce anger.

- 45 ואולם, מקור השׂראת הנפיים הִיה טוב יותר. כי הם לא נלחמו לשם מלוכה או מִשְׁרָה כי אם בַּעַד בְּתִיָּהֶם וְחִירוּתָם, נְשִׁיהֶם וְיִלְדֵיהֶם, וּבַעַד כָּל אֲשֶׁר לָהֶם, אֲכָן, בַּעֲבוּר סֵדֶר עֲבוֹדַת אֱלֹהֵיהֶם וּבַעֲבוּר כְּנִסְיָתָם.
- 46 והם עָשׂוּ אֵת אֲשֶׁר חֲשָׁבוּהוּ חֻבָּתָם לֵאלֹהֵיהֶם; כִּי יְהוָה אָמַר אֲלֵיהֶם כְּאָמְרוֹ לְאַבְוֹתֵיהֶם: כָּל עוֹד אֵין בְּכֶם אֲשַׁמַּת הַפְּגִיעָה הָרִאשׁוֹנָה אוֹ הַשְּׁנִיָּה, אֶל לָכֶם לְמִסֵּר עַצְמְכֶם לְהָרֶג בְּיַד אֹיְבֵיכֶם.
- 47 וְעוֹד זֹאת אָמַר יְהוָה, הֵגֶן תִּגְנוּ עַל מִשְׁפְּחוֹתֵיכֶם אֶף בְּשָׁפִיכַת דָּמִים. עַל כֵּן נִלְחָמוּ הַנְּפִיִּים בְּלִמְנִים, לְהִגֶּן עַל עַצְמָם וְעַל מִשְׁפְּחוֹתֵיהֶם, עַל אֲדָמָתָם וְעַל אֶרְצָם, עַל זְכוּתֵיהֶם וְעַל דָּתָם.
- 48 וְהָיָה כִּרְאוֹת אֲנָשֵׁי מוֹרוֹנִי אֵת עַז הַלְּמָנִים וְאֵת חֲמָתָם, הֵם כְּמַעֵט נִרְתְּעוּ וְנָסוּ מֵהֶם. וְאוֹלָם מוֹרוֹנִי, בְּרִאוֹתוֹ אֵת כּוֹנֵת אֲנָשָׁיו, שָׁלַח אֲלֵיהֶם אֵת דְּבָרוֹ וְהַפִּיחַ רוּחַ בְּלִבָּם בְּרַעֲיוֹנוֹת הָאֵלֶּה, עַל אִוֹדוֹת אֲדָמוֹתֵיהֶם וְחִירוּתָם, הִיא הַחֲרוֹת מִשְׁעָבוֹד.
- 49 אִזּוֹ פָּנוּ הַנְּפִיִּים אֶל הַלְּמָנִים וְקִרְאוּ פֹה אֶחָד אֶל יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵיהֶם, לְמַעַן חֲרוּתָם, חֲרוּתָם מִשְׁעָבוֹד.
- 50 וְהֵם הִחֲלוּ לַעֲמֹד בְּעֵז בְּפָנֵי הַלְּמָנִים; וּבְעֵצָם שָׁעַת קְרִיאָתָם אֶל יְהוָה לְמַעַן חֲרוּתָם, הִחֲלוּ הַלְּמָנִים לָנוֹס מִפְּנֵיהֶם וְנָסוּ עַד מִי צִידוֹן.
- 51 וְאִף כִּי הָיוּ הַלְּמָנִים רַבִּים, אֲכָן, יוֹתֵר מִכְּפָלִים מִמֶּסְפַּר הַנְּפִיִּים, הֵם גִּרְשׁוּ, עַד כִּי נֶאֱסָפוּ יַחַד לְמַחְנֶה אֶחָד בְּבִקְעָה, עַל שְׂפַת נְהַר צִידוֹן.
- 52 וְכָךְ כְּתָרוּם חִילוֹת מוֹרוֹנִי, מִשְׁתֵּי גְדוֹת הַנְּהַר, כִּי אֲנָשֵׁי לְחִי הָיוּ מִמֶּזְרַח.
- 53 וְכִרְאוֹת אֲנָשֵׁי זֶרַחֶמְנָה אֵת אֲנָשֵׁי לְחִי בְּמִזְרַח נְהַר צִידוֹן, וְאֵת חִילוֹת מוֹרוֹנִי בְּמַעֲרֵב הַנְּהַר, אֲכָן, כִּי כְתָרוּם הַנְּפִיִּים, אֲחֻזָּתָם בְּהִלָּה נוֹרָאָה.
- 45 Nevertheless, the Nephites were inspired by a better cause, for they were not fighting for monarchy nor power but they were fighting for their homes and their liberties, their wives and their children, and their all, yea, for their rites of worship and their church.
- 46 And they were doing that which they felt was the duty which they owed to their God; for the Lord had said unto them, and also unto their fathers, that: Inasmuch as ye are not guilty of the first offense, neither the second, ye shall not suffer yourselves to be slain by the hands of your enemies.
- 47 And again, the Lord has said that: Ye shall defend your families even unto bloodshed. Therefore for this cause were the Nephites contending with the Lamanites, to defend themselves, and their families, and their lands, their country, and their rights, and their religion.
- 48 And it came to pass that when the men of Moroni saw the fierceness and the anger of the Lamanites, they were about to shrink and flee from them. And Moroni, perceiving their intent, sent forth and inspired their hearts with these thoughts—yea, the thoughts of their lands, their liberty, yea, their freedom from bondage.
- 49 And it came to pass that they turned upon the Lamanites, and they cried with one voice unto the Lord their God, for their liberty and their freedom from bondage.
- 50 And they began to stand against the Lamanites with power; and in that selfsame hour that they cried unto the Lord for their freedom, the Lamanites began to flee before them; and they fled even to the waters of Sidon.
- 51 Now, the Lamanites were more numerous, yea, by more than double the number of the Nephites; nevertheless, they were driven insomuch that they were gathered together in one body in the valley, upon the bank by the river Sidon.
- 52 Therefore the armies of Moroni encircled them about, yea, even on both sides of the river, for behold, on the east were the men of Lehi.
- 53 Therefore when Zerahemnah saw the men of Lehi on the east of the river Sidon, and the armies of Moroni on the west of the river Sidon, that they were encircled about by the Nephites, they were struck with terror.



- 54 Now Moroni, when he saw their terror, commanded his men that they should stop shedding their blood.
- וְכִרְאוֹת מוֹרוֹנִי אֶת פְּחָדָם, הוּא צִוָּה עַל אֲנָשָׁיו לְחַדֵּל מִשְׁפָּךְ דָּמָם.

## 44

## מד

- 1 And it came to pass that they did stop and withdrew a pace from them. And Moroni said unto Zerahemnah: Behold, Zerahemnah, that we do not desire to be men of blood. Ye know that ye are in our hands, yet we do not desire to slay you.
- וְהָיָה כִּי הֵם חָדְלוּ מִהִלָּחֵם וּרְחִקוּ מֵהֶם. מֹרֹנִי וָאָמַר מוֹרוֹנִי אֶל זֶרַחֶמְנָה; רְאֵה, זֶרַחֶמְנָה, אֵינָנו רֹצִים לְהִיּוֹת אֲנָשֵׁי דָמִים. הֵן יוֹדְעִים אַתָּם כִּי אַתָּם בְּיָדֵינוּ, אֲךָ אֵינָנו חֹפְצִים לְהָרֹג אֶתְכֶם.
- 2 Behold, we have not come out to battle against you that we might shed your blood for power; neither do we desire to bring any one to the yoke of bondage. But this is the very cause for which ye have come against us; yea, and ye are angry with us because of our religion.
- הֵן לֹא יָצֵאנוּ לְהִלָּחֵם בְּכֶם לְמַעַן נִשְׁגִּיג שְׁלֹטוֹן בְּשִׁפְכֵיכֶם דָּמְכֶם; אֵין גַּם חֹפְצֵנוּ לְהַכְנִיס אִישׁ תַּחַת עַל שִׁעְבּוֹד. הֵן רַק זֹאת סִבַּת צֵאתְכֶם עָלֵינוּ: זַעֲמָכֶם עָלֵינוּ מִפְּנֵי דִתְנוּ.
- 3 But now, ye behold that the Lord is with us; and ye behold that he has delivered you into our hands. And now I would that ye should understand that this is done unto us because of our religion and our faith in Christ. And now ye see that ye cannot destroy this our faith.
- וְעַתָּה הֵנֶכֶם רוֹאִים כִּי עִמָּנוּ יְהוָה, וְכִי הוּא נִתַּנְכֶם בְּיָדֵינוּ. וְרוֹצוֹנִי הוּא כִּי תִבִּינוּ כִּי זֹאת נַעֲשֶׂתָה לָנוּ מִפְּנֵי דִתְנוּ וּמִפְּנֵי אֱמוּנָתְנוּ בְּמִשְׁיַח. וְהֵנֶכֶם רוֹאִים כִּי אֵין בְּיָדְכֶם לְאַבֵּד אֶת אֱמוּנָתְנוּ זֹאת.
- 4 Now ye see that this is the true faith of God; yea, ye see that God will support, and keep, and preserve us, so long as we are faithful unto him, and unto our faith, and our religion; and never will the Lord suffer that we shall be destroyed except we should fall into transgression and deny our faith.
- הֵנֶכֶם רוֹאִים כִּי זֹאת אֱמוּנַת אֱלֹהִים הַנִּכּוֹנָה; אֲכֹן, רְאִיתֶם כִּי אֱלֹהִים יִתְמַךְ בָּנוּ, וְיִשְׁמְרֵנוּ וְיִנְצְרֵנוּ כָּל עוֹד נִשְׁמַר אֱמוּנִים לוֹ וְלְאֱמוּנָתְנוּ וּלְדִתְנוּ; וְלֹעֹלָם לֹא יִתִּיר יְהוָה כִּי נִפְרַת בְּלָתִי אִם נִפְשַׁע וּנִכְחַשׁ בְּאֱמוּנָתְנוּ.
- 5 And now, Zerahemnah, I command you, in the name of that all-powerful God, who has strengthened our arms that we have gained power over you, by our faith, by our religion, and by our rites of worship, and by our church, and by the sacred support which we owe to our wives and our children, by that liberty which binds us to our lands and our country; yea, and also by the maintenance of the sacred word of God, to which we owe all our happiness; and by all that is most dear unto us—
- וְעַתָּה, זֶרַחֶמְנָה, הִנְנִי מִצְוֶיכֶם בְּשֵׁם אֵל שַׁדַּי, אֲשֶׁר חֲזַק אֶת יָדֵנוּ לְגִבּוֹר עָלֵיכֶם, בְּשֵׁם אֱמוּנָתְנוּ וּדִתְנוּ, וּסְדֵר עֲבוֹדַת קֹדְשֵׁנוּ וּכְנִסְיָנוּ, וּבְשֵׁם כָּל־כֶּלֶת נְשׁוֹתֵינוּ וְיִלְדֵינוּ, אֲשֶׁר הִיא חֹבְתָנוּ הַקְּדוּשָׁה, וּבְשֵׁם הַחֲרוּת הַקּוֹשֶׁרֶת אוֹתָנוּ אֶל אֲדָמָתְנוּ וְאֶל אֶרְצֵנוּ; אֲכֹן, בְּשֵׁם שְׁמִירַת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים הַקְּדוֹשׁ, אֲשֶׁר הוֹדוֹת לוֹ כָּל אֲשֵׁרֵנוּ, וּבְשֵׁם כָּל הַיָּקָר לָנוּ;
- 6 Yea, and this is not all; I command you by all the desires which ye have for life, that ye deliver up your weapons of war unto us, and we will seek not your blood, but we will spare your lives, if ye will go your way and come not again to war against us.
- וְאֵין זֶה הַכֹּל, הִנְנִי מִצְוֶיכֶם בְּשֵׁם כָּל תְּשׁוּקוֹתֵיכֶם לְחַיּוֹת כִּי תִמְסְרוּ לָנוּ אֶת כָּל־נִשְׁקֵיכֶם; אֲנִי לֹא נִבְקֵשׁ אֶת נַפְשְׁכֶם. כִּי אִם תֵּלְכוּ לְדִרְכְּכֶם וְלֹא תָשׁוּבוּ לְהִלָּחֵם בָּנוּ, נָתַן נָתַן לָכֶם אֶת נַפְשְׁכֶם לְשָׁלָל.
- 7 And now, if ye do not this, behold, ye are in our hands, and I will command my men that they shall fall upon you, and inflict the wounds of death in your bodies, that ye may become extinct; and then we will
- וְאִם לֹא תַעֲשׂוּ כֵן, בְּיָדֵינוּ אַתָּם, וְאֲנִי אֶצְוֶה אֶת אֲנָשָׁי כִּי יִתְנַפְּלוּ עָלֵיכֶם וְיִטְּלוּ בְּגוֹפְכֶם פְּצָעֵי מוֹת לְהַכְחִידְכֶם. אֲזַי נִרְאָה לָמִי הַשְׁלֹטוֹן

על העם הזה; אז נראה מי יהיו המשעבדים.

see who shall have power over this people; yea, we will see who shall be brought into bondage.

וכשמע זרעהמנה את הדברים האלה, הוא קרב ונתן את חרבו ואת פגיונו ואת קשתו לידי מורוני ואמר אליו: הנה כלי נשקנו. נמסרם לכם, אך איננו מוכנים להשבע לכם שבועה אשר יודעים אנחנו כי נפר אותה, אנחנו ובנינו. קח את נשקנו ותן לנו לצאת אל היערות. ואם לא ישר זה בעיניך, נשא שנית את חרבותינו ונאבד או נכבש.

8 And now it came to pass that when Zerahemnah had heard these sayings he came forth and delivered up his sword and his cimeter, and his bow into the hands of Moroni, and said unto him: Behold, here are our weapons of war; we will deliver them up unto you, but we will not suffer ourselves to take an oath unto you, which we know that we shall break, and also our children; but take our weapons of war, and suffer that we may depart into the wilderness; otherwise we will retain our swords, and we will perish or conquer.

אין אנחנו בני אמונתך. איננו מאמינים כי אלהים נתננו בידיכם, אלא מאמינים אנחנו כי ערמתכם שמרתכם מחרבותינו. הנה, שריוני החזה ומגניכם, הם אשר שמרוכם.

9 Behold, we are not of your faith; we do not believe that it is God that has delivered us into your hands; but we believe that it is your cunning that has preserved you from our swords. Behold, it is your breastplates and your shields that have preserved you.

וככלות זרעהמנה לומר את הדברים האלה, השיבו מורוני את החרב ואת כלי הנשק אשר קבל ואמר: הנה, שום נשים קץ למריבה.

10 And now when Zerahemnah had made an end of speaking these words, Moroni returned the sword and the weapons of war, which he had received, unto Zerahemnah, saying: Behold, we will end the conflict.

לא אוכל לחזור בי מדברי אשר דברתי. לכן, חי יהוה כי לא תצאו מפה כי אם בשבועה כי לא תשובו להלחם בנו. ועתה, יען אשר בידנו אתם, נגיר את דמכם לארץ, או תכנעו לתנאים אשר הצעתים.

11 Now I cannot recall the words which I have spoken, therefore as the Lord liveth, ye shall not depart except ye depart with an oath that ye will not return again against us to war. Now as ye are in our hands we will spill your blood upon the ground, or ye shall submit to the conditions which I have proposed.

וכאמר מורוני את הדברים האלה, תפס זרעהמנה את חרבו, ובחמתו על מורוני, פרץ קדימה להרגו; אך כהניפו את חרבו, והנה אחד מחילי מורוני הכה אותה ארצה ונצבה נשבר; והוא אף הלם בזרעהמנה והתיו את קרקפתו ארצה. וזרעהמנה נסוג מפניהם אל בין חיליו.

12 And now when Moroni had said these words, Zerahemnah retained his sword, and he was angry with Moroni, and he rushed forward that he might slay Moroni; but as he raised his sword, behold, one of Moroni's soldiers smote it even to the earth, and it broke by the hilt; and he also smote Zerahemnah that he took off his scalp and it fell to the earth. And Zerahemnah withdrew from before them into the midst of his soldiers.

והחיל אשר עמד בקרבנו, והוא אשר הסיר במכתו את קרקפת זרעהמנה, הרים את הקרקפת מן האדמה בהחזיקו בשערוֹתיה ותקע אותה בקצה חרבו והניפה לעמת הלמנים ואמר אליהם בקול גדול:

13 And it came to pass that the soldier who stood by, who smote off the scalp of Zerahemnah, took up the scalp from off the ground by the hair, and laid it upon the point of his sword, and stretched it forth unto them, saying unto them with a loud voice:

פקרקפת הזאת אשר נפלה ארצה, קרקפת מנהיגכם, כן תפלו אתם ארצה אם לא תמסרו את כלי נשקכם, ותצאו בברית שלום.

14 Even as this scalp has fallen to the earth, which is the scalp of your chief, so shall ye fall to the earth except ye will deliver up your weapons of war and depart with a covenant of peace.

ורבים אשר שמעו את הדברים האלה וראו את הקרקפת התקועה בקצה החרב, הכו

15 Now there were many, when they heard these words and saw the scalp which was upon the sword, that were struck with fear; and many came

- בַּפֶּחַד. וְרַבִּים נָגְשׁוּ וְהִשְׁלִיכוּ אֶת כָּלִי נֶשֶׁקָם  
לְרִגְלֵי מוֹרוֹנִי וּבָאוּ בְּבְרִית שְׁלוֹם. וְכָל אֲשֶׁר  
בָּאוּ בְּבְרִית, הִתְּרוּ לְצֵאת אֶל הַיַּעַר.
- וְזִרְעַחְמָנָה בַּחֲמָתוֹ הֶעֱזָה עוֹרָר אֶת שְׂאֲרֵית  
חֵילָיו לְכַעַס עַל הַנְּפִיִּים וּלְהִלָּחֵם בָּהֶם  
בְּמִשְׁנֵה כֹחַ.
- וּמוֹרוֹנִי כָעַס עַל עֲקֻשׁוֹת הַלָּמָנִים, וְלָכֵן  
צִוָּה עַל אֲנָשָׁיו לְהִתְנַפֵּל עֲלֵיהֶם וּלְהָרְגֵם.  
וְהֵם הִחֲלוּ לְהָרְגֵם; וְהַלָּמָנִים נִלְחָמוּ  
בַּחֲרֻבוֹתֵיהֶם וּבְכֹחָם.
- וְהִנֵּה, מֵעֲרַמֵּי עוֹרָם וְרֹאשֵׁיהֶם הַמְּגֻלִּים הָיוּ  
חֲשׂוּפִים לְפִגְיַעַת חֲרֻבוֹת הַנְּפִיִּים הַחֲדוֹת; אַכֵּן  
הֵם דָּקְרוּ וְהָכּוּ, וְנָפְלוּ כְּהֶרֶף עֵין לִפְנֵי חֲרֻבוֹת  
הַנְּפִיִּים; וְהֵם הִכְרַעוּ אַרְצָה, כְּדֹבֵר הַנְּבוּאָה  
אֲשֶׁר יָצָא מִפִּי חֵיל מוֹרוֹנִי.
- וְכִרְאוֹת זִרְעַחְמָנָה כִּי הֵם כָּלֵם עַל סֵף הַכִּלְיוֹן,  
הוּא קָרָא אֶל מוֹרוֹנִי בְּחֻזָּקָה וְאָמַר כִּי הוּא  
וְאֲנָשָׁיו יָבוֹאוּ בְּבְרִית עִם הַנְּפִיִּים, אִם יַחוּסוּ  
עַל חַיֵּי שְׂאֲרֵיהֶם, וְכִי לְעוֹלָם לֹא יוֹסִיפוּ לְצֵאת  
עֲלֵיהֶם לְמִלְחָמָה.
- אֲזַי צִוָּה מוֹרוֹנִי לְחַדֵּל שְׁנִית מִן הַהֶרֶג  
בְּאֲנָשִׁים. וְהוּא לָקַח אֶת כָּלִי הַנֶּשֶׁק מֵאֵת  
הַלָּמָנִים; וְאַחֵר אֲשֶׁר בָּאוּ עִמּוֹ בְּבְרִית שְׁלוֹם  
הִתְּרוּ לָהֶם לְצֵאת אֶל הַיַּעַר.
- וּמִסְפַּר הָרוּגֵיהֶם לֹא נִמְנָה כִּי רַב הָיָה. אַכֵּן,  
עֲצוּם וְרַב הָיָה מִסְפַּר הַהָרוּגִים, הֵן מִן הַנְּפִיִּים  
וְהֵן מִן הַלָּמָנִים.
- וְהֵם הִשְׁלִיכוּ אֶת מֵתֵיהֶם אֶל מִי צִידוֹן; וְהֵם  
נִשְׂאוּ הַלָּאָה מִשָּׁם וְנִקְבְּרוּ בְּמַעְמְקֵי הַיָּם.
- וְחֵילוֹת הַנְּפִיִּים, צָבָא מוֹרוֹנִי, שָׁבוּ אֶל בְּתֵיהֶם  
וְאֶל אֲדָמָתָם.
- כֹּה כָלְתָה שְׁנַת שְׁמוֹנֶה עָשָׂרָה לְשִׁלְטוֹן  
הַשּׁוֹפְטִים בְּעַם נֶפִּי. וְכֹה תָמוּ כְּתָבֵי עֲלָמָא,  
הַכְּתוּבִים עַל לוחות נֶפִּי.
- forth and threw down their weapons of war at the feet of Moroni,  
and entered into a covenant of peace. And as many as entered into a  
covenant they suffered to depart into the wilderness.
- 16 Now it came to pass that Zerahemnah was exceedingly wroth, and  
he did stir up the remainder of his soldiers to anger, to contend more  
powerfully against the Nephites.
- 17 And now Moroni was angry, because of the stubbornness of the  
Lamanites; therefore he commanded his people that they should fall  
upon them and slay them. And it came to pass that they began to  
slay them; yea, and the Lamanites did contend with their swords and  
their might.
- 18 But behold, their naked skins and their bare heads were exposed to  
the sharp swords of the Nephites; yea, behold they were pierced and  
smitten, yea, and did fall exceedingly fast before the swords of the  
Nephites; and they began to be swept down, even as the soldier of  
Moroni had prophesied.
- 19 Now Zerahemnah, when he saw that they were all about to be destroyed,  
cried mightily unto Moroni, promising that he would covenant and  
also his people with them, if they would spare the remainder of their  
lives, that they never would come to war again against them.
- 20 And it came to pass that Moroni caused that the work of death should  
cease again among the people. And he took the weapons of war from  
the Lamanites; and after they had entered into a covenant with him of  
peace they were suffered to depart into the wilderness.
- 21 Now the number of their dead was not numbered because of the  
greatness of the number; yea, the number of their dead was exceedingly  
great, both on the Nephites and on the Lamanites.
- 22 And it came to pass that they did cast their dead into the waters of  
Sidon, and they have gone forth and are buried in the depths of the sea.
- 23 And the armies of the Nephites, or of Moroni, returned and came to  
their houses and their lands.
- 24 And thus ended the eighteenth year of the reign of the judges over  
the people of Nephi. And thus ended the record of Alma, which was  
written upon the plates of Nephi.

ספור מעשי עם נְפִי, מלחמותיהם ומחלוקותיהם  
בימי הילמן, על פי כתבי הזכרון אשר להילמן  
(בערך 73-57 לפני הספירה). נכלל בפרקים  
מה-סב.

*The account of the people of Nephi, and their wars and dissensions, in the  
days of Helaman, according to the record of Helaman. (About 73-57 B.C.)  
Comprising chapters 45-62.*

## מה

## 45

בימים ההם היתה לעם נְפִי שמחה רבה,  
כי שוב הצילם יהוה מידי אויביהם; על כן הם  
הודו ליהוה אֱלֹהֵיהֶם; אֲכֹן, הם הרבו לצום  
ולהתפלל ועבדו את אֱלֹהִים בשמחה רבה.

1 Behold, now it came to pass that the people of Nephi were exceedingly  
rejoiced, because the Lord had again delivered them out of the hands  
of their enemies; therefore they gave thanks unto the Lord their God;  
yea, and they did fast much and pray much, and they did worship God  
with exceedingly great joy.

והיה בשנת תשע עשרה לשלטון השופטים  
בעם נְפִי, בא עלמא אל הילמן בנו ואמר אליו:  
התאמין בדברים אשר אמרתי אליך על אודות  
כתבי הזכרון ההם אשר נשמרו?

2 And it came to pass in the nineteenth year of the reign of the judges  
over the people of Nephi, that Alma came unto his son Helaman  
and said unto him: Believest thou the words which I spake unto thee  
concerning those records which have been kept?

ואמר אליו הילמן: אֲכֹן, אני מאמין.

3 And Helaman said unto him: Yea, I believe.

ואמר אליו עלמא שנית: התאמין בישוע  
המשיח, אשר יבוא?

4 And Alma said again: Believest thou in Jesus Christ, who shall come?

והוא אָמַר: אֲכֹן, אני מאמין בכל הדברים  
אשר דברת.

5 And he said: Yea, I believe all the words which thou hast spoken.

ועלמא הוסיף לומר אליו: התשמר  
את מצוותי?

6 And Alma said unto him again: Will ye keep my commandments?

והוא אָמַר: כן, אשמר את מצוותיך בכל לבי.

7 And he said: Yea, I will keep thy commandments with all my heart.

ואמר אליו עלמא: ברוך אתה, ויהוה יצליחך  
בארץ הזאת.

8 Then Alma said unto him: Blessed art thou; and the Lord shall prosper  
thee in this land.

והנה, יש לי אליך דבר נבואה, אך אל לך  
להודיעו לאיש. אֲכֹן, אל יודע את אשר אנבא  
באזניך עד אשר יתקיים. לכן, כתב את  
הדברים אשר אמר.

9 But behold, I have somewhat to prophesy unto thee; but what I  
prophesy unto thee ye shall not make known; yea, what I prophesy  
unto thee shall not be made known, even until the prophecy is fulfilled;  
therefore write the words which I shall say.

ואלה הדברים: הנני חוזה, כפי רוח ההתגלות  
אשר בי, כי העם הזה, הנפיים, ידורו אל  
חסר אמונה כעבר ארבע מאות שנה מעת  
התגלות ישוע המשיח לפנייהם.

10 And these are the words: Behold, I perceive that this very people, the  
Nephites, according to the spirit of revelation which is in me, in four  
hundred years from the time that Jesus Christ shall manifest himself  
unto them, shall dwindle in unbelief.

ובימים ההם יראו הם מלחמות ודבר, רעב  
ושפיכות דמים עד אשר יכחד עם נְפִי כליל.

11 Yea, and then shall they see wars and pestilences, yea, famines and  
bloodshed, even until the people of Nephi shall become extinct—

- 12 וְזֹאת מִפְּנֵי שִׁקְיַעְתֶּם בְּחֹסֶר אֱמוּנָה וּפִילְתֶּם  
אֶל מַעֲשֵׂי חֹשֶׁךְ וְזִמָּה וְכָל מִינֵי עֲוֹנוֹת; אַכֵּן,  
אוֹמֵר אֲנִי לָךְ, יֵעָן אֲשֶׁר יִחַסְאוּ נֶגֶד אֹר וְדַעַת  
כֹּה גְדוֹלִים, מִן הַיּוֹם הַהוּא, אִף דּוֹר רְבִיעִי לֹא  
יִחַלֵּף כָּלֹו בְּטָרִם יָבֹוא הָעוֹן הַגָּדוֹל הַזֶּה.
- 13 And when that great day cometh, behold, the time very soon cometh  
that those who are now, or the seed of those who are now numbered  
among the people of Nephi, shall no more be numbered among the  
people of Nephi.
- 14 But whosoever remaineth, and is not destroyed in that great and  
dreadful day, shall be numbered among the Lamanites, and shall  
become like unto them, all, save it be a few who shall be called the  
disciples of the Lord; and them shall the Lamanites pursue even until  
they shall become extinct. And now, because of iniquity, this prophecy  
shall be fulfilled.
- 15 And now it came to pass that after Alma had said these things to  
Helaman, he blessed him, and also his other sons; and he also blessed  
the earth for the righteous' sake.
- 16 And he said: Thus saith the Lord God—Cursed shall be the land,  
yea, this land, unto every nation, kindred, tongue, and people, unto  
destruction, which do wickedly, when they are fully ripe; and as I have  
said so shall it be; for this is the cursing and the blessing of God upon  
the land, for the Lord cannot look upon sin with the least degree of  
allowance.
- 17 And now, when Alma had said these words he blessed the church, yea,  
all those who should stand fast in the faith from that time henceforth.
- 18 And when Alma had done this he departed out of the land of Zarahemla,  
as if to go into the land of Melek. And it came to pass that he was never  
heard of more; as to his death or burial we know not of.
- 19 Behold, this we know, that he was a righteous man; and the saying went  
abroad in the church that he was taken up by the Spirit, or buried by  
the hand of the Lord, even as Moses. But behold, the scriptures saith  
the Lord took Moses unto himself; and we suppose that he has also  
received Alma in the spirit, unto himself; therefore, for this cause we  
know nothing concerning his death and burial.
- וְזֹאת מִפְּנֵי שִׁקְיַעְתֶּם בְּחֹסֶר אֱמוּנָה וּפִילְתֶּם  
אֶל מַעֲשֵׂי חֹשֶׁךְ וְזִמָּה וְכָל מִינֵי עֲוֹנוֹת; אַכֵּן,  
אוֹמֵר אֲנִי לָךְ, יֵעָן אֲשֶׁר יִחַסְאוּ נֶגֶד אֹר וְדַעַת  
כֹּה גְדוֹלִים, מִן הַיּוֹם הַהוּא, אִף דּוֹר רְבִיעִי לֹא  
יִחַלֵּף כָּלֹו בְּטָרִם יָבֹוא הָעוֹן הַגָּדוֹל הַזֶּה.
- וּבְבֹא הַיּוֹם הַגָּדוֹל הַהוּא תָּבֹוא עַד מִהְרָה  
הָעֵת אֲשֶׁר בָּהּ יִחַדְלוּ הַנִּמְנִים עִתָּה עִם עַם  
נִפִי, אוֹ עִם זֶרַעַם, לְהִמָּנוֹת עִם עַם נִפִי.
- וְכָל הַנִּשְׁאָר, אֲשֶׁר לֹא יֵאבֵד בַּיּוֹם הַגָּדוֹל  
וְהַנּוֹרָא הַהוּא, יִמָּנֶה עִם הַלְּמָנִים וְיִהְיֶה  
כְּמוֹהֶם. רַק מַעֲשִׂים יִוָּתְרוּ אֲשֶׁר יִקְרְאוּ  
תַּלְמִידֵי יְהוָה; וְהַלְּמָנִים רְדוּףֵי יִרְדְּפוּם עַד  
אֲשֶׁר יִמָּחוּ. הִנֵּה, קוֹם תִּקּוּם הַנְּבוּאָה הַזֹּאת  
מִפְּנֵי הָעוֹן.
- וּכְכֹלֹת עֲלָמָא לְדַבֵּר אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה  
אֶל הֵילְמָן, הוּא בֵּרַךְ אוֹתוֹ וְכֵן אֶת שְׁאֵר בָּנָיו;  
וְהוּא אִף בֵּרַךְ אֶת הָאֲדָמָה לְמַעַן הַצַּדִּיקִים.
- וְהוּא אָמַר: כֹּה אָמַר יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים, אֶרְוָה  
תִּהְיֶה הָאֶרֶץ, הָאֶרֶץ הַזֹּאת, לְכָל אָמָה,  
מִשְׁפָּחָה, לְשׁוֹן וְעַם אֲשֶׁר יַעֲשׂוּ רָשָׁעָה;  
לְכָלֶיהָ יִהְיוּ בְּמַלְאֵת סָאֲתָם; כִּי בְּאֲשֶׁר אִמְרָתִי  
כֵּן יִהְיֶה; כִּי זֹאת קָלַלֹת אֱלֹהִים וּבִרְכָתוֹ עַל  
הָאֶרֶץ, כִּי לֹא יוּכַל יְהוָה לְהַתִּיר כָּל חַטָּא,  
אִף בְּוַתּוֹר הַקָּל בְּיוֹתֵר.
- וְכֵאמֹר עֲלָמָא אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, הוּא בֵּרַךְ  
אֶת הַכְּנִסְיָה, אֶת כָּל אֲשֶׁר יַעֲמְדוּ אֵיתָנִים  
בְּאַמוּנָתָם מִן הַיּוֹם הַהוּא וְאַיִלָּךְ.
- וְהָיָה אַחֵר עֲשׂוֹת עֲלָמָא אֶת זֹאת, הוּא יָצָא  
מֵאֶרֶץ זֶרַחְמֶלָה, וְנִרְאָה כְּאִלּוֹ הֵלֶךְ אֶל אֶרֶץ  
מֶלֶךְ. וְאִישׁ לֹא שָׁמַע עוֹד עַל אוֹדוֹתָיו, וְאֵין  
אֲנַחְנוּ יוֹדְעִים דְּבַר עַל מוֹתוֹ וְעַל קְבוּרָתוֹ.
- וְרַק זֹאת נִדַּע: צָדִיק הָיָה, וְהִשְׁמוּעָה יָצְאָה  
בְּכְנִסְיָה כִּי הָרוּחַ לְקַחְתָּהוּ מֵעֵלָה, אוֹ כִּי  
נִקְבֵּר, כְּמֹשֶׁה, בְּיַד יְהוָה. וְהִנֵּה, כְּתָבִי הַקֹּדֶשׁ  
אוֹמְרִים כִּי יְהוָה לָקַח אֶת מֹשֶׁה אֵלָיו; וְאֲנַחְנוּ  
מִשְׁעָרִים כִּי אִף אֶת עֲלָמָא קִבֵּל אֵלָיו בְּרוּחוֹ.  
לְכֵן, מִפְּנֵי זֹאת, אֵינְנוּ יוֹדְעִים מֵאוֹמָה עַל  
מוֹתוֹ וְעַל קְבוּרָתוֹ.



- 20 And now it came to pass in the commencement of the nineteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, that Helaman went forth among the people to declare the word unto them.
- 21 For behold, because of their wars with the Lamanites and the many little dissensions and disturbances which had been among the people, it became expedient that the word of God should be declared among them, yea, and that a regulation should be made throughout the church.
- 22 Therefore, Helaman and his brethren went forth to establish the church again in all the land, yea, in every city throughout all the land which was possessed by the people of Nephi. And it came to pass that they did appoint priests and teachers throughout all the land, over all the churches.
- 23 And now it came to pass that after Helaman and his brethren had appointed priests and teachers over the churches that there arose a dissension among them, and they would not give heed to the words of Helaman and his brethren;
- 24 But they grew proud, being lifted up in their hearts, because of their exceedingly great riches; therefore they grew rich in their own eyes, and would not give heed to their words, to walk uprightly before God.
- וְהָיָה בְּרֵאשִׁית שְׁנַת תְּשַׁע עָשָׂר לְשָׁלוֹן  
הַשּׁוֹפְטִים בְּעַם נְפִי, יָצָא הֵלְמָן אֶל הָעָם  
לְהַשְׁמִיעֵם אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים.
- כִּי מִפְּנֵי מִלְחָמוֹתֵיהֶם בְּלָמְנִים, וּמִפְּנֵי  
מַחְלֻקוֹת קְטָנוֹת מְרֻבּוֹת וְהַפְּרָעוֹת בְּקִרְבָּם  
הָעָם, הָיָה צָרָה לְהַשְׁמִיעַ אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים  
בְּקִרְבָּם וּלְקַבֵּעַ סְדָרִים בְּכָל הַכְּנִסְיָהּ.
- לָכֵן יָצְאוּ הֵלְמָן וְאֶחָיו לִישָׁד מִחֻדָּשׁ אֶת  
הַכְּנִסְיָהּ בְּכָל הָאָרֶץ, בְּכָל עִיר אֲשֶׁר בְּרַחְבֵּי  
כָּל אֶרֶץ נַחֲלַת עַם נְפִי וְהֵם מָנוּ כְּהֻנִּים  
וּמֹדֵרִים בְּכָל הַכְּנִסְיֹת בְּכָל הָאָרֶץ.
- וְהָיָה אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר מָנוּ הֵלְמָן וְאֶחָיו כְּהֻנִּים  
וּמֹדֵרִים לְכְּנִסְיֹת, פָּרְצָה מְרִיבָה בְּעַם וְהֵם  
לֹא שָׁתוּ לִבָּם לְדַבְּרֵי הֵלְמָן וְאֶחָיו;
- כִּי הֵם הִתְנַשְּׂאוּ וְהִתְגָּאוּ בְּלִבָּם עַל גְּדֹל עֲשָׂתָם  
הָעֲצוּם; אָכֵן, הֵם הָיוּ עֹשִׂיִּים בְּעֵינֵיהֶם וְלֹא  
שָׁתוּ לִבָּם לְדַבְּרֵי הֵלְמָן וְאֶחָיו לָלֶכֶת בְּדֶרֶךְ  
מִישָׁרִים לִפְנֵי אֱלֹהִים.

## מו

## 46

- 1 And it came to pass that as many as would not hearken to the words of Helaman and his brethren were gathered together against their brethren.
- 2 And now behold, they were exceedingly wroth, insomuch that they were determined to slay them.
- 3 Now the leader of those who were wroth against their brethren was a large and a strong man; and his name was Amalickiah.
- 4 And Amalickiah was desirous to be a king; and those people who were wroth were also desirous that he should be their king; and they were the greater part of them the lower judges of the land, and they were seeking for power.
- 5 And they had been led by the flatteries of Amalickiah, that if they would support him and establish him to be their king that he would make them rulers over the people.
- וְכָל אֲשֶׁר סָרְבוּ לִשְׁמָע לְדַבְּרֵי הֵלְמָן וְאֶחָיו  
נֶאֱסָפוּ יַחְדָּו עַל בְּנֵי עַמָּם.
- וְהִנֵּה, כֹּה רַב הָיָה קִצְפָּם עַד כִּי בִקְשׁוּ לְהָרִגֵם.
- וְרֹאשׁ הָרוֹגְזִים עַל בְּנֵי עַמָּם הָיָה אִישׁ גָּדוֹל  
וְחֹזֶק, וְשֵׁמוֹ נִקְרָא עַמְלִיקְיָהּ.
- וְעַמְלִיקְיָהּ חָפֵץ לִהְיוֹת מֶלֶךְ; וְהַמִּתְקוֹמְמִים  
בִּקְשׁוּ אִף הֵם כִּי הוּא יְהִי מֶלֶכָם. רַבָּם הָיוּ  
שׁוֹפְטֵי הָאָרֶץ הַנְּמוּכִים וְהֵם בִּקְשׁוּ  
לְזִכּוֹת בִּשְׂרָרָה.
- וְעַמְלִיקְיָהּ הוֹלִיךְ אוֹתָם בְּדַבְּרֵי חֲלָקוֹת, כִּי אִם  
יִתְמַכּוּ בּוֹ וַיִּשְׁמְעוּהוּ מֶלֶךְ עֲלֵיהֶם, הוּא יִפְקִידֵם  
כְּמוֹשָׁלִים בְּעַם.

- כֹּה הָיוּ עַל יְדֵי עֲמִלִיקְיָהוּ אֶל מַחְלָקָהּ, לְמִרְוֹת הַטֶּפֶת הַיִּלְמָן וְאֶחָיו; אָכֵן, עַל אִף דְּאֶגְתָּם הַמְרִבָּה לְכִנְסִיָּהּ, כִּי הֵם הָיוּ כֹהֲנִים גְּדוֹלִים בָּהּ.
- 6 Thus they were led away by Amalickiah to dissensions, notwithstanding the preaching of Helaman and his brethren, yea, notwithstanding their exceedingly great care over the church, for they were high priests over the church.
- וְרַבִּים הָיוּ בְּכִנְסִיָּהּ אֲשֶׁר הָאֲמִינִי בְּדִבְרֵי הַחֲלָקוֹת אֲשֶׁר מִפִּי עֲמִלִיקְיָהוּ; לָכֵן הֵם נִפְרְדוּ גַם מִן הַכִּנְסִיָּהּ. וְכֹה הָיוּ עֲנִינֵי עַם נְפִי רוֹפְפִים וּמִסְכָּנִים עַד מְאֹד, עַל אִף נִצְחוֹנָם הַגָּדוֹל עַל הַלְּמָנִים וְרַב שִׂמְחָתָם עַל הַצִּלָּתָם בְּיַד יְהוָה.
- 7 And there were many in the church who believed in the flattering words of Amalickiah, therefore they dissented even from the church; and thus were the affairs of the people of Nephi exceedingly precarious and dangerous, notwithstanding their great victory which they had had over the Lamanites, and their great rejoicings which they had had because of their deliverance by the hand of the Lord.
- וְכֹה רוֹאִים אֲנִיחֵנוּ מִה מְהִירִים בְּנֵי הָאָדָם לְשַׁכַּח אֶת יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵיהֶם, וּמִה מְהִירִים הֵם לַעֲשׂוֹת עָוֹן וְלִסּוֹר מִדֶּרֶךְ הַיֵּשֶׁר בְּהִנְהֲגַת הַשָּׁטָן.
- 8 Thus we see how quick the children of men do forget the Lord their God, yea, how quick to do iniquity, and to be led away by the evil one.
- וְכֵן רוֹאִים אֲנִיחֵנוּ מִה גְּדוֹלָה הַרְשָׁעָה אֲשֶׁר יָכוֹל אִישׁ רָשָׁע מְרָשָׁע לְהִבְיֵא לְבָדוֹ אֶל קֶרֶב בְּנֵי הָאָדָם.
- 9 Yea, and we also see the great wickedness one very wicked man can cause to take place among the children of men.
- אָכֵן, רוֹאִים אֲנִיחֵנוּ כִּי עֲמִלִיקְיָהוּ, בְּהִיּוֹתוֹ אִישׁ תַּחְבּוּלוֹת, אִישׁ עֲרָמָה וְחִנְפָּה, הִשָּׂה לְבַב רַבִּים אֶל מַעֲשֵׂי רָשָׁע, כִּי בִקֵּשׁ הוּא לְאַבֵּד אֶת כִּנְסִיַּת אֱלֹהִים וּלְהַחְרִיב אֶת יְסוֹד הַחֲרוּת אֲשֶׁר נָתַן לָהֶם אֱלֹהִים, הִיא הַבְּרָכָה אֲשֶׁר שָׁלַח אֱלֹהִים עַל פְּנֵי הָאָרֶץ לְמַעַן הַצְדִּיקִים.
- 10 Yea, we see that Amalickiah, because he was a man of cunning devices and a man of many flattering words, that he led away the hearts of many people to do wickedly; yea, and to seek to destroy the church of God, and to destroy the foundation of liberty which God had granted unto them, or which blessing God had sent upon the face of the land for the righteous' sake.
- וְהִיָּה כְשֶׁמַּעַם מוֹרוֹנִי, הַמְּפַקֵּד הָעֲלִיוֹן אֲשֶׁר לְחִילוֹת הַנְּפִיִּים, עַל הַמְרִיבוֹת הָאֵלֶּה, הוּא כָּעַס עַל עֲמִלִיקְיָהוּ.
- 11 And now it came to pass that when Moroni, who was the chief commander of the armies of the Nephites, had heard of these dissensions, he was angry with Amalickiah.
- וְהוּא קָרַע אֶת כְּתָנָתוֹ, וְלָקַח קָרַע מִמֶּנָּה וְכָתַב עָלָיו: לְזִכְרוֹן אֱלֹהֵינוּ וְדָתֵנוּ, חֲרוּתֵנוּ וּשְׁלוֹמֵנוּ, נָשִׁינוּ וְיֻלְדֵינוּ; וְהוּא הִצְמִיד אֶת הַקָּרַע אֶל קֶצֶה מוֹט.
- 12 And it came to pass that he rent his coat; and he took a piece thereof, and wrote upon it—In memory of our God, our religion, and freedom, and our peace, our wives, and our children—and he fastened it upon the end of a pole.
- וְהוּא חָבַשׁ אֶת שָׂרְיוֹן רִאשׁוֹ וְאֶת שָׂרְיוֹן חֲזֵהוּ וְאֶת מְגִנָּיו, וְחָגַר אֶת נִשְׁקוֹ עַל מִתְנָיו; וְהוּא לָקַח אֶת הַמוֹט אֲשֶׁר בְּרִאשׁוֹ נָשָׂא קָרַע כְּתָנָתוֹ, וְלוֹ קָרָא נֵס הַחֲרוּת; וְהוּא הִשְׁתַּחֲוָה אַרְצָה וְהִתְפַּלֵּל בְּרַב עֲזָז אֶל אֱלֹהָיו כִּי יִשְׁלַח אֶת בְּרַכַּת הַחֲרוּת עַל עַמִּיתָיו, כָּל עוֹד נִשְׁאָרָת אַגְדַּת מְשִׁיחִיִּים לְנַחֵל אֶת הָאָרֶץ.
- 13 And he fastened on his head-plate, and his breastplate, and his shields, and girded on his armor about his loins; and he took the pole, which had on the end thereof his rent coat, (and he called it the title of liberty) and he bowed himself to the earth, and he prayed mightily unto his God for the blessings of liberty to rest upon his brethren, so long as there should a band of Christians remain to possess the land—
- כִּי כִּךְ נִקְרְאוּ כָּל מֵאֲמִינֵי הַמְּשִׁיחִים הַכֹּהֲנִים, חֲבֵרֵי כִנְסִיַּת אֱלֹהִים, בְּפִי הָאֲנָשִׁים אֲשֶׁר לֹא חֲבָרוּ לְכִנְסִיָּהּ.
- 14 For thus were all the true believers of Christ, who belonged to the church of God, called by those who did not belong to the church.

- 15 וְאֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר חָבְרוּ לְכִנְסִיָּה הָיוּ נֶאֱמָנִים; אָכֵן, כָּל הַמֵּאֱמִינִים בַּמָּשִׁיחַ בְּכִנּוּת קִבְּלוּ עֲלֵיהֶם, בַּחֲפֹץ לֵב, אֶת שֵׁם הַמָּשִׁיחַ, אוֹ אֶת הַשֵּׁם מָשִׁיחִיִּים, כִּפִּי אֲשֶׁר נִקְרָאוּ, מִפְּנֵי אֱמוּנָתָם בַּמָּשִׁיחַ אֲשֶׁר יָבוֹא.
- 16 לָכֵן הִתְפַּלֵּל מוֹרוֹנִי בַּעֲת הַהִיא כִּי עָנָן הַמָּשִׁיחִיִּים וְחֵירוּת הָאָרֶץ יִמָּצָא חֵן לִפְנֵי אֱלֹהִים.
- 17 וְהָיָה אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר שָׁפַךְ אֶת לִבּוֹ בַּתְּפִלָּה לְאֱלֹהִים, הוּא כָּנָה אֶת כָּל הָאָרֶץ אֲשֶׁר מִדְּרוֹם לָאָרֶץ חֲרֵבָה, אָכֵן, אֶת כָּל אָרֶץ הַנִּפְיִים, אֲשֶׁר מִצָּפוֹן וְאֲשֶׁר מִדְּרוֹם, אָרֶץ הַבְּחִירָה וְאָרֶץ חֵירוּת.
- 18 וְהוּא אָמַר: אָכֵן, לֹא יִתֵּר אֱלֹהִים כִּי אֲנַחְנוּ, אֲשֶׁר יְבוֹזוּנוּ מִפְּנֵי שְׂאֲתָנוּ אֶת שֵׁם הַמָּשִׁיחַ, נִרְמָס וְנִשְׁמָד כִּי אִם בְּהִסָּבְנוּ זֹאת עָלֵינוּ בַּפִּשְׁעֵינוּ.
- 19 וְכַאֲמֹר אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, יָצָא מוֹרוֹנִי אֶל הָעָם, וְהוּא מְנוּפֵף אֶת קֶרַע בִּתְּנֻתוֹ מֵעֵלָּה, לְמַעַן יֵרְאוּ הַכָּל אֶת אֲשֶׁר כָּתַב עָלָיו, וְקָרָא בְּקוֹל גָּדוֹל לֵאמֹר:
- 20 רְאוּ, כָּל הַמַּחְזִיק בְּנֵס הַזֶּה בָּאָרֶץ, יְבוֹא נָא וְיִתְלַבֵּשׁ עִז יִהוּה וְיִכְנֵס בְּבְרִית שְׂמִיָּה עַל יְכוּתָיו וְדָתוֹ, לְמַעַן יִבְרַכְהוּ יִהוּה אֱלֹהִים.
- 21 וְהָיָה בְּהִשְׁמִיעַ מוֹרוֹנִי אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, וְהָיָה נִהְרֵי הָאֲנָשִׁים יַחְדָּו חֲגוּרִים בְּנִשְׁקָם עַל מִתְּנִיָּהֶם, וְהֵם קוֹרְעִים אֶת בְּגִדֵּיהֶם, לְאוֹת, וְלִבְרִית, כִּי לֹא יַעֲזֹבוּ אֶת יִהוּה אֱלֹהֵיהֶם; וּבִלְשׁוֹן אַחֵר: אִם יִפְּרוּ אֶת מִצְוֹת אֱלֹהִים, אוֹ יִפְשְׁעוּ, וְיִבּוֹשׁוּ לְשִׂאת עָלֵיהֶם אֶת שֵׁם הַמָּשִׁיחַ, קְרוֹעַ יִקְרָעֻם יִהוּה, כְּאֲשֶׁר קָרְעוּ הֵם אֶת בְּגִדֵּיהֶם.
- 22 וְזֹאת הַבְּרִית אֲשֶׁר כָּרְתוּ; וְהֵם הִשְׁלִיכוּ אֶת בְּגִדֵּיהֶם לְרַגְלֵי מוֹרוֹנִי וְאָמְרוּ: בְּרִיתָנוּ עִם אֱלֹהֵינוּ כִּי נֵאֱבֹד כְּאֶחָיו בָּאָרֶץ הַצָּפוֹן, אִם נִשְׁקַע בַּעֲבָרוֹת; אָכֵן, אִם פָּשְׁעוּ נִפְשָׁע זָכָאִי הוּא לְהִשְׁלִיכֵנוּ לְרַגְלֵי אוֹיְבֵינוּ, כְּאֲשֶׁר הִשְׁלַכְנוּ אֲנַחְנוּ אֶת בְּגִדֵּינוּ לְרַגְלֵיךָ לְהִרְמָס.
- 15 And those who did belong to the church were faithful; yea, all those who were true believers in Christ took upon them, gladly, the name of Christ, or Christians as they were called, because of their belief in Christ who should come.
- 16 And therefore, at this time, Moroni prayed that the cause of the Christians, and the freedom of the land might be favored.
- 17 And it came to pass that when he had poured out his soul to God, he named all the land which was south of the land Desolation, yea, and in fine, all the land, both on the north and on the south—A chosen land, and the land of liberty.
- 18 And he said: Surely God shall not suffer that we, who are despised because we take upon us the name of Christ, shall be trodden down and destroyed, until we bring it upon us by our own transgressions.
- 19 And when Moroni had said these words, he went forth among the people, waving the rent part of his garment in the air, that all might see the writing which he had written upon the rent part, and crying with a loud voice, saying:
- 20 Behold, whosoever will maintain this title upon the land, let them come forth in the strength of the Lord, and enter into a covenant that they will maintain their rights, and their religion, that the Lord God may bless them.
- 21 And it came to pass that when Moroni had proclaimed these words, behold, the people came running together with their armor girded about their loins, rending their garments in token, or as a covenant, that they would not forsake the Lord their God; or, in other words, if they should transgress the commandments of God, or fall into transgression, and be ashamed to take upon them the name of Christ, the Lord should rend them even as they had rent their garments.
- 22 Now this was the covenant which they made, and they cast their garments at the feet of Moroni, saying: We covenant with our God, that we shall be destroyed, even as our brethren in the land northward, if we shall fall into transgression; yea, he may cast us at the feet of our enemies, even as we have cast our garments at thy feet to be trodden under foot, if we shall fall into transgression.

- 23 ואמר מורוני אליהם: הנה, שארית בית יעקב אנחנו, אכן, שריד לזרע יוסף, אשר כתנתו נקרעה בידי אחיו לקרעים רבים; ועתה, הבה נזכרה לשמר את מצוות אלהים, פן יקרעו אחינו את כתנותינו, ואותנו ישליכו אל בית הכלא, או ימכרונו או יהרגונו.
- 24 הבה ננצר את חרותנו כשארית יוסף; הבה נזכר את דברי יעקב לפני מותו; הן הוא ראה כי שריד מכתנת יוסף נותר בלא פגע. וכה אמר: כהשמר שארית כתנת בני, כן תשמר שארית זרע בני ביד אלהים, ואליה תלקח; בעוד יאבד יתר זרע יוסף, כי יתר כתנתו.
- 25 ועל זאת תעצב נפשי; אך יש לנפשי שמחה בבני, מפני שריד זרעו אשר ילקח אל אלהים.
- 26 הנה, זה היה לשון יעקב.
- 27 ומי יודע אם שארית זרע יוסף, אשר תכלה ככתנתו, איננה כי אם אלה אשר נפלגו מעמנו? ואף בנו יהיה הדבר, אם לא נעמד איתנים באמונת המשיח.
- 28 ואחר אשר אמר מורוני את הדברים האלה, הוא יצא לדרך, ואף שלח אחרים אל כל אזורי הארץ אשר פשו בהם מחלוקות, וקבץ את כל האנשים אשר חפצו לשמר על חרותם, לעמד נגד עמליקיה והנפלים, אשר נקראו עמליקיים.
- 29 וכראות עמליקיה כי רב מספר אנשי מורוני מאנשיו, וכראותו כי נפל ספק בלב אנשיו אם יש צדק בדרךם, הוא לקח, בחששו כי תאבד תוחלתו, את אלה מאנשיו אשר חפצו ללכת עמו, ויצא אל ארץ נפי.
- 30 ומורוני סבר כי לא ייטב אשר ללמנים יהיה כח נוסף; לכן הוא בקש לחסם את אנשי עמליקיה, או לתפשם ולהשיבם לארצם ולהמית את עמליקיה; ועו אשר ידע כי זומם עמליקיה לעורר את זעם הלמנים על הנפיים, וכי חפצו להוציאם למלחמה עליהם; והוא ידע כי עמליקיה יעשה כן, למען קיום תכליתו.
- 23 Moroni said unto them: Behold, we are a remnant of the seed of Jacob; yea, we are a remnant of the seed of Joseph, whose coat was rent by his brethren into many pieces; yea, and now behold, let us remember to keep the commandments of God, or our garments shall be rent by our brethren, and we be cast into prison, or be sold, or be slain.
- 24 Yea, let us preserve our liberty as a remnant of Joseph; yea, let us remember the words of Jacob, before his death, for behold, he saw that a part of the remnant of the coat of Joseph was preserved and had not decayed. And he said—Even as this remnant of garment of my son hath been preserved, so shall a remnant of the seed of my son be preserved by the hand of God, and be taken unto himself, while the remainder of the seed of Joseph shall perish, even as the remnant of his garment.
- 25 Now behold, this giveth my soul sorrow; nevertheless, my soul hath joy in my son, because of that part of his seed which shall be taken unto God.
- 26 Now behold, this was the language of Jacob.
- 27 And now who knoweth but what the remnant of the seed of Joseph, which shall perish as his garment, are those who have dissented from us? Yea, and even it shall be ourselves if we do not stand fast in the faith of Christ.
- 28 And now it came to pass that when Moroni had said these words he went forth, and also sent forth in all the parts of the land where there were dissensions, and gathered together all the people who were desirous to maintain their liberty, to stand against Amalickiah and those who had dissented, who were called Amalickiahites.
- 29 And it came to pass that when Amalickiah saw that the people of Moroni were more numerous than the Amalickiahites—and he also saw that his people were doubtful concerning the justice of the cause in which they had undertaken—therefore, fearing that he should not gain the point, he took those of his people who would and departed into the land of Nephi.
- 30 Now Moroni thought it was not expedient that the Lamanites should have any more strength; therefore he thought to cut off the people of Amalickiah, or to take them and bring them back, and put Amalickiah to death; yea, for he knew that he would stir up the Lamanites to anger against them, and cause them to come to battle against them; and this he knew that Amalickiah would do that he might obtain his purposes.

- על כן ראה מורוני לכוון לקחת את חילוֹתיו  
אֲשֶׁר נֶאֱסְפוּ וְחָגְרוּ כָּלִי נִשְׁקָם וּבָאוּ בְּבְרִית  
לְשֹׁמֵר אֶת הַשָּׁלוֹם; אָכֵן, הוּא לָקַח אֶת צָבָאוֹ  
וְאֶת אֹהֲלֵיהֶם וַעֲדָה אֶל הַיַּעְרוֹת לְנִתֵּק שָׁם  
אֶת נְתִיב עַמְלִיקָיָה.
- 31 Therefore Moroni thought it was expedient that he should take his  
armies, who had gathered themselves together, and armed themselves,  
and entered into a covenant to keep the peace—and it came to pass that  
he took his army and marched out with his tents into the wilderness, to  
cut off the course of Amalickiah in the wilderness.
- וְהוּא עָשָׂה כַּחֲפָצוֹ, וַיֵּצֵא אֶל הַיַּעְרוֹת, וְהַקְדִּים  
אֶת צָבָא עַמְלִיקָיָה.
- 32 And it came to pass that he did according to his desires, and marched  
forth into the wilderness, and headed the armies of Amalickiah.
- וְעַמְלִיקָיָה בָּרַח עִם מְתֵי מַעַט מֵאֲנָשָׁיו,  
וּשְׂאִרֵיהֶם נִמְסְרוּ לְיַדֵּי מוֹרוֹנִי וְהוֹשְׁבָיו אֶל  
אֶרֶץ זֶרַחֵמְלָה.
- 33 And it came to pass that Amalickiah fled with a small number of his  
men, and the remainder were delivered up into the hands of Moroni  
and were taken back into the land of Zarahemla.
- וּלְמוֹרוֹנִי, אֲשֶׁר מָנָה לְמִשְׁתָּרוֹ עַל יְדֵי  
הַשּׁוֹפְטִים הָעֲלִיּוֹנִים וְעַל יְדֵי קוֹל הָעָם,  
הָיְתָה שְׂרָרָה לַעֲשׂוֹת כַּחֲפָצוֹ בְּחִילוֹת הַנְּפִיִּים,  
לְקַיֵּם וּלְהַפְעִיל אֶת סִמְכוּתוֹ עֲלֵיהֶם.
- 34 Now, Moroni being a man who was appointed by the chief judges and  
the voice of the people, therefore he had power to do according to  
his will with the armies of the Nephites, to establish and to exercise  
authority over them.
- וְהָיָה כִּי כָּל אִישׁ מִן הָעַמְלִיקָיִים, אֲשֶׁר לֹא  
בָּא בְּבְרִית לְתַמּוֹךְ בְּעֲנִין הַחֲרוּת, לְמַעַן קִיּוֹם  
מִמְּשָׁל חֲפָשִׁי, הוּמָת בַּכְּפָדָתוֹ. אַךְ רַק מַעַטִּים  
הָיוּ אֲשֶׁר הִתְנַכְּרוּ לְבְרִית הַחֲרוּת.
- 35 And it came to pass that whomsoever of the Amalickiahites that would  
not enter into a covenant to support the cause of freedom, that they  
might maintain a free government, he caused to be put to death; and  
there were but few who denied the covenant of freedom.
- וּמוֹרוֹנִי צִוָּה לְהִנִּיף אֶת נֵס הַחֲרוּת עַל כָּל  
מִגְדָּלֵי הָאָרֶץ אֲשֶׁר הָיָה נִחְלָת הַנְּפִיִּים; כֹּה  
קָבַע מוֹרוֹנִי אֶת דָּגְלֵי הַחֲרוּת בְּקֶרֶב הַנְּפִיִּים.
- 36 And it came to pass also, that he caused the title of liberty to be hoisted  
upon every tower which was in all the land, which was possessed by  
the Nephites; and thus Moroni planted the standard of liberty among  
the Nephites.
- וְשָׁבוּ הַשָּׁלוֹם אֶל הָאָרֶץ. וְהָאָרֶץ שָׁקֵטָה  
כַּמַּעַט עַד אַחֲרֵית שְׁנַת תַּשְׁעָה עָשָׂרָה  
לְשִׁלְטוֹן הַשּׁוֹפְטִים.
- 37 And they began to have peace again in the land; and thus they did  
maintain peace in the land until nearly the end of the nineteenth year  
of the reign of the judges.
- וְאֵף הִילְכִין וְהַכְהֵנִים הַגְּדוֹלִים קִיָּמוּ אֶת הַסֵּדֶר  
בְּתוֹךְ הַכְּנִסְיָה. אָכֵן, בְּמִשְׁךְ אַרְבַּע שָׁנִים הָיוּ  
הַשָּׁלוֹם וְהַשְׂמֵחָה שׁוֹרִים בְּכְנִסְיָה.
- 38 And Helaman and the high priests did also maintain order in the  
church; yea, even for the space of four years did they have much peace  
and rejoicing in the church.
- בְּיָמִים הָהֵם מָתוּ רַבִּים בְּאַמוּנָה שְׁלֵמָה כִּי  
נִשְׁמוֹתֵיהֶם נִגְאָלוּת עַל יְדֵי הָאֱדוֹן יֵשׁוּעַ הַמָּשִׁיחַ.  
כֹּךְ הֵם יָצְאוּ בְּשִׂמְחָה מִן הָעוֹלָם הַזֶּה.
- 39 And it came to pass that there were many who died, firmly believing  
that their souls were redeemed by the Lord Jesus Christ; thus they went  
out of the world rejoicing.
- וְהָיוּ אֲשֶׁר מָתוּ מִקַּדְחָת, אֲשֶׁר נִפְוָצָה מֵאֵד  
בְּאֶרֶץ בְּעוֹנוֹת מִסִּימּוֹת בְּשָׁנָה; אַךְ לֹא הָיוּ  
אֵלָּה רַבִּים, מִפְּנֵי הַסְּגֻלוֹת הַמְּצִינּוֹת שֶׁל  
צִמְחִים וְשִׁרְשֵׁים רַבִּים אֲשֶׁר הָכִין אֱלֹהִים  
לְהַסִּיר אֶת מְקוֹר הַמַּחְלוֹת, אֲשֶׁר בָּאוּ עַל  
הָאֲנָשִׁים בְּנִסְבוֹת מִזְג הָאֲוִיר.
- 40 And there were some who died with fevers, which at some seasons  
of the year were very frequent in the land—but not so much so with  
fevers, because of the excellent qualities of the many plants and roots  
which God had prepared to remove the cause of diseases, to which  
men were subject by the nature of the climate—



- 41 But there were many who died with old age; and those who died in the faith of Christ are happy in him, as we must needs suppose.
- וְרַבִּים מִתּוֹ בְּשִׁיבָה טוֹבָה; וְאֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר  
מִתּוֹ בְּהֵיוֹתָם מֵאַמִּינֵי הַמָּשִׁיחַ, שְׂמִיחִים בּוֹ,  
עַל פִּי אֲמוֹנָתָנוּ.

## 47

## מז

- 1 Now we will return in our record to Amalickiah and those who had fled with him into the wilderness; for, behold, he took those who went with him, and went up into the land of Nephi among the Lamanites, and did stir up the Lamanites to anger against the people of Nephi, insomuch that the king of the Lamanites sent a proclamation throughout all his land, among all his people, that they should gather themselves together again to go to battle against the Nephites.
- וְעַתָּה נָשׁוּב וְנִסְפֹּר בְּסִפְרֵנוּ זְכוֹנוֹתֵינוּ עַל  
עַמְלִיקִיָּה וְהָאֲנָשִׁים אֲשֶׁר בָּרְחוּ עִמּוֹ אֶל  
הַיְעֵרוֹת. הִנֵּה, הוּא לָקַח אֶת הַהוֹלְכִים עִמּוֹ  
וְעָלָה אֶל אֶרֶץ נָפִי, אֶל הַלָּמָנִים. וְהוּא עוֹרֵר  
אֶת זֶעַם הַלָּמָנִים עַל עַם נָפִי, עַד כִּי שָׁלַח  
מֶלֶךְ הַלָּמָנִים הַזֶּה בְּכָל רִחְבֵי אֶרְצוֹ,  
בְּקֶרֶב כָּל עַמּוֹ, לְהִתְקַבֵּץ וּלְצִאת שְׁנִית  
לְקֶרֶב עַל הַנְּפִיִּים.
- 2 And it came to pass that when the proclamation had gone forth among them they were exceedingly afraid; yea, they feared to displease the king, and they also feared to go to battle against the Nephites lest they should lose their lives. And it came to pass that they would not, or the more part of them would not, obey the commandment of the king.
- וְהָיָה כִּהְגִּיעַ הַקְּרִיאָה אֵלֵיהֶם, הֵם יָרְאוּ מְאֹד;  
אֲכֹן, הֵם פָּחְדוּ לְהִכְעִיס אֶת הַמֶּלֶךְ וְאִף פָּחְדוּ  
לְצִאת לְקֶרֶב עַל הַנְּפִיִּים, פֶּן יִאבְּדוּ. וְהֵם  
סָרְבוּ לְצִיָּת לְפָקֶדֶת מֶלֶכָם; אֲכֹן, רַבִּים  
לֹא נִשְׁמָעוּ לְקְרִיאָה.
- 3 And now it came to pass that the king was wroth because of their disobedience; therefore he gave Amalickiah the command of that part of his army which was obedient unto his commands, and commanded him that he should go forth and compel them to arms.
- וּמֶלֶךְ הַלָּמָנִים קָצַף עַל כִּי הִמְרוּ אֶת פִּיו; וְהוּא  
הִפְקִיד אֶת חֶלֶק צָבָאוֹ אֲשֶׁר שָׁמַע לְמִשְׁמַעְתּוֹ  
בְּיַד עַמְלִיקִיָּה וְצִוָּה עָלָיו לְצִאת וּלְאָכֹף  
עֲלֵיהֶם לְצִאת לְמִלְחָמָה.
- 4 Now behold, this was the desire of Amalickiah; for he being a very subtle man to do evil therefore he laid the plan in his heart to dethrone the king of the Lamanites.
- וְהִנֵּה, זֶה הָיָה חֲפֵץ עַמְלִיקִיָּה, כִּי בְּעֶרְמָתוֹ  
לְבַצֵּעַ רָעָה הוּא זָמַם בְּלִבּוֹ לְהַסִּיר אֶת מֶלֶךְ  
הַלָּמָנִים מִכִּסְאוֹ.
- 5 And now he had got the command of those parts of the Lamanites who were in favor of the king; and he sought to gain favor of those who were not obedient; therefore he went forward to the place which was called Onidah, for thither had all the Lamanites fled; for they discovered the army coming, and, supposing that they were coming to destroy them, therefore they fled to Onidah, to the place of arms.
- וְעַתָּה הוּא הָיָה לְמִפְקֵד חֶלֶק הַלָּמָנִים אֲשֶׁר  
תָּמְדוּ בְּמֶלֶךְ; וְהוּא בָקַשׁ לְמִצָּא חֵן בְּעֵינֵי אֵלֶּה  
אֲשֶׁר לֹא נִשְׁמָעוּ לוֹ. עַל כֵּן הוּא יָצָא אֶל הַמָּקוֹם  
אֲשֶׁר שְׁמוֹ נִקְרָא עוֹנִידָה, כִּי שָׁמָּה בָּרְחוּ כָּל  
הַלָּמָנִים, יַעַן אֲשֶׁר בְּגִלּוֹתָם כִּי הֵצֵבָא קֶרֶב וּבָא,  
חָשְׁבוּ כִּי לְהַשְׁמִידָם הוּא בָּא. לָכֵן נִמְלְטוּ אֶל  
עוֹנִידָה, אֲשֶׁר בָּהּ הָיָה בֵּית הַנֶּשֶׁק.
- 6 And they had appointed a man to be a king and a leader over them, being fixed in their minds with a determined resolution that they would not be subjected to go against the Nephites.
- וְהֵם מָנוּ עָלֵיהֶם מֶלֶךְ וּמְנַהִיג, כִּי הִחְלִיטוּ  
הַחֲלָטָה חֲרוּצָה, כִּי לֹא יֵאלָצוּ לְצִאת  
לְמִלְחָמָה בַּנְּפִיִּים.
- 7 And it came to pass that they had gathered themselves together upon the top of the mount which was called Antipas, in preparation to battle.
- וְהֵם הִתְקַבְּצוּ בְּרֹאשׁ הָהָר הַנִּקְרָא אַנְטִיפָס  
וְעָעְרְכוּ לְקֶרֶב.

- 8 Now it was not Amalickiah's intention to give them battle according to the commandments of the king; but behold, it was his intention to gain favor with the armies of the Lamanites, that he might place himself at their head and dethrone the king and take possession of the kingdom.
- 9 And behold, it came to pass that he caused his army to pitch their tents in the valley which was near the mount Antipas.
- 10 And it came to pass that when it was night he sent a secret embassy into the mount Antipas, desiring that the leader of those who were upon the mount, whose name was Lehonti, that he should come down to the foot of the mount, for he desired to speak with him.
- 11 And it came to pass that when Lehonti received the message he durst not go down to the foot of the mount. And it came to pass that Amalickiah sent again the second time, desiring him to come down. And it came to pass that Lehonti would not; and he sent again the third time.
- 12 And it came to pass that when Amalickiah found that he could not get Lehonti to come down off from the mount, he went up into the mount, nearly to Lehonti's camp; and he sent again the fourth time his message unto Lehonti, desiring that he would come down, and that he would bring his guards with him.
- 13 And it came to pass that when Lehonti had come down with his guards to Amalickiah, that Amalickiah desired him to come down with his army in the night-time, and surround those men in their camps over whom the king had given him command, and that he would deliver them up into Lehonti's hands, if he would make him, Amalickiah, a second leader over the whole army.
- 14 And it came to pass that Lehonti came down with his men and surrounded the men of Amalickiah, so that before they awoke at the dawn of day they were surrounded by the armies of Lehonti.
- 15 And it came to pass that when they saw that they were surrounded, they plead with Amalickiah that he would suffer them to fall in with their brethren, that they might not be destroyed. Now this was the very thing which Amalickiah desired.
- 16 And it came to pass that he delivered his men, contrary to the commands of the king. Now this was the thing that Amalickiah desired, that he might accomplish his designs in dethroning the king.
- אִךְ עֲמִלִיקְיָהּ לֹא הִתְכַּוֵּן לְהִכָּנֵס עִמָּהֶם  
בְּקֶרֶב כְּפִקְדַת הַמֶּלֶךְ, כִּי כּוֹנֵתוֹ הָיְתָה לְמַצֵּא  
חֵן בְּעֵינֵי חֵילוֹת הַלָּמָנִיתִים, לְמַעַן יַעֲמִד בְּרֹאשׁוֹ,  
וּבִהְסִירוֹ אֶת הַמֶּלֶךְ מִכִּסְאוֹ יִתְפֹּשׁ לְעַצְמוֹ  
אֶת הַמְּלוּכָה.
- וְהוּא צִוָּה אֶת חֵילוֹ לִנְטוֹת אֶת אֹהֲלֵיהֶם  
בְּעֵמֶק הַקָּרוֹב אֶל הָר אַנְטִיפָס.
- וּכְרִדְתָּ הַלַּיְלָה הוּא שָׁלַח מִשְׁלַחַת חֹרֵשׁ  
אֶל הָר אַנְטִיפָס, וּבִקֵּשׁ אֶת מְנַהֵיג הַחֵיל אֲשֶׁר  
עַל הָהָר, אֲשֶׁר נִקְרָא שְׁמוֹ לְחוֹנְתִּי, לָרֶדֶת אֶל  
רִגְלֵי הָהָר, כִּי חָפֵץ לְדַבֵּר אֵלָיו.
- וְכַאֲשֶׁר קִבֵּל לְחוֹנְתִּי אֶת דְּבַר הַשְּׁלִיחִים,  
הוּא לֹא הֵעִז לָרֶדֶת אֶל רִגְלֵי הָהָר. וְעֲמִלִיקְיָהּ  
שָׁלַח אֶת אַנְשָׁיו אֵלָיו שֵׁנִית וּבִקֵּשׁוּ לָרֶדֶת;  
אִךְ לְחוֹנְתִּי לֹא שָׁעָה לְבִקְשָׁתוֹ. וְעֲמִלִיקְיָהּ  
שָׁלַח אֵלָיו בְּשִׁלִּישִׁית.
- וְהָיָה כִּבְרֹאוֹת עֲמִלִיקְיָהּ כִּי לֹא יוֹכֵל לְפָתוֹת  
אֶת לְחוֹנְתִּי לָרֶדֶת מִן הָהָר, הוּא עָלָה שָׁמָּה  
עַצְמוֹ, אֶל קְרִבַת מַחֲנֵה לְחוֹנְתִּי, וְשָׁלַח אֵלָיו  
אֶת דְּבָרוֹ בְּרִבְעִית לְבִקְשׁוֹ לָרֶדֶת, הוּא  
וְשׁוֹמְרָיו עִמּוֹ.
- וְהָיָה אַחֵר רָדַת לְחוֹנְתִּי עִם שׁוֹמְרָיו אֶל  
עֲמִלִיקְיָהּ, בִּקֵּשׁוּ עֲמִלִיקְיָהּ לָרֶדֶת עִם צָבָאוֹ  
בְּעוֹד לַיְלָה וּלְהַקִּיף אֶת הָאֲנָשִׁים, אֲשֶׁר עָלִיהֶם  
הַפְּקִידוֹ הַמֶּלֶךְ, הַחוֹנִים שָׁם; וְאָמַר כִּי יִמְסְרוּ  
בְּיַד לְחוֹנְתִּי, אִם יִמְנֶהוּ, אֶת עֲמִלִיקְיָהּ, מִשְׁנָה  
עַל כָּל הַצָּבָא.
- אִז יָרַד לְחוֹנְתִּי עִם אַנְשָׁיו וְהֵם הִקִּיפוּ אֶת  
אֲנָשֵׁי עֲמִלִיקְיָהּ. וּבִטְרֵם יַעֲזוּ אֲנָשֵׁי עֲמִלִיקְיָהּ  
בְּשַׁחַר, הִקִּיפוּם חֵילוֹת לְחוֹנְתִּי.
- וּבִרְאוֹתָם כִּי מִקְפִּים הֵם, בִּקֵּשׁוּ אַנְשָׁיו  
אֶת עֲמִלִיקְיָהּ כִּי יִתִּיר לָהֶם לְהִתְחַבֵּר עִם  
בְּנֵי עַמָּם, לְמַנַּע אֶת הַכְּחָדָתָם. וְהָיָה,  
אִךְ זֶה הָיָה חָפֵץ עֲמִלִיקְיָהּ.
- כֹּה מָסַר עֲמִלִיקְיָהּ אֶת אַנְשָׁיו, בְּהַפּוֹךְ לְפִקְדַת  
הַמֶּלֶךְ. הִנֵּה, זֶה הָיָה חָפֵץ, לְמַעַן יִפְּיֵק אֶת  
יָמָמוֹ לְהִסִּיר אֶת הַמֶּלֶךְ מִכִּסְאוֹ.

- 17 וְהָיָה מִנְהַג הַלָּמָנִיתִים בְּקִרְבָּם אֲשֶׁר בְּנָפֶל מִפְּקֻדָּם הָעֶלְיוֹן, הֵם מִנּוּ תַּחֲתָיו אֶת מִשְׁנָהוּ. Now it was the custom among the Lamanites, if their chief leader was killed, to appoint the second leader to be their chief leader.
- 18 וַעֲמַלִּיקָיָה צִוָּה אֶת אֶחָד מִשְׁרָתָיו לְהִרְעִיל בַּהֲדָרָה אֶת מַאֲכָלִי לַחֹנְתִּי עַד אֲשֶׁר מָת. And it came to pass that Amalickiah caused that one of his servants should administer poison by degrees to Lehonti, that he died.
- 19 וְהָיָה אַחֵר מוֹת לַחֹנְתִּי מִנּוּ הַלָּמָנִיתִים אֶת עַמְלִיקָיָה לְמִנְהִיגָם וְלִמְפַקְדָּם הָעֶלְיוֹן. Now, when Lehonti was dead, the Lamanites appointed Amalickiah to be their leader and their chief commander.
- 20 וַיַּעַן אֲשֶׁר חָפְצוֹ עָלָה בִּידּוֹ, צֶעֶד עַמְלִיקָיָה עִם חֵילוֹ אֶל אֶרֶץ נִפְּי, אֶל הָעִיר נִפְּי, אֲשֶׁר הִיא הָעִיר הָרֵאשִׁית. And it came to pass that Amalickiah marched with his armies (for he had gained his desires) to the land of Nephi, to the city of Nephi, which was the chief city.
- 21 וְהַמֶּלֶךְ יֵצֵא לִקְרָאתוֹ עִם שׁוּמְרָיו, בְּחִשְׁבוֹ כִּי מֵלֵא עַמְלִיקָיָה אֶת פְּקֻדָּתוֹ, וְכִי קִבֵּץ חֵיל כֹּה עָצוּם וְרַב לְצִאת לִקְרֹב עַל הַנִּפְּיִים. And the king came out to meet him with his guards, for he supposed that Amalickiah had fulfilled his commands, and that Amalickiah had gathered together so great an army to go against the Nephites to battle.
- 22 וְהִנֵּה, כְּצִאת הַמֶּלֶךְ לִקְרָאתוֹ, צִוָּה עַמְלִיקָיָה אֶת מִשְׁרָתָיו לָלֶכֶת לִפְנֵי, לִקְרָאת הַמֶּלֶךְ. וְהֵם הִלְכוּ, וְהִשְׁתַּחֲווּ לִפְנֵי הַמֶּלֶךְ, כְּאִלוּ חִלְקוּ לוֹ כְּבוֹד עַל גְּדֻלָּתוֹ. But behold, as the king came out to meet him Amalickiah caused that his servants should go forth to meet the king. And they went and bowed themselves before the king, as if to reverence him because of his greatness.
- 23 וְהַמֶּלֶךְ הוֹשִׁיט יָדוֹ לְהִרְיָמָם, כְּמִנְהַג הַלָּמָנִיתִים, אוֹת שָׁלוֹם, אֲשֶׁר שָׁאֲלוּהוּ מִן הַנִּפְּיִים. And it came to pass that the king put forth his hand to raise them, as was the custom with the Lamanites, as a token of peace, which custom they had taken from the Nephites.
- 24 וּבְהִקִּימוֹ אֶת הָרֵאשִׁון מִן הָאָרֶץ, דָּקַר אוֹתוֹ הָאִישׁ בְּלִבּוֹ, וְהַמֶּלֶךְ נָפֵל אֶרְצָה. And it came to pass that when he had raised the first from the ground, behold he stabbed the king to the heart; and he fell to the earth.
- 25 וּמִשְׁרָתֵי הַמֶּלֶךְ נָסוּ, וּמִשְׁרָתֵי עַמְלִיקָיָה קָרְאוּ בְּקוֹל יֵאֱמָרוּ: Now the servants of the king fled; and the servants of Amalickiah raised a cry, saying:
- 26 מִשְׁרָתֵי הַמֶּלֶךְ דָּקְרוּהוּ בְּלִבּוֹ! הוּא נָפֵל וְהֵם בָּרְחוּ; הִנֵּה, בּוֹאוּ וּרְאוּ. Behold, the servants of the king have stabbed him to the heart, and he has fallen and they have fled; behold, come and see.
- 27 וַעֲמַלִּיקָיָה צִוָּה אֶת חֵילָיו לָלֶכֶת וּלְרַאוֹת אֶת אֲשֶׁר אָרַע לַמֶּלֶךְ. וְכַאֲשֶׁר הֵם בָּאוּ אֶל הַמָּקוֹם וּמָצְאוּ אֶת הַמֶּלֶךְ מִתְּבוּסָס בְּדָמוֹ, הִעֲמִיד עַמְלִיקָיָה פָּנָיו נֹזְעָמוֹת וְאָמַר: כֹּל אֲשֶׁר הָיָה אוֹהֵב לַמֶּלֶךְ יֵצֵא נָא לְרֹדֵף אַחֵר מִשְׁרָתָיו וּלְהָרְגָם. And it came to pass that Amalickiah commanded that his armies should march forth and see what had happened to the king; and when they had come to the spot, and found the king lying in his gore, Amalickiah pretended to be wroth, and said: Whosoever loved the king, let him go forth, and pursue his servants that they may be slain.
- 28 וְהָיָה כְּשִׁמְעוּ כָּל אוֹהֲבֵי הַמֶּלֶךְ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, הֵם יֵצְאוּ וּרְדָפוּ אַחֵר מִשְׁרָתֵי הַמֶּלֶךְ. And it came to pass when all they who loved the king heard these words, they came forth and pursued after the servants of the king.

- 29 Now when the servants of the king saw an army pursuing after them, they were frightened again, and fled into the wilderness, and came over into the land of Zarahemla and joined the people of Ammon.
- 30 And the army which pursued after them returned, having pursued after them in vain; and thus Amalickiah, by his fraud, gained the hearts of the people.
- 31 And it came to pass on the morrow he entered the city Nephi with his armies, and took possession of the city.
- 32 And now it came to pass that the queen, when she had heard that the king was slain—for Amalickiah had sent an embassy to the queen informing her that the king had been slain by his servants, that he had pursued them with his army, but it was in vain, and they had made their escape—
- 33 Therefore, when the queen had received this message she sent unto Amalickiah, desiring him that he would spare the people of the city; and she also desired him that he should come in unto her; and she also desired him that he should bring witnesses with him to testify concerning the death of the king.
- 34 And it came to pass that Amalickiah took the same servant that slew the king, and all they who were with him, and went in unto the queen, unto the place where she sat; and they all testified unto her that the king was slain by his own servants; and they said also: They have fled; does not this testify against them? And thus they satisfied the queen concerning the death of the king.
- 35 And it came to pass that Amalickiah sought the favor of the queen, and took her unto him to wife; and thus by his fraud, and by the assistance of his cunning servants, he obtained the kingdom; yea, he was acknowledged king throughout all the land, among all the people of the Lamanites, who were composed of the Lamanites and the Lemuelites and the Ishmaelites, and all the dissenters of the Nephites, from the reign of Nephi down to the present time.
- 36 Now these dissenters, having the same instruction and the same information of the Nephites, yea, having been instructed in the same knowledge of the Lord, nevertheless, it is strange to relate, not long after their dissensions they became more hardened and impenitent, and more wild, wicked and ferocious than the Lamanites—drinking in with the traditions of the Lamanites; giving way to indolence, and all manner of lasciviousness; yea, entirely forgetting the Lord their God.
- וְכִרְאוֹת מִשְׁרָתִי הַמֶּלֶךְ צָבָא דּוֹלֵק אַחֲרֵיהֶם, הֵם נִבְהָלוּ שֵׁנִית וְנִמְלְטוּ אֶל הַיַּעְרוֹת. וְהֵם בָּאוּ אֶל אֶרֶץ זְרַחֲמֵלָה וַהֲתַחבְּרוּ אֶל אֲנָשֵׁי עַמּוֹן.
- וְהַצָּבָא אֲשֶׁר רָדַף אַחֲרֵיהֶם שָׁב, כִּי לִשְׁוֹא רִדְפָם. כֵּן, עַל יְדֵי תַרְמִיתוֹ, עָלָה בְּיַד עַמְלִיקְיָה לְרַכֵּשׁ אֶת לֵב הָעָם.
- וּלְמָחָר הַיּוֹם נָכַנס עַמְלִיקְיָה עִם חֵילוֹתָיו אֶל הָעִיר נֶפְחִי וַתִּפְשְׁוּהָ.
- וְהָיָה כְּשִׁמְעָה הַמֶּלֶכָּה עַל רִצְחַן הַמֶּלֶךְ, כִּי הִנֵּה שָׁלַח אֵלֶיהָ עַמְלִיקְיָה מִשְׁלַחַת לְהוֹדִיעָהּ כִּי נִרְצַח הַמֶּלֶךְ בְּיַדִּי מִשְׁרָתָיו, וְכִי הוּא רָדַף אַחֲרֵיהֶם עִם צָבָאוֹ, אֲדָּה לִשְׁוֹא, כִּי הִצְלִיחוּ לְהִמָּלֵט;
- אָכֵן, בְּקַבֵּל הַמֶּלֶכָּה אֶת הַהוֹדָעָה הַזֹּאת, הִיא שָׁלְחָה אֶל עַמְלִיקְיָה אֶת בְּקִשְׁתָּהּ כִּי יְחוּס עַל אֲנָשֵׁי הָעִיר וְאֶף בְּקִשָּׁה מִמֶּנּוּ כִּי יָבוֹא אֵלֶיהָ וְכִי יָבִיא עִמּוֹ עֵדִים לְהַעֲדִי עַל מוֹת הַמֶּלֶךְ.
- וְעַמְלִיקְיָה לָקַח אֶת הַמִּשְׁרָת אֲשֶׁר הָמִית אֶת הַמֶּלֶךְ וְאֶת כָּל אֲשֶׁר הָיוּ עִמּוֹ, וְהֵם הָלְכוּ אֶל הַמֶּלֶכָּה, אֶל מְקוֹם מוֹשְׁבָהּ; וְכָל־הָעֵדִים הָעֵדוּ לִפְנֵיהָ כִּי הוּמָת הַמֶּלֶךְ בְּיַדִּי מִשְׁרָתָיו, וְאֶף אָמְרוּ: הִנֵּה הֵם נִמְלְטוּ. הֲאִין זֶה מַעֲשֵׂיד עֲלֵיהֶם? כֵּן הֵם שָׂכְנְעוּ אֶת הַמֶּלֶכָּה בְּדִבְרֵי מוֹת הַמֶּלֶךְ.
- וְעַמְלִיקְיָה בִקֵּשׁ לְמִצָּא חֵן בְּעֵינֵי הַמֶּלֶכָּה, וּלְקַחָהּ לוֹ לְאִשָּׁה. כֹּה, עַל יְדֵי תַרְמִיתוֹ וּבְעֻזַּת מִשְׁרָתָיו הַנוֹכְלִים, קִבֵּל הוּא אֶת הַמְּלוּכָה. וְהוּא הִכָּר כְּמֶלֶךְ בְּכָל הָאֶרֶץ, בְּקִרְבֵּי כָּל עַם הַלְּמָנִים, אֲשֶׁר כָּל־אֶת הַלְּמָנִים וְהַלְּמוֹאֲאִים וְהַיִּשְׁמַעֲאֵלִים וְכָל אֲשֶׁר נִפְלְגוּ מִן הַנְּפִיִּים וּפְרָשׁוּ מֵהֶם מִיָּמֵי שְׁלֹטוֹן נָפִי וְעַד הַיּוֹם הַזֶּה.
- וּלְפֹרְשֵׁים הָהֵם הָיְתָה אוֹתָהּ הַתּוֹרָה וְאוֹתָהּ הַיְדִיעָה אֲשֶׁר לְנַפְיִים. כִּי הֵם קִבְּלוּ אוֹתָהּ הוֹרָאָה עַל דַּעַת יְהוָה; וְאוֹלָם, כָּכָל אֲשֶׁר מוֹזֵר הַדְּבָר, זְמַן מָה אַחֵר פְּרִישְׁתָּם, הֵם נַעֲשׂוּ קָשִׁים וְנִקְשִׁים, פְּרָאִים וְרָשָׁעִים וְאַקְזָרִים יוֹתֵר מִן הַלְּמָנִים. הֵם שָׁתוּ בְּצִמְאֻן אֶת מִסּוּרוֹת הַלְּמָנִים וַהֲתַמְסְרוּ לְבִטְלָה וּלְכָל מִינֵי תַאֲוֹת; אָכֵן, הֵם שָׁכְחוּ כָּל־לֵיל אֶת יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵיהֶם.

## מח

## 48

- וְהָיָה כִּי מִיָּד עִם קִבְּלָתוֹ הַמְּלוּכָה הַחֹל  
עֲמִלְקִיָּה לְעוֹרֵר אֶת לֵב הַלְּמָנִים עַל עַם נְפִי;  
וְהוּא מִנָּה אֲנָשִׁים לְשֹׂאֵת נְאוּמִים אֶל הַלְּמָנִים  
מֵעַל מִגְדְּלֵיהֶם נֹגֵד הַנְּפִיִּים.
- וְהוּא כֹּה הָטָה לִבָּם עַל הַנְּפִיִּים, עַד כִּי בְּאַחֲרִית  
שְׁנַת תִּשְׁעָה עָשָׂרָה לְשִׁלְטוֹן הַשּׁוֹפְטִים, כַּהֲפִיקוּ  
אֶת זִמְמוֹ עַד כֹּה, אָכֵן, אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר הָיָה לְמֶלֶךְ  
עַל הַלְּמָנִים, הוּא בִקֵּשׁ אֶף לְמֶלֶךְ עַל כָּל  
הָאָרֶץ וְעַל כָּל יוֹשְׁבֶיהָ, הַנְּפִיִּים כָּל־מְנִים.
- וְעַד כֹּה הוּא הִצְלִיחַ לְבַצֵּעַ אֶת זִמְמוֹ,  
כִּי הִנֵּה הִקְשָׁה אֶת לֵב הַלְּמָנִים וְעוֹרֵר אֶת  
עֵינֵיהֶם, וְעוֹרֵרם לְחֵרוֹן עַד כִּי אֶסֶף צָבָא  
רַב מְאֹד לְצֵאתָ לְקָרֵב עַל הַנְּפִיִּים.
- לָכֵן הוּא גָּמַר בְּלִבּוֹ, מִפְּנֵי מִסְפַּר אֲנָשָׁיו  
הָעֲצוּם, לְגַבֵּר עַל הַנְּפִיִּים וּלְשִׁעְבָדָם.
- וְהוּא הִפְקִיד שָׂרֵי צָבָא מִן הַזּוֹרַמִּים כִּי הֵם הַפִּירִי  
הַיֵּטֵב אֶת כָּח הַנְּפִיִּים, אֶת מְקוֹמוֹת מִפְּלֶטֶם  
וְאֶת נְקֻדּוֹת הַתְּרַפָּה אֲשֶׁר לְעִירֵיהֶם. עַל כֵּן  
מִנָּה אוֹתָם לְרָאשֵׁי הַמְּפַקְדִים עַל חֵילוֹתָיו.
- וְהָיָה כִּי הֵם לָקְחוּ אֶת כָּל מַחֲנֶה וַיֵּצְאוּ אֶל  
הַיַּעְרוֹת אֶל עֵבֶר אֶרֶץ זָרַהֲמְלָה.
- וְהָיָה בְּאוֹתָהּ עַת אֲשֶׁר תִּפְּשׂ עֲמִלְקִיָּה  
אֶת שְׁלִטוֹנוֹ בְּעִרְמָה וּבְמַרְמָה, הָיָה מוֹרֹנִי  
בְּאַרְצוֹ, מְכִין אֶת לֵב עַמּוֹ לְשִׁמּוֹר אֲמוּנִים  
לִיהוּה אֱלֹהֵיהֶם.
- הוּא חִזַּק אֶת חֵילוֹת הַנְּפִיִּים וּבָנָה מִבְּצָרִים  
קְטָנִים לִהְיוֹת מְקוֹמוֹת מִפְּלֶטֶם; וְהוּא שָׂפַף  
סוּלָלוֹת עֵפֶר סְבִיבָם, לְהַקִּיף אֶת חֵילוֹתָיו, וְאֶף  
בָּנָה חוֹמוֹת אָכֵן לְכַתְּרָם, וּלְכַתֵּר אֶת עִירֵיהֶם,  
וְאֶת גְּבוּלוֹת שְׂטִחֵיהֶם בְּכָל אֶרֶץ.
- וְהוּא הִגְדִּיל אֶת מִסְפַּר הָאֲנָשִׁים בַּמִּבְצָרִים  
הַחֲלָשִׁים. כֹּה הוּא בָצַר וַחֲזַק אֶת הָאָרֶץ אֲשֶׁר  
נִחְלָו הַנְּפִיִּים.
- וְכֹה הוּא הִכִּין תְּמִיכָה בְּחֻרוֹתָם, וּבְאֲדָמָתָם,  
בְּנָשֵׁיהֶם, וּבְיָלְדֵיהֶם, וּבְשִׁלּוּמָם, לְמַעַן יֵחִיו
- 1 And now it came to pass that, as soon as Amalickiah had obtained the kingdom he began to inspire the hearts of the Lamanites against the people of Nephi; yea, he did appoint men to speak unto the Lamanites from their towers, against the Nephites.
- 2 And thus he did inspire their hearts against the Nephites, insomuch that in the latter end of the nineteenth year of the reign of the judges, he having accomplished his designs thus far, yea, having been made king over the Lamanites, he sought also to reign over all the land, yea, and all the people who were in the land, the Nephites as well as the Lamanites.
- 3 Therefore he had accomplished his design, for he had hardened the hearts of the Lamanites and blinded their minds, and stirred them up to anger, insomuch that he had gathered together a numerous host to go to battle against the Nephites.
- 4 For he was determined, because of the greatness of the number of his people, to overpower the Nephites and to bring them into bondage.
- 5 And thus he did appoint chief captains of the Zoramites, they being the most acquainted with the strength of the Nephites, and their places of resort, and the weakest parts of their cities; therefore he appointed them to be chief captains over his armies.
- 6 And it came to pass that they took their camp, and moved forth toward the land of Zarahemla in the wilderness.
- 7 Now it came to pass that while Amalickiah had thus been obtaining power by fraud and deceit, Moroni, on the other hand, had been preparing the minds of the people to be faithful unto the Lord their God.
- 8 Yea, he had been strengthening the armies of the Nephites, and erecting small forts, or places of resort; throwing up banks of earth round about to enclose his armies, and also building walls of stone to encircle them about, round about their cities and the borders of their lands; yea, all round about the land.
- 9 And in their weakest fortifications he did place the greater number of men; and thus he did fortify and strengthen the land which was possessed by the Nephites.
- 10 And thus he was preparing to support their liberty, their lands, their wives, and their children, and their peace, and that they might live unto



- לשם יהוה אלהיהם, ובעבור יקימו את אשר כנוהו אויביהם: ענין המשיחיים.
- 11 And Moroni was a strong and a mighty man; he was a man of a perfect understanding; yea, a man that did not delight in bloodshed; a man whose soul did joy in the liberty and the freedom of his country, and his brethren from bondage and slavery;
- 12 Yea, a man whose heart did swell with thanksgiving to his God, for the many privileges and blessings which he bestowed upon his people; a man who did labor exceedingly for the welfare and safety of his people.
- 13 Yea, and he was a man who was firm in the faith of Christ, and he had sworn with an oath to defend his people, his rights, and his country, and his religion, even to the loss of his blood.
- 14 Now the Nephites were taught to defend themselves against their enemies, even to the shedding of blood if it were necessary; yea, and they were also taught never to give an offense, yea, and never to raise the sword except it were against an enemy, except it were to preserve their lives.
- 15 And this was their faith, that by so doing God would prosper them in the land, or in other words, if they were faithful in keeping the commandments of God that he would prosper them in the land; yea, warn them to flee, or to prepare for war, according to their danger;
- 16 And also, that God would make it known unto them whither they should go to defend themselves against their enemies, and by so doing, the Lord would deliver them; and this was the faith of Moroni, and his heart did glory in it; not in the shedding of blood but in doing good, in preserving his people, yea, in keeping the commandments of God, yea, and resisting iniquity.
- 17 Yea, verily, verily I say unto you, if all men had been, and were, and ever would be, like unto Moroni, behold, the very powers of hell would have been shaken forever; yea, the devil would never have power over the hearts of the children of men.
- 18 Behold, he was a man like unto Ammon, the son of Mosiah, yea, and even the other sons of Mosiah, yea, and also Alma and his sons, for they were all men of God.
- 19 Now behold, Helaman and his brethren were no less serviceable unto the people than was Moroni; for they did preach the word of God, and
- ומורוני היה איש חזק וגבור חיל; איש תם בינה אשר לא חפץ בשפיכת דמים; כי שמחה נפשו בחפז ארצו ובדרורה, ובחרות אחיו משעבוד ומעבדות;
- אכן, הוא היה איש אשר בלבו נאצתה תודה לאלהיו על הטובה ועל הברכה הרבה אשר העניק לעמו; איש אשר עמל רבות למען רוחת עמו ובטחונם.
- אכן, איתן היה באמונת המשיח, והוא נשבע באלה להגן על עמו, על זכויותיו, על ארצו ועל דתו, אף במחיר חייו.
- והנפיים היו למודי מלחמה להגנתם מפני אויביהם, אף בשפיכת דמים, אם היה צורך בהם. הם אף למדו להמנע מפגע, ולא להניף את חרבם, כי אם באויב, לשמירת חייהם.
- ואמונתם היתה כי בעשותם כן, יצליחם אלהים בארץ. ובגלשון אחר: אם יהיו נאמנים לשמר את מצוות אלהים, יעשם אלהים חיל בארץ, כי יזהירם לנזם, או להערוך למלחמה, כפי מדת הסכנה;
- ואף כי יודיעם אלהים לאן יצאו להגנתם מפני אויביהם, ובעשותם כך, יצילם יהוה. וזאת אמונת מורוני ולבו עלץ בה; אכן, לא אל שפיכת דמים נשא לבו, כי אם לעשות טוב ולנצר את עמו, לשמר את מצוות אלהים ולעמד איתן בפני עוון.
- אכן, באמת ובתמים אני אומר לכם, אלו כל בני האדם היו או הנם כמורוני, או אם יהיו כמוהו, יהיו כחות שאול נרעדים לעולם; אכן, מעולם לא היה עוד כח לשטן למשל בלב בני האדם.
- הנה דמה מורוני לעמון בן מושיע, או לשאר בני מושיע, וכן לעלמא ולבניו, כי כלם היו אנשי אלהים.
- והנה, לא פחות ממורוני היו הילמן ואחיו משרתי הקדם. כי הם הטיפו את דבר אלהים,

- והטבילו לשם תשובה את כל אשר שמעו לדבריהם. they did baptize unto repentance all men whosoever would hearken unto their words.
- 20 והם הלכו בקרב העם, והעם נכנע מפני דבריהם, עד כי הטה להם יהוה חסד רב. כה היו חפשיים ממלחמה וממריבות בין עצמם במשך ארבע שנים. And thus they went forth, and the people did humble themselves because of their words, insomuch that they were highly favored of the Lord, and thus they were free from wars and contentions among themselves, yea, even for the space of four years.
- 21 אך, כפי אשר אמרתי, באחרית שנת תשע עשרה, על אף השלום ביניהם, הם נאלצו, ללא רצונם, להלחם באחיהם הלמנים. But, as I have said, in the latter end of the nineteenth year, yea, notwithstanding their peace amongst themselves, they were compelled reluctantly to contend with their brethren, the Lamanites.
- 22 ובהקצרה: במשך שנים רבות לא חדלו מלחמותיהם בלמנים, על אף כי לא לרצונם היה הדבר. Yea, and in fine, their wars never did cease for the space of many years with the Lamanites, notwithstanding their much reluctance.
- 23 הם התעצבו לשאת נשק להלחם בלמנים, כי לא חפצו בשפיכת דמים. ואין זאת הכל, כי הם התעצבו כי על ידיהם נשלחו כה רבים מאחיהם מן העולם הזה אל עולם הנצח, בלי הכנה להקרא לפני אלהיהם. Now, they were sorry to take up arms against the Lamanites, because they did not delight in the shedding of blood; yea, and this was not all—they were sorry to be the means of sending so many of their brethren out of this world into an eternal world, unprepared to meet their God.
- 24 ואולם, הם לא יכלו להתיר הפקרת חייהם, להובלת נשיהם וילדיהם לטבח מעשה פראות ואכזריות על ידי אלה אשר היו לפנים אחיהם, ואשר פָּרְשׁוּ מִכְּנִסְיָתָם וְחִבְרוּ לַלְמָנִים בְּרִצּוֹנָם לַכְלוּתָם. Nevertheless, they could not suffer to lay down their lives, that their wives and their children should be massacred by the barbarous cruelty of those who were once their brethren, yea, and had dissented from their church, and had left them and had gone to destroy them by joining the Lamanites.
- 25 אך, הם לא יכלו לשאת כי ישישו אחיהם על דם הנפיים, כל עוד היו בקרבם שומרי מצוות אלהים, כי דבר יהוה היה אליהם כי בשמרים את מצוותיו הם יצליחו בארץ. Yea, they could not bear that their brethren should rejoice over the blood of the Nephites, so long as there were any who should keep the commandments of God, for the promise of the Lord was, if they should keep his commandments they should prosper in the land.

## מט

## 49

- והיה בשנת תשע עשרה, בחדש האחד עשר, בעשרה לחדש, נראו חילות הלמנים קרבים אל ארץ עמוניהה. 1 And now it came to pass in the eleventh month of the nineteenth year, on the tenth day of the month, the armies of the Lamanites were seen approaching towards the land of Ammonihah.
- 2 והנה, העיר היתה בנויה מחדש, ומורוני הציב צבא בגבולה, וחיליו ערמו סוללות עפר סביב להגנה מפני חצי הלמנים ואביהם, כי באלה נלחמו. And behold, the city had been rebuilt, and Moroni had stationed an army by the borders of the city, and they had cast up dirt around about to shield them from the arrows and the stones of the Lamanites; for behold, they fought with stones and with arrows.
- 3 הנה אמרתי כי העיר עמוניהה נבנתה מחדש. אך, אמר לכם כי בחלקה נבנתה. Behold, I said that the city of Ammonihah had been rebuilt. I say unto you, yea, that it was in part rebuilt; and because the Lamanites had

מחדש; ויען אשר החריבוה פעם הלמנים, מפני עוון אנשיה, הם שערו כי העיר תהיה להם שנית טרף קל השגה.

והנה, מה רבה היתה אכזבתם בראותם כי הנפיים הקימו סביבם סוללת עפר, אשר מפני גבהה לא יכלו הלמנים לירות עליהם את אבניהם ואת חציהם ולפגע בהם, ואף לא לעלות עליהם, כי אם דרך פתח העיר.

עתה היו מפקדי צבא הלמנים מפתעים עד מאוד על חכמת הנפיים בהקנת מקומות מבטחיהם.

ומנהיגי הלמנים, בסמכם על רב מספרם, חשבו כי יבואו על הנפיים באשר עשו לפנים, וכי להם יהיה היתרון; והם אף הצטידו במגנים ובשריוני חזה, ואף התלבשו בגדי עור, אכן, לבוש עבה מאוד, לכסות את מערמיהם.

ובהיותם ערוכים כן, סברו כי על נקלה יגברו על אחיהם ויכניסום בעל שעבוד, או ימיתום ויעשו בהם טבח כחפצם.

והנה, להפתעתם המוחלטת, היו הנפיים ערוכים לקראתם באופן אשר לא היה ידוע מעולם בקרב בני לחי. הם היו ערוכים להלחם בלמנים על פי הוראות מורוני.

והפתעת הלמנים או העמליקיים, היתה רבה מאוד נכח אפן הערכות הנפיים למלחמה.

ואלו יצא המלך עמליקיה מארץ נפי וירד בראש צבאו, אפשר כי היה מסב את הלמנים לתקוף את הנפיים בעיר עמוניהה, יען אשר לא חס על דם עמו.

והנה, עמליקיה עצמו לא ירד אל הקרב, ומפקדיו הראשיים לא העזו לתקוף את הנפיים בעיר עמוניהה, כי מורוני שנה את מערך הנפיים עד כי נכזבה תוחלת הלמנים מפני מקלטיהם; והם לא יכלו לעלות עליהם;

על כן הם נסוגו אל היערות, וצעדו עם כל מחנם אל ארץ נח, בהשכם כי שם המקום השני המועיל לתקוף את הנפיים.

destroyed it once because of the iniquity of the people, they supposed that it would again become an easy prey for them.

4 But behold, how great was their disappointment; for behold, the Nephites had dug up a ridge of earth round about them, which was so high that the Lamanites could not cast their stones and their arrows at them that they might take effect, neither could they come upon them save it was by their place of entrance.

5 Now at this time the chief captains of the Lamanites were astonished exceedingly, because of the wisdom of the Nephites in preparing their places of security.

6 Now the leaders of the Lamanites had supposed, because of the greatness of their numbers, yea, they supposed that they should be privileged to come upon them as they had hitherto done; yea, and they had also prepared themselves with shields, and with breastplates; and they had also prepared themselves with garments of skins, yea, very thick garments to cover their nakedness.

7 And being thus prepared they supposed that they should easily overpower and subject their brethren to the yoke of bondage, or slay and massacre them according to their pleasure.

8 But behold, to their uttermost astonishment, they were prepared for them, in a manner which never had been known among the children of Lehi. Now they were prepared for the Lamanites, to battle after the manner of the instructions of Moroni.

9 And it came to pass that the Lamanites, or the Amalickiahites, were exceedingly astonished at their manner of preparation for war.

10 Now, if king Amalickiah had come down out of the land of Nephi, at the head of his army, perhaps he would have caused the Lamanites to have attacked the Nephites at the city of Ammonihah; for behold, he did care not for the blood of his people.

11 But behold, Amalickiah did not come down himself to battle. And behold, his chief captains durst not attack the Nephites at the city of Ammonihah, for Moroni had altered the management of affairs among the Nephites, insomuch that the Lamanites were disappointed in their places of retreat and they could not come upon them.

12 Therefore they retreated into the wilderness, and took their camp and marched towards the land of Noah, supposing that to be the next best place for them to come against the Nephites.

- 13 והם לא ידעו כי מורוני בנה מבצרי מעוז ובצָרם, לְכָל עִיר בְּכָל רְחֵבֵי הָאָרֶץ. עַל כֵּן צָעְדוּ הַלְּמָנִים אֶל אֶרֶץ נֹחַ בְּדַעַה נְחוּשָׁה; אָכֵן, מִפְּקֻדֵּיהֶם הָרָאשִׁיִּים בָּאוּ וְנִשְׁבְּעוּ כִּי הַשָּׂמַד יִשְׁמִידוּ אֶת יוֹשְׁבֵי הָעִיר הַהִיא.
- 14 But they knew not that Moroni had fortified, or had built forts of security, for every city in all the land round about; therefore, they marched forward to the land of Noah with a firm determination; yea, their chief captains came forward and took an oath that they would destroy the people of that city.
- 14 והנה, לְמַרְבֵּה הַפְּתָעָתָם, הִפָּךְ מוֹרוֹנִי אֶת הָעִיר נֹחַ, אֲשֶׁר הָיְתָה עַד כֹּה עִיר פְּרוּזָה, לְעִיר מְבָצָר, חֲזָקָה אִף מִן הָעִיר עֲמוֹנִיָּהָה.
- 15 And behold, to their astonishment, the city of Noah, which had hitherto been a weak place, had now, by the means of Moroni, become strong, yea, even to exceed the strength of the city Ammonihah.
- 15 והנה, בְּחֻכְמַת מוֹרוֹנִי הָיְתָה זֹאת, כִּי הוּא שָׁעַר כִּי יִירָאוּ הַלְּמָנִים בְּבוֹאָם אֶל הָעִיר עֲמוֹנִיָּהָה, וְכִי הֵם יִצְעְדוּ לְהִלָּחֵם בְּעִיר נֹחַ, אֲשֶׁר הָיְתָה עַד אַזְּ מְקוֹם הַתְּרָפָה בְּכָל הָאָרֶץ. וְכִי אֶרֶץ הַדְּבָר כְּרָצוֹנוֹ.
- 16 And now, behold, this was wisdom in Moroni; for he had supposed that they would be frightened at the city Ammonihah; and as the city of Noah had hitherto been the weakest part of the land, therefore they would march thither to battle; and thus it was according to his desires.
- 16 ומורוני מָנָה אֶת לְחִי לְמַפְקֵד אֲנָשֵׁי הָעִיר הַהִיא. וְהוּא אוֹתוֹ לְחִי אֲשֶׁר נָלָחֵם בַּלְּמָנִים בְּבִקְעָה שְׁמִמְמָרָח לְנֹהַר צִידוֹן.
- 17 And behold it came to pass, that when the Lamanites had found that Lehi commanded the city they were again disappointed, for they feared Lehi exceedingly; nevertheless their chief captains had sworn with an oath to attack the city; therefore, they brought up their armies.
- 17 וכאשר נִדְּעַ לַלְּמָנִים כִּי לְחִי הָיָה מִפְקֵד הָעִיר, נִפְלָה רוּחָם שֵׁנִית, כִּי יִרְאוּ מִפְּנֵיו עַד מָאָד; וְאוּלֵם נִשְׁבְּעוּ מִפְּקֻדֵּיהֶם הָרָאשִׁיִּים בְּאֵלָה לְתַקֵּף אֶת הָעִיר, וְלָכֵן הֶעֱלוּ אֶת חִילוֹתֵיהֶם.
- 18 Now behold, the Lamanites could not get into their forts of security by any other way save by the entrance, because of the highness of the bank which had been thrown up, and the depth of the ditch which had been dug round about, save it were by the entrance.
- 18 וְהַלְּמָנִים לֹא יָכְלוּ לָבוֹא בְּמִבְצָרֵי הַמְּעוֹז, כִּי אִם דְּרֹךְ פֶּתַח הַכְּנִיסָה לְעִיר מִפְּנֵי גִבַּה הַסּוּלָלָה אֲשֶׁר נִעְרְמָה שָׁם וְעִמְק הַתְּעוּלָה אֲשֶׁר נִחְפְּרָה סְבִיב־סְבִיב, זֹלַת הַכְּנִיסָה.
- 19 And thus were the Nephites prepared to destroy all such as should attempt to climb up to enter the fort by any other way, by casting over stones and arrows at them.
- 19 כֹּה הָיוּ הַנְּפִיִּים עָרוּכִים לְהַשְׁמִיד בִּירֵית אֲבָנִים וְחֲצִיצִים אֶת כָּל אֲשֶׁר יִנְסֶה לָּטַפֵּס לְמַעַלָּה וּלְבוֹא בְּמִבְצָר בְּכָל אִפֹּן אַחֵר.
- 20 Thus they were prepared, yea, a body of their strongest men, with their swords and their slings, to smite down all who should attempt to come into their place of security by the place of entrance; and thus were they prepared to defend themselves against the Lamanites.
- 20 כֹּה הָיוּ הַנְּפִיִּים עָרוּכִים בְּהַצִּיבָם קְבוּצָה מִן הַחֲזָקִים אֲשֶׁר צָאֲשִׁיהֶם לְהַכּוֹת בְּחֶרְבוֹתֵיהֶם וּבִקְלָעֵיהֶם אֶת כָּל אֲשֶׁר יִנְסֶה לְהִכָּנֵס אֶל מַעֲזָם בְּפֶתַח הַכְּנִיסָה; אָכֵן, כֹּה עָרוּכִים הָיוּ לְהִגֹּן עַל עֲצָמָם נֶגֶד הַלְּמָנִים.
- 21 And it came to pass that the captains of the Lamanites brought up their armies before the place of entrance, and began to contend with the Nephites, to get into their place of security; but behold, they were driven back from time to time, insomuch that they were slain with an immense slaughter.
- 21 וּמִפְּקֻדֵּי הַלְּמָנִים הֶעֱלוּ אֶת חִילוֹתֵיהֶם אֶל מְקוֹם הַכְּנִיסָה וְהִחִלוּ לְהִלָּחֵם בְּנִפְיִים, לָבוֹא אֶל תּוֹךְ מַעֲזֵיהֶם; וְאוּלֵם הֵם נִהָדְפוּ פַּעַם בְּפַעַם, עַד כִּי עֲצָמוּ הָרוּגֵיהֶם בְּטִבַּח רַב.

- וּבְרֹאוֹתָם כִּי לֹא יוֹכְלוּ לִגְבֹּר עַל הַנְּפִיִּים דְּרָדוּ  
פִּתַּח הָעֵיר, הֵם הִחֲלוּ לַחְתּוֹר פִּתַּח סוֹלְלוֹת  
הָעֵפֶר, לַפִּתּוּחַ מֵעֵבֶר לַחֲיִלֵיהֶם, לַתֵּתֵם לַהֲלָחַם  
בְּתַנָּאִים שְׂוִים עִם אוֹיְבֵיהֶם. אַךְ בְּנִסְיוֹנוֹת  
הָאֵלֶּה הֵם גָּרְשׁוּ בְּאַבְנִים וּבַחֲצִים אֲשֶׁר נֹרִי  
אֱלֹהִים; וּבִמְקוֹם לְמַלֵּא אֶת תְּעוֹלוֹתֵיהֶם בְּעֵפֶר  
סוֹלְלוֹת הָרוֹסוֹת הֵם מִלְּאוּ, בְּחֶלְקוֹ, בְּגוֹיֹת  
הָרוֹגֵיהֶם וּבַפְּצוּעֵיהֶם.
- כֹּךְ גָּבְרוּ הַנְּפִיִּים עַל אוֹיְבֵיהֶם, וְהַלְּמָנִים  
הוֹסִיפוּ בְּנִסְיוֹנוֹתֵיהֶם לְהִשָּׁמִיד אֶת הַנְּפִיִּים עַד  
אֲשֶׁר נִהְרְגוּ כָּל מַפְקְדֵיהֶם הָרָאשִׁיִּים; אַכֵּן,  
יֹתֵר מֵאֶלֶף לְמָנִים נִהְרְגוּ, בְּעוֹד אֲשֶׁר מִן  
הַנְּפִיִּים לֹא נִהְרְגָה אֶף נֶפֶשׁ אַחַת.
- כְּחֻמָּשִׁים מֵהֶם נִפְצְעוּ מִפְּגִיעַת חֲצֵי הַלְּמָנִים  
מִבְּעַד לַפִּתּוּחַ הָעֵיר, אֶךְ מִפְּנֵי מִגוֹנָם בְּמַגִּנֵּיהֶם  
וּבִשְׂרִיוֵי הַחֹזֶה וּבְקוֹבְעֵיהֶם, הֵם נִפְצְעוּ בְּרַגְלֵיהֶם  
בְּלִבָּד, אֶף כִּי רַבִּים הָיוּ הַפְּצָעִים הַקָּשִׁים.
- וְכִרְאוֹת הַלְּמָנִים כִּי כָּל מַפְקְדֵיהֶם הָרָאשִׁיִּים  
נִהְרְגוּ, הֵם בָּרְחוּ אֶל הַיַּעְרוֹת; וְהֵם שָׁבוּ אֶל  
אֶרֶץ נָפִי לְהוֹדִיעַ אֶת דְּבַר מַפְלֹתָם הַגְּדוֹלָה  
לְמַלְכָם, עֲמַלִּיקִיָּה, אֲשֶׁר הָיָה אִישׁ נָפִי מִלְּדָה.
- וְעֲמַלִּיקִיָּה רָגַז מְאֹד עַל עַמּוֹ, כִּי לֹא צָלַח  
חֲפָצוֹ בְּיָדוֹ לְהַכְנִיס אֶת הַנְּפִיִּים בְּעַל הַשְׁעָבֹד.
- וּבְחֻמָּתוֹ הַבּוֹעֶרֶת קָלַל אֶת אֱלֹהִים, וְאֶף אֶת  
מוֹרוֹנִי קָלַל וְנִשְׁבַּע בְּאֵלֶּה לְשַׁתּוֹת אֶת דָּמוֹ.  
וְזֹאת כִּי שָׁמַר מוֹרוֹנִי אֶת מִצְוֹת אֱלֹהִים  
לְהִכִּין בְּשַׁחוּן לְעַמּוֹ.
- וְהַנְּפִיִּים בְּאַרְצָם הוֹדוּ לַיהוָה אֱלֹהֵיהֶם, עַל  
כַּחוֹ הָעֲלִיוֹן אֲשֶׁר עַל יָדָיו נִצְלוּ מִיַּד אוֹיְבֵיהֶם.
- כֹּה תָמָה שְׁנַת תִּשְׁעַ עֶשְׂרֵה לְשִׁלְטוֹן  
הַשׁוֹפְטִים בְּעַם נָפִי.
- וְהָיָה בְּקִרְבָּם שְׁלוֹם מִמֶּשֶׁךְ וְאֵף הַצִּלְחָה גְּדוֹלָה  
מְאֹד בְּכִנְסֵיהֶם, כִּי הִקְשִׁיבוּ בְּשִׁקִּידָה לְדַבֵּר  
אֱלֹהִים, אֲשֶׁר הִטִּיפוּ לָהֶם הִילְמָן, שְׂבִלּוֹן,  
קוֹרִיאֲנִטוֹן, וְעַמּוֹן וְעַמִּיתִיו, וְכָל אֲשֶׁר הִסְמְךְ
- 22 Now when they found that they could not obtain power over the Nephites by the pass, they began to dig down their banks of earth that they might obtain a pass to their armies, that they might have an equal chance to fight; but behold, in these attempts they were swept off by the stones and arrows which were thrown at them; and instead of filling up their ditches by pulling down the banks of earth, they were filled up in a measure with their dead and wounded bodies.
- 23 Thus the Nephites had all power over their enemies; and thus the Lamanites did attempt to destroy the Nephites until their chief captains were all slain; yea, and more than a thousand of the Lamanites were slain; while, on the other hand, there was not a single soul of the Nephites which was slain.
- 24 There were about fifty who were wounded, who had been exposed to the arrows of the Lamanites through the pass, but they were shielded by their shields, and their breastplates, and their head-plates, insomuch that their wounds were upon their legs, many of which were very severe.
- 25 And it came to pass, that when the Lamanites saw that their chief captains were all slain they fled into the wilderness. And it came to pass that they returned to the land of Nephi, to inform their king, Amalickiah, who was a Nephite by birth, concerning their great loss.
- 26 And it came to pass that he was exceedingly angry with his people, because he had not obtained his desire over the Nephites; he had not subjected them to the yoke of bondage.
- 27 Yea, he was exceedingly wroth, and he did curse God, and also Moroni, swearing with an oath that he would drink his blood; and this because Moroni had kept the commandments of God in preparing for the safety of his people.
- 28 And it came to pass, that on the other hand, the people of Nephi did thank the Lord their God, because of his matchless power in delivering them from the hands of their enemies.
- 29 And thus ended the nineteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.
- 30 Yea, and there was continual peace among them, and exceedingly great prosperity in the church because of their heed and diligence which they gave unto the word of God, which was declared unto them by Helaman, and Shiblon, and Corianton, and Ammon and his brethren, yea, and



על פי סדר הקדש אשר לאלהים, והטבלו לשם תשובה ונשלחו להטיף בקרב העם.

by all those who had been ordained by the holy order of God, being baptized unto repentance, and sent forth to preach among the people.

## נ

## 50

ומורוני לא חדל להתכונן למלחמה, למען הגן על עמו מפני הלמנים. והיה כי בראשית שנת עשרים לשלטון השופטים, הוא צוה את צבאו להחל בהקמת סוללות עפר סביב כל הערים בכל ארץ נחלת הנפיים.

1 And now it came to pass that Moroni did not stop making preparations for war, or to defend his people against the Lamanites; for he caused that his armies should commence in the commencement of the twentieth year of the reign of the judges, that they should commence in digging up heaps of earth round about all the cities, throughout all the land which was possessed by the Nephites.

והוא צוה לתקע בראש סוללות העפר האלה קורות עץ, קירות קרשים, קומת אדם גבהה, סביב הערים.

2 And upon the top of these ridges of earth he caused that there should be timbers, yea, works of timbers built up to the height of a man, round about the cities.

והוא צוה לקבע על מבנה הקורות ההן שורת מוטות חדי קצה, חזקים וגבוהים.

3 And he caused that upon those works of timbers there should be a frame of pickets built upon the timbers round about; and they were strong and high.

והוא צוה להקים מגדלים הצופים מעבר לשורת המוטות, וצוה לבנות עמדות מבצרות על המגדלים, למנוע פגעי אבני הלמנים וחיציהם.

4 And he caused towers to be erected that overlooked those works of pickets, and he caused places of security to be built upon those towers, that the stones and the arrows of the Lamanites could not hurt them.

ועמדות המגדלים נבנו באפן אשר יכלו אנשיהן להשליך מהן אבנים כפי רצונם וכחם, וכך להרג את כל הקרב אל חומות העיר.

5 And they were prepared that they could cast stones from the top thereof, according to their pleasure and their strength, and slay him who should attempt to approach near the walls of the city.

כה הכין מורוני מעוזים סביב כל עיר, בכל הארץ, לקדם את פלישת אויביהם.

6 Thus Moroni did prepare strongholds against the coming of their enemies, round about every city in all the land.

ומורוני צוה על צבאו לצאת אל היער המזרחי; והם הלכו וגרשו את כל הלמנים אשר היו שם אל אדמתם, אשר הייתה מדרום לארץ זרעהמלה.

7 And it came to pass that Moroni caused that his armies should go forth into the east wilderness; yea, and they went forth and drove all the Lamanites who were in the east wilderness into their own lands, which were south of the land of Zarahemla.

וארץ נפי השתרעה בקו ישר מן הים המזרחי ועד הים המערבי.

8 And the land of Nephi did run in a straight course from the east sea to the west.

והיה אחר אשר גרש מורוני את כל הלמנים מן היער המזרחי, אשר הוא מצפון לשטחי נחלתם, הוא צוה על יושבי ארץ זרעהמלה והאזורים אשר סביבה ללכת אל היער המזרחי, עד גבולו אשר לחוף הים, ולהתנחל שם.

9 And it came to pass that when Moroni had driven all the Lamanites out of the east wilderness, which was north of the lands of their own possessions, he caused that the inhabitants who were in the land of Zarahemla and in the land round about should go forth into the east wilderness, even to the borders by the seashore, and possess the land.

- 10 And he also placed armies on the south, in the borders of their possessions, and caused them to erect fortifications that they might secure their armies and their people from the hands of their enemies.
- 11 And thus he cut off all the strongholds of the Lamanites in the east wilderness, yea, and also on the west, fortifying the line between the Nephites and the Lamanites, between the land of Zarahemla and the land of Nephi, from the west sea, running by the head of the river Sidon—the Nephites possessing all the land northward, yea, even all the land which was northward of the land Bountiful, according to their pleasure.
- 12 Thus Moroni, with his armies, which did increase daily because of the assurance of protection which his works did bring forth unto them, did seek to cut off the strength and the power of the Lamanites from off the lands of their possessions, that they should have no power upon the lands of their possession.
- 13 And it came to pass that the Nephites began the foundation of a city, and they called the name of the city Moroni; and it was by the east sea; and it was on the south by the line of the possessions of the Lamanites.
- 14 And they also began a foundation for a city between the city of Moroni and the city of Aaron, joining the borders of Aaron and Moroni; and they called the name of the city, or the land, Nephihah.
- 15 And they also began in that same year to build many cities on the north, one in a particular manner which they called Lehi, which was in the north by the borders of the seashore.
- 16 And thus ended the twentieth year.
- 17 And in these prosperous circumstances were the people of Nephi in the commencement of the twenty and first year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.
- 18 And they did prosper exceedingly, and they became exceedingly rich; yea, and they did multiply and wax strong in the land.
- 19 And thus we see how merciful and just are all the dealings of the Lord, to the fulfilling of all his words unto the children of men; yea, we can behold that his words are verified, even at this time, which he spake unto Lehi, saying:
- 20 Blessed art thou and thy children; and they shall be blessed, inasmuch as they shall keep my commandments they shall prosper in the land.
- וְהוּא אַף הִצִּיב צָבָא בְּדָרוֹם, בְּגִבּוּלוֹת נַחֲלָתָם, וְצִוָּם לְהָקִים מִבְּצָרִים לְבִטְחוֹן צָבָאָם וְעַמָּם מִפְּגִיעַת אוֹיְבֵיהֶם.
- כֹּה נִתַּק מוֹרוֹנִי אֶת כָּל מַעְזֵי הַלְּמָנִים בִּיעָר הַמִּזְרָחִי, וְאַף בַּמִּעֶרֶב, וּבִצָּר אֶת קו הַגְּבוּל בֵּין הַנִּפְתִּיִים וּבֵין הַלְּמָנִים, בֵּין אֶרֶץ זָרַחֶמְלָא וְאֶרֶץ נִפְתִּי, מִן הַיָּם הַמִּעֶרְבִי, אֲשֶׁר אֶל עֵבֶר מְקוֹר נְהַר צִידוֹן. וְהַנִּפְתִּיִים הִתְנַחֲלוּ כְּחֻפָּצָם, בְּכָל הָאֶרֶץ אֲשֶׁר בְּצָפוֹן, וְאַף כָּל הָאֶרֶץ אֲשֶׁר מְצָפוֹן לְאֶרֶץ רַב־שָׁפַע.
- כֹּה בִקֵּשׁ מוֹרוֹנִי, אֲשֶׁר צָבָאוֹ גָּדַל מִדֵּי יוֹם, מִפְּנֵי הַבִּטְחוֹן בַּהֲגָנָתָם אֲשֶׁר הֵבִיאוֹ לָהֶם מִתְקַנְיָו, לְקַצֹּץ אֶת כֹּחַ הַלְּמָנִים וְעֹזָם בָּאֶרֶץ נַחֲלַת הַנִּפְתִּיִים, לְמַעַן לֹא יִהְיֶה לָהֶם הַכֹּחַ לְשַׁלֵּט בְּאֶרְצוֹתֵיהֶם.
- וְהַנִּפְתִּיִים יָסְדּוּ עִיר חֲדָשָׁה וְקָרְאוּ אֶת שְׁמָהּ מוֹרוֹנִי; וְהָעִיר שָׁכְנָה לְחוּף הַיָּם הַמִּזְרָחִי, בְּדָרוֹם הָאֶרֶץ, לִיד גְּבוּל נַחֲלַת הַלְּמָנִים.
- וְהֵם גַּם יָסְדּוּ עִיר בֵּין הָעִיר מוֹרוֹנִי וּבֵין הָעִיר אֶהְרֹן, לְחַבֵּר אֶת גְּבוּל אֶהְרֹן עִם גְּבוּל מוֹרוֹנִי. וְהֵם קָרְאוּ אֶת שֵׁם הָעִיר וְאֶת הָאֶרֶץ נִפְתִּיָּהָ.
- וּבִשְׁנָה הַהִיא הֵם הִחֲלוּ לְבִנּוֹת עָרִים רַבּוֹת בְּצָפוֹן; אַחַת מֵאֵלֶּה, אֲשֶׁר בְּצָפוֹן לְחוּף הַיָּם, נִבְנְתָה בְּאֶפֶן מִיָּחָד; וְהֵם קָרְאוּ אֶת שְׁמָהּ לְהִי.
- כֹּה תָמָה שְׁנַת עֶשְׂרִים.
- וּבַעֲוֹד עִם נָפִי הוֹלְכִים מִחֵיל אֶל חֵיל, הִחֲלָה שְׁנַת עֶשְׂרִים וְאַחַת לְשִׁלְטוֹן הַשּׁוֹפְטִים בְּעַם נָפִי.
- וְהִצְלַחְתֶּם רַבָּתָהּ מְאֹד. וְעִשְׂתֶּם פָּרֵץ עַד מְאֹד. וְהֵם רַבּוּ בְּאֶרֶץ, וְכַחֵם עֲצָם.
- וְכֹה רוֹאִים אֲנִיחֵנוּ כִּי בִרְחֻמִּים וּבְצֶדֶק מְקִים יְהוָה אֶת כָּל דְּבָרָיו אֶל בְּנֵי הָאָדָם. אָכֵן, אֲנִיחֵנוּ רוֹאִים כִּי דְבָרָיו אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר אֶל לְחִי מִתְקַיִּם אַף בַּעֲת הַזֹּאת; וְכֹה אָמַר:
- בְּרוּךְ אַתָּה וּבְרוּכִים בְּנֶיךָ, וּבְרוּכִים יְהוּי; כָּל עוֹד יִשְׁמְרוּ אֶת מִצְוֹתַי יִצְלִיחוּ בְּאֶרֶץ. אַף

זְכוֹר, כִּי אִם לֹא יִשְׁמְרוּ אֶת מִצְוֹתַי, הִכָּרַת  
יִכָּרְתוּ מִלִּפְנֵי יְהוָה.

But remember, inasmuch as they will not keep my commandments they shall be cut off from the presence of the Lord.

וְאַנְחֵנוּ רֹאִים כִּי הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה הִתְקִימוּ  
בְּעַם נְפִי; כִּי מְרִיבוּתֵיהֶם וּמַחְלוּקוּתֵיהֶם,  
הַרְצָח וְהַגָּזֹל, עֲבֹדַת הָאֱלִילִים וְהַזֹּמָה  
וְהַתּוֹעֵבוֹת אֲשֶׁר בְּקִרְבָּם, הֵם אֲשֶׁר הֵבִיאוּ  
עֲלֵיהֶם אֶת מִלְחָמוֹתֵיהֶם וְאֶת חֲרָבָם.

21 And we see that these promises have been verified to the people of Nephi; for it has been their quarrelings and their contentions, yea, their murderings, and their plunderings, their idolatry, their whoredoms, and their abominations, which were among themselves, which brought upon them their wars and their destructions.

וְכָל אֲשֶׁר הָיוּ נֹאמְנִים לְשִׁמּוֹר אֶת מִצְוֹת  
יְהוָה נִצְלוּ בְּכָל פַּעַם, בְּעוֹד אֲשֶׁר עַל אֲלָפִים  
מֵאַחֵיהֶם הִרְשָׁעִים נִגְזַר שְׁעָבוֹד, אוֹ נִפְלָה  
בַּחֲרָב, אוֹ שְׁקִיעָה בַּחֲסָר אֲמוּנָה וְהַתְּבוּלָה  
בְּתוֹךְ הַלָּמָנִים.

22 And those who were faithful in keeping the commandments of the Lord were delivered at all times, whilst thousands of their wicked brethren have been consigned to bondage, or to perish by the sword, or to dwindle in unbelief, and mingle with the Lamanites.

הִנֵּה, מִיָּמֵי נְפִי לֹא הָיְתָה עֵת כַּה מְאֻשֶּׁרֶת  
לְעַם נְפִי, כִּימֵי מוֹרוֹנִי, בְּזִמְנֵי הַזֶּה, בְּשָׁנָה  
עֲשָׂרִים וְאַחַת לְשִׁלְטוֹן הַשּׁוֹפְטִים.

23 But behold there never was a happier time among the people of Nephi, since the days of Nephi, than in the days of Moroni, yea, even at this time, in the twenty and first year of the reign of the judges.

וּשְׁנַת עֲשָׂרִים וּשְׁתֵּיתִים לְשִׁלְטוֹן הַשּׁוֹפְטִים,  
וְכֵן שְׁנַת עֲשָׂרִים וְשָׁלֹשׁ, כָּלוּ בְּשָׁלוֹם.

24 And it came to pass that the twenty and second year of the reign of the judges also ended in peace; yea, and also the twenty and third year.

וְאַף בְּרֵאשִׁית שְׁנַת עֲשָׂרִים וְאַרְבַּע לְשִׁלְטוֹן  
הַשּׁוֹפְטִים הָיָה שָׁלוֹם בְּקִרְבָּם עִם נְפִי, לוֹלֵא  
מְרִיבָה אֲשֶׁר פָּרְצָה בֵּינֵיהֶם, בְּעִנְיַן אֶרֶץ לְחִי  
וְאֶרֶץ מוֹרִיאַנְטוֹן, אֲשֶׁר הִיא הַתְּחַבְּרָה אֶל  
גְּבוּל לְחִי; שְׁתֵּי הָאֲרָצוֹת הָאֵלֶּה שָׁכְנוּ עַל  
חוּף הַיָּם.

25 And it came to pass that in the commencement of the twenty and fourth year of the reign of the judges, there would also have been peace among the people of Nephi had it not been for a contention which took place among them concerning the land of Lehi, and the land of Morianton, which joined upon the borders of Lehi; both of which were on the borders by the seashore.

כִּי הָעָם הַיּוֹשֵׁב בְּאֶרֶץ מוֹרִיאַנְטוֹן תָּבַע  
לוֹ חֶלֶק מֵאֶרֶץ לְחִי. לְכֵן הִחַל רִיב קָשֶׁה  
לְהִתְפַּתַּח בֵּינֵיהֶם, עַד כִּי אָחֲזוּ אֲנָשֵׁי  
מוֹרִיאַנְטוֹן בְּכָל נֶשֶׁק וְגִמְרוּ אִמָּר  
לְצִאת עַל אֲחֵיהֶם בַּחֲרָב וּלְהָרְגֵם.

26 For behold, the people who possessed the land of Morianton did claim a part of the land of Lehi; therefore there began to be a warm contention between them, insomuch that the people of Morianton took up arms against their brethren, and they were determined by the sword to slay them.

וַיּוֹשְׁבֵי אֶרֶץ לְחִי נָסוּ אֶל מַחֲנֵה מוֹרוֹנִי  
וּבִקְשׁוּהוּ לְעֻזָּר, כִּי לֹא נִמְצָא עוֹל בְּכַפָּם.

27 But behold, the people who possessed the land of Lehi fled to the camp of Moroni, and appealed unto him for assistance; for behold they were not in the wrong.

וְהָיָה כִּרְאוֹת אֲנָשֵׁי מוֹרִיאַנְטוֹן, אֲשֶׁר שָׁם  
מַחֲנֵיהֶם נִקְרָא מוֹרִיאַנְטוֹן, כִּי אֲנָשֵׁי לְחִי נָסוּ  
אֶל מַחֲנֵה מוֹרוֹנִי, הֵם יִרְאוּ מְאֹד כֹּן יִתְקַפֵּם  
צָבָא מוֹרוֹנִי וַיִּשְׁמִידֵם.

28 And it came to pass that when the people of Morianton, who were led by a man whose name was Morianton, found that the people of Lehi had fled to the camp of Moroni, they were exceedingly fearful lest the army of Moroni should come upon them and destroy them.

עַל כֵּן נָתַן מוֹרִיאַנְטוֹן מַחֲשָׁבָה בְּלִבָּם לְהִמָּלֵט  
אֶל הָאֶרֶץ אֲשֶׁר מִצְפוֹן, אֲשֶׁר כְּסוּיָהּ אֲגָמֵי מִיָּם  
גְּדוּלִים, וּלְהִתְנַחֵל בָּהּ. וְהִנֵּה, הֵם כִּמְעַט

29 Therefore, Morianton put it into their hearts that they should flee to the land which was northward, which was covered with large bodies of water, and take possession of the land which was northward.

- הוֹצִיאוּ לַפֶּעַל אֶת מִזְמַתָּם, אֲשֶׁר הָיְתָה מְבִיאָה יָגוֹן וְצָעַר, לִיּוֹלָא קִפְצָא רְגִז מוֹרִיאַנְטוֹן, אֲשֶׁר הָיָה אִישׁ חָם מְזֶג, עַל אַחַת מִמְּשִׁרְתּוֹתָיו, וְהִנֵּה הוּא הִתְנַפֵּל עָלֶיהָ, וְהִכָּה בָּהּ נִמְרָצוֹת.
- וְהָיָה נָסָה וּבָאָה אֶל מַחֲנֵה מוֹרוֹנִי וְסִפְרָה לְמוֹרוֹנִי הַכֹּל עַל אֹדוֹת הַדְּבָר הַזֶּה וְעַל כְּוִנָּתָם לְבָרוּחַ אֶל הָאָרֶץ אֲשֶׁר בְּצָפוֹן.
- וְהִנֵּה, הָעָם אֲשֶׁר בְּאֶרֶץ רַב־שָׁפַע יָרְאוּ, וְאֵף יָרָא מוֹרוֹנִי, פֶּן יִשְׁמְעוּ אֲנָשֵׁי רַב־שָׁפַע לְדְבָרֵי מוֹרִיאַנְטוֹן וְיִתְחַבְּרוּ עִם אֲנָשָׁיו. וְכֵן הוּא יִתְפַּשׂ אֶת אֲזוּרֵי הָאָרֶץ הַהִם, וּבִזְאוֹת תִּכְשֶׁר הַקְּרָקַע לְהִתְפַּתְחוֹת חֲמוּרָה בְּקֶרֶב עַם נָפִי, אֲשֶׁר תָּבִיא לְסִלּוֹק חֲרוּתָם.
- לְכֹן שָׁלַח מוֹרוֹנִי צֶבָא, עִם צִיּוּדוֹ, לְהַקְדִּים אֶת אֲנָשֵׁי מוֹרִיאַנְטוֹן, לְעָצֹר בְּעַד בְּרִיחָתָם אֶל הָאָרֶץ אֲשֶׁר בְּצָפוֹן.
- וּצֶבָא מוֹרוֹנִי לֹא הִשְׁיָגָם, כִּי אִם אַחֵר הִגִּיעָם אֶל גְּבוּל אֶרֶץ חֲרָבָה. שָׁם הָדִיחָם בְּמַעְבַּר הַצָּר אֲשֶׁר לְחוּף הַיָּם, אֲשֶׁר דְּרָכּוֹ הוֹלִיכָה אֶל אֶרֶץ הַצָּפוֹן, בְּקֶרֶב הַיָּם אֲשֶׁר מִמַּעְרָב וְאֲשֶׁר מִמְּזָרָח.
- וּבִרְאֵשׁ הַצָּבָא אֲשֶׁר שָׁלַח מוֹרוֹנִי, אֲשֶׁר הִשְׁיָג אֶת אֲנָשֵׁי מוֹרִיאַנְטוֹן, עָמַד אִישׁ אֲשֶׁר שְׁמוֹ נִקְרָא טִיאַנְקוּם. וְכֵן קָשִׁים הָיוּ אֲנָשֵׁי מוֹרִיאַנְטוֹן, יַעַן אֲשֶׁר הִשְׁפַּעוּ מִרְשָׁעוֹת וּמַחְלָקֹת לְשׁוֹנוֹ, עַד כִּי פָּרִץ קֶרֶב בֵּין שְׁנֵי הַחִילוֹת. וְטִיאַנְקוּם הָרַג אֶת מוֹרִיאַנְטוֹן, וְהִבִּיס אֶת חִילוֹ וְשָׁבָה אוֹתָם, וְשָׁב אֶל מַחֲנֵה מוֹרוֹנִי. כֹּה תָמָה שְׁנַת עֶשְׂרִים וָאַרְבַּע לְשִׁלְטוֹן הַשּׁוֹפְטִים בְּעַם נָפִי.
- כֹּה הוֹשְׁבוּ אֲנָשֵׁי מוֹרִיאַנְטוֹן. וְאַחֵר בּוֹאִם בְּבְרִית לְשֹׁמֵר שְׁלוֹם, הֵם הוֹשְׁבוּ אֶל אֶרֶץ מוֹרִיאַנְטוֹן וְהִתְאַחְדוּ עִם עַם לְחִי; אָכֵן, אֵף הֵם הוֹשְׁבוּ, אִישׁ אֶל אֶדְמָתוֹ.
- וּבִשְׁנָה אֲשֶׁר שָׁב הַשְׁלוֹם אֶל עַם נָפִי מֵת נָפִיָּהָ, הַשּׁוֹפֵט הָעֲלִיּוֹן הַשְּׁנִי, אַחֵר שָׁפָטוֹ לְפָנֵי אֱלֹהִים בְּתִכְלִית הַיֵּשֶׁר כָּל יְמֵי שְׁבָתוֹ עַל כֵּס הַמִּשְׁפָּט.
- 30 And behold, they would have carried this plan into effect, (which would have been a cause to have been lamented) but behold, Morianton being a man of much passion, therefore he was angry with one of his maid servants, and he fell upon her and beat her much.
- 31 And it came to pass that she fled, and came over to the camp of Moroni, and told Moroni all things concerning the matter, and also concerning their intentions to flee into the land northward.
- 32 Now behold, the people who were in the land Bountiful, or rather Moroni, feared that they would hearken to the words of Morianton and unite with his people, and thus he would obtain possession of those parts of the land, which would lay a foundation for serious consequences among the people of Nephi, yea, which consequences would lead to the overthrow of their liberty.
- 33 Therefore Moroni sent an army, with their camp, to head the people of Morianton, to stop their flight into the land northward.
- 34 And it came to pass that they did not head them until they had come to the borders of the land Desolation; and there they did head them, by the narrow pass which led by the sea into the land northward, yea, by the sea, on the west and on the east.
- 35 And it came to pass that the army which was sent by Moroni, which was led by a man whose name was Teancum, did meet the people of Morianton; and so stubborn were the people of Morianton, (being inspired by his wickedness and his flattering words) that a battle commenced between them, in the which Teancum did slay Morianton and defeat his army, and took them prisoners, and returned to the camp of Moroni. And thus ended the twenty and fourth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.
- 36 And thus were the people of Morianton brought back. And upon their covenanting to keep the peace they were restored to the land of Morianton, and a union took place between them and the people of Lehi; and they were also restored to their lands.
- 37 And it came to pass that in the same year that the people of Nephi had peace restored unto them, that Nephihah, the second chief judge, died, having filled the judgment-seat with perfect uprightness before God.

על אף זאת, הוא סרב למלא את בקשת  
עלמא לקבל לידיו את כתבי הזכרונות ואת  
החפצים ההם, אשר נחשבו לקדושים ביותר  
בעיני עלמא ובעיני אבותיו. על כן מסרם  
עלמא לידי בנו, הלמן.

38 Nevertheless, he had refused Alma to take possession of those records and those things which were esteemed by Alma and his fathers to be most sacred; therefore Alma had conferred them upon his son, Helaman.

ובן נפיהה מנה לשבת על כס המשפט תחת  
אביו; אכן, הוא מנה לשופט העליון ולמושל  
על העם, ולכך נשבע כמשפט קדש, לשפט  
בצדק ולשמר על שלום העם ועל חרותם,  
ולהעניק להם את זכויותיהם המקדשות לעבד  
את יהוה אלהיהם; אכן, לתמוך ולקיים את  
עניני אלהים כל ימיו, ולהביא למשפט את  
הרשעים, איש כפשוטו.

39 Behold, it came to pass that the son of Nephihah was appointed to fill the judgment-seat, in the stead of his father; yea, he was appointed chief judge and governor over the people, with an oath and sacred ordinance to judge righteously, and to keep the peace and the freedom of the people, and to grant unto them their sacred privileges to worship the Lord their God, yea, to support and maintain the cause of God all his days, and to bring the wicked to justice according to their crime.

ושם האיש פחורן. והוא ישב על כסא  
אביו והחל למשל בעם נפי באחרית שנת  
עשרים וארבע.

40 Now behold, his name was Pahoran. And Pahoran did fill the seat of his father, and did commence his reign in the end of the twenty and fourth year, over the people of Nephi.

## נא

## 51

ובראשית שנת עשרים וחמש לשלטון  
השופטים בעם נפי, אחר אשר כונן שלום  
בין אנשי לחי ובין אנשי מוריאנטון בדבר  
אדמוניהם, החלה שנת עשרים  
וחמש בשלום.

1 And now it came to pass in the commencement of the twenty and fifth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, they having established peace between the people of Lehi and the people of Morianton concerning their lands, and having commenced the twenty and fifth year in peace;

ואולם שלותם השלמה לא האריכה ימים  
בארץ, כי פרצה מחלוקת בקרב העם באשר  
לשופט העליון, פחורן; כי הנה, חלק מן העם  
חפץ בשנוי סעיפים מסוימים בחק.

2 Nevertheless, they did not long maintain an entire peace in the land, for there began to be a contention among the people concerning the chief judge Pahoran; for behold, there were a part of the people who desired that a few particular points of the law should be altered.

ופחורן לא חפץ לשנות את החק ולא הניח  
כי יעשה בו כל שנוי; לכן הוא לא שמע לקול  
השולחים אליו עצומות בענין שנוי החק.

3 But behold, Pahoran would not alter nor suffer the law to be altered; therefore, he did not hearken to those who had sent in their voices with their petitions concerning the altering of the law.

על כן רגזו עליו כל המבקשים לשנות את  
החק, ובקשו להסירו מכס השופט העליון  
בארץ. כה התעורר ופוח עז בענין הזה, אך  
לא עד שפרכת דמים.

4 Therefore, those who were desirous that the law should be altered were angry with him, and desired that he should no longer be chief judge over the land; therefore there arose a warm dispute concerning the matter, but not unto bloodshed.

והמבקשים להסיר את פחורן מכס המשפט  
נקראו בשם מלוקנים, כי בקשו לשנות את  
החק באופן אשר יסלק ממשל החרות בארץ  
וישים מלך תחתיו.

5 And it came to pass that those who were desirous that Pahoran should be dethroned from the judgment-seat were called king-men, for they were desirous that the law should be altered in a manner to overthrow the free government and to establish a king over the land.



וְהַחֲפִצִּים כִּי יִשְׂאָר פְּחוֹרָן שׁוֹפֵט עָלֵיוֹן בְּאַרְצָא  
קָרְאוּ עֲצָמָם בְּנֵי חֲרוּת; כֹּה נִפְלַג הָעָם, כִּי בְנֵי  
הַחֲרוּת נִשְׁבָּעוּ, אַכֹּן, בָּאוּ בְּבְרִית, לְשֹׁמֵר עַל  
זְכוּת דָּתָם עַל יְדֵי מִמְּשַׁל חֲרוּת.

אִזְּשָׁב דְּבַר הַמַּחֲלָקָת אֲשֶׁר בֵּינֵיהֶם עַל יְדֵי  
קוֹל הָעָם. וְהִנֵּה, בְּמִשְׁאֵל הָעָם הָיְתָה יַד בְּנֵי  
חֲרוּת עַל הָעֵלְיוֹנָה; כֹּה נִשְׂאָר פְּחוֹרָן עַל כֹּס  
הַמִּשְׁפָּט לְשִׁמְחַת לֵב עַמִּיתָיו וְלִב רַבִּים  
מֵאֲנָשֵׁי הַחֲרוּת; וְכֹה הִשְׁתִּיקוּ אֶת הַמְּלוּכָנִים,  
עַד כִּי לֹא הָעִזּוּ לְהַתְנַגֵּד לְעִנְיֹן הַחֲרוּת וְנִאֲלָצוּ  
לְהַשְׁלִים עִמּוֹ.

וְהַחֲפִצִּים בְּמִלְכִּים הָיוּ בְּעָלֵי יַחַס נִכְבָּד, וְהֵם  
בִּקְשׁוּ לְמֶלֶךְ. וְתוֹמְכֵיהֶם הָיוּ הַמְּבַקְשִׁים כֹּה  
וְשִׁרְרָה עַל הָעָם.

אִךְ הָיְתָה זֹאת עֵת הָרַת סִפְנוֹת בַּעְבוֹר  
מַחֲלוּקוֹת כְּאֵלֶּה בְּקֶרֶב עַם נָפִי, כִּי הִנֵּה  
עַמְּלִיקָה הֶחֱלָ לְהִסִּית שְׁנֵית אֶת לֵב עַם  
הַלְּמָנִים עַל עַם הַנְּפִיִּים; וְהוּא אָסַף חֲיָלִים  
מִכָּל חֲלָקֵי אֶרְצוֹ, וְחִמְשָׁם וְהִתְכַּנֵּן לְמַלְחָמָה  
בְּשִׁקְדָה רַבָּה, כִּי נִשְׁבַּע לְשָׂתוֹת אֶת דַּם מוֹרוֹנִי.

וְאִנְחֵנוּ נִרְאָה כִּי דִבְרָתוֹ אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר הָיְתָה  
פְּזִיזָה; וְאִלֵּם, הוּא הָכִין עֲצָמוֹ וְאֶת צְבָאוֹ  
לְבוֹא לְהִלָּחֵם בַּנְּפִיִּים.

וְעַתָּה לֹא הָיָה צְבָאוֹ רַב כְּלִפְנֵים, יַעַן אֲשֶׁר  
נִהָרְגוּ אֲלָפִים רַבִּים בְּיַדֵּי הַנְּפִיִּים; אִךְ עַל  
אִף אֲבִדוּתֵיהֶם הַכְּבִדּוֹת, קִבֵּץ עַמְּלִיקָה  
צָבָא עֲצוֹם וָרַב, עַד כִּי לֹא יָרָא לָרֶדֶת אֶל  
אֶרֶץ יִזְרַעְחֶמְלָה.

אַכֹּן, אִף עַמְּלִיקָה עֲצָמוֹ יָרַד הַפַּעַם בְּרֹאשׁ  
הַלְּמָנִים. הָיָה זֶה בְּשָׁנַת עֶשְׂרִים וְחִמְשׁ לְשִׁלְטוֹן  
הַשּׁוֹפְטִים, בְּעֵת אֲשֶׁר הֵם הִחֲלוּ לֵישֵׁב אֶת  
הַמַּחֲלָקָת בְּדִבְרֵי פְּחוֹרָן, הַשּׁוֹפֵט הָעָלִיוֹן.

וְהָיָה כְּאֲשֶׁר שָׁמְעוּ הָאֲנָשִׁים הַנִּקְרָאִים  
מְלוּכָנִים כִּי הַלְּמָנִים יָרְדוּ לְהִלָּחֵם בָּהֶם, הֵם  
שָׁמְחוּ בְּלִבָּם וְסָרְבוּ לֵאחֹז בְּנִשְׁקָא, אַכֹּן, כֹּה גָדוֹל  
הָיָה זַעֲמָם עַל הַשּׁוֹפֵט הָעָלִיוֹן וְעַל אֲנָשֵׁי הַחֲרוּת  
עַד כִּי לֹא אָבוּ לְשֹׂאת נֶשֶׁק לְהִגָּן עַל אֶרְצָם.

6 And those who were desirous that Pahoran should remain chief judge over the land took upon them the name of freemen; and thus was the division among them, for the freemen had sworn or covenanted to maintain their rights and the privileges of their religion by a free government.

7 And it came to pass that this matter of their contention was settled by the voice of the people. And it came to pass that the voice of the people came in favor of the freemen, and Pahoran retained the judgment-seat, which caused much rejoicing among the brethren of Pahoran and also many of the people of liberty, who also put the king-men to silence, that they durst not oppose but were obliged to maintain the cause of freedom.

8 Now those who were in favor of kings were those of high birth, and they sought to be kings; and they were supported by those who sought power and authority over the people.

9 But behold, this was a critical time for such contentions to be among the people of Nephi; for behold, Amalickiah had again stirred up the hearts of the people of the Lamanites against the people of the Nephites, and he was gathering together soldiers from all parts of his land, and arming them, and preparing for war with all diligence; for he had sworn to drink the blood of Moroni.

10 But behold, we shall see that his promise which he made was rash; nevertheless, he did prepare himself and his armies to come to battle against the Nephites.

11 Now his armies were not so great as they had hitherto been, because of the many thousands who had been slain by the hand of the Nephites; but notwithstanding their great loss, Amalickiah had gathered together a wonderfully great army, insomuch that he feared not to come down to the land of Zarahemla.

12 Yea, even Amalickiah did himself come down, at the head of the Lamanites. And it was in the twenty and fifth year of the reign of the judges; and it was at the same time that they had begun to settle the affairs of their contentions concerning the chief judge, Pahoran.

13 And it came to pass that when the men who were called king-men had heard that the Lamanites were coming down to battle against them, they were glad in their hearts; and they refused to take up arms, for they were so wroth with the chief judge, and also with the people of liberty, that they would not take up arms to defend their country.

## עלמא נא:יד-כב

- 14 And it came to pass that when Moroni saw this, and also saw that the Lamanites were coming into the borders of the land, he was exceedingly wroth because of the stubbornness of those people whom he had labored with so much diligence to preserve; yea, he was exceedingly wroth; his soul was filled with anger against them.
- 15 And it came to pass that he sent a petition, with the voice of the people, unto the governor of the land, desiring that he should read it, and give him, Moroni, power to compel those dissenters to defend their country or to put them to death.
- 16 For it was his first care to put an end to such contentions and dissensions among the people; for behold, this had been hitherto a cause of all their destruction. And it came to pass that it was granted according to the voice of the people.
- 17 And it came to pass that Moroni commanded that his army should go against those king-men, to pull down their pride and their nobility and level them with the earth, or they should take up arms and support the cause of liberty.
- 18 And it came to pass that the armies did march forth against them; and they did pull down their pride and their nobility, insomuch that as they did lift their weapons of war to fight against the men of Moroni they were hewn down and leveled to the earth.
- 19 And it came to pass that there were four thousand of those dissenters who were hewn down by the sword; and those of their leaders who were not slain in battle were taken and cast into prison, for there was no time for their trials at this period.
- 20 And the remainder of those dissenters, rather than be smitten down to the earth by the sword, yielded to the standard of liberty, and were compelled to hoist the title of liberty upon their towers, and in their cities, and to take up arms in defence of their country.
- 21 And thus Moroni put an end to those king-men, that there were not any known by the appellation of king-men; and thus he put an end to the stubbornness and the pride of those people who professed the blood of nobility; but they were brought down to humble themselves like unto their brethren, and to fight valiantly for their freedom from bondage.
- 22 Behold, it came to pass that while Moroni was thus breaking down the wars and contentions among his own people, and subjecting them to peace and civilization, and making regulations to prepare for war
- וְכִרְאוֹת זֹאת מוֹרוֹנִי, וְכִרְאוֹתוֹ אֶת הַלְּמָנִים  
פּוֹלְשִׁים אֶל גְּבוּלוֹת הָאָרֶץ, בְּעֵרָה חֲמָתוֹ עַל  
עֲקֻשׁוֹת הָאֲנָשִׁים אֲשֶׁר בָּרַב שְׂקִידָתוֹ עָמַל  
לְשַׁמְרָם. אָכֵן, בְּעֵרָה עֲלֵיהֶם חֲמָתוֹ עַד מְאֹד,  
וְנִפְשׁוֹ מִלְּאָה רָגֶז.
- וְהוּא שָׁלַח עֲצוּמָה, בְּקוֹל הָעָם, אֶל מוֹשֵׁל  
הָאָרֶץ, וּבִקֵּשׁ כִּי יִקְרָאנָה וַיִּפְּהָ אֶת כּוֹחַ,  
אֶת כֹּחַ מוֹרוֹנִי, לְאַכְּף עַל הַפּוֹרְשִׁים הָהֵם  
לְהִגֵּן עַל אֶרֶצָם, אוֹ לְהוֹצִיאֵם לְהוֹרֵג.
- כִּי רִאשִׁית דְּאֻגָּתוֹ הִיְתָה לְשֵׁים קֵץ לְמַחְלּוֹקוֹת  
וּלְפְלוּגִים כְּאֵלֶּה בְּקֶרֶב הָעָם. הֵן זֹאת הִיְתָה  
עַד כֹּה סִבַּת כָּל חֲרָבָנָם. וְהָיָה כִּי נִתְּנָה לוֹ  
בִּקְשָׁתוֹ, כִּרְצוֹן הָעָם.
- אֲזַי פָּקַד מוֹרוֹנִי עַל צָבָאוֹ לְעֹלוֹת עַל  
הַמְּלוֹכִימִים הָהֵם, לְשַׁבֵּר אֶת גִּאּוֹנָתָם וְאֶת כְּבוֹד  
אֲצִילוֹתָם וּלְהַשְׁפִּילָם עַד עָפָר, אִם לֹא יֵאָחֲזוּ  
בִּנְשָׁק וַיִּתְּמְכוּ בְּעִנְיֵן הַחֲרוּת.
- וְהָיָה כִּי צָעַד עֲלֵיהֶם הַצָּבָא, וְהִסִּיר אֶת  
גִּאּוֹנָתָם וְאֶת כְּבוֹד אֲצִילוֹתָם, עַד כִּי בִהְרִימָם  
אֶת כְּלֵי נֶשֶׁקָם לְהִלָּחֵם עִם אֲנָשֵׁי מוֹרוֹנִי,  
נִגְדְּעוּ בַּחֲרֵב וּלְאָרֶץ מִגְרוּ.
- וְהָיָה מִסְפַּר הַנוֹפְּלִים בַּחֲרֵב מִן הַפּוֹרְשִׁים  
הָהֵם אַרְבַּעַת אֲלָפִים אִישׁ. וְאֵלֶּה מִמִּנְהִיגֵיהֶם  
אֲשֶׁר לֹא נִהָרְגוּ בְּקֶרֶב, נִתְּפְשׁוּ וְאֵל הַכְּלָא  
הַשְׁלִכּוּ, כִּי לֹא הָיָה זְמַן לְהִסְפִּיקָהּ הָעֵת הַהִיא  
לְשַׁפֵּט אוֹתָם.
- וְהַנּוֹתָרִים מִן הַפּוֹרְשִׁים הָהֵם נִכְנְעוּ לְדָגֹל  
הַחֲרוּת, תַּחַת אֲשֶׁר יָכּוּ בַּחֲרֵב אֶרֶצָה. וְהֵם  
אֲלָצוּ לְהִנִּיף אֶת נֵס הַחֲרוּת עַל מִגְדְּלֵיהֶם  
וּבְעָרֵיהֶם, וּלְאַחֲזֹ בְּנֶשֶׁק לְהִגָּנָת אֶרֶצָם.
- כִּךְ שָׁם מוֹרוֹנִי קֵץ לְמְלוֹכִימִים הָהֵם, עַד כִּי לֹא  
הָיָה עוֹד אִישׁ אֲשֶׁר נִדְּעָ בְּפָנָיו מְלוֹכִנִי. וְכִךְ  
הוּא שָׁם קֵץ לְעֲקֻשְׁנוֹת וּלְגִאוֹת הָאֲנָשִׁים,  
אֲשֶׁר טָעְנוּ כִּי דָם אֲצִילִים דָּמָם; הִנֵּה, הֵם  
הִשְׁפִּילוּ עַד כִּי נִכְנְעוּ וְהָיוּ בְּאֶחֱיהֶם, וְנִלְחְמוּ  
בְּעֵז לְמַעַן חֲרוּתָם מִשַּׁעְבּוֹד.
- וּבִעֵת אֲשֶׁר שָׁקַד מוֹרוֹנִי לְהַפְסִיק אֶת  
הַמְּלָחְמוֹת וְהַמְּחִלּוֹקוֹת בְּקֶרֶב בְּנֵי עַמּוֹ  
וּלְהַשִּׁיב חַיִּי שְׁלוֹם וְתִרְבוּת, וּבִעֵת יִסְדּוּ

סְדָרִים לְהִתְכַּוֵּן לְמַלְחָמָה עַל הַלְּמָנִים, וְהִנֵּה פָּלְשׁוּ הַלְּמָנִים אֶל אֶרֶץ מוֹרוֹנִי, אֲשֶׁר שְׂכָנָה עַל הַגְּבוּל לְחוּף הַיָּם.

against the Lamanites, behold, the Lamanites had come into the land of Moroni, which was in the borders by the seashore.

וְהַנְּפִיטִים, יַעַן אֲשֶׁר לֹא הָיוּ חֲזָקִים דִּים בְּעִיר מוֹרוֹנִי, נִהְדָּפוּ עַל יְדֵי עַמְלִיקָיָה, וְהוּא הִרְגָּה רַבִּים מֵהֶם. וְעַמְלִיקָיָה תָּפַשׂ אֶת הָעִיר, וְכָל מִבְצָרֶיהָ נָפְלוּ בְּיָדוֹ.

23 And it came to pass that the Nephites were not sufficiently strong in the city of Moroni; therefore Amalickiah did drive them, slaying many. And it came to pass that Amalickiah took possession of the city, yea, possession of all their fortifications.

וְהַנִּמְלָטִים מֵעִיר מוֹרוֹנִי בָּאוּ אֶל הָעִיר נְפִיחָה. גַּם אֲנָשֵׁי הָעִיר לְחֵי נִקְבְּצוּ יַחְדָּו, וְנִעְרְכוּ וְהָיוּ נְכוּנִים לְהִתְרָאוֹת פָּנִים עִם הַלְּמָנִים.

24 And those who fled out of the city of Moroni came to the city of Nephihah; and also the people of the city of Lehi gathered themselves together, and made preparations and were ready to receive the Lamanites to battle.

אֲךָ עַמְלִיקָיָה לֹא הִתִּיר לְלָמָנִים לְצֵאת אֶל הָעִיר נְפִיחָה לְהִלָּחֵם בָּהּ, וְהִחֲזִיקָם לְחוּף הַיָּם; כֹּה הִסֵּב לְנַפְיִים לְהִחֲזִיק אֲנָשִׁים בְּכָל עִיר וְעִיר, לְשָׁמֹר וּלְהִגָּן עֲלֵיהֶן.

25 But it came to pass that Amalickiah would not suffer the Lamanites to go against the city of Nephihah to battle, but kept them down by the seashore, leaving men in every city to maintain and defend it.

וְכֹה הִתְקַדֵּם עַמְלִיקָיָה, וּתְפַשׂ עָרִים רַבּוֹת: אֶת הָעִיר נְפִיחָה, וְאֶת הָעִיר לְחֵי, וְאֶת הָעִיר מוֹרִיאַנְטוֹן, וְאֶת הָעִיר אוֹמְנֶר, וְאֶת הָעִיר גִּיד, וְאֶת הָעִיר מוּלֵק, כֻּלָּן בְּפִאֲתֵי מוֹרָח, לְחוּף הַיָּם.

26 And thus he went on, taking possession of many cities, the city of Nephihah, and the city of Lehi, and the city of Morianton, and the city of Omner, and the city of Gid, and the city of Mulek, all of which were on the east borders by the seashore.

כֹּה כָּבְשׁוּ הַלְּמָנִים, בְּעֶרְמַת עַמְלִיקָיָה, עָרִים כֹּה רַבּוֹת עַל יְדֵי חִילוֹתֵיהֶם אֲשֶׁר לֹא הָיָה לָהֶם מִסָּפָר, וְכָל מִבְצָרוֹת הַיָּם עַל פִּי הַיָּם מוֹרוֹנִי, וְהִשְׁתַּחֲוּ מִבְצָרֵי עֵז לְלָמָנִים.

27 And thus had the Lamanites obtained, by the cunning of Amalickiah, so many cities, by their numberless hosts, all of which were strongly fortified after the manner of the fortifications of Moroni; all of which afforded strongholds for the Lamanites.

וְאַחֵר זֹאת צָעְדוּ חֵילוֹת הַלְּמָנִים אֶל גְּבוּל אֶרֶץ רִב־שָׁפַע, וְהִדְּפוּ אֶת הַנְּפִיטִים לְפָנֵיהֶם וְהִרְגוּ בָּהֶם רַבִּים.

28 And it came to pass that they marched to the borders of the land Bountiful, driving the Nephites before them and slaying many.

אֲךָ שָׁם הֵם נִתְּקְלוּ בְּטִיאַנְקוּם, אֲשֶׁר הִרְגָּה אֶת מוֹרִיאַנְטוֹן, וְעָצַר אֶת אֲנָשָׁיו הַנִּמְלָטִים.

29 But it came to pass that they were met by Teancum, who had slain Morianton and had headed his people in his flight.

וְהָיָה כִּי הוּא עָצַר אַף אֶת עַמְלִיקָיָה הַמִּתְקַדֵּם עִם צְבָאוֹ הָעֶצוּם לְכַבֵּשׁ אֶת אֶרֶץ רִב־שָׁפַע וְאֶת אֶרֶץ הַצָּפוֹן.

30 And it came to pass that he headed Amalickiah also, as he was marching forth with his numerous army that he might take possession of the land Bountiful, and also the land northward.

וְהִנֵּה, עַמְלִיקָיָה נָחַל אֲכֻזָּה כִּי נִהְדָּף בְּיַד טִיאַנְקוּם וְאֲנָשָׁיו. כִּי הִלָּלוּ הָיוּ מְלֻמְדֵי מִלְחָמָה, וְכָל אִישׁ מִחֵיל טִיאַנְקוּם עָלָה עַל הַלְּמָנִים בְּכָחוֹ וּבְכֹשֶׁר לְחִימָתוֹ, עַד כִּי הִשְׁיִגוּ יִתְרוֹן עַל הַלְּמָנִים.

31 But behold he met with a disappointment by being repulsed by Teancum and his men, for they were great warriors; for every man of Teancum did exceed the Lamanites in their strength and in their skill of war, insomuch that they did gain advantage over the Lamanites.

וְאֲנָשֵׁי טִיאַנְקוּם הִסְרִידוּ אוֹתָם וְהִרְגוּ בָּהֶם עַד רֵדֶת הַחֹשֶׁכָה. וְטִיאַנְקוּם וְאֲנָשָׁיו נָטוּ אֶת

32 And it came to pass that they did harass them, insomuch that they did slay them even until it was dark. And it came to pass that Teancum

## עֲלֵמָא נָא:לֵג-נִבְה

אֶהְלִיָּהֶם עַל גְּבוּל אֶרֶץ רִב־שָׁפַע; וְעַמְלִיקְיָה  
נָטָה אֶת אֹהֲלָיו בְּפִאֲתֵי הַחוּף, בְּקִרְבַּת שְׂפַת  
הַיָּם; וּבְאַפֹּן זֶה נִהְדָּף צָבָאוֹ.

and his men did pitch their tents in the borders of the land Bountiful;  
and Amalickiah did pitch his tents in the borders on the beach by the  
seashore, and after this manner were they driven.

וַיָּבֹרֶת הַלַּיְלָה, הִתְגַּנְּבוּ טִיאֲנָקוּם וְנוֹשְׂא  
כְּלָיו, וְהִלְכוּ אֶל מַחֲנֵה עַמְלִיקְיָה, וְהִנֵּה כָּלֵם  
שְׁקוּעִים בְּתִרְדֵּמָה יַעַן אֲשֶׁר יָנְעוּ רַבּוֹת בַּעֲמַל  
הַיּוֹם וּבְחֶמּוֹ.

33 And it came to pass that when the night had come, Teancum and his  
servant stole forth and went out by night, and went into the camp of  
Amalickiah; and behold, sleep had overpowered them because of their  
much fatigue, which was caused by the labors and heat of the day.

וְטִיאֲנָקוּם הִתְגַּנְּבָה בְּחֻשָּׁאֵי אֶל תּוֹךְ אֹהֶל הַמֶּלֶךְ  
וַתִּקַּע חֲנִית בְּלִבּוֹ; כְּהִרְףָּ עֵין הַמִּית אֶת הַמֶּלֶךְ  
וְאֵף אֶחָד מִמְשָׁרְתָיו לֹא הִתְעוֹרָר.

34 And it came to pass that Teancum stole privily into the tent of the king,  
and put a javelin to his heart; and he did cause the death of the king  
immediately that he did not awake his servants.

וְטִיאֲנָקוּם שָׁב בְּחֻשָּׁאֵי אֶל מַחֲנֵהוּ, וְהִנֵּה  
אֲנָשָׁיו יֹשְׁנִים. וְהוּא הֵעִירָם וְסִפֵּר לָהֶם אֵת  
כָּל אֲשֶׁר עָשָׂה.

35 And he returned again privily to his own camp, and behold, his men  
were asleep, and he awoke them and told them all the things that he  
had done.

וְהוּא צִוָּה אֶת חֲיָלָיו לְעִמּוּד מוֹכְנִים, כֵּן יִקְצִי  
הַלְּמָנִים מִשְׁנָתָם וַיָּבֹאוּ עֲלֵיהֶם.

36 And he caused that his armies should stand in readiness, lest the  
Lamanites had awakened and should come upon them.

כֹּה תִמָּה שְׁנַת עֶשְׂרִים וְחָמֵשׁ לְשִׁלְטוֹן  
הַשּׁוֹפְטִים בְּעַם נְפִי, וְכֹה תִמּוּ יְמֵי עַמְלִיקְיָה.

37 And thus ended the twenty and fifth year of the reign of the judges over  
the people of Nephi; and thus ended the days of Amalickiah.

## נב

## 52

וְהָיָה בְּשָׁנַת עֶשְׂרִים וְשֵׁשׁ לְשִׁלְטוֹן הַשּׁוֹפְטִים  
בְּעַם נְפִי, אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר הִקְיָצוּ הַלְּמָנִים מִשְׁנָתָם  
בְּבִקְרֵי הָרִאשׁוֹן אֲשֶׁר לַחֹדֶשׁ הָרִאשׁוֹן, וְהִנֵּה  
הֵם רָאוּ כִּי עַמְלִיקְיָה מֵת בְּתוֹךְ אֹהֲלוֹ וְכִי  
טִיאֲנָקוּם הָיָה מוֹכֵן לְהִלָּחֵם בָּהֶם בּוֹ בַּיּוֹם.

1 And now, it came to pass in the twenty and sixth year of the reign of the  
judges over the people of Nephi, behold, when the Lamanites awoke  
on the first morning of the first month, behold, they found Amalickiah  
was dead in his own tent; and they also saw that Teancum was ready to  
give them battle on that day.

וּבְרִאשׁוֹתָם זֹאת הֵם חָרְדּוּ וְאֵף נָטְשׁוּ אֶת  
תַּכְנִיתָם לַעְדֹּת אֶל אֶרֶץ הַצָּפוֹן; וְהֵם נִסּוּגוּ  
עִם כָּל צָבָאָם אֶל הָעִיר מוּלֵק, וּבִקְשׁוּ  
מִגֹּן בְּמִבְצָרֵיהֶם.

2 And now, when the Lamanites saw this they were affrighted; and  
they abandoned their design in marching into the land northward,  
and retreated with all their army into the city of Mulek, and sought  
protection in their fortifications.

אִז מָנָה אַחֵי עַמְלִיקְיָה לְמֶלֶךְ עַל הָעָם; וְשִׁמּוֹ  
נִקְרָא עֲמֹרוֹן. כֹּה הַמֶּלֶךְ עֲמֹרוֹן תַּחַת אַחֵי  
הַמֶּלֶךְ עַמְלִיקְיָה.

3 And it came to pass that the brother of Amalickiah was appointed king  
over the people; and his name was Ammoron; thus king Ammoron,  
the brother of king Amalickiah, was appointed to reign in his stead.

וְעֲמֹרוֹן צִוָּה אֶת אֲנָשָׁיו לְהַחֲזִיק בְּעָרִים אֲשֶׁר  
נִכְבְּשׁוּ בְּדָמִים, כִּי הֵם לֹא כָּבְשׁוּ אֶף עִיר אַחַת  
בְּלֹא שְׁפִיכַת דָּם רַב.

4 And it came to pass that he did command that his people should  
maintain those cities, which they had taken by the shedding of blood;  
for they had not taken any cities save they had lost much blood.

וּבְרִאשׁוֹת טִיאֲנָקוּם כִּי הַלְּמָנִים נִחוּשִׁים  
בְּדַעְתָּם לְהַחֲזִיק בְּעָרִים אֲשֶׁר לָקְחוּ וּבְחִבְלֵי

5 And now, Teancum saw that the Lamanites were determined to  
maintain those cities which they had taken, and those parts of the land

- הָאָרֶץ אֲשֶׁר תִּפְשׂוּ, וּבִרְאוֹתוֹ גַּם אֶת עֵצֶם  
מִסְפָּרָם, הוּא חָשַׁב כִּי אֵין תּוֹעֵלֶת בְּנִסּוֹת  
לְהִתְקִיפָם בְּעוֹדָם בְּמִבְצָרֵיהֶם.
- וְהוּא הִצִּיב אֶת אַנְשָׁיו סָבִיב-סָבִיב, כְּאֵלּוּ  
עָרְכֶם לְמִלְחָמָה; וּלְמַעֲשֵׂה הַכִּין טִיאֲנֻקוֹם אֶת  
הַגְּנָתָם עָלֵיהֶם; כִּי הוּא שָׁפַף סוּלָלוֹת עֶפֶר  
מִסָּבִיב וְהַכִּין מְקוֹמוֹת מִחֶסֶה.
- וְכֵן הוּא הִתְכַּוֵּן לְמִלְחָמָה, עַד אֲשֶׁר שָׁלַח  
אֵלָיו מוֹרוֹנִי אַנְשִׁים רַבִּים, לְהַגְבִּיר אֶת חֵילוֹ.
- וּמוֹרוֹנִי אֵף שָׁלַח אֵלָיו פְּקֻדוֹת כִּי יַחְזִיק אֶת  
כָּל הַשְּׁבוּיִים אֲשֶׁר נָפְלוּ לְיָדוֹ; יַעַן אֲשֶׁר  
תִּפְשׂוּ הַלְּמָנִים שְׁבוּיִים רַבִּים, יַחְזִיקוּ כָּל  
הַשְּׁבוּיִים הַלְּמָנִים כְּכֹפֶר תְּמוּנֹת הַשְּׁבוּיִים  
אֲשֶׁר הֵם לָקְחוּ.
- וְהוּא אֵף צִוָּה אֶת טִיאֲנֻקוֹם לְבַצֵּר אֶת אֶרֶץ  
רֶב-שֹׁפֶעַ וּלְהַבְטִיחַ אֶת הַמַּעֲבָר הַצָּר הַמּוֹכִיל  
אֶל אֶרֶץ הַצָּפוֹן, פֶּן יִשְׁתַּלְטוּ הַלְּמָנִים עַל הַמְּקוֹם  
הַהוּא וְיִהְיֶה לָאֵל יָדָם לְהַטְרִידָם בְּכָל עֶבֶר.
- וּמוֹרוֹנִי בִקֵּשׁ מִמֶּנּוּ לְשֹׁמֵר בְּנֵאֲמָנוֹת אֶת  
אֲזוֹרוֹ, וְאֵף כִּי יִשְׁתַּמֵּשׁ בְּכָל שַׁעַת כְּשֶׁר  
לְהַכּוֹת בְּלִמְנִים אֲשֶׁר בְּאֲזוֹר הוּא כָּל אֲשֶׁר  
יֻכַּל, אוֹלֵי יֻכַּל לְהָשִׁיב, בְּתַחְבוּלָה אוֹ בְּאִפְּן  
אַחֵר, אֶת הָעָרִים אֲשֶׁר נִלְקְחוּ מִיָּדָם. וְעוֹד  
הוּא בִקֵּשׁ, כִּי יִבְצֹר וְיַחְזִיק אֶת הָעָרִים אֲשֶׁר  
מִסָּבִיב וְלֹא נָפְלוּ לְיַד הַלְּמָנִים.
- וְהוּא אֵף אָמַר אֵלָיו: רְצוֹנִי לָבוֹא אֵלֶיךָ, אֵף  
הִנֵּה הַלְּמָנִים בָּאִים עָלֵינוּ בְּגִבּוּלוֹת הָאָרֶץ  
אֲשֶׁר לְחוּף הַיָּם הַמַּעֲרָבִי, וְהִנֵּנִי יוֹצֵא עֲלֵיהֶם;  
לִכֵּן לֹא אוּכַל לָבוֹא אֵלֶיךָ.
- וְהַמֶּלֶךְ עֲמוֹרוֹן יָצָא מֵאֶרֶץ זֶרַחֶמְלָה,  
וְהוֹדִיעַ לְמַלְכָּה עַל מוֹת אָחִיו. וְהוּא אָסַף  
אֲנָשִׁים רַבִּים וְעָרָף מִסָּע לְקִרְאָת הַנְּפִיִּים  
אֲשֶׁר עַל חוּף הַיָּם הַמַּעֲרָבִי.
- בְּזֹאת הוּא הִתְאַמֵּץ לְהַטְרִיד אֶת הַנְּפִיִּים  
וּלְמַשׁוֹךְ חֶלֶק מִחִילוֹתֵיהֶם אֶל אֲזוֹר הָאָרֶץ  
הַהוּא, בְּעוֹד כִּי אֶת הַחִילִים אֲשֶׁר הִפְקִיד עַל  
הַחֲזָקָה הָעָרִים אֲשֶׁר נִכְבְּשׁוּ מִקֹּדֶם, צִוָּה
- which they had obtained possession of; and also seeing the enormity  
of their number, Teancum thought it was not expedient that he should  
attempt to attack them in their forts.
- 6 But he kept his men round about, as if making preparations for war;  
yea, and truly he was preparing to defend himself against them, by  
casting up walls round about and preparing places of resort.
- 7 And it came to pass that he kept thus preparing for war until Moroni  
had sent a large number of men to strengthen his army.
- 8 And Moroni also sent orders unto him that he should retain all the  
prisoners who fell into his hands; for as the Lamanites had taken many  
prisoners, that he should retain all the prisoners of the Lamanites as a  
ransom for those whom the Lamanites had taken.
- 9 And he also sent orders unto him that he should fortify the land  
Bountiful, and secure the narrow pass which led into the land  
northward, lest the Lamanites should obtain that point and should  
have power to harass them on every side.
- 10 And Moroni also sent unto him, desiring him that he would be faithful  
in maintaining that quarter of the land, and that he would seek every  
opportunity to scourge the Lamanites in that quarter, as much as was  
in his power, that perhaps he might take again by stratagem or some  
other way those cities which had been taken out of their hands; and  
that he also would fortify and strengthen the cities round about, which  
had not fallen into the hands of the Lamanites.
- 11 And he also said unto him, I would come unto you, but behold, the  
Lamanites are upon us in the borders of the land by the west sea; and  
behold, I go against them, therefore I cannot come unto you.
- 12 Now, the king (Ammoron) had departed out of the land of Zarahemla,  
and had made known unto the queen concerning the death of his  
brother, and had gathered together a large number of men, and had  
marched forth against the Nephites on the borders by the west sea.
- 13 And thus he was endeavoring to harass the Nephites, and to draw away  
a part of their forces to that part of the land, while he had commanded  
those whom he had left to possess the cities which he had taken, that  
they should also harass the Nephites on the borders by the east sea, and



## עלמא נב:יד-כא

שִׁטְרֵי־דוֹ אִף הִם אֶת הַנְּפִיִּים עַל הַגְּבוּל,  
לִיד הַיָּם הַמְּזֻרְחִי, וְכִי יִכְבְּשׁוּ אֶת הַשְּׂטָחִים  
כָּל אֲשֶׁר יוּכְלוּ, כְּפִי עֲצָמַת חִילוֹתֵיהֶם.

should take possession of their lands as much as it was in their power,  
according to the power of their armies.

הִנֵּה, כֹּה כְּרוּכִים בְּסִכְנָה הָיוּ הַנְּפִיִּים בְּאַחֲרִית  
שְׁנַת עֶשְׂרִים וְשֵׁשׁ לְשִׁלְטוֹן הַשּׁוֹפְטִים בְּעַם  
נֶפִי.

14 And thus were the Nephites in those dangerous circumstances in the  
ending of the twenty and sixth year of the reign of the judges over the  
people of Nephi.

וּבְשָׁנַת עֶשְׂרִים וְשֵׁבַע לְשִׁלְטוֹן הַשּׁוֹפְטִים קָבַל  
טֵאנְקוּם פְּקֻדָּה מֵאֵת מוֹרוֹנִי. כִּי מוֹרוֹנִי, אֲשֶׁר  
יָסַד אֶת הַצָּבָא לְהִגָּנַת גְּבוּלוֹת הָאָרֶץ בְּדָרוֹם  
וּבַמֶּעְרָב, הֵחֵל אֶת מַסְעוֹ אֶל אֶרֶץ רֵב־שֹׁפֶעַ  
לְמַעַן סִיעַ לְטֵאנְקוּם, עַל יְדֵי אֲנָשָׁיו, בְּהִשָּׁבַת  
הָעָרִים אֲשֶׁר אָבְדוּ לָהֶם.

15 But behold, it came to pass in the twenty and seventh year of the reign  
of the judges, that Teancum, by the command of Moroni—who had  
established armies to protect the south and the west borders of the  
land, and had begun his march towards the land Bountiful, that he  
might assist Teancum with his men in retaking the cities which they  
had lost—

וְהִנֵּה, הַפְּקֻדָּה לְטֵאנְקוּם הָיְתָה לַעֲרֹךְ  
הַתְּקֵפָה עַל הָעִיר מוּלֵק וּלְכַבְּשָׁהּ שׁוּב,  
אִם נָתַן הַדָּבָר לְהַעֲשׂוֹת.

16 And it came to pass that Teancum had received orders to make an  
attack upon the city of Mulek, and retake it if it were possible.

לְכֹן נִעְרַךְ טֵאנְקוּם לְהַתְּקֵפָה עַל הָעִיר מוּלֵק  
וּלְמַסַּע צָבָאוֹ עַל הַלְּמָנִים. וְאוֹלָם הוּא רָאָה  
כִּי לֹא יוּכַל לִגְבֹּר עַל הַלְּמָנִים בְּהִיוֹתָם חוֹסִים  
בְּמִבְצָרֵיהֶם; עַל כֵּן הוּא נָטַשׁ אֶת תְּכָנִיתוֹ  
וְשָׁב אֶל הָעִיר רֵב־שֹׁפֶעַ וְהִמָּתִין לְבוֹא מוֹרוֹנִי,  
לְקַבֵּל תְּגִבְרַת לְצָבָאוֹ.

17 And it came to pass that Teancum made preparations to make an attack  
upon the city of Mulek, and march forth with his army against the  
Lamanites; but he saw that it was impossible that he could overpower  
them while they were in their fortifications; therefore he abandoned  
his designs and returned again to the city Bountiful, to wait for the  
coming of Moroni, that he might receive strength to his army.

וְהָיָה כִּי מוֹרוֹנִי הִגִּיעַ עִם צָבָאוֹ אֶל אֶרֶץ רֵב־  
שֹׁפֶעַ בְּאַחֲרִית שְׁנַת עֶשְׂרִים וְשֵׁבַע לְשִׁלְטוֹן  
הַשּׁוֹפְטִים בְּעַם נֶפִי.

18 And it came to pass that Moroni did arrive with his army at the land of  
Bountiful, in the latter end of the twenty and seventh year of the reign  
of the judges over the people of Nephi.

וּבְרֵאשִׁית שְׁנַת עֶשְׂרִים וְשִׁמוֹנָה נֶאֱסָפוּ  
מוֹרוֹנִי וְטֵאנְקוּם וְרָבִים מִשָּׂרֵי הַצָּבָא לְמוֹעֶצֶת  
מִלְחָמָה, לְהוֹעִץ מֵה יַעֲשׂוּ לְמַעַן הִסֵּב לַלְּמָנִים  
לְצִאתָם עֲלֵיהֶם לְקָרֵב, אוֹ לְפָתוֹתָם בְּדָרוֹךְ פְּלִשְׁתִּי  
לְצִאתָם מִתּוֹךְ מַעֲזֵיהֶם, בְּעֵבֹר יִשְׁיִגוּ יִתְרוֹן  
עֲלֵיהֶם וְיִשְׁיִבוּ מִיַּדֵּיהֶם אֶת הָעִיר מוּלֵק.

19 And in the commencement of the twenty and eighth year, Moroni  
and Teancum and many of the chief captains held a council of war—  
what they should do to cause the Lamanites to come out against them  
to battle; or that they might by some means flatter them out of their  
strongholds, that they might gain advantage over them and take again  
the city of Mulek.

וְהֵם שָׁלְחוּ שְׁלִיחִים אֶל חֵיל הַלְּמָנִים הַמְּפֻקָּד  
עַל שְׁמִירַת הָעִיר מוּלֵק, אֶל מְפַקֵּדָם אֲשֶׁר שְׁמוֹ  
נְקָרָא יַעֲקֹב, וּבִקְשׁוּהוּ לְצִאתָם עִם צָבָאוֹ,  
לְהִתְרַאוֹת עִמָּם פָּנִים בְּפָנִים בְּמִישׁוֹר אֲשֶׁר בֵּין שְׁתֵּי  
הָעָרִים. וְאוֹלָם יַעֲקֹב, אֲשֶׁר הָיָה אִישׁ זֹרָמִי, לֹא  
אָבָה לְצִאתָם עִם צָבָאוֹ לְהַפְגִּישׁ עִמָּם בְּמִישׁוֹר.

20 And it came to pass they sent embassies to the army of the Lamanites,  
which protected the city of Mulek, to their leader, whose name was  
Jacob, desiring him that he would come out with his armies to meet  
them upon the plains between the two cities. But behold, Jacob, who  
was a Zoramite, would not come out with his army to meet them upon  
the plains.

וּכְאֲשֶׁר אֶפְסָה תִּקְוַת מוֹרוֹנִי לְפָגֵשׁ אֶת  
הַלְּמָנִים בְּתַנָּאִים שְׁוִים, הוּא עָרַךְ תְּכָנִית  
לְפָתוֹתָם לְצִאתָם מִמַּעֲזֵיהֶם.

21 And it came to pass that Moroni, having no hopes of meeting them  
upon fair grounds, therefore, he resolved upon a plan that he might  
decoy the Lamanites out of their strongholds.

- 22 לכן הוא צוה על טיאנקום לקחת עמו אנשים מספר וללכת אל חוף הים. ומורוני וצבאו צעדו בלילה אל היער אשר במערב העיר מולק. ולמחרת, כאשר גלו שומרי הלמנים את טיאנקום, הם מהרו וספרו את הדבר ליעקב, מפקדם.
- 23 And therefore he caused that Teancum should take a small number of men and march down near the seashore; and Moroni and his army, by night, marched into the wilderness, on the west of the city Mulek; and thus, on the morrow, when the guards of the Lamanites had discovered Teancum, they ran and told it unto Jacob, their leader.
- 24 אז יצאו חילות הלמנים לקראת טיאנקום, בסברם כי יגברו עליו מפני מספרם המעט. וכראות טיאנקום את חילות הלמנים יוצאים עליהם, הוא החל לסגת אל עבר חוף הים צפונה.
- 25 And it came to pass that the armies of the Lamanites did march forth against Teancum, supposing by their numbers to overpower Teancum because of the smallness of his numbers. And as Teancum saw the armies of the Lamanites coming out against him he began to retreat down by the seashore, northward.
- 26 והיה בראות הלמנים כי בורח הוא מפניהם, הם אזרו עז ורדפו אחריו באמץ. וב עוד טיאנקום מרחיק את הלמנים הרודפים אחריו לשוא, פקד מורוני על חלק מצבאו אשר עמו להתקדם אל תוך העיר ולכבשה.
- 27 And it came to pass that when the Lamanites saw that he began to flee, they took courage and pursued them with vigor. And while Teancum was thus leading away the Lamanites who were pursuing them in vain, behold, Moroni commanded that a part of his army who were with him should march forth into the city, and take possession of it.
- 28 וכן עשו. והם הרגו את כל אשר נשארו להגן על העיר; את כל אשר לא הניחו את כלי נשקם.
- 29 And thus they did, and slew all those who had been left to protect the city, yea, all those who would not yield up their weapons of war.
- 30 כה כבש מורוני את העיר מולק על ידי חלק מצבאו, בעוד הוא עצמו צעד עם שאר הצבא לפגוש את הלמנים בשוכם מרדף אחר טיאנקום.
- 31 And thus Moroni had obtained possession of the city Mulek with a part of his army, while he marched with the remainder to meet the Lamanites when they should return from the pursuit of Teancum.
- 32 והלמנים רדפו אחר טיאנקום עד אשר התקרבו אל העיר רבי-שפע. שם הם נתקלו בלחי ובחיל קטן, אשר השאר לשמור על העיר.
- 33 And it came to pass that the Lamanites did pursue Teancum until they came near the city Bountiful, and then they were met by Lehi and a small army, which had been left to protect the city Bountiful.
- 34 וכראות שרי צבא הלמנים את לחי וצבאו באים עליהם, הם נסו בבהלה, מראותם פן ישיגם לחי בטורם יגיעו אל העיר מולק; כי הם עיפו ממסעם, בעוד אנשי לחי היו רעננים.
- 35 And now behold, when the chief captains of the Lamanites had beheld Lehi with his army coming against them, they fled in much confusion, lest perhaps they should not obtain the city Mulek before Lehi should overtake them; for they were wearied because of their march, and the men of Lehi were fresh.
- 36 והלמנים לא ידעו כי מורוני וצבאו מאחוריהם. כל פחדם היה מלחי ומאנשיו.
- 37 Now the Lamanites did not know that Moroni had been in their rear with his army; and all they feared was Lehi and his men.
- 38 ולחי לא חפץ להשיגם בטורם יפגשו במורוני וצבאו.
- 39 Now Lehi was not desirous to overtake them till they should meet Moroni and his army.
- 40 והיה בטורם הרחיקו הלמנים בנסיגתם, הקיפום הנפיים, אנשי מורוני מזה ואנשי לחי
- 41 And it came to pass that before the Lamanites had retreated far they were surrounded by the Nephites, by the men of Moroni on one hand,

מְזָה, כָּלֶם רַעֲנָנִים וּמְלֵאִים מֶרֶץ, בְּעוֹד אֲשֶׁר  
הַלְּמָנִים יָגְעוּ מִפְּנֵי מַסָּעֵם הָאָרָךְ.

and the men of Lehi on the other, all of whom were fresh and full of strength; but the Lamanites were wearied because of their long march.

וּמֹרֹנִי פָקַד אֶת אֲנָשָׁיו לְהִלָּחֵם בָּהֶם עַד  
אֲשֶׁר יָנִיחוּ אֶת כָּלִי נִשְׁקָם.

32 And Moroni commanded his men that they should fall upon them until they had given up their weapons of war.

וַיַּעֲקֹב מִפְּקֻדָּם, אֲשֶׁר הָיָה זֹרַמִּי, אִישׁ עָשׂוּי  
לְבָלִי חַת, הִנְהִיג בְּחֶמֶת וַעֲמוּ אֶת הַלְּמָנִים  
בִּקְרֹב עַל מֹרֹנִי.

33 And it came to pass that Jacob, being their leader, being also a Zoramite, and having an unconquerable spirit, he led the Lamanites forth to battle with exceeding fury against Moroni.

וַיַּעַן אֲשֶׁר הָיָה צָבָא מֹרֹנִי עַל נְתִיב מַסָּעֵם, הָיָה  
יַעֲקֹב תַּקִּיף בְּדַעְתּוֹ לְהִרְגֵם וּלְהַבְקִיעַ דָּרָךְ בְּתוֹךְ  
צָבָאֵם בְּמַסָּעוֹ אֶל הָעִיר מוֹלֵק. אַף הִנֵּה, מֹרֹנִי  
וְאֲנָשָׁיו חֲזָקוּ מֵהֶם וְלֹא נִסְגּוּ מִפְּנֵי הַלְּמָנִים.

34 Moroni being in their course of march, therefore Jacob was determined to slay them and cut his way through to the city of Mulek. But behold, Moroni and his men were more powerful; therefore they did not give way before the Lamanites.

וְהָיָה כִּי הֵם לָחֲמוּ בִּשְׁנֵי הָעֳבָרִים בְּחֶמֶה  
שְׂפוּכָה. רַבִּים הָיוּ הִרְגוּשִׁים בִּשְׁנֵי הַמַּחְנוֹת;  
מֹרֹנִי נִפְצַע וַיַּעֲקֹב נָהָרַג.

35 And it came to pass that they fought on both hands with exceeding fury; and there were many slain on both sides; yea, and Moroni was wounded and Jacob was killed.

וְלֵחִי וּגְבוּרֵי חִילוֹ לָחֲצוּ אֶת מַאֲסָף צָבָא הַלְּמָנִים  
בְּחֶמֶה עֲזָה, עַד כִּי מָסְרוּ לַיָּדֵיהֶם חֲזִלֵי הַמַּאֲסָף  
אֶת כָּלִי נִשְׁקָם; וּשְׂאִרֵיהֶם, אַחֲזִיזֵי בְּהִלָּה  
וּמְבוּכָה, לֹא יָדְעוּ אִם לְהַמְלִיט אִם לְהִלָּחֵם.

36 And Lehi pressed upon their rear with such fury with his strong men, that the Lamanites in the rear delivered up their weapons of war; and the remainder of them, being much confused, knew not whether to go or to strike.

וְכִרְאוֹת מֹרֹנִי אֶת מְבוּכָתָם הוּא אָמַר  
אֲלֵיהֶם: אִם תָּבִיאוּ אֶת כָּלִי נִשְׁקָם וְתִסְגְּרוּם  
לַיָּדִינוּ, נַחְדֹּל מִשְׁפֹּךְ אֶת דַּמְכֶם.

37 Now Moroni seeing their confusion, he said unto them: If ye will bring forth your weapons of war and deliver them up, behold we will forbear shedding your blood.

וְהָיָה כְּשִׁמַּע הַלְּמָנִים אֶת הַדְּבָר הַזֶּה, בָּאוּ  
כָּל שָׂרֵי צָבָאֵם אֲשֶׁר נִוְתְּרוּ בַּחַיִּים וְהִשְׁלִיכוּ  
אֶת כָּלִי נִשְׁקָם לְרַגְלֵי מֹרֹנִי וְאֵף צִוּוּ אֶת  
אֲנָשֵׁיהֶם לַעֲשׂוֹת כֵּן.

38 And it came to pass that when the Lamanites had heard these words, their chief captains, all those who were not slain, came forth and threw down their weapons of war at the feet of Moroni, and also commanded their men that they should do the same.

וְהִנֵּה, רַבִּים מֵהֶם מָאָנוּ. וְאֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר לֹא  
הִסְגִּירוּ אֶת חַרְבוֹתֵיהֶם נִלְקְחוּ וְנִכְבְּלוּ, וְכָלִי  
נִשְׁקָם נִלְקְחוּ מֵהֶם. וְהֵם אֵלְצוּ לָצֵאת לְמַסָּע  
עִם אַחֵיהֶם אֶל אֶרֶץ רַב־שְׂפַע.

39 But behold, there were many that would not; and those who would not deliver up their swords were taken and bound, and their weapons of war were taken from them, and they were compelled to march with their brethren forth into the land Bountiful.

וּמִסְפַּר הַשְּׁבוּיִים עָלָה עַל מִסְפַּר הַהִרְגוּשִׁים.  
אֲכֹן, רַב מִסְפָּרָם מִמִּסְפַּר הַרוּגֵי שְׁנֵי הַצָּדִידִים.

40 And now the number of prisoners who were taken exceeded more than the number of those who had been slain, yea, more than those who had been slain on both sides.

וְהִנֵּפְיִים שָׂמוּ שׁוּמְרִים עַל שְׁבוּיֵיהֶם הַלְּמָנִים,  
וְאֵלְצוּם לָצֵאת לְקַבֵּר אֶת מֵיתֵיהֶם וְאֵף אֶת

1 And it came to pass that they did set guards over the prisoners of the Lamanites, and did compel them to go forth and bury their dead, yea,

## עֲלֵמָא נג:ב-ח

מִתֵּי הַנְּפִיִּים, הַהֲרוּגִים בְּקֶרֶב. וּמֹרֹנִי מָנָה  
עֲלֵיהֶם אֲנָשִׁים, לְהִשְׁגִּיחַ עֲלֵיהֶם בְּעֵת עֲבוֹדָתָם.

אִזְ הָלַךְ מֹרֹנִי, וְלַחִי עִמּוֹ, אֶל הָעִיר מוּלֶק,  
וְהוּא לָקַחָהּ וַיִּתְּנָהּ לְלַחִי לְפָקֹד. וְלַחִי הָיָה עִם  
מֹרֹנִי בְּרֵב קְרָבוֹתָיו, וְהוּא הָיָה אִישׁ כְּמֹרֹנִי.  
וְהֵם שָׂמְחוּ, אִישׁ בְּבִטְחוֹן רֵעֵהוּ, אַכֵּן, הֵם  
אָהְבוּ אִישׁ אֶת רֵעֵהוּ, וְאִף כָּל עִם נָפִי אָהָבָם.

וְהָיָה כְּכֹלֹת הַלְּמָנִים לִקְבֹּר אֶת מִתֵּיהֶם וְאֶת  
מִתֵּי הַנְּפִיִּים, הֵם הִרְחִקוּ שׁוּב אֶל אֶרֶץ  
רַב־שָׁפַע. וְטִיאֲנָקוּס צָוָם, עַל פִּי פְקֻדַּת  
מֹרֹנִי, כִּי יַחֲלוּ בַּעֲבוֹדוֹת חֲפִירֵת תְּעֹלָה סָבִיב  
הָאֶרֶץ, אוֹ הָעִיר רַב־שָׁפַע.

וְהוּא צָוָם לְבָנוֹת חוֹמַת קוֹרוֹת עַל הַשָּׁפָה  
הַפְּנִימִית אֲשֶׁר לְתַעֲלָה; וְהֵם עָרְמוּ עִפְרוֹ מִן  
הַתְּעֹלָה עַל חוֹמַת הַקּוֹרוֹת. כֹּה הֵם הִעֲבִידוּ  
אֶת הַלְּמָנִים עַד אֲשֶׁר הִקִּיפוּ אֶת הָעִיר רַב־שָׁפַע  
בְּחוֹמַת עֵץ וְעָפָר חֲזָקָה אֲשֶׁר נִשְׁאַה לְגִבָּה רַב.

מִן הָעֵת הַהִיא הִפְכָּה הָעִיר הַזֹּאת מִבְּצָר חֲזָק  
מְאֹד. וְהַנְּפִיִּים הִשְׁגִּיחוּ בְּתוֹךְ הָעִיר הַזֹּאת עַל  
הַשְּׁבוּיִים הַלְּמָנִים; וְזֹאת בַּעֲדֵם מִקְּפִים בְּחוֹמָה  
אֲשֶׁר צִוּוּ לְבָנוֹתָהּ בְּמֹו יְדֵיהֶם. וּמֹרֹנִי נֶאֱלָץ  
לְהַעֲבִיד אֶת הַלְּמָנִים, כִּי קָל הָיָה לְהִשְׁגִּיחַ  
עֲלֵיהֶם בְּעֵת עֲבוֹדָתָם; וְהוּא רָצָה כִּי כָּל חִילוֹתָיו  
יַעֲמְדוּ לְרִשּׁוֹתוֹ כְּאֲשֶׁר יִתְקַף אֶת הַלְּמָנִים.

כֹּה זָכָה מֹרֹנִי בְּנִצְחוֹן עַל אֶחָד מִחִילוֹת  
הַלְּמָנִים הַגְּדוֹלִים בְּיוֹתֵר וְהַשְׁתַּלֵּט עַל הָעִיר  
מוּלֶק, אֲשֶׁר הָיְתָה אֶחָד מִמְּאַחֲזֵי הַלְּמָנִים  
הַחֲזָקִים בְּיוֹתֵר אֲשֶׁר בְּאַרְצוֹת הַנְּפִיִּים; וְכֹה  
הוּא בָּנָה מִבְּצָר לְהַחֲזִיק בּוֹ אֶת שְׁבוּיָיו.

וְלֹא יָסַף מֹרֹנִי לְצִאֵת לְמִלְחָמָה בְּלְמָנִים  
בְּשָׁנָה הַהִיא; הוּא הִעֲסִיק אֶת אֲנָשָׁיו בְּהַכְנוֹת  
לְמִלְחָמָה, וּבִבְנוֹת בְּצוּרִים לְהִגָּנָה מִפְּנֵי  
הַלְּמָנִים, וְאִף בְּהַצֵּלֶת נְשׁוֹתֵיהֶם וְיֻלְדֵיהֶם  
מִרָעָב וּמִסָּכָל וּבְהַסָּפָקֶת מִזֶּן לְצָבָאוֹ.

וְהָיָה בְּעֵת הַתְּרַחֲקוֹת מֹרֹנִי מִחֻבַּל הָאֶרֶץ אֲשֶׁר  
לְיַד הַיָּם הַמַּעֲרָבִי, בְּדָרוֹם, נִצְלוּ חִילוֹת הַלְּמָנִים  
שֶׁעָתָה כָּשָׁר, מִפְּנֵי סָכְסוּף אֲשֶׁר תִּגְלַע בְּקֶרֶב  
הַנְּפִיִּים, אֲשֶׁר הִסֵּב לְמַחֲלָקֶת בֵּינֵיהֶם, עַד כִּי  
תִפְּשׂוּ עָרִים מִסָּפֶר בְּחֻבַּל הָאֶרֶץ הַהוּא.

and also the dead of the Nephites who were slain; and Moroni placed men over them to guard them while they should perform their labors.

2 And Moroni went to the city of Mulek with Lehi, and took command of the city and gave it unto Lehi. Now behold, this Lehi was a man who had been with Moroni in the more part of all his battles; and he was a man like unto Moroni, and they rejoiced in each other's safety; yea, they were beloved by each other, and also beloved by all the people of Nephi.

3 And it came to pass that after the Lamanites had finished burying their dead and also the dead of the Nephites, they were marched back into the land Bountiful; and Teancum, by the orders of Moroni, caused that they should commence laboring in digging a ditch round about the land, or the city, Bountiful.

4 And he caused that they should build a breastwork of timbers upon the inner bank of the ditch; and they cast up dirt out of the ditch against the breastwork of timbers; and thus they did cause the Lamanites to labor until they had encircled the city of Bountiful round about with a strong wall of timbers and earth, to an exceeding height.

5 And this city became an exceeding stronghold ever after; and in this city they did guard the prisoners of the Lamanites; yea, even within a wall which they had caused them to build with their own hands. Now Moroni was compelled to cause the Lamanites to labor, because it was easy to guard them while at their labor; and he desired all his forces when he should make an attack upon the Lamanites.

6 And it came to pass that Moroni had thus gained a victory over one of the greatest of the armies of the Lamanites, and had obtained possession of the city of Mulek, which was one of the strongest holds of the Lamanites in the lands of the Nephites; and thus he had also built a stronghold to retain his prisoners.

7 And it came to pass that he did no more attempt a battle with the Lamanites in that year, but he did employ his men in preparing for war, yea, and in making fortifications to guard against the Lamanites, yea, and also delivering their women and their children from famine and affliction, and providing food for their armies.

8 And now it came to pass that the armies of the Lamanites, on the west sea, south, while in the absence of Moroni on account of some intrigue amongst the Nephites, which caused dissensions amongst them, had gained some ground over the Nephites, yea, insomuch that they had obtained possession of a number of their cities in that part of the land.

- 9 And thus because of iniquity amongst themselves, yea, because of dissensions and intrigue among themselves they were placed in the most dangerous circumstances.
- 10 And now behold, I have somewhat to say concerning the people of Ammon, who in the beginning, were Lamanites; but by Ammon and his brethren, or rather by the power and word of God, they had been converted unto the Lord; and they had been brought down into the land of Zarahemla, and had ever since been protected by the Nephites.
- 11 And because of their oath they had been kept from taking up arms against their brethren; for they had taken an oath that they never would shed blood more; and according to their oath they would have perished; yea, they would have suffered themselves to have fallen into the hands of their brethren, had it not been for the pity and the exceeding love which Ammon and his brethren had had for them.
- 12 And for this cause they were brought down into the land of Zarahemla; and they ever had been protected by the Nephites.
- 13 But it came to pass that when they saw the danger, and the many afflictions and tribulations which the Nephites bore for them, they were moved with compassion and were desirous to take up arms in the defence of their country.
- 14 But behold, as they were about to take their weapons of war, they were overpowered by the persuasions of Helaman and his brethren, for they were about to break the oath which they had made.
- 15 And Helaman feared lest by so doing they should lose their souls; therefore all those who had entered into this covenant were compelled to behold their brethren wade through their afflictions, in their dangerous circumstances at this time.
- 16 But behold, it came to pass they had many sons, who had not entered into a covenant that they would not take their weapons of war to defend themselves against their enemies; therefore they did assemble themselves together at this time, as many as were able to take up arms, and they called themselves Nephites.
- 17 And they entered into a covenant to fight for the liberty of the Nephites, yea, to protect the land unto the laying down of their lives; yea, even they covenanted that they never would give up their liberty, but they would fight in all cases to protect the Nephites and themselves from bondage.
- כה, מפני עוון בתוכם, אכן, מפני מריבה וסכסוכים בינם לבין עצמם, הפכו נסבותיהם להיות חמורות בסכנותיהן.
- ועתה, יש לי לומר דבר-מה על אנשי עמון, אשר היו בתחלה למנים; ואשר על ידי עמון ועמיתיו, כלומר בכח אלהים ודברו, הפכו מאמיני יהוה. אלה הובאו אל ארץ זרעהמלה ומאז היו הנפיים מגנייהם.
- וען אשר נשבעו את שבועתם, הם נשמרו מאחז בנשק על אחיהם; כי נשבעו כי לעולם לא יוסיפו לשפוך דם. ועל פי שבועתם היו אומנם קלים, כי נכונים היו לפל לידי אחיהם, אלמלא רחמי עמון ועמיתיו ושפע אהבתם להם.
- על זאת הובאו אל ארץ זרעהמלה; והנפיים היו מגנייהם מיום בואם.
- והיה כאשר ראו אלה את הסכנה ואת הפגעים והתלאה הרבה אשר נשאו הנפיים למענם, נכמרו רחמיהם והם בקשו לאחז בנשק להגנת ארצם.
- והנה, כאשר אמרו לקחת את כלי נשקם, שכנעו דברי הילמן ואחיו, כי כבד עמדו להפר את השבועה אשר נשבעו.
- כי הילמן ירא פן יאבדו את נפשותיהם בעשותם פן. לכן נאלצו כל הבאים בברית הזאת לחזות בסבל אחיהם בעתות הסכנה והמצוקה האלה.
- ואולם היו להם בנים רבים, אשר לא באו בברית האלה להמנע מנשק להגן על עצמם מפני אויביהם. לכן, כל אשר יכלו לשאת נשק מאלה נקבצו בעת ההיא, והם קראו עצמם נפיים.
- והם כרתו ברית להלחם למען חרות הנפיים; אכן, להגן על הארץ אף בחרוף נפשם. והם נשבעו שלא לוותר לעולם על חרותם, וכי הם ילחמו בכל עת להגן על הנפיים ועל עצמם משעבוד.



- 18 Now behold, there were two thousand of those young men, who entered into this covenant and took their weapons of war to defend their country.
- 19 And now behold, as they never had hitherto been a disadvantage to the Nephites, they became now at this period of time also a great support; for they took their weapons of war, and they would that Helaman should be their leader.
- 20 And they were all young men, and they were exceedingly valiant for courage, and also for strength and activity; but behold, this was not all—they were men who were true at all times in whatsoever thing they were entrusted.
- 21 Yea, they were men of truth and soberness, for they had been taught to keep the commandments of God and to walk uprightly before him.
- 22 And now it came to pass that Helaman did march at the head of his two thousand stripling soldiers, to the support of the people in the borders of the land on the south by the west sea.
- 23 And thus ended the twenty and eighth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.
- וּמִסְפַּר הַצְעִירִים הָהֵם, אֲשֶׁר עָבְרוּ  
בְּבְרִית וּלְקַחוּ אֶת נִשְׁקָם לְהִגָּן עַל אֶרֶצָם,  
אֶל־פָּנִים אִישׁ.
- וְהֵנָּה, כָּכָל אֲשֶׁר לֹא הָיוּ עַד הַיּוֹם הַהוּא  
לְמַעֲמָסָה וּלְתַקְלָה לְנַפְיִים, הֵם נַעֲשׂוּ עֲתָה,  
בְּעֵת הַזֹּאת, לְסִמּוֹךְ וּלְמִשְׁעִנָּה. וְהֵם לְקַחוּ אֶת  
כָּלִי נִשְׁקָם וּבִקְשׁוּ כִּי הִילָמֹן יִהְיֶה מְנַהִיגָם.
- כָּלֶם הָיוּ צְעִירִים וְהֶצְטִינוּ בְּעַזְ רוּחָם, וְכֵן  
בְּעֶצֶם יָדָם וּבִפְעֻלָּה. וַיִּתְּרָה מִזֹּאת, כָּכָל אֲשֶׁר  
הִפְקְדוּ הָיוּ נְאֻמָּנִים תָּמִיד.
- אָכֵן, הֵם הָיוּ אֲנָשֵׁי אֱמֶת וּמִפְּכָחִים,  
כִּי הֵם לָמְדוּ לְשִׁמּוֹר אֶת מִצְוֹת אֱלֹהִים  
וּלְלַכֵּת לִפְנֵי בְּמִישְׁרִים.
- וְהִילָמֹן צָעַד בְּרֹאשׁ אֶלְפִים חִילָיו הַצְעִירִים  
אֶל גְּבוּל הָאֶרֶץ אֲשֶׁר בְּדָרוֹם, לִיד חוּף הַיָּם  
הַמַּעֲרָבִי, לְמַעַן חֲזֹק אֶת הָעָם הַשׁוֹכֵן שָׁם.
- וְכֵן תָּמָה שְׁנַת עֶשְׂרִים וּשְׁמוֹנֶה לְשִׁפְט  
הַשׁוֹפְטִים בְּעַם נִפְי.

## נד

## 54

- 1 And now it came to pass in the commencement of the twenty and ninth year of the judges, that Ammoron sent unto Moroni desiring that he would exchange prisoners.
- 2 And it came to pass that Moroni felt to rejoice exceedingly at this request, for he desired the provisions which were imparted for the support of the Lamanite prisoners for the support of his own people; and he also desired his own people for the strengthening of his army.
- 3 Now the Lamanites had taken many women and children, and there was not a woman nor a child among all the prisoners of Moroni, or the prisoners whom Moroni had taken; therefore Moroni resolved upon a stratagem to obtain as many prisoners of the Nephites from the Lamanites as it were possible.
- 4 Therefore he wrote an epistle, and sent it by the servant of Ammoron, the same who had brought an epistle to Moroni. Now these are the words which he wrote unto Ammoron, saying:
- וְהָיָה בְּשֵׁנַת עֶשְׂרִים וְתִשְׁעַ לְשִׁלְטוֹן  
הַשׁוֹפְטִים, שָׁלַח עַמּוֹרוֹן אֶל מֹרוֹנִי בִקְשָׁה  
לְהַחֲלִיף שְׁבוּיִים.
- וּמֹרוֹנִי שָׂמַח מְאֹד עַל הַבִּקְשָׁה הַזֹּאת,  
כִּי רָצָה לְסַפֵּק אֶת הַמְּזוֹן אֲשֶׁר קִבְּלוּ הַשְּׁבוּיִים  
הַלְּמָנִים לִבְנֵי עַמּוֹ, וְכֵן רָצָה לְהָשִׁיב אֶת  
אֲנָשָׁיו לְמַעַן חֲזֹק אֶת צָבָאוֹ.
- וַיַּעַן כִּי שָׁבוּ הַלְּמָנִים נָשִׁים וְיָלִידִים רַבִּים,  
בְּעוֹד אֲשֶׁר בֵּין כָּל שְׁבוּיֵי מֹרוֹנִי, בֵּין הַשְּׁבוּיִים  
אֲשֶׁר הוּא שָׂבָה, לֹא הָיְתָה אִף אִשָּׁה אַחַת,  
וְלֹא הָיָה אִף יָלֵד אֶחָד, עַרְךָ מֹרוֹנִי תִכְנִית  
לְהַשִּׁיג אֶת מֵרֵב הַשְּׁבוּיִים הַנִּפְיִים אֲשֶׁר  
יֻכַּל לְקַבֵּל מֵאֵת הַלְּמָנִים.
- לְכֵן הוּא כָּתַב אֶגְרָת וּשְׁלָחָהּ בְּיַד מְשִׁרְתָּ  
עַמּוֹרוֹן, הוּא אֲשֶׁר הֵבִיא אֶגְרָת לְמֹרוֹנִי. וְאֵלֶּה  
הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר כָּתַב מֹרוֹנִי אֵלָיו, לֵאמֹר:

## עֲלָמָא נד:ה-יב

הִנְנִי כּוֹתֵב לָךְ, עֲמֹרֹרֹן, עַל אֲדוּת הַמִּלְחָמָה  
אֲשֶׁר עָרַכְתָּ עַל עַמִּי, וּבִיָּתֶר דִּיּוּקִי, אֲשֶׁר עָרַךְ  
אֶחָיִךְ עָלֵינוּ, וְאֲשֶׁר גָּמַרְתָּ אֲמֹר לְהַמְשִׁיכָהּ  
אַחֵר מוֹתוֹ.

5 Behold, Ammoron, I have written unto you somewhat concerning this war which ye have waged against my people, or rather which thy brother hath waged against them, and which ye are still determined to carry on after his death.

הִנֵּה, רְצוֹנִי לֹמֵר לָךְ דְּבָרִים אֶחָדִים עַל  
אֲדוּת צֶדֶק אֱלֹהִים וְעַל חֶרֶב זַעְמוֹ הָעֵלְיוֹן,  
הַתְּלִיָּה עַל צוּאָרָה, בְּלִתִּי אִם תָּשׁוּב מִרְעֻתָךְ  
וְתָשִׁיב אֶת חִילוֹתֶיכֶם אֶל אֶרְצְכֶם, אֶל אֶרֶץ  
נַחֲלַתְכֶם, הִיא אֶרֶץ נָפִי.

6 Behold, I would tell you somewhat concerning the justice of God, and the sword of his almighty wrath, which doth hang over you except ye repent and withdraw your armies into your own lands, or the land of your possessions, which is the land of Nephi.

אָכֵן, רְצוֹנִי לֹמֵר לָךְ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה,  
אִם יָכוֹל אַתָּה לְשַׁמֵּעַ אֲלֵיהֶם; אָכֵן, לֹמֵר לָךְ  
עַל אֲדוּת שְׂאוֹל הָאִימָה הַמְּצַפָּה לְקַבֵּל  
רוֹצְחִים כְּמוֹתְךָ וּכְאֶחָיִךְ, בְּלִתִּי אִם תָּשׁוּבוּ  
מִרְעֻתְכֶם וְתַחְדְּלוּ מִמְּזֻמוֹת רָצַח וְתָשׁוּבוּ עִם  
חִילוֹתֵיכֶם לְאֶרְצְכֶם.

7 Yea, I would tell you these things if ye were capable of hearkening unto them; yea, I would tell you concerning that awful hell that awaits to receive such murderers as thou and thy brother have been, except ye repent and withdraw your murderous purposes, and return with your armies to your own lands.

וְאִלֵּם, כְּפִי שֶׁדְּחִיתִם לְפָנַי אֶת הַדְּבָרִים  
הָאֵלֶּה מִפְּנֵיכֶם וַיִּצְאֲתֶם לְהִלָּחֵם בָּעִם יְהוָה,  
כֵּן מְצַפָּה אֲנִי כִּי תוֹסִיפוּ לְדַחוֹתָם.

8 But as ye have once rejected these things, and have fought against the people of the Lord, even so I may expect you will do it again.

לְכֵן הִנְנוּ נִכּוֹנִים לְהִתְרַאֲוֹת עִמָּכֶם פָּנִים; אָכֵן,  
אִם לֹא תַחְדְּלוּ מִמְּזֻמוֹתֵיכֶם, הִנֵּכֶם מוֹרִידִים  
עָלֵיכֶם אֶת חֲמַת הָאֵל אֲשֶׁר מְאַסְתֶּם אוֹתוֹ,  
לְכִלוֹתְכֶם תְּכָלִית כְּלִיּוֹן.

9 And now behold, we are prepared to receive you; yea, and except you withdraw your purposes, behold, ye will pull down the wrath of that God whom you have rejected upon you, even to your utter destruction.

חֵי יְהוָה כִּי יָקוּמוּ חִילוֹתֵינוּ עָלֵיכֶם, בְּלִתִּי אִם  
תִּסּוּגוּ לְאַחֹר, וְעַד מִהֲרָה יִשְׁיַגְּכֶם הַמָּוֶת; כִּי  
הַחֹזֶק נִחְזִיק בְּעָרֵינוּ וּבְאֲדָמוֹתֵינוּ. אָכֵן, בְּדַתֵּנוּ  
נִדְּבֶךְ וּבְעֵנֵנוּ אֱלֹהֵינוּ נִחְזִיק.

10 But, as the Lord liveth, our armies shall come upon you except ye withdraw, and ye shall soon be visited with death, for we will retain our cities and our lands; yea, and we will maintain our religion and the cause of our God.

אֲךְ נִרְאָה לִי כִּי לִשְׂוֹא אֲנִי מְדַבֵּר עִמָּךְ עַל  
הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה; נִרְאָה לִי כִּי כֵּן שְׂאוֹל אַתָּה;  
עַל כֵּן אֶחָתָם אֶת אֲנִי אֶתִּי בְּאֶמְרִי לָךְ כִּי לֹא  
אֶחְלִיף שְׁבוּיִים עִמָּךְ, כִּי אִם בְּתַנָּאִי כִּי  
תִשְׁחַרְרוּ אִישׁ וְאִשְׁתּוֹ וְיִלְדָיו תִּמְוֹרֶת שְׁבוּי  
אֶחָד. אִם כֹּה תַעֲשׂוּ, אֶסְפִּים לְחִלּוּפִים.

11 But behold, it supposeth me that I talk to you concerning these things in vain; or it supposeth me that thou art a child of hell; therefore I will close my epistle by telling you that I will not exchange prisoners, save it be on conditions that ye will deliver up a man and his wife and his children, for one prisoner; if this be the case that ye will do it, I will exchange.

וְהִיא אִם לֹא תַעֲשׂוּ כֵּן, בְּחִילוֹתֵי אֲבוֹא  
עָלֵיכֶם. אֶת נְשֵׁינוּ וְאֶת טַפֵּנוּ אֶחְמַשׁ וְעָלֵיכֶם  
עֲלֵה אֶעֱלֶה; וְאֲנִי אֶרְדֶּה אַחֲרֵיכֶם, אִף עַד  
אֶרְצְכֶם אֲשֶׁר הִיא אֶרֶץ נַחֲלַתֵנוּ הָרִאשׁוֹנָה. וְאֲנִי  
יִשְׁפּוֹף דָּם תַּחַת דָּם, אָכֵן, נֶפֶשׁ תַּחַת נֶפֶשׁ. וְאֲנִי  
אֶלְחֶם בָּכֶם עַד הַכְּחָדְכֶם מֵעַל פְּנֵי הָאֲדָמָה.

12 And behold, if you do not this, I will come against you with my armies; yea, even I will arm my women and my children, and I will come against you, and I will follow you even into your own land, which is the land of our first inheritance; yea, and it shall be blood for blood, yea, life for life; and I will give you battle even until you are destroyed from off the face of the earth.

- 13 Behold, I am in my anger, and also my people; ye have sought to murder us, and we have only sought to defend ourselves. But behold, if ye seek to destroy us more we will seek to destroy you; yea, and we will seek our land, the land of our first inheritance.
- הִנֵּה, זֹעֵם אֲנִי, וְכֹן עַמִּי. אַתֶּם בִּקְשָׁתֶם לְהַרְגֵנוּ, וְאֲנַחְנוּ בִקְשָׁנוּ רַק אֶת הַגָּנוּתָנוּ. וְרָאוּ, אִם תּוֹסִיפוּ לְבַקֵּשׁ לְהַשְׁמִידֵנוּ, נִבְקֵשׁ אֲנַחְנוּ לְהַשְׁמִידְכֶם; וְאִף אֶת אֶרְצֵנוּ נִבְקֵשׁ, אֶרֶץ נַחֲלָתֵנוּ הָרִאשׁוֹנָה.
- 14 Now I close my epistle. I am Moroni; I am a leader of the people of the Nephites.
- הֲנִי חֹתֵם אֶת אֲגֻרְתִּי, אֲנִי מוֹרוֹנִי, מְנַהֵג לָעָם הַנְּפִיטִים.
- 15 Now it came to pass that Ammoron, when he had received this epistle, was angry; and he wrote another epistle unto Moroni, and these are the words which he wrote, saying:
- וְהָיָה כַּאֲשֶׁר קָבַל עֲמֹרוֹן אֶת הָאֲגֻרָה הַזֹּאת הוּא הִתְקַצֵּף וְכָתַב אֶל מוֹרוֹנִי אֲגֻרָת שְׁנִית. וְאֵלֶּה הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר כָּתַב, לֵאמֹר:
- 16 I am Ammoron, the king of the Lamanites; I am the brother of Amalickiah whom ye have murdered. Behold, I will avenge his blood upon you, yea, and I will come upon you with my armies for I fear not your threatenings.
- אֲנִי עֲמֹרוֹן, מֶלֶךְ הַלְּמָנִיטִים. אֲנִי אֲחִי עַמְלִיקִיָּה אֲשֶׁר רָצַחְתֶּם; נָקוּם אַקֶּם אֶת דָּמוֹ מִכֶּם. הֲנִי בָּא עֲלֵיכֶם בְּחִילוֹתִי, כִּי אֵינֶנִּי יֵרָא מֵאִיוּמִיָּה.
- 17 For behold, your fathers did wrong their brethren, insomuch that they did rob them of their right to the government when it rightly belonged unto them.
- כִּי הִנֵּה אֲבוֹתֵיכֶם הִרְעוּ לְאֲחֵיהֶם, וְגָזְלוּ אֶת זְכוּתָם לְשִׁלְטוֹן אֲשֶׁר הָיְתָה עַל פִּי הַצֶּדֶק.
- 18 And now behold, if ye will lay down your arms, and subject yourselves to be governed by those to whom the government doth rightly belong, then will I cause that my people shall lay down their weapons and shall be at war no more.
- וְעַתָּה, אִם תִּנְיְחוּ אֶת כָּלִי נִשְׁקָכֶם, וְתִכְנְעוּ לְשִׁלְטוֹן אֱלֹהֵי אֲשֶׁר לָהֶם הַשִּׁלְטוֹן עַל פִּי הַזְכוּת, אֲזִי אֲצַוָּה עַל בְּנֵי עַמִּי לְהִנִּיחַ אֶת כָּלִי נִשְׁקָם וּלְחַדֵּל מִמִּלְחָמָה.
- 19 Behold, ye have breathed out many threatenings against me and my people; but behold, we fear not your threatenings.
- הִנֵּה, הִרְבִּיתִּי לְהַפְחִיחַ אִיוּמִים עָלַי וְעַל עַמִּי, אִף אֵינֶנּוּ יֵרָאִים מֵאִיוּמִיָּה.
- 20 Nevertheless, I will grant to exchange prisoners according to your request, gladly, that I may preserve my food for my men of war; and we will wage a war which shall be eternal, either to the subjecting the Nephites to our authority or to their eternal extinction.
- וְאוּלָּם, מִסְכִּים אֲנִי בְּרָצוֹן לְחִלּוּפֵי שְׁבוּיִים, כְּבִקְשָׁתְךָ, לְמַעַן הוֹתִיר אֶת הַמְּזוֹן אֲשֶׁר לִי בְּעִבּוֹר חִילִי. וְאֲנַחְנוּ נִלָּחֵם מִלְחָמַת עוֹלָם, אִם לְהַכְנִיעַ אֶת הַנְּפִיטִים לְשִׁלְטוֹנֵנוּ וְאִם לְהַכְחִידָם לְעוֹלָם.
- 21 And as concerning that God whom ye say we have rejected, behold, we know not such a being; neither do ye; but if it so be that there is such a thing, we know not but that he hath made us as well as you.
- וּבְאֲשֶׁר לְאוֹתוֹ אֱלֹהִים, אֲשֶׁר עָלְיוֹ אָמַרְתָּ כִּי מְאַסְנוּהוּ, אֵינֶנּוּ מַכִּירִים דְּבַר כֵּזֶה, וְאִף אַתֶּם אֵינְכֶם יוֹדְעִים אוֹתוֹ. וְאִם אֲמַנְתֶּם קִים דְּבַר כֵּזֶה, יוֹדְעִים אֲנַחְנוּ אִף כִּי עָשָׂה הוּא אוֹתָנוּ כְּעֹשֵׂה אוֹתְכֶם.
- 22 And if it so be that there is a devil and a hell, behold will he not send you there to dwell with my brother whom ye have murdered, whom ye have hinted that he hath gone to such a place? But behold these things matter not.
- וְאִם אָכֹן קִימִים שָׁטָן וְשָׂאוֹל, הֲאִם הוּא לֹא יִשְׁלַח אוֹתְךָ שָׁמָּה, לְדוֹר עִם אֲחִי אֲשֶׁר רָצַחְתָּ, אֲשֶׁר רָמַזְתָּ כִּי הָלַךְ לְמָקוֹם כֵּזֶה? אִף אֵין לְדְבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה חֲשִׁיבוֹת.

- 23 I am Ammoron, and a descendant of Zoram, whom your fathers pressed and brought out of Jerusalem.
- אָנִי עֲמֹרוֹן, נֶצֶר לְזֹרָם, אֲשֶׁר כְּפוּהוּ אֲבוֹתֵיכֶם לְצֵאת מִירוּשָׁלַם.
- 24 And behold now, I am a bold Lamanite; behold, this war hath been waged to avenge their wrongs, and to maintain and to obtain their rights to the government; and I close my epistle to Moroni.
- לְמִנִּי אֲמִיץ לֵב אָנִי. הַמִּלְחָמָה הַזֹּאת נִעְרְכָה לְגִמּוֹל עַל הָרָעָה אֲשֶׁר עָשִׂיתֶם לָהֶם, וּבַעֲבוּר לְקַבֵּל וּלְקַיֵּם אֶת זְכוּתָם לְשִׁלָּט. וּבְזֶה אָנִי חוֹתֵם אֶת אֲגִרָתִי לְמוֹרוֹנִי.

## נה

## 55

- 1 Now it came to pass that when Moroni had received this epistle he was more angry, because he knew that Ammoron had a perfect knowledge of his fraud; yea, he knew that Ammoron knew that it was not a just cause that had caused him to wage a war against the people of Nephi.
- וְהָיָה כְּאֲשֶׁר קִבֵּל מוֹרוֹנִי אֶת הָאֲגִרָה הַזֹּאת גָּבַר רָגְזוֹ, יַעַן אֲשֶׁר יָדַע כִּי עֲמֹרוֹן הַכִּיר הַיֵּטֵב כִּי דִבְרֵי תַרְמִית דִּבֶּר וְהוּא יָדַע כִּי עֲמֹרוֹן יָדַע כִּי לֹא צוּדְמָה הָיְתָה הַמִּלְחָמָה אֲשֶׁר עָרַף עַל עַם נְפִי.
- 2 And he said: Behold, I will not exchange prisoners with Ammoron save he will withdraw his purpose, as I have stated in my epistle; for I will not grant unto him that he shall have any more power than what he hath got.
- וְהוּא אָמַר: לֹא אֶקִּים חֲלוּפֵי שְׁבוּיִים עִם עֲמֹרוֹן. בְּלִתי אִם יַחְדָּל מִמְּזֻמָּתוֹ, כְּדִבְרֵי אֲגִרָתִי; כִּי לֹא אֶתֵּן לוֹ לְהִרְבוֹת עֲצָמָה עַל עֲצָמָתוֹ.
- 3 Behold, I know the place where the Lamanites do guard my people whom they have taken prisoners; and as Ammoron would not grant unto me mine epistle, behold, I will give unto him according to my words; yea, I will seek death among them until they shall sue for peace.
- הִנְנִי יוֹדֵעַ אֶת הַמָּקוֹם אֲשֶׁר בּוֹ שׁוֹמְרִים הַלְּמָנִים אֶת בְּנֵי עַמִּי הַשְּׁבוּיִים; וַיַּעַן אֲשֶׁר לֹא יָקִים עֲמֹרוֹן אֶת דִּבְרֵי אֲגִרָתִי, אֶתֵּן לוֹ אָנִי כְּאֲשֶׁר דִּבַּרְתִּי; אֲכַוּ, בְּקֹשׁ אֲבַקֵּשׁ לְזָרַע בִּהֶם מוֹת עַד אֲשֶׁר יִתְחַנְּנוּ לַעֲשׂוֹת שָׁלוֹם.
- 4 And now it came to pass that when Moroni had said these words, he caused that a search should be made among his men, that perhaps he might find a man who was a descendant of Laman among them.
- וְכַאֲמֹר מוֹרוֹנִי אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, הוּא צִוָּה לְחַקֵּר בֵּין אֲנָשָׁיו, הֲיֵשׁ בִּהֶם מִזֶּרַע לָמָן.
- 5 And it came to pass that they found one, whose name was Laman; and he was one of the servants of the king who was murdered by Amalickiah.
- וְהֵם מָצְאוּ אִישׁ אֶחָד, אֲשֶׁר שְׁמוֹ נִקְרָא לָמָן; וְהוּא אֶחָד מִשְׁרָתֵי הַמֶּלֶךְ אֲשֶׁר עֲמָלִיקְיָה רָצְחוֹ.
- 6 Now Moroni caused that Laman and a small number of his men should go forth unto the guards who were over the Nephites.
- וּמוֹרוֹנִי צִוָּה עַל לָמָן וְעַל מִסְפָּר מֵאֲנָשָׁיו לְצֵאת אֶל מְקוֹם הַמִּשְׁמָר אֲשֶׁר בּוֹ הַחֲזָקוֹ הַנֶּפְתִּיִם.
- 7 Now the Nephites were guarded in the city of Gid; therefore Moroni appointed Laman and caused that a small number of men should go with him.
- וְהַנֶּפְתִּיִם הֻחָזְקוּ בְּעִיר גִּיד; לְכֵן מָנָה מוֹרוֹנִי אֶת לָמָן וְצִוָּה כִּי אֲנָשִׁים אֲחָדִים יֵלְכוּ עִמּוֹ.
- 8 And when it was evening Laman went to the guards who were over the Nephites, and behold, they saw him coming and they hailed him; but he saith unto them: Fear not; behold, I am a Lamanite. Behold, we have
- וְכַאֲשֶׁר בָּא הָעֶרֶב, הָלַךְ לָמָן אֶל הַמִּשְׁמָר הַמְּפֻקֵּד עַל הַנֶּפְתִּיִם. וּבִרְאוּתָם אוֹתוֹ קָרְבּ וּבָא קִרְאוּ אֵלָיו בְּקוֹל; וְהוּא אָמַר לָהֶם: אַל תִּירְאוּ, וְהִנֵּנִי לְמָנִי.

- הַנְּנִי לְמָנִי. נִמְלִטְנוּ מִיַּד הַנְּפִיִּים בְּעוֹדָם  
יִשְׁנִים, וְהִנֵּה לָקַחְנוּ מִיָּיִנָם וְהִבֵּאנוּ עִמָּנוּ.
- 9 Now when the Lamanites heard these words they received him with joy; and they said unto him: Give us of your wine, that we may drink; we are glad that ye have thus taken wine with you for we are weary.
- 10 But Laman said unto them: Let us keep of our wine till we go against the Nephites to battle. But this saying only made them more desirous to drink of the wine;
- 11 For, said they: We are weary, therefore let us take of the wine, and by and by we shall receive wine for our rations, which will strengthen us to go against the Nephites.
- 12 And Laman said unto them: You may do according to your desires.
- 13 And it came to pass that they did take of the wine freely; and it was pleasant to their taste, therefore they took of it more freely; and it was strong, having been prepared in its strength.
- 14 And it came to pass they did drink and were merry, and by and by they were all drunken.
- 15 And now when Laman and his men saw that they were all drunken, and were in a deep sleep, they returned to Moroni and told him all the things that had happened.
- 16 And now this was according to the design of Moroni. And Moroni had prepared his men with weapons of war; and he went to the city Gid, while the Lamanites were in a deep sleep and drunken, and cast in weapons of war unto the prisoners, insomuch that they were all armed;
- 17 Yea, even to their women, and all those of their children, as many as were able to use a weapon of war, when Moroni had armed all those prisoners; and all those things were done in a profound silence.
- 18 But had they awakened the Lamanites, behold they were drunken and the Nephites could have slain them.
- 19 But behold, this was not the desire of Moroni; he did not delight in murder or bloodshed, but he delighted in the saving of his people from destruction; and for this cause he might not bring upon him injustice, he would not fall upon the Lamanites and destroy them in their drunkenness.
- וְאָמַר אֲלֵיהֶם לָמֵן: הִבֵּה נִשְׁמֹר אֶת יַיִנְנוּ עַד  
אֲשֶׁר נֵצֵא לְקִרְאָת הַנְּפִיִּים לְקָרֵב. וְאוֹלָם דְּבָרָיו  
אֵלֶּה הִגְבִּירוּ אֶת תְּשׁוּקָתָם לְשָׂתוֹת מִן הַיַּיִן.
- וְהֵם אָמְרוּ: יָגַעִים אֲנַחְנוּ, עַל כֵּן הִבֵּה נִשְׁתֶּה  
מִן הַיַּיִן, וְעוֹד זְמַן מָה נִקְבֵּל אֶת מִנְת יַיִנְנוּ,  
אֲשֶׁר תַּחֲזִיקֵנוּ לְצֹאֵת עַל הַנְּפִיִּים.
- וְאָמַר אֲלֵיהֶם לָמֵן: עֲשׂוּ כְּטוֹב בְּעֵינֵיכֶם.
- וְהֵם לָקַחוּ מִן הַיַּיִן כְּאֹנֶת נִפְשָׁם, וְהוּא עָרֵב  
לִחְכָּם. וְהֵם הוֹסִיפוּ לְשָׂתוֹת מִמֶּנּוּ בִּיתֵר  
חֲרוֹת; וְהָיָה עַז, כִּי לָקַד הוֹכֵן.
- וְהֵם שָׁתוּ וְעָלְזוּ, וְלֹא אָרְכָה הַשָּׁעָה עַד אֲשֶׁר  
שָׁכְרוּ כָּלָם.
- וּבִרְאוֹת לָמֵן וְאֶנְשָׁיו כִּי כָּלָם שׂוֹכְרִים,  
שָׁקוּעִים בְּתִרְדָּמָה עֲמֻקָּה, הֵם שָׁבוּ אֶל מוֹרוֹנִי  
וְסִפְרוּ לוֹ אֶת כָּל אֲשֶׁר הָיָה.
- זֶה הָיָה עַל פִּי תַכְנִית מוֹרוֹנִי. וְהוּא הִקְדִּים  
וְסִפֵּק נֶשֶׁק לְאֶנְשָׁיו. אַז הָלַךְ מוֹרוֹנִי אֶל הָעִיר  
גִּיד, וּבְעוֹד אֲשֶׁר יִשְׁנוּ הַלָּמָנִים שָׁנָה עֲמֻקָּה,  
הִלְוִי מִיָּוֶן, הוּא הִשְׁלִיךְ אֶת כָּלִי הַנֶּשֶׁק אֶל  
הַשְּׁבוּיִים, עַד אֲשֶׁר הָיוּ הַכָּל חֲמוּשִׁים.
- אִף לְנָשׁוֹת הַשְּׁבוּיִים וּלְכָל בְּנֵיהֶם אֲשֶׁר יָכְלוּ  
לְהַפְעִיל כָּלִי מִלְחָמָה סִפֵּק מוֹרוֹנִי נֶשֶׁק וְהַכָּל  
נַעֲשָׂה בְּשִׁקֵּט וּבְדַמְמָה.
- אֲלוּ הִעִירוּ אֶת הַלָּמָנִים, יָכְלוּ הַנְּפִיִּים לְהָרְגֵם,  
כִּי שׂוֹכְרִים הָיוּ.
- אִךְ לֹא זֶה הָיָה רָצוֹן מוֹרוֹנִי. חֲפָצוֹ לֹא הָיָה  
בְּרַצֵּחַ וּבְשִׁפְכַת דָּמִים, כִּי אִם בְּהַצֵּלַת בְּנֵי  
עַמּוֹ מִהַשְׁמָדָה. וְעַן אֲשֶׁר לֹא אָבָה לְהַעֲטוֹת  
עָלָיו עוֹלָה, לֹא הִתְנַפֵּל עַל הַלָּמָנִים לְהַשְׁמִידָם  
בַּעַת שִׁכְרוֹנָם.



- 20 והנה, חפצו עלה בידו; כי הוא ספק נשק לשבויים הנפיים המקפים בחומת העיר, ונתן בידיהם כח להשתלט על חלקי העיר אשר בתוך החומה.
- 21 אז הוא צוה על האנשים אשר עמו לסגת מעט ולהקיף את צבא הלמנים.
- 22 כל זה נעשה בלילה. והיה כאשר הקיצו הלמנים בבקר, הם ראו כי הקיפום הנפיים מחוץ וכי שבוייהם חמושים מבית.
- 23 כה נוכחו הלמנים כי רב כח הנפיים מכחם, וכי לא תצמח תועלת בנסבות ההן להלחם בנפיים. לכן דרשו שרי צבאם לאסוף אליהם את כלי נשקם; והם הביאום אל הנפיים והשליכום לרגליהם, מתחננים לרחמים.
- 24 הנה, בזאת חפץ מורוני. הוא לקחם כשבויי מלחמה, וכבש את העיר וצוה לשחרר את כל השבויים הנפיים. אלה הצטרפו אל צבאו והיו לו תגבורת גדולה.
- 25 אז צוה מורוני את הלמנים אשר שבה, כי יחלו במלאכת חזוק הבצורים אשר סביב העיר גיד.
- 26 וכאשר השלים את בצור העיר גיד, כחפצו, הוא צוה להעביר את שבוייו אל העיר רב־שפע, אשר אף אותה שמר בכח צבא אדיר ורב.
- 27 ובעת ההיא, על אף כל מזמות הלמנים, עלה ביד הנפיים לשמר על כל שבוייהם אשר לקחו ולהגן עליהם, ואף להחזיק בכל השטח וביתרון אשר השיבו להם.
- 28 והנפיים החלו לזכות שנית בנצחונות ולהשיב להם את זכויותיהם.
- 29 פעמים רבות נסו הלמנים להקיפם בלילה, אך בנסיונות האלה נשבו רבים מהם.
- 30 פעמים רבות נסו הלמנים להגיש לנפיים מיינם, בכונה להשמידם ברעל או בשכרות.
- But he had obtained his desires; for he had armed those prisoners of the Nephites who were within the wall of the city, and had given them power to gain possession of those parts which were within the walls.
- And then he caused the men who were with him to withdraw a pace from them, and surround the armies of the Lamanites.
- Now behold this was done in the night-time, so that when the Lamanites awoke in the morning they beheld that they were surrounded by the Nephites without, and that their prisoners were armed within.
- And thus they saw that the Nephites had power over them; and in these circumstances they found that it was not expedient that they should fight with the Nephites; therefore their chief captains demanded their weapons of war, and they brought them forth and cast them at the feet of the Nephites, pleading for mercy.
- Now behold, this was the desire of Moroni. He took them prisoners of war, and took possession of the city, and caused that all the prisoners should be liberated, who were Nephites; and they did join the army of Moroni, and were a great strength to his army.
- And it came to pass that he did cause the Lamanites, whom he had taken prisoners, that they should commence a labor in strengthening the fortifications round about the city Gid.
- And it came to pass that when he had fortified the city Gid, according to his desires, he caused that his prisoners should be taken to the city Bountiful; and he also guarded that city with an exceedingly strong force.
- And it came to pass that they did, notwithstanding all the intrigues of the Lamanites, keep and protect all the prisoners whom they had taken, and also maintain all the ground and the advantage which they had retaken.
- And it came to pass that the Nephites began again to be victorious, and to reclaim their rights and their privileges.
- Many time did the Lamanites attempt to encircle them about by night, but in these attempts they did lose many prisoners.
- And many times did they attempt to administer of their wine to the Nephites, that they might destroy them with poison or with drunkenness.

- וְהִנֵּה, הַנְּפִיִּים לֹא מָהֲרוּ לְשַׁכַּח אֶת יְהוָה  
אֱלֹהֵיהֶם בְּעַת צָרָתָם זֹאת. אָכֵן, הֵם לֹא נָפְלוּ  
בַּפֶּח וְלֹא טָעְמוּ מִן הַיַּיִן, בְּלֹא אִם הִקְדִּימוּ  
לָתֵת מִמֶּנּוּ לְשָׁבוּיִים הַלְּמָנִים.
- כִּי הֵם נִזְהָרוּ לִבְל יִרְעַל אִישׁ מֵהֶם; כִּי  
בְהִרְעִיל הַיַּיִן אִישׁ לְמָנִי, כִּן יִרְעִיל גַּם אִישׁ  
נָפִי; כֹּה הֵם בָּחֲנוּ אֶת כָּל מִשְׁקָאוֹתֵיהֶם.
- וּבְעַת הַהִיא רָאָה מוֹרוֹנִי כִּי עָלָיו לְהִתְכַּוֵּן  
לְמַלְחָמָה עַל הָעִיר מוֹרִיאַנְטוֹן; כִּי הַלְּמָנִים  
בְּצָרוֹ, בָּרַב עֲמָלָם, אֶת הָעִיר הַזֹּאת עַד אֲשֶׁר  
הָיְתָה מִבְּצָר חֹזֶק וְאֲדִיר כָּח.
- אָכֵן, הֵם הִתְמִידוּ בַּהֲבָאת כֹּחוֹת חֲדָשִׁים  
אֶל הָעִיר הַזֹּאת וְאֶף סִפְקוֹ לָהּ מִשְׁלוֹחֵי מְזוֹן  
חֲדָשִׁים בְּלִי חֲשֹׁף.
- כֹּה תָמָה שְׁנַת עֶשְׂרִים וְתִשְׁעָ לְשִׁטוֹן  
הַשּׁוֹפְטִים בְּעַם נָפִי.
- 31 But behold, the Nephites were not slow to remember the Lord their God in this their time of affliction. They could not be taken in their snares; yea, they would not partake of their wine, save they had first given to some of the Lamanite prisoners.
- 32 And they were thus cautious that no poison should be administered among them; for if their wine would poison a Lamanite it would also poison a Nephite; and thus they did try all their liquors.
- 33 And now it came to pass that it was expedient for Moroni to make preparations to attack the city Morianton; for behold, the Lamanites had, by their labors, fortified the city Morianton until it had become an exceeding stronghold.
- 34 And they were continually bringing new forces into that city, and also new supplies of provisions.
- 35 And thus ended the twenty and ninth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

## נו

## 56

- וּבִרְאִשִׁית שְׁנַת שְׁלֹשִׁים לְשִׁטוֹן הַשּׁוֹפְטִים,  
בַּחֹדֶשׁ הָרִאשׁוֹן, בְּשָׁנִים לְחָדָשׁ, קָבַל מוֹרוֹנִי  
אֶגְרָת מֵאֵת הֵילְמָן, וּבָהּ הוֹדְעָה עַל עֲנִיֵּי הָעָם  
בְּחֶבֶל הָאָרֶץ הַהוּא.
- וְאַלֶּה הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר כָּתַב, לֵאמֹר: אֲחִי הַיָּקָר  
וְהָאֱהוּב, מוֹרוֹנִי, אֲחִי בְּאַמּוֹנֵת יְהוָה כְּבִתְלָאוֹת  
מַלְחָמָתָנוּ; הִנֵּה, אֲחִי יְקָרִי, יֵשׁ לִי דְבַר־מָה  
לְהַגִּידָהּ עַל אֲדוֹת מַלְחָמָתָנוּ בְּאֶזֶר הָאָרֶץ הַזֶּה.
- הַנִּנִּי מְדַבֵּר עַל אֲלָפִים מִבְּנֵי הָאֲנָשִׁים אֲשֶׁר  
הֵבִיא עִמּוֹן מֵאֶרֶץ נָפִי, וַיִּדְעֶתָ כִּי אֵלֶּה צִאֲצָאִי  
לָמֶן, בְּכוֹר אֲבִינוּ, לְחִי.
- לָכֵן, אֵינִנִּי צָרִיד לְחֹזֵר וּלְהַשְׁמִיעָהּ עַל אֲדוֹת  
מְסוּרוֹתֵיהֶם אוֹ חֶסֶר אֲמוֹנָתָם, כִּי יִדְעֶתָ אֶת  
כָּל הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה.
- עַל כֵּן דִּי בְּאַמְרֵי לִי כִּי אֲלָפִים מִן הַעֲצִירִים  
הָאֵלֶּה נִשְׂאוּ כָּלִי מַלְחָמָה וּבִקְשׁוּנִי לְהִיוֹת  
מְנַהִיגָם; וְאֲנִיחָנוּ יִצְאָנוּ לְהִגָּן עַל אֶרְצָנוּ.
- 1 And now it came to pass in the commencement of the thirtieth year of the reign of the judges, on the second day in the first month, Moroni received an epistle from Helaman, stating the affairs of the people in that quarter of the land.
- 2 And these are the words which he wrote, saying: My dearly beloved brother, Moroni, as well in the Lord as in the tribulations of our warfare; behold, my beloved brother, I have somewhat to tell you concerning our warfare in this part of the land.
- 3 Behold, two thousand of the sons of those men whom Ammon brought down out of the land of Nephi—now ye have known that these were descendants of Laman, who was the eldest son of our father Lehi;
- 4 Now I need not rehearse unto you concerning their traditions or their unbelief, for thou knowest concerning all these things—
- 5 Therefore it sufficeth me that I tell you that two thousand of these young men have taken their weapons of war, and would that I should be their leader; and we have come forth to defend our country.

הִנֵּה יָדַעְתָּ עַל הַבְּרִית אֲשֶׁר כָּרְתוּ אֲבוֹתֵיהֶם,  
כִּי לֹא יֵאָחֲזוּ בְנִשְׁקָם עַל אֶחֱיָהֶם לְשַׁפֹּךְ דָּם.

6 And now ye also know concerning the covenant which their fathers made, that they would not take up their weapons of war against their brethren to shed blood.

וְאִלֵּם בְּשָׁנַת עֶשְׂרִים וָשֵׁשׁ, בְּרֹאוֹתֵם אֶת  
צָרוֹתֵינוּ וְתִלְאוֹתֵינוּ לְמַעַנָם, הֵם עָמְדוּ לְהַפֵּר  
אֶת הַבְּרִית אֲשֶׁר כָּרְתוּ בְּקִחְתָּם כְּלֵי מִלְחָמָה  
לְמַעַן הַגָּנְתָּנוּ.

7 But in the twenty and sixth year, when they saw our afflictions and our tribulations for them, they were about to break the covenant which they had made and take up their weapons of war in our defence.

וְאִנִּי לֹא יִכְלֹתִי לְהַתִּיר כִּי יִפְרוּ אֶת הַבְּרִית הַזֹּאת  
אֲשֶׁר כָּרְתוּ, בְּחֻשְׁבִּי כִּי אֱלֹהִים יַחֲזִקֵנוּ, וְכִי לֹא  
יָרֵב סִבְלָנוּ מִפְּנֵי הַשְּׁבוּעָה אֲשֶׁר נִשְׁבַּענוּ.

8 But I would not suffer them that they should break this covenant which they had made, supposing that God would strengthen us, insomuch that we should not suffer more because of the fulfilling the oath which they had taken.

אֲךָ הִנֵּה דִבֶּר אֶחָד הַיְּכוֹל לְשַׁמְחֵנוּ שְׂמִיחָה  
רַבָּה: בְּשָׁנַת עֶשְׂרִים וָשֵׁשׁ, אֲנִי, הֵילְמוֹן, צִעַדְתִּי  
בְּרֹאשׁ אֲלָפִים הַצְעִירִים הָאֵלֶּה אֶל הָעִיר  
יְהוּדָה, לְעֹזֹר לְאַנְטִיפּוֹס, אֲשֶׁר מִנִּיתִי לְמִנְהִיג  
עַל אֲנָשֵׁי חֹבֶל הָאֶרֶץ הַהוּא.

9 But behold, here is one thing in which we may have great joy. For behold, in the twenty and sixth year, I, Helaman, did march at the head of these two thousand young men to the city of Judea, to assist Antipus, whom ye had appointed a leader over the people of that part of the land.

וְאִנִּי צִרְפְּתִי אֶת אֲלָפִים בְּנֵי, וְאָכֹן רֹאוּיִים הֵם  
לְהִקְרָא בְּנִים, לְצַבָּא אֲנְטִיפּוֹס; וְעַל הַתְּגַבֵּרָת  
הַזֹּאת שְׂמַח אֲנְטִיפּוֹס מָאָד, כִּי חִילוּ הַתְּמַעֵט  
עַל יְדֵי הַלְּמָנִים, אֲשֶׁר חִילוּתֵיהֶם הָרְגוּ,  
לְמַרְבֵּה אֲבָלָנוּ, רַבִּים מֵאֲנָשֵׁינוּ.

10 And I did join my two thousand sons, (for they are worthy to be called sons) to the army of Antipus, in which strength Antipus did rejoice exceedingly; for behold, his army had been reduced by the Lamanites because their forces had slain a vast number of our men, for which cause we have to mourn.

וְאִלֵּם, נוֹכַח לְהַתְנַחֵם בְּכֹךְ כִּי לְמַעַן אֶרְצָם  
וּלְמַעַן אֱלֹהֵיהֶם מֵתוּ וְכִי מֵאֲשָׁרִים הֵם.

11 Nevertheless, we may console ourselves in this point, that they have died in the cause of their country and of their God, yea, and they are happy.

וְהַלְּמָנִים אִף לָקְחוּ רַבִּים בְּשָׁבִי, כָּלָם  
שָׂרֵי צָבָא, כִּי לֹא חָסוּ עַל חַיֵּי אִישׁ זֹולָתָם.  
וּסְבוּרִים אֲנַחְנוּ כִּי הֵם נִמְצְאוּ עִתָּה בְּאֶרֶץ  
נֶפִי, אִם אָכֹן לֹא הוּמָתוּ.

12 And the Lamanites had also retained many prisoners, all of whom are chief captains, for none other have they spared alive. And we suppose that they are now at this time in the land of Nephi; it is so if they are not slain.

וְאֵלֶּה הָעָרִים אֲשֶׁר כָּבְשׁוּ הַלְּמָנִים בְּשָׁפִיכַת  
דָּמִים כֹּה רַבִּים מִגִּבּוֹרֵינוּ:

13 And now these are the cities of which the Lamanites have obtained possession by the shedding of the blood of so many of our valiant men:

אֶרֶץ מִנְטִי, אוֹ הָעִיר מִנְטִי, הָעִיר זֶאזֶרוֹם,  
הָעִיר קוּמֵנִי וְהָעִיר אֲנְטִיפָרָה.

14 The land of Manti, or the city of Manti, and the city of Zeezrom, and the city of Cumeni, and the city of Antiparah.

וְאֵלֶּה הָעָרִים אֲשֶׁר עָלִיהֶן שָׁלְטוּ בְּעֵת הַגִּיעִי  
אֶל הָעִיר יְהוּדָה; וְאִנִּי מְצָאתִי אֶת אֲנְטִיפּוֹס  
וְאֶת אֲנָשָׁיו עֹמְלִים בְּכָל כֹּחַם לְבַצֵּרָה.

15 And these are the cities which they possessed when I arrived at the city of Judea; and I found Antipus and his men toiling with their might to fortify the city.

- 16 Yea, and they were depressed in body as well as in spirit, for they had fought valiantly by day and toiled by night to maintain their cities; and thus they had suffered great afflictions of every kind.
- 17 And now they were determined to conquer in this place or die; therefore you may well suppose that this little force which I brought with me, yea, those sons of mine, gave them great hopes and much joy.
- 18 And now it came to pass that when the Lamanites saw that Antipus had received a greater strength to his army, they were compelled by the orders of Ammoron to not come against the city of Judea, or against us, to battle.
- 19 And thus were we favored of the Lord; for had they come upon us in this our weakness they might have perhaps destroyed our little army; but thus were we preserved.
- 20 They were commanded by Ammoron to maintain those cities which they had taken. And thus ended the twenty and sixth year. And in the commencement of the twenty and seventh year we had prepared our city and ourselves for defence.
- 21 Now we were desirous that the Lamanites should come upon us; for we were not desirous to make an attack upon them in their strongholds.
- 22 And it came to pass that we kept spies out round about, to watch the movements of the Lamanites, that they might not pass us by night nor by day to make an attack upon our other cities which were on the northward.
- 23 For we knew in those cities they were not sufficiently strong to meet them; therefore we were desirous, if they should pass by us, to fall upon them in their rear, and thus bring them up in the rear at the same time they were met in the front. We supposed that we could overpower them; but behold, we were disappointed in this our desire.
- 24 They durst not pass by us with their whole army, neither durst they with a part, lest they should not be sufficiently strong and they should fall.
- 25 Neither durst they march down against the city of Zarahemla; neither durst they cross the head of Sidon, over to the city of Nephihah.
- 26 And thus, with their forces, they were determined to maintain those cities which they had taken.
- וְהָם הָיוּ נִדְכָּאִים בְּגוּף וּבְרוּחַ, כִּי הָיָה לָהֶם הַיּוֹם לְמַלְחָמָתָא גְּבוּרָה וְהִלְיָלָה לַעֲמֹל לְמַעַן הֲגֹן עַל עָרֵיהֶם; וְכֹה הָם סָבְלוּ כָּל מִינֵי תַּלְאֹת גְּדוּלוֹת.
- וְנִחוּשָׁה הָיְתָה הַחֲלֻטָּתָם לְזִכּוֹת בְּנֻצָּחוֹן בְּמָקוֹם הַהוּא אִו לָמוּת. לָכֵן, תּוֹכַל לְהִבִּין הַיָּטִב כִּי הַחִיל הַקָּטָן הַבָּא עִמִּי, אֵלֶּה בְּנֵי הַפִּיחַ בָּהֶם תִּקְוָה גְּדוּלָּה וְשִׂמְחָה רַבָּה.
- וְכִרְאוֹת הַלְּמָנִים כִּי קִבֵּל אֲנִטִּיפּוֹס תַּגְבֵּרָתָא לְצָבָאוֹ, הָם נִאֲלָצוּ, בְּפִקְדוֹת עַמּוֹרוֹן, לְחַדֵּל מִהִלָּחֶם עַל הָעִיר יְהוּדָה אִו עָלֵינוּ.
- כֹּה הָטָה לָנוּ יְהוָה חֲסִדּוֹ, כִּי אִלוּ תִּקְפּוּנוּ בְּעֵת חֲלָשָׁתָנוּ זֹאת, אוּלֵי הָיוּ מִשְׁמִידִים אֶת צָבָאֵנוּ הַקָּטָן. אֲךָ הִנֵּה נִשְׁמַרְנוּ מִזֹּאת.
- וְעַמּוֹרוֹן צִוָּם לְהִגֹּן עַל הָעָרִים אֲשֶׁר כָּבְשׁוּ. כִּךְ תִּמָּה שְׁנַת עָשָׂרִים וְשֵׁשׁ. וּבִרְאשֵׁית שְׁנַת עָשָׂרִים וְשִׁבְעִי, הִכְיִינוּ אֶת עִירֵנוּ וְאוֹתָנוּ לְהִגָּנָה.
- עַתָּה חֲפֻצָּנוּ כִּי יִתְקַפּוּנוּ הַלְּמָנִים, כִּי לֹא רָצִינוּ לַעְרֹךְ עֲלֵיהֶם מַלְחָמָה בְּעוֹדָם בְּמִבְצְרֵיהֶם.
- וְאַנְחָנוּ קִימְנוּ תַּצְפִּיּוֹת סְבִיבֵנוּ, לְעֻקֵּב אַחֵר תְּנוּעוֹת הַלְּמָנִים, פֶּן יַחֲלֹפוּ לִידָנוּ בַּלַּיְלָה אִו בַּיּוֹם, בְּדִרְכָּם לְתַקֵּף אֶת עִירֵנוּ הָאַחֲרוֹת אֲשֶׁר בְּצָפוֹן.
- אָכֵן יָדַעְנוּ כִּי הָעָרִים הָהֵן לֹא הָיוּ חֲזָקוֹת דִּין לְהִלָּחֶם בְּלָמָנִים; עַל כֵּן חֲפֻצָּנוּ לְהִתְנַפֵּל עֲלֵיהֶם מֵאַחֹר בְּעֵת אֲשֶׁר יַעֲבְרוּ לִידָנוּ, אָכֵן, לָבוֹא עֲלֵיהֶם מִלְּפָנִים וּמֵאַחֹר. סָבְרָנוּ כִּי בִידָנוּ לְהִכָּרִיעֶם, אֲךָ תוֹחֲלָתָנוּ זֹאת נִכְזָּבָה.
- הֵם לֹא הִעָזוּ לַעֲבֹר לִידָנוּ בְּמֵלָא צָבָאָם וְאֵף לֹא בְּחֻלְקוֹ, פֶּן לֹא יַעֲצְרוּ כֹחַ וְיִנָּגְפוּ.
- הֵם אֵף לֹא הִעָזוּ לָרֶדֶת לְהִלָּחֶם בְּעִיר זֶרַחֶמְלָה, אִו לְחַצוֹת אֶת עֵין צִידוֹן אֶל הָעִיר נִפְיָהָ.
- כֹּה הָיוּ הַלְּמָנִים וְחִילוּתֵיהֶם אֵיתָנִים בְּדַעְתָּם לְהִגֹּן עַל הָעָרִים אֲשֶׁר תָּפְשׁוּ.

- 27 And now it came to pass in the second month of this year, there was brought unto us many provisions from the fathers of those my two thousand sons.
- וּבִשְׁנָה הַהִיא, בַּחֹדֶשׁ הַשֵּׁנִי, הִגִּיעְתָּנוּ צִידָה רַבָּה מֵאֵת הוֹרֵי אֲלָפִים בְּנֵי אֱלֹהִי.
- 28 And also there were sent two thousand men unto us from the land of Zarahemla. And thus we were prepared with ten thousand men, and provisions for them, and also for their wives and their children.
- גַּם אֲלָפִים אִישׁ נִשְׁלָחוּ אֵלֵינוּ מֵאֶרֶץ זָרַחֶמְלָה. כֹּה הָיִינוּ עָרוּכִים בְּרִבּוֹא אִישׁ, וּבִצִּידָה אֲשֶׁר לָהֶם, וְאֵף לְנָשֵׁיהֶם וּלְטַפָּם.
- 29 And the Lamanites, thus seeing our forces increase daily, and provisions arrive for our support, they began to be fearful, and began to sally forth, if it were possible to put an end to our receiving provisions and strength.
- וְכִרְאוֹת הַלְּמָנִיתִים כִּי כַחוֹתֵינוּ רַבִּים מְדֵי יוֹם בְּיוֹמוֹ, וְצִידָה מְגִיעָה לְסַעֲדָנוּ, נָפַל עֲלֵיהֶם פַּחַד. וְהֵם הִחֲלוּ לְצֹאת לְהַתְּקָפוֹת כְּדֵי לְשִׁים קֶץ לְמִשְׁלוֹחֵי הַצִּידָה וּלְהַתְּעַצְמוֹתָנוּ.
- 30 Now when we saw that the Lamanites began to grow uneasy on this wise, we were desirous to bring a stratagem into effect upon them; therefore Antipus ordered that I should march forth with my little sons to a neighboring city, as if we were carrying provisions to a neighboring city.
- וְכַאֲשֶׁר רָאִינוּ כִּי הִדְבָּר הַדְּרִיךְ אֶת מְנוּחַת הַלְּמָנִיתִים, רָצִינוּ לְהַפְעִיל עֲלֵיהֶם תַּחְבּוּלָה. עַל כֵּן צִוָּה אַנְטִיפּוֹס כִּי אֶסַּע עִם בְּנֵי הַצְעִירִים אֶל עִיר שְׂכֵנָה, כְּאִלוֹ הוֹבְלָנוּ צִידָה אֵלֵיהֶם.
- 31 And we were to march near the city of Antiparah, as if we were going to the city beyond, in the borders by the seashore.
- הָיָה עָלֵינוּ לְנַסֵּעַ עַל יַד הָעִיר אַנְטִיפָרָה, כְּאִלוֹ פָּנִינוּ אֶל הָעִיר אֲשֶׁר מֵעֵבֶר לָהּ, בְּגָבּוֹל לֵיד חוֹף הַיָּם.
- 32 And it came to pass that we did march forth, as if with our provisions, to go to that city.
- כֹּה נִסְעָנוּ כְּאֲשֶׁר אָנַחְנוּ מִתְּרָאִים כְּנוֹשְׂאֵי צִידָה אֶל הָעִיר הַהִיא.
- 33 And it came to pass that Antipus did march forth with a part of his army, leaving the remainder to maintain the city. But he did not march forth until I had gone forth with my little army, and came near the city Antiparah.
- וְאַנְטִיפּוֹס צָעַד עִם חֶלֶק צָבָא, וְאֵת הַנוֹתֵר הַשָּׂאִיר בְּעִיר לְהַגְנָתָהּ. וְהוּא לֹא יָצָא לְמַסָּעוֹ עַד אֲשֶׁר יָצָאתִי עִם צָבָאִי הַקָּטָן וְהִגַּעְתִּי אֶל קִרְבַּת הָעִיר אַנְטִיפָרָה.
- 34 And now, in the city Antiparah were stationed the strongest army of the Lamanites; yea, the most numerous.
- וּבְעִיר אַנְטִיפָרָה הָצַב הַצָּבָא הַחֲזָק בְּיֻתֵּר, וְאֵף הַגָּדוֹל בְּיֻתֵּר אֲשֶׁר לְלָמָנִיתִים.
- 35 And it came to pass that when they had been informed by their spies, they came forth with their army and marched against us.
- וְכַאֲשֶׁר הוֹדִיעוּ לָהֶם צוֹפֵיהֶם, יָצְאוּ הַלְּמָנִיתִים בְּצָבָאָם וְהִתְקַדְּמוּ לְקִרְאֵתָנוּ.
- 36 And it came to pass that we did flee before them, northward. And thus we did lead away the most powerful army of the Lamanites;
- וְאַנְחָנוּ נָסָנוּ מִפְּנֵיהֶם צָפוֹנָה. כֹּה הוֹבְלָנוּ מִמְּקוֹמוֹ אֶת צָבָא הַלְּמָנִיתִים הַחֲזָק בְּיֻתֵּר;
- 37 Yea, even to a considerable distance, insomuch that when they saw the army of Antipus pursuing them, with their might, they did not turn to the right nor to the left, but pursued their march in a straight course after us; and, as we suppose, it was their intent to slay us before Antipus should overtake them, and this that they might not be surrounded by our people.
- אָכֵן, הִרְחַקְנוּ מִרְחָק נֹכַר. וְכִרְאוֹתָם אֶת צָבָא אַנְטִיפּוֹס רוֹדֵף אַחֲרֵיהֶם, בְּרַב כּוֹחַ, הֵם לֹא נָטוּ יְמִינָה אוֹ שְׂמָאלָה כִּי הוֹסִיפוּ בְּמַסָּעָם בְּדֶרֶךְ יִשְׁרָה אַחֲרֵינוּ. סְבוּרִים אָנַחְנוּ כִּי כּוֹנְנָתָם הָיְתָה לְהִרְגָנוּ בְּטָרֵם יִשְׁגִּים אַנְטִיפּוֹס, וּבְאִפֵּן זֶה לְמַנֵּעַ אֶת כְּתוּרָם בְּיַד אֲנָשֵׁינוּ.



## עלמא נולח-מח

- 38 And now Antipus, beholding our danger, did speed the march of his army. But behold, it was night; therefore they did not overtake us, neither did Antipus overtake them; therefore we did camp for the night.
- 39 And it came to pass that before the dawn of the morning, behold, the Lamanites were pursuing us. Now we were not sufficiently strong to contend with them; yea, I would not suffer that my little sons should fall into their hands; therefore we did continue our march, and we took our march into the wilderness.
- 40 Now they durst not turn to the right nor to the left lest they should be surrounded; neither would I turn to the right nor to the left lest they should overtake me, and we could not stand against them, but be slain, and they would make their escape; and thus we did flee all that day into the wilderness, even until it was dark.
- 41 And it came to pass that again, when the light of the morning came we saw the Lamanites upon us, and we did flee before them.
- 42 But it came to pass that they did not pursue us far before they halted; and it was in the morning of the third day of the seventh month.
- 43 And now, whether they were overtaken by Antipus we knew not, but I said unto my men: Behold, we know not but they have halted for the purpose that we should come against them, that they might catch us in their snare;
- 44 Therefore what say ye, my sons, will ye go against them to battle?
- 45 And now I say unto you, my beloved brother Moroni, that never had I seen so great courage, nay, not amongst all the Nephites.
- 46 For as I had ever called them my sons (for they were all of them very young) even so they said unto me: Father, behold our God is with us, and he will not suffer that we should fall; then let us go forth; we would not slay our brethren if they would let us alone; therefore let us go, lest they should overpower the army of Antipus.
- 47 Now they never had fought, yet they did not fear death; and they did think more upon the liberty of their fathers than they did upon their lives; yea, they had been taught by their mothers, that if they did not doubt, God would deliver them.
- 48 And they rehearsed unto me the words of their mothers, saying: We do not doubt our mothers knew it.
- וְכִרְאוֹת אֲנְטִיפּוֹס אֶת הַסִּכָּנָה הַנִּשְׁקָפֶת לָנוּ, הוּא זָרָא אֶת צַעֲדַת צָבָאוֹ. וְהִנֵּה, יָרֵד הַלַּיְלָה, וְהַלְמָנִים לֹא הִשְׁיִיגוּנוּ וְאֲנְטִיפּוֹס לֹא הִשִּׁיגָם. לָכֵן חָנִינוּ לַעֵת לַיְלָה.
- וּבִטְרֵם יַעֲלֶה הַשַּׁחַר הַמְּשִׁיכוֹ הַלְמָנִים לְרֹדְפֵנוּ, וְאַנְחָנוּ לֹא הָיִינוּ חֲזָקִים דִּינֹו לְהִלָּחֵם בָּהֶם. וַיַּעַן אֲשֶׁר לֹא עָלָה בְּדַעְתִּי לְהַתִּיר אֶת נַפְיִלַת בְּנֵי הַקְּטָנִים לְיַדֵּיהֶם, הַמְּשַׁכְּנוֹ בְּמִסְעָנוּ וּפָנִינוּ אֶל הַיַּעְרוֹת.
- וְהַלְמָנִים לֹא הָעִזּוּ לְהִמְיִן אוֹ לְהִשְׁמָאִיל פֶּן יִכְתְּרוּ; וַיַּעַן אֲשֶׁר לֹא יָכֻלְנוּ לַעֲמֹד בַּפְּנֵיהֶם, אִף אֲנִי לֹא נָטִיתִי יְמִינָה אוֹ שְׂמָאלָה פֶּן יִדְבִּיקוּנִי וַיִּהְרֹגוּנִי, וַיִּצְלִיחוּ לְהִמָּלֵט; כֹּה נִסְגּוּ מִפְּנֵיהֶם כָּל הַיּוֹם הַהוּא אֶל הַיַּעְרוֹת עַד רֹדֶת הַחֹשֶׁכָה.
- וְהִנֵּה כַּאֲשֶׁר הָאִיר אוֹר הַבֹּקֶר, רָאִינוּ שְׁנֵית אֶת הַלְמָנִים בָּאִים עָלֵינוּ וְנִסְגּוּ מִפְּנֵיהֶם.
- אִךְ הֵם לֹא הִרְחִיקוּ לְרֹדֶף אַחֲרֵינוּ, כִּי עָצְרוּ. הָיָה זֶה בַּבֹּקֶר הַיּוֹם הַשְּׁלִישִׁי לַחֹדֶשׁ הַשְּׁבִיעִי.
- וְאַנְחָנוּ לֹא יָדַעְנוּ אִם הִשִּׁיגָם אֲנְטִיפּוֹס; לָכֵן אָמַרְתִּי לְאֶנְשֵׁי: אוֹלֵי הֵם עָצְרוּ בַּעֲבוּר נִצָּא לְקִרְאָתָם, לְמַעַן יִלְכְּדוּנוּ בְּרִשְׁתָּם.
- מָה תֹאמְרוּ, בְּנֵי? הֲתִצָּאוּ לְקִרְאָתָם אֵלַי קָרֵב?
- הִנֵּה אָמַר לִּי, אָחִי הִיקָה, מוֹרוֹנִי, כִּי מַעוֹדִי לֹא רָאִיתִי גִבּוּרָה כֹּה רַבָּה, אֲכֹן, אִף לֹא בְּקָרֵב כָּל הַנִּפְיִים.
- כִּי בְּקִרְאִי לָהֶם תַּמִּיד בְּנֵי, בְּהִיּוֹת כָּלָם צְעִירִים מְאֹד, כֹּה אָמְרוּ אֵלַי: אָבָא, הִנֵּה אֱלֹהִים עִמָּנוּ. וְהוּא לֹא יִתְּנֵנוּ לְנַפְל; לָכֵן הָבָה נִצָּא לְקִרְאָתָם. לֹא הָיִינוּ הוֹרָגִים אֶת אַחֵינוּ אֱלֹו עֲזָבוּנוּ לְנַפְשָׁנוּ. לָכֵן, הָבָה נִלְכֶּה, פֶּן יִגְבְּרוּ עַל צָבָא אֲנְטִיפּוֹס.
- הִנֵּה, הֵם מַעוֹלָם לֹא נִלְחָמוּ, אִךְ אֶת הַמּוֹת לֹא יָרְאוּ. חֲרוֹת הוֹרִיָּהֶם יָקָרָה בְּעֵינֵיהֶם מִחַיָּיהֶם; וְהֵם לָמְדוּ מֵאֲמוּתֵיהֶם כִּי אִם לֹא יִתְּנוּ מְקוֹם לְסַפֵּק בְּלִבָּם, הֲצִיל יִצְיִלָם אֱלֹהִים.
- וְהֵם שָׁנְנוּ בְּאָזְנֵי אֶת דְּבָרֵי אֲמוּתֵיהֶם, וְאָמְרוּ: בְּטוֹחִים אֲנִיחָנוּ כִּי יָדוּשׁ יִדְּעוּ זֹאת אֲמוּתֵינוּ.

- 49 And it came to pass that I did return with my two thousand against these Lamanites who had pursued us. And now behold, the armies of Antipus had overtaken them, and a terrible battle had commenced.
- אֲזָ פָּנִיתִי אַחֲוֹר עִם הָאֲלָפִים אֲשֶׁר לִי וַיִּצְאָתִי לְקִרְאָת הַלְּמָנִים אֲשֶׁר דָּלְקוּ אַחֲרֵינוּ. וְהִנֵּה צָבָא אַנְטִיפּוּס הִדְבִּיקָם וְקָרַב נוֹרָא הַתְּחוּלָל.
- 50 The army of Antipus being weary, because of their long march in so short a space of time, were about to fall into the hands of the Lamanites; and had I not returned with my two thousand they would have obtained their purpose.
- צָבָא אַנְטִיפּוּס, אֲשֶׁר יָגַע מִפְּנֵי אֶרֶץ מִסְעוֹ בְּמִשְׁוֹ זְמַן כֹּה קָצֵר, עָמַד לִנְפֹּל לְיַד הַלְּמָנִים; וְלוֹלָא שְׁבָתִי עִם אֲלָפִים אֲנִשִּׁי, הִיְתָה מִזְמָתָם עוֹלָה בְּיָדֵיהֶם.
- 51 For Antipus had fallen by the sword, and many of his leaders, because of their weariness, which was occasioned by the speed of their march—therefore the men of Antipus, being confused because of the fall of their leaders, began to give way before the Lamanites.
- וְאַנְטִיפּוּס נָפַל בַּחֶרֶב, וְכֹן נָפְלוּ רַבִּים מִמְּפָקְדֵי צָבָאוֹ מִפְּנֵי עֵיפּוֹתָם אֲשֶׁר הִכְרִיעָתָם בְּמִסְעָם הַנֶּחָפֵז, וּבְמַבּוּכַת אֲנִשֵּׁי אַנְטִיפּוּס כִּי נָפְלוּ מִמְּפָקְדֵיהֶם, הֵם הִחֲלוּ לְהִכָּנַע לַלְּמָנִים.
- 52 And it came to pass that the Lamanites took courage, and began to pursue them; and thus were the Lamanites pursuing them with great vigor when Helaman came upon their rear with his two thousand, and began to slay them exceedingly, insomuch that the whole army of the Lamanites halted and turned upon Helaman.
- וְהַלְּמָנִים הִתְאַזְּרוּ אִמָּץ וְהִחֲלוּ לִרְדֹּף אַחֲרֵיהֶם. כֹּה רָדְפוּם הַלְּמָנִים בְּרַב עֹז, בְּאֲשֶׁר הִילָּמֹן פָּשַׁט עֲלֵיהֶם מֵאַחֲוֹר עִם אֲלָפִים הַחִילִים אֲשֶׁר לוֹ. וְהִחַל לְהַפְלִיא בָּהֶם הָרֶג, עַד כִּי עָצַר כָּל צָבָא הַלְּמָנִים מִרְדִּיפָתוֹ וּפָנָה אֶל הִילָּמֹן.
- 53 Now when the people of Antipus saw that the Lamanites had turned them about, they gathered together their men and came again upon the rear of the Lamanites.
- וּבְרִאֻת אֲנִשֵּׁי אַנְטִיפּוּס כִּי הַלְּמָנִים פָּנוּ מֵהֶם, הֵם כָּנְסוּ אֶת אֲנִשֵּׁיהֶם וְעָלוּ שְׁנִית עַל מַאֲסָף הַלְּמָנִים.
- 54 And now it came to pass that we, the people of Nephi, the people of Antipus, and I with my two thousand, did surround the Lamanites, and did slay them; yea, insomuch that they were compelled to deliver up their weapons of war and also themselves as prisoners of war.
- וְאַנְחֵנוּ, אֲנִשֵּׁי נְפִי, אֲנִשֵּׁי אַנְטִיפּוּס, וְאֲנִי עִם הָאֲלָפִים אֲשֶׁר לִי, בְּתִרְנוּ אֶת הַלְּמָנִים וְהִרְגָנוּם, עַד כִּי הֵם נֶאֱצְלוּ לְהִתְפָּרֵק מִנְשָׁקָם וּלְהִתְמַסֵּר כְּשִׁבּוּי מִלְחָמָה.
- 55 And now it came to pass that when they had surrendered themselves up unto us, behold, I numbered those young men who had fought with me, fearing lest there were many of them slain.
- וּכְאֲשֶׁר נִכְנְעוּ לָנוּ הַלְּמָנִים, מִנִּיתִי אֶת הַצְעִירִים אֲשֶׁר נִלְחָמוּ עִמִּי, כִּי חִרְדֵּיתִי פֹן נִהְרֹגוּ רַבִּים מֵהֶם.
- 56 But behold, to my great joy, there had not one soul of them fallen to the earth; yea, and they had fought as if with the strength of God; yea, never were men known to have fought with such miraculous strength; and with such mighty power did they fall upon the Lamanites, that they did frighten them; and for this cause did the Lamanites deliver themselves up as prisoners of war.
- וְהִנֵּה, לְמִרְבֵּה שִׂמְחָתִי, לֹא נִפְלָה חֵלֶל אֶף נֶפֶשׁ אַחַת מֵהֶם. הִמָּה נִלְחָמוּ כְּמוֹ בְּכַח אֱלֹהִים; אֲכֹן, מֵעוֹלָם לֹא נֹודְעוּ אֲנָשִׁים אֲשֶׁר נִלְחָמוּ בְּעֹז נִפְלָא אֲשֶׁר כָּזֶה; הֵם הִתְנַפְּלוּ בְּעֶצְמָה כֹּה רַבָּה עַל הַלְּמָנִים, עַד כִּי הִפְחִידוּם וְהִבִּיאוּם לְמִסֹּר עֶצְמָם כְּשִׁבּוּי מִלְחָמָה.
- 57 And as we had no place for our prisoners, that we could guard them to keep them from the armies of the Lamanites, therefore we sent them to the land of Zarahemla, and a part of those men who were not slain of Antipus, with them; and the remainder I took and joined them to my stripling Ammonites, and took our march back to the city of Judea.
- וַעֲנֵן אֲשֶׁר לֹא הָיָה לָנוּ מְקוֹם לְשֹׁמֵר אֶת שְׁבִיֵּינוּ מִחִילוֹת הַלְּמָנִים, שְׁלַחְנוּם אֶל אֶרֶץ זֶרַחְעָמְלָה עִם חֶלֶק מֵאֲנִשֵּׁי אַנְטִיפּוּס אֲשֶׁר לֹא נִהְרְגוּ; וְאֲנִי לְקַחְתִּי אֶת הַנוֹתָרִים, וְצִרְפָּתִים אֶל הָעַמּוֹנִים הַצְעִירִים אֲשֶׁר עִמִּי וְצִעְדָנוּ שׁוֹב אֶל הָעִיר יְהוּדָה.

## נז

## 57

- בַּעֲתָהּ הָיָא קְבִלְתִּי אֶגְרָת מֵאֵת הַמֶּלֶךְ  
עֲמֹרֹן אֲשֶׁר הוֹדִיעַנִי כִּי אִם אֲשַׁחֲרֶה אֶת  
שְׂבוֹיֵי הַמֶּלְחָמָה אֲשֶׁר לָקַחְנוּ, יִמְסֹר הוּא  
לִידְנוּ אֶת הָעִיר אֲנְטִיפָרָה.
- וְאוּלָם אֲנִי שָׁלַחְתִּי אֶל הַמֶּלֶךְ אֶגְרָת לֵאמֹר  
כִּי בְטוּחִים אֲנִיחֵנוּ כִּי כַח צָבָאנוּ דִּיּוּ לְכַבֵּשׁ  
אֶת הָעִיר אֲנְטִיפָרָה, וְכִי לֹא נִנְהַג בְּתַבּוּנָה  
בְּשַׁחֲרָנוּ אֶת הַשְּׂבוֹיִים תְּמוּרָת הָעִיר הַזֹּאת,  
וְרַק בְּחִלּוֹף שְׂבוֹיִים נִשְׁחָרֵר אֶת הַשְּׂבוֹיִים  
אֲשֶׁר בִּידְנוּ.
- וְעֲמֹרֹן דָּחָה אֶת אֶגְרָתִי, כִּי לֹא רָצָה בְּחִלּוֹפֵי  
שְׂבוֹיִים. עַל כֵּן הִחֲלוּנוּ בְּהִכְנוּת לְהִתְקַפֵּה עַל  
הָעִיר אֲנְטִיפָרָה.
- וְאֲנָשֵׁי אֲנְטִיפָרָה נָטְשׁוּ אֶת הָעִיר וְנָסוּ אֶל  
הָעָרִים הָאַחֲרוֹת אֲשֶׁר בִּידֵיהֶם, לְמַעַן בְּצָרָן;  
וְכֵה נָפְלָה הָעִיר אֲנְטִיפָרָה לִידְנוּ.
- כֹּה תִמָּה שְׁנַת עָשָׂרִים וּשְׁמוֹנֶה לְשָׁלוֹן  
הַשּׁוֹפְטִים.
- וּבִרְאִישֵׁי שְׁנַת עָשָׂרִים וְחָשַׁע קְבִלְנוּ אֶסְפָּקַת  
מְזוֹן, וְכֵן תִּגְבַּרְתָּ לְצָבָאנוּ מֵאֶרֶץ זֶרְעֵה־מֶלֶךְ  
וּמִן הָאֶרֶץ אֲשֶׁר סָבִיב. שִׁשָּׁת אֲלָפִים אִישׁ  
נֹסְפֻו לָנוּ מִלְבָּד שְׁשִׁים מִבְּנֵי עַם עֲמֹן. אֵלֶּה  
בָּאוּ לְהַצְטָרֵף אֶל אַחֵיהֶם, גְּדוּדֵי הַקָּטָן אֲשֶׁר  
מִנֵּה אֲלָפִים חֵל. הִנֵּה, הֵינּוּ חֲזָקִים וְאֶסְפָּקַת  
מְזוֹן רַבָּה הוּבָאָה אֵלֵינוּ.
- וּרְצוֹנֵנוּ הָיָה לְצִאת לְקָרֵב עַל הַצָּבָא אֲשֶׁר  
הִפְקֵד לְהִגֹּן עַל הָעִיר קוּמֵנִי.
- וְאֲנִי אֶרְאֶה כִּי עַד מִהֲרָה הוֹצֵאנוּ לַפְעַל אֶת  
חֲפָצֵנוּ. אָכֵן, בְּחִילָנוּ הַגָּדוֹל, אוּ עִם חֶלְקֵנוּ,  
הִקְפָּנוּ בַּלַּיְלָה אֶת הָעִיר קוּמֵנִי לְפָנוֹת הַמוֹעֵד  
אֲשֶׁר עָמְדוּ אֲנִישֵׁיהָ לְקַבֵּל אֶסְפָּקַת מְזוֹן.
- בְּמִשְׁךְ לַיְלֹת רַבִּים חָנִינוּ סָבִיב הָעִיר; יִשְׁנוּ  
עַל חֲרֻבוֹתֵינוּ וְהִצָּבְנוּ שׁוּמְרִים, לְבַל יָבוֹאוּ עָלֵינוּ  
הַלָּמָנִים לַיְלָה לְהִרְגָּנוּ, כְּפִי אֲשֶׁר נָסוּ פְעַמִּים  
רַבּוֹת; אֲךָ בְּכָל צֵאתָם עָלֵינוּ נִשְׁפָּךְ דָּמָם.
- 1 And now it came to pass that I received an epistle from Ammoron, the king, stating that if I would deliver up those prisoners of war whom we had taken that he would deliver up the city of Antiparah unto us.
- 2 But I sent an epistle unto the king, that we were sure our forces were sufficient to take the city of Antiparah by our force; and by delivering up the prisoners for that city we should suppose ourselves unwise, and that we would only deliver up our prisoners on exchange.
- 3 And Ammoron refused mine epistle, for he would not exchange prisoners; therefore we began to make preparations to go against the city of Antiparah.
- 4 But the people of Antiparah did leave the city, and fled to their other cities, which they had possession of, to fortify them; and thus the city of Antiparah fell into our hands.
- 5 And thus ended the twenty and eighth year of the reign of the judges.
- 6 And it came to pass that in the commencement of the twenty and ninth year, we received a supply of provisions, and also an addition to our army, from the land of Zarahemla, and from the land round about, to the number of six thousand men, besides sixty of the sons of the Ammonites who had come to join their brethren, my little band of two thousand. And now behold, we were strong, yea, and we had also plenty of provisions brought unto us.
- 7 And it came to pass that it was our desire to wage a battle with the army which was placed to protect the city Cumeni.
- 8 And now behold, I will show unto you that we soon accomplished our desire; yea, with our strong force, or with a part of our strong force, we did surround, by night, the city Cumeni, a little before they were to receive a supply of provisions.
- 9 And it came to pass that we did camp round about the city for many nights; but we did sleep upon our swords, and keep guards, that the Lamanites could not come upon us by night and slay us, which they attempted many times; but as many times as they attempted this their blood was spilt.

- 10 ואחר זמן מה הגיע משלוח אספקתם והם  
עמדו להכנס אל העיר בלילה. ובמקום  
הלמנים, היינו אנחנו, הנפיים. על כן תפשונו  
אותם ואת אספקתם.
- 11 ועל אף הכרתת האספקה מן הלמנים באפן  
הזה, היו הם נחושים בדעתם להגן על העיר;  
לכן טוב היה בעינינו לקחת את האספקה  
ההיא ולשלחה ליהודה, וכן להעביר את  
השבויים אשר בידינו אל ארץ זרעהמלה.
- 12 ולא עברו ימים רבים ואבדה תקות הלמנים  
לסייע; לכן הם מסרו את העיר לידינו. כה  
בצענו את תכניתנו לתפש את העיר קומיני.
- 13 וכה רב היה מספר שבויינו, ואף כי מספר  
חילינו היה עצום, נאלצנו להעסיק את כל  
צבאנו במשמר עליהם, או להמיתם.
- 14 כי הם התפרצו בהמוניהם ונלחמו באבנים  
ובאלות ובכל דבר אשר השיגה ידם, עד כי  
הרגנו למעלה מאלפיים מהם אחר אשר  
נכנעו לידינו.
- 15 לכן היה זה נחוץ כי נשים קץ לחייהם,  
או נובלים תחת משמך, בעוד חרבותינו  
שלופות, אל ארץ זרעהמלה. גם אספקת  
מזוננו לא הספיקה, כי אם בעבור אנשינו  
בלבד, על אף את אשר לקחנו מן הלמנים.
- 16 ובמצב החמור הזה קשה היה להחליט בדבר  
השבויים האלה; ואולם, אמרנו לשלח אותם  
אל ארץ זרעהמלה. לכן בחרנו חלק מאנשינו  
והפקדנום על השבויים לרדת אל ארץ  
זרעהמלה.
- 17 אך למחרת יציאתם הם שבו אלינו ואנחנו  
לא שאלנום על אודות השבויים, כי יד הלמנים  
היתה בנו; והם שבו במועד להצילנו מנפל  
לידיהם, יען אשר שלח עמורון לחזוקם  
אספקת מזון חדשה ואף צבא גדול.
- 18 והאנשים אשר שלחנום עם השבויים  
הגיעו במועד לבלם את הלמנים, כי הם  
עמדו לגבר עלינו.
- 10 At length their provisions did arrive, and they were about to enter  
the city by night. And we, instead of being Lamanites, were Nephites;  
therefore, we did take them and their provisions.
- 11 And notwithstanding the Lamanites being cut off from their support  
after this manner, they were still determined to maintain the city;  
therefore it became expedient that we should take those provisions and  
send them to Judea, and our prisoners to the land of Zarahemla.
- 12 And it came to pass that not many days had passed away before the  
Lamanites began to lose all hopes of succor; therefore they yielded up  
the city into our hands; and thus we had accomplished our designs in  
obtaining the city Cumeni.
- 13 But it came to pass that our prisoners were so numerous that,  
notwithstanding the enormity of our numbers, we were obliged to  
employ all our force to keep them, or to put them to death.
- 14 For behold, they would break out in great numbers, and would fight  
with stones, and with clubs, or whatsoever thing they could get into  
their hands, insomuch that we did slay upwards of two thousand of  
them after they had surrendered themselves prisoners of war.
- 15 Therefore it became expedient for us, that we should put an end to their  
lives, or guard them, sword in hand, down to the land of Zarahemla;  
and also our provisions were not any more than sufficient for our own  
people, notwithstanding that which we had taken from the Lamanites.
- 16 And now, in those critical circumstances, it became a very serious  
matter to determine concerning these prisoners of war; nevertheless,  
we did resolve to send them down to the land of Zarahemla; therefore  
we selected a part of our men, and gave them charge over our prisoners  
to go down to the land of Zarahemla.
- 17 But it came to pass that on the morrow they did return. And now be-  
hold, we did not inquire of them concerning the prisoners; for behold,  
the Lamanites were upon us, and they returned in season to save us  
from falling into their hands. For behold, Ammoron had sent to their  
support a new supply of provisions and also a numerous army of men.
- 18 And it came to pass that those men whom we sent with the prisoners  
did arrive in season to check them, as they were about to overpower us.

- 19 But behold, my little band of two thousand and sixty fought most desperately; yea, they were firm before the Lamanites, and did administer death unto all those who opposed them.
- 20 And as the remainder of our army were about to give way before the Lamanites, behold, those two thousand and sixty were firm and undaunted.
- 21 Yea, and they did obey and observe to perform every word of command with exactness; yea, and even according to their faith it was done unto them; and I did remember the words which they said unto me that their mothers had taught them.
- 22 And now behold, it was these my sons, and those men who had been selected to convey the prisoners, to whom we owe this great victory; for it was they who did beat the Lamanites; therefore they were driven back to the city of Manti.
- 23 And we retained our city Cumeni, and were not all destroyed by the sword; nevertheless, we had suffered great loss.
- 24 And it came to pass that after the Lamanites had fled, I immediately gave orders that my men who had been wounded should be taken from among the dead, and caused that their wounds should be dressed.
- 25 And it came to pass that there were two hundred, out of my two thousand and sixty, who had fainted because of the loss of blood; nevertheless, according to the goodness of God, and to our great astonishment, and also the joy of our whole army, there was not one soul of them who did perish; yea, and neither was there one soul among them who had not received many wounds.
- 26 And now, their preservation was astonishing to our whole army, yea, that they should be spared while there was a thousand of our brethren who were slain. And we do justly ascribe it to the miraculous power of God, because of their exceeding faith in that which they had been taught to believe—that there was a just God, and whosoever did not doubt, that they should be preserved by his marvelous power.
- 27 Now this was the faith of these of whom I have spoken; they are young, and their minds are firm, and they do put their trust in God continually.
- 28 And now it came to pass that after we had thus taken care of our wounded men, and had buried our dead and also the dead of the Lamanites, who
- וְהִנֵּה, גְּדוּדֵי הַקָּטָן, אֲשֶׁר מְנָה אֶלְפִים  
וְשָׁשִׁים חֵיל, נִלְחָם בְּנַחֲשׁוֹת רַבָּה. הֵם עָמְדוּ  
אֵיתָנִים מִוִּל הַלְמָנִים וְחָלְקוּ מוֹת לְכָל אֲשֶׁר  
עָמַד בְּפָנֵיהֶם.
- וּבְעוֹד אֲשֶׁר שָׂאָר חֵילֵינוּ עָמְדוּ לְהִכָּנֵעַ  
לְלָמָנִים, הָיוּ הָאֶלְפִים וְשָׁשִׁים הֵהֶם אֵיתָנִים  
וְעֲשׂוּיִים לְבָלִי חַת.
- הֵם צִיתוּ וְהִקְפִּידוּ לְבַצֵּעַ בְּדִיוֹק כָּל פְּקֻדָּה;  
וְכַפִּי אֲמוּנָתָם, כֵּן נַעֲשֶׂה לָהֶם; וְאֲנִי זָכַרְתִּי אֶת  
הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר אָמְרוּ לִי כִּי לְמַדּוֹם אֲמוּנָתֵיהֶם.
- הִנֵּה, עָלֵינוּ לְהוֹדוֹת לִבְנֵי אֱלֹה וּלְאֲנָשִׁים  
אֲשֶׁר נִבְחָרוּ לְהַעֲבִיר אֶת הַשְּׁבוּיִים עַל הַנֶּצְחון  
הַגָּדוֹל הַזֶּה; כִּי הֵם אֲשֶׁר הִכְרִיעוּ אֶת הַלְמָנִים,  
וְהִרְחִיקוּם אֶל הָעִיר מַנְטִי.
- וְאֲנַחְנוּ הַחֲזַקְנוּ בְּעִירֵנוּ קוּמֵנִי וְלֹא הִכָּחְדָנוּ  
כָּלָנוּ; וְאוּלָם, נִגְרַמּוּ לָנוּ אֲבֹדוֹת גְּדוֹלוֹת.
- וְאַחֵר נֹוס הַלְמָנִים פְּקֻדָּתִי מִיָּד לְהוֹצִיא אֶת  
אֲנָשֵׁי הַפְּצוּעִים מִבֵּין הַהָרוּגִים וְצִוִּיתִי לְחַבֵּשׁ  
אֶת פְּצָעֵיהֶם.
- וּמִתּוֹךְ אֶלְפִים וְשָׁשִׁים אֲנָשִׁים הָיוּ מָאֲתִים  
אֲשֶׁר הִתְעַלְפוּ מֵאֲבֹד דָּם; אֹף הִנֵּה, בְּטוֹב  
אֱלֹהִים וּלְהַפְתָּעֵתָנוּ הַרְבֵּה, וּלְשִׂמְחַת כָּל  
צָבָאֵנוּ, לֹא נִסְפְּתָה אֹף נֶפֶשׁ אַחַת מֵהֶם;  
וְאוּלָם, לֹא הָיָה אֹף אֶחָד מִבֵּינֵיהֶם אֲשֶׁר  
לֹא נִפְצַע פְּצָעִים רַבִּים.
- וְהִנֵּה, הַשְׁתַּמְרוּתָם הַפְתִּיעָה אֶת כָּל צָבָאֵנוּ,  
כִּי אֱלֹה נִוְתָרוּ בְּחַיִּים בְּעוֹד אֲשֶׁר אֶלְף מֵאֲחֵינוּ  
נִהָרְגוּ. וְאֲמָנָם מִיְּחֹסִים אֲנַחְנוּ כָּל זֹאת לְכַח  
אֱלֹהִים הַנִּפְלָא, אֲשֶׁר מִפְּנֵי אֲמוּנָתָם הִתְקִיפָה  
בְּאֲשֶׁר לְמַדּוֹם לְהֶאֱמִין, לֹאמֹר, כִּי יֵשׁ אֱלֹהִי  
צָדֵק וְכָל אֲשֶׁר אֵינוּ יִסְטִיל סָפֵק, הַשְּׁמֵר יִשְׁמֵר  
עַל יְדֵי הַנִּפְלָא.
- הִנֵּה, זֹאת אֲמוּנַת אֱלֹה אֲשֶׁר עָלִיהֶם דְּבָרְתִּי;  
צְעִירִים הֵם וְדַעְתָּם אֵיתָנָה וְהֵם שְׁמִים אֶת  
מִבְטָחָם בְּאֱלֹהִים תָּמִיד.
- וְהָיָה אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר טַפְלָנוּ בַּפְּצוּעֵינוּ וְקִבְרָנוּ אֶת  
מֵיתֵינוּ, וְאֹף אֶת מֵיתֵי הַלְמָנִים, אֲשֶׁר מְרַבִּים



## עלמא נז:כט-נח:א

- היו, חקרנו את גיד בדבר השבויים אשר לקחו עמם להורידם לארץ זרעהמלה.
- 29 Now Gid was the chief captain over the band who was appointed to guard them down to the land.
- 30 And now, these are the words which Gid said unto me: Behold, we did start to go down to the land of Zarahemla with our prisoners. And it came to pass that we did meet the spies of our armies, who had been sent out to watch the camp of the Lamanites.
- 31 And they cried unto us, saying—Behold, the armies of the Lamanites are marching towards the city of Cumeni; and behold, they will fall upon them, yea, and will destroy our people.
- 32 And it came to pass that our prisoners did hear their cries, which caused them to take courage; and they did rise up in rebellion against us.
- 33 And it came to pass because of their rebellion we did cause that our swords should come upon them. And it came to pass that they did in a body run upon our swords, in the which, the greater number of them were slain; and the remainder of them broke through and fled from us.
- 34 And behold, when they had fled and we could not overtake them, we took our march with speed towards the city Cumeni; and behold, we did arrive in time that we might assist our brethren in preserving the city.
- 35 And behold, we are again delivered out of the hands of our enemies. And blessed is the name of our God; for behold, it is he that has delivered us; yea, that has done this great thing for us.
- 36 Now it came to pass that when I, Helaman, had heard these words of Gid, I was filled with exceeding joy because of the goodness of God in preserving us, that we might not all perish; yea, and I trust that the souls of them who have been slain have entered into the rest of their God.
- והם קראו אלינו לאמר: חילות הלמנים מתקדמים אל עבר העיר קומני. הם יתקפוה וישמידו את אנשינו.
- והיה כי שמעו שבויינו את קריאותיהם; והם לבשו אומץ והתקוממו עלינו במרד.
- ומפני מרידתם הפגינו את חרבותינו אליהם. והם רצו כאיש אחד אל חרבותינו, וכה הומתו רבם. והנותרים מהם פרוצו ונמלטו מאתנו.
- ואחר אשר הם ברחו, ואנחנו לא יכלנו להשיגם, צעדנו במהרה אל העיר קומני. והנה, הגענו בשעה אשר יכלנו לעזור לאחינו להחזיק בעיר.
- ואכן, אף הפעם נצילנו מיד אויבינו. ברוך שם אלהינו, כי הוא אשר הצילנו, ועשה לנו את הדבר הגדול הזה.
- ואני, הילמן, בשמעי את דברי גיד אלה, מלאתי שמחה רבה מפני טוב אלהים לשמרנו, לבל נאבד כלנו. ומאמין אני כי נשמות ההרוגים באו אל מנוחת אלהיהם.

## נח

## 58

- 1 And behold, now it came to pass that our next object was to obtain the city of Manti; but behold, there was no way that we could lead them out of the city by our small bands. For behold, they remembered that which we had hitherto done; therefore we could not decoy them away from their strongholds.
- ועתה משימתנו היתה לתפוש את העיר מנטי. ואולם לא היתה לנו כל דרך להוציא את הלמנים מן העיר על ידי גדודינו הקטנים, כי הם זכרו את אשר עשינו עד כה. לכן לא יכלנו לפתותם לצאת ממעוזיהם.

- 2 And they were so much more numerous than was our army that we durst not go forth and attack them in their strongholds.
- 3 Yea, and it became expedient that we should employ our men to the maintaining those parts of the land which we had regained of our possessions; therefore it became expedient that we should wait, that we might receive more strength from the land of Zarahemla and also a new supply of provisions.
- 4 And it came to pass that I thus did send an embassy to the governor of our land, to acquaint him concerning the affairs of our people. And it came to pass that we did wait to receive provisions and strength from the land of Zarahemla.
- 5 But behold, this did profit us but little; for the Lamanites were also receiving great strength from day to day, and also many provisions; and thus were our circumstances at this period of time.
- 6 And the Lamanites were sallying forth against us from time to time, resolving by stratagem to destroy us; nevertheless we could not come to battle with them, because of their retreats and their strongholds.
- 7 And it came to pass that we did wait in these difficult circumstances for the space of many months, even until we were about to perish for the want of food.
- 8 But it came to pass that we did receive food, which was guarded to us by an army of two thousand men to our assistance; and this is all the assistance which we did receive, to defend ourselves and our country from falling into the hands of our enemies, yea, to contend with an enemy which was innumerable.
- 9 And now the cause of these our embarrassments, or the cause why they did not send more strength unto us, we knew not; therefore we were grieved and also filled with fear, lest by any means the judgments of God should come upon our land, to our overthrow and utter destruction.
- 10 Therefore we did pour out our souls in prayer to God, that he would strengthen us and deliver us out of the hands of our enemies, yea, and also give us strength that we might retain our cities, and our lands, and our possessions, for the support of our people.
- 11 Yea, and it came to pass that the Lord our God did visit us with assurances that he would deliver us; yea, insomuch that he did speak peace to our souls, and did grant unto us great faith, and did cause us that we should hope for our deliverance in him.
- וְהָיָה עָלֵינוּ לְהַעֲסִיק אֶת אַנְשֵׁינוּ בְּהַגְנַת אֲזוּרֵי אֶרֶץ נִחְלָתָנוּ אֲשֶׁר הִשְׁבֹּנוּ לְשִׁלְטָנָנוּ; לָכֵן הָיָה עָלֵינוּ לְחַכּוֹת לְקַבֵּלֶת תַּגְבֻּרַת מֵאֶרֶץ זְרַחֵמְלָה וְכֵן לְאַסְפֹּקֶת מְזוֹן נוֹסֶפֶת.
- אִזּוּ שָׁגַרְתִּי מִשְׁלַחַת אֶל מוֹשֵׁל אֶרֶצְנוּ, לְהוֹדִיעֵנוּ עַל אוֹדוֹת מִצָּב אַנְשֵׁינוּ. וְאַנְחָנוּ חֲפִינוּ לְקַבֵּלֶת אֲסָפָקָה וּלְתַגְבִּירַת מֵאֶרֶץ זְרַחֵמְלָה.
- אָךְ זֹאת לֹא הוֹעִילָתָנוּ דָּבָר, יַעַן אֲשֶׁר קִבְּלוּ גַם הַלָּמָנִים תַּגְבֻּרַת גְּדוֹלָה, וְאִף אֲסָפָקָה רַבָּה, מִדֵּי יוֹם בְּיוֹמוֹ. כִּזֹּה הָיָה מִצָּבָנוּ בְּעֵת הַהִיא.
- וְהַלָּמָנִים הָיוּ עוֹרְכִים גִּיחוֹת עָלֵינוּ מִדֵּי פַעַם בְּפַעַם, כִּי זָמְמוּ לְהַשְׁמִידָנוּ; אָךְ אֲנַחְנוּ לֹא יָכֵלְנוּ לְהִכָּנֵס עִמָּם לְקָרֵב, מִפְּנֵי מְקוֹמוֹת מִפְּלָטָם וּמַעֲזֵיהֶם.
- וּבִנְסֻבוֹת הַקָּשׁוֹת הָאֵלֶּה צָפִינוּ חֲדָשִׁים רַבִּים לָעֲזָרָה, עַד כִּי כְּמַעַט גּוֹעֲנוּ מִחֹסֶר מְזוֹן.
- וְאוּלָּם, אַחֲרֵי כֵן קִבְּלָנוּ מְזוֹן, אֲשֶׁר נִשְׁלַח אֵלֵינוּ תַּחַת שְׁמִירַת צָבָא בֶּן אַלְפִים אִישׁ אֲשֶׁר בָּא לָעֲזָרָנוּ. וְזֹאת כָּל הָעֲזָרָה אֲשֶׁר קִבְּלָנוּ לְהַגְנָתָנוּ וּלְהַגְנַת אֶרֶצְנוּ מִנֶּפֶל לַיָּדִי אוֹיְבֵינוּ, וּלְהִלָּחֵם עִם אוֹיֵב אֲשֶׁר לֹא יִמָּנָה.
- וְאַנְחָנוּ לֹא יָדַעְנוּ אֶת סִבַּת הַמְּבוּכָה הַזֹּאת, מִדּוּעַ לֹא נִשְׁלַחָה אֵלֵינוּ תַּגְבֻּרַת גְּדוֹלָה יוֹתֵר. לָכֵן נִעֲצָבְנוּ וְאִף יִרְאָנוּ, פֶּן יָבוֹא עַל אֶרֶצְנוּ דִּין אֱלֹהִים, לְהַשְׁלִיכָנוּ וּלְכַלּוֹתָנוּ תַּכְלִית כָּלִיוֹן.
- לָכֵן שָׁפַכְנוּ אֶת לִבָּנוּ בַּתְּפִלָּה לִפְנֵי אֱלֹהִים, כִּי יַחֲזִקְנוּ וְיַצִּילְנוּ מִיַּד אוֹיְבֵינוּ, וְאִף כִּי יַחֲזִקְנוּ לְמַעַן נִשְׁמַר עַל עִרְנוּ וְאֲדָמוֹתֵינוּ וְנִחְלּוֹתֵינוּ בַּעֲבוּר קִיּוֹם עַמָּנוּ.
- וַיְהוּה אֱלֹהֵינוּ פָּקְדָנוּ בַּדְּבָרִים, כִּי אָכֵן יַצִּילָנוּ; וְהוּא נָתַן שְׁלוֹהַ לְנַפְשׁוֹתֵינוּ, וְהָעֵינִק לָנוּ אֱמוּנָה עֲזָה, וְהַפִּיחַ בָּנוּ תִקְוָה כִּי הֵצֵל יַצִּילָנוּ.

- 12 And we did take courage with our small force which we had received, and were fixed with a determination to conquer our enemies, and to maintain our lands, and our possessions, and our wives, and our children, and the cause of our liberty.
- וַאֲנַחְנוּ הִתְאַזְרְנוּ עִזְ בְּחִילָנוּ הַקָּטָן אֲשֶׁר קִבְּלָנוּ, וְנִמְרְנוּ אִמְרוּ לְהַכְנִיעַ אֶת אוֹיְבֵינוּ, וּלְהִגֵּן עַל אֲדָמוֹתֵינוּ וְעַל רְכוּשֵׁנוּ וְעַל נְשֵׁינוּ וְעַל יְלָדֵינוּ וְעַל עֲנֵן חֲרוּתָנוּ.
- 13 And thus we did go forth with all our might against the Lamanites, who were in the city of Manti; and we did pitch our tents by the wilderness side, which was near to the city.
- כֹּה יֵצְאוּנוּ בְּכָל כֹּחַנוּ עַל הַלְּמָנִים, אֲשֶׁר הָיוּ בְּעִיר מַנְטִי; וְנָטִינוּ אֶת אֹהֲלֵינוּ אֶל עֵבֶר הַיַּעַר אֲשֶׁר לִיד הָעִיר.
- 14 And it came to pass that on the morrow, that when the Lamanites saw that we were in the borders by the wilderness which was near the city, that they sent out their spies round about us that they might discover the number and the strength of our army.
- וּלְמַחֲרָת, כְּאֲשֶׁר רָאוּ הַלְּמָנִים כִּי הָייְנוּ בְּגִבּוֹל הַיַּעַר אֲשֶׁר לִיד הָעִיר, הֵם שָׁלְחוּ אֶת מְרַגְלֵיהֶם לְסַבִּיבוֹתֵינוּ, לְגַלוֹת אֶת מִסְפַּר חִילֵינוּ וְאֶת כֹּחַנוּ.
- 15 And it came to pass that when they saw that we were not strong, according to our numbers, and fearing that we should cut them off from their support except they should come out to battle against us and kill us, and also supposing that they could easily destroy us with their numerous hosts, therefore they began to make preparations to come out against us to battle.
- וּבְרֹאֲתָם כִּי אֵינָנו חֲזָקִים, עַל פִּי מִסְפָּרָנוּ, וּבְחֻשָּׁשׁ כִּי נִנְתַּק אוֹתָם מִמְּקוֹר אֲסַפְּקָתָם, אִם לֹא יֵצְאוּ לְהִלָּחֵם בָּנוּ וּלְהַרְגֵנוּ, וַיַּעַן אֲשֶׁר דָּמוּ כִּי יִקַּל עֲלֵיהֶם לְכַלּוֹתָנוּ בְּצִבְאָם הָרַב, הֵם הִחֲלוּ לְהַעֲרוֹךְ לְקִרְאָת יִצְיָאָה לְקָרֵב עָלֵינוּ.
- 16 And when we saw that they were making preparations to come out against us, behold, I caused that Gid, with a small number of men, should secrete himself in the wilderness, and also that Teomner and a small number of men should secrete themselves also in the wilderness.
- וְכַאֲשֶׁר רָאינוּ כִּי הֵם נֹעֲרָכִים לְקָרֵב עָלֵינוּ, צִוִּיתִי אֶת גִּיד וּמִסְפַּר אַנְשִׁים קָטָן לְהִסְתֵּר בַּיַּעַר, וְאֶת טְאוֹמְנֵר וּמִסְפַּר אַנְשִׁים קָטָן לְהִסְתֵּר בַּיַּעַר אֲףִי הֵם.
- 17 Now Gid and his men were on the right and the others on the left; and when they had thus secreted themselves, behold, I remained, with the remainder of my army, in that same place where we had first pitched our tents against the time that the Lamanites should come out to battle.
- הִנֵּה, גִּיד וְאֲנָשָׁיו הָיוּ מִיְמִין וְהָאַחֲרִים מִשְׁמָאל; וּבְעוֹד אֵלֶּה מִתְחַבְּאִים, נִשְׁאַרְתִּי אֲנִי, עִם שְׂאֵר צִבְאִי, בְּמִקוֹם אֲשֶׁר נָטִינוּ בּוֹ אֶת אֹהֲלֵינוּ בְּרִאשׁוֹנָה, לְקִרְאָת יִצְיָאָה הַלְּמָנִים הַצֹּפִיָּה אֶל הַקָּרֵב.
- 18 And it came to pass that the Lamanites did come out with their numerous army against us. And when they had come and were about to fall upon us with the sword, I caused that my men, those who were with me, should retreat into the wilderness.
- אִזּוּ יֵצְאוּ הַלְּמָנִים בְּצִבְאָם הָרַב עָלֵינוּ. וּבִבּוֹאָם, כְּאֲשֶׁר עָמְדוּ לְהִתְקַיֵּנוּ בַּחֲרֵב, צִוִּיתִי אֶת אַנְשֵׁי אֲשֶׁר עִמִּי לְסָגֹת אֶל הַיַּעַר.
- 19 And it came to pass that the Lamanites did follow after us with great speed, for they were exceedingly desirous to overtake us that they might slay us; therefore they did follow us into the wilderness; and we did pass by in the midst of Gid and Teomner, insomuch that they were not discovered by the Lamanites.
- וְהַלְּמָנִים רָדְפוּ אַחֲרֵינוּ בְּמַהֲירוֹת רַבָּה, מִפְּנֵי תַשׁוּקָתָם הַעֲזָה לְהַשִּׁיגֵנוּ וּלְהַרְגֵנוּ; לְכֹן הֵם דָּלְקוּ בְּעִקְבוֹתֵינוּ אֶל תּוֹךְ הַיַּעַר. וְאֲנַחְנוּ עָבְרָנוּ בֵּין גִּיד וּבֵין טְאוֹמְנֵר, אֲךָ הַלְּמָנִים לֹא גִלוּם.
- 20 And it came to pass that when the Lamanites had passed by, or when the army had passed by, Gid and Teomner did rise up from their secret places, and did cut off the spies of the Lamanites that they should not return to the city.
- וְכַאֲשֶׁר חָלְפָם צִבְא הַלְּמָנִים, יֵצְאוּ גִיד וְטְאוֹמְנֵר מִמְּקוֹם מְחֻבְּאוֹם וַיִּנְתְּקוּ אֶת מְרַגְלֵי הַלְּמָנִים מֵעֵרֶם, לְבָל יָשׁוּבוּ אֵלֶיהָ.

- 21 And it came to pass that when they had cut them off, they ran to the city and fell upon the guards who were left to guard the city, insomuch that they did destroy them and did take possession of the city.
- 22 Now this was done because the Lamanites did suffer their whole army, save a few guards only, to be led away into the wilderness.
- 23 And it came to pass that Gid and Teomner by this means had obtained possession of their strongholds. And it came to pass that we took our course, after having traveled much in the wilderness towards the land of Zarahemla.
- 24 And when the Lamanites saw that they were marching towards the land of Zarahemla, they were exceedingly afraid, lest there was a plan laid to lead them on to destruction; therefore they began to retreat into the wilderness again, yea, even back by the same way which they had come.
- 25 And behold, it was night and they did pitch their tents, for the chief captains of the Lamanites had supposed that the Nephites were weary because of their march; and supposing that they had driven their whole army therefore they took no thought concerning the city of Manti.
- 26 Now it came to pass that when it was night, I caused that my men should not sleep, but that they should march forward by another way towards the land of Manti.
- 27 And because of this our march in the night-time, behold, on the morrow we were beyond the Lamanites, insomuch that we did arrive before them at the city of Manti.
- 28 And thus it came to pass, that by this stratagem we did take possession of the city of Manti without the shedding of blood.
- 29 And it came to pass that when the armies of the Lamanites did arrive near the city, and saw that we were prepared to meet them, they were astonished exceedingly and struck with great fear, insomuch that they did flee into the wilderness.
- 30 Yea, and it came to pass that the armies of the Lamanites did flee out of all this quarter of the land. But behold, they have carried with them many women and children out of the land.
- 31 And those cities which had been taken by the Lamanites, all of them are at this period of time in our possession; and our fathers and our women and our children are returning to their homes, all save it be those who have been taken prisoners and carried off by the Lamanites.
- וְאַחַר עֲשׂוּתָם זֹאת, הֵם רָצוּ אֶל הָעִיר וְתָקְפוּ  
אֶת שׁוּמְרֶיהָ אֲשֶׁר נֹתְרוּ לְהִגֹּן עָלֶיהָ; וְהֵם  
הִשְׁמִידוּם וְכָבְשׁוּ אֶת הָעִיר.
- זֹאת קָרָה, כִּי הַלָּמָנִים הִנִּיחוּ לְכָל צָבָאָם,  
זוֹלַת שׁוּמְרִים בּוֹדְדִים, לָצֵאת אֶל הַיַּעַר.
- בְּאִפֹּן זֶה הִצְלִיחוּ גִיד וְטֵאוֹמְנֵר לְהִשְׁתַּלֵּט עַל  
מְעֻזֵּיהֶם. וְאַנְחֵנוּ, אַחֵר מִסַּע אֶרֶץ בֵּיעֵר, שָׁמָּנוּ  
פְּעָמֵינוּ אֶל עֵבֶר אֶרֶץ יִרְעָהְמָלָה.
- וְכַאֲשֶׁר נֹכְחוּ הַלָּמָנִים לָדַעַת כִּי הֵם צוֹעֲדִים  
אֶל אֶרֶץ יִרְעָהְמָלָה, גָּבַר פַּחַדָם מְאֹד, פֶּן חֲרָשָׁה  
מְזֻמָּה לְהוֹבִילָם אֵלָי כְּלִיוֹ; לָכֵן הֵם הִחִילוּ לִסְגֹּת  
אֶל הַיַּעְרוֹת, לָשׁוּב בַּדֶּרֶךְ אֲשֶׁר בָּאוּ בָּהּ.
- וְהִנֵּה, בַּלַּיְלָה הֵם נָטוּ אֶת אֹהֲלֵיהֶם, יַעַן אֲשֶׁר  
סָבְרוּ שָׂרֵי צָבָאָם כִּי יָגִעוּ הַנֶּפְתִּיִּים מִמִּסְעָם.  
וַיַּעַן אֲשֶׁר דָּמּוּ כִּי הֵם הִדְפּוּ אֶת כָּל צָבָאָנוּ,  
הֵם הִתְעַלְמוּ מִן הָעִיר מִנְטִי.
- וּבִרְדַּת הַלַּיְלָה צִוִּיתִי עַל אַנְשֵׁי לַחֲשׂוֹף  
שָׁנָה מִעֵינֵיהֶם וּלְצַעֵד לְקִרְאָת אֶרֶץ מִנְטִי  
בַּדֶּרֶךְ אַחֲרָת.
- וְהִנֵּה, עַל יְדֵי מִסְעָנוּ זֶה הַלַּיְלָה, הָיִינוּ לְמַחֲרַת  
מֵעֵבֶר לְמַחְנֵה הַלָּמָנִים; כֹּה הִגַּעְנוּ לְפָנֵיהֶם  
אֶל הָעִיר מִנְטִי.
- בַּתְּחֻבּוּלָה הַזֹּאת עָלָה בִּידֵנוּ לְכַבֵּשׁ אֶת הָעִיר  
מִנְטִי לֹלֵא שְׁפִיכַת דָּמִים.
- וְכַאֲשֶׁר הִגִּיעוּ חִילוֹת הַלָּמָנִים אֶל קִרְבַּת הָעִיר,  
וַרְאוּ כִּי נִכּוֹנִים אֲנַחְנוּ לִפְגֹּשׁם, הֵם הִפְתָּעוּ  
מְאֹד וְהָכּוּ בַּפֶּחַד גָּדוֹל, עַד כִּי נָסוּ אֶל הַיַּעַר.
- כֹּה נָסוּ חִילוֹת הַלָּמָנִים מִכָּל חֶבֶל הָאָרֶץ  
הַזֶּה; אַף הֵם נָשְׂאוּ עִמָּם נָשִׁים וְיֻלְדִּים רַבִּים  
מִן הָאָרֶץ.
- וְאֲשֶׁר לָעָרִים אֲשֶׁר כָּבְשׁוּ הַלָּמָנִים, כָּלֵן  
נִמְצְאוֹת הַיּוֹם בִּידֵינוּ; וְהוֹרִינוּ וְנָשִׂינוּ וְיֻלְדֵינוּ  
שׁוֹבִים כָּלֵם אֶל בְּתֵיהֶם, מִבְּלַעֲדֵי הַשְּׁבוּיִים  
אֲשֶׁר לְקַחוּם הַלָּמָנִים מֵאֶרְצָנוּ.

- 32 But behold, our armies are small to maintain so great a number of cities and so great possessions.
- ואולם, חילותינו קטנים מהחזיק מספר ערים כה רב ונחלות כה גדולות.
- 33 But behold, we trust in our God who has given us victory over those lands, insomuch that we have obtained those cities and those lands, which were our own.
- על אף זאת, הננו שמים את מבטחנו באלהינו אשר נתן לנו נצחון בשטחים האלה, ועל ידי קבלנו את הערים והנחלות אשר היו קנייננו.
- 34 Now we do not know the cause that the government does not grant us more strength; neither do those men who came up unto us know why we have not received greater strength.
- איננו יודעים מדוע אין הממשלה נותנת לנו תגברת נוספת. אף האנשים אשר באו אלינו אינם יודעים מדוע לא קבלנו תוספת כח.
- 35 Behold, we do not know but what ye are unsuccessful, and ye have drawn away the forces into that quarter of the land; if so, we do not desire to murmur.
- איננו יודעים אם מפני חסר הצלחה העברת את הגיסות אל חבל הארץ ההוא. אם כן הדבר, איננו חפצים להתלונן.
- 36 And if it is not so, behold, we fear that there is some faction in the government, that they do not send more men to our assistance; for we know that they are more numerous than that which they have sent.
- ואם אין הדבר כן, חוששים אנחנו כי יש בממשלה סיעה, אשר מפניה אין שולחים אלינו חילים נוספים לעזרתנו, יען אשר יודעים אנחנו כי רבים הם מאלה אשר שלחו אלינו.
- 37 But, behold, it mattereth not—we trust God will deliver us, notwithstanding the weakness of our armies, yea, and deliver us out of the hands of our enemies.
- אך אחת היא; הננו בוטחים כי אלהים יצילנו על אף חלשת צבאנו, אכן, כי הוא יצילנו מידי אויבנו.
- 38 Behold, this is the twenty and ninth year, in the latter end, and we are in the possession of our lands; and the Lamanites have fled to the land of Nephi.
- הנה, זאת אחרית שנת עשרים ותשע ואנחנו מחזיקים באדמותינו, והלמנים נסו אל ארץ נפי.
- 39 And those sons of the people of Ammon, of whom I have so highly spoken, are with me in the city of Manti; and the Lord had supported them, yea, and kept them from falling by the sword, insomuch that even one soul has not been slain.
- ובני עם עמון ההם, אלה אשר הללתי בדברי, נמצאים עתה עמי בעיר מנטי; והיה תמכם ושמכם מנפל בחרב, עד כי לא נהרגה אף נפש אחת מהם.
- 40 But behold, they have received many wounds; nevertheless they stand fast in that liberty wherewith God has made them free; and they are strict to remember the Lord their God from day to day; yea, they do observe to keep his statutes, and his judgments, and his commandments continually; and their faith is strong in the prophecies concerning that which is to come.
- והנה, הם נפצעו פצעים רבים; על אף זאת, עומדים הם איתנים בחרות אשר על ידיה עשה אותם אלהים בני חרין; והם מקפידים לזכר את יהוה אלהיהם יום-יום. והם שומרים תמיד לקיים את חקיו ואת משפטי ואת מצוותיו; וחזקה אמונתם בנבואות על אשר עתיד לבוא.
- 41 And now, my beloved brother, Moroni, may the Lord our God, who has redeemed us and made us free, keep you continually in his presence; yea, and may he favor this people, even that ye may have success in obtaining the possession of all that which the Lamanites have taken
- ועתה, אחי האהוב, מורוני, יהי רצון מלפני יהוה אלהינו, אשר גאלנו ועשנו חפשיים, לשמרך לפני תמיד; יהי רצון כי יחן את העם הזה, וכי יעלה בידך לקבל את השליטה על



כָּל אֲשֶׁר לָקְחוּ הַלְּמָנִים מֵאַתְנֹו, אֲשֶׁר הָיָה  
לְמַחֲיָתָנֹו. וְהִנֵּנִי חֹתֵם אֶת אֲנִרְתִּי, אֲנִי הֵילָמֹן  
בֶּן עֲלָמָא.

from us, which was for our support. And now, behold, I close mine  
epistle. I am Helaman, the son of Alma.

## נִט

## 59

וְהָיָה בְּשִׁנַּת שְׁלִישִׁים לְשִׁלְטֹון הַשּׁוֹפְטִים בָּעַם  
נְפִי, אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר קָבַל מֹרֹנִי אֶת אֲנִרְתִּי הֵילָמֹן  
וְקִרְאָהּ, הוּא שָׂמַח מְאֹד מִפְּנֵי הַרוּחָה  
וְהַהֲצָלָה הַמְרֻבָּה אֲשֶׁר הָיְתָה לְהֵילָמֹן  
בַּהֲשָׁבַת הַשְּׂטָחִים אֲשֶׁר אָבְדוּ.

וְהוּא הוֹדִיעַ אֶת הַדָּבָר לְכָל עַמּוֹ, בְּכָל הָאָרֶץ  
אֲשֶׁר סָבִיב, בְּאַזּוֹר אֲשֶׁר יָשָׁב, לְמַעַן יִשְׂשֻׁוּ  
אִף הֵם.

וּמֹרֹנִי מֵהֵרָ לְשַׁלַּח אֲנִרְתִּי אֶל פְּחוֹרֹן, וּבְקִשׁ  
מִמֶּנּוּ כִּי יַצְוֶה לְקַבֵּץ אַנְשִׁים לְחַזֵּק אֶת הֵילָמֹן  
וְחֵילוֹ, בְּעֵבֹר יָגֹן בְּקִלּוֹת עַל חֶבֶל הָאָרֶץ הַהוּא,  
אֲשֶׁר הוּא הַצִּלִּיחַ לְהַשְׁבִּיב בְּדֶרֶךְ נֶס כֹּה גָדוֹל.

וְהָיָה אַחֵר שָׁלְחוּ אֶת הָאֲנִרְתִּי הַזֹּאת אֶל אָרֶץ  
זֶרַחְמֵלָה, הַחֵל מֹרֹנִי שְׁנִית לְהַכִּין תְּכֵנִית  
לְהַשְׁיב אֶת שְׂאֵר הַקִּנְיָן וְהָעָרִים אֲשֶׁר פָּבְשׁוּ  
מֵהֶם הַלְּמָנִים.

וּבְעוֹד מֹרֹנִי מְתַכַּנֵּן לְצִאת לְמַלְחָמָה עַל  
הַלְּמָנִים, הִתְקִיפוּ אֵלָהּ אֶת אַנְשֵׁי נְפִיָּהָה,  
אֲשֶׁר נֶאֱסָפוּ מִן הָעִיר מֹרֹנִי וּמִן הָעִיר לְחִי  
וּמִן הָעִיר מוֹרִיאֲטוֹן.

אָכֵן, הַלְּמָנִים אֲשֶׁר אֱלָצוּ לְנוֹס מֵאָרֶץ מְנָטִי  
וּמִן הָאָרֶץ אֲשֶׁר סָבִיבָהּ, בָּאוּ וְהִתְחַבְּרוּ אֶל  
הַלְּמָנִים בְּחֶבֶל הָאָרֶץ הַזֶּה.

וְכֵן עָצוּם וָרַב הָיָה צֶבָא הַלְּמָנִים, וְהוּא  
הִתְחַזַּק מִדֵּי יוֹם, עַד כִּי בִפְקֻדַּת עֲמֹרֹון הֵם  
יָצְאוּ לְהִלָּחֵם בְּאַנְשֵׁי נְפִיָּהָה וְהִחִלוּ לְטַבֵּחַ  
בָּהֶם טָבַח רַב.

אָכֵן, כֹּה עָצוּמִים הָיוּ חֵילוֹתֵיהֶם, עַד כִּי נֶאֱלָצוּ  
שְׂאִרֵּית יוֹשְׁבֵי נְפִיָּהָה לְנוֹס מִפְּנֵיהֶם. וְהֵם בָּאוּ  
אֶל צֶבָא מֹרֹנִי וְחִבְּרוּ אֵלָיו.

1 Now it came to pass in the thirtieth year of the reign of the judges over  
the people of Nephi, after Moroni had received and had read Helaman's  
epistle, he was exceedingly rejoiced because of the welfare, yea, the  
exceeding success which Helaman had had, in obtaining those lands  
which were lost.

2 Yea, and he did make it known unto all his people, in all the land round  
about in that part where he was, that they might rejoice also.

3 And it came to pass that he immediately sent an epistle to Pahoran,  
desiring that he should cause men to be gathered together to strengthen  
Helaman, or the armies of Helaman, insomuch that he might with ease  
maintain that part of the land which he had been so miraculously  
prospered in regaining.

4 And it came to pass when Moroni had sent this epistle to the land  
of Zarahemla, he began again to lay a plan that he might obtain the  
remainder of those possessions and cities which the Lamanites had  
taken from them.

5 And it came to pass that while Moroni was thus making preparations  
to go against the Lamanites to battle, behold, the people of Nephihah,  
who were gathered together from the city of Moroni and the city of  
Lehi and the city of Morianton, were attacked by the Lamanites.

6 Yea, even those who had been compelled to flee from the land of  
Manti, and from the land round about, had come over and joined the  
Lamanites in this part of the land.

7 And thus being exceedingly numerous, yea, and receiving strength  
from day to day, by the command of Ammoron they came forth  
against the people of Nephihah, and they did begin to slay them with  
an exceedingly great slaughter.

8 And their armies were so numerous that the remainder of the people  
of Nephihah were obliged to flee before them; and they came even and  
joined the army of Moroni.

וּבְהִנִּיחַ מוֹרוֹנִי כִּי יִשְׁלַחוּ חִילִּים מֵאַרְץ  
זְרַעְחֶמְלָה אֶל הָעִיר נְפִיחָה, לְעֹזֹר לְיוֹשְׁבֶיהָ  
לְהִגֹּן עָלֶיהָ; וּבִידְעוּ כִּי קֵל לְשָׁמֵר עַל הָעִיר  
מִנֶּפֶל לְיַד הַלְּמָנִים מֵאֲשֶׁר לָשׁוּב וּלְכַבֶּשָׁה  
מִיַּדֵּיהֶם, הוּא שְׁעָר כִּי עַל נִקְלָה יִגְנוּ אֲנָשֶׁיהָ  
עַל הָעִיר הַזֹּאת.

לָכֵן הוּא הִחְזִיק אֶת כָּל חִילוֹ לְהִגֹּן עַל  
הַמְּקוֹמוֹת אֲשֶׁר שִׁחְרָרָם.

וְהָיָה בְּרֹאוֹת מוֹרוֹנִי כִּי נִפְלָה הָעִיר נְפִיחָה,  
הוּא נֶעְצֵב מְאֹד וְהָחֵל לִפְקֹק, פֶּן יִפֹּל הָעָם,  
מִפְּנֵי רָשָׁעַת אֲנָשָׁיו, בְּיַד אֲחֵיהֶם הַלְּמָנִים.

כֹּה נִרְאָה הַדְּבָר בְּעֵינָיו כָּל שְׂרָי צָבָאוֹ. אִף הֵם  
פִּקְּקוּ וְתַמְּהוּ עַל רָשָׁעַת הָעָם, וְזֹאת מִפְּנֵי  
נִצְחוֹן הַלְּמָנִים עָלֵיהֶם.

וּמוֹרוֹנִי רָגַז עַל אֲנָשֵׁי מְמַשְׁלָתוֹ, מִפְּנֵי  
אֲדִישׁוּתָם בְּדִבְרֵי חֲרוֹת אֶרֶץ.

9 And now as Moroni had supposed that there should be men sent to the city Nephiah, to the assistance of the people to maintain that city, and knowing that it was easier to keep the city from falling into the hands of the Lamanites than to retake it from them, he supposed that they would easily maintain that city.

10 Therefore he retained all his force to maintain those places which he had recovered.

11 And now, when Moroni saw that the city of Nephiah was lost he was exceedingly sorrowful, and began to doubt, because of the wickedness of the people, whether they should not fall into the hands of their brethren.

12 Now this was the case with all his chief captains. They doubted and marveled also because of the wickedness of the people, and this because of the success of the Lamanites over them.

13 And it came to pass that Moroni was angry with the government, because of their indifference concerning the freedom of their country.

## ס

## 60

וּמוֹרוֹנִי כָּתַב שְׁנִית אֶל מוֹשֵׁל הָאֶרֶץ, פַּחוֹרָן.  
וְאֵלֶּה הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר כָּתַב, לְאֹמֶר: הִנְנִי מִפְּנֵה  
אֶת אֲגֻרְתִּי אֶל פַּחוֹרָן, אֲשֶׁר בְּעִיר זְרַעְחֶמְלָה,  
וְהוּא הַשּׁוֹפֵט הָעֶלְיוֹן וּמוֹשֵׁל הָאֶרֶץ, וְכֵן אֶל  
כָּל הַנִּבְחָרִים עַל יְדֵי הָעָם הַזֶּה לְמִשַּׁל וּלְנַהֵל  
אֶת עֲנִינֵי הַמְּלַחְמָה הַזֹּאת.

כִּי הִנֵּה, יֵשׁ לִי דְבַר־מָה לֹאמַר לָהֶם, דְּבַר  
הָאֲשָׁמָה. יְדוּעַ לָכֶם הֵיטֵב כִּי מִנִּיתֶם לַגִּיס  
אֲנָשִׁים וּלְחַמְשֵׁם בְּחֻרְבוֹת וּבַפְּגִיזוֹת וּבְכָל  
מִינֵי כָּלִי נָשֶׁק, וּלְשַׁלְּחֵם לְמִלְחָמָה עַל  
הַלְּמָנִים בְּכָל חֲלָמִי אֶרְצָנוּ אֲשֶׁר יִפְּלֹשׁוּ.

הִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם כִּי אֲנִי וְאֲנָשִׁי, וְכֵן הִילְמָן  
וְאֲנָשָׁיו, סָבְלוּ סִבָּל גָּדוֹל מְאֹד; רָעַב וְצָמָא  
וְיָגִיעָה וְכָל מִינֵי יְסוּרִים.

וְאֵלֹי הָיָה זֶה כָּל סָבְלָנוּ לֹא הִיָּתָה בְּפִינוּ תִּלְנָה  
אוֹ טַעְנָה.

אֲדָּהֵנָּה, רַב הָיָה הַהֲרָג בְּקֶרֶב אֲנָשֵׁינוּ. אֲכֹן,  
אֲלָפִים נָפְלוּ בְּחֻרְבַּי, בְּעוֹד אֲשֶׁר אֲחֶרֶת הָיוּ

1 And it came to pass that he wrote again to the governor of the land, who was Pahoran, and these are the words which he wrote, saying: Behold, I direct mine epistle to Pahoran, in the city of Zarahemla, who is the chief judge and the governor over the land, and also to all those who have been chosen by this people to govern and manage the affairs of this war.

2 For behold, I have somewhat to say unto them by the way of condemnation; for behold, ye yourselves know that ye have been appointed to gather together men, and arm them with swords, and with cimeters, and all manner of weapons of war of every kind, and send forth against the Lamanites, in whatsoever parts they should come into our land.

3 And now behold, I say unto you that myself, and also my men, and also Helaman and his men, have suffered exceedingly great sufferings; yea, even hunger, thirst, and fatigue, and all manner of afflictions of every kind.

4 But behold, were this all we had suffered we would not murmur nor complain.

5 But behold, great has been the slaughter among our people; yea, thousands have fallen by the sword, while it might have otherwise been

יכולים להיות פני הדברים אלו שלחתם אל  
חילותינו די תגברת ועזרה. אכן, רבה היתה  
הזנחתכם אותנו.

if ye had rendered unto our armies sufficient strength and succor for  
them. Yea, great has been your neglect towards us.

והנה, רצוננו לדעת את סבת ההזנחה  
הגדולה והחמורה הזאת; אכן, חפצנו לדעת  
את סבת מחדלכם מן המחשבה והדאגה.

6 And now behold, we desire to know the cause of this exceedingly great  
neglect; yea, we desire to know the cause of your thoughtless state.

התחשבו כי תשבו על כסאות השלטון  
שקועים בטמטום וקהות המחשבה, בעוד  
אויביכם זורעים מות סביבכם, אכן, בעודם  
רוצחים אלפים מאחיהם?

7 Can you think to sit upon your thrones in a state of thoughtless stupor,  
while your enemies are spreading the work of death around you? Yea,  
while they are murdering thousands of your brethren—

אכן, אלה אשר נשאו עיניהם אליכם להגנה,  
הם אשר הושיבוכם בתפקיד אשר תוכלו  
לעזור להם. ואתם יכולתם לשלח אליהם חילים  
לחקם ולהציל אלפים מהם מנפל בחרב.

8 Yea, even they who have looked up to you for protection, yea, have  
placed you in a situation that ye might have succored them, yea, ye  
might have sent armies unto them, to have strengthened them, and  
have saved thousands of them from falling by the sword.

ואין זה הכל; מנעתם מהם את אספקת  
המזון אשר בידיכם, עד כי רבים נלחמו  
והגירו את דמיהם עד תמס לגוע, כי עז  
רצונם היה טובת העם. וזאת עשו בהיותם  
עומדים למות ברעב, אשר באם אחר  
הזנחתכם הגדולה אשר הזנחתם אותם.

9 But behold, this is not all—ye have withheld your provisions from  
them, insomuch that many have fought and bled out their lives because  
of their great desires which they had for the welfare of this people; yea,  
and this they have done when they were about to perish with hunger,  
because of your exceedingly great neglect towards them.

ועתה, אחי האהובים, הן עליכם להיות  
אהובים, ועליכם לעזור עצמכם ביד  
שקידה למען טובת העם הזה וחרותו;  
אך הנה, הזנחתם עד כי דם אלפים יחול  
לנקמה על ראשכם, כי יודע אלהים את  
כל שועותיהם ואת כל סבלותיהם.

10 And now, my beloved brethren—for ye ought to be beloved; yea, and ye  
ought to have stirred yourselves more diligently for the welfare and the  
freedom of this people; but behold, ye have neglected them insomuch  
that the blood of thousands shall come upon your heads for vengeance;  
yea, for known unto God were all their cries, and all their sufferings—

התחשבו כי תוכלו לשבת על כסאות  
שלטונכם ומפני טוב אלהים, השופע לרב,  
לא תעשו דבר והוא יצילכם? אם כן  
תחשבו, שוא מחשבתכם.

11 Behold, could ye suppose that ye could sit upon your thrones, and  
because of the exceeding goodness of God ye could do nothing and he  
would deliver you? Behold, if ye have supposed this ye have supposed  
in vain.

התחשבו כי יען אשר נהרגו כה רבים  
מאחיהם היה זאת מפני רשעתם? הנני אומר  
לכם, כי אם כן תחשבו, שוא מחשבתכם.  
אכן, אני אומר לכם: רבים נפלו בחרב, ואתם  
אשמים בדאגה.

12 Do ye suppose that, because so many of your brethren have been killed  
it is because of their wickedness? I say unto you, if ye have supposed  
this ye have supposed in vain; for I say unto you, there are many who  
have fallen by the sword; and behold it is to your condemnation;

כי מניח יהוה לצדיק להרג, למען יבוא דינו  
ומשפטו על הרשע. על כן אל תחשבו כי  
הריגת הצדיקים היא אבדנם, כי באים הם  
אל מנוחת יהוה אלהיהם.

13 For the Lord suffereth the righteous to be slain that his justice and  
judgment may come upon the wicked; therefore ye need not suppose  
that the righteous are lost because they are slain; but behold, they do  
enter into the rest of the Lord their God.

- 14 And now behold, I say unto you, I fear exceedingly that the judgments of God will come upon this people, because of their exceeding slothfulness, yea, even the slothfulness of our government, and their exceedingly great neglect towards their brethren, yea, towards those who have been slain.
- וְהִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, יֵרָא אֲנִי מְאֹד כִּי מִשְׁפָּטֵי אֱלֹהִים יַחֲלוּ עַל הָעָם הַזֶּה, מִפְּנֵי רֹב רְפִיּוֹנוֹ, וּמִפְּנֵי רְפִיּוֹן מִמְּשָׁלֵתָנוּ וְהִזְנָחָתָם הַגְּדוֹלָה אֶת אֶחְיָהֶם, אַכּוֹ, אֶת אֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר נִהָרְגוּ.
- 15 For were it not for the wickedness which first commenced at our head, we could have withstood our enemies that they could have gained no power over us.
- הֵן לוֹלֵא הָרָשָׁעָה אֲשֶׁר רָאשִׁיתָהּ הִיתָה בְּמִנְהִיגֵינוּ, הֵייוּ עוֹמְדִים בְּפָנֵי אוֹיְבֵינוּ וְהֵם לֹא הָיוּ גּוֹבְרִים עָלֵינוּ.
- 16 Yea, had it not been for the war which broke out among ourselves; yea, were it not for these king-men, who caused so much bloodshed among ourselves; yea, at the time we were contending among ourselves, if we had united our strength as we hitherto have done; yea, had it not been for the desire of power and authority which those king-men had over us; had they been true to the cause of our freedom, and united with us, and gone forth against our enemies, instead of taking up their swords against us, which was the cause of so much bloodshed among ourselves; yea, if we had gone forth against them in the strength of the Lord, we should have dispersed our enemies, for it would have been done, according to the fulfilling of his word.
- לוֹלֵא הַמִּלְחָמָה אֲשֶׁר פָּרְצָה בְּקִרְבָּנוּ, אַכּוֹ, לוֹלֵא הַמְּלוּכָנִים אֲשֶׁר הִסְבּוּ לָנוּ שְׂפִיכוֹת דָּמִים כֹּה רַבָּה; לוֹלֵא רִבּוֹנוּ בֵּינֵינוּ וְהֵייוּ מֵאַחָדִים אֶזְ אֶת כֹּחֵנוּ, כְּפִי אֲשֶׁר עָשִׂינוּ לְפָנֵים; לוֹלֵא תַאֲוַת הַמְּלוּכָנִים הָאֵלֶּה לְכַח וְלִשְׁרָרָה עָלֵינוּ, אֱלוֹ הָיוּ נֶאֱמָנִים לְעֵנֶן חֲרוּתָנוּ וְהָיוּ מֵתִאַחָדִים עִמָּנוּ יוֹצֵאִים עַל אוֹיְבֵינוּ בְּמִקּוֹם לְצֹאת עָלֵינוּ בְּחִרְבוּתֵיהֶם, וּבְזֹאת מְסַבִּים לָנוּ שְׂפִיכוֹת דָּמִים כֹּה רַבָּה, אֱלוֹ יִצְאָנוּ עַל אוֹיְבֵינוּ בְּעֹז יְהוָה, הֵייוּ מְפִיִּצִים אוֹתָם, וּבְזֹאת הָיָה מִתְקַנֵּם דְּבָרוֹ.
- 17 But behold, now the Lamanites are coming upon us, taking possession of our lands, and they are murdering our people with the sword, yea, our women and our children, and also carrying them away captive, causing them that they should suffer all manner of afflictions, and this because of the great wickedness of those who are seeking for power and authority, yea, even those king-men.
- אֲךָ הִנֵּה הַלָּמָנִיתִים עוֹלִים עָלֵינוּ; הֵם כּוֹבְשִׁים אֶת אֲדָמוֹתֵינוּ וְהוֹרְגִים בְּחֶרֶב אֶת אֲנָשֵׁינוּ, אֶת נְשֵׁינוּ וְאֶת יְלָדֵינוּ; הֵם אַף לּוֹקְחִים אוֹתָם בְּשָׁבִי וּבְזֹאת מְסַבִּים לָהֶם תַּלְאוֹת לָרֹב. וְכֹל זֹאת מִפְּנֵי רָשָׁעַת הַמְּבַקְשִׁים כֹּחַ וְשִׁרְרָה, הֲלֹא הֵם הַמְּלוּכָנִים.
- 18 But why should I say much concerning this matter? For we know not but what ye yourselves are seeking for authority. We know not but what ye are also traitors to your country.
- וּמַדּוּעַ אֶרְבֶּה לְדַבֵּר עַל זֹאת? אֵינָנו יוֹדְעִים, כִּי אִם אוֹלֵי אַף אַתֶּם רוֹדְפִים שְׂרָרָה; אוֹלֵי אַף אַתֶּם בְּגַדְתֶּם בְּאַרְצְכֶם.
- 19 Or is it that ye have neglected us because ye are in the heart of our country and ye are surrounded by security, that ye do not cause food to be sent unto us, and also men to strengthen our armies?
- וְאוֹלֵי זִנְחָתֶם אוֹתָנוּ, כִּי הֵנֶכֶם יוֹשְׁבִים בְּלֵב הָאָרֶץ, כְּאֲשֶׁר הַבְּטָחוֹן מִקִּיפְכֶם, וְלָכֵן אֵינְכֶם מוֹרִים לְשַׁלַּח אֵלֵינוּ מִזֹּון וְאֲנָשִׁים, לְחַזֵּק אֶת חֵילָנוּ?
- 20 Have ye forgotten the commandments of the Lord your God? Yea, have ye forgotten the captivity of our fathers? Have ye forgotten the many times we have been delivered out of the hands of our enemies?
- הֲאִם שָׁכַחְתֶּם אֶת מִצְוֹת יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵיכֶם? הֲשָׁכַחְתֶּם אֶת שְׁעָבוֹד אֲבוֹתֵינוּ? הֲשָׁכַחְתֶּם כִּי הוּא הִצִּילָנוּ פְּעָמִים רַבּוֹת מִיַּד אוֹיְבֵינוּ?
- 21 Or do ye suppose that the Lord will still deliver us, while we sit upon our thrones and do not make use of the means which the Lord has provided for us?
- הֲתִחַשְׁבוּ כִּי יוֹסִיף יְהוָה לְהִצִּילָנוּ בְּעֵת שְׁבִתָּנוּ עַל כִּסֵּי הַשְּׁלִטוֹן, מִבְּלִי אֲשֶׁר הִשְׁתַּמְשְׁנוּ בְּאִמְצָעִים אֲשֶׁר נָתַן לָנוּ?

- 22 Yea, will ye sit in idleness while ye are surrounded with thousands of those, yea, and tens of thousands, who do also sit in idleness, while there are thousands round about in the borders of the land who are falling by the sword, yea, wounded and bleeding?
- 23 Do ye suppose that God will look upon you as guiltless while ye sit still and behold these things? Behold I say unto you, Nay. Now I would that ye should remember that God has said that the inward vessel shall be cleansed first, and then shall the outer vessel be cleansed also.
- 24 And now, except ye do repent of that which ye have done, and begin to be up and doing, and send forth food and men unto us, and also unto Helaman, that he may support those parts of our country which he hath regained, and that we may also recover the remainder of our possessions in these parts, behold it will be expedient that we contend no more with the Lamanites until we have first cleansed our inward vessel, yea, even the great head of our government.
- 25 And except ye grant mine epistle, and come out and show unto me a true spirit of freedom, and strive to strengthen and fortify our armies, and grant unto them food for their support, behold I will leave a part of my freemen to maintain this part of our land, and I will leave the strength and the blessings of God upon them, that none other power can operate against them—
- 26 And this because of their exceeding faith, and their patience in their tribulations—
- 27 And I will come unto you, and if there be any among you that has a desire for freedom, yea, if there be even a spark of freedom remaining, behold I will stir up insurrections among you, even until those who have desires to usurp power and authority shall become extinct.
- 28 Yea, behold I do not fear your power nor your authority, but it is my God whom I fear; and it is according to his commandments that I do take my sword to defend the cause of my country, and it is because of your iniquity that we have suffered so much loss.
- 29 Behold it is time, yea, the time is now at hand, that except ye do bestir yourselves in the defence of your country and your little ones, the sword of justice doth hang over you; yea, and it shall fall upon you and visit you even to your utter destruction.
- הַתְּשִׁבוּ בְּעִצְלָתִים, מִקָּפִים בְּאַלְפִים וּבְרִבְבוֹת הַיּוֹשְׁבִים אִף הֵם בְּטֵל, בְּאִשֶּׁר בְּגִבּוֹלוֹת הָאָרֶץ יֵשׁ אַלְפִים הַנוֹפְלִים בַּחֶרֶב, פְּצוּעִים וְשׁוֹתֵתִים דָּם?
- הַתְּחַשְׁבוּ כִּי יִרְאֶה אֱלֹהִים אֶתְכֶם נְקִיִּים מֵאֵשׁ, בְּעוֹדְכֶם יוֹשְׁבִים דּוֹמְמִים וּמְבִיטִים עַל הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה? הֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, לֹא! מִי יִתֵּן כִּי תִזְכְּרוּ אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים הַאוֹמֵר כִּי יֵשׁ לְטָהָר בְּרִאשׁוֹנָה אֶת פְּנִים הַכְּלִי, וְאַחֵר כִּדּוֹ יִטְהָרוּ גַם פְּנֵי הַכְּלִי הַחִיצוֹנִים.
- וְעַתָּה, אִם לֹא תִנָּחֲמוּ עַל מַעֲשֵׂיכֶם וְתִקְוּמוּ לַפְּעֻלָּה, וְתִשְׁלַחוּ מְזוֹן וְאֲנָשִׁים אֵלֵינוּ וְאֶל הַיְלָמוֹן, בְּעֵבֹר יוֹכֵל הַיְלָמוֹן לְכַלֵּל אֶת חֻלְקֵי אֶרְצֵנוּ אֲשֶׁר הִשְׁיָבָם, וּבְעֵבֹר נֹכַח אִף אֲנַחְנוּ לְהָשִׁיב אֶת שְׂאֵר קִנְיָנֵנוּ בְּחֻלְקֵי הָאָרֶץ הָאֵלֶּה, רְאוּיִי יִהְיֶה לָנוּ לְחַדֵּל מִן הַמִּלְחָמָה בְּלִמְנִים, וּלְהַקְדִּים לְטָהָר אֶת פְּנִים פְּלִינֵנוּ, אֲשֶׁר הוּא רֹאשׁ מִמְשַׁלְתָּנוּ הַגָּדוֹל.
- וּבִלְתִּי אִם תִּקְבְּלוּ אֶת דְּבָרֵי אֲגֻרְתִּי, וְתִרְאוּנִי רוּחַ חֵירוּת שְׁלָמָה, וְתִתְּאֲמָצוּ לְחֹזֶק וּלְגִבּוֹר אֶת חֵילוֹתֵינוּ וּלְסַפֵּק לָהֶם מְזוֹן לְכַלֵּלָתָם, אֲפָרִישׁ אֲנִי חֶלֶק מִבְּנֵי הַחֵירוּת אֲשֶׁר עִמִּי לְהִגֵּן עַל חֵבֶל הָאָרֶץ הַזֶּה, וְאֲנִי אֲנִים עֲלֵיהֶם אֶת כֹּחַ אֱלֹהִים וְאֶת בְּרִכְתּוֹ, בְּעֵבֹר לֹא יוֹכֵל כָּל כֹּחַ אַחֵר לַפְּעֹל נִגְדָם;
- וְזֹאת מִפְּנֵי אֲמוּנָתָם הַעֲזָה וְאֶרְךְ רוּחָם בְּיָמֵי תְּלָאָתָם;
- וְאֲנִי אֲבֹא אֵלֵיכֶם, וְאִם יִהְיֶה בָכֶם מִי אֲשֶׁר יֵשׁ בְּלִבּוֹ תְּשׁוּקַת חֵירוּת, אִם אֵד נֹתֵר בָּכֶם נִיצוֹץ חֵירוּת, אֲזִי אֶעֱוֹרֵר בְּתוֹכְכֶם הַתְּקוּמָמוֹת, עַד אֲשֶׁר יִכְחַדּוּ כָּל הַמִּתְאַוִּים לַתַּפְּשׁ כֹּחַ וּשְׁרָרָה.
- הִנֵּה, אֵינֶנִּי יִירָא אֶת כֹּחְכֶם וְאֶת שְׁלֹטוֹנְכֶם, כִּי אֶת אֱלֹהֵי אֲנֹכִי יִירָא. וְעַל פִּי מִצְוֹתָיו נוֹשֵׂא אֲנִי אֶת חֶרְבִּי לְהִגֵּן עַל עַמִּי אֶרְצִי; וְהֵן בְּעוֹנֵיכֶם סָבְלָנוּ אֲבִדוֹת כֹּה גְדוֹלוֹת.
- הִנֵּה הַגִּיעָה וּבָאָה הָעַתָּה, וְהִיא אִם לֹא תִתְעוֹרְרוּ לְהִגָּן אֶרְצְכֶם וְלְהִגָּן לְיָדֵיכֶם, תִּפֹּל עֲלֵיכֶם חֶרֶב הַדִּין הַתְּלִיָּה מֵעֲלֵיכֶם; אֲכֹן, הִיא פְּקוּדַת תְּפָקְדְכֶם וְהִיא אַחֲרִיתְכֶם כְּלִיּוֹן חָרוֹץ.



- 30 Behold, I wait for assistance from you; and, except ye do administer unto our relief, behold, I come unto you, even into the land of Zarahemla, and smite you with the sword, insomuch that ye can have no more power to impede the progress of this people in the cause of our freedom.
- הַנְּנִי מַצְפֶּה לְעֻזְרְתְּכֶם, וְאִם לֹא תִשְׁרְתוּ אֶת רוּחֲתֵנּוּ, קוֹם אָקוּם עֲלֵיכֶם אִף בְּאַרְצָא זָרָהֶמְלָה, לְהַכּוֹתְכֶם בַּחֶרֶב, עַד אֲשֶׁר לֹא יִהְיֶה בְּכֶם כָּל כֹּחַ לְעַצֹּר אֶת הַתְּקַדְמוֹת הָעַם הַזֶּה בְּעֵנֵן חֲרוּתָנּוּ.
- 31 For behold, the Lord will not suffer that ye shall live and wax strong in your iniquities to destroy his righteous people.
- הֵן לֹא יִתִּיר יְהוָה כִּי תַחֲיוּ בַעֲוֹנוֹתֵיכֶם וְתַחֲזְקוּ לְמַעַן תִּכְחִידוּ אֶת עַם צְדִיקוֹ.
- 32 Behold, can you suppose that the Lord will spare you and come out in judgment against the Lamanites, when it is the tradition of their fathers that has caused their hatred, yea, and it has been redoubled by those who have dissented from us, while your iniquity is for the cause of your love of glory and the vain things of the world?
- הַתְּחַשְׁבוּ כִּי יַחֹס יְהוָה עֲלֵיכֶם וְיִשְׁפֹּט אֶת הַלְּמָנִיטִים, בְּאֲשֶׁר מִסִּרְתָּ אֲבוֹתֵיהֶם הִיא אֲשֶׁר זָרְעָה בָּהֶם אֶת שִׂנְאָתָם? וְכֹאֲשֶׁר הַמִּשְׁטָמָה הַזֹּאת נִכְפְּלָה וְהִתְעַצְמָה עַל יְדֵי הַנִּפְלְגִים מֵאַתָּנּוּ, בְּעוֹד אֲשֶׁר אַתֶּם פּוֹשְׁעִים לְמַעַן אֲהַבֵּת הַתְּהַלָּה וְהַבְּלִי הָעוֹלָם?
- 33 Ye know that ye do transgress the laws of God, and ye do know that ye do trample them under your feet. Behold, the Lord saith unto me: If those whom ye have appointed your governors do not repent of their sins and iniquities, ye shall go up to battle against them.
- וְאַתֶּם יוֹדְעִים כִּי עוֹבְרִים אַתֶּם עַל חֻקֵּי אֱלֹהִים, אִף רוֹמְסִים אוֹתָם בְּרַגְלֵיכֶם. הִנֵּה אוֹמֵר יְהוָה אֵלַי: וְהָיָה אִם לֹא יִנָּחְמוּ הַמִּמְנִים עַל יְדֵיכֶם לְמוֹשְׁלִים מִחֻסְטָאִיהֶם וּמַעֲוֹנוֹתֵיהֶם, יֵצְאוּ תַצְאוּ לְקָרֵב עֲלֵיהֶם.
- 34 And now behold, I, Moroni, am constrained, according to the covenant which I have made to keep the commandments of my God; therefore I would that ye should adhere to the word of God, and send speedily unto me of your provisions and of your men, and also to Helaman.
- וְעַתָּה, אֲנִי, מוֹרוֹנִי, מְכֻרָח לְשֹׁמֵר אֶת מִצְוֹת אֱלֹהִי, עַל פִּי הַבְּרִית אֲשֶׁר כְּרַתִּי עִמּוֹ; עַל כֵּן חָפֵץ אֲנִי כִּי תִדְבְּקוּ בְּדִבְרֵי אֱלֹהִים וְכִי תִשְׁלְחוּ בְּמַהֲרָה מִן הָאִסְפָּקָה וּמִן הָאֲנָשִׁים אֲשֶׁר בְּרִשְׁוֹתְכֶם, אֵלַי וְכוּן אֶל הִילְמָן.
- 35 And behold, if ye will not do this I come unto you speedily; for behold, God will not suffer that we should perish with hunger; therefore he will give unto us of your food, even if it must be by the sword. Now see that ye fulfil the word of God.
- וְהִנֵּה, אִם לֹא תַעֲשׂוּ זֹאת, בְּמַהֲרָה אָבוֹא אֲנִי אֲלֵיכֶם; כִּי לֹא יִרְשְׁנוּ אֱלֹהִים לָגוֹעַ בְּרָעָב. לָכֵן הוּא יִתְּנֵנוּ מִן הַמֶּזֶן אֲשֶׁר לָכֶם, אִף אִם יִהְיֶה זֹאת בַּחֶרֶב. וְעַתָּה, הִשְׁמְרוּ לְקִים אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים.
- 36 Behold, I am Moroni, your chief captain. I seek not for power, but to pull it down. I seek not for honor of the world, but for the glory of my God, and the freedom and welfare of my country. And thus I close mine epistle.
- הַנְּנִי מוֹרוֹנִי, מִפְּקֵד צִבְאָכְכֶם. לֹא שֶׁלְטוֹן אֲנִי מִבְּקֵשׁ, כִּי אִם לְמוֹסָטוֹ. לֹא כְבוֹד מִבְּקֵשׁ אֲנִי מִבְּנֵי הָעוֹלָם, כִּי אִם אֶת תְּפָאֶרֶת אֱלֹהִי, וְאֶת חֲרוּת אֶרְצִי וְאֶת רוּחָתָהּ. וּבֹאֵת אֲנִי חוֹתֵם אֶת אֲנִיִּיתִי.

## סא

## 61

- 1 Behold, now it came to pass that soon after Moroni had sent his epistle unto the chief governor, he received an epistle from Pahoran, the chief governor. And these are the words which he received:
- וְהָיָה אַחֲרֵי שֶׁלַח מוֹרוֹנִי אֶת אֲנִיִּיתוֹ אֶל פַּחוֹרָן, הַמֹּשֵׁל הָעֲלִיוֹן, הוּא קִבֵּל מִמֶּנּוּ אֲנִיִּית וְאֵלֶּה דְּבָרָיו:

אֲנִי פְחוֹרָן, הַמּוֹשֵׁל הָעֶלְיוֹן עַל הָאָרֶץ הַזֹּאת,  
שׁוֹלַח אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה אֶל מוֹרוֹנִי, מִפְּקֵד  
הַצָּבָא. הִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לָךְ, מוֹרוֹנִי, כִּי אֵין לְבִי שֵׁשׁ  
עַל סִבְלָכֶם הָרַב, כִּי מַעֲצִיב הַדְּבָר אֶת נַפְשִׁי.

וְהִנֵּה יֵשׁ הַשָּׂשִׁים בְּסִבְלָכֶם, עַד כִּי הֵם  
הַתְּקוּמָמוֹ עָלַי בְּמֶרֶד, וְאֵין עַל אֱלֹהֵי מַאֲנָשִׁי  
אֲשֶׁר בְּנֵי חֲרוּת הֵם. וְהַמִּתְקוּמָמִים  
רַבִּים מְסֻפָּר.

וְהִנֵּה, מִיַּדִּי אֱלֹהֵי אֲשֶׁר בִּקְשׁוּ לְהַדְּיַחֲנִי מִכִּסִּי  
הַמִּשְׁפָּט בְּאֵי הָעוֹן הַגָּדוֹל הַזֶּה. בְּרַב חֲנֻפָּתָם  
הֵם הִטּוּ לִבָּב אֲנָשִׁים רַבִּים, וּבִזְזָת יָסְבוּ לָנוּ  
צָרָה גְדוֹלָה. הֵם מָנְעוּ אֶת אִסְפָּקָתָנוּ וְהִטְלִינוּ  
מוֹרָאָם עַל בְּנֵי הַחֲרוּת, אֲשֶׁר עַל כֵּן לֹא  
בָּאוּ אֵלָיָהּ.

הִנֵּה, הֵם גִּירְשׁוּנִי מִפְּנֵיהֶם וְאֵין בְּרַחֲתִי אֶל אָרֶץ  
גִּדְעוֹן, וְעַמִּי כָּל הָאֲנָשִׁים אֲשֶׁר יָכַלְתִּי לֵאסֹף.

שָׁלַחְתִּי קְרִיאָה בְּכָל חֵבֶל הָאָרֶץ הַזֶּה, וְהִנֵּה  
נוֹהָרִים אֵלֵינוּ אֲנָשִׁים מִדֵּי יוֹם, אֵל הַנֶּשֶׁק,  
לְהִגָּן עַל אֶרְצָם וְעַל חֲרוּתָם, וְלִגְמֹל עַל  
הָרָעָה אֲשֶׁר נַעֲשְׂתָה לָנוּ.

וְכֵן רַב מְסֻפָּר הַבָּאִים אֵלֵינוּ עַד כִּי עָבְרוּ  
הַמִּתְקוּמָמִים עָלֵינוּ לְהַתְּגוֹנְנוֹת. פָּחַדְנוּ נָפֶל  
עֲלֵיהֶם וְאֵין הֵם מַעֲזִים לְצֹאת עָלֵינוּ לְקָרֵב.

הִנֵּה, הֵם הִשְׁתַּלְטוּ עַל הָאָרֶץ וְעַל הָעִיר  
זֶרַעְחֶמְלָה וְהִמְלִיכוּ מֶלֶךְ עֲלֵיהֶם; וּמִלְכָּם כָּתַב  
אֶל מֶלֶךְ הַלָּמָנִים, וּבִזְזָת הַתְּחַבֵּר עִמּוֹ בְּבְרִית  
וְכֵן הוּא הִסְכִּים לְהִגָּן עַל הָעִיר זֶרַעְחֶמְלָה.  
וְהוּא חוֹשֵׁב כִּי הַהִגָּנָה הַזֹּאת תִּאֲפָשֶׁר לְלָמָנִים  
לְכַבֵּשׁ אֶת שְׂאֵר הָאָרֶץ; וְכִי אַחֵר נִצְחוֹן  
הַלָּמָנִים הֵם יִשְׁמֹוּהוּ מֶלֶךְ עַל הַנֶּפְשִׁים.

בְּאַגְרֶתְךָ נִזְפָּתָ בִּי, אֵין אֵין בְּכֹךְ חֲשִׁיבוֹת. אֵינִנִּי  
כּוֹעֵס, כִּי אִם שִׂמַּח עַל גְּדֻלַּת נַפְשִׁי. אֲנִי, פְּחוֹרָן,  
אֵינִנִּי מִבְּקֵשׁ כֹּחַ, כִּי אִם לְהוֹסִיף לְשִׁבְתָּ עַל  
כִּסִּי הַמִּשְׁפָּט, לְמַעַן שְׁמֹר אֶת זְכוּת עַמִּי וְאֶת  
חֲרוּתוֹ. נַפְשִׁי נִצְבָּת אֵיתָנָה לְמַעַן הַחֲרוּת,  
אֲשֶׁר עַל יְדִיָּה עָשְׂנוּ אֱלֹהִים חֲפָשִׁים.

הִנֵּה, נִתְּנָה לְרָשָׁע עַד כְּדֵי שְׁפִיכַת דָּמִים.  
וְאוֹלָם לֹא נִשְׁפֹּךְ אֶת דַּם הַלָּמָנִים אִם  
יִשְׁבּוּ בְּאַרְצָם.

2 I, Pahoran, who am the chief governor of this land, do send these words unto Moroni, the chief captain over the army. Behold, I say unto you, Moroni, that I do not joy in your great afflictions, yea, it grieves my soul.

3 But behold, there are those who do joy in your afflictions, yea, insomuch that they have risen up in rebellion against me, and also those of my people who are freemen, yea, and those who have risen up are exceedingly numerous.

4 And it is those who have sought to take away the judgment-seat from me that have been the cause of this great iniquity; for they have used great flattery, and they have led away the hearts of many people, which will be the cause of sore affliction among us; they have withheld our provisions, and have daunted our freemen that they have not come unto you.

5 And behold, they have driven me out before them, and I have fled to the land of Gideon, with as many men as it were possible that I could get.

6 And behold, I have sent a proclamation throughout this part of the land; and behold, they are flocking to us daily, to their arms, in the defence of their country and their freedom, and to avenge our wrongs.

7 And they have come unto us, insomuch that those who have risen up in rebellion against us are set at defiance, yea, insomuch that they do fear us and durst not come out against us to battle.

8 They have got possession of the land, or the city, of Zarahemla; they have appointed a king over them, and he hath written unto the king of the Lamanites, in the which he hath joined an alliance with him; in the which alliance he hath agreed to maintain the city of Zarahemla, which maintenance he supposeth will enable the Lamanites to conquer the remainder of the land, and he shall be placed king over this people when they shall be conquered under the Lamanites.

9 And now, in your epistle you have censured me, but it mattereth not; I am not angry, but do rejoice in the greatness of your heart. I, Pahoran, do not seek for power, save only to retain my judgment-seat that I may preserve the rights and the liberty of my people. My soul standeth fast in that liberty in the which God hath made us free.

10 And now, behold, we will resist wickedness even unto bloodshed. We would not shed the blood of the Lamanites if they would stay in their own land.

## עֲלָמָא סָא:יָא-כָא

- 11 We would not shed the blood of our brethren if they would not rise up in rebellion and take the sword against us.  
לֹא נִשְׁפָּךְ אֶת דַּם אֶחָיו אִם לֹא יִתְקוּמֻמוּ בְּמֶרֶד וַיִּשְׂאוּ עָלֵינוּ חֶרֶב.
- 12 We would subject ourselves to the yoke of bondage if it were requisite with the justice of God, or if he should command us so to do.  
הִיֵּינוּ נִכְוֹנִים לְהִכָּנֵס בְּעַל שַׁעְבּוּד, אִלוּ הָיָה זֶה עַל פִּי מִשְׁפָּט אֱלֹהִים, אוֹ אִלוּ הוּא צִוָּנוּ לַעֲשׂוֹת כֵּן.
- 13 But behold he doth not command us that we shall subject ourselves to our enemies, but that we should put our trust in him, and he will deliver us.  
וְהִנֵּה, אֵין הוּא מְצִוָּנוּ לְהִכָּנֵס לְאוֹיְבֵינוּ, כִּי אִם לְשֵׁים בּוֹ אֶת מִבְטָחֵנוּ וְהוּא יַצִּילֵנוּ.
- 14 Therefore, my beloved brother, Moroni, let us resist evil, and whatsoever evil we cannot resist with our words, yea, such as rebellions and dissensions, let us resist them with our swords, that we may retain our freedom, that we may rejoice in the great privilege of our church, and in the cause of our Redeemer and our God.  
לְכֻן, אָחִי הָאֱהוּב, מוֹרוֹנִי, הִבֵּה נִתְנַגֵּד לָרֹעַ; וְהִרַע אֲשֶׁר לֹא נוֹכַח לְהִתְנַגֵּד לוֹ בְּדִבְרֵינוּ, כְּגוֹן מֶרֶד וְהִתְפַּלְגוּת, הִבֵּה נִתְנַגֵּד לוֹ בְּחֶרֶב, לְמַעַן נִשְׁמֹר עַל חֲרוּתֵנוּ וּלְמַעַן נִשְׂמַח בְּזִכּוֹת הַגְּדוּלָּה אֲשֶׁר יֵשׁ לָנוּ בְּכִסְיֵיתֵנוּ וּבְמִשְׁפָּט גּוֹאֲלֵנוּ וְאֱלֹהֵינוּ.
- 15 Therefore, come unto me speedily with a few of your men, and leave the remainder in the charge of Lehi and Teancum; give unto them power to conduct the war in that part of the land, according to the Spirit of God, which is also the Spirit of freedom which is in them.  
עַל כֵּן בּוֹאָה אֵלַי בְּמַהֲרָה עִם אַחַדִּים מֵאֲנָשֶׁיךָ, וְהִפְקֵד אֶת לְחֵי וְטִיאֲנֻקוּם עַל הַנוֹתָרִים. הַסְמֵךְ אוֹתָם לְנַהֵל אֶת הַמִּלְחָמָה בְּחֵבֶל הָאָרֶץ הַהוּא, כְּפִי רוּחַ אֱלֹהִים, אֲשֶׁר הִיא רוּחַ הַחֲרוּת אֲשֶׁר בָּם.
- 16 Behold I have sent a few provisions unto them, that they may not perish until ye can come unto me.  
הִנֵּה, שְׁלַחְתִּי אֵלֵיהֶם אֶסְפֶּקֶת מִזֹּון מַעֲטָה לְכָל יִגְעוּ בְּטָרֶם תָּבוֹא אֵלַי.
- 17 Gather together whatsoever force ye can upon your march hither, and we will go speedily against those dissenters, in the strength of our God according to the faith which is in us.  
וּבִדְרֹךְ מִסְעָד הִנֵּה, אֶסְפָּה לָךְ חֵיל כָּלֵל אֲשֶׁר תּוֹכֵל, וּבְמַהֲרָה יֵצֵא עַל הַנִּפְלָגִים הָהֵם, בְּעֹז אֱלֹהֵינוּ, עַל פִּי הָאֱמוּנָה אֲשֶׁר בְּקִרְבָּנוּ.
- 18 And we will take possession of the city of Zarahemla, that we may obtain more food to send forth unto Lehi and Teancum; yea, we will go forth against them in the strength of the Lord, and we will put an end to this great iniquity.  
וְאֶנְחֵנוּ נִתְפֹּשׂ אֶת הָעִיר זֶרַחֶמְלָה וְנִשְׂיָג תּוֹסַפֶּת מִזֹּון וְנִשְׁלַח אוֹתָהּ אֶל לְחֵי וְאֵל טִיאֲנֻקוּם. אָכֵן, נֵצֵא אֵלֵיהֶם לְבוֹשִׁים בְּעֹז יְהוָה וְנִשְׂיָם קֵץ לַעֲוֹל הַגְּדוֹל הַזֶּה.
- 19 And now, Moroni, I do joy in receiving your epistle, for I was somewhat worried concerning what we should do, whether it should be just in us to go against our brethren.  
הִנֵּה, מוֹרוֹנִי, שֵׁשׁ אֲנִי בְּקִבְלַת אֲנִיָּתְךָ, כִּי הִיָּתָה דְּאָגָה בְּלִבִּי, מָה עָלֵינוּ לַעֲשׂוֹת וְאִם אָכֵן נִצְדָּק בִּיצִיאָתֵנוּ עַל אֶחָיו.
- 20 But ye have said, except they repent the Lord hath commanded you that ye should go against them.  
וְהִנֵּה, אֲמַרְתֶּם כִּי צִוָּךְ יְהוָה לִצְאָת עֲלֵיהֶם לְקָרֵב בְּלִתִּי אִם יִנְחָמוּ מִרְעָתָם.
- 21 See that ye strengthen Lehi and Teancum in the Lord; tell them to fear not, for God will deliver them, yea, and also all those who stand fast  
חֲזֹק אֶת לְחֵי וְאֵת טִיאֲנֻקוּם בְּאֱמוּנַת יְהוָה; אָמֹר לָהֶם כִּי לֹא יִירָאוּ, כִּי יַצִּילֵם אֱלֹהִים, וְכֻן אֶת כָּל

אשר עומדים איתנים על משמר החרות, אשר  
על ידיה עשה אותם אלהים חפשיים. ובזאת  
אני חותם את אגרותי אל אחי האהוב, מורוני.

in that liberty wherewith God hath made them free. And now I close  
mine epistle to my beloved brother, Moroni.

## סב

## 62

והיה כאשר קבל מורוני את האגרת הזאת,  
התאזר לבו אמן והוא התמלא שמחה רבה  
מאד על נאמנות פחורן ועל אשר לא בגד אף  
הוא בחרות ארצו ובענינה.

1 And now it came to pass that when Moroni had received this epistle  
his heart did take courage, and was filled with exceedingly great joy  
because of the faithfulness of Pahoran, that he was not also a traitor to  
the freedom and cause of his country.

ולבו דאב מאד על עולת האנשים אשר הדיחו  
את פחורן מכס המשפט. ובקצרה, הוא  
התאבל מפני המורדים בארצם ובאלהיהם.

2 But he did also mourn exceedingly because of the iniquity of those who  
had driven Pahoran from the judgment-seat, yea, in fine because of  
those who had rebelled against their country and also their God.

ומורוני לקח עמו אנשים מספר, כבקשת  
פחורן, ונתן את פקוד שארית צבאו בידי  
לחי וטיאנקוס, וצעד אל ארץ גדעון.

3 And it came to pass that Moroni took a small number of men, according  
to the desire of Pahoran, and gave Lehi and Teancum command over the  
remainder of his army, and took his march towards the land of Gideon.

ובכל מקום אשר אליו בא הוא הניף את נס  
החרות, וקבץ חיל ככל אשר יכל לארץ מסעו  
אל ארץ גדעון.

4 And he did raise the standard of liberty in whatsoever place he did  
enter, and gained whatsoever force he could in all his march towards  
the land of Gideon.

והיה כי אלפים נהרו אל דגלו ונשאו את  
חרבותיהם להגנת חרותם, לבל ישתעבדו.

5 And it came to pass that thousands did flock unto his standard, and did  
take up their swords in the defence of their freedom, that they might  
not come into bondage.

ואחר אשר גיס מורוני אנשים ככל אשר יכל,  
בכל מסעו, הוא הגיע אל ארץ גדעון. והוא  
חבר את חילו עם חיל פחורן והיה צבאם  
אדיר ועצום, אף חזק מאנשי פחוס מלך  
הפורשים אשר גרשו את בני החרות מארץ  
זרעהמלה והשתלטו על הארץ.

6 And thus, when Moroni had gathered together whatsoever men he  
could in all his march, he came to the land of Gideon; and uniting  
his forces with those of Pahoran they became exceedingly strong, even  
stronger than the men of Pachus, who was the king of those dissenters  
who had driven the freemen out of the land of Zarahemla and had  
taken possession of the land.

ומורוני ופחורן ירדו עם חילותיהם אל ארץ  
זרעהמלה ובאו להלחם על העיר. והם פגשו  
את אנשי פחוס וערכו עמם קרב.

7 And it came to pass that Moroni and Pahoran went down with their  
armies into the land of Zarahemla, and went forth against the city, and  
did meet the men of Pachus, insomuch that they did come to battle.

והנה, פחוס נהרג ואנשיו נשבו ופחורן הושב  
אל כס המשפט.

8 And behold, Pachus was slain and his men were taken prisoners, and  
Pahoran was restored to his judgment-seat.

ואנשי פחוס העמדו למשפט כחק, וכמוהם  
המלוכנים אשר נתפשו והשלוכו אל בית  
הכלא. והם הוצאו להורג כחק; אכן, אנשי  
פחוס והמלוכנים ההם, כל אשר לא נשא  
נשק להגנת ארצו, כי אם נלחם בה, מות

9 And the men of Pachus received their trial, according to the law, and  
also those king-men who had been taken and cast into prison; and  
they were executed according to the law; yea, those men of Pachus and  
those king-men, whosoever would not take up arms in the defence of  
their country, but would fight against it, were put to death.

- 10 And thus it became expedient that this law should be strictly observed for the safety of their country; yea, and whosoever was found denying their freedom was speedily executed according to the law.
- 11 And thus ended the thirtieth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi; Moroni and Pahoran having restored peace to the land of Zarahemla, among their own people, having inflicted death upon all those who were not true to the cause of freedom.
- 12 And it came to pass in the commencement of the thirty and first year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, Moroni immediately caused that provisions should be sent, and also an army of six thousand men should be sent unto Helaman, to assist him in preserving that part of the land.
- 13 And he also caused that an army of six thousand men, with a sufficient quantity of food, should be sent to the armies of Lehi and Teancum. And it came to pass that this was done to fortify the land against the Lamanites.
- 14 And it came to pass that Moroni and Pahoran, leaving a large body of men in the land of Zarahemla, took their march with a large body of men towards the land of Nephihah, being determined to overthrow the Lamanites in that city.
- 15 And it came to pass that as they were marching towards the land, they took a large body of men of the Lamanites, and slew many of them, and took their provisions and their weapons of war.
- 16 And it came to pass after they had taken them, they caused them to enter into a covenant that they would no more take up their weapons of war against the Nephites.
- 17 And when they had entered into this covenant they sent them to dwell with the people of Ammon, and they were in number about four thousand who had not been slain.
- 18 And it came to pass that when they had sent them away they pursued their march towards the land of Nephihah. And it came to pass that when they had come to the city of Nephihah, they did pitch their tents in the plains of Nephihah, which is near the city of Nephihah.
- 19 Now Moroni was desirous that the Lamanites should come out to battle against them, upon the plains; but the Lamanites, knowing of their exceedingly great courage, and beholding the greatness of their numbers, therefore they durst not come out against them; therefore they did not come to battle in that day.
- הוּמַת. כֹּה נַחוּץ הָיָה לְשֹׁמֵר בְּמִפְרָשׁ עַל  
הַחֹק הַזֶּה לְמַעַן בְּטָחוֹן אֶרֶץ. אָכֵן, כָּל אֲשֶׁר  
נִמְצָא שׁוֹלֵל אֶת חֲרוּתָם הוּמַת בְּמַהֲרָה כְּחֹק.
- כֹּה תָמָה שְׁנַת שְׁלֹשִׁים לְשִׁלְטוֹן הַשׁוֹפְטִים  
בְּעַם נְפִי. וּמֹרֹנִי וּפָחוֹרָן הִשְׁיבוּ אֶת הַשָּׁלוֹם  
אֶל אֶרֶץ זֶרַחֶמְלָה, בְּקִרְבָּם עִמָּם, וְהִמִּיתוּ אֶת  
כָּל אֲשֶׁר לֹא הָיוּ נְאֻמָּנִים לְעִנְיַן הַחֲרוּת.
- וּבִרְאשִׁית שְׁנַת שְׁלֹשִׁים וְאַחַת לְשִׁלְטוֹן  
הַשׁוֹפְטִים בְּעַם נְפִי, צִוָּה מֹרֹנִי לְשַׁלֵּחַ  
בְּמַהֲרָה אֶסְפֵּקֶת מְזוֹן וְחֵיל בֶּן שֵׁשֶׁת אֲלָפִים  
אִישׁ אֶל הֵילְמָן, לְעֹזֵר לוֹ לְשֹׁמֵר אֶת חֶבְל  
הָאָרֶץ הַהוּא.
- וְהוּא אֵף צִוָּה לְשַׁלֵּחַ חֵיל בֶּן שֵׁשֶׁת אֲלָפִים  
אִישׁ, מְצִידִים בְּכַמּוֹת מְזוֹן מִסְפִּיקָה, אֶל צָבָא  
לְחֵי וְטִיאֲנָקוּם; וְזֹאת לְשֵׁם חֲזוֹק הָאָרֶץ  
מִפְּנֵי הַלָּמָנִים.
- וּמֹרֹנִי וּפָחוֹרָן הִשְׁאִירוּ חֵיל גָּדוֹל בְּאֶרֶץ  
זֶרַחֶמְלָה וְצִעְדוּ בְּרֹאשׁ חֵיל גָּדוֹל אֶל אֶרֶץ  
נְפִיָּהָה, נִחוּשִׁים לְגַרֵּשׁ אֶת הַלָּמָנִים מִן  
הָעִיר הַהִיא.
- וְהָיָה בְּדֶרֶךְ מַסְעָם, הֵם תָּפְּשׁוּ כַּח גָּדוֹל  
מֵאֲנָשֵׁי הַלָּמָנִים; וְהֵם הִרְגוּ רַבִּים מֵהֶם וְלָקְחוּ  
אֶת מְזוֹנָם וְאֶת כָּלִי נֶשֶׁקָם.
- וְאַחֵר אֲשֶׁר תָּפְּשׁוּם הֵם אֶלְצוּם לְכָרֶת בְּרִית  
לְבַל יִשְׁאוּ עוֹד אֶת כָּלִי נֶשֶׁקָם עַל הַנְּפִיִּים.
- וְאַחֵר כִּרְתָּם אֶת הַבְּרִית הַזֹּאת הֵם שָׁלְחוּם  
לְגוֹר עִם אֲנָשֵׁי עַמּוֹן. וּמִסְפַּר הָאֲנָשִׁים אֲשֶׁר  
לֹא הוּמָתוּ הָיָה כְּאַרְבַּעַת אֲלָפִים.
- וְאַחֵר אֲשֶׁר שָׁלְחוּם, הֵם הִמְשִׁיכוּ בְּמַסְעָם  
אֶל אֶרֶץ נְפִיָּהָה. וּבְבוֹאָם אֶל הָעִיר נְפִיָּהָה  
הֵם נָטוּ אֶת אֹהֲלֵיהֶם בְּעֵמֶק נְפִיָּהָה אֲשֶׁר  
לִיד הָעִיר נְפִיָּהָה.
- מֹרֹנִי רָצָה כִּי יֵצְאוּ הַלָּמָנִים לְהִלָּחֵם בְּצָבָאוֹ  
בְּעֵמֶק. וְאוֹלָם הַלָּמָנִים, בְּיָדָעַם אֶת גְּדֻלַּת גְּבוּרַת  
הַנְּפִיִּים וּבִרְאוּתָם כִּי מִסְפָּרָם רַב, לֹא הָעִזּוּ  
לְצֵאתָ עֲלֵיהֶם. לָכֵן הֵם לֹא נִלְחְמוּ בַּיּוֹם הַהוּא.



- 20 And when the night came, Moroni went forth in the darkness of the night, and came upon the top of the wall to spy out in what part of the city the Lamanites did camp with their army.
- וּבִרְדֵּת הַלַּיְלָה יָצָא מוֹרוֹנִי בַחֲשֹׁכָה וְעָלָה עַל הַחוֹמָה לְצִפּוֹת הַיָּכֵן חוֹנָה צָבָא הַלְּמָנִים בְּעִיר.
- 21 And it came to pass that they were on the east, by the entrance; and they were all asleep. And now Moroni returned to his army, and caused that they should prepare in haste strong cords and ladders, to be let down from the top of the wall into the inner part of the wall.
- וְהִנֵּה, הֵם הָיוּ בְּמִזְרַח הָעִיר לִיד הַשַּׁעַר; כֻּלָּם יָשְׁנִים. וּמוֹרוֹנִי שָׁב אֶל צָבָאוֹ וְצָנָם לְהַחֲפֹז וּלְהַכִּין חֲבָלִים חֲזָקִים וְסֻלָּמוֹת, אֲשֶׁר יִשְׁלְשְׁלוּ מֵרֹאשׁ הַחוֹמָה אֶל עֲבֵרָה הַפְּנִימִי.
- 22 And it came to pass that Moroni caused that his men should march forth and come upon the top of the wall, and let themselves down into that part of the city, yea, even on the west, where the Lamanites did not camp with their armies.
- וּמוֹרוֹנִי צִוָּה אֶת אַנְשָׁיו לְהִתְקַדֵּם וּלְעֹלוֹת עַל הַחוֹמָה וּלְרִדֹת אֶל חֶלֶק הָעִיר הַמַּעֲרָבִי, אֲשֶׁר בּוֹ לֹא חָנָה צָבָא הַלְּמָנִים.
- 23 And it came to pass that they were all let down into the city by night, by the means of their strong cords and their ladders; thus when the morning came they were all within the walls of the city.
- וְהָיָה בְּאַמְצָעוֹת חֲבָלֵיהֶם הַחֲזָקִים וְסֻלָּמוֹתֵיהֶם הַשְׁתַּלְשְׁלוּ הַכָּל בַּלַּיְלָה אֶל תּוֹךְ הָעִיר; וְכֵן, בְּהָאִיר הַבֹּקֶר הָיוּ כֻּלָּם בְּתוֹךְ חוֹמוֹת הָעִיר.
- 24 And now, when the Lamanites awoke and saw that the armies of Moroni were within the walls, they were affrighted exceedingly, insomuch that they did flee out by the pass.
- וּבְהִקִּיץ הַלְּמָנִים מִשְׁנָתָם וּבִרְאוּתָם אֶת צָבָא מוֹרוֹנִי בְּתוֹךְ הָעִיר, הֵם נִבְעָתוּ מְאֹד וְנָסוּ הַחוּצָה דֶּרֶךְ הַשַּׁעַר.
- 25 And now when Moroni saw that they were fleeing before him, he did cause that his men should march forth against them, and slew many, and surrounded many others, and took them prisoners; and the remainder of them fled into the land of Moroni, which was in the borders by the seashore.
- וּכְרֹאוֹת מוֹרוֹנִי כִּי הֵם בּוֹרְחִים מִפָּנָיו הוּא פָקֵד עַל אַנְשָׁיו לְצַעֵד לְקִרְאָתָם. וַחֲיָלָיו הָרְגוּ רַבִּים מֵהֶם וְכָתְרוּ רַבִּים נוֹסְפִים וּלְקַחוּם בַּשָּׁבִי; וְהַנּוֹתָרִים בָּרְחוּ אֶל אֶרֶץ מוֹרוֹנִי אֲשֶׁר שׁוֹכְנֵת לְחוּף הַיָּם.
- 26 Thus had Moroni and Pahoran obtained the possession of the city of Nephihah without the loss of one soul; and there were many of the Lamanites who were slain.
- כֹּה כָּבְשׁוּ מוֹרוֹנִי וּפָחוֹרָן אֶת הָעִיר נְפִיָּהָה מִבְּלִי אִף אֶבְדָּה אַחַת בְּנַפְשׁ, בְּעוֹד אֲשֶׁר נִהָרְגוּ רַבִּים מִן הַלְּמָנִים.
- 27 Now it came to pass that many of the Lamanites that were prisoners were desirous to join the people of Ammon and become a free people.
- וְהָיָה כִּי רַבִּים מִן הַלְּמָנִים הַשְּׁבוּיִים חָפְצוּ לְהִתְחַבֵּר אֶל אַנְשֵׁי עַמּוֹן וּלְהִיּוֹת עִם חָפְשִׁי.
- 28 And it came to pass that as many as were desirous, unto them it was granted according to their desires.
- אִזִּי נָתַן לָהֶם כְּחֻפְצָם; כָּל הַמִּבְקֵשׁ נִעְנָה.
- 29 Therefore, all the prisoners of the Lamanites did join the people of Ammon, and did begin to labor exceedingly, tilling the ground, raising all manner of grain, and flocks and herds of every kind; and thus were the Nephites relieved from a great burden; yea, insomuch that they were relieved from all the prisoners of the Lamanites.
- לְכֹן הִתְחַבְּרוּ כָּל שְׁבוּיֵי הַלְּמָנִים אֶל אַנְשֵׁי עַמּוֹן וַהֲחִלוּ לַעֲבֹד בְּחֻרִיצוֹת רַבָּה, בְּעִבּוֹד הַקֶּרֶקֶע, וּבְגִדּוֹל כָּל מִינֵי דָגָנִים וְצֹאן וּבְקָר מְכֹל מִין. כֹּה הִשְׁתַּחֲרָרוּ הַנִּפְצִים מִן הַמַּשָּׂא הַכָּבֵד, וְעַל כָּל הַשְּׁבוּיִים הַלְּמָנִים הוֹסֵר מֵהֶם.
- 30 Now it came to pass that Moroni, after he had obtained possession of the city of Nephihah, having taken many prisoners, which did reduce
- וְהָיָה אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר לָקַח מוֹרוֹנִי שְׁבוּיִים רַבִּים בְּכָבְשׁוֹ אֶת הָעִיר נְפִיָּהָה, וּבִזְזָתָהּ הִקְטִין מְאֹד

את צבא הלמנים, ובהשיבו לו שבוים נפיים  
רבים, אשר חזקו מאד את צבאו, הוא יצא  
מארצו נפיהה אל ארץ להי.

the armies of the Lamanites exceedingly, and having regained many of the Nephites who had been taken prisoners, which did strengthen the army of Moroni exceedingly; therefore Moroni went forth from the land of Nephihah to the land of Lehi.

ובראות הלמנים כי מורוני יצא עליהם,  
אחזם שנית פחד, והם נסו מפני צבאו.

31 And it came to pass that when the Lamanites saw that Moroni was coming against them, they were again frightened and fled before the army of Moroni.

ומורוני וצבאו רדפו אחריהם מעיר אל עיר,  
עד אשר פגשו הלמנים בלחי ובטיאנקום.  
והם ברחו הרחק מהם, אל עבר חוף הים,  
עד אשר הגיעו אל ארץ מורוני.

32 And it came to pass that Moroni and his army did pursue them from city to city, until they were met by Lehi and Teancum; and the Lamanites fled from Lehi and Teancum, even down upon the borders by the seashore, until they came to the land of Moroni.

וחילות הלמנים התקבצו והיו לצבא אחד  
בארץ מורוני. ועמורון, מלך הלמנים,  
היה עמם.

33 And the armies of the Lamanites were all gathered together, insomuch that they were all in one body in the land of Moroni. Now, Ammoron, the king of the Lamanites, was also with them.

ומורוני ולחי וטיאנקום חנו עם צבאם  
סביב גבולות ארץ מורוני; כה היו הלמנים  
מקפים בגבולותיהם, ביער אשר בדרום  
וביער אשר במזרח.

34 And it came to pass that Moroni and Lehi and Teancum did encamp with their armies round about in the borders of the land of Moroni, insomuch that the Lamanites were encircled about in the borders by the wilderness on the south, and in the borders by the wilderness on the east.

כה הם חנו חנית לילה, כי הנפיים וגם  
הלמנים, היו יגעים מן המסע הגדול; ועל כן  
לא זממו כל תחבולה להפיקה לילה, זולת  
טיאנקום. כי רב היה כעסו על עמורון, יען  
אשר ראה בו ובעמליקה אחיו את סבת  
המלחמה הגדולה והממשכת הזאת בין  
הנפיים ובין הלמנים, אשר דם כה רב  
נשפך בה, ואשר הסבה רעב כה גדול.

35 And thus they did encamp for the night. For behold, the Nephites and the Lamanites also were weary because of the greatness of the march; therefore they did not resolve upon any stratagem in the night-time, save it were Teancum; for he was exceedingly angry with Ammoron, insomuch that he considered that Ammoron, and Amalickiah his brother, had been the cause of this great and lasting war between them and the Lamanites, which had been the cause of so much war and bloodshed, yea, and so much famine.

והיה כי טיאנקום יצא בחמת רוחו אל מחנה  
הלמנים והשתלשל בחבל מעבר לחומות העיר.  
והוא הלך ממקום אל מקום עד אשר מצא  
את המלך. והוא הטיל עליו חנית, והיא פצעה  
אותו ליד לבו; אף לפני מותו העיר המלך את  
משרתיו, והם רדפו אחר טיאנקום והרגוהו.

36 And it came to pass that Teancum in his anger did go forth into the camp of the Lamanites, and did let himself down over the walls of the city. And he went forth with a cord, from place to place, insomuch that he did find the king; and he did cast a javelin at him, which did pierce him near the heart. But behold, the king did awaken his servants before he died, insomuch that they did pursue Teancum, and slew him.

ובהנדע לחי ולמורוני דבר מות טיאנקום  
הם התעצבו מאד, כי הוא היה לוחם אמיץ  
למען ארצו, ידיד נאמן לחרות, ופגעים קשים  
מאד סבל בחייו. והנה הוא מת, ובדרך כל  
הארץ הלך.

37 Now it came to pass that when Lehi and Moroni knew that Teancum was dead they were exceedingly sorrowful; for behold, he had been a man who had fought valiantly for his country, yea, a true friend to liberty; and he had suffered very many exceedingly sore afflictions. But behold, he was dead, and had gone the way of all the earth.

- 38 Now it came to pass that Moroni marched forth on the morrow, and came upon the Lamanites, insomuch that they did slay them with a great slaughter; and they did drive them out of the land; and they did flee, even that they did not return at that time against the Nephites.
- 39 And thus ended the thirty and first year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi; and thus they had had wars, and bloodsheds, and famine, and affliction, for the space of many years.
- 40 And there had been murders, and contentions, and dissensions, and all manner of iniquity among the people of Nephi; nevertheless for the righteous' sake, yea, because of the prayers of the righteous, they were spared.
- 41 But behold, because of the exceedingly great length of the war between the Nephites and the Lamanites many had become hardened, because of the exceedingly great length of the war; and many were softened because of their afflictions, insomuch that they did humble themselves before God, even in the depth of humility.
- 42 And it came to pass that after Moroni had fortified those parts of the land which were most exposed to the Lamanites, until they were sufficiently strong, he returned to the city of Zarahemla; and also Helaman returned to the place of his inheritance; and there was once more peace established among the people of Nephi.
- 43 And Moroni yielded up the command of his armies into the hands of his son, whose name was Moronihah; and he retired to his own house that he might spend the remainder of his days in peace.
- 44 And Pahoran did return to his judgment-seat; and Helaman did take upon him again to preach unto the people the word of God; for because of so many wars and contentions it had become expedient that a regulation should be made again in the church.
- 45 Therefore, Helaman and his brethren went forth, and did declare the word of God with much power unto the convincing of many people of their wickedness, which did cause them to repent of their sins and to be baptized unto the Lord their God.
- 46 And it came to pass that they did establish again the church of God, throughout all the land.
- 47 Yea, and regulations were made concerning the law. And their judges, and their chief judges were chosen.
- וּלְמַחֲרָת יֵצֵא מוֹרוֹנִי בְּרֹאשׁ צָבָאוֹ וְתִקַּף אֶת  
הַלְּמָנִים וְטָבַח בָּהֶם טָבַח רַב וַיִּגְרָשׁם מִן  
הָאָרֶץ. וְהַלְּמָנִים נָסוּ וְלֹא שָׁבוּ בָּעֵת הַהִיא  
לְהִלָּחֵם בְּנַפְיִים.
- וּבִזְמַן תַּמָּה שְׁנַת שְׁלֹשִׁים וְאַחַת לְשִׁלְטוֹן  
הַשּׁוֹפְטִים בָּעָם נָפִי. כֹּה סָבְלוּ הַנְּפִיִּים  
מִלְחָמוֹת וּשְׁפִיכוֹת דָּמִים וָרָעָב וּפְגָעִים  
בְּמִשְׁךְ שָׁנִים רַבּוֹת.
- וּבָּעֵת הַהִיא פָּשׁוּ בְּקֶרֶב עִם נָפִי רְצִיחוֹת  
וּמְרִיבוֹת וּמַחְלּוֹקוֹת וְכָל מִיַּיִי מַעֲשֵׂי אָוֶן;  
וְאוֹלָם לְמַעַן הַצַּדִּיקִים וּבִזְכוּת תַּפְלוּתֵיהֶם,  
לֹא נַעֲשְׂתָה בָּעָם נָפִי כָּלָה.
- וְהִנֵּה, מִפְּנֵי מִשְׁךְ הַמִּלְחָמָה בֵּין הַנְּפִיִּים וּבֵין  
הַלְּמָנִים, אֲשֶׁר הִתְאַרְכָּה עַד מְאֹד, הִקְשׁוּ  
רַבִּים אֶת לִבָּם; וְהָיוּ רַבִּים אֲשֶׁר הִתְרַפְּפוּ לִבָּם  
מִפְּנֵי הַפְּגָעִים אֲשֶׁר סָבְלוּ; אֵלֶּה נִכְנָעוּ לִפְנֵי  
אֱלֹהִים, עַד שֶׁפָּל הַהִכְנָעָה.
- וְהָיָה אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר בָּצַר מוֹרוֹנִי אֶת חִלְקֵי הָאָרֶץ  
הַחֲשׂוּפִים בְּיוֹתֵר לַפְּגִיעַת הַלְּמָנִים וְחָזַקם  
יָדִים, הוּא שָׁב אֶל הָעִיר זֶרַחֶמְלָה; וְאַף הִילָּמֵן  
שָׁב אֶל נַחֲלָתוֹ. כֹּה שָׁב הַשָּׁלוֹם לְשָׁכֵן בְּקֶרֶב  
עִם נָפִי.
- אֲזַי הֶעֱבִיר מוֹרוֹנִי אֶת הַפְּקוּד עַל חִילוּתָיו לְיָדֵי  
בְּנוֹ, אֲשֶׁר שְׁמוֹ נִקְרָא מוֹרוֹנִיחָה; וְהוּא שָׁב אֶל  
בֵּיתוֹ, לְכָלוֹת אֶת שְׂאֵרֵי יָמָיו בְּשָׁלוֹה.
- וּפָחֳרוֹן שָׁב אֶל כִּסֵּי הַמִּשְׁפָּט, וְהִילָּמֵן שָׁב  
לְהִטִּיף לָעָם אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים; כִּי מִפְּנֵי  
הַמִּלְחָמוֹת וְהַמְרִיבוֹת הָרַבּוֹת הָיָה צָרָה  
לְהִקְיָם שְׁנִית סִדְרִים בַּתּוֹךְ הַכְּנִסְיָה.
- לְכֵן יֵצְאוּ הִילָּמֵן וְאַחֵיו וְהוֹדִיעוּ אֶת דְּבַר  
אֱלֹהִים בְּרַב עֹז; כֹּה הֵם הוֹכִיחוּ לְאַנְשֵׁים רַבִּים  
עַל רְשָׁעָתָם, וּבִזְמַן הִבִּיאוּ רַבִּים לְהִנָּחֵם עַל  
חַטָּאתֵיהֶם וּלְהִטָּבֵל לְשֵׁם יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵיהֶם.
- וְהֵם אָבֹן יְסֻדוֹ שְׁנִית אֶת כְּנִסְיַת אֱלֹהִים  
בְּכָל הָאָרֶץ.
- וְהֵם קָבְעוּ סִדְרִים הַנּוֹגְעִים לַחֹק, וּבָחֲרוּ אֶת  
שׁוֹפְטֵיהֶם, נְמוּכִים וְעֲלִיּוֹנִים.

- 48 And the people of Nephi began to prosper again in the land, and began to multiply and to wax exceedingly strong again in the land. And they began to grow exceedingly rich.
- וְהַצִּלְחָה שָׁבָה לְהָאִיר פְּנִיָּה לְעַם נְפִי בְּאַרְצָם, וְהֵם רַבּוּ וְהִתְחַזְּקוּ מְאֹד, וְהִתְעַשְּׂרוּ עֲשָׂר רַב.
- 49 But notwithstanding their riches, or their strength, or their prosperity, they were not lifted up in the pride of their eyes; neither were they slow to remember the Lord their God; but they did humble themselves exceedingly before him.
- וְהִנֵּה, עַל אִף עֲשָׂרָם וְכֹחָם וְהַצִּלְחָתָם הֵם לֹא נִשְׂאוּ אֶת עֵינֵיהֶם בְּגָאֹה וְלֹא מִהֲרוּ לְשַׁכַּח אֶת יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵיהֶם, כִּי אִם נִכְנָעוּ לִפְנֵי הַכֹּנֶעָה רַבָּה.
- 50 Yea, they did remember how great things the Lord had done for them, that he had delivered them from death, and from bonds, and from prisons, and from all manner of afflictions and he had delivered them out of the hands of their enemies.
- אָכֵן, הֵם זָכוּרִים מֵהַ גְּדוּלִּים הָיוּ מַעֲשֵׂי יְהוָה לְמַעַנָּם, בְּהַצִּילָם מִמָּוֶת וּמִכַּבְּלֵי שַׁעְבּוֹד, מִכָּלָא וּמִכָּל פְּגַע, וְכִי הוּא חֹלֶצֶם מִיַּד אוֹיְבֵיהֶם.
- 51 And they did pray unto the Lord their God continually, insomuch that the Lord did bless them, according to his word, so that they did wax strong and prosper in the land.
- וְהֵם הִתְפַּלְלוּ תָמִיד אֶל יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵיהֶם, עַד כִּי בִרְכָם כְּדָבָרוֹ. וְהֵם חֲזָקוּ וְעָשׂוּ חֵיל בְּאַרְצָן.
- 52 And it came to pass that all these things were done. And Helaman died, in the thirty and fifth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.
- וְהִנֵּה, כָּל הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה קָמוּ וְהָיוּ. וְהֵלְמָן מֵת בְּשָׁנַת שְׁלֹשִׁים וְחָמֵשׁ לְשִׁלְטוֹן הַשּׁוֹפְטִים בְּעַם נְפִי.

## סג

## 63

- 1 And it came to pass in the commencement of the thirty and sixth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, that Shiblon took possession of those sacred things which had been delivered unto Helaman by Alma.
- וְהָיָה בְּרֵאשִׁית שָׁנַת שְׁלֹשִׁים וָשֵׁשׁ לְשִׁלְטוֹן הַשּׁוֹפְטִים בְּעַם נְפִי, לָקַח שִׁבְלוֹן לִידָיו אֶת הַכִּפְצִי הַקֹּדֶשׁ אֲשֶׁר מָסַר עֲלָמָא לְהֵלְמָן.
- 2 And he was a just man, and he did walk uprightly before God; and he did observe to do good continually, to keep the commandments of the Lord his God; and also did his brother.
- הוּא הָיָה אִישׁ אַמֵּת וְהָלַךְ לִפְנֵי אֱלֹהִים בְּדָרוֹ מִיִּשְׂרָיִם, וּבִקֵּשׁ לַעֲשׂוֹת טוֹב תָּמִיד וּלְשַׁמֵּר אֶת מִצְוֹת יְהוָה אֱלֹהָיו; וְכִמּוֹהוּ הָיָה אָחִיו.
- 3 And it came to pass that Moroni died also. And thus ended the thirty and sixth year of the reign of the judges.
- וְהָיָה כִּי מֵת מוֹרוֹנִי אִף הוּא. כֹּה תִמָּה שָׁנַת שְׁלֹשִׁים וָשֵׁשׁ לְשִׁלְטוֹן הַשּׁוֹפְטִים.
- 4 And it came to pass that in the thirty and seventh year of the reign of the judges, there was a large company of men, even to the amount of five thousand and four hundred men, with their wives and their children, departed out of the land of Zarahemla into the land which was northward.
- וּבְשָׁנַת שְׁלֹשִׁים וָשֶׁבַע לְשִׁלְטוֹן הַשּׁוֹפְטִים יֵצְאָה קְבוּצָה גְּדוּלָּה, אֲשֶׁר מִנְתָּה חֲמִשָּׁת אֲלָפִים וָאַרְבַּע מֵאוֹת אִישׁ, עִם נְשֵׁיהֶם וְיִלְדֵיהֶם, מֵאַרְצָן זֶרַחֵמְלָה אֶל הָאָרֶץ אֲשֶׁר בַּצָּפוֹן.
- 5 And it came to pass that Hagoth, he being an exceedingly curious man, therefore he went forth and built him an exceedingly large ship, on the borders of the land Bountiful, by the land Desolation, and launched
- וְהָיָה אִישׁ אֶחָד בְּאַרְצָן, חֲגוּת שְׂמוֹ; וּבְהִיּוֹתוֹ אָמֵן מִהִיר בְּמִלְאֲכָתוֹ הוּא קָם וּבָנָה לוֹ סִפִּינָה גְּדוּלָּה וַעֲצוּמָה עַל גְּבוּל אָרֶץ רַב־שְׁפַע,

- בְּקֶרֶבֶת אֶרֶץ חֶרְבָּה; וְהוּא הִשְׁיָקָה וְהִסְיַע  
אוֹתָהּ בַּיָּם הַמַּעֲרָבִי, לִיד הַמַּעְבָּר הַצָּר  
הַמּוֹלִיד אֶל אֶרֶץ הַצָּפוֹן.
- וְהִנֵּה, רַבִּים מִן הַנְּפִיִּים נָכְסוּ לְתוֹכָהּ וְהִפְלִיגוּ  
בָּהּ צְפוֹנָה וְעִמָּהֶם צִידָה רַבָּה וְנָשִׁים וְיֻלְדִים  
רַבִּים. כֹּה תָמָה שְׁנַת שְׁלֹשִׁים וְשִׁבְעִי.
- וּבְשָׁנַת שְׁלֹשִׁים וְשִׁמּוֹנָה בָּנָה הָאִישׁ  
הַזֶּה סְפִינּוֹת נּוֹסָפוֹת. וְהִנֵּה שָׁבָה הַסְּפִינָה  
הָרִאשׁוֹנָה וְאֲנָשִׁים רַבִּים נּוֹסָפִים נָכְסוּ  
לְתוֹכָהּ. וְאֵף הֵם לָקְחוּ עִמָּהֶם צִידָה רַבָּה,  
וְהִפְלִיגוּ אֶל אֶרֶץ הַצָּפוֹן.
- וְהָיָה כִּי מַעוֹלָם לֹא נִשְׁמַע מֵהֶם דְּבָר,  
וְאֲנַחְנוּ מִשְׁעָרִים כִּי טָבְעוּ בְּמַעְמְקֵי הַיָּם.  
וְסְפִינָה נּוֹסֶפֶת הִפְלִיגָה בָּיָם, וְאֵת יַעֲדָהּ  
אֵינָנו יוֹדְעִים.
- וּבְשָׁנָה הַהִיא יָצְאוּ אֲנָשִׁים רַבִּים אֶל אֶרֶץ  
הַצָּפוֹן. וְכֹה תָמָה שְׁנַת שְׁלֹשִׁים וְשִׁמּוֹנָה.
- וְהָיָה בְּשָׁנַת שְׁלֹשִׁים וְחֲשֶׁע לְשִׁלְטוֹן הַשׁוּפָטִים  
וְשִׁבְלוֹן מֵת אָף הוּא. וְקוֹרִיאַנְטוֹן הִפְלִיג  
בְּסְפִינָה אֶל אֶרֶץ הַצָּפוֹן, לְהַבִּיא צִידָה  
לְאֲנָשִׁים אֲשֶׁר נָסְעוּ אֶל הָאֶרֶץ הַהִיא.
- עַל כֵּן רָאָה שִׁבְלוֹן לָכֻחַ לְמָסֹר, לִפְנֵי מוֹתוֹ,  
אֶת חֲפְצֵי הַקֹּדֶשׁ לְיָדֵי בֶן הֵילְמָן, אֲשֶׁר שְׁמוֹ  
נִקְרָא הֵילְמָן, עַל שֵׁם אָבִיו.
- וְהִנֵּה, כָּל הַכְּתָבִים הַחֲרוּטִים אֲשֶׁר הָיוּ בְּיַד  
הֵילְמָן, נִכְתְּבוּ וְהוּפְצוּ בֵּין בְּנֵי הָאָדָם אֲשֶׁר  
בְּכָל הָאֶרֶץ, וְזֹלַת הַחֲלָקִים אֲשֶׁר צִוָּה עַלְמָא  
לְמַנְעָם אֶת הַפָּצָתָם.
- עַל אֵף זֹאת, הָיָה עַל הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה לְהִשְׁמֹר  
בְּקִדְשָׁה וּלְהַמְסֹר מִדּוֹר לְדוֹר; לָכֵן בְּשָׁנָה הַהִיא  
נִמְסְרוּ הֵם לְיָדֵי הֵילְמָן לִפְנֵי מוֹת שִׁבְלוֹן.
- וְהָיוּ בְּשָׁנָה הַהִיא פּוֹרְשִׁים אַחֲדִים,  
אֲשֶׁר עָבְרוּ אֶל הַלְּמָנִים; וְהֵם עוֹרְרוּ מִחֲדָשׁ  
אֶת רִגְזוֹ הַלְּמָנִים עַל הַנְּפִיִּים.
- וּבַעֲצָם הַשָּׁנָה הַהִיא יָרְדוּ הַלְּמָנִים בְּצָבָא  
עֲצוּם לְהִלָּחֵם בְּאֲנָשֵׁי מוֹרוֹנִיחָה, מִשְׁמָע
- 6 And behold, there were many of the Nephites who did enter therein and did sail forth with much provisions, and also many women and children; and they took their course northward. And thus ended the thirty and seventh year.
- 7 And in the thirty and eighth year, this man built other ships. And the first ship did also return, and many more people did enter into it; and they also took much provisions, and set out again to the land northward.
- 8 And it came to pass that they were never heard of more. And we suppose that they were drowned in the depths of the sea. And it came to pass that one other ship also did sail forth; and whither she did go we know not.
- 9 And it came to pass that in this year there were many people who went forth into the land northward. And thus ended the thirty and eighth year.
- 10 And it came to pass in the thirty and ninth year of the reign of the judges, Shiblon died also, and Corianton had gone forth to the land northward in a ship, to carry forth provisions unto the people who had gone forth into that land.
- 11 Therefore it became expedient for Shiblon to confer those sacred things, before his death, upon the son of Helaman, who was called Helaman, being called after the name of his father.
- 12 Now behold, all those engravings which were in the possession of Helaman were written and sent forth among the children of men throughout all the land, save it were those parts which had been commanded by Alma should not go forth.
- 13 Nevertheless, these things were to be kept sacred, and handed down from one generation to another; therefore, in this year, they had been conferred upon Helaman, before the death of Shiblon.
- 14 And it came to pass also in this year that there were some dissenters who had gone forth unto the Lamanites; and they were stirred up again to anger against the Nephites.
- 15 And also in this same year they came down with a numerous army to war against the people of Moronihah, or against the army of



בְּצָבָאוּ. וְהָנָה, הֵם הוּבְסוּ וְגִרְשׁוּ, עַד כִּי שָׁבוּ  
אֶל אֶרְצָם וְלָהֶם אֲבֹדוֹת כְּבִדּוֹת.

Moronihah, in the which they were beaten and driven back again to their own lands, suffering great loss.

כֹּה תִמָּה שְׁנַת שְׁלֹשִׁים וְחֲשַׁע לְשִׁלְטוֹן  
הַשּׁוֹפְטִים בְּעַם נְפִי.

16 And thus ended the thirty and ninth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

וְכֹה כָּלֹ דְבָרֵי יָמֵי עֲלָמָא וְדְבָרֵי הֵילְמָן בְּנוֹ  
וְאֵף דְבָרֵי שִׁבְלוֹן בְּנוֹ.

17 And thus ended the account of Alma, and Helaman his son, and also Shiblon, who was his son.

## סֵפֶר הֵילְמָן

## THE BOOK OF HELAMAN

סְפּוֹר מַעֲשֵׂה הַנְּפִיִּים. מִלְחָמוֹתֵיהֶם, מְרִיבוֹתֵיהֶם  
וּפְלוּגֵיהֶם. נְבוֹאוֹת נְבִיאֵי קֹדֶשׁ רַבִּים עַל בּוֹא הַמֶּלֶךְ  
שִׁיחַ, עַל פִּי כְּתָבֵי הַזְכָּרוֹן אֲשֶׁר לְהֵילְמָן בֶּן הֵילְמָן  
וְעַל פִּי כְּתָבֵי בְנָיו עַד עַתָּה בּוֹא הַמֶּלֶךְ. לְמִנִּים  
רַבִּים הוֹפְכִים לְמַאֲמֵי אֱלֹהִים. סְפּוֹר צְדָקָת הַלֵּל  
מִנִּים וְרִשְׁעַת הַנְּפִיִּים וְתוֹעֲבוֹתֵיהֶם. (בְּעֶרְךָ 1-52  
לְפָנֵי הַסִּפְרָה).

*An account of the Nephites, their wars, contentions, and dissensions. Holy prophets prophesy the coming of Christ—according to the records of Helaman the son of Helaman and his sons, down to the coming of Christ. Many Lamanites are converted. An account of the righteousness of the Lamanites and of the wickedness and abominations of the Nephites. (About 52–1 B.C.)*

### א

### 1

וְהִיָּה בְּרֵאשִׁית שְׁנַת אַרְבָּעִים לְשִׁלְטוֹן  
הַשּׁוֹפְטִים בְּעַם נְפִי, צֵץ קָשִׁי חֲמוֹר בְּקֶרֶב  
עַם הַנְּפִיִּים.

1 And now behold, it came to pass in the commencement of the fortieth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, there began to be a serious difficulty among the people of the Nephites.

כִּי הִנֵּה פָּחוֹרָן מֵת, בְּדֶרֶךְ כָּל הָאָרֶץ הַלֵּל.  
וּמְרִיבָה קָשָׁה הִתְעוֹרְרָה עַל דְּבַר יִרְשֵׁת כֶּסֶם  
הַמִּשְׁפָּט בֵּין הָאֲחִים, בְּנֵי פָּחוֹרָן.

2 For behold, Pahoran had died, and gone the way of all the earth; therefore there began to be a serious contention concerning who should have the judgment-seat among the brethren, who were the sons of Pahoran.

וְאַלֶּה שְׁמוֹתֵיהֶם: פָּחוֹרָן, פָּאֲנִכִּי וּפָקוּמֵנִי.  
הֵם אֲשֶׁר רָבוּ עַל כֶּסֶם הַמִּשְׁפָּט וְאֵף עוֹרְרוּ  
מִדּוֹן בְּעַם.

3 Now these are their names who did contend for the judgment-seat, who did also cause the people to contend: Pahoran, Paanchi, and Pacumeni.

אִין אֵלֶּה כָּל בְּנֵי פָּחוֹרָן, כִּי בְּנִים רַבִּים הָיוּ לוֹ,  
כִּי אִם הֵם אֲשֶׁר רָבוּ עַל כֶּסֶם הַמִּשְׁפָּט. וְכֹךָ הֵם  
פָּלְגוּ אֶת הָעָם לְשָׁלֹשׁ מִפְּלָגוֹת.

4 Now these are not all the sons of Pahoran, (for he had many) but these are they who did contend for the judgment-seat; therefore, they did cause three divisions among the people.

וְהִנֵּה בְּרַב קוֹלוֹת הָעָם נִבְחַר פָּחוֹרָן לְשׁוֹפֵט  
עָלְיוֹן וּלְמוֹשֵׁל עַל עַם נְפִי.

5 Nevertheless, it came to pass that Pahoran was appointed by the voice of the people to be chief judge and a governor over the people of Nephi.

וְכַאֲשֶׁר רָאָה פָּקוּמֵנִי כִּי לֹא נָתַן לוֹ כֶּסֶם  
הַמִּשְׁפָּט, הוּא קָבַל אֶת דְּעַת הָעָם.

6 And it came to pass that Pacumeni, when he saw that he could not obtain the judgment-seat, he did unite with the voice of the people.

ואולם, פאנכי והמפלגה אשר חפצה כי יהיה הוא מושלם כעסו מאד, ועל כן חשב פאנכי לפתות בחלקלקות את האנשים ההם ולקום במרד על אחיהם.

ובעודו מתכוון לעשות כך, הוא נתפש ונשפט על פי דעת העם ונדון למות יען אשר קם למרד ובקש להקרית את חרות העם.

והיה בראות האנשים החפצים בו להיות מושלם כי הוא נדון למות, הם קצפו ושלחו איש אחד, קישקומן שמו, אל כס פחורן. והוא רצח את פחורן בשבתו על כסא המושפט.

ומשרתי פחורן רדפו אחרי, אך הנה, כה מהר קישקומן לנוס, עד כי לא יכול היה איש להשיגו.

והוא הלך אל שולחיו, והם כרתו כלם ברית, ונשבעו ביוצרים הנצחי כי לא יגלו לאיש כי קישקומן רצח את פחורן.

וקישקומן לא נודע בקרב עם נפי, כי בעת רצחו את פחורן היה מחפש. וקישקומן וכנפיתו, אשר כרתו עמו ברית, התערבו בקרב העם, באפן אשר לא יכול היה איש למצאם; אך כל אשר נתפש מהם נדון למות.

ופקומני נבחר על פי קול העם לשופט עליון ומושל בעם, במקום אחיו פחורן; וזאת על פי זכותו. כל זה נעשה בשנת ארבעים לשלטון השופטים וכה כלתה השנה ההיא.

והיה בשנת ארבעים ואחת לשלטון השופטים, גיסו הלמנים צבא חילים אשר לא ימנה מרב והם חמשום בחרבות ובפגיונות, בקשתות ובחצים, במגני ראש ובמגני חזה ובכל מיני שריונים.

והם שוב ירדו לאסור מלחמה על הנפיים. והנהיגם איש אשר שמו נקרא קוריאנטומר; והוא צאצא לזרע חמלה ופרש מן הנפיים; והוא היה איש בעל מדות וגבור חיל.

7 But behold, Paanchi, and that part of the people that were desirous that he should be their governor, was exceedingly wroth; therefore, he was about to flatter away those people to rise up in rebellion against their brethren.

8 And it came to pass as he was about to do this, behold, he was taken, and was tried according to the voice of the people, and condemned unto death; for he had raised up in rebellion and sought to destroy the liberty of the people.

9 Now when those people who were desirous that he should be their governor saw that he was condemned unto death, therefore they were angry, and behold, they sent forth one Kishkumen, even to the judgment-seat of Pahoran, and murdered Pahoran as he sat upon the judgment-seat.

10 And he was pursued by the servants of Pahoran; but behold, so speedy was the flight of Kishkumen that no man could overtake him.

11 And he went unto those that sent him, and they all entered into a covenant, yea, swearing by their everlasting Maker, that they would tell no man that Kishkumen had murdered Pahoran.

12 Therefore, Kishkumen was not known among the people of Nephi, for he was in disguise at the time that he murdered Pahoran. And Kishkumen and his band, who had covenanted with him, did mingle themselves among the people, in a manner that they all could not be found; but as many as were found were condemned unto death.

13 And now behold, Pacumeni was appointed, according to the voice of the people, to be a chief judge and a governor over the people, to reign in the stead of his brother Pahoran; and it was according to his right. And all this was done in the fortieth year of the reign of the judges; and it had an end.

14 And it came to pass in the forty and first year of the reign of the judges, that the Lamanites had gathered together an innumerable army of men, and armed them with swords, and with cimeters and with bows, and with arrows, and with head-plates, and with breastplates, and with all manner of shields of every kind.

15 And they came down again that they might pitch battle against the Nephites. And they were led by a man whose name was Coriantumr; and he was a descendant of Zarahemla; and he was a dissenter from among the Nephites; and he was a large and a mighty man.

- 16 לכן סבר מלך הלמנים, תובלות שמו, והוא בן עמורון, כי איש חזק בקוריאנטומר יוכל לעמד בפני הנפיים מפני עזו וחכמתו הרבה; וכי בשלחו אותו על הנפיים הוא אכן יגבר עליהם.
- 17 Therefore, the king of the Lamanites, whose name was Tubaloth, who was the son of Ammoron, supposing that Coriantumr, being a mighty man, could stand against the Nephites, with his strength and also with his great wisdom, insomuch that by sending him forth he should gain power over the Nephites—
- 17 על כן עורר המלך זעם בעמו, והוא אסף את חילותיו ומנה את קוריאנטומר להנהיגם. והוא צוה עליהם לרדת אל ארץ זרעהמלה להלחם בנפיים.
- 18 Therefore he did stir them up to anger, and he did gather together his armies, and he did appoint Coriantumr to be their leader, and did cause that they should march down to the land of Zarahemla to battle against the Nephites.
- 18 והיה מפני המריבה הרבה והקשיים בממשלה, לא הציבו הנפיים די שומרים בארץ זרעהמלה, וען אשר סברו כי הלמנים לא יעזו לבוא אל לב ארצם, לתקוף את העיר הגדולה זרעהמלה.
- 19 And it came to pass that because of so much contention and so much difficulty in the government, that they had not kept sufficient guards in the land of Zarahemla; for they had supposed that the Lamanites durst not come into the heart of their lands to attack that great city Zarahemla.
- 19 וקוריאנטומר צעד בראש צבאו הגדול והתנפל על תושבי העיר. וכה מהיר היה מסעם עד כי לא היה ספק ביד הנפיים לקבץ את צבאם.
- 20 But it came to pass that Coriantumr did march forth at the head of his numerous host, and came upon the inhabitants of the city, and their march was with such exceedingly great speed that there was no time for the Nephites to gather together their armies.
- 20 וקוריאנטומר הפך את חיל המשמר אשר בשער העיר והתקדם עם כל צבאו אל תוכה. והם הרגו את כל אשר עמדו בדרכם וכך כבשו את העיר כלה.
- 21 Therefore Coriantumr did cut down the watch by the entrance of the city, and did march forth with his whole army into the city, and they did slay everyone who did oppose them, insomuch that they did take possession of the whole city.
- 21 ופקומני, השופט העליון, ברח מפני קוריאנטומר עד חומת העיר; וקוריאנטומר הטילו נגד החומה עד כי מת. כה פלו ימי פקומני.
- 22 And it came to pass that Pacumeni, who was the chief judge, did flee before Coriantumr, even to the walls of the city. And it came to pass that Coriantumr did smite him against the wall, insomuch that he died. And thus ended the days of Pacumeni.
- 22 וכראות קוריאנטומר כי כבש את העיר זרעהמלה, וכי הנפיים נסו מפניו או נהרגו או נתפשו והשליכו אל בית הכלא, אכן, כי תפש את החזק במעוזי כל הארץ, הוא הרחיב עז בנפשו ושם פניו קדימה לכבש את כל הארץ.
- 23 And now when Coriantumr saw that he was in possession of the city of Zarahemla, and saw that the Nephites had fled before them, and were slain, and were taken, and were cast into prison, and that he had obtained the possession of the strongest hold in all the land, his heart took courage insomuch that he was about to go forth against all the land.
- 23 לכן הוא לא התמהמה בארץ זרעהמלה, וצעד עם צבא גדול אל העיר רב-שפע, כי גמר בלבו להתקדם ולפלו את דרכו בתורב בעבור יתפש את חלקי הארץ הצפוניים.
- 24 And, supposing that their greatest strength was in the center of the land, therefore he did march forth, giving them no time to assemble
- 24 ויען אשר סבר כי עקר כח הנפיים היה במרכז הארץ, הוא התקדם בלא תת להם

## הילמן א:כה-לג

שהות להקבץ, כי אם בקבוצות קטנות. באופן הזה התנפלו עליהם חיליו והכוסם ארצה.

themselves together save it were in small bodies; and in this manner they did fall upon them and cut them down to the earth.

ואולם, מסע קוריאנטומר דרך לב הארץ העניק למורוניהה יתרון גדול עליהם, על אף גדל מספר הנפיים ההרוגים.

25 But behold, this march of Coriantumr through the center of the land gave Moronihah great advantage over them, notwithstanding the greatness of the number of the Nephites who were slain.

ומורוניהה הניח כי הלמנים לא יעזו להפגס אל לב הארץ וכי הם יתקפו את הערים אשר סביב, בגבולותיה, כאשר עשו לפנים. לכן פקד מורוניהה להגן בחילותיו החזקים ביותר על חלקי הארץ אשר בגבולות.

26 For behold, Moronihah had supposed that the Lamanites durst not come into the center of the land, but that they would attack the cities round about in the borders as they had hitherto done; therefore Moronihah had caused that their strong armies should maintain those parts round about by the borders.

והנה, לא נפחדו הלמנים כצפית מורוניהה, כי אם נכנסו אל לב הארץ, ותפשו את העיר הראשית, את העיר זרעהמלה, והתקדמו דרך אזורי הארץ הראשיים, בעודם טובחים בדרךם את העם טבח רב, גברים, נשים וילדים, כאשר הם תופשים ערים רבות ומבצרים רבים.

27 But behold, the Lamanites were not frightened according to his desire, but they had come into the center of the land, and had taken the capital city which was the city of Zarahemla, and were marching through the most capital parts of the land, slaying the people with a great slaughter, both men, women, and children, taking possession of many cities and of many strongholds.

וכאשר נודע הדבר למורוניהה הוא מהר לשלח את לחי בראש צבא לעצור אותם בטרם יבואו אל ארץ רב־שפע.

28 But when Moronihah had discovered this, he immediately sent forth Lehi with an army round about to head them before they should come to the land Bountiful.

וכה עשה. הוא הקדימם טרם הגיעו אל ארץ רב־שפע, ונלחם עמם, עד אשר הם החלו לסגת ולשוב אל עבר ארץ זרעהמלה.

29 And thus he did; and he did head them before they came to the land Bountiful, and gave unto them battle, insomuch that they began to retreat back towards the land of Zarahemla.

ומורוניהה הקדימם בדרך נסיגתם ונלחם בהם עד כי היה הקרב עקב מדם. אכן, רבים היו ההרוגים וקוריאנטומר נמנה עמם.

30 And it came to pass that Moronihah did head them in their retreat, and did give unto them battle, insomuch that it became an exceedingly bloody battle; yea, many were slain, and among the number who were slain Coriantumr was also found.

עתה לא יכלו הלמנים לסגת בכל דרך, לא צפונה ולא דרומה, לא מזרחה ולא מערבה, כי כתרומם הנפיים מכל עבר.

31 And now, behold, the Lamanites could not retreat either way, neither on the north, nor on the south, nor on the east, nor on the west, for they were surrounded on every hand by the Nephites.

כה הטיל קוריאנטומר את הלמנים אל קרב הנפיים, עד כי התגברו עליהם הנפיים, והוא עצמו נהרג והלמנים נכנעו לידי הנפיים.

32 And thus had Coriantumr plunged the Lamanites into the midst of the Nephites, insomuch that they were in the power of the Nephites, and he himself was slain, and the Lamanites did yield themselves into the hands of the Nephites.

אז שב וכבש מורוניהה את העיר זרעהמלה וצוה לשלח בשלום את הלמנים השבויים מן הארץ.

33 And it came to pass that Moronihah took possession of the city of Zarahemla again, and caused that the Lamanites who had been taken prisoners should depart out of the land in peace.

34 And thus ended the forty and first year of the reign of the judges.  
כה כִּלְתָהּ שְׁנַת אַרְבָּעִים וְאַחַת לְשִׁלְטוֹן הַשּׁוֹפְטִים.

## ב

## 2

- וְהָיָה בְּשָׁנַת אַרְבָּעִים וּשְׁתַּיִם לְשִׁלְטוֹן הַשּׁוֹפְטִים, אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר הִשִּׁיב מוֹרוֹנִיָּהָ אֶת הַשְּׁלוֹם בֵּין הַנְּפִיִּים וּבֵין הַלָּמָנִים, לֹא הָיָה אִישׁ אֲשֶׁר יֵשֵׁב עַל כִּסֵּי הַמִּשְׁפָּט. לָכֵן פָּרִץ שׁוֹב בָּעָם רִיב, בְּשֹׂאֲלָה מִי יֵשֵׁב עַל כִּסֵּי הַמִּשְׁפָּט.
- 1 And it came to pass in the forty and second year of the reign of the judges, after Moronihah had established again peace between the Nephites and the Lamanites, behold there was no one to fill the judgment-seat; therefore there began to be a contention again among the people concerning who should fill the judgment-seat.
- אֲזַ נִבְחַר הִילְמָן אֲשֶׁר הוּא בֶן הִילְמָן, עַל פִּי קוֹל הָעָם, לְשִׁבְתָּה עַל כִּסֵּי הַמִּשְׁפָּט.
- 2 And it came to pass that Helaman, who was the son of Helaman, was appointed to fill the judgment-seat, by the voice of the people.
- אֲךָ הִנֵּה, קִישְׁקוּמֵן, רוֹצֵחַ פַּחוֹרָן אֲרֵב לְהַשְׁמִיד אֹף אֶת הִילְמָן, וְהוּא נִתְמָד בְּזֹאת עַל יְדֵי כְּנֻפְיָתוֹ, אֲשֶׁר כָּרְתָה בְּרִית לְהִסְתִּיר אֶת דְּבַר רָשָׁעֲתוֹ.
- 3 But behold, Kishkumen, who had murdered Pahoran, did lay wait to destroy Helaman also; and he was upheld by his band, who had entered into a covenant that no one should know his wickedness.
- וְאִישׁ אֶחָד הָיָה, גָּדִיאַנְטוֹן שְׁמוֹ, וְהוּא מְמַחָה בְּשִׁפְעַת דְּבוּרִים וְאֹף בְּכַשְׁרוֹנוֹ לְבַצֵּעַ בְּחֻשָּׁאֵי מַעֲשֵׂי רָצַח וְשׁוֹד. עַל כֵּן הוּא הָיָה לְמַנְהִיג כְּנֻפְיַת קִישְׁקוּמֵן.
- 4 For there was one Gadianton, who was exceedingly expert in many words, and also in his craft, to carry on the secret work of murder and of robbery; therefore he became the leader of the band of Kishkumen.
- הוּא הִחְלִיק דְּבָרָיו אֲלֵיהֶם וְאֵל קִישְׁקוּמֵן, בְּאַמְרוֹ כִּי אִם יוֹשִׁיבוּהוּ עַל כִּסֵּי הַמִּשְׁפָּט, הוּא יִתֵּן לְחֻבְרֵי הַכְּנֻפְיָה שְׂרָרָה וְשִׁלְטוֹן עַל הָעָם. לָכֵן בִּקֵּשׁ קִישְׁקוּמֵן לְהַשְׁמִיד אֶת הִילְמָן.
- 5 Therefore he did flatter them, and also Kishkumen, that if they would place him in the judgment-seat he would grant unto those who belonged to his band that they should be placed in power and authority among the people; therefore Kishkumen sought to destroy Helaman.
- וְהָיָה בְּלָכְתוֹ אֵל כִּסֵּי הַמִּשְׁפָּט לְהַשְׁמִיד אֶת הִילְמָן, וְהִנֵּה לִפְנֵי אֶחָד מִמְשָׁרְתֵי הִילְמָן, אֲשֶׁר הָיָה בְּלִילָה בְּחוּץ וְאֲשֶׁר נֹדַע לוֹ, עַל יְדֵי הַתַּחְפָּשׁוּת, עַל אוֹדוֹת תְּכַנִּיּוֹת הַכְּנֻפְיָה הַזֹּאת לְהַשְׁמִיד אֶת הִילְמָן.
- 6 And it came to pass as he went forth towards the judgment-seat to destroy Helaman, behold one of the servants of Helaman, having been out by night, and having obtained, through disguise, a knowledge of those plans which had been laid by this band to destroy Helaman—
- וּבַפֶּגֶשׁ הַמְּשָׁרֵת אֶת קִישְׁקוּמֵן הוּא אוֹתָהּ לוֹ אוֹת. אֲזַי הוֹדִיעַ לוֹ קִישְׁקוּמֵן אֶת חֲפָצוֹ וְכְנֻנָּתוֹ וּבִקֵּשׁ כִּי יוֹבִילוּ אֵל כִּסֵּי הַמִּשְׁפָּט לְמַעַן הִרְגֵּהוּ אֶת הִילְמָן.
- 7 And it came to pass that he met Kishkumen, and he gave unto him a sign; therefore Kishkumen made known unto him the object of his desire, desiring that he would conduct him to the judgment-seat that he might murder Helaman.
- וְאַחֵר אֲשֶׁר הוּא גָּלָה לְמְשָׁרֵת הִילְמָן אֶת כָּל לְבוֹ וְכִי כְּנֻנָּתוֹ לְרָצֹחַ, וְאֵכֶן, כִּי הִרְצַח וְהַשְׁדַּח וְהַשְׁגַּת שְׂרָרָה הָיָה חֲפֵץ כָּל חֻבְרֵי הַכְּנֻפְיָה, וְכִי זֹאת הָיְתָה תְּכַנִּיּוֹתָם הַסּוּדִית וּמְזֻמָּתָם, אָמַר הַמְּשָׁרֵת אֵל קִישְׁקוּמֵן: הִבָּה נָלְכָה אֵל כִּסֵּי הַמִּשְׁפָּט.
- 8 And when the servant of Helaman had known all the heart of Kishkumen, and how that it was his object to murder, and also that it was the object of all those who belonged to his band to murder, and to rob, and to gain power, (and this was their secret plan, and their combination) the servant of Helaman said unto Kishkumen: Let us go forth unto the judgment-seat.



וְהָיָה הַדָּבָר טוֹב עַד מְאֹד בְּעֵינֵי קִישְׁקוּמֵן. יַעֲן  
אֲשֶׁר סָבַר כִּי יַעֲלֶה בְּיָדוֹ לְבַצֵּעַ אֶת מִזְמֹתוֹ;  
וְאוֹלָם בְּלִכְתָּם אֶל כֶּסֶם הַמִּשְׁפָּט, דָּקַר מִשְׁרֵת  
הַיִּלְמָן אֶת קִישְׁקוּמֵן בְּלִבּוֹ, וְהוּא נָפַל מֵת בְּלִי  
אֲנָחָה. אַז רָץ הַמִּשְׁרֵת אֶל הַיִּלְמָן וְסִפֵּר לוֹ אֶת  
כָּל אֲשֶׁר רָאָה וְשָׁמַע וְעָשָׂה.

וְהַיִּלְמָן שָׁלַח לְתַפֵּשׂ אֶת כְּנַפְיֵת הַשּׁוֹדְדִים,  
רוֹצְחֵי הַחֶרֶשׁ, לְהוֹצִיאָם לְהוֹרֵג עַל פִּי הַחֹק.

וְאוֹלָם כְּאֲשֶׁר נֹכַח גְּדִיאֲנִטוֹן כִּי לֹא שָׁב  
קִישְׁקוּמֵן, הוּא יָרָא פֶּן יִשְׁמַד; עַל כֵּן הוּא  
צִוָּה עַל כְּנַפְיָתוֹ לָלֶכֶת אַחֲרָיו. וְהֵם בָּרְחוּ מִן  
הָאָרֶץ בְּדֶרֶךְ נִסְתָּרָת וּבְאֵל הַיַּעֲרֹת; לָכֵן  
כְּאֲשֶׁר שָׁלַח הַיִּלְמָן אֲנָשִׁים לִקְחָתָם לֹא  
נָתַן הָיָה לְמִצָּאָם.

וְעוֹד בְּדַבַּר גְּדִיאֲנִטוֹן יִסְפָּר בְּהַמְשָׁךְ. וְכֹה  
כָּלְתָה שְׁנַת אַרְבָּעִים וּשְׁתַּיִם לְשִׁלְטוֹן  
הַשּׁוֹפְטִים בְּעַם נֶפִי.

וְהִנֵּה, בְּאַחֲרִית הַסֵּפֶר הַזֶּה תִּוְכַחוּ כִּי אוֹתוֹ  
גְּדִיאֲנִטוֹן הִסֵּב אֶת מַפְלַת עַם נֶפִי, אַכֵּן כְּמַעַט  
אֶת הַשְׁמָדָתוֹ כָּלּוֹ.

אֵין כְּוִנַּנְתִּי לִסְיוֹם סֵפֶר הַיִּלְמָן, כִּי אִם לִסְיוֹם  
סֵפֶר נֶפִי, אֲשֶׁר מִמֶּנּוּ לִקְחֹתִי אֶת כָּל סֵפֹר  
הַמַּעֲשֵׂה אֲשֶׁר כָּתַבְתִּי.

9 Now this did please Kishkumen exceedingly, for he did suppose that he should accomplish his design; but behold, the servant of Helaman, as they were going forth unto the judgment-seat, did stab Kishkumen even to the heart, that he fell dead without a groan. And he ran and told Helaman all the things which he had seen, and heard, and done.

10 And it came to pass that Helaman did send forth to take this band of robbers and secret murderers, that they might be executed according to the law.

11 But behold, when Gadianton had found that Kishkumen did not return he feared lest that he should be destroyed; therefore he caused that his band should follow him. And they took their flight out of the land, by a secret way, into the wilderness; and thus when Helaman sent forth to take them they could nowhere be found.

12 And more of this Gadianton shall be spoken hereafter. And thus ended the forty and second year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

13 And behold, in the end of this book ye shall see that this Gadianton did prove the overthrow, yea, almost the entire destruction of the people of Nephi.

14 Behold I do not mean the end of the book of Helaman, but I mean the end of the book of Nephi, from which I have taken all the account which I have written.

## ג

## 3

וּבְשָׁנַת אַרְבָּעִים וּשְׁלֹשׁ לְשִׁלְטוֹן הַשּׁוֹפְטִים  
לֹא הָיְתָה כָּל מְרִיבָה בְּקֶרֶב עַם נֶפִי, וְזוֹלַת  
מְעַט גָּאֻה בְּכִנְסִיָּה, אֲשֶׁר הִסְבָּה בְּעַם  
מַחְלֻקוֹת אַחֲדוֹת, וְהֵן יָשְׁבוּ בְּאַחֲרִית  
שְׁנַת אַרְבָּעִים וּשְׁלֹשׁ.

וּבְשָׁנַת אַרְבָּעִים וָאַרְבַּע לֹא הָיְתָה כָּל  
מְרִיבָה בְּקֶרֶב הָעָם, וְאַף בְּשָׁנַת אַרְבָּעִים  
וְחָמֵשׁ לֹא הָיוּ מְרִיבוֹת קְשׁוֹת.

וְהִנֵּה בְּשָׁנַת אַרְבָּעִים וָשֶׁשׁ פָּרְצוּ מְרִיבוֹת  
קְשׁוֹת וּפְלוּגִים רַבִּים, עַד כִּי עָזְבוּ הַמּוֹנִים  
רַבִּים אֶת אֶרֶץ זְרַהֶמְלָה וְהָלְכוּ אֶל אֶרֶץ  
הַצָּפוֹן לְנַחֵל אוֹתָהּ.

1 And now it came to pass in the forty and third year of the reign of the judges, there was no contention among the people of Nephi save it were a little pride which was in the church, which did cause some little dissensions among the people, which affairs were settled in the ending of the forty and third year.

2 And there was no contention among the people in the forty and fourth year; neither was there much contention in the forty and fifth year.

3 And it came to pass in the forty and sixth, yea, there was much contention and many dissensions; in the which there were an exceedingly great many who departed out of the land of Zarahemla, and went forth unto the land northward to inherit the land.

- 4 And they did travel to an exceedingly great distance, insomuch that they came to large bodies of water and many rivers.
- וְהֵם נָסְעוּ מֵרֶחֶק רַב מְאֹד, עַד בּוֹאִים אֶל אַגְמֵי מַיִם גְּדוֹלִים וְנְהָרוֹת רַבִּים.
- 5 Yea, and even they did spread forth into all parts of the land, into whatever parts it had not been rendered desolate and without timber, because of the many inhabitants who had before inherited the land.
- אָכֵן, הֵם הִתְפַּשְׁטוּ בְּכָל חֵלְמֵי הָאָרֶץ, וְהִלְכוּ אֶל כָּל הָאֲזוּרִים אֲשֶׁר נִוְתְּרוּ בָּהֶם עֵצִים וְלֹא הִחְרְבוּ מִפְּנֵי הַתּוֹשְׁבִים הָרַבִּים אֲשֶׁר נָחְלוּ אֶת הָאָרֶץ לְפָנֵים.
- 6 And now no part of the land was desolate, save it were for timber; but because of the greatness of the destruction of the people who had before inhabited the land it was called desolate.
- וְלֹא הָיָה בָּאָרֶץ הַזֹּאת כָּל שְׁטַח חֲרָב, זֹלַת הָעֵצִים אֲשֶׁר נִכְרְתוּ; אֲךָ מִפְּנֵי הַהָרָס וְהַחְרָבוֹן אֲשֶׁר עוֹלְלוּ תוֹשְׁבֵי הָאָרֶץ הַקּוֹדְמִים, נִקְרְאָה הָאָרֶץ חֲרָבָה.
- 7 And there being but little timber upon the face of the land, nevertheless the people who went forth became exceedingly expert in the working of cement; therefore they did build houses of cement, in the which they did dwell.
- וַיְהֵן אֲשֶׁר מְעַט הָיָה הָעֵץ עַל פְּנֵי הָאָרֶץ, הִפְכוּ הַבָּאִים שָׁמָּה לְמַמְחִים בְּמִלְאֲכַת מֶלֶט; לָכֵן הֵם בָּנוּ בְּתֵי מֶלֶט וְשָׁכְנוּ בָּהֶם.
- 8 And it came to pass that they did multiply and spread, and did go forth from the land southward to the land northward, and did spread insomuch that they began to cover the face of the whole earth, from the sea south to the sea north, from the sea west to the sea east.
- וְהֵם רַבּוּ וְהִתְפַּשְׁטוּ, וְהִלְכוּ מֵאֶרֶץ הַדְּרוֹם אֶל אֶרֶץ הַצָּפוֹן; וְהֵם כֹּה נִפְצוּ עַד כִּי כִסּוּ אֶת פְּנֵי כָּל הָאָרֶץ מִן הַיָּם הַדְּרוֹמִי וְעַד הַיָּם הַצָּפוֹנִי, וּמִן הַיָּם הַמְּעַרְבִי וְעַד הַיָּם הַמְּזֻרְחִי.
- 9 And the people who were in the land northward did dwell in tents, and in houses of cement, and they did suffer whatsoever tree should spring up upon the face of the land that it should grow up, that in time they might have timber to build their houses, yea, their cities, and their temples, and their synagogues, and their sanctuaries, and all manner of their buildings.
- וְאֲנָשֵׁי אֶרֶץ הַצָּפוֹן שָׁכְנוּ בְּאֹהֲלִים וּבְתֵי מֶלֶט. וְהֵם הִנִּיחוּ לְכָל עֵץ אֲשֶׁר צָמַח עַל פְּנֵי הָאֲדָמָה לָעֹלֹת וּלְגָדֹל, בְּעֵבֹר לְקַחְתּוֹ, בְּבוֹא הָעֵת, כִּקְרָשִׁים לְבָנֵן בְּתֵיָּהֶם וְעָרֵיהֶם, הֵיכָלֵיהֶם וּבְתֵי כְּנִסְיֹתֵיהֶם, מִקְדָּשֵׁיהֶם וְכָל מִינֵי בְּנוֹנֵיהֶם.
- 10 And it came to pass as timber was exceedingly scarce in the land northward, they did send forth much by the way of shipping.
- וַיְהֵן כִּי הָיָה נָדִיר מְאֹד בָּאָרֶץ הַצָּפוֹן, הֵם שָׁלְחוּ עֵץ רַב בְּסָפִינוֹת.
- 11 And thus they did enable the people in the land northward that they might build many cities, both of wood and of cement.
- כֹּה נִתְּנוּ אֲנָשֵׁי אֶרֶץ הַצָּפוֹן אֶת הַיִּכְלָת לְבָנוֹת עָרִים רַבּוֹת, גַּם מֵעֵץ וְגַם מִמֶּלֶט.
- 12 And it came to pass that there were many of the people of Ammon, who were Lamanites by birth, did also go forth into this land.
- וְרַבִּים מֵאֲנָשֵׁי עַמּוֹן, אֲשֶׁר הָיוּ לְמָנִים מְלָדָה, יָצְאוּ אִף הֵם אֶל הָאָרֶץ הַזֹּאת.
- 13 And now there are many records kept of the proceedings of this people, by many of this people, which are particular and very large, concerning them.
- וְהִנֵּה, נִמְצְאוּ כְּתָבֵי זִכְרוֹן רַבִּים וּבָהֶם קוֹרוֹת הָאֲנָשִׁים הָהֵם, וְהֵם נִשְׁמְרוּ עַל יְדֵי רַבִּים מִבְּנֵי עַמָּם; וְהַדְּבָרִים עַל אִדּוּתֵיהֶם מִפְּרָטִים וְאַרְפִּים.
- 14 But behold, a hundredth part of the proceedings of this people, yea, the account of the Lamanites and of the Nephites, and their wars, and contentions, and dissensions, and their preaching, and their
- וְאֹלֶם, אֵין יְכוּלִים כְּתָבֵי אֱלֹהִים לְהַכִּיל אִף אֶת חֵלֶק הַמֵּאָה מִקּוֹרוֹת הָעָם הַזֶּה, אָכֵן, אֶת סְפּוֹר הַלְּמָנִים וְהַנְּפִיִּים, מִלַּחְמוֹתֵיהֶם

ומריבותיהם, פלוגיהם והטפותיהם  
ונבואותיהם, המשלוח בספינות ובניית  
ספינותיהם, בניית היכליהם ובתי כנסיותיהם  
ומקדשיהם, צדקתם ורשעתם, והרצח והשד  
והגזל אשר היו בהם, וכל מיני תועבותיהם  
וזנוניהם.

prophecies, and their shipping and their building of ships, and their building of temples, and of synagogues and their sanctuaries, and their righteousness, and their wickedness, and their murders, and their robbings, and their plundering, and all manner of abominations and whoredoms, cannot be contained in this work.

הנה, יש ספרים וכתבים רבים מפל מין,  
והם שמורים בעקר בידי הנפיים.

15 But behold, there are many books and many records of every kind, and they have been kept chiefly by the Nephites.

והם נמסרו מדור לדור על ידי הנפיים, עד  
אשר נפלו אלי פשע, ונהרגו ונבזו ונרדפו  
ונדחו והומתו והופצו על פני האדמה,  
והתערבו בלמנים, עד כי אינם נקראים עוד  
נפיים. והם נוהגים בדרכי רשע, והם פראים  
ואכזרים, כי הפכו להיות למנים.

16 And they have been handed down from one generation to another by the Nephites, even until they have fallen into transgression and have been murdered, plundered, and hunted, and driven forth, and slain, and scattered upon the face of the earth, and mixed with the Lamanites until they are no more called the Nephites, becoming wicked, and wild, and ferocious, yea, even becoming Lamanites.

ועתה אשוב אל ספורי; כל אשר הזכרתי  
קם והיה אחר אשר פוצו מריבות גדולות  
והפרעות ומלחמות ופלוגים בקרב עם נפי.

17 And now I return again to mine account; therefore, what I have spoken had passed after there had been great contentions, and disturbances, and wars, and dissensions, among the people of Nephi.

ושנת ארבעים ושש לשלטון השופטים בלטה.

18 The forty and sixth year of the reign of the judges ended;

ובשנת ארבעים ושבע עוד רבות היו  
המריבות בארץ, וכן בשנת ארבעים ושמונה.

19 And it came to pass that there was still great contention in the land, yea, even in the forty and seventh year, and also in the forty and eighth year.

על אף זאת, שפט הילמן מפס המשפט  
בצדק ובמישרים. אכן, הוא הקפיד לשמר  
על חקי אלהים, ועל משפטי ועל מצוותיו;  
והוא עשה תמיד את הישר בעיני אלהים,  
והלך בדרכי אביו והצליח בארץ.

20 Nevertheless Helaman did fill the judgment-seat with justice and equity; yea, he did observe to keep the statutes, and the judgments, and the commandments of God; and he did do that which was right in the sight of God continually; and he did walk after the ways of his father, insomuch that he did prosper in the land.

שני בנים היו לו. את שם הבכור הוא קרא  
נפי, ואת שם הצעיר קרא לחי; והם גדלו  
לשם יהוה.

21 And it came to pass that he had two sons. He gave unto the eldest the name of Nephi, and unto the youngest, the name of Lehi. And they began to grow up unto the Lord.

והיה באחרית שנת ארבעים ושמונה  
לשלטון השופטים בעם נפי החלו המלחמות  
והמריבות אשר בקרבם לשקט מעט.

22 And it came to pass that the wars and contentions began to cease, in a small degree, among the people of the Nephites, in the latter end of the forty and eighth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

ובשנת ארבעים ותשע לשלטון השופטים  
השתרר בארץ שלום ממש, וזולת אגדות  
הסתר אשר יסדן השווד גדיאנטון בחלקי  
הארץ אשר רבו יושביהם; אף בעת ההיא  
לא היו ידועים חברי האגדות האלה  
ליושבים בראש השלטון; על כן הם  
לא הכרתו מן הארץ.

23 And it came to pass in the forty and ninth year of the reign of the judges, there was continual peace established in the land, all save it were the secret combinations which Gadianton the robber had established in the more settled parts of the land, which at that time were not known unto those who were at the head of government; therefore they were not destroyed out of the land.

- 24 And it came to pass that in this same year there was exceedingly great prosperity in the church, insomuch that there were thousands who did join themselves unto the church and were baptized unto repentance.
- 25 And so great was the prosperity of the church, and so many the blessings which were poured out upon the people, that even the high priests and the teachers were themselves astonished beyond measure.
- 26 And it came to pass that the work of the Lord did prosper unto the baptizing and uniting to the church of God, many souls, yea, even tens of thousands.
- 27 Thus we may see that the Lord is merciful unto all who will, in the sincerity of their hearts, call upon his holy name.
- 28 Yea, thus we see that the gate of heaven is open unto all, even to those who will believe on the name of Jesus Christ, who is the Son of God.
- 29 Yea, we see that whosoever will may lay hold upon the word of God, which is quick and powerful, which shall divide asunder all the cunning and the snares and the wiles of the devil, and lead the man of Christ in a straight and narrow course across that everlasting gulf of misery which is prepared to engulf the wicked—
- 30 And land their souls, yea, their immortal souls, at the right hand of God in the kingdom of heaven, to sit down with Abraham, and Isaac, and with Jacob, and with all our holy fathers, to go no more out.
- 31 And in this year there was continual rejoicing in the land of Zarahemla, and in all the regions round about, even in all the land which was possessed by the Nephites.
- 32 And it came to pass that there was peace and exceedingly great joy in the remainder of the forty and ninth year; yea, and also there was continual peace and great joy in the fiftieth year of the reign of the judges.
- 33 And in the fifty and first year of the reign of the judges there was peace also, save it were the pride which began to enter into the church—not into the church of God, but into the hearts of the people who professed to belong to the church of God—
- ובשנה ההיא רבתה הצלחת הכנסיה;  
אלפים הצטרפו אליה והטבילו לשם תשובה.
- כה רבה היתה הצלחת הכנסיה וכן הברכה  
אשר ננסכה על העם, עד כי אף הכהנים  
הגדולים והמורים עצמם השתוממו עד מאד.
- ועבודת יהוה הצליחה בהטבילה ובחבור  
נפשות רבות, רבבות, אל כנסית אלהים.
- בזאת נוכח כי רחום וחנון יהוה אל כל אשר  
יקרא בשם קדשו בלב שלם.
- וכן רואים אנחנו כי שער השמים פתוח  
לכל; לכל המאמינים בשם ישוע המשיח,  
אשר הוא בן אלהים.
- אכן, רואים אנחנו כי כל הרוצה יכול  
להחזיק בדבר אלהים, אשר הוא מהיר  
ורב כח, המכרית את כל ערמת השטן ואת  
מצודתו ואת תחבולותיו, ומוליך את המאמין  
במשיח במסלול ישר וצר מעבר לתהום  
היסורים המוכנה לבלע את הרשעים;
- ומשפין את נשמות אלה, את נשמותיהם  
הנצחיות, לימין אלהים במלכות השמים,  
לשבת עם אברהם, עם יצחק ועם יעקב, ועם  
כל אבותינו הקדושים, ולא לצאת עוד.
- הנה, בשנה ההיא שרתה השמחה בארץ  
זרעהמלה, ובכל האזורים הסובבים אותה,  
אכן, בכל ארץ נחלת הנפיים.
- והשלום והשמחה הרבה נמשכו בשארית  
שנת ארבעים ותשע; וכה היתה גם בשנת  
חמשים לשלטון השופטים.
- אף בשנת חמשים ואחת לשלטון השופטים  
שרר שלום, זולת הגאווה אשר החלה להכנס  
אל הכנסיה; לא אל תוף כנסית אלהים,  
כי אם אל לב האנשים אשר טענו כי הם  
חברי כנסית אלהים.

- 34 And they were lifted up in pride, even to the persecution of many of their brethren. Now this was a great evil, which did cause the more humble part of the people to suffer great persecutions, and to wade through much affliction.
- 35 Nevertheless they did fast and pray oft, and did wax stronger and stronger in their humility, and firmer and firmer in the faith of Christ, unto the filling their souls with joy and consolation, yea, even to the purifying and the sanctification of their hearts, which sanctification cometh because of their yielding their hearts unto God.
- 36 And it came to pass that the fifty and second year ended in peace also, save it were the exceedingly great pride which had gotten into the hearts of the people; and it was because of their exceedingly great riches and their prosperity in the land; and it did grow upon them from day to day.
- 37 And it came to pass in the fifty and third year of the reign of the judges, Helaman died, and his eldest son Nephi began to reign in his stead. And it came to pass that he did fill the judgment-seat with justice and equity; yea, he did keep the commandments of God, and did walk in the ways of his father.
- הם התנשאו בגאווה ואף רדפו רבים מאחיהם. הִיָּה זֶה אִסּוֹן גָּדוֹל אֲשֶׁר הִסֵּב לַחֲלֹק הָעָם הַנְּדַפָּא לְסַבֵּל רְדִיפוֹת גְּדוּלוֹת וּלְהִתְאַבֵּל בְּרַב מַצּוּקָה.
- אֲףֹ הֵם הִרְבּוּ לָצוּם וּלְהִתְפַּלֵּל וְהִתְחַזְּקוּ הַלּוֹף וְחִזּוֹק בְּכִנְיַתָּם, וְאַמּוֹנָתָם בְּמַשִּׁיחַ נַעֲשֶׂתָה מוֹצֵקֶת וְאִיתָנָה עַד אֲשֶׁר מָלְאָה אֶת נַפְשָׁם שְׂמִיחָה וְנַחֲמָה, וְאִף טְהָרָה וְקִדְּשָׁה אֶת לִבָּם. וְהִקְדְּשָׁה הַזֹּאת בָּאָה מִפְּנֵי הַתְּמַסְרוֹת לִבָּם לֵאלֹהִים.
- וְהָיָה כִּי שָׁנַת חֲמִשִּׁים וּשְׁתַּיִם כָּלְתָה בְּשָׁלוֹם אִף הִיא, זֹלַת הַגָּאוּוֹת הַמְרֻבָּה אֲשֶׁר קָנְתָה שְׁבִיתָה בְּלֵב הָאֲנָשִׁים, וְזֹאת מִפְּנֵי עֲשָׂרָם הָעֲצוּם וְהַצְלָחָתָם בָּאָרֶץ. וְגֵאוּתָם אָכֵן גְּבָרָה בָּהֶם מִיּוֹם לְיוֹם.
- וּבְשָׁנַת חֲמִשִּׁים וּשְׁלֹשׁ לְשִׁלְטוֹן הַשּׁוֹפְטִים מֵת הִילְמָן, וּבְנֹו הַבְּכוֹר, נְפִי, הִחֵל לְמַשֵּׁל תַּחְתָּיו. וְהוּא יָשַׁב עַל כִּסֵּי הַמִּשְׁפָּט וְשָׁפַט בְּצֶדֶק וּבְמִשְׁרָשִׁים; אָכֵן, הוּא שָׁמַר אֶת מִצְוֹת אֱלֹהִים וְהָלַךְ בְּדַרְכֵי אָבִיו.

## ד

## 4

- 1 And it came to pass in the fifty and fourth year there were many dissensions in the church, and there was also a contention among the people, insomuch that there was much bloodshed.
- 2 And the rebellious part were slain and driven out of the land, and they did go unto the king of the Lamanites.
- 3 And it came to pass that they did endeavor to stir up the Lamanites to war against the Nephites; but behold, the Lamanites were exceedingly afraid, insomuch that they would not hearken to the words of those dissenters.
- 4 But it came to pass in the fifty and sixth year of the reign of the judges, there were dissenters who went up from the Nephites unto the Lamanites; and they succeeded with those others in stirring them up to anger against the Nephites; and they were all that year preparing for war.
- 5 And in the fifty and seventh year they did come down against the Nephites to battle, and they did commence the work of death; yea,
- וּבְשָׁנַת חֲמִשִּׁים וָאַרְבַּע רַבּוּ הַפְּלוּגִים בְּכִנְסִיָּה, וְאִף פְּרֻצָּה מְרִיבָה בְּקֶרֶב הָעָם, עַד כִּי נִשְׁפָּף דָּם רַב.
- וְהַמּוֹרְדִים נִהָרְגוּ אוֹ גָּרְשׁוּ מִן הָאָרֶץ, וְהַמְּגִרָשִׁים הָלְכוּ אֶל מֶלֶךְ הַלְּמָנִים.
- וְהֵם הִתְאַמְּצוּ לְעוֹרֵר אֶת הַלְּמָנִים לְצֵאתָ לְמִלְחָמָה עַל הַנְּפִיִּים, וְאוֹלָם הַלְּמָנִים יָרְאוּ מְאֹד וְלֹא שָׁמְעוּ לְדִבְרֵי הַפּוֹרְשִׁים הָהֵם.
- וְהָיָה בְּשָׁנַת חֲמִשִּׁים וּשֵׁשׁ לְשִׁלְטוֹן הַשּׁוֹפְטִים עָלוּ פּוֹרְשִׁים נוֹסְפִים מִן הַנְּפִיִּים אֶל הַלְּמָנִים; וּבִיד אֱלֹהִים אָכֵן עָלָה, בְּעִזְזַת הַפּוֹרְשִׁים קוֹדְמֵיהֶם, לְעוֹרְרָם לְכַעַס עַל הַנְּפִיִּים; וְכָל הַשָּׁנָה הָיְיָה נִעְרְכוּ הַלְּמָנִים לְמִלְחָמָה.
- וּבְשָׁנַת חֲמִשִּׁים וְשִׁבְעָה הֵם יָרְדוּ אֶל הַנְּפִיִּים לְקָרֵב; וְהֵם הִחִילוּ לְזַרְעַ מוֹת, עַד כִּי בְּשָׁנַת



חֲמִשִּׁים וּשְׁמוֹנֶה לְשָׁלוֹן הַשּׁוֹפְטִים הֵם  
הַצְּלִיחוּ לְהִשְׁתַּלֵּט עַל אֶרֶץ זֶרַחֶמְלָה וְאֵף  
עַל כָּל הָאֲרָצוֹת עַד הָאֶרֶץ הַקְּרוֹבָה אֶל  
אֶרֶץ רֹב־שֹׁפֵעַ.

insomuch that in the fifty and eighth year of the reign of the judges they succeeded in obtaining possession of the land of Zarahemla; yea, and also all the lands, even unto the land which was near the land Bountiful.

וְהַנְּפִיטִים וְחֵילוֹת מוֹרוֹנִיחָה גִּרְשׁוּ אֶל אֶרֶץ  
רֹב־שֹׁפֵעַ.

6 And the Nephites and the armies of Moronihah were driven even into the land of Bountiful;

וְהֵם הִקִּימוּ שָׁם בְּצוּרִים לְהִגָּן מִפְּנֵי הַלָּמָנִים,  
מִן הַיָּם הַמַּעֲרָבִי וְעַד הַיָּם הַמַּזְרָחִי, אֲשֶׁר  
אָרְכוּ מִהַלֵּךְ יוֹם אֶחָד לְאִישׁ נָפִי. וְהֵם הִצִּיבוּ  
אֶת חֵילוֹתֵיהֶם עַל הַקוֹ הַמְּבַצֵּר לְהִגָּן  
שִׁטְחֵיהֶם הַצָּפוֹנִיִּים.

7 And there they did fortify against the Lamanites, from the west sea, even unto the east; it being a day's journey for a Nephite, on the line which they had fortified and stationed their armies to defend their north country.

כִּךְ עָלָה בְּיַד הַפּוֹרְשִׁים מִן הַנְּפִיטִים, בְּעֶזְרָת  
צָבָא לָמָנִי רַב, לְתַפֵּשׁ אֶת כָּל נְחֻלַּת הַנְּפִיטִים,  
אֲשֶׁר הָיְתָה בְּאֶרֶץ הַדְּרוֹם. כָּל זֶה נַעֲשֶׂה בְּשָׁנַת  
חֲמִשִּׁים וּשְׁמוֹנֶה וּבְשָׁנַת חֲמִשִּׁים וְתֵשַׁע  
לְשָׁלוֹן הַשּׁוֹפְטִים.

8 And thus those dissenters of the Nephites, with the help of a numerous army of the Lamanites, had obtained all the possession of the Nephites which was in the land southward. And all this was done in the fifty and eighth and ninth years of the reign of the judges.

וְהָיָה בְּשָׁנַת שְׁשִׁים לְשָׁלוֹן הַשּׁוֹפְטִים הַצְּלִיחַ  
מוֹרוֹנִיחָה עִם צָבָאוֹ לְתַפֵּשׁ חֻלְקִים רַבִּים מִן  
הָאֶרֶץ. אָכֵן, הֵם הִשִּׁיבוּ לַיְדֵיהֶם עָרִים רַבּוֹת  
אֲשֶׁר נָפְלוּ לַיְדֵי הַלָּמָנִים.

9 And it came to pass in the sixtieth year of the reign of the judges, Moronihah did succeed with his armies in obtaining many parts of the land; yea, they regained many cities which had fallen into the hands of the Lamanites.

וּבְשָׁנַת שְׁשִׁים וְאַחַת לְשָׁלוֹן הַשּׁוֹפְטִים הֵם  
הַצְּלִיחוּ לְהָשִׁיב לַיְדֵיהֶם מִחֲצִית מִכָּל נְחֻלָּתָם.

10 And it came to pass in the sixty and first year of the reign of the judges they succeeded in regaining even the half of all their possessions.

וְהִנֵּה, אֲבֹדוֹת הַנְּפִיטִים הַגְּדוֹלוֹת הָאֵלֶּה וְהַהֵרָג  
הָרַב אֲשֶׁר בְּקִרְבָּם לֹא הָיוּ בָּאִים עֲלֵיהֶם לוֹלֵא  
הָרָשָׁעָה וְהַתּוֹעֲבוֹת אֲשֶׁר בְּקִרְבָּם; וְאֵף הָיָה  
בְּקִרְבָּם אֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר הִצְהִירוּ כִּי חֲבָרִי כְּנִסִּית  
אֱלֹהִים הֵמָּה.

11 Now this great loss of the Nephites, and the great slaughter which was among them, would not have happened had it not been for their wickedness and their abomination which was among them; yea, and it was among those also who professed to belong to the church of God.

וְזֹאת בָּאָה עֲלֵיהֶם מִפְּנֵי גָאוֹת לִבָּבָם, מִפְּנֵי  
עֲשָׂרָם הָעֲצוּם, אָכֵן, כִּי נִגְשׁוּ בְּעֵנִיִּים, וּמָנְעוּ  
אֶת לֶחֶמָם מִן הָרָעִיבִים וְאֶת לְבוּשָׁם מִן  
הָעִירְמִיִּים, וּמִפְּנֵי הַכּוֹתָם אֶת אֲחֵיהֶם הַנִּכְנָעִים  
עַל הַלְּחִי, וּמִפְּנֵי שִׁימָם אֶת הַקְּדוֹשׁ לְלַעַג,  
וְהַכְּחִישָׁם אֶת רוּחַ הַנְּבוּאָה וְהַתְּגָלוֹת, וַיַּעַן  
אֲשֶׁר רָצְחוּ וּבָזְזוּ וְרָמּוּ וּנְגְבוּ וְנָאֲפוּ, וְעַל קוֹמָם  
לְמִרְיָבוֹת גְּדוֹלוֹת וְעַל כִּי עָרְקוּ אֶל אֶרֶץ נָפִי,  
אֶל הַלָּמָנִים.

12 And it was because of the pride of their hearts, because of their exceeding riches, yea, it was because of their oppression to the poor, withholding their food from the hungry, withholding their clothing from the naked, and smiting their humble brethren upon the cheek, making a mock of that which was sacred, denying the spirit of prophecy and of revelation, murdering, plundering, lying, stealing, committing adultery, rising up in great contentions, and deserting away into the land of Nephi, among the Lamanites—

וּמִפְּנֵי רָשָׁעָתָם הַגְּדוֹלָה הַזֹּאת וְהַתְּפָאֲרוֹתָם  
בְּכַחֲם, הֵם נִעְזְבוּ לְהִשָּׁעַן עַל כֹּחֵם בְּלִבָּד;

13 And because of this their great wickedness, and their boastings in their own strength, they were left in their own strength; therefore they

- לכן לא הצליחו, כי אם ענו והכו וגרשו  
מפני הלמנים, עד אשר אבדו כמעט את  
כל אדמותיהם.
- 14 But behold, Moronihah did preach many things unto the people because of their iniquity, and also Nephi and Lehi, who were the sons of Helaman, did preach many things unto the people, yea, and did prophesy many things unto them concerning their iniquities, and what should come unto them if they did not repent of their sins.
- 15 And it came to pass that they did repent, and inasmuch as they did repent they did begin to prosper.
- 16 For when Moronihah saw that they did repent he did venture to lead them forth from place to place, and from city to city, even until they had regained the one-half of their property and the one-half of all their lands.
- 17 And thus ended the sixty and first year of the reign of the judges.
- 18 And it came to pass in the sixty and second year of the reign of the judges, that Moronihah could obtain no more possessions over the Lamanites.
- 19 Therefore they did abandon their design to obtain the remainder of their lands, for so numerous were the Lamanites that it became impossible for the Nephites to obtain more power over them; therefore Moronihah did employ all his armies in maintaining those parts which he had taken.
- 20 And it came to pass, because of the greatness of the number of the Lamanites the Nephites were in great fear, lest they should be overpowered, and trodden down, and slain, and destroyed.
- 21 Yea, they began to remember the prophecies of Alma, and also the words of Mosiah; and they saw that they had been a stiffnecked people, and that they had set at naught the commandments of God.
- 22 And that they had altered and trampled under their feet the laws of Mosiah, or that which the Lord commanded him to give unto the people; and they saw that their laws had become corrupted, and that they had become a wicked people, insomuch that they were wicked even like unto the Lamanites.
- לכן, מפני עוונם, הטיף מורוניהה לעם  
דברים רבים; וכן נפי ולחי, בני הילמן הטיפו  
רבות לעם ואף נבאו להם דברים רבים על  
עוונותיהם ועל אשר יבואם אם לא ינחמו  
מחטאיהם.
- והנה, הם נחמו על רעתם, וכמדת תשובתם  
החלו להצליח.
- ובראות מורוניהה כי הם נחמו על רעתם,  
הוא העז להוליכם ממקום למקום ומעיר  
לעיר, עד אשר השיבו לידיהם את מחצית  
רכושם ומחצית מכלל אדמותיהם.
- כה פלטה שנת ששים ואחת לשלטון  
השופטים.
- ובשנת ששים ושנים לשלטון השופטים,  
לא יכול היה מורוניהה להוסיף לתפש נחלות  
מידי הלמנים.
- על כן נטשו הנפיים את תכניתם לכבש את  
שאר אדמותיהם, יען אשר מספר הלמנים היה  
כה רב, עד כי התגברות עליהם הייתה מעבר  
להשג ידם. לכן העסיק מורוניהה את כל צבאו  
בהגנת חלקי הארץ אשר הושבו לידם.
- והנפיים פחדו פחד גדול, מפני מספר  
הלמנים העצום, פן יגברו אלה עליהם,  
וירמסו ויהרגו וישמידו.
- הם זכרו את נבואות עלמא ואף דברי  
מושיע, וראו כי עם קשה ערף הם וכי הפרו  
את מצוות אלהים;
- וכי הם שנו ורמסו תחת רגליהם את חקי  
מושיע, אשר צוהו יהוה לתת לעם. והם ראו  
כי חקיהם נשחתו, וכי הם היו לעם רשע,  
עד כי הרשיעו כללמנים;

- 23 And because of their iniquity the church had begun to dwindle; and they began to disbelieve in the spirit of prophecy and in the spirit of revelation; and the judgments of God did stare them in the face.
- וְכִי מִפְּנֵי עֲוֹנָם נִחְלְשָׁה הַכְּנִסְיָהּ; וְכִי הֵם הִחְלוּ לִכְפֹּר בְּרוּחַ הַנְּבוּאָה וּבְרוּחַ הַהִתְגַּלוּת; וְכִי מִשְׁפָּט אֱלֹהִים הָעֵצִים אֲלֵיהֶם פָּנִיו.
- 24 And they saw that they had become weak, like unto their brethren, the Lamanites, and that the Spirit of the Lord did no more preserve them; yea, it had withdrawn from them because the Spirit of the Lord doth not dwell in unholy temples—
- וְהֵם רָאוּ כִּי הֵם נִהְיוּ חֲלָשִׁים כְּאַחֵיהֶם הַלְּמָנִיתִים, וְכִי רוּחַ יְהוָה אֵינוֹ שׁוֹמֵר עֲלֵיהֶם עוֹד. אַכֵּן, הִסְתַּלַּק מֵהֶם רוּחַ יְהוָה כִּי אֵינוֹ שׁוֹכֵן בְּהִיכָלוֹת מְחֻלָּלִים.
- 25 Therefore the Lord did cease to preserve them by his miraculous and matchless power, for they had fallen into a state of unbelief and awful wickedness; and they saw that the Lamanites were exceedingly more numerous than they, and except they should cleave unto the Lord their God, they must unavoidably perish.
- לְכֵן, יָעַן אֲשֶׁר הֵם הִדְרָדְרוּ אֶל חֹסֶר אֱמוּנָה וְרָשָׁע נִזְרָא, חָדַל יְהוָה לְשׁמֹרָם בְּכֹחוֹ הַנִּפְלָא אֲשֶׁר אֵין עָרֵף לוֹ. וְהֵם רָאוּ כִּי הַלְּמָנִיתִים רַבִּים מֵהֶם עַד מְאֹד וְכִי אִם לֹא יִדְבְּקוּ בִיהוָה אֱלֹהֵיהֶם, לֹא יִהְיֶה לָהֶם כָּל מְנוּס מִכְּלִיוֹן.
- 26 For behold, they saw that the strength of the Lamanites was as great as their strength, even man for man. And thus had they fallen into this great transgression; yea, thus had they become weak, because of their transgression, in the space of not many years.
- וְהִנֵּה, הֵם רָאוּ כִּי כַח הַלְּמָנִיתִים הָיָה כְּכֹחַם, בְּהִלָּחֵם אִישׁ בְּאִישׁ. כֹּה הֵם נָפְלוּ אֶל הַפֶּשַׁע הַגָּדוֹל הַזֶּה, וְכֹה הֵם נִחְלְשׁוּ; וְכָל זֹאת עַל דְּבַר פֶּשַׁעַם בְּמִשְׁפָּחָם שְׁנַיִם מֵעֶשֶׂת.

## ה

## 5

- 1 And it came to pass that in this same year, behold, Nephi delivered up the judgment-seat to a man whose name was Cezoram.
- וּבְעֶצֶם הַשָּׁנָה הַהִיא מָסַר נְפִי אֶת כִּסֵּי הַמִּשְׁפָּט לְאִישׁ אֲשֶׁר שְׁמוֹ נְקָרָא כְּזֹרָם.
- 2 For as their laws and their governments were established by the voice of the people, and they who chose evil were more numerous than they who chose good, therefore they were ripening for destruction, for the laws had become corrupted.
- כִּי הָיוּ אֲשֶׁר נִוָּסְדוּ חֻקֵּיהֶם וּמִמְשָׁלָתָם עַל קוֹלוֹת הָעָם הַבּוֹחֵר, וַיַּעַן אֲשֶׁר רַבּוּ הַבּוֹחֲרִים בָּרַע מִן הַבּוֹחֲרִים בְּטוֹב, הֵם בָּשְׁלוּ לְקִרְאָת הַשְׁמָדָה, כִּי חֻקֵּיהֶם נַעֲשׂוּ מִשְׁחָתִים.
- 3 Yea, and this was not all; they were a stiffnecked people, insomuch that they could not be governed by the law nor justice, save it were to their destruction.
- וְלֹא זֶה בְּלִבְדּוֹ, כִּי הָיוּ הֵם עִם קָשָׁה עֵרָף, עַד אֲשֶׁר לֹא נָתַן יְהוָה לְשַׁלֵּט בָּהֶם בְּחֹק אוֹ בַצִּדִּיק בְּלִתִּי אִם לְהַשְׁמִידָם.
- 4 And it came to pass that Nephi had become weary because of their iniquity; and he yielded up the judgment-seat, and took it upon him to preach the word of God all the remainder of his days, and his brother Lehi also, all the remainder of his days;
- וְנְפִי הִתִּיגַע מִפְּנֵי עֲוֹנוֹתֵיהֶם; וְהוּא הֶעָבִיר אֶת כִּסֵּי הַמִּשְׁפָּט לְזֹולָתוֹ, וְהִתְמַסֵּר לְהַטִּיף אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים בְּשֹׁאֲרֵית יָמָיו. וְכִמּוֹהוּ עָשָׂה לְחִי, אַחִיו, כָּל שְׁאֵרֵית יָמָיו.
- 5 For they remembered the words which their father Helaman spake unto them. And these are the words which he spake:
- כִּי הֵם זָכְרוּ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר אֲלֵיהֶם הִילְמָן אֲבִיהֶם. וְאֵלֶּה הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר:
- 6 Behold, my sons, I desire that ye should remember to keep the commandments of God; and I would that ye should declare unto the people these words. Behold, I have given unto you the names of our first parents who came out of the land of Jerusalem; and this I have
- הִנֵּה, בָּנִי, רְצוֹנִי כִּי תִזְכְּרוּ לְשׁמֹר אֶת מִצְוֹת אֱלֹהִים. וּמִי יִתֵּן וְתִשְׁמַעְנֶם לָעַם אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה. קִרְאתִיכֶם בְּשִׁמוֹת אֲבוֹתֵינוּ הָרִאשׁוֹנִים, אֲשֶׁר יָצְאוּ מֵאֶרֶץ יְרוּשָׁלַם;

- וְזֹאת עֲשִׂיתִי כִּי בִזְכְּרְכֶם אֶת שְׁמוֹתֵיכֶם  
תִּזְכְּרוּ בָהֶם. וּבִזְכְּרְכֶם אוֹתָם תִּזְכְּרוּ אֶת  
מַעֲשֵׂיהֶם. וּבִזְכְּרְכֶם אֶת מַעֲשֵׂיהֶם תִּדְעוּ  
כִּי נָאֵמַר וְאִף נִכְתָּב כִּי טוֹבִים הָיוּ.
- עַל כֵּן, בְּנֵי, רְצוֹנִי כִּי תַעֲשׂוּ אֶת הַטוֹב,  
לְמַעַן יֵאמַר עַל אוֹדוֹתֵיכֶם, וְאִף יִכְתָּב,  
כְּאִמּוֹר וְכִכְתּוֹב עֲלֵיהֶם.
- וְעַתָּה, בְּנֵי, רְצוֹנִי לְבִקְשְׁכֶם עוֹד דְּבַר־מָה.  
אֲלֵךְ נָא תַעֲשׂוּ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה לְשֵׁם  
הַתְּפָאָרוֹת, כִּי אִם תַּעֲשׂוּם בְּעִבּוֹר תִּצְאָרוּ  
לָכֶם אוֹצָר בְּשָׁמַיִם, אֲשֶׁר הוּא נֶצַחִי וְאֵינוֹ  
כָּלֵה, לְמַעַן תִּהְיֶה לָכֶם מַתָּנַת הַיָּקָר, חַיֵּי עוֹלָם.  
אֲשֶׁר יֵשׁ לָנוּ לְהַנִּיחַ כִּי נִתְּנָה לְאַבּוֹתֵינוּ.
- זְכוֹר תִּזְכְּרוּ, בְּנֵי, אֶת הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר  
הַמֶּלֶךְ בְּנִימִין אֶל עַמּוֹ; זָכְרוּ נָא כִּי אֵין דֶּרֶךְ אוֹ  
אֶפֶן אֲשֶׁר עַל יְדֵיהֶם יוֹכֵל אָדָם לְהוֹשֵׁעַ, כִּי אִם  
בְּדָם כְּפָרַת יֵשׁוּעַ הַמָּשִׁיחַ, אֲשֶׁר בּוֹא יָבוֹא.  
אֲכֹן, זָכְרוּ כִּי בָא הוּא לְגַאֲלֵי אֶת הָעוֹלָם.
- זָכְרוּ אִף אֶת הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר עֲמוּלֵק אֶל  
זְאֶזְרוֹם בְּעִיר עַמּוֹנִיָּה; כִּי הוּא אָמַר אֵלָיו כִּי  
בּוֹא יָבוֹא יְהוָה לְגַאֲלֵי אֶת עַמּוֹ; אִף לֹא יָבוֹא  
הוּא לְגַאֲלֵי אוֹתָם בְּעוֹדָם חוֹטְאִים, כִּי אִם יִגְאֹל  
אוֹתָם מִחַטָּאתֵיהֶם.
- וְכֵן נָתַן לוֹ מֵאֵת הָאֵב לְגַאֲלֵם מִחַטָּאתֵיהֶם מִכֹּהֵן  
תְּשׁוּבָתָם מִחַטָּא. לְכֵן הוּא שָׁלַח אֶת מַלְאָכָיו  
לְהַשְׁמִיעַ אֶת בְּשׁוּרָתוֹ עַל תְּנָאֵי הַתְּשׁוּבָה,  
הַמְּפַעֲלִים אֶת כָּח הַגּוֹאֵל עַל הַנִּחְמָמִים עַל  
חַטָּאתֵיהֶם לְהוֹשִׁיעַ אֶת נַשְׁמוֹתֵיהֶם.
- וְעַתָּה, בְּנֵי, זְכוֹר תִּזְכְּרוּ כִּי עֲלֵיכֶם לִבְנוֹת אֶת  
יְסוּדְכֶם עַל צוֹר גּוֹאֲלָנוּ, אֲשֶׁר הוּא הַמָּשִׁיחַ,  
בֶּן אֱלֹהִים; וּבָעֵת אֲשֶׁר יִשְׁלַח הַשָּׁטָן אֶת  
סוּפוֹתָיו הָעֲזוֹת, וְאֶת חֲצֵי הַסְּעָרָה, בָּעֵת  
אֲשֶׁר יִכְכֶם כָּל הַבָּרָד וְהָרוּחוֹת הָאֲדִירוֹת  
אֲשֶׁר לוֹ, לֹא יִהְיֶה בָאֵלֶּה כָּח לְגָרֵר אֶתְכֶם  
אֶל מַעֲמָקֵי תְהוֹם הַיְסוּרִים וְיִגוֹן עוֹלָם, יַעַן  
אֲשֶׁר בְּנִימִים אַתֶּם עַל הַצּוֹר, אֲשֶׁר הוּא יְסוּד  
מִבְּטָחִים, יְסוּד אֲשֶׁר הַבּוֹנִים עָלָיו לֹא יִמוּטוּ.
- אֵלֶּה הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר לָמַד הִילְמָן אֶת בְּנָיו.  
אֲכֹן, דְּבָרִים רַבִּים אֲשֶׁר אֵינִם כְּתוּבִים, וְכֵן  
דְּבָרִים רַבִּים אֲשֶׁר כְּתוּבִים הוּא לְמַדָּם.
- done that when you remember your names ye may remember them;  
and when ye remember them ye may remember their works; and when  
ye remember their works ye may know how that it is said, and also  
written, that they were good.
- 7 Therefore, my sons, I would that ye should do that which is good, that  
it may be said of you, and also written, even as it has been said and  
written of them.
- 8 And now my sons, behold I have somewhat more to desire of you,  
which desire is, that ye may not do these things that ye may boast,  
but that ye may do these things to lay up for yourselves a treasure in  
heaven, yea, which is eternal, and which fadeth not away; yea, that ye  
may have that precious gift of eternal life, which we have reason to  
suppose hath been given to our fathers.
- 9 O remember, remember, my sons, the words which king Benjamin  
spake unto his people; yea, remember that there is no other way nor  
means whereby man can be saved, only through the atoning blood of  
Jesus Christ, who shall come, yea, remember that he cometh to redeem  
the world.
- 10 And remember also the words which Amulek spake unto Zeezrom,  
in the city of Ammonihah; for he said unto him that the Lord surely  
should come to redeem his people, but that he should not come to  
redeem them in their sins, but to redeem them from their sins.
- 11 And he hath power given unto him from the Father to redeem them  
from their sins because of repentance; therefore he hath sent his angels  
to declare the tidings of the conditions of repentance, which bringeth  
unto the power of the Redeemer, unto the salvation of their souls.
- 12 And now, my sons, remember, remember that it is upon the rock of  
our Redeemer, who is Christ, the Son of God, that ye must build your  
foundation; that when the devil shall send forth his mighty winds, yea,  
his shafts in the whirlwind, yea, when all his hail and his mighty storm  
shall beat upon you, it shall have no power over you to drag you down  
to the gulf of misery and endless wo, because of the rock upon which  
ye are built, which is a sure foundation, a foundation whereon if men  
build they cannot fall.
- 13 And it came to pass that these were the words which Helaman taught  
to his sons; yea, he did teach them many things which are not written,  
and also many things which are written.

- 14 And they did remember his words; and therefore they went forth, keeping the commandments of God, to teach the word of God among all the people of Nephi, beginning at the city Bountiful;  
וְהֵם זָכְרוּ אֶת דְּבָרָיו; וְעַל כֵּן יָצְאוּ, וְהָם שׁוֹמְרִים אֶת מִצְוֹת אֱלֹהִים, לְלַמֵּד אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים בְּקֶרֶב כָּל עַם נְפִי; וְרֹאשִׁית דִּרְכָם בְּעִיר רִב־שֹׁפֶעַ.
- 15 And from thenceforth to the city of Gid; and from the city of Gid to the city of Mulek;  
וּמִשָּׁם הֵם הִמְשִׁיכוּ בְּדִרְכָם אֶל הָעִיר גִּיד; וּמִן הָעִיר גִּיד אֶל הָעִיר מוּלֶק.
- 16 And even from one city to another, until they had gone forth among all the people of Nephi who were in the land southward; and from thence into the land of Zarahemla, among the Lamanites.  
וְכֵן הֵם הִלְכוּ מֵעִיר אֶל עִיר, עַד אֲשֶׁר הֵם עָבְרוּ בְּקֶרֶב כָּל עַם נְפִי הַיּוֹשֵׁב בְּאֶרֶץ הַדְּרוֹם; וּמִשָּׁם אֶל אֶרֶץ זֶרַח־הֶמְלָה, אֶל הַלְּמָנִים.
- 17 And it came to pass that they did preach with great power, insomuch that they did confound many of those dissenters who had gone over from the Nephites, insomuch that they came forth and did confess their sins and were baptized unto repentance, and immediately returned to the Nephites to endeavor to repair unto them the wrongs which they had done.  
וְהֵם הִטִּיפוּ בְּכַח רַב, עַד כִּי הִבִּישׁוּ רַבִּים מִן הַפּוֹרְשִׁים הָהֵם, אֲשֶׁר רָחֲקוּ מִן הַנְּפִיִּים; אֲלֵהָ בָּאוּ וְהִתְנִדּוּ עַל חַטָּאֵיהֶם וְהִטְבְּלוּ לְשֵׁם תְּשׁוּבָה וּמִידָּ שָׁבוּ אֶל הַנְּפִיִּים וְהִתְאַמְצּוּ לְתַקֵּן אֶת אֲשֶׁר עָלוּ לָהֶם.
- 18 And it came to pass that Nephi and Lehi did preach unto the Lamanites with such great power and authority, for they had power and authority, given unto them that they might speak, and they also had what they should speak given unto them—  
וְנְפִי וְלְחִי הִטִּיפוּ אֶל הַלְּמָנִים בְּכַח רַב וּבְתִקְףָּ סְמֻכּוֹת, כִּי בָּעֲבוּר יוֹכְלוּ לְדַבֵּר הֵם קִבְּלוּ כַח וְסְמֻכּוֹת וְאֵף נִתְּנוּ לָהֶם הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר עָלִיהֶם לֹאמַר;
- 19 Therefore they did speak unto the great astonishment of the Lamanites, to the convincing them, insomuch that there were eight thousand of the Lamanites who were in the land of Zarahemla and round about baptized unto repentance, and were convinced of the wickedness of the traditions of their fathers.  
עַל כֵּן הִסְבּוּ דְּבָרֵיהֶם הַשְׁתוֹמָמוֹת רַבָּה בֵּין הַלְּמָנִים, וְאֵף שִׁכְנָעוּם, עַד כִּי שְׁמוֹנֶת אֲלָפִים מִן הַלְּמָנִים הַיּוֹשְׁבִים בְּאֶרֶץ זֶרַח־הֶמְלָה וּבִסְבִּיבוֹתֶיהָ הִטְבְּלוּ לְשֵׁם תְּשׁוּבָה וְנוֹכְחוּ לְדַעַת אֶת דְּבַר רְשָׁעַת מִסּוּרוֹת אֲבוֹתֵיהֶם.
- 20 And it came to pass that Nephi and Lehi did proceed from thence to go to the land of Nephi.  
אָז הִמְשִׁיכוּ נְפִי וְלְחִי אֶת דִּרְכָם אֶל אֶרֶץ נְפִי.
- 21 And it came to pass that they were taken by an army of the Lamanites and cast into prison; yea, even in that same prison in which Ammon and his brethren were cast by the servants of Limhi.  
וְשֵׁם תִּפְשׂוּם צָבָא לְמָנִים וְהִשְׁלִיכֵם אֶל הַכְּלָא, הוּא בֵּית הַכְּלָא אֲשֶׁר בּוֹ נִכְּלָאוּ עֲמוֹן וְעַמִּיתָיו עַל יְדֵי מְשִׁרְתֵי לִמְחִי.
- 22 And after they had been cast into prison many days without food, behold, they went forth into the prison to take them that they might slay them.  
וְהָיָה אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר הֵם הָיוּ כְּלוּאִים יָמִים רַבִּים בְּלִי מִזֹּן, נִכְּנְסוּ הַלְּמָנִים אֶל בֵּית הַכְּלָא לִקְחָתָם וּלְהוֹצִיאָם לְהוֹרֵג.
- 23 And it came to pass that Nephi and Lehi were encircled about as if by fire, even insomuch that they durst not lay their hands upon them for fear lest they should be burned. Nevertheless, Nephi and Lehi were not burned; and they were as standing in the midst of fire and were not burned.  
וְהָיָה הֶקְפּוֹ נְפִי וְלְחִי בִּכְעֵין אֵשׁ. וְהַלְּמָנִים לֹא הֵעִזּוּ לְשַׁלַּח אֶת יָדָם אֲלֵיהֶם מִפְּחָדָם כִּי יָכוּ. וְנְפִי וְלְחִי לֹא נִכְּוּ; הֵם הָיוּ כְּעוֹמְדִים בְּתוֹךְ אֵשׁ וְלֹא נִשְׂרָפוּ.



- 24 And when they saw that they were encircled about with a pillar of fire, and that it burned them not, their hearts did take courage.
- וּבִרְאוֹתָם כִּי הִקְפּוּ בְעַמּוּד אֵשׁ וְכִי לֹא נִשְׂרְפוּ, לִבָּם לָבַשׁ אֲמִץ;
- 25 For they saw that the Lamanites durst not lay their hands upon them; neither durst they come near unto them, but stood as if they were struck dumb with amazement.
- יָעֵן אֲשֶׁר הֵם רָאוּ כִּי הִלְמָנִים לֹא הֵעִזוּ לְשַׁלַּח יָד אֲלֵיהֶם וְאִף לֹא הֵעִזוּ לְהִתְקָרֵב אֲלֵיהֶם, וְכִי הֵם עָמְדוּ דּוֹמָמִים כְּמִכִּי תַמְהוֹן.
- 26 And it came to pass that Nephi and Lehi did stand forth and began to speak unto them, saying: Fear not, for behold, it is God that has shown unto you this marvelous thing, in the which is shown unto you that ye cannot lay your hands on us to slay us.
- אִז עָמְדוּ לִפְנֵיהֶם נְפִי וְלֵהִי וְלָחִי וְדִבְרוּ אֲלֵיהֶם לֵאמֹר: אַל תִּירָאוּ, כִּי הִנֵּה אֱלֹהִים הוּא הַמְרָאָה לָכֶם אֶת הַדָּבָר הַנִּפְלֵא הַזֶּה; הֵן הוּא מְרָאָה לָכֶם כִּי אֵינְכֶם יְכוּלִים לְשַׁלַּח אֶת יְדֵכֶם אֵלֵינוּ לְהַרְגֵנוּ.
- 27 And behold, when they had said these words, the earth shook exceedingly, and the walls of the prison did shake as if they were about to tumble to the earth; but behold, they did not fall. And behold, they that were in the prison were Lamanites and Nephites who were dissenters.
- וּבִאֲמָרָם אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה חָרְדָה הָאֲדָמָה חָרְדָה עֲזָה מְאֹד וְקִירוֹת בֵּית הַכְּלֵא הִזְדַּעְזְעוּ, כְּאִלּוּ עָמְדוּ לְקַרֵּס אֲרָצָה; אַךְ הִנֵּה, לֹא נָפְלוּ הֵם. וְהָאֲנָשִׁים אֲשֶׁר בְּבֵית הַכְּלֵא הָיוּ לָמָנִים וְנִפְתִּיִם פּוֹרְשִׁים.
- 28 And it came to pass that they were overshadowed with a cloud of darkness, and an awful solemn fear came upon them.
- וְהָיָה כִּי כֶסֶם עָנָן עֲלָטָה וְנִפְלְאָה עָלֵיהֶם אֵימַת הוֹד מְבִיעִתָה.
- 29 And it came to pass that there came a voice as if it were above the cloud of darkness, saying: Repent ye, repent ye, and seek no more to destroy my servants whom I have sent unto you to declare good tidings.
- וְקוֹל נִשְׁמַע, כְּאִלּוּ מֵעַל עָנָן הָעֲלֻטָה, לֵאמֹר: הִנָּחֵם תִּנָּחֲמוּ מִחַטָּאֵיכֶם וְאַל תִּבְקְשׁוּ עוֹד לְאַבֵּד אֶת עַבְדֵי אֲשֶׁר שְׁלַחְתִּים אֲלֵיכֶם לְבַשֵּׁר טוֹב.
- 30 And it came to pass when they heard this voice, and beheld that it was not a voice of thunder, neither was it a voice of a great tumultuous noise, but behold, it was a still voice of perfect mildness, as if it had been a whisper, and it did pierce even to the very soul—
- וּכְאֲשֶׁר הֵם שָׁמְעוּ אֶת הַקוֹל הַזֶּה וְנוֹכַחוּ כִּי לֹא הָיָה זֶה קוֹל רֶעֶם וְאִף קוֹל הַמְלָה רָבָה, כִּי אִם קוֹל שָׁקֵט בְּתַכְלִית הָרֶף, כְּאִלּוּ לַחֹשׁ, אֲשֶׁר חָדַר אֶל עַמְקֵי הַנֶּפֶשׁ;
- 31 And notwithstanding the mildness of the voice, behold the earth shook exceedingly, and the walls of the prison trembled again, as if it were about to tumble to the earth; and behold the cloud of darkness, which had overshadowed them, did not disperse—
- וְעַל אִף רֶף הַקוֹל, חָרְדָה הָאֲרֶץ חָרְדָה עֲזָה וְקִירוֹת בֵּית הַכְּלֵא הִזְדַּעְזְעוּ שֵׁנִית, כְּאִלּוּ עָמְדוּ לְקַרֵּס אֲרָצָה, וְהִנֵּה לֹא נִמוּג עָנָן הָעֲלֻטָה אֲשֶׁר אָפָה אוֹתָם;
- 32 And behold the voice came again, saying: Repent ye, repent ye, for the kingdom of heaven is at hand; and seek no more to destroy my servants. And it came to pass that the earth shook again, and the walls trembled.
- וְהִנֵּה הוֹסִיף הַקוֹל לֵאמֹר: הִנָּחֵם תִּנָּחֲמוּ מִחַטָּאֵיכֶם כִּי קְרוֹבָה לְבֹא מַלְכוּת שָׁמַיִם וְאַל תִּבְקְשׁוּ עוֹד לְאַבֵּד אֶת עַבְדֵי. וְהָאֲרֶץ הוֹסִיפָה לְחָרֹד וְהַקִּירוֹת הִזְדַּעְזְעוּ.
- 33 And also again the third time the voice came, and did speak unto them marvelous words which cannot be uttered by man; and the walls did tremble again, and the earth shook as if it were about to divide asunder.
- וְהִנֵּה נִשְׁמַע הַקוֹל בְּשָׁלִישִׁית, וְהוּא דִּבֶּר אֲלֵיהֶם דְּבָרִים מִפְּלִאִים אֲשֶׁר לֹא יוּכַל אָדָם לְהִשְׁמִיעֵם; וְהַקִּירוֹת הִזְדַּעְזְעוּ עוֹד וְהָאֲרֶץ חָרְדָה, כְּאִלּוּ עָמְדָה לְהִבָּקַע.

- 34 And it came to pass that the Lamanites could not flee because of the cloud of darkness which did overshadow them; yea, and also they were immovable because of the fear which did come upon them.
- וְהָיָה כִּי לֹא יָכְלוּ הַלְמָנִיתִים לָנוּס, וְעַן אֲשֶׁר אָפְףָּ אוֹתָם עָנַן הָעֲלָטָה וּמִפְּנֵי הַיּוֹתֵם מִשְׁתָּקִים מִן הַפַּחַד אֲשֶׁר נָפַל עֲלֵיהֶם.
- 35 Now there was one among them who was a Nephite by birth, who had once belonged to the church of God but had dissented from them.
- וְאִישׁ אֶחָד הָיָה בִּינֵיהֶם, נָפִי מִלְדָּה, אֲשֶׁר נִמְנָה לְפָנִים עִם חֲבֵרֵי כְּנִסְיַת אֱלֹהִים, וְאוֹלָם פָּרַשׁ מֵהֶם.
- 36 And it came to pass that he turned him about, and behold, he saw through the cloud of darkness the faces of Nephi and Lehi; and behold, they did shine exceedingly, even as the faces of angels. And he beheld that they did lift their eyes to heaven; and they were in the attitude as if talking or lifting their voices to some being whom they beheld.
- וְהָיָה בְּהִפְנוֹתוֹ אֶת מִבְטּוֹ, וְהִנֵּה מִבְּעַד לַעֲנַן הָעֲלָטָה הוּא רָאָה אֶת פְּנֵי נָפִי וְלֵחִי. וְהִנֵּה הֵם זָרְחוּ וְהִזְהִירוּ כְּפְנֵי מַלְאָכֵי אֱלֹהִים. וְהוּא רָאָה כִּי הֵם נִשְׂאוּ אֶת עֵינֵיהֶם הַשָּׁמַיְמָה, וְהֵם הָיוּ כַּמְדַּבְּרִים אוֹ כְּנוֹשְׂאִים קוֹל אֶל מִי אֲשֶׁר רָאוּהוּ.
- 37 And it came to pass that this man did cry unto the multitude, that they might turn and look. And behold, there was power given unto them that they did turn and look; and they did behold the faces of Nephi and Lehi.
- אֲזַי קָרָא הָאִישׁ הַזֶּה אֶל הַהֶמוֹן, לְהִפְנוֹת אֶת מִבְטָם וּלְרְאוֹת. וְהִנֵּה, נָתַן לָהֶם כֹּחַ, וְהֵם פָּנוּ וְהִבִּיטוּ וַיִּרְאוּ אֶת פְּנֵי נָפִי וְלֵחִי.
- 38 And they said unto the man: Behold, what do all these things mean, and who is it with whom these men do converse?
- וְהֵם אָמְרוּ אֶל הָאִישׁ: מָה מְשֻׁמַּע כָּל הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה וְעִם מִי שׁוֹחִים הָאֲנָשִׁים הָאֵלֶּה?
- 39 Now the man's name was Aminadab. And Aminadab said unto them: They do converse with the angels of God.
- וְשֵׁם הָאִישׁ הַהוּא נְקִיָּא עַמִּינָדָב. וְכֵן אָמַר לָהֶם עַמִּינָדָב: מְשִׁיחִים הֵם עִם מַלְאָכֵי אֱלֹהִים.
- 40 And it came to pass that the Lamanites said unto him: What shall we do, that this cloud of darkness may be removed from overshadowing us?
- וְאָמְרוּ לוֹ הַלְמָנִיתִים: מָה נַעֲשֶׂה בְּעִבּוֹר יָסוּר מִכְסוּתָנוּ עָנַן הָעֲלָטָה הַזֶּה?
- 41 And Aminadab said unto them: You must repent, and cry unto the voice, even until ye shall have faith in Christ, who was taught unto you by Alma, and Amulek, and Zeezrom; and when ye shall do this, the cloud of darkness shall be removed from overshadowing you.
- וְאָמַר אֲלֵיהֶם עַמִּינָדָב: עֲלִיכֶם לְהִנָּחַם מִחַטָּאתֵיכֶם וּלְקַרֵּא אֶל הַקּוֹל, עַד אֲשֶׁר תִּתְאַזְרוּ אֶמּוּנָה בְּמִשְׁיַח, אֲשֶׁר עֲלָמָא וְעַמּוּלֵק וְזִיזְרוֹם לְמַדּוּכֶם עַל אוֹדוֹתֵי; וּבַעֲשׂוֹתְכֶם בֵּן יָסוּר עָנַן הָעֲלָטָה מֵעֲלֵיכֶם.
- 42 And it came to pass that they all did begin to cry unto the voice of him who had shaken the earth; yea, they did cry even until the cloud of darkness was dispersed.
- אֲזַי הִחֲלוּ כָּלֶם לְקַרֵּא אֶל קוֹל מִי אֲשֶׁר הִתְרִיד אֶת הָאָרֶץ; וְהֵם קָרְאוּ עַד אֲשֶׁר נִמּוּג עָנַן הָעֲלָטָה.
- 43 And it came to pass that when they cast their eyes about, and saw that the cloud of darkness was dispersed from overshadowing them, behold, they saw that they were encircled about, yea every soul, by a pillar of fire.
- וְהָיָה בְּהִבְיֵטֵם סָבִיב וּבִרְאוֹתֶם כִּי נִמּוּג עָנַן הָעֲלָטָה אֲשֶׁר אָפְפָּם, וְהִנֵּה הֵם רָאוּ כִּי הֵם מְקֻפָּסִים, כָּל אִישׁ מֵהֶם, בְּעַמּוּד אֵשׁ.
- 44 And Nephi and Lehi were in the midst of them; yea, they were encircled about; yea, they were as if in the midst of a flaming fire, yet it did harm
- וּבִתְוֹכֶם הָיוּ נָפִי וְלֵחִי; אָכֵן, אִף הֵם הָיוּ מְקֻפָּסִים בְּאִלוּ בִּתְוֹךְ לְהִבֵּת אֵשׁ, אֲךָ לֹא אָנָּה

לָהֶם כָּל רַע, וְאִף קִירוֹת בֵּית הַכֶּלֶא לֹא נִאָּחֲזוּ  
בָאֵשׁ. וְהֵם מָלְאוּ שִׂמְחָה אֲשֶׁר אֵין לְתַאֲרָה,  
וְכָלָה אוֹמֶרֶת כְּבוֹד.

them not, neither did it take hold upon the walls of the prison; and they were filled with that joy which is unspeakable and full of glory.

וְהִנֵּה יֵרְדֶה רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ מֵאֵת אֱלֹהִים מִן  
הַשָּׁמַיִם וְנִכְנְסָה אֶל לִבָּם וְהֵם כָּאֵלוּ מָלְאוּ אֵשׁ  
וַיְכַלּוּ לְהַבִּיעַ דְּבָרִים נִפְלְאִים.

45 And behold, the Holy Spirit of God did come down from heaven, and did enter into their hearts, and they were filled as if with fire, and they could speak forth marvelous words.

אִז נִשְׁמַע קוֹל בְּאִזְנוֹהֶם, קוֹל נָעִים, כָּאֵלוּ  
לְחֹשׁ, לֵאמֹר:

46 And it came to pass that there came a voice unto them, yea, a pleasant voice, as if it were a whisper, saying:

שָׁלוֹם, שָׁלוֹם עֲלֵיכֶם, עַל אֱמוּנַתְכֶם בְּבִנִי  
יְקִירִי הָאֱהוֹב, אֲשֶׁר הוּא קִים מִיְסוּד הָעוֹלָם.

47 Peace, peace be unto you, because of your faith in my Well Beloved, who was from the foundation of the world.

וְכַאֲשֶׁר הֵם שָׁמְעוּ זֹאת, הֵם נִשְׂאוּ אֶת עֵינֵיהֶם  
כָּאֵלוּ אָבוּ לְרֹאוֹת מֵאֵין בָּא הַקּוֹל. וְהִנֵּה הֵם  
רָאוּ כִי נִפְתְּחִים הַשָּׁמַיִם, וּמַלְאָכִים יוֹרְדִים  
וּמִשְׁמָשִׁים לִפְנֵיהֶם.

48 And now, when they heard this they cast up their eyes as if to behold from whence the voice came; and behold, they saw the heavens open; and angels came down out of heaven and ministered unto them.

כִּשְׁלֹשׁ מֵאוֹת נַפְשׁ רָאוּ וּשְׁמְעוּ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים  
הָאֵלֶּה. וְהֵם הִצְטִווּ לְצִאָּת, וְלֹא לְתִמְאָה וְאִף  
לֹא לְהִטִּיל סֶפֶק.

49 And there were about three hundred souls who saw and heard these things; and they were bidden to go forth and marvel not, neither should they doubt.

וְהֵם יָצְאוּ וּשְׁמָשׁוּ לִפְנֵי הָעָם, בְּהַשְׁמִיעַם בְּכָל  
אֲזוֹרֵי הָאָרֶץ אֲשֶׁר סָבִיב אֶת כָּל הַדְּבָרִים  
אֲשֶׁר הֵם שָׁמְעוּ וָרָאוּ, עַד אֲשֶׁר הִשְׁתַּכְּנְעוּ רַב  
הַלְמָנִים עַל יְדֵיהֶם, מִפְּנֵי הָרָאיוֹת הַבְּרוּרוֹת  
אֲשֶׁר לִפְנֵיהֶם.

50 And it came to pass that they did go forth, and did minister unto the people, declaring throughout all the regions round about all the things which they had heard and seen, insomuch that the more part of the Lamanites were convinced of them, because of the greatness of the evidences which they had received.

וְכָל אֲשֶׁר הִשְׁתַּכְּנְעוּ הִנִּיחוּ אֶת כָּלִי מִלְחָמָתָם  
וְאִף נִטְשׂוּ אֶת שִׁנְאָתָם וְאֶת מִסֵּרֶת אֲבוֹתֵיהֶם.

51 And as many as were convinced did lay down their weapons of war, and also their hatred and the tradition of their fathers.

וְהָיָה כִּי הֵם מָסְרוּ לְיַד הַנְּפִיִּים אֶת אֲדָמוֹת  
נַחֲלָתָם.

52 And it came to pass that they did yield up unto the Nephites the lands of their possession.

## 1

## 6

וְהָיָה בְּתֵם שְׁנַת שְׁשִׁים וּשְׁתַּיִם לְשִׁלְטוֹן  
הַשׁוֹפְטִים, וְכָל הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה קָמוּ וְהָיוּ;  
וְרַב הַלְמָנִים הִפְכוּ עִם צִדִּיק, עַד כִּי צִדְקָתָם  
עָלְתָה עַל צִדְקַת הַנְּפִיִּים, כִּי הֵם הָיוּ אִיתְנִים  
וְיָצִיבִים בְּאַמְמוֹנָתָם.

1 And it came to pass that when the sixty and second year of the reign of the judges had ended, all these things had happened and the Lamanites had become, the more part of them, a righteous people, insomuch that their righteousness did exceed that of the Nephites because of their firmness and their steadiness in the faith.

כִּי הִנֵּה, רַבִּים מִן הַנְּפִיִּים הָיוּ לְאִנְשֵׁים קָשִׁים  
וְנִקְשָׁים, וּמִרְשָׁעִים עַד מָאֵד, עַד כִּי הֵם מָאִסוּ

2 For behold, there were many of the Nephites who had become hardened and impenitent and grossly wicked, insomuch that they did reject the

## הילמן ו:ג-יא

- אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים וְכָל דְּבַר הַשְּׁפָה וְנִבְּוָאָה  
אֲשֶׁר בָּא בְּקִרְבָּם.
- word of God and all the preaching and prophesying which did come among them.
- 3 וְאַיִלָם, שְׂמָחוּ מְאֹד אַנְשֵׁי הַכְּנָסִיָּה עַל הַפִּיכֹת  
הַלְּמָנִים לְמַאֲמֵי יְהוָה, כִּי נִוְסְדָה בֵּינֵיהֶם  
כְּנָסִית אֱלֹהִים. וְהֵם הִתְחַבְּרוּ זֶה לָזֶה וְשָׂשׂוּ  
זֶה בְּזֶה, וְרִבָּה הִיִּתָּה שְׂמִחָתָם.
- 3 Nevertheless, the people of the church did have great joy because of the conversion of the Lamanites, yea, because of the church of God, which had been established among them. And they did fellowship one with another and did rejoice one with another, and did have great joy.
- 4 וְרַבִּים מִן הַלְּמָנִים יָרְדוּ אֶל אֶרֶץ זֶרַחֶמְלָה  
וְהִשְׁמִיעוּ לָעָם הַנִּפְיִים עַל אֲדוּת אִפֹּן  
הַפִּיכָתָם לְמַאֲמֵי יְהוָה וְהַפְּצִירוּ בָּהֶם  
לְהֵאֱמִין וּלְשׁוּב מִרְעָתָם.
- 4 And it came to pass that many of the Lamanites did come down into the land of Zarahemla, and did declare unto the people of the Nephites the manner of their conversion, and did exhort them to faith and repentance.
- 5 אָכֵן, רַבִּים מֵהֶם הִטִּיפוּ בְּרַב עֹז וּבְתִקְוָה  
סִמְכוֹת עַד כִּי שְׁפָלוּ רַבִּים מִן הַנִּפְיִים אֶל  
עִמְקֵי הַהִכְנָעָה, וְהִפְכוּ נְאֻמָּנִים נִכְנָעִים  
לְאֱלֹהִים וְלִישׁוּ.
- 5 Yea, and many did preach with exceedingly great power and authority, unto the bringing down many of them into the depths of humility, to be the humble followers of God and the Lamb.
- 6 וְרַבִּים מִן הַלְּמָנִים הָלְכוּ אֶל אֶרֶץ הַצָּפוֹן;  
וְאִף נִפְי וְלֵחִי הָלְכוּ שָׁמָּה לְהִטִּיף לָעָם. וְכֹה  
כָּלְתָה שְׁנַת שְׁשִׁים וְשָׁלֹשׁ.
- 6 And it came to pass that many of the Lamanites did go into the land northward; and also Nephi and Lehi went into the land northward, to preach unto the people. And thus ended the sixty and third year.
- 7 וְהָיָה שְׁלוֹם בְּכָל הָאָרֶץ, עַד כִּי הָלְכוּ הַנִּפְיִים  
אֶל כָּל מְקוֹם בְּאֶרֶץ אֲשֶׁר חָפְצוּ, אִם אֶל  
מוֹשְׁבוֹת הַנִּפְיִים, וְאִם אֶל מוֹשְׁבוֹת הַלְּמָנִים.
- 7 And behold, there was peace in all the land, insomuch that the Nephites did go into whatsoever part of the land they would, whether among the Nephites or the Lamanites.
- 8 וְאִף הַלְּמָנִים הָלְכוּ בְּאֶשֶׁר חָפְצוּ, אִם אֶל  
מוֹשְׁבוֹת הַלְּמָנִים, וְאִם אֶל מוֹשְׁבוֹת הַנִּפְיִים.  
כֹּה הִתְנַהֵּל בֵּינֵיהֶם מִשָּׂא וּמִתֵּן חֶפְשִׁי לְמִקָּח  
וּמִמְכָּר וּלְרוֹחַ כְּחֶפְצָם.
- 8 And it came to pass that the Lamanites did also go whithersoever they would, whether it were among the Lamanites or among the Nephites; and thus they did have free intercourse one with another, to buy and to sell, and to get gain, according to their desire.
- 9 אַזְּ הָאִיר לָהֶם הָעֵשֶׂר פָּנִים עַד מְאֹד, הַלְּמָנִים  
וְהַנִּפְיִים כָּאֶחָד; וְהֵם צָבְרוּ זָהָב וְכֶסֶף וְכָל מִינֵי  
מִתְּכֹת יָקָרוֹת בְּשֹׁפֵעַ עֲצוֹם וָרֹב, בְּאֶרֶץ  
הַצָּפוֹן כְּבְּאֶרֶץ הַדָּרוֹם.
- 9 And it came to pass that they became exceedingly rich, both the Lamanites and the Nephites; and they did have an exceeding plenty of gold, and of silver, and of all manner of precious metals, both in the land south and in the land north.
- 10 וְאֶרֶץ הַדָּרוֹם נִקְרָאָה בְּשֵׁם לְחִי וְאֶרֶץ הַצָּפוֹן  
נִקְרָאָה בְּשֵׁם מוּלֵק, כִּשְׁם בֶּן צִדְקִיָּהוּ, כִּי אֶל  
אֶרֶץ הַצָּפוֹן הֵבִיא יְהוָה אֶת מוּלֵק וְאֶל אֶרֶץ  
הַדָּרוֹם הֵבִיא אֶת לְחִי.
- 10 Now the land south was called Lehi and the land north was called Mulek, which was after the son of Zedekiah; for the Lord did bring Mulek into the land north, and Lehi into the land south.
- 11 אָכֵן, בְּשֵׁתֵי הָאֲרָצוֹת הָאֵלֶּה הָיוּ כָּל סוּגֵי זָהָב  
וְכֶסֶף וְעִפְרוֹת יָקָרוֹת לְמִינֵיהֶן; וְכֹן הָיוּ שָׂם  
אֲמָנֵי מַחְשֶׁבֶת אֲשֶׁר הִפְּקוּ כָּל מִין עֲפָרָה  
וּצִרְפוּהָ, וְכֹה הֵם הִתְעַשְּׂרוּ.
- 11 And behold, there was all manner of gold in both these lands, and of silver, and of precious ore of every kind; and there were also curious workmen, who did work all kinds of ore and did refine it; and thus they did become rich.

- והם גדלו תבואות בשפע, בצפון כבדרום. והם עלו ושגשגו עד מאד, בצפון כבדרום. והם רבו בארץ ועצמו מאד. והם גדלו עדרי צאן ובקר לרב וכן עגלי מרבק רבים.
- 12 They did raise grain in abundance, both in the north and in the south; and they did flourish exceedingly, both in the north and in the south. And they did multiply and wax exceedingly strong in the land. And they did raise many flocks and herds, yea, many fatlings.
- והשיהם עמלו וטוו וארגו כל סוג אריג, ושיש משור ובוד מקל מין לכסות את מעמיהם. כה חלפה בשלום שנת ששים וארבע.
- 13 Behold their women did toil and spin, and did make all manner of cloth, of fine-twined linen and cloth of every kind, to clothe their nakedness. And thus the sixty and fourth year did pass away in peace.
- אף בשנת ששים וחמש היה להם רב שמחה ושלום, אכן, הספה רבה ונבואות רבות על העתיד לבוא. וכה חלפה שנת ששים וחמש.
- 14 And in the sixty and fifth year they did also have great joy and peace, yea, much preaching and many prophecies concerning that which was to come. And thus passed away the sixty and fifth year.
- והיה בשנת ששים ושיש לשלטון השופטים, רצחה יד אלמונית את כוזרם בעודו יושב על כס המשפט. ובשנה היא נרצח גם בנו, אשר בתרהו העם תחת אביו. וכה כלתה שנת ששים ושיש.
- 15 And it came to pass that in the sixty and sixth year of the reign of the judges, behold, Cezoram was murdered by an unknown hand as he sat upon the judgment-seat. And it came to pass that in the same year, that his son, who had been appointed by the people in his stead, was also murdered. And thus ended the sixty and sixth year.
- והיה בראשית שנת ששים ושבע החלו האנשים להרשיע מאד כלפניהם.
- 16 And in the commencement of the sixty and seventh year the people began to grow exceedingly wicked again.
- כי הנה ברכם יהוה בעשר העולם את כה ארצה, עד כי לא התעוררו לרגו או למלחמה ולשפיכות דמים. לכן הם הפנו את לבם אל עשרם; אכן, הם החלו לרדף בצע בעבור התנשא איש על אחיו. לכן הם בצעו רציחות בסתר, ושידדו וגזלו למען בצע.
- 17 For behold, the Lord had blessed them so long with the riches of the world that they had not been stirred up to anger, to wars, nor to bloodshed; therefore they began to set their hearts upon their riches; yea, they began to seek to get gain that they might be lifted up one above another; therefore they began to commit secret murders, and to rob and to plunder, that they might get gain.
- והרוצחים והגזלנים ההם היו כנפיה אשר יסדו קישקומן וגדיאנטון. והנה כי רבים היו אנשי כנפית גדיאנטון, אף בין הנפיים, אף מרבים יותר היו בקרב רשעי הלמנים; והם נקראו בשם שודדי גדיאנטון ורוצחיו.
- 18 And now behold, those murderers and plunderers were a band who had been formed by Kishkumen and Gadianton. And now it had come to pass that there were many, even among the Nephites, of Gadianton's band. But behold, they were more numerous among the more wicked part of the Lamanites. And they were called Gadianton's robbers and murderers.
- אלה היו האנשים אשר רצחו את השופט העליון כוזרם ואת בנו בעודם על כסא המשפט. והנה, לא נתפשו הרוצחים.
- 19 And it was they who did murder the chief judge Cezoram, and his son, while in the judgment-seat; and behold, they were not found.
- וכאשר נזכחו הלמנים לדעת כי יש בקרבם שודדים, הם נעצבו מאד ונקטו כל אמצעי אשר היה לאל ידם להשמידם מעל פני האדמה.
- 20 And now it came to pass that when the Lamanites found that there were robbers among them they were exceedingly sorrowful; and they did use every means in their power to destroy them off the face of the earth.
- ואולם, השטן עורר את לב מרבית הנפיים, עד כי הם התחברו אל כנפיות השודדים.
- 21 But behold, Satan did stir up the hearts of the more part of the Nephites, insomuch that they did unite with those bands of robbers,



## הילמן ו:כב-כט

הָאֱלֹהִים וּבָאוּ עִמָּן בְּבְרִית וּבְאֵלֶּהָ, לְהִגֹּן וּלְשָׁמֹר  
אִישׁ אֶת אָחִיו בְּכָל הַנְּסֻבּוֹת הַקְּשׁוֹת אֲשֶׁר  
יִמָּצְאוּ בָּהֶן, לְכָל יַעֲנֹשׁ עַל מַעֲשֵׂי הָרָצָח  
וְהַגְזֵל וְהַגְנֵבָה אֲשֶׁר יַבְצְעוּ.

and did enter into their covenants and their oaths, that they would protect and preserve one another in whatsoever difficult circumstances they should be placed, that they should not suffer for their murders, and their plunderings, and their stealings.

וְהָיוּ לָהֶם סִמְנִים, אָכֵן, סִמְנֵי סֵתֶר וּמִלּוֹת  
סֵתֶר; וְזֹאת בְּעֵבֹר יִבְחִינוּ מִי אָחִיהֶם, אִישׁ  
בְּרִיתָם, כִּי בְּלִי כָל יַחַס לַעֲוֹלָה אֲשֶׁר עָשָׂה  
אִישׁ, לֹא יִפְגַּע בּוֹ אָחִיו, וְלֹא כָל חֵבֶר בְּכַנְפֵּיתוֹ  
אֲשֶׁר עָבַר בְּבְרִית הַהִיא.

22 And it came to pass that they did have their signs, yea, their secret signs, and their secret words; and this that they might distinguish a brother who had entered into the covenant, that whatsoever wickedness his brother should do he should not be injured by his brother, nor by those who did belong to his band, who had taken this covenant.

וְכֵה הֵם יִכְלוּ לְרָצֹחַ וּלְגָזֵל וּלְגַנֹּב וּלְזָנוּת  
וּלְעִשְׂוֹת כָּל רָשָׁעָה, כְּנֶגֶד חֻקֵּי אֶרֶצָם וְאֶף  
חֻקֵּי אֱלֹהֵיהֶם.

23 And thus they might murder, and plunder, and steal, and commit whoredoms and all manner of wickedness, contrary to the laws of their country and also the laws of their God.

וְכָל אֲשֶׁר הוּא חֵבֶר בְּכַנְפֵּיתָם וּגְלָה בְּרִבִּים  
אֶת רָשָׁעָתָם וְאֶת תּוֹעֲבוֹתֵיהֶם הָעֵמֶד לְדִין,  
לֹא עַל פִּי חֻקֵּי אֶרֶצָם, כִּי אִם כְּפִי חֻקֵּי עוֹלָמָם,  
אֲשֶׁר חָקְקוּ גָּדִיאַנְטוֹן וְקִישְׁקוּמֶן.

24 And whosoever of those who belonged to their band should reveal unto the world of their wickedness and their abominations, should be tried, not according to the laws of their country, but according to the laws of their wickedness, which had been given by Gadianton and Kishkumen.

הִנֵּה, אֵלֶּה הָאֱלֹלוֹת וּבְרִיתוֹת הַסֵּתֶר אֲשֶׁר צִוָּה  
עַל־מֶלֶךְ אֶת בְּנוֹ כִּי לֹא תִצְאָנָה אֵל כָּל־  
הָאֲנָשִׁים, פֶּן יִסְבוּ אֲבִדוֹן לָעַם.

25 Now behold, it is these secret oaths and covenants which Alma commanded his son should not go forth unto the world, lest they should be a means of bringing down the people unto destruction.

וְאוֹלָם הָאֱלֹלוֹת וּבְרִיתוֹת הַסֵּתֶר הָהֵן לֹא בָּאוּ  
אֶל גָּדִיאַנְטוֹן מִן הַפְּתָבִים אֲשֶׁר נִמְסְרוּ לְיָדֵי  
הִילְמָן, כִּי הֵם נָתְנוּ בְּלִב גָּדִיאַנְטוֹן עַל יְדֵי מִי  
אֲשֶׁר פָּתָה אֶת אֲבוֹתֵינוּ הָרִאשׁוֹנִים לְטַעַם  
מִן הַפְּרִי הָאָסוּר;

26 Now behold, those secret oaths and covenants did not come forth unto Gadianton from the records which were delivered unto Helaman; but behold, they were put into the heart of Gadianton by that same being who did entice our first parents to partake of the forbidden fruit—

הוּא אֲשֶׁר קָשַׁר קָשֶׁר עִם קַיִן כִּי בְּרָצָחוֹ אֶת הָאֵל  
אָחִיו לֹא יוֹדַע הַדָּבָר בְּרִבִּים. וְהוּא קָשַׁר עִם קַיִן  
וְעִם הַהוֹלְכִים בְּדַרְכָּיו מִן הַיּוֹם הַהוּא וְהַלָּאָה.

27 Yea, that same being who did plot with Cain, that if he would murder his brother Abel it should not be known unto the world. And he did plot with Cain and his followers from that time forth.

וְהוּא אֲשֶׁר נָטַע בְּלִב הָאֲנָשִׁים לְבָנוֹת מִגְדָּל  
כַּה גְּבוּהָ, בְּעֵבֹר יוֹכְלוּ לָהִיגֵעַ הַשָּׁמַיְמָה.  
וְהוּא אֲשֶׁר הִטְעָה אֶת הָאֲנָשִׁים אֲשֶׁר בָּאוּ  
מִן הַמִּגְדָּל הַהוּא אֶל הָאֶרֶץ הַזֹּאת, אֲשֶׁר  
הִפִּיץ אֶת מַעֲשֵׂי הַחֹשֶׁךְ וְהַתּוֹעֲבוֹת עַל פְּנֵי  
כָּל הָאֶרֶץ, עַד אֲשֶׁר מָשַׁךְ אֶת הָאֲנָשִׁים  
אֵלֵי אֲבִדוֹן וְאֶל שְׂאוֹל אֵין קֵץ.

28 And also it is that same being who put it into the hearts of the people to build a tower sufficiently high that they might get to heaven. And it was that same being who led on the people who came from that tower into this land; who spread the works of darkness and abominations over all the face of the land, until he dragged the people down to an entire destruction, and to an everlasting hell.

אָכֵן, הוּא אֲשֶׁר נָטַע בְּלִב גָּדִיאַנְטוֹן כִּי יוֹסִיף  
לְבַצֵּעַ אֶת מַעֲשֵׂי הַחֹשֶׁךְ וְהָרָצָח בְּחֹשֶׁאִי;  
וְהוּא אֲשֶׁר הֵבִיא זֹאת מֵעַת רִאשִׁית הָאָנוּשׁ  
וְעַד הַיּוֹם הַזֶּה.

29 Yea, it is that same being who put it into the heart of Gadianton to still carry on the work of darkness, and of secret murder; and he has brought it forth from the beginning of man even down to this time.

- 30 And behold, it is he who is the author of all sin. And behold, he doth carry on his works of darkness and secret murder, and doth hand down their plots, and their oaths, and their covenants, and their plans of awful wickedness, from generation to generation according as he can get hold upon the hearts of the children of men.
- 31 And now behold, he had got great hold upon the hearts of the Nephites; yea, insomuch that they had become exceedingly wicked; yea, the more part of them had turned out of the way of righteousness, and did trample under their feet the commandments of God, and did turn unto their own ways, and did build up unto themselves idols of their gold and their silver.
- 32 And it came to pass that all these iniquities did come unto them in the space of not many years, insomuch that a more part of it had come unto them in the sixty and seventh year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.
- 33 And they did grow in their iniquities in the sixty and eighth year also.
- 34 And thus we see that the Nephites did begin to dwindle in unbelief, and grow in wickedness and abominations, while the Lamanites began to grow exceedingly in the knowledge of their God; yea, they did begin to keep his statutes and commandments, and to walk in truth and uprightness before him.
- 35 And thus we see that the Spirit of the Lord began to withdraw from the Nephites, because of the wickedness and the hardness of their hearts.
- 36 And thus we see that the Lord began to pour out his Spirit upon the Lamanites, because of their easiness and willingness to believe in his words.
- 37 And it came to pass that the Lamanites did hunt the band of robbers of Gadianon; and they did preach the word of God among the more wicked part of them, insomuch that this band of robbers was utterly destroyed from among the Lamanites.
- 38 And it came to pass on the other hand, that the Nephites did build them up and support them, beginning at the more wicked part of them, until they had overspread all the land of the Nephites, and had seduced the more part of the righteous until they had come down to believe in their works and partake of their spoils, and to join with them in their secret murders and combinations.
- הנה, הוא אבי כל חטא, והוא ממשיך בעשותו את מעשי החשך שלו והרציחות בחשאי, אכן, בהעבירו את תחבולות הקשר ושבועותיהם ובריתותיהם ומזמות הרשעה הנוראה מדור אל דור, ככל אשר עולה בידו להשתלט על לב בני האדם.
- ועתה הוא השתלט על לב הנפיים עד כי נעשו מרשעים מאד. הנה, רבים סרו מדרך הישר ורמסו ברגליהם את מצוות אלהים ופנו אל דרכם, והקימו להם את אילי זהבם וכסףם.
- וכל העוונות האלה באו אליהם במשך שנים מעטות, עד כי מרביתם ארעו להם בשנת ששים ושבע לשלטון השופטים בעם נפי.
- ואף בשנת ששים ושמונה הם הגדילו והרבו את עוונותיהם, למרבה צער הצדיקים ויגונם הרב.
- וכה רואים אנחנו כי הנפיים החלו לשקע בחסר אמונה ולהרבות רשע ותועבה, בעוד הלמנים החלו לבוא עד מאד אל דעת אלהיהם; כי הם שמרו את חקיו ואת מצוותיו והלכו לפניו באמת ובישר.
- וכה רואים אנחנו כי רוח יהוה החל לרחק מן הנפיים מפני קשי לבבם ורשעתו.
- וכה רואים אנחנו כי שפך יהוה את רוחו על הלמנים, כי היו נוחים וחספזים להאמין בדברו.
- אז ערכו הלמנים מצוד על כנפית שודדי גדיאנטון; והם הטיפו את דבר אלהים בקרב חלק עמם המרשע, עד כי נעקרה והשמדה כנפית השודדים ההיא מקרב הלמנים.
- ולעמדת זאת, טפחו הנפיים את השודדים ותמכו בהם, החל ברשעים אשר בהם, עד אשר הם התפשטו בכל ארץ הנפיים ופתו את מרבית הצדיקים, עד אשר האמינו במעשיהם ולקחו מבזתם והתחברו עמם במעשי הרצח בחשאי ובאגדות הסתר.

39 וְכֵן הֵם קִבְּלוּ אֶת הַמְּמִשָּׁלָה לְיָדֵיהֶם בְּלִבָּבָה, עַד כִּי רָמְסוּ בְּרַגְלֵיהֶם אֶת הָעֲנָנִים וְהָעֲנָנִים וּמֵאֲמִינֵי אֱלֹהִים הִנָּכְנְעִים, וְאֶף הַכּוֹס וְשִׁסְעוּם וּפָנוּ לָהֶם עֵרָף.

40 וְכֵן רֹאִים אֲנִיחָנוּ כִּי הִנָּפִיִּים הָיוּ בְּמַצָּב אִים וְכִי הֵם בְּשָׁלוּ לְקִרְאָת אֲבִדוֹן עוֹלָם.

41 וְכֵן כָּלְתָה שְׁנַת שְׁשִׁים וְשִׁמוֹנֶה לְשִׁלְטוֹן הַשּׁוֹפְטִים בְּעַם נְפִי.

נְבוֹאָת נְפִי בֶן הִלְמָן. אֱלֹהִים מְזַהֵר אֶת עַם נְפִי כִּי יִפְקֹדֵם בְּחֵמָת אָפוֹ, וְיַעֲשֶׂה בָהֶם כְּלִיּוֹן חָרוֹץ אִם לֹא יִשְׁוּבוּ מִרְעֵתָם. אֱלֹהִים מַכָּה אֶת עַם נְפִי בַּמִּגָּפָה, וְהֵם שָׁבִים מִרְעֵתָם וּפּוֹנִים אֵלָיו. שְׁמוּאֵל, אִישׁ לְמִנִּי, מְנַבֵּא לְנָפִיִּים. (בְּעֶרְךָ 1–23 לְכָנִי הַסְפִּירָה.) נִכְלָל בַּפָּרָקִים ז–טז.

*The prophecy of Nephi the son of Helaman. God threatens the people of Nephi that he will visit them in his anger to their utter destruction unless they repent of their wickedness. God smites the people of Nephi with pestilence, and they repent and turn to him. Samuel, a Lamanite, prophesies to the Nephites. (About 23–1 B.C.) Comprising chapters 7–16.*

## ז

## 7

וְהִיָּה בְּשַׁנַּת שְׁשִׁים וְתִשְׁעָה לְשִׁלְטוֹן הַשּׁוֹפְטִים בְּעַם נְפִי, שָׁב נְפִי, בֶּן הִלְמָן, מֵאַרְצֵי הָעֲפֹן אֶל אֶרֶץ זֶרַחְמֶלָה.

1 Behold, now it came to pass in the sixty and ninth year of the reign of the judges over the people of the Nephites, that Nephi, the son of Helaman, returned to the land of Zarahemla from the land northward.

כִּי הוּא יָצָא בְּקֶרֶב הָעָם אֲשֶׁר בְּאַרְצֵי הָעֲפֹן וְהִטִּיף לָהֶם אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים וּנְבִיאָה לָהֶם דְּבָרִים רַבִּים.

2 For he had been forth among the people who were in the land northward, and did preach the word of God unto them, and did prophesy many things unto them;

וְהֵם מָאֲסוּ בְּכָל דְּבָרָיו, עַד אֲשֶׁר לֹא יָכֹל הָיָה לְשִׁבָּת בְּתוֹכָם, וְהוּא שָׁב אֶל אֶרֶץ מוֹלְדָתוֹ.

3 And they did reject all his words, insomuch that he could not stay among them, but returned again unto the land of his nativity.

וְהוּא רָאָה כִּי הָעָם שְׂרִי בְּרָשָׁעָה כֹּה נֹרָאָה, וְכִי שׁוֹדְדֵי גְדִיאֲנוֹן הָיִים יֹשְׁבוּ בְּכֶסֶּא הַמִּשְׁפָּט, כִּי לָקְחוּ לְיָדֵיהֶם בְּחֻזָּקָה כֹּחַ וּשְׂרָרָה. וְהוּא רָאָה כִּי הֵם סָרוּ מִמִּצְוֹת אֱלֹהִים וְלֹא פָעֲלוּ כָּלל בְּיִשְׁרָאֵל לְפָנָיו, וְלֹא שָׁפְטוּ בְּצֶדֶק אֶת בְּנֵי הָאָדָם;

4 And seeing the people in a state of such awful wickedness, and those Gadianton robbers filling the judgment-seats—having usurped the power and authority of the land; laying aside the commandments of God, and not in the least aright before him; doing no justice unto the children of men;

כִּי הֵם הִרְשִׁיעוּ אֶת הַצִּדִּיק מִפְּנֵי צִדְקָתוֹ, וּפָטְרוּ מֵעֲנֹשׁ אֶת הָאָשָׁם וְאֶת הָרָשָׁע בְּעִבּוּר כֶּסֶּפּוֹ, אָכֵן, בְּעִבּוּר יִחְזִיקוּ בְּמִשְׁרָתָם בְּרֹאשׁ הַמִּמְשָׁל, לְשִׁלֹּט וּלְהִגָּד כְּחָפְצָם, בְּעִבּוּר רוּחַ וּתְהִלַּת הָאָדָם; וְאָכֵן, בְּעִבּוּר יָקֹל עֲלֵיהֶם לְנָאֵף וּלְגַנֹּב וּלְהִרְגַּם וּלְעֲשׂוֹת כְּפִי חָפְצָם.

5 Condemning the righteous because of their righteousness; letting the guilty and the wicked go unpunished because of their money; and moreover to be held in office at the head of government, to rule and do according to their wills, that they might get gain and glory of the world, and, moreover, that they might the more easily commit adultery, and steal, and kill, and do according to their own wills—

- והעוון הגדול הזה בא על הנפיים במשך  
שנים מעטות. וכראות נפי את זאת, התמלא  
לבו צער והוא קרא ביוגון נפשו:
- אֵהָה, אֱלוֹ הִיו יָמֵי בִימֵי יִצְיָאת אָבִי נָפִי  
לְרִאשׁוֹנָה מֵאֶרֶץ יְרוּשָׁלַם, אִזִּי הִיִּיתִי שָׁשׁ  
עִמּוֹ בְּאֶרֶץ הַנְּעוּדָה. בָּעֵת הַהִיא הָיָה עִמּוֹ נֹחַ  
לְהַעֲנוֹת לְבִקְשׁוֹת וְאִיתָן בְּשִׁמִּירַת מִצְוֹת  
אֱלֹהִים וְלֹא אָץ לְהִנָּטוֹת אֶל דְּרָכֵי אָנוּ. אִזִּי  
הָיָה הָעָם זָרִיז לְשִׁמְעַת לְדִבְרֵי יְהוָה.
- אָכֵן, אֱלוֹ הִיו יָמֵי בִימֵיהֶם, הִיִּיתָה נַפְשִׁי שְׂשֵׁה  
בְּצִדְקַת אַחִי.
- אֲךָ נִגְזַר כִּי יָמֵי חַיֵּי יַחְוֹלוּ בָּעֵת הַזֹּאת וְנַפְשִׁי  
תִּמָּלֵא צֶעַר מִפְּנֵי רָשָׁעַת אַחִי הַזֹּאת.
- וְהֵנָּה, הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה נֶאֱמָרוּ מֵעַל מִגְדָּל  
אֲשֶׁר בְּגִן נָפִי, אֲשֶׁר לִיד הַדֶּרֶךְ הָרִאשִׁית  
הַמּוֹלִיכָה אֶל הַשּׁוּק הַמְּרֻכָּז אֲשֶׁר לְעִיר  
יְרֵחוֹמְלָה; וְהֵנָּה הַשְׁתַּחֲוָה נָפִי עַל הַמִּגְדָּל  
אֲשֶׁר בְּגִנוֹ. וְהַמִּגְדָּל הָיָה לִיד שַׁעַר הַגֶּן אֲשֶׁר  
לִיד עִבְרָה הַדֶּרֶךְ הָרִאשִׁית.
- וְעָבְרוּ שָׁם אֲנָשִׁים אַחֲדִים, וְכִרְאוּתָם אֶת  
נָפִי הַשּׁוֹפֵךְ אֶת נַפְשׁוֹ לִפְנֵי אֱלֹהִים עַל הַמִּגְדָּל,  
הֵם רָצוּ וְסָפְרוּ לָעָם אֶת אֲשֶׁר רָאוּ; וְהָעָם בָּא  
בְּהַמוֹנֵי לְדַעַת אֶת סִבַּת הָאֵבֶל הַגָּדוֹל, אֲשֶׁר  
עַל רָשָׁעַת הָעָם.
- וְהָיָה כְּאֲשֶׁר קָם נָפִי עַל רִגְלָיו, הוּא רָאָה אֶת  
הַמוֹנֵי הָעָם אֲשֶׁר נִקְבְּצוּ יַחְדָּו.
- וְהוּא פָּתַח אֶת פִּיו וְאָמַר אֲלֵיהֶם: מַדּוּעַ  
נֶאֱסַפְתֶּם כָּלְכֶם? הֲאֵם בַּעֲבוּר אֲגִיד לָכֶם  
אֶת עֲוֹנוֹתֵיכֶם?
- אָכֵן, כִּי עָלִיתִי עַל מִגְדָּלִי לְשַׁפֹּךְ אֶת נִי  
פָּשִׁי לִפְנֵי אֱלֹהֵי, מִפְּנֵי צֶעַר לְבִי הָרָב, אֲשֶׁר  
מִפְּנֵי עֲוֹלוֹתֵיכֶם!
- וּמִפְּנֵי אֵבֶלִי וְקִינָתִי נֶאֱסַפְתֶּם יַחְדָּו וְאַתֶּם  
מַשְׁתַּחֲוִּיִּים; אָכֵן, צָרָה גְּדוֹל יֵשׁ לָכֶם לְתַמָּה.  
עֲלִיכֶם לְתַמָּה כִּי הִתְמַסְרֶתֶם לִידֵי הַשָּׁטָן וְהוּא  
קָנָה לוֹ שְׁבִיתָה כַּה חֲזָקָה בְּתוֹךְ לְבָבְכֶם.
- 6 Now this great iniquity had come upon the Nephites, in the space of  
not many years; and when Nephi saw it, his heart was swollen with  
sorrow within his breast; and he did exclaim in the agony of his soul:
- 7 Oh, that I could have had my days in the days when my father Nephi  
first came out of the land of Jerusalem, that I could have joyed with him  
in the promised land; then were his people easy to be entreated, firm to  
keep the commandments of God, and slow to be led to do iniquity; and  
they were quick to hearken unto the words of the Lord—
- 8 Yea, if my days could have been in those days, then would my soul have  
had joy in the righteousness of my brethren.
- 9 But behold, I am consigned that these are my days, and that my  
soul shall be filled with sorrow because of this the wickedness of my  
brethren.
- 10 And behold, now it came to pass that it was upon a tower, which was  
in the garden of Nephi, which was by the highway which led to the  
chief market, which was in the city of Zarahemla; therefore, Nephi had  
bowed himself upon the tower which was in his garden, which tower  
was also near unto the garden gate by which led the highway.
- 11 And it came to pass that there were certain men passing by and saw  
Nephi as he was pouring out his soul unto God upon the tower; and  
they ran and told the people what they had seen, and the people came  
together in multitudes that they might know the cause of so great  
mourning for the wickedness of the people.
- 12 And now, when Nephi arose he beheld the multitudes of people who  
had gathered together.
- 13 And it came to pass that he opened his mouth and said unto them:  
Behold, why have ye gathered yourselves together? That I may tell you  
of your iniquities?
- 14 Yea, because I have got upon my tower that I might pour out my soul  
unto my God, because of the exceeding sorrow of my heart, which is  
because of your iniquities!
- 15 And because of my mourning and lamentation ye have gathered  
yourselves together, and do marvel; yea, and ye have great need to  
marvel; yea, ye ought to marvel because ye are given away that the devil  
has got so great hold upon your hearts.

- 16 Yea, how could you have given way to the enticing of him who is seeking to hurl away your souls down to everlasting misery and endless wo?  
ואיכָה זֶה נִפְתִּיתֶם לְמִבְקֵשׁ לְהִדְף אֶת נַפְשְׁכֶם אֶל בּוֹר יְגוֹן אִין קֹץ וְאַנְחַת עוֹלָמִים?
- 17 O repent ye, repent ye! Why will ye die? Turn ye, turn ye unto the Lord your God. Why has he forsaken you?  
הִנָּחֵמוּ נָא, הִנָּחֵמוּ מִחֻטְאֵיכֶם! מַדּוּעַ תָּמוּתוּ? פָּנוּ נָא, פָּנוּ אֶל יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵיכֶם. מַדּוּעַ עֲזַבְכֶם?
- 18 It is because you have hardened your hearts; yea, ye will not hearken unto the voice of the good shepherd; yea, ye have provoked him to anger against you.  
כִּי הוּא כִּי הִקְשִׁיתֶם אֶת לְבַבְכֶם; אַכֵּן, יַעַן אֲשֶׁר אֵינְכֶם רוֹצִים לְשֹׁמֵעַ בְּקוֹל הַרוֹעֶה הַטוֹב. אַתֶּם הִעִירְתֶּם אֶת חֲמָתוֹ עָלֵיכֶם.
- 19 And behold, instead of gathering you, except ye will repent, behold, he shall scatter you forth that ye shall become meat for dogs and wild beasts.  
וְהִנֵּה, תַּחַת אֲשֶׁר יִקְבְּצְכֶם, בְּהִיּוֹתְכֶם שְׂבִים מִרְעִתְכֶם, הוּא יִזְרֶה אֶתְכֶם הִלָּאָה מִפָּנָיו, בְּעִבּוֹר תִּהְיוּ מֵאֶכָל לְכָלְבִּים וְטָרֵף לְחַיַּת הַשָּׂדֶה.
- 20 O, how could you have forgotten your God in the very day that he has delivered you?  
אֵיכָה שָׁכַחְתֶּם אֶת אֱלֹהֵיכֶם בְּעֶצֶם יוֹם הַצִּילוֹ אֶתְכֶם?
- 21 But behold, it is to get gain, to be praised of men, yea, and that ye might get gold and silver. And ye have set your hearts upon the riches and the vain things of this world, for the which ye do murder, and plunder, and steal, and bear false witness against your neighbor, and do all manner of iniquity.  
וְהִנֵּה, כָּל זֹאת בְּעִבּוֹר הַבָּצֵעַ, וְלְהַשְׁתַּבַּח בִּי בְנֵי הָאָדָם; אַכֵּן, לְשֵׁם הַשְׂגָּת זָהָב וְכֶסֶף. וְאַתֶּם שֵׂתֶם אֶת לְבַבְכֶם אֶל הָעֵשֶׂר וְאֶל הַבְּלִי הָעוֹלָם הַזֶּה, וּבְעִבּוֹרְכֶם אַתֶּם רוֹצְחִים וְגוֹזְלִים וְגוֹנְבִים וּמַעֲדִידִים עֵדוּת שָׁקֶר עַל רֵעֵכֶם וּפּוֹעֲלִים כָּל אָוֶן.
- 22 And for this cause wo shall come unto you except ye shall repent. For if ye will not repent, behold, this great city, and also all those great cities which are round about, which are in the land of our possession, shall be taken away that ye shall have no place in them; for behold, the Lord will not grant unto you strength, as he has hitherto done, to withstand against your enemies.  
וְלָכֵן, אוֹי לָכֶם בְּלִתִּי אִם תִּנָּחֵמוּ עַל רְעִיתְכֶם. כִּי אִם לֹא תִנָּחֵמוּ, הִלָּקָה תִּלְקַח מִכֶּם הָעִיר הַגְּדוֹלָה הַזֹּאת, וְאֵף כָּל הָעָרִים הַגְּדוֹלוֹת אֲשֶׁר מִסְבִּיב, בְּאֶרֶץ נְחֻלְתֵּנוּ. וְלֹא יִהְיֶה לָכֶם מְקוֹם בְּתוֹכָן כִּי לֹא יִתֵּן לָכֶם יְהוָה עֹז לְעִמּוֹד בְּפָנָי אוֹיְבֵיכֶם כְּאֲשֶׁר עָשָׂה עַד עַתָּה.
- 23 For behold, thus saith the Lord: I will not show unto the wicked of my strength, to one more than the other, save it be unto those that repent of their sins, and hearken unto my words. Now therefore, I would that ye should behold, my brethren, that it shall be better for the Lamanites than for you except ye shall repent.  
כִּי כֹה אָמַר יְהוָה: לֹא אֲרָאָה מַעֲזִי לְרָשָׁעִים, לְאַחַד מֵאֲשֶׁר לְמִשְׁנֵהוּ. כִּי אִם לְמִנָּחֵמִים עַל חֻטְאֵיהֶם הַשּׁוֹמְעִים לְדְבָרִי. עַל כֵּן, אַחִי, רְצוּנִי כִּי תִתְבּוֹנְנוּ, כִּי בְלִתִּי אִם תִּנָּחֵמוּ עַל חֻטְאֵיכֶם, טוֹב יִהְיֶה לְלָמָנִים מֵאֲשֶׁר יִהְיֶה לָכֶם.
- 24 For behold, they are more righteous than you, for they have not sinned against that great knowledge which ye have received; therefore the Lord will be merciful unto them; yea, he will lengthen out their days and increase their seed, even when thou shalt be utterly destroyed except thou shalt repent.  
כִּי הִנֵּה, הֵם צַדִּיקִים מִכֶּם, כִּי הֵם אֵינֶם חוֹטְאִים עַל הַיְדִיעָה הַרְבֵּה אֲשֶׁר קִבַּלְתֶּם; לָכֵן יִרְחַמֶם יְהוָה; אַכֵּן, הוּא יֹאדִיר אֶת יְמֵיהֶם וְיַרְבֶּה אֶת יָרֵעֵם, גַּם כְּאֲשֶׁר תִּבּוֹא עָלֵיכֶם כְּלִיָּה עַד תִּמָּכֶם, בְּלִתִּי אִם תִּנָּחֵמוּ עַל רְעִיתְכֶם.
- 25 Yea, wo be unto you because of that great abomination which has come among you; and ye have united yourselves unto it, yea, to that secret band which was established by Gadianton!  
אֹי לָכֶם עַל הַתּוֹעֵבָה הַגְּדוֹלָה אֲשֶׁר בָּאָה בְּקִרְבְּכֶם! וְאַתֶּם הִתְחַבְּרְתֶּם אֵלֶיהָ, אֶל הַכְּנֻפָּה הַחֲשָׁאִית אֲשֶׁר יִסְדָּה גַּדִּיאֲנְטוֹן!



- 26 Yea, wo shall come unto you because of that pride which ye have suffered to enter your hearts, which has lifted you up beyond that which is good because of your exceedingly great riches!
- 27 Yea, wo be unto you because of your wickedness and abominations!
- 28 And except ye repent ye shall perish; yea, even your lands shall be taken from you, and ye shall be destroyed from off the face of the earth.
- 29 Behold now, I do not say that these things shall be, of myself, because it is not of myself that I know these things; but behold, I know that these things are true because the Lord God has made them known unto me, therefore I testify that they shall be.
- אוי לְכֶם עַל הַגָּאוֹן אֲשֶׁר הִתְרַם לְהִכָּנֵס  
אֶל לְבַבְכֶם, כִּי הָיָא אֲשֶׁר הִגְבִּיהָ אֶתְכֶם מֵעַל  
הַטּוֹב, מִפְּנֵי עֲשָׂרְכֶם הָעָצוֹם!
- אוי לְכֶם עַל רְשָׁעְתְּכֶם וְעַל תּוֹעֲבוֹתֵיכֶם!
- וּבִלְתִּי אִם תִּנָּחֲמוּ עַל חַטָּאֵיכֶם, אַבּוּד תֵּאבְדוּ;  
וְאִף תִּלְקַח מִכֶּם אֲדָמַתְכֶם וְאַתֶּם תִּכָּרְתוּ  
מֵעַל פְּנֵי הָאָרֶץ.
- רְאוּ נָא, לֹא עַל דַּעַת עֲצָמִי אוֹמֵר אֲנִי כִּי יְבוֹאוּ  
הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, כִּי לֹא מֵאִתִּי אֲנִי יוֹדְעִם; הַנְּנִי  
יוֹדֵעַ כִּי הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה אֵמֶת הֵם, וְעַן אֲשֶׁר  
הוֹדִיעַם לִי יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים; עַל כֵּן מַעִיד אֲנִי כִּי  
בּוֹא יְבוֹאוּ.

## ח

## 8

- 1 And now it came to pass that when Nephi had said these words, behold, there were men who were judges, who also belonged to the secret band of Gadianton, and they were angry, and they cried out against him, saying unto the people: Why do ye not seize upon this man and bring him forth, that he may be condemned according to the crime which he has done?
- 2 Why seest thou this man, and hearest him revile against this people and against our law?
- 3 For behold, Nephi had spoken unto them concerning the corruptness of their law; yea, many things did Nephi speak which cannot be written; and nothing did he speak which was contrary to the commandments of God.
- 4 And those judges were angry with him because he spake plainly unto them concerning their secret works of darkness; nevertheless, they durst not lay their own hands upon him, for they feared the people lest they should cry out against them.
- 5 Therefore they did cry unto the people, saying: Why do you suffer this man to revile against us? For behold he doth condemn all this people, even unto destruction; yea, and also that these our great cities shall be taken from us, that we shall have no place in them.
- וְהָיָה בְּעַת אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר נְפִי אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה,  
הָיוּ שָׁם שׁוֹפְטִים אֲשֶׁר הֵם חֲבָרִים בְּאֲגֻדַּת  
גִּדְיָאֲנֶטוֹן הַחֲשָׁאִית, וְהֵם רָגְזוּ וְקָרְאוּ לָעָם  
עָלָיו לֵאמֹר: מַדּוּעַ לֹא תִּתְּפְּשׂוּ אֶת הָאִישׁ  
הַזֶּה וְתַעֲמִידוּהוּ לְדִין, לְחַרֵּץ אֶת מִשְׁפָּטוֹ  
כְּכִי פָשְׁעוּ אֲשֶׁר פָּשַׁע?
- מַדּוּעַ תִּבְטִּיטוּ אֶל הָאִישׁ הַזֶּה וְתִקְשִׁיבוּ לוֹ  
בְּנֶאֱצוּ אֶת הָעָם הַזֶּה וְאֶת חֻקֵּינוּ.
- כִּי הִנֵּה, נְפִי דִבֶּר אֵלֵיהֶם עַל שְׁחִיתוֹת חֻקֵּיהֶם.  
אָכֵן, דְּבָרִים רַבִּים דִּבֶּר נְפִי אֲשֶׁר לֹא נִתֵּן  
לְכַתְּבָם; וְלֹא הָיָה אֶחָד מִדְּבָרָיו אֲשֶׁר סִתַּר  
אֶת מִצְוֹת אֱלֹהִים.
- וְהַשּׁוֹפְטִים הָאֵלֶּה רָגְזוּ עָלָיו כִּי הוּא דִּבֶּר  
אֵלֵיהֶם בְּרוּרוֹת עַל מַעֲשֵׂי הַסִּתָּר הָאֲפִלִּים אֲשֶׁר  
לָהֶם. עַל אִף זֹאת, הֵם לֹא הָעִזּוּ לְשַׁלַּח בּוֹ אֶת  
יָדָם, מִיִּרְאָתָם אֶת הָעָם, כֹּן יִקְרְאוּ נִגְדָם.
- עַל כֵּן הֵם קָרְאוּ אֶל הָעָם לֵאמֹר: מַדּוּעַ תִּתִּירוּ  
לָאִישׁ הַזֶּה לְגַדְּפוֹ? הֵן הוּא מַרְשִׁיעַ אֶת כָּל  
הָעָם הַזֶּה וְחוֹרֵץ אֶת דִּינוֹ לְכָלִּיָּה. וְהוּא אִף  
אוֹמֵר כִּי עָרֵינוּ הַגְּדוֹלוֹת הָאֵלֶּה תִּלְקַחְנָה  
מִמֶּנּוּ, וְלֹא יִהְיֶה מָקוֹם לָנוּ בְּתוֹכָן.

## הילמן ח:ו-יד

- 6 And now we know that this is impossible, for behold, we are powerful, and our cities great, therefore our enemies can have no power over us.
- הנה, יודעים אנחנו כי לא תתכן זאת; הן חזקים אנחנו וערינו גדולות. לכן לא יהיה כח לאויבינו לגבר עלינו.
- 7 And it came to pass that thus they did stir up the people to anger against Nephi, and raised contentions among them; for there were some who did cry out: Let this man alone, for he is a good man, and those things which he saith will surely come to pass except we repent;
- כה שסו השופטים את האנשים, ועוררו בהם זעם על נפי, וכה חרחרו ריב ביניהם; והיו שם כמה אשר קראו לאמר: חדלו לכם מן האיש הזה, כי איש טוב הוא, והדברים אשר דבר אכן בוא יבואו, אם לא נשוב מרעתנו.
- 8 Yea, behold, all the judgments will come upon us which he has testified unto us; for we know that he has testified aright unto us concerning our iniquities. And behold they are many, and he knoweth as well all things which shall befall us as he knoweth of our iniquities;
- הן כל המשפטים אשר העיד בנו יבואו עלינו; כי יודעים אנחנו אשר הוא העיד בנו באמת על דבר עוונותינו. ואכן, רבים הם, וכידעו את עוונותינו כן יודע הוא את כל אשר יבאנו.
- 9 Yea, and behold, if he had not been a prophet he could not have testified concerning those things.
- הן לולא היה נביא, לא יכול היה הוא להעיד על הדברים האלה.
- 10 And it came to pass that those people who sought to destroy Nephi were compelled because of their fear, that they did not lay their hands on him; therefore he began again to speak unto them, seeing that he had gained favor in the eyes of some, insomuch that the remainder of them did fear.
- ומפני הפחד אשר אחז באנשים המבקשים לבלות את נפי, הם נמנעו לשלח בו את ידם. ובראות נפי כי מצא חן בעיני אחדים, שב הוא לדבר אליהם, עד כי פחדו שאריתם.
- 11 Therefore he was constrained to speak more unto them saying: Behold, my brethren, have ye not read that God gave power unto one man, even Moses, to smite upon the waters of the Red Sea, and they parted hither and thither, insomuch that the Israelites, who were our fathers, came through upon dry ground, and the waters closed upon the armies of the Egyptians and swallowed them up?
- אכן, הוא הכרח להוסיף דבר אליהם, וכה אמר: הנה, אחי, הלא קראתם את הכתוב, כי נתן אלהים כח לאיש אחד, למשה, להפוך במי ים סוף, והם נבקעו הנה והנה, עד אשר עברו בני ישראל, אבותינו, בביבשה, והמים שבו וסגרו על צבא המצרים ובלעו?
- 12 And now behold, if God gave unto this man such power, then why should ye dispute among yourselves, and say that he hath given unto me no power whereby I may know concerning the judgments that shall come upon you except ye repent?
- והנה, אם נתן אלהים לאיש הזה כח כזה, מדוע תתוכחו ביניכם ותאמרו כי לא נתן הוא לי הכח לדעת את המשפטים אשר יבואוכם, בלתי אם תשובו מרעתכם?
- 13 But, behold, ye not only deny my words, but ye also deny all the words which have been spoken by our fathers, and also the words which were spoken by this man, Moses, who had such great power given unto him, yea, the words which he hath spoken concerning the coming of the Messiah.
- אך לא רק את דברי מכחישים אתם, כי אם אף את כל הדברים אשר אמרו אבותינו, וכן את דברי האיש הזה, משה, אשר כח כה גדול נתן לו, והם הדברים אשר דבר על בוא המשיח.
- 14 Yea, did he not bear record that the Son of God should come? And as he lifted up the brazen serpent in the wilderness, even so shall he be lifted up who should come.
- האם הוא לא העיד כי אכן יבוא בן אלהים? וכרימו במדבר את נחש הנחשת, כן ירומם זה אשר יבוא.

- 15 And as many as should look upon that serpent should live, even so as many as should look upon the Son of God with faith, having a contrite spirit, might live, even unto that life which is eternal.
- וְכָל אֲשֶׁר הֵבִיטוּ בְּנֶחֱשׁ הַזֶּה נָתַן לָהֶם חַיִּים, כֵּן כָּל אֲשֶׁר יֵבִיט עַל בֶּן אֱלֹהִים בְּאִמּוּנָה, וּבְרוּחַ נִכְאָה, יִנָּתֵן לוֹ לַחַיּוֹת וְאֵף לְזִכּוֹת בְּחַיֵּי עוֹלָמִים.
- 16 And now behold, Moses did not only testify of these things, but also all the holy prophets, from his days even to the days of Abraham.
- וְהִנֵּה לֹא מֹשֶׁה לְבִדּוֹ הֵעִיד עַל הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, כִּי אִם כָּל הַנְּבִיאִים הַקְּדוּשִׁים, מִיְּמֵי אַבְרָהָם וְעַד יְמֵיו.
- 17 Yea, and behold, Abraham saw of his coming, and was filled with gladness and did rejoice.
- הֵן אַבְרָהָם חָזָה אֶת בּוֹאוֹ וְלִבּוֹ שָׂמַח וַנִּמְלֵא חֲדוּהָ.
- 18 Yea, and behold I say unto you, that Abraham not only knew of these things, but there were many before the days of Abraham who were called by the order of God; yea, even after the order of his Son; and this that it should be shown unto the people, a great many thousand years before his coming, that even redemption should come unto them.
- וְהִנֵּנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, כִּי לֹא רַק אַבְרָהָם יָדַע אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, כִּי לִפְנֵי יְמֵיו הָיוּ רַבִּים אֲשֶׁר נִקְרְאוּ עַל פִּי סֵדֶר אֱלֹהִים; אַכֵּן, עַל פִּי סֵדֶר בְּנוֹ; וְזֹאת בְּעֵבֹר הָרְאוֹת לְבְנֵי הָאָדָם אֲלֵפֵי שָׁנִים לִפְנֵי בּוֹאוֹ כִּי גְאֻלָּה בּוֹא תָבוֹא אֲלֵיהֶם.
- 19 And now I would that ye should know, that even since the days of Abraham there have been many prophets that have testified these things; yea, behold, the prophet Zenos did testify boldly; for the which he was slain.
- וְעַתָּה, רְצוֹנִי כִּי תִדְעוּ כִּי מֵאִזְּיָמִי אַבְרָהָם הֵעִידוּ נְבִיאִים רַבִּים עַל הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה; הִנֵּה, הַנְּבִיא זֶנוֹס זָנוֹס הֵעִיד בְּאִמָּץ לֵב וּמִפְּנֵי זֶה הוּמָת.
- 20 And behold, also Zenock, and also Ezias, and also Isaiah, and Jeremiah, (Jeremiah being that same prophet who testified of the destruction of Jerusalem) and now we know that Jerusalem was destroyed according to the words of Jeremiah. O then why not the Son of God come, according to his prophecy?
- וְאֵף זֵינוֹק, וְעִזְיָה, וְיִשְׁעִיָּהוּ וְיִרְמְיָהוּ; וְיִרְמְיָהוּ הוּא הַנְּבִיא אֲשֶׁר הֵעִיד עַל חֲרָבַת יְרוּשָׁלַם, וְיֹדְעִים אֲנַחְנוּ כִּי יְרוּשָׁלַם נִחְרְבָה, כְּדַבְּרוֹ. לָכֵן מִדּוּעַ אֲפֹאֵל לֹא יָבוֹא בֶּן אֱלֹהִים כְּדַבְּרֵי נְבוּאָתוֹ?
- 21 And now will you dispute that Jerusalem was destroyed? Will ye say that the sons of Zedekiah were not slain, all except it were Mulek? Yea, and do ye not behold that the seed of Zedekiah are with us, and they were driven out of the land of Jerusalem? But behold, this is not all—
- הִנֵּה, הֲתִסְתְּרוּ כִּי נִחְרְבָה יְרוּשָׁלַם? הֲתֹאמְרוּ כִּי בְנֵי צִדְקִיָּהוּ לֹא הוּמָתוּ, כָּלֶם זֹלַת מוּלֵק? וְעַתָּה אַתֶּם רוֹאִים כִּי זֶרַע צִדְקִיָּהוּ עִמָּנוּ, וְכִי הֵם גֵּרְשׁוּ מֵאֶרֶץ יְרוּשָׁלַם? וְאֵין זֹאת הַכֹּל;
- 22 Our father Lehi was driven out of Jerusalem because he testified of these things. Nephi also testified of these things, and also almost all of our fathers, even down to this time; yea, they have testified of the coming of Christ, and have looked forward, and have rejoiced in his day which is to come.
- אָבִינוּ, לְחִי, גֵּרַשׁ מִירוּשָׁלַם, יַעַן אֲשֶׁר הֵעִיד עַל הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה. וְאֵף נְפִי הֵעִיד עַל אוֹדוּתֵיהֶם, וְכִמְעַט כָּל אַבּוֹתֵינוּ, עַד הַיּוֹם הַזֶּה; אַכֵּן, הֵם הֵעִידוּ עַל בּוֹא הַמָּשִׁיחַ וְצִפּוּ לוֹ וְשִׂמְחוּ עַל יוֹמוֹ אֲשֶׁר יָבוֹא.
- 23 And behold, he is God, and he is with them, and he did manifest himself unto them, that they were redeemed by him; and they gave unto him glory, because of that which is to come.
- וְהִנֵּה, הוּא אֱלֹהִים, וְהוּא עִמָּם, וְהוּא הִתְגַּלָּה אֲלֵיהֶם, וְכֵה נִגְאָלוּ עַל יָדָיו; וְהֵם כְּבָדוּהוּ בְּעֵבֹר הָעֲתִיד לָבוֹא.
- 24 And now, seeing ye know these things and cannot deny them except ye shall lie, therefore in this ye have sinned, for ye have rejected all these things, notwithstanding so many evidences which ye have received;
- וְעַתָּה, יַעַן אֲשֶׁר יוֹדְעִים אַתֶּם אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, וְאֵינְכֶם יוֹכְלִים לְהַכְחִישָׁם, בְּלִתִּי אִם תִּשְׁקְרוּ, הֵן בְּדַבָּר הַזֶּה חָטֵאתֶם, כִּי מֵאִסְתָּם אֶת כָּל אֵלֶּה, עַל אֵף רְאִיּוֹת כֹּה רַבּוֹת אֲשֶׁר

קבלתם; אכן, קבלתם את כל הדברים,  
דברים אשר בשמים ואף את כל הדברים  
אשר בארץ, כעדות כי אמת הם.

yea, even ye have received all things, both things in heaven, and all things which are in the earth, as a witness that they are true.

והנה מאסותם את האמת ומרדתם באלהיכם  
הקדוש. ואף כעת, תחת אשר תאצרו לכם  
אוצרות בשמים, אשר לעולם לא ישחתו,  
ואשר כל טמאה לא יכולה לבוא, גודשים  
אתם חמה לכם ליום הדין.

25 But behold, ye have rejected the truth, and rebelled against your holy God; and even at this time, instead of laying up for yourselves treasures in heaven, where nothing doth corrupt, and where nothing can come which is unclean, ye are heaping up for yourselves wrath against the day of judgment.

אכן אף היום ממלאים אתם את הסאה,  
ברצח ובזנות ובפשע אשר עשיתם, לקראת  
אבדון עולם; אשר עד מהרה יבוא עליכם,  
בלתי אם תנחמו מרעתכם.

26 Yea, even at this time ye are ripening, because of your murders and your fornication and wickedness, for everlasting destruction; yea, and except ye repent it will come unto you soon.

אכן, על פתחכם עומד הוא עתה. לכו אל כס  
המשפט ובקשו; הנה, שופטכם נרצח והוא  
מתבוסס בדם; והוא נרצח על ידי אחיו  
המבקש לשבת על כס המשפט.

27 Yea, behold it is now even at your doors; yea, go ye in unto the judgment-seat, and search; and behold, your judge is murdered, and he lieth in his blood; and he hath been murdered by his brother, who seeketh to sit in the judgment-seat.

הן שניהם חברים באגדתכם החשאית,  
אשר יסדה גדיאנטון והמרשע ההוא,  
המבקש להאבד את נשמות בני האדם.

28 And behold, they both belong to your secret band, whose author is Gadianton and the evil one who seeketh to destroy the souls of men.

## ט

## 9

ובכללות נפי לדבר את הדברים האלה,  
רצו אנשים אחדים מן העומדים שם אל כס  
המשפט. חמשה היו ההולכים, וזה אמרו  
זה אל זה בלכתם:

1 Behold, now it came to pass that when Nephi had spoken these words, certain men who were among them ran to the judgment-seat; yea, even there were five who went, and they said among themselves, as they went:

עתה ידוע נדע אם נביא האיש הזה,  
אשר שלחו אלהים לנבא לנו דברים  
מפלאים כאלה. הנה, איננו מאמינים כי  
עשה כן, איננו מאמינים כי הוא נביא. ואולם,  
אם אמת הדבר אשר הוא דבר, כי השופט  
העליון הרוג, נאמין כי שאר דבריו אמת הם.

2 Behold, now we will know of a surety whether this man be a prophet and God hath commanded him to prophesy such marvelous things unto us. Behold, we do not believe that he hath; yea, we do not believe that he is a prophet; nevertheless, if this thing which he has said concerning the chief judge be true, that he be dead, then will we believe that the other words which he has spoken are true.

והם רצו ברב כח ובאז אף כס המשפט,  
והנה השופט העליון נפל ארצה מת,  
מתבוסס בדם.

3 And it came to pass that they ran in their might, and came in unto the judgment-seat; and behold, the chief judge had fallen to the earth, and did lie in his blood.

ובראותם זאת, הם השתוממו מאד, עד כי  
נפלו ארצה, כי לא האמינו לדברי נפי אשר  
דבר על השופט העליון.

4 And now behold, when they saw this they were astonished exceedingly, insomuch that they fell to the earth; for they had not believed the words which Nephi had spoken concerning the chief judge.

- ועתה, אחר ראותם, הם האמינו ופחד נפל עליהם פן יבואו על העם כל המשפטים אשר על אודותיהם דבר נפי. על כן הם רעדו ונפלו ארצה.
- 5 But now, when they saw they believed, and fear came upon them lest all the judgments which Nephi had spoken should come upon the people; therefore they did quake, and had fallen to the earth.
- והנה, במהרה אחר רצח השופט, אשר נדקר למות בידי אחיו אשר התחפש לכל יפירותו ונמלט, רצו המשרתים וספרו לעם את אשר קרה, והזעקה על הרצח פשטה בעם.
- 6 Now, immediately when the judge had been murdered—he being stabbed by his brother by a garb of secrecy, and he fled, and the servants ran and told the people, raising the cry of murder among them;
- אז התקבצו האנשים אל מקום כס המשפט; והנה, לתמהונם, הם ראו את חמשת האנשים אשר נפלו על הארץ.
- 7 And behold the people did gather themselves together unto the place of the judgment-seat—and behold, to their astonishment they saw those five men who had fallen to the earth.
- והאנשים לא ידעו דבר על ההמון אשר נאסף ליד גן נפי; על כן אמרו זה אל זה: אלה האנשים אשר רצחו את השופט ואלהים הכם לבל יוכלו להמלט מידנו.
- 8 And now behold, the people knew nothing concerning the multitude who had gathered together at the garden of Nephi; therefore they said among themselves: These men are they who have murdered the judge, and God has smitten them that they could not flee from us.
- והם תפשו אותם ואסרום והשליכום אל בית הכלא. אז יצא קול בקרב העם כי השופט נהרג, וכי רוצחיו נתפשו ונכלאו בבית הכלא.
- 9 And it came to pass that they laid hold on them, and bound them and cast them into prison. And there was a proclamation sent abroad that the judge was slain, and that the murderers had been taken and were cast into prison.
- ולמחרת היום התאסף העם להתאבל ולצום בעת קבורת השופט העליון והגדול אשר נרצח.
- 10 And it came to pass that on the morrow the people did assemble themselves together to mourn and to fast, at the burial of the great chief judge who had been slain.
- ואף השופטים אשר היו ליד גן נפי ושמעו את דבריו נאספו יחדו לקבורה.
- 11 And thus also those judges who were at the garden of Nephi, and heard his words, were also gathered together at the burial.
- והם שאלו את האנשים לאמר: איפה החמשה אשר נשלחו לחקר על אודות השופט העליון, אם אמנם נהרג? והם ענו לאמר: איננו יודעים דבר על החמשה אשר אומרים אתם כי שילחתם, אך יש חמשה אשר הם הרוצחים, ואותם השלכנו אל בית הכלא.
- 12 And it came to pass that they inquired among the people, saying: Where are the five who were sent to inquire concerning the chief judge whether he was dead? And they answered and said: Concerning this five whom ye say ye have sent, we know not; but there are five who are the murderers, whom we have cast into prison.
- אז בקשו השופטים כי יובאו הפלואים; והם הובאו והנה, הם החמשה אשר נשלחו והשופטים חקרום לדעת את הענין; ואלה ספרו להם את כל אשר עשו, לאמר:
- 13 And it came to pass that the judges desired that they should be brought; and they were brought, and behold they were the five who were sent; and behold the judges inquired of them to know, concerning the matter, and they told them all that they had done, saying:
- רצנו ובאנו אל מקום כס המשפט, ובאותנו את כל הדברים, והם כפי אשר העיד נפי,
- 14 We ran and came to the place of the judgment-seat, and when we saw all things even as Nephi had testified, we were astonished insomuch



גְּדָלָה הַשְׁתּוֹמְמוֹתֵנוּ עַד כִּי נָפַלְנוּ אֶרֶצָה.  
וְכַאֲשֶׁר הִתְאַוְּשָׁנוּ מִהַשְׁתּוֹמְמוֹתֵנוּ, וְהִנֵּה  
הַשְּׁלִיכוֹנוּ אֶל בַּיִת הַכֶּלֶא.

that we fell to the earth; and when we were recovered from our  
astonishment, behold they cast us into prison.

וְאֲשֶׁר לְרֹצַח הָאִישׁ הַזֶּה, אֵינָנוּ יוֹדְעִים מִי הוּא  
אֲשֶׁר עָשָׂה זֹאת, וְרַק יוֹדְעִים אֲנַחְנוּ כִּי רָצָנוּ  
וְהִגַּעְנוּ כְּחֻצְצְכֶם וְהִנֵּה הוּא הָרוּג, כַּדְּבַר נָפִי.

15 Now, as for the murder of this man, we know not who has done it; and  
only this much we know, we ran and came according as ye desired, and  
behold he was dead, according to the words of Nephi.

אִזּוּ בָּאֵרוּ הַשּׁוֹפְטִים אֶת הַדְּבַר לָעָם; וְהֵם  
קָרְאוּ בְּקוֹל גָּדוֹל נֹגֵד נָפִי, לֵאמֹר: הִנֵּנוּ יוֹדְעִים  
כִּי הָאִישׁ הַזֶּה, נָפִי, אָכֵן קָשָׁר עִם מִישֹׁהוּ  
לְהַרְגֵּהוּ אֶת הַשּׁוֹפֵט. כִּךָּ הוּא יוֹכֵל לְהַכְרִיז אֶת  
דְּבַר הַרְצָח בְּאַזְנוֹנֵנוּ בְּעֵבֹר יִהְיֶה אֶת אֲמוֹנֶתְנוּ  
בְּאַמוֹנָתוֹ, לְמַעַן יִתְנַשֵּׂא וְיִהְיֶה לְאִישׁ גָּדוֹל,  
בְּחִיר אֱלֹהִים וְנָבִיא.

16 And now it came to pass that the judges did expound the matter unto  
the people, and did cry out against Nephi, saying: Behold, we know  
that this Nephi must have agreed with some one to slay the judge, and  
then he might declare it unto us, that he might convert us unto his  
faith, that he might raise himself to be a great man, chosen of God, and  
a prophet.

וְעַתָּה, נִגְלָה אֶת צְפוֹנוֹת הָאִישׁ הַזֶּה, וְהוּא  
יִתְּוֶה עַל אֲשַׁמְתּוֹ וְיִודִיעֵנוּ מִי אָכֵן רָצַח אֶת  
הַשּׁוֹפֵט הַזֶּה.

17 And now behold, we will detect this man, and he shall confess his fault  
and make known unto us the true murderer of this judge.

וְחֻמֶּשֶׁת הָאֲנָשִׁים שֶׁחֲרָרוּ מִכְּלָאֵם בְּיוֹם  
הַקְּבוּרָה. וְאוֹלָם, הֵם גָּעְרוּ בַּשּׁוֹפְטִים עַל  
הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר הֵם אָמְרוּ נֹגֵד נָפִי וְרַבּוּ עִמָּם,  
אִישׁ-אִישׁ, עַד כִּי הִכְלִימוּם.

18 And it came to pass that the five were liberated on the day of the  
burial. Nevertheless, they did rebuke the judges in the words which  
they had spoken against Nephi, and did contend with them one by one,  
insomuch that they did confound them.

עַל אַף זֹאת, צִוּוּ הַשּׁוֹפְטִים לְתַפֵּשׂ אֶת נָפִי  
וּלְאַסְרוֹ וּלְהַבְיִאוֹ לִפְנֵי הָעָמוֹן. וְהֵם חָקְרוּ  
אוֹתוֹ בְּשִׂאלוֹת שְׁתֵּי וְעֶרֶב לְמַעַן יִסְתַּר עֲצָמוֹ,  
בְּעֵבֹר יוֹכֵלוּ לְגֹזֵר עָלָיו מָוֶת.

19 Nevertheless, they caused that Nephi should be taken and bound and  
brought before the multitude, and they began to question him in divers  
ways that they might cross him, that they might accuse him to death—

וְהֵם אָמְרוּ לוֹ: שְׂתָף אֶתָּה לְעִבְרָה; מִי הָאִישׁ  
אֲשֶׁר בָּצַע אֶת הַרְצָח הַזֶּה? הִגַּד לָנוּ וְהוֹדֵה  
בְּאַשְׁמָתְךָ; וְעוֹד אָמְרוּ: הִנֵּה כֶסֶף, וְאַף אֶת  
חַיִּיד נָתַן לָךְ אִם תִּסְפָּר לָנוּ, וְתוֹדֶה בְּקָשָׁר  
אֲשֶׁר קָשַׁרְתָּ עִמּוֹ.

20 Saying unto him: Thou art confederate; who is this man that hath done  
this murder? Now tell us, and acknowledge thy fault; saying, Behold  
here is money; and also we will grant unto thee thy life if thou wilt tell  
us, and acknowledge the agreement which thou hast made with him.

וְאָמַר אֲלֵיהֶם נָפִי: הוּא, סְכָלִים וְעִרְלֵי לֵב, עֹרִים  
וְקָשִׁי עֵרֶף, הִתְדַּעְו עַד מָתִי יִנִּיחַ לָכֶם יְהוָה  
אֱלֹהֵיכֶם לְלָכֶת בְּדַרְפְּכֶם הַחֲסָאָה הַזֹּאת?

21 But Nephi said unto them: O ye fools, ye uncircumcised of heart, ye  
blind, and ye stiffnecked people, do ye know how long the Lord your  
God will suffer you that ye shall go on in this your way of sin?

הֵן עֲלֵיכֶם לְעֹזֵק וּלְהַתְאַבֵּל עַל הַחֲרָב הַגָּדוֹל  
הַאֹרֵב לָכֶם כְּעַתָּה, בְּלִתִּי אִם תִּנְחַמוּ מִרְעַתְכֶם.

22 O ye ought to begin to howl and mourn, because of the great destruction  
which at this time doth await you, except ye shall repent.

הִנֵּכֶם אוֹמְרִים כִּי קָשַׁרְתִּי קָשָׁר עִם אִישׁ  
בְּעֵבֹר יִרְצַח אֶת שְׁזֹרָם, שּׁוֹפְטֵנוּ הָעֲלִיּוֹן.  
וְהִנֵּה, אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם כִּי כֹה הַדְּבַר יַעַן אֲשֶׁר  
הַעֲדֵיתִי לִפְנֵיכֶם בְּעֵבֹר תִּדְּעוּ עַל קָךְ; אָכֵן,

23 Behold ye say that I have agreed with a man that he should murder  
Seezoram, our chief judge. But behold, I say unto you, that this is  
because I have testified unto you that ye might know concerning

- כַּעֲדוֹת לָכֶם כִּי יֵדַעְתִּי אֶת הָרָשָׁעָה וְאֶת  
הַתּוֹעֲבוֹת אֲשֶׁר בְּקִרְבְּכֶם. this thing; yea, even for a witness unto you, that I did know of the  
wickedness and abominations which are among you.
- 24 וַיֵּעַן אֲשֶׁר כֹּה הִעֲדָתִי, אוֹמְרִים אַתֶּם כִּי קִשְׁרָתִי  
קִשֹּׁר עִם אִישׁ בַּעֲבוּר יַעֲשֶׂה אֶת הַמַּעֲשֶׂה הַזֶּה;  
אֲכֹן, יַעַן אֲשֶׁר נָתַתִּי לָכֶם אֶת הָאוֹת הַזֶּה, אַתֶּם  
רוֹגְזִים עָלַי וּמִבְקָשִׁים לְכַלּוֹת אֶת נַפְשִׁי. And because I have done this, ye say that I have agreed with a man that  
he should do this thing; yea, because I showed unto you this sign ye are  
angry with me, and seek to destroy my life.
- 25 וְעַתָּה הִנְנִי שֵׁם לָכֶם אוֹת נוסף וְאֶרְאֶה אִם  
תִּבְקָשׁוּ לְכַלּוֹתֵנִי אִף מִפְּנֵי. And now behold, I will show unto you another sign, and see if ye will  
in this thing seek to destroy me.
- 26 הִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם: לֵכוּ אֶל בֵּית שְׁאֲנָטוּם,  
אֲחִי שְׁזוֹרָם, וְאָמְרוּ לוֹ: Behold I say unto you: Go to the house of Seantum, who is the brother  
of Seezoram, and say unto him—
- 27 הֲאֵם קִשֹּׁר עִמּוֹד נָפִי, הַמְתַּרְאֶה נְבִיא  
וְהַמְתַּנְבֵּא עַל הָעָם הַזֶּה, רָעָה כֹּה רָבָה,  
כִּי תִרְצַח אֶת שְׁזוֹרָם אֲחִידֶךָ? Has Nephi, the pretended prophet, who doth prophesy so much  
evil concerning this people, agreed with thee, in the which ye have  
murdered Seezoram, who is your brother?
- 28 וְהוּא יֹאמֵר אֲלֵיכֶם: לֹא. And behold, he shall say unto you, Nay.
- 29 וְאַתֶּם תֹּאמְרוּ אֵלָיו: הֲרִצַּחְתָּ אֶת אֲחִידֶךָ? And ye shall say unto him: Have ye murdered your brother?
- 30 וְהוּא יַעֲמֵד נִפְחָד וְלֹא יָדַע מֶה יִדְבֹּר וְהִנֵּה,  
יִכְחִישׁ הוּא אֶת הַדְּבָר בְּאַזְנוֹיְכֶם, וַיַּעֲמִיד פָּנָי  
מִפְתָּע וַיְגִידְכֶם כִּי נָקִי בַפִּים הוּא. And he shall stand with fear, and wist not what to say. And behold,  
he shall deny unto you; and he shall make as if he were astonished;  
nevertheless, he shall declare unto you that he is innocent.
- 31 אִךְ אַתֶּם תִּחְקְרוּהוּ וְתִמְצְאוּ דָם בְּכַנֵּי  
גְלִימָתוֹ. But behold, ye shall examine him, and ye shall find blood upon the  
skirts of his cloak.
- 32 וּבִרְאוֹתְכֶם זֹאת תֹּאמְרוּ: מֵאֵין הַדָּם הַזֶּה?  
הֲאֵין יוֹדְעִים אֲנַחְנוּ כִּי זֶה דָּם אֲחִידֶךָ? And when ye have seen this, ye shall say: From whence cometh this  
blood? Do we not know that it is the blood of your brother?
- 33 אַז הוּא יִרְעַד וַיִּחְוֹר כְּאֵלוֹ בְּאוֹ הַמָּוֶת. And then shall he tremble, and shall look pale, even as if death had  
come upon him.
- 34 וְאַז תֹּאמְרוּ: מִפְּנֵי הַפֶּחַד הַזֶּה וְהַחֲוֹרוֹן אֲשֶׁר  
בְּפָנֶיךָ, הִנְנוּ יוֹדְעִים כִּי אָשָׁם אַתָּה. And then shall ye say: Because of this fear and this paleness which has  
come upon your face, behold, we know that thou art guilty.
- 35 אַז יִפֹּל עָלָיו פֶּחַד נוֹרָא אִף יוֹתֵר וְהוּא יִתְוֹדֶה  
לְפָנֵיכֶם, וְלֹא יִכְחִישׁ עוֹד כִּי הוּא אֲשֶׁר רָצַח. And then shall greater fear come upon him; and then shall he confess  
unto you, and deny no more that he has done this murder.
- 36 אַז יֹאמֵר הוּא אֲלֵיכֶם כִּי אֲנִי, נָפִי, אֵינְנִי  
יּוֹדֵעַ דְּבָר בְּעִנְיֵן הַזֶּה, בְּלֹא תִּיּוֹדָעִי אִם נֹדַע לִי בְכֹחַ  
אֱלֹהִים. וְאַז תִּדְּעוּ כִּי אִישׁ יָשָׁר אֲנִי, וְכִי  
אֱלֹהִים שְׁלַחְנִי אֲלֵיכֶם. And then shall he say unto you, that I, Nephi, know nothing concerning  
the matter save it were given unto me by the power of God. And then  
shall ye know that I am an honest man, and that I am sent unto you  
from God.

- 37 והיה כי הלכו האנשים ועשו ככל אשר דבר אליהם נפי. והנה דבריו התקמו כדמם. כי כפי דבריו הכחיש שאנטום את פשעו, וכפי דבריו הוא התודה עליו.
- 38 והוא אלץ להודות כי אכן הוא עצמו היה הרוצח; וכה שחררו חמשת האנשים, וגם נפי.
- 39 והיו שם אנשים מן הנפיים אשר האמינו לדברי נפי; וכן היו שם אנשים אשר האמינו מפני עדות החמשה, כי אלה הפכו מאמינים בעת מאסרם בבית הכלא.
- 40 והיו בעם אלה אשר אמרו כי נפי נביא.
- 41 והיו אחרים אשר אמרו: הנו אל, כי לולא כן לא היה יודע הכל. הן הוא אמר לנו את מחשבות לבנו ואף אמר לנו דברים נוספים; והוא אשר הודיענו מי אכן רצח את שופטנו העליון.

## י

## 10

- 1 והיה כי פרצה מחלוקת בקרב העם, עד כי הם נפלגו לכאן ולכאן ופנו איש לעברו, בהשאירם את נפי, העומד בתוכם, לבדו.
- 2 ונפי הלך לדרכו, אל ביתו, והוא הוה בדברים אשר הראהו יהוה.
- 3 והיה בהיותו שקוע בשערפון, נדכה ושפל רוח מפני רשעת עם הנפיים, מעשי הסתר האפלים אשר עשו והרצח והגזל וכל מיני עוונותיהם, והנה קול דובר אליו, לאמר:
- 4 ברוך אתה, נפי, על הדברים אשר עשית; כי ראיתיך מודיע לעם הזה את דברי אשר נתתי בפיו בלא לאות ובלא יראה מפניהם, ולא בקשית את שלום נפשך, כי אם לקיים את רצוני ולשמר את מצוותי.
- 5 ועתה, יען אשר עשית זאת בלא לחשוד ממך עמל יגיע, הנה ברכתך לעולם ואעשה גבור בדבור ובמעשה, באמונה ובפעולה. כפי
- 1 And it came to pass that there arose a division among the people, insomuch that they divided hither and thither and went their ways, leaving Nephi alone, as he was standing in the midst of them.
- 2 And it came to pass that Nephi went his way towards his own house, pondering upon the things which the Lord had shown unto him.
- 3 And it came to pass as he was thus pondering—being much cast down because of the wickedness of the people of the Nephites, their secret works of darkness, and their murderings, and their plunderings, and all manner of iniquities—and it came to pass as he was thus pondering in his heart, behold, a voice came unto him saying:
- 4 Blessed art thou, Nephi, for those things which thou hast done; for I have beheld how thou hast with unwearyingness declared the word, which I have given unto thee, unto this people. And thou hast not feared them, and hast not sought thine own life, but hast sought my will, and to keep my commandments.
- 5 And now, because thou hast done this with such unwearyingness, behold, I will bless thee forever; and I will make thee mighty in word and in deed, in faith and in works; yea, even that all things shall be

דברך יעשה לך הכל, כי לא תבקש את אשר אינו לרצוני.

done unto thee according to thy word, for thou shalt not ask that which is contrary to my will.

הנה, אתה נפי ואנכי אלהים. הנני מודיע לך זאת לפני מלאכי: גבור תגבר על העם הזה ואת הארץ תכה ברעב ובדבר ובחרב, כפי רשעת העם הזה.

6 Behold, thou art Nephi, and I am God. Behold, I declare it unto thee in the presence of mine angels, that ye shall have power over this people, and shall smite the earth with famine, and with pestilence, and destruction, according to the wickedness of this people.

הנני נותן לך כח, למען כל אשר תחתמהו בארץ יחתם בשמים; וכל אשר תתיר בארץ, יתיר בשמים. כה יהיה כחך בקרב העם הזה.

7 Behold, I give unto you power, that whatsoever ye shall seal on earth shall be sealed in heaven; and whatsoever ye shall loose on earth shall be loosed in heaven; and thus shall ye have power among this people.

וכך, אם תאמר להיכל הזה כי יבקע לשנים, כה יעשה.

8 And thus, if ye shall say unto this temple it shall be rent in twain, it shall be done.

ואם תאמר להר הזה: נפל והיה מישור, כה יעשה.

9 And if ye shall say unto this mountain, Be thou cast down and become smooth, it shall be done.

והנה, אם תאמר כי אלהים יכה את העם הזה, כה יהיה.

10 And behold, if ye shall say that God shall smite this people, it shall come to pass.

ועתה, הנני מצוה כי תלך ותודיע לעם הזה, כי כה אמר יהוה אלהים, אשר הוא אל שדי; אם לא תשובו מרעתכם הכה תכו אף עד כלותכם.

11 And now behold, I command you, that ye shall go and declare unto this people, that thus saith the Lord God, who is the Almighty: Except ye repent ye shall be smitten, even unto destruction.

והיה אחר אשר דבר יהוה אל נפי את הדברים האלה, חדל נפי מלכת אל ביתו ושב אל ההמון המפוזרים על פני הארץ. והוא הודיעם את דבר יהוה אשר היה אליו, על אבדנם בלתי אם ישובו מרעתם.

12 And behold, now it came to pass that when the Lord had spoken these words unto Nephi, he did stop and did not go unto his own house, but did return unto the multitudes who were scattered about upon the face of the land, and began to declare unto them the word of the Lord which had been spoken unto him, concerning their destruction if they did not repent.

והנה, על אף הנס הגדול אשר חולל נפי בהגידו להם על אודות מות השופט העליון, הם הקשו את לבם ולא שמעו לדבר יהוה.

13 Now behold, notwithstanding that great miracle which Nephi had done in telling them concerning the death of the chief judge, they did harden their hearts and did not hearken unto the words of the Lord.

לכן הודיעם נפי את דבר יהוה לאמר: בלתי אם תשובו מרעתכם, הכה תכו אף עד כלותכם, נאום יהוה.

14 Therefore Nephi did declare unto them the word of the Lord, saying: Except ye repent, thus saith the Lord, ye shall be smitten even unto destruction.

והיה כאשר הודיעם נפי את דבר יהוה, והנה הם עוד הקשו את לבם ולא שמעו לדבריו; והם אף גדפוהו ובקשו לתפשו ולהשליכו לכלא.

15 And it came to pass that when Nephi had declared unto them the word, behold, they did still harden their hearts and would not hearken unto his words; therefore they did revile against him, and did seek to lay their hands upon him that they might cast him into prison.

- 16 But behold, the power of God was with him, and they could not take him to cast him into prison, for he was taken by the Spirit and conveyed away out of the midst of them.
- 17 And it came to pass that thus he did go forth in the Spirit, from multitude to multitude, declaring the word of God, even until he had declared it unto them all, or sent it forth among all the people.
- 18 And it came to pass that they would not hearken unto his words; and there began to be contentions, insomuch that they were divided against themselves and began to slay one another with the sword.
- 19 And thus ended the seventy and first year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.
- ואולם, כח אלהים עמדם לו ולא יכלו הם לתפשו ולקלואו, כי רוח אלהים לקחו מקרבם ונשארו הרחק מהם.
- וכך הוא הלך ברוח אלהים מהמון אל המון, מודיע את דבר אלהים, עד אשר הודיעו לכל, או שלחו בקרב העם כולו.
- ואולם, הם לא שמעו לדבריו. והנה פרוצו מריבות ביניהם עד כי נפגלו זה מזה והחלו להרג איש את אחיו בחרב.
- כה כלתה שנת שבעים ואחת לשלטון השופטים בעם נפי.

## יא

## 11

- 1 And now it came to pass in the seventy and second year of the reign of the judges that the contentions did increase, insomuch that there were wars throughout all the land among all the people of Nephi.
- 2 And it was this secret band of robbers who did carry on this work of destruction and wickedness. And this war did last all that year; and in the seventy and third year it did also last.
- 3 And it came to pass that in this year Nephi did cry unto the Lord, saying:
- 4 O Lord, do not suffer that this people shall be destroyed by the sword; but O Lord, rather let there be a famine in the land, to stir them up in remembrance of the Lord their God, and perhaps they will repent and turn unto thee.
- 5 And so it was done, according to the words of Nephi. And there was a great famine upon the land, among all the people of Nephi. And thus in the seventy and fourth year the famine did continue, and the work of destruction did cease by the sword but became sore by famine.
- 6 And this work of destruction did also continue in the seventy and fifth year. For the earth was smitten that it was dry, and did not yield forth grain in the season of grain; and the whole earth was smitten, even among the Lamanites as well as among the Nephites, so that they were smitten that they did perish by thousands in the more wicked parts of the land.
- והיה בשנת שבעים ושנים לשלטון השופטים, רבו המריבות עד כי היו מלחמות בקרב כל עם נפי בכל רחבי הארץ.
- היתה זאת הפנפיה החשאית ההיא, אשר בצעה את פעלות ההרס והרשעה. והמלחמה הזאת נמשכה כל השנה ההיא; וכה נמשכה אף בשנת שבעים ושלש.
- ובשנה ההיא קרא נפי אל יהוה לאמר:
- אֱהָהּ, יְהוָה, אֵל תִּתִּיר אֶת הַשְּׁמֶדֶת הָעָם הַזֶּה בַּחֶרֶב, כִּי אִם תִּבְיֹא רָעָב בָּאֶרֶץ, יְהוָה, לְעוֹרָרָם לְזִכֹּר אֶת יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵיהֶם. אוֹלֵי הֵם יִנָּחְמוּ וְיָשׁוּבוּ אֵלַיָּךְ.
- וכך היה, כדבר נפי. רעב גדול היה בארץ בכל עם נפי; וכה נמשך הרעב בשנת שבעים וארבע. אז חדלה ההשמדה בחרב, אף קשתה מפני הרעב.
- ופעלת ההשמדה הזאת נמשכה אף בשנת שבעים וחמש, כי הארץ הכתה בחרב ולא נתנה תבואת דגן בעתה. כל הארץ הכתה, אדמת הלמנים כאדמת הנפיים; וכה קשתה המכה עד כי מתו אלפים בחבלי הארץ אשר בהם שלטה הרשעה.



- 7 והיה כאשר ראו האנשים כי הכליון ברעב עומד לבוא עליהם, הם החלו לזכר את יהוה אלהיהם. ואת דברי נפי.
- 8 והאנשים הפצירו בשופטיהם הראשיים ובמנהיגיהם כי ידברו אל נפי לאמר: הנה ידענו כי איש אלהים אתה; על כן קרא נא אל יהוה אלהינו כי יסיר את הרעב הזה מקרבנו, פן יתקומו כל הדברים אשר דברת על כליוננו.
- 9 והשופטים דברו אל נפי בדברים אשר בקשם העם. וכראות נפי כי שב העם מרעתו וכי לבש שק בהכנעה, הוא קרא אל יהוה שנית ואמר:
- 10 יהוה, הנה נחם העם על רעתו. הם מחו מקרבם את כנפית גדיאנטון, עד כי נכרתו, ואת מזמות הסתר הסמינו באדמה.
- 11 ועתה, יהוה, יען אשר כד נכנעו, אנא, לשוב אפך ותשכך חמתך בהשמדת הרשעים אשר כבר אבדת.
- 12 אנא, יהוה, הסר זעמך וחרונוך והעבר מן הארץ הזאת את הרעב.
- 13 אנא, יהוה, שמעני, וצוה כי יעשה כדברי והורד מטר על פני הארץ, בעבור תתן פריה ודגניה בעתם.
- 14 אנא, יהוה, הן שמעת לדברי באמרי: יבוא רעב, בעבור תעמד החרב מנגף ויודע אני כי אף כעת תשמע את דברי, כי אמרת: אם ישוב העם הזה מרעתו, חוס אחוס עלי.
- 15 אנא, יהוה, הנה רואה כי הם שבו מרעתם מפני הרעב והמגפה וההרס אשר באום.
- 16 ועתה, יהוה, הסר נא מהם את זעמך; נסם שנית אם אכן יעבדוך? ואם כן, ברכם נא, יהוה, כדברך אשר דברת.
- 17 והיה בשנת שבעים ושש הסיר יהוה את זעמו מן העם והוריד מטר על הארץ,
- 7 And it came to pass that the people saw that they were about to perish by famine, and they began to remember the Lord their God; and they began to remember the words of Nephi.
- 8 And the people began to plead with their chief judges and their leaders, that they would say unto Nephi: Behold, we know that thou art a man of God, and therefore cry unto the Lord our God that he turn away from us this famine, lest all the words which thou hast spoken concerning our destruction be fulfilled.
- 9 And it came to pass that the judges did say unto Nephi, according to the words which had been desired. And it came to pass that when Nephi saw that the people had repented and did humble themselves in sackcloth, he cried again unto the Lord, saying:
- 10 O Lord, behold this people repenteth; and they have swept away the band of Gadian-ton from amongst them insomuch that they have become extinct, and they have concealed their secret plans in the earth.
- 11 Now, O Lord, because of this their humility wilt thou turn away thine anger, and let thine anger be appeased in the destruction of those wicked men whom thou hast already destroyed.
- 12 O Lord, wilt thou turn away thine anger, yea, thy fierce anger, and cause that this famine may cease in this land.
- 13 O Lord, wilt thou hearken unto me, and cause that it may be done according to my words, and send forth rain upon the face of the earth, that she may bring forth her fruit, and her grain in the season of grain.
- 14 O Lord, thou didst hearken unto my words when I said, Let there be a famine, that the pestilence of the sword might cease; and I know that thou wilt, even at this time, hearken unto my words, for thou saidst that: If this people repent I will spare them.
- 15 Yea, O Lord, and thou seest that they have repented, because of the famine and the pestilence and destruction which has come unto them.
- 16 And now, O Lord, wilt thou turn away thine anger, and try again if they will serve thee? And if so, O Lord, thou canst bless them according to thy words which thou hast said.
- 17 And it came to pass that in the seventy and sixth year the Lord did turn away his anger from the people, and caused that rain should fall upon

עד כי נתנה האדמה את פריה בעתו ואֵת  
דגנה בעתו.

the earth, insomuch that it did bring forth her fruit in the season of her fruit. And it came to pass that it did bring forth her grain in the season of her grain.

והָעָם שָׂמַח וּפָאָר אֶת אֱלֹהִים, וְכָל פְּנֵי  
הָאָרֶץ מָלְאוּ גִיל. וְהָאֲנָשִׁים לֹא בִקְשׁוּ עוֹד  
לְאַבֵּד אֶת נִפְּי, כִּי אִם כְּבֹדוּהוּ כְּכַבֵּד נְבִיא  
גָּדוֹל, אִישׁ אֱלֹהִים, אֲשֶׁר הָעֵינִק לוֹ אֱלֹהִים  
רַב כֹּחַ וְסִמְכוֹת.

18 And behold, the people did rejoice and glorify God, and the whole face of the land was filled with rejoicing; and they did no more seek to destroy Nephi, but they did esteem him as a great prophet, and a man of God, having great power and authority given unto him from God.

והִנֵּה, אַחִיו לְחִי לֹא פָגַר אַחֲרָיו בַּדְּבָרִים  
הַנוֹגְעִים לְצֶדֶק, אֲף כַּמְּלֵא הַנִּימָה.

19 And behold, Lehi, his brother, was not a whit behind him as to things pertaining to righteousness.

כֹּה שָׁבוּ וְהִצְלִיחוּ עִם נְפִי בְּכָל הָאָרֶץ.  
וְהָאֲנָשִׁים הֵחֵלוּ לְבָנוֹת אֶת שְׂמֻמוֹת אֲרָצָם;  
וְהֵם רַבּוּ וְהִתְפָּשְׁטוּ עַד אֲשֶׁר כָּסּוּ אֶת כָּל פְּנֵי  
הָאָרֶץ, בְּצִפּוֹן וּבִדְרוֹם, מִן הַיָּם הַמַּעֲרָבִי וְעַד  
הַיָּם הַמְּזֻרָחִי.

20 And thus it did come to pass that the people of Nephi began to prosper again in the land, and began to build up their waste places, and began to multiply and spread, even until they did cover the whole face of the land, both on the northward and on the southward, from the sea west to the sea east.

וּשְׁנַת שִׁבְעִים וְשֵׁשׁ כָּלְתָה בְּשָׁלוֹם, וְאַף  
שְׁנַת שִׁבְעִים וְשִׁבְעָה הֵחֵלָה בְּשָׁלוֹם; וְהַכְּנָסִיָּה  
הַתְּפֹשֶׁטָה עַל פְּנֵי כָל הָאָרֶץ; וְרַב הָאֲנָשִׁים,  
הַנְּפִיִּים וְהַלְּמָנִים כְּאַחַד, הָיוּ חֲבָרֵי הַכְּנָסִיָּה;  
וְהַשָּׁלוֹם וְהַשְׁלָוָה הָרַבִּים הָיוּ מִנֵּת חֵלְקָם  
בָּאָרֶץ. כֹּה תִמָּה שְׁנַת שִׁבְעִים וְשִׁבְעָה.

21 And it came to pass that the seventy and sixth year did end in peace. And the seventy and seventh year began in peace; and the church did spread throughout the face of all the land; and the more part of the people, both the Nephites and the Lamanites, did belong to the church; and they did have exceedingly great peace in the land; and thus ended the seventy and seventh year.

וְאַף בְּשְׁנַת שִׁבְעִים וְשִׁמּוֹנָה הָיָה לָהֶם שָׁלוֹם,  
זוֹלַת מְרִיבוֹת אַחְדוֹת עַל אוֹדוֹת עֲקָרֵי הַתּוֹרָה  
אֲשֶׁר יִסְדּוּ הַנְּבִיאִים.

22 And also they had peace in the seventy and eighth year, save it were a few contentions concerning the points of doctrine which had been laid down by the prophets.

וּבְשְׁנַת שִׁבְעִים וְתִשְׁעָה פָּרְצוּ מִדִּינִים רַבִּים,  
וְאוֹלָם נָפִי וְלְחִי וְרַבִּים מֵאַחֵיהֶם לַכְּנָסִיָּה  
אֲשֶׁר הִיטִיבוּ לְדַעַת אֶת עֲקָרֵי הַתּוֹרָה  
לְאַשׁוּרָה, וְאֲשֶׁר לָהֶם רַב חִזְיוֹנוֹת מִדֵּי יוֹם  
בְּיוֹמוֹ, הִסִּיפוּ אֶל הָעָם אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים,  
עַד כִּי שָׁמוּ בְּשִׁנָּה הָיָא קֶץ לְסִכְסוּף.

23 And in the seventy and ninth year there began to be much strife. But it came to pass that Nephi and Lehi, and many of their brethren who knew concerning the true points of doctrine, having many revelations daily, therefore they did preach unto the people, insomuch that they did put an end to their strife in that same year.

וּבְשְׁנַת שְׁמוֹנִים לְשָׁלְטוֹן הַשּׁוֹפְטִים בָּעָם נָפִי,  
קָמוּ פּוֹרְשִׁים נְפִיִּים אַחָדִים, אֲשֶׁר עָבְרוּ אֶל  
הַלְּמָנִים שְׁנִים מִסָּפֶר לְפָנֵי כֵן וְאֲשֶׁר כֵּן  
עֲצָמָם לְמָנִים, וְעַמָּם מִסָּפֶר מִצִּאֲצָאֵי הַלְּמָנִים  
מִלְּדָה, אֲשֶׁר עוֹרְרוּ עַל יְדֵיהֶם, אָכֵן, עַל יְדֵי  
הַפּוֹרְשִׁים, לְכַעַס עַל אַחֵיהֶם עַד כִּי הֵם הֵחֵלוּ  
לְהִלָּחֵם בָּהֶם.

24 And it came to pass that in the eightieth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, there were a certain number of the dissenters from the people of Nephi, who had some years before gone over unto the Lamanites, and taken upon themselves the name of Lamanites, and also a certain number who were real descendants of the Lamanites, being stirred up to anger by them, or by those dissenters, therefore they commenced a war with their brethren.

וְהָיָה כִּי הֵם רָצְחוּ וְגָזְלוּ, וְאַחֲרֵי כֵן נִסּוּגוּ אֶל  
הַהָרִים וְאֶל הַיַּעְרוֹת וְאֶל מְקוֹמוֹת סִתְרָם,

25 And they did commit murder and plunder; and then they would retreat back into the mountains, and into the wilderness and secret

## הילמן יא:כו-לה

לְהִתְחַבֵּא בָהֶם לְכָל יָמָאָה; וּמִדֵּי יוֹם בְּיוֹמוֹ גָּדַל  
מִסְפָּרָם, כִּי הָלְכוּ פוֹרְשִׁים וְהִתְחַבְּרוּ עִמָּהֶם.

places, hiding themselves that they could not be discovered, receiving daily an addition to their numbers, inasmuch as there were dissenters that went forth unto them.

וּבְמִשְׁךְ הַזֶּמֶן, בְּטָרִם תַּחֲלָפָה שָׁנִים רַבּוֹת,  
הִפְכוּ לְכַנְפִּית שׁוֹדְדִים אֲדִירָה. וְהֵם חִפְּשׁוּ  
אֶת כָּל מְזֻמּוֹת הַסֵּתֶר אֲשֶׁר לְגַדְיָאֲנִטוֹן, וְכֵה  
הָיוּ לְשׁוֹדְדֵי גַדְיָאֲנִטוֹן.

26 And thus in time, yea, even in the space of not many years, they became an exceedingly great band of robbers; and they did search out all the secret plans of Gadianton; and thus they became robbers of Gadianton.

וְהָיָה כִּי הַשׁוֹדְדִים הָאֵלֶּה הִסְבוּ חֲרָבָן  
גָּדוֹל וְהָרַס רַב בְּקֶרֶב עַם נְפִי, וְאִף בְּקֶרֶב  
עַם הַלְּמָנִים.

27 Now behold, these robbers did make great havoc, yea, even great destruction among the people of Nephi, and also among the people of the Lamanites.

וְהָיָה הֵיכָרֶח לְשִׁים קֶץ לַפַּעֲלַת הַהָרָס  
הַזֹּאת. לָכֵן נִשְׁלַח צָבָא גְבוּרֵי חֵיל אֶל הַיַּעְרוֹת  
וְאֶל הַהָרִים לַחֲפֹשׁ אֶת כַּנְפִּית הַשׁוֹדְדִים  
הַהֵיא וּלְהַשְׁמִידָם.

28 And it came to pass that it was expedient that there should be a stop put to this work of destruction; therefore they sent an army of strong men into the wilderness and upon the mountains to search out this band of robbers, and to destroy them.

אִף הִנֵּה, בְּשָׁנָה הַהִיא נִהְדָּפוּ אֲנָשֵׁי הַצָּבָא  
אֶל אֶרְצָם, וְכֵה כָּלְתָה שְׁנַת שְׁמוֹנִים לְשִׁלְטוֹן  
הַשׁוֹפְטִים בְּעַם נְפִי.

29 But behold, it came to pass that in that same year they were driven back even into their own lands. And thus ended the eightieth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

וְהָיָה בְּרֵאשִׁית שְׁנַת שְׁמוֹנִים וְאַחַת הֵם יָצְאוּ  
שְׁנִית עַל כַּנְפִּית הַשׁוֹדְדִים הַהֵיא וְהַשְׁמִידוּ רַבִּים  
מִמֶּנָּה. וְאוֹלָם אִף הֵם סָבְלוּ אֲבֹדוֹת כְּבֹדוֹת.

30 And it came to pass in the commencement of the eighty and first year they did go forth again against this band of robbers, and did destroy many; and they were also visited with much destruction.

וְהֵם נֶאֱלָצוּ לְסַגֵּת שְׁנִית מִן הַיַּעְרוֹת  
וּמִן הַהָרִים אֶל אֶרְצָם מִפְּנֵי עֶצֶם מִסְפַּר  
הַשׁוֹדְדִים אֲשֶׁר שָׂרְצוּ בְּהָרִים וּבַיַּעְרוֹת.

31 And they were again obliged to return out of the wilderness and out of the mountains unto their own lands, because of the exceeding greatness of the numbers of those robbers who infested the mountains and the wilderness.

כֵּה כָּלְתָה הַשָּׁנָה הַהִיא. וּמִסְפַּר הַשׁוֹדְדִים  
עָדִין גָּדַל וְכַחַם עֶצֶם, עַד כִּי הִעֲזוּ פְּנֵיהֶם אֶל  
כָּל חִילוֹת הַנֶּפְשִׁים וְאִף אֶל חִילוֹת הַלְּמָנִים.  
וְהֵם הִטִּילוּ מוֹרָא רַב עַל אֲנָשֵׁי כָּל הָאָרֶץ.

32 And it came to pass that thus ended this year. And the robbers did still increase and wax strong, insomuch that they did defy the whole armies of the Nephites, and also of the Lamanites; and they did cause great fear to come unto the people upon all the face of the land.

כִּי הִנֵּה, הֵם חָדְרוּ אֶל אֲזוּרִים רַבִּים בְּאֶרֶץ  
וְזָרְעוּ בָּהֶם חֲרָבָן וְהָרַס. וְהֵם הָרְגוּ רַבִּים וְשָׁבּוּ  
אַחֲרֵים וְהוֹבִילוּם אֶל הַיַּעַר; וּבִפְרָט שָׁבוּ אֶת  
נְשֵׁיהֶם וְאֶת יְלָדֵיהֶם.

33 Yea, for they did visit many parts of the land, and did do great destruction unto them; yea, did kill many, and did carry away others captive into the wilderness, yea, and more especially their women and their children.

וְהָרַעָה הַגְּדוֹלָה הַזֹּאת, אֲשֶׁר בָּאָה עַל  
הָאֲנָשִׁים מִפְּנֵי עֲוֹנָם, עוֹרְרָה אוֹתָם לְזִכֹּר  
שְׁנִית אֶת יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵיהֶם.

34 Now this great evil, which came unto the people because of their iniquity, did stir them up again in remembrance of the Lord their God.

כֵּה כָּלְתָה שְׁנַת שְׁמוֹנִים וְאַחַת לְשִׁלְטוֹן  
הַשׁוֹפְטִים.

35 And thus ended the eighty and first year of the reign of the judges.

## הילמן יא:לו-יב:ה

- 36 And in the eighty and second year they began again to forget the Lord their God. And in the eighty and third year they began to wax strong in iniquity. And in the eighty and fourth year they did not mend their ways.
- ובשנת שמונים ושנים הם שכחו שנית את יהוה אלהיהם. ובשנת שמונים ושלש גדלו עוונם וכבדו. ובשנת שמונים וארבע הם לא תקנו את דרכם.
- 37 And it came to pass in the eighty and fifth year they did wax stronger and stronger in their pride, and in their wickedness; and thus they were ripening again for destruction.
- ובשנת שמונים וחמש חזקו ועצמו גאותם ורשעתם; וכה הם שבו והבשילו אלי שחת.
- 38 And thus ended the eighty and fifth year.
- כה כלתה שנת שמונים וחמש.

## יב

## 12

- 1 And thus we can behold how false, and also the unsteadiness of the hearts of the children of men; yea, we can see that the Lord in his great infinite goodness doth bless and prosper those who put their trust in him.
- וכה רואים אנחנו מה כוזב לב בני האדם ומה רופף הוא. הננו נזכרים כי יהוה, בטובו הגדול אשר ללא קץ, מברך ומצליח את השמים בו את מבטחם.
- 2 Yea, and we may see at the very time when he doth prosper his people, yea, in the increase of their fields, their flocks and their herds, and in gold, and in silver, and in all manner of precious things of every kind and art; sparing their lives, and delivering them out of the hands of their enemies; softening the hearts of their enemies that they should not declare wars against them; yea, and in fine, doing all things for the welfare and happiness of his people; yea, then is the time that they do harden their hearts, and do forget the Lord their God, and do trample under their feet the Holy One—yea, and this because of their ease, and their exceedingly great prosperity.
- בידנו לראות כי בעצם השעה אשר מצליח הוא את עמו בהגדלת תבואתם ועדרי צאנם ובקרם, וזהבם וכסףם וכל מיני דברי יקר אשר מפל סוג ואמנות, בשעת הצילו את חייהם וחלצם מידי אויביהם, בעת רכבו את לב שונאיהם לבל יקומו עליהם למלחמה; ובקצרה: כאשר הוא עושה הכל למען רוחת עמו ואשרם, אכן, בעצם העת ההיא, מקשים הם את לבם, ושוכחים את יהוה אלהיהם, ורומסים ברגליהם את האל הקדוש; וזאת מפני שלותם והצלחתם הכבירה.
- 3 And thus we see that except the Lord doth chasten his people with many afflictions, yea, except he doth visit them with death and with terror, and with famine and with all manner of pestilence, they will not remember him.
- וכה רואים אנחנו כי אם אין אלהים מוכיח את עמו בפגעים רבים, אכן, אם אין הוא פוקדם במות ובמזרע, ברעב ובכל מיני מגפות, הם אינם זוכרים אותו.
- 4 O how foolish, and how vain, and how evil, and devilish, and how quick to do iniquity, and how slow to do good, are the children of men; yea, how quick to hearken unto the words of the evil one, and to set their hearts upon the vain things of the world!
- אָהָה, מה נבטרים בני האדם, ומה בני הכל הם, ומה רשעים ושטניים הם, ומה מהירים לעול ומה אטיים לעשות טוב; אכן, מה נחפזים הם לשמע לדברי המרשע ולהטות את לבם אל הבלי העולם!
- 5 Yea, how quick to be lifted up in pride; yea, how quick to boast, and do all manner of that which is iniquity; and how slow are they to remember the Lord their God, and to give ear unto his counsels, yea, how slow to walk in wisdom's paths!
- מה מהירים הם להתנשא בגאווה; אכן, מה נחפזים להתפאר ולפעל כל מיני און; ומה אטיים הם לזכר את יהוה אלהיהם ולהטות און לעצתו; ומה שוהים הם מלכת בנתיבות חכמה!

## הילמן יב:ו-כ

- 6 Behold, they do not desire that the Lord their God, who hath created them, should rule and reign over them; notwithstanding his great goodness and his mercy towards them, they do set at naught his counsels, and they will not that he should be their guide.
- הִנֵּה, אֵין הֵם רוֹצִים כִּי יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵיהֶם, אֲשֶׁר הוּא בּוֹרְאֵם, יִמְשַׁל בָּהֶם וְיִמְלֹךְ עֲלֵיהֶם; עַל אִף רַב טוֹבוֹ וְרַחֲמָיו עֲלֵיהֶם, לְרִיק הֵם שְׂמִים אֶת עֲצָתוֹ וְאֵין הֵם חֹפְצִים כִּי יִנְהֹגם.
- 7 O how great is the nothingness of the children of men; yea, even they are less than the dust of the earth.
- אָכֵן, מֶה רַבָּה אִפְסוּת בְּנֵי הָאָדָם; לֹא יָאֵה עֲרַכְם אִף לְעָפָר הָאָרֶץ.
- 8 For behold, the dust of the earth moveth hither and thither, to the dividing asunder, at the command of our great and everlasting God.
- כִּי הִנֵּה, עָפָר הָאָרֶץ נָע הֵנָּה וְהֵנָּה וְנִחְלַק בִּפְקֻדַּת אֱלֹהֵינוּ הַגָּדוֹל וְהַנֶּצְחִי.
- 9 Yea, behold at his voice do the hills and the mountains tremble and quake.
- הֵן לְקוֹלוֹ חָרְדוּ גְבָעוֹת וְהָרִים רָעָשׁוּ.
- 10 And by the power of his voice they are broken up, and become smooth, yea, even like unto a valley.
- בְּקוֹלוֹ הָאֲדִיר הֵם נִבְקָעִים וְהוֹפְכִים מִישׁוֹר, אִף כְּאָרֶץ הַשְּׁפֵלָה.
- 11 Yea, by the power of his voice doth the whole earth shake;
- הֵן בְּקוֹלוֹ הָאֲדִיר תִּרְעַד כָּל הָאָרֶץ;
- 12 Yea, by the power of his voice, do the foundations rock, even to the very center.
- וּבְקוֹלוֹ הָאֲדִיר יִנְעוּ מוֹסְדֵי אָרֶץ, אִף עַד עֲצָם קִרְבָּהּ.
- 13 Yea, and if he say unto the earth—Move—it is moved.
- אָכֵן, אִם יֹאמֶר אֶל הָאָרֶץ: נִזְעֵ! נִזְעֵ תִנָּע.
- 14 Yea, if he say unto the earth—Thou shalt go back, that it lengthen out the day for many hours—it is done;
- וְאִם יֹאמֶר אֶל הָאָרֶץ: סָבִי לְאַחֹר וַיֵּאָרֶךְ הַיּוֹם שְׁעוֹת רַבּוֹת! כֵּן יִהְיֶה.
- 15 And thus, according to his word the earth goeth back, and it appeareth unto man that the sun standeth still; yea, and behold, this is so; for surely it is the earth that moveth and not the sun.
- כֵּן, עַל פִּי דְבָרוֹ, שָׁבָה הָאָרֶץ לְאַחֹר, וְלִבְנֵי הָאָדָם נִדְמָה כִּי הַשֶּׁמֶשׁ עוֹצֵר מִהֲלָכּוֹ. הֵן הָאָרֶץ הִיא הַנִּזְעָה, וְלֹא הַשֶּׁמֶשׁ.
- 16 And behold, also, if he say unto the waters of the great deep—Be thou dried up—it is done.
- הִנֵּה, אִף אִם יֹאמֶר אֶל מֵי תְהוֹם רַבָּה: יִבְשׁוּ! כֵּן יִהְיֶה.
- 17 Behold, if he say unto this mountain—Be thou raised up, and come over and fall upon that city, that it be buried up—behold it is done.
- וְאִם יֹאמֶר אֶל הָהָר הַזֶּה: קוּמָה וּבֹא; וְעַל הָעִיר הַזֹּאת נָפֵל וְהִיא תִקָּבֵר! כֵּן יִהְיֶה.
- 18 And behold, if a man hide up a treasure in the earth, and the Lord shall say—Let it be accursed, because of the iniquity of him who hath hid it up—behold, it shall be accursed.
- אִם יִטְמֵן אִישׁ אוֹצֵר בְּאֲדָמָה, וַיֹּאמֶר יְהוָה: אָרוּר הַמִּטְמֵן, בְּעִבּוֹר עוֹלַת טוֹמְנָהוּ! אָרוּר יִהְיֶה.
- 19 And if the Lord shall say—Be thou accursed, that no man shall find thee from this time henceforth and forever—behold, no man getteth it henceforth and forever.
- וְאִם יֹאמֶר יְהוָה אֶל הָאוֹצֵר: אָרוּר תִּהְיֶה, וְלֹא יִמְצָאָךְ אִישׁ מִעַתָּה וְעַד עוֹלָם! הִנֵּה לֹא יִשְׁגִּיחוּ אָדָם מִעַתָּה וְעַד עוֹלָם.
- 20 And behold, if the Lord shall say unto a man—Because of thine iniquities, thou shalt be accursed forever—it shall be done.
- אִם יֹאמֶר יְהוָה אֶל אִישׁ: יֵעַן אֲשֶׁר עָשִׂיתָ דְּבַר אָנוּ, אָרוּר תִּהְיֶה לְעוֹלָם! כֹּה יִהְיֶה.



## הילמן יב:כא–יג:ד

- 21 ואם יאמר יהוה: מפני עוונך, הכרת תכרת מלפני! יסבב הוא כי יקום הדבר.
- 22 ואי לאיש אשר הוא יאמר לו כדבר הזה, כי בעונו יבוא עליו, ותשובה לו אין. על כן בעבור יושעו בני האדם, הכרז על תשובה.
- 23 ברורים המנחמים מחטא, השומעים לקול יהוה אלהיהם, כי הם אשר יושעו.
- 24 יהי רצון מלפני אלהים, אשר לו הגדלה כחמה כי יגיעו בני האדם לכלל תשובה ומעשים טובים, למען יושב להם חסד תחת חסד, כפי מעשיהם.
- 25 הנה, חפצני כי כל בני האדם יושעו, אך כתוב כי ביום הגדול והאחרון יהיו כאלה אשר ישלכו, אכן, ידחו מלפני יהוה;
- 26 עליהם יגזרו יסורי עולם, למלא את דברי האמור: למיטיב עשות, חיי נצח; ולפועל רשעה, קללת עולם. כן הדבר. אמן.

## יג

## 13

- 1 והיה בשנת שמונים ושיש, והנפיים הוסיפו להרע ולהרשיע עד מאד, בעוד הלכמים הקפידו לשמור את מצוות אלהים על פי תורת משה.
- 2 אכן, בשנה ההיא בא איש אחד למני, ושמו נקרא שמואל, אל ארץ זרהמלה, והחל להטיף לעם. והיה כי הוא הטיף להם ימים רבים על תשובה, אך הם גרשוהו והוא עמד לשוב אל ארצו.
- 3 והיה אליו קול יהוה וצוהו כי ילך וינבא שנית אל העם את הדברים אשר יעלו על לבו.
- 4 והיה כי לא נתנהו האנשים להכניס אל עירם; על כן הוא הלך ועלה על החומה, ופשט את ידו וקרא בקול גדול, ונבא לעם את כל הדברים אשר שם יהוה בלבבו.

- וְכֵן הָיָה אָמַר אֲלֵיהֶם: הֲנִי שְׂמוֹאֵל אִישׁ  
לְמִנִּי, מִדְּבַר אֱלֹהִים אֶת הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר שָׁם  
יְהוָה בְּלִבִּי; וְהִנֵּה שָׁם הוּא בְּלִבִּי לְהַגִּיד לָעָם  
הַזֶּה כִּי חָרַב הַדִּין תִּלְוֶיהָ מֵעַלְיוֹ; וּבִטָּרֵם  
יִחְלְפוּ אַרְבַּע מֵאוֹת שָׁנָה נָפֹל תִּפֹּל הָיָה  
עַל הָעָם הַזֶּה.
- אָכֵן, חָרַבְנָן כְּבֹד עֹמֵד לְפָקֹד אֶת הָעָם הַזֶּה,  
וּבֹא יָבֹא עָלָיו; וְדַבֵּר לֹא יֵצִיל אֶת הָעָם הַזֶּה,  
בְּלִתִּי אִם יִשׁוּבוּ מִרְעֻתָם וַיֵּאֱמִינוּ בְּאֱדֹנָן יֵשׁוּעַ  
הַמָּשִׁיחַ, אֲשֶׁר בֹּא יָבֹא אֶל הָעוֹלָם, וַיִּסְבֹּל  
רַבּוֹת יְיוּמַת לְמַעַן עָמוֹ.
- וְהִנֵּה, הוֹדִיעֵנִי זֹאת מִלֵּאדָּה יְהוָה וּבִשְׁוֹר אֶת  
נַפְשִׁי בְּשׁוֹרָה מְשֻׁמָּחַת. וְהִנֵּה, נִשְׁלַחְתִּי  
אֲלֵיכֶם לְהַשְׁמִיעָהּ, בְּעֶבֶר תִּתְּבַשְּׂרוּ אֶף  
אֲתָם; וְהִנֵּה לֹא חִפְצָתֶם לְקַבְּלִנִי.
- עַל כֵּן, כֹּה אָמַר יְהוָה: יַעַן אֲשֶׁר הִקְשׁוּ עָם  
הַנִּפְיִים אֶת לִבָּם, בְּלִתִּי אִם יִשׁוּבוּ מִרְעֻתָם  
אֲסִיר אֶת דְּבָרִי מֵהֶם, וְאֶאֱסֹף מֵהֶם אֶת  
רוּחִי, נִשְׁוֹא לֹא אֲשָׂאם עוֹד, וְאֵת לֵב  
אֲחֵיהֶם אֲשֶׁה עֲלֵיהֶם.
- וְלֹא תִחְלַפְנָה אַרְבַּע מֵאוֹת שָׁנָה בְּטָרֵם אֲסֹב  
עֲלֵיהֶם אֶת מַכָּתֶם; אָכֵן, פְּקוֹד אֶפְקֹדֶם בַּחֶרֶב  
וּבָרָעַב וּבִמְגָפָה.
- אָכֵן, בָּעִזָּה אֲפִי אֶפְקֹדֶם, וּבְדוֹר הָרְבִיעִי יִחְיוּ  
מִבְּנֵי אוֹיְבֵיכֶם אֲשֶׁר יִחְיוּ כְּכִלְיוֹנְכֶם הַחֲרוּץ;  
וְכָל זֹאת אָכֵן יָבֹא עֲלֵיכֶם בְּלִתִּי אִם תִּשׁוּבוּ  
מִרְעֻתְכֶם, נְאוּם יְהוָה. וּבְנֵי הַדּוֹר הָרְבִיעִי  
הֵם אֲשֶׁר יָבִיאוּ אֶת כְּלִיוֹנְכֶם.
- אֶף אִם תִּנְחַמּוּ עַל רְעֻתְכֶם וְתִשׁוּבוּ אֶל  
יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵיכֶם, אֲשִׁיב מִכֶּם אֶת חַמְתִּי, נְאוּם  
יְהוָה. כִּי כֹה אָמַר יְהוָה: בְּרוּכִים הֵם הַשֹּׁבִים  
מִרְעֻתָם הַפְּנוּיִם אֵלַי, אֶף אוֹיֵל לְאִשְׁרֵי לֹא יִשׁוּבוּ.
- אָכֵן, אוֹיֵל הַגְּדוֹלָה הַזֹּאת, יִזְרַעְתֶּם מָלָה;  
הֵן בְּעֶבֶר הַצְּדִיקִים הִיא נִצְלָה. כִּי כֹה אָמַר  
יְהוָה: אוֹיֵל הַגְּדוֹלָה הַזֹּאת, יַעַן אֲשֶׁר  
רוֹאֶה אֲנִי כִּי רַבִּים מֵהֶם, אָכֵן, רַב יוֹשְׁבֵי הָעִיר  
הַגְּדוֹלָה הַזֹּאת יִקְשׁוּ אֶת לִבָּם עָלַי, נְאוּם יְהוָה
- 5 And he said unto them: Behold, I, Samuel, a Lamanite, do speak the words of the Lord which he doth put into my heart; and behold he hath put it into my heart to say unto this people that the sword of justice hangeth over this people; and four hundred years pass not away save the sword of justice falleth upon this people.
- 6 Yea, heavy destruction awaiteth this people, and it surely cometh unto this people, and nothing can save this people save it be repentance and faith on the Lord Jesus Christ, who surely shall come into the world, and shall suffer many things and shall be slain for his people.
- 7 And behold, an angel of the Lord hath declared it unto me, and he did bring glad tidings to my soul. And behold, I was sent unto you to declare it unto you also, that ye might have glad tidings; but behold ye would not receive me.
- 8 Therefore, thus saith the Lord: Because of the hardness of the hearts of the people of the Nephites, except they repent I will take away my word from them, and I will withdraw my Spirit from them, and I will suffer them no longer, and I will turn the hearts of their brethren against them.
- 9 And four hundred years shall not pass away before I will cause that they shall be smitten; yea, I will visit them with the sword and with famine and with pestilence.
- 10 Yea, I will visit them in my fierce anger, and there shall be those of the fourth generation who shall live, of your enemies, to behold your utter destruction; and this shall surely come except ye repent, saith the Lord; and those of the fourth generation shall visit your destruction.
- 11 But if ye will repent and return unto the Lord your God I will turn away mine anger, saith the Lord; yea, thus saith the Lord, blessed are they who will repent and turn unto me, but wo unto him that repenteth not.
- 12 Yea, wo unto this great city of Zarahemla; for behold, it is because of those who are righteous that it is saved; yea, wo unto this great city, for I perceive, saith the Lord, that there are many, yea, even the more part of this great city, that will harden their hearts against me, saith the Lord.

- 13 But blessed are they who will repent, for them will I spare. But behold, if it were not for the righteous who are in this great city, behold, I would cause that fire should come down out of heaven and destroy it.
- אך בְּרוּכִים הֵם הַמִּנְחָמִים עַל חַטָּאתָם, כִּי אוֹתָם אֶצִּיל. הֵן לוֹלֵא הַצְדִּיקִים אֲשֶׁר בְּעִיר הַגְּדוֹלָה הַזֹּאת, שְׁלַחְתִּי אֵשׁ מִן הַשָּׁמַיִם וְהַשְׁמַדְתִּיהָ.
- 14 But behold, it is for the righteous' sake that it is spared. But behold, the time cometh, saith the Lord, that when ye shall cast out the righteous from among you, then shall ye be ripe for destruction; yea, wo be unto this great city, because of the wickedness and abominations which are in her.
- הֵן בְּעֵבוֹר הַצְדִּיקִים הִיא נִצְלָתָה. אֲנִי הִנֵּה תָבוֹא הָעֵת, וְהַשְׁלַכְתֶּם אֶת הַצְדִּיקִים מִקִּרְבְּכֶם, אִזּוּ תִבְשִׁילוּ לְקִרְאֵת הַשְׁמַדְתְּכֶם, נְאוּם יְהוָה; וְאוֹי לְעִיר הַגְּדוֹלָה הַזֹּאת, עַל הָרָשָׁעָה וְעַל הַתּוֹעֲבוֹת אֲשֶׁר בְּקִרְבָּהּ.
- 15 Yea, and wo be unto the city of Gideon, for the wickedness and abominations which are in her.
- אוֹי לְעִיר גִּדְעוֹן, עַל הָרָשָׁעָה וְעַל הַתּוֹעֲבוֹת אֲשֶׁר בָּהּ.
- 16 Yea, and wo be unto all the cities which are in the land round about, which are possessed by the Nephites, because of the wickedness and abominations which are in them.
- וְאוֹי לְכָל הָעָרִים אֲשֶׁר בְּאַרְצָן מִסְבִּיב, אֲשֶׁר נִחְלוּן הַנְּפִיתִים, מִפְּנֵי הָרָשָׁעָה וְהַתּוֹעֲבוֹת אֲשֶׁר בְּקִרְבָּן.
- 17 And behold, a curse shall come upon the land, saith the Lord of Hosts, because of the people's sake who are upon the land, yea, because of their wickedness and their abominations.
- כִּי כֹה אָמַר יְהוָה צְבָאוֹת: קִלְלָה תָבוֹא עַל הָאָרֶץ, מִפְּנֵי אֲנָשֶׁיהָ, אֲכֹן, מִפְּנֵי רָשָׁעֵתָם וְתוֹעֲבוֹתֵיהֶם.
- 18 And it shall come to pass, saith the Lord of Hosts, yea, our great and true God, that whoso shall hide up treasures in the earth shall find them again no more, because of the great curse of the land, save he be a righteous man and shall hide it up unto the Lord.
- וְכָל אֲשֶׁר הִטְמִין אֶת אוֹצָרוֹ בְּאֶדְמָה לֹא יִמְצָאוּהוּ בְּעֵת הַהִיא, מִפְּנֵי קִלְלַת הָאָרֶץ הַגְּדוֹלָה; לֹא כֵן הַצְדִּיק אֲשֶׁר יִטְמִין אֶת אוֹצָרוֹ לְשֵׁם יְהוָה, נְאוּם יְהוָה צְבָאוֹת, אֱלֹהֵי אֲמֶת הַגְּדוֹל.
- 19 For I will, saith the Lord, that they shall hide up their treasures unto me; and cursed be they who hide not up their treasures unto me; for none hideth up their treasures unto me save it be the righteous; and he that hideth not up his treasures unto me, cursed is he, and also the treasure, and none shall redeem it because of the curse of the land.
- כִּי כֹה אָמַר יְהוָה: חֲפָצִי כִּי הֵם יִטְמִינוּ אֶת אוֹצְרוֹתֵיהֶם לְשָׁמִי; אָרוּר הוּא אֲשֶׁר לֹא יִטְמִין אֶת אוֹצָרוֹ לְשָׁמִי; כִּי הֵטֵמִן לֹא יִטְמִין אִישׁ אֶת אוֹצָרוֹ לְשָׁמִי, כִּי אִם הַצְדִּיק; וְכָל אֲשֶׁר לֹא יִטְמִין אֶת אוֹצָרוֹ לְשָׁמִי, אָרוּר הוּא וְאָרוּר אוֹצָרוֹ, וְאִישׁ לֹא יַצִּילֵנוּ מִפְּנֵי קִלְלַת הָאָרֶץ.
- 20 And the day shall come that they shall hide up their treasures, because they have set their hearts upon riches; and because they have set their hearts upon their riches, and will hide up their treasures when they shall flee before their enemies; because they will not hide them up unto me, cursed be they and also their treasures; and in that day shall they be smitten, saith the Lord.
- בּוֹא יָבוֹא הַיּוֹם אֲשֶׁר הֵם יִטְמִינוּ אֶת אוֹצְרוֹתֵיהֶם, כִּי שִׁתּוּ לִבָּם לְעֶשֶׂר; וְיַעַן אֲשֶׁר שִׁתּוּ לִבָּם לְעֶשֶׂר, וְיִטְמִינוּ אֶת אוֹצְרוֹתֵיהֶם בְּעֵת אֲשֶׁר יָנוּסוּ מִפְּנֵי אוֹיְבֵיהֶם; אֲכֹן, יַעַן אֲשֶׁר לֹא לְשָׁמִי יִטְמִינוּם, אָרוּרִים יִהְיוּ, הֵם וְאוֹצְרוֹתֵיהֶם. בַּיּוֹם הַהוּא הִכָּה יִכּוּ, נְאוּם יְהוָה.
- 21 Behold ye, the people of this great city, and hearken unto my words; yea, hearken unto the words which the Lord saith; for behold, he saith that ye are cursed because of your riches, and also are your riches cursed
- רְאוּ, אֲנֹשֵׁי הָעִיר הַגְּדוֹלָה הַזֹּאת, שְׁמְעוּ אֵל דְּבָרִי; הֶאֱזִינוּ לְדְבַרִי יְהוָה; הִנֵּהוּ אוֹמֵר כִּי אָרוּרִים אַתֶּם מִפְּנֵי עֲשָׂרְכֶם, וְאִף עֲשָׂרְכֶם

אָרוֹר, כִּי שֵׁתָם לִבָּכֶם לֹו, וְלֹא שָׁמַעְתֶּם לְדִבְרֵי מִי אֲשֶׁר נָתַנוּ לָכֶם.

because ye have set your hearts upon them, and have not hearkened unto the words of him who gave them unto you.

לֹא זָכַרְתֶּם אֶת יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵיכֶם בְּדָבָרִים אֲשֶׁר בֵּרַכְכֶם, אֲדָּוָה זִכְרִים אֲתֶם תְּמִיד אֶת עֲשָׂרְכֶם וְאִינְכֶם מוֹדִים עָלָיו לִיהוָה אֱלֹהֵיכֶם; אֲכֹן, אֵין לִבָּכֶם נִמְשָׁךְ אֶל יְהוָה כִּי הוּא תִפְחַ בְּגָאוֹה רַבָּה, וְאַתֶּם עוֹסְקִים בַּהֲתַפָּאוֹת וּבַהֲתַנְשָׁאוֹת, בְּקִנְאָה וּבִסְכּוּכִים, בְּזִדּוֹן וּבְרִדְפוֹת, וּבְרִצָּח וּבְכָל מִינֵי עוֹל.

22 Ye do not remember the Lord your God in the things with which he hath blessed you, but ye do always remember your riches, not to thank the Lord your God for them; yea, your hearts are not drawn out unto the Lord, but they do swell with great pride, unto boasting, and unto great swelling, envyings, strifes, malice, persecutions and murders, and all manner of iniquities.

עַל כֵּן שׁוֹלַח יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים מְאֹרָה בְּאַרְצְכֶם וְאֵף בְּעֲשָׂרְכֶם, וְזֹאת מִפְּנֵי עֲוֹנוֹכֶם.

23 For this cause hath the Lord God caused that a curse should come upon the land, and also upon your riches, and this because of your iniquities.

אִוִי לָעַם הַזֶּה כִּי הִגִּיעָה הָעֵת אֲשֶׁר אֲתֶם מְגַרְשִׁים אֶת הַנְּבִיאִים וְלוֹעֲגִים לָהֶם, וְרוֹגְמִים בָּהֶם אַבְנִים וְהוֹרְגִים אוֹתָם וְעוֹשִׂים לָהֶם כָּל מִינֵי עוֹלָה, כְּאֲשֶׁר עָשׂוּ לָהֶם בְּיָמֵי קֶדֶם.

24 Yea, wo unto this people, because of this time which has arrived, that ye do cast out the prophets, and do mock them, and cast stones at them, and do slay them, and do all manner of iniquity unto them, even as they did of old time.

וּבְדַבְּרְכֶם אוֹמְרִים אֲתֶם: אֵלֹו חַיִּינוּ בְּיָמֵי אֲבוֹתֵינוּ אֲשֶׁר מִלְּפָנִים, לֹא הָיִינוּ הוֹרְגִים אֶת הַנְּבִיאִים, לֹא רוֹגְמִים בָּהֶם אַבֵּן וּמְגַרְשִׁים אוֹתָם.

25 And now when ye talk, ye say: If our days had been in the days of our fathers of old, we would not have slain the prophets; we would not have stoned them, and cast them out.

הִנֵּכֶם רָעִים מֵאֲבוֹתֵיכֶם. חֵי יְהוָה כִּי בָּבֹא אֲלֵיכֶם נְבִיא וְכַהֲדִיעֹו אֶתְכֶם אֶת דְּבַר יְהוָה הַמַּעֲדִיד עַל חַטֹּאתֵיכֶם וְעוֹנוֹתֵיכֶם, אֲתֶם רוֹגְזִים עָלָיו, מְגַרְשִׁים אוֹתוֹ וּמְבַקְשִׁים כָּל דֶּרֶךְ לְהַשְׁמִידוֹ. אֲכֹן, תֹּאמְרוּ כִּי נְבִיא שֶׁקֶר הוּא, וְחוֹטֵא, וְשׁוֹלַח מֵאֵת הַשָּׁטָן, יַעַן אֲשֶׁר מַעֲדִיד הוּא כִּי מַעֲשִׂיכֶם רָעִים.

26 Behold ye are worse than they; for as the Lord liveth, if a prophet come among you and declareth unto you the word of the Lord, which testifieth of your sins and iniquities, ye are angry with him, and cast him out and seek all manner of ways to destroy him; yea, you will say that he is a false prophet, and that he is a sinner, and of the devil, because he testifieth that your deeds are evil.

וְאִם יָבֹא אֲלֵיכֶם אִישׁ וְיֹאמַר עֲשׂוּ זֹאת וְאֵין בְּכֶד עוֹוֹן, עֲשׂוּ זֹאת וְלֹא תִסָּבֵלוּ! אוֹ אִם יֹאמַר: לָכוּ כְּדֶרֶךְ גִּאוֹת לִבָּכֶם, לָכוּ אַחֵר גְּבוּהוֹת עֵינֵיכֶם וְעֲשׂוּ כָּל תַּאֲוֹת לִבָּכֶם! הֵן קִבַּל תִּקְבְּלוֹהוּ וְנְבִיא תִכְנוּהוּ.

27 But behold, if a man shall come among you and shall say: Do this, and there is no iniquity; do that and ye shall not suffer; yea, he will say: Walk after the pride of your own hearts; yea, walk after the pride of your eyes, and do whatsoever your heart desireth—and if a man shall come among you and say this, ye will receive him, and say that he is a prophet.

אֲכֹן, אוֹתוֹ תְּרוֹמְמוּ וּמַהוֹנֵכֶם תִּתְּנוּ לֹו; אֶת זְהָבְכֶם וְכֶסֶףְכֶם תִּתְּנוּ לוֹ וּבִגְדֵי יָקָר תַּלְבִּישׁוּהוּ; יַעַן אֲשֶׁר יַחְלִיק דְּבָרָיו אֲלֵיכֶם וְיֹאמַר כִּי הִכָּל טוֹב, לֹא תִמָּצְאוּ בוֹ כָּל מוֹם.

28 Yea, ye will lift him up, and ye will give unto him of your substance; ye will give unto him of your gold, and of your silver, and ye will clothe him with costly apparel; and because he speaketh flattering words unto you, and he saith that all is well, then ye will not find fault with him.

הוֹי, דּוֹר רָשָׁע וְנָלוֹז; עִם קָשָׁה וְעַקְשָׁה, עַד מָתִי, סוֹבְרִים אֲתֶם, יִשְׁאַכֶּם יְהוָה? עַד מָתִי תִפְקְרוּ עֲצֻמְכֶם לְסוֹר אַחֵר מִנְהִיגִים שׁוֹטִים וְעוֹרִים? עַד מָתִי תִבְחָרוּ בַחֲשָׁךְ תַּחַת אוֹר?

29 O ye wicked and ye perverse generation; ye hardened and ye stiffnecked people, how long will ye suppose that the Lord will suffer you? Yea, how long will ye suffer yourselves to be led by foolish and blind guides? Yea, how long will ye choose darkness rather than light?

- 30 Yea, behold, the anger of the Lord is already kindled against you; behold, he hath cursed the land because of your iniquity.
- הִנֵּה כָּבֵד בּוֹעֶרֶת חֲמַת יְהוָה עֲלֵיכֶם. הִנֵּה הוּא אָרַר אֶת הָאָרֶץ מִפְּנֵי עֲוֹנוֹתֵיכֶם.
- 31 And behold, the time cometh that he curseth your riches, that they become slippery, that ye cannot hold them; and in the days of your poverty ye cannot retain them.
- הִנֵּה בָּאָה הָעֵת אֲשֶׁר יִקְלַל יְהוָה אֶת עֲשָׂרְכֶם, כִּי יִהְיֶה חֶלֶק, אֲשֶׁר לֹא תִהְיֶה לָכֶם אַחֲזִיזָה בּוֹ, וּבְיָמֵי עֲנִיְכֶם יִשְׁמַט מִיָּדְכֶם.
- 32 And in the days of your poverty ye shall cry unto the Lord; and in vain shall ye cry, for your desolation is already come upon you, and your destruction is made sure; and then shall ye weep and howl in that day, saith the Lord of Hosts. And then shall ye lament, and say:
- וּבְיָמֵי עֲנִיְכֶם תִּקְרָאוּ אֶל יְהוָה, אֲךָ לִשְׁוֹא תִקְרָאוּ, כִּי כָּבֵד נִחְרַץ חֲרִבְנֶכֶם וְכִלְיוֹנֶכֶם נִכּוֹן, נֹאמֹר יְהוָה צָבָאוֹת. אָזִי תִבְכוּ וּתְלִילוּ, אָכֵן, בַּיּוֹם הַהוּא תִקְוֹנֶנּוּ לֵאמֹר:
- 33 O that I had repented, and had not killed the prophets, and stoned them, and cast them out. Yea, in that day ye shall say: O that we had remembered the Lord our God in the day that he gave us our riches, and then they would not have become slippery that we should lose them; for behold, our riches are gone from us.
- מִי יִתֵּן וְהִיִּיתִי שֹׁב מִרְעָתִי וְנִמְנַע מִהָרֹג אֶת הַנְּבִיאִים, וּמִרְגֵּם אוֹתָם בָּאֶבֶן וּמִגָּרֶשֶׁם. אָכֵן, בַּיּוֹם הַהוּא תֹאמְרוּ: מִי יִתֵּן וְזָכְרֵנוּ אֶת יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵינוּ בַּיּוֹם תָּתוּ לָנוּ אֶת עֲשָׂרֵנוּ, כִּי אָז לֹא הָיָה חֶלֶק וְנִשְׁמַט מִיָּדְנוּ, כִּי הִנֵּה אָבֵד לָנוּ עֲשָׂרֵנוּ.
- 34 Behold, we lay a tool here and on the morrow it is gone; and behold, our swords are taken from us in the day we have sought them for battle.
- הִנֵּה אֲנַחְנוּ מְנִיחִים כָּאֵן כְּלִי וּלְמָחָר הוּא נִעְלָם. הִנֵּה חֲרִבּוֹתֵינוּ תִלְקַחְנָה מִמֶּנּוּ בַּיּוֹם אֲשֶׁר נִבְקָשׁוּן לִקְרָב.
- 35 Yea, we have hid up our treasures and they have slipped away from us, because of the curse of the land.
- אֶת אוֹצְרוֹתֵינוּ הִטַּמְנוּ וְהֵם נִשְׁמָטוּ מִמֶּנּוּ, מִפְּנֵי קִלְלַת הָאָרֶץ.
- 36 O that we had repented in the day that the word of the Lord came unto us; for behold the land is cursed, and all things are become slippery, and we cannot hold them.
- מִי יִתֵּן וְשִׁבְנוּ מִרְעָתֵנוּ בַּיּוֹם אֲשֶׁר בּוֹ שָׁמַעְנוּ אֶת דְּבַר יְהוָה; כִּי הִנֵּה אֲרוּרָה הָאָרֶץ וְכָל דָּבָר חֶלֶק וְנִשְׁמַט מִיָּדְנוּ.
- 37 Behold, we are surrounded by demons, yea, we are encircled about by the angels of him who hath sought to destroy our souls. Behold, our iniquities are great. O Lord, canst thou not turn away thine anger from us? And this shall be your language in those days.
- הִנֵּנוּ מִקְפָּסִים בְּשִׂדִּים, אָכֵן, מִכְתָּרִים בְּמַלְאָכֵי הַמִּבְקָשׁ לְאַבֵּד אֶת נַפְשׁוֹתֵינוּ. הִנֵּה, גָּדוֹל עֲוֹנוֹנֵנוּ. אֲנִי, יְהוָה, הֲלֹא תִשָּׁיב אַפְּךָ מִמֶּנּוּ? בְּלִשׁוֹן כָּזֹאת תִּדְבְּרוּ בָּעֵת הַהִיא.
- 38 But behold, your days of probation are past; ye have procrastinated the day of your salvation until it is everlastingly too late, and your destruction is made sure; yea, for ye have sought all the days of your lives for that which ye could not obtain; and ye have sought for happiness in doing iniquity, which thing is contrary to the nature of that righteousness which is in our great and Eternal Head.
- הִנֵּה, חָלְפוּ אֲזֵי יָמֵי מִבְחָנְכֶם. עַכְבָּתָם אֶת יוֹם יְשׁוּעַתְכֶם עַד אֲשֶׁר אַחֲרָתָם לְעוֹלָם וְכִלְיוֹנְכֶם נִחְרַץ. כִּי בִקְשָׁתֶם כָּל יָמֵי חַיֵּיכֶם אֶת אֲשֶׁר לֹא יִכְלָתֶם לְהַשְׁיִיגוֹ. אָכֵן, בִּקְשָׁתֶם אֲשֶׁר בַּעֲשִׂית אֲוֹן, וְזֶה מִגֵּד לְטֹבַע הַצֶּדֶק אֲשֶׁר לְאֹדוֹנֵנוּ הַגָּדוֹל, רִבּוֹן הָעוֹלָמִים.
- 39 O ye people of the land, that ye would hear my words! And I pray that the anger of the Lord be turned away from you, and that ye would repent and be saved.
- אֲהֵה, תוֹשְׁבֵי הָאָרֶץ, מִי יִתֵּן וְהִקְשַׁבְתֶּם לְדִבְרִי! וְאֲנִי מִתְחַנֵּן כִּי יִשָּׁיב יְהוָה מִכֶּם אֶת אַפּוֹ, וְכִי תִנְחַמוּ מִחַטְאוֹתְכֶם וְתִשְׁעוּ.



## יד

## 14

- 1 והיה כי עוד דברים רבים מאד, אשר אין לכתבם, נבא שמואל הלמני.
- 2 והוא אמר אליהם: הנני נותן לכם אות; בעוד חמש שנים, והנה בא בן אלהים לגאל את כל אשר יאמינו בשמו.
- 3 וזה לכם האות לעת בואו; הנה יראו מאורות גדולים בשמים, עד כי בלילה אשר לפני בואו לא תהיה כל חשכה, ובשני בני אדם ידמה כאלו יום הוא.
- 4 על כן יהיו יום ולילה ויום כאלו יום אחד הם, בלא לילה. וזה לכם אות, כי אכן תדעו על זריחת השמש ועל שקיעתו, לכן ידוע תדעו כי יהיו אלה שני ימים ולילה; והלילה אשר לא יחשיך, הוא הלילה לפני הולדו.
- 5 והנה, כוכב חדש יעלה, אשר כמותו לא ראייתם מעודכם; ואף זה יהיה לכם אות.
- 6 ואין זה הכל, אותות ונפלאות רבים יהיו בשמים.
- 7 ואזי תשתוממו ותתפלאו, עד כי לארץ תפלו.
- 8 וכל אשר יאמין בן אלהים, יחיה חיי עולם.
- 9 וכה צוני יהוה על ידי מלאכו לבוא ולהגיד לכם את הדבר הזה; אכן, הוא צוה כי אנבא לכם את הדברים האלה; וכה אמר אלי: קרא נא אל העם הזה, הנחמו על חטאיכם ופנו את דרך יהוה!
- 10 ויען אשר למני אני, ודברתי אליכם את אשר צוני יהוה, ויען אשר היו הדברים עליכם קשים, הנכם רוגזים עלי ומבקשים לכלותני, ואתם גרשתם אותי מקרבכם.
- 11 ועתה תשמעו את דברי, כי בעבור זאת עליתי על חומת העיר הזאת, למען תשמעו
- 1 And now it came to pass that Samuel, the Lamanite, did prophesy a great many more things which cannot be written.
- 2 And behold, he said unto them: Behold, I give unto you a sign; for five years more cometh, and behold, then cometh the Son of God to redeem all those who shall believe on his name.
- 3 And behold, this will I give unto you for a sign at the time of his coming; for behold, there shall be great lights in heaven, insomuch that in the night before he cometh there shall be no darkness, insomuch that it shall appear unto man as if it was day.
- 4 Therefore, there shall be one day and a night and a day, as if it were one day and there were no night; and this shall be unto you for a sign; for ye shall know of the rising of the sun and also of its setting; therefore they shall know of a surety that there shall be two days and a night; nevertheless the night shall not be darkened; and it shall be the night before he is born.
- 5 And behold, there shall a new star arise, such an one as ye never have beheld; and this also shall be a sign unto you.
- 6 And behold this is not all, there shall be many signs and wonders in heaven.
- 7 And it shall come to pass that ye shall all be amazed, and wonder, insomuch that ye shall fall to the earth.
- 8 And it shall come to pass that whosoever shall believe on the Son of God, the same shall have everlasting life.
- 9 And behold, thus hath the Lord commanded me, by his angel, that I should come and tell this thing unto you; yea, he hath commanded that I should prophesy these things unto you; yea, he hath said unto me: Cry unto this people, repent and prepare the way of the Lord.
- 10 And now, because I am a Lamanite, and have spoken unto you the words which the Lord hath commanded me, and because it was hard against you, ye are angry with me and do seek to destroy me, and have cast me out from among you.
- 11 And ye shall hear my words, for, for this intent have I come up upon the walls of this city, that ye might hear and know of the judgments of

## הילמן יד:כא

- וְתַדְעוּ אֶת מִשְׁפַּט אֱלֹהִים הַמַּצְפָּה לָכֶם  
מִפְּנֵי עֲוֹנוֹתֵיכֶם, וְאִף לְמַעַן תַּדְעוּ אֶת  
תְּנַאי הַתְּשׁוּבָה;
- 12 And also that ye might know of the coming of Jesus Christ, the Son of God, the Father of heaven and of earth, the Creator of all things from the beginning; and that ye might know of the signs of his coming, to the intent that ye might believe on his name.
- וּבַעֲבוּר תַּדְעוּ עַל בּוֹא יֵשׁוּעַ הַמָּשִׁיחַ, בֶּן  
אֱלֹהִים, אָבִי שָׁמַיִם וָאָרֶץ, בּוֹרֵא הַכֹּל  
מִבְּרָאשִׁית; וְאִף לְמַעַן תַּדְעוּ עַל אוֹתוֹת בּוֹא,  
בַּעֲבוּר תִּאֲמִינוּ בְּשִׁמוֹ.
- 13 And if ye believe on his name ye will repent of all your sins, that thereby ye may have a remission of them through his merits.
- וְאִם תִּאֲמִינוּ בְּשִׁמוֹ, תִּשְׁוּבוּ מִכָּל חַטֹּאתֵיכֶם,  
וּבְזֹאת תִּהְיֶה לָכֶם כַּפָּרָה עָלֵיהֶם, בְּזִכּוֹתָיו.
- 14 And behold, again, another sign I give unto you, yea, a sign of his death.
- וְהִנֵּה, אוֹת נֹסֵף נֹתֵן אֲנִי לָכֶם, אוֹת עַל מוֹתוֹ.
- כִּי הִנֵּה, אֲכֹן מוֹת יָמוּת הוּא בַּעֲבוּר תְּבוֹא  
הַיִּשׁוּעָה. אֲכֹן, רְאוּי הַדְּבָר וְהַכָּרֵחַ עָלָיו לְמוֹת  
בַּעֲבוּר קִיָּם אֶת תְּחִיַּת הַמֵּתִים, אֲשֶׁר עַל יְדֵיהֶ  
יּוֹבֵאוּ בְּנֵי הָאָדָם אֶל נֶכַח פְּנֵי יְהוָה.
- 15 For behold, he surely must die that salvation may come; yea, it behooveth him and becometh expedient that he dieth, to bring to pass the resurrection of the dead, that thereby men may be brought into the presence of the Lord.
- אֲכֹן, הַמָּוֶת הַזֶּה מְבִיא אֶת הַתְּחִיָּה וְגוֹאֵל אֶת  
כָּל הָאֲנוּשׁוֹת מִן הַמָּוֶת הָרִאשׁוֹן, אֲשֶׁר הוּא  
מָוֶת רוּחָנִי. כִּי כָל הָאֲנוּשׁוֹת, יַעַן אֲשֶׁר נִכְרְתָה  
מִלִּפְנֵי יְהוָה עַל יְדֵי נְפִילַת אָדָם, נִחְשָׁבֶת  
לְמֵתָה, בְּעֵינֵי הָרוּחַ כְּבַעֲנִינֵי הַגּוֹף.
- 16 Yea, behold, this death bringeth to pass the resurrection, and redeemeth all mankind from the first death—that spiritual death; for all mankind, by the fall of Adam being cut off from the presence of the Lord, are considered as dead, both as to things temporal and to things spiritual.
- וְהִנֵּה, תְּחִיַּת הַמָּשִׁיחַ גּוֹאֵלֶת אֶת הָאֲנוּשׁוֹת; אֶת  
כָּל בְּנֵי הָאָדָם הֵיא מְשִׁיבָה אֶל נֶכַח פְּנֵי יְהוָה.
- 17 But behold, the resurrection of Christ redeemeth mankind, yea, even all mankind, and bringeth them back into the presence of the Lord.
- וְהֵיא מְקִיַּמֶת אֶת תְּנַאי הַתְּשׁוּבָה, אֲשֶׁר כָּל  
הַשֶּׁב מִרְעֵתוֹ אֵינוֹ נִכְרַת וְאֵינוֹ מְשָׁלָךְ אֶל הָאֵשׁ.  
וְאוּלָם כָּל אֲשֶׁר אֵינוֹ שֶׁב מִרְעֵתוֹ נִכְרַת וּמְשָׁלָךְ  
אֶל הָאֵשׁ, וְשֶׁב עָלָיו מָוֶת רוּחָנִי, מָוֶת שֵׁנִי, כִּי  
הוּא נִכְרַת שְׁנִית בְּאֲשֶׁר לְעֵינֵי צֶדֶק.
- 18 Yea, and it bringeth to pass the condition of repentance, that whosoever repenteth the same is not hewn down and cast into the fire; but whosoever repenteth not is hewn down and cast into the fire; and there cometh upon them again a spiritual death, yea, a second death, for they are cut off again as to things pertaining to righteousness.
- לָכֵן, שׁוּבוּ מִרְעֵתְכֶם, שׁוּבוּ פֶן תִּרְשְׁעוּ  
וְתוֹרְדוּ אֶל הַמָּוֶת הַשֵּׁנִי, יַעַן אֲשֶׁר יִדְעֻתֶם  
אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה וְלֹא עֲשִׂיתֶם אוֹתָם.
- 19 Therefore repent ye, repent ye, lest by knowing these things and not doing them ye shall suffer yourselves to come under condemnation, and ye are brought down unto this second death.
- וְהִנֵּה, כְּפִי אֲשֶׁר אָמַרְתִּי לָכֶם עַל אוֹת שֵׁנִי,  
אוֹת עַל מוֹתוֹ, הִנֵּה בְּיוֹם הַהוּא אֲשֶׁר הוּא  
יָמוּת, יִחְשֹׁךְ הַשֶּׁמֶשׁ וְיִסָּרֵב לְהַגִּיף אוֹרוֹ  
עָלֵיכֶם וְכִמוֹהוּ הַיָּרֵחַ וְהַכּוֹכְבִּים; וְלֹא יִזְרַח  
אוֹר עַל פְּנֵי הָאָרֶץ הַזֹּאת בְּמִשְׁךְ שְׁלֹשָׁה יָמִים,  
מִשְׁעַת מִיתָתוֹ וְעַד שְׁעַת קוּמוֹ מִן הַמֵּתִים.
- 20 But behold, as I said unto you concerning another sign, a sign of his death, behold, in that day that he shall suffer death the sun shall be darkened and refuse to give his light unto you; and also the moon and the stars; and there shall be no light upon the face of this land, even from the time that he shall suffer death, for the space of three days, to the time that he shall rise again from the dead.
- וּבַעֲת אֲשֶׁר יֵשִׁיב אֶת רוּחוֹ יִפּוּצּוּ רַעְמִים  
וּבְרָקִים בְּמִשְׁךְ שְׁעוֹת רַבּוֹת, וְהָאָרֶץ תִּחָּרַד
- 21 Yea, at the time that he shall yield up the ghost there shall be thunderings and lightnings for the space of many hours, and the earth shall shake

וְתִרְעַד, וְהִסְלָעִים אֲשֶׁר עַל פְּנֵיהָ אֲשֶׁר הֵם מַעַל  
הָאָרֶץ וּמִתַּחְתֶּיהָ, אֲשֶׁר יוֹדְעִים אַתֶּם כִּי הֵיוּ  
מוֹצָקִים הֵם, אוֹ כִּי רַבָּם גּוֹשׁ מוֹצָק, יִבְקָעוּ.

and tremble; and the rocks which are upon the face of this earth, which are both above the earth and beneath, which ye know at this time are solid, or the more part of it is one solid mass, shall be broken up;

אָכֵן, הִבְקָע יִבְקָעוּ הֵם, וּמֵאֵז וְהִלָּאָה יִמְצְאוּ  
סְדוּקִים וּמִבְקָעִים, שְׁבוּרִים וּמְפֹרָרִים עַל פְּנֵי  
כָּל הָאָרֶץ, מֵעֲלֶיהָ וּמִתַּחְתֶּיהָ.

22 Yea, they shall be rent in twain, and shall ever after be found in seams and in cracks, and in broken fragments upon the face of the whole earth, yea, both above the earth and beneath.

בָּעֵת הַהִיא תִּתְחַלְלֶנָּה סְעָרוֹת גְּדוֹלוֹת  
וְהָרִים רַבִּים יִשְׁפְּלוּ וַיְהִיו לְבָקְעוֹת, וּמְקוֹמוֹת  
רַבִּים הַנִּקְרָאִים הַיּוֹם בְּקָעוֹת וַיְהִיו הָרִים  
גְּבוּהִים וְנִשְׂאִים.

23 And behold, there shall be great tempests, and there shall be many mountains laid low, like unto a valley, and there shall be many places which are now called valleys which shall become mountains, whose height is great.

וְדִרְכֵּי רַבּוֹת תִּהְרַסְנָה, וְעָרִים רַבּוֹת  
תִּהְיֶינָה לְשִׁמְמָה.

24 And many highways shall be broken up, and many cities shall become desolate.

וּקְבָרִים רַבִּים יִפְתָּחוּ וַיּוֹצִיאוּ רַבִּים מִמִּיתָהֶם,  
וּקְדוֹשִׁים רַבִּים יוֹפִיעוּ לִפְנֵי רַבִּים.

25 And many graves shall be opened, and shall yield up many of their dead; and many saints shall appear unto many.

כֹּה דִּבֶּר אֱלִי הַמַּלְאָךְ. אָכֵן, הוּא אָמַר לִי כִּי  
רַעְמִים וּבָרָקִים יִתְחַלְּלוּ בְּמִשְׁךְ שְׁעוֹת רַבּוֹת.

26 And behold, thus hath the angel spoken unto me; for he said unto me that there should be thunderings and lightnings for the space of many hours.

וְהוּא אָמַר אֵלַי כִּי בָעֵת הַתְּחִלָּה הָרַעַם וְהַבָּרָק  
וְהִסְעָרָה, יִחֻלוּ הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, וְכִי חֹשֶׁךְ  
יִכְסֶּה אֶת פְּנֵי כָּל הָאָרֶץ בְּמִשְׁךְ שְׁלֹשָׁה יָמִים.

27 And he said unto me that while the thunder and the lightning lasted, and the tempest, that these things should be, and that darkness should cover the face of the whole earth for the space of three days.

וְהַמַּלְאָךְ אָמַר אֵלַי כִּי רַבִּים יִרְאוּ דְּבָרִים  
אֵף גְּדוֹלִים מְאֹלָה, לְמַעַן יֵאֱמִינוּ כִּי הָאוֹתוֹת  
וְהַנִּפְלְאוֹת הָאֵלֶּה יִחֻלוּ עַל פְּנֵי כָּל הָאָרֶץ  
הַזֹּאת, לְבַל תִּהְיֶה כָּל סִבָּה לְסַפֵּק בֵּין  
בְּנֵי הָאָדָם;

28 And the angel said unto me that many shall see greater things than these, to the intent that they might believe that these signs and these wonders should come to pass upon all the face of this land, to the intent that there should be no cause for unbelief among the children of men—

וְזֹאת לְמַעַן יִנָּשַׁע כָּל הַמֵּאֲמִין, וּלְמַעַן  
יִחֻל מִשְׁפָּט צָדֵק עַל כָּל אֲשֶׁר לֹא יֵאֱמִין;  
וְאֵף לְמַעַן יָבִיאוּ הַחַיִּבִּים בְּדִין אֶת הַרְשָׁעָתָם  
עַל עַצְמָם.

29 And this to the intent that whosoever will believe might be saved, and that whosoever will not believe, a righteous judgment might come upon them; and also if they are condemned they bring upon themselves their own condemnation.

זָכְרוּ, זָכְרוּ נָא, אַחֵי, כִּי כָּל הָאוֹבֵד, לֹשֶׁם  
עֲצָמוּ הוּא אוֹבֵד, וְכָל הַפּוֹעֵל עוֹל, לְעַצְמוֹ הוּא  
מַעוֹל; כִּי חֲפְשִׁים הֵנֶכֶם, וְרָשָׁאִים אַתֶּם לַפֶּעַל  
בְּרִשּׁוֹת עַצְמְכֶם; כִּי הִנֵּה נָתַן לָכֶם אֱלֹהִים  
דַּעַת וְעִשָּׂה אֶתְכֶם בְּנֵי חַיִּין.

30 And now remember, remember, my brethren, that whosoever perisheth, perisheth unto himself; and whosoever doeth iniquity, doeth it unto himself; for behold, ye are free; ye are permitted to act for yourselves; for behold, God hath given unto you a knowledge and he hath made you free.

אָכֵן, הוּא נָתַן לָכֶם לְהַבְדִּיל בֵּין טוֹב וּבֵין  
רָע; וְהוּא נָתַן לָכֶם לִבְחֹר בַּחַיִּים אוֹ בַּמָּוֶת;  
וּבִידְכֶם לְהִיטִיב עֲשׂוֹת וּלְהִשָּׁיב עֲלֵיכֶם אֶת

31 He hath given unto you that ye might know good from evil, and he hath given unto you that ye might choose life or death; and ye can do good and be restored unto that which is good, or have that which is

הטוב, ובִּידְכֶם לְהֵרֶעַ וּלְהָשִׁיב עֲלֵיכֶם אֶת הָרָע.

good restored unto you; or ye can do evil, and have that which is evil restored unto you.

## טו

## 15

וְעַתָּה, אֲחֵי הָאֱהוּבִים, הִנְנִי מוֹדִיעֲכֶם כִּי בִלְתִּי אִם תִּשׁוּבוּ מִרְעַתְכֶם, יִשְׁמוּ בְּתִיכֶם מֵאִין יוֹשֵׁב.

1 And now, my beloved brethren, behold, I declare unto you that except ye shall repent your houses shall be left unto you desolate.

אָכֵן, בִּלְתִּי אִם תִּשׁוּבוּ מִרְעַתְכֶם, תִּאֲבֹלְנָה נְשֵׁיכֶם אֲבָל כִּבְדָּ בַעַת הִנִּיקוּן כִּי תִבְקְשׁוּ לָנוֹס, וְלֹא יִהְיֶה לָכֶם מִפָּלֵט; אוֹי לְנָשִׁים הַהֲרוֹת כִּי לֹא תוּכְלֶנָה לְהִמָּלֵט מִפָּנַי כִּבְדָּ מִשְׁאָן; עַל כֵּן בְּרַגְלִים הֵן תִּרְמָסֶנָּה וּלְכָלִּיּוֹן תִּעֲזָבֶנָּה.

2 Yea, except ye repent, your women shall have great cause to mourn in the day that they shall give suck; for ye shall attempt to flee and there shall be no place for refuge; yea, and wo unto them which are with child, for they shall be heavy and cannot flee; therefore, they shall be trodden down and shall be left to perish.

אוֹי לָעָם הַזֶּה הַנִּקְרָא עִם נָפִי, בִּלְתִּי אִם יִשׁוּבוּ מִרְעַתָּם בְּרֵאוֹתָם אֶת כָּל הָאוֹתוֹת וְהַנִּפְלְאוֹת, הָאֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר יֵרָאוּ לְעֵינֵיהֶם; כִּי הֵם עִם אֲשֶׁר נִבְחַר לַיהוָה; הֵן אֵת עִם נָפִי הוּא אֶהָב וְאִי הוֹכִיחַ; אָכֵן, בְּיוֹם עֲוֹנָם הוּא הוֹכִיחָם מֵאֲהָבָתוֹ אוֹתָם.

3 Yea, wo unto this people who are called the people of Nephi except they shall repent, when they shall see all these signs and wonders which shall be showed unto them; for behold, they have been a chosen people of the Lord; yea, the people of Nephi hath he loved, and also hath he chastened them; yea, in the days of their iniquities hath he chastened them because he loveth them.

וְהִנֵּה, אֲחֵי, אֶת הַלְּמָנִים הוּא שָׂנֵא, כִּי מַעֲשֵׂיהֶם הָיוּ רָעִים תָּמִיד; וְזֹאת מִפָּנַי הָעוֹן אֲשֶׁר בְּמִסְרָת אֲבוֹתֵיהֶם. וְאוֹלָם, הִיִּתָּה לָהֶם הַיְשׁוּעָה עַל יְדֵי הַטֶּפֶת הַנִּפְּיִים; וּבַעֲבוּר זֹאת הָאָרֶץ יִהְיֶה אֶת יְמֵיהֶם.

4 But behold my brethren, the Lamanites hath he hated because their deeds have been evil continually, and this because of the iniquity of the tradition of their fathers. But behold, salvation hath come unto them through the preaching of the Nephites; and for this intent hath the Lord prolonged their days.

וְרִצּוֹנִי כִּי תִרְאוּ כִּי רַבִּם הוֹלְכִים בְּנִתִּיב חוֹבָתָם, וְהֵם מִשְׁגִּיחִים בְּהִתְהַלֵּךְ לִפְנֵי אֱלֹהִים, וּמִקְפִּידִים לְשֹׁמֵר אֶת מִצְוֹתַי וְאֶת חֻקֵּי וְאֶת מִשְׁפָּטָיו עַל פִּי תוֹרַת מֹשֶׁה.

5 And I would that ye should behold that the more part of them are in the path of their duty, and they do walk circumspectly before God, and they do observe to keep his commandments and his statutes and his judgments according to the law of Moses.

הִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם כִּי רַבִּם עוֹשִׂים כֵּן, וְהֵם מֵתַאֲמָצִים בְּשִׁקְדָּה לֵלֵא לְאוֹת לְהָבִיא אֶת שְׂאֵר אֲחֵיהֶם אֶל דַּעַת הָאֱמֶת. עַל כֵּן רַבִּים הֵם הַנִּסְפָּחִים עֲלֵיהֶם מִדֵּי יוֹם בְּיוֹמוֹ.

6 Yea, I say unto you, that the more part of them are doing this, and they are striving with unwearied diligence that they may bring the remainder of their brethren to the knowledge of the truth; therefore there are many who do add to their numbers daily.

הֵן אֲמַנִּים יוֹדְעִים אֶתָּם, יַעַן אֲשֶׁר בְּעֵינֵיכֶם חִזִּיתֶם בְּזֹאת, כִּי כָל אֲשֶׁר מֵתוֹדְעִים אֶל הָאֱמֶת וְאֶל הַכֶּרֶת מִסּוּרוֹת אֲבוֹתֵיהֶם כִּי מִרְשָׁעוֹת וְנִתְעָבוֹת הֵן, וּמִנְהִיגִים לְהֶאֱמִין בְּכִתְבֵי הַקֹּדֶשׁ, אָכֵן, בְּנִבּוּאוֹת הַנְּבִיאִים הַקְדוּשִׁים הַכְּתוּבוֹת, הַמּוֹלִיכוֹת אוֹתָם אֶל אֲמוֹנַת יְהוָה וְאֶל הַתְּשׁוּבָה, וְהָאֲמוּנָה וְהַתְּשׁוּבָה הָאֵלֶּה מְחַלְלוֹת שְׁנוֹי בְּלִבָּם;

7 And behold, ye do know of yourselves, for ye have witnessed it, that as many of them as are brought to the knowledge of the truth, and to know of the wicked and abominable traditions of their fathers, and are led to believe the holy scriptures, yea, the prophecies of the holy prophets, which are written, which leadeth them to faith on the Lord, and unto repentance, which faith and repentance bringeth a change of heart unto them—

אֲכֹן, יוֹדְעִים אַתֶּם כִּי כָל אֲשֶׁר הִגִּיעוּ לְיָדֵי כֶּה, אֵיתָנִים הֵם וְיָצִיבִים בְּאַמְנוֹנָתָם וּבְדָבָר אֲשֶׁר עַל יָדָיו נַעֲשׂוּ בְּנֵי חֲרִין.

8 Therefore, as many as have come to this, ye know of yourselves are firm and steadfast in the faith, and in the thing wherewith they have been made free.

וְעוֹד יוֹדְעִים אַתֶּם כִּי הֵם קָבְרוּ אֶת כָּל נֶשֶׁקָם וְכִי יֵרָאִים הֵם לְשֹׂאתָם, פֶּן יַחֲטְאוּ בְּכָל אַפֹּן שֶׁהוּא; הֵן רֹאִים אַתֶּם כִּי יֵרָאִים הֵם לַחֲטָא, וְכִי יִבְכְּרוּ לְהִרְמָס וּלְהִהָרֵג בְּיַד אוֹיְבֵיהֶם, וְלֹא יִשְׂאוּ אֶת חַרְבֹּתֵיהֶם עֲלֵיהֶם, וְזֹאת מִפְּנֵי אֱמוּנָתָם בַּמֶּשִׁיחַ.

9 And ye know also that they have buried their weapons of war, and they fear to take them up lest by any means they should sin; yea, ye can see that they fear to sin—for behold they will suffer themselves that they be trodden down and slain by their enemies, and will not lift their swords against them, and this because of their faith in Christ.

וַיַּעַן אֲשֶׁר יָצִיבִים הֵם בְּאַמְנוֹנָתָם בְּאֲשֶׁר הֵם מַאֲמִינִים, אֲכֹן, מִפְּנֵי אֵיתָנוּתָם, אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר תֵּאִיר לָהֶם הַדְּעַת, בְּרוּךְ יִבְרַכֶּם יְהוָה וַיֶּאֱרִיד אֶת יְמֵיהֶם, עַל אִף עֲוֹנָם.

10 And now, because of their steadfastness when they do believe in that thing which they do believe, for because of their firmness when they are once enlightened, behold, the Lord shall bless them and prolong their days, notwithstanding their iniquity—

אֲכֹן, אִף אִם יִדְרְדְּרוּ אֶל חֶסֶר אֱמוּנָה, וַיֶּאֱרִיד יְהוָה אֶת יְמֵיהֶם, עַד אֲשֶׁר יָבֹא הַיּוֹם אֲשֶׁר עָלָיו דְּבָרוֹ אֲבוֹתֵינוּ, וְכֵן הִנְבִּיא זְנוֹס וְנִבְיָאִים רַבִּים נוֹסְפִים, בְּדָבָר הַשְּׂבַת אַחֵינוּ הַלְּמָנִים שְׁנִית אֶל יְדִיעַת הָאֱמֶת.

11 Yea, even if they should dwindle in unbelief the Lord shall prolong their days, until the time shall come which hath been spoken of by our fathers, and also by the prophet Zenos, and many other prophets, concerning the restoration of our brethren, the Lamanites, again to the knowledge of the truth—

הִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם כִּי בְּאַחֲרִית הַיָּמִים יִחוּלוּ דְּבָרֵי בְרִית יְהוָה עַל אַחֵינוּ הַלְּמָנִים; וְעַל אִף הַצָּרוֹת הַרְבּוֹת אֲשֶׁר תִּפְקְדְּנָה אוֹתָם, וְאִף כִּי יִגְרְשׁוּ מִמְּקוֹם אֶל מְקוֹם עַל פְּנֵי הָאֲדָמָה, וַיִּרְדְּפוּ וַיִּפּוּ וַיִּפּוּצוּ עַל פְּנֵי הָאֶרֶץ, בְּלֹא מְקוֹם מְקֻלָּט, רַחֵם יְרַחֵם יְהוָה.

12 Yea, I say unto you, that in the latter times the promises of the Lord have been extended to our brethren, the Lamanites; and notwithstanding the many afflictions which they shall have, and notwithstanding they shall be driven to and fro upon the face of the earth, and be hunted, and shall be smitten and scattered abroad, having no place for refuge, the Lord shall be merciful unto them.

וְזֹאת עַל פִּי דְּבַר הִנְבוּאָה כִּי הֵם יָשׁוּבוּ אֶל יְדִיעַת הָאֱמֶת, אֲשֶׁר הִיא יְדִיעַת גּוֹאֲלָם, רוֹעֶם הַגָּדוֹל וְהַנָּאֶמָן, וַיִּמְנֶנוּ עִם צֹאנוּ.

13 And this is according to the prophecy, that they shall again be brought to the true knowledge, which is knowledge of their Redeemer, and their great and true shepherd, and be numbered among his sheep.

לָכֵן הִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, כִּי אִם לֹא תִשְׁוּבוּ מִרְעַתְכֶם, יִיטַב לָהֶם מֵאֲשֶׁר לָכֶם.

14 Therefore I say unto you, it shall be better for them than for you except ye repent.

כִּי אֱלוֹ הֵם, אֲשֶׁר הִדְרְדְּרוּ אֶל חֶסֶר אֱמוּנָה מִפְּנֵי מְסוּרוֹת אֲבוֹתֵיהֶם, הִרְאוּ אֶת מַעֲשֵׂי הָעוֹ אֲשֶׁר הִרְאוּ לָכֶם, אַזִּי נֹכַחְתֶּם כִּי לְעוֹלָם לֹא הָיוּ שָׂבִים לְהִדְרֹד אֶלִּי חֶסֶר אֱמוּנָה.

15 For behold, had the mighty works been shown unto them which have been shown unto you, yea, unto them who have dwindled in unbelief because of the traditions of their fathers, ye can see of yourselves that they never would again have dwindled in unbelief.

לָכֵן, כֹּה אָמַר יְהוָה: לֹא אֶעֱשֶׂה בָהֶם כְּכֹל עַד תָּמָס, כִּי אִם אֶסַּב כִּי בְיוֹם חֻכְמָתִי הֵם יָשׁוּבוּ אֵלַי, נְאוּם יְהוָה.

16 Therefore, saith the Lord: I will not utterly destroy them, but I will cause that in the day of my wisdom they shall return again unto me, saith the Lord.

וְעַתָּה, כֹּה אָמַר יְהוָה עַל עַם נְפִי: בִּלְתִּי אִם יָשׁוּבוּ מִרְעַתָּם, וַיִּשְׁמְרוּ לַעֲשׂוֹת אֶת רְצוֹנִי,

17 And now behold, saith the Lord, concerning the people of the Nephites: If they will not repent, and observe to do my will, I will utterly destroy



אֲשַׁמִּידם עַד תִּמָּס, נְאוּם יְהוָה. וְזֹאת מִפְּנֵי  
הַסֵּר אֲמוֹנֶתָם, עַל אִף מַעֲשֵׂי הָעִזָּז אֲשֶׁר  
עָשִׂיתִי בְּקִרְבָּם. חֵי יְהוָה כִּי בּוֹא יָבוֹאוּ כָּל  
אֵלֶּה, נְאוּם יְהוָה.

them, saith the Lord, because of their unbelief notwithstanding the many mighty works which I have done among them; and as surely as the Lord liveth shall these things be, saith the Lord.

## טז

## 16

וְהִנֵּה, רַבִּים הָיוּ הַשּׁוֹמְעִים אֶת דְּבָרֵי שְׁמוּאֵל  
הַלְּמָנִי, אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר מֵעַל חוֹמַת הָעִיר. וְכָל אֲשֶׁר  
הָאֱמִין בְּדִבְרוֹ הִלְךְ וּבִקֵּשׁ אֶת נָפִי; וּבְבוֹאָם  
אֵלָיו, הֵם הִתְנוּדוּ לְפָנָיו עַל חַטָּאתֵיהֶם בְּלֹא  
כַחַשׁ וּבִקְשׁוּ לְהִטָּבֵל לְשֵׁם יְהוָה.

1 And now, it came to pass that there were many who heard the words of Samuel, the Lamanite, which he spake upon the walls of the city. And as many as believed on his word went forth and sought for Nephi; and when they had come forth and found him they confessed unto him their sins and denied not, desiring that they might be baptized unto the Lord.

אֵךְ כָּל אֲשֶׁר לֹא הָאֱמִינוּ בְּדִבְרֵי שְׁמוּאֵל  
רָגְזוּ עָלָיו וְהִשְׁלִיכוּ אֲבָנִים לְעִבְרוֹ. אֶל רֹאשׁ  
הַחוֹמָה, וְרַבִּים אִף יָרוּ אֵלָיו חֲצִיצִים בְּעִמְדוֹ עַל  
הַחוֹמָה. אֵךְ רוּחַ יְהוָה הָיָה עִמּוֹ וְהֵם לֹא יָכְלוּ  
לִפְגֹּעַ בּוֹ בְּאֲבָנֵיהֶם וּבְחֲצִיצֵיהֶם.

2 But as many as there were who did not believe in the words of Samuel were angry with him; and they cast stones at him upon the wall, and also many shot arrows at him as he stood upon the wall; but the Spirit of the Lord was with him, insomuch that they could not hit him with their stones neither with their arrows.

וְהָיָה כְּאֲשֶׁר רָאוּ כִּי לֹא יוּכְלוּ לִפְגֹּעַ בּוֹ,  
הָאֱמִינוּ רַבִּים נוספים בְּדִבְרָיו וְהִלְכוּ אֶל נָפִי  
לְשֵׁם טְבִילָה.

3 Now when they saw that they could not hit him, there were many more who did believe on his words, insomuch that they went away unto Nephi to be baptized.

כִּי הִנֵּה הָיָה נָפִי מְטַבֵּיל וּמְנַבֵּא וּמְשִׁיר, קוֹרֵא  
אֶת הָעָם לְתַשׁוּבָה וּמְרַאֶה אוֹתוֹת וּנְפִלְאוֹת,  
וְעוֹשֶׂה נִסִּים בְּקִרְבָּם הָעָם, בְּעִבּוֹר יָדְעוּ כִּי אֵין  
קָרֵב בּוֹא הַמְּשִׁיחַ.

4 For behold, Nephi was baptizing, and prophesying, and preaching, crying repentance unto the people, showing signs and wonders, working miracles among the people, that they might know that the Christ must shortly come—

וְהוּא סֹפֵר לָהֶם עַל דְּבָרִים הַקְּרוֹבִים לְבוֹא  
בְּעִבּוֹר יָדְעוּ וַיִּזְכְּרוּ בָּעֵת בּוֹאָם כִּי הֵם נוֹדְעוּ  
לָהֶם מֶרְאֵשׁ, לְמַעַן יֵאֱמִינוּ. לָכֵן הִלְכוּ כָּל  
הַמְּאֱמִינִים בְּדִבְרֵי שְׁמוּאֵל אֶל נָפִי לְשֵׁם  
טְבִילָה, כִּי הֵם בָּאוּ כְּשָׁבִים עַל רְעֵתָם  
וּמִתְנוּדִים עַל חַטָּאתֵיהֶם.

5 Telling them of things which must shortly come, that they might know and remember at the time of their coming that they had been made known unto them beforehand, to the intent that they might believe; therefore as many as believed on the words of Samuel went forth unto him to be baptized, for they came repenting and confessing their sins.

אֵךְ רַב הָאֲנָשִׁים לֹא הָאֱמִינוּ בְּדִבְרֵי שְׁמוּאֵל.  
וְהָיָה בְּרֹאוֹתָם כִּי לֹא יוּכְלוּ לִפְגֹּעַ בּוֹ בְּאֲבָנֵיהֶם  
וּבְחֲצִיצֵיהֶם, הֵם קָרְאוּ אֶל שָׂרֵיהֶם לֵאמֹר: קְחוּ  
אֶת הָאִישׁ הַזֶּה וּכְפֹתוּהוּ, כִּי שֵׁד אֲחֻזּוֹ; וּמִפְּנֵי  
כַח הַשֵּׁטָן אֲשֶׁר בְּקִרְבּוֹ אֵינָנו יְכוּלִים לִפְגֹּעַ בּוֹ  
בְּאֲבָנֵינוּ וּבְחֲצִיצֵינוּ; לָכֵן קְחוּהוּ וּכְפֹתוּהוּ  
וְהוֹצִיאוּהוּ מִפֹּה!

6 But the more part of them did not believe in the words of Samuel; therefore when they saw that they could not hit him with their stones and their arrows, they cried unto their captains, saying: Take this fellow and bind him, for behold he hath a devil; and because of the power of the devil which is in him we cannot hit him with our stones and our arrows; therefore take him and bind him, and away with him.

- 7 And as they went forth to lay their hands on him, behold, he did cast himself down from the wall, and did flee out of their lands, yea, even unto his own country, and began to preach and to prophesy among his own people.
- וְהָיָה בְּבוֹאָם לְשַׁלַּח בּוֹ יָד, וְהִנֵּה הוּא הִשְׁלִיךְ עַצְמוֹ מִן הַחוֹמָה וְנָס מֵאַרְצָם אֶל אֶרְצוֹ וְהָחֵל לְהִטִּיף וּלְנַבֵּא בְּקֶרֶב עַמּוֹ.
- 8 And behold, he was never heard of more among the Nephites; and thus were the affairs of the people.
- וְלֹא יִסָּף אִישׁ מִן הַנְּפִיטִים לְרֹאוֹתוֹ. כֹּה הָיָה מִצַּב הָעָם.
- 9 And thus ended the eighty and sixth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.
- וְכֹה כָּלְתָה שְׁנַת שְׁמוֹנִים וְשֵׁשׁ לְשִׁלְטוֹן הַשּׁוֹפְטִים בְּעַם נְפִי.
- 10 And thus ended also the eighty and seventh year of the reign of the judges, the more part of the people remaining in their pride and wickedness, and the lesser part walking more circumspectly before God.
- וְאַף כֹּה כָּלְתָה שְׁנַת שְׁמוֹנִים וְשֶׁבַע לְשִׁלְטוֹן הַשּׁוֹפְטִים, בְּעוֹד אֲשֶׁר רַב הָעָם מִחֲזִיק בְּגִאֲוָתוֹ וּבְרָשָׁעָתוֹ, וְהַמְעַשִּׂים מַתְהַלְכִים בְּרַב הַשְׁגָּחָה לִפְנֵי הָאֱלֹהִים.
- 11 And these were the conditions also, in the eighty and eighth year of the reign of the judges.
- וְכֹזֶה הָיָה מִצָּבָם אַף בְּשְׁנַת שְׁמוֹנִים וְשִׁלְטוֹן הַשּׁוֹפְטִים.
- 12 And there was but little alteration in the affairs of the people, save it were the people began to be more hardened in iniquity, and do more and more of that which was contrary to the commandments of God, in the eighty and ninth year of the reign of the judges.
- וּבְשְׁנַת שְׁמוֹנִים וְתֵשַׁע לְשִׁלְטוֹן הַשּׁוֹפְטִים לֹא חָל כְּמַעַט כָּל שְׁנוֹי בְּמִצַּב הָעָם זוּלַת הַכְּבֹדָה עֲוֹנָם, כִּי פָעִלוּ הָאֲנָשִׁים בִּיתָר שְׂאֵת אֵת אֲשֶׁר הוּא הִפָּךְ לְמִצְוֹת אֱלֹהִים.
- 13 But it came to pass in the ninetieth year of the reign of the judges, there were great signs given unto the people, and wonders; and the words of the prophets began to be fulfilled.
- וּבְשְׁנַת תִּשְׁעִים לְשִׁלְטוֹן הַשּׁוֹפְטִים, נִתְּנוּ לָעָם אוֹתוֹת גְּדוֹלִים וְנִפְלְאוֹת, וְדִבְרֵי הַנְּבִיאִים הֵחֵלוּ לְהִתְקַיֵּם.
- 14 And angels did appear unto men, wise men, and did declare unto them glad tidings of great joy; thus in this year the scriptures began to be fulfilled.
- וּמְלָאכִים הוֹפִיעוּ לִפְנֵי בְנֵי אָדָם, לִפְנֵי אֲנָשִׁים חֲכָמִים, וְהוֹדִיעוּם בְּשׂוֹרֵת שְׂשׂוֹן וְרַב שִׂמְחָה. אָכֵן, בְּשָׁנָה הַזֹּאת הֵחֵלוּ דִּבְרֵי כְּתָבֵי הַקֹּדֶשׁ לְהִתְקַיֵּם.
- 15 Nevertheless, the people began to harden their hearts, all save it were the most believing part of them, both of the Nephites and also of the Lamanites, and began to depend upon their own strength and upon their own wisdom, saying:
- עַל אֵף אַף זֹאת הִקְשׁוּ הָאֲנָשִׁים אֵת לִבָּם, זוּלַת הַדְּבָקִים בִּיתָר בְּאַמוּנָתָם, אֲשֶׁר הָיוּ בָּהֶם נִפְיִים וְגַם לְמָנִים. וְהָאֲנָשִׁים הֵחֵלוּ לְסַמֵּךְ עַל כֹּחַם וְעַל חֲכָמָתָם, לֵאמֹר:
- 16 Some things they may have guessed right, among so many; but behold, we know that all these great and marvelous works cannot come to pass, of which has been spoken.
- אֲשֶׁר לְדִבְרֵים אַחָדִים מִבֵּין דְּבָרִים כֹּה רַבִּים, אֶפְשָׁר כִּי הֵם נִחְשׂוּ נְכוֹנָה; אַךְ יוֹדְעִים אֲנִיחֵנוּ כִּי כָּל הַמַּעֲשִׂים הַגְּדוֹלִים וְהַנִּפְלְאִים הָאֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר עֲלֵיהֶם לֹא יִתְקַנּוּ וְלֹא יִהְיוּ.
- 17 And they began to reason and to contend among themselves, saying:
- וְהֵם הֵחֵלוּ לְהִתְוַכַּח וּלְרִיב בֵּינֵיהֶם, לֵאמֹר:

- 18 That it is not reasonable that such a being as a Christ shall come; if so, and he be the Son of God, the Father of heaven and of earth, as it has been spoken, why will he not show himself unto us as well as unto them who shall be at Jerusalem?
- אין זה מתקבל על הדעת כי אחד כמשיח יבוא; ואם כן הדבר והוא בן אלהים, אבי שמים וארץ כפי אשר נאמרה, מדוע לא יתגלה אלינו כאליהם אשר יהיו בירושלם?
- 19 Yea, why will he not show himself in this land as well as in the land of Jerusalem?
- מדוע לא יתגלה בארץ הזאת, כבארץ ירושלם.
- 20 But behold, we know that this is a wicked tradition, which has been handed down unto us by our fathers, to cause us that we should believe in some great and marvelous thing which should come to pass, but not among us, but in a land which is far distant, a land which we know not; therefore they can keep us in ignorance, for we cannot witness with our own eyes that they are true.
- הנה יודעים אנחנו כי מסרת רשע מסרו לנו אבותינו, לעשותנו מאמינים בדבר גדול ומפלא, אשר יקרה, אולם לא בקרבנו, כי אם בארץ רחוקה, ארץ אשר לא נודעה; לכן יש בידם להחזיקנו שקועים בבלי דעת, כי איננו יכולים לחזות במו עינינו כי אמת דברים.
- 21 And they will, by the cunning and the mysterious arts of the evil one, work some great mystery which we cannot understand, which will keep us down to be servants to their words, and also servants unto them, for we depend upon them to teach us the word; and thus will they keep us in ignorance if we will yield ourselves unto them, all the days of our lives.
- ועל ידי דרכי הערמה והסתרים אשר למרשע ההוא, יפעלו הם איזו פעלת מסתורין אשר לא נוכל להבין ואשר תתננו עבדים לדבריהם ואף להם עצמם. כי סומכים אנחנו בהם בלמוד דבר אלהים. לכן, אם נפגע להם יחזיקונו במצב בערות כל ימי חיינו.
- 22 And many more things did the people imagine up in their hearts, which were foolish and vain; and they were much disturbed, for Satan did stir them up to do iniquity continually; yea, he did go about spreading rumors and contentions upon all the face of the land, that he might harden the hearts of the people against that which was good and against that which should come.
- ועוד דברים רבים, אשר היו אולת והבל, עלו בלב העם. והם נרגשו ונבהלו, כי עוררם השטן לפעל תמיד און; כי הוא היה משוטט ומפיץ שמועות ומדון על כל פני הארץ, למען יקשה את לב בני האדם על הטוב ועל אשר עתיד לבוא.
- 23 And notwithstanding the signs and the wonders which were wrought among the people of the Lord, and the many miracles which they did, Satan did get great hold upon the hearts of the people upon all the face of the land.
- ועל אף האותות והנפלאות אשר נעשו בקרב עם יהוה, והנסים הרבים אשר עשו, השיג השטן אחיזה חזקה בלב האנשים אשר על כל פני הארץ.
- 24 And thus ended the ninetyeth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.
- כה כלתה שנת תשעים לשלטון השופטים בעם נפי.
- 25 And thus ended the book of Helaman, according to the record of Helaman and his sons.
- וכה תם ספר הילמן, על פי כתבי הילמן ובניו.

## סֵפֶר נְפִי ג

סֵפֶר נְפִי בֶן נְפִי בֶן הֵילְמָן. הוּא הֵילְמָן בֶּן הֵילְמָן  
בֶּן עֲלָמָא בֶּן עֲלָמָא אֲשֶׁר הָיָה צֶאֱצָא נְפִי בֶן לְחִי  
אֲשֶׁר יָצָא מִירוּשָׁלַם בְּשָׁנָה הָרִאשׁוֹנָה לְמֶלֶךְ צִדְקִיָּה  
קִיָּהוּ, מֶלֶךְ יְהוּדָה. (בְּעֶרְךָ 1–35 לְסִפְיָרָה.)

### א

וְשָׁנַת תְּשָׁעִים וָאֶחָת חָלְפָה, וְהָיוּ שָׁשׁ מֵאוֹת  
שָׁנָה מֵעַתַּת יְצִיאַת לְחִי מִירוּשָׁלַם. וּבְשָׁנָה הַהִיא  
הָיָה לַכֹּנָאֹס הַשּׁוֹפֵט הָעֶלְיוֹן וּמוֹשֵׁל הָאָרֶץ.

וְנְפִי בֶן הֵילְמָן יָצָא מֵאֶרֶץ זְרַחְמֶלָה אַחֵר  
הַפְּקִידוֹ בְּיַד נְפִי, בְּכוֹרוֹ, אֶת לִוְחוֹת נְחֹשֶׁת  
הַקָּלָל וְאֶת כָּל כְּתָבֵי הַזִּכְרוֹן וְאֶת כָּל הַחֻצֻצִים  
אֲשֶׁר נִשְׁמְרוּ בְּהִיּוֹתָם קְדוּשִׁים מֵעַתַּת יְצִיאַת  
לְחִי מִירוּשָׁלַם.

וְהוּא יָצָא מִן הָאָרֶץ וְאִישׁ אֵינּוּ יוֹדֵעַ לָאֵן  
הָלַךְ. וּבְנוֹ נְפִי רָשַׁם אֶת הַזִּכְרוֹנוֹת תַּחַת  
אֲבִיו, אֵלָה כְּתָבֵי זְכָרוֹנוֹת הָעָם הַזֶּה.

וְהָיָה בְּרֵאשִׁית שְׁנַת תְּשָׁעִים וּשְׁתַּיִם,  
וְהִנֵּה הַחֲלוֹ נְבוֹאוֹת הַנְּבִיאִים לְהִתְקַיֵּם  
בְּיָתֵר דִּיּוֹק; כִּי נַעֲשׂוּ בְּקֶרֶב הָעָם אוֹתוֹת  
וּנִפְלְאוֹת גְּדוֹלִים יוֹתֵר.

אֲךָ הָיוּ אֲשֶׁר אָמְרוּ כִּי עַתָּה קִיּוֹם דְּבָרֵי  
שְׁמוּאֵל הַלְּמָנִי כָּבֵד חָלְפָה.

וְהֵם הִחֲלוּ לְשׁוֹחַק עַל אֲחֵיהֶם, וְאָמְרוּ:  
הִנֵּה חָלַף הַמּוֹעֵד וְדְבָרֵי שְׁמוּאֵל לֹא הִתְקַיְּמוּ;  
עַל כֵּן לִשְׂוֹא הָיָה שְׂשׂוֹנְכֶם וְלָרִיק אֲמוֹנַתְכֶם  
בְּדִבְרֵי הַזֶּה.

וְהֵם הִקִּימוּ מְהוּמָה גְּדוֹלָה בְּכָל הָאָרֶץ;  
וְהָאֲנָשִׁים אֲשֶׁר הָאֲמִינוּ נִעְצְבוּ מְאֹד פֶּן לֹא  
יִתְקַיְּמוּ הַדְּבָרִים הָאֲמֹרִים הָאֵלֶּה.

עַל אֵף זֹאת, הֵם הָיוּ דְּבָקִים בְּצַפִּיתָם לַיּוֹם  
הַהוּא וְלַלַּיְלָה הַהוּא וְלַיּוֹם הַהוּא, אֲשֶׁר יִהְיֶה  
כִּיּוֹם אֶחָד, כְּאֵלוֹ בְּלֹא לַיְלָה, לְמַעַן יָדְעוּ כִּי  
לֹא לִשְׂוֹא הָיְתָה אֲמוֹנַתָם.

## THE BOOK OF 3 NEPHI

*The book of Nephi the son of Nephi, who was the son of Helaman. And Helaman was the son of Helaman, who was the son of Alma, who was the son of Alma, being a descendant of Nephi who was the son of Lehi, who came out from Jerusalem in the first year of the reign of Zedekiah, king of Judah. (About A.D. 1–35.)*

### 1

1 Now it came to pass that the ninety and first year had passed away and it was six hundred years from the time that Lehi left Jerusalem; and it was in the year that Lachoneus was the chief judge and the governor over the land.

2 And Nephi, the son of Helaman, had departed out of the land of Zarahemla, giving charge unto his son Nephi, who was his eldest son, concerning the plates of brass, and all the records which had been kept, and all those things which had been kept sacred from the departure of Lehi out of Jerusalem.

3 Then he departed out of the land, and whither he went, no man knoweth; and his son Nephi did keep the records in his stead, yea, the record of this people.

4 And it came to pass that in the commencement of the ninety and second year, behold, the prophecies of the prophets began to be fulfilled more fully; for there began to be greater signs and greater miracles wrought among the people.

5 But there were some who began to say that the time was past for the words to be fulfilled, which were spoken by Samuel, the Lamanite.

6 And they began to rejoice over their brethren, saying: Behold the time is past, and the words of Samuel are not fulfilled; therefore, your joy and your faith concerning this thing hath been vain.

7 And it came to pass that they did make a great uproar throughout the land; and the people who believed began to be very sorrowful, lest by any means those things which had been spoken might not come to pass.

8 But behold, they did watch steadfastly for that day and that night and that day which should be as one day as if there were no night, that they might know that their faith had not been vain.

## נְפִי ג א:ט-יח

- 9 Now it came to pass that there was a day set apart by the unbelievers, that all those who believed in those traditions should be put to death except the sign should come to pass, which had been given by Samuel the prophet.
- 10 Now it came to pass that when Nephi, the son of Nephi, saw this wickedness of his people, his heart was exceedingly sorrowful.
- 11 And it came to pass that he went out and bowed himself down upon the earth, and cried mightily to his God in behalf of his people, yea, those who were about to be destroyed because of their faith in the tradition of their fathers.
- 12 And it came to pass that he cried mightily unto the Lord, all that day; and behold, the voice of the Lord came unto him, saying:
- 13 Lift up your head and be of good cheer; for behold, the time is at hand, and on this night shall the sign be given, and on the morrow come I into the world, to show unto the world that I will fulfill all that which I have caused to be spoken by the mouth of my holy prophets.
- 14 Behold, I come unto my own, to fulfill all things which I have made known unto the children of men from the foundation of the world, and to do the will, both of the Father and of the Son—of the Father because of me, and of the Son because of my flesh. And behold, the time is at hand, and this night shall the sign be given.
- 15 And it came to pass that the words which came unto Nephi were fulfilled, according as they had been spoken; for behold, at the going down of the sun there was no darkness; and the people began to be astonished because there was no darkness when the night came.
- 16 And there were many, who had not believed the words of the prophets, who fell to the earth and became as if they were dead, for they knew that the great plan of destruction which they had laid for those who believed in the words of the prophets had been frustrated; for the sign which had been given was already at hand.
- 17 And they began to know that the Son of God must shortly appear; yea, in fine, all the people upon the face of the whole earth from the west to the east, both in the land north and in the land south, were so exceedingly astonished that they fell to the earth.
- 18 For they knew that the prophets had testified of these things for many years, and that the sign which had been given was already at hand; and they began to fear because of their iniquity and their unbelief.
- אִז קָבְעוּ הַכּוֹפְרִים יוֹם, אֲשֶׁר בּוֹ יוֹצִיאוּ לְהוֹרֵג  
אֶת כָּל אֲשֶׁר הֵאֱמִינוּ בַּמִּסְכֶּרֶת הַהִיא, אִם לֹא  
יָקוּם הָאוֹת אֲשֶׁר עָלָיו דְּבַר שְׁמוּאֵל הַנָּבִיא.
- וּבָרְאוֹת נְפִי בֶן נְפִי אֶת הָרָשָׁעָה הַזֹּאת אֲשֶׁר  
בַּעֲמֹ, הוּא נֶעְצֵב מְאֹד אֶל לְבוֹ.
- וְהוּא יָצָא וְהִשְׁתַּחֲוָה אֶרְצָה וְקָרָא בְּקוֹל  
גָּדוֹל אֶל אֱלֹהָיו לְמַעַן עֲמֹ, לְמַעַן אֱלֹהֵי אֲשֶׁר  
סָכְנָת הַשְׁמָדָה נִשְׁקָפָה לָהֶם מִפְּנֵי אֱמוּנָתָם  
בַּמִּסְכֶּרֶת אֲבוֹתֵיהֶם.
- כָּל הַיּוֹם קָרָא הוּא אֶל יְהוָה בְּרֵב כָּחוֹ. וְהִנֵּה,  
קוֹל יְהוָה דִּבֶּר אֵלָיו לֵאמֹר:
- שָׂא רֹאשְׁךָ וְהִתְעוֹדֵד; כִּי הִנֵּה קָרְבָה הָעֵת.  
וּבְלִילָה הַזֶּה יִנָּתֵן הָאוֹת וְלִמְחֶרֶת הַנָּחִי בָּא אֶל  
הָעוֹלָם, לְהַרְאוֹת לְעוֹלָם כִּי אֲקִים אֶת כָּל  
הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר שָׁמַעְתִּי בְּפִי נְבִיאֵי הַקְּדוֹשִׁים.
- הִנֵּנִי בָּא אֶל אֲשֶׁר לִי, לְהַקִּים אֶת כָּל הַדְּבָרִים  
אֲשֶׁר הוֹדַעְתִּים לְבְנֵי הָאָדָם מִיְסוּד הָעוֹלָם,  
וְלַעֲשׂוֹת אֶת רְצוֹן הָאָב וְהָבֶן; אֶת רְצוֹן הָאָב  
בַּעֲבוּרִי, וְאֶת רְצוֹן הָבֶן בַּעֲבוּר בְּשָׁרִי. הִנֵּה,  
בָּא הַמּוֹעֵד וְהַלִּילָה הַזֶּה יִנָּתֵן הָאוֹת.
- וְהַדְּבָר אֲשֶׁר הָיָה אֶל נְפִי קָם כִּפִּי אֲשֶׁר  
נֶאֱמַר: כִּי שָׁקַע הַשֶּׁמֶשׁ וְהַחֹשֶׁכָה לֹא יָרְדָה;  
וְהָאָנָשִׁים הַשְׁתוֹמָמוּ כִּי לֹא הָיָה חֹשֶׁךְ  
בְּבוֹא הַלִּילָה.
- וְהָיוּ רַבִּים אֲשֶׁר לֹא הֵאֱמִינוּ לְדְבָרֵי הַנְּבִיאִים,  
וְהֵם נָפְלוּ אֶרְצָה וְהָיוּ כְּמֵתִים, יָעַן אֲשֶׁר יָדְעוּ  
כִּי הוֹפְרָה מְזִמַּת הַהִשְׁמָדָה הַגְּדוֹלָה אֲשֶׁר  
הִכִּינוּ לַמֵּאֱמָיִנִים בְּדְבָרֵי הַנְּבִיאִים, כִּי הָאוֹת  
אֲשֶׁר נִזְכַּר אָכֵן קָם וְהָיָה.
- אִז הֵם יָדְעוּ כִּי בֶן אֱלֹהִים קָרַב לְבוֹא; אָכֵן,  
כָּל הָאָנָשִׁים אֲשֶׁר עַל פְּנֵי כָּל הָאֲדָמָה,  
מִמֶּעֶרֶב וּמִמְזָרָח, בָּאֶרֶץ הַצָּפוֹן וּבָאֶרֶץ  
הַדְּרוֹם, הַשְׁתוֹמָמוּ כָּל כָּךְ עַד כִּי נָפְלוּ אֶרְצָה.
- וְזֹאת מִפְּנֵי יָדְעָם כִּי הֵעִידוּ הַנְּבִיאִים עַל  
הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה בְּמִשְׁפָּח שָׁנִים רַבּוֹת וְכִי הָאוֹת  
אֲשֶׁר נִזְכַּר קָם וְהָיָה; וְהֵם יָרְאוּ עַל דְּבַר עֲוֹנָם  
וְעַל כְּפִירָתָם.



- וְהָיָה כִּי כָל הַלַּיְלָה הָהוּא לֹא הָחֹשֶׁה, וְהָאֹר  
הָיָה כְּבֹצֵהָרִים; וּבִבְקֹר זֶרַח הַשָּׁמֶשׁ, כְּסֻדְרוֹ.  
אִזְ יָדְעוּ הָאֲנָשִׁים, עַל פִּי הָאוֹת אֲשֶׁר נָתַן, כִּי  
בֹא הַיּוֹם אֲשֶׁר בּוֹ יֵלֵד הָאֲדֹנָי.
- 19 And it came to pass that there was no darkness in all that night, but it was as light as though it was mid-day. And it came to pass that the sun did rise in the morning again, according to its proper order; and they knew that it was the day that the Lord should be born, because of the sign which had been given.
- הִנֵּה הַכֹּל קָם כְּדִבְרֵי הַנְּבִיאִים; אָכֵן,  
לֹא נָפַל מֵהֶם דְּבָר.
- 20 And it had come to pass, yea, all things, every whit, according to the words of the prophets.
- וְאִי כּוֹכַב חָדָשׁ הוֹפִיעַ, כְּדִבְרֵי אֲשֶׁר נֶאֱמַר.
- 21 And it came to pass also that a new star did appear, according to the word.
- וּמִן הַיּוֹם הַהוּא וְהִלָּאָה הַחַל הַשָּׁטָן לְשַׁלֵּחַ  
כָּזָב בֵּין הָאֲנָשִׁים, לְהַקְשֹׁת אֶת לִבָּם לִבֵּל  
יֵאֱמִינוּ בְּאוֹתוֹת וּבִנְפִלְאוֹת הָהֶם אֲשֶׁר רָאוּ.  
וְאוֹלָם, עַל אִי הַכָּזָב וְהַמְרָמָה הָאֵלֶּה, הָאֲמִינוּ  
רַב הָעָם וְהִפְכוּ לְמַאֲמִינִים בִּיהוָה.
- 22 And it came to pass that from this time forth there began to be lyings sent forth among the people, by Satan, to harden their hearts, to the intent that they might not believe in those signs and wonders which they had seen; but notwithstanding these lyings and deceivings the more part of the people did believe, and were converted unto the Lord.
- וְנָפִי הָלַךְ בְּקִרְבֵּי הָעָם, וְעוֹד רַבִּים נוֹסְפִים,  
לְהַטְבִּילָם לְשֵׁם תְּשׁוּבָה, אֲשֶׁר בִּזְאוֹת הָיְתָה  
מְחִילַת עֲוֹנוֹת גְּדוּלָּה. וְכֵן שָׁב הָעָם לְשָׁבֶת  
בְּאַרְץ בְּשָׁלוֹם.
- 23 And it came to pass that Nephi went forth among the people, and also many others, baptizing unto repentance, in the which there was a great remission of sins. And thus the people began again to have peace in the land.
- וְלֹא הָיוּ עוֹד מְרִיבוֹת בָּעָם, זֹלַת אֲחָדִים  
אֲשֶׁר הִחֲלוּ לְהִטִּיף בְּהִתְאַמְּצֵם לְהוֹכִיחַ עַל  
פִּי כְתָבֵי הַקֹּדֶשׁ כִּי אֵין עוֹד הִכְרַח לְשֹׁמֵר אֶת  
תּוֹרַת מֹשֶׁה. וּבִזְאוֹת הֵם טָעוּ, כִּי לֹא הִבִּינוּ  
אֶת כְּתָבֵי הַקֹּדֶשׁ.
- 24 And there were no contentions, save it were a few that began to preach, endeavoring to prove by the scriptures that it was no more expedient to observe the law of Moses. Now in this thing they did err, having not understood the scriptures.
- וְהִנֵּה, עַד מָהֳרָה הֵם הִפְכוּ אֶת דַּעְתָּם כִּי  
נוֹכְחוּ בְּטַעוֹתָם, אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר נֹדַע לָהֶם כִּי  
הַתּוֹרָה לֹא הִתְקַיְּמָה עֲדֵינָּה, וְכִי הִכְרַח הוּא כִּי  
תִתְקַיֵּם עַל כָּל פְּרִשְׁתָּהּ; וְהָיָה אֱלֹהִים דְּבַר  
אֱלֹהִים כִּי קוֹם תִּקְוֵם הַתּוֹרָה, וְלֹא תִעָבֵר  
מִמֶּנָּה יוֹד אַחַת, אוֹ תֵּג, עַד אֲשֶׁר תִּתְקַיֵּם  
כָּלָה; עַל כֵּן הֵם הוֹבֵאוּ בְּשָׁנָה הַהִיא לְהִפָּרֵת  
טַעוֹתָם וְהִתְוֹדוּ עַל מִשְׁוּגָתָם.
- 25 But it came to pass that they soon became converted, and were convinced of the error which they were in, for it was made known unto them that the law was not yet fulfilled, and that it must be fulfilled in every whit; yea, the word came unto them that it must be fulfilled; yea, that one jot or tittle should not pass away till it should all be fulfilled; therefore in this same year were they brought to a knowledge of their error and did confess their faults.
- כֹּה חָלְפָה שְׁנַת תְּשׁוּעִים וּשְׁתִּים, אַחֵר  
הִבִּיֵּאָה בְּשׂוֹרוֹת מִשְׁמַחוֹת אֶל הָעָם, עַל יְדֵי  
בּוֹא הָאוֹתוֹת, אֲשֶׁר עַל פִּי דְבָרֵי נְבוֹאוֹת כָּל  
הַנְּבִיאִים הַקְּדוּשִׁים.
- 26 And thus the ninety and second year did pass away, bringing glad tidings unto the people because of the signs which did come to pass, according to the words of the prophecy of all the holy prophets.
- אִי שְׁנַת תְּשׁוּעִים וְשָׁלֹשׁ חָלְפָה בְּשָׁלוֹם, חוּץ  
מִפְּעֻלַּת שׂוֹדֵדֵי גָדִיאֲנֶטוֹן, אֲשֶׁר הִתְגַּוְּרוּ  
בְּהָרִים וּשְׂרָצוּ בְּאַרְץ; וְכֵן חֲזָקִים הָיוּ  
מֵאֲחֻזֵּיהֶם וּמִחֻבּוֹאֵיהֶם, עַד כִּי לֹא יָכְלוּ
- 27 And it came to pass that the ninety and third year did also pass away in peace, save it were for the Gadianon robbers, who dwelt upon the mountains, who did infest the land; for so strong were their holds and their secret places that the people could not overpower them; therefore

## נְפִי ג א:כח-ב:ה

הַאֲנָשִׁים לְגִבּוֹר עֲלֵיהֶם; לָכֵן הֵם בָּצְעוּ מַעֲשֵׂי  
רָצַח רַבִּים וְהָרְבוּ לְטֹבַח בָּעָם.

they did commit many murders, and did do much slaughter among  
the people.

וּבְשָׁנַת תְּשַׁעִּים וָאַרְבַּע הִתְרַבּוּ הַשּׁוֹדְדִים עַד  
מְאֹד, כִּי רַב מִסֹּפֶר הַפּוֹרְשִׁים מִן הַנִּפְיִים אֲשֶׁר  
בָּרְחוּ אֲלֵיהֶם. וְהִדְבֵּר צָעַר מְאֹד אֶת הַנִּפְיִים  
אֲשֶׁר נִשְׁאַרוּ בָּאָרֶץ.

28 And it came to pass that in the ninety and fourth year they began to  
increase in great degree, because there were many dissenters of the  
Nephites who did flee unto them, which did cause much sorrow unto  
those Nephites who did remain in the land.

גַּם לְלִמְנִים נִגְרַם צָעַר רַב, כִּי הָיוּ לָהֶם בָּנִים  
רַבִּים אֲשֶׁר גָּדְלוּ וּבָגְרוּ וְעָמְדוּ בְּרִשּׁוֹת עֲצָמָם,  
אֲשֶׁר זֹרָמִים הָיוּ אֶת לִבָּם בְּכַזְבֵּיהֶם וּבְדַבְרֵי  
חִלְקוֹת לְהַסְתֵּפַח אֶל שׁוֹדְדֵי גָדִיאַנְטוֹן.

29 And there was also a cause of much sorrow among the Lamanites; for  
behold, they had many children who did grow up and began to wax  
strong in years, that they became for themselves, and were led away by  
some who were Zoramites, by their lyings and their flattering words, to  
join those Gadiananton robbers.

כָּךְ פָּגְעָה הָרָעָה אֶף בְּלִמְנִים, וְהֵם הִחְלוּ  
לִשְׁקַע בְּדַבֵּר אֲמוּנוֹתָם וּצְדִיקָתָם, מִפְּנֵי רִשְׁעַת  
הַדּוֹר הַצָּעִיר.

30 And thus were the Lamanites afflicted also, and began to decrease as to  
their faith and righteousness, because of the wickedness of the rising  
generation.

## ב

## 2

כֹּה חָלְפָה גַּם שָׁנַת תְּשַׁעִּים וְחָמֵשׁ. וְהַאֲנָשִׁים  
הִחְלוּ לִשְׁכַּח אֶת הָאוֹתוֹת וְאֶת הַנִּפְלְאוֹת הָהֵם,  
אֲשֶׁר שָׁמְעוּ; וְהִשְׁתּוֹמְמוּתָם עַל אוֹת אוֹ פֶּלֶא  
מִן הַשָּׁמַיִם הִלָּךְ וּפָחַתָּה עַד אֲשֶׁר הִתְקַשָּׁה  
לִבָּם וְדַעְתָּם הִתְעוּרָה וְהֵם לֹא הֶאֱמִינוּ עוֹד  
בְּכָל אֲשֶׁר שָׁמְעוּ וְרָאוּ.

1 And it came to pass that thus passed away the ninety and fifth year also,  
and the people began to forget those signs and wonders which they had  
heard, and began to be less and less astonished at a sign or a wonder  
from heaven, insomuch that they began to be hard in their hearts, and  
blind in their minds, and began to disbelieve all which they had heard  
and seen—

כִּי הֵם הֵעִלוּ בְּלִבָּם דְּמִיוֹן שׁוֹא, כִּי הִדְבְּרִים  
הָהֵם נַעֲשׂוּ בְיַד אָדָם וּבְכַח הַשָּׁטָן, לְהַטּוֹתָם  
מִן הַדֶּרֶךְ וּלְרִמּוֹת אֶת לֵב הָעָם. כֹּה שָׁב הַשָּׁטָן  
וְקָנָה שְׂבִיתָה בְּלֵב הָעָם, עַד כִּי עוֹר אֶת  
עֵינֵיהֶם וְהָסָם לְהֶאֱמִין כִּי עָקַר הָאֲמוּנָה בְּדַבֵּר  
הַמְּשִׁיחַ הוּא אֲוֵלֶת וּדְבַר שׁוֹא.

2 Imagining up some vain thing in their hearts, that it was wrought by  
men and by the power of the devil, to lead away and deceive the hearts  
of the people; and thus did Satan get possession of the hearts of the  
people again, insomuch that he did blind their eyes and lead them away  
to believe that the doctrine of Christ was a foolish and a vain thing.

וְרִשְׁעַת הָעָם וְתוֹעֲבוּתֵיהֶם הִלְכוּ וַרְבוּ,  
וְהֵם לֹא הֶאֱמִינוּ כִּי יָקוּמוּ אוֹתוֹת וְנִפְלְאוֹת  
נוֹסָפִים. וְהַשָּׁטָן הִתְהַלֵּךְ לוֹ, וְהוּא הָטָה אֶת  
לֵב הַאֲנָשִׁים וּפָתָה אוֹתָם וְהִסְבֵּם לְהַגְדִּיל  
רִשְׁעָתָם בָּאָרֶץ.

3 And it came to pass that the people began to wax strong in wickedness  
and abominations; and they did not believe that there should be any  
more signs or wonders given; and Satan did go about, leading away the  
hearts of the people, tempting them and causing them that they should  
do great wickedness in the land.

כֹּה חָלְפָה שָׁנַת תְּשַׁעִּים וְשֵׁשׁ וְכֵן שָׁנַת תְּשַׁעִּים  
וְשִׁבְעִי; וְאֵף שָׁנַת תְּשַׁעִּים וְשְׁמוֹנֶה וְשָׁנַת  
תְּשַׁעִּים וְתִשְׁעִי.

4 And thus did pass away the ninety and sixth year; and also the ninety  
and seventh year; and also the ninety and eighth year; and also the  
ninety and ninth year;

וְכֹה חָלְפוּ מֵאָה שָׁנָה מִיְמֵי מוֹשִׁיָּה, אֲשֶׁר הָיָה  
מֶלֶךְ עַל עַם הַנִּפְיִים.

5 And also an hundred years had passed away since the days of Mosiah,  
who was king over the people of the Nephites.

- 6 And six hundred and nine years had passed away since Lehi left Jerusalem.
- וְשֵׁשׁ מֵאוֹת וְתֵשַׁע שָׁנִים חָלְפוּ מֵעַתַּת יֵצֵא לְחֵי מִירוּשָׁלַם.
- 7 And nine years had passed away from the time when the sign was given, which was spoken of by the prophets, that Christ should come into the world.
- וְתֵשַׁע שָׁנִים חָלְפוּ מֵעַתַּת נָתַן הָאוֹת, אֲשֶׁר עָלִיו דִּבְרוּ הַנְּבִיאִים, כִּי הַמָּשִׁיחַ יָבוֹא אֶל הָעוֹלָם.
- 8 Now the Nephites began to reckon their time from this period when the sign was given, or from the coming of Christ; therefore, nine years had passed away.
- וְהַנְּפִיִּים הֵחִלּוּ לְחַשֵּׁב אֶת עֵתוֹתֵיהֶם מֵעַתַּת הַנָּתַן הָאוֹת, אַכֵּן מֵעַתַּת בּוֹא הַמָּשִׁיחַ; כִּן חָלְפוּ תֵשַׁע שָׁנִים לְמִנָּיָם.
- 9 And Nephi, who was the father of Nephi, who had the charge of the records, did not return to the land of Zarahemla, and could nowhere be found in all the land.
- וְנִפְי אָבִי נִפְי, אֲשֶׁר הָיָה מְפָקֵד עַל כְּתָבֵי הַזְכָּרוֹן, לֹא שָׁב אֶל אֶרֶץ זֶרַחֵמְלָה, וְלֹא יָכַל אִישׁ לְמַצְאוֹ בְּכָל הָאֶרֶץ.
- 10 And it came to pass that the people did still remain in wickedness, notwithstanding the much preaching and prophesying which was sent among them; and thus passed away the tenth year also; and the eleventh year also passed away in iniquity.
- וְהָיָה כִּי הָעָם לֹא חָדַל מִהֲרַע עַל אֵף הַהֲטָפוֹת וְהַנְּבוּאוֹת הַרְבוֹת אֲשֶׁר נִשְׁלַחוּ אֲלֵיהֶם; כֹּה חָלְפָה הַשָּׁנָה הָעֲשִׁירִית, וְאֵף שָׁנַת אַחַת עֲשָׂרָה חָלְפָה בְּעוֹן וּבַעֲוֹל.
- 11 And it came to pass in the thirteenth year there began to be wars and contentions throughout all the land; for the Gadianton robbers had become so numerous, and did slay so many of the people, and did lay waste so many cities, and did spread so much death and carnage throughout the land, that it became expedient that all the people, both the Nephites and the Lamanites, should take up arms against them.
- וּבְשָׁנַת שְׁלֹשׁ עֲשָׂרָה פָּרְצוּ מִלְחָמוֹת וּמְרִיבוֹת בְּכָל הָאֶרֶץ, כִּי הִתְרַבּוּ מְאֹד שׁוֹדְדֵי גָדִיאַנְטוֹן; וְהֵם הָרְגוּ אֲנָשִׁים רַבִּים וְהִחְרִיבוּ עָרִים רַבּוֹת וְזָרְעוּ מָוֶת וְטִבַּח בְּכָל הָאֶרֶץ, עַד כִּי הִכְרַח הָיָה כִּי כָל הָעָם, הַנְּפִיִּים וְהַלְּמָנִים כָּאֶחָד, יִשְׂאוּ עֲלֵיהֶם נֶשֶׁק.
- 12 Therefore, all the Lamanites who had become converted unto the Lord did unite with their brethren, the Nephites, and were compelled, for the safety of their lives and their women and their children, to take up arms against those Gadianton robbers, yea, and also to maintain their rights, and the privileges of their church and of their worship, and their freedom and their liberty.
- לָכֵן הִתְאָחְדוּ כָל הַלְּמָנִים אֲשֶׁר הִפְכוּ מֵאֻמֵּי יְהוָה עִם אֲחֵיהֶם הַנְּפִיִּים. וְהֵם נֶאֱלָצוּ לְשֹׂאת נֶשֶׁק עַל שׁוֹדְדֵי גָדִיאַנְטוֹן הָהֵם לְמַעַן בְּטָחוֹן חַיֵּיהֶם וְחַיֵּי נְשֵׂיהֶם וְיִלְדֵיהֶם, וְאֵף בְּעִבּוֹר שְׂמִירַת זְכוּיֹתֵיהֶם וְזִכְיוֹת כְּנִסְיָתָם, וְעִבּוּדֹת קֹדֶשׁ וְעִנְיֹן חֲרוּתָם.
- 13 And it came to pass that before this thirteenth year had passed away the Nephites were threatened with utter destruction because of this war, which had become exceedingly sore.
- וּבְטָרָם תִּמְחָה הַשָּׁנָה הַזֹּאת, שָׁנַת שְׁלֹשׁ עֲשָׂרָה, נִשְׁקָפָה לְנִפְיִים סַכְּנַת כְּלִיּוֹן חָרוֹץ מִפְּנֵי הַמִּלְחָמָה הַזֹּאת, אֲשֶׁר הִתְמַיְרָה עַד מְאֹד.
- 14 And it came to pass that those Lamanites who had united with the Nephites were numbered among the Nephites;
- וְהַלְּמָנִים אֲשֶׁר הִתְאָחְדוּ עִם הַנְּפִיִּים נִמְנוּ עִמָּם.
- 15 And their curse was taken from them, and their skin became white like unto the Nephites;
- וְהַקְלָלָה אֲשֶׁר רִבְצָה עֲלֵיהֶם הִוסְרָה וְעוֹרָם הִלְבִּין, כְּעוֹר הַנְּפִיִּים.
- 16 And their young men and their daughters became exceedingly fair, and they were numbered among the Nephites, and were called Nephites. And thus ended the thirteenth year.
- אֲכֵן, נַעֲרֵיהֶם וּנְעוּרוֹתֵיהֶם נָהִיו יָפִי תֹאֵר מְאֹד, וְהֵם נִמְנוּ עִם הַנְּפִיִּים וְנִקְרְאוּ בְּשֵׁם נְפִיִּים. כֹּה כָלְתָה שָׁנַת שְׁלֹשׁ עֲשָׂרָה.

17 וְהָיָה כִּי בְּרֵאשִׁית שָׁנַת אַרְבַּע עָשָׂר נִמְשְׁכָה מִלְחֶמֶת הַשּׁוֹדְדִים וְעַם נְפִי וְהַחֲמִירָהּ מְאֹד. עַל אֵף זֹאת, הִשִּׁיג עִם נְפִי יִתְרוֹן כָּל־שָׁהוּ עַל הַשּׁוֹדְדִים, בְּהִדָּפָם אוֹתָם אֶל מַחוּץ לְאַרְצָם, אֶל הַהָרִים וְאֶל מַחְבֹּאֵיהֶם.

18 כֹּה כָלְתָה שָׁנַת אַרְבַּע עָשָׂר. וּבִשְׁנַת חֲמִשׁ עָשָׂר יֵצְאוּ הַשּׁוֹדְדִים עַל עַם נְפִי; וּמִפְּנֵי רָשָׁעַת עַם נְפִי וּמְרִיבוּתֵיהֶם וּפְלוּגֵיהֶם, הִשִּׁיגוּ שּׁוֹדְדֵי גָדִיאַנְטוֹן יִתְרוֹן רַב עֲלֵיהֶם.

19 כֹּה תָמָה שָׁנַת חֲמִשׁ עָשָׂר, וְכֹה הָיוּ הָאֲנָשִׁים שְׂרִוּיִים בְּתֵלָאָה רַבָּה; אַכְּוָה, חָרַב הַכְּלִיֹן הַזֶּה תִּלְוִיָּה מֵעַלֵּיהֶם, קְרוּבָה לְהַכּוֹתָם אֶרְצָה עַל דְּבַר עֲוֹנָם.

## ג

## 3

1 וְהָיָה בִּשְׁנַת שֵׁשׁ עָשָׂר לְבֹא הַמָּשִׁיחַ, קָבַל לְכוֹנָאוּס, מוֹשֵׁל הָאָרֶץ, אֲגֻרָת מֵאֵת רֹאשׁ כְּנָפִית הַשּׁוֹדְדִים וּמוֹשְׁלָהּ. וְאֵלֶּה הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר נִכְתְּבוּ, לֵאמֹר:

2 אֵל לְכוֹנָאוּס הָאֲצִיל, מוֹשֵׁל הָאָרֶץ הָרָאשִׁי. הִנְנִי כּוֹתֵב אֶת הָאֲגֻרָת הַזֹּאת אֵלֶיךָ, וְאֲנִי מֵהַלְלֶךָ וּמְשַׁבַּחֶךָ עַל אֵיתְנוּתְךָ וְעַל אֵיתְנוּת עַמְּךָ בְּשִׁמְרֵת הַדְּבָר אֲשֶׁר סְבוּרִים אַתֶּם כִּי הוּא זְכוּתְכֶם וְחֲרוּתְכֶם. הִנֵּכֶם נִצָּבִים אֵיתְנִים, כְּאֵלוּ יָד אֵל תּוֹמָכֶם בְּכֶם, לְהַגִּנָּת חֲרוּתְכֶם וּרְכוּשְׁכֶם וְאַרְצְכֶם, אוֹ אֶת אֲשֶׁר מְכִנִּים אַתֶּם אֶרְצְכֶם.

3 צַר לִי, לְכוֹנָאוּס הָאֲצִיל, כִּי תִדְמוּ לָכֶם בְּרַב אוֹלְתְּכֶם וְהַבְּלִיכֶם כִּי תּוֹכְלוּ לַעֲמֹד בְּפָנַי גְּבוּרִים כֹּה רַבִּים אֲשֶׁר תַּחַת פְּקֻדָּתִי, הַנִּצָּבִים עִתָּה חֲמוּשִׁים בְּכָלִי נִשְׁקָם, וּמִצָּפִים בְּרַב תְּשׁוּקָה לְדַבֵּר הַפְּקָדָה: רְדוּ עַל הַנִּפְּיִים וְהַשְׁמִידוּם!

4 וּבִידְעִי אֶת רוּחִם, אֲשֶׁר אֵין לְכַבֶּשָׁה, כִּי נִסִּיתִים בְּשׂוֹדָה הַקָּרָב, וּבִידְעִי אֶת שְׂנְאָתָם הַנִּצָּחִית אֵלֵיכֶם, מִפְּנֵי הָעוֹלוֹת אֲשֶׁר עָשִׂיתֶם לָהֶם, יוֹדַע אֲנִי כִּי אִם יֵצְאוּ עֲלֵיכֶם לְקָרָב, פְּקוּד יִפְקְדוּכֶם בְּכָלִיֹן מְחֻלָּט.

- לכן כתבתי את האגרת הזאת וחתמתי  
במו ידי, בעודי שוחר את טובתכם בעבור  
איתנותכם למען הדבר אשר מאמינים אתם  
כי הוא הצדק, ובעבור אצילות רוחכם  
בשדה הקרב.
- 5 Therefore I have written this epistle, sealing it with mine own hand, feeling for your welfare, because of your firmness in that which ye believe to be right, and your noble spirit in the field of battle.
- על כן אני כותב אליה ומבקש כי תמסרו לאנשי  
אלה את עריכם ואדמותיכם וקנייניכם, פן  
יפקדוכם בחרב ויבוא עליכם הפליון.
- 6 Therefore I write unto you, desiring that ye would yield up unto this my people, your cities, your lands, and your possessions, rather than that they should visit you with the sword and that destruction should come upon you.
- ובלשון אחר: הפנעו לנו והתאחדו עמנו,  
והתודעו אל מעשינו הנסתרים; הוי לנו  
לאחים והייתם כמותנו, לא עבדינו תהיו, כי  
אם אחינו ושתפינו בכל אשר לנו.
- 7 Or in other words, yield yourselves up unto us, and unite with us and become acquainted with our secret works, and become our brethren that ye may be like unto us—not our slaves, but our brethren and partners of all our substance.
- הנני נשבע לכם באלה, כי אם כה תעשו  
לא תשמדו. אך אם לא תעשו כן, הנני נשבע  
לכם באלה, כי בחודש הקרב אצוה על חילותי  
כי ירדו עליכם למלחמה. והם לא יניחו ידם  
ולא יחשכו מכתם, כי הרוג יהרגוכם, וחרבם  
תקצר בכם עד הכחדתכם.
- 8 And behold, I swear unto you, if ye will do this, with an oath, ye shall not be destroyed; but if ye will not do this, I swear unto you with an oath, that on the morrow month I will command that my armies shall come down against you, and they shall not stay their hand and shall spare not, but shall slay you, and shall let fall the sword upon you even until ye shall become extinct.
- הנני גדיאנחי; ואנכי מושל החברה החשאית  
הזאת, היא חברת גדיאנטון; ידעתי כי החברה  
ומעשיה טובים ועתיקי ימים, ודבר פעלותיה  
נמסר מני אז, עד אשר נתן לנו.
- 9 And behold, I am Giddianhi; and I am the governor of this the secret society of Gadianon; which society and the works thereof I know to be good; and they are of ancient date and they have been handed down unto us.
- כתבתי את האגרת הזאת אליה, לכוֹנאוס,  
בקוֹוֹתִי כי תמסרו את אדמותיכם ואת  
קנייניכם בלי שפך דם, בעבור ישיבו להם  
אנשי את זכויותיהם ואת שלטונם; כי פרשו  
הם מכאן ועו אשר הרעתם לעשות במנעכם  
מהם את זכויותיהם לשלטון; ואם לא כן  
תעשו, גמול אגמל על העולות אשר נעשו  
להם. אני גדיאנחי.
- 10 And I write this epistle unto you, Lachoneus, and I hope that ye will deliver up your lands and your possessions, without the shedding of blood, that this my people may recover their rights and government, who have dissented away from you because of your wickedness in retaining from them their rights of government, and except ye do this, I will avenge their wrongs. I am Giddianhi.
- והיה כאשר קבל לכוֹנאוס את האגרת הזאת  
הוא השתומם מאד, מפני עזות גדיאנחי לדרש  
כי יקבל לידי את נחלת ארץ הנפיים, ולהשיל  
אימה על העם ולגמל על הרעות אשר נעשו,  
לאֵלֶּה אשר כל רע לא נעשה להם, כי אם הם  
אשר הרעו לעצמם בפרישתם אל השודדים  
הרשעים והנחשבים ההם.
- 11 And now it came to pass when Lachoneus received this epistle he was exceedingly astonished, because of the boldness of Giddianhi demanding the possession of the land of the Nephites, and also of threatening the people and avenging the wrongs of those that had received no wrong, save it were they had wronged themselves by dissenting away unto those wicked and abominable robbers.
- והמושל לכוֹנאוס היה איש צדיק, אשר לא  
נבהל מדרשות ואימים מפי שודד. על כן
- 12 Now behold, this Lachoneus, the governor, was a just man, and could not be frightened by the demands and the threatenings of a robber;



- הוא לא שמע לדברי אנגרת גדיאנכי, מושל השודדים, כי אם צוה על עמו לקרא אל יהוה, לבקש ממנו כח לעת רדת השודדים עליהם.
- 13 Yea, he sent a proclamation among all the people, that they should gather together their women, and their children, their flocks and their herds, and all their substance, save it were their land, unto one place.
- 14 And he caused that fortifications should be built round about them, and the strength thereof should be exceedingly great. And he caused that armies, both of the Nephites and of the Lamanites, or of all them who were numbered among the Nephites, should be placed as guards round about to watch them, and to guard them from the robbers day and night.
- 15 Yea, he said unto them: As the Lord liveth, except ye repent of all your iniquities, and cry unto the Lord, ye will in no wise be delivered out of the hands of those Gadianton robbers.
- 16 And so great and marvelous were the words and prophecies of Lachoneus that they did cause fear to come upon all the people; and they did exert themselves in their might to do according to the words of Lachoneus.
- 17 And it came to pass that Lachoneus did appoint chief captains over all the armies of the Nephites, to command them at the time that the robbers should come down out of the wilderness against them.
- 18 Now the chiefest among all the chief captains and the great commander of the armies of the Nephites was appointed, and his name was Gidgiddoni.
- 19 Now it was the custom among all the Nephites to appoint for their chief captains, (save it were in their times of wickedness) someone that had the spirit of revelation and also prophecy; therefore, this Gidgiddoni was a great prophet among them, as also was the chief judge.
- 20 Now the people said unto Gidgiddoni: Pray unto the Lord, and let us go up upon the mountains and into the wilderness, that we may fall upon the robbers and destroy them in their own lands.
- 21 But Gidgiddoni saith unto them: The Lord forbid; for if we should go up against them the Lord would deliver us into their hands; therefore we will prepare ourselves in the center of our lands, and we will gather all our armies together, and we will not go against them, but we will
- והוא העביר קול בכל העם לאסוף את נשיהם וטפם, ואת צאנם ובקרים וכל קנינם, וזאת אדמתם, אל מקום אחד.
- והוא צוה לבנות מבצרים מסביבם ולחזקם עד מאד. והוא צוה כי יצבו צבאות כשומרים מסביב, צבאות נפיים וצבאות למנים, אכן, כל אשר באו במספר הנפיים יצבו לצפותם ולשמרם יומם ולילה מפני השודדים.
- וכה הוא אמר אליהם: חי יהוה, אם לא תשובו מכל עוונותיכם ולא תקראו אל יהוה, הנצל לא תנצלו מידי שודדי גדיאנטון ההם.
- כה גדולים ומפלאים היו דברי לכונאוס ונבואותיו אליהם, עד כי הפילו אימה על כל העם, והם התאמצו בכל מאדם לעשות כדבריו.
- אז מנה לכונאוס שרי צבא על כל חילות הנפיים, להיות מפקדיהם בעת אשר יפלשו השודדים מן היערות אליהם.
- ושם ראש כל שרי הצבא אשר מנה, נקרא גידגדוני, הוא המפקד העליון אשר לכל חילות הנפיים.
- ומנהג כל הנפיים היה, זולת בעת שקיעתם ברשעה, למנות למפקד עליון איש אשר רוח החזיון והנבואה שורה עליו. ואכן היה גידגדוני נביא גדול בקרבם וכן שופטם העליון.
- והעם אמרו אל גידגדוני: התפלל נא אל יהוה ונעלה אל ההרים ואל היערות, ונפל על השודדים ונשמדם בשטחם.
- וגידגדוני אמר להם: ישמרנו יהוה מעשות זאת; כי אם נעלה עליהם, ימסרנו יהוה לידיהם; על כן נערך במרכז ארצנו, ונקבץ את כל חילותינו ולא נצא אליהם, כי נמתין

עַד אֲשֶׁר יֵצְאוּ הֵם עָלֵינוּ. חֵי יְהוָה כִּי אִם כֹּה  
נַעֲשֶׂה, נִתּוֹן יִתְּנֵם בְּיָדֵנוּ.

wait till they shall come against us; therefore as the Lord liveth, if we  
do this he will deliver them into our hands.

וְהָיָה בִּשְׁנַת שִׁבְעָה עָשָׂרָה, בְּטָרִם תִּכְלֶה  
הַשָּׁנָה, יֵצְאָה הַכְּרוֹת לְכוֹנָאוֹס וּפִשְׁטָה עַל  
כָּל פְּנֵי הָאָרֶץ. וְהִלְכָּם לָקְחוּ אֶת סוּסֵיהֶם  
וּמִרְכָּבוֹתֵיהֶם, אֶת בָּקָרָם וְכָל צֹאנָם  
וְעִדְרֵיהֶם, אֶת תְּבוּאָתָם וְאֶת כָּל רְכוּשָׁם  
וְהִלְכוּ בְּאַלְפֵיהֶם וּבִרְבּוּבוֹתֵיהֶם, עַד אֲשֶׁר  
הִגִּיעוּ אֶל הַמָּקוֹם אֲשֶׁר נִקְבַּע לְהִתְקַבְּצוֹתָם,  
לְהִגָּן עֲלֵיהֶם מִפְּנֵי אוֹיְבֵיהֶם.

22 And it came to pass in the seventeenth year, in the latter end of the  
year, the proclamation of Lachoneus had gone forth throughout all the  
face of the land, and they had taken their horses, and their chariots,  
and their cattle, and all their flocks, and their herds, and their grain,  
and all their substance, and did march forth by thousands and by tens  
of thousands, until they had all gone forth to the place which had  
been appointed that they should gather themselves together, to defend  
themselves against their enemies.

וְהָאָרֶץ אֲשֶׁר נִקְבְּעָה לְהִתְקַבְּצוֹתָם הָיְתָה  
אָרֶץ יוֹרְעַחְמֶלָה וְכו' הָאָרֶץ אֲשֶׁר בֵּינָהּ וּבֵין  
אָרֶץ רַב־שָׁפַע, עַד הַקוֹ אֲשֶׁר עָבַר בֵּין אָרֶץ  
רַב־שָׁפַע וּבֵין אָרֶץ חֲרָבָה.

23 And the land which was appointed was the land of Zarahemla, and the  
land which was between the land Zarahemla and the land Bountiful,  
yea, to the line which was between the land Bountiful and the land  
Desolation.

וְהָיוּ שָׁם אֲלֵפֵי אָדָם רַבִּים אֲשֶׁר נִקְרְאוּ בִּשְׁם  
נִפְיִים וְהִתְקַבְּצוּ בְּאָרֶץ הַזֹּאת. וְלִכְוֹנָאוֹס צֹוֹם  
לְהִתְאַסֵּף בְּאָרֶץ הַדְּרוֹם, מִפְּנֵי הַקְּלָלָה  
הַגְּדוֹלָה אֲשֶׁר רִבְצָה  
עַל אָרֶץ הַצָּפוֹן.

24 And there were a great many thousand people who were called  
Nephites, who did gather themselves together in this land. Now  
Lachoneus did cause that they should gather themselves together in  
the land southward, because of the great curse which was upon the  
land northward.

כֹּה הֵם הִתְבַּצְּרוּ לְקִרְאָת בּוֹא אוֹיְבֵיהֶם; וְהֵם  
שָׁכְנוּ בְּאָרֶץ אַחַת וּבְמִחְנָה אַחַד, וְהֵם יָרְאוּ  
מִדְּבָרֵי לְכוֹנָאוֹס אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר, עַד כִּי נִחְמוּ עַל  
כָּל חַטָּאתֵיהֶם. וְהֵם פָּנוּ אֶל יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵיהֶם  
בְּתַפְלוּתֵיהֶם כִּי יַצִּילֵם בְּעֵת רִדְת אוֹיְבֵיהֶם  
לְהִלָּחֵם בָּהֶם.

25 And they did fortify themselves against their enemies; and they did  
dwell in one land, and in one body, and they did fear the words which  
had been spoken by Lachoneus, insomuch that they did repent of all  
their sins; and they did put up their prayers unto the Lord their God,  
that he would deliver them in the time that their enemies should come  
down against them to battle.

וְהֵם הִתְעַצְּבוּ מְאֹד מִפְּנֵי אוֹיְבֵיהֶם. וְגִדְגִּדּוֹנִי  
צֹוֹם לַעֲשׂוֹת כָּלִי מִלְחָמָה מְכָל סוּג וּלְהִתְחַזֵּק  
בְּשִׁרְיוֹן וּבְמִגְנִים וּבְצִנּוֹת, כְּפִי הוֹרְאוֹתָיו.

26 And they were exceedingly sorrowful because of their enemies. And  
Gidgiddoni did cause that they should make weapons of war of every  
kind, and they should be strong with armor, and with shields, and with  
bucklers, after the manner of his instruction.

## ד

## 4

וְהָיָה בְּאַחֲרִית שְׁנַת שְׁמוֹנֶה עָשָׂרָה, נִעְרְכוּ  
חֵילוֹת הַשּׁוֹדָדִים הָאֵלֶּה לְקָרֵב וְהִחֲלוּ לְהִגִּים  
מִן הַגְּבְעוֹת וּלְרִדְת מִן הַהָרִים וּלְצֹאָת מִן  
הַיַּעֲרוֹת וּמִמְעֵיָהֶם וּמִמְחֻבְּאוֹתֵיהֶם. וְהֵם  
תָּפְּשׂוּ שְׂטָחִים בְּאָרֶץ הַדְּרוֹם וּבְאָרֶץ הַצָּפוֹן,  
וְכָבְשׂוּ אֶת כָּל הַשְּׂטָחִים אֲשֶׁר נָטְשׂוּ הַנִּפְיִים  
וְאֶת הָעָרִים אֲשֶׁר נִוְתְּרוּ שׁוּמֹמוֹת.

1 And it came to pass that in the latter end of the eighteenth year those  
armies of robbers had prepared for battle, and began to come down  
and to sally forth from the hills, and out of the mountains, and the  
wilderness, and their strongholds, and their secret places, and began  
to take possession of the lands, both which were in the land south and  
which were in the land north, and began to take possession of all the  
lands which had been deserted by the Nephites, and the cities which  
had been left desolate.

- אך בכל השטחים האלה, אשר נטשו הנפיים, לא נמצאו חיות בר או חיות ציד. על כן לא היה ציד לשודדים, כי אם ביערות בלבד.
- 2 But behold, there were no wild beasts nor game in those lands which had been deserted by the Nephites, and there was no game for the robbers save it were in the wilderness.
- והשודדים לא יכלו להתקיים, כי אם ביערות, אשר ספקו את מזונם; כי הנפיים עזבו את אדמותיהם שוממות, ואספו את עדרי צאנם ובקרים וכל אשר להם, והתקבצו במחנה אחד.
- 3 And the robbers could not exist save it were in the wilderness, for the want of food; for the Nephites had left their lands desolate, and had gathered their flocks and their herds and all their substance, and they were in one body.
- לכן לא יכלו השודדים לבז ולקחת מזון, כי אם בצאתם אל שדה המערכה להלחם בנפיים. והנפיים היו כלם מחנה אחד, במספרם הרב, ובשפע המזון אשר אצרו להם, ובסוסייהם ובבקרים ובכל צאנם למיניהם, למען יוכלו לספק את צרכי מחיתם לשבע שנים כי הם קוו, בתוך העת ההיא, למחות את השודדים מעל פני האדמה. כה חלפה שנת שמונה עשרה.
- 4 Therefore, there was no chance for the robbers to plunder and to obtain food, save it were to come up in open battle against the Nephites; and the Nephites being in one body, and having so great a number, and having reserved for themselves provisions, and horses and cattle, and flocks of every kind, that they might subsist for the space of seven years, in the which time they did hope to destroy the robbers from off the face of the land; and thus the eighteenth year did pass away.
- ובשנת תשע עשרה ראה גדיאנכי כי הכרח לו לצאת לקרב על הנפיים, כי לא היתה לשודדים כל דרך להתכלכל, כי אם בבזח ובשד וברצח.
- 5 And it came to pass that in the nineteenth year Giddianhi found that it was expedient that he should go up to battle against the Nephites, for there was no way that they could subsist save it were to plunder and rob and murder.
- והם לא העזו לפזר את אנשיהם על פני הארץ בעבור יגדלו דגן, פן יתנפלו עליהם הנפיים ויהרגום. על כן צוה גדיאנכי על חילותיו כי יעלו בשנה ההיא למלחמה בנפיים.
- 6 And they durst not spread themselves upon the face of the land inso-much that they could raise grain, lest the Nephites should come upon them and slay them; therefore Giddianhi gave commandment unto his armies that in this year they should go up to battle against the Nephites.
- והיה כי הם אכן עלו לקרב, וזאת בחודש הששי. והנה, גדול ונורא היה יום בואם למלחמה; אזורים היו הם בדרך השודדים, על מתניהם עור כבש וגופם צבוע בדם וראשיהם גזוזים וחבושים מגנים. אכן, גדול ונורא היה מראה חילות גדיאנכי, מפני שריוניהם ומפני הצטבעם בדם.
- 7 And it came to pass that they did come up to battle; and it was in the sixth month; and behold, great and terrible was the day that they did come up to battle; and they were girded about after the manner of robbers; and they had a lamb-skin about their loins, and they were dyed in blood, and their heads were shorn, and they had head-plates upon them; and great and terrible was the appearance of the armies of Giddianhi, because of their armor, and because of their being dyed in blood.
- והיה כראות חילות הנפיים את מראה צבא גדיאנכי, הם נפלו ארצה ונשאו את קולם אל יהוה אלהיהם, כי יצילים ויחלצם מידי אויביהם.
- 8 And it came to pass that the armies of the Nephites, when they saw the appearance of the army of Giddianhi, had all fallen to the earth, and did lift their cries to the Lord their God, that he would spare them and deliver them out of the hands of their enemies.
- וכראות זאת חילות גדיאנכי, הם צעקו בקול גדול מרב גיל, בסברם כי חילותיהם הטילו בהלה בנפיים וכי הם נפלו אחוזי פחד.
- 9 And it came to pass that when the armies of Giddianhi saw this they began to shout with a loud voice, because of their joy, for they had supposed that the Nephites had fallen with fear because of the terror of their armies.

- 10 But in this thing they were disappointed, for the Nephites did not fear them; but they did fear their God and did supplicate him for protection; therefore, when the armies of Giddianhi did rush upon them they were prepared to meet them; yea, in the strength of the Lord they did receive them.
- 11 And the battle commenced in this the sixth month; and great and terrible was the battle thereof, yea, great and terrible was the slaughter thereof, insomuch that there never was known so great a slaughter among all the people of Lehi since he left Jerusalem.
- 12 And notwithstanding the threatenings and the oaths which Giddianhi had made, behold, the Nephites did beat them, insomuch that they did fall back from before them.
- 13 And it came to pass that Gidgiddoni commanded that his armies should pursue them as far as the borders of the wilderness, and that they should not spare any that should fall into their hands by the way; and thus they did pursue them and did slay them, to the borders of the wilderness, even until they had fulfilled the commandment of Gidgiddoni.
- 14 And it came to pass that Giddianhi, who had stood and fought with boldness, was pursued as he fled; and being weary because of his much fighting he was overtaken and slain. And thus was the end of Giddianhi the robber.
- 15 And it came to pass that the armies of the Nephites did return again to their place of security. And it came to pass that this nineteenth year did pass away, and the robbers did not come again to battle; neither did they come again in the twentieth year.
- 16 And in the twenty and first year they did not come up to battle, but they came up on all sides to lay siege round about the people of Nephi; for they did suppose that if they should cut off the people of Nephi from their lands, and should hem them in on every side, and if they should cut them off from all their outward privileges, that they could cause them to yield themselves up according to their wishes.
- 17 Now they had appointed unto themselves another leader, whose name was Zemnariyah; therefore it was Zemnariyah that did cause that this siege should take place.
- 18 But behold, this was an advantage to the Nephites; for it was impossible for the robbers to lay siege sufficiently long to have any effect upon the Nephites, because of their much provision which they had laid up in store,
- אך בזאת הם נחלו אכזבה, כי הנפיים לא יראו מהם, כי אם יראו את אלהיהם והתחננו לפניו כי יגן עליהם; לכן, בהשתער חילות גדיאנכי עליהם, הם היו נכונים להתראות עמם פנים אל פנים; אכן, הם קבלים לבושים עז יהוה.
- והקרב החל בחודש הששי; גדול ונורא היה הקרב ההוא; אכן, גדול ונורא היה השבב אשר נעשה שם, ולא נודע מעולם טבח כה גדול בקרב כל צאצאי לחי מיום צאתו מירושלם.
- ועל אף האיומים והאלות אשר יצאו מפי גדיאנכי, הכו הנפיים את אנשיו, עד אשר נסוגו אחור מפניהם.
- אז צוה גדדוני את חילותיו לרדף אחריהם עד גבול היער ולא לחוס על איש אשר יפל לידיהם בדרך. וכה הם רדפו אחריהם והרגו בהם עד הגיעם אל גבול היער, ובזאת קימו את פקדת גדדוני.
- וגדיאנכי, אשר עמד ונלחם בעז, נרדף בעת המלטו; ויען אשר הוא יגע מרב לחימתו השיגהו רודפיו והרגהו. כה הקיץ הקץ על השודד גדיאנכי.
- אז שבו חילי הנפיים אל מקום המבטחים שלהם. והיה כי חלפה השנה ההיא, שנת תשע עשרה, והשודדים לא יספו לצאת למלחמה, ואף בשנת עשרים הם לא באו.
- ובשנת עשרים ואחת לא עלו השודדים למלחמה; אך הם באו מפל עבר לשם מצור על עם נפי, בסברם כי אם ינתקו את עם נפי מאדמתם ויסגרום מפל עבר וימנעו מהם כל יתרון מסביבתם, הם יכניעו כחפצם.
- והם מנו להם מנהיג אחר, אשר שמו נקרא זמנריהה, והוא האיש אשר צונו לצור את המצור הזה.
- והנה, היה זה יתרון לנפיים, כי נבצר מן השודדים לצור מצור לארך ימים בעבור תצלח מזמתם, יען אשר אצרו הנפיים צידה רבה.

- 19 And because of the scantiness of provisions among the robbers—for behold, they had nothing save it were meat for their subsistence, which meat they did obtain in the wilderness;
- וְאֵלּוּ מִזֹּון הַשּׁוֹדְדִים הָיָה מִגְבָּל, כִּי רַק בָּשָׂר בָּא אֶל פִּיהֶם לְהַחֲיוֹת אֶת נַפְשָׁם, מִן הַחַיָּיד אֲשֶׁר הִשְׁגִּיגוּ בַּיַּעְרוֹת.
- 20 And it came to pass that the wild game became scarce in the wilderness—insomuch that the robbers were about to perish with hunger.
- אֶף חַיֹּת הַחַיָּיד הִתְמַעֲטוּ בַּיַּעְרוֹת, עַד כִּי כַמַּעַט גָּוְעוּ הַשּׁוֹדְדִים בַּרְעָב.
- 21 And the Nephites were continually marching out by day and by night, and falling upon their armies, and cutting them off by thousands and by tens of thousands.
- וְהַנְּפִיִּים צָעְדוּ וַיֵּצְאוּ תָמִיד, בַּיּוֹם וּבַלַּיְלָה, וַהֲתַנַּפְּלוּ עַל חֵילוֹת הַשּׁוֹדְדִים וַהֲפִילוּ בָהֶם אֲלָפִים וּרְבָבוֹת.
- 22 And thus it became the desire of the people of Zemnarihah to withdraw from their design, because of the great destruction which came upon them by night and by day.
- כֹּה גָמַל בָּלֵב אֲנָשֵׁי זִמְנָרִיחָה חֲפֹץ לְבַטֵּל אֶת מִזְמָתָם, אֲשֶׁר הִבִּיֵּאָה עֲלֵיהֶם חֲרָבָן וְכָלְיוֹן בַּלַּיְלָה וּבַיּוֹם.
- 23 And it came to pass that Zemnarihah did give command unto his people that they should withdraw themselves from the siege, and march into the furthestmost parts of the land northward.
- וְהָיָה כִּי זִמְנָרִיחָה אָכַן צִוָּה אֶת אֲנָשָׁיו לָסֶגֶת מִן הַמִּצּוֹר וּלְלַכֵּת אֶל קְצוֵי אֶרֶץ הָצָפוֹן.
- 24 And now, Gidgiddoni being aware of their design, and knowing of their weakness because of the want of food, and the great slaughter which had been made among them, therefore he did send out his armies in the night-time, and did cut off the way of their retreat, and did place his armies in the way of their retreat.
- וְגִדְגִּדוֹנִי, אֲשֶׁר יָדַע עַל תְּכַנְיָתָם, וְעַל חֲלָשָׁתָם, מִפְּנֵי הַמַּחְסוֹר בְּמִזֹּון וְהַשְׁבָּח הָרַב אֲשֶׁר נַעֲשָׂה בָהֶם, שָׁלַח אֶת חֵילוֹתָיו לַיְלָה; וְהוּא נִתַּק אֶת דֶּרֶךְ מִפְּלֹתָם וַהֲצִיב אֶת חֵילוֹתָיו בַּדֶּרֶךְ נִסְיָגָתָם.
- 25 And this did they do in the night-time, and got on their march beyond the robbers, so that on the morrow, when the robbers began their march, they were met by the armies of the Nephites both in their front and in their rear.
- אָכֵן, בַּלַּיְלָה הֵם עָשׂוּ זֹאת; וְהֵם נָעוּ מֵעֵבֶר לַשּׁוֹדְדִים, בְּאִפְּן אֲשֶׁר לְמַחֲרָת, כְּאֲשֶׁר הֵחֵלוּ הַשּׁוֹדְדִים בְּמַסָּעָם, פָּגְשָׁם צָבֵא הַנְּפִיִּים מִלְּפָנִים וּמֵאַחֶר.
- 26 And the robbers who were on the south were also cut off in their places of retreat. And all these things were done by command of Gidgiddoni.
- וְאֵף הַשּׁוֹדְדִים אֲשֶׁר בְּדָרוֹם הָיוּ מִנְתָּקִים מִמְּקוֹמוֹת מִפְּלָטָם. כָּל הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה נַעֲשׂוּ בְּפִקְדַת גִּדְגִּדוֹנִי.
- 27 And there were many thousands who did yield themselves up prisoners unto the Nephites, and the remainder of them were slain.
- וְהָיָה כִּי אֲלָפִים רַבִּים נִכְנְעוּ וַהֲתַמְסְרוּ לַשָּׁבִי הַנְּפִיִּים, וְשְׂאֲרֵיתָם הוּמָתוּ.
- 28 And their leader, Zemnarihah, was taken and hanged upon a tree, yea, even upon the top thereof until he was dead. And when they had hanged him until he was dead they did fell the tree to the earth, and did cry with a loud voice, saying:
- וּמִנְהִיגָם, זִמְנָרִיחָה, נִתְּפַשׁ וְנִתְּלָה עַל עֵץ. עַל צִמְרֵת הָעֵץ תִּלְוְהוּ עַד אֲשֶׁר נָפַח אֶת נִשְׁמָתוֹ. וְאַחֵר תִּלְוָתָם אוֹתוֹ עַד כִּי מָת, הֵם כָּרְתוּ אֶת הָעֵץ וְקָרְאוּ בְּקוֹל גָּדוֹל, לֵאמֹר:
- 29 May the Lord preserve his people in righteousness and in holiness of heart, that they may cause to be felled to the earth all who shall seek to slay them because of power and secret combinations, even as this man hath been felled to the earth.
- יְהִי רָצוֹן כִּי יִשְׁמַר יְהוָה אֶת עַמּוֹ בְּצִדִּיק וּבְקִדְשַׁת הַלֵּב בְּעִבּוֹר יִכְרְתוּ, כְּהִכְרַת הָאִישׁ הַזֶּה, אֶת כָּל אֲשֶׁר יִבְקֹשׁ לְהָרְגֵם לְמַעַן כֹּחַ וּשְׁלֹטוֹן, וּלְמַעַן אֲגָדוֹת סֵתֶר.



וְהֵם שִׂמְחוּ וַיִּקְרְאוּ שְׁנִית פַּה אֶחָד, לֵאמֹר: יְהִי רְצוֹן כִּי יִגְן אֱלֹהֵי אֲבֹרָהֶם וְאֱלֹהֵי יִצְחָק וְאֱלֹהֵי יַעֲקֹב עַל הָעָם הַזֶּה בְּצִדִּיק, כָּל עוֹד יִקְרְאוּ בְּשֵׁם אֱלֹהֵיהֶם לְמַעַן הִגָּנוּם.

וְהֵם פָּרְצוּ בְּרִנָּה, כָּלֶם כְּאֶחָד, וַשִּׁבְחוּ אֶת אֱלֹהֵיהֶם עַל הַדָּבָר הַגָּדוֹל אֲשֶׁר עָשָׂה לְמַעַנָם, בְּשִׁמְרוֹ אוֹתָם מִנָּפֶל בְּיַד אוֹיְבֵיהֶם.

וְכֵן הֵם קָרְאוּ: הוֹשֵׁעַ נָא, אֵל עֲלִינוּ.  
וְעוֹד קָרְאוּ: בְּרוּךְ שֵׁם יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵינוּ,  
אֵל שְׂדֵי, אֵל עֲלִינוּ.

וְלִבָּם רָחַב בְּגִיל וַעֲיִנֵיהֶם זָלְגוּ רַב דָּמַע עַל גָּדֹל טוֹבַת אֱלֹהִים אֲשֶׁר הֲצִילָם מִיַּד אוֹיְבֵיהֶם; וְהֵם יָדְעוּ כִּי מִפְּנֵי חַשְׁבוֹתָם וּכְנִיעָתָם נוֹשְׁעוּ מֵאֲבִדוֹן עוֹלָם.

30 And they did rejoice and cry again with one voice, saying: May the God of Abraham, and the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, protect this people in righteousness, so long as they shall call on the name of their God for protection.

31 And it came to pass that they did break forth, all as one, in singing, and praising their God for the great thing which he had done for them, in preserving them from falling into the hands of their enemies.

32 Yea, they did cry: Hosanna to the Most High God. And they did cry: Blessed be the name of the Lord God Almighty, the Most High God.

33 And their hearts were swollen with joy, unto the gushing out of many tears, because of the great goodness of God in delivering them out of the hands of their enemies; and they knew it was because of their repentance and their humility that they had been delivered from an everlasting destruction.

## ה

## 5

וְהֵנָּה, בְּכָל עֵם הַנִּפְיִים לֹא הָיְתָה נֶפֶשׁ חַיָּה אַחַת אֲשֶׁר הִטִּילָה סֶפֶק אֶף בְּדָבָר זָעִיר מִדְּבָרֵי כָּל הַנְּבִיאִים הַקְּדוֹשִׁים; כִּי הֵם יָדְעוּ כִּי הֵם אֲכֹן יִתְקַיְמוּ.

וְהֵם יָדְעוּ כִּי בָּא הַמָּשִׁיחַ אֶל הָעוֹלָם, מִפְּנֵי הָאוֹתוֹת הַרְבִּים אֲשֶׁר קָמוּ, עַל פִּי דְבָרֵי הַנְּבִיאִים. וּמִפְּנֵי הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר כָּבַר בָּאוּ, יָדְעוּ הֵם כִּי אֲכֹן יִתְקַיְמוּ כָּל הַדְּבָרִים, כְּפִי אֲשֶׁר נֶאֱמַר.

עַל כֵּן הֵם חָדְלוּ מִכָּל חַטְאֵיהֶם וּמִתּוֹעֲבוֹתֵיהֶם וּמִזְנוּנֵיהֶם, וַשִּׁקְדוּ מְאֹד לַעֲבֹד אֶת אֱלֹהֵים יוֹמָם וְלַיְלָה.

וְהָיָה כִּי הֵם לָקְחוּ בְּשָׁבִי אֶת כָּל הַשּׁוֹדְדִים, וְלֹא הָיָה בָּהֶם אֶחָד אֲשֶׁר נִמְלֹט וְלֹא נִהְרַג. וְהֵם כָּלְאוּם בְּבֵית הַכְּלָא וְהוֹרּוּ לְהִסְיף אֲלֵיהֶם אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים; וְכָל אֲשֶׁר שָׁב מִחַטְאָתָיו וַיִּנְכַּנס בְּבְרִית לְחֹדֶל מִרְצָח, נִתְּנָה לוֹ חֲרוּתוֹ.

וְכָל אֲשֶׁר לֹא בָּא בְּבְרִית וְאֵף שָׁמַר בְּלָבוּ מִחֻשְׁבוֹת רָצַח בְּחַשְׁאֵי, אֲכֹן, כָּל אֲשֶׁר נִמְצָא מִפִּיָּהּ אִיוָּמִים עַל אַחֵיו נָדוֹן וְנִעְנָשׁ כַּחֵק.

1 And now behold, there was not a living soul among all the people of the Nephites who did doubt in the least the words of all the holy prophets who had spoken; for they knew that it must needs be that they must be fulfilled.

2 And they knew that it must be expedient that Christ had come, because of the many signs which had been given, according to the words of the prophets; and because of the things which had come to pass already they knew that it must needs be that all things should come to pass according to that which had been spoken.

3 Therefore they did forsake all their sins, and their abominations, and their whoredoms, and did serve God with all diligence day and night.

4 And now it came to pass that when they had taken all the robbers prisoners, insomuch that none did escape who were not slain, they did cast their prisoners into prison, and did cause the word of God to be preached unto them; and as many as would repent of their sins and enter into a covenant that they would murder no more were set at liberty.

5 But as many as there were who did not enter into a covenant, and who did still continue to have those secret murders in their hearts, yea, as many as were found breathing out threatenings against their brethren were condemned and punished according to the law.

- 6 And thus they did put an end to all those wicked, and secret, and abominable combinations, in the which there was so much wickedness, and so many murders committed.
- 7 And thus had the twenty and second year passed away, and the twenty and third year also, and the twenty and fourth, and the twenty and fifth; and thus had twenty and five years passed away.
- 8 And there had many things transpired which, in the eyes of some, would be great and marvelous; nevertheless, they cannot all be written in this book; yea, this book cannot contain even a hundredth part of what was done among so many people in the space of twenty and five years;
- 9 But behold there are records which do contain all the proceedings of this people; and a shorter but true account was given by Nephi.
- 10 Therefore I have made my record of these things according to the record of Nephi, which was engraven on the plates which were called the plates of Nephi.
- 11 And behold, I do make the record on plates which I have made with mine own hands.
- 12 And behold, I am called Mormon, being called after the land of Mormon, the land in which Alma did establish the church among the people, yea, the first church which was established among them after their transgression.
- 13 Behold, I am a disciple of Jesus Christ, the Son of God. I have been called of him to declare his word among his people, that they might have everlasting life.
- 14 And it hath become expedient that I, according to the will of God, that the prayers of those who have gone hence, who were the holy ones, should be fulfilled according to their faith, should make a record of these things which have been done—
- 15 Yea, a small record of that which hath taken place from the time that Lehi left Jerusalem, even down until the present time.
- 16 Therefore I do make my record from the accounts which have been given by those who were before me, until the commencement of my day;
- כָּף הֵם שָׁמוּ קֶץ לְכָל הַכְּנֻפִּיּוֹת הַרְשָׁעוֹת  
וְהַחֲשָׁאיוֹת וְהַנְּתַעֲבוֹת הֵהָן, אֲשֶׁר כָּה רַבָּה  
הָיָה רִשְׁעָתָן וְאֲשֶׁר רָצְחוּ רַבִּים כָּל כָּף.
- כָּה חָלְפָה שְׁנַת עֶשְׂרִים וּשְׁתַּיִם, וְכֵן שְׁנַת  
עֶשְׂרִים וּשְׁלֹשׁ וְעֶשְׂרִים וְאַרְבַּע וְעֶשְׂרִים  
וְחָמֵשׁ. וְכֵה חָלְפוּ עֶשְׂרִים וְחָמֵשׁ שָׁנָה.
- וְהָיָה כִּי הִתְרַחֲשׁוּ דְבָרִים רַבִּים אֲשֶׁר בְּעֵינֵי  
אֲחָדִים הָיוּ גְדוֹלִים וְנִפְלְאִים; אֲךָ לֹא נִתָּן  
לְכַתֵּב אֶת כָּל־סֵפֶר הַזֶּה; אֲכֹן, אִין הַסֵּפֶר  
הַזֶּה יָכוֹל לְהַכִּיל אֶף חֵלֶק אֶחָד מִמֶּמָּה בְּאֲשֶׁר  
נַעֲשָׂה בְּקֶרֶב אַנְשֵׁים כָּה רַבִּים בְּמִשְׁוֹף עֶשְׂרִים  
וְחָמֵשׁ שָׁנָה.
- וְאוּלַם יֵשׁ כְּתָבִי זִכְרוֹן הַמְּכִילִים אֶת כָּל  
קוֹרוֹת הָעָם הַזֶּה. וְקִצּוֹר הַדְּבָרִים, אֲשֶׁר הוּא  
סִפּוֹר נֶאֱמָן, כְּתָב נָפִי.
- עַל כֵּן רָשַׁמְתִּי אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה עַל פִּי  
כְּתַב הַזִּכְרוֹן אֲשֶׁר לְנָפִי הַנִּחְרָט עַל הַלּוּחוֹת  
הַנִּקְרָאִים לּוּחוֹת נָפִי.
- וְהִנְנִי רוֹשֵׁם אֶת כְּתָבִי עַל לּוּחוֹת אֲשֶׁר עָשִׂיתִי  
בְּמוֹ יָדִי.
- הִנְנִי נִקְרָא מוֹרְמוֹן, עַל פִּי אֶרֶץ מוֹרְמוֹן,  
הָאֶרֶץ אֲשֶׁר יִסַּד בָּהּ עֲלֵמָא אֶת הַכְּנִסְיָה  
בְּקֶרֶב הָעָם; הִיא הַכְּנִסְיָה הָרִאשׁוֹנָה אֲשֶׁר  
נוֹסְדָה בְּתוֹכָם אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר פָּשְׁעוּ.
- הִנְנִי תִלְמִיד יֵשׁוּעַ הַמָּשִׁיחַ, בֶּן אֱלֹהִים. הוּא  
אֲשֶׁר קָרָאנִי לְהוֹדִיעַ אֶת דְּבָרוֹ בְּקֶרֶב עַמּוֹ,  
בְּעֵבֹר יָזְכוּ בְּחַיֵּי עוֹלָם.
- וְעַל פִּי רָצוֹן אֱלֹהִים כִּי תִתְקַיְּמָנָה תְּפִלּוֹת  
הַנִּפְטָרִים הַקְּדוּשִׁים, כְּפִי אֱמוּנָתָם, רְאוּי  
כִּי אֲרֻשָׁם לְזִכְרוֹן אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה  
אֲשֶׁר נַעֲשׂוּ;
- אֲכֹן, כְּתַב הַזִּכְרוֹן אֲשֶׁר הוּא קִצּוֹר הַקּוֹרוֹת  
מֵעַתָּה צֵאתָ לְחֵי מִירוּשָׁלַם וְעַד הַיּוֹם הַזֶּה.
- לְכֵן רוֹשֵׁם אֲנִי אֶת כְּתַב הַזִּכְרוֹן אֲשֶׁר לִי עַל פִּי  
הַכְּתָבִים אֲשֶׁר הִנִּיחוּ קוֹדְמֵי עַד רִאשִׁית יָמַי.

- 17 ואֲחֲרֵי כֵן אֶרְשֶׁם לְזַכֵּרוֹן אֶת הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר רָאִיתִי בְּמוֹ עֵינַי. And then I do make a record of the things which I have seen with mine own eyes.
- 18 וַיֹּדַע אֲנִי כִּי כְּתָב הַזִּכְרוֹן אֲשֶׁר אֲנִי רוֹשֶׁם אֵמֶת הוּא. עַל אֵף זֹאת, רַבִּים הֵם הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר, עַל פִּי צוּרַת לְשׁוֹנִנִּי, אֵין יְכוּלִים אֲנַחְנוּ לְכַתְּבָם. And I know the record which I make to be a just and a true record; nevertheless there are many things which, according to our language, we are not able to write.
- 19 וּבְזֹאת כְּלִיתִי לְדַבֵּר אֶת דְּבָרֵי אֲשֶׁר מִמֶּנִּי הוּא, וְאֲנִי שָׁב לְסַפֵּר עַל הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר הָיוּ לִפְנֵי יָמַי. And now I make an end of my saying, which is of myself, and proceed to give my account of the things which have been before me.
- 20 אֲנִי מוֹרְמוֹן, צֶאֱצָא טְהוֹר לְלֶחִי. רָאִיוּ לִי לְבָרְךְ אֶת אֱלֹהֵי וְאֶת מוֹשִׁיעֵי יִשׁוּעַ הַמְּשִׁיחַ, עַל כִּי הוֹצִיא אֶת אֲבוֹתֵינוּ מֵאֶרֶץ יְרוּשָׁלַם, וְאֵף אִישׁ אֶחָד לֹא יָדַע זֹאת וְזוֹלַת לֶחִי עֲצָמוּ וְאֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר הִבִּיאָם מִן הָאֶרֶץ הַהִיא; וְעַל כִּי חָנַן אוֹתִי וְאֶת עַמִּי יְדִיעָה כֹּה מְרַבָּה לְמַעַן יִשְׁוּעַת נַפְשׁוֹתֵינוּ. I am Mormon, and a pure descendant of Lehi. I have reason to bless my God and my Savior Jesus Christ, that he brought our fathers out of the land of Jerusalem, (and no one knew it save it were himself and those whom he brought out of that land) and that he hath given me and my people so much knowledge unto the salvation of our souls.
- 21 אֲכֹן, בְּרַךְ בְּרַךְ הוּא אֶת בֵּית יַעֲקֹב וְאֶת זֶרַע יוֹסֵף רַחֵם. Surely he hath blessed the house of Jacob, and hath been merciful unto the seed of Joseph.
- 22 וּכְדִבְרֵי אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר, הוּא בְּרַךְ וְהַצְלִיחַ אֶת בְּנֵי לֶחִי כְּפִי שְׁקִידָתָם לְשִׁמּוֹר אֶת מִצְוֹתָיו. And insomuch as the children of Lehi have kept his commandments he hath blessed them and prospered them according to his word.
- 23 וְהוּא אֲכֹן יוֹסִיף וְיָשִׁיב שְׂרִיד מִבֵּית יוֹסֵף אֶל יְדִיעַת יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵיהֶם. Yea, and surely shall he again bring a remnant of the seed of Joseph to the knowledge of the Lord their God.
- 24 חִי יְהוָה כִּי קִבֵּץ יִקְבֹּץ אֶת כָּל שְׂאֵרֵיט זֶרַע יַעֲקֹב, הַמִּפְזָר עַל כָּל פְּנֵי הָאֲדָמָה, מֵאֶרֶב עַד כְּנָפּוֹת הָאֶרֶץ. And as surely as the Lord liveth, will he gather in from the four quarters of the earth all the remnant of the seed of Jacob, who are scattered abroad upon all the face of the earth.
- 25 וּכְפִי אֲשֶׁר כָּרַת בְּרִית עִם כָּל בֵּית יַעֲקֹב, קוֹם תִּקּוֹם הַבְּרִית אֲשֶׁר כָּרַת עִמָּם בְּמוֹעֵד אֲשֶׁר קָבַע, לְמַעַן יָשִׁיב אֶת כָּל בֵּית יַעֲקֹב אֶל יְדִיעַת הַבְּרִית אֲשֶׁר כָּרַת עִמָּם. And as he hath covenanted with all the house of Jacob, even so shall the covenant wherewith he hath covenanted with the house of Jacob be fulfilled in his own due time, unto the restoring all the house of Jacob unto the knowledge of the covenant that he hath covenanted with them.
- 26 אֲזִי הֵם יֵדְעוּ אֶת גּוֹאֲלָם, אֲשֶׁר הוּא יִשׁוּעַ הַמְּשִׁיחַ, בֶּן אֱלֹהִים; אֲזִי הֵם יִקְבְּצוּ מֵאֶרֶב עַד כְּנָפּוֹת הָאֶרֶץ אֶל אֲדָמָתָם, אֲשֶׁר מִמֶּנָּה נִפְּצוּ: חִי יְהוָה כִּי כֵן יִהְיֶה. אָמֵן. And then shall they know their Redeemer, who is Jesus Christ, the Son of God; and then shall they be gathered in from the four quarters of the earth unto their own lands, from whence they have been dispersed; yea, as the Lord liveth so shall it be. Amen.

## 1

## 6

- וְהָיָה בְּשָׁנַת עֶשְׂרִים וָשֵׁשׁ, שָׁב כָּל עַם הַנְּפִיִּים  
אֶל אֲדָמָתָם, אִישׁ וּבֵיתוֹ, בְּצֹאנָם וּבְבָקָרָם,  
בְּסוּסֵיהֶם וּבְבִהֶמְתָּם וּבְכָל רְכוּשָׁם אֲשֶׁר לָהֶם.
- וַעֲנֵן אֲשֶׁר לֹא כָּלוּ לֵאכֹל אֶת כָּל הַמְּזֹנִן אֲשֶׁר  
אָצְרוּ, הֵם לִקְחוֹ עִמָּם אֶת כָּל הַנוֹתֵר לָהֶם,  
מִכָּל דָּגָנָם לְמִינֵהוּ, וְכֹן אֶת זָהָבָם וְכֶסֶףָם וְכָל  
יְקָרוֹתֵיהֶם. וְהֵם שָׁבוּ אֶל אֲדָמָתָם וְאֶל נַחֲלָתָם  
בְּצָפוֹן וּבְדָרוֹם, בְּאֶרֶץ הַצָּפוֹן וּבְאֶרֶץ הַדָּרוֹם.
- וְהֵם נָתְנוּ לְשׁוֹדְדִים אֲשֶׁר באוּ בְּבִרִית לְשֹׁמֵר  
אֶת הַשְּׁלוֹם בְּאֶרֶץ, אֲשֶׁר חָפְצוּ לְהִשְׁאֵר  
לְמִנִּים, אֲדָמוֹת עַל פִּי מִסְפָּרָם, בְּעִבּוֹר יוֹצִיאוּ  
אֶת לַחֲמָם מִן הָאֶרֶץ בִּיגִיעַ כְּפִיהֶם. כֹּה הֵם  
יָסְדוּ שְׁלוֹם בְּכָל הָאֶרֶץ.
- וְהֵם שָׁבוּ וְהִצְלִיחוּ וְהִתְחַזְּקוּ מְאֹד. כֹּה חָלְפוּ  
שָׁנֹת עֶשְׂרִים וָשֵׁשׁ וְעֶשְׂרִים וָשֶׁבַע, בַּהֲיוֹת סֵדֶר  
רַב בְּאֶרֶץ; וְהֵם חֻקְּקוּ אֶת חֻקֵּיהֶם בְּצֶדֶק וּבִישָׁר.
- וְלֹא הָיָה בְּכָל הָאֶרֶץ אִם מְכַשׁוֹל אֶחָד לְהִצְלָחַת  
הָעָם תָּמִיד, כִּי אִם הַכְּשָׁלָם בְּדַבֵּר עֲבָרָה.
- וְהַשְּׁלוֹם וְהַשְּׁלֹוּהָ הָאֵלֶּה נֹסְדוּ בְּאֶרֶץ עַל  
יְדֵי גִדְגִידוֹנִי וְהַשׁוֹפֵט לְכוֹנָאוֹס וְהַמְּנַהִיגִים  
אֲשֶׁר מִנּוּ.
- וְהָיָה כִּי נִבְנוּ עָרִים חֲדָשׁוֹת רַבּוֹת וְעָרִים  
עֲתִיקוֹת שֻׁפְצוּ.
- וְדָרְכִים רַבּוֹת הוּקְמוּ, וְנִסְלְלוּ מִסְלּוֹת רַבּוֹת  
הַמּוֹלִיכוֹת מֵעִיר אֶל עִיר, וּמֵאֶרֶץ אֶל אֶרֶץ,  
וּמִמָּקוֹם אֶל מָקוֹם.
- כֹּה חָלְפָה שָׁנַת עֶשְׂרִים וָשִׁמוֹנָה, וְשָׁלוֹם  
הָעָם נִמְשָׁכָה.
- וְאוּלַם בְּשָׁנַת עֶשְׂרִים וָתִשְׁעָ הִתְגַּלְעוּ בָּעָם  
סִכְסוּכִים. הָיוּ אַנְשִׁים אֲשֶׁר הִתְנַשְּׂאוּ בְּגָאוֹה  
וּבְהִתְפָּאָרוֹת מִפְּנֵי עֲשָׂרָם הָעֲצוּם עַד כִּי  
הִכְבִּידוּ רִדְיָפוֹת עַל זֻלָּתָם.
- 1 And now it came to pass that the people of the Nephites did all return to their own lands in the twenty and sixth year, every man, with his family, his flocks and his herds, his horses and his cattle, and all things whatsoever did belong unto them.
- 2 And it came to pass that they had not eaten up all their provisions; therefore they did take with them all that they had not devoured, of all their grain of every kind, and their gold, and their silver, and all their precious things, and they did return to their own lands and their possessions, both on the north and on the south, both on the land northward and on the land southward.
- 3 And they granted unto those robbers who had entered into a covenant to keep the peace of the land, who were desirous to remain Lamanites, lands, according to their numbers, that they might have, with their labors, wherewith to subsist upon; and thus they did establish peace in all the land.
- 4 And they began again to prosper and to wax great; and the twenty and sixth and seventh years passed away, and there was great order in the land; and they had formed their laws according to equity and justice.
- 5 And now there was nothing in all the land to hinder the people from prospering continually, except they should fall into transgression.
- 6 And now it was Gidgiddoni, and the judge, Lachoneus, and those who had been appointed leaders, who had established this great peace in the land.
- 7 And it came to pass that there were many cities built anew, and there were many old cities repaired.
- 8 And there were many highways cast up, and many roads made, which led from city to city, and from land to land, and from place to place.
- 9 And thus passed away the twenty and eighth year, and the people had continual peace.
- 10 But it came to pass in the twenty and ninth year there began to be some disputings among the people; and some were lifted up unto pride and boastings because of their exceedingly great riches, yea, even unto great persecutions;

- 11 For there were many merchants in the land, and also many lawyers, and many officers.
- 12 And the people began to be distinguished by ranks, according to their riches and their chances for learning, yea, some were ignorant because of their poverty, and others did receive great learning because of their riches.
- 13 Some were lifted up in pride, and others were exceedingly humble; some did return railing for railing, while others would receive railing and persecution and all manner of afflictions, and would not turn and revile again, but were humble and penitent before God.
- 14 And thus there became a great inequality in all the land, insomuch that the church began to be broken up; yea, insomuch that in the thirtieth year the church was broken up in all the land save it were among a few of the Lamanites who were converted unto the true faith; and they would not depart from it, for they were firm, and steadfast, and immovable, willing with all diligence to keep the commandments of the Lord.
- 15 Now the cause of this iniquity of the people was this—Satan had great power, unto the stirring up of the people to do all manner of iniquity, and to the puffing them up with pride, tempting them to seek for power, and authority, and riches, and the vain things of the world.
- 16 And thus Satan did lead away the hearts of the people to do all manner of iniquity; therefore they had enjoyed peace but a few years.
- 17 And thus, in the commencement of the thirtieth year—the people having been delivered up for the space of a long time to be carried about by the temptations of the devil whithersoever he desired to carry them, and to do whatsoever iniquity he desired they should—and thus in the commencement of this, the thirtieth year, they were in a state of awful wickedness.
- 18 Now they did not sin ignorantly, for they knew the will of God concerning them, for it had been taught unto them; therefore they did wilfully rebel against God.
- 19 And now it was in the days of Lachoneus, the son of Lachoneus, for Lachoneus did fill the seat of his father and did govern the people that year.
- כי רבים היו הסוחרים אשר בארץ, וכן עורכי  
דין רבים ושירים רבים.
- והאנשים החלו להבדל זה מזה במעמדם,  
כפי עשרם ותלמודם; אכן, היו אנשים  
נבערים מדעת מפני עניים, והיו אחרים אשר  
קנו דעת מרבה מפני עשרם.
- והיו אנשים אשר התנשאו בגאווה, בעוד  
אשר אחרים היו עניים עד מאד. והיו אשר  
השיבו בוז תחת בוז, ואחרים אשר קבלו בוז  
ונגישה וכל מיני ענווים ולא השיבו בגדוף, כי  
אם הלכו בדרכי כניעה ותשובה לפני אלהים.
- כה התפתח העדר שויון גדול בכל הארץ,  
עד כי החלה הכנסייה להתפורר. אכן, עד כי  
בשנת שלשים התפוררה הכנסייה בכל הארץ,  
זולת בקרב מעטים מן הלמנים, אלה אשר  
הפכו למאמינים באמונת האמת. המה לא  
רחקו מאמונתם, כי היו מוצקים ואיתנים  
ויציבים, ושמרו בכל מאדם לקיים את  
מצוות יהוה.
- וזאת היתה סבת עוון העם: לשטן היה כח  
רב לעורר את העם לכל מיני און, ולהפית  
בלבם גאווה ולפתותם לבקש כח ושלטון  
ועשר והבלי העולם הזה.
- כה הטא השטן את לב העם לעשות כל  
מיני און. על כן נהנה העם משלווה שנים  
מעטות בלבד.
- ובראשית שנת שלשים, אחר אשר נשאו  
האנשים את ממשכת על ידי פתוי השטן  
אל כל אשר הוא רצה לשאתם, ופשעו  
בכל אשר חפץ כי יפשעו, הם שקעו  
ברשעה נוראה.
- ולא בלי דעת חטאו, כי הם ידעו את חפץ  
אלהים לגביהם כי הם למדו בדבר הזה. על  
כן במזיד מרדו באלהים.
- והיה זאת בימי לכונהוס בן לכונהוס אשר  
ישב על כסא אביו ומשל בעם בשנה ההיא.



- 20 וּבָעֵת הַהִיא נִשְׁלָחוּ אַנְשִׁים אֲשֶׁר רוּחַ מְשֻׁמִּים מְלֹאֲתָם. וְהֵם עָמְדוּ בְּקֶרֶב הָעָם בְּכָל הָאָרֶץ, וְהֵם הִטִּיפוּ וְהִעִידוּ בְּעַז רוּחָם עַל חַטָּאי הָעָם וְעִוְוֹנוֹתֵיהֶם. וְהֵם הִעִידוּ לִפְנֵיהֶם עַל הַגָּאֻלָּה אֲשֶׁר יִגָּאֵל יְהוָה אֶת עַמּוֹ, וּבְלִשׁוֹן אֲחֵר: עַל הַתַּחֲיָה אֲשֶׁר מֵאֵת הַמְּשִׁיחַ; וְהֵם אֵף הִעִידוּ בְּאִמָּץ עַל מוֹתוֹ וְעַל יְסוּרָיו.
- 21 Now there were many of the people who were exceedingly angry because of those who testified of these things; and those who were angry were chiefly the chief judges, and they who had been high priests and lawyers; yea, all those who were lawyers were angry with those who testified of these things.
- 22 וְלֹא הָיָה בֵּינָם שׁוֹם עוֹרֵף דִּין אוֹ שׁוֹפֵט אוֹ כֹּהֵן גָּדוֹל לְתֵת תִּקְוָה לְגֹזֵר דִּין מוֹת עַל אִישׁ, בְּלִתִּי אִם נִחַתָם גֹּזֵר דִּינָם בְּיַד מוֹשֵׁל הָאָרֶץ.
- 23 Now there was no lawyer nor judge nor high priest that could have power to condemn any one to death save their condemnation was signed by the governor of the land.
- 24 וְרַבִּים מִן הַמְּעִידִים עַל עֲנִיֵּי הַמְּשִׁיחַ אֲשֶׁר הִעִידוּ בְּעַז רוּחָם, נִתְּפְשׁוּ וְהוּמְתוּ בַּחֲשָׁאֵי עַל יְדֵי הַשׁוֹפְטִים; וּדְבַר מוֹתָם לֹא נֹדַע לְמוֹשֵׁל הָאָרֶץ, כִּי אִם לְאַחֵר מוֹתָם.
- 25 Now there were many of those who testified of the things pertaining to Christ who testified boldly, who were taken and put to death secretly by the judges, that the knowledge of their death came not unto the governor of the land until after their death.
- 26 וְהִנֵּה, הָיָה זֶה בְּנִגּוֹד לְחֻקֵּי הָאָרֶץ, הוֹצֵאת אִישׁ לְהוֹרֵג בְּלִי תִקְוָה שְׂרָרָה מֵאֵת מוֹשֵׁל הָאָרֶץ.
- 27 Now behold, this was contrary to the laws of the land, that any man should be put to death except they had power from the governor of the land—
- 28 עַל כֵּן הִגִּיעָה תִלְנָה אֶל אֶרֶץ זֶרַחֵמְלָה, אֶל מוֹשֵׁל הָאָרֶץ עַל הַשׁוֹפְטִים הָהֵם, אֲשֶׁר הוֹצִיאוּ לְהוֹרֵג אֶת נְבִיאֵי יְהוָה שְׁלֹא בַּחֵק. אֲזִי הֵם נִתְּפְשׁוּ וְהוּבְאוּ לִפְנֵי הַשׁוֹפֵט לְהִשְׁפֹּט עַל פִּשְׁעָם, בַּחֵק אֲשֶׁר חֻקָּה הָעָם.
- 29 Therefore a complaint came up unto the land of Zarahemla, to the governor of the land, against these judges who had condemned the prophets of the Lord unto death, not according to the law.
- 30 אֲזִי הֵם נִתְּפְשׁוּ וְהוּבְאוּ לִפְנֵי הַשׁוֹפֵט לְהִשְׁפֹּט עַל פִּשְׁעָם, בַּחֵק אֲשֶׁר חֻקָּה הָעָם.
- 31 Now it came to pass that they were taken and brought up before the judge to be judged of the crime which they had done, according to the law which had been given by the people.
- 32 וְלַשׁוֹפְטִים הָהֵם הָיוּ יְדִידִים וְקִרְבִּי מִשְׁפָּחָה רַבִּים. וּשְׂאֲרָם, אֲשֶׁר מִנּוּ כְּמַעַט אֶת כָּל עוֹרְכֵי הַדִּין וְהַכֹּהֲנִים הַגְּדוֹלִים, הִתְאַסְּפוּ יַחְדָּו וְהִתְאַחְדּוּ עִם קִרְבֵּי הַשׁוֹפְטִים הָהֵם אֲשֶׁר הָעָמְדוּ לְדִין בַּחֵק.
- 33 Now it came to pass that those judges had many friends and kindreds; and the remainder, yea, even almost all the lawyers and the high priests, did gather themselves together, and unite with the kindreds of those judges who were to be tried according to the law.
- 34 וְהֵם בָּאוּ בְּבְרִית, אִישׁ עִם רֵעֵהוּ, וְהִיא הַבְּרִית אֲשֶׁר נִתְּנָה עַל יְדֵי אַנְשֵׁי קִדְם, הַבְּרִית אֲשֶׁר הִשְׁטָן מִסֵּר וְשִׁמֵּשׁ לְקִשּׁוֹר קִשּׁוֹר עַל כָּל דְּבַר צֶדֶק.
- 35 And they did enter into a covenant one with another, yea, even into that covenant which was given by them of old, which covenant was given and administered by the devil, to combine against all righteousness.

- על כן הם התאגדו על אנשי יהוה; והם באו  
בברית להשמידם ולמלט את האשמים  
ברצח מכף הדין, אשר עמד לצאת לפעל על  
פי החק.
- 29 Therefore they did combine against the people of the Lord, and enter into a covenant to destroy them, and to deliver those who were guilty of murder from the grasp of justice, which was about to be administered according to the law.
- והם בזו לחק ולזכויות ארצם וכרתו ברית,  
איש עם רעהו, לאבד את המושל ולהמליך  
מלך על הארץ, בעבור תחדל החרות מקרב  
הארץ בהמסרה לרשות מלכים.
- 30 And they did set at defiance the law and the rights of their country; and they did covenant one with another to destroy the governor, and to establish a king over the land, that the land should no more be at liberty but should be subject unto kings.

## ז

## 7

- הנה, אני אראה לכם כי הם לא המליכו מלך  
על הארץ; ואולם בשנה ההיא, שנת שלשים,  
הם הרגו את שופט הארץ העליון, אכן, הם  
רצחוהו בשפטו על כס המשפט.
- 1 Now behold, I will show unto you that they did not establish a king over the land; but in this same year, yea, the thirtieth year, they did destroy upon the judgment seat, yea, did murder the chief judge of the land.
- והעם נחלק זה על זה, והם נפרדו איש  
מעל רעהו והתפלגו לשבטים, איש לביתו  
ולמשפחתו ולידידיו; כה הם אבדו את  
ממשלת הארץ.
- 2 And the people were divided one against another; and they did separate one from another into tribes, every man according to his family and his kindred and friends; and thus they did destroy the government of the land.
- וכל שבט מנה לו ראש או מנהיג; וכה היו הם  
לשבטים ולראשי שבטים.
- 3 And every tribe did appoint a chief or a leader over them; and thus they became tribes and leaders of tribes.
- ולא היה בהם איש בלא משפחה גדולה  
ורב קרובים וידידים; על כן היו שבטיהם  
גדולים מאד.
- 4 Now behold, there was no man among them save he had much family and many kindreds and friends; therefore their tribes became exceedingly great.
- כל זה נעשה ולא היו עדין מלחמות ביניהם;  
וכל העוון הזה בא על העם כי נכנעו לכהן  
השטן.
- 5 Now all this was done, and there were no wars as yet among them; and all this iniquity had come upon the people because they did yield themselves unto the power of Satan.
- וסדרי הממשל אכן נהרסו מפני אגדת  
הסתרים אשר לידידי רוצחי הנביאים  
ולקרוביהם.
- 6 And the regulations of the government were destroyed, because of the secret combination of the friends and kindreds of those who murdered the prophets.
- כי הם זרעו ריב ומדון בארץ, עד כי חלק  
העם הצדיק הפך כמעט כלו לרשעים;  
אכן, רק צדיקים מעטים נותרו בהם.
- 7 And they did cause a great contention in the land, insomuch that the more righteous part of the people had nearly all become wicked; yea, there were but few righteous men among them.
- והנה, לא חלפו שש שנים ורב העם סר  
מצדקתם, ככלב שב על קאו, או כחזירה  
המתפלשת ברפש.
- 8 And thus six years had not passed away since the more part of the people had turned from their righteousness, like the dog to his vomit, or like the sow to her wallowing in the mire.

- 9 Now this secret combination, which had brought so great iniquity upon the people, did gather themselves together, and did place at their head a man whom they did call Jacob;
- 10 And they did call him their king; therefore he became a king over this wicked band; and he was one of the chiefest who had given his voice against the prophets who testified of Jesus.
- 11 And it came to pass that they were not so strong in number as the tribes of the people, who were united together save it were their leaders did establish their laws, every one according to his tribe; nevertheless they were enemies; notwithstanding they were not a righteous people, yet they were united in the hatred of those who had entered into a covenant to destroy the government.
- 12 Therefore, Jacob seeing that their enemies were more numerous than they, he being the king of the band, therefore he commanded his people that they should take their flight into the northernmost part of the land, and there build up unto themselves a kingdom, until they were joined by dissenters, (for he flattered them that there would be many dissenters) and they become sufficiently strong to contend with the tribes of the people; and they did so.
- 13 And so speedy was their march that it could not be impeded until they had gone forth out of the reach of the people. And thus ended the thirtieth year; and thus were the affairs of the people of Nephi.
- 14 And it came to pass in the thirty and first year that they were divided into tribes, every man according to his family, kindred and friends; nevertheless they had come to an agreement that they would not go to war one with another; but they were not united as to their laws, and their manner of government, for they were established according to the minds of those who were their chiefs and their leaders. But they did establish very strict laws that one tribe should not trespass against another, insomuch that in some degree they had peace in the land; nevertheless, their hearts were turned from the Lord their God, and they did stone the prophets and did cast them out from among them.
- 15 And it came to pass that Nephi—having been visited by angels and also the voice of the Lord, therefore having seen angels, and being eye-witness, and having had power given unto him that he might know concerning the ministry of Christ, and also being eye-witness to their quick return from righteousness unto their wickedness and abominations;
- וַאֲגַדְתָּ הַסִּתְרִים הָהֵא, אֲשֶׁר הִסְבֵּה אֲנִי כֹה גָדוֹל בָּעַם, הַתְּכַנְסָה וְהִעֲמִידָה בְּרֹאשָׁה אִישׁ אֲשֶׁר שְׁמוֹ נִקְרָא יַעֲקֹב.
- וְהֵם קָרְאוּהוּ מֶלֶכָם, וְהוּא הָיָה מֶלֶךְ עַל כְּנִפְיַת הָרָשָׁע הָהִיא; וְהוּא הָיָה אֶחָד מֵרָאשֵׁי אֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר נָתְנוּ קוֹלָם נֶגֶד הַנְּבִיאִים אֲשֶׁר הָעִידוּ עַל יֵשׁוּעַ.
- אֲדָּא אֲנִשֵּׁי הַכְּנִפָּה לֹא הָיוּ רַבִּים כְּעַם אֲשֶׁר בִּשְׁבָטִים, אֲשֶׁר הָיוּ מֵאַחָדִים, זֹלַת בְּחֻקֵּיהֶם אֲשֶׁר חֻקְקוּ כָּל מְנַהִיג, אִישׁ בְּעֵבֹר שְׁבָטוֹ. וְאַף כִּי הֵם הָיוּ אוֹיְבִים זֶה לָזֶה וְאַף כִּי לֹא הָיוּ עִם צִדִּיק, מֵאַחָדִים הָיוּ בְּשִׁנְאָתָם אֶת הַבָּאִים בְּבְרִית לְאַבְדֹת אֶת הַמִּמְשָׁל.
- לְכֹן, כְּרֹאוֹת יַעֲקֹב, מֶלֶךְ הַכְּנִפָּה, כִּי אוֹיְבָיו מְרַבִּים מֵאֲנָשָׁיו, הוּא צָוָם לָנוֹס אֶל יַרְכְּתִי צִפּוֹן הָאָרֶץ וּלְהִקִּים לָהֶם שָׁם מַמְלָכָה, עַד אֲשֶׁר יִתְחַבְּרוּ אֵלֵיהֶם פּוֹרְשִׁים, כִּי הוּא דִּבֶּר אֵלֵיהֶם חֲלָקוֹת בְּאִמְרוֹ כִּי יִרְבוּ הַפּוֹרְשִׁים, וְהַכְּנִפָּה תִּחְזַק דִּיּוּהָ לְהִתְנַגֵּד לְשִׁבְטֵי הָעָם. וְכֵן עָשׂוּ אֲנָשָׁיו.
- וְכֹה מְהִירָה הָיְתָה צֵעֲדָתָם, עַד כִּי לֹא נָתַן לְהַכְשִׁילָהּ, וְהֵם הִרְחִיקוּ מֵעֵבֶר לְהִשָּׁג יַד הָעָם. כֹּה כָלְתָה שְׁנַת שְׁלֹשִׁים וְכֹה הָיָה מִצַּב עֲנִינֵי עַם נְפִי.
- וּבְשָׁנַת שְׁלֹשִׁים וָאַחַת הָיָה הָעָם מְפֻלָּג לְשִׁבְטִים, אִישׁ לְבֵיתוֹ וּלְמִשְׁפַּחְתּוֹ וּלְיָדֵידָיו. עַל אֵף זֹאת, הֵם עָשׂוּ הֶסֶם שְׂלֵל לְהִלָּחֵם זֶה בָּזֶה. אֲדָּא בְּחֻקֵּיהֶם וּבְדַרְכֵי הַמִּמְשָׁל לֹא הָיוּ הֵם מֵאַחָדִים, כִּי אֵלֶּה נִכְוְנוּ כְּפִי דְעוֹת רָאשֵׁיהֶם וּמְנַהִיגֵיהֶם. וַיֵּעַן אֲשֶׁר הֵם חֻקְקוּ חֻקִּים חֲמוּרִים מְאֹד לְמַנַּע עֲבֻרוֹת שְׁבָט אֶחָד עַל מִשְׁנֵהוּ, הָיְתָה מִדָּה שֶׁל שְׁלוֹם בְּאָרֶץ. וְאוֹלָם, לָבָם סָר מֵעַם יְהוָה אֵלֵיהֶם וְהֵם סָקְלוּ נְבִיאִים בְּאִבָּנִים וּגְרִשׁוֹם מִתּוֹכָם.
- וְנְפִי, יָעַן אֲשֶׁר נָגְלוּ אֵלָיו מַלְאָכִים וְאַף שָׁמַע אֶת קוֹל יְהוָה, וַיֵּעַן אֲשֶׁר הוּא רָאָה מַלְאָכִים, וּבִהְיוֹתוֹ עַד רֹאֵיָהּ, כִּי כָח נָתַן לוֹ לְדַעַת עַל אוֹדוֹת שְׁלִיחוֹת הַמְּשִׁית, וַיֵּעַן אֲשֶׁר הוּא חָזָה בְּמוֹ עֵינָיו כִּי סָר הָעָם מִהֲרָה מִן הַצִּדִּיק אֶל רָשָׁעָתָם וְאֶל תּוֹעֲבוֹתֵיהֶם;

- 16 Therefore, being grieved for the hardness of their hearts and the blindness of their minds—went forth among them in that same year, and began to testify, boldly, repentance and remission of sins through faith on the Lord Jesus Christ.
- 17 And he did minister many things unto them; and all of them cannot be written, and a part of them would not suffice, therefore they are not written in this book. And Nephi did minister with power and with great authority.
- 18 And it came to pass that they were angry with him, even because he had greater power than they, for it were not possible that they could disbelieve his words, for so great was his faith on the Lord Jesus Christ that angels did minister unto him daily.
- 19 And in the name of Jesus did he cast out devils and unclean spirits; and even his brother did he raise from the dead, after he had been stoned and suffered death by the people.
- 20 And the people saw it, and did witness of it, and were angry with him because of his power; and he did also do many more miracles, in the sight of the people, in the name of Jesus.
- 21 And it came to pass that the thirty and first year did pass away, and there were but few who were converted unto the Lord; but as many as were converted did truly signify unto the people that they had been visited by the power and Spirit of God, which was in Jesus Christ, in whom they believed.
- 22 And as many as had devils cast out from them, and were healed of their sicknesses and their infirmities, did truly manifest unto the people that they had been wrought upon by the Spirit of God, and had been healed; and they did show forth signs also and did do some miracles among the people.
- 23 Thus passed away the thirty and second year also. And Nephi did cry unto the people in the commencement of the thirty and third year; and he did preach unto them repentance and remission of sins.
- 24 Now I would have you to remember also, that there were none who were brought unto repentance who were not baptized with water.
- 25 Therefore, there were ordained of Nephi, men unto this ministry, that all such as should come unto them should be baptized with water, and this as a witness and a testimony before God, and unto the people, that they had repented and received a remission of their sins.
- וַיִּהְיֶה עֲצָבוֹ עַל קָשִׁי לִבָּם וְעַל עֲוֹנוֹן דַּעְתָּם, לָכֵן הוּא יָצָא אֲלֵיהֶם בְּשָׁנָה הַהִיא, וַהֲחֵל לְהַעֲדִיד בְּעֹז רוּחַ עַל תְּשׁוּבָה וְעַל מַחִילַת חַטָּאִים עַל יְדֵי אַמּוּנָה בְּאֶדּוֹן יֵשׁוּעַ הַמָּשִׁיחַ.
- דְּבָרִים רַבִּים הוּא דָּרַשׁ לִפְנֵיהֶם; לֹא נִתָּן לְכַתֵּב אֶת כָּל דְּבָרָיו, וְחֵלְקָם לֹא יִסְפִּיק; עַל כֵּן הֵם אֵינִם כְּתוּבִים בְּסֵפֶר הַזֶּה. וְאוּלָּם, נָפִי אָבֹן דָּרַשׁ לִפְנֵיהֶם בְּעֹז וּבְתַקְוָה סִמְכוֹת.
- וְהָיָה כִּי כָעָסוּ עָלָיו הָאֲנָשִׁים, כִּי כָחוּ גִבּוֹר עַל כָּחֵם, וְהֵם לֹא יָכְלוּ שְׁלֹא לְהֶאֱמִין בְּדְבָרָיו; כִּי כֹה גְדוֹלָה הָיְתָה אַמּוּנָתוֹ בְּאֶדּוֹן יֵשׁוּעַ הַמָּשִׁיחַ, עַד כִּי מַלְאָכִים שִׁרְתוּהוּ מִדֵּי יוֹם בְּיוֹמוֹ.
- וּבְשֵׁם יֵשׁוּעַ הוּא גָרַשׁ שְׂדֵים וְרוּחוֹת טְמָאָה; וְאֵף אֶת אָחִיו הָעֵלָה מִן הַמּוֹתִים, אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר נִרְגַם בְּאֲבָנִים בְּיַד הָעָם עַד מוֹת.
- וְהָאֲנָשִׁים רָאוּ זֹאת וְהָעִידוּ עַל כֹּף, וְכָעָסוּ עָלָיו מִכֹּחַ כָּחוֹ. וְהוּא עָשָׂה נִסִּים נֹסְפִים רַבִּים בְּשֵׁם יֵשׁוּעַ לַעֲיֵי הָעָם.
- כֹּה חָלְפָה שְׁנַת שְׁלֹשִׁים וְאַחַת, וְרַק מְעַטִּים הָיוּ אֲשֶׁר הִפְכוּ מֵאֱמִינֵי יְהוָה; וְאוּלָּם כָּל אֶלֶה הָעִידוּ לָעָם כִּי אָבֹן פְּקָדוֹם כֹּחַ אֱלֹהִים וְרוּחוֹ אֲשֶׁר בְּיֵשׁוּעַ הַמָּשִׁיחַ, אֲשֶׁר בּוֹ הָאֱמִינּוּ.
- וְכָל אֲשֶׁר גָּרְשׁוּ מִתּוֹכָם שְׂדִים, וְאֲשֶׁר נִרְפְּאוּ מִמַּחֲלָתָם וּמִחֲלָשׁוֹת גּוֹפֵם, הִכְרִיזוּ בְּאֲזֵי הָעָם כִּי אָבֹן רוּחַ אֱלֹהִים פָּעֲלָה בָהֶם וְרָפָא לָהֶם; וְאֵף הֵם הִרְאוּ מוֹפְתִים וַעֲשׂוּ כְּמָה נִסִּים בְּקִרְבֵּי הָעָם.
- כֹּה חָלְפָה גַם שְׁנַת שְׁלֹשִׁים וּשְׁתַּיִם. וּבִרְאשִׁית שְׁנַת שְׁלֹשִׁים וְשֹׁלֶשׁ קָרָא נָפִי אֶל הָעָם וְהִסִּיף לָהֶם עַל תְּשׁוּבָה וְעַל מַחִילַת חַטָּאִים.
- וּרְצוֹנִי כִּי תִזְכְּרוּ כִּי לֹא הָיָה בָעָם אֵף אִישׁ אֶחָד אֲשֶׁר שָׁב מִרְעֻתוֹ וְלֹא הִטְבִּיל בְּמִים.
- לָכֵן הִסְמִיךְ נָפִי אֲנָשִׁים לְשִׁמּוֹשׁ בְּשִׁלְחוֹת הַזֹּאת, בְּעִבּוֹר יִטְבֵּל בְּמִים כָּל הַבָּא אֲלֵיהֶם, וְזֹאת כִּרְאָיָה וּכְעֵדוֹת, לִפְנֵי אֱלֹהִים וְאֶל הָעָם, כִּי הֵם שָׁבוּ מִרְעֻתָם וְנִמְחַל לָהֶם עַל חַטָּאֵיהֶם.

26 And there were many in the commencement of this year that were baptized unto repentance; and thus the more part of the year did pass away.

וּבִרְאשִׁית הַשָּׁנָה הַהִיא הָיוּ רַבִּים אֲשֶׁר הִטְבְּלוּ לַשֵּׁם תְּשׁוּבָה; וְכֵן חֲלָפָה מִרְבִּית הַשָּׁנָה.

## ח

## 8

1 And now it came to pass that according to our record, and we know our record to be true, for behold, it was a just man who did keep the record—for he truly did many miracles in the name of Jesus; and there was not any man who could do a miracle in the name of Jesus save he were cleansed every whit from his iniquity—

וְאֵלֶּה הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר בָּאוּ וְהָיוּ עַל פִּי כְּתָב זְכֵרֹנוֹתֵינוּ; וַיִּוָּדְעוּ אֲנַחְנוּ כִּי הִכְתוּב אִמְתָּהוּא, כִּי אִישׁ יֵשֶׁר כְּתָבָם, כִּי הוּא אָכֵן עָשָׂה נִסִּים רַבִּים בְּשֵׁם יֵשׁוּעַ; וְלֹא הָיָה אִף אָדָם אֶחָד אֲשֶׁר יָכֹל לַעֲשׂוֹת נִס בְּשֵׁם יֵשׁוּעַ, בְּלֹתִי אִם טָהַר מִכָּל שֹׁמֵץ עֲוֹן.

2 And now it came to pass, if there was no mistake made by this man in the reckoning of our time, the thirty and third year had passed away;

עַל כֵּן, אִם לֹא טָעָה הָאִישׁ בְּחִשּׁוֹב עֵתֵינוּ, חֲלָפָה שְׁנַת שְׁלֹשִׁים וְשָׁלֹשׁ.

3 And the people began to look with great earnestness for the sign which had been given by the prophet Samuel, the Lamanite, yea, for the time that there should be darkness for the space of three days over the face of the land.

וְהָעָם הָחֵל לְצַפּוֹת בְּכָבֵד רֹאשׁ לְאוֹת אֲשֶׁר נָתַן הַנְּבִיא שְׁמוּאֵל הַלְּמָנִי בְּדַבָּר עֵת אֲפֹלָה עַל פְּנֵי הָאָרֶץ בְּמִשְׁוֹךְ שְׁלֹשָׁה יָמִים.

4 And there began to be great doubtings and disputations among the people, notwithstanding so many signs had been given.

וּסְפָקוֹת וּנְכוּחִים גְּדוֹלִים הִתְעוֹרְרוּ בָּעָם, עַל אִף הָאוֹתוֹת הָרַבִּים אֲשֶׁר כָּבַר קָמוּ.

5 And it came to pass in the thirty and fourth year, in the first month, on the fourth day of the month, there arose a great storm, such an one as never had been known in all the land.

וְהָיָה בְּשְׁנַת שְׁלֹשִׁים וְאַרְבַּע, בְּאַרְבָּעָה לַחֹדֶשׁ הָרִאשׁוֹן, קָמָה סְעָרָה גְּדוֹלָה, אֲשֶׁר כְּמוֹהָ לֹא נִדְעָה מֵעוֹלָם בְּכָל הָאָרֶץ.

6 And there was also a great and terrible tempest; and there was terrible thunder, insomuch that it did shake the whole earth as if it was about to divide asunder.

וְאִף סוּפָה גְּדוֹלָה וְנוֹרָאָה בָּאָה, וְרַעַם אִים נִשְׁמַע, אֲשֶׁר הִחְרִיד אֶת כָּל הָאֲדָמָה כְּאִלּוּ עֹמְדָה הָאָרֶץ לְהִבָּקֵעַ.

7 And there were exceedingly sharp lightnings, such as never had been known in all the land.

וּבִרְקִים עֲזִים וּמְסֻנָּרִים הִבְרִיקוּ, אֲשֶׁר כְּמוֹתָם לֹא נִדְעוּ מֵעוֹלָם בְּכָל הָאָרֶץ.

8 And the city of Zarahemla did take fire.

וְאֵשׁ אֶחָזָה בָּעִיר זֶרַחֶמְלָה.

9 And the city of Moroni did sink into the depths of the sea, and the inhabitants thereof were drowned.

וְהָעִיר מוֹרוֹנִי שָׁקְעָה לְתוֹךְ מַעַמְקֵי הַיָּם, וְכָל יוֹשְׁבֵיהָ טָבְעוּ.

10 And the earth was carried up upon the city of Moroni, that in the place of the city there became a great mountain.

וְהָאֲדָמָה הִתְרומְמָה עַל הָעִיר מוֹרוֹנִיָּהָ, וּבִמְקוֹמָהּ הִתְנַשָּׂא הָר גְּדוֹל.

11 And there was a great and terrible destruction in the land southward.

וּבְאַרְץ הַדְּרוֹם הִתְחוּלַל חֲרָבָן גְּדוֹל וְנוֹרָא.

12 But behold, there was a more great and terrible destruction in the land northward; for behold, the whole face of the land was changed,

אֲדָּ חֲרָבָן גְּדוֹל וְנוֹרָא יוֹתֵר הָיָה בְּאַרְץ הַצָּפוֹן; כִּי הִנֵּה, כָּל פְּנֵי הָאָרֶץ הִשְׁתַּנּוּ מִפְּנֵי הַסּוּפָה.



- וְרוּחוֹת הַסַּעֲרָה וְהַרְעָמִים וְהַבְּרָקִים וְרַעֲדוֹת  
הָאֲדָמָה הָאֲדִירוֹת בְּכָל הָאָרֶץ.
- 13 And the highways were broken up, and the level roads were spoiled, and many smooth places became rough.
- וְהָיָה כִּי עָרִים גְּדוֹלוֹת וְנוֹדְעוֹת רַבּוֹת שָׁקְעוּ,  
וְרַבּוֹת אַחֲרוֹת נִשְׂרָפוּ, וְרַבּוֹת הִרְעָדוּ עַד אֲשֶׁר  
נָפְלוּ בְּתֵיחֵן אֶרְצָה וַיּוֹשְׁבֵיהֶן נִהְרָגוּ וּמִשְׁכָּנֹתָן  
נִוְתְּרוּ שׁוּמְמוֹת.
- 14 And many great and notable cities were sunk, and many were burned, and many were shaken till the buildings thereof had fallen to the earth, and the inhabitants thereof were slain, and the places were left desolate.
- וְהָיָה כִּי עָרִים אֲחָדוֹת נִשְׂאָרוּ עַל תֵּלָן,  
אֲךָ גְּדוֹל מְאֹד הָיָה הַנֶּזֶק אֲשֶׁר פָּגְעוּ,  
וְרַבִּים מִשׁוֹכְנֵיהֶן נִהְרָגוּ.
- 15 And there were some cities which remained; but the damage thereof was exceedingly great, and there were many of them who were slain.
- וְהָיוּ אֲנָשִׁים אֲשֶׁר נִשְׂאוּ בְּרוּחַ הַסַּעֲרָה;  
וְאִישׁ אֵינוֹ יוֹדֵעַ אֵימָה, זֹלָתָהּ כִּי נִשְׂאוּ  
הַלָּאָה מִמְּקוֹמָם.
- 16 And there were some who were carried away in the whirlwind; and whither they went no man knoweth, save they know that they were carried away.
- כֹּה נִשְׁחָתוּ פָּנֵי כָּל הָאֲדָמָה מִפְּנֵי הַסּוּפּוֹת  
וְהַרְעָמִים וְהַבְּרָקִים וְרַעֲדוֹת הָאֲדָמָה.
- 17 And thus the face of the whole earth became deformed, because of the tempests, and the thunderings, and the lightnings, and the quaking of the earth.
- וַהֲנֵה נִבְקְעוּ הַסֵּלְעִים; הֵם נִשְׁבְּרוּ  
עַל פָּנֵי כָּל הָאֲדָמָה, עַד כִּי נִמְצְאוּ מְפֹרָרִים,  
סְדוּקִים וּמִבְקָעִים עַל כָּל פָּנֵי הָאָרֶץ.
- 18 And behold, the rocks were rent in twain; they were broken up upon the face of the whole earth, insomuch that they were found in broken fragments, and in seams and in cracks, upon all the face of the land.
- וְהָיָה כַּאֲשֶׁר חָדְלוּ הַרְעָמִים וְהַבְּרָקִים,  
וְהַסַּעֲרָה וְהַסּוּפָה וְרַעֲדוֹת הָאֲדָמָה, וְהֵם  
נִמְשְׁכוּ כְּשֵׁלֶשׁ שָׁעוֹת, וְהָיוּ אֲשֶׁר אָמְרוּ כִּי  
אָרְכוּ מְאֹד; עַל אֵף זֹאת, כָּל הַדְּבָרִים  
הַגְּדוֹלִים וְהַנּוֹרָאִים הָאֵלֶּה נַעֲשׂוּ בְּמִשְׁךָ  
כְּשֵׁלֶשׁ שָׁעוֹת, וַהֲנֵה, אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר חָדְלוּ  
יִרְדָּה חֹשֶׁכָה עַל פָּנֵי הָאָרֶץ.
- 19 And it came to pass that when the thunderings, and the lightnings, and the storm, and the tempest, and the quakings of the earth did cease—for behold, they did last for about the space of three hours; and it was said by some that the time was greater; nevertheless, all these great and terrible things were done in about the space of three hours—and then behold, there was darkness upon the face of the land.
- וְהָיָה חֹשֶׁךְ כָּבֵד עַל כָּל פָּנֵי הָאָרֶץ, עַד כִּי  
יָכְלוּ יוֹשְׁבֵיהָ, אֲשֶׁר לֹא נָפְלוּ, לַחוֹשׁ אֶת  
עֶרְפְּלֵי הַחֹשֶׁכָה.
- 20 And it came to pass that there was thick darkness upon all the face of the land, insomuch that the inhabitants thereof who had not fallen could feel the vapor of darkness;
- וּמִפְּנֵי הַחֹשֶׁךְ לֹא יָכוֹל הָיָה לְהוֹיֹת אוֹר, לֹא  
בְּיָרֹת וְלֹא בְּפִנְסִים; וְאֵף לֹא יָכְלוּ הָאֲנָשִׁים  
לְהַדְלִיק אֵשׁ בְּעֵצֵיהֶם הַדְּקִים וְהַיָּבִשִׁים. כִּן  
לֹא נִמְצָא לָהֶם אוֹר כָּלל.
- 21 And there could be no light, because of the darkness, neither candles, neither torches; neither could there be fire kindled with their fine and exceedingly dry wood, so that there could not be any light at all;
- אָכֵן, כָּל אוֹר לֹא נִרְאָה, לֹא אֵשׁ וְלֹא זִיק, לֹא  
שָׁמֶשׁ וְלֹא יָרֵחַ וְלֹא כּוֹכָבִים; כֹּה גְּדוֹל הָיָה  
עֶרְפֶּל הַחֹשֶׁכָה אֲשֶׁר יָרַד עַל פָּנֵי הָאָרֶץ.
- 22 And there was not any light seen, neither fire, nor glimmer, neither the sun, nor the moon, nor the stars, for so great were the mists of darkness which were upon the face of the land.

- 23 And it came to pass that it did last for the space of three days that there was no light seen; and there was great mourning and howling and weeping among all the people continually; yea, great were the groanings of the people, because of the darkness and the great destruction which had come upon them.
- וְהָיָה כִּי לֹא נִרְאָה אֹר בְּמָשָׁךְ שְׁלֹשָׁה יָמִים.  
וְכָל הָעַתָּה הָיָה רַבּוֹ הָאֲבֵל וְהִיבָבָה וְהִבְכָּיָה  
בְּקֶרֶב כָּל הָעָם; אָכֵן, גְּדוּלָּה הָיְתָה נֶאֱקָת הָעָם  
מִפְּנֵי הַחֹשֶׁךְ וְהַחֲרָבָן הַגָּדוֹל אֲשֶׁר בָּא עֲלֵיהֶם.
- 24 And in one place they were heard to cry, saying: O that we had repented before this great and terrible day, and then would our brethren have been spared, and they would not have been burned in that great city Zarahemla.
- וּבְמָקוֹם אֶחָד נִשְׁמַע קוֹל זַעֲקָתָם לֵאמֹר:  
אֵהָה, אֱלֹהֵי שְׁבָנוּ מִרְעַתָּנוּ לִפְנֵי בּוֹא הַיּוֹם  
הַגָּדוֹל וְהַנּוֹרָא הַזֶּה, כִּי אִזְּ הָיוּ אַחֵינוּ נִצְלִים  
וְלֹא נִשְׂרָפִים בְּעִיר הַגְּדוֹלָה הַהִיא, זֶרַחֶמְלָה.
- 25 And in another place they were heard to cry and mourn, saying: O that we had repented before this great and terrible day, and had not killed and stoned the prophets, and cast them out; then would our mothers and our fair daughters, and our children have been spared, and not have been buried up in that great city Moronihah. And thus were the howlings of the people great and terrible.
- וּבְמָקוֹם אַחֵר נִשְׁמַע קוֹל זַעֲקָתָם וְאֲבָלָם לֵאמֹר:  
אֵהָה, אֱלֹהֵי שְׁבָנוּ מִרְעַתָּנוּ לִפְנֵי בּוֹא הַיּוֹם  
הַגָּדוֹל וְהַנּוֹרָא הַזֶּה, וְלֹא הִרְגָנוּ וְלֹא רָגַמְנוּ אֲבָן  
בְּנָבִיאִים וְלֹא גִרְשָׁנוּם מִתּוֹכָנוּ, כִּי אִזְּ הָיוּ  
אִמּוֹתֵינוּ וּבָנוֹתֵינוּ הַיְּפֹת וְיִלְדֵינוּ נִצְלִים, וְלֹא  
נִקְבְּרִים בְּתוֹךְ הָעִיר הַגְּדוֹלָה הַהִיא מוֹרוֹנִיָּה.  
הִנֵּה, כֹּה, גְּדוּלוֹת וְנוֹרָאוֹת הָיוּ יָבֻבוֹת הָעָם.

## ט

## 9

- 1 And it came to pass that there was a voice heard among all the inhabitants of the earth, upon all the face of this land, crying:
- אִזְּ נִשְׁמַע קוֹל בְּקֶרֶב כָּל יוֹשְׁבֵי הָאֲדָמָה, עַל  
פְּנֵי כָּל הָאָרֶץ הַזֹּאת, וְכֹה קָרָא:
- 2 Wo, wo, wo unto this people; wo unto the inhabitants of the whole earth except they shall repent; for the devil laugheth, and his angels rejoice, because of the slain of the fair sons and daughters of my people; and it is because of their iniquity and abominations that they are fallen!
- אֹי, אֹי, אֹי לָעָם הַזֶּה! אֹי לְיוֹשְׁבֵי תֵּבֶל  
כְּלָה, אִם לֹא יִשְׁוּבוּ מִרְעַתָּם; כִּי שׂוֹחֵק הַשָּׁטָן  
וּמְלָאכָיו שְׂשִׁים עַל הָרֶג בְּנֵי עַמִּי הַנָּאִים  
וּבָנוֹתֵיהֶם הַיְּפֹת; מִפְּנֵי עֲוֹנָם וְתוֹעֲבוֹתֵיהֶם  
בָּאָה עֲלֵיהֶם הַמַּפָּלָה הַזֹּאת.
- 3 Behold, that great city Zarahemla have I burned with fire, and the inhabitants thereof.
- הִנֵּה, אֵת הָעִיר הַגְּדוֹלָה זֶרַחֶמְלָה וְאֵת  
יוֹשְׁבֵיהָ אֲנִכִּי שָׂרַפְתִּי בָאֵשׁ.
- 4 And behold, that great city Moroni have I caused to be sunk in the depths of the sea, and the inhabitants thereof to be drowned.
- וְאֵת הָעִיר הַגְּדוֹלָה מוֹרוֹנִי אֲנִכִּי הִשְׁקַעְתִּי  
בְּמַעְמָקֵי הַיָּם וְאֵת יוֹשְׁבֵיהָ הִטְבַּעְתִּי.
- 5 And behold, that great city Moronihah have I covered with earth, and the inhabitants thereof, to hide their iniquities and their abominations from before my face, that the blood of the prophets and the saints shall not come any more unto me against them.
- וְאֵת הָעִיר הַגְּדוֹלָה מוֹרוֹנִיָּה וְאֵת יוֹשְׁבֵיהָ  
אֲנִכִּי כִסִּיתִי בְּעָפָר, לְהַסְתִּיר מִפְּנֵי אֵת  
עֲוֹנוֹתֵיהֶם וְאֵת תוֹעֲבוֹתֵיהֶם לְבֵל יוֹסִיף דָּם  
הַנָּבִיאִים וְהַקְדוּשִׁים לָבוֹא אֵלַי כְּנִגְדָם.
- 6 And behold, the city of Gilgal have I caused to be sunk, and the inhabitants thereof to be buried up in the depths of the earth;
- וְאֵת הָעִיר גִּלְגָל אֲנִכִּי הִשְׁקַעְתִּי, וְאֵת יוֹשְׁבֵיהָ  
קִבַּרְתִּי בְּמַעְמָקֵי הָאֲדָמָה.
- 7 Yea, and the city of Onihah and the inhabitants thereof, and the city of Mocum and the inhabitants thereof, and the city of Jerusalem and the
- וְכִמּוֹ כֵּן הִשְׁקַעְתִּי אֵת הָעִיר אוֹנִיָּה וְאֵת  
יוֹשְׁבֵיהָ, וְאֵת הָעִיר מוֹקוּם וְאֵת יוֹשְׁבֵיהָ, וְאֵת

הָעִיר יְרוּשָׁלַם וְאֶת יוֹשְׁבֶיהָ; וּמִים הָעֲלִיתִי  
עָלֵיהֶם, לְהַסְתִּיר מִפְּנֵי אֶת רְשָׁעָתָם וְאֶת  
תּוֹעֲבוֹתֵיהֶם לְבַל יוֹסִיף דָּם הַנְּבִיאִים  
וְהַקְדוּשִׁים לָבוֹא אֵלַי כְּנִגְדָם.

וְאֶת הָעִיר גָּדִיאַנְדִּי וְאֶת הָעִיר גָּדִיּוֹמְנָה  
וְאֶת הָעִיר יַעֲקֹב וְאֶת הָעִיר גִּמְגִּימְנוֹ, אֶת כָּל  
אֵלֶּה אֲנִכִּי הִשְׁקַעְתִּי, וּבְמִקְוֵי הַקְּמָתִי גִבְעוֹת  
וְעַמְקִים; וְאֶת יוֹשְׁבֶיהָ קִבַּרְתִּי בְּמַעַמְקֵי  
הָאֲדָמָה, לְהַסְתִּיר מִפְּנֵי אֶת רְשָׁעָתָם וְאֶת  
תּוֹעֲבוֹתֵיהֶם לְבַל יוֹסִיף דָּם הַנְּבִיאִים  
וְהַקְדוּשִׁים לָבוֹא אֵלַי כְּנִגְדָם.

וְאֶת הָעִיר הַגְּדוֹלָה יַעֲקֹבֻגַּת, אֲשֶׁר יוֹשְׁבֶיהָ  
הָיוּ אֲנָשֵׁי הַמֶּלֶךְ יַעֲקֹב, שְׂרָפְתִּי בָאֵשׁ. מִפְּנֵי  
חַטָּאֵיהֶם וְרְשָׁעָתָם, אֲשֶׁר גָּדְלוּ מִרְשָׁעַת  
כָּל הָאָרֶץ, מִפְּנֵי רִצְחוֹתֵיהֶם בְּמִסְתָּרִים  
וְאֲגֻדוֹתֵיהֶם הַחֲשָׁאִיוֹת, כִּי הֵם אֲשֶׁר הִפְּרוּ אֶת  
שְׁלוֹת עַמִּי וְהָרְסוּ אֶת מַמְשַׁל הָאָרֶץ. עַל כֵּן  
שְׂרָפְתִּים בָּאֵשׁ לְהַשְׁמִיד מִלְּפָנַי, לְבַל יוֹסִיף  
דָּם הַנְּבִיאִים וְהַקְדוּשִׁים לָבוֹא אֵלַי כְּנִגְדָם.

וְאֶת הָעִיר לָמָן, וְאֶת הָעִיר יוֹשׁ וְאֶת הָעִיר  
גָּד וְאֶת הָעִיר קִישְׁקוּמֵן וְאֶת יוֹשְׁבֵיהֶן שְׂרָפְתִּי  
בָּאֵשׁ, עַל כִּי הָרְעוּ בְּגִרְשָׁם אֶת הַנְּבִיאִים,  
וְעַל כִּי סָקְלוּ אֶת אֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר שְׁלַחְתִּי לְהוֹדִיעֵם  
אֶת דְּבַר רְשָׁעָתָם וְתּוֹעֲבוֹתֵיהֶם.

וַיֵּעַן אֲשֶׁר גִּרְשׁוּ אֶת כָּלֶם, עַד כִּי לֹא הָיָה  
בָּהֶם אִף אִישׁ צָדִיק אֶחָד, הוֹרְדָתִי אֵשׁ עָלֵיהֶם  
וְהִשְׁמַדְתִּים בְּעֶבּוֹר הַסְּתִיר אֶת רְשָׁעָתָם  
וְתּוֹעֲבוֹתֵיהֶם מִפְּנֵי, לְבַל יֵצֵעַ אֵלַי מִן הָאֲדָמָה  
דָּם הַנְּבִיאִים וְהַקְדוּשִׁים אֲשֶׁר שְׁלַחְתִּי בְּקִרְבָם  
וַיִּקְרָא כְּנִגְדָם.

חֲרָבָן וְכִלְיוֹן רַב שְׁלַחְתִּי עַל הָאָרֶץ הַזֹּאת וְעַל  
הָעָם הַזֶּה, מִפְּנֵי רְשָׁעָתָם וְתּוֹעֲבוֹתֵיהֶם.

הוּא, אַתֶּם אֲשֶׁר נִצַּלְתֶּם בְּעֶבּוֹר הַיּוֹתָכֶם  
צָדִיקִים מֵהֶם, הֲלֹא תָשׁוּבוּ עִתָּה אֵלַי,  
וְתִנָּחְמוּ עַל חַטָּאֵיכֶם וְתִהְיֶיכֶם לְמַאֲמִינִים  
לְמַעַן אֲרַפְּאֶכֶם?

אָכֵן אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם: אִם תָּבוֹאוּ אֵלַי, יִהְיֶה  
לָכֶם חַיִּי עוֹלָם. הִנֵּה פֶשֶׁטָה אֲלִיכֶם זֶרֹעַ  
רַחֲמִי, וְכָל אֲשֶׁר יָבוֹא אֶקְבָּלֵנוּ; וּבְרוּכִים הֵם  
הַבָּאִים אֵלַי.

inhabitants thereof; and waters have I caused to come up in the stead thereof, to hide their wickedness and abominations from before my face, that the blood of the prophets and the saints shall not come up any more unto me against them.

8 And behold, the city of Gadiandi, and the city of Gadiomnah, and the city of Jacob, and the city of Gimgimno, all these have I caused to be sunk, and made hills and valleys in the places thereof; and the inhabitants thereof have I buried up in the depths of the earth, to hide their wickedness and abominations from before my face, that the blood of the prophets and the saints should not come up any more unto me against them.

9 And behold, that great city Jacobugath, which was inhabited by the people of king Jacob, have I caused to be burned with fire because of their sins and their wickedness, which was above all the wickedness of the whole earth, because of their secret murders and combinations; for it was they that did destroy the peace of my people and the government of the land; therefore I did cause them to be burned, to destroy them from before my face, that the blood of the prophets and the saints should not come up unto me any more against them.

10 And behold, the city of Laman, and the city of Josh, and the city of Gad, and the city of Kishkumen, have I caused to be burned with fire, and the inhabitants thereof, because of their wickedness in casting out the prophets, and stoning those whom I did send to declare unto them concerning their wickedness and their abominations.

11 And because they did cast them all out, that there were none righteous among them, I did send down fire and destroy them, that their wickedness and abominations might be hid from before my face, that the blood of the prophets and the saints whom I sent among them might not cry unto me from the ground against them.

12 And many great destructions have I caused to come upon this land, and upon this people, because of their wickedness and their abominations.

13 O all ye that are spared because ye were more righteous than they, will ye not now return unto me, and repent of your sins, and be converted, that I may heal you?

14 Yea, verily I say unto you, if ye will come unto me ye shall have eternal life. Behold, mine arm of mercy is extended towards you, and whosoever will come, him will I receive; and blessed are those who come unto me.

- 15 Behold, I am Jesus Christ the Son of God. I created the heavens and the earth, and all things that in them are. I was with the Father from the beginning. I am in the Father, and the Father in me; and in me hath the Father glorified his name.
- הִנְנִי יֵשׁוּעַ הַמָּשִׁיחַ, בֶּן אֱלֹהִים. אֲנִכִּי בְרָאתִי אֶת הַשָּׁמַיִם וְאֶת הָאָרֶץ וְאֶת כָּל אֲשֶׁר בָּם. מִבְּרֵאשִׁית הָיִיתִי עִם אָבִי. אֲנִי בְּאָבִי וְאָבִי בִּי; וּבִי פָאֵר אָבִי אֶת שְׁמוֹ.
- 16 I came unto my own, and my own received me not. And the scriptures concerning my coming are fulfilled.
- בָּאתִי אֶל אֲשֶׁר לִי וְאֲשֶׁר לִי לֹא קִבְּלוּנִי; וּכְתָבֵי הַקִּדְשׁ הַמְדַּבְּרִים עַל בּוֹאִי קִיְמוּ.
- 17 And as many as have received me, to them have I given to become the sons of God; and even so will I to as many as shall believe on my name, for behold, by me redemption cometh, and in me is the law of Moses fulfilled.
- וְכָל אֲשֶׁר קִבְּלוּנִי, נָתַתִּי לָהֶם לִהְיוֹת בָּנִים לְאֱלֹהִים; וְכֵן אֶעֱשֶׂה לְכָל אֲשֶׁר יֵאֱמִינוּ בְּשִׁמִּי; כִּי הִנֵּה, מֵאֲתִי בָּאָה הַגְּאֻלָּה וּבִי מִקִּיַּמַּת תּוֹרַת מֹשֶׁה.
- 18 I am the light and the life of the world. I am Alpha and Omega, the beginning and the end.
- אֲנִי אוֹר הָעוֹלָם וְחַיּוֹ. אֲנִי אֶלֶף וְתֵי, רֵאשִׁית וְאַחֲרִית.
- 19 And ye shall offer up unto me no more the shedding of blood; yea, your sacrifices and your burnt offerings shall be done away, for I will accept none of your sacrifices and your burnt offerings.
- לֹא תִקְרִיבוּ לִי עוֹד שְׁפִיכוֹת דָּמִים; אַכֵּן, קְרִבְנוֹתֵיכֶם וְעוֹלוֹתֵיכֶם חָדוֹל יִחְדְּלוּ, כִּי לֹא אֶקְבֹּל מִכֶּם כָּל קְרָבָן וְעוֹלָה.
- 20 And ye shall offer for a sacrifice unto me a broken heart and a contrite spirit. And whoso cometh unto me with a broken heart and a contrite spirit, him will I baptize with fire and with the Holy Ghost, even as the Lamanites, because of their faith in me at the time of their conversion, were baptized with fire and with the Holy Ghost, and they knew it not.
- לֵב נִשְׁבָּר וְרוּחַ נִכְאָה יִהְיוּ הַקְּרָבָן אֲשֶׁר תִּקְרִיבוּ לִי. וְכָל אֲשֶׁר בָּא אֵלַי בְּלֵב שִׁבּוֹר וּבְרוּחַ נִכְאָה, אוֹתוֹ אֶטְבִּיל בָּאֵשׁ וּבְרוּחַ הַקִּדְשׁ, אַכֵּן כָּל־מִנִּים, אֲשֶׁר מִפְּנֵי אֱמוּנָתָם בִּי בָּעַת אֲשֶׁר הִפְכוּ לְמֵאֲמִינִים, הִטְבְּלוּ בָּאֵשׁ וּבְרוּחַ הַקִּדְשׁ, וְהֵם לֹא יָדְעוּ זֹאת.
- 21 Behold, I have come unto the world to bring redemption unto the world, to save the world from sin.
- הִנֵּה, בָּאתִי אֶל הָעוֹלָם לְהַבִּיא גְּאֻלָּה לְעוֹלָם, לְהוֹשִׁיעוֹ מִחַטָּאָה.
- 22 Therefore, whoso repenteth and cometh unto me as a little child, him will I receive, for of such is the kingdom of God. Behold, for such I have laid down my life, and have taken it up again; therefore repent, and come unto me ye ends of the earth, and be saved.
- לְכֵן, כָּל הַשֹּׁב מִרְעֵתוֹ וּבָא אֵלַי כִּי־לֶד קָטָן, אוֹתוֹ אֶקְבֹּל, כִּי מַלְכוּת אֱלֹהִים הִנֵּה מִכְּאֵלָה. הֵן לְמַעַן כְּאֵלָה נָתַתִּי אֶת חַיִּי וּלְקַחְתִּים לִי שֵׁנִית. עַל כֵּן, שׁוּבוּ וּבּוֹאוּ אֵלַי, אֲפָסִי אֶרֶץ, וְהוֹשְׁעוּ.

## י

## 10

- 1 And now behold, it came to pass that all the people of the land did hear these sayings, and did witness of it. And after these sayings there was silence in the land for the space of many hours;
- וְהִנֵּה, כָּל אַנְשֵׁי הָאָרֶץ שָׁמְעוּ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה וְהָיוּ עֵדִים לָהֶם. וְהָיָה אַחֵר הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה הַשְׁתָּרַר שָׁקֶט בָּאָרֶץ בְּמִשְׁוֹ שְׁעוֹת רַבּוֹת.
- 2 For so great was the astonishment of the people that they did cease lamenting and howling for the loss of their kindred which had been slain; therefore there was silence in all the land for the space of many hours.
- כִּי כֹה גְדוֹלָה הָיְתָה הַשְׁתּוֹמְמוֹת הָעָם, עַד כִּי הֵם חָדְלוּ לְקוֹנֵן וּלְיִלֵּל עַל אֲבִדוֹן בְּנֵי מִשְׁפַּחְתָּם אֲשֶׁר נִהָרְגוּ. עַל כֵּן נִמְשַׁח הַשָּׁקֶט בְּכָל הָאָרֶץ שְׁעוֹת רַבּוֹת.

- 3 And it came to pass that there came a voice again unto the people, and all the people did hear, and did witness of it, saying:
- 4 O ye people of these great cities which have fallen, who are descendants of Jacob, yea, who are of the house of Israel, how oft have I gathered you as a hen gathereth her chickens under her wings, and have nourished you.
- 5 And again, how oft would I have gathered you as a hen gathereth her chickens under her wings, yea, O ye people of the house of Israel, who have fallen; yea, O ye people of the house of Israel, ye that dwell at Jerusalem, as ye that have fallen; yea, how oft would I have gathered you as a hen gathereth her chickens, and ye would not.
- 6 O ye house of Israel whom I have spared, how oft will I gather you as a hen gathereth her chickens under her wings, if ye will repent and return unto me with full purpose of heart.
- 7 But if not, O house of Israel, the places of your dwellings shall become desolate until the time of the fulfilling of the covenant to your fathers.
- 8 And now it came to pass that after the people had heard these words, behold, they began to weep and howl again because of the loss of their kindred and friends.
- 9 And it came to pass that thus did the three days pass away. And it was in the morning, and the darkness dispersed from off the face of the land, and the earth did cease to tremble, and the rocks did cease to rend, and the dreadful groanings did cease, and all the tumultuous noises did pass away.
- 10 And the earth did cleave together again, that it stood; and the mourning, and the weeping, and the wailing of the people who were spared alive did cease; and their mourning was turned into joy, and their lamentations into the praise and thanksgiving unto the Lord Jesus Christ, their Redeemer.
- 11 And thus far were the scriptures fulfilled which had been spoken by the prophets.
- 12 And it was the more righteous part of the people who were saved, and it was they who received the prophets and stoned them not; and it was they who had not shed the blood of the saints, who were spared—
- וְקוֹל נִשְׁמָע שֵׁנִית בְּאָזְנֵי הָעָם, וְכָל הָאֲנָשִׁים שָׁמְעוּהוּ וְהָיוּ עֵדִים לוֹ, וְכֵן אָמַר:
- הוּא, אֲנָשֵׁי הָעָרִים הַגְּדוֹלוֹת הָאֵלֶּה, אֲשֶׁר נָפְלוּ, אֲשֶׁר צִאֲצָאִי יַעֲקֹב אֹתָם, אֲכֹן, אֲשֶׁר מִבֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל הֵנֶכֶם! עַד כִּמָּה קִבְּצָתִיכֶם כְּקִבֵּץ תְּרַנְּגֶלֶת אֶת אֶפְרוֹחֶיהָ תַּחַת כְּנָפֶיהָ וְכִלְכִּלְתִּיכֶם.
- וְמָה הִפְצָתִי לְקִבֵּץ אֹתְכֶם כְּקִבֵּץ תְּרַנְּגֶלֶת אֶת אֶפְרוֹחֶיהָ תַּחַת כְּנָפֶיהָ, אֵהָא, אֲנִשֵּׁי בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל, אֲשֶׁר נָפְלֹתֶם; אֵהָא, אֲנִשֵּׁי בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל, אֹתָם הַשּׁוֹכְנִים בִּירוּשָׁלַם, כִּי אֲשֶׁר אֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר נָפְלֹתֶם; מָה הִפְצָתִי לְקִבֵּץ אֹתְכֶם כְּקִבֵּץ תְּרַנְּגֶלֶת אֶת אֶפְרוֹחֶיהָ, וְלֹא אֲבִיתֶם.
- אֵהָא, בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל אֲשֶׁר חֲסִיתִי עֲלֵיכֶם, כִּמָּה אֲחַפֵּץ לְקִבֵּץ אֹתְכֶם כְּקִבֵּץ תְּרַנְּגֶלֶת אֶת אֶפְרוֹחֶיהָ תַּחַת כְּנָפֶיהָ, אִם תִּנָּחֲמוּ עַל חַטֹּאתֵיכֶם וְתָשׁוּבוּ אֵלַי בְּלֵב שָׁלֵם.
- אֲדָּא אִם לֹא כֵן, בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל, יִהְיוּ מִשְׁכְּנוֹתֵיכֶם לְשִׁמְמָה עַד עֵת קִיּוֹם הַבְּרִית לְאַבּוֹתֵיכֶם.
- וְהָיָה אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר שָׁמְעוּ הָעָם אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, הֵם הוֹסִיפוּ לִבְכּוֹת וּלְיִלֵּל עַל אֲבִדַּן בְּנֵי מִשְׁפַּחְתָּם וַיִּדְּיָהֶם.
- כֵּן חָלְפוּ שְׁלֹשֶׁת הַיָּמִים. וְהָיָה זֶה בִּבְקָר הַיּוֹם; וְנִמְוָה הַחֹשֶׁכָה מֵעַל פְּנֵי הָאָרֶץ וְהָאֲדָמָה חָדְלָה מִרַעְדָּהּ, וְהַסֵּלְעִים חָדְלוּ מִהִתְפֹּרֵר, וְהַשָּׂאוֹן הָאִים פָּסַק, וְכָל קוֹלוֹת הַהִמָּלָה שָׁקְטוּ.
- וְהָאֲדָמָה שָׁבָה וְהִתְאַחַתָּה וְעָמְדָה מִנּוּעָה; אֲזַי שָׁבְתוּ הַמִּסְפָּד וְהַבְּכִי וְנָהִי הָאֲנָשִׁים אֲשֶׁר נָצְלוּ מִמּוֹת. וְאַבְלָם הִפָּךְ לְשִׂשׁוֹן וּמִסְפָּדָם לְתִהֲלָה וּלְהוֹדָיָה לְאֲדוֹן יֵשׁוּעַ הַמָּשִׁיחַ, גּוֹאֲלָם.
- עַד כֵּן הִתְקַיְּמוּ דְבָרֵי כְּתָבֵי הַקֹּדֶשׁ אֲשֶׁר נִבְּאוּ הַנְּבִיאִים.
- וְהַנְּצוּלִים הָיוּ הַצְדִּיקִים אֲשֶׁר בָּעָם. הֵם אֲשֶׁר קִבְּלוּ אֶת הַנְּבִיאִים וְלֹא רָגְמוּם, וְהֵם אֲשֶׁר לֹא שָׁפְכוּ אֶת דַּם הַקְּדוֹשִׁים.



- 13 And they were spared and were not sunk and buried up in the earth; and they were not drowned in the depths of the sea; and they were not burned by fire, neither were they fallen upon and crushed to death; and they were not carried away in the whirlwind; neither were they overpowered by the vapor of smoke and of darkness.
- 14 And now, whoso readeth, let him understand; he that hath the scriptures, let him search them, and see and behold if all these deaths and destructions by fire, and by smoke, and by tempests, and by whirlwinds, and by the opening of the earth to receive them, and all these things are not unto the fulfilling of the prophecies of many of the holy prophets.
- 15 Behold, I say unto you, Yea, many have testified of these things at the coming of Christ, and were slain because they testified of these things.
- 16 Yea, the prophet Zenos did testify of these things, and also Zenock spake concerning these things, because they testified particularly concerning us, who are the remnant of their seed.
- 17 Behold, our father Jacob also testified concerning a remnant of the seed of Joseph. And behold, are not we a remnant of the seed of Joseph? And these things which testify of us, are they not written upon the plates of brass which our father Lehi brought out of Jerusalem?
- 18 And it came to pass that in the ending of the thirty and fourth year, behold, I will show unto you that the people of Nephi who were spared, and also those who had been called Lamanites, who had been spared, did have great favors shown unto them, and great blessings poured out upon their heads, insomuch that soon after the ascension of Christ into heaven he did truly manifest himself unto them—
- 19 Showing his body unto them, and ministering unto them; and an account of his ministry shall be given hereafter. Therefore for this time I make an end of my sayings.
- וְהֵם נִוְתְּרוּ בַּחַיִּים וְלֹא שָׁקְעוּ לְתַחֲתֵית הָאֲדָמָה  
לְהִקָּבֵר בָּהּ; וְהֵם לֹא טָבְעוּ בְּמַעְמְקֵי הַיָּם, וְלֹא  
נִשְׂרְפוּ בָּאֵשׁ, וְלֹא נִמְחַצּוּ לְמוֹת בְּמַפּוּלוֹת,  
וְלֹא נִשָּׂאוּ הַרְחָק בְּרוּחַ הַסְּעָרָה, וְאִף לֹא  
הִכְרַעוּ עַל יְדֵי עָרְפְּלֵי הָעָשָׁן וְהַחֹשֶׁכָה.
- וְעַתָּה, כָּל הַקּוֹרֵא זֹאת יִבִּין נָא, וְכָל אִשֶּׁר  
לוֹ כְּתָבִי הַקֹּדֶשׁ יַחְקֹר נָא בָּהֶם, וְיִרְאֶה וְיִזְכֹּחַ  
אִם כָּל הַמִּיתוֹת הָאֵלֶּה, וְהַחֲרָבֹן בָּאֵשׁ וּבָעָשָׁן  
וּבְסוּפּוֹת וּבְרוּחוֹת סְעָרָה וּבַפְּתִיחַת פִּי  
הָאֲדָמָה לְבָלֵעַ אֶת הָאֲנָשִׁים וְכָל הַדְּבָרִים  
הָאֵלֶּה לֹא בָּאוּ כְּקִיּוֹם נְבוֹאוֹת אֲשֶׁר לְרַבִּים  
מִן הַנְּבִיאִים הַקְּדוּשִׁים.
- הִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם כִּי רַבִּים הָעִידוּ כִּי יָקוּמוּ  
הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה לְעֵת בּוֹא הַמָּשִׁיחַ, וְהֵם  
הוּמָתוּ עַל הָעֵידוּם זֹאת.
- הַנְּבִיא זֵנוֹס הָעִיד עַל הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה וְאִף  
זֵנוֹק דִּבֶּר עַל אוֹדוּתֵיהֶם, כִּי הֵם הָעִידוּ עַל  
הַדְּבָרִים הַנּוֹגְעִים לָנוּ בְּפָרֶט, בְּאִשֶּׁר אֲנִחנוּ  
שְׂאֵרֵית זְרַעֲם.
- הִנֵּה, אִף יַעֲקֹב אֲבִינוּ הָעִיד בְּדִבְרֵי שְׂאֵרֵית  
בֵּית יוֹסֵף. וְהֵאֵין אֲנִחנוּ שְׂאֵרֵית בֵּית יוֹסֵף?  
הֵאֵין הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, הַמְּעִידִים עָלֵינוּ,  
כְּתוּבִים עַל לוחוֹת נְחֹשֶׁת הַקֶּלֶל, אֲשֶׁר  
אֲבִינוּ, לְחִי, הוֹצִיָאָם מִירוּשָׁלַם?
- וְאֲנִי אֶרְאֶה לָכֶם כִּי בְּאַחֲרִית שְׁנַת שְׁלֹשִׁים  
וְאַרְבַּע הָרְאוּ חֻסְדִּים גְּדוֹלִים לְאֲנָשֵׁי נְפִי אֲשֶׁר  
נִצְּלוּ, וְכֹן לְאֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר נִקְרְאוּ פַעַם לְמָנִים  
וְאֲשֶׁר נִוְתְּרוּ בַּחַיִּים, וְעַל רֹאשָׁם יָרַד שֹׁפַע  
בְּרָכוֹת, עַד כִּי בְּמַהֲרָה לְאַחַר עֲלוֹת הַמָּשִׁיחַ  
הַשְּׁמַיָּמָה, הוּא אָכֵן הִתְגַּלָּה לְעֵינֵיהֶם.
- וְהוּא הָרְאָה לָהֶם אֶת גּוּפוֹ וְשָׁמַשׁ לְפָנֵיהֶם;  
וְסִפּוֹר מַעֲשֵׂה שְׁמִשּׁוֹתָיו וְסִפּוֹר בְּהִמְשָׁךְ  
הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה. לָכֵן אֲנִי מְסַיֵּם, לְפִי שְׁעָה,  
אֶת דִּבְרֵי.

ישוע המשיח מראה עצמו לעם נפי ומשמש  
לפניהם, בעוד ההמונים מתקבצים בארץ רב-  
שפע (בערך 34 לספירה). נכלל בפרקים יא-כו.

Jesus Christ shows himself to the people of Nephi and ministers to them as  
the multitude is gathered together in the land Bountiful. (About A.D. 34.)  
Comprising chapters 11–26.

## יא

## 11

- והיה המון רב מעם נפי מתקבץ ליד בית  
המקדש אשר בארץ רב-שפע. והם הביעו  
את תמיהתם ואת השתוממותם איש עם  
רעהו, והשיחו זה לזה בדבר התמורה  
הגדולה והנפלאה אשר ארעה.
- הם גם שוחחו על ישוע המשיח, אשר על  
מותו נתן אות ומופת.
- והיה בעודם שוחים זה עם זה, הם שמעו קול  
אשר בא כאלו ממרום. והם נשאו עיניהם  
סביב, כי לא הבינו את הקול אשר שמעו.  
והקול לא היה קשה ואף לא רם; ואולם, אף  
כי היה הקול חרישי, הוא חדר בקרב אלה  
אשר שמעוהו, עד כי לא נותר אף איבר אחד  
בכל גוף אשר לא החרר. אכן, הקול חדר  
בקרבם עד עצם נשמתם והצית את לבבם.
- והם שמעו את הקול שנית, אף לא הבינוהו.
- והם אף שמעו את הקול בפעם השלישית,  
והם פתחו את אזניהם לשמעו בפנותם את  
עיניהם אל עברו, ובהישרם את מבטם  
השמימה, כי משם בא הקול.
- והנה, בפעם השלישית הם הבינו את הקול  
הנשמע באזניהם, וכוה אמר אליהם:
- ראו את בני אהובי, אשר בו רציתי, אשר בו  
פארתי את שמי. שמעו אותו!
- והיה כאשר הבינו, הם נשאו עיניהם שנית  
השמימה; והנה איש יורד ממרום, והוא  
לובש שמלה לבנה. והוא ירד ועמד בקרבם;  
ועיני כל ההמון הפנו אליו, והם לא העזו  
לפצות פיהם, ואף לא דברו זה אל זה; והם  
לא ידעו את פשר הדבר, ען אשר סברו כי  
הופיע אליהם מלאך אלהים.
- 1 And now it came to pass that there were a great multitude gathered  
together, of the people of Nephi, round about the temple which was in  
the land Bountiful; and they were marveling and wondering one with  
another, and were showing one to another the great and marvelous  
change which had taken place.
- 2 And they were also conversing about this Jesus Christ, of whom the  
sign had been given concerning his death.
- 3 And it came to pass that while they were thus conversing one with  
another, they heard a voice as if it came out of heaven; and they cast  
their eyes round about, for they understood not the voice which  
they heard; and it was not a harsh voice, neither was it a loud voice;  
nevertheless, and notwithstanding it being a small voice it did pierce  
them that did hear to the center, insomuch that there was no part of  
their frame that it did not cause to quake; yea, it did pierce them to the  
very soul, and did cause their hearts to burn.
- 4 And it came to pass that again they heard the voice, and they understood  
it not.
- 5 And again the third time they did hear the voice, and did open their  
ears to hear it; and their eyes were towards the sound thereof; and they  
did look steadfastly towards heaven, from whence the sound came.
- 6 And behold, the third time they did understand the voice which they  
heard; and it said unto them:
- 7 Behold my Beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased, in whom I have  
glorified my name—hear ye him.
- 8 And it came to pass, as they understood they cast their eyes up again  
towards heaven; and behold, they saw a Man descending out of heaven;  
and he was clothed in a white robe; and he came down and stood in  
the midst of them; and the eyes of the whole multitude were turned  
upon him, and they durst not open their mouths, even one to another,  
and wist not what it meant, for they thought it was an angel that had  
appeared unto them.

- 9 And it came to pass that he stretched forth his hand and spake unto the people, saying:
- 10 Behold, I am Jesus Christ, whom the prophets testified shall come into the world.
- 11 And behold, I am the light and the life of the world; and I have drunk out of that bitter cup which the Father hath given me, and have glorified the Father in taking upon me the sins of the world, in the which I have suffered the will of the Father in all things from the beginning.
- 12 And it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words the whole multitude fell to the earth; for they remembered that it had been prophesied among them that Christ should show himself unto them after his ascension into heaven.
- 13 And it came to pass that the Lord spake unto them saying:
- 14 Arise and come forth unto me, that ye may thrust your hands into my side, and also that ye may feel the prints of the nails in my hands and in my feet, that ye may know that I am the God of Israel, and the God of the whole earth, and have been slain for the sins of the world.
- 15 And it came to pass that the multitude went forth, and thrust their hands into his side, and did feel the prints of the nails in his hands and in his feet; and this they did do, going forth one by one until they had all gone forth, and did see with their eyes and did feel with their hands, and did know of a surety and did bear record, that it was he, of whom it was written by the prophets, that should come.
- 16 And when they had all gone forth and had witnessed for themselves, they did cry out with one accord, saying:
- 17 Hosanna! Blessed be the name of the Most High God! And they did fall down at the feet of Jesus, and did worship him.
- 18 And it came to pass that he spake unto Nephi (for Nephi was among the multitude) and he commanded him that he should come forth.
- 19 And Nephi arose and went forth, and bowed himself before the Lord and did kiss his feet.
- 20 And the Lord commanded him that he should arise. And he arose and stood before him.
- וְהוּא נָטָה אֶת יָדוֹ וַדְּבַר אֶל הָעָם לֵאמֹר:
- הִנְנִי יֵשׁוּעַ הַמָּשִׁיחַ, אֲשֶׁר הַנְּבִיאִים הֵעִידוּ כִּי אָבוֹא אֶל הָעוֹלָם.
- אֲנֹכִי אֹרֵר הָעוֹלָם וְחַיּוֹ; אֲנִי שָׁתִיתִי מִכּוֹס הַתַּרְעִלָּה אֲשֶׁר נָתַנִּי הָאֵב, וּפָאֲרָתִי אֶת הָאֵב בְּקַחְתִּי עָלַי אֶת חַטָּאתֵי הָעוֹלָם; וּבְכֹךְ נִשְׁאַתִּי אֶת רְצוֹן הָאֵב בְּכָל הַדְּבָרִים מִבְּרֵאשִׁית.
- וְהָיָה כְּדִבְרֵי יֵשׁוּעַ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, נָפַל כָּל הַהֶמְוֶן אֶרֶצָּה; כִּי הֵם זָכְרוּ אֶת דְּבָרֵי הַנְּבוּאָה אֲשֶׁר נֶאֱמָרוּ בְּקִרְבָּם כִּי הַמָּשִׁיחַ יִתְגַּלֶּה אֲלֵיהֶם, אַחֵר עֲלוֹתוֹ הַשְּׁמַיִמָּה.
- אָז דִּבֶּר הָאֱדוֹן אֲלֵיהֶם לֵאמֹר:
- קוּמוּ וּבֹאוּ אֵלַי בְּעֶבֶר תִּשְׁלְחוּ יְדֵיכֶם אֶל צֶדֶד גּוּפִי וּתְמַשְׁשׁוּ אֶת עֲקֻבוֹת הַמַּסְמָרִים בְּיָדַי וּבְרַגְלֵי, בְּעֶבֶר תִּדְעוּ כִּי אֲנֹכִי אֱלֹהֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל וְאֱלֹהֵי כָל הָאֶרֶץ, וְכִי הוּמַתִּי לְמַעַן חַטָּאתֵי הָעוֹלָם.
- אָז קָרְבוּ אֵלָיו אַנְשֵׁי הַהֶמְוֶן וְשִׁלְחוּ אֶת יְדֵיהֶם אֶל צֶדֶד וּתְמַשְׁשׁוּ אֶת עֲקֻבוֹת הַמַּסְמָרִים בְּיָדָיו וּבְרַגְלָיו. וְכֹה הֵם עָשׂוּ, אֶחָד-אֶחָד, עַד אֲשֶׁר עָבְרוּ כָּלָם לִפְנֵי וַראוּ בָמוֹ עֵינֵיהֶם, וּתְמַשְׁשׁוּ בָמוֹ יְדֵיהֶם וַיִּדְעוּ לֹלֵא סֶפֶק, וְהָיוּ עֵדִים, כִּי אָכֵן הוּא זֶה, אֲשֶׁר עָלָיו כְּתָבוּ הַנְּבִיאִים כִּי יָבוֹא.
- וְהָיָה אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר עָבְרוּ כָּלָם לִפְנֵי וַראוּ בָמוֹ עֵינֵיהֶם, הֵם קָרְאוּ פֶה אֶחָד לֵאמֹר:
- הוֹשַׁעְנָא! בְּרוּךְ שֵׁם אֵל עֲלִיוֹן! וְהֵם נָפְלוּ אֶרֶצָּה לְרַגְלֵי יֵשׁוּעַ וְהִשְׁתַּחֲווּ לוֹ.
- אָז הוּא פָּנָה בְּדִבְרָיו אֶל נְפִי, כִּי נְפִי הָיָה בְּקִרְבָּן הַקְּהָל, וַצִּוָּהוּ לָגֶשֶׁת.
- וְנְפִי קָם וְהָלַךְ אֶל הָאֱדוֹן וְהִשְׁתַּחֲוָה לִפְנָיו וַיִּנָּשֶׁק אֶת רַגְלָיו.
- אָז צִוָּהוּ הָאֱדוֹן לָקוּם. וְהוּא קָם וַעֲמַד לִפְנָיו.

- 21 And the Lord said unto him: I give unto you power that ye shall baptize this people when I am again ascended into heaven.
- אז אמר אליו האדון: הנני מיפה את ידך להטביל את העם הזה אחר אשר אעלה שנית השמימה.
- 22 And again the Lord called others, and said unto them likewise; and he gave unto them power to baptize. And he said unto them: On this wise shall ye baptize; and there shall be no disputations among you.
- והאדון שב וקרא לאחרים ואמר להם כדברים האלה, ונתן להם תקף סמכות להטביל. וכה אמר אליהם: באפן הזה תטבילו, ואל יהיו ביניכם וכוותים.
- 23 Verily I say unto you, that whoso repenteth of his sins through your words and desireth to be baptized in my name, on this wise shall ye baptize them—Behold, ye shall go down and stand in the water, and in my name shall ye baptize them.
- אכן, אני אומר לכם, כי כל אשר ינחם על חטאיו מפני דבריכם ויחפץ להטביל בשמי, באפן הזה תטבילוהו: הנה, תרדו נא ותעמדו במים, ובשמי תטבילו.
- 24 And now behold, these are the words which ye shall say, calling them by name, saying:
- ואלה הדברים אשר תאמרו, בקראכם אותם בשמם, לאמר:
- 25 Having authority given me of Jesus Christ, I baptize you in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost. Amen.
- בתקף הסמכות אשר נתנה לי מאת ישוע המשיח, הנני מטביל אותך בשם האב והבן ורוח הקדש. אמן.
- 26 And then shall ye immerse them in the water, and come forth again out of the water.
- אז תשקיעו אותם במים ותשובו ותעלו מן המים.
- 27 And after this manner shall ye baptize in my name; for behold, verily I say unto you, that the Father, and the Son, and the Holy Ghost are one; and I am in the Father, and the Father in me, and the Father and I are one.
- באפן הזה תטבילו בשמי, כי אכן, הנני אומר לכם, כי האב והבן ורוח הקדש אחד הם. אני באב והאב בי, והאב ואני, אחד.
- 28 And according as I have commanded you thus shall ye baptize. And there shall be no disputations among you, as there have hitherto been; neither shall there be disputations among you concerning the points of my doctrine, as there have hitherto been.
- כאשר צויתכם, כן תטבילו; אל יהיו וכוותים ביניכם, כאשר היו לפנים, ואל יהיו וכוותים ביניכם על עקרי תורתי, כאשר היו לפנים.
- 29 For verily, verily I say unto you, he that hath the spirit of contention is not of me, but is of the devil, who is the father of contention, and he stirreth up the hearts of men to contend with anger, one with another.
- אכן, הנני אומר לכם, זה אשר רוח מדון שוררת בקרבו, איננו ממני, כי מן השטן הוא, אשר הוא אבי מדון והוא המעורר את לב בני האדם לריב בזעם זה עם זה.
- 30 Behold, this is not my doctrine, to stir up the hearts of men with anger, one against another; but this is my doctrine, that such things should be done away.
- הנה, אין זו תורתי לעורר את לב בני האדם לזעם זה על זה. כי אם זאת תורתי: כי ירחקו מעליכם דברים כאלה.
- 31 Behold, verily, verily, I say unto you, I will declare unto you my doctrine.
- אכן, הנני אומר לכם, את תורתי אודיעכם.
- 32 And this is my doctrine, and it is the doctrine which the Father hath given unto me; and I bear record of the Father, and the Father beareth
- זאת תורתי, והיא התורה אשר נתנני האב; ואנכי מעיד על האב והאב מעיד עלי, ורוח

הַקֹּדֶשׁ מֵעֵיד עַל הָאֵב וְעַלִּי; וְהִנְנִי מֵעֵיד כִּי  
הָאֵב צִוָּה אֶת כָּל הָאָדָם, בְּכָל מְקוֹם, לְהִנָּחם  
מִחֲטָא וּלְהֵאֱמִין בִּי.

record of me, and the Holy Ghost beareth record of the Father and me;  
and I bear record that the Father commandeth all men, everywhere, to  
repent and believe in me.

וְכָל הַמֵּאֲמִין בִּי וּמִטְבָּל הוּא יוֹשֵׁעַ. וְהֵם אֲשֶׁר  
יִירָשׁוּ אֶת מַלְכוּת אֱלֹהִים.

33 And whoso believeth in me, and is baptized, the same shall be saved;  
and they are they who shall inherit the kingdom of God.

וְכָל אֲשֶׁר לֹא מֵאֲמִין בִּי וְאִינוּ מִטְבָּל אָרוּר יִהְיֶה.

34 And whoso believeth not in me, and is not baptized, shall be damned.

אָכֵן, הִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם; כִּי זֹאת תּוֹרָתִי וּמֵאֲת  
הָאֵב מֵעֵיד אֲנִי עָלֶיךָ; וְכָל הַמֵּאֲמִין בִּי מֵאֲמִין  
אִף בָּאֵב; וּלְפָנָיו יֵעִיד הָאֵב עָלַי, כִּי הוּא  
יִפְקְדֵנוּ בָּאֵשׁ וּבִרוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ.

35 Verily, verily, I say unto you, that this is my doctrine, and I bear record  
of it from the Father; and whoso believeth in me believeth in the Father  
also; and unto him will the Father bear record of me, for he will visit  
him with fire and with the Holy Ghost.

וְכֵן יֵעִיד הָאֵב עָלַי, וּרוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ יֵעִיד  
לְפָנָיו עַל הָאֵב וְעָלַי, כִּי הָאֵב, וְאֲנִי, וּרוּחַ  
הַקֹּדֶשׁ, אֶחָד.

36 And thus will the Father bear record of me, and the Holy Ghost will  
bear record unto him of the Father and me; for the Father, and I, and  
the Holy Ghost are one.

וְשׁוּב אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם: עָלֵיכֶם לְהִנָּחם מִחֲטָא,  
וּלְהִיטְבֵּל בְּשִׁמִּי, וּלְהִיטְבֵּל בְּשִׁמִּי; וּבִלְתִּי אִם  
תַּעֲשׂוּ כֵן, לֹא תוּכְלוּ בְּשׁוֹם אֶפֶן לְקַבֵּל אֶת  
הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה.

37 And again I say unto you, ye must repent, and become as a little child,  
and be baptized in my name, or ye can in nowise receive these things.

וְשׁוּב אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם: עָלֵיכֶם לְהִנָּחם מִחֲטָא  
וּלְהִיטְבֵּל בְּשִׁמִּי וּלְהִיטְבֵּל בְּשִׁמִּי, וּבִלְתִּי אִם  
תַּעֲשׂוּ כֵן, לֹא תוּכְלוּ בְּשׁוֹם אֶפֶן לְרִשֵּׁת אֶת  
מַלְכוּת אֱלֹהִים.

38 And again I say unto you, ye must repent, and be baptized in my name,  
and become as a little child, or ye can in nowise inherit the kingdom  
of God.

אָכֵן, הִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, כִּי זֹאת תּוֹרָתִי, וְכָל  
אֲשֶׁר בּוֹנֶה עָלַי, עַל צוּרִי הוּא בּוֹנֶה, וְשַׁעֲרֵי  
שָׂאוֹל לֹא יוּכְלוּ לוֹ.

39 Verily, verily, I say unto you, that this is my doctrine, and whoso  
buildeth upon this buildeth upon my rock, and the gates of hell shall  
not prevail against them.

וְכָל הַמְכַרִּיז עַל יוֹתֵר אוּ פָחוֹת מִזֶּה וַיְכַוֵּן אֶת  
דְּבָרָיו כְּאֵלוֹ תּוֹרָתִי הֵם, מֵאֲת רָשָׁעָה מוֹצֵאוֹ וְאִין  
הוּא בּוֹנֶה עַל צוּרִי, כִּי עַל יְסוֹדוֹת חוֹל הוּא בּוֹנֶה,  
וְשַׁעֲרֵי שָׂאוֹל פְּתוּחִים לְקַבֵּל אֲשֶׁר כָּמוֹתוֹ  
כְּאֲשֶׁר יָבוֹא עָלֵיהֶם הַשֹּׁטְפוֹן וְיָכּוּם הַרוּחוֹת.

40 And whoso shall declare more or less than this, and establish it for my  
doctrine, the same cometh of evil, and is not built upon my rock; but  
he buildeth upon a sandy foundation, and the gates of hell stand open  
to receive such when the floods come and the winds beat upon them.

עַל כֵּן, לָכֵן נֹא אֶל הָעָם הַזֶּה וְהַשְׁמִיעוּ אֶת  
הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר דִּבַּרְתִּי עַד אֶפְסִי אָרֶץ.

41 Therefore, go forth unto this people, and declare the words which I  
have spoken, unto the ends of the earth.

## יב

## 12

וּכְבֻּלוֹת יֵשׁוּעַ לְדַבֵּר אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה אֶל  
נְפִי וְאֶל אֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר קָרָאָם, וּמִסְפַּר הַקְּרוּאִים  
אֲשֶׁר קִבְּלוּ תִקּוּן וְסִמְכוֹת לְהִטְבִּיל הָיָה שְׁנַיִם

1 And it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words unto  
Nephi, and to those who had been called, (now the number of them  
who had been called, and received power and authority to baptize, was



עָשׂוֹ, וְהִנֵּה הוּא נֹטֶה אֶת יָדוֹ אֶל הַקְּהָל וְקָרָא  
אֵלָיו לֵאמֹר: בְּרוּכִים תִּהְיוּ בְּהַקְשִׁיבְכֶם אֶל דְּבָרֵי  
שְׁנַיִם עָשׂוֹר אֱלֹהִים, אֲשֶׁר בָּחַרְתִּי מִתּוֹכְכֶם לְשִׁמּוֹשׁ  
לְפָנֶיכֶם וְלִהְיוֹת מְשָׁרְתֵיכֶם. הִנֵּה, יִפְתִּי אֶת  
יָדִים לְהַטְבִּילְכֶם בַּמַּיִם; וְאַחֵר אֲשֶׁר תִּטְבְּלוּ  
בַּמַּיִם, אֲטַבִּילְכֶם אֲנִי בָאֵשׁ וּבְרוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ.  
לָכֵן בְּרוּכִים תִּהְיוּ אִם תִּאֱמִינוּ בִּי וּתִטְבְּלוּ, אַחֵר  
אֲשֶׁר רְאִיתֶם אוֹתִי, וּבִיָּדְעֶכֶם כִּי אֲנִכִּי אֱהִיָּה.

וּמְבָרְכִים אִף יוֹתֵר יִהְיוּ כָל אֲשֶׁר יֵאֱמִינוּ  
בְּדְבָרֵיכֶם, יַעַן אֲשֶׁר תִּעֲשֶׂינִי כִּי רְאִיתֶם אוֹתִי  
וַיִּדְעֶתֶם כִּי אֲנִכִּי אֱהִיָּה. אָכֵן, בְּרוּכִים  
הַמֵּאֱמִינִים בְּדְבָרֵיכֶם, וְאֲשֶׁר יִשְׁפִּילוּ אֶל  
מַעַמְקֵי הַהִכָּנְעָה וְיִטְבְּלוּ, כִּי הֵם יִפְקְדוּ בָאֵשׁ  
וּבְרוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ וְיִקְבְּלוּ מַחִילָה עַל חַטָּאתֵיהֶם.

אָכֵן, בְּרוּכִים שְׂפָלֵי הָרוּחַ הַבָּאִים אֵלַי, כִּי  
לָהֶם מַלְכוּת הַשָּׁמַיִם.

וּבְרוּכִים כָּל הָאֲבֵלִים, כִּי הֵם יִנְחָמוּ.

בְּרוּכִים הָעֲנֻוִים, כִּי הֵם יִירְשׁוּ אֶת הָאָרֶץ.

בְּרוּכִים כָּל הָרָעִבִים וְהָצִמְאִים לְצַדִּיקָה, כִּי  
הֵם יִמְלְאוּ רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ.

בְּרוּכִים הָרַחֲמָנִים, כִּי הֵם יִרְחָמוּ.

בְּרוּכִים כָּל טְהוֹרֵי הַלֵּב, כִּי הֵם יֵחֲזוּ בְּאֱלֹהִים.

בְּרוּכִים כָּל עוֹשֵׂי שְׁלוֹם, כִּי בְנֵי אֱלֹהִים יִקְרָאוּ.

בְּרוּכִים כָּל הַנִּרְדָּפִים לְמַעַן שְׁמִי, כִּי לָהֶם  
מַלְכוּת שָׁמַיִם.

בְּרוּכִים תִּהְיוּ בְּחִרְף אֶתְכֶם אֲנָשִׁים  
וּבְרִדְפָם אֶתְכֶם, וּבְדַבָּרָם עָלֵיכֶם שָׁקֵר וְכָל  
דְּבָרָה רָעָה, בְּעִבּוּרִי;

כִּי שְׂמַח תִּשְׂמַחוּ וְרוֹנֵן תִּתְרוֹנְנוּ, כִּי רַב יִהְיֶה  
שְׂכָרְכֶם בַּשָּׁמַיִם, כִּי כֹן רָדְפוּ אֶת הַנְּבִיאִים  
אֲשֶׁר הָיוּ לְפָנֶיכֶם.

אָכֵן, הִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, נִתְתִּיכֶם לִהְיוֹת מֶלֶח  
הָאָרֶץ; וְאִם לִמְלַח יֵאבֵד טַעְמוֹ, בְּמָה תִּמְלַח  
הָאָרֶץ? הֵן בְּזֹאת לֹא יִצְלַח הַמֶּלֶח לְדָבָר, כִּי

twelve) and behold, he stretched forth his hand unto the multitude, and cried unto them, saying: Blessed are ye if ye shall give heed unto the words of these twelve whom I have chosen from among you to minister unto you, and to be your servants; and unto them I have given power that they may baptize you with water; and after that ye are baptized with water, behold, I will baptize you with fire and with the Holy Ghost; therefore blessed are ye if ye shall believe in me and be baptized, after that ye have seen me and know that I am.

2 And again, more blessed are they who shall believe in your words because that ye shall testify that ye have seen me, and that ye know that I am. Yea, blessed are they who shall believe in your words, and come down into the depths of humility and be baptized, for they shall be visited with fire and with the Holy Ghost, and shall receive a remission of their sins.

3 Yea, blessed are the poor in spirit who come unto me, for theirs is the kingdom of heaven.

4 And again, blessed are all they that mourn, for they shall be comforted.

5 And blessed are the meek, for they shall inherit the earth.

6 And blessed are all they who do hunger and thirst after righteousness, for they shall be filled with the Holy Ghost.

7 And blessed are the merciful, for they shall obtain mercy.

8 And blessed are all the pure in heart, for they shall see God.

9 And blessed are all the peacemakers, for they shall be called the children of God.

10 And blessed are all they who are persecuted for my name's sake, for theirs is the kingdom of heaven.

11 And blessed are ye when men shall revile you and persecute, and shall say all manner of evil against you falsely, for my sake;

12 For ye shall have great joy and be exceedingly glad, for great shall be your reward in heaven; for so persecuted they the prophets who were before you.

13 Verily, verily, I say unto you, I give unto you to be the salt of the earth; but if the salt shall lose its savor wherewith shall the earth be salted?

- אם להיות משלך החוצה למרמס בני אדם. The salt shall be thenceforth good for nothing, but to be cast out and to be trodden under foot of men.
- 14 אכן, הנני אומר לכם, נתינתכם להיות אור לעם הזה. עיר היושבת על ההר לא תוכל להסתתר. Verily, verily, I say unto you, I give unto you to be the light of this people. A city that is set on a hill cannot be hid.
- 15 הידלק נר ויושם תחת האזיפה? לא, כי אם על מנורה יושם; אזי יאיר לכל באי הבית. Behold, do men light a candle and put it under a bushel? Nay, but on a candlestick, and it giveth light to all that are in the house;
- 16 על כן, יאיר נא אורכם לפני העם הזה, בעבור יראו את מעשיכם הטובים ויפארו את אביכם אשר בשמים. Therefore let your light so shine before this people, that they may see your good works and glorify your Father who is in heaven.
- 17 אל תשערו כי באתי לבטל את התורה, או את דברי הנביאים. לא באתי לבטל כי אם לקיים. Think not that I am come to destroy the law or the prophets. I am not come to destroy but to fulfil;
- 18 כי אכן אני אומר לכם, לא תעבר יוד אחת, או תג, מן התורה, כי בי התקיימה כלה. For verily I say unto you, one jot nor tittle hath not passed away from the law, but in me it hath all been fulfilled.
- 19 הנה נתתי לכם את תורת אבי ואת מצוותי, למען תאמינו בי, ולמען תנחמו על חטאיכם, ותבואו אלי בלב נשבר וברוח נכאה. הן לפניכם המצוות והתורה מקיימת. And behold, I have given you the law and the commandments of my Father, that ye shall believe in me, and that ye shall repent of your sins, and come unto me with a broken heart and a contrite spirit. Behold, ye have the commandments before you, and the law is fulfilled.
- 20 לכן, בואו אלי והושעו, כי אכן אני אומר לכם, בלתי אם תשמרו את מצוותי אשר צויתכם עתה, לא תבואו בשום אופן אל מלכות השמים. Therefore come unto me and be ye saved; for verily I say unto you, that except ye shall keep my commandments, which I have commanded you at this time, ye shall in no case enter into the kingdom of heaven.
- 21 שמעתם כי בימי קדם נאמר, ואף לפניכם כתוב: לא תרצח; ואשר ירצח, יעמד בסכנת משפט אלהים. Ye have heard that it hath been said by them of old time, and it is also written before you, that thou shalt not kill, and whosoever shall kill shall be in danger of the judgment of God;
- 22 ואולם אני אומר לכם, כי כל הקוצץ על אחיו, יעמד בסכנת משפטו, ואשר יקרא לאחיו ריקה יעמד בסכנת מועצת הדינים, ואשר יאמר שוטה אתה, יסתכן באש שאול. But I say unto you, that whosoever is angry with his brother shall be in danger of his judgment. And whosoever shall say to his brother, Raca, shall be in danger of the council; and whosoever shall say, Thou fool, shall be in danger of hell fire.
- 23 על כן, אם תבוא אלי, או אם תחפץ לבוא אלי, ותזכר כי לאחיו יש דבר-מה עליה, לך לך אליו והתפייס תחלה עמו, ואחרי כן תבוא אלי בלב שלם ואני אקבלך. Therefore, if ye shall come unto me, or shall desire to come unto me, and rememberest that thy brother hath aught against thee—
- 24 לך לך אליו והתפייס תחלה עמו, ואחרי כן תבוא אלי בלב שלם ואני אקבלך. Go thy way unto thy brother, and first be reconciled to thy brother, and then come unto me with full purpose of heart, and I will receive you.
- 25 מהר להתרצות אל איש ריבך בעודך בדרכך עמו, פן יתפשד אייפועם ואל בית הכלא תשלך. Agree with thine adversary quickly while thou art in the way with him, lest at any time he shall get thee, and thou shalt be cast into prison

- 26 Verily, verily, I say unto thee, thou shalt by no means come out thence until thou hast paid the uttermost senine. And while ye are in prison can ye pay even one senine? Verily, verily, I say unto you, Nay.
- אָכֵן, הִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, יֵצֵא לֹא תִצֵּא מִשָּׁם, כִּי אִם אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר שְׁלַמְתָּ אֶת הַסֵּנִין הָאֲחֵרוֹן. וּבִשְׂבִיתְךָ בְּכֹלָא, הֲתוּכָל לְשַׁלֵּם אֶף סֵנִין אֶחָד? אָכֵן, הִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, לֹא!
- 27 Behold, it is written by them of old time, that thou shalt not commit adultery;
- הִנֵּה, בְּיָמֵי קִדְם נִכְתָּב: לֹא תִנְאַף.
- 28 But I say unto you, that whosoever looketh on a woman, to lust after her, hath committed adultery already in his heart.
- וְאוֹלָם אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, כִּי כָל הַמִּבִּיט בְּאִשָּׁה לְחַמֵּד אוֹתָהּ, נֶאֱוָף נִנְאָפָה בְּלִבּוֹ.
- 29 Behold, I give unto you a commandment, that ye suffer none of these things to enter into your heart;
- הִנְנִי מְצִוֶּה אֶתְכֶם אֲשֶׁר לֹא תִתִּירוּ לְאֵף אֶחָד מִכָּל אֵלֶּה לְהִכָּנֵס אֶל לְבַבְכֶם.
- 30 For it is better that ye should deny yourselves of these things, wherein ye will take up your cross, than that ye should be cast into hell.
- כִּי טוֹב אֲשֶׁר תִּמְנָעוּס מֵכֶּם, וּבִזְאת תִּשְׁאוּ אֶת צִלְבְּכֶם, מֵאֲשֶׁר תִּשְׁלְכוּ שְׂאוֹלָה.
- 31 It hath been written, that whosoever shall put away his wife, let him give her a writing of divorcement.
- כְּתוּב כִּי הַמְשַׁלַּח אֶת אִשְׁתּוֹ, יִתֵּן לָהּ סֵפֶר כְּרִיתוֹת.
- 32 Verily, verily, I say unto you, that whosoever shall put away his wife, saving for the cause of fornication, causeth her to commit adultery; and whoso shall marry her who is divorced committeth adultery.
- אָכֵן, הִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, כִּי כָל הַמְשַׁלַּח אֶת אִשְׁתּוֹ, בְּלִתֵּי עַל דְּבַר זְנוּת, עוֹשֶׂה אוֹתָהּ נֹאֲפֶת וְכָל אֲשֶׁר נִשְׁאַף לֹא לְאִשָּׁה נֹאֵף הוּא.
- 33 And again it is written, thou shalt not forswear thyself, but shalt perform unto the Lord thine oaths;
- וְאֵף כְּתוּב: לֹא תִשָּׁבַע לְשָׁקֶר, כִּי הָקֵם תִּקִּים לַיהוָה אֶת שְׁבוּעוֹתֶיךָ.
- 34 But verily, verily, I say unto you, swear not at all; neither by heaven, for it is God's throne;
- וְאוֹלָם, אָכֵן הִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, לֹא תִשָּׁבַע כָּל שְׁבוּעָה; לֹא בַּשָּׁמַיִם, כִּי כִסֵּא אֱלֹהִים הִמָּה;
- 35 Nor by the earth, for it is his footstool;
- וְלֹא בָּאָרֶץ, כִּי הָדוֹם רִגְלָיו הִיא.
- 36 Neither shalt thou swear by thy head, because thou canst not make one hair black or white;
- אֵף בְּרֹאשְׁךָ אַל תִּשָּׁבַע, כִּי אֵין בְּיָדְךָ לְהַפֵּךְ שְׂעָרָה אַחַת לְשֹׁהַרָה אוֹ לְלִבְנָה.
- 37 But let your communication be Yea, yea; Nay, nay; for whatsoever cometh of more than these is evil.
- אֵף יְהִי דִבְרֶךְ: הֵן, הֵן; לֹא, לֹא; כִּי כָל הַנוֹסֵף עַל אֵלֶּה רָע הוּא.
- 38 And behold, it is written, an eye for an eye, and a tooth for a tooth;
- וְהִנֵּה, כְּתוּב: עֵין תַּחַת עֵין וְשֵׁן תַּחַת שֵׁן.
- 39 But I say unto you, that ye shall not resist evil, but whosoever shall smite thee on thy right cheek, turn to him the other also;
- וְאוֹלָם אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָךְ אַל תִּתְּנֵגַד לְרָע, וְכָל הַמִּכֶּה עַל הַלְּחִי הַיְּמָנִית, הִטָּה לוֹ גַּם אֶת הַשְּׂנִיָּה.
- 40 And if any man will sue thee at the law and take away thy coat, let him have thy cloak also;
- וְאִם יִתְּבַע אוֹתְךָ אִישׁ לְדִין וַיִּקַּח אֶת כְּתָנְךָ, הִנַּח לוֹ גַּם אֶת מְעִילְךָ.

- 41 And whosoever shall compel thee to go a mile, go with him twain.  
וְכֹל הַמְּפָצִיר בָּךְ לָלֶכֶת עִמּוֹ דֶּרֶךְ מִילָה, לֵךְ עִמּוֹ שְׁנַיִם.
- 42 Give to him that asketh thee, and from him that would borrow of thee turn not away.  
הַשּׁוֹאֵל מִמֶּךָ תֵּן לוֹ, וְהַבָּא לְלוֹוֹת מִמֶּךָ אַל תֵּשֶׁב פְּנֵי רֵיקָם.
- 43 And behold it is written also, that thou shalt love thy neighbor and hate thine enemy;  
וְהִנֵּה, אָכֵן כָּתוּב, וְאַהֲבֵתָ לְרֵעֶךָ וְאַתָּה אוֹיְבֶךָ תִּשְׁנָא.
- 44 But I say unto you, love your enemies, bless them that curse you, do good to them that hate you, and pray for them who despitefully use you and persecute you;  
וְאֹלֵם הִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, אֲהַבּוּ אֶת אוֹיְבֵיכֶם וּבְרָכוּ אֶת מְקַלְלֵיכֶם, וְהִיטִיבוּ לְשׁוֹנְאֵיכֶם וְהִתְפַּלְלוּ בְּעַד מְנַצְלֵיכֶם וְרוֹדְפֵיכֶם;
- 45 That ye may be the children of your Father who is in heaven; for he maketh his sun to rise on the evil and on the good.  
לְמַעַן תִּהְיוּ בְּנֵי אֲבִיכֶם אֲשֶׁר בַּשָּׁמַיִם, כִּי הוּא מַעֲלֶה אֶת שֶׁמֶשׁוֹ הַזֹּרֶחַ עַל הָרָעִים וְעַל הַטּוֹבִים.
- 46 Therefore those things which were of old time, which were under the law, in me are all fulfilled.  
לְכֵן, הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר מִימֵי קֶדֶם, אֲשֶׁר בַּתּוֹרָה, בִּי קִיְּמוּ כָּלָם.
- 47 Old things are done away, and all things have become new.  
הַדְּבָרִים הַיְשָׁנִים חָלְפוּ וְהַכֹּל הִתְחַדָּשׁ.
- 48 Therefore I would that ye should be perfect even as I, or your Father who is in heaven is perfect.  
לְכֵן, חָפְצִי כִּי תִהְיוּ מְשֻׁלְּמִים כְּמוֹנִי וְכִמוֹ אֲבִיכֶם אֲשֶׁר בַּשָּׁמַיִם.

## יג

## 13

- 1 Verily, verily, I say that I would that ye should do alms unto the poor; but take heed that ye do not your alms before men to be seen of them; otherwise ye have no reward of your Father who is in heaven.  
אָכֵן, הִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם: רְצוֹנִי כִּי תִתְּנוּ צְדָקָה לְעֲנִיִּים; אַךְ הִשְׁמְרוּ לָכֶם מַעֲשֵׂוֹת אֶת צְדָקְתְּכֶם לִפְנֵי בְנֵי אָדָם, לְמַעַן יֵרְאוּכֶם. אֲשֶׁר אִם לֹא כֵן, אֵין לָכֶם שָׂכָר מֵאֵת אֲבִיכֶם אֲשֶׁר בַּשָּׁמַיִם.
- 2 Therefore, when ye shall do your alms do not sound a trumpet before you, as will hypocrites do in the synagogues and in the streets, that they may have glory of men. Verily I say unto you, they have their reward.  
לְכֵן בְּעֲשׂוֹתְכֶם צְדָקָה, אַל תִּרְעוּ לִפְנֵיכֶם בְּשׁוֹפָר, כְּמַעֲשֵׂה הַחֲנֻפִּים בְּבֵתֵי הַכְּנִסְיֹוֹת וּבִרְחוֹבוֹת, לְמַעַן יְהָלִיט בְּנֵי אָדָם. אָכֵן אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, לְקוֹחַ לְקַחְוּ אֶת שְׂכָרְכֶם.
- 3 But when thou doest alms let not thy left hand know what thy right hand doeth;  
וְאַתָּה, בְּעֲשׂוֹתְךָ צְדָקָה, אַל תִּדַּע שְׂמאלְךָ אֶת אֲשֶׁר עוֹשֶׂה יְמִינְךָ;
- 4 That thine alms may be in secret; and thy Father who seeth in secret, himself shall reward thee openly.  
לְמַעַן תִּהְיֶה צְדָקְתְּךָ בְּסֵתֶר; וְאַבִּיךָ, הָרוֹאֶה בְּמִסְתָּרִים, גָּמוּל יִגְמְלֶךָ בְּגָלוּי.
- 5 And when thou prayest thou shalt not do as the hypocrites, for they love to pray, standing in the synagogues and in the corners of the

- הרחובות, למען יראום בני אדם. אכן אני  
אומר לכם, לקוח לקחו את שכרם.
- 6 But thou, when thou prayest, enter into thy closet, and when thou hast shut thy door, pray to thy Father who is in secret; and thy Father, who seeth in secret, shall reward thee openly.
- 7 But when ye pray, use not vain repetitions, as the heathen, for they think that they shall be heard for their much speaking.
- 8 Be not ye therefore like unto them, for your Father knoweth what things ye have need of before ye ask him.
- 9 After this manner therefore pray ye: Our Father who art in heaven, hallowed be thy name.
- 10 Thy will be done on earth as it is in heaven.
- 11 And forgive us our debts, as we forgive our debtors.
- 12 And lead us not into temptation, but deliver us from evil.
- 13 For thine is the kingdom, and the power, and the glory, forever. Amen.
- 14 For, if ye forgive men their trespasses your heavenly Father will also forgive you;
- 15 But if ye forgive not men their trespasses neither will your Father forgive your trespasses.
- 16 Moreover, when ye fast be not as the hypocrites, of a sad countenance, for they disfigure their faces that they may appear unto men to fast. Verily I say unto you, they have their reward.
- 17 But thou, when thou fastest, anoint thy head, and wash thy face;
- 18 That thou appear not unto men to fast, but unto thy Father, who is in secret; and thy Father, who seeth in secret, shall reward thee openly.
- 19 Lay not up for yourselves treasures upon earth, where moth and rust doth corrupt, and thieves break through and steal;
- ואתה, כי תתפלל, בוא בחדרך וסגר את  
דלתך והתפלל אל אביך אשר בסתר; ואביך  
הרואה במסתרים, גמול יגמלך בגלוי.
- ובהתפללכם, אל תשתמשו בחזרות שוא,  
ככופרים, הסוברים כי בהרבותם מלים ישמעו.
- ואתם, אל תדמו להם אפוא, כי יודע אביכם  
את כל צרככם בטרם תבקשוהו.
- לכן, באופן הזה תתפלל: אבינו אשר  
בשמים, יתקדש שמך.
- יעשה רצונך בארץ כבשמים.
- מחל נא לנו על חובותינו, כפי שמוחלים  
אנחנו לחיבים לנו.
- ואל תביאנו לידי נסיון, כי אם הצילנו מן הרע.
- כי לך הממלכה והעז והתפארת עד עולם. אמן.
- כי אם תסלחו לבני אדם על עברותיהם,  
יסלח אביכם אשר בשמים אף לכם.
- אף אם לא תסלחו לבני אדם על עברותיהם,  
לא יסלח אביכם לכם על עברותיכם.
- וכי תצומו, אל תהיו כחנפים המקדירים  
פנים, כי משנים הם את פניהם בעבור יראו  
לבני אדם בצמים. אכן אני אומר לכם, לקוח  
לקחו את שכרם.
- ואתה, כי תצום, סוד ראשך ורחץ פניך;
- למען לא יראה צומך לבני אדם, כי אם  
לאביך אשר בסתר; ואביך הרואה  
במסתרים, גמול יגמלך בגלוי.
- אל תאצרו לכם אוצרות בארץ, אשר  
ישחתום שם עש וחלדה, וגנבים יחטרו  
אליהם ויגזלו;



20 But lay up for yourselves treasures in heaven, where neither moth nor rust doth corrupt, and where thieves do not break through nor steal.  
 כִּי אִם אִצְרוּ לָכֶם אוֹצְרוֹת בַּשָּׁמַיִם, אֲשֶׁר עֵשׂ וְחָלְדָה לֹא יִשְׁחָתוּם שָׁם, וְגַנָּבִים לֹא יַחְתְּרוּ אֲלֵיהֶם וְלֹא יִגְזְלוּם.

21 For where your treasure is, there will your heart be also.  
 כִּי בַמָּקוֹם אֲשֶׁר יִהְיֶה אוֹצְרְךָ, שָׁם יִהְיֶה אִף לְבָבְךָ.

22 The light of the body is the eye; if, therefore, thine eye be single, thy whole body shall be full of light.  
 אוֹר הַגּוּף הוּא הָעַיִן; וְאִם עֵינְךָ אַחַת, כָּל גּוּפְךָ מְלֵא אוֹר.

23 But if thine eye be evil, thy whole body shall be full of darkness. If, therefore, the light that is in thee be darkness, how great is that darkness!  
 אֲךְ אִם רָעָה עֵינְךָ, כָּל גּוּפְךָ יִמְלֵא חֹשֶׁךְ; עַל כֵּן, אִם הָאוֹר אֲשֶׁר בְּךָ יִחְשֹׁךְ, מִה רַב הַחֹשֶׁךְ הַהוּא!

24 No man can serve two masters; for either he will hate the one and love the other, or else he will hold to the one and despise the other. Ye cannot serve God and Mammon.  
 לֹא יוּכַל אִישׁ לַעֲבֹד שְׁנֵי אֲדוֹנִים; כִּי אִם יִשְׂנֹא אֶת הָאֶחָד וַיֵּאָהֵב אֶת הָאֲחֵר, אוֹ יִדְבֹּק בָּאֶחָד וַיִּבְזֶה אֶת הָאֲחֵר. לֹא תוּכְלוּ לַעֲבֹד אֶת אֱלֹהִים וְאֶת הַמָּמוֹן.

25 And now it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words he looked upon the twelve whom he had chosen, and said unto them: Remember the words which I have spoken. For behold, ye are they whom I have chosen to minister unto this people. Therefore I say unto you, take no thought for your life, what ye shall eat, or what ye shall drink; nor yet for your body, what ye shall put on. Is not the life more than meat, and the body than raiment?  
 וּכְכַלּוֹת יֵשׁוּעַ לְדַבֵּר אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, הוּא הִבִּיט עַל שְׁנַיִם עָשָׂר נִבְחָרָיו וְאָמַר אֲלֵיהֶם: זְכְרוּ אֶת דְּבָרֵי אֲשֶׁר דִּבַּרְתִּי. כִּי הִנֵּנִי אֲשֶׁר בְּחַרְתִּי לְשִׁמֵּשׁ לִפְנֵי הָעָם הַזֶּה. עַל כֵּן אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, אַל תִּדְאָגוּ לִנְפְשְׁכֶם מִה תֹּאכְלוּ וּמִה תִּשְׁתּוּ, וּלְגוּפְכֶם מִה תִּלְבָּשׁוּ; הֲאִין הַנֶּפֶשׁ יְקָרָה מִמָּזוֹן וְהַגּוּף מִמַּלְבוּשׁ?

26 Behold the fowls of the air, for they sow not, neither do they reap nor gather into barns; yet your heavenly Father feedeth them. Are ye not much better than they?  
 רְאוּ אֶת עוֹפוֹת הַשָּׁמַיִם, אֲשֶׁר אֵינָם זֹרְעִים וְאֵינָם קוֹצְרִים וְאֵינָם אוֹסְפִים לְאֻסְמִים; אֲךְ אֲבִיכֶם אֲשֶׁר בַּשָּׁמַיִם מְכַלְכֵּלֵם. הֲאִין טוֹבִים אַתֶּם מֵהֶם?

27 Which of you by taking thought can add one cubit unto his stature?  
 מִי בָכֶם אֲשֶׁר יוּכַל, עַל יְדֵי מַחְשַׁבְתּוֹ, לְהוֹסִיף עַל קוֹמָתוֹ אֲמָה אַחַת?

28 And why take ye thought for raiment? Consider the lilies of the field how they grow; they toil not, neither do they spin;  
 וּמַדּוּעַ תִּתְּנוּ דַּעְתְּכֶם לְלִבּוּשׁ? הֲתִבּוֹנְנוּ נָא אֶל שׁוֹשַׁנֵּי הַשָּׂדֶה, אֵיךְ הֵן גִּדְּלוּת; אֵינָן עֹמְלוֹת וְאֵינָן טוֹווֹת.

29 And yet I say unto you, that even Solomon, in all his glory, was not arrayed like one of these.  
 וְאוּלַם אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, כִּי אִף שְׁלֹמֹה בְּכָל הַדָּרוֹ לֹא הָיָה לְבוּשׁ כְּאַחַת מֵהֶן.

30 Wherefore, if God so clothe the grass of the field, which today is, and tomorrow is cast into the oven, even so will he clothe you, if ye are not of little faith.  
 לְכֵן, אִם כֵּךְ מַלְבִּישׁ אֱלֹהִים אֶת הָעֵצֶר הַשָּׂדֶה אֲשֶׁר הַיּוֹם צוֹמַחַ וּמָחָר יִשְׁלָף לְתוֹךְ הַתֵּנּוֹר, הֲרִי כֵךְ יִלְבִּישׁ אֶתְכֶם, אִם לֹא תִמְעָטוּ אֱמוּנָה.

- על כן, אל תעלו בדעתכם כל מחשבה כגון: מה נאכל? או, מה נשתה? או, איכה נלבש?
- 31 Therefore take no thought, saying, What shall we eat? or, What shall we drink? or, Wherewithal shall we be clothed?
- כי אביכם אשר בשמים יודע כי צריכים אתם לכל אלה.
- 32 For your heavenly Father knoweth that ye have need of all these things.
- אך בקשו תחלה את מלכות אלהים ואת צדקתו וכל הדברים האלה יתוספו לכם.
- 33 But seek ye first the kingdom of God and his righteousness, and all these things shall be added unto you.
- לכן, אל תדאגו ליום המחר, כי המחר ידאג לעניניו, וידיו היום לצרתו.
- 34 Take therefore no thought for the morrow, for the morrow shall take thought for the things of itself. Sufficient is the day unto the evil thereof.

## י

## 14

- וככלות ישוע לדבר את הדברים האלה, הוא פנה שנית אל המון העם, ודבר אליהם לאמר: אכן, הנני אומר לכם, אל תדונו, למען לא תדונו אתם.
- 1 And now it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words he turned again to the multitude, and did open his mouth unto them again, saying: Verily, verily, I say unto you, Judge not, that ye be not judged.
- כי בדיו אשר אתם דנים, תדונו אתם; ובמדדה אשר אתם מודדים, תמדדו אף אתם.
- 2 For with what judgment ye judge, ye shall be judged; and with what measure ye mete, it shall be measured to you again.
- ולמה זה אתה רואה את הקיסם בעין אחיה, ואלו לקורה אשר בעינך לא תשית לבך?
- 3 And why beholdest thou the mote that is in thy brother's eye, but considerest not the beam that is in thine own eye?
- או, איכה תאמר אל אחיה: תניני לטל את הקיסם מעינך, והנה, יש בעינך קורה?
- 4 Or how wilt thou say to thy brother: Let me pull the mote out of thine eye—and behold, a beam is in thine own eye?
- אתה החנף טל תחלה את הקורה מעינך, ואז ראה תראה לטל את הקיסם מעין אחיה.
- 5 Thou hypocrite, first cast the beam out of thine own eye; and then shalt thou see clearly to cast the mote out of thy brother's eye.
- אל תתנו את אשר קדוש הוא לכלבים, ואל תשליכו פניניכם לפני חזירים, פן ירמסון ברגליהם, ויפנו אליכם ויטרפוקם.
- 6 Give not that which is holy unto the dogs, neither cast ye your pearls before swine, lest they trample them under their feet, and turn again and rend you.
- בקשו, וינתן לכם; דרשו, ותמצאו; דפקו, ויפתח לכם.
- 7 Ask, and it shall be given unto you; seek, and ye shall find; knock, and it shall be opened unto you.
- כי כל המבקש, יקבל; והדורש, ימצא; והדופק, יפתח לו.
- 8 For every one that asketh, receiveth; and he that seeketh, findeth; and to him that knocketh, it shall be opened.
- ואיזה איש מכם, כאשר בנו ובקשהו לחם, יתן לו אבן?
- 9 Or what man is there of you, who, if his son ask bread, will give him a stone?
- וכי יבקש ממנו דג, היתן לו נחש?
- 10 Or if he ask a fish, will he give him a serpent?

- 11 If ye then, being evil, know how to give good gifts unto your children, how much more shall your Father who is in heaven give good things to them that ask him?
- הֵן אִם אַתֶּם, אֲשֶׁר רָשָׁעִים אַתֶּם, יוֹדְעִים לָתֵת מִתְּנוּת טוֹבוֹת לְבָנֵיכֶם, עַל אַחַת כַּמָּה וְכַמָּה יִרְבֶּה אֲבִיכֶם אֲשֶׁר בְּשָׁמַיִם לְהִיטִיב לְמִבְקָשֵׁי.
- 12 Therefore, all things whatsoever ye would that men should do to you, do ye even so to them, for this is the law and the prophets.
- לָכֵן, כָּל אֲשֶׁר תַּחֲפֹצוּ כִּי יַעֲשׂוּ לָכֶם בְּנֵי אָדָם, אוֹתוֹ עֲשׂוּ לָהֶם, כִּי זֶה דְּבַר הַתּוֹרָה וְהַנְּבִיאִים.
- 13 Enter ye in at the strait gate; for wide is the gate, and broad is the way, which leadeth to destruction, and many there be who go in thereat;
- בּוֹאוּ בַּשַּׁעַר הַצָּר, כִּי רָחֵב הַשַּׁעַר וְרוֹחָבָה הַדֶּרֶךְ הַמּוֹלִיכָה אֵלֵי אֲבִדּוֹן, וְרַבִּים הַבָּאִים בָּהּ.
- 14 Because strait is the gate, and narrow is the way, which leadeth unto life, and few there be that find it.
- כִּי צָר הַשַּׁעַר, וְיָשָׁר הַדֶּרֶךְ הַמּוֹלִיכָה לַחַיִּים, וּמִעֲטִים מוֹצְאֶיהָ.
- 15 Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep's clothing, but inwardly they are ravening wolves.
- הִשָּׁמְרוּ לָכֶם מִנְּבִיאֵי שֹׁקֶר, הַבָּאִים אֵלֵיכֶם בְּלִבוּשׁ כֹּבֵשִׁים, אֲךָ בְּקִרְבָּם זֵאֲבִים מִשְׁחָרֵי טָרֶף.
- 16 Ye shall know them by their fruits. Do men gather grapes of thorns, or figs of thistles?
- הֵן תִּכְרִירוּם לְפִי פְרִיָם. הֲיִבְצֹר אִישׁ עֲנָבִים מִן הַקּוֹצִים, אוֹ יֵאָצֶרֶה תְּאֵנִים מִן הַדֶּרְדְּרִים?
- 17 Even so every good tree bringeth forth good fruit; but a corrupt tree bringeth forth evil fruit.
- וְכֵמוֹ כֵּן, כָּל עֵץ טוֹב נוֹתֵן פְּרִי טוֹב; וְעֵץ נִשְׁחָת נוֹתֵן פְּרִי רָע.
- 18 A good tree cannot bring forth evil fruit, neither a corrupt tree bring forth good fruit.
- עֵץ טוֹב לֹא יוּכַל לָתֵת פְּרִי רָע, וְעֵץ נִשְׁחָת לֹא יִתֵּן פְּרִי טוֹב.
- 19 Every tree that bringeth not forth good fruit is hewn down, and cast into the fire.
- וְכָל עֵץ אֲשֶׁר לֹא יִתֵּן פְּרִי טוֹב יִגָּדַע וְלֹאֵשׁ יִשְׂלָךְ.
- 20 Wherefore, by their fruits ye shall know them.
- לָכֵן לְפִי פְרִיָם תִּכְרִירוּם.
- 21 Not every one that saith unto me, Lord, Lord, shall enter into the kingdom of heaven; but he that doeth the will of my Father who is in heaven.
- לֹא כָל הָאוֹמֵר לִי: אֲדֹנָי, אֲדֹנָי, יָבוֹא אֶל מַלְכוּת הַשָּׁמַיִם, כִּי אִם הַעוֹשֶׂה אֶת רְצוֹן אָבִי אֲשֶׁר בְּשָׁמַיִם.
- 22 Many will say to me in that day: Lord, Lord, have we not prophesied in thy name, and in thy name have cast out devils, and in thy name done many wonderful works?
- וְכַיּוֹם הַהוּא, רַבִּים יֹאמְרוּ אֵלַי: אֲדֹנָי, אֲדֹנָי, הֲלֹא בְּשִׁמְךָ נִבְּאֵנוּ, וּבְשִׁמְךָ גִּרְשָׁנוּ שָׂדִים, וּבְשִׁמְךָ עָשִׂינוּ נִפְלְאוֹת רַבּוֹת?
- 23 And then will I profess unto them: I never knew you; depart from me, ye that work iniquity.
- אָז אֶעֱנֶה לָהֶם לֵאמֹר: מֵעוֹלָם לֹא יָדַעְתִּיכֶם; סוּרוּ מִמֶּנִּי, פּוֹעֲלֵי אָוֶן.
- 24 Therefore, whoso heareth these sayings of mine and doeth them, I will liken him unto a wise man, who built his house upon a rock—
- לָכֵן, כָּל הַשּׁוֹמֵעַ אֶת דְּבָרֵי אֵלֹהִים וּמַקְיָמָם, אֶמְשִׁילֵהוּ לְאִישׁ חָכָם אֲשֶׁר בָּנָה אֶת בֵּיתוֹ עַל סֶלֶעַ.

## נְפִי ג יד:כה–טו:ז

- וְהַגָּשָׁם יָרַד, וְשִׁטְפֵי הַמַּיִם עָלוּ, וְהַרוּחוֹת נָשְׁבוּ  
וְהִלְמוּ בְּבֵית הַהוּא; וְאָכָן, הוּא לֹא נָפַל, כִּי עַל  
סֵלַע יָסַד. 25 And the rain descended, and the floods came, and the winds blew, and  
beat upon that house; and it fell not, for it was founded upon a rock.
- וְכָל הַשּׁוֹמְעֵי אֶת דְּבָרֵי אֱלֹהִים וְאֵינֻם מְקִיְמִים, מְשׁוּל  
לְאִישׁ בְּעֵר אֲשֶׁר בָּנָה אֶת בֵּיתוֹ עַל חוֹל. 26 And every one that heareth these sayings of mine and doeth them not  
shall be likened unto a foolish man, who built his house upon the sand—
- וְהַגָּשָׁם יָרַד, וְשִׁטְפֵי הַמַּיִם עָלוּ, וְהַרוּחוֹת  
נָשְׁבוּ וְהִלְמוּ בְּבֵית הַהוּא; וְהוּא נָפַל וְגָדוֹלָה  
הָיְתָה מַפְלָתוֹ. 27 And the rain descended, and the floods came, and the winds blew, and  
beat upon that house; and it fell, and great was the fall of it.

## טו

## 15

- וּכְכֹלֹת יֵשׁוּעַ לְדַבֵּר אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, הוּא  
נָשָׂא אֶת עֵינָיו סָבִיב אֶל הַקָּהָל וְאָמַר אֲלֵיהֶם:  
הִנֵּה שְׁמַעְתֶּם אֶת הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר לִמַּדְתִּי לָפָנַי  
עָלוּתִי אֶל אָבִי; עַל כֵּן, כָּל הַזֹּכֵר אֶת דְּבָרֵי  
אֱלֹהִים וּמְקִיְמֵם, אוֹתוֹ אֶנְשֵׂא בְיוֹם הָאַחֲרוֹן. 1 And now it came to pass that when Jesus had ended these sayings  
he cast his eyes round about on the multitude, and said unto them:  
Behold, ye have heard the things which I taught before I ascended to  
my Father; therefore, whoso remembereth these sayings of mine and  
doeth them, him will I raise up at the last day.
- וּכְדַבֵּר יֵשׁוּעַ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, הוּא רָאָה  
כִּי הָיוּ שָׁם אֲנָשִׁים אֲשֶׁר הִתְפַּלְאוּ וְתָמְהוּ עַל  
יְחֹסוֹ אֶל תּוֹרַת מֹשֶׁה; יַעַן אֲשֶׁר הֵם לֹא הִבִּינוּ  
אֶת אֲשֶׁר אָמַר כִּי הַדְּבָרִים הַיְשָׁנִים חָלְפוּ וְכִי  
הַכֹּל הִתְחַדָּשׁ. 2 And it came to pass that when Jesus had said these words he per-  
ceived that there were some among them who marveled, and wondered  
what he would concerning the law of Moses; for they understood not  
the saying that old things had passed away, and that all things had  
become new.
- וְהוּא אָמַר אֲלֵיהֶם: אַל תִּשְׁתַּמְּדוּ עַל  
אֲמָרֵי לָכֶם כִּי הַדְּבָרִים הַיְשָׁנִים חָלְפוּ וְכִי  
הַכֹּל הִתְחַדָּשׁ. 3 And he said unto them: Marvel not that I said unto you that old things  
had passed away, and that all things had become new.
- הִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם כִּי הַתּוֹרָה אֲשֶׁר נִתְּנָה לְמֹשֶׁה  
מְקִיְמָה. 4 Behold, I say unto you that the law is fulfilled that was given unto  
Moses.
- אֲנֹכִי אֲשֶׁר נִתַּתִּי אֶת הַתּוֹרָה, וְאֲנֹכִי אֲשֶׁר כָּרַתִּי  
בְּרִית עִם עַמִּי יִשְׂרָאֵל; עַל כֵּן, בִּי מְקִיְמָה  
הַתּוֹרָה, כִּי בָאתִי לְקִיְמָהּ; וְלָכֵן יֵשׁ לָהּ תְּכֵלֶת. 5 Behold, I am he that gave the law, and I am he who covenanted with  
my people Israel; therefore, the law in me is fulfilled, for I have come to  
fulfil the law; therefore it hath an end.
- הִנֵּה, אֵינִנִּי מְבַטֵּל אֶת דְּבָרֵי הַנְּבִיאִים, כִּי כָּל  
אֱלֹהִים אֲשֶׁר לֹא קִיְמוּ בִּי, אָכֵן אֵינִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם  
קִיּוֹם יְקִימוּ. 6 Behold, I do not destroy the prophets, for as many as have not been  
fulfilled in me, verily I say unto you, shall all be fulfilled.
- וּבְדַבְּרֵי אֲלֵיכֶם כִּי הַדְּבָרִים הַיְשָׁנִים חָלְפוּ,  
אֵינִנִּי מְבַטֵּל אֶת אֲשֶׁר נֶאֱמַר עַל הַבָּאוֹת. 7 And because I said unto you that old things have passed away, I do  
not destroy that which hath been spoken concerning things which are  
to come.

- 8 For behold, the covenant which I have made with my people is not all fulfilled; but the law which was given unto Moses hath an end in me.  
כי הנה, הברית אשר כרתי עם עמי לא קימה כלה; אך לתורה אשר נתנה למשה יש תכלית בי.
- 9 Behold, I am the law, and the light. Look unto me, and endure to the end, and ye shall live; for unto him that endureth to the end will I give eternal life.  
הנה, אנכי התורה והאור. הביטו אלי והתמידו עד הקץ ותחיו, כי למתמיד עד הקץ אתן חיי עולם.
- 10 Behold, I have given unto you the commandments; therefore keep my commandments. And this is the law and the prophets, for they truly testified of me.  
הנה נתתי לכם את המצוות; על כן, שמרו את מצוותי. וזאת התורה ואלה דברי הנביאים, כי הם אכן העידו עלי נאמנה.
- 11 And now it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words, he said unto those twelve whom he had chosen:  
ובכלות ישוע לדבר את הדברים האלה, הוא אמר אל שנים העשר אשר בחר:
- 12 Ye are my disciples; and ye are a light unto this people, who are a remnant of the house of Joseph.  
אתם תלמידי ואתם אור לעם הזה, אשר הוא שארית בית יוסף.
- 13 And behold, this is the land of your inheritance; and the Father hath given it unto you.  
הנה, זו ארץ נחלתכם והאב נתנה לכם.
- 14 And not at any time hath the Father given me commandment that I should tell it unto your brethren at Jerusalem.  
ומעולם לא צוני האב לומר זאת לאחיכם אשר בירושלם.
- 15 Neither at any time hath the Father given me commandment that I should tell unto them concerning the other tribes of the house of Israel, whom the Father hath led away out of the land.  
אף לא צוני האב להודיעם על אודות שאר שבטי בית ישראל אשר הוציאם מן הארץ.
- 16 This much did the Father command me, that I should tell unto them:  
ואולם זאת צוני האב כי אגידם:
- 17 That other sheep I have which are not of this fold; them also I must bring, and they shall hear my voice; and there shall be one fold, and one shepherd.  
צאן נוספות לי, אשר אין הן מן העדר הזה; ואף אותן עלי להביא; והן ישמעו את קולי, והיה עדר אחד ורועה אחד.
- 18 And now, because of stiffneckedness and unbelief they understood not my word; therefore I was commanded to say no more of the Father concerning this thing unto them.  
והנה, מפני קשי ערף וחסר אמונה הם לא הבינו את דברי. על כן צוני האב כי לא אוסיף לומר להם על אודות הדבר הזה.
- 19 But, verily, I say unto you that the Father hath commanded me, and I tell it unto you, that ye were separated from among them because of their iniquity; therefore it is because of their iniquity that they know not of you.  
אכן אני אומר לכם כי האב צוני, ואני אומר לכם זאת, כי הפרדתם מעמם מפני עוונם; לכן, מפני עוונם אין הם יודעים עליכם.
- 20 And verily, I say unto you again that the other tribes hath the Father separated from them; and it is because of their iniquity that they know not of them.  
ואף אומר אני לכם כי את שאר השבטים הפריד מהם האב, ומפני עוונם אין הם יודעים עליהם.



- וְאֵכֶן אֲנִי אֹמֵר לָכֶם כִּי הֵנֶכֶם אֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר  
עָלִיְהֶם אֲמַרְתִּי: צֵאן נֹסְפֹת לִי, אֲשֶׁר אֵין הֵן  
מִן הָעֵדֶר הַזֶּה; וְאִי אוֹתָן עָלִי לְהִבְיֹא; וְהֵן  
יִשְׁמְעוּ אֶת קוֹלִי, וְהִיָּה עֵדֶר אֶחָד וְרוּעָה אֶחָד.
- וְהֵם לֹא הִבִּינוּנִי, בְּסִבְרָם כִּי אֵלֶּה הַגּוֹיִים;  
יַעַן אֲשֶׁר הֵם לֹא הִבִּינוּ כִּי הַגּוֹיִים יִהְפְּכוּ  
לְמַאֲמִינִים עַל יְדֵי הַטָּפָתָם.
- וְהֵם לֹא הִבִּינוּנִי בְּאֲמַרִי כִּי הֵן יִשְׁמְעוּ אֶת  
קוֹלִי; יַעַן אֲשֶׁר הֵם לֹא הִבִּינוּנִי כִּי הַגּוֹיִים לֹא  
יִשְׁמְעוּ כָּלֵל אֶת קוֹלִי, בְּאֲשֶׁר לֹא אֶתְגַּלֶּה  
אֲלֵיהֶם, כִּי אִם עַל יְדֵי רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ.
- אֲךָ הִנֵּה, אַתֶּם שְׁמַעְתֶּם אֶת קוֹלִי וְאִי רִאִיתֶם  
אוֹתִי; אַתֶּם צֵאנִי וְאַתֶּם נִמְנִים עִם אֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר  
נָתַנָּם לִי הָאֵב.
- 21 And verily I say unto you, that ye are they of whom I said: Other sheep I have which are not of this fold; them also I must bring, and they shall hear my voice; and there shall be one fold, and one shepherd.
- 22 And they understood me not, for they supposed it had been the Gentiles; for they understood not that the Gentiles should be converted through their preaching.
- 23 And they understood me not that I said they shall hear my voice; and they understood me not that the Gentiles should not at any time hear my voice—that I should not manifest myself unto them save it were by the Holy Ghost.
- 24 But behold, ye have both heard my voice, and seen me; and ye are my sheep, and ye are numbered among those whom the Father hath given me.

## טז

## 16

- וְאֵכֶן, הִנֵּנִי אֹמֵר לָכֶם, כִּי יֵשׁ לִי צֵאן נֹסְפֹת  
אֲשֶׁר אֵינָן מִן הָאֶרֶץ הַזֹּאת, וְאֵינָן מֵאֶרֶץ  
יְרוּשָׁלַם, וְאִי לֹא מֵאֶחָד מִחֻבְלֵי הָאֶרֶץ  
הַגּוֹבְלִים בָּהּ, אֲשֶׁר שָׁם בָּאתִי לְשִׁמּוֹשׁ.
- כִּי אֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר עָלִיְהֶם אֲנִי מְדַבֵּר לֹא שְׁמָעוּ  
עַדִּין אֶת קוֹלִי, וְאִי לֹא הִתְגַּלִּיתִי אֲלֵיהֶם אֶפְלוּ  
פַּעַם אַחַת.
- אֲךָ צִוִּנִי הָאֵב כִּי אֵלֶּךְ אֲלֵיהֶם, בְּעֵבֹר יִשְׁמְעוּ  
אֶת קוֹלִי וְיִמְנֹו עִם צֵאנִי, לְמַעַן יִהְיֶה עֵדֶר אֶחָד  
וְרוּעָה אֶחָד; עַל כֵּן אֲנִי הוֹלֵךְ לְהִרְאוֹת אֲלֵיהֶם.
- וְאֲנִי מְצֻוֶּכֶם כִּי תִכְתְּבוּ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה  
אַחֵר לְכַתְּבִי; וְהִיָּה אִם עַמִּי אֲשֶׁר בִּירוּשָׁלַם,  
הֵם אֲשֶׁר רָאוּנִי וְהָיוּ עַמִּי בְּעַת שְׁמִשׁוֹתִי לֹא  
יִבְקְשׁוּ מִן הָאֵב בְּשִׁמִּי, כִּי יִקְבְּלוּ יְדִיעָה עָלֵיכֶם  
עַל יְדֵי רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ, וְכֵן עַל שְׁאֵר הַשְּׁבָטִים  
אֲשֶׁר עַל אֹדוֹתֵיהֶם אֵין הֵם יוֹדְעִים דְּבַר, וְהִיָּה  
כִּי יִשְׁמְרוּ הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר תִּכְתְּבוּ, וְיִצְגּוּ  
לְפָנֵי הַגּוֹיִים, לְמַעַן תִּבּוֹא שְׂאֵרִית זֶרַעַם, אֲשֶׁר  
תִּהְיֶה פְּזוּרָה עַל פְּנֵי הָאֶרֶץ מִפְּנֵי חֶסֶר אֲמוּנָתָם,  
אֶל הַיְדִיעָה אוֹתִי, גּוֹאֲלָם, עַל יְדֵי מְלֹא הַגּוֹיִים.
- 1 And verily, verily, I say unto you that I have other sheep which are not of this land, neither of the land of Jerusalem, neither in any parts of that land round about whither I have been to minister.
- 2 For they of whom I speak are they who have not as yet heard my voice; neither have I at any time manifested myself unto them.
- 3 But I have received a commandment of the Father that I shall go unto them, and that they shall hear my voice, and shall be numbered among my sheep, that there may be one fold and one shepherd; therefore I go to show myself unto them.
- 4 And I command you that ye shall write these sayings after I am gone, that if it so be that my people at Jerusalem, they who have seen me and been with me in my ministry, do not ask the Father in my name, that they may receive a knowledge of you by the Holy Ghost, and also of the other tribes whom they know not of, that these sayings which ye shall write shall be kept and shall be manifested unto the Gentiles, that through the fulness of the Gentiles, the remnant of their seed, who shall be scattered forth upon the face of the earth because of their unbelief, may be brought in, or may be brought to a knowledge of me, their Redeemer.

- 5 And then will I gather them in from the four quarters of the earth; and then will I fulfill the covenant which the Father hath made unto all the people of the house of Israel.
- אָז אַקבֶּצֶם מֵאַרְבַּע כְּנָפּוֹת הָאָרֶץ, וְאִזְּ  
אֶקִּים אֶת הַבְּרִית אֲשֶׁר כָּרַת הָאֵב לְכָל  
אֲנָשֵׁי בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל.
- 6 And blessed are the Gentiles, because of their belief in me, in and of the Holy Ghost, which witnesses unto them of me and of the Father.
- וּבְרוּכִים יִהְיוּ הַגּוֹיִּים עַל אֲמוּנָתָם בִּי, בְּרוּחַ  
הַקֹּדֶשׁ וְעַל יְדִיו, הַמַּעֲיֵד לָהֶם עָלַי וְעַל הָאֵב.
- 7 Behold, because of their belief in me, saith the Father, and because of the unbelief of you, O house of Israel, in the latter day shall the truth come unto the Gentiles, that the fulness of these things shall be made known unto them.
- הִנֵּה, מִפְּנֵי אֲמוּנָתָם בִּי, נְאוּם הָאֵב, וּמִפְּנֵי  
חֲסֹר אֲמוּנָתְכֶם, בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל, תָּבוֹא הָאֵמֶת  
בְּאַחֲרִית הַיָּמִים אֶל הַגּוֹיִּים, בְּעִבּוּר יוֹדְעוּ  
לָהֶם הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה בְּמִלְאָם.
- 8 But wo, saith the Father, unto the unbelieving of the Gentiles—for notwithstanding they have come forth upon the face of this land, and have scattered my people who are of the house of Israel; and my people who are of the house of Israel have been cast out from among them, and have been trodden under feet by them;
- אֲךָ אוֹי לַגּוֹיִּים, נְאוּם הָאֵב, אֲשֶׁר אֵינָם  
מֵאֲמִינִים, אִי כִּי פָשְׁטוּ עַל פְּנֵי הָאָרֶץ הַזֹּאת  
וְהִפְצִיאוּ אֶת עַמִּי, אֲשֶׁר מִבֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל הָמָּה;  
וְעַמִּי, אֲשֶׁר מִבֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל הָמָּה, גָּרְשׁוּ  
מִקִּרְבָּם וְנִרְמְסוּ תַּחַת רַגְלֵיהֶם;
- 9 And because of the mercies of the Father unto the Gentiles, and also the judgments of the Father upon my people who are of the house of Israel, verily, verily, I say unto you, that after all this, and I have caused my people who are of the house of Israel to be smitten, and to be afflicted, and to be slain, and to be cast out from among them, and to become hated by them, and to become a hiss and a byword among them—
- וּמִפְּנֵי רַחֲמֵי הָאֵב עַל הַגּוֹיִּים, וְכֹן מִפְּנֵי  
מִשְׁפָּטָיו עַל עַמִּי, אֲשֶׁר מִבֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל הָמָּה,  
אֲכֹן, הִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, כִּי אַחֵר כָּל אֵלֶּה, וְיָעַן  
אֲשֶׁר גָּרַמְתִּי כִּי עַמִּי, אֲשֶׁר מִבֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל  
הָמָּה, יִהְיוּ מְכִּים וּמַעֲזִינִים בְּיַדֵּי הַגּוֹיִּים, וְיִהְרָגוּ  
וְיִשְׁלָכוּ מִקִּרְבָּם, וְיִהְיוּ שְׂנוּאִים עֲלֵיהֶם וְיִהְיוּ  
לְמִשְׁלַל וּלְשִׁנְיָנָה בְּקִרְבָּם;
- 10 And thus commandeth the Father that I should say unto you: At that day when the Gentiles shall sin against my gospel, and shall reject the fulness of my gospel, and shall be lifted up in the pride of their hearts above all nations, and above all the people of the whole earth, and shall be filled with all manner of lyings, and of deceits, and of mischiefs, and all manner of hypocrisy, and murders, and priestcrafts, and whoredoms, and of secret abominations; and if they shall do all those things, and shall reject the fulness of my gospel, behold, saith the Father, I will bring the fulness of my gospel from among them.
- וְכֹה צִוָּה הָאֵב כִּי אֵמַר אֲלֵיכֶם: בְּיוֹם אֲשֶׁר  
יִחַטְּאוּ הַגּוֹיִּים כְּנֶגֶד בְּשׁוֹרְתִּי, וְיִמָּאֲסוּ בְּבִשְׁוֹרְתִּי  
בְּמִלְאָה, וְיִתְנַשְּׂאוּ בְּגָאוֹת לָכֶם מֵעַל כָּל הָאֲמּוֹת  
וּמֵעַל כָּל הָעַמִּים אֲשֶׁר לְתַבְּל כְּלָה, וְיִמְלְאוּ  
בְּכָל מִינֵי שָׁקֶר וּמְרֵמָה וְכָזָב וּתְחַבּוּלוֹת רָשָׁע,  
וְכָל צְבִיעוֹת וְרִצָּח וּתְחַבּוּלוֹת כְּמוֹרָה, וְזִנוּת  
וְתוֹעֵבוֹת סֵתֶר; וְאִם יַעֲשׂוּ אֶת כָּל אֵלֶּה  
וְיִמָּאֲסוּ בְּשׁוֹרְתִּי, נְאוּם הָאֵב, לָקוֹחַ  
אֶקַּח מִקִּרְבָּם אֶת מִלְאָ בְּשׁוֹרְתִּי.
- 11 And then will I remember my covenant which I have made unto my people, O house of Israel, and I will bring my gospel unto them.
- אָז אֶזְכֹּר אֶת בְּרִיתִי אֲשֶׁר כָּרַתִּי לְעַמִּי, בֵּית  
יִשְׂרָאֵל, וְאָבִיא אֶת בְּשׁוֹרְתִּי אֲלֵיהֶם.
- 12 And I will show unto thee, O house of Israel, that the Gentiles shall not have power over you; but I will remember my covenant unto you, O house of Israel, and ye shall come unto the knowledge of the fulness of my gospel.
- וְאִזְּ אֶרְאֶה לָכֶם, בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל, כִּי לֹא יוּכְלוּ לָכֶם  
הַגּוֹיִּים; כִּי אֶזְכֹּר אֶת בְּרִיתִי לָכֶם, בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל,  
וְאַתֶּם תָּבוֹאוּ אֶל יְדִיעַת בְּשׁוֹרְתִּי בְּמִלְאָה.
- 13 But if the Gentiles will repent and return unto me, saith the Father, behold they shall be numbered among my people, O house of Israel.
- אֲךָ אִם יִנְחָמוּ הַגּוֹיִּים עַל רָעָתָם וְיָשׁוּבוּ אֵלַי,  
נְאוּם הָאֵב, הִמָּנָה יִמְנוּ עִם עַמִּי, בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל.

- 14 And I will not suffer my people, who are of the house of Israel, to go through among them, and tread them down, saith the Father.
- 15 But if they will not return unto me, and hearken unto my voice, I will suffer them, yea, I will suffer my people, O house of Israel, that they shall go through among them, and shall tread them down, and they shall be as salt that hath lost its savor, which is thenceforth good for nothing but to be cast out, and to be trodden under foot of my people, O house of Israel.
- 16 Verily, verily, I say unto you, thus hath the Father commanded me—that I should give unto this people this land for their inheritance.
- 17 And then the words of the prophet Isaiah shall be fulfilled, which say:
- 18 Thy watchmen shall lift up the voice; with the voice together shall they sing, for they shall see eye to eye when the Lord shall bring again Zion.
- 19 Break forth into joy, sing together, ye waste places of Jerusalem; for the Lord hath comforted his people, he hath redeemed Jerusalem.
- 20 The Lord hath made bare his holy arm in the eye of all the nations; and all the ends of the earth shall see the salvation of God.
- וְלֹא אֶתִיר לְעַמִּי אֲשֶׁר מִבֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל הֵמָּה, לְעֵבֶר בְּקִרְבָּם וּלְרַמְסָם, נָאוֹם הָאָב.
- וְאִם לֹא יָשׁוּבוּ הַגּוֹיִים אֵלַי וְלֹא יִשְׁמָעוּ לְקוֹלִי, הִתֵּר אֶתִיר לְעַמִּי, בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל, כִּי יַעֲבְרוּ בְּקִרְבָּם וַיִּרְמְסוּם; אַזִּי יִהְיוּ הֵם כַּמֶּלַח אֲשֶׁר סָר טַעְמוֹ, אֲשֶׁר לֹא יִצְלַח עוֹד, כִּי אִם לִהְיוֹת מִשְׁלַף הַחוּצָה וּלְהִיּוֹת מִרְמָס לְרַגְלֵי עַמִּי, בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל.
- אָכֵן, הִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, כֹּה צֻוֵּי הָאָב, כִּי אֶתֶּן לָעָם הַזֶּה אֶת הָאֶרֶץ הַזֹּאת לְנַחֲלָה לָהֶם.
- אֹז יִתְקַיְמוּ דְבָרֵי יִשְׁעִיהוּ הַנְּבִיא אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר לֵאמֹר:
- קוֹל צִפְיָךְ נִשְׁאוּ קוֹל; יַחְדָּו יִרְנְנוּ, כִּי עֵין בְּעֵין יִרְאוּ בָשׁוּב יְהוָה צִיּוֹן.
- פָּצְחוּ רִנְנוּ יַחְדָּו, חֲרוּבוֹת יְרוּשָׁלַם, כִּי נָחַם יְהוָה עֲמוֹ, גָּאֵל יְרוּשָׁלַם.
- חֲשֹׁף יְהוָה אֶת זְרוֹעַ קִדְשׁוֹ לְעֵינֵי כָל הַגּוֹיִם; וִירְאוּ כָל אֲפָסֵי אֶרֶץ אֶת יְשׁוּעַת אֱלֹהֵינוּ.

## יז

## 17

- 1 Behold, now it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words he looked round about again on the multitude, and he said unto them: Behold, my time is at hand.
- 2 I perceive that ye are weak, that ye cannot understand all my words which I am commanded of the Father to speak unto you at this time.
- 3 Therefore, go ye unto your homes, and ponder upon the things which I have said, and ask of the Father, in my name, that ye may understand, and prepare your minds for the morrow, and I come unto you again.
- 4 But now I go unto the Father, and also to show myself unto the lost tribes of Israel, for they are not lost unto the Father, for he knoweth whither he hath taken them.
- 5 And it came to pass that when Jesus had thus spoken, he cast his eyes round about again on the multitude, and beheld they were in tears, and
- וְהָיָה אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר יֵשׁוּעַ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, הוּא שָׁב וַהֲבִיט סְבִיב עַל הַקְהָל וְאָמַר אֲלֵיהֶם: הִנֵּה, שְׁעִתִּי קָרְבָה.
- רוֹאֶה אֲנִי כִּי רַפִּים אַתֶּם, כִּי אֵינְכֶם יְכוּלִים לְהִבִּין אֶת כָּל דְּבָרֵי אֲשֶׁר צֻוֵּי הָאָב לְדַבֵּר אֲלֵיכֶם כְּעַתָּה.
- לְכֻן, לְכוּ נָא לְבֵתֵיכֶם וְהִרְהֵרוּ בַּדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר אָמַרְתִּי, וּבְקִשׁוּ מֵאֵת הָאָב בְּשִׁמִּי, לְמַעַן תִּבְיְנוּ, וְהִכִּינוּ אֶת לְבָבְכֶם לַיּוֹם הַמּוֹחָר, וְאֲנִי אָשׁוּב וְאָבֹא אֲלֵיכֶם.
- וְעַתָּה, אֲנִי הוֹלֵךְ אֶל הָאָב וְאֶף לְהִרְאוֹת אֶל שְׁבִטֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל הָאֲבֻדִּים, כִּי אֵין הֵם אֲבֻדִּים לָאָב, הַיּוֹדֵעַ אֵנָּה לְקַחֵם.
- וְכַכְלוֹת יֵשׁוּעַ לְדַבֵּר זֹאת, הוּא נִשָּׂא שְׁנִית אֶת עֵינָיו סְבִיב עַל הַקְהָל, וְרָאָה כִּי דִמְעוּ וְכִי דִבְק

- בו מִבְּטָם כָּאֵלֹו בִּקְשׁוּ כִי יֵאָרִיךְ מֵעַתָּה שְׁהוּתוֹ עִמָּם.
- וְהוּא אָמַר לָהֶם: הִנֵּה, מַעֵי מִלְּאִים רַחֲמִים עֲלֵיכֶם.
- 7 הֲיֵשׁ בְּכֶם חוֹלִים? הַבִּיאוּם הִנֵּה. הֲיֵשׁ בְּכֶם פֶּסֶחַ, אוֹ עִוְר, אוֹ צוֹלֵעַ, אוֹ נֶכֶה, אוֹ מְצֹרֵעַ, אוֹ בַּעַל מוּם, חֵרֵשׁ אוֹ בַּעַל פֶּגַע כְּלָשְׁהוּ? הַבִּיאוּם הִנֵּה וְאֶרְפָּאֶם, כִּי חוֹמֵל אֲנִי עֲלֵיכֶם, וַיִּמְעֵי מִלְּאוֹ רַחֲמִים.
- 8 נֹכַח אֲנִי כִי חֲפָצִים אַתֶּם כִּי אֶרְאֶה לָכֶם אֶת אֲשֶׁר עָשִׂיתִי לְאַחֵיכֶם אֲשֶׁר בִּירוּשָׁלַם. הֵן רָאִיתִי כִי אֲמוֹנְתְּכֶם דִּיָּה כִי אֶרְפָּאֶכֶם.
- 9 וְאַחֵר דִּבְרוּ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, יָצָא כָל הַקְּהֵל כְּאִישׁ אֶחָד עִם הַחוֹלִים וְהַמְעֻנִּים, עִם הַפֶּסֶחִים וְהָעוֹרִים וְהָאֵלְמִים, וְעִם כָּל אֲשֶׁר הָיוּ בַּמְּצוּקָה כְּלָשְׁהִי; וְהוּא רָפָא אוֹתָם, כָּל אִישׁ כְּאֲשֶׁר הוֹבֵא אֵלָיו.
- 10 וְכָלֶם, הַנֶּרְפָּאִים וְהַבְּרִיאִים, כָּרְעוּ לְרַגְלָיו וְהִשְׁתַּחֲוּוּ אֵלָיו; וְכָל אֲשֶׁר יָכְלוּ לָבוֹא מִן הַקְּהֵל בָּאוּ וְנָשְׁקוּ אֶת רַגְלָיו, עַד כִּי רָחַצוּ אֶת רַגְלָיו בַּדְּמְעוֹתֵיהֶם.
- 11 אַז הָיָה צָוָה כִּי יָבִיאוּ אֶת יְלָדֵיהֶם הַקְּטָנִים.
- 12 וְהָיָה כִּי הֵם הַבִּיאוּ אֶת יְלָדֵיהֶם הַקְּטָנִים וְהִנִּיחוּם סָבִיבוֹ עַל הָאָרֶץ, וַיִּשְׁוּעַ עֹמֵד בְּתוֹכָם; וְהַקְּהֵל פָּנָה מִקוֹם עַד אֲשֶׁר כָּלֶם הוֹבֵאוּ אֵלָיו.
- 13 וְאַחֵר אֲשֶׁר הוֹבֵאוּ כָּלֶם, צָוָה יֵשׁוּעַ, אֲשֶׁר עֹמֵד בְּקִרְבָּם, כִּי הַקְּהֵל יִכְרַע בִּרְוּעָה עַל הָאָרֶץ.
- 14 וְאַחֵר אֲשֶׁר הֵם כָּרְעוּ עַל בְּרִיכָהֶם נֶאֱמַח יֵשׁוּעַ וַאֲמַר: אָבָא, מִטְּרֵד אֲנִי מִפְּנֵי רָשָׁעַת אֲנָשֵׁי בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל.
- 15 וּבְאַמְרוֹ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, כָּרַע אִף הוּא אֶרְצָה עַל בְּרִכּוֹ; אַז הוּא הִתְפַּלֵּל אֶל הָאֵב וַדְּבָרֵי תְּפִלָּתוֹ אֵינֶם יְכוּלִּים לִהְיוֹת לְחֶכְתֵּב, וְהַקְּהֵל שָׁמַע וְהִעִיד עַל כָּךְ.
- did look steadfastly upon him as if they would ask him to tarry a little longer with them.
- And he said unto them: Behold, my bowels are filled with compassion towards you.
- Have ye any that are sick among you? Bring them hither. Have ye any that are lame, or blind, or halt, or maimed, or leproous, or that are withered, or that are deaf, or that are afflicted in any manner? Bring them hither and I will heal them, for I have compassion upon you; my bowels are filled with mercy.
- For I perceive that ye desire that I should show unto you what I have done unto your brethren at Jerusalem, for I see that your faith is sufficient that I should heal you.
- And it came to pass that when he had thus spoken, all the multitude, with one accord, did go forth with their sick and their afflicted, and their lame, and with their blind, and with their dumb, and with all them that were afflicted in any manner; and he did heal them every one as they were brought forth unto him.
- And they did all, both they who had been healed and they who were whole, bow down at his feet, and did worship him; and as many as could come for the multitude did kiss his feet, insomuch that they did bathe his feet with their tears.
- And it came to pass that he commanded that their little children should be brought.
- So they brought their little children and set them down upon the ground round about him, and Jesus stood in the midst; and the multitude gave way till they had all been brought unto him.
- And it came to pass that when they had all been brought, and Jesus stood in the midst, he commanded the multitude that they should kneel down upon the ground.
- And it came to pass that when they had knelt upon the ground, Jesus groaned within himself, and said: Father, I am troubled because of the wickedness of the people of the house of Israel.
- And when he had said these words, he himself also knelt upon the earth; and behold he prayed unto the Father, and the things which he prayed cannot be written, and the multitude did bear record who heard him.

- 16 And after this manner do they bear record: The eye hath never seen, neither hath the ear heard, before, so great and marvelous things as we saw and heard Jesus speak unto the Father;
- וְעִדּוּתָם הִיא כְּדִבְרֵים הָאֵלֶּה: עֵין לֹא רָאָתָה מַעֲוָדָה, וְאָזֶן לֹא שָׁמְעָה מֵעוֹלָם דְּבָרִים כֹּה גְדוֹלִים וְנִפְלְאִים כְּדִבְרֵים אֲשֶׁר רָאִינוּ וְשָׁמַעְנוּ בְּדִבְרֵי יֵשׁוּעַ אֶל הָאֵב.
- 17 And no tongue can speak, neither can there be written by any man, neither can the hearts of men conceive so great and marvelous things as we both saw and heard Jesus speak; and no one can conceive of the joy which filled our souls at the time we heard him pray for us unto the Father.
- אֲכֹן, לֹא תוּכַל אֶף לְשׁוֹן אַחַת לְדַבֵּר, וְיָד אִישׁ לֹא תוּכַל לְכַתֵּב, וְלֵב אָנוּשׁ לֹא יִשְׁכִּיל לְהַגִּיד דְּבָרִים כֹּה גְדוֹלִים וְנִפְלְאִים כְּדִבְרֵים אֲשֶׁר רָאִינוּ וְשָׁמַעְנוּ בְּדִבְרֵי יֵשׁוּעַ; וְאִם אִשׁ אֶחָד לֹא יוּכַל לְדַמּוֹת אֶת הַשְׂמִיחָה אֲשֶׁר מָלְאָה אֶת נַפְשׁוֹתֵינוּ בְּעֵת אֲשֶׁר שָׁמַעְנוּ אוֹתוֹ מִתְפַּלֵּל אֶל הָאֵב לְמַעַנָּנוּ.
- 18 And it came to pass that when Jesus had made an end of praying unto the Father, he arose; but so great was the joy of the multitude that they were overcome.
- וְהָיָה כְּכֹלּוֹת יֵשׁוּעַ אֶת תְּפִלָּתוֹ אֶל הָאֵב, הוּא קָם עַל רִגְלָיו, וְאוֹלָם כֹּה רַבָּה הָיְתָה שְׂמִיחַת הַקְּהָל, עַד כִּי הֵם הִכְרַעוּ.
- 19 And it came to pass that Jesus spake unto them, and bade them arise.
- אֲזַי דִּבֶּר אֲלֵיהֶם יֵשׁוּעַ וּבִקְשָׁם לָקוּם.
- 20 And they arose from the earth, and he said unto them: Blessed are ye because of your faith. And now behold, my joy is full.
- וּבִקּוּמָם מִן הָאָרֶץ הוּא אָמַר לָהֶם: בְּרוּכִים אַתֶּם מִפְּנֵי אֱמוּנַתְכֶם. הִנֵּה, שְׂמִיחָתִי מְלֵאָה.
- 21 And when he had said these words, he wept, and the multitude bare record of it, and he took their little children, one by one, and blessed them, and prayed unto the Father for them.
- וּבְאַמְרוֹ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה הוּא בָכָה, וְהַקְּהָל הָעֵיד עַל כֵּן; אֲזַי הוּא לָקַח אֶת יְלָדֵיהֶם הַקְּטָנִים, אֶחָד־אֶחָד, וּבִרְכָם וְהִתְפַּלֵּל אֶל הָאֵב לְמַעַנָּם.
- 22 And when he had done this he wept again;
- וְאַחֵר עָשׂוֹתוֹ זֹאת הוּא בָכָה שֵׁנִית.
- 23 And he spake unto the multitude, and said unto them: Behold your little ones.
- אֲזַי הוּא דִּבֶּר אֶל הַקְּהָל וְאָמַר אֲלֵיהֶם: רְאוּ אֶת יְלָדֵיכֶם.
- 24 And as they looked to behold they cast their eyes towards heaven, and they saw the heavens open, and they saw angels descending out of heaven as it were in the midst of fire; and they came down and encircled those little ones about, and they were encircled about with fire; and the angels did minister unto them.
- וּבְהִפְנוּתָם אֶת מַבְטֵיהֶם לְרֹאוֹת, הֵם נִשְׂאוּ אֶת עֵינֵיהֶם לְמָרוֹם; וְהִנֵּה נִפְתָּחוּ הַשָּׁמַיִם וּמַלְאָכִים יָרְדוּ מִהַשְׁמַיִם, כְּבָתוֹךְ אֵשׁ. וְהֵם יָרְדוּ וְהִקִּיפוּ אֶת הַיְלָדִים הָאֵלֶּה, אֲשֶׁר הָיוּ מִקְּפִים בְּאֵשׁ, וְהַמַּלְאָכִים שָׁמְשׁוּ לְפָנֵיהֶם.
- 25 And the multitude did see and hear and bear record; and they know that their record is true for they all of them did see and hear, every man for himself; and they were in number about two thousand and five hundred souls; and they did consist of men, women, and children.
- וְהַקְּהָל רָאָה וְשָׁמַע וְהָעֵיד עַל זֹאת; וְהֵם יוֹדְעִים כִּי עִדּוּתָם אֲמִתִּית, כִּי כָּלֶם רָאוּ וְשָׁמַעוּ, אִישׁ־אִישׁ בְּמוֹ עֵינָיו וּבְמוֹ אָזְנוֹ. כְּאַלְפִים וַחֲמִשׁ מֵאוֹת נַפְשׁ הָיָה מִסְפָּרָם, גְּבָרִים, נָשִׁים וְטַף.



## יח

## 18

- וְהָיָה כִּי יֵשׁוּעַ צִוָּה אֶת תַּלְמִידָיו לְהָבִיא אֵלָיו לֶחֶם וַיֵּין. 1 And it came to pass that Jesus commanded his disciples that they should bring forth some bread and wine unto him.
- וּבְעֵת הַלֶּכֶם לְהָבִיא לֶחֶם וַיֵּין, הוּא צִוָּה אֶת הַקְּהָל לְשֹׁבֵת עַל הָאָרֶץ. 2 And while they were gone for bread and wine, he commanded the multitude that they should sit themselves down upon the earth.
- וּכְאֲשֶׁר הֵבִיאוּ הַתַּלְמִידִים לֶחֶם וַיֵּין, הוּא לָקַח מִן הַלֶּחֶם וּבָצַע אוֹתוֹ וַיְבָרֵךְ עָלָיו וַיִּתֵּנוּ לַתַּלְמִידִים וְצִוָּם לֶאֱכֹל. 3 And when the disciples had come with bread and wine, he took of the bread and brake and blessed it; and he gave unto the disciples and commanded that they should eat.
- וְאַחֵר אֲשֶׁר הֵם אָכְלוּ וּשְׂבָעוּ, הוּא צִוָּם לְתַתּוֹ לַקְּהָל. 4 And when they had eaten and were filled, he commanded that they should give unto the multitude.
- וְאַחֵר אֲשֶׁר אָכַל הַקְּהָל וּשְׂבָע, הוּא אָמַר אֶל הַתַּלְמִידִים: הִנֵּה, אִישׁ אֶחָד מִכֶּם יִסְמָךְ, וְאֶת יָדוֹ אֵיפֹה לְבַצֵּעַ אֶת הַלֶּחֶם, וּלְבָרֵךְ עָלָיו וּלְתַתּוֹ לְאֲנָשֵׁי כְּנִסְיָתִי, לְכָל אֲשֶׁר יֵאֱמִינוּ וַיִּטְבְּלוּ בִּשְׁמִי. 5 And when the multitude had eaten and were filled, he said unto the disciples: Behold there shall one be ordained among you, and to him will I give power that he shall break bread and bless it and give it unto the people of my church, unto all those who shall believe and be baptized in my name.
- וְזֹאת תִּשְׁמְרוּ לַעֲשׂוֹת תָּמִיד, כְּפִי אֲשֶׁר עָשִׂיתִי אֲנִי, כְּפִי אֲשֶׁר בָּצַעְתִּי אֶת הַלֶּחֶם וּבִרְכֵיתִי עָלָיו וַיִּתְּנוּ לָכֶם. 6 And this shall ye always observe to do, even as I have done, even as I have broken bread and blessed it and given it unto you.
- וְזֹאת תַּעֲשׂוּ לְזִכֹּר גּוֹפִי, אֲשֶׁר הִרְאִיתִי לָכֶם. וְתִהְיֶה זֹאת לְעֵדוּת לִפְנֵי הָאֵב, כִּי זֹכְרִים אַתֶּם אוֹתִי תָּמִיד. וְאִם תִּזְכְּרוּנִי תָּמִיד, תִּהְיֶה רוּחִי עִמָּכֶם. 7 And this shall ye do in remembrance of my body, which I have shown unto you. And it shall be a testimony unto the Father that ye do always remember me. And if ye do always remember me ye shall have my Spirit to be with you.
- וְאַחֵר אָמְרוּ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה הוּא צִוָּה אֶת תַּלְמִידָיו לְקַחַת וּלְשֹׁתוֹת מִכּוֹס הַיַּיִן וְאָף לְתַתּוֹ לַקְּהָל לְשֹׁתוֹת מִמֶּנָּה. 8 And it came to pass that when he said these words, he commanded his disciples that they should take of the wine of the cup and drink of it, and that they should also give unto the multitude that they might drink of it.
- וְכֵן עָשׂוּ. הֵם שָׁתוּ מִמֶּנָּה וְרוּוּ; וְהֵם נִתְּנוּ לַקְּהָל, וְאָף הֵם שָׁתוּ וְרוּוּ. 9 And it came to pass that they did so, and did drink of it and were filled; and they gave unto the multitude, and they did drink, and they were filled.
- וְאַחֵר אֲשֶׁר עָשׂוּ זֹאת הַתַּלְמִידִים, אָמַר יֵשׁוּעַ אֲלֵיהֶם: בְּרוּכִים אַתֶּם עַל הַדְּבָר הַזֶּה, אֲשֶׁר עָשִׂיתֶם, כִּי הוּא קִוִּים מִצְוֹתִי וְזֹאת עֵדוּת לִפְנֵי הָאֵב כִּי חֹפְצִים אַתֶּם לַעֲשׂוֹת אֶת אֲשֶׁר צִוִּיתִיכֶם. 10 And when the disciples had done this, Jesus said unto them: Blessed are ye for this thing which ye have done, for this is fulfilling my commandments, and this doth witness unto the Father that ye are willing to do that which I have commanded you.

- וְזֹאת תַעֲשׂוּ תָמִיד לְשֹׁבִים מִרַעְתָּם הַמִּטְבָּלִים בְּשִׁמִּי; וְזֹאת תַעֲשׂוּ לְזִכָּר דְּמִי, אֲשֶׁר שָׁפַכְתִּי לְמַעַנְכֶם, בְּעֵבֹר תַעֲדִיזוּ לִפְנֵי הָאָב כִּי זֹכְרִים אַתֶּם אוֹתִי תָמִיד. וְהִיָּה אִם תִּזְכְּרוּנִי תָמִיד, תִּהְיֶה רוּחִי עִמָּכֶם.
- 11 And this shall ye always do to those who repent and are baptized in my name; and ye shall do it in remembrance of my blood, which I have shed for you, that ye may witness unto the Father that ye do always remember me. And if ye do always remember me ye shall have my Spirit to be with you.
- הֲנִי מְצִוְכֶם כִּי תַשְׁמְרוּ לַעֲשׂוֹת אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה; וְהִיָּה אִם תַעֲשׂוּ תָמִיד אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, בְּרוּכִים תִּהְיוּ, כִּי עַל צוּרִי נִבְנִיתֶם.
- 12 And I give unto you a commandment that ye shall do these things. And if ye shall always do these things blessed are ye, for ye are built upon my rock.
- וְכָל אֲשֶׁר יוֹסִיפוּ עַל הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, או יִפְחֲתוּ מֵהֶם, אֵין הֵם בְּנוּיִים עַל צוּרִי כִּי אִם עַל יְסוּדוֹת חוֹל; וּבִרְדַּת הַגֶּשֶׁם וּבְבּוֹא הַשֹּׁטְפוֹן וּבְנִשְׁבַּ הָרוּחוֹת, אֲשֶׁר יִהְלְמוּ בָהֶם, נָפֹל יָפֹל, וְשַׁעְרֵי שָׁאוֹל פְּתוּחִים וּמוֹכְנִים לְקַבֵּלָם.
- 13 But whoso among you shall do more or less than these are not built upon my rock, but are built upon a sandy foundation; and when the rain descends, and the floods come, and the winds blow, and beat upon them, they shall fall, and the gates of hell are ready open to receive them.
- עַל כֵּן בְּרוּכִים אַתֶּם בְּשִׁמְרָכֶם אֶת מְצֻוֹתִי, אֲשֶׁר צִוֵּי הָאָב כִּי אֶתֶּן לָכֶם.
- 14 Therefore blessed are ye if ye shall keep my commandments, which the Father hath commanded me that I should give unto you.
- אָכֵן, הֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, כִּי עֲלִיכֶם לְהִשְׁמַר וּלְהִתְפַּלֵּל תָּמִיד, כֹּן פִּתְחֶם הַשָּׁטָן, וְיֹולִיכֶם אֵלַי שָׁבִי.
- 15 Verily, verily, I say unto you, ye must watch and pray always, lest ye be tempted by the devil, and ye be led away captive by him.
- וְכַפִּי אֲשֶׁר הִתְפַּלֵּלְתִּי אֲנִי בְקִרְבְּכֶם, כֹּן תִּתְפַּלְּלוּ בְּכִסְיָתִי, בְּקִרְבַּ עַמִּי הַשֹּׁבִים מִחַטָּא וְהַמִּטְבָּלִים בְּשִׁמִּי. הֲנִי הָאוֹר; מוֹפֵת אֲנִי לָכֶם.
- 16 And as I have prayed among you even so shall ye pray in my church, among my people who do repent and are baptized in my name. Behold I am the light; I have set an example for you.
- וְאַחֵר אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר יֵשׁוּעַ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה אֶל תַּלְמִידָיו, הוּא פָנָה שָׁנִית אֶל הַקְּהָל וְאָמַר אֲלֵיהֶם:
- 17 And it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words unto his disciples, he turned again unto the multitude and said unto them:
- אָכֵן הֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, עֲלִיכֶם לְהִשְׁמַר וּלְהִתְפַּלֵּל תָּמִיד, כֹּן תִּתְפַּתּוּ, כִּי הַשָּׁטָן מִשְׁתַּוְּקֵק לְקַחְתְּכֶם, בְּעֵבֹר יִנְפֹּכֶם כְּחֹשֶׁה.
- 18 Behold, verily, verily, I say unto you, ye must watch and pray always lest ye enter into temptation; for Satan desireth to have you, that he may sift you as wheat.
- עַל כֵּן עֲלִיכֶם לְהִתְפַּלֵּל תָּמִיד אֶל הָאָב בְּשִׁמִּי.
- 19 Therefore ye must always pray unto the Father in my name;
- וְכָל אֲשֶׁר תִּבְקֶשׁוּ מִן הָאָב בְּשִׁמִּי, וְאֲשֶׁר יָשָׁר הוּא, בְּאֱמוּנַתְכֶם כִּי תִקְבְּלוּהוּ, הִנֵּהנָּה יִנָּתֵן לָכֶם.
- 20 And whatsoever ye shall ask the Father in my name, which is right, believing that ye shall receive, behold it shall be given unto you.
- הִתְפַּלְּלוּ בְּקִרְבַּ מִשְׁפּוֹחוֹתֵיכֶם אֶל הָאָב, תָּמִיד בְּשִׁמִּי, בְּעֵבֹר יִבְרְכוּ נְשִׁיכֶם וְיִלְדֵיכֶם.
- 21 Pray in your families unto the Father, always in my name, that your wives and your children may be blessed.
- הֲאֶסְפוּ נָא יַחַד לַעֲתִים קְרוֹבוֹת; וְאַל לָכֶם לְאַסֹּר עַל אִישׁ לָבוֹא אֲלֵיכֶם בְּעַת הַתְּאַסְפוֹתְכֶם, כִּי אִם הִתִּירוּ לָהֶם לָבוֹא אֲלֵיכֶם וְאַל תִּמְנְעוּם.
- 22 And behold, ye shall meet together oft; and ye shall not forbid any man from coming unto you when ye shall meet together, but suffer them that they may come unto you and forbid them not;

- 23 But ye shall pray for them, and shall not cast them out; and if it so be that they come unto you oft ye shall pray for them unto the Father, in my name.  
אָכֵן, הַתְּפַלֵּלוּ נָא עֲלֵיהֶם, וְאַל תִּגְרְשׁוּם.  
וְאִם יָרְבוּ לָבוֹא אֵלֵיכֶם, הַתְּפַלֵּלוּ לְמַעַנִּם  
אֶל הָאֵב בְּשִׁמִּי.
- 24 Therefore, hold up your light that it may shine unto the world. Behold I am the light which ye shall hold up—that which ye have seen me do. Behold ye see that I have prayed unto the Father, and ye all have witnessed.  
עַל כֵּן שְׂאוּ אֹרְכֶם, בַּעֲבוּר יוֹרַח לְעוֹלָם. הִנֵּה,  
אֲנִי הָאוֹר אֲשֶׁר תִּשְׂאוּ, אָכֵן, אֵת אֲשֶׁר רָאִיתֶם  
כִּי עָשִׂיתִי אֲנִי. הֵן רָאִיתֶם כִּי הַתְּפַלֵּלְתִּי אֶל  
הָאֵב; כְּלָכֶם עֵדִים לְזֹאת.
- 25 And ye see that I have commanded that none of you should go away, but rather have commanded that ye should come unto me, that ye might feel and see; even so shall ye do unto the world; and whosoever breaketh this commandment suffereth himself to be led into temptation.  
וְרָאִיתֶם כִּי צִוִּיתִי כִּי לֹא יֵעֹזב אִישׁ מִכֶּם,  
כִּי אִם צִוִּיתִי כִּי תָבוֹאוּ אֵלַי, לְמַעַן תִּמְשְׁשׁוּ  
וְתִרְאוּ; וְכֵן תַּעֲשׂוּ לְעוֹלָם. וְכָל אֲשֶׁר יַפְרֹא אֵת  
הַמִּצְוָה הַזֹּאת, מִתְמַסֵּר לָבוֹא אֵלַי מִדּוּחִים.
- 26 And now it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words, he turned his eyes again upon the disciples whom he had chosen, and said unto them:  
וְאַחֵר אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר יֵשׁוּעַ אֵת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה,  
הוּא שָׁב וְנָשָׂא אֶת מַבְטּוֹ אֶל הַתַּלְמִידִים אֲשֶׁר  
בָּחַר וְאָמַר אֲלֵיהֶם:
- 27 Behold verily, verily, I say unto you, I give unto you another commandment, and then I must go unto my Father that I may fulfil other commandments which he hath given me.  
אָכֵן הִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, מִצְוָה נוספת אֲנִי  
מִצְוֶיכֶם, וְאַחֲרַי כֵּן עָלַי לָלֶכֶת אֶל אָבִי לְמַעַן  
אֲמַלֵּא מִצְוֹת אַחֵרוֹת אֲשֶׁר נָתַן לִי.
- 28 And now behold, this is the commandment which I give unto you, that ye shall not suffer any one knowingly to partake of my flesh and blood unworthily, when ye shall minister it;  
וְהִנֵּה, זֹאת הַמִּצְוָה אֲשֶׁר אֲנִי מִצְוֶיכֶם:  
לֹא תִתְּרוּ מִדַּעַת כִּי יֹאכֵל אִישׁ מִבְּשָׂרִי,  
אוֹ יִשְׁתֶּה מִדָּמִי, וְאֵין הוּא רָאוּי לָכֶּה,  
בַּעַת שִׁמְשֹׁכֶם בְּקֹדֶשׁ.
- 29 For whoso eateth and drinketh my flesh and blood unworthily eateth and drinketh damnation to his soul; therefore if ye know that a man is unworthy to eat and drink of my flesh and blood ye shall forbid him.  
כִּי כָל הָאוֹכֵל מִבְּשָׂרִי, אוֹ הַשּׂוֹתֶה מִדָּמִי,  
וְאֵינוֹ רָאוּי, אוֹכֵל וְשׂוֹתֶה מֵאֲרָה לְנַפְשׁוֹ. עַל כֵּן  
כָּל אִישׁ אֲשֶׁר תִּדְעוּ כִּי אֵין הוּא רָאוּי לְאֹכֵל  
מִבְּשָׂרִי אוֹ לְשׂוֹתֹת מִדָּמִי, מְנוּעַ תִּמְנְעוּהוּ.
- 30 Nevertheless, ye shall not cast him out from among you, but ye shall minister unto him and shall pray for him unto the Father, in my name; and if it so be that he repenteth and is baptized in my name, then shall ye receive him, and shall minister unto him of my flesh and blood.  
וְאוֹלָם, לֹא תִגְרְשׁוּהוּ מִתּוֹכְכֶם, כִּי שִׁמְשׁ  
תִּשְׁמְשׁוּ לְפָנָיו וְתִתְּפַלֵּלוּ לְמַעַנִּיו אֶל הָאֵב, בְּשִׁמִּי;  
וְכִי יֵשׁוּב מִרְעָתוֹ וְיִטְבֵּל בְּשִׁמִּי, קִבֵּל תִּקְבְּלוּהוּ,  
וְתִשְׁמְשׁוּהוּ וְתִתְּנוּ לוֹ מִבְּשָׂרִי וּמִדָּמִי.
- 31 But if he repent not he shall not be numbered among my people, that he may not destroy my people, for behold I know my sheep, and they are numbered.  
וְאִם לֹא יֵשׁוּב מִרְעָתוֹ, לֹא יִמְנֶה הוּא עִם  
עַמִּי לְבֵל יֹאבִידִם, כִּי יוֹדַע אֲנִי אֵת צֹאנִי,  
וּסְפוּרוֹת הֵנָּה.
- 32 Nevertheless, ye shall not cast him out of your synagogues, or your places of worship, for unto such shall ye continue to minister; for ye know not but what they will return and repent, and come unto me with full purpose of heart, and I shall heal them; and ye shall be the means of bringing salvation unto them.  
וְאוֹלָם, לֹא תִגְרְשׁוּהוּ מִבֵּיתֵי כְּנִסְיֹתֵיכֶם, אוֹ  
מִבֵּיתֵי תְּפִלָּתְכֶם, כִּי אִם לְאֲשֶׁר כְּמוֹתוֹ תוֹסִיפוּ  
לְשִׁמְשׁ, כִּי אֵינְכֶם יוֹדְעִים, אוֹלֵי יֵשׁוּבוּ וְיִנְחָמוּ  
עַל רְעָתָם, וְיָבוֹאוּ אֵלַי בְּלֵב שָׁלֵם וְאֲנִי אֶרְפָּאֵם;  
וְאַתֶּם תִּהְיוּ כָּלִי שְׂרֵת לְהִבְיֵאֵם לִישׁוּעָה.

- 33 Therefore, keep these sayings which I have commanded you that ye come not under condemnation; for wo unto him whom the Father condemneth.
- לָכֵן, שְׁמְרוּ לַעֲשׂוֹת אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר צִוִּיתִיכֶם, לְבַל תָּבוֹא עֲלֵיכֶם הָרְשָׁעָה כִּי אֲנִי לֹאֲשֶׁר יִרְשִׁיעֵהוּ הָאֵב.
- 34 And I give you these commandments because of the disputations which have been among you. And blessed are ye if ye have no disputations among you.
- וְאֲנִי מְצַוְכֶם אֶת הַמִּצְוֹת הָאֵלֶּה, מִפְּנֵי הַמַּחְלֻקוֹת אֲשֶׁר הָיוּ בֵּינֵיכֶם. וּבְרוּכִים אַתֶּם בְּאִין מַחְלֻקוֹת בֵּינֵיכֶם.
- 35 And now I go unto the Father, because it is expedient that I should go unto the Father for your sakes.
- וְעַתָּה הוֹלֵךְ אֲנִי אֶל הָאֵב, כִּי טוֹב הַדְּבָר אֲשֶׁר אֵלַי אֶל הָאֵב לְמַעַנְכֶם.
- 36 And it came to pass that when Jesus had made an end of these sayings, he touched with his hand the disciples whom he had chosen, one by one, even until he had touched them all, and spake unto them as he touched them.
- וּכְכָלוֹת יֵשׁוּעַ לְדַבֵּר אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, הוּא סָמַךְ אֶת יָדוֹ עַל הַתְּלָמִידִים אֲשֶׁר בָּחַר, אֶחָד־אֶחָד, עַד אֲשֶׁר נָגַע בְּכֻלָּם, וּבָעֵת אֲשֶׁר הוּא נָגַע בָּהֶם הוּא דִּבֶּר אֲלֵיהֶם.
- 37 And the multitude heard not the words which he spake, therefore they did not bear record; but the disciples bare record that he gave them power to give the Holy Ghost. And I will show unto you hereafter that this record is true.
- וְהַקְהָל לֹא שָׁמְעוּ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר וְעַל כֵּן לֹא הָעִידוּ עֲלֵיהֶם, אֶף הַתְּלָמִידִים הָעִידוּ כִּי הוּא יָפָה אֶת יָדָם לְהַעֲנִיק אֶת רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ. וְאֲנִי אֲרַאֶה לָכֶם בְּהַמְשֹׁךְ הַדְּבָרִים כִּי עֲדוּת זֹאת אִמְתָּ הִיא.
- 38 And it came to pass that when Jesus had touched them all, there came a cloud and overshadowed the multitude that they could not see Jesus.
- וְהָיָה אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר סָמַךְ יֵשׁוּעַ יָדוֹ עַל כָּלָם, בָּא עָנָן וַכְסֶה אֶת הַמִּזְוֹן הָעָם עַד כִּי הֵם לֹא יָכְלוּ לִרְאוֹת אֶת יֵשׁוּעַ.
- 39 And while they were overshadowed he departed from them, and ascended into heaven. And the disciples saw and did bear record that he ascended again into heaven.
- וּבְעֵת אֲפָפָם הָעָנָן, הוּא נִפְרָד מֵהֶם וְעָלָה הַשָּׁמַיְמָה. וְהַתְּלָמִידִים רָאוּ וְהָעִידוּ כִּי הוּא שָׁב וְעָלָה לְמָרוֹם.

## יט

## 19

- 1 And now it came to pass that when Jesus had ascended into heaven, the multitude did disperse, and every man did take his wife and his children and did return to his own home.
- וְהָיָה אַחֵר עֲלוֹת יֵשׁוּעַ הַשָּׁמַיְמָה, הִתְפָּזַר הַקְהָל וְכָל אִישׁ לָקַח עִמּוֹ אֶת אִשְׁתּוֹ וְאֶת יְלָדָיו וְשָׁב אֶל בֵּיתוֹ.
- 2 And it was noised abroad among the people immediately, before it was yet dark, that the multitude had seen Jesus, and that he had ministered unto them, and that he would also show himself on the morrow unto the multitude.
- וְהָיָה כִּי בְמַהֲרָה, בְּטָרֶם תִּרְדּוּ הַחֹשֶׁכָה, יָצָא קוֹל בְּקֶרֶב הָעָם, כִּי רָאָה הַקְהָל אֶת יֵשׁוּעַ, וְכִי שָׁמַשׁ לִפְנֵיהֶם, וְכִי הוּא יָשׁוּב בַּיּוֹם הַמָּחָר לְהִרְאוֹת לְעֵינֵי הַקְהָל.
- 3 Yea, and even all the night it was noised abroad concerning Jesus; and insomuch did they send forth unto the people that there were many, yea, an exceedingly great number, did labor exceedingly all that night,
- אָכֵן, אֶף כָּל הַלַּיְלָה הִכְרִזוּ הַדְּבָרִים לְמִרְחָקִים עַל אוֹדוֹת יֵשׁוּעַ. וְהֵם כֹּה שָׁקְדוּ לְהַפִּיץ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים בָּעָם, עַד כִּי הָיוּ רַבִּים, אָכֵן, עֲצוֹם

וְרַב הָיָה מִסְפָּרָם, אֲשֶׁר עָמְלוּ רַב עִמָּל כָּל  
הַלֵּילָה הַהוּא, בְּעִבּוּר יִמְצְאוּ לְמַחֲרָת בְּמָקוֹם  
אֲשֶׁר עֲתִיד הָיָה יֵשׁוּעַ לְהֵרָאוֹת אֶל הַמּוֹן הָעָם.

that they might be on the morrow in the place where Jesus should show himself unto the multitude.

וְהָיָה בַּיּוֹם הַמָּחָרָת, בְּהִתְאַסֵּף הַקָּהָל, וְהָנָה  
בָּא נְפִי יַחַד עִם אָחִיו, אֲשֶׁר הָעֵלָהּ מִן הַמֵּתִים  
וְאֲשֶׁר שְׁמוֹ נִקְרָא טִימּוֹתִי. וְעִמָּם בָּא בֶן נְפִי,  
אֲשֶׁר שְׁמוֹ נִקְרָא יוֹנָה, וְכֵן מִתּוֹנִי וְאָחִיו  
מִתּוֹנִיָּהָ, וְקוּמֶן וְקוּמֶנוֹנְחִי וְיֵרֵמְיָהוּ  
וְשִׁמְנוֹן וְיֹזָה וְצִדְקָהוּ וְיִשְׁעִיָּהוּ; אֵלֶּה שְׁמוֹת  
הַתְּלָמִידִים אֲשֶׁר בָּחַר יֵשׁוּעַ. וְהָיָה כִּי הֵם  
הִלְכוּ וְעָמְדוּ בְּקֶרֶב הַקָּהָל.

4 And it came to pass that on the morrow, when the multitude was gathered together, behold, Nephi and his brother whom he had raised from the dead, whose name was Timothy, and also his son, whose name was Jonas, and also Mathoni, and Mathonihah, his brother, and Kumen, and Kumenonhi, and Jeremiah, and Shemnon, and Jonas, and Zedekiah, and Isaiah—now these were the names of the disciples whom Jesus had chosen—and it came to pass that they went forth and stood in the midst of the multitude.

וְהָנָה, כֹּה רַב הָיָה הַקָּהָל, עַד כִּי הֵם הוֹרוּם  
כִּי יִחְלְקוּ לְשִׁתִּים עֲשָׂרָה קְבוּצוֹת.

5 And behold, the multitude was so great that they did cause that they should be separated into twelve bodies.

וּשְׁנַיִם עָשָׂר הַתְּלָמִידִים לְמַדּוּ אֶת הַקָּהָל;  
וְהֵם הוֹרוּ לְקַהֵל לְכַרְעַ אַרְצָהּ, עַל בְּרַפְיָהָם,  
וּלְהִתְפַּלֵּל אֶל הָאֵב הַבָּשָׂם יֵשׁוּעַ.

6 And the twelve did teach the multitude; and behold, they did cause that the multitude should kneel down upon the face of the earth, and should pray unto the Father in the name of Jesus.

וְאֵף הַתְּלָמִידִים הִתְפַּלְּלוּ אֶל הָאֵב בְּשֵׁם  
יֵשׁוּעַ, וְאַחֵר כֹּךְ הֵם קָמוּ וְשָׁמְשׁוּ לְפָנֵי הָעָם.

7 And the disciples did pray unto the Father also in the name of Jesus. And it came to pass that they arose and ministered unto the people.

וְאַחֵר אֲשֶׁר שָׁמְשׁוּ בְּחִזָּרָם עַל אוֹתָן הַמַּלְאִכִּים  
אֲשֶׁר אָמַר יֵשׁוּעַ, בְּלֹא כָל שְׁנוֹי מִמְּלוֹתָיו, הֵם  
שָׁבוּ וְכָרְעוּ בָּרָךְ וְהִתְפַּלְּלוּ אֶל הָאֵב בְּשֵׁם יֵשׁוּעַ.

8 And when they had ministered those same words which Jesus had spoken—nothing varying from the words which Jesus had spoken—behold, they knelt again and prayed to the Father in the name of Jesus.

וְהֵם הִתְפַּלְּלוּ עַל אֲשֶׁר הִשְׁתּוֹקְקוּ לוֹ יוֹתֵר.  
מִכָּל; וְחִפְצָם הָיָה כִּי יִנָּתֵן לָהֶם רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ.

9 And they did pray for that which they most desired; and they desired that the Holy Ghost should be given unto them.

וְאַחֵר אֲשֶׁר הִתְפַּלְּלוּ כֹךְ, הֵם יָרְדוּ אֶל קִצֵּה  
אֲגֻם הַמַּיִם, וְהִקָּהָל בְּעִקְבוֹתֵיהֶם.

10 And when they had thus prayed they went down unto the water's edge, and the multitude followed them.

וְנְפִי יָרַד אֶל הַמַּיִם וְטָבַל.

11 And it came to pass that Nephi went down into the water and was baptized.

וְהָיָה בְּעֹלוֹתוֹ מִן הַמַּיִם, הוּא הֵחֵל לְהִטְבִּיל; אָכֵן,  
הוּא הִטְבִּיל אֶת כָּל אֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר בָּחַר יֵשׁוּעַ.

12 And he came up out of the water and began to baptize. And he baptized all those whom Jesus had chosen.

וְאַחֵר אֲשֶׁר הִטְבְּלוּ הַכֹּל וְעָלוּ מִן הַמַּיִם,  
נָח עֲלֵיהֶם רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ, וְהֵם מָלְאוּ רוּחַ  
הַקֹּדֶשׁ וְאֵשׁ.

13 And it came to pass when they were all baptized and had come up out of the water, the Holy Ghost did fall upon them, and they were filled with the Holy Ghost and with fire.

וְהָנָה, הֵם כָּאֵלּוּ הִקְפּוּ בָּאֵשׁ, וְהָיָה יָרְדָּה מִן  
הַשָּׁמַיִם; וְהִקָּהָל הָיוּ עֲדִים לֹאָה וְהָעִידוּ עַל כֹּךְ;  
וּמְלָאכִים יָרְדוּ מִמָּרוֹם וְשָׁמְשׁוּ לְפָנֵיהֶם.

14 And behold, they were encircled about as if it were by fire; and it came down from heaven, and the multitude did witness it, and did bear record; and angels did come down out of heaven and did minister unto them.



- 15 והיה בעוד המלאכים משמשים לפני התלמידים, והנה בא ישוע ועמד בתוכם ושמם לפניהם.
- 16 And it came to pass that while the angels were ministering unto the disciples, behold, Jesus came and stood in the midst and ministered unto them.
- 17 ואחר אשר כרעו הכל על הארץ, הוא צוה על תלמידיו כי יתפללו.
- 18 And it came to pass that he spake unto the multitude, and commanded them that they should kneel down again upon the earth, and also that his disciples should kneel down upon the earth.
- 19 ואחר אשר כרעו הכל על הארץ, הוא צוה על תלמידיו כי יתפללו.
- 20 And it came to pass that when they had all knelt down upon the earth, he commanded his disciples that they should pray.
- 21 והנה, הם החלו בתפלה; אכן, הם התפללו אל ישוע וקראוהו אדוניהם ואלהיהם.
- 22 And behold, they began to pray; and they did pray unto Jesus, calling him their Lord and their God.
- 23 אז נפרד ישוע מתוכם, והתרחק מהם מעט והשתחוה ארצה, ואמר:
- 24 And it came to pass that Jesus departed out of the midst of them, and went a little way off from them and bowed himself to the earth, and he said:
- 25 אבא, מודה אני כי נתת את רוח הקדש לאלה אשר בחרתי; הן מפני אמונתם בי בחרתיים מבני העולם.
- 26 Father, I thank thee that thou hast given the Holy Ghost unto these whom I have chosen; and it is because of their belief in me that I have chosen them out of the world.
- 27 אבא, אבקשך כי תתן את רוח הקדש לכל אלה אשר יאמינו בדבריהם.
- 28 Father, I pray thee that thou wilt give the Holy Ghost unto all them that shall believe in their words.
- 29 אבא, נתת להם את רוח הקדש על אמונתם בי, ורואה אתה כי הם מאמינים בי כי שומע אתה אותם, והם מתפללים אלי; ותפלתם היא אלי כי אני עמם.
- 30 Father, thou hast given them the Holy Ghost because they believe in me; and thou seest that they believe in me because thou hearest them, and they pray unto me; and they pray unto me because I am with them.
- 31 ועתה, אבי, מתפלל אני אליך למענם, ואף למען כל אשר יאמינו בדבריהם, בעבור יאמינו בי, בעבור אהיה אני בהם, כפי אשר אתה, אבי, הנך בי, בעבור נהיה אחד.
- 32 And now Father, I pray unto thee for them, and also for all those who shall believe on their words, that they may believe in me, that I may be in them as thou, Father, art in me, that we may be one.
- 33 ואחר אשר התפלל כך ישוע אל האב, הוא בא אל תלמידיו, והנה, הם עודם מתפללים אליו, בלא הפוגה; והם לא הכבירו מלים, יען אשר נתנו להם הדברים אשר יתפללו, ולבם מלא שקיקה.
- 34 And it came to pass that when Jesus had thus prayed unto the Father, he came unto his disciples, and behold, they did still continue, without ceasing, to pray unto him; and they did not multiply many words, for it was given unto them what they should pray, and they were filled with desire.
- 35 וכהתפללם אליו ברכם ישוע; ופניו חיכו אליהם ואור פניו זרח עליהם, והנה, הם היו לבנים כפני ישוע ושמלתו. והלבן היה בהיר מכל לבן; אכן לא היה דבר לבן על פני הארץ כלבן ההוא.
- 36 And it came to pass that Jesus blessed them as they did pray unto him; and his countenance did smile upon them, and the light of his countenance did shine upon them, and behold they were as white as the countenance and also the garments of Jesus; and behold the whiteness thereof did exceed all the whiteness, yea, even there could be nothing upon earth so white as the whiteness thereof.

- 26 ואמר אליהם ישוע: הוסיפו להתפלל. ואכן, הם לא חדלו מתפלתם. And Jesus said unto them: Pray on; nevertheless they did not cease to pray.
- 27 והוא פנה מהם שנית והתרחק מהם מעט והשתחוה ארצה, ושב והתפלל אל האב לאמר: And he turned from them again, and went a little way off and bowed himself to the earth; and he prayed again unto the Father, saying:
- 28 אבא, אוֹדֶךָ כִּי טִהַרְתָּ אֶת אֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר בְּחַרְתִּי מִפְּנֵי אֱמוּנָתָם; וּמִתְפַּלֵּל אֲנִי לְמַעַנָם וְאֶף לְמַעַן אֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר יֵאֱמִינוּ בְּדִבְרֵיהֶם, כִּי יִשְׁתָּהְרוּ בִּי, עַל יְדֵי אֱמוּנָתָם בְּדִבְרֵיהֶם, כְּפִי אֲשֶׁר מִטְהָרִים הֵם בִּי. Father, I thank thee that thou hast purified those whom I have chosen, because of their faith, and I pray for them, and also for them who shall believe on their words, that they may be purified in me, through faith on their words, even as they are purified in me.
- 29 אבא, אֲנִינִי מִתְפַּלֵּל לְמַעַן הָעוֹלָם, כִּי אִם לְמַעַן אֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר נִתְּתָם לִי מִן הָעוֹלָם, מִפְּנֵי אֱמוּנָתָם, כִּי יִשְׁתָּהְרוּ בִּי, בְּעֶבֶר אֶהְיֶה בָּהֶם, כְּפִי אֲשֶׁר אַתָּה, אבא, הֵנָּה בִּי, בְּעֶבֶר נִהְיֶה אִיחָד, וְאֲנִי אֶתְפָּאֵר בָּהֶם. Father, I pray not for the world, but for those whom thou hast given me out of the world, because of their faith, that they may be purified in me, that I may be in them as thou, Father, art in me, that we may be one, that I may be glorified in them.
- 30 והיה כְּדִבְרֵי יֵשׁוּעַ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, הוּא שָׁב וְקָרַב אֶל תַּלְמִידָיו, וַהֲנִה הֵם דְּבָקִים בְּתַפְלָתָם אֵלָיו בְּלֹא הַפְּוָגָה; וְהוּא חִיָּךְ אֵלֵיהֶם שְׁנִית, וַהֲנִה הֵם לְבָנִים כְּיֵשׁוּעַ עִצְמוֹ. And when Jesus had spoken these words he came again unto his disciples; and behold they did pray steadfastly, without ceasing, unto him; and he did smile upon them again; and behold they were white, even as Jesus.
- 31 והיה כִּי הוּא שָׁב וְרָחַק מֵהֶם מַעַט וְהִתְפַּלֵּל אֶל הָאֵב. And it came to pass that he went again a little way off and prayed unto the Father;
- 32 וְלֹא תוּכַל לְשׁוֹן לְסַפֵּר אֶת דְּבָרֵי תַפְלָתוֹ, וְאָדָם לֹא יוּכַל לְקַתְּבָם. And tongue cannot speak the words which he prayed, neither can be written by man the words which he prayed.
- 33 וְהִקְהֵל שְׁמָעוֹ וַהֲעִידוּ עַל כָּף; וְלִבָּם נִפְתָּח וְהֵם הִבִּינוּ בְּלִבָּם אֶת דְּבָרֵי תַפְלָתוֹ. And the multitude did hear and do bear record; and their hearts were open and they did understand in their hearts the words which he prayed.
- 34 וְאוֹלָם, כֹּה גְדוֹלִים וְנִפְלְאִים הָיוּ דְּבָרֵי תַפְלָתוֹ, עַד כִּי אִין הֵם יְכוּלִים לְהַכְתֵּב, וְאִין אִישׁ יְכוּל לְסַפֵּרָם. Nevertheless, so great and marvelous were the words which he prayed that they cannot be written, neither can they be uttered by man.
- 35 וְהָיָה כְּכֹלֹת יֵשׁוּעַ לְהִתְפַּלֵּל, הוּא שָׁב אֶל הַתַּלְמִידִים וְאָמַר אֵלֵיהֶם: אֱמוּנָה כֹּה רַבָּה לֹא רָאִיתִי מֵעוֹדִי בְּקִרְבִּי כָּל הַיְּהוּדִים. לָכֵן, מִפְּנֵי חֶסֶר אֱמוּנָתָם, לֹא יָכַלְתִּי לְהִרְאוֹתָם נִפְלְאוֹת גְּדוֹלוֹת פְּאֵלָה. And it came to pass that when Jesus had made an end of praying he came again to the disciples, and said unto them: So great faith have I never seen among all the Jews; wherefore I could not show unto them so great miracles, because of their unbelief.
- 36 אָכֵן, אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֵם, אִישׁ מֵהֶם לֹא רָאָה גְּדוֹלוֹת כְּדְבָרִים אֲשֶׁר רָאִיתָם, וְאֶף לֹא שָׁמָע גְּדוֹלוֹת כְּדְבָרִים אֲשֶׁר שָׁמַעְתָּם. Verily I say unto you, there are none of them that have seen so great things as ye have seen; neither have they heard so great things as ye have heard.

## כ

## 20

- וַיִּשְׁוֹעַ צֹוָה אֶת הַקֹּהֶל כִּי יִחְדְּלוּ מִתְפַּלְתָּם וְכֵן אֶת תַּלְמִידָיו; וְאוֹלָם הוּא צֹוֹם כִּי לֹא יִחְדְּלוּ מִהִתְפַּלֵּל בְּלִבָּם.
- וְהוּא צֹוֹם כִּי יָקוּמוּ עַל רַגְלֵיהֶם; וְכֵן עָשׂוּ.
- וְהוּא בָּצַע שֵׁנִית לֶחֶם וּבִרְכּוֹ וּנְתָנוֹ לְתַלְמִידֵים לֶאֱכֹל.
- וְאַחֵר אָכְלָם, הוּא צֹוֹם לְבָצַע לֶחֶם וּלְתַת לַקֹּהֶל.
- וְאַחֵר תָּתַם לַקֹּהֶל, הוּא נָתַן גַּם יַיִן לְשִׁתּוֹת וְצֹוֹם לְתַת לַקֹּהֶל.
- וְהָיָה כִּי הִתְלַמִּידִים לֹא הֵבִיאוּ עִמָּם כֹּל לֶחֶם אוֹ יַיִן, וְאִף הַקֹּהֶל לֹא הֵבִיֵּא.
- עַל אִף זֹאת, הוּא נָתַן לֶחֶם לֶאֱכֹל וְכֵן יַיִן לְשִׁתּוֹת.
- וְהוּא אָמַר אֲלֵיהֶם: הַאוֹכֵל אֶת הַלֶּחֶם הַזֶּה, אוֹכֵל מִגּוּפִי לְנִפְשׁוֹ; וְהַשּׂוֹתֶה מִן הַיַּיִן הַזֶּה, שׂוֹתֶה מִדַּמִּי לְנִפְשׁוֹ; וְלֹעֶזֶלָם לֹא תִרְעַב נִפְשׁוֹ וְלֹא תִצְמָא, כִּי שָׁבוּעַ תִּשָּׁבַע.
- וְאַחֵר אֲשֶׁר אָכַל כָּל הַקֹּהֶל וְשָׁתָה, וְהִנֵּה הֵם מְלֵאוֹ רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ; וְהֵם קָרְאוּ בְּפֶה אֶחָד, וּפָאֲרוּ אֶת יֵשׁוּעַ, אֲשֶׁר רָאוּ וְאִף שָׁמְעוּ.
- וְהָיָה אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר פָּאֲרוּ כָּלָם אֶת יֵשׁוּעַ, הוּא אָמַר לָהֶם: הִנְנִי מְכַלֶּה עֵתָה אֶת אֲשֶׁר צִוֵּנִי הָאֵב בְּעֵינֵי הָעָם הַזֶּה, אֲשֶׁר שְׁאִרִית בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל הִמָּה.
- הֵן זֹכְרִים אַתֶּם כִּי דִבַּרְתִּי אֲלֵיכֶם בְּאָמְרִי כִּי דִבְרֵי יִשְׁעִיהוּ יִתְקִימוּ; הִנֵּה, כְּתוּבִים הֵמָּה וְהִרִי הֵם לִפְנֵיכֶם; עַל כֵּן חַקְרוּם.
- וְאָכֵן, הִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, כִּי הָעֵת אֲשֶׁר יִתְקִימוּ הִיא עַת קִיּוֹם הַבְּרִית אֲשֶׁר כָּתַב הָאֵב לְעַמּוֹ, בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל.
- 1 And it came to pass that he commanded the multitude that they should cease to pray, and also his disciples. And he commanded them that they should not cease to pray in their hearts.
- 2 And he commanded them that they should arise and stand up upon their feet. And they arose up and stood upon their feet.
- 3 And it came to pass that he brake bread again and blessed it, and gave to the disciples to eat.
- 4 And when they had eaten he commanded them that they should break bread, and give unto the multitude.
- 5 And when they had given unto the multitude he also gave them wine to drink, and commanded them that they should give unto the multitude.
- 6 Now, there had been no bread, neither wine, brought by the disciples, neither by the multitude;
- 7 But he truly gave unto them bread to eat, and also wine to drink.
- 8 And he said unto them: He that eateth this bread eateth of my body to his soul; and he that drinketh of this wine drinketh of my blood to his soul; and his soul shall never hunger nor thirst, but shall be filled.
- 9 Now, when the multitude had all eaten and drunk, behold, they were filled with the Spirit; and they did cry out with one voice, and gave glory to Jesus, whom they both saw and heard.
- 10 And it came to pass that when they had all given glory unto Jesus, he said unto them: Behold now I finish the commandment which the Father hath commanded me concerning this people, who are a remnant of the house of Israel.
- 11 Ye remember that I spake unto you, and said that when the words of Isaiah should be fulfilled—behold they are written, ye have them before you, therefore search them—
- 12 And verily, verily, I say unto you, that when they shall be fulfilled then is the fulfilling of the covenant which the Father hath made unto his people, O house of Israel.

- 13 And then shall the remnants, which shall be scattered abroad upon the face of the earth, be gathered in from the east and from the west, and from the south and from the north; and they shall be brought to the knowledge of the Lord their God, who hath redeemed them.
- 14 And the Father hath commanded me that I should give unto you this land, for your inheritance.
- 15 And I say unto you, that if the Gentiles do not repent after the blessing which they shall receive, after they have scattered my people—
- 16 Then shall ye, who are a remnant of the house of Jacob, go forth among them; and ye shall be in the midst of them who shall be many; and ye shall be among them as a lion among the beasts of the forest, and as a young lion among the flocks of sheep, who, if he goeth through both treadeth down and teareth in pieces, and none can deliver.
- 17 Thy hand shall be lifted up upon thine adversaries, and all thine enemies shall be cut off.
- 18 And I will gather my people together as a man gathereth his sheaves into the floor.
- 19 For I will make my people with whom the Father hath covenanted, yea, I will make thy horn iron, and I will make thy hoofs brass. And thou shalt beat in pieces many people; and I will consecrate their gain unto the Lord, and their substance unto the Lord of the whole earth. And behold, I am he who doeth it.
- 20 And it shall come to pass, saith the Father, that the sword of my justice shall hang over them at that day; and except they repent it shall fall upon them, saith the Father, yea, even upon all the nations of the Gentiles.
- 21 And it shall come to pass that I will establish my people, O house of Israel.
- 22 And behold, this people will I establish in this land, unto the fulfilling of the covenant which I made with your father Jacob; and it shall be a New Jerusalem. And the powers of heaven shall be in the midst of this people; yea, even I will be in the midst of you.
- 23 Behold, I am he of whom Moses spake, saying: A prophet shall the Lord your God raise up unto you of your brethren, like unto me; him shall ye hear in all things whatsoever he shall say unto you. And it shall
- אֲזַיְקְבְּצוּ הַנּוֹתָרִים, הַנְּפֹצִים עַל פְּנֵי הָאָרֶץ, מִמִּזְרָח וּמִמְעַרְב, מִדָּרוֹם וּמִצָּפוֹן; וְיִתְּנוּדְעוּ אֶל דַּעַת יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵיהֶם, אֲשֶׁר גָּאֲלָם.
- וְהָאֵב צִוִּי לִתְתֹּכֶם אֶת הָאָרֶץ הַזֹּאת לְנַחֲלַתְכֶם.
- וְאֹמֵר אֲנִי לָכֶם, כִּי בִלְתִּי אִם יִשׁוּבוּ הַגּוֹיִים מִחֲטֹאֵיהֶם, אַחֵר הַבְּרָכָה אֲשֶׁר יְבָרְכוּ, אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר הִפִּיצוּ אֶת עַמִּי,
- אֲזִי תֵלְכוּ אִתָּם, אֲשֶׁר שְׂאֲרִית בֵּית יַעֲקֹב הַנִּכָּס, אֶל קֶרְבָּם, אֲשֶׁר יִהְיוּ רַבִּים; וּבְקֶרְבָּם תִּהְיוּ כְּאַרְיֵה בְּבִהְמוֹת יַעַר כְּכַפִּיר בְּעֵדְרֵי צֹאן אֲשֶׁר אִם עֶבֶר וְרִמָּס וְטָרַף, וְאִין מַצִּיל.
- תָּרִם יָדְךָ עַל צָרֶיךָ וְכָל אֹיְבֶיךָ יִפְּרֹתוּ.
- וְאֲנִי אֶקְבֹּץ אֶת עַמִּי כְּקִבֵּץ אִישׁ אֶת עֲמִירוֹ אֶל גֶּרְנוֹ.
- כִּי אֲשִׁים אֶת עַמִּי, אֲשֶׁר הָאֵב כָּרַת עִמּוֹ בְּרִית, אֶכּוּ, קֶרֶן אֲשִׁים בְּרִזָּל וּפָרֶסֶתֶיךָ אֲשִׁים נְחוּשָׁה. וְהִדְקוֹת עַמִּים רַבִּים; וְהִחְרַמְתִּי לַיהוָה בָּצֵעַם וְחִילָם לְאֲדוֹן כָּל הָאָרֶץ. הֵן אֲנִי הוּא הַעוֹשֶׂה זֹאת.
- בַּיּוֹם הַהוּא, נָאוֹם הָאֵב, תִּהְיֶה חֶרֶב מִשְׁפָּטִי תִלְוֶיהָ מֵעַלְיָהֶם; וְאִם לֹא יִשׁוּבוּ מִרְעַתָּם, נָפֹל תִּפֹּל עֲלֵיהֶם, נָאוֹם הָאֵב; אֶכּוּ, עַל כָּל גּוֹיֵי הָאָרְצוֹת.
- וְאֲנִי אֶכּוֹנֵן אֶת עַמִּי, בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל.
- וְהִנֵּה, אֶת הָעָם הַזֶּה אֶכּוֹנֵן בְּאָרֶץ הַזֹּאת, לְקַיֵּם אֶת הַבְּרִית אֲשֶׁר כָּרַתִּי עִם יַעֲקֹב אֲבִיכֶם; וְהָאָרֶץ הַזֹּאת תִּהְיֶה יְרוּשָׁלַם חֲדָשָׁה. וְכוּחוֹת מְרוֹמִים יִהְיוּ בְּקֶרֶב הָעָם הַזֶּה; אֶכּוּ, אֲנִי אֶהְיֶה בְּתוֹכָם.
- הִנֵּה, אֲנֹכִי הוּא אֲשֶׁר עַל אֹדוּתָיו דִּבֶּר מֹשֶׁה לֵאמֹר: נָבִיא מִקֶּרְבְּךָ, מֵאֲחִיךָ כְּמִנִּי, יָקִים לְךָ יְהוָה אֱלֹהֶיךָ. אֵלָיו תִּשְׁמָעוּ, בְּכָל דְּבָרָיו אֲשֶׁר

יְדַבֵּר אֲלֵיכֶם. וְהָיָה כִּי הִנָּפֵשׁ אֲשֶׁר לֹא תִשְׁמָע  
אֶל דְּבַר הַנְּבִיא הַהוּא, הַכֶּרֶת תִּכְרֹת מִן הָעָם.

come to pass that every soul who will not hear that prophet shall be cut off from among the people.

אָכֵן אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, כָּל הַנְּבִיאִים מִשְׁמוּאֵל  
וְאַלְהָ אֲשֶׁר בָּאוּ אַחֲרָיו, כָּל אֲשֶׁר נִבְּאוּ,  
הָעִידוּ עָלַי.

24 Verily I say unto you, yea, and all the prophets from Samuel and those that follow after, as many as have spoken, have testified of me.

הִנֵּה, בְּנֵי הַנְּבִיאִים אַתֶּם; מִבֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל אַתֶּם;  
וְאַתֶּם בְּנֵי הַבְּרִית אֲשֶׁר כָּרַת הָאֵב עִם  
אֲבוֹתֵיכֶם בְּאֶמְרוֹ אֶל אַבְרָהָם: וְהִתְבָּרְכוּ  
בְּזֶרַעַךְ כָּל גּוֹי הָאָרֶץ.

25 And behold, ye are the children of the prophets; and ye are of the house of Israel; and ye are of the covenant which the Father made with your fathers, saying unto Abraham: And in thy seed shall all the kindreds of the earth be blessed.

הָאֵב הִקִּימֵנִי רִאשׁוֹן לְמַעַנְכֶם, וְשָׁלַחֲנִי  
לְבָרְכְּכֶם בְּהִסָּרֶת כָּל אֶחָד מִכֶּם מִעֲוֹנוֹתָיו;  
וְזֹאת כִּי בְנֵי הַבְּרִית אַתֶּם.

26 The Father having raised me up unto you first, and sent me to bless you in turning away every one of you from his iniquities; and this because ye are the children of the covenant—

וְאַחֵר הִתְבָּרְכְּכֶם, יָקִים הָאֵב אֶת הַבְּרִית  
אֲשֶׁר כָּרַת עִם אַבְרָהָם, לֵאמֹר: וְהִתְבָּרְכוּ  
בְּזֶרַעַךְ כָּל גּוֹי הָאָרֶץ, בְּהַשְׁפּוֹךְ רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ  
מֵאֵתִי עַל הַגּוֹיִים. וְהַבְּרָכָה הַזֹּאת תִּשְׁיָמֵם  
גְּבוּרִים מְכֹל, לְהַפִּיץ אֶת עַמִּי, בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל.

27 And after that ye were blessed then fulfilleth the Father the covenant which he made with Abraham, saying: In thy seed shall all the kindreds of the earth be blessed—unto the pouring out of the Holy Ghost through me upon the Gentiles, which blessing upon the Gentiles shall make them mighty above all, unto the scattering of my people, O house of Israel.

וְהֵם יִהְיוּ שׁוֹט לְעַם אֲשֶׁר בָּאָרֶץ הַזֹּאת.  
אִם אַחֵר קִבְּלֶם אֶת מְלֵא בְּשׁוֹרְתִי יִקְשׁוּ  
הֵם אֶת לִבָּם עָלַי, אֲזִי אֲשִׁיב אֶת עֹלָם  
בְּרֹאשָׁם, נָאוֹם הָאֵב.

28 And they shall be a scourge unto the people of this land. Nevertheless, when they shall have received the fulness of my gospel, then if they shall harden their hearts against me I will return their iniquities upon their own heads, saith the Father.

וְאֲנִי אֶזְכֹּר אֶת הַבְּרִית אֲשֶׁר כָּרַתִּי עִם עַמִּי;  
כִּי כָרַתִּי עִמָּם בְּרִית לְקַבֵּץ בְּעֵת אֲשֶׁר תִּישָׁר  
בְּעֵינִי לְהַשִּׁיבָם אֶת אֶרֶץ אֲבוֹתֵיהֶם לְנַחֲלָה,  
אֲשֶׁר הִיא אֶרֶץ יְרוּשָׁלַם, הָאָרֶץ הַיְעוּדָה לָהֶם  
לְעוֹלָם, נָאוֹם הָאֵב.

29 And I will remember the covenant which I have made with my people; and I have covenanted with them that I would gather them together in mine own due time, that I would give unto them again the land of their fathers for their inheritance, which is the land of Jerusalem, which is the promised land unto them forever, saith the Father.

וְיוֹם יָבוֹא וְיִסְיִפוּ לָהֶם אֶת מְלֵא בְּשׁוֹרְתִי.

30 And it shall come to pass that the time cometh, when the fulness of my gospel shall be preached unto them;

וְהֵם יֵאֱמִינוּ בִּי, כִּי אֲנִי יֵשׁוּעַ הַמָּשִׁיחַ, בֶּן  
אֱלֹהִים, וְיִתְפַּלְלוּ אֶל הָאֵב בְּשִׁמִּי.

31 And they shall believe in me, that I am Jesus Christ, the Son of God, and shall pray unto the Father in my name.

אֲזִי יִשְׁאוּ צוֹפִיָּהֶם קוֹלָם, יַחַד וְיִרְנְנוּ, כִּי עֵין  
בְּעֵין יִרְאוּ בְּשׁוֹב יִהְיֶה צִיּוֹן.

32 Then shall their watchmen lift up their voice, and with the voice together shall they sing; for they shall see eye to eye.

אֲזִי שׁוֹב יִקְבְּצֵם הָאֵב וְיִתֵּן לָהֶם אֶת יְרוּשָׁלַם  
לְאֶרֶץ נַחֲלָתָם.

33 Then will the Father gather them together again, and give unto them Jerusalem for the land of their inheritance.



- 34 ואֲזֵה־הֵם יִפְצְחוּ בִּיהֵם: רִנְנוּ יַחְדָּו חֲרֻבוֹת יְרוּשָׁלַם כִּי נָחַם יְהוָה עִמּוֹ, גָּאֹל יְרוּשָׁלַם.  
Then shall they break forth into joy—Sing together, ye waste places of Jerusalem; for the Father hath comforted his people, he hath redeemed Jerusalem.
- 35 חֲשֹׁף הָאֵב אֶת זְרוֹעַ קִדְשׁוֹ לְעֵינֵי כָל הַגּוֹיִם, וְרָאוּ כָל אַפְסֵי אֶרֶץ אֶת יְשׁוּעַת הָאֵב. וְהָאֵב וְאֲנִכִּי אֶחָד.  
The Father hath made bare his holy arm in the eyes of all the nations; and all the ends of the earth shall see the salvation of the Father; and the Father and I are one.
- 36 אֲזִי יִתְקַיֵּם הַכְּתוּב: עוֹרִי, עוֹרִי, לְבָשִׁי עֲנֹה, צִיּוֹן, לְבָשִׁי בְּגֵדֵי תִפְאָרֶתָהּ, יְרוּשָׁלַם עִיר הַקֹּדֶשׁ, כִּי לֹא יוֹסִיף יָבֹא בָּךְ עוֹד עָרֹל וְטָמֵא.  
And then shall be brought to pass that which is written: Awake, awake again, and put on thy strength, O Zion; put on thy beautiful garments, O Jerusalem, the holy city, for henceforth there shall no more come into thee the uncircumcised and the unclean.
- 37 הִתְנַעֲרִי מֵעָפָר; אֲרִיז, שִׁבִּי, יְרוּשָׁלַם; הִתְפַּתְּחִי מִמּוֹסְרֵי צַוְאָרְךָ, שְׁבִיָּה בֵּת צִיּוֹן.  
Shake thyself from the dust; arise, sit down, O Jerusalem; loose thyself from the bands of thy neck, O captive daughter of Zion.
- 38 כִּי כֹה אָמַר יְהוָה: חָנַם נִמְכַּרְתֶּם וְלֹא בְכֶסֶף תִּגְאָלוּ.  
For thus saith the Lord: Ye have sold yourselves for naught, and ye shall be redeemed without money.
- 39 אָכֵן, הִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, כִּי יֵדַע עַמִּי אֶת שְׁמִי; אָכֵן, בַּיּוֹם הַהוּא יֵדְעוּ הָמָּה כִּי אֲנִי הוּא הַמְדַּבֵּר.  
Verily, verily, I say unto you, that my people shall know my name; yea, in that day they shall know that I am he that doth speak.
- 40 אֲזִי יֹאמְרוּ: מִה נָּאוּ עַל הַהָרִים רַגְלֵי מְבַשֵּׁר, מְשַׁמֵּיעַ שְׁלוֹם; מְבַשֵּׁר טוֹב, מְשַׁמֵּיעַ יְשׁוּעָה; אֲמַר לְצִיּוֹן: מֶלֶךְ אֱלֹהֶיהָ.  
And then shall they say: How beautiful upon the mountains are the feet of him that bringeth good tidings unto them, that publisheth peace; that bringeth good tidings unto them of good, that publisheth salvation; that saith unto Zion: Thy God reigneth!
- 41 אֲזִי תִצֵּא קְרִיאָה: סוּרוּ, סוּרוּ, צֵאוּ מִשָּׁם, טָמֵא אֶל תִּגְעוּ; צֵאוּ מִתּוֹכָהּ; הִבְרוּ נִשְׂאֵי כְּלֵי יְהוָה.  
And then shall a cry go forth: Depart ye, depart ye, go ye out from thence, touch not that which is unclean; go ye out of the midst of her; be ye clean that bear the vessels of the Lord.
- 42 כִּי לֹא בְּחִפְזוֹן תִּצְאוּ, וּבִמְנוּסָה לֹא תִלְכוּ; כִּי הִלֵּךְ לִפְנֵיכֶם יְהוָה, וּמֵאַסְפֶּכֶם אֱלֹהֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל.  
For ye shall not go out with haste nor go by flight; for the Lord will go before you, and the God of Israel shall be your rearward.
- 43 הִנֵּה יִשְׁכֵּל עַבְדִּי; יָרוֹם וְנִשָּׂא וְנִבְּה מְאֹד.  
Behold, my servant shall deal prudently; he shall be exalted and extolled and be very high.
- 44 כַּאֲשֶׁר שָׁמְמוּ עָלֶיךָ רַבִּים, כֵּן מִשְׁחַת מֵאִישׁ מִרְאֵהוּ וְתֹאֲרוֹ מִבְּנֵי אָדָם;  
As many were astonished at thee—his visage was so marred, more than any man, and his form more than the sons of men—
- 45 כֵּן יִזְהַר גּוֹיִם רַבִּים, עָלָיו יִקְפְּצוּ מְלָכִים בִּיהֵם, כִּי אֲשֶׁר לֹא סִפְּרוּ לָהֶם רָאוּ וְאֲשֶׁר לֹא שָׁמְעוּ הִתְבּוֹנְנוּ.  
So shall he sprinkle many nations; the kings shall shut their mouths at him, for that which had not been told them shall they see; and that which they had not heard shall they consider.
- 46 אָכֵן, הִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, כִּי בּוֹא יָבוֹאוּ כָל הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, כַּפִּי אֲשֶׁר צִוִּיתִי הָאֵב. אֲזִי תִתְקַיֵּם הַבְּרִית הַזֹּאת אֲשֶׁר כָּרַת הָאֵב עִמָּךְ.  
Verily, verily, I say unto you, all these things shall surely come, even as the Father hath commanded me. Then shall this covenant which the Father hath covenanted with his people be fulfilled; and then shall

עמו; וְאֵז שׁוֹב תִּישָׁב יְרוּשָׁלַם בְּיַד עַמִּי,  
וְתִהְיֶה הָיָא אֶרֶץ נַחֲלָתָם.

Jerusalem be inhabited again with my people, and it shall be the land  
of their inheritance.

## כֹּא

## 21

וְאֵכֶן אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, הִנְנִי נוֹתֵן לָכֶם אוֹת  
לְמַעַן תִּדְעוּ אֶת מוֹעֵד קִיּוֹם הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה,  
אֲשֶׁר בּוֹ אֶקְבֹּץ אֶת עַמִּי, בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל,  
מִתְפוצֵּצֵתָם אֶרֶצֶת הַיָּמִים וְשׁוֹב אֲכַוֵּן  
בְּקִרְבָם אֶת צִיּוֹן אֲשֶׁר לִי.

1 And verily I say unto you, I give unto you a sign, that ye may know the  
time when these things shall be about to take place—that I shall gather  
in, from their long dispersion, my people, O house of Israel, and shall  
establish again among them my Zion;

וְזֶה הַדְּבָר אֲשֶׁר אֶתֵּן לָכֶם לְאוֹת, כִּי, אֵכֶן אֲנִי  
אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, כֹּאֲשֶׁר יִדְעוּ הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה  
אֲשֶׁר אֲנִי מוֹדִיעֶכֶם, וְאֲשֶׁר אוֹדִיעֶכֶם אוֹתָם  
אַחֲרֵי כֵן מִעַמִּי, וְאִף מִעַם כָּח רֹחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ  
אֲשֶׁר יִתְּנֶכֶם הָאֵב; אֵכֶן, כֹּאֲשֶׁר יִדְעוּ אֵלֶּה  
לְגוֹיִם, וְזֹאת בְּעִבּוֹר יִדְעוּ עַל אוֹדוֹת הָעַם  
הַזֶּה, אֲשֶׁר שְׂאֲרִית בֵּית יַעֲקֹב הַמָּה, וְעַל  
אוֹדוֹת עַמִּי זֶה אֲשֶׁר יוֹפֵץ עַל יְדֵיהֶם;

2 And behold, this is the thing which I will give unto you for a sign—  
for verily I say unto you that when these things which I declare unto  
you, and which I shall declare unto you hereafter of myself, and by the  
power of the Holy Ghost which shall be given unto you of the Father,  
shall be made known unto the Gentiles that they may know concerning  
this people who are a remnant of the house of Jacob, and concerning  
this my people who shall be scattered by them;

אֵכֶן, הִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, כִּי כֹאֲשֶׁר יִדְעוּ  
הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה מִעַם הָאֵב לְגוֹיִם, וְיִצְאוּ  
אֲלֵיהֶם מִעַם הָאֵב, וְיָבֹאוּ מֵהֶם אֲלֵיכֶם;

3 Verily, verily, I say unto you, when these things shall be made known  
unto them of the Father, and shall come forth of the Father, from them  
unto you;

כִּי מִחֻמַּת הָאֵב הָיָא, לְכוֹנֵנָם בְּאֶרֶץ הַזֹּאת  
וְלִהְיוֹתָם בְּכֹחַ כָּעַם חֲפָשִׁי, בְּעִבּוֹר יָבֹאוּ  
הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה מִעַמָּם אֶל שְׂאֲרִית זְרַעְכֶם,  
בְּעִבּוֹר תִּתְקַיֵּם הַבְּרִית אֲשֶׁר כָּרַת הָאֵב עִם  
עַמּוֹ, בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל;

4 For it is wisdom in the Father that they should be established in this  
land, and be set up as a free people by the power of the Father, that these  
things might come forth from them unto a remnant of your seed, that  
the covenant of the Father may be fulfilled which he hath covenanted  
with his people, O house of Israel;

לָכֵן, כֹּאֲשֶׁר יָבֹאוּ הַמַּעֲשִׂים הָאֵלֶּה,  
וְהַמַּעֲשִׂים אֲשֶׁר יַעֲשׂוּ בְּקִרְבְּכֶם אַחֲרֵי כֵן מִן  
הַגּוֹיִם אֶל זְרַעְכֶם, אֲשֶׁר יִדְרְדְּרוּ בְּעוֹנוֹם אֶל  
חֹסֶר אֱמוּנָה;

5 Therefore, when these works and the works which shall be wrought  
among you hereafter shall come forth from the Gentiles, unto your  
seed which shall dwindle in unbelief because of iniquity;

כִּי כֵּה חֲפֵץ הָאֵב, כִּי יִצְאוּ הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה  
מִן הַגּוֹיִם, לְמַעַן יֵרָאֶה אֶת כָּחוֹ לְגוֹיִם, לְמַעַן  
יָשׁוּבוּ הַגּוֹיִם מִרְעֻתָם, וְאִם לֹא יִקְשׂוּ אֶת  
לָבָם, וְיָבֹאוּ אֵלַי וְיִשְׁבְּלוּ בְּשִׁמִּי, וְיִדְעוּ אֶל  
אֱמֶת עֲקָרִי תוֹרָתִי, בְּעִבּוֹר יִמְנוּ עִם עַמִּי,  
בְּנֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל;

6 For thus it behooveth the Father that it should come forth from the  
Gentiles, that he may show forth his power unto the Gentiles, for this  
cause that the Gentiles, if they will not harden their hearts, that they  
may repent and come unto me and be baptized in my name and know  
of the true points of my doctrine, that they may be numbered among  
my people, O house of Israel;

וּבִבּוֹא הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, וְזַרְעְכֶם יַחֲלוּ לָדַעַת  
אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, יִהְיֶה זֶה לָהֶם לְאוֹת  
בְּעִבּוֹר יִדְעוּ כִּי כָּבֵד הִחַל מַעֲשֵׂה הָאֵב לְמַעַן

7 And when these things come to pass that thy seed shall begin to know  
these things—it shall be a sign unto them, that they may know that the  
work of the Father hath already commenced unto the fulfilling of the

- קיום הברית אשר כרת לעם, אשר מבית ישראל המה.
- 8 And when that day shall come, it shall come to pass that kings shall shut their mouths; for that which had not been told them shall they see; and that which they had not heard shall they consider.
- 9 For in that day, for my sake shall the Father work a work, which shall be a great and a marvelous work among them; and there shall be among them those who will not believe it, although a man shall declare it unto them.
- 10 But behold, the life of my servant shall be in my hand; therefore they shall not hurt him, although he shall be marred because of them. Yet I will heal him, for I will show unto them that my wisdom is greater than the cunning of the devil.
- 11 Therefore it shall come to pass that whosoever will not believe in my words, who am Jesus Christ, which the Father shall cause him to bring forth unto the Gentiles, and shall give unto him power that he shall bring them forth unto the Gentiles, (it shall be done even as Moses said) they shall be cut off from among my people who are of the covenant.
- 12 And my people who are a remnant of Jacob shall be among the Gentiles, yea, in the midst of them as a lion among the beasts of the forest, as a young lion among the flocks of sheep, who, if he go through both treadeth down and teareth in pieces, and none can deliver.
- 13 Their hand shall be lifted up upon their adversaries, and all their enemies shall be cut off.
- 14 Yea, wo be unto the Gentiles except they repent; for it shall come to pass in that day, saith the Father, that I will cut off thy horses out of the midst of thee, and I will destroy thy chariots;
- 15 And I will cut off the cities of thy land, and throw down all thy strongholds;
- 16 And I will cut off witchcrafts out of thy hand, and thou shalt have no more soothsayers;
- 17 Thy graven images I will also cut off, and thy standing images out of the midst of thee, and thou shalt no more worship the works of thy hands;
- 18 And I will pluck up thy groves out of the midst of thee; so will I destroy thy cities.
- אך הנה, חיי עבדי יהיו בידי, על כן לא ירעו לו, אף כי ישחת מפניהם. ואנכי ארפאהו, כי אראם כי חכמתי גוברת על ערמת השטן.
- אך הנה, חיי עבדי יהיו בידי, על כן לא ירעו לו, אף כי ישחת מפניהם. ואנכי ארפאהו, כי אראם כי חכמתי גוברת על ערמת השטן.
- על כן, כל אשר לא יאמין בדברי, אשר הם דברי ישוע המשיח, אשר האב צוה אליו להביאם אל הגויים, ויתן לו כח כי יביאם אל הגויים, יעשה להם כדבר משה: הכרת וקרתו מקרב עמי אשר מבני הברית המה.
- ועמי, אשר שארית יעקב המה, יהיו בקרב הגויים, אכן, הם יהיו בתוכם כאריה בבהמות יער ככפיר בעדרי צאן אשר אם עבר ורמס וטרף ואין מציל.
- תרים ידם על צריהם וכל איביהם יכרתו.
- אכן, אוי לגויים, בלתי אם ישוּבו מרעתם; והיה ביום ההוא, נאום האב, והכרתי סוסיה מקרבך, והאבדתי מרכבתיה.
- והכרתי ערי ארצך, והרסתי כל מבצריך.
- והכרתי כשפים מידך, ומעוֹנְנִים לא יהיו לך.
- והכרתי פסיליך ומצבותיך מקרבך, ולא תשתחוה עוד למעשה ידיך.
- ונתשתי אשיריך מקרבך והשמדתי עריך.

- 19 וְהָיָה כִּי יִחְדְּלוּ כָּל שִׁקָּר וְכָזָב וְקִנְיָאָה וּמְרִיבָה וְתַרְמִיּוֹת הַכְּמוּרָה וְהַזְנוּנִים.
- 20 וְהָיָה בַּיּוֹם הַהוּא, נְאוּם הָאֵב, כָּל אֲשֶׁר לֹא יָשׁוּב מִרְעָתוֹ וְלֹא יָבֹא אֶל בְּנֵי אֱהוֹבִי, הַכֶּרֶת אֶכְרִיתֶם מִקֶּרֶב עַמִּי, בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל.
- 21 וְשָׁלַחְתִּי בָהֶם אֶת נִקְמָתִי וְחִמָּתִי, אַף כַּעֲשׂוֹתַי בְּבְנֵי נֹכַר, אֲשֶׁר לֹא שָׁמְעוּ.
- 22 אֲךְ אִם יָשׁוּבוּ מִרְעָתָם וְיִשְׁמְעוּ לְדִבְרִי, וְלֹא יִקְשׁוּ אֶת לִבָּם, אֶכּוֹנֵן אֶת כְּנִסְיָתִי בְּקֶרֶבָם, וְהֵם יָבֹאוּ בְּבִרְיִת וְיִמְנוּ עִם שְׁאֲרֵית יַעֲקֹב הַזֹּאת, אֲשֶׁר לָהֶם נְתַתִּי אֶת הָאָרֶץ הַזֹּאת לְנַחֲלָה.
- 23 וְהֵם יַעֲזְרוּ לְעַמִּי, לְשְׁאֲרֵית יַעֲקֹב, וְלִכָּל אֲשֶׁר יָבֹאוּ אֲשֶׁר מִבֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל הַמָּה, לְמַעַן יִבְנוּ עִיר אֲשֶׁר שְׁמָהּ יִקְרָא יְרוּשָׁלַם הַחֲדָשָׁה.
- 24 וְאַזְ הֵם יַעֲזְרוּ לְעַמִּי, הַנִּפְּזִים עַל כָּל פְּנֵי הָאָרֶץ, לְהִתְקַבֵּץ יַחַד אֶל יְרוּשָׁלַם הַחֲדָשָׁה.
- 25 וְאַזְ יֵרֵד אֶל קֶרֶבָם כֹּחַ שָׁמַיִם; וְאַף אֲנִי אֶהְיֶה בְּתוֹכָם.
- 26 בַּיּוֹם הַהוּא יַחַל מַעֲשֵׂה הָאֵב, אֲכֹן בְּהִשְׁמַע הַבְּשׂוּרָה הַזֹּאת בְּקֶרֶב שְׁאֲרֵית הָעָם הַזֶּה. אֲכֹן, אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֵם, בַּיּוֹם הַהוּא יַחַל מַעֲשֵׂה הָאֵב בְּקֶרֶב כָּל נְפֻצֵי עַמִּי, אַף בְּקֶרֶב הַשְּׁבָטִים הָאֲבֻדִּים, אֲשֶׁר הִגֵּלָם הָאֵב מִירוּשָׁלַם.
- 27 אֲכֹן, יַחַל מַעֲשֵׂה הָאֵב בְּקֶרֶב כָּל פְּזוּרֵי עַמִּי, לְפָנוֹת אֶת הַדֶּרֶךְ אֲשֶׁר בָּהּ יָבֹאוּ אֵלַי, בְּעֶבֹר יִקְרָאוּ אֶל הָאֵב בְּשִׁמִּי.
- 28 אֲכֹן, אֲזִי יַחַל מַעֲשֵׂה הָאֵב, בְּקֶרֶב כָּל הָאֲמוֹת, לְפָנוֹת אֶת הַדֶּרֶךְ אֲשֶׁר בָּהּ נִקְבְּצוּ בְנֵי עַמּוֹ אֶל אֶרֶץ נַחֲלָתָם.
- 29 וְהֵם יֵצְאוּ מִכָּל הָאֲמוֹת; לֹא בַּחֲפָזוֹן וְיָצְאוּ וּבִמְנוּסָה לֹא יֵלְכוּ, כִּי אֲנִי אֵלֶּךְ לִפְנֵיהֶם, נְאוּם הָאֵב, וְאֶנֶכִּי אֶהְיֶה מֵאֲסָפָם.
- 19 And it shall come to pass that all lyings, and deceivings, and envyings, and strifes, and priestcrafts, and whoredoms, shall be done away.
- 20 For it shall come to pass, saith the Father, that at that day whosoever will not repent and come unto my Beloved Son, them will I cut off from among my people, O house of Israel;
- 21 And I will execute vengeance and fury upon them, even as upon the heathen, such as they have not heard.
- 22 But if they will repent and hearken unto my words, and harden not their hearts, I will establish my church among them, and they shall come in unto the covenant and be numbered among this the remnant of Jacob, unto whom I have given this land for their inheritance;
- 23 And they shall assist my people, the remnant of Jacob, and also as many of the house of Israel as shall come, that they may build a city, which shall be called the New Jerusalem.
- 24 And then shall they assist my people that they may be gathered in, who are scattered upon all the face of the land, in unto the New Jerusalem.
- 25 And then shall the power of heaven come down among them; and I also will be in the midst.
- 26 And then shall the work of the Father commence at that day, even when this gospel shall be preached among the remnant of this people. Verily I say unto you, at that day shall the work of the Father commence among all the dispersed of my people, yea, even the tribes which have been lost, which the Father hath led away out of Jerusalem.
- 27 Yea, the work shall commence among all the dispersed of my people, with the Father to prepare the way whereby they may come unto me, that they may call on the Father in my name.
- 28 Yea, and then shall the work commence, with the Father among all nations in preparing the way whereby his people may be gathered home to the land of their inheritance.
- 29 And they shall go out from all nations; and they shall not go out in haste, nor go by flight, for I will go before them, saith the Father, and I will be their rearward.

## כב

## 22

- אז יתקנים הכתוב: רני עקרה לא ילדה; פצחי רנה וצהלי, לא חלה; כי רבים בני שוממה מבני בעולה, אומר יהוה.
- 1 And then shall that which is written come to pass: Sing, O barren, thou that didst not bear; break forth into singing, and cry aloud, thou that didst not travail with child: for more are the children of the desolate than the children of the married wife, saith the Lord.
- הרחיבי מקום אהלך ויריעות משכנותיך יטו; אל תחשכי, האריכי מיתריך ויתדתיך חזקי.
- 2 Enlarge the place of thy tent, and let them stretch forth the curtains of thine habitations: spare not, lengthen thy cords, and strengthen thy stakes;
- כי ימין ושמאל תפרצי, וזרעך גוים יירש, וערים נשמות יושיבו.
- 3 For thou shalt break forth on the right hand and on the left; and thy seed shall inherit the Gen-tiles, and make the desolate cities to be inhabited.
- אל תיראי, כי לא תבושי ואל תכלמי, כי לא תחפירי; כי בשעת עלימך תשכחי, וחרפת אלמנותיך לא תזכרי עוד.
- 4 Fear not; for thou shalt not be ashamed: neither be thou confounded; for thou shalt not be put to shame: for thou shalt forget the shame of thy youth, and shalt not remember the reproach of thy widowhood any more.
- כי בעליך, עשך, יהוה צבאות שמו; וגאלך, קדוש ישראל, אלהי כל הארץ יקרא.
- 5 For thy Maker is thine husband; the Lord of hosts is his name; and thy Redeemer the Holy One of Israel; The God of the whole earth shall he be called.
- כי באשה עזובה ועצובת רוח קראך יהוה, ואשת נעורים כי תמאס, אומר אלהיך.
- 6 For the Lord hath called thee as a woman forsaken and grieved in spirit, and a wife of youth, when thou wast refused, saith thy God.
- ברגע קטן עזבתיו, וברחמים גדלים אקבצך.
- 7 For a small moment have I forsaken thee; but with great mercies will I gather thee.
- בשצף קצף הסתתתי פני רגע ממו, ובחסד עולם רחמתיך, אומר גאלך יהוה.
- 8 In a little wrath I hid my face from thee for a moment; but with everlasting kindness will I have mercy on thee, saith the Lord thy Redeemer.
- כי מי נח זאת לי, אשר נשבעתי מעבר מי נח עוד על הארץ, כן נשבעתי מקצף עליך ומנערך.
- 9 For this is as the waters of Noah unto me: for as I have sworn that the waters of Noah should no more go over the earth; so have I sworn that I would not be wroth with thee, nor rebuke thee.
- כי ההרים ימושו, והגבעות תמוטינה, וחסדי מאתך לא ימושו, וברית שלומי לא תמוט, אומר מרחמיך יהוה.
- 10 For the mountains shall depart, and the hills be removed; but my kindness shall not depart from thee, neither shall the covenant of my peace be removed, saith the Lord that hath mercy on thee.
- עניה סערה, לא נחמה! הנה אנכי מרבין בפוך אבניך, ויסדתיך בספירים.
- 11 O thou afflicted, tossed with tempest, and not comforted, behold, I will lay thy stones with fair colours, and lay thy foundations with sapphires.
- ושמתי כדכד שמשתיך, ושעריך לאבני אקדח, וכל גבולך לאבני חפץ.
- 12 And I will make thy windows of agates, and thy gates of carbuncles, and all thy borders of pleasant stones.



- 13 And all thy children shall be taught of the Lord; and great shall be the peace of thy children.  
 וְכָל בְּנֵיךָ לְמוֹדֵי יְהוָה; וְרַב שְׁלוֹם בְּנֵיךָ.
- 14 In righteousness shalt thou be established: thou shalt be far from oppression; for thou shalt not fear: and from terror; for it shall not come near thee.  
 בַּצְדָּקָה תִּכּוֹנְנִי; רַחֲקִי מֵעֹשֶׁק כִּי לֹא תִירָאִי, וּמִמַּחֲתָה כִּי לֹא תִקְרַב אֵלֶיךָ.
- 15 Behold, they shall surely gather together, but not by me: whosoever shall gather together against thee shall fall for thy sake.  
 הֵן גּוֹר יִגּוּר, אָפֶס מֵאוֹתִי; מִי גַר אֶתָּךְ עָלֶיךָ יִפּוֹל.
- 16 Behold, I have created the smith that bloweth the coals in the fire, and that bringeth forth an instrument for his work; and I have created the waster to destroy.  
 הִנֵּה, אֲנֹכִי בָרָאתִי חֶרֶשׁ נֹפֵחַ בָּאֵשׁ פְּחָם, וּמוֹצִיא כְּלִי לְמַעֲשָׂהוּ; וְאֲנֹכִי בָרָאתִי מִשְׁחִית לְחַבֵּל.
- 17 No weapon that is formed against thee shall prosper; and every tongue that shall rise against thee in judgment thou shalt condemn. This is the heritage of the servants of the Lord, and their righteousness is of me, saith the Lord.  
 כָּל כְּלִי יוֹצֵר עָלֶיךָ לֹא יִצְלַח, וְכָל לְשׁוֹן תִּקְוֹם אֶתָּךְ לְמִשְׁפָּט תִּרְשִׁיעֵנִי. זֹאת נַחֲלַת עַבְדֵי יְהוָה, וְצִדְקָתְךָ מֵאֵתִי, נָאֻם יְהוָה.

## 23

## כג

- 1 And now, behold, I say unto you, that ye ought to search these things. Yea, a commandment I give unto you that ye search these things diligently; for great are the words of Isaiah.  
 וְעַתָּה, אוֹמֵר אֲנִי לָכֶם, כִּי עֲלֵיכֶם לַחְקֹר אֵת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה. אַכֵּן, מִצְוָה אֲנִי מֵצִוְכֶם כִּי תִשְׁקְדוּ לַחְקֹר אֵת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה; כִּי גְדוֹלִים דְּבָרֵי יִשְׁעִיהוּ.
- 2 For surely he spake as touching all things concerning my people which are of the house of Israel; therefore it must needs be that he must speak also to the Gentiles.  
 כִּי אַכֵּן דִּבֶּר הוּא עַל כָּל הַדְּבָרִים הַנּוֹגְעִים לְעַמִּי, אֲשֶׁר מִבֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל הֵמָּה; עַל כֵּן, הַכֶּרֶחַ הוּא כִּי אַכֵּן יִדְבֵּר אֶף אֶל הַגּוֹיִים.
- 3 And all things that he spake have been and shall be, even according to the words which he spake.  
 וְכָל הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר הָיוּ וְאֵף יִהְיוּ, כַּפִּי דְּבָרָיו אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר.
- 4 Therefore give heed to my words; write the things which I have told you; and according to the time and the will of the Father they shall go forth unto the Gentiles.  
 עַל כֵּן שִׁיתוּ לִבְכֶם לְדְבָרֵי; כְּתִבוּ אֵת הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר הִגַּדְתִּיכֶם; וְכַפִּי הַמוֹעֵד אֲשֶׁר לְאַב וּכְרִצוֹנוֹ, יָבוֹאוּ הֵם אֶל הַגּוֹיִים.
- 5 And whosoever will hearken unto my words and repenteth and is baptized, the same shall be saved. Search the prophets, for many there be that testify of these things.  
 וְכָל הַשּׁוֹמְעַם אֶל דְּבָרֵי, וְנָחַם עַל חַטָּאתָיו, וּמִטְבָּל, הוּא יִשָּׁע. חִקְרוּ אֵת דְּבָרֵי הַנְּבִיאִים, כִּי רַבִּים הֵם הַמַּעֲיִדִים עַל הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה.
- 6 And now it came to pass that when Jesus had said these words he said unto them again, after he had expounded all the scriptures unto them which they had received, he said unto them: Behold, other scriptures I would that ye should write, that ye have not.  
 וְאַחַר אֲשֶׁר אָמַר לָהֶם יֵשׁוּעַ אֵת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, וְאַחַר אֲשֶׁר בָּאָר לָהֶם אֵת כָּל כְּתָבֵי הַקֹּדֶשׁ אֲשֶׁר בְּיָדֵיהֶם הוּא הוֹסִיף וְדִבֶּר אֲלֵיהֶם לֵאמֹר: הִנֵּה, רְצוֹנִי כִּי תִכְתְּבוּ כְּתָבִים נוספים אֲשֶׁר אֵין בְּיָדֵיכֶם.

- 7 And it came to pass that he said unto Nephi: Bring forth the record which ye have kept.
- וְהוּא אָמַר אֶל נְפִי: הֲבֵא נָא אֶת הַכְּתָבִים אֲשֶׁר עָלֵיהֶם שָׁמַרְתֶּם.
- 8 And when Nephi had brought forth the records, and laid them before him, he cast his eyes upon them and said:
- וְאַחֵר אֲשֶׁר הֵבִיא נְפִי אֶת הַכְּתָבִים וְהִנִּיחָם לִפְנָיו, הוּא הִבִּיט בָּהֶם וְאָמַר:
- 9 Verily I say unto you, I commanded my servant Samuel, the Lamanite, that he should testify unto this people, that at the day that the Father should glorify his name in me that there were many saints who should arise from the dead, and should appear unto many, and should minister unto them. And he said unto them: Was it not so?
- אָכֵן, אֹמֵר אֲנִי לָכֶם, צִוִּיתִי אֶת עַבְדִּי שְׁמוּאֵל הַלְּמָנִי כִּי יַעֲיֵד לְפָנַי הָעַם הַזֶּה, כִּי בַּיּוֹם אֲשֶׁר יִפְאָר הָאָב אֶת שְׁמוֹ בִּי, יָקוּמוּ קְדוֹשִׁים רַבִּים מִן הַמֵּתִים וְיִפְּעִיעוּ לְעֵינַי רַבִּים וְיִשְׁמָשׁוּ לְפָנֵיהֶם. וְהוּא אָמַר לָהֶם: הֲלֹא כֵן הָיָה הַדְּבָר?
- 10 And his disciples answered him and said: Yea, Lord, Samuel did prophesy according to thy words, and they were all fulfilled.
- וְהַתְּלָמִידִים עָנוּ וְאָמְרוּ: אָכֵן, אֲדֹנָינוּ, שְׁמוּאֵל נִבֵּא כְּדִבְרֶיךָ, וְכָל דְּבָרָיו הִתְקַיְּמוּ.
- 11 And Jesus said unto them: How be it that ye have not written this thing, that many saints did arise and appear unto many and did minister unto them?
- וַיֹּשׁוּעַ אָמַר לָהֶם: אֵיכָכָה לֹא כָּתַבְתֶּם אֶת הַדְּבָר הַזֶּה, כִּי קָמוּ קְדוֹשִׁים רַבִּים וְהִפְּעִיעוּ לְעֵינַי רַבִּים וְיִשְׁמָשׁוּ לְפָנֵיהֶם?
- 12 And it came to pass that Nephi remembered that this thing had not been written.
- וְנְפִי זָכַר כִּי לֹא נִכְתַּב הַדְּבָר הַזֶּה.
- 13 And it came to pass that Jesus commanded that it should be written; therefore it was written according as he commanded.
- אָז צִוָּה יֵשׁוּעַ כִּי יִכְתַּב הַדְּבָר; עַל כֵּן נִכְתַּב הוּא כְּאֲשֶׁר צִוָּה.
- 14 And now it came to pass that when Jesus had expounded all the scriptures in one, which they had written, he commanded them that they should teach the things which he had expounded unto them.
- וְאַחֵר אֲשֶׁר בָּאָר יֵשׁוּעַ אֶת כָּל הַכְּתוּבִים אֲשֶׁר נִכְתְּבוּ עַל יְדֵיהֶם, הוּא צִוָּם לְלַמֵּד אֶת הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר הוּא בָּאָר לָהֶם.

## כד

## 24

- 1 And it came to pass that he commanded them that they should write the words which the Father had given unto Malachi, which he should tell unto them. And it came to pass that after they were written he expounded them. And these are the words which he did tell unto them, saying: Thus said the Father unto Malachi—Behold, I will send my messenger, and he shall prepare the way before me: and the Lord, whom ye seek, shall suddenly come to his temple, even the messenger of the covenant, whom ye delight in: behold, he shall come, saith the Lord of hosts.
- אָז הוּא צִוָּם לְכַתֵּב אֶת הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר נָתַן הָאָב לְמַלְאָכִי, אֲשֶׁר יֹאמַר לָהֶם. וְאַחֵר אֲשֶׁר כָּתְּבָם הוּא בָּאָרָם, וְאָלָה הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר הִגִּיד לָהֶם לֵאמֹר: כֹּה אָמַר הָאָב אֶל מַלְאָכִי: הִנְנִי שֹׁלֵחַ מַלְאָכִי וּפְנֵה דֶרֶךְ לִפְנָי, וּפְתָאם יְבוֹא אֵל הַיְכָלִי הָאֶדוֹן אֲשֶׁר אַתֶּם מְבַקְשִׁים, וּמַלְאָךְ הַבְּרִית אֲשֶׁר אַתֶּם חִפְצִים הִנֵּה בָּא, אָמַר יְהוָה צְבָאוֹת.
- 2 But who may abide the day of his coming? And who shall stand when he appeareth? For he is like a refiner's fire, and like fullers' soap:
- וּמִי מִכְלִיֵּל אֶת יוֹם בּוֹאוֹ, וּמִי הֶעֱמִיד בְּהִרְאוֹתָיו? כִּי הוּא כְּאֵשׁ מְצַרֵּף וּכְבִּרְיֵת מְכַבְּסִים.

וַיֵּשֶׁב מִצָּרְף וּמְטַהֵר כֶּסֶף; וְטָהַר אֶת בְּנֵי לֵוִי,  
וְזָקַק אֹתָם כַּזָּהָב וּכְכֶסֶף, וְהָיוּ לַיהוָה מִגִּישֵׁי  
מִנְחָה בְּצִדְקָה.

3 And he shall sit as a refiner and purifier of silver: and he shall purify the sons of Levi, and purge them as gold and silver, that they may offer unto the Lord an offering in righteousness.

וְעִרְבָה לַיהוָה מִנְחַת יְהוּדָה וִירוּשָׁלַם, כִּימֵי  
עוֹלָם וּכְשָׁנִים קְדָמָנִיּוֹת.

4 Then shall the offering of Judah and Jerusalem be pleasant unto the Lord, as in the days of old, and as in former years.

וְקִרְבֹּתִי אֲלֵיכֶם לְמִשְׁפָּט; וְהִיִּיתִי עֵד מִמֶּהָר  
בְּמִכְשָׁפִים וּבְמַנְאָפִים וּבְנִשְׁבָּעִים לְשֹׁקֵר  
וּבְעֹשֵׂי שְׂכָר שְׂכִיר אֲלֻמָּנָה וַיִּתּוֹם וּמִטִּי גֵר,  
וְלֹא יִרְאוּנִי, אָמַר יְהוָה צְבָאוֹת.

5 And I will come near to you to judgment; and I will be a swift witness against the sorcerers, and against the adulterers, and against false swearers, and against those that oppress the hireling in his wages, the widow, and the fatherless, and that turn aside the stranger from his right, and fear not me, saith the Lord of hosts.

כִּי אֲנִי יְהוָה לֹא שֹׁנֵיתִי; וְאַתֶּם בְּנֵי יַעֲקֹב  
לֹא כָלִיתֶם.

6 For I am the Lord, I change not; therefore ye sons of Jacob are not consumed.

לְמִימֵי אֲבֹתֵיכֶם סִרְתֶּם מִחֻקִּי, וְלֹא שָׁמַרְתֶּם.  
שׁוּבוּ אֵלַי וְאִשׁוּבָה אֲלֵיכֶם, אָמַר יְהוָה  
צְבָאוֹת. וְאַמְרֹתֶם: בְּמָה נָשׁוּבִים?

7 Even from the days of your fathers ye are gone away from mine ordinances, and have not kept them. Return unto me, and I will return unto you, saith the Lord of hosts. But ye said, Wherein shall we return?

הֲיִקְבַּע אָדָם אֱלֹהִים? כִּי אַתֶּם קִבַּעִים אֹתִי.  
וְאַמְרֹתֶם בְּמָה קִבַּעְנוּדִי? הַמַּעֲשֵׂר וְהַתְּרוּמָה.

8 Will a man rob God? Yet ye have robbed me. But ye said, Wherein have we robbed thee? In tithes and offerings.

בְּמַאֲרָה אַתֶּם נֹאֲרִים, וְאֹתִי אַתֶּם קִבַּעִים,  
הַגּוֹי כֻּלּוֹ.

9 Ye are cursed with a curse: for ye have robbed me, even this whole nation.

הַבִּיאוּ אֶת כָּל הַמַּעֲשֵׂר אֶל בֵּית הָאוֹצָר, וְיִהְיֶה  
טָרֶף בְּבֵיתִי; וּבְחֻנּוּנִי נָא בִזְאת, אָמַר יְהוָה  
צְבָאוֹת, אִם לֹא אֲפָתַח לָכֶם אֶת אֲרָבוֹת  
הַשָּׁמַיִם, וְהִרִיקְתִּי לָכֶם בְּרָכָה עַד בְּלִי דֵי.

10 Bring ye all the tithes into the storehouse, that there may be meat in mine house, and prove me now herewith, saith the Lord of hosts, if I will not open you the windows of heaven, and pour you out a blessing, that there shall not be room enough to receive it.

וְנִגְעַרְתִּי לָכֶם בְּאֶכָל, וְלֹא יִשְׁחַת לָכֶם אֶת פְּרִי  
הָאֲדָמָה; וְלֹא תִשְׁכַּח לָכֶם הַגֶּפֶן בְּשֹׁדָה, אָמַר  
יְהוָה צְבָאוֹת.

11 And I will rebuke the devourer for your sakes, and he shall not destroy the fruits of your ground; neither shall your vine cast her fruit before the time in the field, saith the Lord of hosts.

וְאִשְׁרוּ אֶתְכֶם כָּל הַגּוֹיִם, כִּי תִהְיוּ אַתֶּם אֶרֶץ  
חֶפְזָה, אָמַר יְהוָה צְבָאוֹת.

12 And all nations shall call you blessed: for ye shall be a delightful land, saith the Lord of hosts.

חֲזָקוּ עָלַי דְּבָרֵיכֶם, אָמַר יְהוָה, וְאַמְרֹתֶם: מָה  
נִדְּבַרְנוּ עִלְיָדִי?

13 Your words have been stout against me, saith the Lord. Yet ye say, What have we spoken so much against thee?

אַמְרֹתֶם: שׁוֹא עֲבַד אֱלֹהִים, וּמָה בִצָּע כִּי  
שָׁמַרְנוּ מִשְׁמֶרֶתוֹ וְכִי הִלְכְנוּ קְדֻרָנִית מִפְּנֵי  
יְהוָה צְבָאוֹת?

14 Ye have said, It is vain to serve God: and what profit is it that we have kept his ordinance, and that we have walked mournfully before the Lord of hosts?

וְעַתָּה אֲנַחְנוּ מְאֻשְׁרִים יְדִידִים; גַּם נִבְנוּ עֹשֵׂי  
רָשָׁעָה; גַּם בָּחֲנוּ אֱלֹהִים וַיִּמְלֹטוּ.

15 And now we call the proud happy; yea, they that work wickedness are set up; yea, they that tempt God are even delivered.

- 16 אז נִדְבְּרוּ יִרְאֵי יְהוָה אִישׁ אֶל רֵעֵהוּ, וַיִּקְשֹׁב יְהוָה וַיִּשְׁמַע; וַיִּכְתֹּב סֵפֶר זִכְרוֹן לְפָנָיו, לִיִּרְאֵי יְהוָה וּלְחֹשְׁבֵי שְׁמוֹ.
- 17 וְהָיוּ לִי, אָמַר יְהוָה צְבָאוֹת, לְיוֹם אֲשֶׁר אֲנִי עֹשֶׂה סִגְלָה; וַחֲמֹלְתִי עֲלֵיהֶם כַּאֲשֶׁר יַחְמֹל אִישׁ עַל בְּנוֹ הָעֶבֶד אֹתוֹ.
- 18 וְשִׁבְתֶּם וְרִאיתֶם בֵּין צַדִּיק לְרָשָׁע, בֵּין עֶבֶד אֱלֹהִים לְאֲשֶׁר לֹא עֶבֶדוֹ.
- 16 Then they that feared the Lord spake often one to another: and the Lord hearkened, and heard it, and a book of remembrance was written before him for them that feared the Lord, and that thought upon his name.
- 17 And they shall be mine, saith the Lord of hosts, in that day when I make up my jewels; and I will spare them, as a man spareth his own son that serveth him.
- 18 Then shall ye return, and discern between the righteous and the wicked, between him that serveth God and him that serveth him not.

## כה

## 25

- כִּי הִנֵּה הַיּוֹם בָּא בַעֵר כְּתִנּוֹר; וְהָיוּ כָּל יַדִּים וְכָל עֵשֶׂה וְרִשְׁעָה קֵשׁ; וְלִהְיוֹת אֹתָם הַיּוֹם הַבֹּא, אָמַר יְהוָה צְבָאוֹת, אֲשֶׁר לֹא יֵעֹז לָהֶם שָׂרֵשׁ וָעֵנָף.
- וְזָרְחָה לָכֶם, יִרְאֵי שְׁמִי, שְׁמֹשׁ צִדְקָה וּמִרְפָּא בְּכַנְפֶיהָ; וַיֵּצְאוּתָם וּפְשָׁתָם כְּעִגְלֵי מִרְבֵּק.
- וְעִסּוֹתָם רִשְׁעִים; כִּי יִהְיוּ אֶפְרַח תַּחַת כַּפּוֹת רַגְלֵיכֶם בְּיוֹם אֲשֶׁר אֲנִי עֹשֶׂה, אָמַר יְהוָה צְבָאוֹת.
- זָכְרוּ תּוֹרַת מֹשֶׁה עֶבְדִּי, אֲשֶׁר צִוִּיתִי אוֹתוֹ בְּחֹרֵב עַל כָּל יִשְׂרָאֵל, חֻקִּים וּמִשְׁפָּטִים.
- הִנֵּה אֲנִי שֹׁלֵחַ לָכֶם אֶת אֱלִיָּה הַנָּבִיא לְפָנָי בּוֹא יוֹם יְהוָה הַגָּדוֹל וְהַנּוֹרָא.
- וְהָשִׁיב לֵב אֲבוֹת עַל בָּנִים, וְלֵב בָּנִים עַל אֲבוֹתָם, פֶּן אָבֹא וְהִכִּיתִי אֶת הָאָרֶץ חָרָם.
- 1 For, behold, the day cometh, that shall burn as an oven; and all the proud, yea, and all that do wickedly, shall be stubble: and the day that cometh shall burn them up, saith the Lord of hosts, that it shall leave them neither root nor branch.
- 2 But unto you that fear my name shall the sun of righteousness arise with healing in his wings; and ye shall go forth, and grow up as calves of the stall.
- 3 And ye shall tread down the wicked; for they shall be ashes under the soles of your feet in the day that I shall do this, saith the Lord of hosts.
- 4 Remember ye the law of Moses my servant, which I commanded unto him in Horeb for all Israel, with the statutes and judgments.
- 5 Behold, I will send you Elijah the prophet before the coming of the great and dreadful day of the Lord:
- 6 And he shall turn the heart of the fathers to the children, and the heart of the children to their fathers, lest I come and smite the earth with a curse.

## כו

## 26

- וְהָיָה אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר הִגִּיד יֵשׁוּעַ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, הוּא בָּאֲרָם אֶל הַקְּהָל, אָכֵן, הוּא בָּאֵר לָהֶם הַכֹּל, גְּדוֹלוֹת וּקְטָנוֹת.
- וְהוּא אָמַר: הַכְּתָבִים הָאֵלֶּה, אֲשֶׁר לֹא הָיוּ בְיַדְיָכֶם, צִוִּי הָאֵב כִּי אֶתֵּן לָכֶם; כִּי מִחֲקֻמָּתוֹ הִיא לְתַתָּם לְדוֹרוֹת אֲשֶׁר יָבוֹאוּ.
- 1 And now it came to pass that when Jesus had told these things he expounded them unto the multitude; and he did expound all things unto them, both great and small.
- 2 And he saith: These scriptures, which ye had not with you, the Father commanded that I should give unto you; for it was wisdom in him that they should be given unto future generations.

וְהוּא בָּאֵר לָהֶם אֶת כָּל הַדְּבָרִים, מִן הָרֵאשִׁית  
וְעַד עַתָּה בּוֹאוֹ בְּתִפְאַרְתּוֹ; אַכֵּן, אֶת כָּל הַדְּבָרִים  
אֲשֶׁר יָבוֹאוּ עַל פְּנֵי הָאָרֶץ, אֲף עַד הָעֵת אֲשֶׁר  
יִנָּתְכוּ הַיְסוּדוֹת בַּחֵם לִוְהֵט וְהָאֲדָמָה תִּגָּל  
כַּמְּגִלָּה, וְהַשָּׁמַיִם וְהָאָרֶץ יִסְתַּלְקוּ;

אַכֵּן, עַד לַיּוֹם הַגָּדוֹל וְהָאֲחֵרוֹן, כִּאֲשֶׁר יַעֲמְדוּ  
כָּל בְּנֵי הָאָדָם וְכָל הַמְּשֻׁפָּחוֹת וְכָל הָאֲמוֹת  
וְהַלְשׁוֹנוֹת לִפְנֵי אֱלֹהִים לְהַשְׁפִּיט עַל מַעֲשֵׂיהֶם,  
אִם טוֹבִים וְאִם רָעִים.

וְאִם טוֹבִים, חֶלְקָם לְקוֹם לְחַיֵּי עוֹלָם; וְאִם רָעִים,  
חֶלְקָם לְקוֹם לְמִשְׁפַּט חֶרֶם; וְהֵם מִקְבִּילִים,  
אֶחָד בְּעֶבֶר הָאֶחָד וְאֶחָד בְּעֶבֶר הָאֲחֵר, כְּפִי  
הַרְחָמִים וְהַמְּשֻׁפָּט וְהַקְדָּשָׁה אֲשֶׁר בְּמִשְׁחֵי,  
אֲשֶׁר הוּא הָיָה טָרָם רֵאשִׁית הָעוֹלָם.

וְהִנֵּה, לֹא נִתֵּן לְכַתֵּב בְּסֵפֶר הַזֶּה אֶף אֶת  
חֶלֶק הַמָּאָה מִן הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר אַכֵּן לְמַד  
יִשׁוּעַ אֶת הָעָם;

אֲף לִוְחוֹת נְפִי מְכִילִים אֶת רַב הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר  
לְמַד יִשׁוּעַ אֶת הָעָם.

אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה כָּתַבְתִּי אֲנִי, וְהֵם מְעַט  
מִזֶּכֶר מִן הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר לְמַד יִשׁוּעַ אֶת הָעָם;  
וְהִנֵּה אֲנִי כֹתֵבְתִּים בְּעֶבֶר יוֹבָאוּ שׁוֹב אֶל הָעָם  
הַזֶּה מֵאֵת הַגּוֹיִים, כְּדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר יִשׁוּעַ.

וְאַחֵר אֲשֶׁר יִקְבְּלוּ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה,  
וְרָאוּ הוּא כִּי יִמְכָּלוּם תַּחֲלָה, בְּעֶבֶר תִּנְסָה  
בָּהֶם אֲמוּנָתָם, וְהִנֵּה, אִם הֵם יֵאֱמִינוּ בְּדְּבָרִים  
הָאֵלֶּה, אֲזִי יִתְגַּלּוּ לְעֵינֵיהֶם הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר הֵם  
גְּדוֹלִים יוֹתֵר.

אֲף הָיָה כִּי אִם לֹא יֵאֱמִינוּ בְּדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה,  
יִמְנְעוּ מֵהֶם הַדְּבָרִים הַגְּדוֹלִים, וְתִגְזֹר אֲשֻׁמָּתָם.

הִנֵּה, עֲמַדְתִּי לְכַתֵּבְכֶם, אֶת כָּל אֲשֶׁר חָרוּטִים  
עַל לִוְחוֹת נְפִי, אֲף יְהוָה מָנַע זֹאת כִּי אֶמַּר:  
אֲנִסָּה אֶת אֲמוּנַת עַמִּי.

לָכֵן, אֲנִי, מוֹרְמוֹן, כּוֹתֵב אֶת הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר  
צִוֵּנִי יְהוָה, וְעַתָּה, אֲנִי, מוֹרְמוֹן, שָׁם קִץ לְדְּבָרִי  
וּמוֹסִיף לְכַתֵּב אֶת הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר צִוֵּיתִי.

3 And he did expound all things, even from the beginning until the time that he should come in his glory—yea, even all things which should come upon the face of the earth, even until the elements should melt with fervent heat, and the earth should be wrapt together as a scroll, and the heavens and the earth should pass away;

4 And even unto the great and last day, when all people, and all kindreds, and all nations and tongues shall stand before God, to be judged of their works, whether they be good or whether they be evil—

5 If they be good, to the resurrection of everlasting life; and if they be evil, to the resurrection of damnation; being on a parallel, the one on the one hand and the other on the other hand, according to the mercy, and the justice, and the holiness which is in Christ, who was before the world began.

6 And now there cannot be written in this book even a hundredth part of the things which Jesus did truly teach unto the people;

7 But behold the plates of Nephi do contain the more part of the things which he taught the people.

8 And these things have I written, which are a lesser part of the things which he taught the people; and I have written them to the intent that they may be brought again unto this people, from the Gentiles, according to the words which Jesus hath spoken.

9 And when they shall have received this, which is expedient that they should have first, to try their faith, and if it shall so be that they shall believe these things then shall the greater things be made manifest unto them.

10 And if it so be that they will not believe these things, then shall the greater things be withheld from them, unto their condemnation.

11 Behold, I was about to write them, all which were engraven upon the plates of Nephi, but the Lord forbade it, saying: I will try the faith of my people.

12 Therefore I, Mormon, do write the things which have been commanded me of the Lord. And now I, Mormon, make an end of my sayings, and proceed to write the things which have been commanded me.



13 לָכֵן, רְצוֹנִי כִּי תִשְׁתִּיחוּ לַבָּרֶךְ, כִּי הָאֲדוֹן אָבִן לְמַד אֶת הָעָם בְּמִשְׁךָ שְׁלֹשָׁה יָמִים, וְאַחֲרֵי כֵן הוּא נִגְלָה אֲלֵיהֶם לְעֵתִים קְרוֹבוֹת, וַיַּצַּע לֶחֶם לְעֵתִים קְרוֹבוֹת, וַיְבָרֶךְ עֲלֵיו וַיִּתְּנוּ לָהֶם.

Therefore, I would that ye should behold that the Lord truly did teach the people, for the space of three days; and after that he did show himself unto them oft, and did break bread oft, and bless it, and give it unto them.

14 וְהוּא לְמַד אֶת יְלָדֵי הַקְּהֵל, אֲשֶׁר עָלָיו דְּבַר, וְשִׁמַּשׁ לְפָנֵיהֶם; וְהוּא הִתִּיר אֶת לְשׁוֹנָם, וְהֵם דִּבְּרוּ אֶל אֲבוֹתֵיהֶם דְּבָרִים גְּדוֹלִים וְנִפְלְאוֹת, גְּדוֹלִים אֲף מִן הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר גִּלָּה לָעָם. אָבִן, הוּא הִתִּיר אֶת חֲרָצוֹת לְשׁוֹנָם לְמַעַן יִמְלְלוּ.

And it came to pass that he did teach and minister unto the children of the multitude of whom hath been spoken, and he did loose their tongues, and they did speak unto their fathers great and marvelous things, even greater than he had revealed unto the people; and he loosed their tongues that they could utter.

15 וְהָיָה אַחֵר עָלוֹתוֹ הַשְּׁמִימָה, זֶה הַפַּעַם הַשְּׁנִי אֲשֶׁר נִגְלָה אֲלֵיהֶם, וְהִלֵּךְ אֶל הָאֵב, אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר רָפָא אֶת כָּל חוֹלֵיהֶם וְאֶת פְּסֻחֵיהֶם וּפָקַח אֶת עֵינֵי עוֹרֵיהֶם וּפָתַח אָזְנֵי הַחֲרָשִׁים, אָבִן אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר עָשָׂה כָּל מִינֵי רְפוּי בָּהֶם, וְהָקִים אָדָם מִן הַמֵּתִים וְהִרְאָה לָהֶם אֶת כּוֹחוֹ, וְעָלָה אֶל הָאֵב, הַמֵּתִים וְהִרְאָה לָהֶם אֶת כּוֹחוֹ, וְעָלָה אֶל הָאֵב,

And it came to pass that after he had ascended into heaven—the second time that he showed himself unto them, and had gone unto the Father, after having healed all their sick, and their lame, and opened the eyes of their blind and unstopped the ears of the deaf, and even had done all manner of cures among them, and raised a man from the dead, and had shown forth his power unto them, and had ascended unto the Father—

16 וְהִנֵּה, לְמַחֲרָת הַתְּקַבְּצוֹ הַקְּהֵל יַחְדָּו וְרָאוּ אֶת הַיְלָדִים הָאֵלֶּה וְשָׁמְעוּם; אָבִן, אֲף עוֹלָלִים פָּתְחוּ פִּיהֶם וּמִלְּלוּ נִפְלְאוֹת; וְנִאֲסַר עַל כָּל אָדָם לְכַתֵּב אֶת אֲשֶׁר דִּבְּרוּ.

Behold, it came to pass on the morrow that the multitude gathered themselves together, and they both saw and heard these children; yea, even babes did open their mouths and utter marvelous things; and the things which they did utter were forbidden that there should not any man write them.

17 וְהַתְּלַמִּידִים אֲשֶׁר בָּחַר יֵשׁוּעַ הַחֲלוֹ מִן הָעֵת הַהִיא לְהַטְבִּיל אֶת כָּל הַבָּאִים אֲלֵיהֶם וּלְלַמְּדָם; וְכָל אֲשֶׁר הִטְבְּלוּ לְשֵׁם יֵשׁוּעַ מָלְאוּ רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ.

And it came to pass that the disciples whom Jesus had chosen began from that time forth to baptize and to teach as many as did come unto them; and as many as were baptized in the name of Jesus were filled with the Holy Ghost.

18 וְרַבִּים מֵהֶם רָאוּ וְאֲף שָׁמְעוּ דְּבָרִים בֶּל יִסְפְּרוּ אֲשֶׁר אֵין בְּרִשׁוֹת אָדָם לְכַתְּבָם.

And many of them saw and heard unspeakable things, which are not lawful to be written.

19 וְהֵם לְמַדּוּ וְשִׁמְשׁוּ זֶה לְפָנֵי זֶה. וְכָל הַדְּבָרִים הָיוּ מְשֻׁתָּפִים לָהֶם, וְכָל אָדָם נִהְגָּה בִּישָׁר אִישׁ עִם רֵעֵהוּ.

And they taught, and did minister one to another; and they had all things common among them, every man dealing justly, one with another.

20 וְכֵן הֵם עָשׂוּ אֶת כָּל הַדְּבָרִים כַּפִּי אֲשֶׁר צִוָּם יֵשׁוּעַ.

And it came to pass that they did do all things even as Jesus had commanded them.

21 וְהַמְּטַבְּלִים לְשֵׁם יֵשׁוּעַ נִקְרְאוּ כְּנִסְיַת הַמְּשִׁיחַ.

And they who were baptized in the name of Jesus were called the church of Christ.

## כז

## 27

- וְהָיָה בָּעֵת אֲשֶׁר הָיוּ תַלְמִידֵי יֵשׁוּעַ בְּמִסְעֵיהֶם  
וְהָטִיפוּ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר שָׁמְעוּ וְאָף רָאוּ,  
וְהִטְבִּילוּ בְּשֵׁם יֵשׁוּעַ, הֵם הִתְאַסְּפוּ יַחְדָּו  
וְהִתְאַחְדּוּ בַּתְּפִלָּה אֲדִירָה וּבְצוּם.
- וַיֵּשׁוּעַ הוֹסִיף וְהִתְגַּלָּה אֲלֵיהֶם בַּעֲדָה הֵם  
מִתְפַּלְלִים אֶל הָאֵב בְּשִׁמּוֹ. וַיֵּשׁוּעַ בָּא וַעֲמַד  
בְּתוֹכָם, וְאָמַר אֲלֵיהֶם: מַה חֹפְצְכֶם כִּי  
אֶתֶּן לָכֶם?
- וְהֵם אָמְרוּ לוֹ: אֲדוֹנֵנוּ, חֹפְצֵנוּ כִּי תֹאמַר לָנוּ  
אֶת הַשֵּׁם אֲשֶׁר נִקְרָא אֶת הַכְּנִסְיָה הַזֹּאת, כִּי  
יֵשׁ מַחְלֻקוֹת בָּעָם עַל הַדְּבָר הַזֶּה.
- וְאָמַר לָהֶם הָאֲדוֹן: אֲכֹן הִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם,  
מִדּוּעַ יִלּוּנוּ הָאֲנָשִׁים וְיָרִיבוּ עַל הַדְּבָר הַזֶּה?
- הֲלֹא הֵם קִרְאוּ אֶת כְּתָבֵי הַקִּדְשׁ, הָאוֹמְרִים כִּי  
תִקְחוּ עֲלֵיכֶם אֶת שֵׁם הַמְּשִׁיחַ, אֲשֶׁר הוּא  
שְׁמִי? כִּי בְּשֵׁם הַזֶּה תִּקְרָאוּ בַּיּוֹם הָאֲחֵרוֹן.
- וְהִלֻּקַח עָלָיו אֶת שְׁמִי וְהִמְתַּמִּיד עַד הַקֵּץ,  
הוּא יִשָּׁע בַּיּוֹם הָאֲחֵרוֹן.
- עַל כֵּן, כֹּל אֲשֶׁר תַּעֲשׂוּ, בְּשְׁמִי תַעֲשׂוּ. לָכֵן  
תִּקְרָאוּ אֶת שֵׁם הַכְּנִסְיָה בְּשְׁמִי; וְלֹאֵב תִּקְרָאוּ  
בְּשְׁמִי, כִּי הוּא יִבְרֹךְ אֶת הַכְּנִסְיָה לְמַעַנִּי.
- וְכִיצַד תִּהְיֶה זֹאת כְּנִסְיָתִי אִם לֹא תִקְרָא בְּשְׁמִי?  
כִּי אִם נִקְרָאת כְּנִסְיָה בְּשֵׁם מֹשֶׁה, כְּנִסְיַת מֹשֶׁה  
הִיא; וְאִם הִיא נִקְרָאת בְּשֵׁם אָדָם, כְּנִסְיַת הָאָדָם  
הִיא; אֲךָ אִם בְּשְׁמִי נִקְרָאת הִיא, כְּנִסְיַתִּי הִיא,  
אִם אֲכֹן בְּנוֹיִים חֲבֵרִיָּה עַל בְּשׂוֹרְתִּי.
- אֲכֹן, אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, כִּי בְּנוֹיִים אַתֶּם  
עַל בְּשׂוֹרְתִּי, עַל כֵּן תִּקְרָאוּ אֶת כָּל הַדְּבָרִים  
אֲשֶׁר תִּקְרָאוּ, בְּשְׁמִי; עַל כֵּן, וְהָיָה כִּי תִקְרָאוּ  
אֶל הָאֵב, לְמַעַן הַכְּנִסְיָה, בְּשְׁמִי, הוּא  
יִשְׁמַע אֶתְכֶם.
- וְאִם תִּהְיֶה הַכְּנִסְיָה בְּנוֹיָה עַל בְּשׂוֹרְתִּי, יִרְאֶה  
הָאֵב אֶת פְּעָלֵי בְּקִרְבָּהּ.
- 1 And it came to pass that as the disciples of Jesus were journeying and were preaching the things which they had both heard and seen, and were baptizing in the name of Jesus, it came to pass that the disciples were gathered together and were united in mighty prayer and fasting.
- 2 And Jesus again showed himself unto them, for they were praying unto the Father in his name; and Jesus came and stood in the midst of them, and said unto them: What will ye that I shall give unto you?
- 3 And they said unto him: Lord, we will that thou wouldst tell us the name whereby we shall call this church; for there are disputations among the people concerning this matter.
- 4 And the Lord said unto them: Verily, verily, I say unto you, why is it that the people should murmur and dispute because of this thing?
- 5 Have they not read the scriptures, which say ye must take upon you the name of Christ, which is my name? For by this name shall ye be called at the last day;
- 6 And whoso taketh upon him my name, and endureth to the end, the same shall be saved at the last day.
- 7 Therefore, whatsoever ye shall do, ye shall do it in my name; therefore ye shall call the church in my name; and ye shall call upon the Father in my name that he will bless the church for my sake.
- 8 And how be it my church save it be called in my name? For if a church be called in Moses' name then it be Moses' church; or if it be called in the name of a man then it be the church of a man; but if it be called in my name then it is my church, if it so be that they are built upon my gospel.
- 9 Verily I say unto you, that ye are built upon my gospel; therefore ye shall call whatsoever things ye do call, in my name; therefore if ye call upon the Father, for the church, if it be in my name the Father will hear you;
- 10 And if it so be that the church is built upon my gospel then will the Father show forth his own works in it.

- 11 ואם לא תהיה הכנסיה בנויה על בשורתִי, על פעל אדם תיסד, או על פעל השטן, אכן, אני אומר לכם, כי לשעה קלה ישמחו אנשיה בפעלם, ועוד זמן מה יבוא הקץ, ולארץ הם יגדעו ולאש הם ישלכו, אשר ממנה אין שיבה.
- 12 כי גמול מעשיהם ירדפם, אכן, מפני מעשיהם הם יגדעו; על כן זכרו את דברי אליכם.
- 13 הנה נתתי לכם את בשורתִי; וזאת הבשורה אשר נתתיכם: באתי אל העולם לעשות את רצון אבי, כי הוא שלחני.
- 14 ואבי שלחני בעבור אנשא על הצלב; ובעבור אחר אשר נשאתי על הצלב אמשך את כל האדם אלי; כי כפי אשר נשאתי אני בידי בני אדם, כן ינשאו בני האדם בידי האב לעמוד לפני, להשפט על מעשיהם, אם טובים ואם רעים.
- 15 בעבור זאת נשאתי; באשר אמשך אלי, כפי כח האב, את כל בני האדם, בעבור ישפטו כפי מעשיהם.
- 16 וכל אשר שב מחטאיו ומטביל בשמי מלא ימלא. ואם יתמיד עד הקץ, הנה, אותו אצוה לפני אבי ביום ההוא אשר אעמוד לשפט את העולם.
- 17 ואשר לא יתמיד עד הקץ, אכן, יגדע, ואף האש ישלך, אשר ממנה אין שיבה, כפי צדקת האב.
- 18 וזה דברו אשר נתן לבני האדם. ולכן מקים הוא את דבריו אשר דבר ולא ישקר, כי אם מקים את כל דבריו.
- 19 וכל דבר טמא אינו יכול להכנס אל מלכותו; לכן לא יכנסו אל מנוחתו, כי אם אלה אשר רחצו את בגדיהם בדמי מפני אמונתם, ומפני הנחמם על כל חטאיהם, ומפני נאמנותם עד הקץ.
- 20 וזאת המצוה: שובו מחטאיכם, כל אפסי ארץ, ובואו אלי והטבילו בשמי, בעבור
- But if it be not built upon my gospel, and is built upon the works of men, or upon the works of the devil, verily I say unto you they have joy in their works for a season, and by and by the end cometh, and they are hewn down and cast into the fire, from whence there is no return.
- For their works do follow them, for it is because of their works that they are hewn down; therefore remember the things that I have told you.
- Behold I have given unto you my gospel, and this is the gospel which I have given unto you—that I came into the world to do the will of my Father, because my Father sent me.
- And my Father sent me that I might be lifted up upon the cross; and after that I had been lifted up upon the cross, that I might draw all men unto me, that as I have been lifted up by men even so should men be lifted up by the Father, to stand before me, to be judged of their works, whether they be good or whether they be evil—
- And for this cause have I been lifted up; therefore, according to the power of the Father I will draw all men unto me, that they may be judged according to their works.
- And it shall come to pass, that whoso repenteth and is baptized in my name shall be filled; and if he endureth to the end, behold, him will I hold guiltless before my Father at that day when I shall stand to judge the world.
- And he that endureth not unto the end, the same is he that is also hewn down and cast into the fire, from whence they can no more return, because of the justice of the Father.
- And this is the word which he hath given unto the children of men. And for this cause he fulfilleth the words which he hath given, and he lieth not, but fulfilleth all his words.
- And no unclean thing can enter into his kingdom; therefore nothing entereth into his rest save it be those who have washed their garments in my blood, because of their faith, and the repentance of all their sins, and their faithfulness unto the end.
- Now this is the commandment: Repent, all ye ends of the earth, and come unto me and be baptized in my name, that ye may be sanctified

- תתקדשו על ידי קבלת רוח הקדש, למען תעמדו ללא רבב, ביום האחרון.
- by the reception of the Holy Ghost, that ye may stand spotless before me at the last day.
- 21 Verily, verily, I say unto you, this is my gospel; and ye know the things that ye must do in my church; for the works which ye have seen me do that shall ye also do; for that which ye have seen me do even that shall ye do;
- אכן הנני אומר לכם, זאת בשורתי, ויודעים אתם את הדברים אשר עליכם לעשות בכנסייתי כי את הדברים אשר ראיתם אותי עושה, תעשו גם אתם; אכן, את אשר ראיתם אותי עושה, אף אתם תעשו.
- 22 Therefore, if ye do these things blessed are ye, for ye shall be lifted up at the last day.
- לכן, אם תעשו את הדברים האלה, ברוכים תהיו, כי תנשאו ביום האחרון.
- 23 Write the things which ye have seen and heard, save it be those which are forbidden.
- כתבו את הדברים אשר ראיתם ושמעתם, זולת אלה אשר נאסר עליכם.
- 24 Write the works of this people, which shall be, even as hath been written, of that which hath been.
- כתבו את מעשי העם הזה, אשר יעשו, כפי אשר נכתבו המעשים אשר היו.
- 25 For behold, out of the books which have been written, and which shall be written, shall this people be judged, for by them shall their works be known unto men.
- כי הנה, על פי הספרים אשר נכתבו, ואשר יכתבו, ישפט העם הזה, כי על ידיהם יודעו מעשיהם לבני האדם.
- 26 And behold, all things are written by the Father; therefore out of the books which shall be written shall the world be judged.
- הנה, כל הדברים נכתבים מאת האב; על כן, על פי הספרים אשר יכתבו, ישפט העולם.
- 27 And know ye that ye shall be judges of this people, according to the judgment which I shall give unto you, which shall be just. Therefore, what manner of men ought ye to be? Verily I say unto you, even as I am.
- ודעו כי אתם תהיו שופטי העם הזה על פי המשפט אשר אתנכם, אשר משפט צדק הוא. לכן, אילו אנשים עליכם להיות? אכן אני אומר לכם, אף כמוני תהיו.
- 28 And now I go unto the Father. And verily I say unto you, whatsoever things ye shall ask the Father in my name shall be given unto you.
- ועתה הולך אני אל האב; ואכן אני אומר לכם, כל אשר תבקשו מאת האב בשמי, נתון ינתן לכם.
- 29 Therefore, ask, and ye shall receive; knock, and it shall be opened unto you; for he that asketh, receiveth; and unto him that knocketh, it shall be opened.
- על כן, בקשו וינתן לכם, דפקו ויפתח לכם. כי המבקש יקבל, והדופק יפתח לו.
- 30 And now, behold, my joy is great, even unto fulness, because of you, and also this generation; yea, and even the Father rejoiceth, and also all the holy angels, because of you and this generation; for none of them are lost.
- ועתה, הנה גדולה שמחתי ומלאה היא, בעבורכם ובעבור הדור הזה. אכן, אף האב שש וכן כל מלאכי הקדש, בעבורכם ובעבור הדור הזה, כי איש מהם לא יאבד.
- 31 Behold, I would that ye should understand; for I mean them who are now alive of this generation; and none of them are lost; and in them I have fulness of joy.
- הן רצוני כי תבינו; כי פנתי לאלה החיים עתה מן הדור הזה; ואיש מהם לא יאבד, ובהם שמחתי מלאה.

32 But behold, it sorroweth me because of the fourth generation from this generation, for they are led away captive by him even as was the son of perdition; for they will sell me for silver and for gold, and for that which moth doth corrupt and which thieves can break through and steal. And in that day will I visit them, even in turning their works upon their own heads.

33 And it came to pass that when Jesus had ended these sayings he said unto his disciples: Enter ye in at the strait gate; for strait is the gate, and narrow is the way that leads to life, and few there be that find it; but wide is the gate, and broad the way which leads to death, and many there be that travel therein, until the night cometh, wherein no man can work.

## כח

## 28

1 And it came to pass when Jesus had said these words, he spake unto his disciples, one by one, saying unto them: What is it that ye desire of me, after that I am gone to the Father?

2 And they all spake, save it were three, saying: We desire that after we have lived unto the age of man, that our ministry, wherein thou hast called us, may have an end, that we may speedily come unto thee in thy kingdom.

3 And he said unto them: Blessed are ye because ye desired this thing of me; therefore, after that ye are seventy and two years old ye shall come unto me in my kingdom; and with me ye shall find rest.

4 And when he had spoken unto them, he turned himself unto the three, and said unto them: What will ye that I should do unto you, when I am gone unto the Father?

5 And they sorrowed in their hearts, for they durst not speak unto him the things which they desired.

6 And he said unto them: Behold, I know your thoughts, and ye have desired the thing which John, my beloved, who was with me in my ministry, before that I was lifted up by the Jews, desired of me.

7 Therefore, more blessed are ye, for ye shall never taste of death; but ye shall live to behold all the doings of the Father unto the children of



- הָאָדָם, עַד אֲשֶׁר יִקְוּמוּ כָּל הַדְּבָרִים, כְּרִצּוֹן הָאֵב, בְּעֵת בּוֹאִי בְתִפְאֶרְתִּי בְכֹחַ מְרוֹמַיִם.
- לְעוֹלָם לֹא תִסְבְּלוּ אֶת יְסוּרֵי הַמָּוֶת; אֲךָ כְּאֲשֶׁר אָבּוֹא בְתִפְאֶרְתִּי, תִּשְׁתַּנּוּ כְּהֶרֶף עֵין מִבְּנֵי תְמוּתָה לִבְנֵי אֱלֹמֹת; וְאִזִּי תִבָּרְכוּ בַּמַּלְכוּת אֲבִי.
- אֲכֹן, בְּהִיוֹתְכֶם בְּבֶשֶׁר, לֹא יִהְיֶה לָכֶם כָּל מִכְאוֹב וְאִף לֹא צֶעַר, כִּי אִם עַל חַטָּאֵי הָעוֹלָם; וְאֵת כָּל זֹאת אֶעֱשֶׂה מִפְּנֵי חֲפָצְכֶם מִמֶּנִּי, כִּי חֲפָצְתֶּם לְהִבְיֵא אֵלַי אֶת נַפְשׁוֹת בְּנֵי הָאָדָם, בְּעוֹד אֲשֶׁר עוֹמֵד הָעוֹלָם.
- וּבְעֵבוֹר זֹאת תִּהְיֶה לָכֶם שְׂמִיחָה שְׁלֵמָה, וְתִשְׁבּוּ בַּמַּלְכוּת אֲבִי; אֲכֹן, שְׂמִיחַתְכֶם תִּהְיֶה שְׁלֵמָה, כְּשִׂמְחָה הַשְּׁלֵמָה אֲשֶׁר הָאֵב נָתַן לִי. וְאִף כְּמוֹנֵי תִהְיֶה וְאִנִּי כָאֵב; וְהָאֵב וְאִנִּי אֶחָד.
- וְרוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ מַעֲיֵד עַל הָאֵב וְעָלַי; וְהָאֵב נֹתֵן אֶת רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ לִבְנֵי הָאָדָם בְּעֵבוֹרִי.
- וְהִיָּה אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר יֵשׁוּעַ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, הוּא נָגַע בְּאֶצְבָּעוֹ בְּכָל אִישׁ מֵהֶם, זֹלַת הַשְּׁלִישָׁה אֲשֶׁר נִוְעְדוּ לְהִשְׁתַּהוֹת עַל פְּנֵי הָאָדָמָה, וְנִפְרַד מֵהֶם.
- וְהִנֵּה נִפְתָּחוּ הַשָּׁמַיִם, וְהַשְּׁלִישָׁה הֶעֱלָו הַשָּׁמַיִמָּה, וְהֵם רָאוּ וְשָׁמְעוּ דְּבָרִים בֶּל יִסְפְּרוּ.
- וְנִאָּסַר עֲלֵיהֶם לְסַפֵּר דְּבָר; וְאִף לֹא נָתַן לָהֶם כֹּחַ לְהִגִּיד אֶת הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר רָאוּ וְשָׁמְעוּ.
- וְאִם בְּגוֹפָם הָיוּ אוֹ מִחוּצָה לוֹ, לֹא יָכְלוּ לְהִגִּיד, כִּי נִדְּמָה לָהֶם כְּהִתְחַלְפוֹת צוּרָתָם, כְּאֵלּוּ הִשְׁתַּנּוּ מִגּוֹף בָּשָׂר אֶל מַצָּב אֱלֹמֹת, עַד כִּי יָכְלוּ לְרַאוֹת אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הַנּוֹגְעִים לְאֱלֹהִים.
- אֲךָ הֵם שָׁבוּ וְשִׁמְשׁוּ עַל פְּנֵי הָאָדָמָה; וְאוֹלָם הֵם לֹא שִׁמְשׁוּ בַּדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר שָׁמְעוּ וְרָאוּ, מִפְּנֵי הַמִּצְוָה אֲשֶׁר צִוּוּ בַּשָּׁמַיִם.
- וְעַתָּה, אֵינֶנִּי יוֹדֵעַ אִם מִיּוֹם הַתְּחַלְפוֹתָם הָיוּ הֵם בְּנֵי תְמוּתָה אוֹ בְּנֵי אֱלֹמֹת;
- men, even until all things shall be fulfilled according to the will of the Father, when I shall come in my glory with the powers of heaven.
- 8 And ye shall never endure the pains of death; but when I shall come in my glory ye shall be changed in the twinkling of an eye from mortality to immortality; and then shall ye be blessed in the kingdom of my Father.
- 9 And again, ye shall not have pain while ye shall dwell in the flesh, neither sorrow save it be for the sins of the world; and all this will I do because of the thing which ye have desired of me, for ye have desired that ye might bring the souls of men unto me, while the world shall stand.
- 10 And for this cause ye shall have fulness of joy; and ye shall sit down in the kingdom of my Father; yea, your joy shall be full, even as the Father hath given me fulness of joy; and ye shall be even as I am, and I am even as the Father; and the Father and I are one;
- 11 And the Holy Ghost beareth record of the Father and me; and the Father giveth the Holy Ghost unto the children of men, because of me.
- 12 And it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words, he touched every one of them with his finger save it were the three who were to tarry, and then he departed.
- 13 And behold, the heavens were opened, and they were caught up into heaven, and saw and heard unspeakable things.
- 14 And it was forbidden them that they should utter; neither was it given unto them power that they could utter the things which they saw and heard;
- 15 And whether they were in the body or out of the body, they could not tell; for it did seem unto them like a transfiguration of them, that they were changed from this body of flesh into an immortal state, that they could behold the things of God.
- 16 But it came to pass that they did again minister upon the face of the earth; nevertheless they did not minister of the things which they had heard and seen, because of the commandment which was given them in heaven.
- 17 And now, whether they were mortal or immortal, from the day of their transfiguration, I know not;

- 18 But this much I know, according to the record which hath been given— they did go forth upon the face of the land, and did minister unto all the people, uniting as many to the church as would believe in their preaching; baptizing them, and as many as were baptized did receive the Holy Ghost.
- אך זאת יודע אני, על פי הכתבים המסורים בזמננו: הם הלכו על פני הארץ, ושמשו לפני כל העם, וספחו אל הכנסייה את כל אשר האמינו בהשפעתם והטבילום; וכל המטבילים קבלו את רוח הקדש.
- 19 And they were cast into prison by them who did not belong to the church. And the prisons could not hold them, for they were rent in twain.
- והם השלכו אל בית הכלא על ידי האנשים אשר לא חברו אל הכנסייה. ולא יכלו בתי הכלא להכילם כי נבקעו.
- 20 And they were cast down into the earth; but they did smite the earth with the word of God, insomuch that by his power they were delivered out of the depths of the earth; and therefore they could not dig pits sufficient to hold them.
- והם השלכו אל עמקי האדמה, אך הם הכו את האדמה על ידי דבר אלהים, עד כי השתחררו בכחו מן המעמקים; על כן לא יכלו כולאיהם לכרות בורות עמקים דים להחזיקם.
- 21 And thrice they were cast into a furnace and received no harm.
- שלוש פעמים הם השלכו אל כבשן אש ולא נפגעו כלל.
- 22 And twice were they cast into a den of wild beasts; and behold they did play with the beasts as a child with a suckling lamb, and received no harm.
- ופעמים הם השלכו אל גב חיות פרא; והנה, הם שחקו עם החיות כילד עם שוה, ולא נפגעו כלל.
- 23 And it came to pass that thus they did go forth among all the people of Nephi, and did preach the gospel of Christ unto all people upon the face of the land; and they were converted unto the Lord, and were united unto the church of Christ, and thus the people of that generation were blessed, according to the word of Jesus.
- והיה כי הם הלכו בקרב כל עם נפי והטיפו את בשורת המשיח לכל בני האדם אשר על פני הארץ. והאנשים הפכו למאמיני יהוה ונספחו אל כנסיית המשיח. כה התברכו אנשי הדור ההוא כדבר ישוע.
- 24 And now I, Mormon, make an end of speaking concerning these things for a time.
- ועתה, אני, מורמון, מכלה את דברי, לזמן מה, על אודות הדברים האלה.
- 25 Behold, I was about to write the names of those who were never to taste of death, but the Lord forbade; therefore I write them not, for they are hid from the world.
- הנה, עמדתי לכתב את שמות אלה אשר לעולם לא יטעמו מות, אך יהוה אסר זאת; לכן אינני כותבם, כי נסתרים הם מבני תבל.
- 26 But behold, I have seen them, and they have ministered unto me.
- אך הנה, אני ראיתים והם שמשו לפני.
- 27 And behold they will be among the Gentiles, and the Gentiles shall know them not.
- והנה, הם יהיו בקרב הגוים, והגוים לא יכירו.
- 28 They will also be among the Jews, and the Jews shall know them not.
- והם יהיו אף בקרב היהודים, והיהודים לא יכירו.
- 29 And it shall come to pass, when the Lord seeth fit in his wisdom that they shall minister unto all the scattered tribes of Israel, and unto all nations, kindreds, tongues and people, and shall bring out of them unto
- ויום יבוא, כאשר בחקמתו ימצא יהוה לנכון, והם ישמשו לפני כל שבטי ישראל הנפוצים, ולפני כל האמות והמשפחות והלשונות והעמים, ויביאו מתוכם נפשות רבות אל

- יֵשׁוּעַ, בְּעִבּוּר יְתָקִים חֲפָצָם וְאִף מִפְּנֵי כֹחַ אֱלֹהִים הַמְשַׁכְנֵנֶּה אֲשֶׁר בָּהֶם.
- 30 And they are as the angels of God, and if they shall pray unto the Father in the name of Jesus they can show themselves unto whatsoever man it seemeth them good.
- וְהֵם כְּמַלְאכֵי אֱלֹהִים, וְאִם יִתְפַּלְּלוּ אֶל הָאֵב בְּשֵׁם יֵשׁוּעַ, יוּכְלוּ לְהִרְאוֹת עֲצָמָם אֶל כָּל אָדָם אֲשֶׁר יִיטֵב בְּעֵינֵיהֶם.
- 31 Therefore, great and marvelous works shall be wrought by them, before the great and coming day when all people must surely stand before the judgment-seat of Christ;
- עַל כֵּן גְּדוֹלִים וְנִפְלְאִים הַמַּעֲשִׂים אֲשֶׁר יַעֲשׂוּ עַל יְדֵיהֶם, לִפְנֵי הַיּוֹם הַגָּדוֹל הַקָּרֵב, כְּאֲשֶׁר כָּל בְּנֵי הָאָדָם הַתִּיַּצֵּב יִתִּיצְבוּ לִפְנֵי כִסֵּי הַמִּשְׁפָּט אֲשֶׁר לְמִשִּׁיחַ.
- 32 Yea even among the Gentiles shall there be a great and marvelous work wrought by them, before that judgment day.
- אָכֵן, אִף בְּקִרְבַּ הַגּוֹיִים יִהְיֶה מַעֲשֶׂה גְדוֹל וְנִפְלְאָ, אֲשֶׁר יַעֲשֶׂה עַל יְדֵיהֶם, לִפְנֵי יוֹם הַדִּין הַהוּא.
- 33 And if ye had all the scriptures which give an account of all the marvelous works of Christ, ye would, according to the words of Christ, know that these things must surely come.
- וְאִלוּ הָיוּ לָכֶם כָּל כְּתָבֵי הַקֹּדֶשׁ הַמְסַפְּרִים עַל כָּל מַעֲשֵׂי הַמְּשִׁיחַ הַנִּפְלְאִים, הֵייתֶם יוֹדְעִים, עַל פִּי דְבָרֵי הַמְּשִׁיחַ, כִּי הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה בּוֹא יְבוֹאוּ.
- 34 And wo be unto him that will not hearken unto the words of Jesus, and also to them whom he hath chosen and sent among them; for whoso receiveth not the words of Jesus and the words of those whom he hath sent receiveth not him; and therefore he will not receive them at the last day;
- וְאִי לְאֲשֶׁר לֹא יִשְׁמַע לְדְבָרֵי יֵשׁוּעַ, וְאִף לְדְבָרֵי נְבִיָּהוּ הַשְּׁלוּחִים מִמֶּנּוּ אֵלֵיהֶם, כִּי כָל אֲשֶׁר אֵינָנו מְקַבֵּל אֶת דְּבָרֵי יֵשׁוּעַ, אוֹ אֶת דְּבָרֵי שְׁלִיחָיו, אֵין הוּא מְקַבֵּל אוֹתוֹ; לְכֵן הוּא לֹא יִקְבֹּל בַּיּוֹם הָאֲחֵרוֹן.
- 35 And it would be better for them if they had not been born. For do ye suppose that ye can get rid of the justice of an offended God, who hath been trampled under feet of men, that thereby salvation might come?
- הֵן טוֹב הָיָה לָהֶם לֹא לָדוּ. הַתְּחַשְּׁבוּ כִּי תוּכְלוּ לְהַפְּטֹר מִדִּין אֱלֹהִים אֲשֶׁר כְּבוֹדוֹ מְחֻלָּל, הַנִּרְמָס בְּרַגְלֵי בְנֵי אָדָם, לְמַעַן תָּבוֹא הַיְשׁוּעָה?
- 36 And now behold, as I spake concerning those whom the Lord hath chosen, yea, even three who were caught up into the heavens, that I knew not whether they were cleansed from mortality to immortality—
- וְעַתָּה, בְּאֲשֶׁר לֹאֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר דִּבַּרְתִּי עֲלֵיהֶם כִּי בְּחֶרֶם הָאֲדוֹן, וְהֵם הַשְּׁלֵשָׁה אֲשֶׁר הֶעֱלָו הַשָּׁמַיִמָּה, אֲשֶׁר לֹא יָדַעְתִּי אִם נִטְהָרוּ מִהַיּוֹתָם בְּנֵי מוֹת לְבָנֵי אֲלֻמוֹת;
- 37 But behold, since I wrote, I have inquired of the Lord, and he hath made it manifest unto me that there must needs be a change wrought upon their bodies, or else it needs be that they must taste of death;
- וְהִנֵּה, מֵאֲזַ אֲשֶׁר כְּתַבְתִּי, בִּקְשָׁתִי מִיְהוָה לְדַעַת, וּמִמֶּנּוּ נִגְלָה לִּי, כִּי עַל גּוֹפֵם הָיָה לַעֲבֹר תְּמוּרָה, וְלֹא, יִטְעֲמוּ הֵם מוֹת.
- 38 Therefore, that they might not taste of death there was a change wrought upon their bodies, that they might not suffer pain nor sorrow save it were for the sins of the world.
- לְכֵן, בְּעִבּוּר לֹא יִטְעֲמוּ מוֹת, נַעֲשֶׂתָה תְּמוּרָה בְּגוֹפֵם, לְבַל יִסְבְּלוּ מִכָּאֹב וְאִף לֹא צָעַר, כִּי אִם עַל חַטָּאֵי הָעוֹלָם.
- 39 Now this change was not equal to that which shall take place at the last day; but there was a change wrought upon them, insomuch that Satan could have no power over them, that he could not tempt them; and they were sanctified in the flesh, that they were holy, and that the powers of the earth could not hold them.
- וְהַתְּמוּרָה הַזֹּאת לֹא הָיְתָה כְּזֹאת אֲשֶׁר תִּחְוֹל בַּיּוֹם הָאֲחֵרוֹן; כִּי נַעֲשֶׂתָה בָּהֶם תְּמוּרָה אֲשֶׁר עַל יְדֵיהֶם לֹא יָכוֹל לְהִיּוֹת לְשֹׁטֵן שְׁלֵטוֹן בָּהֶם וְאִף לֹא יָכוֹל הוּא לְפַתּוֹתָם; כִּי הֵם הִתְקַדְּשׁוּ בְּגוֹפֵם עַד כִּי הִכּוּ קְדוּשִׁים, וְלֹא יָכְלוּ כֹחוֹת

- 40 And in this state they were to remain until the judgment day of Christ; and at that day they were to receive a greater change, and to be received into the kingdom of the Father to go no more out, but to dwell eternally in the heavens.
- הָאָרֶץ לְהַחֲזִיק בָּהֶם. בְּמַצָּב הַזֶּה הֵם נוֹעְדוּ לְהִשָּׁאֵר עַד יוֹם הַדִּין אֲשֶׁר לְמִשְׁיחַ. וּבַיּוֹם הַהוּא נִכְוֶנָה לָהֶם תְּמוּרָה גְּדוֹלָה יוֹתֵר, וְהֵם יִתְקַבְּלוּ בְּמַלְכוּת הָאָב מִבְּלִי לְצֵאת עוֹד; אַכֵּן, הֵם נוֹעְדוּ לִשְׁכֹּן עִם אֱלֹהִים בְּמְרוֹמִים לְעוֹלָם.

## 29

## כט

- 1 And now behold, I say unto you that when the Lord shall see fit, in his wisdom, that these sayings shall come unto the Gentiles according to his word, then ye may know that the covenant which the Father hath made with the children of Israel, concerning their restoration to the lands of their inheritance, is already beginning to be fulfilled.
- וְעַתָּה, אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם כִּי כִּרְאוֹת יִהְיוּ בְּחֻקְמָתוֹ כִּי נִכְוֶנָה שְׁעֵת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה לְבּוֹא אֶל הַגּוֹיִים כְּדָבָרוֹ, אַתֶּם תֵּדְעוּ כִּי הַבְּרִית אֲשֶׁר כָּרַת הָאָב עִם בְּנֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל בְּדִבְרֵי שְׂיָבָתָם אֶל אֲרָצוֹת נַחֲלָתָם כְּבָר הַחֲלָה לְהִתְקַיֵּם.
- 2 And ye may know that the words of the Lord, which have been spoken by the holy prophets, shall all be fulfilled; and ye need not say that the Lord delays his coming unto the children of Israel.
- וְתֵדְעוּ כִּי דְבָרֵי יְהוָה אֲשֶׁר הִגִּידוּ הַנְּבִיאִים הַקְּדוּשִׁים יִתְקַיְּמוּ כָּלָם; וְאַל לָכֶם לוֹמַר כִּי מְשָׁהָה יִהְיוּ אֵת בּוֹאוֹ אֶל בְּנֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל.
- 3 And ye need not imagine in your hearts that the words which have been spoken are vain, for behold, the Lord will remember his covenant which he hath made unto his people of the house of Israel.
- וְאַל לָכֶם לְדַמּוֹת בְּלִבְכֶם כִּי הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר נֶאֱמָרוּ שׁוֹא הֵמָּה; כִּי הִנֵּה, יִזְכֹּר יְהוָה אֵת בְּרִיתוֹ אֲשֶׁר כָּרַת עִם עַמּוֹ, בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל.
- 4 And when ye shall see these sayings coming forth among you, then ye need not any longer spurn at the doings of the Lord, for the sword of his justice is in his right hand; and behold, at that day, if ye shall spurn at his doings he will cause that it shall soon overtake you.
- וּכְרִאוֹתְכֶם אֵת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה מוֹפִיעִים בְּקִרְבְּכֶם, אֵל לָכֶם לְהוֹסִיף לְבּוֹז לְמַעֲשֵׂי יְהוָה, כִּי חָרַב מִשְׁפָּטוֹ בַּיּמִינוֹ; וְהִיא בְּיָמֵינוּ הַהֵוא, אִם תִּבְּזוּ לְמַעֲשָׂיו, מִהֵרָה יִשְׁלַחָה בְּכֶם לְהַשִּׁיגְכֶם.
- 5 Wo unto him that spurneth at the doings of the Lord; yea, wo unto him that shall deny the Christ and his works!
- אֹי לְאֲשֶׁר יִבּוֹז לְמַעֲשֵׂי יְהוָה; אַכֵּן, אֹי לְאֲשֶׁר יִכְחַשׁ בְּמִשְׁיחַ וּבַפְּעֻלּוֹ!
- 6 Yea, wo unto him that shall deny the revelations of the Lord, and that shall say the Lord no longer worketh by revelation, or by prophecy, or by gifts, or by tongues, or by healings, or by the power of the Holy Ghost!
- אַכֵּן, אֹי לְאֲשֶׁר יִכְחַשׁ בְּחַזְיוֹנוֹת יְהוָה, וְאֲשֶׁר יֹאמַר כִּי אֵין יְהוָה מוֹסִיף לַפְּעֹל עַל יְדֵי חַזְיוֹנוֹת אוֹ נְבוּאָה אוֹ עַל יְדֵי מִתְּנוֹת אוֹ לְשׁוֹנוֹת אוֹ רְפוּי אוֹ עַל יְדֵי כֹחַ רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ!
- 7 Yea, and wo unto him that shall say at that day, to get gain, that there can be no miracle wrought by Jesus Christ; for he that doeth this shall become like unto the son of perdition, for whom there was no mercy, according to the word of Christ!
- אַכֵּן, אֹי לְאֲשֶׁר יֹאמַר בַּיּוֹם הַהוּא, בְּעִבּוֹר בְּצַע, כִּי אֵין כָּל גִּס מִבְּצַע עַל יְדֵי יֵשׁוּעַ הַמָּשִׁיחַ. כִּי הָעוֹשֶׂה זֹאת, יִהְיֶה כְּכֵן אֲבִדוֹן, אֲשֶׁר לֹא יִרְחַם לוֹ, כְּדָבָר הַמָּשִׁיחַ!
- 8 Yea, and ye need not any longer hiss, nor spurn, nor make game of the Jews, nor any of the remnant of the house of Israel; for behold, the Lord remembereth his covenant unto them, and he will do unto them according to that which he hath sworn.
- וְאַל לָכֶם לְשָׂרֵק וּלְבּוֹז לַיהוּדִים, וְאֵף לֹא לְשַׂחֵק לָהֶם אוֹ לְכָל שְׂרִיד מִבֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל; כִּי הִנֵּה, זֹכֵר יְהוָה אֵת בְּרִיתוֹ אֲתֶם וְהוּא אַכֵּן יַעֲשֶׂה לָהֶם כְּדָבָר אֲשֶׁר נִשְׁבַּע לַעֲשׂוֹת.

לְכֹן, אֵל לָכֶם לְסָבֵר כִּי תִוְּכְלוּ לְהַחֲלִיף אֶת  
יָמִין יְהוָה בְּשִׁמְאַלּוֹ, לְכָל יוֹצֵא אֶת מִשְׁפָּטוֹ  
בְּקִיּוֹם הַבְּרִית אֲשֶׁר כָּרַת עִם בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל.

9 Therefore ye need not suppose that ye can turn the right hand of the Lord unto the left, that he may not execute judgment unto the fulfilling of the covenant which he hath made unto the house of Israel.

## ל

## 30

שָׁמְעוּ, גּוֹיִים, וְהֶאֱזִינוּ לְדִבְרֵי יֵשׁוּעַ הַמָּשִׁיחַ,  
בֶּן אֵל חַי, אֲשֶׁר צִוֵּנִי לְדַבֵּר עֲלֵיכֶם, כִּי הִנֵּהוּ  
מִצִּוְנִי לְכַתֵּב, לֵאמֹר:

1 Hearken, O ye Gentiles, and hear the words of Jesus Christ, the Son of the living God, which he hath commanded me that I should speak concerning you, for, behold he commandeth me that I should write, saying:

שׁוּבוּ, כָּל הַגּוֹיִים, מִרְשָׁעַת דְּרָכֵיכֶם וְהִנְחֶמוּ  
עַל רָעַת מַעֲשֵׂיכֶם; עַל שְׁקָרֵיכֶם וְכַזְבֵּיכֶם,  
עַל זְנוּנֵיכֶם וְתוֹעֲבוֹתֵיכֶם הַנִּסְתָּרוֹת, עַל  
עֲבוֹדַת אֱלִילִיכֶם וּמַעֲשֵׂי הָרָצַח וְתַרְמִיּוֹת  
כְּהֵינֵיכֶם, וְעַל הַקְּנָאָה וְהַמְרִיבוֹת וְעַל כָּל  
רְשָׁעֵיכֶם וְתוֹעֲבוֹתֵיכֶם וּבֹאוּ אֵלַי, וְהִטְבַּלְוּ  
בְּשִׁמִּי, בְּעִבּוֹר תִּקְבְּלוּ מַחִילָה עַל חַטָּאֵיכֶם  
וְתִמְלְאוּ בְרוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ, לְמַעַן תִּמְנֶנּוּ עִם בְּנֵי  
עַמִּי, אֲשֶׁר מִבֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל הֵמָּה.

2 Turn, all ye Gentiles, from your wicked ways; and repent of your evil doings, of your lyings and deceivings, and of your whoredoms, and of your secret abominations, and your idolatries, and of your murders, and your priestcrafts, and your envyings, and your strifes, and from all your wickedness and abominations, and come unto me, and be baptized in my name, that ye may receive a remission of your sins, and be filled with the Holy Ghost, that ye may be numbered with my people who are of the house of Israel.

## סֵפֶר נְפִי ד

## THE BOOK OF 4 NEPHI

סֵפֶר נְפִי, הוּא נְפִי בֶן נְפִי, מִתְּלִמִּידֵי יֵשׁוּעַ הַמָּשִׁיחַ.  
סֵפֹר קוֹרוֹת עִם נְפִי עַל פִּי סֵפֶר זְכוֹנוֹתָיו (בְּעֶרְךָ  
321–35 לְסִפְיָה).

*The book of Nephi, who is the son of Nephi, one of the disciples of Jesus Christ. An account of the people of Nephi, according to his record. (About A.D. 35–321.)*

## א

## 1

וְהָיָה כִּי חָלְפָה שְׁנַת שְׁלֹשִׁים וְאַרְבַּע וְכֹן שְׁנַת  
שְׁלֹשִׁים וְחָמֵשׁ. וְהִנֵּה הִקִּימוּ תִּלְמִידֵי יֵשׁוּעַ  
כְּנִסְיָה לְמִשִּׁיחַ בְּכָל הָאֲרָצוֹת אֲשֶׁר סָבִיב. וְכָל  
אֲשֶׁר בָּאוּ אֵלֵיהֶם, וְאֵיכֹן שָׁבוּ מִחַטָּאֵיהֶם,  
הִטְבְּלוּ בְּשֵׁם יֵשׁוּעַ וְאֵף קִבְּלוּ אֶת רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ.

1 And it came to pass that the thirty and fourth year passed away, and also the thirty and fifth, and behold the disciples of Jesus had formed a church of Christ in all the lands round about. And as many as did come unto them, and did truly repent of their sins, were baptized in the name of Jesus; and they did also receive the Holy Ghost.

וְהָיָה בְּשְׁנַת שְׁלֹשִׁים וְשֵׁשׁ הִפְכוּ הַכָּל, נְפִיִּים  
וְלָמְנִים, מֵאֲמִינֵי יְהוָה, עַל כָּל פְּנֵי הָאֲרֶץ, וְלֹא  
הָיוּ בֵּינֵיהֶם מְרִיבוֹת וּמַחֲלוֹקוֹת, וְכָל אִישׁ נָהָג  
בִּישָׁר עִם רֵעֵהוּ.

2 And it came to pass in the thirty and sixth year, the people were all converted unto the Lord, upon all the face of the land, both Nephites and Lamanites, and there were no contentions and disputations among them, and every man did deal justly one with another.

וּבְכָל אֲשֶׁר הָיָה לָהֶם הָיוּ שְׁתָּפוּיִם; עַל כֵּן לֹא  
הָיָה בֵּינֵיהֶם עָשִׁיר וְעָנִי, אוֹ עֶבֶד וְחֹפְשִׁי, כִּי הַכָּל  
הָיוּ חֹפְשִׁיִּים וְנוֹטְלִים חֶלֶק בְּמַתַּת שָׁמַיִם.

3 And they had all things common among them; therefore there were not rich and poor, bond and free, but they were all made free, and partakers of the heavenly gift.



## נְפִי ד א:ה-י

וְאַף שָׁנַת שְׁלֹשִׁים וְשֶׁבַע חָלְפָה, וְהַשָּׁלוֹם עוֹדוֹ  
נִמְשָׁךְ בְּאֶרֶץ.

And it came to pass that the thirty and seventh year passed away also,  
and there still continued to be peace in the land.

וּבָעֵת הַהִיא נַעֲשׂוּ מַעֲשִׂים גְּדוֹלִים וְנִפְלְאִים  
עַל יְדֵי תַלְמִידֵי יֵשׁוּעַ; אַכֵּן, הֵם רָפְאוּ חוֹלִים  
וְהַקִּימוּ מֵתִים, הִסְבּוּ הַלֵּיכָה לַפְסָחִים וְנָתְנוּ  
מֵאֹר עֵינַיִם לְעֹרְרִים וְשִׁמְעָה לְחֹרְשִׁים, וְהֵם  
עָשׂוּ כָּל מִיּוֹי נְסִים בְּקֶרֶב בְּנֵי הָאָדָם; וְכָל  
נִסְיָהֶם לֹא נַעֲשׂוּ כִּי אִם בְּשֵׁם יֵשׁוּעַ.

5 And there were great and marvelous works wrought by the disciples  
of Jesus, insomuch that they did heal the sick, and raise the dead, and  
cause the lame to walk, and the blind to receive their sight, and the deaf  
to hear; and all manner of miracles did they work among the children  
of men; and in nothing did they work miracles save it were in the name  
of Jesus.

כֹּה חָלְפָה שָׁנַת שְׁלֹשִׁים וְשִׁמוֹנָה וְכֹן שָׁנוֹת  
שְׁלֹשִׁים וְתֵשַׁע, אַרְבָּעִים, אַרְבָּעִים וְאַחַת,  
אַרְבָּעִים וְשָׁתַיִם, אַכֵּן, עַד שָׁנַת אַרְבָּעִים וְתֵשַׁע,  
חֲמִשִּׁים, חֲמִשִּׁים וְאַחַת, חֲמִשִּׁים וְשָׁתַיִם וְעַד  
שָׁנַת חֲמִשִּׁים וְתֵשַׁע, אֲשֶׁר חָלְפָה אֵף הִיא.

6 And thus did the thirty and eighth year pass away, and also the thirty  
and ninth, and forty and first, and the forty and second, yea, even until  
forty and nine years had passed away, and also the fifty and first, and the  
fifty and second; yea, and even until fifty and nine years had passed away.

וַיְהִי הַצִּלְחִים בְּאֶרֶץ עַד מָאֵד; אַכֵּן, עַד כִּי  
הֵם בָּנוּ שָׁנִית עָרִים בְּמָקוֹם הָעָרִים הַשְּׂרוּפוֹת.

7 And the Lord did prosper them exceedingly in the land; yea, insomuch  
that they did build cities again where there had been cities burned.

אֵף אֶת הָעִיר הַגְּדוֹלָה הַהִיא, זִרְעֻחְמָלָה,  
הֵם בָּנוּ שָׁנִית.

8 Yea, even that great city Zarahemla did they cause to be built again.

אֵף הָיוּ עָרִים רַבּוֹת אֲשֶׁר שָׁקְעוּ, וּמִים נָקוּ  
בְּמָקוֹמָן; עַל כֵּן לֹא נָתַן הָיָה לְקוֹמָם אֶת  
הָעָרִים הָאֵלֶּה.

9 But there were many cities which had been sunk, and waters came up  
in the stead thereof; therefore these cities could not be renewed.

וְהֵנָּה, הַתְּחִזָּק עִם נְפִי, וְהֵם רַבּוּ מִהֵר מְאֹד  
וְהָיוּ לְעַם נָאֶה וְנָעִים.

10 And now, behold, it came to pass that the people of Nephi did wax  
strong, and did multiply exceedingly fast, and became an exceedingly  
fair and delightsome people.

וְהֵם נָשְׂאוּ וְנָשְׂאוּ, וְהִתְבָּרְכוּ כְּמֵלֶאכֶּרֶת דְּבָרֵי  
הַבְּרִית אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר אֱלֹהֵיהֶם יְהוָה.

11 And they were married, and given in marriage, and were blessed  
according to the multitude of the promises which the Lord had made  
unto them.

וְהֵם לֹא הוֹסִיפוּ לָלֶכֶת אַחֵר תּוֹרַת מֹשֶׁה  
וְחֻקֹּתֶיהָ, כִּי אִם בְּדֶרֶךְ הַמִּצְוֹת אֲשֶׁר קִבְּלוּ  
מֵאֲדוֹנֵיהֶם וְאֱלֹהֵיהֶם, בְּהוֹסִיפָם לְצוּם  
וּלְהִתְפַּלֵּל, וּלְהוֹעֵד יַחַד לְעֵתִים קְרוֹבוֹת,  
לְתַפְּלָה וּלְשִׁמְעִיעַת דְּבַר יְהוָה.

12 And they did not walk any more after the performances and ordinances  
of the law of Moses; but they did walk after the commandments which  
they had received from their Lord and their God, continuing in fasting  
and prayer, and in meeting together oft both to pray and to hear the  
word of the Lord.

וְלֹא הָיְתָה מְרִיבָה בְּקֶרֶב כָּל הָאֲנָשִׁים אֲשֶׁר  
בְּכָל הָאֶרֶץ; אֵף הָיוּ נְסִים גְּדוֹלִים, אֲשֶׁר נַעֲשׂוּ  
בְּקֶרֶב תַּלְמִידֵי יֵשׁוּעַ.

13 And it came to pass that there was no contention among all the people,  
in all the land; but there were mighty miracles wrought among the  
disciples of Jesus.

וְהָיָה כִּי חָלְפָה שָׁנַת שֶׁבַעִים וְאַחַת, וְכֹן שָׁנַת  
שֶׁבַעִים וְשָׁתַיִם, וּבִקְצָרָהּ, חָלְפוּ כָּל הַשָּׁנִים עַד  
שָׁנַת שֶׁבַעִים וְתֵשַׁע, אַכֵּן, אֵף שָׁנַת מֵאָה,

14 And it came to pass that the seventy and first year passed away, and  
also the seventy and second year, yea, and in fine, till the seventy and  
ninth year had passed away; yea, even an hundred years had passed

- וְתַלְמִידֵי יֵשׁוּעַ, אֲשֶׁר בָּחַרם, הָלְכוּ כֻּלָּם  
אֶל גֶּן עֵדֶן אֲשֶׁר לֵאלֹהִים, וְזֹלַת הַשְּׁלֹשָׁה  
אֲשֶׁר נִוְעְדוּ לְהִשְׁתַּחֲוֹת; וְתַלְמִידִים אֲחֵרִים  
הִסְמְכוּ תַּחְתֵּיהֶם; וְרַבִּים מִן הַדּוֹר הַהוּא  
עָבְרוּ מִן הָעוֹלָם.
- 15 And it came to pass that there was no contention in the land, because of the love of God which did dwell in the hearts of the people.
- וְלֹא הָיְתָה בָּאָרֶץ כָּל מַחְלָקָת, מִפְּנֵי אֲהֲבַת  
אֱלֹהִים אֲשֶׁר שָׁכְנָה בְּלִבְ הָעָם.
- 16 And there were no envyings, nor strifes, nor tumults, nor whoredoms, nor lyings, nor murders, nor any manner of lasciviousness; and surely there could not be a happier people among all the people who had been created by the hand of God.
- וְלֹא שָׁרְרָה בֵּינֵיהֶם קִנְאָה, וְלֹא מְרִיבָה,  
וְלֹא הַמְלָה, וְאֵף לֹא זִנוּת וּמְרֻמָּה וְרִצְחָ וְכָל  
מִין זִמָּה; אֲכֹן, לֹא יָכַל לְהִיּוֹת עִם מֵאֲשֶׁר  
יֹתֵר בְּכָל הָעַמִּים אֲשֶׁר בָּרָאָה יְד אֱלֹהִים.
- 17 There were no robbers, nor murderers, neither were there Lamanites, nor any manner of —ites; but they were in one, the children of Christ, and heirs to the kingdom of God.
- אֲכֹן, לֹא הָיָה בָּהֶם שׁוֹדֵד אוֹ רוֹצֵחַ, וְלֹא הָיוּ  
לְמַנִּים וְלֹא כָּל בְּנֵי עִם אֲחֵר. כִּי הָפַל הָיוּ אֶחָד,  
בְּנֵי הַמְּשִׁיחַ וְיוֹרְשֵׁי מַלְכוּת אֱלֹהִים.
- 18 And how blessed were they! For the Lord did bless them in all their doings; yea, even they were blessed and prospered until an hundred and ten years had passed away; and the first generation from Christ had passed away, and there was no contention in all the land.
- הִנֵּה, מִה מְבָרְכִים הָיוּ! כִּי בִּרְכָם יְהוָה  
בְּכָל מַעֲשֵׂיהֶם, וְהֵם הָיוּ מְבָרְכִים וּמַצְלִיחִים,  
עַד אֲשֶׁר חָלְפָה שְׁנַת מֵאָה וָעֶשֶׂר; וְהַדּוֹר  
הָרִאשׁוֹן מִיְּמֵי יֵשׁוּעַ עָבַר מִן הָעוֹלָם,  
וְלֹא הָיָה רִיב בְּכָל הָאָרֶץ.
- 19 And it came to pass that Nephi, he that kept this last record, (and he kept it upon the plates of Nephi) died, and his son Amos kept it in his stead; and he kept it upon the plates of Nephi also.
- וְהָיָה בָּעֵת הַהִיא, כִּי נְפִי, אֲשֶׁר רָשַׁם אֶת  
כְּתָב הַזְּכָרוֹן הָאֲחֵרוֹן הַזֶּה, וְהוּא רָשָׁמוֹ עַל  
גְּבִי לוחות נְפִי, מֵת; וְאַחֲרָיו רָשַׁם אוֹתוֹ בְּנוֹ  
עָמוֹס, אֲשֶׁר אָף הוּא רָשָׁמוֹ עַל לוחות נְפִי.
- 20 And he kept it eighty and four years, and there was still peace in the land, save it were a small part of the people who had revolted from the church and taken upon them the name of Lamanites; therefore there began to be Lamanites again in the land.
- וְהוּא רָשַׁם אֶת כְּתָב זְכָרוֹנוֹ בְּמִשְׁוֹר שְׂמוֹנִים  
וָאַרְבַּע שָׁנִים, וּבְכָל הָעֵת הַהִיא נִמְשָׁךְ הַשְּׁלוֹם  
בָּאָרֶץ, וְזֹלַת חֵלֶק קָטָן מִן הָעָם אֲשֶׁר מָרְדוּ  
בְּכִנְסִיָּה וְלָקְחוּ לָהֶם אֶת הַשֵּׁם לְמַנִּים; וְכֵן  
שָׁבוּ וְהָיוּ לְמַנִּים בָּאָרֶץ.
- 21 And it came to pass that Amos died also, (and it was an hundred and ninety and four years from the coming of Christ) and his son Amos kept the record in his stead; and he also kept it upon the plates of Nephi; and it was also written in the book of Nephi, which is this book.
- וְגַם עָמוֹס מֵת, וְזֹאת מֵאָה וְתֵשְׁעִים וָאַרְבַּע  
שָׁנִים מֵעַתָּה בּוֹא הַמְּשִׁיחַ; וְאַחֲרָיו רָשַׁם אֶת  
סֵפֶר הַזְּכָרוֹנוֹת בְּנוֹ עָמוֹס, אֲשֶׁר הוּא כְּמוֹ כֵן  
רָשָׁמוֹ עַל לוחות נְפִי. וּכְתָבוֹ נִרְשַׁם אָף הוּא  
בְּסֵפֶר נְפִי, אֲשֶׁר הוּא הַסֵּפֶר הַזֶּה.
- 22 And it came to pass that two hundred years had passed away; and the second generation had all passed away save it were a few.
- וְהָיָה כִּי חָלְפוּ מֵאתִים שָׁנָה וְכָל הַדּוֹר הַשֵּׁנִי  
עָבַר מִן הָעוֹלָם, וְזֹלַת מְתֵי מְעַט.
- 23 And now I, Mormon, would that ye should know that the people had multiplied, insomuch that they were spread upon all the face of the
- וְעַתָּה, אֲנִי, מוֹרְמוֹן חֲפִץ כִּי תִדְעוּ כִּי בְנֵי הָעָם  
רָבוּ, עַד כִּי פָשְׁטוּ עַל כָּל פְּנֵי הָאָרֶץ, וְאֵף

- הַתַּעֲשָׂרוּ מְאֹד, כִּי צָלְחָה דִּרְכָם בְּמִשִּׁיחַ.
- land, and that they had become exceedingly rich, because of their prosperity in Christ.
- 24 וְהִנֵּה, בְּשָׁנָה מֵאַתִּים וְאַחַת קָמוּ בִּינֵיהֶם אֲנָשִׁים אֲשֶׁר הִתְנַשְּׂאוּ בְּנֶאֱוָה, בְּלִבָּשִׁם לְבוּשׁ יָקָר וְכָל מִינֵי פְּנִינֵי חֹן וְשִׁכִּיּוֹת הָעוֹלָם.
- And now, in this two hundred and first year there began to be among them those who were lifted up in pride, such as the wearing of costly apparel, and all manner of fine pearls, and of the fine things of the world.
- 25 וּמִן הָעַתָּה הָיָא חֲדָלוּ קִנְיָנָם וְהוֹנָם לְהִיּוֹת מִשְׁתַּתָּפִּים.
- And from that time forth they did have their goods and their substance no more common among them.
- 26 וְהֵם הִחֲלוּ לְהַפְלֵג לְמַעֲמָדוֹת; וְהֵם בָּנוּ לְעֶצְמָם כְּנִסְיֹת בְּעֵבֹר בָּצַע, וְהִחֲלוּ לִכְחֹשׁ בַּכְּנִסִּית הָאֱמֶת אֲשֶׁר לְמִשִּׁיחַ.
- And they began to be divided into classes; and they began to build up churches unto themselves to get gain, and began to deny the true church of Christ.
- 27 וַכְּעָבַר מֵאַתִּים וְעֶשֶׂר שָׁנִים רַבּוּ הַכְּנִסִּיּוֹת בְּאֶרֶץ; אָכֵן, רַבּוֹת הָיוּ הַכְּנִסִּיּוֹת אֲשֶׁר טָעְנוּ כִּי הֵן יוֹדְעוֹת אֶת הַמִּשִּׁיחַ; אַךְ הֵן כָּחֲשׁוּ בְּעִקְרֵי בְּשׂוֹרָתוֹ, עַד כִּי קָבְלוּ כָּל מִינֵי רָשָׁעָה בְּקִרְבָּם, וְהֵן שִׁמְשׁוּ אֶת אֲשֶׁר קִדֵּשׁ הוּא לֹאֲשֶׁר לֹא הָיוּ רְאוּיִים לוֹ וְלָכֵן אָסוּר לָהֶם.
- And it came to pass that when two hundred and ten years had passed away there were many churches in the land; yea, there were many churches which professed to know the Christ, and yet they did deny the more parts of his gospel, insomuch that they did receive all manner of wickedness, and did administer that which was sacred unto him to whom it had been forbidden because of unworthiness.
- 28 וְהַכְּנִסִּיָּה הַזֹּאת גְּדָלָה וְעֶצְמָה מִפְּנֵי עֹוֹן וּמִפְּנֵי כַח הַשָּׂטָן אֲשֶׁר קָנָה שְׁבִיתָהּ בָּלָבָם.
- And this church did multiply exceedingly because of iniquity, and because of the power of Satan who did get hold upon their hearts.
- 29 וְעוֹד הָיְתָה שְׁמָה כְּנִסִּיָּה אַחֶרֶת אֲשֶׁר כָּחֲשָׁה בְּמִשִּׁיחַ; וְאַנְשֵׁיהָ רָדְפוּ אֶת אֲנָשֵׁי כְּנִסִּית הָאֱמֶת אֲשֶׁר לְמִשִּׁיחַ, מִפְּנֵי עֲוֹנוֹתָם וְאַמּוֹנָתָם בּוֹ; וְהֵם בְּזוּם מִפְּנֵי הַנִּפְלְאוֹת הַרְבּוֹת אֲשֶׁר נַעֲשׂוּ בְּקִרְבָּם.
- And again, there was another church which denied the Christ; and they did persecute the true church of Christ, because of their humility and their belief in Christ; and they did despise them because of the many miracles which were wrought among them.
- 30 עַל כֵּן הֵם הִפְעִילוּ כַח וְשׂוֹרָה עַל תַּלְמִידֵי יֵשׁוּעַ אֲשֶׁר נִשְׂאָרוּ בְּקִרְבָּם, וְהִשְׁלִיכוּם אֶל הַכְּלָא; אַךְ עַל יְדֵי כַח דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים, אֲשֶׁר הָיָה בָּהֶם, נִבְקְעוּ בְּתֵי הַכְּלָא וְהֵם יָצְאוּ וְעָשׂוּ נִפְלְאוֹת גְּדוֹלוֹת בְּקִרְבָּם הָעָם.
- Therefore they did exercise power and authority over the disciples of Jesus who did tarry with them, and they did cast them into prison; but by the power of the word of God, which was in them, the prisons were rent in twain, and they went forth doing mighty miracles among them.
- 31 וְאוֹלָם, וְעַל אִף כָּל הַנִּסִּים הָאֵלֶּה, הִקְשׁוּ הָאֲנָשִׁים אֶת לַבָּם וּבִקְשׁוּ לְהָרְגֵם, אָכֵן, כִּי־הוּדִים אֲשֶׁר בִּירוּשָׁלַם אֲשֶׁר בִּקְשׁוּ לְהָרֹג אֶת יֵשׁוּעַ, כַּכִּי דִּבְּרוּ.
- Nevertheless, and notwithstanding all these miracles, the people did harden their hearts, and did seek to kill them, even as the Jews at Jerusalem sought to kill Jesus, according to his word.
- 32 וְהֵם הִשְׁלִיכוּם אֶל כְּבִשְׁנֵי אֵשׁ, וְהֵם יָצְאוּ מֵהֶם בְּלֹא פָגַע.
- And they did cast them into furnaces of fire, and they came forth receiving no harm.

- 33 And they also cast them into dens of wild beasts, and they did play with the wild beasts even as a child with a lamb; and they did come forth from among them, receiving no harm.
- 34 Nevertheless, the people did harden their hearts, for they were led by many priests and false prophets to build up many churches, and to do all manner of iniquity. And they did smite upon the people of Jesus; but the people of Jesus did not smite again. And thus they did dwindle in unbelief and wickedness, from year to year, even until two hundred and thirty years had passed away.
- 35 And now it came to pass in this year, yea, in the two hundred and thirty and first year, there was a great division among the people.
- 36 And it came to pass that in this year there arose a people who were called the Nephites, and they were true believers in Christ; and among them there were those who were called by the Lamanites—Jacobites, and Josephites, and Zoramites;
- 37 Therefore the true believers in Christ, and the true worshipers of Christ, (among whom were the three disciples of Jesus who should tarry) were called Nephites, and Jacobites, and Josephites, and Zoramites.
- 38 And it came to pass that they who rejected the gospel were called Lamanites, and Lemuelites, and Ishmaelites; and they did not dwindle in unbelief, but they did wilfully rebel against the gospel of Christ; and they did teach their children that they should not believe, even as their fathers, from the beginning, did dwindle.
- 39 And it was because of the wickedness and abomination of their fathers, even as it was in the beginning. And they were taught to hate the children of God, even as the Lamanites were taught to hate the children of Nephi from the beginning.
- 40 And it came to pass that two hundred and forty and four years had passed away, and thus were the affairs of the people. And the more wicked part of the people did wax strong, and became exceedingly more numerous than were the people of God.
- 41 And they did still continue to build up churches unto themselves, and adorn them with all manner of precious things. And thus did two hundred and fifty years pass away, and also two hundred and sixty years.
- הם אף השליכו אל גְּבֵי חַיֹּת פְּרָא, אִף הֵם שָׁחֲקוּ עִם חַיֹּת הַפְּרָא כְּשֹׁחֵק יֶלֶד עִם שֶׂה; וְהֵם יֵצְאוּ מֵהֶם בְּלֹא פָגַע.
- עַל אִף זֹאת, הִקְשׁוּ הָאֲנָשִׁים אֶת לִבָּם, כִּי הִנְהִיגוּם כְּמָרִים וּנְבִיאֵי שָׁקֶר רַבִּים לְבָנוֹת כְּנִסְיוֹת רַבּוֹת וְלַעֲשׂוֹת כָּל מִינֵי אָוֶן. וְהֵם הִכּוּ אֶת אֲנָשֵׁי יֵשׁוּעַ, אִף אֲנָשֵׁי יֵשׁוּעַ לֹא הִשְׁיבוּם מַכָּה. וְכֵן הֵם שָׁקְעוּ בְּחֹסֶר אֱמוּנָה וּבְרָשָׁעָה מִשָּׁנָה לְשָׁנָה, עַד אֲשֶׁר חָלְפוּ מֵאֵתִים וּשְׁלֹשִׁים שָׁנָה.
- וּבִשְׁנָה הַהִיא, שָׁנַת מֵאֵתִים וּשְׁלֹשִׁים וְאַחַת, הָיָה פְּלוּג גָּדוֹל בָּעָם.
- וּבִשְׁנָה הַהִיא קָם עִם אֲשֶׁר נִקְרָא שְׁמֵם הַנְּפִיִּים. וְהֵם הָיוּ מֵאֲמִינִים כְּנִים בְּמִשְׁיָח; וּבְתוֹכָם הָיוּ אֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר נִקְרָאוּ בְּפִי הַלְּמָנִים יַעֲקֹבִים וְיוֹסֵפִים וְזוֹרָמִים.
- עַל כֵּן נִקְרָאוּ מֵאֲמִינֵי הַמִּשְׁיָיִח הַכְּנִים וְעוֹבְדֵי בָּאֵמֶת, אֲשֶׁר בָּהֶם הָיוּ שְׁלֹשֶׁת תַּלְמִידֵי יֵשׁוּעַ אֲשֶׁר נִשְׁאָרוּ בְּאָרֶץ, בְּשֵׁם נְפִיִּים, וְיַעֲקֹבִים וְיוֹסֵפִים וְזוֹרָמִים.
- וְאֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר מָאָסוּ בְּבִשּׁוּרָה נִקְרָאוּ לְמָנִים וּלְמוֹאֵלִים וְיִשְׁמַעְיָאֵלִים. וְהֵם לֹא הִדְרָדְרוּ אֶל חֹסֶר אֱמוּנָה כִּי אִם בְּזֻדּוֹן מְרֹדוֹ בְּבִשּׁוּרַת הַמִּשְׁיָיִח; וְהֵם לָמְדוּ אֶת בְּנֵיהֶם כִּי אַל לָהֶם לְהֶאֱמִין, כְּאֲבוֹתֵיהֶם, אֲשֶׁר מִרְאשִׁיתָם שָׁקְעוּ בְּחֹסֶר אֱמוּנָה.
- וְהָיָה זֶה מִפְּנֵי רָשָׁעַת אֲבוֹתֵיהֶם וְתוֹעֲבָתָם, כְּפִי אֲשֶׁר הָיָה בְּרִאשׁוֹנָה. אַכֵּן, הֵם לָמְדוּ לְשׂוֹא אֶת בְּנֵי אֱלֹהִים, כְּפִי אֲשֶׁר לָמְדוּ הַלְּמָנִים מִרְאשִׁיתָם לְשׂוֹא אֶת בְּנֵי נְפִי.
- כֵּן חָלְפוּ מֵאֵתִים וָאַרְבָּעִים וָאַרְבַּע שָׁנִים וְכֵן הָיוּ עֲנִינֵי הָעָם בָּעֵת הַהִיא. וְחָלַק הָעָם הָרָשָׁע הַתְּחִיזָּקוּ וּמִסְפָּרָם רַב עַד מְאֹד מִמִּסְפָּר עִם אֱלֹהִים.
- וְהֵם הוֹסִיפוּ לְבָנוֹת לָהֶם כְּנִסְיוֹת וּלְפָאֶרֶן בְּכָל מִינֵי יְקָרוֹת; כֵּן חָלְפוּ מֵאֵתִים וְחֲמִשִּׁים שָׁנָה, וְאִף מֵאֵתִים וּשְׁשִׁים שָׁנָה.

- 42 And it came to pass that the wicked part of the people began again to build up the secret oaths and combinations of Gadianton.
- וְהָיָה כִּי חֵלֶק הָעָם הָרָשָׁע שָׁב לְהִקָּים אֶת הַשְּׁבוּעוֹת וְאֶת אֲגָדוֹת הַסֵּתֶר אֲשֶׁר לְגַדִּיאַנְטוֹן.
- 43 And also the people who were called the people of Nephi began to be proud in their hearts, because of their exceeding riches, and become vain like unto their brethren, the Lamanites.
- וְהָיָה כִּי אֵף הָעָם הַנִּקְרָא עִם נְפִי הֵחֵלּוּ לְהִתְנַשָּׂא בְּלִבָּם מִפְּנֵי רַב עֲשָׂרָם, וּלְלַכֵּת בְּדַרְכֵי הֶבֶל כְּאַחֵיהֶם הַלָּמָנִים.
- 44 And from this time the disciples began to sorrow for the sins of the world.
- וּמִן הָעֵת הַהִיא הֵחֵלּוּ תַלְמִידֵי יֵשׁוּעַ לְהִתְעַצֵּב עַל חַטָּאֵי הָעוֹלָם.
- 45 And it came to pass that when three hundred years had passed away, both the people of Nephi and the Lamanites had become exceedingly wicked one like unto another.
- וְהָיָה כְּחֵלֶף שְׁלֹשׁ מֵאוֹת שָׁנָה הָיוּ שְׁנֵי הָעַמִּים, הַנְּפִיִּים וְהַלָּמָנִים כְּאַחֶד, מְרַשָּׁעִים מְאֹד, אִישׁ כְּאַחֵיו.
- 46 And it came to pass that the robbers of Gadianton did spread over all the face of the land; and there were none that were righteous save it were the disciples of Jesus. And gold and silver did they lay up in store in abundance, and did traffic in all manner of traffic.
- וַיִּשְׁוֹדְדוּ גַּדִּיאַנְטוֹן הַתְּפָשָׁטוּ עַל כָּל פְּנֵי הָאָרֶץ; וְלֹא הָיָה אִישׁ צַדִּיק, וּזְלַת תַּלְמִידֵי יֵשׁוּעַ. וְהֵם צָבְרוּ שֵׁפַע זָהָב וְכֶסֶף בְּאוֹצְרוֹתֵיהֶם וְהֵם שָׁלְחוּ אֶת יָדָם בְּכָל מִינֵי דַרְכֵי מִסְחָר.
- 47 And it came to pass that after three hundred and five years had passed away, (and the people did still remain in wickedness) Amos died; and his brother, Ammaron, did keep the record in his stead.
- וְהָיָה כְּעֵבֶר שְׁלֹשׁ מֵאוֹת וְחֲמֵשׁ שָׁנִים, בְּעוֹד הָעָם מִחֲזִיק בְּרָשָׁעוֹתָם, מֵת עָמוֹס, וְאַחִיו, אַמָּרוֹן, רָשַׁם אֶת כְּתָבֵי הַזְכָּרוֹן אַחֲרָיו.
- 48 And it came to pass that when three hundred and twenty years had passed away, Ammaron, being constrained by the Holy Ghost, did hide up the records which were sacred—yea, even all the sacred records which had been handed down from generation to generation, which were sacred—even until the three hundred and twentieth year from the coming of Christ.
- וְהָיָה כְּחֵלֶף שְׁלֹשׁ מֵאוֹת וְעֶשְׂרִים שָׁנָה, הִצְפִּין אַמָּרוֹן, אֲשֶׁר עוֹרְרָתָהּ רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ, אֶת כְּתָבֵי הַזְכָּרוֹן הַקְּדוּשִׁים, אָכֵן, אֶת כָּל כְּתָבֵי הַזְכָּרוֹן הַקְּדוּשִׁים אֲשֶׁר נִמְסְרוּ מִדּוֹר לְדוֹר, אֲשֶׁר הֵם קְדוּשִׁים, עַד שְׁנַת שְׁלֹשׁ מֵאוֹת וְעֶשְׂרִים לְבוֹא הַמָּשִׁיחַ.
- 49 And he did hide them up unto the Lord that they might come again unto the remnant of the house of Jacob according to the prophecies and the promises of the Lord. And thus is the end of the record of Ammaron.
- אָכֵן, הוּא הִצְפִּינָם לַיְשׁ יְהוָה, בְּעֵבֶר יָשׁוּבוּ אֶל שְׂאֵרֵית בֵּית יַעֲקֹב, כְּפִי נְבוֹאוֹת יְהוָה וְדְבָרֵי בְרִיתוֹ. וְזֶה סוֹף כְּתָב הַזְכָּרוֹן אֲשֶׁר לְאַמָּרוֹן.



# ספר מורמון

מורמון מקבל לידיו את כתבי הזכרון של הנפיים. הוא מקצצם. הוא מוביל את צבאות הנפיים במלחמות נגד הלמנים. כתב זכרונותיו על אודות הקרב האחרון בקומורה ומותו של עם נפי. (בערך 385-321 לספירה). נכלל בפרקים א-י.

## א

ועתה, אני, מורמון, רושם את הדברים אשר ראיתי ושמעתי, וקורא את כתב הזכרון הזה בשם ספר מורמון.

ובעת אשר הצפין אמרון את הכתבים לשם יהוה, הוא בא אלי, ואני הייתי כבן עשר שנים, והחלתי ללמד דבר-מה בדרך למוד עמי; וכה אמר אלי אמרון: הנה ראיתי כי נער מפכח אתה ומהיר להשכיל.

ולכן, רצוני כי בהיותך כבן עשרים וארבע שנים תזכר את קורות העם הזה אשר ראית; ובהגיעך לגיל הזה, לך אל ארץ אנטום, אל גבעה אשר שמה יקרא שים; שם הפקדתי לשם יהוה את כל לוחות הקדש החרוטים על אודות העם הזה.

ובעת ההיא, קח אליך את לוחות נפי ואת זולתם השאר במקומם. ועל לוחות נפי תחרט את כל קורות העם הזה אשר ראית.

ואני, מורמון, צאצא לנפי, אשר שם אבי מורמון, זכרתי את הדברים אשר צוני אמרון.

ובהיותי בן אחת עשרה שנים לקחני אבי אל ארץ הדרום, אל ארץ זרעהמלה.

והנה, כל פני הארץ היו מכסים בנינים ורב מספר העם, כמעט כחול אשר על שפת הים.

ובשנה ההיא פרצה מלחמה בין הנפיים, אשר היו מזרע הנפיים, והיעקבים והיוספים והזורמים ובין הלמנים והלמואלים והישמעאלים.

# THE BOOK OF MORMON

*Mormon is given charge over the records of the Nephites; he abridges them. He leads the armies of the Nephites in wars against the Lamanites. His account of their final battle at Cumorah and the death of the people of Nephi. (About A.D. 321-385) Comprising chapters 1-7.*

## 1

1 And now I, Mormon, make a record of the things which I have both seen and heard, and call it the Book of Mormon.

2 And about the time that Ammaron hid up the records unto the Lord, he came unto me, (I being about ten years of age, and I began to be learned somewhat after the manner of the learning of my people) and Ammaron said unto me: I perceive that thou art a sober child, and art quick to observe;

3 Therefore, when ye are about twenty and four years old I would that ye should remember the things that ye have observed concerning this people; and when ye are of that age go to the land Antum, unto a hill which shall be called Shim; and there have I deposited unto the Lord all the sacred engravings concerning this people.

4 And behold, ye shall take the plates of Nephi unto yourself, and the remainder shall ye leave in the place where they are; and ye shall engrave on the plates of Nephi all the things that ye have observed concerning this people.

5 And I, Mormon, being a descendant of Nephi, (and my father's name was Mormon) I remembered the things which Ammaron commanded me.

6 And it came to pass that I, being eleven years old, was carried by my father into the land southward, even to the land of Zarahemla.

7 The whole face of the land had become covered with buildings, and the people were as numerous almost, as it were the sand of the sea.

8 And it came to pass in this year there began to be a war between the Nephites, who consisted of the Nephites and the Jacobites and the Josephites and the Zoramites; and this war was between the Nephites, and the Lamanites and the Lemuelites and the Ishmaelites.

- 9 Now the Lamanites and the Lemuelites and the Ishmaelites were called Lamanites, and the two parties were Nephites and Lamanites.
- וְהַלְמָנִים וְהַלְמוֹאֲלִים וְהִישְׁמַעְאֲלִים  
נִקְרְאוּ בְּשֵׁם לְמָנִים. אָכֵן, שְׁתֵּי הַמִּפְלָגוֹת  
הָיוּ הַנְּפִיִּים וְהַלְמָנִים.
- 10 And it came to pass that the war began to be among them in the borders of Zarahemla, by the waters of Sidon.
- וְהַמִּלְחָמָה בֵּינֵיהֶם הֵחֵלָה בְּגְבוּלוֹת  
זֶרַחְמֶלָה, לִיד מֵי צִידוֹן.
- 11 And it came to pass that the Nephites had gathered together a great number of men, even to exceed the number of thirty thousand. And it came to pass that they did have in this same year a number of battles, in which the Nephites did beat the Lamanites and did slay many of them.
- וְהַנְּפִיִּים אָסְפוּ מִסְפַּר אַנְשִׁים רַב, אֲשֶׁר עָלָה  
עַל שְׁלֹשִׁים אָלֶף. וּבִשְׁנָה הַהִיא הָיוּ קְרֻבוֹת  
אַחֲדִים, וְהַנְּפִיִּים נִצְחוּ בָּהֶם אֶת הַלְמָנִים  
וְהָרְגוּ רַבִּים מֵהֶם.
- 12 And it came to pass that the Lamanites withdrew their design, and there was peace settled in the land; and peace did remain for the space of about four years, that there was no bloodshed.
- וְהָיָה כִּי הַלְמָנִים חָדְלוּ מִתְכַּנְיָתָם, וְהַשְׁלוֹם  
שָׁכַן בְּאֶרֶץ. כְּאַרְבַּע שָׁנִים שָׁרַר הַשְׁלוֹם וְלֹא  
הָיְתָה שְׂפִיכוֹת דָּמִים.
- 13 But wickedness did prevail upon the face of the whole land, insomuch that the Lord did take away his beloved disciples, and the work of miracles and of healing did cease because of the iniquity of the people.
- אָף הָנָה, הָרָשָׁעָה שָׁלְטָה עַל פְּנֵי כָל הָאֶרֶץ,  
עַד כִּי לָקַח יְהוָה אֶת תַּלְמִידָיו הָאֱהוּבִים,  
וּמַעֲשֵׂי הַנִּסִּים וְהָרְפוּי חָדְלוּ מִפְּנֵי עֲוֹן הָעָם.
- 14 And there were no gifts from the Lord, and the Holy Ghost did not come upon any, because of their wickedness and unbelief.
- וְלֹא הָיוּ מַתָּנוֹת מֵאֵת יְהוָה וְרוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ לֹא  
נָחָה עַל אִישׁ, מִפְּנֵי רָשָׁעָתָם וְחִסְרֵי אֱמוּנָתָם.
- 15 And I, being fifteen years of age and being somewhat of a sober mind, therefore I was visited of the Lord, and tasted and knew of the goodness of Jesus.
- וְאֲנִי, בְּהֵיוֹתִי אֶז בֶּן חֲמִשׁ עֶשְׂרֵה שָׁנִים  
וּבְרִידָעַת מִפְּכַחַת דִּי, עַל כֵּן פָּקַדְנִי יְהוָה  
וְאֲנִי טַעַמְתִּי מִטּוֹבַת יֵשׁוּעַ וַיִּדְעַתִּיהָ.
- 16 And I did endeavor to preach unto this people, but my mouth was shut, and I was forbidden that I should preach unto them; for behold they had wilfully rebelled against their God; and the beloved disciples were taken away out of the land, because of their iniquity.
- וְאֲנִי הִתְאַמַּצְתִּי לְהִטִּיף לָעָם הַזֶּה, אָף פִּי  
נִחָתָם, וְנִאָּסַר עָלַי לְהִטִּיף לָהֶם; כִּי בָּדוֹן  
מָרְדוּ בְּאַלְהֵיהֶם; וְהַתַּלְמִידִים הָאֱהוּבִים  
נִלְקְחוּ מִן הָאֶרֶץ מִפְּנֵי עֲוֹנָם.
- 17 But I did remain among them, but I was forbidden to preach unto them, because of the hardness of their hearts; and because of the hardness of their hearts the land was cursed for their sake.
- וְאוֹלָם אֲנִי נִשְׁאַרְתִּי בְּתוֹכָם, אָף נִאָּסַר עָלַי  
לְהִטִּיף לָהֶם מִפְּנֵי קִשֵּׁי לִבָּם. וּמִפְּנֵי קִשֵּׁי לִבָּם  
הָיְתָה הָאֶרֶץ אֲרוּרָה בַּעֲבוּרָם.
- 18 And these Gadianton robbers, who were among the Lamanites, did infest the land, insomuch that the inhabitants thereof began to hide up their treasures in the earth; and they became slippery, because the Lord had cursed the land, that they could not hold them, nor retain them again.
- וְשׁוֹדְדֵי גָדִיאַנְטוֹן הָאֵלֶּה, אֲשֶׁר הָיוּ בְּקֶרֶב  
הַלְמָנִים, שָׁרְצוּ בְּאֶרֶץ, עַד כִּי הֵחֵלוּ תּוֹשְׁבֵיהָ  
לְהַחְבֹּא אֶת אוֹצְרוֹתֵיהֶם בְּאֶדְמָה; וְהָאוֹצְרוֹת  
הִפְכוּ חֲלָקִים, כִּי אָרַר יְהוָה אֶת הָאֶרֶץ, עַד  
כִּי נִשְׁמְטוּ מִיַּד תּוֹשְׁבֵיהָ וְאֵף לֹא יָכְלוּ הֵם  
לְשׁוּב וּלְקַחְתָּם.
- 19 And it came to pass that there were sorceries, and witchcrafts, and magics; and the power of the evil one was wrought upon all the face of the land, even unto the fulfilling of all the words of Abinadi, and also Samuel the Lamanite.
- וְהָיָה כִּי רַבּוּ מַעֲשֵׂי כְשׁוּף וּלְהִטִּים וּקְסָמִים;  
וְכַח הַמְרָשָׁע הַהוּא פָּעַל עַל כָּל פְּנֵי הָאֶרֶץ;  
וּבְזֹאת הִתְקַיְּמוּ כָּל דְּבָרֵי אַבִּינָדִי וְכֵן דְּבָרֵי  
שְׁמוּאֵל הַלְמָנִי.

## ב

## 2

- וְהָיָה בַשָּׁנָה הַהִיא שָׁבָה וּפְרָצָה מִלְחָמָה בֵּין הַנְּפִיִּים וּבֵין הַלָּמָנִיתִים. וְעַל אִף גִּילִי הַצָּעִיר הָיִיתִי בַעַל מִדָּה, לָכֵן מוֹנִי עִם נָפִי לְמִנְהִיגָם אוֹ לְמַפְקֵד צְבָאוֹתֵיהֶם.
- וְכֹה, בַּשָּׁנָה שֶׁשׁ עֶשְׂרֵה לִימֵי חַיִּי, יָצֵאתִי בְּרֹאשׁ צֶבֶא הַנְּפִיִּים עַל הַלָּמָנִיתִים; כֹּה חָלְפָה שָׁנַת שְׁלֹשׁ מֵאוֹת וְעֶשְׂרִים וְשֵׁשׁ.
- וְהָיָה בַּשָּׁנָה שְׁלֹשׁ מֵאוֹת וְעֶשְׂרִים וְשִׁבְעָה עָלוּ הַלָּמָנִיתִים עָלֵינוּ בְּכֹחַ עֲצוֹם וָרֵב, עַד כִּי הִפְחִידוּ אֶת חֵילוֹתַי; עַל כֵּן הֵם לֹא אָבוּ לְהִלָּחֵם, וְהִחֲלוּ לָסֶגֶת אֶל אֲרָצוֹת הַצָּפוֹן.
- וְאַנְחֵנוּ בָּאנוּ אֶל הָעִיר אַנְגוֹלָה, וְהִחֲזַקְנוּ בָּהּ וְהִתְכַּוְּנוּ לְהִגָּנְתָּנוּ מִפְּנֵי הַלָּמָנִיתִים; אָכֵן, בְּצֻרָנוּ אֶת הָעִיר בְּכֹחֵנוּ; וְאוּלָם עַל אִף כָּל בְּצוּרֵינוּ, עָלוּ עָלֵינוּ הַלָּמָנִיתִים וַיִּגְרֹשׁוּנוּ מִן הָעִיר.
- וְהֵם אִף הִדְפוּנוּ מֵאֶרֶץ דָּוִד.
- וְאַנְחֵנוּ צָעַדְנוּ וּבָאנוּ אֶל אֶרֶץ יְהוֹשֻׁעַ, אֲשֶׁר שִׁכְנָה בְּגָבול הַמַּעֲרָבִי, לְיַד חוֹף הַיָּם.
- וְאַנְחֵנוּ אִסְפָּנוּ אֶת אַנְשֵׁינוּ בְּמַהֲרֹת, כָּל אֲשֶׁר הָיָה לֵאלֹהֵינוּ, בְּעִבּוֹר קִבְצָם לְמִחְנָה אֶחָד.
- וְהִנֵּה מְלָאָה הָאֶרֶץ שׂוֹדְדִים וְלָמָנִיתִים. וְעַל אִף הַהֲשָׁמָדָה הַגְּדוֹלָה אֲשֶׁר אִימָה עַל עַמִּי, הֵם לֹא שָׁבוּ מִרְעֻתָם; לָכֵן פָּשְׁטוּ שְׁפִיכוֹת דָּמִים וְשָׁבַח עַל פְּנֵי כָל הָאֶרֶץ, מִיַּד הַנְּפִיִּים כְּמִיַּד הַלָּמָנִיתִים. אָכֵן, הָיְתָה זֹאת מִהֲפָכָה אֶחָת שֶׁלָּמָה עַל פְּנֵי כָל הָאֶרֶץ.
- וְלָלָמָנִיתִים הָיָה מֶלֶךְ, וְשֵׁמוֹ נִקְרָא אַהֲרֹן. וְהוּא בָּא עָלֵינוּ בְּרֹאשׁ חֵיל בֶּן אַרְבָּעִים וְאַרְבָּעָה אֲלָף אִישׁ. וְהִנֵּה, אֲנִי עֹמְדִיתִי בְּפָנָיו עִם אַרְבָּעִים וּשְׁנַיִם אֲלָף אִישׁ. וְהִבְסָתִי אוֹתוֹ בְּצִבְאִי, וְהוּא נָס מִפָּנָי. הִנֵּה, כָּל זֶה הָיָה, וְחָלְפָה שָׁנַת שְׁלֹשׁ מֵאוֹת וְשָׁלֹשִׁים.
- בַּעֲת הַהִיא הִחֲלוּ הַנְּפִיִּים לְהִנָּחֵם עַל עֲוֹנָם וּלְצַעֵק, כְּנִבְאוֹת שְׁמַאֵל הַנָּבִיא; כִּי הִנֵּה, אִישׁ
- 1 And it came to pass in that same year there began to be a war again between the Nephites and the Lamanites. And notwithstanding I being young, was large in stature; therefore the people of Nephi appointed me that I should be their leader, or the leader of their armies.
- 2 Therefore it came to pass that in my sixteenth year I did go forth at the head of an army of the Nephites, against the Lamanites; therefore three hundred and twenty and six years had passed away.
- 3 And it came to pass that in the three hundred and twenty and seventh year the Lamanites did come upon us with exceedingly great power, insomuch that they did frighten my armies; therefore they would not fight, and they began to retreat towards the north countries.
- 4 And it came to pass that we did come to the city of Angola, and we did take possession of the city, and make preparations to defend ourselves against the Lamanites. And it came to pass that we did fortify the city with our might; but notwithstanding all our fortifications the Lamanites did come upon us and did drive us out of the city.
- 5 And they did also drive us forth out of the land of David.
- 6 And we marched forth and came to the land of Joshua, which was in the borders west by the seashore.
- 7 And it came to pass that we did gather in our people as fast as it were possible, that we might get them together in one body.
- 8 But behold, the land was filled with robbers and with Lamanites; and notwithstanding the great destruction which hung over my people, they did not repent of their evil doings; therefore there was blood and carnage spread throughout all the face of the land, both on the part of the Nephites and also on the part of the Lamanites; and it was one complete revolution throughout all the face of the land.
- 9 And now, the Lamanites had a king, and his name was Aaron; and he came against us with an army of forty and four thousand. And behold, I withstood him with forty and two thousand. And it came to pass that I beat him with my army that he fled before me. And behold, all this was done, and three hundred and thirty years had passed away.
- 10 And it came to pass that the Nephites began to repent of their iniquity, and began to cry even as had been prophesied by Samuel the prophet;

## מורמון ב:יא-יח

לֹא יָכֹל לְהַחֲזִיק בְּכֹשֶׁוֹ מִפְּנֵי הַגָּנְבִים  
וְהַשּׁוֹדְדִים וְהַרוֹצְחִים, וּמִפְּנֵי הַקֶּסֶם וְהַכְּשׁוֹף  
אֲשֶׁר הָיוּ בָּאָרֶץ.

for behold no man could keep that which was his own, for the thieves,  
and the robbers, and the murderers, and the magic art, and the  
witchcraft which was in the land.

כֹּה נִשְׁמְעוּ הָאָבֶל וְהַקִּינָה בְּכָל הָאָרֶץ,  
מִפְּנֵי הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, וּבַעֲקָר בְּקָרֵב עִם נָפִי.

11 Thus there began to be a mourning and a lamentation in all the land  
because of these things, and more especially among the people of Nephi.

וְאֲנִי, מוֹרְמוֹן, בְּרֹאֲוֹתִי אוֹתָם מְקוֹנְנִים  
וּמִתְאַבְּלִים וּמִצְטַעֲרִים לִפְנֵי יְהוָה, הֵחֵל לְבִי  
לְעֹלֵץ בְּקָרְבִי, כִּי יִדְעֵתִי אֶת רַחֲמֵי יְהוָה וְאֶת  
אֲרֹךְ אֶפְיוֹ. לָכֵן סְבַרְתִּי כִּי יִרְחַמֵם בְּעֵבוֹר  
יָשׁוּבוּ לַיהוָה עִם צְדִיקָה.

12 And it came to pass that when I, Mormon, saw their lamentation and  
their mourning and their sorrowing before the Lord, my heart did  
begin to rejoice within me, knowing the mercies and the long-suffering  
of the Lord, therefore supposing that he would be merciful unto them  
that they would again become a righteous people.

אֲךָ שְׂמִיחָתִי זֹאת הָיְתָה לְשׁוֹא, כִּי הִצְטַעֲרוּתָם  
לֹא הָיְתָה לְשֵׁם תְּשׁוּבָה, מִפְּנֵי טוֹב אֱלֹהִים; כִּי  
אִם הָיְתָה זֹאת הִצְטַעֲרוּת הַמְקַלְלִים, יַעַן  
אֲשֶׁר לֹא יָתִיר לָהֶם תְּמִיד יְהוָה לַעֲלוֹ בְּחַטָּא.

13 But behold this my joy was vain, for their sorrowing was not unto  
repentance, because of the goodness of God; but it was rather the  
sorrowing of the damned, because the Lord would not always suffer  
them to take happiness in sin.

אָכֵן, הֵם לֹא בָּאוּ אֶל יֵשׁוּעַ בְּלֵב נִשְׁבָּר וּבְרוּחַ  
נִכְאָה, כִּי אִם קָלְלוּ אֶת אֱלֹהִים וּבִקְשׁוּ לָמוּת.  
עַל אַף זֹאת, הֵם נִלְחַמוּ עַל חַיֵּיהֶם בַּחֶרֶב.

14 And they did not come unto Jesus with broken hearts and contrite  
spirits, but they did curse God, and wish to die. Nevertheless they  
would struggle with the sword for their lives.

וְצַעֲרִי שָׁב אֵלַי וְרֹאֲיִתִי כִּי יוֹם חִסְדָּם חָלַף  
מֵהֶם, בְּגוֹף וּבְרוּחַ; כִּי רֹאֲיִתִי אֶלְפִים מֵהֶם  
נִגְדָּעִים בַּעַת מִרְדָּם גְּלוּיּוֹת בְּאֵלֵיהֶם,  
וְנִעֲרָמִים כְּדָמָן עַל פְּנֵי הָאֲדָמָה. כֹּה חָלְפוּ  
שְׁלֹשׁ מֵאוֹת וָאַרְבָּעִים וָאַרְבַּע שָׁנִים.

15 And it came to pass that my sorrow did return unto me again, and I  
saw that the day of grace was passed with them, both temporally and  
spiritually; for I saw thousands of them hewn down in open rebellion  
against their God, and heaped up as dung upon the face of the land.  
And thus three hundred and forty and four years had passed away.

וּבִשְׁנַת שְׁלֹשׁ מֵאוֹת וָאַרְבָּעִים וְחֲמִשָּׁה הֵחֵל  
הַנְּפִיִים לָנוֹס מִלִּפְנֵי הַלָּמָנִים; וְהֵם נָסוּ עַד  
אֲשֶׁר הִגִּיעוּ אֶל אֶרֶץ יָשׁוֹן, בְּטָרֵם אֲפֹשֶׁר הָיָה  
לְעַצֹּר אֶת נְסִיגָתָם.

16 And it came to pass that in the three hundred and forty and fifth year  
the Nephites did begin to flee before the Lamanites; and they were  
pursued until they came even to the land of Jashon, before it was  
possible to stop them in their retreat.

וְהָעִיר יָשׁוֹן הָיְתָה בְּקִרְבָּת הָאָרֶץ אֲשֶׁר  
בְּאֲדָמְתָהּ הִפְקִיד אֲמָרוֹן, לְשֵׁם יְהוָה, אֶת  
כְּתָבֵי הַזִּכְרוֹן לְכָל יִשְׁמָדוֹ. וְהִנֵּה, אֲנִי הִלַּכְתִּי  
בְּדָבָר אֲמָרוֹן אֵלַי, וְלִקְחָתִי אֶת לוחות נָפִי,  
וְהִכְנַתִּי כְּתָב וְזִכְרוֹן, כְּדָבָרוֹ.

17 And now, the city of Jashon was near the land where Ammaron had  
deposited the records unto the Lord, that they might not be destroyed.  
And behold I had gone according to the word of Ammaron, and taken  
the plates of Nephi, and did make a record according to the words of  
Ammaron.

וְהָיָה כִּי רָשַׁמְתִּי עַל לוחות נָפִי אֶת מְלֵא סִפּוֹר  
הַרְשָׁעָה וְהַתּוֹעֲבוֹת; וְאוֹלָם עַל הַלּוּחוֹת  
הָאֵלֶּה הִתְאַפְּקִיתִי מִרְשָׁם אֶת מְלֵא רִשְׁעָתָם  
וְתוֹעֲבוֹתֵיהֶם, כִּי מִרְאוֹת בְּלִית פּוֹסְקִים שֶׁל  
רִשְׁעָה וְתוֹעֲבוֹת הָיוּ לִפְנֵי עֵינֵי מֵאֵז בְּגִרְתִּי  
לְחַזוֹת בְּדַרְכֵי אָדָם.

18 And upon the plates of Nephi I did make a full account of all the  
wickedness and abominations; but upon these plates I did forbear to  
make a full account of their wickedness and abominations, for behold, a  
continual scene of wickedness and abominations has been before mine  
eyes ever since I have been sufficient to behold the ways of man.

- 19 And wo is me because of their wickedness; for my heart has been filled with sorrow because of their wickedness, all my days; nevertheless, I know that I shall be lifted up at the last day.
- אוי לי מפני רשעתם, כי כל ימי מלא לבי צער מפני רשעתם, אף כי יודע אני כי ביום האחרון אתנשא.
- 20 And it came to pass that in this year the people of Nephi again were hunted and driven. And it came to pass that we were driven forth until we had come northward to the land which was called Shem.
- ובשנה ההיא הוסיפו הלמנים לרדף אחר עם נפי והניסום. ואנחנו הונסנו עד אשר באנו צפונה, אל הארץ אשר נקראה שם.
- 21 And it came to pass that we did fortify the city of Shem, and we did gather in our people as much as it were possible, that perhaps we might save them from destruction.
- ואנחנו בצרנו את העיר שם וקבצנו את אנשינו, ככל אשר היה לאל ידינו, בעבור הצילם מאבדון.
- 22 And it came to pass in the three hundred and forty and sixth year they began to come upon us again.
- והיה בשנת שלש מאות וארבעים ושש, הם שבו ויצאו עלינו.
- 23 And it came to pass that I did speak unto my people, and did urge them with great energy, that they would stand boldly before the Lamanites and fight for their wives, and their children, and their houses, and their homes.
- בעת ההיא דברתי אל אנשי והמרצתים עד מאד כי יעמדו בגבורה לפני הלמנים וילחמו למען נשיהם וילדיהם, בתיהם ומשכנותיהם.
- 24 And my words did arouse them somewhat to vigor, insomuch that they did not flee from before the Lamanites, but did stand with boldness against them.
- ודברי הפיחו בהם מעט אמן, עד כי הם לא נסו מפני הלמנים, כי אם עמדו נגדם בגבורה.
- 25 And it came to pass that we did contend with an army of thirty thousand against an army of fifty thousand. And it came to pass that we did stand before them with such firmness that they did flee from before us.
- ואנחנו עמדנו בצבא אשר מנה שלשים אלף איש בפני צבא אשר מנה חמשים אלף. וכה איתנים עמדנו, עד כי נסו הם מפנינו.
- 26 And it came to pass that when they had fled we did pursue them with our armies, and did meet them again, and did beat them; nevertheless the strength of the Lord was not with us; yea, we were left to ourselves, that the Spirit of the Lord did not abide in us; therefore we had become weak like unto our brethren.
- והיה כנוסם, דלקנו אחריהם בחילותינו, ופגשנו אותם שנית והביסונו. ואולם לא היה עמנו כח יהוה; אכן, נעזבנו לנפשנו ולא שקנה בנו רוח יהוה. לכן נחלשנו כאחינו.
- 27 And my heart did sorrow because of this the great calamity of my people, because of their wickedness and their abominations. But behold, we did go forth against the Lamanites and the robbers of Gadianton, until we had again taken possession of the lands of our inheritance.
- ולבי נעצב מפני המכה הגדולה הזאת אשר הכה עמי, מפני רשעתם ותועבותיהם. אך הנה, יצאנו על הלמנים ועל שודדי גדיאנטון עד אשר החזקנו שנית באדמות נחלתנו.
- 28 And the three hundred and forty and ninth year had passed away. And in the three hundred and fiftieth year we made a treaty with the Lamanites and the robbers of Gadianton, in which we did get the lands of our inheritance divided.
- ושנת שלש מאות וארבעים ותשע חלפה. ובשנת שלש מאות וחמשים כרתנו ברית עם הלמנים ועם שודדי גדיאנטון ובה הסכמנו על חלקת אדמות נחלתנו.
- 29 And the Lamanites did give unto us the land northward, yea, even to the narrow passage which led into the land southward. And we did give unto the Lamanites all the land southward.
- והלמנים נתנו לנו את ארץ הצפון עד המעבר הצר אשר הוליד אל ארץ הדרום. ואנחנו נתנו ללמנים את כל ארץ הדרום.



## ג

## 3

וְהָיָה כִּי לֹא הוֹסִיפוּ הַלְמָנִים לָצֵאת לְקָרֵב  
עַד אֲשֶׁר עָבְרוּ עוֹד עֶשְׂרֵי שָׁנִים. וְאֲנִי הִטְלֵיתִי  
עַל עַמִּי, הַנְּפִיִּים, לְהַכִּין אֶת אֲדָמוֹתֵיהֶם וְאֶת  
כָּלִי נִשְׁקָם לְקִרְאָת עֵת מִלְחָמָה.

וְאָמַר אֵלַי יְהוָה: קְרֹא אֶל הָעָם הַזֶּה לֵאמֹר:  
הִנֵּחֶמוּ נָא עַל חַטֹּאתֵיכֶם וּבֹאוּ אֵלַי, וְהִטְבַּלְוּ  
וּבְנוּ שָׁנִית אֶת כְּנִסְיָתִי, וְתִנָּצְלוּ.

וְאֲנִי קִרְאתִי אֶל הָעָם הַזֶּה, אֲדָּא לִשְׂוֹא הִיא,  
יַעַן אֲשֶׁר לֹא הִבִּינוּ כִּי הִצִּילָם יְהוָה וְהִעֲנִיק  
לָהֶם אֶפְשָׁרוֹת לְהִנָּחֵם עַל חַטֹּאתֵיהֶם. וְהִנֵּה,  
הֵם הִקְשׁוּ אֶת לִבָּם עַל יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵיהֶם.

וְהָיָה אַחֵר חֲלָף הַשָּׁנָה הָעֲשִׁירִית הַהִיא,  
אֲשֶׁר עָמָה חֲלָפוּ שְׁלֹשׁ מֵאוֹת וְשִׁשִּׁים שָׁנָה  
מֵעֵת בּוֹא הַמֶּלֶךְ, שֶׁלַח אֵלַי מֶלֶךְ הַלְמָנִים  
אֲגָרָת, וּמִמֶּנָּה נֹדַע לִי כִּי הֵם נִעְרָכִים שָׁנִית  
לָצֵאת לְקָרֵב עָלֵינוּ.

וְאֲנִי הוֹרִיתִי אֶת עַמִּי כִּי יֵאָסְפוּ בְּאֶרֶץ חֲרָבָה,  
בְּעִיר אֲשֶׁר בְּגִבּוֹל, עַל יַד הַמַּעְבָּר הַצָּר הַמּוֹלִיד  
אֶל אֶרֶץ הַדְּרוֹם.

שָׁם הִחֲנִינוּ אֶת חֵילוֹתֵינוּ בְּעִבּוֹר נֶעְצָר  
אֶת חֵילוֹת הַלְמָנִים, לְבַל יִתְפָּשׂוּ כָּל חֵלֶק  
מֵאֲרֻצֵּנוּ. לָכֵן הִתְבַּצְּרָנוּ עֲלֵיהֶם בְּכָל כֹּחֵנוּ.

וְהָיָה בְּשָׁנַת שְׁלֹשׁ מֵאוֹת וְשִׁשִּׁים וְאַחַת,  
יָרְדוּ הַלְמָנִים אֶל הָעִיר חֲרָבָה לָצֵאת עָלֵינוּ  
לְקָרֵב; וּבְשָׁנָה הַהִיא הִבְסָנוּ אוֹתָם, עַד כִּי  
הֵם שָׁבוּ אֶל אֲרָצָם.

וְהָיָה בְּשָׁנַת שְׁלֹשׁ מֵאוֹת וְשִׁשִּׁים וְשִׁתִּים,  
הֵם יָרְדוּ עָלֵינוּ שָׁנִית לְמִלְחָמָה. אֲףִי הִפַּעַם  
הִבְסָנוּ אוֹתָם וְהִרְגָנוּ בָּהֶם מִסָּפָר רַב;  
וְהוֹרִגְיָהֶם הַשְׁלָכוּ אֶל הַיָּם.

וְעַתָּה, מִפְּנֵי הַמַּעֲשֶׂה הַגָּדוֹל הַזֶּה אֲשֶׁר עָשׂוּ  
בְּנֵי עַמִּי, הַנְּפִיִּים, הֵם הִחֲלוּ לְהִתְפָּאֵר בְּכֹחָם  
וּלְהִשָּׁבַע לִפְנֵי שָׁמַי מָרוֹם כִּי יִנְקְמוּ אֶת דַּם  
אֲחֵיהֶם אֲשֶׁר נָפְלוּ בְּיַדֵּי אוֹיְבֵיהֶם.

1 And it came to pass that the Lamanites did not come to battle again until ten years more had passed away. And behold, I had employed my people, the Nephites, in preparing their lands and their arms against the time of battle.

2 And it came to pass that the Lord did say unto me: Cry unto this people—Repent ye, and come unto me, and be ye baptized, and build up again my church, and ye shall be spared.

3 And I did cry unto this people, but it was in vain; and they did not realize that it was the Lord that had spared them, and granted unto them a chance for repentance. And behold they did harden their hearts against the Lord their God.

4 And it came to pass that after this tenth year had passed away, making, in the whole, three hundred and sixty years from the coming of Christ, the king of the Lamanites sent an epistle unto me, which gave unto me to know that they were preparing to come again to battle against us.

5 And it came to pass that I did cause my people that they should gather themselves together at the land Desolation, to a city which was in the borders, by the narrow pass which led into the land southward.

6 And there we did place our armies, that we might stop the armies of the Lamanites, that they might not get possession of any of our lands; therefore we did fortify against them with all our force.

7 And it came to pass that in the three hundred and sixty and first year the Lamanites did come down to the city of Desolation to battle against us; and it came to pass that in that year we did beat them, insomuch that they did return to their own lands again.

8 And in the three hundred and sixty and second year they did come down again to battle. And we did beat them again, and did slay a great number of them, and their dead were cast into the sea.

9 And now, because of this great thing which my people, the Nephites, had done, they began to boast in their own strength, and began to swear before the heavens that they would avenge themselves of the blood of their brethren who had been slain by their enemies.

- 10 הם נשבעו בשם שמים ואף בכס אלהים כי יעלו לקרב על אויביהם ויכריתום מעל פני האדמה.
- 11 ואני, מורמון, סרבתי תכלית סרוב, מן היום ההוא והלאה, להיות מפקד העם הזה ומנהיגו מפני רשעתם ותועבתם.
- 12 הנה, הנהגתים, על אף רשעתם, והולכתים פעמים רבות אלי קרב. ואהבתים כפי אהבה אלהים אשר בי, בכל לבי; ונפשי נשפכה בתפלה אל אלהי למענם כל היום; ואולם, הנה זה בלא אמונה, מפני קשי לבם.
- 13 שלש פעמים הצלתיים מיד אויביהם, והם לא שבו מחטאייהם.
- 14 וכאשר הם נשבעו בכל אשר היו אסורים עליו מאת אדוננו ומושיענו, ישוע המשיח, כי יעלו להלחם באויביהם וינקמו נקם דם אחיהם, בא אלי קול יהוה לאמר:
- 15 לי הנקם ואני אשלם גמול. יען אשר לא נחם העם הזה מרעתם אחר הצילי אותם, הנה, הכרת יכרתו מעל פני האדמה.
- 16 ואני סרבתי תכלית סרוב לצאת על אויבי; כמצות יהוה אשר צוני כן עשיתי; אכן, עמדתי כעד עצל להעיד לפני העולם על הדברים אשר ראיתי ושמעתי, כפי ההצהרות רוח הקדש, אשר העיד על העתיד לבוא.
- 17 על כן כותב אני אליכם, הגויים, וכן אליכם, בית ישראל; בעבור תהיו מוכנים, כאשר תחל הפעלה, להערוף לשוב אל ארץ נחלתכם.
- 18 אכן, הנני כותב אל כל אפסי ארץ; אכן, אליכם, שנים עשר שבטי ישראל, אשר תשפטו כפי מעשיכם על ידי אותם שנים עשר, אשר בחרם ישוע בארץ ירושלם לתלמידיו.
- 19 וכותב אני אל שארית העם הזה, אשר אף היא תשפט על ידי שנים עשר התלמידים אשר בחר ישוע בארץ הזאת; ואלה ישפטו על ידי שנים העשר אשר בחר ישוע בארץ ירושלם.
- 10 And they did swear by the heavens, and also by the throne of God, that they would go up to battle against their enemies, and would cut them off from the face of the land.
- 11 And it came to pass that I, Mormon, did utterly refuse from this time forth to be a commander and a leader of this people, because of their wickedness and abomination.
- 12 Behold, I had led them, notwithstanding their wickedness I had led them many times to battle, and had loved them, according to the love of God which was in me, with all my heart; and my soul had been poured out in prayer unto my God all the day long for them; nevertheless, it was without faith, because of the hardness of their hearts.
- 13 And thrice have I delivered them out of the hands of their enemies, and they have repented not of their sins.
- 14 And when they had sworn by all that had been forbidden them by our Lord and Savior Jesus Christ, that they would go up unto their enemies to battle, and avenge themselves of the blood of their brethren, behold the voice of the Lord came unto me saying:
- 15 Vengeance is mine, and I will repay; and because this people repented not after I had delivered them, behold, they shall be cut off from the face of the earth.
- 16 And it came to pass that I utterly refused to go up against mine enemies; and I did even as the Lord had commanded me; and I did stand as an idle witness to manifest unto the world the things which I saw and heard, according to the manifestations of the Spirit which had testified of things to come.
- 17 Therefore I write unto you, Gentiles, and also unto you, house of Israel, when the work shall commence, that ye shall be about to prepare to return to the land of your inheritance;
- 18 Yea, behold, I write unto all the ends of the earth; yea, unto you, twelve tribes of Israel, who shall be judged according to your works by the twelve whom Jesus chose to be his disciples in the land of Jerusalem.
- 19 And I write also unto the remnant of this people, who shall also be judged by the twelve whom Jesus chose in this land; and they shall be judged by the other twelve whom Jesus chose in the land of Jerusalem.

- 20 And these things doth the Spirit manifest unto me; therefore I write unto you all. And for this cause I write unto you, that ye may know that ye must all stand before the judgment-seat of Christ, yea, every soul who belongs to the whole human family of Adam; and ye must stand to be judged of your works, whether they be good or evil;
- אֵת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה מוֹדִיעַתִּי רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ;  
עַל כֵּן כּוֹתֵב אֲנִי לְכֻלְכֶּם. וּבִעֲבוּר זֹאת אֲנִי  
כוֹתֵב לָכֶם, לְמַעַן תִּדְעוּ כִּי תַעֲמְדוּ בְּלִפְנֵי  
לִפְנֵי כֹס מִשְׁפַּט הַמָּשִׁיחַ; אַכֵּן, כָּל נֶפֶשׁ אֲשֶׁר  
לְמִשְׁפַּחַת הָאָדָם כָּלָה, עֲמוּד תַעֲמְדוּ לְמִשְׁפַּט  
עַל מַעֲשֵׂיכֶם, אִם טוֹבִים הֵם וְאִם רָעִים.
- 21 And also that ye may believe the gospel of Jesus Christ, which ye shall have among you; and also that the Jews, the covenant people of the Lord, shall have other witness besides him whom they saw and heard, that Jesus, whom they slew, was the very Christ and the very God.
- וְאֲנִי כוֹתֵב לָכֶם אִף בְּעִבּוּר תִּאֱמִינוּ בְּבִשׁוֹרַת  
יֵשׁוּעַ הַמָּשִׁיחַ, אֲשֶׁר תִּהְיֶה בְּתוֹכְכֶם; וְאִף בְּעִבּוּר  
יִהְיֶה לַיהוּדִים, עִם הִבְרִית אֲשֶׁר לַיהוָה, עַד  
נוֹסֶף, מִלְּבַד זֶה אֲשֶׁר רָאוּהוּ וּשְׁמָעוּהוּ, כִּי יֵשׁוּעַ,  
אֲשֶׁר הֵם הִרְגוּ, הוּא אַכֵּן הַמָּשִׁיחַ וְאֱלֹהִים עֲצָמוֹ.
- 22 And I would that I could persuade all ye ends of the earth to repent and prepare to stand before the judgment-seat of Christ.
- מִי יִתֵּן וְיִכְלֹתִי לְשַׁכְנַע אֶת כָּל קְצוֹת הָאָרֶץ  
לְהִנָּחֵם מִחֲטָא וּלְהִתְכַּוֵּן לְעֲמֹד לִפְנֵי כֹס  
מִשְׁפַּט הַמָּשִׁיחַ.

## ד

## 4

- 1 And now it came to pass that in the three hundred and sixty and third year the Nephites did go up with their armies to battle against the Lamanites, out of the land Desolation.
- וְהָיָה בִּשְׁנַת שְׁלֹשׁ מֵאוֹת וְשִׁשִּׁים וְשָׁלֹשׁ, יָצְאוּ  
הַנֶּפְתִּיִּים עִם חֵילוֹתֵיהֶם מֵאֶרֶץ חֲרָבָה וְעָלוּ  
לְהִלָּחֵם בַּלְּמָנִים.
- 2 And it came to pass that the armies of the Nephites were driven back again to the land of Desolation. And while they were yet weary, a fresh army of the Lamanites did come upon them; and they had a sore battle, insomuch that the Lamanites did take possession of the city Desolation, and did slay many of the Nephites, and did take many prisoners.
- וְהָיָה שָׁבוּ וְנִהְדְּפוּ חֵילוֹת הַנֶּפְתִּיִּים אֶל אֶרֶץ  
חֲרָבָה. וְהָיָה בְּעוֹדָם יְגֻעִים, עָלָה עֲלֵיהֶם חֵיל  
לְמָנִים רַעֲנָן; וְהִתְפַּתַּח קָרֵב מֶר, וְהִלָּמְנִים  
כָּבְשׁוּ אֶת הָעִיר חֲרָבָה וְהָרְגוּ רַבִּים מִן הַנֶּפְתִּיִּים  
וְאִף לָקְחוּ רַבִּים בְּשָׁבִי.
- 3 And the remainder did flee and join the inhabitants of the city Teancum. Now the city Teancum lay in the borders by the seashore; and it was also near the city Desolation.
- וְהַנּוֹתָרִים בָּרָחוּ וְהִתְחַבְּרוּ אֶל תּוֹשְׁבֵי הָעִיר  
טֵיאֲנֻקוּם. וְהָעִיר טֵיאֲנֻקוּם שְׁכֵנָה בְּגִבּוֹל אֲשֶׁר  
לְחוּף הַיָּם בְּקִרְבַּת הָעִיר חֲרָבָה.
- 4 And it was because the armies of the Nephites went up unto the Lamanites that they began to be smitten; for were it not for that, the Lamanites could have had no power over them.
- וַיְעַן כִּי עָלוּ חֵילוֹת הַנֶּפְתִּיִּים עַל הַלְּמָנִים, הֵם  
הוּבְסוּ; וְלֹא זֹאת הָיָה בַּלְּמָנִים כֹּחַ  
לְהִתְגַּבֵּר עֲלֵיהֶם.
- 5 But, behold, the judgments of God will overtake the wicked; and it is by the wicked that the wicked are punished; for it is the wicked that stir up the hearts of the children of men unto bloodshed.
- אֲךֹּ הִנֵּה, מִשְׁפַּט אֱלֹהִים יִשִּׁיג אֶת הָרָשָׁעִים;  
כִּי מִיַּד הָרָשָׁעִים בָּאִים הָרָשָׁעִים עַל עֲנָשָׁם;  
כִּי הָרָשָׁעִים הֵם הַמְּעוֹרְרִים אֶת לֵב בְּנֵי  
הָאָדָם לְשַׁפְּךְ דָּם.
- 6 And it came to pass that the Lamanites did make preparations to come against the city Teancum.
- וְהַלְּמָנִים נִעְרְכוּ לְקָרֵב עַל הָעִיר טֵיאֲנֻקוּם.

## מורמון ד:ז-טז

וְהָיָה בִּשְׁנַת שְׁלֹשׁ מֵאוֹת וְשִׁשִּׁים וָאַרְבַּע, בָּאוּ  
הַלְּמָנִים עַל הָעִיר טֵי־אֲנָקוּם לְכַבְּשָׁהּ אֶף הִיא.

וְהַנְּפִיִּים הִדְפוּם וְהִסִּיגוּם לְאַחֹר. וְכִרְאוֹת  
הַנְּפִיִּים כִּי הִדְפוּ אֶת הַלְּמָנִים הֵם שָׁבוּ וְהִתְפָּאֲרוּ  
בְּגִבוּרָתָם; וְהֵם הִלְכוּ בְּכֹחַם וְכָבְשׁוּ שֵׁנִית אֶת  
הָעִיר חֲרָבָה.

וְהִנֵּה, כָּל הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה קָמוּ וְהָיוּ; וְאֵלֶּפִים  
נִהָרְגוּ מִשְׁנֵי הַצָּדִידִים, מִן הַנְּפִיִּים וּמִן הַלְּמָנִים.

וּשְׁנַת שְׁלֹשׁ מֵאוֹת וְשִׁשִּׁים וְחֲלָפָה,  
וְהַלְּמָנִים יָצְאוּ שׁוֹב לְהִלָּחֵם בְּנִפְיִים. וְאוֹלָם,  
לֹא שָׁבוּ הַנְּפִיִּים מִרְעֵתָם אֲשֶׁר עָשׂוּ, כִּי אִם  
הוֹסִיפוּ לְשָׁקֵד עַל רְשָׁעָתָם.

הִנֵּה, לֹא יִכּוֹלָה לְשׁוֹן לְתַאֵר וְאִין אִישׁ יִכּוֹל  
לְכַתֵּב תֹּאוֹר מִשְׁלֵם עַל מִחְזֵה הַדָּמִים וְהַטְּבַח  
הַנוֹרָא אֲשֶׁר הָיָה בָּעַם, בְּקֶרֶב הַנְּפִיִּים בְּקֶרֶב  
הַלְּמָנִים. כָּל לֵב הִקְשָׁה וְלֶכֶן שָׁבְעוּ נַחַת תָּמִיד  
בְּשִׁפְיוֹת הַדָּמִים.

וְלֹא הָיְתָה מַעֲוֹלָם רְשָׁעָה כֹּה גְדוֹלָה בְּקֶרֶב כָּל  
בְּנֵי לְחִי, וְאֶף לֹא בְּקֶרֶב כָּל בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל, עַל פִּי  
דְּבַר יְהוָה, כִּרְשָׁעָה אֲשֶׁר הָיְתָה בָּעַם הַזֶּה.

וְהַלְּמָנִים כָּבְשׁוּ אֶת הָעִיר חֲרָבָה. וְזֹאת מִפְּנֵי  
מִסְפָּרָם אֲשֶׁר עָלָה עַל מִסְפָּר הַנְּפִיִּים.

וְהֵם אֶף צָעְדוּ עַל הָעִיר טֵי־אֲנָקוּם וַגִּרְשׁוּ  
מִמֶּנָּה אֶת תּוֹשְׁבֶיהָ, וְלָקְחוּ שְׁבוּיִים רַבִּים,  
נָשִׁים וְיֻלְדִים, וְהִעֲלִימוּם קִרְבָּנוֹת לְאֱלִילֵיהֶם.

וְהָיָה בִּשְׁנַת שְׁלֹשׁ מֵאוֹת וְשִׁשִּׁים וְשֶׁבַע,  
יָעַן כִּי רָגְזוּ הַנְּפִיִּים עַל הַלְּמָנִים כִּי הִקְרִיבוּ  
אֶת נְשֵׁיהֶם וְיֻלְדֵיהֶם, הֵם יָצְאוּ עַל הַלְּמָנִים  
בְּחֵמַת זַעַם, עַד כִּי הִבִּיטוּ אוֹתָם פַּעַם נֹסֶפֶת  
וַגִּרְשׁוּם מֵאַרְצָם.

וְלֹא יָסְפוּ הַלְּמָנִים לָבוֹא עַל הַנְּפִיִּים עַד שְׁנַת  
שְׁלֹשׁ מֵאוֹת וְשֶׁבַעִים וְחָמֵשׁ.

7 And it came to pass in the three hundred and sixty and fourth year the Lamanites did come against the city Teancum, that they might take possession of the city Teancum also.

8 And it came to pass that they were repulsed and driven back by the Nephites. And when the Nephites saw that they had driven the Lamanites they did again boast of their own strength; and they went forth in their own might, and took possession again of the city Desolation.

9 And now all these things had been done, and there had been thousands slain on both sides, both the Nephites and the Lamanites.

10 And it came to pass that the three hundred and sixty and sixth year had passed away, and the Lamanites came again upon the Nephites to battle; and yet the Nephites repented not of the evil they had done, but persisted in their wickedness continually.

11 And it is impossible for the tongue to describe, or for man to write a perfect description of the horrible scene of the blood and carnage which was among the people, both of the Nephites and of the Lamanites; and every heart was hardened, so that they delighted in the shedding of blood continually.

12 And there never had been so great wickedness among all the children of Lehi, nor even among all the house of Israel, according to the words of the Lord, as was among this people.

13 And it came to pass that the Lamanites did take possession of the city Desolation, and this because their number did exceed the number of the Nephites.

14 And they did also march forward against the city Teancum, and did drive the inhabitants forth out of her, and did take many prisoners both women and children, and did offer them up as sacrifices unto their idol gods.

15 And it came to pass that in the three hundred and sixty and seventh year, the Nephites being angry because the Lamanites had sacrificed their women and their children, that they did go against the Lamanites with exceedingly great anger, insomuch that they did beat again the Lamanites, and drive them out of their lands.

16 And the Lamanites did not come again against the Nephites until the three hundred and seventy and fifth year.

- 17 And in this year they did come down against the Nephites with all their powers; and they were not numbered because of the greatness of their number.
- 18 And from this time forth did the Nephites gain no power over the Lamanites, but began to be swept off by them even as a dew before the sun.
- 19 And it came to pass that the Lamanites did come down against the city Desolation; and there was an exceedingly sore battle fought in the land Desolation, in the which they did beat the Nephites.
- 20 And they fled again from before them, and they came to the city Boaz; and there they did stand against the Lamanites with exceeding boldness, insomuch that the Lamanites did not beat them until they had come again the second time.
- 21 And when they had come the second time, the Nephites were driven and slaughtered with an exceedingly great slaughter; their women and their children were again sacrificed unto idols.
- 22 And it came to pass that the Nephites did again flee from before them, taking all the inhabitants with them, both in towns and villages.
- 23 And now I, Mormon, seeing that the Lamanites were about to overthrow the land, therefore I did go to the hill Shim, and did take up all the records which Ammaron had hid up unto the Lord.
- וּבשָׁנָה הַהִיא הָם יָרְדוּ עַל הַנְּפִיִּים בְּכָל צָבָאָם; וְלֹא נִמְנָה מִסְפָּרָם כִּי הָיָה עָצוֹם וָרֹב.
- וּמִן הָעַתָּה הָיָא לֹא גָבְרוּ עוֹד הַנְּפִיִּים עַל הַלְּמָנִים, כִּי אִם נִמְאָגוּ לִפְנֵיהֶם כְּטֹל מִפְּנֵי הַשֶּׁמֶשׁ.
- וְהַלְּמָנִים יָרְדוּ עַל הָעִיר חֲרָבָה; וְאֵז הַתְּחוֹלָל קָרַב מֵרַע מְאֹד בְּאֶרֶץ חֲרָבָה, וּבֹו הַבִּיסוּ הַלְּמָנִים אֶת הַנְּפִיִּים.
- וְהַנְּפִיִּים נָסוּ שׁוֹב מִפְּנֵיהֶם וּבָאוּ אֶל הָעִיר בֹּעַז. שָׁם הָם עָמְדוּ בְּפָנֵי הַלְּמָנִים בְּגִבּוּרָה גְּדוֹלָה, עַד כִּי לֹא נִצְחוּם הַלְּמָנִים, כִּי אִם בָּבוֹאָם שֵׁנִית.
- וּבְבוֹאָם שֵׁנִית, נִהָדְפוּ הַנְּפִיִּים וְנִסְבְּחוּ טָבַח גְּדוֹל מְאֹד; וְשׁוֹב הִקְרִיבוּ נְשֵׁיהֶם וְיִלְדֵיהֶם לְאֵלִילֵי הַלְּמָנִים.
- וְהַנְּפִיִּים נָסוּ פַעַם נֹסֶפֶת מִפְּנֵיהֶם וְלָקְחוּ עִמָּם אֶת כָּל הַתּוֹשָׁבִים, מִן הָעָרִים וּמִן הַכְּפָרִים.
- וְאַנִּי, מֹרְמוֹן, בִּרְאוֹתִי כִּי הַלְּמָנִים עָמְדוּ לְהַשְׁתַּלֵּט עַל כָּל הָאֶרֶץ, הִלְכֵתִי אֶל גִּבְעַת שִׁים וְלָקַחְתִּי אֶת כָּל הַכְּתָבִים אֲשֶׁר הִצְפִּין אֶמְרוֹן לְשֵׁם יְהוָה.

## ה

## 5

- 1 And it came to pass that I did go forth among the Nephites, and did repent of the oath which I had made that I would no more assist them; and they gave me command again of their armies, for they looked upon me as though I could deliver them from their afflictions.
- 2 But behold, I was without hope, for I knew the judgments of the Lord which should come upon them; for they repented not of their iniquities, but did struggle for their lives without calling upon that Being who created them.
- 3 And it came to pass that the Lamanites did come against us as we had fled to the city of Jordan; but behold, they were driven back that they did not take the city at that time.
- וְהָיָה כִּי יֵצְאתִי אֶל הַנְּפִיִּים וְנִחַמְתִּי עַל הַשְּׁבוּעָה אֲשֶׁר נִשְׁבַּעְתִּי, לְחַדֵּל מִכָּל עֲזָרָה לָהֶם; וְהֵם נָתְנוּ לִי שֵׁנִית אֶת הַפְּקוּד עַל חִילוּתֵיהֶם, כִּי נִרְאִיתִי בְּעֵינֵיהֶם כְּאִלּוּ יִכְלְתִּי לְהוֹשִׁיעֵם מִצָּרוֹתֵיהֶם.
- אֲךָ הִנֵּה, הָיִיתִי בְּלֹא כָל תְּקוּהָ, כִּי יִדְעֵתִי אֶת דִּין יְהוָה אֲשֶׁר יְבוֹאֵם כִּי הֵם לֹא נִחְמוּ עַל עֲוֹנוֹתֵיהֶם, אֲלֹא נִלָּחְמוּ עַל חַיֵּיהֶם, בְּלֹא לִקְרֹא אֶל בּוֹרְאָם.
- וְהַלְּמָנִים בָּאוּ עָלֵינוּ כְּאֲשֶׁר בָּרַחְנוּ אֶל הָעִיר יֶרֶדוֹ; וְאוֹלָם, הֵם נִהָדְפוּ וְלֹא תָפְשוּ אֶת הָעִיר בְּעַתָּה הַהִיא.



## מורמון ה:ד-יא

- ואחר זאת הם שבו ועלו עלינו, אך אנחנו  
החזקנו בעיר ואף היו ערים נוספות אשר  
החזיקו הנפיים; והמבצרים האלה נתקו את  
דרך הלמנים לבל יוכלו לחדור אל פנים הארץ  
המשתרעת לפנינו, ולהשמיד את יושבי ארצנו.
- ובכל האזורים אשר עברנו בהם, אשר  
תושביהם לא התקבצו אלינו, השמידו  
הלמנים את שוכניהם; ועריהם וכפריהם  
וכרפיהם נשרפו באש. כה חלפה שנת  
שלש מאות ושבעים ותשע.
- והיה בשנת שלש מאות ושמונים, יצאו  
הלמנים פעם נוספת למלחמה עלינו. ואנחנו  
עמדנו נגדם בגבורה, אך הפל היה לשוא,  
כי כה עצום היה מספרם, עד כי הם רמסו  
את עם הנפיים תחת רגליהם.
- ואנחנו נסנו שנית; והבורחים אשר קלו  
רגליהם מרגלי הלמנים נמלטו, ואלה אשר  
לא היו מהירים כלמנים, הכרעו והשמדו.
- והנה, אני מורמון, אינני חפץ לצער נפש בני  
אדם בהציגי להם מחזה דמים וטבח נורא  
כזה אשר נגלה לעיני; ואולם, בידי כי על  
הדברים האלה להודיע, וכי כל הנסתרות  
עתידות להתגלות בראש חוצות;
- ואף בידי כי תבוא ידיעת הדברים האלה  
אל שארית העם הזה, וכן אל הגויים, אחר  
יפיצו, כדבר יהוה, את העם הזה, וכי העם  
הזה יחשב כאין בתוכם; לכן הנני כותב את  
קצור הדברים, מפני המצוה אשר צויתי, כי  
אינני מעז לספר בפרוט את כל אשר ראיתי,  
ואף בעבור מנע מכם יתר צער על רשעת  
העם הזה.
- ועתה, הנה אדבר זאת אל זרעם, וכן אל  
הגויים, אשר דאגתם נתונה לבית ישראל,  
והמכירים ואף יודעים את מקור ברכתם.
- ואני יודע כי אלה יתעצבו על שבר בית  
ישראל; אכן, הם יתעצבו על חרבן העם הזה;  
והם יתעצבו כי לא נחם העם הזה מחסא  
בעבור יחבקו בזרועות ישוע.
- 4 And it came to pass that they came against us again, and we did main-  
tain the city. And there were also other cities which were maintained  
by Nephites, which strongholds did cut them off that they could not  
get into the country which lay before us, to destroy the inhabitants of  
our land.
- 5 And it came to pass that whatsoever lands we had passed by, and  
the inhabitants thereof were not gathered in, were destroyed by the  
Lamanites, and their towns, and villages, and cities were burned with  
fire; and thus three hundred and seventy and nine years passed away.
- 6 And it came to pass that in the three hundred and eightieth year the  
Lamanites did come again against us to battle, and we did stand against  
them boldly; but it was all in vain, for so great were their numbers that  
they did tread the people of the Nephites under their feet.
- 7 And it came to pass that we did again take to flight, and those whose  
flight was swifter than the Lamanites' did escape, and those whose  
flight did not exceed the Lamanites' were swept down and destroyed.
- 8 And now behold, I, Mormon, do not desire to harrow up the souls of  
men in casting before them such an awful scene of blood and carnage  
as was laid before mine eyes; but I, knowing that these things must  
surely be made known, and that all things which are hid must be  
revealed upon the house-tops—
- 9 And also that a knowledge of these things must come unto the remnant  
of these people, and also unto the Gentiles, who the Lord hath said  
should scatter this people, and this people should be counted as  
naught among them—therefore I write a small abridgment, daring not  
to give a full account of the things which I have seen, because of the  
commandment which I have received, and also that ye might not have  
too great sorrow because of the wickedness of this people.
- 10 And now behold, this I speak unto their seed, and also to the Gentiles  
who have care for the house of Israel, that realize and know from  
whence their blessings come.
- 11 For I know that such will sorrow for the calamity of the house of Israel;  
yea, they will sorrow for the destruction of this people; they will sorrow  
that this people had not repented that they might have been clasped in  
the arms of Jesus.

- 12 הנה, הדברים האלה כתובים אל שארית בית יעקב; והם כתובים באופן הזה, כי ידוע מאת אלהים כי לא רשעה תוציאם אליהם; ויש להצפינם לשם יהוה, בעבור יצאו לאור בעת אשר תישר בעיניו.
- 13 אכן, זאת המצוה אשר צויתי; והנה, הם יצאו לאור כפי מצות יהוה, בעת אשר תישר בעיניו בחכמתו.
- 14 והנה, הם ילכו אל חסרי האמונה אשר ביהודים. ובכונה הזאת הם יצאו, בעבור שכן יושע יהיה המשיח, בן אלהים חיים; וזאת למען יוציא האב לפעל, על ידי אהובו, את תכליתו הגדולה והנצחית, היא השבת היהודים, אכן, את כל בית ישראל, אל ארץ נחלתם, אשר יהוה אלהיהם נתן להם, בעבור יקים את בריתו עמם;
- 15 ואף בעבור יאמינו זרע העם הזה ביתר אמונה בבשורתו, אשר תצא אליהם מאת הגוים; כי העם הזה יפזר ויהפך עם קודר וטמא ומאוס, מעבר לתאור אשר רוח בניינו מעולם; אכן, אף מעבר לנמצא בקרב הלמנים. וזאת מפני חסר אמונתם ואילוליתם.
- 16 כי הנה, רוח יהוה חדל כבר להתאמץ עם אבותיהם; והם בלי משיח ובלי אלהים בעולם; והם נדפים כמוץ לפני רוח.
- 17 הן לפנים היו הם עם חביב, והמשיח היה לרועם; אכן, אף אלהים האב הנהיגם.
- 18 ואולם עתה, השטן מנהיגם, והם נדפים, כהנדף מוץ לפני רוח או כספינה המטלטלת על פני הגלים, בלי מפרש ובלי ענן, או בלי כל בלי לכונה; וכמוה כמורהם.
- 19 והנה שמר יהוה את ברכתם, אשר יכולים היו לקבל בארץ, עבור הגוים אשר ינחלו את הארץ.
- 20 אכן, בוא תבוא עת אשר ישאום הגוים ופיצוים. והנה, אחר אשר ינשאו ויפצו על ידי הגוים, אז יזכר יהוה את הברית אשר כרת לאברהם ולכל בית ישראל.
- 12 Now these things are written unto the remnant of the house of Jacob; and they are written after this manner, because it is known of God that wickedness will not bring them forth unto them; and they are to be hid up unto the Lord that they may come forth in his own due time.
- 13 And this is the commandment which I have received; and behold, they shall come forth according to the commandment of the Lord, when he shall see fit, in his wisdom.
- 14 And behold, they shall go unto the unbelieving of the Jews; and for this intent shall they go—that they may be persuaded that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of the living God; that the Father may bring about, through his most Beloved, his great and eternal purpose, in restoring the Jews, or all the house of Israel, to the land of their inheritance, which the Lord their God hath given them, unto the fulfilling of his covenant;
- 15 And also that the seed of this people may more fully believe his gospel, which shall go forth unto them from the Gentiles; for this people shall be scattered, and shall become a dark, a filthy, and a loathsome people, beyond the description of that which ever hath been amongst us, yea, even that which hath been among the Lamanites, and this because of their unbelief and idolatry.
- 16 For behold, the Spirit of the Lord hath already ceased to strive with their fathers; and they are without Christ and God in the world; and they are driven about as chaff before the wind.
- 17 They were once a delightful people, and they had Christ for their shepherd; yea, they were led even by God the Father.
- 18 But now, behold, they are led about by Satan, even as chaff is driven before the wind, or as a vessel is tossed about upon the waves, without sail or anchor, or without anything wherewith to steer her; and even as she is, so are they.
- 19 And behold, the Lord hath reserved their blessings, which they might have received in the land, for the Gentiles who shall possess the land.
- 20 But behold, it shall come to pass that they shall be driven and scattered by the Gentiles; and after they have been driven and scattered by the Gentiles, behold, then will the Lord remember the covenant which he made unto Abraham and unto all the house of Israel.

## מורמון ה:כא-ו:ו

- 21 And also the Lord will remember the prayers of the righteous, which have been put up unto him for them.
- 22 And then, O ye Gentiles, how can ye stand before the power of God, except ye shall repent and turn from your evil ways?
- 23 Know ye not that ye are in the hands of God? Know ye not that he hath all power, and at his great command the earth shall be rolled together as a scroll?
- 24 Therefore, repent ye, and humble yourselves before him, lest he shall come out in justice against you—lest a remnant of the seed of Jacob shall go forth among you as a lion, and tear you in pieces, and there is none to deliver.
- ואף יזכר יהוה את תפלות הצדיקים אשר העלו אליו למענם.
- ואתם, הגוים, איך תעמדו אז לפני כח אלהים, אם לא תנחמו על חטאיכם ותשובו מרעיתכם?
- האיןכם יודעים כי בידי אלהים אתם? האיןכם יודעים כי לו כל הכח ולפקדתו האדירה תגולל הארץ כמגלה?
- על כן, הנחמו על חטאיכם והכנעו לפניו, פן יקום עליכם במשפט; פן תפרץ שארית ירע יעקב אל תוככם כאריה, וטרף תטרף ואין מציל.

## 1

## 6

- 1 And now I finish my record concerning the destruction of my people, the Nephites. And it came to pass that we did march forth before the Lamanites.
- 2 And I, Mormon, wrote an epistle unto the king of the Lamanites, and desired of him that he would grant unto us that we might gather together our people unto the land of Cumorah, by a hill which was called Cumorah, and there we could give them battle.
- 3 And it came to pass that the king of the Lamanites did grant unto me the thing which I desired.
- 4 And it came to pass that we did march forth to the land of Cumorah, and we did pitch our tents around about the hill Cumorah; and it was in a land of many waters, rivers, and fountains; and here we had hope to gain advantage over the Lamanites.
- 5 And when three hundred and eighty and four years had passed away, we had gathered in all the remainder of our people unto the land of Cumorah.
- 6 And it came to pass that when we had gathered in all our people in one to the land of Cumorah, behold I, Mormon, began to be old; and knowing it to be the last struggle of my people, and having been commanded of the Lord that I should not suffer the records which had been handed down by our fathers, which were sacred, to fall into the hands of the Lamanites, (for the Lamanites would destroy them) therefore I made this record out of the plates of Nephi, and hid up in
- ועתה אשלים את כתב הזכרון בדבר חרבן עמי, הנפיים. והיה בשעת ההיא, צעדנו לפני הלמנים.
- ואני, מורמון, כתבתי אגרת אל מלך הלמנים ובקשתי כי יתנו לקבץ את בני עמנו אל ארץ קומורה, ליד גבעה בשם קומורה, ושם נעשה עמם מלחמה.
- ומלך הלמנים נתן לי את אשר חפצתי.
- ואנחנו נסענו אל ארץ קומורה ונסינו את אהלינו סביב לגבעת קומורה; והארץ הזאת הייתה רבת אנמי מים ונהרות ומעיינות; במקום הזה הייתה לנו תקוה להשיג יתרון על הלמנים.
- והיה כעבר שנת שלש מאות ושמונים וארבע, קבצנו את כל שארית עמנו אלינו, אל ארץ קומורה.
- ובעת קבצנו את כל בני עמנו יחדו אל ארץ קומורה, ראיתי כי אני, מורמון, זקנתי. ובידעי כי יהיה זה מאבק עמי האחרון, ועני כי צוני יהוה כי לא אניח לכתבים אשר מסרום אבותינו מדור לדור, ואשר הם קדושים, לפל לידי הלמנים, אשר היו משמידים אותם, לכן רשמתי את כתב

הַזְכְּרוֹן הַזֶּה עַל פִּי לְיוֹחוֹת נָפִי, וְהַצְפֵּנִתִּי  
בְּגִבְעַת קוֹמֹרָה אֶת כָּל כְּתָבִי הַזְכְּרוֹן אֲשֶׁר יָד  
יְהוָה הִפְקִידָה לְיָדִי, וְזֹלַת הַלּוֹחוֹת הַמְּעֻשִׁים  
הָאֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר מִסְרָתִי לְבָנִי מוֹרוֹנִי.

the hill Cumorah all the records which had been entrusted to me by  
the hand of the Lord, save it were these few plates which I gave unto  
my son Moroni.

וְהָיָה כִּרְאוֹת בְּנֵי עַמִּי עִם נְשׁוֹתֵיהֶם וְיֻלְדֵיהֶם,  
אֶת מִסַּע צָבָא הַלְּמָנִים לִקְרֹאתָם, הֵם מְלֹאֵי  
פֶחַד הַמָּוֶת הַנוֹרָא הַמְּמַלֵּא אֶת לֵב כָּל  
הַרְשָׁעִים; כֹּה חָכּוּ הֵם לְבוֹאֵם.

7 And it came to pass that my people, with their wives and their children,  
did now behold the armies of the Lamanites marching towards them;  
and with that awful fear of death which fills the breasts of all the wicked,  
did they await to receive them.

וְהַלְּמָנִים בָּאוּ לְהִלָּחֵם בָּנוּ, וְכָל נֶפֶשׁ מְלֹאָה  
אֵימָה מִפְּנֵי עֲצָם מִסְפָּרָם.

8 And it came to pass that they came to battle against us, and every soul  
was filled with terror because of the greatness of their numbers.

וְהֵם הִתְנַפְּלוּ עַל אַנְשֵׁי בְּחָרֵב וּבִקְשֵׁת וְחָץ  
וּבִגְרָזָן וּבְכָל מִינֵי כְּלֵי מִלְחָמָה.

9 And it came to pass that they did fall upon my people with the sword,  
and with the bow, and with the arrow, and with the ax, and with all  
manner of weapons of war.

וְאַנְשֵׁי נִגְדְּעוּ אֶרְצָה. אָכֵן, הִרְבָּה אֲשֶׁר לִי,  
אֲשֶׁר הָיוּ עִמִּי; וְאִף אֲנִי נִפְלַתִּי פְּצוּעַ בְּתוֹכָם,  
וְהַלְּמָנִים עָבְרוּ לְיָדִי וְלֹא שָׁמוּ קֶץ לְחַיִּי.

10 And it came to pass that my men were hewn down, yea, even my ten  
thousand who were with me, and I fell wounded in the midst; and they  
passed by me that they did not put an end to my life.

וְאַחֵר אֲשֶׁר עָבְרוּ הַלְּמָנִים בְּתוֹכָנוּ, וְאַחֵר אֲשֶׁר  
נִגְדְּעוּ אֶרְצָה אֶת כָּל בְּנֵי עַמִּי, וְזֹלַת עֲשָׂרִים  
וְאַרְבָּעָה אִישׁ, אֲשֶׁר בֵּינֵיהֶם הָיָה בְּנֵי מוֹרוֹנִי,  
אָכֵן לְמַחֲרָת, כְּשׁוֹב הַלְּמָנִים אֶל מַחֲנֵיהֶם,  
רָאִינוּ אֶנְחָנוּ, הַנוֹתָרִים בְּחַיִּים, אֶת הָרֶגַע בְּנֵי  
עַמָּנוּ מִרָאשׁ גְּבַעַת קוֹמֹרָה, אָכֵן אֶת רִבְבַּת  
בְּנֵי עַמִּי אֲשֶׁר נִגְדְּעוּ בַּהֲיוֹתִי עוֹמֵד בְּרֹאשָׁם.

11 And when they had gone through and hewn down all my people save  
it were twenty and four of us, (among whom was my son Moroni) and  
we having survived the dead of our people, did behold on the morrow,  
when the Lamanites had returned unto their camps, from the top of the  
hill Cumorah, the ten thousand of my people who were hewn down,  
being led in the front by me.

וְכֵן רָאִינוּ אֶת רִבְבַּת בְּנֵי עַמִּי אֲשֶׁר מוֹרוֹנִי  
בְּנֵי הַנְּהִיגָם.

12 And we also beheld the ten thousand of my people who were led by my  
son Moroni.

וְהִנֵּה, אִף הִרְבָּה אֲשֶׁר לְגִדְגִּדּוֹנָה נָפְלוּ  
וְהוּא בְּתוֹכָם.

13 And behold, the ten thousand of Gidgiddonah had fallen, and he also  
in the midst.

וְלָמָּה נָפַל עִם הִרְבָּה אֲשֶׁר לוֹ; וְגִלְגַּל נָפַל  
עִם הִרְבָּה אֲשֶׁר לוֹ; וְלִמְחָה נָפַל עִם הִרְבָּה  
אֲשֶׁר לוֹ; וְיֹנִיאֻם נָפַל עִם הִרְבָּה אֲשֶׁר לוֹ;  
וְכַמְנִיָּה וּמוֹרוֹנִיָּה וְאַנְטִיאֹנוֹם וְשִׁבְלוֹם  
וְשֵׁם יוֹשׁ נָפְלוּ, אִישׁ־אִישׁ עִם רִבְבַּת אָנְשָׁיו.

14 And Lamah had fallen with his ten thousand; and Gilgal had fallen  
with his ten thousand; and Limhah had fallen with his ten thousand;  
and Joneum had fallen with his ten thousand; and Cumenihah, and  
Moronihah, and Antionum, and Shiblom, and Shem, and Josh, had  
fallen with their ten thousand each.

וְהָיוּ עוֹד עֲשָׂרָה אֲשֶׁר נָפְלוּ בְּחָרֵב, כָּל אִישׁ  
עִם הִרְבָּה אֲשֶׁר לוֹ. אָכֵן, כָּל עַמִּי זֹלַת אוֹתָם  
עֲשָׂרִים וְאַרְבָּעָה אֲשֶׁר הָיוּ עִמִּי, וְכֵן מְעַשִׂים  
אֲשֶׁר נִמְלְטוּ אֶל אֶרְצוֹת הַדְּרוֹם, וּמְעַשִׂים  
אֲשֶׁר עָרְקוּ אֶל הַלְּמָנִים. וּבִשְׂרֵי הַהָרִים  
נִעְצְמוֹתֵיהֶם וְדָמָם כְּסוּ אֶת פְּנֵי הָאֲדָמָה,

15 And it came to pass that there were ten more who did fall by the  
sword, with their ten thousand each; yea, even all my people, save it  
were those twenty and four who were with me, and also a few who  
had escaped into the south countries, and a few who had deserted over  
unto the Lamanites, had fallen; and their flesh, and bones, and blood  
lay upon the face of the earth, being left by the hands of those who slew

## מורמון ו:טז–ז:ד

- יַעַן אֲשֶׁר יָדִי הוֹרְגִיהֶם הַשְׂאִירוֹם לְהִרְקִיב עַל הָאָרֶץ, וּלְהִתְפֹּרֵר וּלְשׁוּב אֶל אִמָּא אֲדָמָה.
- הִנֵּה, נִקְעָה נַפְשִׁי עַל הַרוּגֵי עַמִּי וְכֹה קָרָאתִי:
- 16 And my soul was rent with anguish, because of the slain of my people, and I cried:
- 17 O ye fair ones, how could ye have departed from the ways of the Lord! O ye fair ones, how could ye have rejected that Jesus, who stood with open arms to receive you!
- 18 Behold, if ye had not done this, ye would not have fallen. But behold, ye are fallen, and I mourn your loss.
- 19 O ye fair sons and daughters, ye fathers and mothers, ye husbands and wives, ye fair ones, how is it that ye could have fallen!
- 20 But behold, ye are gone, and my sorrows cannot bring your return.
- 21 And the day soon cometh that your mortal must put on immortality, and these bodies which are now moldering in corruption must soon become incorruptible bodies; and then ye must stand before the judgment-seat of Christ to be judged according to your works and if it so be that ye are righteous, then are ye blessed with your fathers who have gone before you.
- 22 O that ye had repented before this great destruction had come upon you. But behold, ye are gone, and the Father, yea, the Eternal Father of heaven, knoweth your state; and he doeth with you according to his justice and mercy.
- הֵן בְּמַהֲרָה יָבֹא הַיּוֹם אֲשֶׁר בּוֹ יַחַד מוֹתֵכֶם אֶלְמוֹת, וְהַגּוֹפּוֹת הָאֵלֶּה, הַמְרַקִּיבוֹת עִתָּה לְשַׁחַת, עַד מַהֲרָה יִהְיוּ בְּלֹתֵי נְשַׁחֲתוֹת. אַזְ עֲמוּד תַּעֲמִדוּ לִפְנֵי כִסֵּי מִשְׁפַּט הַמֶּשִׁיחַ לְהִשְׁפֹּט כָּפִי מַעֲשֵׂיכֶם; וְאִם תִּמְצְאוּ יִשְׂרָאֵל, בְּרוּכִים תִּהְיוּ עִם אֲבוֹתֵיכֶם אֲשֶׁר חָלְפוּ לִפְנֵיכֶם.
- מִי יִתֵּן וְנִחַמְתֶּם עַל חַטְאֵיכֶם לִפְנֵי בּוֹא הַהִשְׁמָדָה הַגְּדוֹלָה הַזֹּאת עֲלֵיכֶם. אִךְ הִנֵּה, חָלַפְתֶּם, וְהָאֵב, אֲבֵי הַשָּׁמַיִם הַנִּצְחִי, יוֹדֵעַ אֵת מַצְבְּכֶם; וְהוּא נוֹהֵג בְּכֶם כָּכִי כִּפִּי דִינוֹ וְכִפִּי רַחֲמָיו.

## ז

## 7

- וְעַתָּה אֲדַבֵּר מֵעַתָּה אֶל שְׂאֵרֵית הָעָם הַזֶּה, אֲשֶׁר נִוְתְּרוּ בַחַיִּים, אִם אִמְנֵם יִמְסֹר לָהֶם אֱלֹהִים אֵת דְּבָרִי, בְּעֶבֶר יִדְעוּ אֵת דְּבַר אֲבוֹתֵיהֶם; אֲכֹן, אֲלֵיכֶם אֲדַבֵּר, שְׂאֵרֵית בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל; וְאֵלֶּה דְּבָרֵי:
- 1 And now, behold, I would speak somewhat unto the remnant of this people who are spared, if it so be that God may give unto them my words, that they may know of the things of their fathers; yea, I speak unto you, ye remnant of the house of Israel; and these are the words which I speak:
- 2 Know ye that ye are of the house of Israel.
- 3 Know ye that ye must come unto repentance, or ye cannot be saved.
- 4 Know ye that ye must lay down your weapons of war, and delight no more in the shedding of blood, and take them not again, save it be that God shall command you.
- דְּעוּ כִּי מִבֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל הֵנֶכֶם.
- דְּעוּ כִּי עֲלֵיכֶם לְשׁוּב וּלְהִנָּחֵם מִחַטָּא; וְלֹא, לֹא תִוָּשְׁעוּ.
- דְּעוּ כִּי עֲלֵיכֶם לְהִנִּיחַ אֵת כָּלִי הַמִּלְחָמָה וּלְחַדֵּל מִהִנָּאָה בְּשִׁפְכוֹת דָּמִים. וְאַל לָכֶם לְשׁוּב אֶל כָּלִי נִשְׁקָכֶם, בְּלֹתֵי אִם יִצְוְכֶם אֱלֹהִים לְאַחֵז בָּהֶם.



## מורמון ז:ה-ח:ב

- 5 Know ye that ye must come to the knowledge of your fathers, and repent of all your sins and iniquities, and believe in Jesus Christ, that he is the Son of God, and that he was slain by the Jews, and by the power of the Father he hath risen again, whereby he hath gained the victory over the grave; and also in him is the sting of death swallowed up.
- וְדַעוּ כִּי עַל־יֵכֶם לָקֵנוֹת אֶת דַּעַת אֲבוֹתֵיכֶם, וְלִהְיוֹנֶחֱם עַל כָּל חַטָּאֵיכֶם וְעִוְוֹנוֹתֵיכֶם, וְלִהְיוֹתֵיכֶם בְּיִשׁוּעַ הַמָּשִׁיחַ, כִּי בֶן אֱלֹהִים הוּא, וְכִי הוּא הוֹמֵת עַל יְדֵי הַיְּהוּדִים, וּבְכַח הָאֵב הוּא קָם מִן הַמָּתִים, וּבְזֹאת זָכָה בִּנְצָחוֹן עַל שְׂאוֹל; וְבוֹ נִבְלַע עֶקֶץ הַמָּוֶת.
- 6 And he bringeth to pass the resurrection of the dead, whereby man must be raised to stand before his judgment-seat.
- וְעַל יְדֵיו בָּאָה תְּחִיַּת הַמָּתִים, אֲשֶׁר בָּהּ יָקוּם הָאָדָם וְיַעֲמֹד לִפְנֵי כִסֵּי מִשְׁפָּטוֹ.
- 7 And he hath brought to pass the redemption of the world, whereby he that is found guiltless before him at the judgment day hath it given unto him to dwell in the presence of God in his kingdom, to sing ceaseless praises with the choirs above, unto the Father, and unto the Son, and unto the Holy Ghost, which are one God, in a state of happiness which hath no end.
- וְהוּא הֵבִיא אֶת גְּאֻלַּת הָעוֹלָם, וּבְכֹךְ כָּל הַנִּמְצָא זָכָאי לִפְנֵי בְּיוֹם הַדִּין, נָתַן לוֹ לִשְׂכֹּן לִפְנֵי אֱלֹהִים בְּמַלְכוּתוֹ, לְשִׁיר תְּהִלּוֹת לֹלָא חֲשׁוֹד עִם מַקְהִלּוֹת מְרוֹם, לְאֵב וּלְבָן וּלְרוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ, אֲשֶׁר אֱלֹהִים אֶחָד הֵמָּה, בְּאֲשֶׁר לֹלָא קֵץ.
- 8 Therefore repent, and be baptized in the name of Jesus, and lay hold upon the gospel of Christ, which shall be set before you, not only in this record but also in the record which shall come unto the Gentiles from the Jews, which record shall come from the Gentiles unto you.
- עַל כֵּן שׁוּבוּ מִרְעַתְכֶם וְהִטְבְּלוּ בְּשֵׁם יִשׁוּעַ, וְהִחַזִּיקוּ בְּבִשְׁוֹרַת הַמָּשִׁיחַ אֲשֶׁר תּוֹשִׁם לִפְנֵיכֶם, לֹא רַק בְּכֹתֵב הַזֶּכָּרוֹן הַזֶּה, כִּי אִם אַף בְּכֹתֵב הַזֶּכָּרוֹן אֲשֶׁר יָבוֹא אֶל הַגּוֹיִים מֵאַתְּ הַיְּהוּדִים, וְהוּא אֲשֶׁר יָבוֹא מִן הַגּוֹיִים אֲלֵיכֶם.
- 9 For behold, this is written for the intent that ye may believe that; and if ye believe that ye will believe this also; and if ye believe this ye will know concerning your fathers, and also the marvelous works which were wrought by the power of God among them.
- כִּי הִנֵּה זֶה נִכְתָּב בְּעֵבֶר תַּאֲמִינוּ בְּכֹתֵב הַזֶּכָּרוֹן הַהוּא; וְאִם תַּאֲמִינוּ בְּכֹתֵב הַזֶּכָּרוֹן הַהוּא, אֲזִי תַּאֲמִינוּ אַף בְּזֶה; וְאִם תַּאֲמִינוּ בְּזֶה תִּדְעוּ עַל אוֹדוֹת אֲבוֹתֵיכֶם וְכֵן עַל הַנִּפְלְאוֹת אֲשֶׁר נַעֲשׂוּ בְּקִרְבָּם עַל יְדֵי כַח אֱלֹהִים.
- 10 And ye will also know that ye are a remnant of the seed of Jacob; therefore ye are numbered among the people of the first covenant; and if it so be that ye believe in Christ, and are baptized, first with water, then with fire and with the Holy Ghost, following the example of our Savior, according to that which he hath commanded us, it shall be well with you in the day of judgment. Amen.
- וְתִדְעוּ אַף כִּי שְׂאִרִית יִזְרַע יַעֲקֹב הֵנֶכֶם; לְכֵן נִמְנָים אַתֶּם עִם עַם הַבְּרִית הָרִאשׁוֹנָה. וְאִם אַכֵּן תַּאֲמִינוּ בְּמָשִׁיחַ וְתִטְבְּלוּ, תְּחִלָּה בַּמַּיִם וְאַחֲרָי כֵּן בָּאֵשׁ וּבְרוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ, כְּדִגְמַת מוֹשִׁיעֵנו, כְּאֲשֶׁר צִוָּנוּ, טוֹב יִהְיֶה לָכֶם בְּיוֹם הַדִּין. אָמֵן.

## ח

## 8

- 1 Behold I, Moroni, do finish the record of my father, Mormon. Behold, I have but few things to write, which things I have been commanded by my father.
- הִנֵּה, אֲנִי, מוֹרוֹנִי, מְשַׁלֵּם אֶת כְּתָב הַזֶּכָּרוֹן אֲשֶׁר לְאָבִי, מוֹרְמוֹן. יֵשׁ לִי לְכֹתֵב רַק דְּבָרִים מְעַשִׂים אֲשֶׁר אָבִי צִוָּי עָלֵיהֶם.
- 2 And now it came to pass that after the great and tremendous battle at Cumorah, behold, the Nephites who had escaped into the country southward were hunted by the Lamanites, until they were all destroyed.
- וְהָיָה אַחֲרֵי הַקָּרָב הַגָּדוֹל וְהָאֲדִיר בְּקוּמוֹרָה, עָרְכוּ הַלְּמָנִים מְצוּד עַל הַנְּפִיִּים אֲשֶׁר נִמְלְטוּ אֶל אֶרֶץ הַדְּרוֹם, עַד אֲשֶׁר הִשְׁמִידוּ אֶת כָּלָם.

## מורמון ח:ג-יב

- אף אבי נהרג בידיהם, ונותרתי אני לבדי  
לכתב את הספור העגום על חרבן בני עמי.  
והנה, הם חלפו ואינם, ואני מקיים את מצות  
אבי. ואם יהרגוני אינני יודע.
- על כן אכתב ואצפין את הכתבים באדמה;  
ואין חשיבות לאן אלף.
- הנה, אבי רשם את כתב הזכרון הזה, ואף  
כתב את כונתו. והנה, גם אני הייתי כותב  
זאת אלו היה לי מקום לכתב על גבי הלוחות,  
אף אין לי; ועופרת אין לי כלל, כי בודד אני.  
אבי נהרג בקרב, וכן כל בני משפחתי, ואין לי  
ידידים ואף לא מקום אשר אליו אלף; וכמה  
זמן יתן לי יהוה לחיות עוד, אינני יודע.
- והנה, ארבע מאות שנה חלפו מעת בוא  
אדוננו ומושיענו.
- והלמנים ערכו מצוד על עמי, הנפיים, מעיר  
אל עיר וממקום אל מקום, עד כלותם. וכה  
גדולה הייתה מפלתם, אכן, גדול ומפליא הוא  
חרבן עמי, בני נפי.
- הנה, יד יהוה עשתה זאת; ואף הלמנים  
נלחמים זה בזה וכל פני הארץ הזאת הם  
מהפכת רצח ושפיכות דמים בלתי פוסקת;  
ואין איש יודע את אחרית המלחמה הזאת.
- ועתה, לא אוסיף לדבר עוד על אודותיהם,  
כי אין קיימים על פני הארץ כי אם הלמנים  
והשודדים.
- ואין איש יודע את אלהי האמת וזאת תלמידי  
ישוע, אשר נשארו בארץ, עד אשר הייתה  
רשעת העם כה גדולה ולא נתנם יהוה  
להשאיר עוד בקרבם; ואם עודם נמצאים על  
פני הארץ, אין איש יודע.
- ואולם אבי ואני ראינו אותם והם שמשו לפנינו.
- וכל המקבל את כתב הזכרון הזה, ולא  
מגנהו מפני הפגמים אשר בו, הוא אכן ידע  
גדולות מאלה. הנני מורוני, ואילו נתן הנה,  
הייתי מודיעכם את כל הדברים.
- 3 And my father also was killed by them, and I even remain alone to write the sad tale of the destruction of my people. But behold, they are gone, and I fulfil the commandment of my father. And whether they will slay me, I know not.
- 4 Therefore I will write and hide up the records in the earth; and whither I go it mattereth not.
- 5 Behold, my father hath made this record, and he hath written the intent thereof. And behold, I would write it also if I had room upon the plates, but I have not; and ore I have none, for I am alone. My father hath been slain in battle, and all my kinsfolk, and I have not friends nor whither to go; and how long the Lord will suffer that I may live I know not.
- 6 Behold, four hundred years have passed away since the coming of our Lord and Savior.
- 7 And behold, the Lamanites have hunted my people, the Nephites, down from city to city and from place to place, even until they are no more; and great has been their fall; yea, great and marvelous is the destruction of my people, the Nephites.
- 8 And behold, it is the hand of the Lord which hath done it. And behold also, the Lamanites are at war one with another; and the whole face of this land is one continual round of murder and bloodshed; and no one knoweth the end of the war.
- 9 And now, behold, I say no more concerning them, for there are none save it be the Lamanites and robbers that do exist upon the face of the land.
- 10 And there are none that do know the true God save it be the disciples of Jesus, who did tarry in the land until the wickedness of the people was so great that the Lord would not suffer them to remain with the people; and whether they be upon the face of the land no man knoweth.
- 11 But behold, my father and I have seen them, and they have ministered unto us.
- 12 And whoso receiveth this record, and shall not condemn it because of the imperfections which are in it, the same shall know of greater things than these. Behold, I am Moroni; and were it possible, I would make all things known unto you.

- 13 Behold, I make an end of speaking concerning this people. I am the son of Mormon, and my father was a descendant of Nephi.  
הִנְנִי מְכַלֶּה אֶת דְּבָרֵי עַל הָעָם הַזֶּה. אֲנִי בֶן מֹרְמוֹן, וְאָבִי צִאֲצָא נְפִי.
- 14 And I am the same who hideth up this record unto the Lord; the plates thereof are of no worth, because of the commandment of the Lord. For he truly saith that no one shall have them to get gain; but the record thereof is of great worth; and whoso shall bring it to light, him will the Lord bless.  
וְאֲנִי הוּא הַמְצִיֵּן אֶת כְּתָב הַזִּכְרוֹן הַזֶּה לְשֵׁם יְהוָה; הַלּוּחוֹת עֲצָמָם אֵינָם בְּעֲלֵי עֶרֶךְ, מִפְּנֵי מִצְוַת יְהוָה, יַעַן אֲשֶׁר הוּא אָכֵן אָמַר כִּי לֹא יִהְיוּ לְאִישׁ לְמַעַן בָּצֵעַ; אֲדָּ לְכַתְּבֵי הַזִּכְרוֹן אֲשֶׁר עַל גְּבֵי הַלּוּחוֹת עֶרֶךְ רַב; וְאֲשֶׁר יוֹצִיאֵם לְאוֹר, יִבְרַכְהוּ יְהוָה.
- 15 For none can have power to bring it to light save it be given him of God; for God wills that it shall be done with an eye single to his glory, or the welfare of the ancient and long dispersed covenant people of the Lord.  
כִּי אֵין לְאִישׁ כֹּחַ לְהוֹצִיאֵם לְאוֹר, בְּלֹא תְּנִיתָ לוֹ מֵאֵת אֱלֹהִים; יַעַן אֲשֶׁר חָפֵץ אֱלֹהִים כִּי יַעֲשֶׂה הַדְּבָר לְשֵׁם תַּפְאֲרָתוֹ בְּלִבְדּוֹ, לְטוֹבוֹת עַם בְּרִית יְהוָה הַעֲתִיק וְהַמְפֹּזֵר עַת אֲרָכָה.
- 16 And blessed be he that shall bring this thing to light; for it shall be brought out of darkness unto light, according to the word of God; yea, it shall be brought out of the earth, and it shall shine forth out of darkness, and come unto the knowledge of the people; and it shall be done by the power of God.  
וּבְרוּךְ הוּא אֲשֶׁר יוֹצִיא אֶת הַדְּבָר הַזֶּה לְאוֹר, כִּי מִחֹשֶׁךְ לְאוֹר יוֹצֵא כְּדִבְרֵי אֱלֹהִים; אָכֵן, מִן הָאֲדָמָה יוֹצֵא וְיִזְהַר מִתּוֹךְ הַחֹשֶׁךְ, וְיִזְדַּע לְבִנֵי הָאָדָם; וְזֹאת יַעֲשֶׂה בְכֹחַ אֱלֹהִים.
- 17 And if there be faults they be the faults of a man. But behold, we know no fault; nevertheless God knoweth all things; therefore, he that condemneth, let him be aware lest he shall be in danger of hell fire.  
וְאִם יֵשׁ בּוֹ פְגָמִים, פְּגָמֵי אָדָם הֵם, אֲדָ אֲנַחְנוּ לֹא מִצְאָנוּ בּוֹ כָּל פְּגָם, וְאוֹלָם, אֱלֹהִים יוֹדֵעַ הַכֹּל. לְכֵן, הַמְגַנֶּה, יִשְׁמַר נָא פִּי: סִתְפֵן בְּאֵשׁ שָׂאוֹל.
- 18 And he that saith: Show unto me, or ye shall be smitten—let him beware lest he commandeth that which is forbidden of the Lord.  
וְהַאֲמֹר: הֲרָאֵנִי, וְלֹא, תִּכָּה; יִשְׁמַר נָא פִּי יִצְוֶה אֶת אֲשֶׁר אָסַר יְהוָה.
- 19 For behold, the same that judgeth rashly shall be judged rashly again; for according to his works shall his wages be; therefore, he that smiteth shall be smitten again, of the Lord.  
כִּי, הִנֵּה, הַנִּחְפֹּז לְשַׁפֵּט, בְּחִפְזוֹן יָשׁוּב וְיִשְׁפֹּט, כִּי כִפְעֵלוֹ כֵּן יִהְיֶה שְׂכָרוֹ; עַל כֵּן, הַמִּכֶּה, יָשׁוּב יִיכָהוּ.
- 20 Behold what the scripture says—man shall not smite, neither shall he judge; for judgment is mine, saith the Lord, and vengeance is mine also, and I will repay.  
רְאוּ אֶת הַכְּתוּב בְּסִפְרֵי הַקֹּדֶשׁ: אִישׁ בַּל יִכֶּה וְאִף לֹא יִשְׁפֹּט כִּי לִי הַמִּשְׁפָּט, נְאוּם יְהוָה, וְאִף לִי הַנֶּקֶם וְאֲנִכִּי אֲשַׁלֵּם גָּמוֹל.
- 21 And he that shall breathe out wrath and strifes against the work of the Lord, and against the covenant people of the Lord who are the house of Israel, and shall say: We will destroy the work of the Lord, and the Lord will not remember his covenant which he hath made unto the house of Israel—the same is in danger to be hewn down and cast into the fire;  
וְאֲשֶׁר יִפְחֵחַ זַעַם וּמְדוֹן עַל פְּעֻלַּת יְהוָה וְעַל עַם בְּרִית יְהוָה אֲשֶׁר בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל הִמָּה, וַיֹּאמֶר: נִשְׁמִיד אֶת פְּעֹל יְהוָה, וְלֹא יִזְכֹּר יְהוָה אֶת בְּרִיתוֹ אֲשֶׁר כָּרַת לְבֵית יִשְׂרָאֵל, מִסִּתְפֵן הוּא כִּי יִכֶּה וְיִשְׁלֹךְ אֶל הָאֵשׁ.
- 22 For the eternal purposes of the Lord shall roll on, until all his promises shall be fulfilled.  
כִּי תַכְלִית יְהוָה הַנֶּצְחִית תּוֹסִיף לְהִתְקַיֵּם, עַד אֲשֶׁר יִמְלֵא כָּל דְּבָרוֹ.
- 23 Search the prophecies of Isaiah. Behold, I cannot write them. Yea, behold I say unto you, that those saints who have gone before me, who  
חֲקְרוּ בִּנְבוּאוֹת יִשְׁעִיהוּ. הִנֵּה, אֵינֶנִּי יָכוֹל לְכַתְּבָן. אֲדָ, אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם כִּי הַקְּדוֹשִׁים

אֲשֶׁר חָיו לִפְנֵי, אֲשֶׁר הִחְזִיקוּ בְּאֶרֶץ הַזֹּאת,  
יִצְעֲקוּ, אָכֵן, מֵעַפָּר יִקְרָאוּ אֶל יְהוָה; וְחֵי יְהוָה,  
הוּא יִזְכֹּר אֶת הַבְּרִית אֲשֶׁר כָּרַת עִמָּהֶם.

have possessed this land, shall cry, yea, even from the dust will they cry unto the Lord; and as the Lord liveth he will remember the covenant which he hath made with them.

וְהוּא יוֹדֵעַ אֶת תְּפִלּוֹתֵיהֶם, כִּי לְמַעַן אֲחֵיהֶם  
הֵיוּ. וְהוּא יוֹדֵעַ אֶת אֱמוּנָתָם, כִּי בִשְׁמוֹ הִסִּירוּ  
הָרִים, וּבִשְׁמוֹ הִרְעִידוּ אֶת הָאֲדָמָה, וּבִכְחַ  
דְּבָרוֹ הִתְמוּטְטוּ בְּתֵי כָּלָא אֶרֶצָה; אָכֵן, אִף  
הַכִּבְשָׁן הַלּוֹהֵט לֹא יָכֹל לִפְגֹּעַ בָּהֶם, וְאִף לֹא  
חַיּוֹת פָּרָא וְנִחְשֵׁי אָרֶס, וְזֹאת מִפְּנֵי כַח דְּבָרוֹ.

24 And he knoweth their prayers, that they were in behalf of their brethren. And he knoweth their faith, for in his name could they remove mountains; and in his name could they cause the earth to shake; and by the power of his word did they cause prisons to tumble to the earth; yea, even the fiery furnace could not harm them, neither wild beasts nor poisonous serpents, because of the power of his word.

וְהִנֵּה, תְּפִלּוֹתֵיהֶם הָיוּ אִף לְמַעַן זֶה אֲשֶׁר יִתֵּן  
יְהוָה כִּי יוֹצִיא אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה לְאוֹר.

25 And behold, their prayers were also in behalf of him that the Lord should suffer to bring these things forth.

וְאֵל יֹאמֶר אִישׁ כִּי הֵם לֹא יֵצְאוּ, כִּי אָכֵן, יֵצְאוּ  
יֵצְאוּ. אָכֵן, מִן הָאֲדָמָה יֵצְאוּ, בְּיַד יְהוָה, וְאֵין  
מוֹנֵעַ; וְתֵהִי זֹאת בְּיוֹם אֲשֶׁר יֹאמֶר כִּי חָדְלוּ  
נִסִּים; וְתֵהִי זֹאת כְּאֵלוֹ דְּבַר אִישׁ מִן הַמֵּתִים.

26 And no one need say they shall not come, for they surely shall, for the Lord hath spoken it; for out of the earth shall they come, by the hand of the Lord, and none can stay it; and it shall come in a day when it shall be said that miracles are done away; and it shall come even as if one should speak from the dead.

וְתֵהִי זֹאת בְּיוֹם אֲשֶׁר יִצְעַק דָּם הַקְּדוֹשִׁים  
אֶל יְהוָה עַל אֲגָדוֹת סֵתֶר וּמַעֲשֵׂי חֹשֶׁךְ.

27 And it shall come in a day when the blood of saints shall cry unto the Lord, because of secret combinations and the works of darkness.

אָכֵן, תֵּהִי זֹאת בְּיוֹם אֲשֶׁר יִכְחֹשׁוּ הָאֲנָשִׁים  
בְּכַח אֱלֹהִים, וּכְנִסְיוֹתֵיהֶם תִּחַלְלֶנָּה וְתִתְנַשְּׂאנָה  
בְּגִאוֹת לִבָּן; אָכֵן, בְּיוֹם אֲשֶׁר יִתְנַשְּׂאוּ מְנַהֲיִי  
כְּנִסְיוֹת וּמוֹרִיָּהן בְּגִאוֹת לִבָּם, וְאִף יִקְנְאוּ  
בְּחִבְרֵי כְּנִסְיוֹתֵיהֶם.

28 Yea, it shall come in a day when the power of God shall be denied, and churches become defiled and be lifted up in the pride of their hearts; yea, even in a day when leaders of churches and teachers shall rise in the pride of their hearts, even to the envying of them who belong to their churches.

אָכֵן, תֵּהִי זֹאת בְּיוֹם אֲשֶׁר יִשְׁמַע עַל אֵשׁ  
וְסוּפוֹת וְתִימְרוֹת עֶשֶׂן בְּאֶרְצוֹת נֹכַר.

29 Yea, it shall come in a day when there shall be heard of fires, and tempests, and vapors of smoke in foreign lands;

וְאִף יִשְׁמַע עַל מִלְחָמָה וְשִׁמוּעוֹת מִלְחָמָה  
וְרַעֲדוֹת אֲדָמָה בְּמִקְוֹמוֹת שׁוֹנִים.

30 And there shall also be heard of wars, rumors of wars, and earthquakes in divers places.

אָכֵן, יֵהִי זֹאת בְּיוֹם אֲשֶׁר יִהְיוּ זְהוּמִים גְּדוֹלִים  
עַל פְּנֵי הָאֲדָמָה; וְיִהְיוּ מַעֲשֵׂי רָצַח וְשָׂדֶה, שְׂקָר  
וּמְרָמָה, זְנוּת וְכָל מִינֵי תוֹעֵבוֹת; בָּעֵת אֲשֶׁר  
יֹאמְרוּ אִזּוֹ רַבִּים: עֲשֵׂה זֹאת אוֹ עֲשֵׂה זֹאת,  
וְאֵין לָקֹדֶשׁ חֲשִׁיבוֹת, כִּי יִסְעָדֵם יְהוָה בְּיוֹם  
הָאֲחֵרוֹן. אִף אוֹי לְשִׂכְמוֹתָם, כִּי שָׂרוּיִים הֵם  
בְּמִרְרַת רוֹשׁ וּבְכִבְלֵי עוֹן.

31 Yea, it shall come in a day when there shall be great pollutions upon the face of the earth; there shall be murders, and robbing, and lying, and deceivings, and whoredoms, and all manner of abominations; when there shall be many who will say, Do this, or do that, and it mattereth not, for the Lord will uphold such at the last day. But wo unto such for they are in the gall of bitterness and in the bonds of iniquity.

אָכֵן, תֵּהִי זֹאת בְּיוֹם הַבְּנוֹת כְּנִסְיוֹת אֲשֶׁר  
תֹּאמְרָנָה: בּוֹא אֵלַי וְתִמְוֹרֶת כֶּסֶף יִמְכְּלוּ  
לְךָ חֲטָאִיךָ.

32 Yea, it shall come in a day when there shall be churches built up that shall say: Come unto me, and for your money you shall be forgiven of your sins.

- 33 O ye wicked and perverse and stiffnecked people, why have ye built up churches unto yourselves to get gain? Why have ye transfigured the holy word of God, that ye might bring damnation upon your souls? Behold, look ye unto the revelations of God; for behold, the time cometh at that day when all these things must be fulfilled.
- אוי לָכֶם, עִם רָשָׁעִים וּמְשַׁחֲתִים וְקָשִׁי עֲרָרִי! מַדּוּעַ בְּנִיתֶם לָכֶם כְּנִסְיֹת לְמַעַן בָּצֵעַ? מַדּוּעַ עֲוִיתֶם אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים הַקְדּוֹשׁ, לְהַבְיֵא מָאֲרָה עַל נַפְשְׁכֶם? הִנֵּה הַבִּיטוּ אֶל חֲזִיוֹנוֹת אֱלֹהִים; כִּי הִנֵּה, בּוֹא תְּבוֹא הָעֵת בַּיּוֹם הַהוּא, אֲשֶׁר יִקְוּמוּ כָּל הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה וְיִהְיוּ.
- 34 Behold, the Lord hath shown unto me great and marvelous things concerning that which must shortly come, at that day when these things shall come forth among you.
- הִנֵּה הָרָאֵנִי יְהוָה גְּדוּלוֹת וְנִפְלְאוֹת עַל אֲשֶׁר קָרֹב לְבוֹא, בַּיּוֹם בּוֹא הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה אֵלֵיכֶם.
- 35 Behold, I speak unto you as if ye were present, and yet ye are not. But behold, Jesus Christ hath shown you unto me, and I know your doing.
- הִנֵּנִי מְדַבֵּר אֵלֵיכֶם כְּאִלּוּ אַתֶּם לִפְנֵי, אַךְ כִּי לֹא כֹן הַדְּבָר. כִּי הִנֵּה, יֵשׁוּעַ הַמְּשִׁיחַ הָרָאֵנִי אֶתְכֶם, וְאֲנִי יוֹדֵעַ אֶת מַעֲשֵׂיכֶם.
- 36 And I know that ye do walk in the pride of your hearts; and there are none save a few only who do not lift themselves up in the pride of their hearts, unto the wearing of very fine apparel, unto envying, and strifes, and malice, and persecutions, and all manner of iniquities; and your churches, yea, even every one, have become polluted because of the pride of your hearts.
- יּוֹדֵעַ אֲנִי כִּי מֵתְהַלְכִים אַתֶּם בְּגָאוֹת לְבָבְכֶם, וְכִי זֹלַת מַעֲשִׂים, מִתְנַשְּׂאִים הַכֹּל בְּגָאוֹת לְבָב, לּוֹבְשִׁים בְּגָדִים הַדּוּרִים מְאֹד, וְנוֹהֲגִים בְּקִנְיָה וּבְמִדּוֹן וּבְזִדּוֹן וּבְרִדְפוֹת וּבְכָל מִינֵי עֲוֹנוֹת. וְכִנְסִיּוֹתֵיכֶם, אַכּוֹ, כָּלֹן כְּאַחַת, הִזְדַּחְמוּ מִפְּנֵי גָאוֹת לְבָבְכֶם.
- 37 For behold, ye do love money, and your substance, and your fine apparel, and the adorning of your churches, more than ye love the poor and the needy, the sick and the afflicted.
- כִּי הִנֵּה רַבָּה אֲהַבְתֶּם לְמָמוֹן וּלְקִנְיָנְכֶם, לְבִגְדֵיכֶם הַהֲדוּרִים וּלְקִשּׁוּטֵי כְּנִסְיֹתֵיכֶם מֵאַהֲבַתְכֶם לְעָנִי וּלְאַבְיוֹן, לַחֹלֶה וּלְנֹכָח.
- 38 O ye pollutions, ye hypocrites, ye teachers, who sell yourselves for that which will canker, why have ye polluted the holy church of God? Why are ye ashamed to take upon you the name of Christ? Why do ye not think that greater is the value of an endless happiness than that misery which never dies—because of the praise of the world?
- הוֹי, אַתֶּם הַזֹּהוּמִים! אַתֶּם הַחֲנִפִּים, אַתֶּם הַמּוֹרִים, הַמּוֹכְרִים עַצְמְכֶם לְמַעַן זֶה אֲשֶׁר יִרְקַב! מַדּוּעַ זֶה־מַתֵּם אֶת כְּנִסְיַת אֱלֹהִים הַקְדּוֹשָׁה? מַדּוּעַ תְּבוֹשׁוּ לְשֹׂאת עֲלֵיכֶם אֶת שֵׁם הַמְּשִׁיחַ? מַדּוּעַ לֹא יִקָּר בְּעֵינֵיכֶם אֲשֶׁר נִצְחִי מִיְסוּרֵי עוֹלָם? הַמִּפְנִי שְׂבַחֵי הָעוֹלָם הַזֶּה?
- 39 Why do ye adorn yourselves with that which hath no life, and yet suffer the hungry, and the needy, and the naked, and the sick and the afflicted to pass by you, and notice them not?
- מַדּוּעַ תִּתְּיפוּ בְּזֶה אֲשֶׁר הוּא נֶעְדֵר חַיִּים, אַךְ תִּתְּיְרוּ כִּי יַחְלְפוּ עַל פְּנֵיכֶם רָעִב וְאַבְיוֹן, עֹרֵם וְחֹלֶה וְנֹכָח, וְאֶת לְבָבְכֶם לֹא תִשְׁתִּיחוּ לָהֶם?
- 40 Yea, why do ye build up your secret abominations to get gain, and cause that widows should mourn before the Lord, and also orphans to mourn before the Lord, and also the blood of their fathers and their husbands to cry unto the Lord from the ground, for vengeance upon your heads?
- אַכּוֹ, מַדּוּעַ תִּקְיְמוּ אֶת אֲגָדוֹת סִתְרֵיכֶם בְּעִבּוֹר בָּצֵעַ, וְתִסְבּוּ לְאַלְמָנוֹת וּלְיֹתוּמִים כִּי יִתְאַבְּלוּ לִפְנֵי יְהוָה? מַדּוּעַ תִּסְבּוּ כִּי תִעַלָּה עֲצֵקַת דָּם אֲבוֹתֵיהֶם וּבְעֵלֵיהֶן מִן הָאֲדָמָה אֶל יְהוָה, לְמַעַן יָבִיא נָקָם עַל רֹאשְׁכֶם?
- 41 Behold, the sword of vengeance hangeth over you; and the time soon cometh that he avengeth the blood of the saints upon you, for he will not suffer their cries any longer.
- הִנֵּה חֶרֶב הַנָּקָם תִּלְוֶה מֵעַלְיֶיכֶם וְקָרוֹבָה עֵת בּוֹא יְהוָה לְקַחַת מִכֶּם אֶת נִקְמַת דָּם הַקְדּוֹשִׁים, כִּי הוּא לֹא יִתֵּיר עוֹד אֶת זַעֲקוֹתֵיהֶם.



## ט

## 9

- 1 And now, I speak also concerning those who do not believe in Christ.
- וְעַתָּה אֲפִי אֲדַבֵּר עַל אֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר אֵינָם מֵאֲמִינִים בְּמִשִּׁיחַ.
- 2 Behold, will ye believe in the day of your visitation—behold, when the Lord shall come, yea, even that great day when the earth shall be rolled together as a scroll, and the elements shall melt with fervent heat, yea, in that great day when ye shall be brought to stand before the Lamb of God—then will ye say that there is no God?
- הֲתֵאֱמִינּוּ בַּיּוֹם פְּקֻדְתְּכֶם? הִנֵּה, בַּיּוֹם אֲשֶׁר בּוֹ יָבוֹא יְהוָה, אָכֵן בַּיּוֹם הַגָּדוֹל הַהוּא, בְּהִגָּלֵל הָאָרֶץ כְּמַגֵּלָה וּבְהִנָּתֵף הַיְסוּדוֹת בְּחֵם לוֹהֵט, אָכֵן, בַּיּוֹם הַגָּדוֹל הַהוּא כֹּאֲשֶׁר תָּבוֹאוּ לַעֲמֹד לִפְנֵי שֵׁה אֱלֹהִים, הֲתֹאמְרוּ אָז כִּי אֵין אֱלֹהִים?
- 3 Then will ye longer deny the Christ, or can ye behold the Lamb of God? Do ye suppose that ye shall dwell with him under a consciousness of your guilt? Do ye suppose that ye could be happy to dwell with that holy Being, when your souls are racked with a consciousness of guilt that ye have ever abused his laws?
- הֲתוֹסִיפוּ אָז לְכַחֵשׁ בְּמִשִּׁיחַ, אִן, הַתּוֹכְלוּ לְהִבִּיט אֶל שֵׁה אֱלֹהִים? הֲתִשְׁאָרוּ כִּי תִשְׁכְּנוּ עִמּוֹ בְּעוֹד מִקְנָנָת בְּכֶם הַכֶּרֶת אֲשֶׁמְכֶם? הֲתִשְׁאָרוּ כִּי תוֹכְלוּ לִשְׁכֹּן עִם אוֹתָהּ הַיְּוֵה קֹדֶשׁ, בְּעוֹד נִפְשְׁכֶם שְׂסוּעָה בְּהַכֶּרֶת אֲשֶׁם כִּי מַעֲוֹלִם הִפְרַתֶּם אֶת חֻקָּיו?
- 4 Behold, I say unto you that ye would be more miserable to dwell with a holy and just God, under a consciousness of your filthiness before him, than ye would to dwell with the damned souls in hell.
- הֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, כִּי הֵייתֶם אֲמֻלִּים יוֹתֵר בְּשִׁכְנֶכֶם עִם אֵל קֹדֶשׁ וְיֹשֵׁר, וּמִצְפּוֹנְכֶם כְּבֹד עַל טְמֵאֲתְכֶם, מֵאֲשֶׁר בְּשִׁכְנֶכֶם עִם הַנִּפְשוֹת הַמְקַלְלוֹת אֲשֶׁר בְּשָׂאוֹל.
- 5 For behold, when ye shall be brought to see your nakedness before God, and also the glory of God, and the holiness of Jesus Christ, it will kindle a flame of unquenchable fire upon you.
- כִּי כֹאֲשֶׁר תּוֹבְאוּ וְתִרְאוּ אֶת מַעְרְמֵיכֶם לִפְנֵי אֱלֹהִים וְתִפְאָרְתּוֹ, וְאֶת קֹדֶשׁ יֵשׁוּעַ הַמְּשִׁיחַ, תִּצְתַּע עֲלֵיכֶם שְׁלֵהֶבֶת אֵשׁ בַּל תִּכָּבֵה.
- 6 O then ye unbelieving, turn ye unto the Lord; cry mightily unto the Father in the name of Jesus, that perhaps ye may be found spotless, pure, fair, and white, having been cleansed by the blood of the Lamb, at that great and last day.
- הוֹי, חֲסִרֵי אֱמוּנָה, פָּנוּ נָא אֶל יְהוָה, צַעֲקוּ צַעֲקָה אֶל הָאֵב בְּשֵׁם יֵשׁוּעַ; אוֹלֵי תִמָּצְאוּ בַּיּוֹם הַגָּדוֹל וְהָאֲחֵרוֹן הַהוּא זָכִים וְטָהוּרִים וּבְהִירִים וּצְהָרִים, וְאִתֶּם חֲטֵאֵתֶם בְּדָם הַשֵּׁה.
- 7 And again I speak unto you who deny the revelations of God, and say that they are done away, that there are no revelations, nor prophecies, nor gifts, nor healing, nor speaking with tongues, and the interpretation of tongues;
- וְעוֹד אֲנִי מְדַבֵּר אֲלֵיכֶם, הַמְכַחֲשִׁים בְּחִזְיוֹנוֹת אֱלֹהִים, הָאוֹמְרִים כִּי תִמּוּ, כִּי אֵין עוֹד חִזְיוֹנוֹת, וְאִף לֹא נְבוּאוֹת, וְלֹא מִתֵּת שְׁמִים, וְרִפּוּי, וְדְבוּר בִּלְשׁוֹנוֹת וּבִאֹר מִשְׁמַעִיָּהוּ.
- 8 Behold I say unto you, he that denieth these things knoweth not the gospel of Christ; yea, he has not read the scriptures; if so, he does not understand them.
- הֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, כִּי הַמְכַחֵשׁ בְּדִבְרֵים הָאֵלֶּה, אֵינּוּ יוֹדְעֵי אֶת בְּשׂוֹרַת הַמְּשִׁיחַ; אָכֵן, הוּא לֹא קָרָא אֶת כְּתָבֵי הַקֹּדֶשׁ; וְאִם כֵּן, אֵין הוּא מִבִּינֵם.
- 9 For do we not read that God is the same yesterday, today, and forever, and in him there is no variableness neither shadow of changing?
- הֲאֵין אֲנַחְנוּ קוֹרְאִים כִּי אֱלֹהִים אֶחָד הוּא אֶתְמוֹל, הַיּוֹם וְלַעֲוֹלָם, וְאֵין בּוֹ כָּל הַשְׁתַּנּוּת וְאִף לֹא תִמְוָרָה כְּלָשְׁהִי?

- ועתה, אם דמיתם בנפשכם אל משתנה, אשר יש בו תמורה כלשהי, הנה דמיתם בנפשכם אל אשר איננו אלהי פלאות.
- 10 And now if ye have imagined up unto yourselves a god who doth vary, and in whom there is shadow of changing, then have ye imagined up unto yourselves a god who is not God of miracles.
- והנה, אני אראה לכם אלהי פלאות, את אלהי אברהם ואלהי יצחק ואלהי יעקב; והוא אותו האל אשר ברא את השמים ואת הארץ ואת כל אשר בו.
- 11 But behold, I will show unto you a God of miracles, even the God of Abraham, and the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob; and it is that same God who created the heavens and the earth, and all things that in them are.
- והנה, הוא ברא את אדם, ועל ידי אדם באה נפילת בני האדם. ומפני נפילת בני האדם בא ישוע המשיח, הוא אב ובן, ומפני ישוע המשיח באה גאלת האדם.
- 12 Behold he created Adam, and by Adam came the fall of man. And because of the fall of man came Jesus Christ, even the Father and the Son; and because of Jesus Christ came the redemption of man.
- ומפני גאלת בני האדם, אשר באה על ידי ישוע המשיח, מושבים הם לפני יהוה; אכן, באפן הזה נגאלים כל בני האדם, כי מות המשיח מביא את תחית המתים, המביאה גאלה משנת עולם, אשר ממנה יעורו כל בני האדם על ידי כח אלהים בהשמע תרועת השופר. אזי הם יבואו, קטנים וגדולים, ויעמדו כלם לפני כס משפטו, גאולים ומשחררים ממוסרות המות הנצחיות, מות אשר הוא מות הגוף.
- 13 And because of the redemption of man, which came by Jesus Christ, they are brought back into the presence of the Lord; yea, this is wherein all men are redeemed, because the death of Christ bringeth to pass the resurrection, which bringeth to pass a redemption from an endless sleep, from which sleep all men shall be awakened by the power of God when the trump shall sound; and they shall come forth, both small and great, and all shall stand before his bar, being redeemed and loosed from this eternal band of death, which death is a temporal death.
- ואזי יבוא עליהם משפט האל הקדוש; אזי תבוא העת אשר הטמא ישאר בטמאותו, והצדיק ישאר בצדקתו; המאשר ישאר באשרו, והאמלל ישאר באמללותו.
- 14 And then cometh the judgment of the Holy One upon them; and then cometh the time that he that is filthy shall be filthy still; and he that is righteous shall be righteous still; he that is happy shall be happy still; and he that is unhappy shall be unhappy still.
- ועתה אשאלכם, אתם אשר דמיתם בנפשכם אלהים אשר אינו יכול לעשות נסים, האם חלפו כל הדברים האלה אשר דברתי עליהם? האם הגיע כבר הקץ? הנני אומר לכם, לא! ולא חדל אלהים להיות אלהי פלאות.
- 15 And now, O all ye that have imagined up unto yourselves a god who can do no miracles, I would ask of you, have all these things passed, of which I have spoken? Has the end come yet? Behold I say unto you, Nay; and God has not ceased to be a God of miracles.
- הנה, האין מעשי אלהים נפלאים בעינינו? אכן, ומי יכול להבין את מעשי אלהים הנפלאים?
- 16 Behold, are not the things that God hath wrought marvelous in our eyes? Yea, and who can comprehend the marvelous works of God?
- מי יאמר כי לא היה זה נס, היות שמים וארץ בדברו? הן בכח דברו נוצר האדם מעפר הארץ, ובכח דברו נעשו נסים.
- 17 Who shall say that it was not a miracle that by his word the heaven and the earth should be; and by the power of his word man was created of the dust of the earth; and by the power of his word have miracles been wrought?
- ומי יאמר כי ישוע המשיח לא עשה נסים גדולים? הן נסים גדולים רבים נעשו בידי השליחים.
- 18 And who shall say that Jesus Christ did not many mighty miracles? And there were many mighty miracles wrought by the hands of the apostles.

- 19 ואם בעת ההיא נעשו נסים, מדוע יחדל אלהים מהיות אלהי פלאות, ועדין הוא הויה בלתי משתנה? הנני אומר לכם: אין הוא משתנה; שאם לא כן, יחדל מהיותו אלהים; אך אין הוא חדל מהיות אלהים, ואכן אלהי פלאות הוא.
- 20 והנה, חדל הוא מעשות נסים בקרב בני האדם מפני שקיעתם בחסר אמונה, כי הם סרו מדרך הישר ואינם יודעים את האלהים אשר בו עליהם לשים את מבטחם.
- 21 הנני אומר לכם כי המאמין במשיח ואינו מטיל ספק, כל אשר יבקש מאת האב בשם המשיח ינתן לו. ודבר הברית הזה נתון לכל, אף לקצות הארץ.
- 22 כי כה אמר ישוע המשיח, בן אלהים, אל תלמדיו אשר נשארו לשחות בעולם הזה, אכן, אף לכל תלמידיו, באזני המון העם: צאו נא אל כל העולם והשיפו את הבשורה לכל בריה.
- 23 והמאמין אשר נטבל וישע, אך זה אשר לא יאמין, ארור יהיה.
- 24 ואלה האותות אשר ילוו את המאמינים: בשמי יגרשו שדים; הם ידברו בלשונות חדשות; הם ירימו נחשים; ואם ישתו כל רעל, לא יאנה להם כל רע; הם יסמכו ידיהם על חולים ואלה ירפאו.
- 25 וכל אשר יאמין בשמי, ולא יטיל ספק, לו אאשר את כל דברי, אף עד קצות הארץ.
- 26 הנה, מי יעמד נגד פעלת יהוה? מי יכחש בדבריו? מי יקום על כח יהוה העליון? מי יבזה את מעשי יהוה? מי יבזה את בני המשיח? ראו, כל המבזים את מעשי יהוה, כי אכן תתמהו ותאבדו.
- 27 לא תבזו אפוא, ולא תתמהו, כי אם הקשיבו לדברי יהוה, ובקשו את האב בשם ישוע על כל הנחוצ לכם. אכן, אל תפקדו, כי אם היו מאמינים ועשו כבימי קדם, ובואו אל יהוה בכל לבבכם, ויחנינו את ישועתכם ביראה וברעדה מלפניו.
- 19 And if there were miracles wrought then, why has God ceased to be a God of miracles and yet be an unchangeable Being? And behold, I say unto you he changeth not; if so he would cease to be God; and he ceaseth not to be God, and is a God of miracles.
- 20 And the reason why he ceaseth to do miracles among the children of men is because that they dwindle in unbelief, and depart from the right way, and know not the God in whom they should trust.
- 21 Behold, I say unto you that whoso believeth in Christ, doubting nothing, whatsoever he shall ask the Father in the name of Christ it shall be granted him; and this promise is unto all, even unto the ends of the earth.
- 22 For behold, thus said Jesus Christ, the Son of God, unto his disciples who should tarry, yea, and also to all his disciples, in the hearing of the multitude: Go ye into all the world, and preach the gospel to every creature;
- 23 And he that believeth and is baptized shall be saved, but he that believeth not shall be damned;
- 24 And these signs shall follow them that believe—in my name shall they cast out devils; they shall speak with new tongues; they shall take up serpents; and if they drink any deadly thing it shall not hurt them; they shall lay hands on the sick and they shall recover;
- 25 And whosoever shall believe in my name, doubting nothing, unto him will I confirm all my words, even unto the ends of the earth.
- 26 And now, behold, who can stand against the works of the Lord? Who can deny his sayings? Who will rise up against the almighty power of the Lord? Who will despise the works of the Lord? Who will despise the children of Christ? Behold, all ye who are despisers of the works of the Lord, for ye shall wonder and perish.
- 27 O then despise not, and wonder not, but hearken unto the words of the Lord, and ask the Father in the name of Jesus for what things soever ye shall stand in need. Doubt not, but be believing, and begin as in times of old, and come unto the Lord with all your heart, and work out your own salvation with fear and trembling before him.

- 28 Be wise in the days of your probation; strip yourselves of all uncleanness; ask not, that ye may consume it on your lusts, but ask with a firmness unshaken, that ye will yield to no temptation, but that ye will serve the true and living God.
- הָיוּ חֲכָמִים בְּיָמֵי מִבְחָנְכֶם; הִשְׁהָרוּ מִכָּל טְמֵאָה; אַל תִּבְקְשׁוּ דָבָר לְסִפּוֹק תַּאֲוֹתֵיכֶם, כִּי אִם בִּקְשׁוּ בְתִקְיֹת לֵב כִּי לֹא תִפְנְעוּ לְכָל פְּתוּי, וְכִי תַעֲבֹדוּ אֶת אֱלֹהֵי הָאֱמֶת, אֵל חַי.
- 29 See that ye are not baptized unworthily; see that ye partake not of the sacrament of Christ unworthily; but see that ye do all things in worthiness, and do it in the name of Jesus Christ, the Son of the living God; and if ye do this, and endure to the end, ye will in nowise be cast out.
- הִשְׁמְרוּ לָכֶם לִבְל תִּטְבְּלוּ וְאֵינְכֶם רְאוּיִים לָכֶּה; הִשְׁמְרוּ לָכֶם לִבְל תִּטְעַמְמוּ מִסַּעֲדַת הַקֹּדֶשׁ אֲשֶׁר לְמִשְׁיַח וְאֵינְכֶם רְאוּיִים לָכֶּה; אַךְ הִשְׁגִּיחוּ כִּי תַעֲשׂוּ הַכֹּל בְּהַיּוֹתְכֶם רְאוּיִים, וַעֲשׂוּ כֵן בְּשֵׁם יֵשׁוּעַ הַמָּשִׁיחַ, בֶּן אֱלֹהִים חַיִּים. וְאִם תַּעֲשׂוּ זֹאת, וְתִתְמִידוּ עַד הַקֵּץ, הִשְׁלֹף לֹא תִשְׁלָכוּ.
- 30 Behold, I speak unto you as though I spake from the dead; for I know that ye shall have my words.
- הִנְנִי מְדַבֵּר אֲלֵיכֶם כְּאִלּוּ דִּבַּרְתִּי מִן הַמֵּתִים, יַעֲן אֲשֶׁר יוֹדַע אֲנִי כִּי יִהְיוּ לָכֶם דְּבָרַי.
- 31 Condemn me not because of mine imperfection, neither my father, because of his imperfection, neither them who have written before him; but rather give thanks unto God that he hath made manifest unto you our imperfections, that ye may learn to be more wise than we have been.
- אַל תְּדוֹנוּ אוֹתִי לְכַף חֻבָּה עַל פְּגָמִי, וְאֶף לֹא אֶת אָבִי עַל פְּגָמִיו, וְאֶף לֹא אֶת אֱלֹהֵי אֲשֶׁר כָּתְבוּ לִפְנֵי; כִּי אִם הוֹדוּ לֵאלֹהִים עַל אֲשֶׁר הִרְאָה לָכֶם אֶת פְּגָמֵינוּ, בְּעִבּוֹר תִּלְמִדּוֹ וְתַחֲכִימוּ מִמֶּנּוּ.
- 32 And now, behold, we have written this record according to our knowledge, in the characters which are called among us the reformed Egyptian, being handed down and altered by us, according to our manner of speech.
- הִנֵּה, רָשַׁמְנוּ אֶת כְּתָב הַזִּכְרוֹן הַזֶּה כְּפִי יְדִיעַתֵּנוּ, בְּסִמְנֵים הַנִּקְרָאִים בְּפִינוּ בְּשֵׁם מִצְרַיִת מְתַקֶּנֶת אֲשֶׁר נִמְסְרוּ מִדּוֹר לְדּוֹר, וְאֲשֶׁר שִׁנְנוּ אוֹתָם עַל פִּי אִפֹּן דְּבוּרֵנוּ.
- 33 And if our plates had been sufficiently large we should have written in Hebrew; but the Hebrew hath been altered by us also; and if we could have written in Hebrew, behold, ye would have had no imperfection in our record.
- וְאִלּוּ הָיוּ לוחֹתֵינוּ גְדוֹלִים דַּיִם, הָיִינוּ כּוֹתְבִים בְּעִבְרִית; אַךְ אֵף אֶת הָעִבְרִית שִׁנְיָנוּ; וְלֹא יָכֻלְנוּ לְכַתֵּב בְּעִבְרִית, לֹא הָיוּ נִמְצָאִים פְּגָמִים בְּכְתָב הַזִּכְרוֹן אֲשֶׁר לָנוּ.
- 34 But the Lord knoweth the things which we have written, and also that none other people knoweth our language; and because that none other people knoweth our language, therefore he hath prepared means for the interpretation thereof.
- וְאוֹלָם יְהוָה יוֹדֵעַ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר כָּתְבָנוּ, וְאֵף כִּי אֵין עִם אַחֵר הַיּוֹדֵעַ אֶת שְׁפָתֵנוּ; וַיַּעַן אֲשֶׁר אֵין עִם אַחֵר הַיּוֹדֵעַ אֶת שְׁפָתֵנוּ, הֵכִין יְהוָה אֲמָצָעִים לְבִאָרָם.
- 35 And these things are written that we may rid our garments of the blood of our brethren, who have dwindled in unbelief.
- וְהַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה כְּתוּבִים בְּעִבּוֹר נָסִיר מִבְּגָדֵינוּ אֶת דָּם אַחֵינוּ, אֲשֶׁר שָׁקְעוּ בַּחֲסָר אֱמוּנָה.
- 36 And behold, these things which we have desired concerning our brethren, yea, even their restoration to the knowledge of Christ, are according to the prayers of all the saints who have dwelt in the land.
- וְהִנֵּה, הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר חָפְצָנוּ כִּי יָבוֹאוּ עַל אַחֵינוּ, אַכֵּן, כִּי יָשׁוּבוּ אֶל יְדִיעַת הַמָּשִׁיחַ, הֵם כְּפִי תַפְלוֹת כָּל הַקְּדוֹשִׁים אֲשֶׁר שָׁכְנוּ בָאָרֶץ.
- 37 And may the Lord Jesus Christ grant that their prayers may be answered according to their faith; and may God the Father remember
- מִי יִתֵּן וְהָאֱדוֹן יֵשׁוּעַ הַמָּשִׁיחַ יִסֵּב בַּחֲסִדּוֹ כִּי תַעֲנֶינָה תַפְלוֹתֵיהֶם כְּפִי אֱמוּנָתָם; וּמִי יִתֵּן

## אתר א:א-ח

וַיִּזְכֹּר אֱלֹהִים הָאֵב אֶת הַבְּרִית אֲשֶׁר כָּרַת עִם  
בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל וַיְבָרְכֵם לְעֹלָם, עַל יְדֵי הָאֱמוּנָה  
בְּשֵׁם יֵשׁוּעַ הַמָּשִׁיחַ. אָמֵן.

the covenant which he hath made with the house of Israel; and may he  
bless them forever, through faith on the name of Jesus Christ. Amen.

## ספר אתר

## THE BOOK OF ETHER

מורוני בן מורמון מקצר את ספר זכרון הירדנים  
אשר באו מהמגדל הגדול, כאשר כלכל אלהים  
את לשונות בני האדם. נלקח מעשרים וארבעה  
הלוחות אשר מצאום אנשי למחי בימי המלך  
מושיע.

Moroni, the son of Mormon, abridges the record of the Jaredites, who  
came forth from the great tower when God confused the languages of the  
people. Taken from the twenty-four plates found by the people of Limhi  
in the days of King Mosiah.

## א

## 1

ועתה, אני, מורוני, אוסיף לרשם את ספור  
המעשה אשר לתושבים הקדומים, אשר  
השמדו ביד יהוה מעל פני ארץ הצפון הזאת.

1 And now I, Moroni, proceed to give an account of those ancient  
inhabitants who were destroyed by the hand of the Lord upon the face  
of this north country.

ואני לוקח את ספורי, מתוך עשרים וארבעה  
הלוחות הנקראים ספר אתר, אשר מצאום  
אנשי למחי.

2 And I take mine account from the twenty and four plates which were  
found by the people of Limhi, which is called the Book of Ether.

ויען אשר סבור אני כי החלק הראשון מכתב  
הזכרון הזה נמצא בקרב היהודים, והוא על  
אודות בריאת העולם ועל אדם, ועל הקורות  
מן העת ההיא ועד ימי המגדל הרם, וכן על  
כל קורות בני האדם עד העת ההיא;

3 And as I suppose that the first part of this record, which speaks  
concerning the creation of the world, and also of Adam, and an  
account from that time even to the great tower, and whatsoever things  
transpired among the children of men until that time, is had among  
the Jews—

לכן לא אכתב את הדברים אשר היו מימי  
אדם עד העת ההיא; ואולם הם רשומים על  
גבי הלוחות; ואשר ימצאם, יהיה לאל ידו  
להשיג את הספור במלאו.

4 Therefore I do not write those things which transpired from the days  
of Adam until that time; but they are had upon the plates; and whoso  
findeth them, the same will have power that he may get the full account.

ואני לא אכתב את מלא הדברים כי אם את  
חלקם, מימי המגדל ועד יום השמדתם.

5 But behold, I give not the full account, but a part of the account I give,  
from the tower down until they were destroyed.

ובאופן הזה אכתב את ספור המעשה.  
רושם כתב הזכרון הזה היה אתר, והוא  
היה צאצא לקוריאנטור.

6 And on this wise do I give the account. He that wrote this record was  
Ether, and he was a descendant of Coriantor.

קוריאנטור היה בן מורון.

7 Coriantor was the son of Moron.

ומורון היה בן עתם.

8 And Moron was the son of Ethem.



- 9 And Ethem was the son of Ahah. וְעֶתֶם הָיָה בֶּן אָחָא.
- 10 And Ahah was the son of Seth. וְאָחָא הָיָה בֶּן שֵׁת.
- 11 And Seth was the son of Shiblon. וְשֵׁת הָיָה בֶּן שִׁבְלוֹן.
- 12 And Shiblon was the son of Com. וְשִׁבְלוֹן הָיָה בֶּן קוֹם.
- 13 And Com was the son of Coriantum. וְקוֹם הָיָה בֶּן קוֹרִיאַנְטוֹם.
- 14 And Coriantum was the son of Amnigaddah. וְקוֹרִיאַנְטוֹם הָיָה בֶּן אֲמִיגַדָּא.
- 15 And Amnigaddah was the son of Aaron. וְאֲמִיגַדָּא הָיָה בֶּן אֶהְרֹן.
- 16 And Aaron was a descendant of Heth, who was the son of Hearthom. וְאֶהְרֹן הָיָה צֶאֱצָא חֵת, אֲשֶׁר הָיָה בֶּן הִיאֶרְטוֹם.
- 17 And Hearthom was the son of Lib. וְהִיאֶרְטוֹם הָיָה בֶּן לִיב.
- 18 And Lib was the son of Kish. וְלִיב הָיָה בֶּן קִישׁ.
- 19 And Kish was the son of Corom. וְקִישׁ הָיָה בֶּן קוֹרָאוֹם.
- 20 And Corom was the son of Levi. וְקוֹרָאוֹם הָיָה בֶּן לֵוִי.
- 21 And Levi was the son of Kim. וְלֵוִי הָיָה בֶּן קִים.
- 22 And Kim was the son of Morianton. וְקִים הָיָה בֶּן מוֹרִיאַנְטוֹן.
- 23 And Morianton was a descendant of Riplakish. וּמוֹרִיאַנְטוֹן הָיָה צֶאֱצָא רִיפְלָכִישׁ.
- 24 And Riplakish was the son of Shez. וְרִיפְלָכִישׁ הָיָה בֶּן שֵׁז.
- 25 And Shez was the son of Heth. וְשֵׁז הָיָה בֶּן חֵת.
- 26 And Heth was the son of Com. וְחֵת הָיָה בֶּן קוֹם.
- 27 And Com was the son of Coriantum. וְקוֹם הָיָה בֶּן קוֹרִיאַנְטוֹם.
- 28 And Coriantum was the son of Emer. וְקוֹרִיאַנְטוֹם הָיָה בֶּן עֶמֶר.
- 29 And Emer was the son of Omer. וְעֶמֶר הָיָה בֶּן עֹמֶר.
- 30 And Omer was the son of Shule. וְעֹמֶר הָיָה בֶּן שׁוּל.
- 31 And Shule was the son of Kib. וְשׁוּל הָיָה בֶּן קִיב.
- 32 And Kib was the son of Orihah, who was the son of Jared; וְקִיב הָיָה בֶּן אוֹרִיחָה, אֲשֶׁר הָיָה בֶּן יָרֵד.

- וַיֵּרֶד יָרֵד עִם אָחִיו וּמִשְׁפְּחוֹתֵיהֶם, וְעִם אֲנָשִׁים נֹסְפִים וּמִשְׁפְּחוֹתֵיהֶם, מִן הַמִּגְדָּל הַגָּדוֹל, בְּעַת אֲשֶׁר בָּלַל יְהוָה אֶת שְׂפַת בְּנֵי הָאָדָם, וְנִשְׁבַּע בְּחֻמָּתוֹ כִּי יִפּוּצוּ עַל כָּל פְּנֵי הָאָרֶץ; וַכִּפֵּי דָבַר יְהוָה, נִפּוּצוּ בְנֵי הָאָדָם.
- 33 Which Jared came forth with his brother and their families, with some others and their families, from the great tower, at the time the Lord confounded the language of the people, and swore in his wrath that they should be scattered upon all the face of the earth; and according to the word of the Lord the people were scattered.
- וְאָחִי יָרֵד הָיָה אִישׁ בָּעַל מַדּוֹת וְגִבּוֹר חֵיל, וַיְהוּה נָטָה לוֹ חֶסֶד רַב. וְאָמַר אֵלָיו אָחִיו יָרֵד: קְרָא אֶל יְהוָה לְבַל יִבְלָלֵנוּ, וְלֹא נִבְיִן אֶת דְּבָרֵינוּ.
- 34 And the brother of Jared being a large and mighty man, and a man highly favored of the Lord, Jared, his brother, said unto him: Cry unto the Lord, that he will not confound us that we may not understand our words.
- וְאָחִי יָרֵד קָרָא אֶל יְהוָה, וְרַחֲמֵי יְהוָה נִכְמְרוּ עָלָיו; עַל כֵּן הוּא לֹא בָלָל אֶת שְׂפַת יָרֵד, וַיֵּרֶד וְאָחִיו לֹא בָלָלוּ.
- 35 And it came to pass that the brother of Jared did cry unto the Lord, and the Lord had compassion upon Jared; therefore he did not confound the language of Jared; and Jared and his brother were not confounded.
- וַיֵּרֶד אָמַר אֶל אָחִיו: קְרָא אֶל יְהוָה שְׁנִית, אוֹלִי יִסִּיר הוּא אֶת חֻמָּתוֹ מֵרַעִינוּ וְלֹא יִבְלָל אֶת שְׂפָתָם.
- 36 Then Jared said unto his brother: Cry again unto the Lord, and it may be that he will turn away his anger from them who are our friends, that he confound not their language.
- וְאָחִי יָרֵד קָרָא אֶל יְהוָה, וְרַחֲמֵי יְהוָה נִכְמְרוּ עַל רַעֲיָהֶם וְאָף עַל מִשְׁפְּחוֹתֵיהֶם, וְהֵם לֹא בָלָלוּ.
- 37 And it came to pass that the brother of Jared did cry unto the Lord, and the Lord had compassion upon their friends and their families also, that they were not confounded.
- וַיֵּרֶד הוֹסִיף לְדַבֵּר אֶל אָחִיו לֵאמֹר: לֵךְ וּדְרֵשׁ מִיְהוָה לְדַעַת אִם יִגְרֹשֵׁנוּ מִן הָאָרֶץ, וְהִיא אִם יִגְרֹשֵׁנוּ מִן הָאָרֶץ, קְרָא אֵלָיו אָנָּה נֵלֵךְ. מִי יוֹדֵעַ, אוֹלִי יִשְׁאֲנֵנוּ יְהוָה אֶל אֶרֶץ אֲשֶׁר הִיא מִבְּחָר מְכַל אֲרָצוֹת תִּבְלָל? וְאִם כֹּה יִהְיֶה, הֲבֵיאָה נָא מְנִים לַיהוָה; בַּעֲבוּר נִקְבְּלָהּ לְנַחֲלָה לָנוּ.
- 38 And it came to pass that Jared spake again unto his brother, saying: Go and inquire of the Lord whether he will drive us out of the land, and if he will drive us out of the land, cry unto him whither we shall go. And who knoweth but the Lord will carry us forth into a land which is choice above all the earth? And if it so be, let us be faithful unto the Lord, that we may receive it for our inheritance.
- וְאָחִי יָרֵד קָרָא אֶל יְהוָה וַדְּבַר כְּדִבְרֵים אֲשֶׁר נֶאֱמָרוּ מִפִּי יָרֵד.
- 39 And it came to pass that the brother of Jared did cry unto the Lord according to that which had been spoken by the mouth of Jared.
- וַיְהוּה שָׁמַע אֶת אָחִי יָרֵד, וְרַחֲמָיו נִכְמְרוּ עָלָיו, וְהוּא אָמַר אֵלָיו:
- 40 And it came to pass that the Lord did hear the brother of Jared, and had compassion upon him, and said unto him:
- לֵךְ וְאַסְפַּת אֶת עֲדָרֶיךָ, זָכָר וּנְקֵבָה, מְכַל מִין, וְלִקְחָתָּ מִזֶּרַע הָאָרֶץ, מְכַל מִין, וְאֶת בְּנֵי מִשְׁפְּחוֹתָ, וְאֶת יָרֵד אָחִיךָ וְאֶת מִשְׁפְּחוֹתוֹ וְכֹן אֶת רַעֲיָךְ וּמִשְׁפְּחוֹתֵיהֶם, וְאֶת רַעֲיָךְ יָרֵד וּמִשְׁפְּחוֹתֵיהֶם.
- 41 Go to and gather together thy flocks, both male and female, of every kind; and also of the seed of the earth of every kind; and thy family; and also Jared thy brother and his family; and also thy friends and their families, and the friends of Jared and their families.
- וְאַחֵר עֲשׂוֹתָךְ זֹאת, תֵּרֶד בְּרֹאשׁ אֶל הָעֵמֶק אֲשֶׁר מִצְפּוֹן. שָׁם אֶפְגְּשֶׁךָ, וְהִלַּכְתִּי לְפָנֶיךָ אֶל אֶרֶץ אֲשֶׁר הִיא מִבְּחָר מְכַל אֲרָצוֹת תִּבְלָל.
- 42 And when thou hast done this thou shalt go at the head of them down into the valley which is northward. And there will I meet thee, and I will go before thee into a land which is choice above all the lands of the earth.

## אתר א:מג-ב:ח

- וְשֵׁם אֲבִירָה אוֹתָהּ וְאֵת זֶרַעָהּ; וּמִזֶּרַעָהּ וּמִזֶּרַע  
אֲחִיהָ וּמִזֶּרַע הַהוֹלְכִים עִמָּהּ אֲגַדֵּל לִי אֲמָה  
גְּדוֹלָה. וְלֹא תִהְיֶה עַל פָּנָי כָּל תִּבְלֵ אֲמָה  
גְּדוֹלָה מִן הָאֲמָה אֲשֶׁר אֲגַדֵּל לִי מִזֶּרַעְכֶּם. וְכֹה  
אֶעֱשֶׂה לָּךְ עַל כִּי עַתָּה אָרְכָה זֹאת קִרְאתִנִּי.
- 43 And there will I bless thee and thy seed, and raise up unto me of thy seed, and of the seed of thy brother, and they who shall go with thee, a great nation. And there shall be none greater than the nation which I will raise up unto me of thy seed, upon all the face of the earth. And thus I will do unto thee because this long time ye have cried unto me.

## ב

## 2

- וַיֵּרֶד וְאָחִיו יִרְדּוּ עִם מִשְׁפְּחוֹתֵיהֶם, וְכֵן רַעֲי  
יִרְדּוּ וְאָחִיו עִם מִשְׁפְּחוֹתֵיהֶם, אֶל הָעֵמֶק אֲשֶׁר  
מִצְפּוֹן; וְשֵׁם הָעֵמֶק נִמְרֹד, כְּשֵׁם הַצִּיד הַגָּבוֹר.  
וְהֵם יִרְדּוּ שָׁמָּה עִם עֲדֵרֵיהֶם אֲשֶׁר אָסְפוּ, זָכָר  
וְנִקְבָּה מִכָּל מִין.
- 1 And it came to pass that Jared and his brother, and their families, and also the friends of Jared and his brother and their families, went down into the valley which was northward, (and the name of the valley was Nimrod, being called after the mighty hunter) with their flocks which they had gathered together, male and female, of every kind.
- וְהֵם הִטְמִינוּ פָּחִים וַצְדוּ מַעוֹף הַשָּׁמַיִם; וְהֵם  
בָּנוּ סִירָה וְנָשְׂאוּ בָּהּ אֶת דְּגֵי הַנְּהָרוֹת.
- 2 And they did also lay snares and catch fowls of the air; and they did also prepare a vessel, in which they did carry with them the fish of the waters.
- וְהֵם אָף נָשְׂאוּ עִמָּם דְּסֶרֶת, אֲשֶׁר פֶּשֶׁר  
דְּבוֹרַת דְּבֶשֶׁ. וְכֹה הֵם נָשְׂאוּ עִמָּם נְחִילֵי  
דְּבוֹרִים, וְכָל סוּג דְּבַר אֲשֶׁר עַל פָּנֵי הָאָרֶץ,  
זְרָעִים מִכָּל מִין.
- 3 And they did also carry with them deseret, which, by interpretation, is a honey bee; and thus they did carry with them swarms of bees, and all manner of that which was upon the face of the land, seeds of every kind.
- וְהָיָה בְּבוֹאֵם אֶל עֵמֶק נִמְרֹד, יִרְדּוּ יוֹהוּ וְדָבָר  
אֶל אָחִי יִרְדּוּ. וְהוּא בָּא בְּעָנָן וְלֹא נִרְאָה לְעֵינֵי  
אָחִי יִרְדּוּ.
- 4 And it came to pass that when they had come down into the valley of Nimrod the Lord came down and talked with the brother of Jared; and he was in a cloud, and the brother of Jared saw him not.
- וַיְהִי צֶמֶס לְלֶכֶת אֶל הַיַּעַר; אָכֵן, אֶל הָאֲזוּר  
אֲשֶׁר אִישׁ לֹא הָיָה בּוֹ מַעוֹלָם. וַיְהִי הַלֵּךְ  
לְפָנֵיהֶם; וְהוּא דִּבֶּר אֲלֵיהֶם, וְהוּא עוֹמֵד בְּתוֹךְ  
הָעָנָן וּמוֹרָה אֶת דְּרֹךְ מַסָּעָם.
- 5 And it came to pass that the Lord commanded them that they should go forth into the wilderness, yea, into that quarter where there never had man been. And it came to pass that the Lord did go before them, and did talk with them as he stood in a cloud, and gave directions whither they should travel.
- וְהֵם נָסְעוּ בַּיַּעַר וּבְנוּ אֲרָבוֹת; וְהֵם עָבְרוּ  
בָּהֶן בְּתוֹךְ מַיִם רַבִּים, וַיֵּד יוֹהוּ מוֹלִיכָה  
אוֹתָם כָּל הָעֵת.
- 6 And it came to pass that they did travel in the wilderness, and did build barges, in which they did cross many waters, being directed continually by the hand of the Lord.
- וַיְהִי לֹא הִתִּיר כִּי יִשְׁאָרוּ בַּיַּעַר אֲשֶׁר מַעְבָּר  
לָיִם כִּי אִם חִפְץ אֲשֶׁר יִמְשִׁיכוּ בְּמַסָּעָם, וַיְבֹאוּ  
אֶל הָאָרֶץ הַיְעוּדָה, אֲשֶׁר הִיא מִבְּחָר מִכָּל  
הָאֲרָצוֹת, אֲשֶׁר שָׁמָּה יוֹהוּ אֱלֹהִים לָעַם צִדִּיק.
- 7 And the Lord would not suffer that they should stop beyond the sea in the wilderness, but he would that they should come forth even unto the land of promise, which was choice above all other lands, which the Lord God had preserved for a righteous people.
- וְהוּא נִשְׁבַּע בְּחַמְתּוֹ לְאָחִי יִרְדּוּ כִּי כָּל הַנוֹחַל  
אֶת הָאָרֶץ הַיְעוּדָה הַזֹּאת, מִן הָעֵת הַהִיא וְעַד  
עוֹלָם, עָבוֹד יַעֲבֹדֶהּ, אֶת אֱלֹהֵי הָאֱמָת הַיְחִיד;  
וְלֹא, הַסְחָף יִסְחָפוּ בְּבוֹא מִלֵּא חַמְתּוֹ.
- 8 And he had sworn in his wrath unto the brother of Jared, that whoso should possess this land of promise, from that time henceforth and forever, should serve him, the true and only God, or they should be swept off when the fulness of his wrath should come upon them.

ועתה, רואים אנחנו את גזרת אלהים על הארץ הזאת, כי ארץ יעודה היא; וכל אמה אשר תנחל אותה תעבד את אלהים; ולא, יסחפו בבווא עליהם מלא חמתו. וחמת זעמו כתמה תבווא עליהם כאשר תמלא סאת עונם.

אכן, זאת ארץ מבחר מכל הארצות; על כן, הנוחל אותה יעבד את אלהים; ולא, יסחף יסחפו, כי גזרת עולם היא מאת אלהים. ולא יסחפו, כי אם כאשר תמלא סאת העון בקרב בני הארץ.

וזאת בא אליכם, הגויים, למען תדעו את גזרות אלהים, בעבור תנחמו מרע, ולכל תוסיפו לעונות עד אשר תמלא הסאה, בעבור לא תעירו את מלא חמת אלהים עליכם, כאשר עשו יושבי הארץ לפניכם.

הנה, ארץ מבחר היא, וכל אמה אשר תנחלה חפשיית תהיה משעבוד ומשבי ומכל שאר האמות אשר תחת השמים, אם אף יעבדו את אלהי הארץ, אשר הוא ישוע המשיח, אשר התגלה בדברים אשר כתבנום.

ועתה אשוב אל כתב זכרונותי. ויהוה הביא את ירד ואת עמיתיו אל הים הגדול המפריד בין היבשות. והיה בבוואם אל הים, הם נטו את אהליהם; והם קראו את שם המקום מוריאנקומר; והם שכנו באהלים על חוף הים במשך ארבע שנים.

והיה כולם ארבע שנים בא יהוה שנית אל אחי ירד; והוא עמד בענן ודבר עמו. ובמשך שלש שעות דבר יהוה עם אחי ירד והוכיחו על פי לא זכר לקרא בשם יהוה.

ואחי ירד נחם על רעתו אשר עשה וקרא בשם יהוה למען רעיו אשר עמו. ואמר אליו יהוה: סלחתי לך ולאחייך על חטאיכם; אף אל תוסף לחטא, כי זכור תזכרו כי לא ידון רוחי באדם לעולם; על כן, אם תחטאו עד המלא הסאה, הכרת תכרתו מלפני יהוה. אלה מחשבותי על הארץ אשר אתנד לנחלה, כי היא ארץ מבחר מכל הארצות.

9 And now, we can behold the decrees of God concerning this land, that it is a land of promise; and whatsoever nation shall possess it shall serve God, or they shall be swept off when the fulness of his wrath shall come upon them. And the fulness of his wrath cometh upon them when they are ripened in iniquity.

10 For behold, this is a land which is choice above all other lands; wherefore he that doth possess it shall serve God or shall be swept off; for it is the everlasting decree of God. And it is not until the fulness of iniquity among the children of the land, that they are swept off.

11 And this cometh unto you, O ye Gentiles, that ye may know the decrees of God—that ye may repent, and not continue in your iniquities until the fulness come, that ye may not bring down the fulness of the wrath of God upon you as the inhabitants of the land have hitherto done.

12 Behold, this is a choice land, and whatsoever nation shall possess it shall be free from bondage, and from captivity, and from all other nations under heaven, if they will but serve the God of the land, who is Jesus Christ, who hath been manifested by the things which we have written.

13 And now I proceed with my record; for behold, it came to pass that the Lord did bring Jared and his brethren forth even to that great sea which divideth the lands. And as they came to the sea they pitched their tents; and they called the name of the place Moriancumer; and they dwelt in tents, and dwelt in tents upon the seashore for the space of four years.

14 And it came to pass at the end of four years that the Lord came again unto the brother of Jared, and stood in a cloud and talked with him. And for the space of three hours did the Lord talk with the brother of Jared, and chastened him because he remembered not to call upon the name of the Lord.

15 And the brother of Jared repented of the evil which he had done, and did call upon the name of the Lord for his brethren who were with him. And the Lord said unto him: I will forgive thee and thy brethren of their sins; but thou shalt not sin any more, for ye shall remember that my Spirit will not always strive with man; wherefore, if ye will sin until ye are fully ripe ye shall be cut off from the presence of the Lord. And these are my thoughts upon the land which I shall give you for your inheritance; for it shall be a land choice above all other lands.

- 16 ואמר יהוה: לך ועבד, ובנית ארבות באפן אשר בנית עד עתה. ואחי ירד הלך ועבד, וכן עשו עמיתיו; והם בנו ארבות באפן אשר בנו לפני כן, כפי אשר הורם יהוה. והארבות היו קטנות והיו קלות על פני המים, כקלות עוף השט על פניהם.
- 17 והן נבנו באפן אשר היו אטומות היטב, עד כי יכלו להכיל מים כקערה; ותחתיתן היתה אטומה כקערה; וצדן היה אטום כקערה; וקצותיו הסתימו בחד ותקרתן היתה אטומה כקערה; וארכן היה כארץ עץ; ובהסגר פתח הארבה, היתה דלתה צמודה כקערה.
- 18 ואחי ירד קרא אל יהוה לאמר: יהוה, עשיתי את אשר צויתני; ובנית את הארבות כפי אשר הוריתני.
- 19 והנה, יהוה, אין בהן אור; לאן נכון מהלכנו? ואף נאבד, כי לא נוכל לנשם בהן, וזולת האויר אשר בתוכן; לכן נאבד.
- 20 ואמר יהוה אל אחי ירד: הנה, תעשה לך חור בתקרה, ואף בתחתית; וכי יחסר לך אויר, ותלצת את מגופת החור ותקבל אויר. וכי יבואו המים עליך, והנה הנפת את החור, ולא אבדת בשטף.
- 21 ואחי ירד עשה כן, כמצות יהוה.
- 22 ואחי ירד הוסיף לקרא אל יהוה לאמר: יהוה, הנה עשיתי כאשר צויתני; והכינותי את הספינות בעבור אנשי, והנה אין בהן אור. התתננו יהוה, לעבר את הים הגדול הזה בחשכה?
- 23 ואמר יהוה אל אחי ירד: מה תפצצם כי אעשה בעבור יהיה אור בספינותיכם? הן אין לעשות בהם חלונות, פן יתנפצו; ואש אל לכם לקחת עמכם, כי לא תסעו לאור אש.
- 24 אכן, כליתן בתוך הים תהיו, כי גלים אדירים יתנפצו עליכם; אף אני אעלכם ממעמקי הים; כי הרוחות יצאו מפי, ואף את הגשם ואת מי השטפון אני שלחתי.
- And the Lord said: Go to work and build, after the manner of barges which ye have hitherto built. And it came to pass that the brother of Jared did go to work, and also his brethren, and built barges after the manner which they had built, according to the instructions of the Lord. And they were small, and they were light upon the water, even like unto the lightness of a fowl upon the water.
- And they were built after a manner that they were exceedingly tight, even that they would hold water like unto a dish; and the bottom thereof was tight like unto a dish; and the sides thereof were tight like unto a dish; and the ends thereof were peaked; and the top thereof was tight like unto a dish; and the length thereof was the length of a tree; and the door thereof, when it was shut, was tight like unto a dish.
- And it came to pass that the brother of Jared cried unto the Lord, saying: O Lord, I have performed the work which thou hast commanded me, and I have made the barges according as thou hast directed me.
- And behold, O Lord, in them there is no light; whither shall we steer? And also we shall perish, for in them we cannot breathe, save it is the air which is in them; therefore we shall perish.
- And the Lord said unto the brother of Jared: Behold, thou shalt make a hole in the top, and also in the bottom; and when thou shalt suffer for air thou shalt unstop the hole and receive air. And if it be so that the water come in upon thee, behold, ye shall stop the hole, that ye may not perish in the flood.
- And it came to pass that the brother of Jared did so, according as the Lord had commanded.
- And he cried again unto the Lord saying: O Lord, behold I have done even as thou hast commanded me; and I have prepared the vessels for my people, and behold there is no light in them. Behold, O Lord, wilt thou suffer that we shall cross this great water in darkness?
- And the Lord said unto the brother of Jared: What will ye that I should do that ye may have light in your vessels? For behold, ye cannot have windows, for they will be dashed in pieces; neither shall ye take fire with you, for ye shall not go by the light of fire.
- For behold, ye shall be as a whale in the midst of the sea; for the mountain waves shall dash upon you. Nevertheless, I will bring you up again out of the depths of the sea; for the winds have gone forth out of my mouth, and also the rains and the floods have I sent forth.



## אתר ב:כה-ג:ו

והנני מכין אתכם לעמד עליהם; כי לא תוכלו לעבר את תהום רבה הזאת בלתי אם אכניכם לעמד על גלי הים ועל הרוחות אשר יצאו, ועל מי השטפון אשר יבואו. על כן, מה חפצכם כי אכין לכם, בעבור יהיה לכם אור, עת תבלעו במעמקי הים?

25 And behold, I prepare you against these things; for ye cannot cross this great deep save I prepare you against the waves of the sea, and the winds which have gone forth, and the floods which shall come. Therefore what will ye that I should prepare for you that ye may have light when ye are swallowed up in the depths of the sea?

## ג

ושמונה היה מספר הספינות הבניות. והיה כי אחי ירד יצא אל ההר, אשר קראוהו הר שלם מפני גבהו הרב, והוא התמיד שש עשרה אבנים קטנות מתוך סלע; והאבנים היו לבנות ובהירות, שקופות כזכוכית; והוא נשאן בידיו אל פסגת ההר וקרא שנית אל יהוה לאמר:

יהוה, אמרת כי יקיפוננו מי השטפון; ועתה, יהוה, אל נא יחר אפך בעבדך על חלשותי לפניך; הן ידענו כי קדוש אתה, שוכן מרומים, וכי לא ראויים אנחנו לפניך; לאחר נפילת האדם הורע בהתמדה טבענו; ואולם אתה, יהוה, צויתנו לקרא אליך, בעבור נקבל ממך כפי חפצנו.

הנה, יהוה, הפיתנו על עווננו, וגרשתנו; וכל השנים הרבות האלה היינו ביערות; ואולם רחמתנו חננו יהוה והסיר מעמך זה, ואל נא תתנם להלך באפלה דרך תהום סועה זאת; אף הבט אל הדברים האלה אשר התכתי מתוך הסלע.

ידעתי, יהוה, כי לך מלא הכח, וכי בידך לעשות למען האדם ככל אשר תחפץ. על כן, גע נא יהוה באצבעך באבנים האלה וכוונן להאיר בחשכה; והן יאירו לנו בספינות אשר הכינונו, בעבור יהיה לנו אור בעת עברנו בים.

הן אתה, יהוה, יכול לעשות זאת. ידענו כי בידך להראות כח רב, הנראה קטן להבנת בני אדם.

והיה כאשר אמר אחי ירד את הדברים האלה, והנה הושיט יהוה את ידו, ונגע באבנים באצבעו, אחת אחת. והלוט הוסר מעיני אחי ירד, והוא ראה את אצבע יהוה;

## 3

1 And it came to pass that the brother of Jared, (now the number of the vessels which had been prepared was eight) went forth unto the mount, which they called the mount Shelem, because of its exceeding height, and did molten out of a rock sixteen small stones; and they were white and clear, even as transparent glass; and he did carry them in his hands upon the top of the mount, and cried again unto the Lord, saying:

2 O Lord, thou hast said that we must be encompassed about by the floods. Now behold, O Lord, and do not be angry with thy servant because of his weakness before thee; for we know that thou art holy and dwellest in the heavens, and that we are unworthy before thee; because of the fall our natures have become evil continually; nevertheless, O Lord, thou hast given us a commandment that we must call upon thee, that from thee we may receive according to our desires.

3 Behold, O Lord, thou hast smitten us because of our iniquity, and hast driven us forth, and for these many years we have been in the wilderness; nevertheless, thou hast been merciful unto us. O Lord, look upon me in pity, and turn away thine anger from this thy people, and suffer not that they shall go forth across this raging deep in darkness; but behold these things which I have molten out of the rock.

4 And I know, O Lord, that thou hast all power, and can do whatsoever thou wilt for the benefit of man; therefore touch these stones, O Lord, with thy finger, and prepare them that they may shine forth in darkness; and they shall shine forth unto us in the vessels which we have prepared, that we may have light while we shall cross the sea.

5 Behold, O Lord, thou canst do this. We know that thou art able to show forth great power, which looks small unto the understanding of men.

6 And it came to pass that when the brother of Jared had said these words, behold, the Lord stretched forth his hand and touched the stones one by one with his finger. And the veil was taken from off the eyes of the brother of Jared, and he saw the finger of the Lord; and it was as the

## אתר ג:ז-יז

- וְהָיְתָה הָיָא כְּאַצְבַּע אָדָם, כְּבָשָׂר וָדָם. וְאַחִי  
יֵרֵד נָפֹל אֶרְצָה לִפְנֵי יְהוָה כִּי הִכְהוּ פָּחַד.
- וּבִרְאוֹתָו כִּי אָחִי יֵרֵד נָפֹל אֶרְצָה, אָמַר יְהוָה  
אֵלָיו: קוּם, מִדּוּעַ נָפַלְתָּ?
- וְהוּא אָמַר אֶל יְהוָה: רָאִיתִי אֶת אֶצְבַּע יְהוָה  
וְיִרְאתִי פָּן יִכְנִי, יַעַן אֲשֶׁר לֹא יָדַעְתִּי כִּי לִיהוָה  
בָּשָׂר וָדָם.
- וְאָמַר יְהוָה אֵלָיו: מִפְּנֵי אֲמוּנָתְךָ רָאִיתָ כִּי אֶלְבָּשׁ  
בָּשָׂר וָדָם; וּמַעוֹלָם לֹא בָּא לִפְנֵי אִישׁ בְּאֲמוּנָה  
כֹּה עֲזָה בְּאֲמוּנָתְךָ; לֹא־לֹא כֹן, לֹא יָכַלְתָּ לְרֹאוֹת  
אֶת אֶצְבָּעִי. הֲתִרְאָה יוֹתֵר מִזֹּאת?
- וְהוּא עָנָה: לֹא; יְהוָה, הֲרֹאֵנִי נָא אֶת מְרָאֲךְ.
- וְאָמַר יְהוָה אֵלָיו: הֲתֵאֱמִין בְּדְבָרִים אֲשֶׁר אֲדַבֵּר?
- וְהוּא עָנָה: אָכֵן, יְהוָה, יוֹדַע אֲנִי כִּי אֲמַת  
דְּבָרְךָ, כִּי אֱלֹהֵי אֲמַת אֲתָה, וְלֹא תִשְׁקַר.
- וְהָיָה כְּאַמְרוֹ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, וְהִנֵּה,  
הֲרֹאֵהוּ יְהוָה אֶת מְרָאֵהוּ, וְאָמַר: יַעַן אֲשֶׁר  
יָדַעְתָּ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, הִנֵּךְ גָּאוֹל מִנִּפְלִית  
הָאָדָם; עַל כֵּן תּוֹשֵׁב אֶל נֹכַח פָּנָי; עַל כֵּן  
הִתְגַּלִּיתִי אֵלָיְךָ.
- אֲנִכִּי הוּא אֲשֶׁר הוּכַן מִסּוּד הָעוֹלָם לְגַאֲלֵ אֶת  
עַמִּי. הִנֵּנִי יֹשֹׁעַ הַמְּשִׁיחַ. אֲנִכִּי הָאֵב וְהַבֵּן. בִּי  
יִחְיֶה כָּל בְּנֵי הָאָדָם, עַד עוֹלָם, אָכֵן, לְאֲשֶׁר  
יֵאֱמִינוּ בְּשִׁמִּי; וְהֵם יִהְיוּ בְּנֵי וּבָנוֹתִי.
- וּמַעוֹלָם לֹא הֲרֹאִיתִי אֶת מְרָאִי לְאִישׁ אֲשֶׁר  
בְּרָאתִי, כִּי מַעוֹלָם לֹא הֵאֱמִין בִּי אִישׁ כְּפִי  
אֲמוּנָתְךָ. הֲרֹאֵה אֲתָה כִּי נִבְרָאתָם כְּדְמוּתִי?  
אָכֵן, כָּל בְּנֵי הָאָדָם נִבְרָאוּ בְּרֹאשׁוֹנָה כְּדְמוּתִי.
- הִנֵּה, הַגּוֹף הַזֶּה, אֲשֶׁר רוּאָה אֲתָה עֲתָה,  
גּוֹף רוּחִי הוּא; וְאֵת הָאָדָם בְּרָאתִי בְּדְמוּת  
גּוֹף רוּחִי; וְכִפִּי אֲשֶׁר הוֹפַעְתִּי אֵלָיְךָ בְּרוּחַ,  
כֵּן אוֹפִיעַ אֶל עַמִּי בְּבָשָׂר.
- וְעַתָּה, אֲנִי, מוֹרוֹנִי, כְּפִי אֲשֶׁר אֲמַרְתִּי, לֹא  
יָכַלְתִּי לְסַפֵּר בְּמִלָּאָם אֶת הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר הֵם  
כְּתוּבִים; עַל כֵּן דִּי בְּאֲמַרְי כִּי יֹשֹׁעַ הִתְגַּלָּה
- finger of a man, like unto flesh and blood; and the brother of Jared fell  
down before the Lord, for he was struck with fear.
- 7 And the Lord saw that the brother of Jared had fallen to the earth; and  
the Lord said unto him: Arise, why hast thou fallen?
- 8 And he saith unto the Lord: I saw the finger of the Lord, and I feared lest  
he should smite me; for I knew not that the Lord had flesh and blood.
- 9 And the Lord said unto him: Because of thy faith thou hast seen that I  
shall take upon me flesh and blood; and never has man come before me  
with such exceeding faith as thou hast; for were it not so ye could not  
have seen my finger. Sawest thou more than this?
- 10 And he answered: Nay; Lord, show thyself unto me.
- 11 And the Lord said unto him: Believest thou the words which I shall speak?
- 12 And he answered: Yea, Lord, I know that thou speakest the truth, for  
thou art a God of truth, and canst not lie.
- 13 And when he had said these words, behold, the Lord showed himself  
unto him, and said: Because thou knowest these things ye are redeemed  
from the fall; therefore ye are brought back into my presence; therefore  
I show myself unto you.
- 14 Behold, I am he who was prepared from the foundation of the world  
to redeem my people. Behold, I am Jesus Christ. I am the Father and  
the Son. In me shall all mankind have life, and that eternally, even they  
who shall believe on my name; and they shall become my sons and  
my daughters.
- 15 And never have I showed myself unto man whom I have created,  
for never has man believed in me as thou hast. Seest thou that ye are  
created after mine own image? Yea, even all men were created in the  
beginning after mine own image.
- 16 Behold, this body, which ye now behold, is the body of my spirit; and  
man have I created after the body of my spirit; and even as I appear  
unto thee to be in the spirit will I appear unto my people in the flesh.
- 17 And now, as I, Moroni, said I could not make a full account of these  
things which are written therefore it sufficeth me to say that Jesus  
showed himself unto this man in the spirit, even after the manner and

## אתר ג:יח-כו

- אֶל הָאִישׁ הַזֶּה בְּרוּחַ, בְּאִפֹּן וּבְדַמוֹת אוֹתוֹ  
הַגּוֹף אֲשֶׁר הָרָאָה עֲצָמוֹ אֶל הַנְּפִיִּים.
- 18 And he ministered unto him even as he ministered unto the Nephites; and all this, that this man might know that he was God, because of the many great works which the Lord had showed unto him.
- וְהוּא שָׁמַשׁ לְפָנָיו כְּפִי אֲשֶׁר שָׁמַשׁ אֶת  
הַנְּפִיִּים; וְכָל זֹאת בְּעֵבֹר יָדַע הָאִישׁ הַזֶּה  
כִּי הוּא אֱלֹהִים, מִפְּנֵי הַמַּעֲשִׂים הַגְּדוֹלִים  
וְהַרְבֵּים אֲשֶׁר יְהוָה הָרָאָהוּ.
- 19 And because of the knowledge of this man he could not be kept from beholding within the veil; and he saw the finger of Jesus, which, when he saw, he fell with fear; for he knew that it was the finger of the Lord; and he had faith no longer, for he knew, nothing doubting.
- וּמִפְּנֵי הַיָּדִיעָה אֲשֶׁר לְאִישׁ הַזֶּה, לֹא נִתֵּן הָיָה  
לְמַנְעוֹ מִהִבִּיט אֶל מַעְבָּר לָלוֹט; וְהוּא רָאָה אֶת  
אֶצְבַּע יֵשׁוּעַ. וְכִרְאוֹתָיו אוֹתָהּ, הוּא נָפַל בְּאִימָה,  
יַעַן אֲשֶׁר יָדַע כִּי אֶצְבַּע יְהוָה הִיא; וְלֹא הָיְתָה  
לוֹ עוֹד אֱמוּנָה, כִּי יָדוּעַ יָדַע, לֵלֵא כָּל סִפְקָ.
- 20 Wherefore, having this perfect knowledge of God, he could not be kept from within the veil; therefore he saw Jesus; and he did minister unto him.
- עַל כֵּן, בְּהִיּוֹתוֹ בְּעַל יָדִיעַת אֱלֹהִים שְׁלֵמָה,  
לֹא נִתֵּן הָיָה לְמַנְעוֹ מִהִבִּיט אֶל מַעְבָּר לָלוֹט;  
לְכֵן הוּא רָאָה אֶת יֵשׁוּעַ, וְהוּא שָׁמַשׁ לְפָנָיו.
- 21 And it came to pass that the Lord said unto the brother of Jared: Behold, thou shalt not suffer these things which ye have seen and heard to go forth unto the world, until the time cometh that I shall glorify my name in the flesh; wherefore, ye shall treasure up the things which ye have seen and heard, and show it to no man.
- וְאָמַר יְהוָה אֶל אָחִי יָרֵד: לֹא תִתֵּן כִּי יֵצְאוּ  
הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר רָאִיתָ וְשָׁמַעְתָּ אֶל הָעוֹלָם, עַד  
בּוֹא הָעֵת אֲשֶׁר אֶפְאַר אֶת שְׁמִי בְּבָשׂוֹר. עַל כֵּן  
אֶצְרָתָ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר רָאִיתָ וְשָׁמַעְתָּ וְלֹא  
תִרְאֶם לְאִישׁ.
- 22 And behold, when ye shall come unto me, ye shall write them and shall seal them up, that no one can interpret them; for ye shall write them in a language that they cannot be read.
- וְהִנֵּה, בְּבוֹאֲךָ אֵלַי תִּכְתְּבֵם וְתִחַתְּמֵם, לְכָל  
יְבָאֲרָם אִישׁ, כִּי בְשָׁפָה אֲשֶׁר לֹא יִקְרָאוּ  
תִּכְתְּבֵם.
- 23 And behold, these two stones will I give unto thee, and ye shall seal them up also with the things which ye shall write.
- הִנֵּה, אֶת שְׁתֵּי הָאֲבָנִים הָאֵלֶּה אֶתֵּן לָךְ,  
וְתִחַתְּמָתָ אִף אוֹתָן עִם הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר תִּכְתֹּב.
- 24 For behold, the language which ye shall write I have confounded; wherefore I will cause in my own due time that these stones shall magnify to the eyes of men these things which ye shall write.
- כִּי אֶת הַשָּׁפָה אֲשֶׁר תִּכְתֹּב, בְּלִבְלָתִי; עַל כֵּן  
אֶתֵּן, בְּעֵת אֲשֶׁר תִּישֹׁר בְּעֵינִי, כִּי יִגְדִּילוּ  
הָאֲבָנִים הָאֵלֶּה לְעֵינֵי בְנֵי הָאָדָם אֶת הַדְּבָרִים  
הָאֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר תִּכְתֹּב.
- 25 And when the Lord had said these words, he showed unto the brother of Jared all the inhabitants of the earth which had been, and also all that would be; and he withheld them not from his sight, even unto the ends of the earth.
- וְאַחֵר דִּבֶּר יְהוָה אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, הוּא  
הָרָאָה לְאָחִי יָרֵד אֶת כָּל יוֹשְׁבֵי תֵּבֶל אֲשֶׁר  
הָיוּ, וְאִף אֶת כָּל אֲשֶׁר יִהְיוּ. וְהוּא לֹא מָנְעוּ  
מִהִבִּיט בָּהֶם, אִף עַד קְצוֹי אֶרֶץ.
- 26 For he had said unto him in times before, that if he would believe in him that he could show unto him all things—it should be shown unto him; therefore the Lord could not withhold anything from him, for he knew that the Lord could show him all things.
- כִּי הוּא אָמַר אֵלָיו לְפָנִים כִּי אָבִן, אִם יֵאֱמִין  
כִּי יוּכַל הוּא לְהָרְאוֹתוֹ אֶת כָּל הַדְּבָרִים, הָרָאָה  
יָרְאוּ לוֹ. לְכֵן, לֹא הָיָה בְּיַד יְהוָה לְמַנֵּעַ מִמֶּנּוּ דְּבָר,  
יַעַן אֲשֶׁר יָדַע כִּי יֻכֹּל יְהוָה לְהָרְאוֹתוֹ אֶת  
כָּל הַדְּבָרִים.

27 ואמר יהוה אלי: כתב את הדברים האלה וחתמם אותם; ואני אראם לבני האדם בעת אשר תישר בעיני.

27 And the Lord said unto him: Write these things and seal them up; and I will show them in mine own due time unto the children of men.

28 ויהיה צוה את אחי ירד לחתם את שתי האבנים אשר קבל ולא להראותן, עד אשר יראו יהוה לבני האדם.

28 And it came to pass that the Lord commanded him that he should seal up the two stones which he had received, and show them not, until the Lord should show them unto the children of men.

## ד

## 4

ויהיה צוה את אחי ירד לרדת מן ההר, מלפני יהוה, ולכתב את הדברים אשר ראה; והם היו אסורים לבוא אל בני האדם כי אם אחר עלותו על הצלב. ועל כן שמרם המלך מושיע, בעבור לא יצאו אל הקהל כי אם אחר הראות המשיח עצמו לעמו.

1 And the Lord commanded the brother of Jared to go down out of the mount from the presence of the Lord, and write the things which he had seen; and they were forbidden to come unto the children of men until after that he should be lifted up upon the cross; and for this cause did king Mosiah keep them, that they should not come unto the world until after Christ should show himself unto his people.

ואחר אשר התגלה ישוע אל עמו, הוא צוה כי יתגלו.

2 And after Christ truly had showed himself unto his people he commanded that they should be made manifest.

ואחר כל זאת שקעו כלם בחסר אמונה; ואין איש זולת הלמנים, והם מאסו בבשורת המשיח; על כן מצוה אני כי יצפנו שנית באדמה.

3 And now, after that, they have all dwindled in unbelief; and there is none save it be the Lamanites, and they have rejected the gospel of Christ; therefore I am commanded that I should hide them up again in the earth.

הנה, כתבתי על הלוחות האלה את עצם הדברים אשר ראה אחי ירד; ומעולם לא התגלו לעיני איש דברים גדולים מאלה אשר התגלו לאחי ירד.

4 Behold, I have written upon these plates the very things which the brother of Jared saw; and there never were greater things made manifest than those which were made manifest unto the brother of Jared.

על כן צוני יהוה לכתבם, ואני כתבתי. והוא צוני לחתם אותם; והוא אף צוני לחתם את באורם; לכן חתמתי את כלי הבאור, כפי מצות יהוה.

5 Wherefore the Lord hath commanded me to write them; and I have written them. And he commanded me that I should seal them up; and he also hath commanded that I should seal up the interpretation thereof; wherefore I have sealed up the interpreters, according to the commandment of the Lord.

כי כה אמר יהוה אלי: לא יצאו הם אל הגוים עד היום אשר ישוּבו מעוונם ויטהרו לפני יהוה.

6 For the Lord said unto me: They shall not go forth unto the Gentiles until the day that they shall repent of their iniquity, and become clean before the Lord.

וביום אשר יאמינו בי, נאום יהוה, כהאמין בי אחי ירד, בעבור יתקדשו בי, אזי אגלה להם את הדברים אשר ראה אחי ירד, ואף אפרש לפניהם את כל גלויי נאום ישוע המשיח, בן אלהים, אבי שמים וארץ וכל אשר בם.

7 And in that day that they shall exercise faith in me, saith the Lord, even as the brother of Jared did, that they may become sanctified in me, then will I manifest unto them the things which the brother of Jared saw, even to the unfolding unto them all my revelations, saith Jesus Christ, the Son of God, the Father of the heavens and of the earth, and all things that in them are.

- 8 ואֲשֶׁר יֵצֵא עַל דְּבַר יְהוָה, אֲרוּר יִהְיֶה; וְאֲשֶׁר יִכְחַשׁ בַּדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, אֲרוּר יִהְיֶה; כִּי לָהֶם לֹא אֶרְאֶה גְדֻלּוֹת מַאֲלָה, נְאוּם יֵשׁוּעַ הַמְּשִׁיחַ; כִּי אֲנִי הוּא אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר.
- 9 לְפַקְדֹתַי נִפְתָּחִים הַשָּׁמַיִם, אִף נִסְגָּרִים; וּבִדְבָרִי תִרְעַד הָאָרֶץ וּבִמְצֻוֹתַי יִחְלְפוּ מִמּוֹנָה יוֹשְׁבֶיהָ, כְּמַאֲכֶלֶת אֵשׁ.
- 10 וְאֲשֶׁר אֵינָנו מֵאֲמִין לְדְבָרִי, אֵינָנו מֵאֲמִין לְתַלְמִידִי. וְאִם לֹא אֲנִי הוּא הַמְּדַבֵּר, שִׁפְטוּ אַתֶּם; כִּי יָדוּעַ תִּדְעוּ בַּיּוֹם הָאֲחֵרוֹן כִּי, אֲכֹן, אֲנִי הַמְּדַבֵּר.
- 11 אִף הַמֵּאֲמִין לְדְבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר דִּבַּרְתִּי, אוֹתוֹ אֶפְקֹד בְּגִלְיוֹי רוּחִי; וְהוּא יֵדַע וְיַעֲשֶׂה עַל כֵּן; כִּי מִפְּנֵי רוּחִי יֵדַע כִּי אֶמֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה; כִּי מְשַׁכְנֵעִים הֵם אֶת בְּנֵי הָאָדָם לְהִיטִיב עֲשׂוֹת.
- 12 וְכָל דְּבַר הַמְּשַׁכְנֵעַ אֶת בְּנֵי הָאָדָם לְהִיטִיב, מִפְּנֵי הוּא; כִּי אֵין הַטוֹב בָּא כִּי אִם מִפְּנֵי. אֲנֹכִי הוּא הַמּוֹלִיד אֶת בְּנֵי הָאָדָם אֶל כָּל הַטוֹב. וְאֲשֶׁר לֹא יֵאֲמִין לְדְבָרִי, לֹא יֵאֲמִין לִי כִּי אֲנִי הוּא; וְאֲשֶׁר לֹא יֵאֲמִין לִי, לֹא יֵאֲמִין לְאָב אֲשֶׁר שְׁלַחְנִי. כִּי הִנֵּה, אֲנֹכִי הָאָב, וְאֲנֹכִי אוֹר הָעוֹלָם וְחַיִּיו וְאַמְתָּתוֹ.
- 13 בּוֹאוּ אֵלַי, הַגּוֹיִים, וְאֶרְאֶה לָכֶם אֶת הַגְּדֻלּוֹת, אֲשֶׁר יִדְעֶתֶן נִסְתָּרֹת מִפְּנֵי חֹסֶר אֱמוּנָה.
- 14 בּוֹאוּ אֵלַי, בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל וְיִתְגַּלֶּה לְעֵינֵיכֶם, מֵה גְדֻלִּים הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר אֶצֶר הָאָב בְּעִבּוּרְכֶם, מִיִּסּוּד הָעוֹלָם; וְלֹא בָאוּ אֵלֵיכֶם מִפְּנֵי חֹסֶר אֱמוּנָה.
- 15 אֲכֹן, בְּקִרְעֶכֶם אֶת לוֹט חֹסֶר הָאֱמוּנָה הַהוּא, הַמִּסֵּב לָכֶם לְהִשָּׁאֵר בְּמַצֵּב הָרָשָׁע הַנּוֹרָא אֲשֶׁר בּוֹ אַתֶּם שְׂרוּיִים, וּבִקְשֵׁי הַלֵּב וּבְעִוְרוֹן הַדַּעַת, אֲנִי הַנִּפְלְאוֹת הַגְּדֻלּוֹת אֲשֶׁר הִסְתָּרוּ מִכֶּם מִיִּסּוּד הָעוֹלָם, אֲכֹן, בְּקִרְאֲכֶם אֶל הָאָב בְּשֵׁמִי, בְּלֵב נִשְׁבֵּר וּבְרוּחַ נִכְאָה, אֲנִי תִדְעוּ כִּי זֹכֵר הָאָב אֶת הַבְּרִית אֲשֶׁר כָּרַת לְאֲבוֹתֵיכֶם, בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל.
- 16 אֲנִי יִפְרְשׂוּ לְעֵינַי כָּל הָעָם דְּבָרֵי גִלְיוֹי אֲשֶׁר צִוִּיתִי כִּי יִכְתְּבוּ בְּיַד עַבְדִּי יוֹחָנָן; וְזָכוּ כִּי
- 8 And he that will contend against the word of the Lord, let him be accursed; and he that shall deny these things, let him be accursed; for unto them will I show no greater things, saith Jesus Christ; for I am he who speaketh.
- 9 And at my command the heavens are opened and are shut; and at my word the earth shall shake; and at my command the inhabitants thereof shall pass away, even so as by fire.
- 10 And he that believeth not my words believeth not my disciples; and if it so be that I do not speak, judge ye; for ye shall know that it is I that speaketh, at the last day.
- 11 But he that believeth these things which I have spoken, him will I visit with the manifestations of my Spirit, and he shall know and bear record. For because of my Spirit he shall know that these things are true; for it persuadeth men to do good.
- 12 And whatsoever thing persuadeth men to do good is of me; for good cometh of none save it be of me. I am the same that leadeth men to all good; he that will not believe my words will not believe me—that I am; and he that will not believe me will not believe the Father who sent me. For behold, I am the Father, I am the light, and the life, and the truth of the world.
- 13 Come unto me, O ye Gentiles, and I will show unto you the greater things, the knowledge which is hid up because of unbelief.
- 14 Come unto me, O ye house of Israel, and it shall be made manifest unto you how great things the Father hath laid up for you, from the foundation of the world; and it hath not come unto you, because of unbelief.
- 15 Behold, when ye shall rend that veil of unbelief which doth cause you to remain in your awful state of wickedness, and hardness of heart, and blindness of mind, then shall the great and marvelous things which have been hid up from the foundation of the world from you—yea, when ye shall call upon the Father in my name, with a broken heart and a contrite spirit, then shall ye know that the Father hath remembered the covenant which he made unto your fathers, O house of Israel.
- 16 And then shall my revelations which I have caused to be written by my servant John be unfolded in the eyes of all the people. Remember,



## אתר ד:יז-ה:ו

בראותכם את הדברים האלה, ידוע תדעו כי  
קרבה עת הופעתם והוצאתם במעשה.

when ye see these things, ye shall know that the time is at hand that  
they shall be made manifest in very deed.

על כן, בקבלכם את כתב הזכרון הזה, תדעו  
כי החלה פעלת האב על כל פני הארץ.

17 Therefore, when ye shall receive this record ye may know that the work  
of the Father has commenced upon all the face of the land.

על כן, שובו כל אפסי ארץ ובואו אלי,  
והאמינו בבשרתי, והטבלו בשמי; כי המאמין  
והמטבל, יושע; ואשר איננו מאמין, ארו  
יהיה; ואותות ילוו את המאמינים בשמי.

18 Therefore, repent all ye ends of the earth, and come unto me, and believe  
in my gospel, and be baptized in my name; for he that believeth and is  
baptized shall be saved; but he that believeth not shall be damned; and  
signs shall follow them that believe in my name.

ברוך האיש אשר ימצא שומר אמונים בשמי  
ביום האחרון, כי הוא ינשא לשכן במלכות  
המוקנה לו מיסוד העולם. הנה, אני הוא  
המדבר זאת. אמן.

19 And blessed is he that is found faithful unto my name at the last day, for  
he shall be lifted up to dwell in the kingdom prepared for him from the  
foundation of the world. And behold it is I that hath spoken it. Amen.

## ה

## 5

והנה, אני, מורוני, כתבתי את הדברים אשר  
צויתי עליהם, כפי זכרוני; ואף ספרתי לכם  
את הדברים אשר חתמתי. על כן, לא תגעו  
בהם לתרגום, כי אסור הדבר לכם לעשותו,  
כי אם בבוא שעתם כפי חכמת אלהים.

1 And now I, Moroni, have written the words which were commanded  
me, according to my memory; and I have told you the things which I  
have sealed up; therefore touch them not in order that ye may translate;  
for that thing is forbidden you, except by and by it shall be wisdom in  
God.

והנה, אכן תזכו להראות את הלוחות לאלה  
אשר יעזרו להוציא לאור את העבודה הזאת.

2 And behold, ye may be privileged that ye may show the plates unto  
those who shall assist to bring forth this work;

לעיני שלשה הם יראו בכח אלהים; לכן ידוע  
ידעו המה כי הדברים האלה אמת הם.

3 And unto three shall they be shown by the power of God; wherefore  
they shall know of a surety that these things are true.

ובפי שלשת העדים יכוננו הדברים האלה;  
ועדות שלשה והעבודה הזאת, אשר בה  
יראה כח אלהים וכן דברו, אשר עליו  
מעידים האב והבן ורוח הקדש, כל אלה  
יעמדו כעדות על בני תבל ביום האחרון.

4 And in the mouth of three witnesses shall these things be established;  
and the testimony of three, and this work, in the which shall be shown  
forth the power of God and also his word, of which the Father, and  
the Son, and the Holy Ghost bear record—and all this shall stand as a  
testimony against the world at the last day.

ואם אכן ינחמו על חטאייהם ויבואו אל האב  
בשם ישוע, יתקבלו הם אל מלכות אלהים.

5 And if it so be that they repent and come unto the Father in the name  
of Jesus, they shall be received into the kingdom of God.

ועתה, אם אין לי כח סמכות בדברים האלה,  
שפטו אתם; כי ידוע תדעו כי לי כח הסמכות  
בראותכם אותי בעמדנו לפני אלהים ביום  
האחרון. אמן.

6 And now, if I have no authority for these things, judge ye; for ye shall  
know that I have authority when ye shall see me, and we shall stand  
before God at the last day. Amen.

## 1

ועתה, אני, מורוני, מוסיף לרשם את כתבי הזכרונות אשר לירד ולאחיו.

והיה אחר אשר הכין יהוה את האבנים אשר נשא אחי ירד אל ההר, ירד אחי ירד מן ההר, ושם את האבנים בתוך הספינות, אשר הוכנו, אחת בקצה כל ספינה. והנה הן האירו לספינות.

וכה הסב יהוה לאבנים כי תזהרנה באפלה; להאיר לגברים ולנשים ולילדים, לכל יעברו את המים הרבים בחשכה.

והיה אחר הכינם כל מיני מזון, בעבור מחיתם על פני המים, וכן מזון בעבור צאנם ובקרים וכל בהמה וחייה ועוף, אשר נשא עמם; אכן, אחר עשותם כל זאת, הם עלו על ספינותיהם, או ארבותיהם, ויצאו אל הים, מפקידים עצמם בידי יהוה אלהיהם.

ויהוה אלהים השיב רוח עזה על פני המים ופניה אל עבר הארץ היעודה; וכה הם הטלטלו מפני הרוח על פני גלי הים.

פעמים רבות הם נקברו במעמקי הים, מפני הגלים האדירים אשר נשברו עליהם, ומפני הסופות הגדולות והנוראות אשר חוללה הרוח העזה.

ובעת אשר כסום התהומות, לא פגעו בהם המים, כי היו ספינותיהם אטומות כקערה ואטומות כתבת נח; על כן בעטף אותם מים רבים הם קראו אל יהוה והוא שב והעלים על פני המים.

והרוח לא חדלה לנשב אל עבר הארץ היעודה בעודם על פני המים; וכה הם נדפו מפני הרוח.

והם זמרו תהלות ליהוה; אכן, אחי ירד זמר תהלות ליהוה; כל היום הודה ליהוה והללו, ובבוא הלילה לא חדל פיהם לשבח את יהוה.

## 6

1 And now I, Moroni, proceed to give the record of Jared and his brother.

2 For it came to pass after the Lord had prepared the stones which the brother of Jared had carried up into the mount, the brother of Jared came down out of the mount, and he did put forth the stones into the vessels which were prepared, one in each end thereof; and behold, they did give light unto the vessels.

3 And thus the Lord caused stones to shine in darkness, to give light unto men, women, and children, that they might not cross the great waters in darkness.

4 And it came to pass that when they had prepared all manner of food, that thereby they might subsist upon the water, and also food for their flocks and herds, and whatsoever beast or animal or fowl that they should carry with them—and it came to pass that when they had done all these things they got aboard of their vessels or barges, and set forth into the sea, commending themselves unto the Lord their God.

5 And it came to pass that the Lord God caused that there should a furious wind blow upon the face of the waters, towards the promised land; and thus they were tossed upon the waves of the sea before the wind.

6 And it came to pass that they were many times buried in the depths of the sea, because of the mountain waves which broke upon them, and also the great and terrible tempests which were caused by the fierceness of the wind.

7 And it came to pass that when they were buried in the deep there was no water that could hurt them, their vessels being tight like unto a dish, and also they were tight like unto the ark of Noah; therefore when they were encompassed about by many waters they did cry unto the Lord, and he did bring them forth again upon the top of the waters.

8 And it came to pass that the wind did never cease to blow towards the promised land while they were upon the waters; and thus they were driven forth before the wind.

9 And they did sing praises unto the Lord; yea, the brother of Jared did sing praises unto the Lord, and he did thank and praise the Lord all the day long; and when the night came, they did not cease to praise the Lord.

## אתר וי-כא

- 10 And thus they were driven forth; and no monster of the sea could break them, neither whale that could mar them; and they did have light continually, whether it was above the water or under the water.
- 11 And thus they were driven forth, three hundred and forty and four days upon the water.
- 12 And they did land upon the shore of the promised land. And when they had set their feet upon the shores of the promised land they bowed themselves down upon the face of the land, and did humble themselves before the Lord, and did shed tears of joy before the Lord, because of the multitude of his tender mercies over them.
- 13 And it came to pass that they went forth upon the face of the land, and began to till the earth.
- 14 And Jared had four sons; and they were called Jacom, and Gilgah, and Mahah, and Orihah.
- 15 And the brother of Jared also begat sons and daughters.
- 16 And the friends of Jared and his brother were in number about twenty and two souls; and they also begat sons and daughters before they came to the promised land; and therefore they began to be many.
- 17 And they were taught to walk humbly before the Lord; and they were also taught from on high.
- 18 And it came to pass that they began to spread upon the face of the land, and to multiply and to till the earth; and they did wax strong in the land.
- 19 And the brother of Jared began to be old, and saw that he must soon go down to the grave; wherefore he said unto Jared: Let us gather together our people that we may number them, that we may know of them what they will desire of us before we go down to our graves.
- 20 And accordingly the people were gathered together. Now the number of the sons and the daughters of the brother of Jared were twenty and two souls; and the number of sons and daughters of Jared were twelve, he having four sons.
- 21 And it came to pass that they did number their people; and after that they had numbered them, they did desire of them the things which they would that they should do before they went down to their graves.
- וְכֵן הָיוּ נִדְחָיו הַלְּאָה, וְאֵף מִפְּלִצָּת יָם אַחַת לֹא יָכְלָה לְשֹׁבֵר אוֹתָם, אֵף לֹא פָּגַע בָּהֶם כָּל לַיְלָתוֹ; וְהָיָה לָהֶם אֹר תָּמִיד, עַל פְּנֵי הַמַּיִם, אוֹ תַּחְתִּיהֶם.
- וְכֵן הָיוּ נִדְחָיו הַלְּאָה עַל פְּנֵי הַמַּיִם, שְׁלֹשׁ מֵאוֹת וְאַרְבָּעִים וְאַרְבָּעָה יוֹם.
- וְהֵם הִגִּיעוּ אֶל הָאָרֶץ הַנְּעֻדָּה וְעָלוּ עַל חוּפָּהּ. וְהָיָה בְּהִצִּיגָם אֶת כַּף רַגְלָם עַל חוּפֵי הָאָרֶץ הַנְּעֻדָּה, הֵם הִשְׁתַּחֲווּ אֶרְצָה וְנִכְנְעוּ לִפְנֵי יְהוָה, וְשָׁפְכוּ דְמְעוֹת גִּיל לִפְנֵי יְהוָה עַל הַמְּוֹן רַחֲמָיו הַרְבִּים עֲלֵיהֶם.
- וְהֵם הִלְכוּ עַל פְּנֵי הָאָרֶץ, וְהִחֲלוּ לַעֲבֹד אֶת הָאֲדָמָה.
- וְיָרֵד הָיוּ אַרְבָּעָה בָּנִים; וְהֵם נִקְרְאוּ יָקוֹם, גִּילְגָּה, מָהָה וְאוֹרִיָּהָה.
- וְאֵף אַחֵי יָרֵד הוֹלִיד בָּנִים וּבָנוֹת.
- וּמִסְפַּר רֵעֵי יָרֵד וְאַחָיו כְּעֶשְׂרִים וּשְׁתֵּים נַפְשׁ. וְאֵף הֵם הוֹלִידוּ בָּנִים וּבָנוֹת לִפְנֵי בּוֹאָם אֶל הָאָרֶץ הַנְּעֻדָּה. עַל כֵּן הִחֲל מִסְפָּרָם לִפְרֹץ.
- וְהֵם לָמְדוּ לְהִצְנִיעַ לִכְתּ לִפְנֵי יְהוָה, וְהֵם אֵף לָמְדוּ מִמָּרוֹם.
- וְהֵם הִחֲלוּ לְהִתְפַּשֵּׁט עַל פְּנֵי הָאָרֶץ, וְהֵם רַבּוּ וְעָבְדוּ אֶת הָאֲדָמָה; וְהֵם עָשׂוּ חֵיל בָּאָרֶץ.
- וְאַחֵי יָרֵד זָקֵן וְרָאָה כִּי קָרְבָּה שְׁעָתוֹ לָרֶדֶת אֶלִי קֶבֶר. וְהוּא אָמַר אֶל יָרֵד: הִבֵּה נִקְבֵּץ אֶת אֲנָשֵׁינוּ לְמִנוּתָם, בְּעֵבֹר יוֹדִיעֵנוּ מִה חֲפָצָם מִמֶּנּוּ לִפְנֵי רִדְתָּנוּ אֶלִי קֶבֶר.
- וְכֵן נִקְבְּצוּ הָאֲנָשִׁים. וְהָיָה מִסְפַּר בְּנֵי אַחֵי יָרֵד וּבָנוֹתָיו עֶשְׂרִים וּשְׁתֵּים נַפְשׁ, וּמִסְפַּר בְּנֵי יָרֵד וּבָנוֹתָיו שְׁנַיִם עָשָׂר, וּבָהֶם אַרְבָּעָה בָּנִים.
- וְהֵם מְנוּ אֶת אֲנָשֵׁיהֶם, וְאַחֵר עָשׂוּתָם כֵּן הֵם שָׁאֲלוּ מִה חֲפָצָם כִּי יַעֲשׂוּ לִפְנֵי רִדְתָּם אֶלִי קֶבֶר.

- 22 And it came to pass that the people desired of them that they should anoint one of their sons to be a king over them.
- 23 And now behold, this was grievous unto them. And the brother of Jared said unto them: Surely this thing leadeth into captivity.
- 24 But Jared said unto his brother: Suffer them that they may have a king. And therefore he said unto them: Choose ye out from among our sons a king, even whom ye will.
- 25 And it came to pass that they chose even the firstborn of the brother of Jared; and his name was Pagag. And it came to pass that he refused and would not be their king. And the people would that his father should constrain him, but his father would not; and he commanded them that they should constrain no man to be their king.
- 26 And it came to pass that they chose all the brothers of Pagag, and they would not.
- 27 And it came to pass that neither would the sons of Jared, even all save it were one; and Orihah was anointed to be king over the people.
- 28 And he began to reign, and the people began to prosper; and they became exceedingly rich.
- 29 And it came to pass that Jared died, and his brother also.
- 30 And it came to pass that Orihah did walk humbly before the Lord, and did remember how great things the Lord had done for his father, and also taught his people how great things the Lord had done for their fathers.
- וְהָאֲנָשִׁים בִּקְשׁוּם כִּי יִמְשְׁחוּ אֶת אֶחָד מִבְּנֵיהֶם לְמֶלֶךְ עֲלֵיהֶם.
- וְאִיִּם, רַע הָיָה הַדָּבָר בְּעֵינֵיהֶם. וְאָמַר אֶלְיָהֶם אָחִי יָרֵד: הֵן יוֹלִיד הַדָּבָר לְשִׁעְבּוֹד.
- אָף יָרֵד אָמַר אֶל אָחִיו: הִנֵּחַ לָהֶם, וְהָיָה לָהֶם מֶלֶךְ. לָכֵן אָמַר אֶלְיָהֶם אָחִי יָרֵד: בַּחֲרוּ לָכֶם מֶלֶךְ מִבְּנֵי בְנֵינוּ, אֶת אֲשֶׁר תִּרְצוּהוּ.
- וְהֵם בַּחֲרוּ אֶת בְּכוֹר בְּנֵי אָחִי יָרֵד; וּשְׁמוֹ נִקְרָא פָּגָג; וְאִיִּם הוּא סָרַב וּמָאֵן לְמֶלֶךְ עֲלֵיהֶם.
- וְהָאֲנָשִׁים בִּקְשׁוּ כִּי יִשְׁדְּלוּ אָבִיו בְּדָבָרִים, אָף לֹא אָבָה אָבִיו לַעֲשׂוֹת כֵּן; וְהוּא צִוָּם כִּי לֹא יִשְׁדְּלוּ אִישׁ לַהֲיוֹת מֶלֶכָם.
- וְהָיָה כִּי הֵם בַּחֲרוּ בְּכָל אֶחָד מֵאֲחֵי פָּגָג, וְכָלֶם מֵאֵנוּ לְמֶלֶךְ עֲלֵיהֶם.
- אָף בְּנֵי יָרֵד מֵאֵנוּ לְמֶלֶךְ, וְזוֹלַת אֶחָד. וְאוֹרִיָּהָה נִמְשַׁח לְמֶלֶךְ עַל הָעָם.
- וְאוֹרִיָּהָה הֵחֵל לְמֶלֶךְ, וְהָאֲנָשִׁים רָאוּ בִּרְכָּה בְּעַמְלָם וְעָשְׂרוּ עַד מָאֵד.
- וְהָיָה כִּי מָת יָרֵד וְאָף מָת אָחִיו.
- וְאוֹרִיָּהָה הִצְנִיעַ לְכַת לִפְנֵי יְהוָה, וְזָכַר מֵה גְדוֹלִים הָיוּ מַעֲשֵׂי יְהוָה לְמַעַן אָבִיו, וְאָף לְמַד אֶת עַמּוֹ מֵה גְדוֹלִים הָיוּ מַעֲשֵׂי יְהוָה לְמַעַן אֲבוֹתֵיהֶם.

## ז

## 7

- 1 And it came to pass that Orihah did execute judgment upon the land in righteousness all his days, whose days were exceedingly many.
- 2 And he begat sons and daughters; yea, he begat thirty and one, among whom were twenty and three sons.
- 3 And it came to pass that he also begat Kib in his old age. And it came to pass that Kib reigned in his stead; and Kib begat Corihor.
- 4 And when Corihor was thirty and two years old he rebelled against his father, and went over and dwelt in the land of Nehor; and he begat sons
- וְהָיָה כִּי אוֹרִיָּהָה שָׁפַט בְּאֶרֶץ מִשְׁפָּט צָדִיק כָּל יָמָיו, וְהָיוּ יָמָיו רַבִּים מָאֵד.
- וְהוּא הוֹלִיד בָּנִים וּבָנוֹת; אֶכָּן, הוּא הוֹלִיד שְׁלֹשִׁים וְאַחָד, וּבָהֶם עֶשְׂרִים וּשְׁלֹשָׁה בָּנִים.
- וְהוּא הוֹלִיד אֶת קִיב לְעַת זְקוּנָיו. וְקִיב מֶלֶךְ תַּחְתָּיו; וְקִיב הוֹלִיד אֶת קוֹרִיָּהוֹר.
- וְהָיָה בְּהִיוֹת קוֹרִיָּהוֹר בֶּן שְׁלֹשִׁים וּשְׁתַּיִם שָׁנָה, הוּא מָרַד בְּאָבִיו וְהָלַךְ וְגָר בְּאֶרֶץ נְחוֹר. וְהוּא

- הוליד בנים ובנות, והם היו יפי תאר עד מאד; על כן הטא אליו קוריהור אנשים רבים ללכת אחריו.
- והוא אסף צבא ועלה אל ארץ מורון, מקום מושב המלך, והוא לקחו בשבי וכה התקיים דבר אחי ירד כי הם יפלו בשבי.
- וְאַרְץ מוֹרוֹן, אֲשֶׁר בָּהּ יָשַׁב הַמֶּלֶךְ, הָיְתָה לִיד הָאֲרֶץ אֲשֶׁר שְׁמָהּ נִקְרָא חֲרָבָה בְּפִי הַנְּפִיִּים.
- וְקִיב שָׁכַן בְּשָׁבִי, וְעָמְדוּ יוֹשְׁבֵי תַּחַת שְׁלֹטוֹן בְּנוֹ קוֹרִיחוֹר, עַד אֲשֶׁר זָקַן מְאֹד; וְאוֹלָם קִיב הוֹלִיד אֶת שׁוּל בְּיָמָיו זְקֵנָתוֹ, בְּעוֹדוֹ בְּשָׁבִי.
- וְשׁוּל כָּעַם עַל אָחִיו; וְשׁוּל חֲזָק וְהָיָה אִישׁ חָלִל אֲשֶׁר לוֹ כַּח גִּבּוֹר; וְכֹחוֹ רַב לוֹ אִף בְּשָׁפוּט.
- עַל כֵּן הוּא בָּא אֶל גִּבְעַת אֶפְרַיִם, וְהִתִּיד עֶפְרָה מִתּוֹכָהּ, וְעָשָׂה חֲרָבוֹת פְּלָדָה לְתַתּוֹ לְיָדֵי אֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר הָטָה אֵלָיו. וְאַחֵר אֲשֶׁר חִמְשָׁם בְּחֲרָבוֹת, הוּא שָׁב אֶל הָעִיר נְחוֹר וְנָלַחַם בְּאַחִיו קוֹרִיחוֹר; כֹּה הוּא תָּפַשׂ אֶת הַמְּלוּכָה וְהִשְׁיבָהּ לְאָבִיו, קִיב.
- וְעַל הַדָּבָר הַזֶּה אֲשֶׁר עָשָׂה שׁוּל, הָעֲנִיק לוֹ אָבִיו אֶת הַמְּלוּכָה. עַל כֵּן הוּא הִחֵל לְמִלְכָּה תַּחַת אָבִיו.
- וְהוּא שָׁפַט בְּצֶדֶק; וְהוּא פָּרַשׂ אֶת מַלְכוּתוֹ עַל כָּל פְּנֵי הָאֲרֶץ, כִּי רַב הָעָם וְעֶצֶם מְאֹד.
- וְאַף שׁוּל הוֹלִיד בָּנִים וּבָנוֹת רַבִּים.
- וְקוֹרִיחוֹר נָחַם עַל רָעָתוֹ אֲשֶׁר הָרַבָּה לַעֲשׂוֹת. עַל כֵּן נָתַן לוֹ שׁוּל שְׁרָרָה בְּמַמְלַכְתּוֹ.
- וְלְקוֹרִיחוֹר הָיוּ בָנִים וּבָנוֹת רַבִּים, וְשֵׁם אֶחָד מִבְּנֵי קוֹרִיחוֹר נֹחַ.
- וְנֹחַ מָרַד בְּשׁוּל הַמֶּלֶךְ וּבְאַבְיוֹ קוֹרִיחוֹר, וְהָטָה אֵלָיו אֶת קוֹחוֹר אָחִיו, וְכֹן אֶת כָּל אָחָיו וְאֵף רַבִּים מֵהָעָם.
- and daughters, and they became exceedingly fair; wherefore Corihor drew away many people after him.
- 5 And when he had gathered together an army he came up unto the land of Moron where the king dwelt, and took him captive, which brought to pass the saying of the brother of Jared that they would be brought into captivity.
- 6 Now the land of Moron, where the king dwelt, was near the land which is called Desolation by the Nephites.
- 7 And it came to pass that Kib dwelt in captivity, and his people under Corihor his son, until he became exceedingly old; nevertheless Kib begat Shule in his old age, while he was yet in captivity.
- 8 And it came to pass that Shule was angry with his brother; and Shule waxed strong, and became mighty as to the strength of a man; and he was also mighty in judgment.
- 9 Wherefore, he came to the hill Ephraim, and he did molten out of the hill, and made swords out of steel for those whom he had drawn away with him; and after he had armed them with swords he returned to the city Nehor and gave battle unto his brother Corihor, by which means he obtained the kingdom and restored it unto his father Kib.
- 10 And now because of the thing which Shule had done, his father bestowed upon him the kingdom; therefore he began to reign in the stead of his father.
- 11 And it came to pass that he did execute judgment in righteousness; and he did spread his kingdom upon all the face of the land, for the people had become exceedingly numerous.
- 12 And it came to pass that Shule also begat many sons and daughters.
- 13 And Corihor repented of the many evils which he had done; wherefore Shule gave him power in his kingdom.
- 14 And it came to pass that Corihor had many sons and daughters. And among the sons of Corihor there was one whose name was Noah.
- 15 And it came to pass that Noah rebelled against Shule, the king, and also his father Corihor, and drew away Cohor his brother, and also all his brethren and many of the people.



- 16 And he gave battle unto Shule the king, in which he did obtain the land of their first inheritance; and he became a king over that part of the land.
- וְהוּא נָלַחַם בַּמֶּלֶךְ שׁוּל, וּכְבַשׁ אֶת אֶרֶץ  
נַחֲלָתָם הָרִאשׁוֹנָה; וְהוּא מֶלֶךְ עַל חֶבֶל  
הָאֶרֶץ הַהוּא.
- 17 And it came to pass that he gave battle again unto Shule, the king; and he took Shule, the king, and carried him away captive into Moron.
- וְהוּא יָצָא שְׁנִית לַמִּלְחָמָה בַּמֶּלֶךְ שׁוּל.  
וְהוּא תָּפַשׂ אֶת הַמֶּלֶךְ שׁוּל וּלְקָחוּ בַּשָּׁבִי  
אֶל אֶרֶץ מוֹרוֹן.
- 18 And it came to pass as he was about to put him to death, the sons of Shule crept into the house of Noah by night and slew him, and broke down the door of the prison and brought out their father, and placed him upon his throne in his own kingdom.
- וְהָיָה בְּאַמְרוֹ לְהַמִּיתוֹ, הִתְגַּנְּבוּ בְּנֵי שׁוּל  
בַּלַּיְלָה אֶל בֵּית נֹחַ וְהִמִּיתוּהוּ; וְהֵם שָׁבְרוּ אֶת  
דֶּלֶת בֵּית הַכְּלָא וְהוֹצִיאוּ אֶת אָבִיהֶם  
וְהוֹשִׁיבוּהוּ עַל כִּסֵּי מַלְכוּתוֹ בְּמַמְלַכְתּוֹ.
- 19 Wherefore, the son of Noah did build up his kingdom in his stead; nevertheless they did not gain power any more over Shule the king, and the people who were under the reign of Shule the king did prosper exceedingly and wax great.
- וְהָיָה כִּי בֶן נֹחַ כּוֹנֵן אֶת הַמַּלְכוּת תַּחַת אָבִיו,  
וְאוּלָם עֲמֹ לֹא גָבַר עוֹד עַל הַמֶּלֶךְ שׁוּל, וְהָעָם  
אֲשֶׁר תַּחַת שְׁלֹטוֹן הַמֶּלֶךְ שׁוּל גָּדַל וְהִצְלַחְתָּם  
רַבְתָּה מְאֹד.
- 20 And the country was divided; and there were two kingdoms, the kingdom of Shule, and the kingdom of Cohor, the son of Noah.
- וְהָאֶרֶץ הִיטָּה מְחֻלָּקֶת לְשְׁתֵּי מַמְלָכוֹת,  
מַמְלַכֶּת שׁוּל וּמַמְלַכֶּת קוֹהוֹר, בֶּן נֹחַ.
- 21 And Cohor, the son of Noah, caused that his people should give battle unto Shule, in which Shule did beat them and did slay Cohor.
- וְקוֹהוֹר, בֶּן נֹחַ, צִוָּה אֶת עַמּוֹ לְהִלָּחֵם בְּשׁוּל.  
וְשׁוּל הִכָּם וְאֶת קוֹהוֹר הָרַג.
- 22 And now Cohor had a son who was called Nimrod; and Nimrod gave up the kingdom of Cohor unto Shule, and he did gain favor in the eyes of Shule; wherefore Shule did bestow great favors upon him, and he did do in the kingdom of Shule according to his desires.
- וּלְקוֹהוֹר בֶּן הַנֶּקְרָא בְּשֵׁם נִמְרֹד; וְנִמְרֹד עָזַב  
אֶת מַמְלַכֶּת קוֹהוֹר וְעָבַר אֶל שׁוּל, וְהָיָה כִּי  
הוּא מֵצָא חֵן בְּעֵינֵי שׁוּל, וְשׁוּל הִרְבֵּה חֲסָדָיו  
עֲמֹ וְנִמְרֹד עָשָׂה כְּחֻצּוֹ בְּמַמְלַכֶּת שׁוּל.
- 23 And also in the reign of Shule there came prophets among the people, who were sent from the Lord, prophesying that the wickedness and idolatry of the people was bringing a curse upon the land, and they should be destroyed if they did not repent.
- וְהָנָה, בִּימֵי הַמֶּלֶךְ שׁוּל, בָּאוּ נְבִיאִים בְּקֶרֶב  
הָעָם, שְׁלוּחִים מֵאֵת יְהוָה, וְנִבְּאוּ כִּי רָשָׁעַת  
הָעָם וְעִבּוּדֵת אֱלִילָיו יְמִיטוּ קָלָלָה עַל הָאֶרֶץ,  
וְכִי הֵם יִשְׁמְדוּ בְּלֹא אִם יֵשׁוּבוּ מִרְעֵתָם.
- 24 And it came to pass that the people did revile against the prophets, and did mock them. And it came to pass that king Shule did execute judgment against all those who did revile against the prophets.
- וּבְנֵי הָעָם גָּדְפוּ אֶת הַנְּבִיאִים וְלָעָגוּ לָהֶם.  
וְהַמֶּלֶךְ שׁוּל הִבִּיא לְמִשְׁפָּט אֶת כָּל  
מְגִדְּפֵי הַנְּבִיאִים.
- 25 And he did execute a law throughout all the land, which gave power unto the prophets that they should go whithersoever they would; and by this cause the people were brought unto repentance.
- וְהַמֶּלֶךְ חֹקֵק חֹק לְכָל הָאֶרֶץ, אֲשֶׁר יָפָה אֶת  
כָּח הַנְּבִיאִים לָלֶכֶת לְכָל אֲשֶׁר יִחְפְּצוּ; וּבִאֲפֹן  
זֶה הוּבָא הָעָם לְתַשׁוּבָה.
- 26 And because the people did repent of their iniquities and idolatries the Lord did spare them, and they began to prosper again in the land. And it came to pass that Shule begat sons and daughters in his old age.
- וַיַּעַן אֲשֶׁר שָׁבוּ הָעָם מִעֲוֹנָם וּמֵאִילִילוֹתָם חָס  
יְהוָה עַל חַיֵּיהֶם; וְהֵם שָׁבוּ לַעֲשׂוֹת חַיִּל בְּאֶרֶץ.  
וְהָיָה כִּי בִזְקֻנָּתוֹ הוֹלִיד שׁוּל בָּנִים וּבָנוֹת.

- 27 ולא היו עוד מלחמות בימי שול. והוא זכר את הגדולות אשר עשה יהוה לאבותיו בהביאם אותם דרך תהום רבה אל הארץ היעודה; לכן שפט בצדק כל ימיו.
- And there were no more wars in the days of Shule; and he remembered the great things that the Lord had done for his fathers in bringing them across the great deep into the promised land; wherefore he did execute judgment in righteousness all his days.

## ח

## 8

- 1 ושול הוליד את עמר, ועמר מלך תחתיו. ועמר הוליד את ירד; וירד הוליד בנים ובנות.
- And it came to pass that he begat Omer, and Omer reigned in his stead. And Omer begat Jared; and Jared begat sons and daughters.
- 2 וירד מרד באביו, והלך ושכן בארץ חת. והיה הדיח בחלקת לשונו אנשים רבים, כי דבר בערמה, עד אשר השיג את חצי הממלכה.
- And Jared rebelled against his father, and came and dwelt in the land of Heth. And it came to pass that he did flatter many people, because of his cunning words, until he had gained the half of the kingdom.
- 3 ואחר השיגו את חצי הממלכה הוא יצא למלחמה באביו, והוא לקחו בשבי ושעבדהו.
- And when he had gained the half of the kingdom he gave battle unto his father, and he did carry away his father into captivity, and did make him serve in captivity;
- 4 וימי עמר בשביה היו כמחצית ימי חייו. והוא הוליד בנים ובנות, ובהם עזרום וקוריאנטומר.
- And now, in the days of the reigns of Omer he was in captivity the half of his days. And it came to pass that he begat sons and daughters among whom were Esrom and Coriantumr;
- 5 והם רגזו מאד על מעשי ירד אחיהם, עד כי הקימו צבא ונלחמו בו; והם ערכו עמו קרב בלילה.
- And they were exceedingly angry because of the doings of Jared their brother, insomuch that they did raise an army and gave battle unto Jared. And it came to pass that they did give battle unto him by night.
- 6 והיה בהרגם את חיל ירד, הם אמרו אף להרגו. ואולם הוא הפציר בהם לבל יהרגוהו, ואמר כי ימסר את המלכות לאביו. ואכן הם חסו על נפשו.
- And it came to pass that when they had slain the army of Jared they were about to slay him also; and he plead with them that they would not slay him, and he would give up the kingdom unto his father. And it came to pass that they did grant unto him his life.
- 7 והיה אחר הדברים האלה, התעצב ירד מאד על כי אבדה לו המלכות, כי נפשו חשקה במלכות ובתהלת בני תבל.
- And now Jared became exceedingly sorrowful because of the loss of the kingdom, for he had set his heart upon the kingdom and upon the glory of the world.
- 8 ולירד בת חכמה ונבונה. ובראותה את יגון אביה זממה מזמה, אשר תשיב את המלוכה לידיה.
- Now the daughter of Jared being exceedingly expert, and seeing the sorrows of her father, thought to devise a plan whereby she could redeem the kingdom unto her father.
- 9 ובת ירד יפה מאד למראה. והיא דברה אל אביה לאמר: מדוע כה נעצב אבי? האם לא קרא את כתב הזכרון אשר הביאו אבותינו מעבר לתהום רבה? וכי אין מספר שם על הקדמונים, אשר על ידי מזמות סתר השיגו ממלכות ורב תפארה?
- Now the daughter of Jared was exceedingly fair. And it came to pass that she did talk with her father, and said unto him: Whereby hath my father so much sorrow? Hath he not read the record which our fathers brought across the great deep? Behold, is there not an account concerning them of old, that they by their secret plans did obtain kingdoms and great glory?

- על כן, ישלח נא אבי לקרא אל אכיש בן קמנור; וראה, זפה אנכי, וארקד לפניו, ואענג את לבו, ויחשק בי לאשה. והנה, בשאלו מאתך כי תתנני לו לאשה, תאמר: אתננה אם תביאני את ראש אבי, המלך.
- 10 And now, therefore, let my father send for Akish, the son of Kimnor; and behold, I am fair, and I will dance before him, and I will please him, that he will desire me to wife; wherefore if he shall desire of thee that ye shall give unto him me to wife, then shall ye say: I will give her if ye will bring unto me the head of my father, the king.
- ועמר היה רע לאכיש. והיה אחר אשר שלח ירד לקרא אל אכיש, ורקדה בת ירד לפניו; והיא ענגתהו עד כי חשקה להיות לו לאשה, והוא אמר אל ירד: תננה לי לאשה.
- 11 And now Omer was a friend to Akish; wherefore, when Jared had sent for Akish, the daughter of Jared danced before him that she pleased him, insomuch that he desired her to wife. And it came to pass that he said unto Jared: Give her unto me to wife.
- ואמר אליו ירד: אתננה לך, אם תביאני את ראש אבי, המלך.
- 12 And Jared said unto him: I will give her unto you, if ye will bring unto me the head of my father, the king.
- ואכיש אסף את כל בני משפחתו אל בית ירד, ואמר אליהם: התשבועו לי כי תהיו נאמנים לי בדבר אשר אבקשכם?
- 13 And it came to pass that Akish gathered in unto the house of Jared all his kinsfolk, and said unto them: Will ye swear unto me that ye will be faithful unto me in the thing which I shall desire of you?
- וכלם נשבעו לו באלהי השמים, ובשמים ובארץ ובראשם, כי כל אשר יסור מעזר כבקשת אכיש, יסור ראשו מעליו; וכל אשר יגלה את אשר ספר להם אכיש, מות יומת.
- 14 And it came to pass that they all swore unto him, by the God of heaven, and also by the heavens, and also by the earth, and by their heads, that whoso should vary from the assistance which Akish desired should lose his head; and whoso should divulge whatsoever thing Akish made known unto them, the same should lose his life.
- והם היו בעצה אחת עם אכיש, ואכיש השביעם באלות אשר השביעו בהן הקדמונים, אשר אף הם בקשו שררה; הן נמסרו מדור אל דור, מידי קנן, אשר היה רוצח מראשית.
- 15 And it came to pass that thus they did agree with Akish. And Akish did administer unto them the oaths which were given by them of old who also sought power, which had been handed down even from Cain, who was a murderer from the beginning.
- והן נשמרו בכח השטן להשביע בהן אנשים, להחזיקם בחשך, ולעזר לאלה המבקשים שררה כדי לשלט ולרצח ולגזל ולשקר ולעשות כל מיני רשעה וזנות.
- 16 And they were kept up by the power of the devil to administer these oaths unto the people, to keep them in darkness, to help such as sought power to gain power, and to murder, and to plunder, and to lie, and to commit all manner of wickedness and whoredoms.
- ובת ירד היא אשר נטעה בלב אביה את דבר חפוש דברים אלה אשר מקדם. וירד נטע את הדבר בלב אכיש; על כן השביע אכיש את בני משפחתו ומרעיו ואף הטה אותם בדברי חלקות לפעל ככל אות נפשו.
- 17 And it was the daughter of Jared who put it into his heart to search up these things of old; and Jared put it into the heart of Akish; wherefore, Akish administered it unto his kindred and friends, leading them away by fair promises to do whatsoever thing he desired.
- והם התחברו לאגדת סתר כדרך הקדמונים, אשר היא אגדה נתעבת ומרשעת מכל בעיני אלהים;
- 18 And it came to pass that they formed a secret combination, even as they of old; which combination is most abominable and wicked above all, in the sight of God;
- כי אין יהוה פועל באגדות סתר ואיננו חפץ כי ישפך האדם דם; כי בכל דבר אשר זאת, מראשית האדם.
- 19 For the Lord worketh not in secret combinations, neither doth he will that man should shed blood, but in all things hath forbidden it, from the beginning of man.

## אתר ח:כ-כו

- ועתה, אני, מורוני, לא אכתב את אפן שבועותיהם וקשריהם, יען אשר נודע לי כי הם קימים בין כל העמים והם נמצאים אף בין הלמנים.
- 20 And now I, Moroni, do not write the manner of their oaths and combinations, for it hath been made known unto me that they are had among all people, and they are had among the Lamanites.
- והם הביאו את השמדת העם אשר דברתי עלי בזה, ואף את השמדת עם נפי.
- 21 And they have caused the destruction of this people of whom I am now speaking, and also the destruction of the people of Nephi.
- וכל אמה אשר תקים אגדות סתר כאלה, למען השג שררה וצבע עד כי תתפשטה בכל האמה, השמיד תשמיד; כי לא יתן יהוה לדם קדושו, אשר ישפך על ידיהם, לצעק עלי תמיד מן האדמה לנקמה עליהם, והוא לא ינקם את נקמתם.
- 22 And whatsoever nation shall uphold such secret combinations, to get power and gain, until they shall spread over the nation, behold, they shall be destroyed; for the Lord will not suffer that the blood of his saints, which shall be shed by them, shall always cry unto him from the ground for vengeance upon them and yet he avenge them not.
- על כן, הגויים, חכמת אלהים היא, כי יראו לכם הדברים האלה בעבור תנחמו מחטאיכם, ולא תתירו את אגדות הרצח האלה, אשר הוקמו להשיג שררה וצבע, להשתרר עליכם, והיה אם תתירו את קיומן, והנה תחול עליכם הפעלה, היא פעלת ההרס, ותפל עליכם חרב הדיו אשר לאלהי העולמים, אכן עד מפלתכם והשמדתכם.
- 23 Wherefore, O ye Gentiles, it is wisdom in God that these things should be shown unto you, that thereby ye may repent of your sins, and suffer not that these murderous combinations shall get above you, which are built up to get power and gain—and the work, yea, even the work of destruction come upon you, yea, even the sword of the justice of the Eternal God shall fall upon you, to your overthrow and destruction if ye shall suffer these things to be.
- על כן מצוכם יהוה, כי בראותכם את הדברים האלה קמים בקרבכם, תתעוררו לחוש את אימת מצבכם, מפני אגדת הסתר הזאת אשר תהיה בקרבכם; אכן, אוי לה על דם אלה אשר הרגו, כי הם צועקים מן העפר לנקם בה ואף במקימיה.
- 24 Wherefore, the Lord commandeth you, when ye shall see these things come among you that ye shall awake to a sense of your awful situation, because of this secret combination which shall be among you; or wo be unto it, because of the blood of them who have been slain; for they cry from the dust for vengeance upon it, and also upon those who build it up.
- כי יבוא יום אשר כל מקימה יבקש להרס את חרות כל הארצות והאמות והמדינות; וכה תבוא השמדת כל האדם, כי השטן, אשר הוא אבי כל כזב, יסדה. אכן, הוא השקרן אשר רמה את אבותינו הראשונים, הרמאי אשר הסב לבני אדם להרג מימי קדם; אכן, הוא אשר הקשה את לב בני האדם עד אשר הרגו את הנביאים, וסקלום באבן וגרשו מאז.
- 25 For it cometh to pass that whoso buildeth it up seeketh to overthrow the freedom of all lands, nations, and countries; and it bringeth to pass the destruction of all people, for it is built up by the devil, who is the father of all lies; even that same liar who beguiled our first parents, yea, even that same liar who hath caused man to commit murder from the beginning; who hath hardened the hearts of men that they have murdered the prophets, and stoned them, and cast them out from the beginning.
- לכן אני, מורוני, מצוה לכתב את הדברים האלה למען יבטל הרע, ובעבור תבוא העת אשר לא יהיה לשטן כח על לב בני האדם, כי אם יטה לבם לעשות תמיד את הטוב, למען יבואו אל מעין כל הצדקה ויושעו.
- 26 Wherefore, I, Moroni, am commanded to write these things that evil may be done away, and that the time may come that Satan may have no power upon the hearts of the children of men, but that they may be persuaded to do good continually, that they may come unto the fountain of all righteousness and be saved.

## ט

## 9

- ועתה, אני, מורוני, אוסיף לרשם את  
כתב הזכרון הזה. והנה, מפני אגדות  
הסתרים אשר לאכיש ולמרעיו הם הפילו  
את ממלכת עמר.
- ואולם יהוה רחם על עמר ועל בניו ובנותיו,  
אשר לא בקשו להשמדו.
- ויהוה הזהיר את עמר בחלום האומר לו כי עליו  
לעזב את הארץ. על כן יצא עמר מן הארץ עם  
משפחתו ונסע ימים רבים, והגיע אל גבעת  
שים, ובעברו ממנה הוא הגיע אל המקום אשר  
בו השמדו הנפיים. והוא נסע משם מזרחה  
ובא אל מקום אשר נקרא שמו אבלום, ליד  
חוף הים. שם הוא נטה את אהלו, הוא ובניו  
ובנותיו וכל ביתו, זולת ירד ומשפחתו.
- וירד נמשח למלך על העם ביד הרשעה.  
והוא נתן לאכיש את בתו לאשה.
- ואכיש בקש את נפש חותנו; והוא פנה אל  
אלה אשר השביעם באלת הקדמונים, והם  
כרתו את ראש חותנו, בשבתו על כס  
מלכותו, בהטותו און אל דברי עמו.
- אכן, כה התפשטה החבורה החשאית  
והמרשעת הזאת, עד כי השחיתה את לב כל  
האנשים; וכך נרצח ירד בשבתו על כסאו,  
ואכיש מלך תחתיו.
- אז החל אכיש לקנא בבנו; והוא כלאהו  
והאכילו אף מעט מזער מזון עד כי גוע ומת.
- והיה כי אחי המת, אשר שמו נקרא נמרה,  
רגז על אביו מפני המעשה אשר עשה לאחיו.
- ונמרה קבץ מתי מספר וברח מן הארץ, ובא  
אל עמר ושכן עמו.
- ואכיש הוליד עוד בנים. והם קנו את לב  
העם, אף כי נשבעו לאביהם כי יבצעו כל  
מיני מעשי און פאות נפשו.
- 1 And now I, Moroni, proceed with my record. Therefore, behold, it  
came to pass that because of the secret combinations of Akish and his  
friends, behold, they did overthrow the kingdom of Omer.
- 2 Nevertheless, the Lord was merciful unto Omer, and also to his sons  
and to his daughters who did not seek his destruction.
- 3 And the Lord warned Omer in a dream that he should depart out of  
the land; wherefore Omer departed out of the land with his family,  
and traveled many days, and came over and passed by the hill of Shim,  
and came over by the place where the Nephites were destroyed, and  
from thence eastward, and came to a place which was called Ablom,  
by the seashore, and there he pitched his tent, and also his sons and  
his daughters, and all his household, save it were Jared and his family.
- 4 And it came to pass that Jared was anointed king over the people, by  
the hand of wickedness; and he gave unto Akish his daughter to wife.
- 5 And it came to pass that Akish sought the life of his father-in-law; and  
he applied unto those whom he had sworn by the oath of the ancients,  
and they obtained the head of his father-in-law, as he sat upon his  
throne, giving audience to his people.
- 6 For so great had been the spreading of this wicked and secret society  
that it had corrupted the hearts of all the people; therefore Jared was  
murdered upon his throne, and Akish reigned in his stead.
- 7 And it came to pass that Akish began to be jealous of his son, therefore  
he shut him up in prison, and kept him upon little or no food until he  
had suffered death.
- 8 And now the brother of him that suffered death, (and his name was  
Nimrah) was angry with his father because of that which his father had  
done unto his brother.
- 9 And it came to pass that Nimrah gathered together a small number  
of men, and fled out of the land, and came over and dwelt with Omer.
- 10 And it came to pass that Akish begat other sons, and they won the  
hearts of the people, notwithstanding they had sworn unto him to do  
all manner of iniquity according to that which he desired.



## אתר ט:יא-כא

- 11 ועם אכיש התאוּו לְבָצֵעַ, כְּפִי אֲשֶׁר הִתְאַוָּה אֲכִישׁ לְשִׁרְרָה; עַל כֵּן הִצִּיעוּ לָהֶם בְּנֵי אֲכִישׁ כֶּסֶף וְכֹה הָיוּ אֵלֵיהֶם אֶת לֵב רַב הָעָם.
- 12 וּמִלְחָמָה פָּרְצָה בֵּין בְּנֵי אֲכִישׁ וּבֵין אֲכִישׁ, וְהָיָא אַרְכָּה שָׁנִים רַבּוֹת, אֲכֹן, עַד כִּי נִשְׁמַד כְּמֶעֶט כָּל עַם הַמְּמַלְכָּה; אֲכֹן, כָּלָם, זֹולָת שְׁלֹשִׁים נַפְשׁ וְאֵלּוּ אֲשֶׁר בָּרָחוּ עִם בֵּית עֹמֶר.
- 13 כֹּה הוֹשֵׁב שְׁנִית עֹמֶר אֶל אֶרֶץ נַחֲלָתוֹ.
- 14 וְעֹמֶר זָקֵן, וְאוֹלָם בְּזָקְנָתוֹ הוֹלִיד אֶת עֹמֶר; וְעֹמֶר מָשַׁח אֶת עֹמֶר לְמֶלֶךְ, לְמֶלֶךְ תַּחֲתָיו.
- 15 וְהָיָה אַחֵר מָשַׁחוּ אֶת עֹמֶר לְמֶלֶךְ, הוּא רָאָה שְׁלוֹם בְּאֶרֶץ שְׁנַתָּים יָמִים וּמֵת אַחֵר שְׁנוֹת חֲמִישִׁים מֵרַבּוֹת עֲקֻבוֹת עָצֹב וְצָעַר. וְעֹמֶר מָלַךְ תַּחֲתָיו וְהָלַךְ בְּדַרְכֵי אָבִיו.
- 16 וַיְהִי הִסִּיר שְׁנִית אֶת הַקְּלָלָה מִן הָאֶרֶץ, וְהָיָה בֵּית עֹמֶר מְצַלִּיחַ מְאֹד תַּחַת שְׁלֹטוֹנוֹ עַד כִּי בַתּוֹךְ שְׁשִׁים וּשְׁתַּיִם שָׁנָה הִתְחַזְּקוּ מְאֹד וַעֲשָׂרָם פָּרַץ.
- 17 וְהָיוּ לָהֶם פְּרִי וְדָגָנִים מִכָּל מִין, וּמִשֵּׁי וְשֵׁשׁ מְשֻׁזָּר וְזָהָב וְכֶסֶף וְשָׂאֵר יְקָרוֹת.
- 18 וְאַף הָיוּ לָהֶם כָּל מִינֵי בְּהֵמָה, שֹׁרִים וּפְרוֹת וּכְבָשִׁים וְחִזִּירִים וְעִזִּים וְחִיּוֹת מִמִּינֵים אֲחֵרִים לָרֶב, אֲשֶׁר צָלְחוּ לְמֶאֱכָל אָדָם.
- 19 וְהָיוּ לָהֶם סוּסִים וְחִמּוֹרִים; וְאַף פִּילִים וְקוֹרְלוֹמִים וְקוֹמוֹמִים; כָּל אֵלֶּה הָיוּ עֹזֵר לָאָדָם, וּבִפְרֹט הַפִּילִים וְהַקּוֹרְלוֹמִים וְהַקּוֹמוֹמִים.
- 20 וְכֹה הָעֲתִיר יְהוָה אֶת בְּרָכָתוֹ עַל הָאֶרֶץ הַזֹּאת, אֲשֶׁר הָיָא מִבְּחָר מִכָּל הָאֲרָצוֹת; וְהוּא צִוָּה כִּי כָל אֲשֶׁר יִנְחֹלוּ אֶת הָאֶרֶץ יִנְחֹלוּהָ לְשֹׁמוֹ. וְלֹא, הַשְׁמִד יִשְׁמְדוּ כְּאִשֶּׁר תִּמְלֹא סָאת עֹוֹנָם; כִּי כֹה אָמַר יְהוָה: עַל כִּגּוֹן אֵלֶּה, אֲשַׁפּוֹךְ אֶת מְלֹא חֲמָתִי.
- 21 וְעֹמֶר שָׁפֵט מִשְׁפָּט צָדֵק כָּל יְמֵי חַיָּיו וְהוֹלִיד בָּנִים וּבָנוֹת רַבִּים; וְהוּא הוֹלִיד אֶת קוֹרְיָאֲנֻטוֹם וּמָשַׁח אוֹתוֹ לְמֶלֶךְ תַּחֲתָיו.
- 11 Now the people of Akish were desirous for gain, even as Akish was desirous for power; wherefore, the sons of Akish did offer them money, by which means they drew away the more part of the people after them.
- 12 And there began to be a war between the sons of Akish and Akish, which lasted for the space of many years, yea, unto the destruction of nearly all the people of the kingdom, yea, even all, save it were thirty souls, and they who fled with the house of Omer.
- 13 Wherefore, Omer was restored again to the land of his inheritance.
- 14 And it came to pass that Omer began to be old; nevertheless, in his old age he begat Emer; and he anointed Emer to be king to reign in his stead.
- 15 And after that he had anointed Emer to be king he saw peace in the land for the space of two years, and he died, having seen exceedingly many days, which were full of sorrow. And it came to pass that Emer did reign in his stead, and did fill the steps of his father.
- 16 And the Lord began again to take the curse from off the land, and the house of Emer did prosper exceedingly under the reign of Emer; and in the space of sixty and two years they had become exceedingly strong, insomuch that they became exceedingly rich—
- 17 Having all manner of fruit, and of grain, and of silks, and of fine linen, and of gold, and of silver, and of precious things;
- 18 And also all manner of cattle, of oxen, and cows, and of sheep, and of swine, and of goats, and also many other kinds of animals which were useful for the food of man.
- 19 And they also had horses, and asses, and there were elephants and cureloms and cumoms; all of which were useful unto man, and more especially the elephants and cureloms and cumoms.
- 20 And thus the Lord did pour out his blessings upon this land, which was choice above all other lands; and he commanded that whoso should possess the land should possess it unto the Lord, or they should be destroyed when they were ripened in iniquity; for upon such, saith the Lord: I will pour out the fulness of my wrath.
- 21 And Emer did execute judgment in righteousness all his days, and he begat many sons and daughters; and he begat Coriantum, and he anointed Coriantum to reign in his stead.

- והיה אחר מִשְׁחוֹ אֶת קוריאנטוס לְמֶלֶךְ  
תַּחֲתָיו, הוא חי אַרְבַּע שָׁנִים, וְרָאָה שְׁלוֹם  
בְּאֶרֶץ; וְאֵף הוּא רָאָה אֶת בֶּן הַצֶּדֶק, וְשִׂמַּח  
וְהִתְהַלֵּל בְּיוֹמוֹ, וְהוּא מָת בְּשְׁלוֹם.
- 22 And after he had anointed Coriantum to reign in his stead he lived four years, and he saw peace in the land; yea, and he even saw the Son of Righteousness, and did rejoice and glory in his day; and he died in peace.
- וְקוריאנטוס הָלַךְ בְּדַרְכֵי אָבִיו; וְהוּא בָנָה  
עָרִים אֲדִירוֹת רַבּוֹת, וְהָיָה מוֹרָה אֶת עַמּוֹ אֶת  
הַטּוֹב לָהֶם כָּל יְמֵי חַיָּיו. וְלֹא הָיוּ לוֹ בָּנִים עַד  
אֲשֶׁר זָקֵן וְכָא בְּיָמָיו.
- 23 And it came to pass that Coriantum did walk in the steps of his father, and did build many mighty cities, and did administer that which was good unto his people in all his days. And it came to pass that he had no children even until he was exceedingly old.
- וְאִשְׁתּוֹ מָתָה, וְהָיָה בֵּת מֵאָה וּשְׁתַּיִם שָׁנִים.  
וְהָיָה לָעֵת זִקְנָתוֹ, לָקַח קוריאנטוס נַעֲרָה לוֹ  
לְאִשָּׁה. וְהוּא הוֹלִיד בָּנִים וּבָנוֹת; וְהוּא חֵי עַד  
אֲשֶׁר מָלְאוּ לוֹ מֵאָה וָאַרְבָּעִים וּשְׁתַּיִם שָׁנָה.
- 24 And it came to pass that his wife died, being an hundred and two years old. And it came to pass that Coriantum took to wife, in his old age, a young maid, and begat sons and daughters; wherefore he lived until he was an hundred and forty and two years old.
- וְהוּא הוֹלִיד אֶת קוֹם, וְקוֹם מָלַךְ תַּחֲתָיו  
אַרְבָּעִים וְתֵשַׁע שָׁנָה; וְהוּא הוֹלִיד אֶת חֵת וְכֵן  
בָּנִים וּבָנוֹת נוֹסְפִים.
- 25 And it came to pass that he begat Com, and Com reigned in his stead; and he reigned forty and nine years, and he begat Heth; and he also begat other sons and daughters.
- וְהָעָם נִפְצוּ שָׁנִית עַל כָּל פְּנֵי הָאֶרֶץ, וְשׁוּב  
הָיְתָה רָשָׁעָה גְדוֹלָה מֵאֵד עַל פְּנֵי הָאֶרֶץ. וְחֵת  
הֵחַל לְאַמֵּץ לוֹ אֶת מִזְמוֹת הַסֵּתֶר אֲשֶׁר  
מִקֵּדָם, בְּעִבּוֹר הַשְּׂמֵד אֶת אָבִיו.
- 26 And the people had spread again over all the face of the land, and there began again to be an exceedingly great wickedness upon the face of the land, and Heth began to embrace the secret plans again of old, to destroy his father.
- וְהוּא הִסִּיר אֶת אָבִיו מִכִּסְאוֹ, כִּי הִרְגָהוּ בְּמוֹ  
חֶרְבוֹ, וּמָלַךְ תַּחֲתָיו.
- 27 And it came to pass that he did dethrone his father, for he slew him with his own sword; and he did reign in his stead.
- אֲזַי בָּאוּ שָׁנִית נְבִיאִים בְּאֶרֶץ, וְהֵם קָרְאוּ אֶל  
יוֹשְׁבֵיָהּ לְשׁוּב מִרְעָתָם, לְמַעַן יִפְנוּ אֶת דֶּרֶךְ  
יְהוָה, וְלֹא, בּוֹא תִבּוֹא קָלָלָה עַל פְּנֵי הָאֶרֶץ;  
אֲכֹ, רָעַב גְּדוֹל יָבֹא, אֲשֶׁר בּוֹ הֵם יֵאָבְדוּ,  
בְּלִחְתִּי אִם יָשׁוּבוּ מִרְעָתָם.
- 28 And there came prophets in the land again, crying repentance unto them—that they must prepare the way of the Lord or there should come a curse upon the face of the land; yea, even there should be a great famine, in which they should be destroyed if they did not repent.
- וְאוֹלָם הָעָם לֹא הֶאֱמִין לְדִבְרֵי הַנְּבִיאִים  
וְגִרְשׁוּם; וּמִקְצָתָם הֵם הִשְׁלִיכוּ אֶל בּוֹרוֹת  
וַעֲזָבוּם לָגוֹעַ. וְכָל זֹאת עָשׂוּ עַל פִּי מִצְוֹת  
הַמֶּלֶךְ חֵת.
- 29 But the people believed not the words of the prophets, but they cast them out; and some of them they cast into pits and left them to perish. And it came to pass that they did all these things according to the commandment of the king, Heth.
- אֲזַי הָיָה רָעַב גְּדוֹל בְּאֶרֶץ; וְיוֹשְׁבֵיָהּ אָבְדוּ  
בְּמַהֲרִית רַבָּה מִפְּנֵי הָרָעַב, יַעַן אֲשֶׁר לֹא  
הִמָּטִיר הַמָּטָר עַל הָאֶרֶץ.
- 30 And it came to pass that there began to be a great dearth upon the land, and the inhabitants began to be destroyed exceedingly fast because of the dearth, for there was no rain upon the face of the earth.
- וְהָיָה כִּי בָאוּ נִחְשֵׁי אֶרֶס עַל פְּנֵי הָאֶרֶץ,  
וְהִכִּישׁוּ אֲנָשִׁים רַבִּים. וְעִדְרֵי צֹאנָם נָסוּ מִפְּנֵי  
הַנִּחְשִׁים אֶל אֶרֶץ הַדְּרוֹם, אֲשֶׁר הַנְּפִיִּים קָרְאוּ  
לָהּ זֶרַחֶמְלָה.
- 31 And there came forth poisonous serpents also upon the face of the land, and did poison many people. And it came to pass that their flocks began to flee before the poisonous serpents, towards the land southward, which was called by the Nephites Zarahemla.

- 32 And it came to pass that there were many of them which did perish by the way; nevertheless, there were some which fled into the land southward.
- וְרַבִּים מֵהֶם אָבְדוּ בַדֶּרֶךְ, וְאוֹלָם חֲלָקָם מִצָּא מִפֶּלֶט בְּאַרְצָא הַדְּרוֹם.
- 33 And it came to pass that the Lord did cause the serpents that they should pursue them no more, but that they should hedge up the way that the people could not pass, that whoso should attempt to pass might fall by the poisonous serpents.
- וַיְהִי הַסֵּב כִּי יַחְדְּלוּ הַנָּחָשִׁים מִרְדֹּף אַחֵר הַצֹּאן, וְכִי הֵם יַחֲסִמוּ אֶת הַדֶּרֶךְ לְכָל יַעֲבְרוּ הָאֲנָשִׁים, וְכִי כָל הַמִּבְקָשִׁים לַעֲבֹר יִפְּלוּ בַּהֲכָשֶׁת הַנָּחָשִׁים.
- 34 And it came to pass that the people did follow the course of the beasts, and did devour the carcasses of them which fell by the way, until they had devoured them all. Now when the people saw that they must perish they began to repent of their iniquities and cry unto the Lord.
- וְהָעָם הָלַךְ בְּעֵקֶבבוֹת הַבְּהֵמוֹת, וְהָיוּ הַפְּגָרִים אֲשֶׁר נָפְלוּ בַדֶּרֶךְ טָרֵף לָהֶם, עַד כִּי אָכְלוּם עַד תָּם; וְכִרְאוֹת הָעָם כִּי בָּאָה שְׁעַת כְּלִיוָנָם, הֵם הִחֲלוּ לְהִנָּחֵם עַל עֲוֹנוֹתֵיהֶם וּלְקַרֵּא אֶל יְהוָה.
- 35 And it came to pass that when they had humbled themselves sufficiently before the Lord he did send rain upon the face of the earth; and the people began to revive again, and there began to be fruit in the north countries, and in all the countries round about. And the Lord did show forth his power unto them in preserving them from famine.
- וְהָיָה בְּהִכְנַע הָעָם רַב הַכְּנָעָה לִפְנֵי יְהוָה, שָׁלַח יְהוָה מָטָר עַל פְּנֵי הָאָרֶץ, וְשָׁבָה נִפְשׁ הָעָם אֲלֵיהֶם. וְהָאֲדָמָה הִחֲלָה לָתֵת פְּרִיָּה בְּאַרְצוֹת הַצָּפוֹן וּבְכָל הָאֲרָצוֹת אֲשֶׁר סָבִיב. כֹּה הָרָאָה יְהוָה אֶת כּוֹחוֹ בְּהַצִּילוֹ אוֹתָם מִן הָרָעָב.

## י

## 10

- 1 And it came to pass that Shez, who was a descendant of Heth—for Heth had perished by the famine, and all his household save it were Shez—wherefore, Shez began to build up again a broken people.
- וְהָיָה כִּי חַת מֵת בְּרָעַב עִם כָּל בֵּיתוֹ, וְזוֹלַת שֵׁז אֲשֶׁר הוּא צֶאֱצָא לוֹ. וְשֵׁז הִחֵל לְהָקִים שְׁנִית אֶת הָעָם הַנִּשְׁבֵּר.
- 2 And it came to pass that Shez did remember the destruction of his fathers, and he did build up a righteous kingdom; for he remembered what the Lord had done in bringing Jared and his brother across the deep; and he did walk in the ways of the Lord; and he begat sons and daughters.
- וְשֵׁז זָכַר אֶת כְּלִיוֹן אֲבוֹתָיו וּבְנָה מַלְכוּת צֶדֶק; וְהוּא זָכַר אֶת אֲשֶׁר עָשָׂה יְהוָה בְּהִבְיֹאוֹ אֶת יָרֵד וְאֶת אָחִיו מֵעַל תְּהוֹם הַיָּם. וְהוּא הָלַךְ בְּדַרְכֵי יְהוָה, וְהוֹלִיד בָּנִים וּבָנוֹת.
- 3 And his eldest son, whose name was Shez, did rebel against him; nevertheless, Shez was smitten by the hand of a robber, because of his exceeding riches, which brought peace again unto his father.
- וּבְנֵו בְּכוֹרוֹ, אֲשֶׁר שְׁמוֹ נִקְרָא שֵׁז, מָרַד בּוֹ; וְאוֹלָם שֵׁז הִכָּה בְּיַד שׁוֹדֵד, בְּעִבּוֹר עֲשָׂרוֹ הַעֲצוֹם, וְכֹה שָׁבָה הַשְׁלָוָה אֶל אָבִיו.
- 4 And it came to pass that his father did build up many cities upon the face of the land, and the people began again to spread over all the face of the land. And Shez did live to an exceedingly old age; and he begat Riplakish. And he died, and Riplakish reigned in his stead.
- וְאָבִיו בָּנָה עָרִים רַבּוֹת עַל פְּנֵי הָאָרֶץ; וְהָאֲנָשִׁים הִתְפָּשְׁטוּ שְׁנִית עַל כָּל פְּנֵי הָאָרֶץ. וְשֵׁז חָיָה עַד הַגִּיעָו לְזִקְנָה מְפֹלָגַת; וְהוּא הוֹלִיד אֶת רִיפְלָכִישׁ. וְהוּא מֵת, וְרִיפְלָכִישׁ מָלַךְ תַּחְתָּיו.
- 5 And it came to pass that Riplakish did not do that which was right in the sight of the Lord, for he did have many wives and concubines, and did lay that upon men's shoulders which was grievous to be borne; yea, he did tax them with heavy taxes; and with the taxes he did build many spacious buildings.
- וְרִיפְלָכִישׁ לֹא עָשָׂה אֶת הַיֹּשֶׁר בְּעֵינֵי יְהוָה, כִּי הִרְבָּה לוֹ נָשִׁים וּפִילָגְשִׁים. וְהוּא הִכְבִּיד אֶת עַל הַמָּשָׂא עַל שִׁכְמֵם הָאֲנָשִׁים; אֲבָן, הוּא הִטִּיל עֲלֵיהֶם מַסִּים כְּבִידִים, וּבְנָה בָהֶם בָּתִּים רַחְבֵּי מִדּוֹת לָרֵב.

## אתר יו-יד

והוא עשה לו כס מלכות הדור ומפאָר; והוא  
בנה בתי כלא לרב, וכלא את אשר לא העלו  
מס. והוא כלא את אשר לא יכלו לשלם מס,  
וצוה עליהם לעבד כל העת לכלכלתם; ואשר  
סרב לעבד הומת בפקדתו.

כה הוא השיג כל מלאכת מחשבת;  
אכן את זהבו הטהור הוא צוה לצרף בבית  
הכלא, וכן כל מלאכת אמנות עדינה צוה  
פי תעשה בבית הכלא. והוא צרר את  
העם בזנוניו ובתועבותיו.

והיה אחר אשר מלך ארבעים ושתים שנה,  
קם העם ומרד בו; ופרצה שנית מלחמה  
בארץ, עד אשר נהרג ריפלכיש, וצאצאיו  
גרשו מן הארץ.

והיה אחר שנים רבות, אסף מוריאנטון,  
אשר היה צאצא לריפלכיש, צבא מגרשים  
ויצא למלחמה על העם; והוא גבר על ערים  
רבות. והמלחמה הייתה קשה מאד וארכה  
שנים רבות; והוא השתער על כל הארץ וכונן  
עצמו למלך עליה.

והיה אחר כוננו למלך, הוא הקל את על  
העם, ובזאת נשא חן לפניהם, והם משחוהו  
למלך עליהם.

והוא נהג בצדק עם עמו אך לא כן עם עצמו,  
מפני רב זנוניו; על כן נכרת מלפני יהוה.

ומוריאנטון בנה ערים לרב, והעם התעשר  
עד מאד תחת שלטונו בהיות להם בתים  
רבים וזהב וכסף ודגן ועדרי צאן ובקר, וכל  
דבר אשר הושב להם.

ומוריאנטון חי עד הגיעו לזקנה מפלגת,  
והוליד את קים; וקים מלך תחת אביו, והוא  
מלך שמונה שנים לפני מות אביו. וקים לא  
מלך בצדק, על כן לא נטה לו יהוה את חסדו.

והיה כי קם עליו אחיו במרד ושבה אותו;  
והוא היה בשבי כל ימיו. ובימי שביו הוא  
הוליד בנים ובנות; ולעת זקנתו הוא הוליד  
את לוי, ומת.

6 And he did erect him an exceedingly beautiful throne; and he did build many prisons, and whoso would not be subject unto taxes he did cast into prison; and whoso was not able to pay taxes he did cast into prison; and he did cause that they should labor continually for their support; and whoso refused to labor he did cause to be put to death.

7 Wherefore he did obtain all his fine work, yea, even his fine gold he did cause to be refined in prison, and all manner of fine workmanship he did cause to be wrought in prison. And it came to pass that he did afflict the people with his whoredoms and abominations.

8 And when he had reigned for the space of forty and two years the people did rise up in rebellion against him; and there began to be war again in the land, insomuch that Riplakish was killed, and his descendants were driven out of the land.

9 And it came to pass after the space of many years, Morianton, (he being a descendant of Riplakish) gathered together an army of outcasts, and went forth and gave battle unto the people; and he gained power over many cities; and the war became exceedingly sore, and did last for the space of many years; and he did gain power over all the land, and did establish himself king over all the land.

10 And after that he had established himself king he did ease the burden of the people, by which he did gain favor in the eyes of the people, and they did anoint him to be their king.

11 And he did do justice unto the people, but not unto himself because of his many whoredoms; wherefore he was cut off from the presence of the Lord.

12 And it came to pass that Morianton built up many cities, and the people became exceedingly rich under his reign, both in buildings, and in gold and silver, and in raising grain, and in flocks, and herds, and such things which had been restored unto them.

13 And Morianton did live to an exceedingly great age, and then he begat Kim; and Kim did reign in the stead of his father; and he did reign eight years, and his father died. And it came to pass that Kim did not reign in righteousness, wherefore he was not favored of the Lord.

14 And his brother did rise up in rebellion against him, by which he did bring him into captivity; and he did remain in captivity all his days; and he begat sons and daughters in captivity, and in his old age he begat Levi; and he died.

## אתר י:טו-כה

- 15 And it came to pass that Levi did serve in captivity after the death of his father, for the space of forty and two years. And he did make war against the king of the land, by which he did obtain unto himself the kingdom.
- 16 And after he had obtained unto himself the kingdom he did that which was right in the sight of the Lord; and the people did prosper in the land; and he did live to a good old age, and begat sons and daughters; and he also begat Corom, whom he anointed king in his stead.
- 17 And it came to pass that Corom did that which was good in the sight of the Lord all his days; and he begat many sons and daughters; and after he had seen many days he did pass away, even like unto the rest of the earth; and Kish reigned in his stead.
- 18 And it came to pass that Kish passed away also, and Lib reigned in his stead.
- 19 And it came to pass that Lib also did that which was good in the sight of the Lord. And in the days of Lib the poisonous serpents were destroyed. Wherefore they did go into the land southward, to hunt food for the people of the land, for the land was covered with animals of the forest. And Lib also himself became a great hunter.
- 20 And they built a great city by the narrow neck of land, by the place where the sea divides the land.
- 21 And they did preserve the land southward for a wilderness, to get game. And the whole face of the land northward was covered with inhabitants.
- 22 And they were exceedingly industrious, and they did buy and sell and traffic one with another, that they might get gain.
- 23 And they did work in all manner of ore, and they did make gold, and silver, and iron, and brass, and all manner of metals; and they did dig it out of the earth; wherefore they did cast up mighty heaps of earth to get ore, of gold, and of silver, and of iron, and of copper. And they did work all manner of fine work.
- 24 And they did have silks, and fine-twined linen; and they did work all manner of cloth, that they might clothe themselves from their nakedness.
- 25 And they did make all manner of tools to till the earth, both to plow and to sow, to reap and to hoe, and also to thrash.
- וְלֵוִי עָבַד בְּשָׂבִי אַחֵר מוֹת אָבִיו בְּמִשְׁךְ אַרְבָּעִים וּשְׁתַּיִם שָׁנָה. וְהוּא יָצָא לִקְרֹב עַל מֶלֶךְ הָאֶרֶץ וּלְקַח לֹא אֶת הַמְּלוּכָה.
- וְהָיָה אַחֵר תִּפְשׂוּ אֶת הַמְּלוּכָה, הוּא עָשָׂה אֶת הַיָּשָׁר בְּעֵינֵי יְהוָה; וְהָעָם הִצְלִיחַ בְּאֶרֶץ. וְהוּא חָיָה עַד הִגִּיעוּ לְשִׁיבָה טוֹבָה, וְהוֹלִיד בָּנִים וּבָנוֹת; וְבָהֶם קוֹרָמוֹ, אֲשֶׁר מָשַׁח לְמֶלֶךְ תַּחְתָּיו.
- וְקוֹרָמוֹ עָשָׂה אֶת הַטוֹב בְּעֵינֵי יְהוָה כָּל יָמָיו, חָיָיו, וְהוֹלִיד בָּנִים וּבָנוֹת רַבִּים. וְאַחֵר אֲשֶׁר רָאָה שָׁנוֹת חַיִּים רַבּוֹת, הוּא הָלַךְ בְּדֶרֶךְ כָּל הָאֶרֶץ; וְקִישׁ מָלַךְ תַּחְתָּיו.
- וְקִישׁ מָתָּה אַף הוּא, וְלִיב מָלַךְ תַּחְתָּיו.
- וְלִיב אַף הוּא עָשָׂה אֶת הַטוֹב בְּעֵינֵי יְהוָה. וּבְיָמָיו לִיב הִשְׁמָדוּ נַחְשֵׁי הָאֶרֶץ. עַל כֵּן הָלְכוּ הָאֲנָשִׁים אֶל אֶרֶץ הַדְּרוֹם, לְצוּד צִיד לְמֵאֲכָל לָאֲנָשֵׁי הָאֶרֶץ. כִּי הָאֶרֶץ מְלֵאָה חַיּוֹת יַעַר. וְלִיב הָיָה לְצִיד גָּדוֹל.
- וְהֵם בָּנוּ עִיר גְּדוֹלָה בְּרִצְעוֹת הָאֶרֶץ הַצָּרָה, לִיד מְקוֹם חִלְקַת הָאֶרֶץ לִיד הַיָּם.
- וְהֵם הוֹעִידוּ אֶת אֶרֶץ הַדְּרוֹם לְהִיּוֹת אֶרֶץ לֹא נוֹשֶׁבֶת, בְּעֵבֹר תְּהִיָּה לָהֶם מְקוֹם צִיד. וְכָל פְּנֵי אֶרֶץ הַצָּפוֹן יוֹשְׁבוּ בְּתוֹשְׁבִים.
- וְהָיוּ הָאֲנָשִׁים שׁוֹקְדִים מֵאֲדָב בְּעַמְלָם, וְהֵם קָנוּ וּמָכְרוּ וְסָחְרוּ אִישׁ עִם רֵעֵהוּ, בְּעֵבֹר הוֹן וְרוֹחַ.
- וְהֵם עָבְדוּ בְּכָל מִינֵי עֲפָרָה, וְהִפְקִיּוּ זָהָב וְכֶסֶף וּבְרָזָל וּנְחָשֶׁת קָלָל וְכָל מִינֵי מִתְּכֹת; וְהֵם חָפְרוּ אוֹתָן מִן הָאֲדָמָה. עַל כֵּן עָרְמוּ עַל פְּנֵי הָאֶרֶץ צְבוּרֵי עֶפֶר אֲדִירִים לְהַפִּיק מֵהֶם עֲפָרוֹת זָהָב וְכֶסֶף וּבְרָזָל וּנְחָשֶׁת. וְהֵם עָשׂוּ כָּל מִינֵי מְלָאכָה מְחֻשָּׁבֶת.
- וְהָיוּ לָהֶם מָשִׁי וְשֵׁשׁ מְשֻׁר; וְהֵם עָשׂוּ כָּל סוּג אֲרִיג לְהַלְבִּישׁ אֶת מַעְרְמֵיהֶם.
- וְהֵם עָשׂוּ כָּל מִינֵי כְּלִים לְעִבּוֹדַת הָאֲדָמָה, לְחִרְשׁ, וְלִזְרִיעָה וּלְעִדּוֹר וְאֶף לְדִישׁ.



## אתר יכו-יא:א

- 26 והם עשו כל מיני כלי עבודה אשר בהם העבירו את בהמתם.
- 27 והם עשו כל מיני כלי מלחמה ועבדו בכל מלאכת מחשבת רבה.
- 28 ומעולם לא היה עם אשר התברך והצלח יותר ביד יהוה מאשר העם הזה. והם היו בארץ אשר היא מבחר מכל הארצות, כי יהוה דבר זאת.
- 29 וליב חי שנים רבות והוליד בנים ובנות, ובהם היארטום.
- 30 והיארטום מלך תחת אביו. והיה כעבר עשרים וארבע שנה לשלטונו, והנה נלקחה המלכות מידי. והוא עבד שנים רבות בשבי, אכן, כל שארית ימי חייו.
- 31 והוא הוליד את חת, וחת שכן בשבי כל ימיו. וחת הוליד את אהרן; ואהרן שכן בשבי כל ימיו והוליד את אמניגדא; ואף אמניגדא שכן בשבי כל ימיו. והוא הוליד את קוריאנטום; וקוריאנטום שכן בשבי כל ימיו, והוליד את קום.
- 32 וקום הטא אליו את חצי הממלכה; והוא מלך על חצי הממלכה ארבעים ושתים שנה. והוא יצא למלחמה על המלך אמגיד; והם נלחמו שנים רבות, עד אשר גבר קום על אמגיד והשתלט על שארית הממלכה.
- 33 בימי קום החלו שודדים לפעל בארץ; הם אמצו את מזמות ימי קדם, והשביעו כדרך הקדמונים ובקשו, כלפנים, לאבד את המלוכה.
- 34 וקום אסר עליהם מלחמה כבדה, אף הוא לא הביסם.
- 30 And they did make all manner of tools with which they did work their beasts.
- 27 And they did make all manner of weapons of war. And they did work all manner of work of exceedingly curious workmanship.
- 28 And never could be a people more blessed than were they, and more prospered by the hand of the Lord. And they were in a land that was choice above all lands, for the Lord had spoken it.
- 29 And it came to pass that Lib did live many years, and begat sons and daughters; and he also begat Hearthom.
- 30 And it came to pass that Hearthom reigned in the stead of his father. And when Hearthom had reigned twenty and four years, behold, the kingdom was taken away from him. And he served many years in captivity, yea, even all the remainder of his days.
- 31 And he begat Heth, and Heth lived in captivity all his days. And Heth begat Aaron, and Aaron dwelt in captivity all his days; and he begat Amnigaddah, and Amnigaddah also dwelt in captivity all his days; and he begat Coriantum, and Coriantum dwelt in captivity all his days; and he begat Com.
- 32 And it came to pass that Com drew away the half of the kingdom. And he reigned over the half of the kingdom forty and two years; and he went to battle against the king, Amgid, and they fought for the space of many years, during which time Com gained power over Amgid, and obtained power over the remainder of the kingdom.
- 33 And in the days of Com there began to be robbers in the land; and they adopted the old plans, and administered oaths after the manner of the ancients, and sought again to destroy the kingdom.
- 34 Now Com did fight against them much; nevertheless, he did not prevail against them.

## יא

## 11

- 1 והיה כי אף בימי קום באו נביאים רבים, אשר נבאו כליון על כל העם הגדול ההוא, בלתי אם ינחמו על חטאיהם ויפנו אל יהוה ויחדלו ממעשי הרצח ומרשעתם.
- 1 And there came also in the days of Com many prophets, and prophesied of the destruction of that great people except they should repent, and turn unto the Lord, and forsake their murders and wickedness.

## אתר יא:ב-יב

- והָעָם מָאָס בְּנְבִיאִים, וְהֵם בָּרְחוּ אֶל קוֹם  
לְהִגָּנָתָם, יַעַן אֲשֶׁר בָּקְשׁוּ הָאֲנָשִׁים לְאַבְדָּם.
- וְהֵם נִבְאוּ לְקוֹם דְּבָרִים רַבִּים; וְהוּא הִתְבָּרַךְ  
כָּל שְׁאֲרִית יָמָיו.
- וְקוֹם חַי עַד הַגִּיעָו לְשִׁיבָה טוֹבָה, וְהוּא  
הוֹלִיד אֶת שִׁבְלוֹם; וְשִׁבְלוֹם מָלַךְ תַּחְתָּיו.  
וְאָחִי שִׁבְלוֹם מָרַד בּוֹ, וּפְרָצָה מִלְחָמָה  
גְּדוֹלָה מְאֹד בְּכָל הָאָרֶץ.
- וְאָחִי שִׁבְלוֹם צִוָּה לְהַמִּית אֶת כָּל הַנְּבִיאִים  
אֲשֶׁר נִבְאוּ אֶת כְּלִיּוֹן הָעָם.
- וְהִיְתָה רָעָה גְּדוֹלָה בְּכָל הָאָרֶץ, יַעַן אֲשֶׁר  
הִעֲדוּ הַנְּבִיאִים כִּי קָלְלָה גְּדוֹלָה תָּבוֹא עַל  
הָאָרֶץ וְעַל הָעָם, וְכִי חֲרָבֹן גְּדוֹל יִהְיֶה בְּקִרְבָּם,  
אֲשֶׁר כְּמוֹתוֹ לֹא הָיָה עַל פְּנֵי הָאֲדָמָה, וְכִי  
עֲצָמוֹתֵיהֶם תִּעְרַמְנָה כְּצַבּוּרֵי עֶפֶר עַל פְּנֵי  
הָאָרֶץ, אִם לֹא יִשׁוּבוּ מִרְעֵתָם.
- וְהֵם לֹא שָׁמְעוּ לְקוֹל יְהוָה, מִפְּנֵי אֲגָדוֹת  
הַרְשָׁעָה אֲשֶׁר לָהֶם, לָכֵן פָּרְצוּ מִלְחָמוֹת  
וּמְרִיבוֹת בְּכָל הָאָרֶץ, וְאָף רַבּוֹ הָרָעַב וְהַדָּבָר,  
עַד כִּי הָיָה חֲרָבֹן אֲדִיר, אֲשֶׁר כְּמוֹהוּ לֹא נֹדַע  
מֵעוֹלָם עַל פְּנֵי הָאֲדָמָה. כָּל זֹאת הָיָה  
בִּימֵי שִׁבְלוֹם.
- וְהָעָם הִחֲלוּ לְהִנָּחֵם עַל עֲוֹנָם, וְכָל אֲשֶׁר  
נָחְמוּ רַחֵם עֲלֵיהֶם יְהוָה.
- אֲזַי הוּמַת שִׁבְלוֹם וְשֵׁת נִלְקַח בְּשָׁבִי, וְהוּא שָׁכַן  
בְּשָׁבִי כָּל יְמֵי חַיָּו.
- וְאַחָא בְּנוֹ לָקַח אֶת הַמַּמְלָכָה לְיָדָיו. וְהוּא  
מָלַךְ עַל הָעָם כָּל יְמֵי חַיָּו. וּבִיָּמָיו הוּא עָשָׂה  
כָּל מִיָּנִי מַעֲשֵׂי אָוֹן, אֲשֶׁר הִסְבּוּ שְׁפִיכוֹת דָּמִים  
רַבּוֹת. וּבִיָּמָיו הָיוּ מַעֲשִׂים.
- וְעֵתָם, אֲשֶׁר הוּא צָאצָא אַחָא, לָקַח אֶת  
הַמַּמְלָכָה לְיָדָיו; וְאָף הוּא עָשָׂה בִּיָּמָיו אֶת הָרָע.
- וְהָיָה בִּימֵי עֵתָם, בָּאוּ נְבִיאִים רַבִּים וְנִבְאוּ  
עוֹד אֶל הָעָם; אֲכֹ, הֵם נִבְאוּ כִּי יִמָּחֶה יְהוָה  
כָּלִיל מֵעַל פְּנֵי הָאֲדָמָה בְּלֹתִי אִם יִנָּחְמוּ  
עַל עֲוֹנוֹתֵיהֶם.
- 2 And it came to pass that the prophets were rejected by the people, and they fled unto Com for protection, for the people sought to destroy them.
- 3 And they prophesied unto Com many things; and he was blessed in all the remainder of his days.
- 4 And he lived to a good old age, and begat Shiblom; and Shiblom reigned in his stead. And the brother of Shiblom rebelled against him, and there began to be an exceedingly great war in all the land.
- 5 And it came to pass that the brother of Shiblom caused that all the prophets who prophesied of the destruction of the people should be put to death;
- 6 And there was great calamity in all the land, for they had testified that a great curse should come upon the land, and also upon the people, and that there should be a great destruction among them, such an one as never had been upon the face of the earth, and their bones should become as heaps of earth upon the face of the land except they should repent of their wickedness.
- 7 And they hearkened not unto the voice of the Lord, because of their wicked combinations; wherefore, there began to be wars and contentions in all the land, and also many famines and pestilences, insomuch that there was a great destruction, such an one as never had been known upon the face of the earth; and all this came to pass in the days of Shiblom.
- 8 And the people began to repent of their iniquity; and inasmuch as they did the Lord did have mercy on them.
- 9 And it came to pass that Shiblom was slain, and Seth was brought into captivity, and did dwell in captivity all his days.
- 10 And it came to pass that Ahah, his son, did obtain the kingdom; and he did reign over the people all his days. And he did do all manner of iniquity in his days, by which he did cause the shedding of much blood; and few were his days.
- 11 And Ethem, being a descendant of Ahah, did obtain the kingdom; and he also did do that which was wicked in his days.
- 12 And it came to pass that in the days of Ethem there came many prophets, and prophesied again unto the people; yea, they did prophesy that the Lord would utterly destroy them from off the face of the earth except they repented of their iniquities.

## אתר יא:יג-יב:א

- 13 And it came to pass that the people hardened their hearts, and would not hearken unto their words; and the prophets mourned and withdrew from among the people.
- 14 And it came to pass that Ethem did execute judgment in wickedness all his days; and he begat Moron. And it came to pass that Moron did reign in his stead; and Moron did that which was wicked before the Lord.
- 15 And it came to pass that there arose a rebellion among the people, because of that secret combination which was built up to get power and gain; and there arose a mighty man among them in iniquity, and gave battle unto Moron, in which he did overthrow the half of the kingdom; and he did maintain the half of the kingdom for many years.
- 16 And it came to pass that Moron did overthrow him, and did obtain the kingdom again.
- 17 And it came to pass that there arose another mighty man; and he was a descendant of the brother of Jared.
- 18 And it came to pass that he did overthrow Moron and obtain the kingdom; wherefore, Moron dwelt in captivity all the remainder of his days; and he begat Coriantor.
- 19 And it came to pass that Coriantor dwelt in captivity all his days.
- 20 And in the days of Coriantor there also came many prophets, and prophesied of great and marvelous things, and cried repentance unto the people, and except they should repent the Lord God would execute judgment against them to their utter destruction;
- 21 And that the Lord God would send or bring forth another people to possess the land, by his power, after the manner by which he brought their fathers.
- 22 And they did reject all the words of the prophets, because of their secret society and wicked abominations.
- 23 And it came to pass that Coriantor begat Ether, and he died, having dwelt in captivity all his days.
- וּבְנֵי הָעָם הִקְשׁוּ אֶת לִבָּם וְלֹא שָׁמְעוּ  
אֶל דְּבָרֵיהֶם; וְהַנְּבִיאִים הִתְאַבְּלוּ וַיִּצְאוּ  
מִקֶּרֶב הָעָם.
- וַעֲתָם שָׁפֵט בְּרָשָׁעָה כָּל יְמֵי חַיָּו; וְהוּא הוֹלִיד  
אֶת מוֹרוֹן. וּמוֹרוֹן מָלַךְ תַּחֲתָיו; וּמוֹרוֹן עָשָׂה  
אֶת הָרַע בְּעֵינֵי יְהוָה.
- וְהָיָה כִּי פָרַץ מֶרֶד בָּעָם מִפְּנֵי אֲגֻדַּת הַסֵּתֶרִים  
אֲשֶׁר הוֹקְמָה בְּעִבּוֹר שָׂרָרָה וּבִצְעָה. וְקָם בָּהֶם  
אִישׁ גִּבּוֹר לְהִרְשִׁיעַ, וְהוּא לָחַם בְּמוֹרוֹן וַיִּכְבֹּשׁ  
אֶת חֲצֵי הַמַּמְלָכָה, וְהוּא מָשַׁל בְּחֲצֵי  
הַמַּמְלָכָה שָׁנִים רַבּוֹת.
- וְהָיָה כִּי הִדִּיחוּ מוֹרוֹן מִן הַשְּׁלֹטוֹן וַהֲשִׁיב לִידָיו  
אֶת הַמַּמְלָכָה.
- וְהָיָה קָם אִישׁ חֲזָק אַחֵר, אֲשֶׁר הוּא צֶאֱצָא  
אֶחָי יָרֵד.
- וְהוּא הִדִּיחַ אֶת מוֹרוֹן מִן הַשְּׁלֹטוֹן וַיִּלְקַח לִידָיו  
אֶת הַמַּמְלָכָה. וּמוֹרוֹן שָׁכַן בְּשִׁבִּי כָּל שְׁאֵרִית  
יְמֵי חַיָּו; וְהוּא הוֹלִיד אֶת קוֹרִיאַנְטוֹר.
- וְקוֹרִיאַנְטוֹר שָׁכַן בְּשִׁבִּי כָּל יְמֵי חַיָּו.
- וְהָיָה בְּיָמֵי קוֹרִיאַנְטוֹר, בָּאוּ שׁוֹב נְבִיאִים רַבִּים  
וַיְנַבְּאוּ גְדוֹלוֹת וְנִפְלְאוֹת. וְהֵם קָרְאוּ אֶת הָעָם  
לְתַשׁוּבָה בְּאָמְרָם כִּי אִם לֹא יִנְחָמוּ עַל  
חַטָּאתֵיהֶם יוֹצִיא יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים אֶת מִשְׁפָּטוֹ  
עֲלֵיהֶם, לְכַלּוֹתָם עַד תָּם;
- וְכִי יִשְׁלַח יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים, אוֹ יָבִיא, בְּכֹחוֹ,  
עִם אַחֵר לְנַחֵל אֶת הָאָרֶץ, כַּדֶּרֶךְ אֲשֶׁר הָבִיא  
אֶת אֲבוֹתֵיהֶם.
- וְהֵם מָאָסוּ בְּכָל דְּבָרֵי הַנְּבִיאִים, מִפְּנֵי חֲבֵרָתָם  
הַחֲשָׁאִית וְתוֹעֲבוֹת רְשָׁעָתָם.
- וְקוֹרִיאַנְטוֹר שָׁכַן בְּשִׁבְיָה כָּל יְמֵי חַיָּו; וְהוּא  
הוֹלִיד אֶת אֶתֶר, וָמָת.

## יב

## 12

- 1 And it came to pass that the days of Ether were in the days of Coriantumr; and Coriantumr was king over all the land.
- וְהָיוּ יְמֵי אֶתֶר בְּיָמֵי קוֹרִיאַנְטוֹמֶר,  
וְקוֹרִיאַנְטוֹמֶר הָיָה מֶלֶךְ עַל כָּל הָאָרֶץ.

## אתר יב:ב-י

- 2 And Ether was a prophet of the Lord; wherefore Ether came forth in the days of Coriantumr, and began to prophesy unto the people, for he could not be restrained because of the Spirit of the Lord which was in him.
- 3 For he did cry from the morning, even until the going down of the sun, exhorting the people to believe in God unto repentance lest they should be destroyed, saying unto them that by faith all things are fulfilled—
- 4 Wherefore, whoso believeth in God might with surety hope for a better world, yea, even a place at the right hand of God, which hope cometh of faith, maketh an anchor to the souls of men, which would make them sure and steadfast, always abounding in good works, being led to glorify God.
- 5 And it came to pass that Ether did prophesy great and marvelous things unto the people, which they did not believe, because they saw them not.
- 6 And now, I, Moroni, would speak somewhat concerning these things; I would show unto the world that faith is things which are hoped for and not seen; wherefore, dispute not because ye see not, for ye receive no witness until after the trial of your faith.
- 7 For it was by faith that Christ showed himself unto our fathers, after he had risen from the dead; and he showed not himself unto them until after they had faith in him; wherefore, it must needs be that some had faith in him, for he showed himself not unto the world.
- 8 But because of the faith of men he has shown himself unto the world, and glorified the name of the Father, and prepared a way that thereby others might be partakers of the heavenly gift, that they might hope for those things which they have not seen.
- 9 Wherefore, ye may also have hope, and be partakers of the gift, if ye will but have faith.
- 10 Behold it was by faith that they of old were called after the holy order of God.
- וְאֶתֶר הָיָה נְבִיא יְהוָה; וְאֶתֶר בא בִּימֵי קוֹרְיָאֲנוּמְרַם וַהֲחָל לְנַבֵּא לָעָם, כִּי לֹא נָתַן לְמַנְעוֹ מִפְּנֵי רוּחַ יְהוָה אֲשֶׁר בּוֹ.
- וְהוּא קָרָא מִן הַבֹּקֶר וְעַד שְׁקִיעַת הַשָּׁמֶשׁ, בְּהוֹכִיחוֹ אֶת הָעָם לְהֵאֱמִין בִּאלֹהִים לְשֵׁם תְּשׁוּבָה, כֹּן יִשְׁמְדוּ, וְאָמַר לָהֶם כִּי עַל יְדֵי אֱמוּנָה מִתְקַיָּמִים כָּל הַדְּבָרִים;
- וְכִי כָל הַמֵּאֲמִין בִּאלֹהִים יָכוֹל לְקוֹת בְּבִטָּחָה לְעוֹלָם טוֹב יוֹתֵר, אַכֵּן, אִף לְמָקוֹם לִימִין אֱלֹהִים; וְהַתְקִנָה הַזֹּאת בָּאָה מֵאֱמוּנָה וְהִיא עֲנֵן לְנַפְשׁוֹת בְּנֵי הָאָדָם, אֲשֶׁר תַּעֲשֶׂם בְּטוֹחִים וְיִצְיָבִים, שׁוֹפְעִים תְּמִיד מַעֲשִׂים טוֹבִים וּמְנַהֲגִים לְפָאֵר אֶת אֱלֹהִים.
- וְאֶתֶר נִבֵּא לָעָם דְּבָרִים גְּדוֹלִים וְנִפְלְאִים, אֲשֶׁר הֵם לֹא הֵאֱמִינוּ בָהֶם, יַעַן אֲשֶׁר לֹא רָאוּם.
- וְעַתָּה, אֲנִי, מוֹרוֹנִי, אֲדַבֵּר דְּבַר־מָה עַל הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה. חֲפָצִי לְהִרְאוֹת לְעוֹלָם כִּי אֱמוּנָה הִיא דְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר מְקוּיִם לָהֶם וְאֲשֶׁר אֵינָם נִרְאִים. עַל כֵּן, אֵל תִּתְּנוּכְחוּ עַל כִּי אֵינְכֶם רוֹאִים; כִּי לֹא תִהְיֶה לָכֶם כָּל עֵדוּת עַד אֲשֶׁר תַּעֲמֹד אֱמוּנַתְכֶם בְּנִסְיוֹן.
- כִּי בְּאֱמוּנָה נִרְאָה הַמָּשִׁיחַ לְעֵינֵי אֲבוֹתֵינוּ, אַחֵר קוּמָה מִן הַמֵּתִים; וְהוּא לֹא הִתְגַּלָּה אֲלֵיהֶם, כִּי אִם אַחֵר הָיִיתָ לָהֶם אֱמוּנָה בּוֹ. לָכֵן, הִכָּרַח הוּא כִּי לְמִקְצֵתָם הִיְתָה אֱמוּנָה בּוֹ, כִּי הוּא לֹא הִתְגַּלָּה לְבְנֵי תִבְלָה כָּלוּ.
- אֲךָ מִפְּנֵי אֱמוּנַת בְּנֵי אָדָם הוּא נִרְאָה לְעוֹלָם, וּפָאֵר אֶת שֵׁם הָאֵב לְפָנוֹת אֶת הַדֶּרֶךְ אֲשֶׁר עַל יְדֵיהֶם יוֹכְלוּ אַחֲרָיִם לְהִנּוֹת מִמֶּתֶת הַשָּׁמַיִם בְּעֵבֹר יָקוֹו לְדְבָרִים אֲשֶׁר לֹא רָאוּ.
- לָכֵן, אִף אַתֶּם תּוֹכְלוּ לְקוֹת וּלְהִנּוֹת מִן הַמֶּתֶת, אִם אֲךָ תִּהְיֶה לָכֶם אֱמוּנָה.
- הֵן עַל יְדֵי הָאֱמוּנָה נִקְרְאוּ הַקְּדֻמוֹנִים עַל פִּי סֵדֶר הַקְּדָשׁ אֲשֶׁר לְאֱלֹהִים.

## אתר יב:יא-כא

- 11 ואכן, על ידי האמונה נתנה תורת משה. ואולם במתנת בנו הכין אלהים דרך מעלה יותר; ועל ידי אמונה קם הדבר.
- 12 Wherefore, by faith was the law of Moses given. But in the gift of his Son hath God prepared a more excellent way; and it is by faith that it hath been fulfilled.
- 13 כי אם אין אמונה בקרב בני האדם, לא יעשה אלהים כל נס בקרבם; לכן לא התגלה הוא לעיניהם כי אם אחר אשר היתה להם אמונה.
- 14 Behold, it was the faith of Alma and Amulek that caused the prison to tumble to the earth.
- 15 והן היתה זאת אמונת עמון ועמיתיו אשר חוללה נס כה גדול בקרב הלמנים.
- 16 Behold, it was the faith of Ammon and his brethren which wrought so great a miracle among the Lamanites.
- 17 אכן, כל אשר חוללו נסים, על ידי אמונה חוללו; אכן, אלה אשר קדמו למשיח כאלה אשר באו אחריו.
- 18 Yea, and even all they who wrought miracles wrought them by faith, even those who were before Christ and also those who were after.
- 19 והיה זה על ידי אמונה אשר קבלו שלשת התלמידים דבר ברית כי לא יטעמו את טעם המות; והם לא קבלו את דבר הברית כי אם אחר היות להם אמונה.
- 20 And it was by faith that the three disciples obtained a promise that they should not taste of death; and they obtained not the promise until after their faith.
- 21 ומעולם לא עשה איש נסים כי אם אחר היות לו אמונה; אכן, תחלה האמינו הם בבן אלהים.
- 22 And neither at any time hath any wrought miracles until after their faith; wherefore they first believed in the Son of God.
- 23 והיו רבים אשר אמונתם היתה עזה עד מאוד, אף לפני בוא המשיח, אשר לא נתן למנעם מהביט מעבר ללוט; והם ראו במו עיניהם את הדברים אשר ראום בעין אמונה, והיו מאשרים.
- 24 And there were many whose faith was so exceedingly strong, even before Christ came, who could not be kept from within the veil, but truly saw with their eyes the things which they had beheld with an eye of faith, and they were glad.
- 25 והנה, ראינו בכתב הזכרון הזה כי אחד מאלה היה אחי ירד; כי כה גדולה היתה אמונתו באלהים, עד כי בשלח אלהים את אצבעו הוא לא יכול היה להסתירה מעין אחי ירד, מפני דברו אשר דבר אליו, אשר אף הוא קבל על ידי אמונה.
- 26 And behold, we have seen in this record that one of these was the brother of Jared; for so great was his faith in God, that when God put forth his finger he could not hide it from the sight of the brother of Jared, because of his word which he had spoken unto him, which word he had obtained by faith.
- 27 ואחר ראות אחי ירד את אצבע יהוה, מפני דבר הברית אשר קבל על ידי אמונה, לא יכול היה יהוה להסתיר דבר מעיניו. על כן הוא הראהו הכל, כי לא נתן היה להותירו עוד מעבר ללוט.
- 28 And after the brother of Jared had beheld the finger of the Lord, because of the promise which the brother of Jared had obtained by faith, the Lord could not withhold anything from his sight; wherefore he showed him all things, for he could no longer be kept without the veil.



- 22 ועל ידי האמונה קבלו אבותי דבר ברית כי יבואו הדברים האלה אל אחיהם מיד הגוים; על כך צוני יהוה, הוא ישוע המשיח.
- 23 ואמרתי אליו: יהוה, הגוים ילעגו לדברים האלה מפני חלשתנו בכתיבה. כי אתה, יהוה, נתתנו להיות גבורי דבור על ידי האמונה, אך לא נתתנו להיות גבורי כתיבה; כי עשית את כל העם הזה מרבי כשר דבור, מפני רוח הקדש אשר נתת להם.
- 24 ועשיתנו מעוטי כשר כתיבה, מפני רפיון ידינו. הן לא עשיתנו גבורי כתיבה כאחי ירד, כי עשיתנו כך אשר כתביו היו מלאים עז כמותך עד כי גוברים על האדם הקורא אותם.
- 25 ואף את דברינו עשית גדולים ומלאים עז, עד כי איננו יכולים לכתבם; על כן, בכתיבתנו ראינו את חלשתנו, מפני מעידתנו בחבור דברינו; וירא אני פן ילעגו הגוים לדברינו.
- 26 וכאמרי את הדברים האלה דבר יהוה אלי לאמר: כסילים ילעגו, אך הם יתאבלו; וחסדי מספיק לעניים, המה לא ינצלו את חלשתם.
- 27 והיה אם יבואו אלי בני אדם, אראם את חלשתם. אנכי הוא הנותן חלשה לבני האדם בעבור ישפילו עצמם; וחסדי מספיק לכל בני האדם המכניעים עצמם לפני. כי אם יכניעו עצמם לפני, ואמינו בי, להם אהפוך דברים חלשים לחזקים.
- 28 הנה, אראה לגוים את חלשתם, וכי אמונה, תקוה וחסד מובילים אלי, אל מעון כל הצדקה.
- 29 ואני, מורוני, כשמעי את הדברים האלה התנחמתי ואמרתי: יהוה, תעשה נא צדקת רצונך, יען אשר יודע אני כי פועל אתה לבני האדם כפי אמונתם.
- 30 כי אחי ירד אמר אל הר זרין: סור! והוא סר, ולולא היתה לו אמונה לא היה זע ההר הנה, פועל אתה לאחר היות אמונה בבני האדם.
- And it is by faith that my fathers have obtained the promise that these things should come unto their brethren through the Gentiles; therefore the Lord hath commanded me, yea, even Jesus Christ.
- And I said unto him: Lord, the Gentiles will mock at these things, because of our weakness in writing; for Lord thou hast made us mighty in word by faith, but thou hast not made us mighty in writing; for thou hast made all this people that they could speak much, because of the Holy Ghost which thou hast given them;
- And thou hast made us that we could write but little, because of the awkwardness of our hands. Behold, thou hast not made us mighty in writing like unto the brother of Jared, for thou madest him that the things which he wrote were mighty even as thou art, unto the overpowering of man to read them.
- Thou hast also made our words powerful and great, even that we cannot write them; wherefore, when we write we behold our weakness, and stumble because of the placing of our words; and I fear lest the Gentiles shall mock at our words.
- And when I had said this, the Lord spake unto me, saying: Fools mock, but they shall mourn; and my grace is sufficient for the meek, that they shall take no advantage of your weakness;
- And if men come unto me I will show unto them their weakness. I give unto men weakness that they may be humble; and my grace is sufficient for all men that humble themselves before me; for if they humble themselves before me, and have faith in me, then will I make weak things become strong unto them.
- Behold, I will show unto the Gentiles their weakness and I will show unto them that faith, hope and charity bringeth unto me—the fountain of all righteousness.
- And I, Moroni, having heard these words, was comforted, and said: O Lord, thy righteous will be done, for I know that thou workest unto the children of men according to their faith;
- For the brother of Jared said unto the mountain Zerin, Remove—and it was removed. And if he had not had faith it would not have moved; wherefore thou workest after men have faith.

- 31 כי כה התגלית אל תלמידך; כי אחר היות להם אמונה, ואחר דברם בשמך, הראית עצמך להם בכחך הגדול.
- 32 ואני אף זוכר כי אמרת כי הכינות בית לאדם; אכן, במשכנות אביך, אשר בו יכולה להיות לאדם תקנה מעלה יותר. על פן הכרח הוא כי יקנה האדם; ולא, לא יוכל לקבל נחלה במקום אשר הכינות.
- 33 ואני זוכר עוד כי אמרת כי אהבת את העולם, עד כדי הנחת חיך למענו, בעבור תקום שנית להכין מקום לבני האדם.
- 34 והן יודע אני כי האהבה אשר אתה רוחש לבני האדם היא חסד; לכן, בלתי אם יהיה לבני האדם חסד, לא יוכלו לנחל את המקום אשר הכינות במשכנות אביך.
- 35 ויודע אני על פי הדבר הזה אשר אמרת, כי בלתי אם יהיה לגוים חסד, מפני חלשתנו, הוכח תוכיחם; ואת פשרונם תסיר מהם, אכן, את אשר קבלו, ותתנהו לאלה אשר יהיה להם רב יותר.
- 36 ואני התפללתי אל יהוה כי יכונן את הגוים, בעבור יהיה להם חסד.
- 37 ואמר יהוה אלי: אחת היא לך אם אין להם חסד, הן אתה נאמן; לכן ינקו בגדיה. ויען אשר ראית את חלשתך חזק תהיה, ומושך יהיה במקום אשר הכינותי במשכנות אבי.
- 38 ועתה, אני, מורוני, שולח ברכת שלום לגוים, ואף לאחי, אשר אני אוהבם, עד אשר נפגש לפני כס המשפט אשר למשיח; שם ידעו כל בני האדם כי אין בגדי מכתמים בדמכם.
- 39 אז תדעו כי ראיתי את ישוע, וכי הוא דבר עמי פנים אל פנים, וכי הוא ספר לי, בענוה פשוטה, כדבר איש אל רעהו בלשוני, על אודות הדברים האלה.
- 40 ורק מעט מדבריו רשמתי, מפני חלשתי בכתיבה.
- 31 For thus didst thou manifest thyself unto thy disciples; for after they had faith, and did speak in thy name, thou didst show thyself unto them in great power.
- 32 And I also remember that thou hast said that thou hast prepared a house for man, yea, even among the mansions of thy Father, in which man might have a more excellent hope; wherefore man must hope, or he cannot receive an inheritance in the place which thou hast prepared.
- 33 And again, I remember that thou hast said that thou hast loved the world, even unto the laying down of thy life for the world, that thou mightest take it again to prepare a place for the children of men.
- 34 And now I know that this love which thou hast had for the children of men is charity; wherefore, except men shall have charity they cannot inherit that place which thou hast prepared in the mansions of thy Father.
- 35 Wherefore, I know by this thing which thou hast said, that if the Gentiles have not charity, because of our weakness, that thou wilt prove them, and take away their talent, yea, even that which they have received, and give unto them who shall have more abundantly.
- 36 And it came to pass that I prayed unto the Lord that he would give unto the Gentiles grace, that they might have charity.
- 37 And it came to pass that the Lord said unto me: If they have not charity it mattereth not unto thee, thou hast been faithful; wherefore, thy garments shall be made clean. And because thou hast seen thy weakness thou shalt be made strong, even unto the sitting down in the place which I have prepared in the mansions of my Father.
- 38 And now I, Moroni, bid farewell unto the Gentiles, yea, and also unto my brethren whom I love, until we shall meet before the judgment-seat of Christ, where all men shall know that my garments are not spotted with your blood.
- 39 And then shall ye know that I have seen Jesus, and that he hath talked with me face to face, and that he told me in plain humility, even as a man telleth another in mine own language, concerning these things;
- 40 And only a few have I written, because of my weakness in writing.

## אתר יב:מ-יג:ח

ועתה, אֲדַבֵּר עַל לְבַבְכֶם כִּי תִבְקְשׁוּ אַחֵר יֵשׁוּעַ, אֲשֶׁר עָלָיו כָּתְבוּ הַנְּבִיאִים וְהַשְּׁלִיחִים, בְּעֵבֹר יְהִיָּה וְאַף יֵשׁוּפָן בְּכֶם לְעוֹלָם חֶסֶד אֱלֹהִים הָאֵב וְכֵן הָאֲדוֹן יֵשׁוּעַ הַמְּשִׁיחַ וְרוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ, אֲשֶׁר מַעֲיֵד עֲלֵיהֶם. אָמֵן.

40 And now, I would commend you to seek this Jesus of whom the prophets and apostles have written, that the grace of God the Father, and also the Lord Jesus Christ, and the Holy Ghost, which beareth record of them, may be and abide in you forever. Amen.

## יג

## 13

- ועתה, אֲנִי, מוֹרוֹנִי, אוֹסִיף לְהַשְׁלִים אֶת כְּתָב הַזְכָּרוֹן הַזֶּה עַל אֲדוּת חֶרְבֹן הָעָם אֲשֶׁר עָלָיו כָּתְבֹתִי.
- 1 And now I, Moroni, proceed to finish my record concerning the destruction of the people of whom I have been writing.
- כִּי הִנֵּה, הֵם מֵאֲסוּ בְּכָל דְּבָרֵי אֶתֶר, כִּי הוּא אָכֵן הוֹדִיעָם עַל כָּל הַדְּבָרִים, מִרְאִשִׁית הָאָדָם; וְכִי אַחֵר שׁוֹף הַמַּיִם מֵעַל פְּנֵי הָאָרֶץ הַזֹּאת, הִיא הָיְתָה אָרֶץ מְבֻחָר מִכָּל שְׂאֵר הָאָרְצוֹת, אָרֶץ נִבְחָרָת אֲשֶׁר לִיהוָה. עַל כֵּן, הָיָה בְּרָצוֹנוֹ כִּי כָּל הַשּׂוֹכְנִים בָּאָרֶץ הַזֹּאת עָבוֹד יַעֲבֹדוּהוּ.
- 2 For behold, they rejected all the words of Ether; for he truly told them of all things, from the beginning of man; and that after the waters had receded from off the face of this land it became a choice land above all other lands, a chosen land of the Lord; wherefore the Lord would have that all men should serve him who dwell upon the face thereof;
- וְכִי מְקוֹמָהּ יְהִיָּה מְקוֹם יְרוּשָׁלַם הַחֲדָשָׁה, אֲשֶׁר תֵּרַד מִן הַשָּׁמַיִם, מְקוֹם מְקֻדָּשׁ יְהוָה.
- 3 And that it was the place of the New Jerusalem, which should come down out of heaven, and the holy sanctuary of the Lord.
- וְהִנֵּה, אֶתֶר חָזָה אֶת יְמוֹת הַמְּשִׁיחַ. וְהוּא דִּבֶּר עַל יְרוּשָׁלַם הַחֲדָשָׁה בָּאָרֶץ הַזֹּאת.
- 4 Behold, Ether saw the days of Christ, and he spake concerning a New Jerusalem upon this land.
- וְהוּא אָף דִּבֶּר עַל בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל וְעַל יְרוּשָׁלַם אֲשֶׁר מִמֶּנָּה יֵצֵא לְחִי, אֲשֶׁר אַחֵר הַחֲרָבָה הִיא תִּבְנֶה שֵׁנִית, וְתִהְיֶה עִיר קֹדֶשׁ לִיהוָה; עַל כֵּן אֵין הִיא יְרוּשָׁלַם הַחֲדָשָׁה, כִּי כָּבֵד הָיְתָה בִּימֵי קֶדֶם. וְאוּלָם הִיא תִּבְנֶה שֵׁנִית וְתִהְיֶה עִיר קֹדֶשׁ לִיהוָה; וְהִיא תִּבְנֶה בְּעֵבֹר בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל.
- 5 And he spake also concerning the house of Israel, and the Jerusalem from whence Lehi should come—after it should be destroyed it should be built up again, a holy city unto the Lord; wherefore, it could not be a new Jerusalem for it had been in a time of old; but it should be built up again, and become a holy city of the Lord; and it should be built unto the house of Israel.
- וְכִי יְרוּשָׁלַם הַחֲדָשָׁה עֲתִידָה לִהְיוֹת בָּאָרֶץ הַזֹּאת, לְשִׁאֲרֵית זֶרַע יוֹסֵף; וְלְדְבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה קִיָּמָת תִּבְנִית.
- 6 And that a New Jerusalem should be built upon this land, unto the remnant of the seed of Joseph, for which things there has been a type.
- כִּי כִּמוֹ אֲשֶׁר הוֹרִיד יוֹסֵף אֶת אָבִיו אֶל אָרֶץ מִצְרַיִם, וְהָ מָת בָּהּ, כֵּן הוֹצִיא יְהוָה אֶת שְׂאֲרֵית זֶרַע יוֹסֵף מֵאָרֶץ יְרוּשָׁלַם, בְּעֵבֹר יְרַחֵם עֲלֵיהֶם, לְבַל יֵאָבְדוּ; אָכֵן, כִּפִּי אֲשֶׁר רַחֵם עַל אָבִי יוֹסֵף, לְבַל יֵאָבֵד.
- 7 For as Joseph brought his father down into the land of Egypt, even so he died there; wherefore, the Lord brought a remnant of the seed of Joseph out of the land of Jerusalem, that he might be merciful unto the seed of Joseph that they should perish not, even as he was merciful unto the father of Joseph that he should perish not.
- עַל כֵּן תִּבְנֶה שְׂאֲרֵית בֵּית יוֹסֵף בָּאָרֶץ הַזֹּאת, וְתִהְיֶה זֹאת אָרֶץ נַחֲלָתָם; וְהֵם יִבְנוּ עִיר קֹדֶשׁ
- 8 Wherefore, the remnant of the house of Joseph shall be built upon this land; and it shall be a land of their inheritance; and they shall build

ליהוה, כמו ירושלם אשר מקדם, ולא יכלמו עוד, עד אשר יבוא הקץ, בחלף הארץ.

up a holy city unto the Lord, like unto the Jerusalem of old; and they shall no more be confounded, until the end come when the earth shall pass away.

ויהיו שמים חדשים וארץ חדשה; והם יהיו בקודמיהם, וזאת כי הישן יחלף וכל הדברים יתחדשו.

9 And there shall be a new heaven and a new earth; and they shall be like unto the old save the old have passed away, and all things have become new.

אז תופיע ירושלם החדשה; וברוכים השוכנים בה, כי אלה הם אשר בגדיהם לבנים על ידי דם השם; והם הנמנים עם שארית זרע יוסף, אשר מבית ישראל המה.

10 And then cometh the New Jerusalem; and blessed are they who dwell therein, for it is they whose garments are white through the blood of the Lamb; and they are they who are numbered among the remnant of the seed of Joseph, who were of the house of Israel.

אז תבוא אף ירושלם הישנה; ויושביה ברוכים הם, כי נרחצו בדם השם; והם אלה אשר היו פזורים ואשר נקבצו מארבע כנפות הארץ ומארצות הצפון. והם הלוקחים חלק בקיום הברית אשר כרת אלהים עם אברהם אביהם.

11 And then also cometh the Jerusalem of old; and the inhabitants thereof, blessed are they, for they have been washed in the blood of the Lamb; and they are they who were scattered and gathered in from the four quarters of the earth, and from the north countries, and are partakers of the fulfilling of the covenant which God made with their father, Abraham.

ובבוא הדברים האלה יתקיים הכתוב האומר: יש אשר היו ראשונים, ויהיו אחרונים; ויש אשר היו אחרונים, ויהיו ראשונים.

12 And when these things come, bringeth to pass the scripture which saith, there are they who were first, who shall be last; and there are they who were last, who shall be first.

ואני אמרתי לכתב עוד, אף אסור עלי הדבר. אולם גדולות ונפלאות היו נבואות אתר, אף האנשים חשבוהו כאין וגרשוהו; והוא הסתתר ביום במערת סלע ובלילה יצא לחזות את אשר יבוא על העם.

13 And I was about to write more, but I am forbidden; but great and marvelous were the prophecies of Ether; but they esteemed him as naught, and cast him out; and he hid himself in the cavity of a rock by day, and by night he went forth viewing the things which should come upon the people.

ובשבתי במערת הסלע כתב את שאר כתב הזכרון הזה, בחזונו לילה את האבדון אשר יבוא על העם.

14 And as he dwelt in the cavity of a rock he made the remainder of his record, viewing the destructions which came upon the people, by night.

והיה בעצם השנה אשר גרש מתוך העם, פריצה בעם מלחמה גדולה; כי רבים היו גבורי כח הקמים בבקשם לאבד את קוריאנטומר במזמות רשעתם החשאיות, אשר עליהן דבר.

15 And it came to pass that in that same year in which he was cast out from among the people there began to be a great war among the people, for there were many who rose up, who were mighty men, and sought to destroy Coriantumr by their secret plans of wickedness, of which hath been spoken.

וקוריאנטומר, אשר היה מלמד בכל דרכי המלחמה ובכל ערמת העולם, יצא להלחם במבקשי נפשו.

16 And now Coriantumr, having studied, himself, in all the arts of war and all the cunning of the world, wherefore he gave battle unto them who sought to destroy him.

אף הוא לא שב מסורו, וכמוהו בניו ובנותיו יפי התאר; וכן בני קוהור ובנותיו יפי התאר.

17 But he repented not, neither his fair sons nor daughters; neither the fair sons and daughters of Cohor; neither the fair sons and daughters

## אתר יג:יח-כז

ואף בני קוריהור ובנותיו יפי התאר; ובקצרה  
אף אחד מן הבנים והבנות יפי התאר אשר  
על פני כל האדמה לא שב מחטאתו.

of Corihor; and in fine, there were none of the fair sons and daughters  
upon the face of the whole earth who repented of their sins.

על כן, בשנה הראשונה לשכן אתר במערת  
הסלע, נהרגו אנשים רבים בחרב אגדות  
הסתה הנלחמות בקוריאנטומר בעבור תפיש  
המלוכה מידי.

18 Wherefore, it came to pass that in the first year that Ether dwelt in the  
cavity of a rock, there were many people who were slain by the sword  
of those secret combinations, fighting against Coriantumr that they  
might obtain the kingdom.

ובני קוריאנטומר הרבו להלחם ודמיהם  
נשפכו לרב.

19 And it came to pass that the sons of Coriantumr fought much and  
bled much.

והיה דבר יהוה אל אתר בשנה השנייה,  
כי ילך וינבא לקוריאנטומר כי אם ישוב מרע,  
הוא וכל ביתו, יתנהו יהוה את מלכותו ויחוס  
על העם;

20 And in the second year the word of the Lord came to Ether, that he  
should go and prophesy unto Coriantumr that, if he would repent, and  
all his household, the Lord would give unto him his kingdom and spare  
the people—

ולא, לאבד העם וכל בני ביתו, וזולתו. והוא  
יחיה רק עד ראותו את קיום דברי הנבואה  
על אודות עם אחר אשר יקבל את הארץ  
לנחלתם; וכי קוריאנטומר יקבר בידם,  
וכי תאבד כל נפש, וזולת קוריאנטומר.

21 Otherwise they should be destroyed, and all his household save it were  
himself. And he should only live to see the fulfilling of the prophecies  
which had been spoken concerning another people receiving the land  
for their inheritance; and Coriantumr should receive a burial by them;  
and every soul should be destroyed save it were Coriantumr.

והיה כי קוריאנטומר לא שב מרעתו, ואף לא  
ביתו ולא העם; והמלחמות לא חדלו,  
והאנשים בקשו להרג את אתר, אך הוא ברח  
מפניהם ושב להסתתר במערת הסלע.

22 And it came to pass that Coriantumr repented not, neither his  
household, neither the people; and the wars ceased not; and they  
sought to kill Ether, but he fled from before them and hid again in the  
cavity of the rock.

והיה כי קם שרד, ואף הוא נלחם  
בקוריאנטומר; והוא הפה, עד כי שבה אותו  
בשנה השלישית.

23 And it came to pass that there arose up Shared, and he also gave battle  
unto Coriantumr; and he did beat him, insomuch that in the third year  
he did bring him into captivity.

ובני קוריאנטומר הכו את שרד בשנה  
הרביעית והשיבו את המלכות לאביהם.

24 And the sons of Coriantumr, in the fourth year, did beat Shared, and  
did obtain the kingdom again unto their father.

אז פשטה המלחמה על כל פני הארץ; כל  
איש נלחם עם כנפיתו לקים את חפצו.

25 Now there began to be a war upon all the face of the land, every man  
with his band fighting for that which he desired.

והיו בארץ שודדים; אכן, כל מיני רשעה  
פשטו על כל פני הארץ.

26 And there were robbers, and in fine, all manner of wickedness upon all  
the face of the land.

וחמת קוריאנטומר בערה על שרד, והוא יצא  
אליו עם צבאו להלחם בו; והם נפגשו בחמת  
זעם, בעמק גלגל נפגשו; והמלחמה הייתה  
כבדה מאד.

27 And it came to pass that Coriantumr was exceedingly angry with  
Shared, and he went against him with his armies to battle; and they did  
meet in great anger, and they did meet in the valley of Gilgal; and the  
battle became exceedingly sore.



## אֶתֶר יג:כח-יד:ו

- 28 And it came to pass that Shared fought against him for the space of three days. And it came to pass that Coriantumr beat him, and did pursue him until he came to the plains of Heshlon.
- וְשָׂרָד נִלָּחֵם בּוֹ שְׁלֹשָׁה יָמִים. וְהָיָה כִּי הִכָּהוּ קוֹרִיאַנְטוּמְרַי, וַיִּרְדֹּף אַחֲרָיו עַד בּוֹאוֹ אֶל שְׁפֵלַת חֶשְׁלוֹן.
- 29 And it came to pass that Shared gave him battle again upon the plains; and behold, he did beat Coriantumr, and drove him back again to the valley of Gilgal.
- וְשָׂרָד הִשִּׁיבּוֹ מִלְחָמָה בְּשְׁפִלוֹת, וְהִנֵּה הוּא הִכָּה אֶת קוֹרִיאַנְטוּמְרַי וַיִּדְפּוֹ, וְהִסְגִּהּוּ אֶל עֵמֶק גִּלְגָּל.
- 30 And Coriantumr gave Shared battle again in the valley of Gilgal, in which he beat Shared and slew him.
- וְקוֹרִיאַנְטוּמְרַי נִלָּחֵם בְּשָׂרָד שֵׁנִית בְּעֵמֶק גִּלְגָּל, וְהִכָּה אֶת שָׂרָד וַיְהַמִּיתוֹ.
- 31 And Shared wounded Coriantumr in his thigh, that he did not go to battle again for the space of two years, in which time all the people upon the face of the land were shedding blood, and there was none to restrain them.
- וַיַּעַן אֲשֶׁר פָּצְעוּ שָׂרָד בִּירְכוֹ, לֹא יָצָא עוֹד קוֹרִיאַנְטוּמְרַי לְמִלְחָמָה שְׁנַתִּים יָמִים; וּבָעֵת הַהִיא הָיוּ כָּל אַנְשֵׁי הָאָרֶץ שׁוֹפְכִים דָּם בְּאֵין מוֹנֵעַ.

## יד

## 14

- 1 And now there began to be a great curse upon all the land because of the iniquity of the people, in which, if a man should lay his tool or his sword upon his shelf, or upon the place whither he would keep it, behold, upon the morrow, he could not find it, so great was the curse upon the land.
- וְהָיְתָה קִלְלָה גְדוֹלָה עַל כָּל הָאָרֶץ מִפְּנֵי עֲוֹנוֹת הָעָם. וְהָיָה כִּי הִנִּיחַ אִישׁ אֶת כְּלָיו, אוֹ אֶת חֶרְבוֹ, עַל מִדְּף בֵּיתוֹ, אוֹ בְּמָקוֹם הַחֻזְקָתָם, וְהִנֵּה לְמָחָרֵת לֹא מִצָּאָם; כֹּה גְדוֹלָה הָיְתָה הַקִּלְלָה עַל פְּנֵי הָאָרֶץ.
- 2 Wherefore every man did cleave unto that which was his own, with his hands, and would not borrow neither would he lend; and every man kept the hilt of his sword in his right hand, in the defence of his property and his own life and of his wives and children.
- עַל כֵּן כָּל דָּבָר כָּל אִישׁ בְּקִנְיָנוֹ וַיַּחֲזִיקָהוּ בְּיָדוֹ, בְּלֹא לָלוּז וּבְלֹא לְהִשְׁאִיל; וְכָל אִישׁ הִחֲזִיק אֶת נֹצֵב חֶרְבוֹ בְּיָמִינוֹ, לְמַעַן הִגֵּן עַל רְכוּשׁוֹ, וְעַל חַיּוֹ וְעַל חַיֵּי נְשׁוֹתָיו וְעַל יְלָדָיו.
- 3 And now, after the space of two years, and after the death of Shared, behold, there arose the brother of Shared and he gave battle unto Coriantumr, in which Coriantumr did beat him and did pursue him to the wilderness of Akish.
- וְהָיָה כְּעֵבֶר שְׁנַתִּים יָמִים אַחֵר מוֹת שָׂרָד, וְהִנֵּה קָם אָחִי שָׂרָד וַיִּצָּא לְמִלְחָמָה עַל קוֹרִיאַנְטוּמְרַי; וְקוֹרִיאַנְטוּמְרַי הִכָּהוּ וַיִּרְדֹּף אַחֲרָיו עַד יַעַר אַכִּישׁ.
- 4 And it came to pass that the brother of Shared did give battle unto him in the wilderness of Akish; and the battle became exceedingly sore, and many thousands fell by the sword.
- וְאָחִי שָׂרָד נִלָּחֵם בּוֹ בְּיַעַר אַכִּישׁ; וְהָיְתָה הַמִּלְחָמָה כְּבֹדָה מְאֹד, וְאַלְפִים רַבִּים נָפְלוּ בַּחֶרֶב.
- 5 And it came to pass that Coriantumr did lay siege to the wilderness; and the brother of Shared did march forth out of the wilderness by night, and slew a part of the army of Coriantumr, as they were drunken.
- וְקוֹרִיאַנְטוּמְרַי הִטִּיל מָצוֹר עַל הַיַּעַר; וְאָחִי שָׂרָד יָצָא מִן הַיַּעַר בַּלַּיְלָה וַיִּהְיֶה חֹלֶק מִצָּבָא קוֹרִיאַנְטוּמְרַי בְּהִיוֹתָם שׁוֹכְרִים.
- 6 And he came forth to the land of Moron, and placed himself upon the throne of Coriantumr.
- וְהוּא בָּא אֶל אֶרֶץ מוֹרוֹן, וַיָּשֶׁב עַל כִּסֵּי הַמַּלְכוּת אֲשֶׁר לְקוֹרִיאַנְטוּמְרַי.

## אתר יד:ז-יח

- 7 And it came to pass that Coriantumr dwelt with his army in the wilderness for the space of two years, in which he did receive great strength to his army.
- וְקוֹרְיָאֲנוּמְרִי שָׁכַן עִם צָבָאוֹ בְּיַעַר בְּמִשְׁךְ שְׁנָתַיִם יָמִים, וְאִסַּף כַּח גָּדוֹל לְצָבָאוֹ.
- 8 Now the brother of Shared, whose name was Gilead, also received great strength to his army, because of secret combinations.
- וְאָף אָחִי שָׂרֵד, אֲשֶׁר שְׁמוֹ נִקְרָא גִלְעָד, קָבַל תְּגִבְרַת רַבָּה לְצָבָאוֹ, מִפְּנֵי אֲגָדוֹת הַסֵּתֶר.
- 9 And it came to pass that his high priest murdered him as he sat upon his throne.
- וְהָיָה בָּעֵת שִׁבְתּוֹ עַל כִּסֵּאוֹ, רָצְחוּהוּ כְהֵנּוּ הַגָּדוֹל.
- 10 And it came to pass that one of the secret combinations murdered him in a secret pass, and obtained unto himself the kingdom; and his name was Lib; and Lib was a man of great stature, more than any other man among all the people.
- וְאֶחָד מִחֲבָרֵי אֲגָדוֹת הַסֵּתֶר רָצַח אֶת הַכֹּהֵן בְּמִשְׁעוֹל סֵתֶר, וְלָקַח לוֹ אֶת הַמְּלוּכָה. וְשֵׁם הָאִישׁ לִיב. וְלִיב הָיָה גָבֹר בְּעַל מִדָּה רַבָּה, וְהָיָה גָדוֹל מִכָּל אִישׁ אֲשֶׁר בָּעָם.
- 11 And it came to pass that in the first year of Lib, Coriantumr came up unto the land of Moron, and gave battle unto Lib.
- וְהָיָה בִּשְׁנָה הָרִאשׁוֹנָה לְשָׁלוֹטוֹן לִיב, עָלָה קוֹרְיָאֲנוּמְרִי אֶל אֶרֶץ מוֹרוֹן, וְאָסַר מִלְחָמָה עַל לִיב.
- 12 And it came to pass that he fought with Lib, in which Lib did smite upon his arm that he was wounded; nevertheless, the army of Coriantumr did press forward upon Lib, that he fled to the borders upon the seashore.
- וּבַהֲלָחֵם קוֹרְיָאֲנוּמְרִי בְּלִיב, הִכָּה לִיב אֶת זְרוֹעוֹ וּפִצְעָה; אָף צָבָא קוֹרְיָאֲנוּמְרִי הִשְׁתַּעֵר עַל לִיב, וְהוּא נָס אֶל גְּבוּל חוּף הַיָּם.
- 13 And it came to pass that Coriantumr pursued him; and Lib gave battle unto him upon the seashore.
- וְקוֹרְיָאֲנוּמְרִי רָדַף אַחֲרָיו, וְלִיב יָצָא עָלָיו לִקְרֹב עַל חוּף הַיָּם.
- 14 And it came to pass that Lib did smite the army of Coriantumr, that they fled again to the wilderness of Akish.
- וְלִיב הִכָּה אֶת צָבָא קוֹרְיָאֲנוּמְרִי, עַד כִּי נָסוּ שְׁנֵיתָא אֶל יַעַר אַכִּישׁ.
- 15 And it came to pass that Lib did pursue him until he came to the plains of Agosh. And Coriantumr had taken all the people with him as he fled before Lib in that quarter of the land whither he fled.
- וְלִיב רָדַף אַחֲרָיו עַד בּוֹאוֹ אֶל שְׂפֵלַת אַגּוֹשׁ; וּבָעֵת מְנוּסָתוֹ מִפְּנֵי לִיב, לָקַח קוֹרְיָאֲנוּמְרִי אֶת כָּל יוֹשְׁבֵי חֻבֵּל הָאֶרֶץ הַהוּא, אֲשֶׁר נָס שָׁמָּה.
- 16 And when he had come to the plains of Agosh he gave battle unto Lib, and he smote upon him until he died; nevertheless, the brother of Lib did come against Coriantumr in the stead thereof, and the battle became exceedingly sore, in the which Coriantumr fled again before the army of the brother of Lib.
- וְהָיָה בְּבוֹאוֹ אֶל שְׂפֵלַת אַגּוֹשׁ, הוּא נָלָחֵם בְּלִיב, וְהִכָּהוּ עַד מוֹת. וְאוֹלָם, אָחִי לִיב יָצָא תַּחְתָּיו עַל קוֹרְיָאֲנוּמְרִי וְהִמְלִיחָמָה כְּבֹדָה מְאֹד; וְקוֹרְיָאֲנוּמְרִי נָס שְׁנֵיתָא מִפְּנֵי צָבָא אָחִי לִיב.
- 17 Now the name of the brother of Lib was called Shiz. And it came to pass that Shiz pursued after Coriantumr, and he did overthrow many cities, and he did slay both women and children, and he did burn the cities.
- וְשֵׁם אָחִי לִיב נִקְרָא שִׁז. וְשׁוֹ רָדַף אַחֲרָיו קוֹרְיָאֲנוּמְרִי; וְהוּא הָרַס עָרִים רַבּוֹת, וְהָרַג נָשִׁים וְיֻלְדִים, וְאֶת הָעָרִים שָׂרַף.
- 18 And there went a fear of Shiz throughout all the land; yea, a cry went forth throughout the land—Who can stand before the army of Shiz? Behold, he sweepeth the earth before him!
- וְהָיָה כִּי נָפַל פַּחַד מִפְּנֵי שִׁז עַל כָּל הָאֶרֶץ; אֲכֹן הִצְעָקָה עֲבָרָה בְּכָל הָאֶרֶץ, לֵאמֹר: מִי יוּכַל לַעֲמֹד בְּפָנֵי צָבָא שִׁז? הִנֵּה, מְטַאטֵא הוּא אֶת הָאֲדָמָה מִלְּפָנָיו!

- 19 והאנשים החלו לנהר בכל פני הארץ ולהתגודד לצבאות.
- 20 והם היו מפלגים. חלקם ברחו אל צבא שזי וחלקם ברחו אל צבא קוריאנטומר.
- 21 וכה גדולה וארצה היתה המלחמה, וכה משוף היה חזיון הדמים והשבח, עד כי כל פני הארץ כסו בגויות החללים.
- 22 וכה מהירה וחפזה היתה המלחמה, עד אשר לא נותר איש לקבר את המתים, כי הם צעדו ממרחץ דמים אל מרחץ דמים בהותרים אחריהם גופות גברים ונשים וילדים, פזורות על פני הארץ, להיות מאכל לרמות הבשר.
- 23 וצחנתם נשאה על פני הארץ, אכן, על כל פניה; לכן התענה העם יומם ולילה, מפני הצחנה ההיא.
- 24 ואולם שזי לא חדל מרדף אחר קוריאנטומר, כי נשבע לנקם מידיו את דמי אחיו ההרוג ובעבור דבר יהוה אל אתר האומר כי לא יפל קוריאנטומר בחרב.
- 25 וכה רואים אנחנו כי פקדם יהוה במלא חמתו, וכי רשעתם ותועבותיהם הכינו את דרך השמדתם הנצחית.
- 26 ושזי רדף אחר קוריאנטומר מזרחה, עד גבול חוף הים. שם נלחם קוריאנטומר בשזי במשך שלשה ימים.
- 27 וכה נוראה היתה ההשמדה בקרב צבא שזי, עד כי אחרים הפחדו, והאנשים החלו לנוס מפני צבא קוריאנטומר אל ארץ קוריהור; והם סחפו את יושבי הארץ אשר עמדו בדרךם, את כל אשר לא התחברו אליהם.
- 28 והם נטו את אהליהם בעמק קוריהור; וקוריאנטומר נטה את אהליו בעמק שור. ועמק שור היה ליד הגבעה קומנור; על פן אסף קוריאנטומר את צבאו על הגבעה קומנור. והוא תקע בשופר אל צבא שזי לקראם אל הקרב.
- 19 And it came to pass that the people began to flock together in armies, throughout all the face of the land.
- 20 And they were divided; and a part of them fled to the army of Shiz, and a part of them fled to the army of Coriantumr.
- 21 And so great and lasting had been the war, and so long had been the scene of bloodshed and carnage, that the whole face of the land was covered with the bodies of the dead.
- 22 And so swift and speedy was the war that there was none left to bury the dead, but they did march forth from the shedding of blood to the shedding of blood, leaving the bodies of both men, women, and children strewed upon the face of the land, to become a prey to the worms of the flesh.
- 23 And the scent thereof went forth upon the face of the land, even upon all the face of the land; wherefore the people became troubled by day and by night, because of the scent thereof.
- 24 Nevertheless, Shiz did not cease to pursue Coriantumr; for he had sworn to avenge himself upon Coriantumr of the blood of his brother, who had been slain, and the word of the Lord which came to Ether that Coriantumr should not fall by the sword.
- 25 And thus we see that the Lord did visit them in the fulness of his wrath, and their wickedness and abominations had prepared a way for their everlasting destruction.
- 26 And it came to pass that Shiz did pursue Coriantumr eastward, even to the borders by the seashore, and there he gave battle unto Shiz for the space of three days.
- 27 And so terrible was the destruction among the armies of Shiz that the people began to be frightened, and began to flee before the armies of Coriantumr; and they fled to the land of Corihor, and swept off the inhabitants before them, all them that would not join them.
- 28 And they pitched their tents in the valley of Corihor; and Coriantumr pitched his tents in the valley of Shurr. Now the valley of Shurr was near the hill Comnor; wherefore, Coriantumr did gather his armies together upon the hill Comnor, and did sound a trumpet unto the armies of Shiz to invite them forth to battle.

- 29 וַחֲלִי שִׁז יָצָאוּ לְקִרְאָתָם, וְאוֹלָם הֵם שָׁבוּ וְנִהְדָּפוּ; וְהֵם בָּאוּ בַּשְּׁנִית, וּבַשְּׁנִית נִהְדָּפוּ. וְהָיָה כִּי הֵם בָּאוּ עוֹד בַּשְּׁלִישִׁית, וְהַמִּלְחָמָה כָּבֵדָה עַד מְאֹד.
- 30 וַשִּׁז הָלַם בְּקוֹרִיאַנְטוּמְר וּפָצְעוּ וּפָצְעוּ עֲמָקִים רַבִּים. וְקוֹרִיאַנְטוּמְר הִתְעַלֵּף מֵאֲבֹד דָּם, וְנִשְׁאָוְהוּ מִשָּׁם, כְּאִלּוּ הָיָה מֵת.
- 31 וְהָיוּ אֲבֹדוֹת הַגְּבָרִים וְהַנְּשִׁים וְהַיְלָדִים, בַּשְּׁנִי הַמַּחְנוֹת, כֹּה גְדוֹלוֹת עַד כִּי צָוָה שִׁז אֶת אֲנָשָׁיו לְחַדֵּל מִרְדִּיפָה אַחֵר צָבָא קוֹרִיאַנְטוּמְר; עַל כֵּן הֵם שָׁבוּ אֶל מַחֲנֵם.

## טו

## 15

- 1 וְהָיָה אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר רָפָא קוֹרִיאַנְטוּמְר מִפְּצָעָיו, הוּא זָכַר אֶת דְּבָרֵי אֶתֶר אֵלָיו.
- 2 וְהוּא רָאָה כִּי כָּבֵד נָפְלוּ בַּחֶרֶב כְּמֵאתִים רְבֹא מַעֲמֹ, וְנִנְעֵצַב לְבוֹ; אָכֵן, נִהְדָּגוּ רְבֹא רַבּוֹת גְּבוּרֵי חֵיל וְכֹן נִשְׁיָהִם וַיְלָדֵיהֶם.
- 3 וְהוּא הִחֵל לְהִנָּחֵם עַל הָרַע אֲשֶׁר עָשָׂה. הוּא זָכַר אֶת הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר יָצְאוּ מִפִּי כָּל הַנְּבִיאִים; וְרָאָה אֶת אֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר קָמוּ וְהָיוּ עַד כֹּה, כָּל פֶּרֶט וּפֶרֶט. וְנִפְשׁוּ אֲבֵלָה וּמֵאֲנָה לְהִנָּחֵם.
- 4 וְהוּא כָּתַב אֶגְרָת אֶל שִׁז וּבִקְשׁוּ לְחוּס עַל הָעָם; וְהוּא אָמַר כִּי יִנִּיחַ מִיָּדוֹ אֶת הַמְּלוּכָה בְּעִבּוֹר חַיֵּי הָעָם.
- 5 וְהָיָה כְּאֲשֶׁר קִבֵּל שִׁז אֶת הָאֶגְרָת, הוּא כָּתַב אֶגְרָת אֶל קוֹרִיאַנְטוּמְר וְאָמַר כִּי אִם יִמָּסֵר עֲצָמוֹ לְמַעַן יִהְיֶהוּ בְּמוֹ חֶרֶב, יָחוּס עַל חַיֵּי הָאֲנָשִׁים.
- 6 וּבְנֵי הָעָם לֹא שָׁבוּ מִעֲוֹנָם. וְאֲנָשִׁי קוֹרִיאַנְטוּמְר עוֹרְרוּ לְכַעַס עַל אֲנָשֵׁי שִׁז, וְאֲנָשִׁי שִׁז עוֹרְרוּ לְכַעַס עַל אֲנָשֵׁי קוֹרִיאַנְטוּמְר; עַל כֵּן נִלְחָמוּ אֲנָשֵׁי שִׁז בְּאֲנָשֵׁי קוֹרִיאַנְטוּמְר.
- 7 וּכְרָאוֹת קוֹרִיאַנְטוּמְר כִּי קְרוּבָה שְׁעָתוֹ לְנָפֹל, הוּא בָּרַח שְׁנִית מִפְּנֵי אֲנָשֵׁי שִׁז.

- והוא בא אל מי ריפליאנקום; ומשמע השם  
ההוא גדול או רב מכל. והיה בבוואם אל  
מקום המים האלה, הם נטו את אהליהם;  
ושז אף הוא נטה את אהליו לידם; לכן הם  
יצאו למחרת אל הקרב.
- והם נלחמו מלחמה קשה מאד, וקוריאנטומר  
נפצע שנית, והתעלף מאבוד דם.
- וחילי קוריאנטומר השתערו על חילות  
שז, והכום והניסום מפניהם. והם נסו דרומה,  
ונטו את אהליהם במקום אשר שמו  
נקרא אוגת.
- וחילי קוריאנטומר נטו את אהליהם ליד  
הגבעה רמה; היא הגבעה אשר בה הצפין  
אבי מורמון את כתבי הזכרון אשר ליהוה,  
אשר קדושים.
- והם קבצו את כל העם אשר על כל פני  
הארץ, אשר לא נהרגו, וזלת אתה.
- ואתר ראה את כל מעשי העם; וראה כי  
העם אשר היו בעד קוריאנטומר נקבצו אל  
צבא קוריאנטומר, וכי העם אשר היו בעד שז  
נקבצו אל צבא שז.
- אכן, במשך ארבע שנים הם היו מקבצים את  
העם בעבור יקחו להם את כל האנשים אשר  
על פני הארץ, ובעבור יקבלו את כל העצמה  
אשר היה לאל ידם לקבל.
- והיה בהתקבץ כלם, איש-איש לצבא אשר  
חפצו, עם נשיהם וילדיהם, בהיות גברים,  
נשים וילדים חמושים בכלי מלחמה ובמגנים  
ובשריוני חזה ובקובעים, ובהיותם לבושים חגור  
קרב, הם יצאו לקרב, חיל לקראת חיל; והם  
נלחמו כל היום ההוא, ולא הייתה הכרעה.
- וברדת הלילה הם היו יגעים ושובו אל  
מחנותיהם; ואחר שובם אל מחנותיהם  
הם נשאו את קולם ביללה וקינה על אבדן  
אנשיהם אשר נפלו. והיו זעקותיהם  
ויללותיהם וקינותיהם כה גדולות,  
עד כי פלחו את האויר.
- 8 And it came to pass that he came to the waters of Ripliancum, which, by interpretation, is large, or to exceed all; wherefore, when they came to these waters they pitched their tents; and Shiz also pitched his tents near unto them; and therefore on the morrow they did come to battle.
- 9 And it came to pass that they fought an exceedingly sore battle, in which Coriantumr was wounded again, and he fainted with the loss of blood.
- 10 And it came to pass that the armies of Coriantumr did press upon the armies of Shiz that they beat them, that they caused them to flee before them; and they did flee southward, and did pitch their tents in a place which was called Ogath.
- 11 And it came to pass that the army of Coriantumr did pitch their tents by the hill Ramah; and it was that same hill where my father Mormon did hide up the records unto the Lord, which were sacred.
- 12 And it came to pass that they did gather together all the people upon all the face of the land, who had not been slain, save it was Ether.
- 13 And it came to pass that Ether did behold all the doings of the people; and he beheld that the people who were for Coriantumr were gathered together to the army of Coriantumr; and the people who were for Shiz were gathered together to the army of Shiz.
- 14 Wherefore, they were for the space of four years gathering together the people, that they might get all who were upon the face of the land, and that they might receive all the strength which it was possible that they could receive.
- 15 And it came to pass that when they were all gathered together, everyone to the army which he would, with their wives and their children—both men women and children being armed with weapons of war, having shields, and breastplates, and head-plates, and being clothed after the manner of war—they did march forth one against another to battle; and they fought all that day, and conquered not.
- 16 And it came to pass that when it was night they were weary, and retired to their camps; and after they had retired to their camps they took up a howling and a lamentation for the loss of the slain of their people; and so great were their cries, their howlings and lamentations, that they did rend the air exceedingly.



- 17 And it came to pass that on the morrow they did go again to battle, and great and terrible was that day; nevertheless, they conquered not, and when the night came again they did rend the air with their cries, and their howlings, and their mournings, for the loss of the slain of their people.
- וּלְמַחֲרָת הֵם יֵצְאוּ שֵׁנִית לִקְרָב, וְהָיָה הַיּוֹם הַהוּא גָּדוֹל וְנוֹרָא, וְאוֹלָם, לֹא הָיְתָה הַכְרָעָה. וּבִבּוֹא הַלַּיְלָה, הֵם פָּלְחוּ שֵׁנִית אֶת הָאָוִיר בְּזַעֲקוֹתֵיהֶם וּבִלְלוֹתֵיהֶם וּבְקִינוֹתֵיהֶם עַל אֲבֹדָן אֲנָשֵׁיהֶם אֲשֶׁר נָפְלוּ.
- 18 And it came to pass that Coriantumr wrote again an epistle unto Shiz, desiring that he would not come again to battle, but that he would take the kingdom, and spare the lives of the people.
- וְקוֹרִיאַנְטוּמְר כָּתַב שֵׁנִית אֶגְרָת אֶל שִׁז, וּבִקְשׁוֹ כִּי לֹא יָשׁוּב לְהִלָּחֵם, כִּי אִם יִקַּח אֶת הַמְּלוּכָה, וְיַחֲסוּ עַל חַיֵּי הָעָם.
- 19 And behold, the Spirit of the Lord had ceased striving with them, and Satan had full power over the hearts of the people; for they were given up unto the hardness of their hearts, and the blindness of their minds that they might be destroyed; wherefore they went again to battle.
- וְהִנֵּה, רוּחַ יְהוָה חָדְלָה לְהִתְאַמֵּץ עִמָּם, וְלִשְׁטָן הָיְתָה שְׁלִיטָה מְלָאָה עַל לֵב הָעָם; כִּי הֵם הָיוּ מְסוּרִים לִקְשֵׁי לִבָּם וּלְעֵרְוֹן דַּעְתָּם בְּעֵבֹר יִשְׁמָדוֹ; עַל כֵּן הֵם שָׁבוּ וַיֵּצְאוּ לְמִלְחָמָה.
- 20 And it came to pass that they fought all that day, and when the night came they slept upon their swords.
- וְהֵם נִלְחָמוּ כָּל הַיּוֹם הַהוּא; וּכְבוֹא הַלַּיְלָה הֵם יָשְׁנוּ עַל חֶרְבוֹתֵיהֶם.
- 21 And on the morrow they fought even until the night came.
- וּבַיּוֹם הַמָּחָרָת הֵם נִלְחָמוּ עַד בּוֹא הַלַּיְלָה.
- 22 And when the night came they were drunken with anger, even as a man who is drunken with wine; and they slept again upon their swords.
- וּכְבוֹא הַלַּיְלָה הֵם הָיוּ שׂוֹכְרִים מְזַעֵם, כְּשׂוֹכֵר הַלֵּוֹם יַיִן; וְהֵם יָשְׁנוּ שֵׁנִית עַל חֶרְבוֹתֵיהֶם.
- 23 And on the morrow they fought again; and when the night came they had all fallen by the sword save it were fifty and two of the people of Coriantumr, and sixty and nine of the people of Shiz.
- וּבַיּוֹם הַמָּחָרָת הֵם שָׁבוּ לְהִלָּחֵם; וּכְבוֹא הַלַּיְלָה הֵם כָּלָם נָפְלוּ בַּחֶרֶב, זֹלַת חֲמִשִּׁים וּשְׁנַיִם מֵאֲנָשֵׁי קוֹרִיאַנְטוּמְר, וְשִׁשִּׁים וְתֵשַׁע מֵאֲנָשֵׁי שִׁז.
- 24 And it came to pass that they slept upon their swords that night, and on the morrow they fought again, and they contended in their might with their swords and with their shields, all that day.
- וּבַלַּיְלָה הַהוּא הֵם יָשְׁנוּ עַל חֶרְבוֹתֵיהֶם, וּלְמַחֲרָת שָׁבוּ לְהִלָּחֵם; וְהֵם נִלְחָמוּ בְּרֶב פָּחַם בַּחֶרְבוֹתֵיהֶם וּבְמִגְנֵיהֶם כָּל הַיּוֹם הַהוּא.
- 25 And when the night came there were thirty and two of the people of Shiz, and twenty and seven of the people of Coriantumr.
- וּכְבוֹא הַלַּיְלָה נֹתְרוּ שְׁלִשִּׁים וּשְׁנַיִם מֵאֲנָשֵׁי שִׁז וְעֶשְׂרִים וְשֶׁבַע מֵאֲנָשֵׁי קוֹרִיאַנְטוּמְר.
- 26 And it came to pass that they ate and slept, and prepared for death on the morrow. And they were large and mighty men as to the strength of men.
- וְהֵם אָכְלוּ וַיָּשְׁנוּ וַהֲכִינוּ לְקִרְאָת הַמּוֹת אֲשֶׁר לְמַחֲרָת. וְהֵם הָיוּ אֲנָשִׁים גְּדוֹלֵי מְדוּת וְחִזְקִים כָּלֹךְ גְּבָרִים.
- 27 And it came to pass that they fought for the space of three hours, and they fainted with the loss of blood.
- וְהֵם נִלְחָמוּ בְּמִשְׁךְ שְׁלֹשׁ שָׁעוֹת וַנָּפְלוּ מִתַּעֲלָפִים מֵאֲבֹד דָּם.
- 28 And it came to pass that when the men of Coriantumr had received sufficient strength that they could walk, they were about to flee for their lives; but behold, Shiz arose, and also his men, and he swore in his wrath that he would slay Coriantumr or he would perish by the sword.
- וְהָיָה כְּאֲשֶׁר הִתְאוּשְׁשׁוּ אֲנָשֵׁי קוֹרִיאַנְטוּמְר עַד כִּי יָכְלוּ לְהֵלֵךְ, הֵם עָמְדוּ לְהִמָּלֵט עַל נַפְשָׁם; וְהִנֵּה קָם שִׁז, וְכֹן אֲנָשָׁיו, וְהוּא נִשְׁבַּע בְּחִמָּתוֹ כִּי יַהַרֵּג אֶת קוֹרִיאַנְטוּמְר, וְלֹא, יֵאָבֵד בַּחֶרֶב.

## אתר טו:כט – מורוני א:ב

- על כן הוא רדף אחריהם, והשיגם למחרת; והם שבו להלחם בחרב. והיה בנפל כלם בחרב, זולת קוריאנטומר ושיז, והנה נפל שיז מתעלף מאבוד דם.
- 29 Wherefore, he did pursue them, and on the morrow he did overtake them; and they fought again with the sword. And it came to pass that when they had all fallen by the sword, save it were Coriantumr and Shiz, behold Shiz had fainted with the loss of blood.
- והיה אחר אשר נשען קוריאנטומר על חרבו לנוח מעט, הוא התזז את ראש שיז מעליו.
- 30 And it came to pass that when Coriantumr had leaned upon his sword, that he rested a little, he smote off the head of Shiz.
- ואחר התזזו את ראש שיז, התרומם שיז על ידיו ונפל; ואחר אשר נאבק על נשימתו, מת.
- 31 And it came to pass that after he had smitten off the head of Shiz, that Shiz raised upon his hands and fell; and after that he had struggled for breath, he died.
- וקוריאנטומר נפל ארצה, והיה כחסר חיים.
- 32 And it came to pass that Coriantumr fell to the earth, and became as if he had no life.
- ויהוה דבר אל אתר, ואמר אליו: לך לך; והוא הלך וראה כי דברי יהוה קמו והיו כלם. והוא סים את כתב זכרונותיו, אשר ממנו אני לא רשמתי אף חלק אחד ממאה; והוא הטמינם באפן אשר מצאום אנשי למחי.
- 33 And the Lord spake unto Ether, and said unto him: Go forth. And he went forth, and beheld that the words of the Lord had all been fulfilled; and he finished his record; (and the hundredth part I have not written) and he hid them in a manner that the people of Limhi did find them.
- ואלה הדברים האחרונים אשר כתב אתר: אם ירצה יהוה כי אעבר תמורה, או כי אשא את רצון יהוה בעודי בבשר, אחת היא לי, ובלבד אשר אנשע במלכות אלהים. אמן.
- 34 Now the last words which are written by Ether are these: Whether the Lord will that I be translated, or that I suffer the will of the Lord in the flesh, it mattereth not, if it so be that I am saved in the kingdom of God. Amen.

## ספר מורוני

## THE BOOK OF MORONI

מורוני כותב חקי כנסיה הקדושים בקרב עמו. הוא רושם כמה מדברי אביו מורמון. הוא מדבר אל הגוים והלמנים אשר יהיו באחרית הימים. (בערך 401–421 לספירה.)

Moroni records sacred ordinances of the church among his people. He writes some of the words of his father Mormon. He speaks to the Gentiles and Lamanites who will be in the latter days. (About A.D. 401–421.)

## א

## 1

ועתה, אני, מורוני, אחר אשר פליתי לרשם את קצור קורות עם ירד, התכוננתי לחדל מכתב; אך עדין לא כלי ימי, ואינני מתודע אל הלמנים פן ישמידוני.

1 Now I, Moroni, after having made an end of abridging the account of the people of Jared, I had supposed not to have written more, but I have not as yet perished; and I make not myself known to the Lamanites lest they should destroy me.

כי הנה המלחמות ביניהם קשות ועזות עד מאד, ומפני שנאתם מוציאים הם להורג כל נפיי אשר לא יכחש במשיח.

2 For behold, their wars are exceedingly fierce among themselves; and because of their hatred they put to death every Nephite that will not deny the Christ.

## מורוני א:ג-ג:ד

- 3 And I, Moroni, will not deny the Christ; wherefore, I wander whither-soever I can for the safety of mine own life.
- וְאֲנִי, מוֹרוֹנִי, לֹא אֶכְחַשׁ בְּמִשִּׁיחַ; לָכֵן נִדְדָּה אֲנִי אֶל כָּל מְקוֹם אֲשֶׁר אוֹכַל לְמַצֵּא בוֹ מִקָּלֵט לְנַפְשִׁי.
- 4 Wherefore, I write a few more things, contrary to that which I had supposed; for I had supposed not to have written anymore; but I write a few more things, that perhaps they may be of worth unto my brethren, the Lamanites, in some future day, according to the will of the Lord.
- לָכֵן, אֶכְתֹּב דְּבָרִים אַחָדִים נוספים, אֲשֶׁר לֹא כִכְוַנְתִּי הַקּוֹדֶמֶת, כִּי הִתְכַּוַּנְתִּי שֶׁלֹּא לְהוֹסִיף כְּתֹב. אֲךָ אֲנִי כוֹתֵב דְּבָרִים אַחָדִים נוספים אֲשֶׁר אוּלֵי יֵהיוּ, בְּיוֹם אֲשֶׁר יָבוֹא, בְּעָלֵי עֶרְךָ בְּעֵינֵי אֲחֵי הַלְּמָנִיתִים, כְּרָצוֹן יִהְיוּ.

## ב

## 2

- 1 The words of Christ, which he spake unto his disciples, the twelve whom he had chosen, as he laid his hands upon them—
- דְּבָרֵי הַמִּשִּׁיחַ אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר אֶל תַּלְמִידָיו, שְׁנֵים עָשָׂר אֲשֶׁר בָּחַרם, בְּסִמְכוֹ אֶת יָדָיו עָלֵיהֶם.
- 2 And he called them by name, saying: Ye shall call on the Father in my name, in mighty prayer; and after ye have done this ye shall have power that to him upon whom ye shall lay your hands, ye shall give the Holy Ghost; and in my name shall ye give it, for thus do mine apostles.
- הוּא קָרָא לָהֶם בְּשֵׁמוֹתֵיהֶם, לֵאמֹר: קְרֹאוּ אֶל הָאֵב בְּשֵׁמִי בְּהַפְלָה אֲדִירָה, וְאַחֵר עֲשׂוּתְכֶם כֵּן, תִּמְלְאוּ כַח לָתֵת אֶת רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ לְזֶה אֲשֶׁר עַל רִאשׁוֹ תִסְמְכוּ אֶת יְדֵיכֶם. בְּשֵׁמִי תִתְּנוּהוּ כִּי כֹה יַעֲשׂוּ שְׁלִיחֵי.
- 3 Now Christ spake these words unto them at the time of his first appearing; and the multitude heard it not, but the disciples heard it; and on as many as they laid their hands, fell the Holy Ghost.
- אַלֶּה הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר הַמִּשִּׁיחַ אֲלֵיהֶם בְּעֵת הוֹפְעָתוֹ הָרִאשׁוֹנָה; וְהָיָה כִּי לֹא שָׁמְעוּהוּ הַמִּזְיוֹן הָעָם, אֲךָ הַתַּלְמִידִים שָׁמְעוּ. וְעַל כָּל אֲשֶׁר סָמְכוּ אֶת יְדֵיהֶם נָחָה רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ.

## ג

## 3

- 1 The manner which the disciples, who were called the elders of the church, ordained priests and teachers—
- זֶה אַפֵּן סְמִיכַת כְּהֻנִּים וּמוֹרִים אֲשֶׁר עָרְכוּ הַתַּלְמִידִים, הַמָּה אֲשֶׁר נִקְרְאוּ זִקְנֵי הַכְּנִסְיָה:
- 2 After they had prayed unto the Father in the name of Christ, they laid their hands upon them, and said:
- אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר הִתְפַּלְלוּ אֶל הָאֵב בְּשֵׁם הַמִּשִּׁיחַ, הֵם סָמְכוּ אֶת יְדֵיהֶם עָלֵיהֶם וְכֹה אָמְרוּ:
- 3 In the name of Jesus Christ I ordain you to be a priest, (or, if he be a teacher) I ordain you to be a teacher, to preach repentance and remission of sins through Jesus Christ, by the endurance of faith on his name to the end. Amen.
- בְּשֵׁם יֵשׁוּעַ הַמִּשִּׁיחַ, הִנְנִי מְסַמֵּיכְךָ לְהִיּוֹת כְּהֵן, אוֹ, אִם יִהְיֶה מוֹרֶה, הִנְנִי מְסַמֵּיכְךָ לְהִיּוֹת מוֹרֶה, לְהַסִּיף לְתַשׁוּבָה וְלִמְחִילַת חַטָּאִים עַל יְדֵי יֵשׁוּעַ הַמִּשִּׁיחַ, בְּאַמּוּנָה מְתִמֶּדֶה בְּשֵׁמוֹ עַד הַקֵּץ. אָמֵן.
- 4 And after this manner did they ordain priests and teachers, according to the gifts and callings of God unto men; and they ordained them by the power of the Holy Ghost, which was in them.
- בְּאַפֵּן זֶה הֵם הִסְמִיכוּ כְּהֻנִּים וּמוֹרִים כְּחֻסְדֵּי אֱלֹהִים וּקְרִיאָתוֹ אֶל בְּנֵי הָאָדָם; וְהֵם הִסְמִיכוּם בְּכַח רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ, אֲשֶׁר בָּהֶם.

## ד

## 4

- וְזֶה הָאִפֶּן אֲשֶׁר עַל פִּי שְׁמָשׁוּ בִקְדָּשׁ זִקְנִיָּהֶם  
וְלִהְיוֹתָם אֶת בָּשָׂר הַמְּשִׁיחַ וְדָמוֹ לְחִבְרֵי  
הַכְּנִסְיָה; וְהֵם הִגִּישׁוּ אוֹתָם כְּפִי מִצְוֹת  
הַמְּשִׁיחַ. לָכֵן יוֹדְעִים אֲנִיכֶם כִּי הָאִפֶּן הַזֶּה  
נָכוֹן; וְהִזְקֵן אוֹ הַכֹּהֵן שְׁמֵשׁ בָּזֶה:
- הֵם כָּרְעוּ בָּרֶךְ עִם חֲבֵרֵי הַכְּנִסְיָה וְהִתְפַּלְּלוּ אֶל  
הָאֵב בְּשֵׁם הַמְּשִׁיחַ, לֵאמֹר:
- אֲנֵא, אֱלֹהִים, אֵב הָעוֹלָמִים, מִבְּקָשִׁים אֲנִיכֶם  
מִמֶּךָ בְּשֵׁם בְּנֶךָ, יֵשׁוּעַ הַמְּשִׁיחַ, כִּי תִבְרַךְ אֶת  
הַלֶּחֶם הַזֶּה וְתִקְדָּשׁוּ בְּעֵבֶר נֶפֶשׁ כָּל הָאוֹכְלִים  
מִמֶּנּוּ; לְמַעַן יֵאָכְלוּ לְזִכָּר גּוֹף בְּנֶךָ וְיִעֲשִׂדוּ  
לְפָנֶיךָ, אֱלֹהִים, אֵב הָעוֹלָמִים, כִּי תִפְצִים הֵם  
לְקַחַת עֲלֵיהֶם אֶת שֵׁם בְּנֶךָ, וְלִזְכֹּר תִּמְדִּי,  
וְלִשְׁמֹר אֶת מִצְוֹתָיו אֲשֶׁר צֻוֵּם, לְמַעַן תִּשְׁכַּן  
רוּחוֹ עִמָּם תִּמְדִּי. אָמֵן.
- 1 The manner of their elders and priests administering the flesh and blood of Christ unto the church; and they administered it according to the commandments of Christ; wherefore we know the manner to be true; and the elder or priest did minister it—
- 2 And they did kneel down with the church, and pray to the Father in the name of Christ, saying:
- 3 O God, the Eternal Father, we ask thee in the name of thy Son, Jesus Christ, to bless and sanctify this bread to the souls of all those who partake of it; that they may eat in remembrance of the body of thy Son, and witness unto thee, O God, the Eternal Father, that they are willing to take upon them the name of thy Son, and always remember him, and keep his commandments which he hath given them, that they may always have his Spirit to be with them. Amen.

## ה

## 5

- וְזֶה סֵדֶר הַגִּשְׁתַּת הַיַּיִן: הֵם לָקְחוּ אֶת הַכּוֹס  
וְאָמְרוּ:
- אֲנֵא, אֱלֹהִים, אֵב הָעוֹלָמִים, מִבְּקָשִׁים אֲנִיכֶם  
מִמֶּךָ בְּשֵׁם בְּנֶךָ, יֵשׁוּעַ הַמְּשִׁיחַ, כִּי תִבְרַךְ אֶת  
הַיַּיִן הַזֶּה וְתִקְדָּשׁוּ בְּעֵבֶר נֶפֶשׁ כָּל הַשּׁוֹתִים  
מִמֶּנּוּ; לְמַעַן יַעֲשׂוּ זֹאת לְזִכָּר דָּם בְּנֶךָ, אֲשֶׁר  
נִשְׁפָּךְ לְמַעַנָם, וְיִעֲשִׂדוּ לְפָנֶיךָ, אֱלֹהִים, אֵב  
הָעוֹלָמִים, כִּי הֵם זֹכְרִים אוֹתוֹ תִּמְדִּי, לְמַעַן  
תִּשְׁכַּן רוּחוֹ עִמָּם. אָמֵן.
- 1 The manner of administering the wine—Behold, they took the cup, and said:
- 2 O God, the Eternal Father, we ask thee, in the name of thy Son, Jesus Christ, to bless and sanctify this wine to the souls of all those who drink of it, that they may do it in remembrance of the blood of thy Son, which was shed for them; that they may witness unto thee, O God, the Eternal Father, that they do always remember him, that they may have his Spirit to be with them. Amen.

## ו

## 6

- וְעַתָּה אֲדַבֵּר עַל הַטְּבִלָּה. הִנֵּה, זִקְנִים,  
כֹּהֲנִים וּמוֹרִים הַטְּבִלּוּ; וְהֵם לֹא הִטְבִּילוּ כִּי  
אִם בְּהִבִּיאֵם אֶת פְּרִיָם, הַמַּעֲשִׂי כִּי רְאוּיִים  
הֵם לָכֵן.
- וְהֵם אֵף לֹא קִבְּלוּ אִישׁ לְהַטְבִּילָה, כִּי אִם אֶת  
הַבָּאִים בְּלֵב נִשְׁבָּר וּבְרוּחַ נִכְאָה, אֲשֶׁר הִעֲשִׂדוּ  
לְפָנֶי הַכְּנִסְיָה כִּי אֲכֹן נִחְמוּ עַל כָּל חַטָּאֵיהֶם.
- 1 And now I speak concerning baptism. Behold, elders, priests, and teachers were baptized; and they were not baptized save they brought forth fruit meet that they were worthy of it.
- 2 Neither did they receive any unto baptism save they came forth with a broken heart and a contrite spirit, and witnessed unto the church that they truly repented of all their sins.

- 3 And none were received unto baptism save they took upon them the name of Christ, having a determination to serve him to the end.  
וְלֹא הִתְקַבְּלוּ אִישׁ לְהִטְבֵּל, בְּלֹתִי אִם קִבַּל עָלָיו אֶת שֵׁם הַמָּשִׁיחַ וְנָמַר אִמְרָא בְּנַפְשׁוֹ לְשָׁרְתוֹ עַד הַקֵּץ.
- 4 And after they had been received unto baptism, and were wrought upon and cleansed by the power of the Holy Ghost, they were numbered among the people of the church of Christ; and their names were taken, that they might be remembered and nourished by the good word of God, to keep them in the right way, to keep them continually watchful unto prayer, relying alone upon the merits of Christ, who was the author and the finisher of their faith.  
וְאַחֵר אֲשֶׁר הִטְבְּלוּ הַמִּקְבָּלִים לְהִטְבֵּלָה וְנִפְעְלוּ וְטִהְרוּ בְכַח רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ, הֵם נִמְנוּ עִם אַנְשֵׁי כְנִסְיַת הַמָּשִׁיחַ; וְשִׁמוֹתֵיהֶם נִרְשָׁמוּ, לְמַעַן יִזְכְּרוּ וְיִתְכַלְּלוּ עַל יְדֵי דְבַר אֱלֹהִים הַטּוֹב, לְנִצְרָם בְּדֶרֶךְ הַיָּשָׁר וּלְשִׁמְרָם תָּמִיד נִזְהָרִים בַּתְּפִלָּה בְּשִׁימָם אֶת מִבְטָחָם רַק עַל סִגְלוֹת הַמָּשִׁיחַ, אֲשֶׁר הוּא מִיסַד אֱמוּנָתָם וּמְשַׁלְּמָהּ.
- 5 And the church did meet together oft, to fast and to pray, and to speak one with another concerning the welfare of their souls.  
וְקָהַל הַכְּנִסְיָה הִתְכַּנְּסָה לְעֵתִים קְרוּבוֹת לְצוּם וּלְהִתְפַּלֵּל וּלְשׁוֹחַח אִישׁ עִם רֵעֵהוּ עַל דְּבַר טוֹבַת נַשְׁמָתָם.
- 6 And they did meet together oft to partake of bread and wine, in remembrance of the Lord Jesus.  
וְהֵם נִפְגְּשׁוּ לְעֵתִים קְרוּבוֹת לֶאֱכֹל לֶחֶם וּלְשִׁתּוֹת יַיִן, לְזִכָּר הָאָדוֹן יֵשׁוּעַ.
- 7 And they were strict to observe that there should be no iniquity among them; and whoso was found to commit iniquity, and three witnesses of the church did condemn them before the elders, and if they repented not, and confessed not, their names were blotted out, and they were not numbered among the people of Christ.  
וְהֵם הִקְפִּידוּ כִּי לֹא יִהְיֶה כָּל עוֹוֹן בְּקִרְבָּם; וְכָל אֲשֶׁר נִמְצָא עוֹשֶׂה עוֹוֹן, הָאִשָּׁם לִפְנֵי הַזְּקֵנִים עַל יְדֵי שְׁלֹשָׁה עֵדִים חֲבָרֵי הַכְּנִסְיָה, וְאִם לֹא שָׁב מִרְעָתוֹ וְלֹא הִתְוֹדָה, נִמְחָה שְׁמוֹ וְהוּא לֹא נִמְנָה עִם עַם הַמָּשִׁיחַ.
- 8 But as oft as they repented and sought forgiveness, with real intent, they were forgiven.  
וְאוּלָם בְּכָל עֵת אֲשֶׁר שָׁב הַחוּטָא מִרְעָתוֹ, וּבִקֵּשׁ סְלִיחָה בְּכֹנֶה כֹּנֶה, נִסְלַח לוֹ.
- 9 And their meetings were conducted by the church after the manner of the workings of the Spirit, and by the power of the Holy Ghost; for as the power of the Holy Ghost led them whether to preach, or to exhort, or to pray, or to supplicate, or to sing, even so it was done.  
וְאַסְפּוֹתֵיהֶם נִהְלוּ עַל יְדֵי חֲבָרֵי הַכְּנִסְיָה לְפִי דֶרֶךְ פְּעֻלַּת הַרוּחַ וְעַל יְדֵי כַח רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ; כִּי אֲכֹן, כְּפִי אֲשֶׁר הִנְהִיגָם כַּח רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ, אִם לְהִטְפֶּה וְאִם לְתוֹכַחַה, אִם לְתַפִּלָּה אוֹ לְתַחֲנָה, וְאִם לְשִׁירָה, כֵּן נַעֲשֶׂה.

## T

## 7

- 1 And now I, Moroni, write a few of the words of my father Mormon, which he spake concerning faith, hope, and charity; for after this manner did he speak unto the people, as he taught them in the synagogue which they had built for the place of worship.  
וְעַתָּה, אֲנִי, מוֹרוֹנִי, אֶכְתֵּב מֵעַט מִדְּבָרֵי אָבִי, מוֹרְמוֹן, אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר עַל אֱמוּנָה, תְּקוּהָ וְחֶסֶד. כִּי בְּאָפֶן הַזֶּה הוּא דִּבֶּר אֶל הָעָם בְּעֵת לְמִדּוֹ אוֹתָם בְּבֵית הַכְּנִסָּה אֲשֶׁר בָּנוּ לְהִיּוֹת מְקוֹם עֲבוֹדַת הַקֹּדֶשׁ:
- 2 And now I, Mormon, speak unto you, my beloved brethren; and it is by the grace of God the Father, and our Lord Jesus Christ, and his holy will, because of the gift of his calling unto me, that I am permitted to speak unto you at this time.  
הִנֵּה, אֲנִי, מוֹרְמוֹן, אֶדְבֵּר אֵלֵיכֶם, אַחֵי הַיְקָרִים; וּבְזָכוֹת אֱלֹהִים הָאֵב וְאֲדוֹנֵנוּ יֵשׁוּעַ הַמָּשִׁיחַ וּרְצוֹנוֹ הַקְּדוֹשׁ וּמִפְנֵי מַתַּת קְרִיאָתוֹ לִי, מִרְשָׁה אֲנִי לְדַבֵּר אֵלֵיכֶם הַעַם.



- 3 על כן אֲדַבֵּר אֵלֵיכֶם, אֲשֶׁר חֲבָרִי הַכְּנִסְיָהּ וְחִסְדִּי הַמְּשִׁיחַ אִתְּכֶם, וְשׁוֹחֲרֵי הַשְּׁלוֹם אֲשֶׁר קִנִּיתֶם יְדֵי תַקְוָה, אֲשֶׁר עַל יְדֵיהֶם תִּכְנְסוּ אֶל מְנוּחַת יְהוָה, מִעַתָּה וְעַד מְנוּחַתְכֶם עִמּוֹ בַּשָּׁמַיִם.
- 4 And now my brethren, I judge these things of you because of your peaceable walk with the children of men.
- 5 כי זֹכֵר אֲנִי אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים הָאוֹמֵר: עַל פִּי מַעֲשֵׂיהֶם תִּכְפִּירוּם; כִּי אִם טוֹבִים מַעֲשֵׂיהֶם, אִף הֵם טוֹבִים.
- 6 For I remember the word of God, which saith by their works ye shall know them; for if their works be good, then they are good also.
- 7 כי כֹּה אָמַר אֱלֹהִים: לֹא יוּכַל אִישׁ אֲשֶׁר רָע הוּא לַעֲשׂוֹת טוֹב; כִּי בְהַגִּישׁוֹ מִנְחָה, אוֹ בְהַתְּפִלּוֹ אֶל אֱלֹהִים, וְלֹא בְכֹנֶת אֶמֶת, לֹא יִפְיֵק כָּל תּוֹעֵלָתוֹ.
- 8 For behold, God hath said a man being evil cannot do that which is good; for if he offereth a gift, or prayeth unto God, except he shall do it with real intent it profiteth him nothing.
- 9 כי הִנֵּה, לֹא תִחָשֵׁב לוֹ זֹאת לְצַדִּיקָה.
- 10 For behold, it is not counted unto him for righteousness.
- 11 כי הִנֵּה, בְּתֵת אִישׁ אֲשֶׁר הוּא רָע מִנְחָה, בְּחֶסֶר רְצוֹן הוּא נֹתֶנָּה. עַל כֵּן הִיא נְחֻשֶׁבֶת לוֹ כְּאִלוֹ הַחֲזִיקָה לַעֲצֻמוֹ; לְכֹן נְחֻשֶׁב הוּא רָשָׁע לִפְנֵי אֱלֹהִים.
- 12 For behold, if a man being evil giveth a gift, he doeth it grudgingly; wherefore it is counted unto him the same as if he had retained the gift; wherefore he is counted evil before God.
- 13 וְכִמּוֹ כֵּן נְחֻשֶׁבֶת הִיא רָעָה לְאָדָם, אִם מִתְּפַלֵּל הוּא וְלֹא בְכֹנֶת לֵב אֱמֶתִית; אֲכֹן, לֹא תּוֹעִילָהּ זֹאת מְאוּמָּה כִּי לֹא יִקְבַּל אֱלֹהִים כְּמוֹת אֵלֶּה.
- 14 And likewise also is it counted evil unto a man, if he shall pray and not with real intent of heart; yea, and it profiteth him nothing, for God receiveth none such.
- 15 על כֵּן, לֹא יוּכַל אִישׁ אֲשֶׁר הוּא רָע לַעֲשׂוֹת טוֹב; וְאִף לֹא יִתֵּן מִתֵּן טוֹב.
- 16 Wherefore, a man being evil cannot do that which is good; neither will he give a good gift.
- 17 הֵן לֹא יוּכַל מַעְיָן מֵרַ לְתֵת מִיַּם טוֹבִים; וְכִמּוֹ כֵּן לֹא יוּכַל מַעְיָן טוֹב לְתֵת מִיַּם מְרִים. עַל כֵּן, לֹא יוּכַל אִישׁ אֲשֶׁר הוּא עֶבֶד לְשָׁטָן לְלַכֵּת אַחֵר הַמְּשִׁיחַ; כִּי אִם יִלְךְ הוּא אַחֵר הַמְּשִׁיחַ, אִין הוּא יָכוֹל לִהְיוֹת עֶבֶד לְשָׁטָן.
- 18 For behold, a bitter fountain cannot bring forth good water; neither can a good fountain bring forth bitter water; wherefore, a man being a servant of the devil cannot follow Christ; and if he follow Christ he cannot be a servant of the devil.
- 19 עַל כֵּן, כָּל הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר טוֹבִים הֵם, מֵאֵת אֱלֹהִים הֵם בָּאִים, וְאֲשֶׁר רָעִים, מֵאֵת הַשָּׁטָן הֵם; כִּי הַשָּׁטָן הוּא אוֹיֵב לְאֱלֹהִים וְנִלְחָם בּוֹ תָּמִיד; אֲכֹן, קוֹרָא הוּא וּמִפְתָּה לְחַטָּא, וְלַעֲשׂוֹת אֶת אֲשֶׁר הוּא רָע תָּמִיד.
- 20 Wherefore, all things which are good cometh of God; and that which is evil cometh of the devil; for the devil is an enemy unto God, and fighteth against him continually, and inviteth and enticeth to sin, and to do that which is evil continually.
- 21 אֲךָ הִנֵּה, זֶה אֲשֶׁר מֵאֵת אֱלֹהִים הוּא, קוֹרָא וּמוֹשֵׁךְ לַעֲשׂוֹת תָּמִיד אֶת הַטוֹב; לְכֹן כָּל דְּבַר
- 22 But behold, that which is of God inviteth and enticeth to do good continually; wherefore, everything which inviteth and enticeth to do

הַקּוֹרָא וּמוֹשֵׁף לַעֲשׂוֹת טוֹב, וְלֹאֲהַב אֶת  
אֱלֹהִים וּלְעַבְדּוֹ, בְּהִשְׁרָאת אֱלֹהִים הוּא.

good, and to love God, and to serve him, is inspired of God.

עַל כֵּן, הִשְׁמְרוּ, אַחֵי הַיְּקָרִים, לְבַל תִּדְּוֹנוּ אֶת  
אֲשֶׁר הוּא רָע כְּאִלוֹ מֵאֱלֹהִים הוּא, אוֹ אֶת הַטּוֹב  
וְאֲשֶׁר מֵאֱלֹהִים, כְּאִלוֹ מֵאֵת הַשָּׁטָן הוּא.

**14** Wherefore, take heed, my beloved brethren, that ye do not judge that which is evil to be of God, or that which is good and of God to be of the devil.

כִּי הִנֵּה, אַחֵי, נָתַן הוּא זֶה לָכֶם לְשַׁפֵּט, לְמַעַן  
תִּדְּעוּ לְהַבְחִין בֵּין טוֹב וּבֵין רָע; וְהַדְּרֹךְ לְשַׁפֵּט  
כֹּה פְּשוּטָה, לְמַעַן תִּדְּעוּ בִּידְעָה מְחֻלָּטָה,  
כְּפִי הַבְּחִינְכֶם בֵּין אֹר וּבֵין הַיּוֹם לְחֹשֶׁכֶת הַלַּיְלָה.

**15** For behold, my brethren, it is given unto you to judge, that ye may know good from evil; and the way to judge is as plain, that ye may know with a perfect knowledge, as the daylight is from the dark night.

כִּי הִנֵּה, רוּחַ הַמְּשִׁיחַ נָתַן לְכָל אָדָם,  
בְּעִבּוֹר יִבְחִין בֵּין טוֹב וּבֵין רָע, לְכֵן אֲנִי מְרַאֶה  
לָכֶם אֶת הַדְּרֹךְ לְשַׁפֵּט; כָּל דִּבְרַת הַקּוֹרָא לַעֲשׂוֹת  
טוֹב וְהַמְּסַב אֶת הַדְּעָת לְהֶאֱמִין בְּמִשְׁיחַ, יוֹצֵא  
הוּא מֵאֵת כַּחַּ הַמְּשִׁיחַ וּמִתְּנוֹ; לְכֵן תִּדְּעוּ  
יְדִיעָה מְחֻלָּטָה כִּי מֵאֵת אֱלֹהִים הוּא.

**16** For behold, the Spirit of Christ is given to every man, that he may know good from evil; wherefore, I show unto you the way to judge; for everything which inviteth to do good, and to persuade to believe in Christ, is sent forth by the power and gift of Christ; wherefore ye may know with a perfect knowledge it is of God.

וְאוֹלָם כָּל דִּבְרַת הַמְּסַב אֶת דְּעָת בְּנֵי הָאָדָם  
לַעֲשׂוֹת רָע, וְלֹא לְהֶאֱמִין בְּמִשְׁיחַ, כִּי אִם  
לְכַחַשׁ בּוֹ וְלֹא לְעַבְדּוֹ אֶת אֱלֹהִים, דְּעוֹ בִּידְעָה  
מְחֻלָּטָה כִּי מֵאֵת הַשָּׁטָן הוּא. כִּי בְּאִפְּנֵי הַזֶּה  
פּוֹעֵל הַשָּׁטָן. כִּי אִין הוּא מְסַב דְּעָת אֶף אָדָם  
אֶחָד לַעֲשׂוֹת אֶת הַטּוֹב, אָכֵן, אֶף לֹא אֶחָד;  
וְכֵן אִין מְלֹאכִיו עוֹשִׂים זֹאת; אֶף לֹא אֶלֶּה  
הַמְּקַבְּלִים עֲלֵיהֶם אֶת שְׁלֹטוֹנוֹ.

**17** But whatsoever thing persuadeth men to do evil, and believe not in Christ, and deny him, and serve not God, then ye may know with a perfect knowledge it is of the devil; for after this manner doth the devil work, for he persuadeth no man to do good, no, not one; neither do his angels; neither do they who subject themselves unto him.

וְעַתָּה, אַחֵי, יֵעַן אֲשֶׁר יוֹדְעִים אַתֶּם אֶת הָאוֹר  
אֲשֶׁר עַל יְדֵיו תִּשְׁפָּטוּ, וְהוּא אֹר הַמְּשִׁיחַ,  
הִשְׁמְרוּ לְבַל תִּטְעוּ בַּמִּשְׁפָּט; כִּי בְּאוֹתוֹ  
הַמִּשְׁפָּט אֲשֶׁר תִּשְׁפָּטוּ, תִּשְׁפָּטוּ אֶף אַתֶּם.

**18** And now, my brethren, seeing that ye know the light by which ye may judge, which light is the light of Christ, see that ye do not judge wrongfully; for with that same judgment which ye judge ye shall also be judged.

עַל כֵּן אֲנִי מְפַצֵּר בְּכֶם, אַחִים, כִּי תִּחְקְרוּ  
בְּשִׂקְיָה בְּאוֹר הַמְּשִׁיחַ, לְמַעַן תִּדְּעוּ לְהַבְחִין  
בֵּין טוֹב וּבֵין רָע; וְאִם תִּחְזִיקוּ בְּכָל דִּבְרַת טוֹב,  
וְלֹא תִּגְנוּהוּ, הִיָּה תִּהְיֶי בְּנֵי הַמְּשִׁיחַ.

**19** Wherefore, I beseech of you, brethren, that ye should search diligently in the light of Christ that ye may know good from evil; and if ye will lay hold upon every good thing, and condemn it not, ye certainly will be a child of Christ.

עַתָּה, אַחֵי, אִיךְ יִכְלִים אַתֶּם לְהַחֲזִיק בְּכָל  
דִּבְרַת טוֹב?

**20** And now, my brethren, how is it possible that ye can lay hold upon every good thing?

הֲנִי בָא אֶל אוֹתָהּ הָאֲמוּנָה, אֲשֶׁר עָלֶיהָ  
אֲמַרְתִּי כִּי אֲדַבֵּר; וְאֲנִיד לָכֶם אֶת הַדְּרֹךְ אֲשֶׁר  
בָּהּ תִּוְּכְלוּ לְהַחֲזִיק בְּכָל דִּבְרַת טוֹב.

**21** And now I come to that faith, of which I said I would speak; and I will tell you the way whereby ye may lay hold on every good thing.

כִּי הִנֵּה, אֱלֹהִים, הֵיּוֹדֵעַ אֶת כָּל הַדְּבָרִים, כִּי  
מַעֲוִלָּמִי עוֹלָמִים הוּא, שָׁלַח מְלָאכִים לְשִׁמְשׁוֹת

**22** For behold, God knowing all things, being from everlasting to everlasting, behold, he sent angels to minister unto the children of

- לפני בני האדם, לגלות להם בדבר בוא המשיח. והן במשיח בוא יבוא כל דבר טוב.
- 23 And God also declared unto prophets, by his own mouth, that Christ should come.
- 24 And behold, there were divers ways that he did manifest things unto the children of men, which were good; and all things which are good cometh of Christ; otherwise men were fallen, and there could no good thing come unto them.
- 25 Wherefore, by the ministering of angels, and by every word which proceeded forth out of the mouth of God, men began to exercise faith in Christ; and thus by faith, they did lay hold upon every good thing; and thus it was until the coming of Christ.
- 26 And after that he came men also were saved by faith in his name; and by faith, they become the sons of God. And as sure as Christ liveth he spake these words unto our fathers, saying: Whatsoever thing ye shall ask the Father in my name, which is good, in faith believing that ye shall receive, behold, it shall be done unto you.
- 27 Wherefore, my beloved brethren, have miracles ceased because Christ hath ascended into heaven, and hath sat down on the right hand of God, to claim of the Father his rights of mercy which he hath upon the children of men?
- 28 For he hath answered the ends of the law, and he claimeth all those who have faith in him; and they who have faith in him will cleave unto every good thing; wherefore he advocateth the cause of the children of men; and he dwelleth eternally in the heavens.
- 29 And because he hath done this, my beloved brethren, have miracles ceased? Behold I say unto you, Nay; neither have angels ceased to minister unto the children of men.
- 30 For behold, they are subject unto him, to minister according to the word of his command, showing themselves unto them of strong faith and a firm mind in every form of godliness.
- 31 And the office of their ministry is to call men unto repentance, and to fulfill and to do the work of the covenants of the Father, which he hath made unto the children of men, to prepare the way among the children
- והנה, בדרכים שונות הראה אלהים דברים טובים לבני האדם; וכל הדברים אשר הם טובים, מאת המשיח הם באים; לולא זאת, היו האדם בני נפלים, ואף דבר טוב אחד לא היה בא אליהם.
- על כן, על ידי שרות המלאכים, ועל ידי כל דבר היוצא מפי אלהים, החלו בני אדם להאמין במשיח. וכך, על ידי האמונה, הם החזיקו בכל דבר טוב; וכך היה עד בוא המשיח.
- ואחר בואו נושעו בני אדם אף על ידי האמונה בשמו; ועל ידי האמונה הם נהיו לבני אלהים. וחי המשיח, כי דבר הוא את הדברים האלה אל אבותינו, לאמר: כל דבר אשר הוא טוב, אשר תבקשו מן האב בשמי, באמונתכם כי אכן תקבלוהו, עשה יעשה לכם.
- על כן, אחי היקרים, האם חדלו נסים יען אשר עלה המשיח השמימה וישב לימין אלהים, לדרש מן האב את זכויות רחמי על בני האדם?
- כי הוא, אכן, ספק את תכלית החק, והוא דורש את זכות כל אלה אשר יש להם אמונה בו. והמאמינים בו ידבקו בכל דבר טוב; על כן הוא מליץ ישר לבני האדם, והוא שוכן מרומים לעולם.
- החדלו נסים, אחי היקרים, מפני עשותו זאת? הנני אומר לכם, לא! אף מלאכים לא חדלו לשמש לפני בני האדם.
- כי הנה המלאכים סרים אל משמעתו, לשמש בדבר אשר יצו, בהתגלותם לאנשי אמונה איתנה ודעה מוצקה בכל צורת קדשת אלהים.
- ותפקיד שרותם הוא לקרא את בני האדם לתשובה, ולקיים ולעשות את עבודת בריתות האב, אשר פרת לבני האדם, לפנות בתוכם

את הדרך, על ידי הודעת דבר המשיח אל כלי יהוה הנבחרים, למען יעידו עדותם עליו.

of men, by declaring the word of Christ unto the chosen vessels of the Lord, that they may bear testimony of him.

ובעשותם כן מכין יהוה אלהים את הדרך לשאר האדם, למען יאמינו במשיח, וכה תקנה רוח הקדש שבייתה בלבם, כפי כחה. ובאופן הזה מקים האב את הבטחות אשר כרת לבני האדם.

32 And by so doing, the Lord God prepareth the way that the residue of men may have faith in Christ, that the Holy Ghost may have place in their hearts, according to the power thereof; and after this manner bringeth to pass the Father, the covenants which he hath made unto the children of men.

וכה אמר המשיח: אם תהיה לכם אמונה בי, עמוד יעמוד לכם כחכם לעשות את כל אשר אמצאהו לנכון.

33 And Christ hath said: If ye will have faith in me ye shall have power to do whatsoever thing is expedient in me.

וכן אמר: שובו, כל אפסי ארץ, ובואו אלי, והטבלו בשמי, וקנו לכם אמונה בי, בעבור תושעו.

34 And he hath said: Repent all ye ends of the earth, and come unto me, and be baptized in my name, and have faith in me, that ye may be saved.

ועתה, אחי היקרים, אם אכן נכונים הדברים אשר דברתי אליכם, ואלהים יראה לכם בכח ובכבוד תפארה ביום האחרון כי אמת הם, ואם כך הדרך האם חדל יום הנסים?

35 And now, my beloved brethren, if this be the case that these things are true which I have spoken unto you, and God will show unto you, with power and great glory at the last day, that they are true, and if they are true has the day of miracles ceased?

החדלו מלאכים להופיע אל בני האדם? וכי מנע אלהים מבני האדם את כח רוח הקדש? וכי יעשה זאת כל עוד ימשך הזמן, או כל עוד תהיה הארץ קיימת, או כל עוד יהיה על פניה איש אחד אשר יש להושיעו?

36 Or have angels ceased to appear unto the children of men? Or has he withheld the power of the Holy Ghost from them? Or will he, so long as time shall last, or the earth shall stand, or there shall be one man upon the face thereof to be saved?

הנני אומר לכם, לא! הן על ידי האמונה נעשים נסים; ועל ידי האמונה מופיעים מלאכים ומשמשים לפני בני אדם; לכן, אלו חדלו הדברים האלה, אוי לבני האדם, כי זאת מפני חסר אמונה והכל לשווא.

37 Behold I say unto you, Nay; for it is by faith that miracles are wrought; and it is by faith that angels appear and minister unto men; wherefore, if these things have ceased wo be unto the children of men, for it is because of unbelief, and all is vain.

כי אין איש יכול להושיע, כדברי המשיח, כי אם בהיות לו אמונה בשמו; לכן, אלו חדלו הדברים האלה, חדלה אף האמונה; ומה נורא מצב בני האדם כי מצבם הוא כאלו לא חלה גאלה.

38 For no man can be saved, according to the words of Christ, save they shall have faith in his name; wherefore, if these things have ceased, then has faith ceased also; and awful is the state of man, for they are as though there had been no redemption made.

אך הנה, אחי היקרים, סבור אני כי טובים אתם מזה, יען אשר רואה אני כי הנכם בעלי אמונה במשיח מפני ענוותכם; כי אם אין לכם אמונה בו, אינכם ראויים להמנות עם עם כנסיתו.

39 But behold, my beloved brethren, I judge better things of you, for I judge that ye have faith in Christ because of your meekness; for if ye have not faith in him then ye are not fit to be numbered among the people of his church.

- ועוד, אחי היקרים, רצוני לדבר אליכם על תקווה; כי איך תוכלו לקנות אמונה אם אין לכם תקווה?
- 40 And again, my beloved brethren, I would speak unto you concerning hope. How is it that ye can attain unto faith, save ye shall have hope?
- ומה הוא אשר תקוו לו? הנני אומר לכם, כי תהיה לכם תקווה על ידי כפרת המשיח וכח תחיתו מן המתים, להנשא לחיי עולם; וזאת מפני אמונתכם בו כפי דבר בריתו.
- 41 And what is it that ye shall hope for? Behold I say unto you that ye shall have hope through the atonement of Christ and the power of his resurrection, to be raised unto life eternal, and this because of your faith in him according to the promise.
- על כן, אם יש לאדם אמונה, הכרח כי תהיה לו תקווה; כי בלי אמונה לא יכולה להיות כל תקווה.
- 42 Wherefore, if a man have faith he must needs have hope; for without faith there cannot be any hope.
- ועוד, הנני אומר לכם כי לא תהיה לאדם אמונה ותקווה, כי אם בהיותו ענו ושפל רוח.
- 43 And again, behold I say unto you that he cannot have faith and hope, save he shall be meek, and lowly of heart.
- ואם לא יהיה כן לשוא אמונתו ותקוותו, כי שום איש איננו נרצה לפני אלהים, כי אם הענו ושפל הרוח; ואם יהיה איש ענו ושפל רוח, ומתודה בכח רוח הקדש כי ישוע הוא המשיח, הכרח כי יהיה לו חסד, כי אם אין לו חסד כריק הוא; על כן חייב להיות לו חסד.
- 44 If so, his faith and hope is vain, for none is acceptable before God, save the meek and lowly of heart; and if a man be meek and lowly in heart, and confesses by the power of the Holy Ghost that Jesus is the Christ, he must needs have charity; for if he have not charity he is nothing; wherefore he must needs have charity.
- וחסד הוא סבלן ואדיב ואיננו צר עין ואיננו מתנפח בגאווה, איננו מבקש בעבור עצמו ואיננו מתעורר בקלות לכעס ואיננו זומם רע ואין לו ששון בעוון; כי אם הוא שמח באמת ונושא בכל משא ומאמין לכל ומקנה לכל ומתמיד באיתנותו בפני הכל.
- 45 And charity suffereth long, and is kind, and envieth not, and is not puffed up, seeketh not her own, is not easily provoked, thinketh no evil, and rejoiceth not in iniquity but rejoiceth in the truth, beareth all things, believeth all things, hopeth all things, endureth all things.
- לכן, אחי היקרים, אם אין בכם חסד, כריק אתם, כי לעולם אין החסד כושל. על כן דבקו בחסד, אשר הוא הגדול מכל, כי הכל יכשל וימוט;
- 46 Wherefore, my beloved brethren, if ye have not charity, ye are nothing, for charity never faileth. Wherefore, cleave unto charity, which is the greatest of all, for all things must fail—
- ואולם החסד הוא אהבת המשיח הזכה, המתמידה לעולם; וכל אשר ימצא בו חסד ביום האחרון, טוב יהיה לו.
- 47 But charity is the pure love of Christ, and it endureth forever; and whoso is found possessed of it at the last day, it shall be well with him.
- על כן, אחי היקרים, התפללו אל האב בכל עצמת לבבכם, בעבור תמלאו באהבה הזאת, אשר העניק הוא לכל ההולכים הנאמנים אחר בנו, ישוע המשיח, בעבור תהיו לבני אלהים; ובעבור נהיה כמוהו כאשר יופיע, ונראהו כאשר הוא; ובעבור נקנה לנו את התקווה הזאת ונטהר, אכן, כפי אשר הוא טהור. אמן.
- 48 Wherefore, my beloved brethren, pray unto the Father with all the energy of heart, that ye may be filled with this love, which he hath bestowed upon all who are true followers of his Son, Jesus Christ; that ye may become the sons of God; that when he shall appear we shall be like him, for we shall see him as he is; that we may have this hope; that we may be purified even as he is pure. Amen.



## ח

## 8

- זאת אגרת אבי, מורמון, אשר כתב אלי, מורוני; והיא נכתבה אלי זמן מה לאחר הקראי לשרות. וכה הוא כתב אלי לאמר:
- בני אהובי, מורוני, אני שמח מאד כי נשא אדוניך ישוע המשיח פניו אליה, וקראך לשרותו ולעבודת קדשו.
- אני זוכר אותך תמיד בתפילתי ומתפיל תמיד אל אלהים, האב, בשם בנו הקדוש, ישוע, כי בטובו אשר ללא קץ ובחסדו ישמרך על ידי התמדת האמונה בשמו עד הקץ.
- ועתה, בני, אדבר אליך בענין המעציבני עד מאד; כי צר לי על המחלוקות אשר התעוררו בקרבכם.
- כי, אם נודעה לי האמת, היו בקרבכם מחלוקות באשר להטבלת ילדיכם הקטנים.
- והנה, בני, רצוני כי תעמל בשקידה למען תוסר השגיאה הגדולה הזאת מתוכם, כי לתכלית הזאת כתבתי את האגרת הזאת.
- כי מיד אחר אשר נודעו לי הדברים האלה עליכם, דרשתי ביהוה על הענין הזה. ודבר יהוה היה אלי בכם רוח הקדש, לאמר:
- שמע את דברי המשיח, גואלך, אדוניך ואלהיך. הן לא באתי אל העולם לקרא את הצדיקים לתשובה, כי אם את החוטאים. לא הבריאים צריכים רופא, כי אם החולים. לכן, ילדים קטנים הם תמים, כי אינם יכולים לבצע חטא; על כן, מוסרת מהם בי קללת אדם, ואין היא תקפה לגביהם; וכן בי מוסר חק המילה.
- ובאפן הזה גלתה לי רוח הקדש את דבר אלהים; לכן, בני אהובי, יודע אני כי הטבלתכם ילדים קטנים היא לעג לרש לפני אלהים.
- והנני אומר לך כי את הדבר הזה תלמדו: תשובה והטבלה הן לאשר נושאים באחריות יוכלים לבצע חטא; אכן, למדו הורים כי
- 1 An epistle of my father Mormon, written to me, Moroni; and it was written unto me soon after my calling to the ministry. And on this wise did he write unto me, saying:
- 2 My beloved son, Moroni, I rejoice exceedingly that your Lord Jesus Christ hath been mindful of you, and hath called you to his ministry, and to his holy work.
- 3 I am mindful of you always in my prayers, continually praying unto God the Father in the name of his Holy Child, Jesus, that he, through his infinite goodness and grace, will keep you through the endurance of faith on his name to the end.
- 4 And now, my son, I speak unto you concerning that which grieveth me exceedingly; for it grieveth me that there should disputations rise among you.
- 5 For, if I have learned the truth, there have been disputations among you concerning the baptism of your little children.
- 6 And now, my son, I desire that ye should labor diligently, that this gross error should be removed from among you; for, for this intent I have written this epistle.
- 7 For immediately after I had learned these things of you I inquired of the Lord concerning the matter. And the word of the Lord came to me by the power of the Holy Ghost, saying:
- 8 Listen to the words of Christ, your Redeemer, your Lord and your God. Behold, I came into the world not to call the righteous but sinners to repentance; the whole need no physician, but they that are sick; wherefore, little children are whole, for they are not capable of committing sin; wherefore the curse of Adam is taken from them in me, that it hath no power over them; and the law of circumcision is done away in me.
- 9 And after this manner did the Holy Ghost manifest the word of God unto me; wherefore, my beloved son, I know that it is solemn mockery before God, that ye should baptize little children.
- 10 Behold I say unto you that this thing shall ye teach—repentance and baptism unto those who are accountable and capable of committing sin; yea, teach parents that they must repent and be baptized, and

## מורוני ח:יא-כ

- עליהם לשוב מחטא ולהטביל, ולהשפיל עצמם כילדיהם הקטנים, והם יושעו בלם, עם ילדיהם הקטנים.
- 11 And their little children need no repentance, neither baptism. Behold, baptism is unto repentance to the fulfilling the commandments unto the remission of sins.
- 12 But little children are alive in Christ, even from the foundation of the world; if not so, God is a partial God, and also a changeable God, and a respecter to persons; for how many little children have died without baptism!
- 13 Wherefore, if little children could not be saved without baptism, these must have gone to an endless hell.
- 14 Behold I say unto you, that he that supposeth that little children need baptism is in the gall of bitterness and in the bonds of iniquity, for he hath neither faith, hope, nor charity; wherefore, should he be cut off while in the thought, he must go down to hell.
- 15 For awful is the wickedness to suppose that God saveth one child because of baptism, and the other must perish because he hath no baptism.
- 16 Wo be unto them that shall pervert the ways of the Lord after this manner, for they shall perish except they repent. Behold, I speak with boldness, having authority from God; and I fear not what man can do; for perfect love casteth out all fear.
- 17 And I am filled with charity, which is everlasting love; wherefore, all children are alike unto me; wherefore, I love little children with a perfect love; and they are all alike and partakers of salvation.
- 18 For I know that God is not a partial God, neither a changeable being; but he is unchangeable from all eternity to all eternity.
- 19 Little children cannot repent; wherefore, it is awful wickedness to deny the pure mercies of God unto them, for they are all alive in him because of his mercy.
- 20 And he that saith that little children need baptism denieth the mercies of Christ, and setteth at naught the atonement of him and the power of his redemption.
- והנני אומר לה, כי הסובר כי על ילדים קטנים להטביל שרי במררת רש ובכבלי עוון, כי אין לו כל אמונה, או תקווה, ואף לא חסד; על כן אם יכרת וזאת מחשבתו, שאלה ירד.
- כי נוראה רשעת האומר כי אלהים מושיע ילד אחד מפני הטבילה, ואלו זולתו יאבד כי אינו מטביל.
- אוי לאלה המעוותים את דרכי יהוה באופן הזה, כי הם יאבדו אם לא ישובו מחטאייהם. הנני מדבר בתקוה, כי לי הסמכות מאת אלהים; אינני ירא מה יעשה לי אדם; כי אהבה שלמה מסירה כל מורא.
- הן מלאתי חסד, אשר הוא אהבת עולם; על כן כל הילדים שוים בעיני. אכן, אוהב אני ילדים קטנים אהבה שלמה; וכלם שווים ולהם חלק בישועה.
- כי יודע אני כי אין אלהים נושא פנים, ואף איננו הויה משתנה; וכי הוא בלתי משתנה, מעולם ועד עולמי עולמים.
- אין ילדים קטנים יכולים לשוב מחטא; לכן רשעה נוראה לשלל מהם את חמלת אלהים הזכה, כי הם בלם חיים בו מפני חמלתו.
- והאומר כי על ילדים קטנים להטביל, מכחש בחמלת המשיח, ושולל את הכפרה אשר מאתו ואת כח גאולתו.

- 21 **אוי לְכַאֲלָה כִּי הֵם בְּסִכְנַת מוֹת, שְׂאוּל וְיִסּוּרֵי עוֹלָם. אוֹמֵר אֲנִי זֹאת בְּתוֹקָה, כְּאֲשֶׁר צִוֵּנִי אֱלֹהִים. שְׁמָעוּ אֶת דְּבָרֵי וְשִׁיתוּ לִבְכֶּם לָהֶם, לְבַל יַעֲמְדוּ עֲלֵיכֶם לִפְנֵי כֹס הַמִּשְׁפָּט אֲשֶׁר לַמָּשִׁיחַ.**  
 21 **Wo unto such, for they are in danger of death, hell, and an endless torment. I speak it boldly; God hath commanded me. Listen unto them and give heed, or they stand against you at the judgment-seat of Christ.**
- 22 **הֵן כָּל הַיְלָדִים הַקְּטָנִים חַיִּים בַּמָּשִׁיחַ, וְכֵן כָּל אֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר הֵם בְּלִי חֹק. כִּי כֹחַ הַנִּגְאָלָה בָּא עַל כָּל אֲשֶׁר אֵין הַחֹק חָל עֲלֵיהֶם; עַל כֵּן זֶה אֲשֶׁר לֹא נִמְצָא אֲשֶׁם, אוֹ אֲשֶׁר אֵין עָלָיו כָּל הָרָשָׁעָה, אֵינָנו יָכוֹל לָשׁוּב מִחֲטָא; וְאֵין כָּל תּוֹעֵלַת בְּהִטְבָּלָתוֹ;**  
 22 **For behold that all little children are alive in Christ, and also all they that are without the law. For the power of redemption cometh on all them that have no law; wherefore, he that is not condemned, or he that is under no condemnation, cannot repent; and unto such baptism availeth nothing—**
- 23 **כִּי זֶה לַעֲג לִפְנֵי אֱלֹהִים, וּלְכַחַשׁ בְּרַחֲמֵי הַמָּשִׁיחַ וּבִכְח רִיחַ קִדְשׁוֹ, וּלְשִׁים מִבְּטָח בַּמַּעֲשִׂים רִיקִים.**  
 23 **But it is mockery before God, denying the mercies of Christ, and the power of his Holy Spirit, and putting trust in dead works.**
- 24 **הִנֵּה, בְּנִי, אֵין לַעֲשׂוֹת אֶת הַדָּבָר הַזֶּה; כִּי תִשׁוּבָה הִיא לְאֲשֶׁר חָל עֲלֵיהֶם אֲשֶׁם אוֹ לְאֲשֶׁר מְקַלְלִים עַל פְּרִיצַת הַחֹק.**  
 24 **Behold, my son, this thing ought not to be; for repentance is unto them that are under condemnation and under the curse of a broken law.**
- 25 **וּבְכוּרֵי הַתִּשְׁוּבָה הֵם הַטְּבָלָה; וְהַטְּבָלָה בָּאָה עַל יְדֵי אֱמֻנָה לְקִיּוֹם הַמִּצְוּוֹת. וְקִיּוֹם הַמִּצְוּוֹת מִבְּיֵא מַחֲיִילַת חֲטָאִים.**  
 25 **And the first fruits of repentance is baptism; and baptism cometh by faith unto the fulfilling the commandments; and the fulfilling the commandments bringeth remission of sins;**
- 26 **וּמַחֲיִילַת חֲטָאִים מִבְּיָאָה עֲנוּה וְשִׁפְלוּת רוּחַ; וּמִפְּנֵי עֲנוּה וְשִׁפְלוּת רוּחַ בָּאָה לְשִׁרּוֹת רוּחַ הַקִּדְשׁ. וְהִיא הַמְּנַחֶמֶת הַמְּמַלֵּאת בְּתוֹקָה וְאַהֲבָה שְׁלֵמָה, אַהֲבָה הַמְּתִמֶּדֶה עַל יְדֵי שְׂקִידָה בְּתַפְלָה, עַד בּוֹא הַקֵּץ, כְּאֲשֶׁר יִשְׁכְּנוּ כָּל הַקְּדוֹשִׁים עִם אֱלֹהִים.**  
 26 **And the remission of sins bringeth meekness, and lowliness of heart; and because of meekness and lowliness of heart cometh the visitation of the Holy Ghost, which Comforter filleth with hope and perfect love, which love endureth by diligence unto prayer, until the end shall come, when all the saints shall dwell with God.**
- 27 **הִנֵּה, בְּנִי, עוֹד אוֹסִיף לְכַתֵּב לָךְ, אִם לֹא אֶצְא בְּקִרּוֹב אֶל הַלְּמָנִיתִים. הִנֵּה, גִּאוּת הָעַם הַזֶּה, עִם נָפִי, חָרְצָה אֶת כָּלִיוָנָם, אִם לֹא יִשׁוּבוּ מִרַעְתָּם.**  
 27 **Behold, my son, I will write unto you again if I go not out soon against the Lamanites. Behold, the pride of this nation, or the people of the Nephites, hath proven their destruction except they should repent.**
- 28 **הַתְּפַלֵּל לְמַעַנָם, בְּנִי, כִּי יִשׁוּבוּ מִחֲטָאֵיהֶם. אֲדָ תֵרָד אֲנִי כִּי תִדְּל רוּחַ הַקִּדְשׁ לְהַתְּאַמֵּץ עִמָּם; וּבְחֻלָּק הָאֶרֶץ הַזֶּה הֵם אֵף מִבְּקִשִּׁים לְבַטֵּל כָּל כֹּחַ וְסִמְכוּת הַבָּאִים מֵאֵת אֱלֹהִים, וּמִכְחָשִׁים הֵם בְּרוּחַ הַקִּדְשׁ.**  
 28 **Pray for them, my son, that repentance may come unto them. But behold, I fear lest the Spirit hath ceased striving with them; and in this part of the land they are also seeking to put down all power and authority which cometh from God; and they are denying the Holy Ghost.**
- 29 **וְאַחֵר מְאָסָם, בְּנִי, בִּידִיעָה כֹּה גְדוֹלָה, בְּמַהֲרָה יֵאָבְדוּ, וְזֹאת לְקִיּוֹם אֶת הַנְּבוּאוֹת אֲשֶׁר יֵצְאוּ מִפִּי הַנְּבִיאִים וּמִפִּי מוֹשִׁיעֵנו עֲצָמוֹ.**  
 29 **And after rejecting so great a knowledge, my son, they must perish soon, unto the fulfilling of the prophecies which were spoken by the prophets, as well as the words of our Savior himself.**

- שְׁלוֹם עָלֶיךָ, בְּנִי, עַד אֲשֶׁר אוֹסִיף כָּתוֹב אֵלֶיךָ, אוֹ אֲשׁוּב לְרֹאוֹתְךָ. אָמֵן.
- 30 Farewell, my son, until I shall write unto you, or shall meet you again. Amen.

## ט

## 9

- בְּנִי, אֶהוּבִי, כּוֹתֵב אֲנִי אֵלֶיךָ שֵׁנִית לְמַעַן תִּדְעַה כִּי עוֹדֵנִי חַי; וְאוֹלָם אֶכְתֹּב בְּזֶה דְּבַר-מָה עַל עֲנִין חֲמוֹר.
- 1 My beloved son, I write unto you again that ye may know that I am yet alive; but I write somewhat of that which is grievous.
- הִנֵּה, הָיָה לִי קָרִב מִרַם עִם הַלְּמָנִים וְלֹא הִכְרַעְנוּם. אֶרְחֵאֲנִטוֹס נָפַל בַּחֶרֶב, וְכֵן לִוְרָם וְאֶמְרוֹן; אַכֵּן, אֲבִדְנוּ מִסָּפָר רַב מִמִּבְחָר אֲנָשֵׁינוּ.
- 2 For behold, I have had a sore battle with the Lamanites, in which we did not conquer; and Archeantus has fallen by the sword, and also Luram and Emron; yea, and we have lost a great number of our choice men.
- וְעַתָּה, בְּנִי, יִרְאֵתִי פֶן יִשְׁמִידוּ הַלְּמָנִים אֶת הָעָם הַזֶּה; כִּי אֵין הֵם שׁוֹבִים מִרְעֵתָם, וְהַשָּׁטָן מַעֲוֹרֵרם תָּמִיד לְזַעַם זֶה עַל זֶה.
- 3 And now behold, my son, I fear lest the Lamanites shall destroy this people; for they do not repent, and Satan stirreth them up continually to anger one with another.
- הֲנִי עֹמֵל עִמָּם תָּמִיד; וּבְדַבְרִי אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים בְּתִקְוָה הֵם מִרְעִידִים וְכוֹעֲסִים עָלַי; וְכֹאֲשֶׁר אֲדַבֵּר בְּלֹא תִקְוָה הֵם מִקְשִׁים אֶת לְבָבם עָלַי. עַל כֵּן חָרַד אֲנִי פֶן יִחְדַּל רוּחַ יְהוָה לְהִתְאַמֵּץ עִמָּם.
- 4 Behold, I am laboring with them continually; and when I speak the word of God with sharpness they tremble and anger against me; and when I use no sharpness they harden their hearts against it; wherefore, I fear lest the Spirit of the Lord hath ceased striving with them.
- כִּי כֹה גָדוֹל כְּעֵסָם, עַד אֲשֶׁר נִרְאָה בְּעֵינַי כִּי אֵין הֵם יֹרְאִים אֶת הַמָּוֶת; וְהֵם אֲבָדוּ אֶת אֲהֲבָתָם אִישׁ לְרֵעֵהוּ; וְתָמִיד צָמְאִים הֵם לָדָם וּלְנֶקֶם.
- 5 For so exceedingly do they anger that it seemeth me that they have no fear of death; and they have lost their love, one towards another; and they thirst after blood and revenge continually.
- וְעַתָּה, בְּנִי אֶהוּבִי, עַל אֵף כִּי קִשִּׁים הֵם, הֵבִיא נַעֲמַל בְּשִׁקְדָּה; כִּי אִם נִחְדַּל מִעֲמָלָנוּ, נִצָּא חַיִּיבִים בְּדִין, כִּי יֵשׁ לָנוּ עֲבוּדָה אֲשֶׁר עָלֵינוּ לְבַצֵּעָה בְּעוֹדֵנוּ נִמְצָאִים בְּמִשְׁכַּן הַחֲמֹר הַזֶּה, בְּעִבּוֹר נִכְנִיעַ אֶת אוֹיֵב כָּל הַצִּדְקָה, וְנִנְיַח אֶת נַשְׁמוֹתֵינוּ בְּמַלְכוּת אֱלֹהִים.
- 6 And now, my beloved son, notwithstanding their hardness, let us labor diligently; for if we should cease to labor, we should be brought under condemnation; for we have a labor to perform whilst in this tabernacle of clay, that we may conquer the enemy of all righteousness, and rest our souls in the kingdom of God.
- וְעַתָּה אֶכְתֹּב דְּבַר-מָה עַל סִבְלוֹת הָעָם הַזֶּה. כִּי נֹדַע לִי מֵאֵת עֲמוֹרוֹן כִּי שָׁבוּ הַלְּמָנִים שְׁבוּיִים רַבִּים, אֲשֶׁר לָקְחוּ מִמִּגְדַּל שְׁרִיצָה; וְהָיוּ בָהֶם גְּבָרִים וְנָשִׁים וְיִלְדִים.
- 7 And now I write somewhat concerning the sufferings of this people. For according to the knowledge which I have received from Amoron, behold, the Lamanites have many prisoners, which they took from the tower of Sherriyah; and there were men, women, and children.
- וְאֵת בְּעָלֵי הַנָּשִׁים הָאֵלֶּה וְאֵת אֲבוֹת הַיִּלְדִּים הֵם הָרְגוּ; וְהֵם מֵאֲכִילִים אֶת הַנָּשִׁים בְּבָשָׂר בְּעָלֵיהֶן, וְאֵת הַיִּלְדִּים בְּבָשָׂר אֲבוֹתֵיהֶם; וְאֵין הֵם מִשְׁקִים אוֹתָם מַיִם, כִּי אִם מַעַט.
- 8 And the husbands and fathers of those women and children they have slain; and they feed the women upon the flesh of their husbands, and the children upon the flesh of their fathers; and no water, save a little, do they give unto them.
- וְאַף כִּי גְדוֹלָה תּוֹעֵבַת הַלְּמָנִים הַזֹּאת, אֵין הִיא עוֹלָה עַל תּוֹעֵבַת אֲנָשֵׁינוּ בְּמוֹרִיאֲנִטוֹס.
- 9 And notwithstanding this great abomination of the Lamanites, it doth not exceed that of our people in Moriantum. For behold, many of

כי הנה, הם שבו רבות מבנות הלמנים; ואחר אשר שללו מהן את היקר והנעלה מכל, את צניעותן ותמדתן,

the daughters of the Lamanites have they taken prisoners; and after depriving them of that which was most dear and precious above all things, which is chastity and virtue—

ואחר עשותם את המעשה הזה, הם רצחו אותן באפן אכזרי מאד, בענותם את גופן עד מות; ואחר עשותם כן, הם טורפים את בשרן כמו חיות טרף, מפני קשי לבם. והם עושים זאת כאות גבורה.

10 And after they had done this thing, they did murder them in a most cruel manner, torturing their bodies even unto death; and after they have done this, they devour their flesh like unto wild beasts, because of the hardness of their hearts; and they do it for a token of bravery.

אהה, בני אהובי, איכה יכול עם כזה, חסר תרבות,

11 O my beloved son, how can a people like this, that are without civilization—

ורק לפני שנים אחדות הם היו עם תרבותי ונעים הליכות,

12 (And only a few years have passed away, and they were a civil and a delightful people)

אהה, בני, איכה יכול עם כזה, המתענג בתועבה כה רבה,

13 But O my son, how can a people like this, whose delight is in so much abomination—

איכה נצפה כי ימנע אלהים את ידו במשפט עלינו?

14 How can we expect that God will stay his hand in judgment against us?

הנה, לבי קורא: אוי לעם הזה. בואה נא במשפט אלהים, והסתור את חטאיהם ואת רשעתם ואת תועבותיהם מפניך!

15 Behold, my heart cries: Wo unto this people. Come out in judgment, O God, and hide their sins, and wickedness, and abominations from before thy face!

והנה, בני, אלמנות רבות ובנותיהן נשארו בשריצה; ואת חלק הצידה אשר לא נשארו עמם הלמנים, הנה, צבא זנפני נשא, ואותן השאיר נודדות אנה ואנה, לבקש מזון; ונשים זקנות רבות מתעלפות בדרךים ומתות.

16 And again, my son, there are many widows and their daughters who remain in Sherrizah; and that part of the provisions which the Lamanites did not carry away, behold, the army of Zenephi has carried away, and left them to wander whithersoever they can for food; and many old women do faint by the way and die.

והצבא אשר עמי חלש; וחיל הלמנים נמצא ביני ובין שרריצה; וכל אשר ברחו אל צבא אהרן, נפלו קרבן לפראותם הנוראה.

17 And the army which is with me is weak; and the armies of the Lamanites are betwixt Sherrizah and me; and as many as have fled to the army of Aaron have fallen victims to their awful brutality.

אהה, שחיתות עמי! הם חסרי משמעת וחסרי רחמים. הן רק בן אדם אני, ורק כח אדם לי, ואינני יכול עוד לאכוף את פקדוטי.

18 O the depravity of my people! They are without order and without mercy. Behold, I am but a man, and I have but the strength of a man, and I cannot any longer enforce my commands.

והם התעצמו בעקשותם; וכלם כאחד פראים, ואין הם חסים על איש, זקן או צעיר; והם מתענגים על כל דבר, וזולת אשר הוא טוב. וסבל נשינו וילדינו על כל פני הארץ הזאת עולה על כל סבל; אכן, לא תוכל לשון לספר זאת, ולא נהן אף לכתבם.

19 And they have become strong in their perversion; and they are alike brutal, sparing none, neither old nor young; and they delight in everything save that which is good; and the suffering of our women and our children upon all the face of this land doth exceed everything; yea, tongue cannot tell, neither can it be written.



## מורוני ט:כ-י:ב

- ועתה, בני, לא אוסיף להתעבב על תאור המרצה הנורא הזה; הן יודע אתה את רשעת העם הזה; אכן, יודע אתה כי אין להם כל חק, ואטומי רגש הם; וכי רשעתם עולה על רשעת הלמנים.
- 20 And now, my son, I dwell no longer upon this horrible scene. Behold, thou knowest the wickedness of this people; thou knowest that they are without principle, and past feeling; and their wickedness doth exceed that of the Lamanites.
- הנה, בני, אינני יכול להיות להם מליץ ישר לפני אלהים פן יכני.
- 21 Behold, my son, I cannot recommend them unto God lest he should smite me.
- ואולם עליך, בני, הנני ממליץ לפני אלהים, ובוטח אני במשיח כי תושע. ואני מתפלל אל אלהים כי יציל את נפשו, ותעיד על שובת העם הזה אליו, או על כליונם המחלט; כי ידעתי כי אבוד יאבדו, בלתי אם ינחמו וישובו אליו.
- 22 But behold, my son, I recommend thee unto God, and I trust in Christ that thou wilt be saved; and I pray unto God that he will spare thy life, to witness the return of his people unto him, or their utter destruction; for I know that they must perish except they repent and return unto him.
- ואם יאבדו, יהיה זה כמקרה הירדים, על זדון לבם, בבקשם דם ונקם.
- 23 And if they perish it will be like unto the Jaredites, because of the wilfulness of their hearts, seeking for blood and revenge.
- ואם יאבדו, הן יודעים אנחנו כי רבים מאחינו ערקו ממנו אל הלמנים, ורבים עוד יערכו אליהם; על כן, כתב נא דברים אחדים, אם תנצל אתה, ואני אמות ולא אראך; אך סבור אני כי עד מהרה אראך, כי בידי כתבי קדש אשר חפץ אני למסר לידך.
- 24 And if it so be that they perish, we know that many of our brethren have deserted over unto the Lamanites, and many more will also desert over unto them; wherefore, write somewhat a few things, if thou art spared and I shall perish and not see thee; but I trust that I may see thee soon; for I have sacred records that I would deliver up unto thee.
- בני, היה נאמן למשיח; ואל יעציבו הדברים אשר כתבתי, להורידך אלי קבר, יהי רצון כי ישאף המשיח, וכי ישכנו בדעתך לעולם סבלותיו ומותו, והראותו את גופו לאבותינו, ורחמיו וארץ אפיו והתקנה לזכות בתפארתו ובחיי עולם.
- 25 My son, be faithful in Christ; and may not the things which I have written grieve thee, to weigh thee down unto death; but may Christ lift thee up, and may his sufferings and death, and the showing his body unto our fathers, and his mercy and long-suffering, and the hope of his glory and of eternal life, rest in your mind forever.
- ויהי רצון כי יחול עליך לעולם חסד אלהים האב, אשר כסאו בגבהי מרומים, וחסד אדונו ישוע המשיח, היושב לימין גבורתו, עד אשר יכנעו לו כל הדברים. אמן.
- 26 And may the grace of God the Father, whose throne is high in the heavens, and our Lord Jesus Christ, who sitteth on the right hand of his power, until all things shall become subject unto him, be, and abide with you forever. Amen.

## י

## 10

- ועתה, אני, מורוני, כותב דבר-מה אשר הוא טוב בעיני; ואני כותב לאחי הלמנים. רצוני כי ידעו כי יותר מארבע מאות ועשרים שנה חלפו מעת נתן האות לבוא המשיח.
- 1 Now I, Moroni, write somewhat as seemeth me good; and I write unto my brethren, the Lamanites; and I would that they should know that more than four hundred and twenty years have passed away since the sign was given of the coming of Christ.
- ואני חותם את הכתבים האלה, אחר דברי אליכם דברים מעשים כדרך הפצרה.
- 2 And I seal up these records, after I have spoken a few words by way of exhortation unto you.

- 3 Behold, I would exhort you that when ye shall read these things, if it be wisdom in God that ye should read them, that ye would remember how merciful the Lord hath been unto the children of men, from the creation of Adam even down unto the time that ye shall receive these things, and ponder it in your hearts.
- הַנִּי מִפְּצִיר בָּכֶם כִּי בְקִרְאַתְכֶּם אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, אִם יִהְיֶה זֶה בְּחִכְמַת אֱלֹהִים כִּי תִקְרְאוּם, כִּי תִזְכְּרוּ מִה רַחוּם יְהוָה לִבְנֵי הָאָדָם, מֵעַתַּת בְּרִיאַת אָדָם וְעַד יוֹם קִבְּלָכֶם אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, וּתְהַרְהֲרוּ בְּזֹאת בְּלִבְכֶּם.
- 4 And when ye shall receive these things, I would exhort you that ye would ask God, the Eternal Father, in the name of Christ, if these things are not true; and if ye shall ask with a sincere heart, with real intent, having faith in Christ, he will manifest the truth of it unto you, by the power of the Holy Ghost.
- וְאֲנִי מִפְּצִיר בָּכֶם כִּי בְקִבְּלָכֶם אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה תִּשְׁאַלּוּ אֶת אֱלֹהִים, אֵב הָעוֹלָמִים, בְּשֵׁם הַמָּשִׁיחַ, אִם אֵין הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה אֱמֶת. וְאִם תִּשְׁאַלּוּ בְּלִב שָׁלֵם, בְּכֹנֶנָה כְּנָה, בְּהִיּוֹת לָכֶם אֱמוּנָה בַּמָּשִׁיחַ, יִגְלֶה הוּא לָכֶם אֱמֶת זֹאת בְּכֶחַ רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ.
- 5 And by the power of the Holy Ghost ye may know the truth of all things.
- וּבְכֶחַ רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ תִּדְעוּ אֶת אֱמֶת כָּל הַדְּבָרִים.
- 6 And whatsoever thing is good is just and true; wherefore, nothing that is good denieth the Christ, but acknowledgeth that he is.
- וְכָל דְּבָר אֲשֶׁר הוּא טוֹב, צוֹדֵק וְדָבָר אֱמֶת הוּא; עַל כֵּן, דְּבָר אֲשֶׁר הוּא טוֹב לֹא יִכְחַשׁ בַּמָּשִׁיחַ, כִּי אִם יֵאשֶׁר אֶת קִיּוּמוֹ.
- 7 And ye may know that he is, by the power of the Holy Ghost; wherefore I would exhort you that ye deny not the power of God; for he worketh by power, according to the faith of the children of men, the same today and tomorrow, and forever.
- וְאַתֶּם תִּדְעוּ בְּכֶחַ רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ כִּי הוּא מְיָס; עַל כֵּן אֲנִי מִפְּצִיר בָּכֶם לְבַל תִּכְחַשׁוּ בְּכֶח אֱלֹהִים; כִּי הוּא פּוֹעֵל בְּכֶחַ, כְּפִי אֱמוּנַת בְּנֵי הָאָדָם, וְאַחַד הוּא, הַיּוֹם וּמָחָר, וְלָעוֹלָם.
- 8 And again, I exhort you, my brethren, that ye deny not the gifts of God, for they are many; and they come from the same God. And there are different ways that these gifts are administered; but it is the same God who worketh all in all; and they are given by the manifestations of the Spirit of God unto men, to profit them.
- וְעוֹד, אֲנִי מִפְּצִיר בָּכֶם, אַחֵי, לְבַל תִּכְחַשׁוּ בְּמַתָּנוֹת אֱלֹהִים, כִּי רַבּוֹת הֵן, וּבְאוֹת הֵן מְאֹדוֹ הָאֱלֹהִים. וְהַמַּתָּנוֹת הָאֵלֶּה מְעַנְקוֹת בְּדַרְכִּים שׁוֹנוֹת, אֲפֹר אוֹתוֹ הָאֱלֹהִים הוּא הַעוֹשֶׂה הַכֹּל בְּכָל; וְהֵן נִתְּנוֹת עַל יְדֵי הַתְּגַלִּיּוֹת רוּחַ אֱלֹהִים אֶל בְּנֵי הָאָדָם, לְהוֹעִילָם.
- 9 For behold, to one is given by the Spirit of God, that he may teach the word of wisdom;
- הִנֵּה, לְאֶחָד נָתַן רוּחַ אֱלֹהִים, כִּי יִלְמַד אֶת דְּבַר הַחֲכָמָה;
- 10 And to another, that he may teach the word of knowledge by the same Spirit;
- וּלְאַחֵר כִּי יִלְמַד אֶת דְּבַר הַדַּעַת, עַל יְדֵי אוֹתוֹ רוּחַ;
- 11 And to another, exceedingly great faith; and to another, the gifts of healing by the same Spirit;
- וּלְאַחֵר, אֱמוּנָה רַבָּה מְאֹד; וּלְאַחֵר מַתַּת הַרְפּוּי, עַל יְדֵי אוֹתוֹ רוּחַ;
- 12 And again, to another, that he may work mighty miracles;
- וּלְאַחֵר, כִּי יַעֲשֶׂה נִפְלְאוֹת גְּדוֹלוֹת;
- 13 And again, to another, that he may prophesy concerning all things;
- וּלְאַחֵר, כִּי יִנְבֵּא עַל כָּל הַדְּבָרִים;
- 14 And again, to another, the beholding of angels and ministering spirits;
- וּלְאַחֵר, רְאִיַת מַלְאָכִים וְרוּחוֹת שָׂרָת;
- 15 And again, to another, all kinds of tongues;
- וּלְאַחֵר, כָּל מִינֵי לְשׁוֹנוֹת;

- 16 And again, to another, the interpretation of languages and of divers kinds of tongues.
- וְלֵאחֶר בְּאֹר שְׁפוֹת וּלְשׁוֹנוֹת שׁוֹנוֹת.
- 17 And all these gifts come by the Spirit of Christ; and they come unto every man severally, according as he will.
- וְכָל הַמַּתָּנוֹת הָאֵלֶּה בָּאוֹת עַל יְדֵי רוּחַ הַמְּשִׁיחַ; וְהֵן בָּאוֹת אֶל כָּל אָדָם בְּפָנֵי עֲצָמוֹ, כַּפִּי רְצוֹנוֹ.
- 18 And I would exhort you, my beloved brethren, that ye remember that every good gift cometh of Christ.
- וְאֲנִי מִפְּצִיר בָּכֶם, אַחֵי הַיְּקָרִים, כִּי תִזְכְּרוּ כִּי כָל מַתָּנָה טוֹבָה בָּאָה מֵאֵת הַמְּשִׁיחַ.
- 19 And I would exhort you, my beloved brethren, that ye remember that he is the same yesterday, today, and forever, and that all these gifts of which I have spoken, which are spiritual, never will be done away, even as long as the world shall stand, only according to the unbelief of the children of men.
- וְאֲנִי מִפְּצִיר בָּכֶם, אַחֵי הַיְּקָרִים, כִּי תִזְכְּרוּ כִּי אֶחָד הוּא אֶתְמֹל, הַיּוֹם, וּלְעוֹלָם, וְכִי כָל הַמַּתָּנוֹת הָאֵלֶּה, אֲשֶׁר עָלִיָּהֶן דִּבַּרְתִּי, אֲשֶׁר הֵן רוּחָנִיּוֹת, לְעוֹלָם לֹא תִחַדְלָנָה; אָכֵן, כָּל עוֹד קִיָּם הָעוֹלָם, כִּי אִם מִפְּנֵי חֶסֶר אֱמוּנָה בְּנֵי הָאָדָם.
- 20 Wherefore, there must be faith; and if there must be faith there must also be hope; and if there must be hope there must also be charity.
- עַל כֵּן הַכֶּרֶחַ הוּא כִּי תִהְיֶה אֱמוּנָה. וְאִם הַכֶּרֶחַ כִּי תִהְיֶה אֱמוּנָה, אִף הַכֶּרֶחַ כִּי תִהְיֶה תִקְוָה. וְאִם הַכֶּרֶחַ כִּי תִהְיֶה תִקְוָה, הַכֶּרֶחַ כִּי אִף יִהְיֶה חֶסֶד.
- 21 And except ye have charity ye can in nowise be saved in the kingdom of God; neither can ye be saved in the kingdom of God if ye have not faith; neither can ye if ye have no hope.
- וּבִלְתִּי אִם יִהְיֶה לָכֶם חֶסֶד, לֹא תוֹשְׁעוּ בְּשׁוּם אֶפֶן בְּמַלְכוּת אֱלֹהִים; אִף לֹא תוֹשְׁעוּ בְּמַלְכוּת אֱלֹהִים אִם אֵין לָכֶם אֱמוּנָה; וְאִף אִם אֵין לָכֶם תִּקְוָה.
- 22 And if ye have no hope ye must needs be in despair; and despair cometh because of iniquity.
- וְאִם אֵין לָכֶם תִּקְוָה, שְׂרוּיִים אַתֶּם בְּיֹאֵשׁ; וְהַיֹּאֵשׁ בָּא מִפְּנֵי עֲוֹן.
- 23 And Christ truly said unto our fathers: If ye have faith ye can do all things which are expedient unto me.
- וְהַמְּשִׁיחַ אָכֵן דִּבֶּר אֶל אֲבוֹתֵינוּ לֵאמֹר: אִם יֵשׁ לָכֶם אֱמוּנָה, יְכוּלִים אַתֶּם לַעֲשׂוֹת אֵת כָּל הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר נְכוֹנִים הֵם בְּעֵינַי.
- 24 And now I speak unto all the ends of the earth—that if the day cometh that the power and gifts of God shall be done away among you, it shall be because of unbelief.
- וְעַתָּה אֲדַבֵּר אֶל כָּל קְצוֹת הָאָרֶץ, כִּי אִם יָבוֹא יוֹם אֲשֶׁר בּוֹ יִחַדְלוּ כֹחַ אֱלֹהִים וּמַתָּנוֹתָיו מִקִּרְבְּכֶם, יִהְיֶה זֶה מִפְּנֵי חֶסֶר אֱמוּנָה.
- 25 And wo be unto the children of men if this be the case; for there shall be none that doeth good among you, no not one. For if there be one among you that doeth good, he shall work by the power and gifts of God.
- וְאֹי לְבְנֵי הָאָדָם אִם כֵּן יִהְיֶה; כִּי לֹא יִהְיֶה בָכֶם אִישׁ עוֹשֶׂה טוֹב, אִף אִישׁ אֶחָד. כִּי אִם יִהְיֶה בָכֶם אִישׁ עוֹשֶׂה טוֹב, הוּא, אָכֵן, יַעֲלֶל בְּכַח אֱלֹהִים וּבְמַתָּתוֹ.
- 26 And wo unto them who shall do these things away and die, for they die in their sins, and they cannot be saved in the kingdom of God; and I speak it according to the words of Christ; and I lie not.
- וְאֹי לְאֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר יִבְטְלוּ אֵת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה וְיָמוּתוּ, כִּי בְּחַטָּאִים יָמוּתוּ, וְלֹא תִהְיֶה לָהֶם יְשׁוּעָה בְּמַלְכוּת אֱלֹהִים; וְאֲנִי אוֹמֵר זֹאת עַל פִּי דְבַר הַמְּשִׁיחַ, וְאֵינִי מְכַזֵּב.

- 27 ואני מפציר בכם לזכר את הדברים האלה; כי במהרה יבוא המועד אשר תדעו כי אני אני מכזב, כי תראוני ליד כס המשפט אשר לאלהים; וכה יאמר אליכם יהוה אלהים: הלא הודעתים את דברי, אשר נכתבו בידי האיש הזה, באיש הקורא מן המיתים, אכן, כדבר איש מן העפר?
- 28 הנני מודיעכם את הדברים האלה למען קיום הנבואות. הנה, הם יצאו מפי אלהי העולמים, ודברו ולחש מדור אל דור.
- 29 ואלהים יראה לכם כי את אשר כתבתי אמת הוא.
- 30 ועוד אני מפציר בכם כי תבואו אל המשיח, ותחזיקו בכל מתת טוב, וכי לא תגעו במתת רע ובדבר טמא.
- 31 עורי, קומי מעפר, ירושלם; יאה, ופני בגדי תפארתך, בת ציון; חזקי יתדותיך, והרחיבי את גבולך לעולם לבל תכלמי עוד, בעבור יקומו בריתות אב העולמים, אשר פרת עמך, בית ישראל.
- 32 אכן, בואו אל המשיח, והעשו משלמים בו, והמנעו מכל עולה; ואם תמנעו מכל עולה, ותאהבו את אלהים בכל מאדכם ובכל דעתכם ובכל כחכם, אזי יספיק לכם חסדו בעבור תעשו, על ידי חסדו, משלמים במשיח. ואם תהיו משלמים במשיח על ידי חסד אלהים, כחש לא תכחשו בשום אופן בכל אלהים.
- 33 והנה, אם בחסד אלהים תעשו משלמים במשיח, ולא תכחשו בכלח, מקדשים תהיו במשיח בחסד אלהים, על ידי שפיכת דם המשיח אשר היא בברית האב למחילת חטאיכם, בעבור תהיו קדושים, ללא רבב.
- 34 ועתה, שולח אני לכל ברפת שלום. עד מהרה אלה לניח בגן עד אשר לאלהים, עד אשר ישבו נשמותי וגופי להתאחד, ואובא באויר כמנצח, לקבל את פניכם לפני כס המשפט הנעים אשר ליהוה הגדול, שופט החיים והמתים הנצחי. אמן.
- And I exhort you to remember these things; for the time speedily cometh that ye shall know that I lie not, for ye shall see me at the bar of God; and the Lord God will say unto you: Did I not declare my words unto you, which were written by this man, like as one crying from the dead, yea, even as one speaking out of the dust?
- I declare these things unto the fulfilling of the prophecies. And behold, they shall proceed forth out of the mouth of the everlasting God; and his word shall hiss forth from generation to generation.
- And God shall show unto you, that that which I have written is true.
- And again I would exhort you that ye would come unto Christ, and lay hold upon every good gift, and touch not the evil gift, nor the unclean thing.
- And awake, and arise from the dust, O Jerusalem; yea, and put on thy beautiful garments, O daughter of Zion; and strengthen thy stakes and enlarge thy borders forever, that thou mayest no more be confounded, that the covenants of the Eternal Father which he hath made unto thee, O house of Israel, may be fulfilled.
- Yea, come unto Christ, and be perfected in him, and deny yourselves of all ungodliness; and if ye shall deny yourselves of all ungodliness and love God with all your might, mind and strength, then is his grace sufficient for you, that by his grace ye may be perfect in Christ; and if by the grace of God ye are perfect in Christ, ye can in nowise deny the power of God.
- And again, if ye by the grace of God are perfect in Christ, and deny not his power, then are ye sanctified in Christ by the grace of God, through the shedding of the blood of Christ, which is in the covenant of the Father unto the remission of your sins, that ye become holy, without spot.
- And now I bid unto all, farewell. I soon go to rest in the paradise of God, until my spirit and body shall again reunite, and I am brought forth triumphant through the air, to meet you before the pleasing bar of the great Jehovah, the Eternal Judge of both quick and dead. Amen.